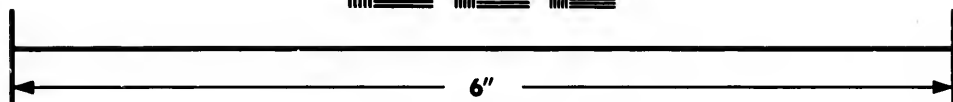
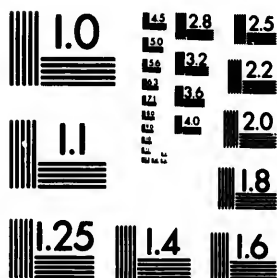


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**



**© 1983**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Relié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/<br>Comprend du matériel supplémentaire   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distortion le long de la marge intérieure  | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/<br>Seule édition disponible   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may<br>appear within the text. Whenever possible, these<br>have been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata<br>slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to<br>ensure the best possible image/<br>Les pages totalement ou partiellement<br>obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,<br>etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à<br>obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:/<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:<br><br>MAP MISSING. HOWEVER, THIS EDITION CONTAINS THE VERY RARE SECTION ON SIR FRANCIS DRAKE'S VOYAGE<br>TO THE SOUTH SEAS, INSERTED AFTER p.643.  |  |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
								✓			

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

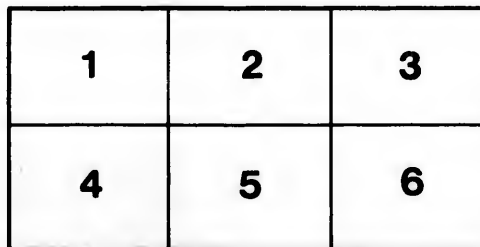
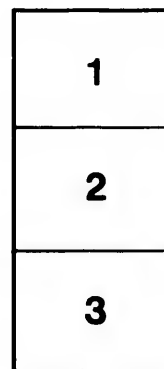
Metropolitan Toronto Library  
Canadian History Department

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Metropolitan Toronto Library  
Canadian History Department

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

plaire  
es détails  
iques du  
nt modifier  
xiger une  
de filmage

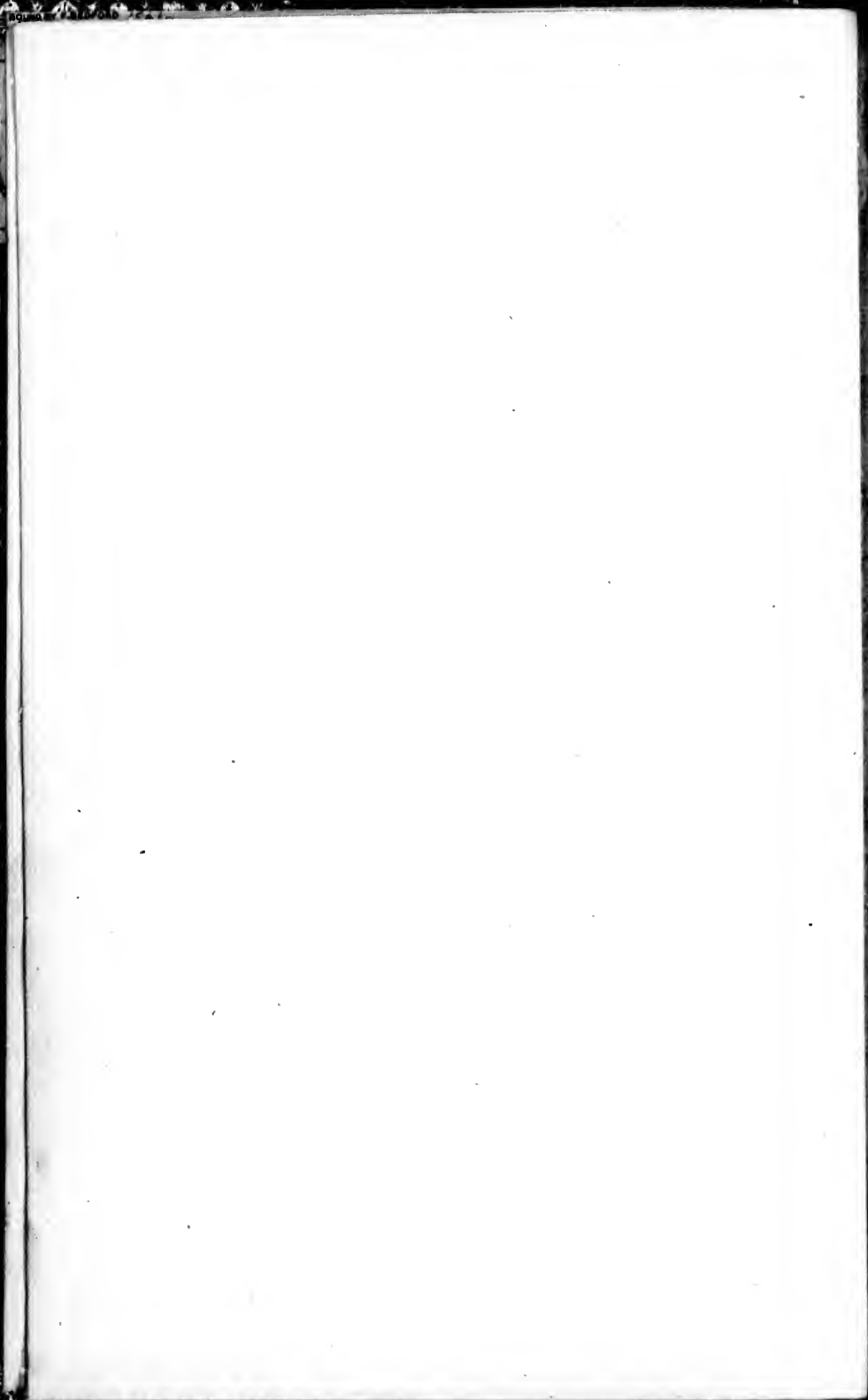
d/  
quées

taire

by errata  
med to

ment  
une pelure,  
façon à  
a.





# THE PRINCIPALL NAVIGATIONS, VOIA- GES AND DISCOVERIES OF THE

English nation, made by Sea or ouer Land,

to the most remote and farthest distant Quarters of  
the earth at any time within the compasse.

*of these 1500. yeeres: Denided into three*

*seuerall parts, according to the po-  
sitions of the Regions wherun-  
to they were directed.*

The first, containing the personall trauels of the English vnto *Iudæa, Syria, Arabia, the riuer Euphrates, Babylon, Balsara, the Persian Gulfe, Ormuz, Chant, Goa, India,* and many Islands adioyning to the South parts of *Asia*: together with the like vnto *Egypt*, the chiefest ports and places of *Africa* within and without the Streight of *Gibraltar*, and about the famous Promontorie of *Buona Esperanza*.

The second, comprehending the worthy discoueries of the English towards the North and Northeast by Sea, as of *Lapland, Scricksinia, Corclia*, the Baie of *S. Nicholas*, the Isles of *Colgoiene, Vaigats*, and *Noua Zembla* toward the great riuer *Ob*, with the mightie Empire of *Russia*, the *Caspian Sea, Georgia, Armenia, Media, Persia, Boghar* in *Bactria*, &c diuers kingdoms of *Tartaria*.

The third and last, including the English valiant attempts in searching almost all the corners of the vaste and new world of *America*, from 73. degrees of Northerly latitude Southward, to *Meia Incognita, Newfoundland*, the maine of *Virginia*, the point of *Florida*, the Baie of *Mexico*, all the Inland of *Noua Hispania*, the coast of *Terra firma, Brasill*, the riuer of *Plate*, to the Streight of *Magellan*: and through it, and from it in the South Sea to *Chili, Peru, Xalisco*, the Gulfe of *California, Noua Albion* vpon the backside of *Canada*, further then euer any Christian hitherto hath pierced.

*Whereunto is added the last most renowned English Navigation,*  
round about the whole Globe of the Earth.

*By Richard Hakluyt Master of Artes, and Student sometime  
of Christ-church in Oxford.*



*Imprinted at London by* GEORGE BISHOP  
and RALPH NEWBERIE, Deputies to  
CHRISTOPHER BARKER, Printer to the  
Queenes most excellent Maiestie.

1589.

55-780

TO THE RIGHT HONO.  
 RABLE SIR FRANCIS WALSINGHAM  
 Knight, Principall Secretarie to her Maiestie, Chancellor  
*of the Duchie of Lancaster, and one of her Maiesties  
 most hon ourable Priuie Councill.*



RIGHT Honorable, I do remember that being a youth, and one of her Maiesties scholars at Westminster that fruitfull nurserie, it was my happe to visit the chamber of M. *Richard Hakluyt* my cofin, a Gentleman of the Middle Temple, well knowen vnto you, at a time when I found lying open vpon his boord certeine bookes of Cosmographie, with an vniuersall Mappe: he seing me somewhat curious in the view therof, began to instruct my ignorance, by shewing me the diuision of the earth into three parts after the olde account, and then according to the latter, & better distribution, into more: he pointed with his wand to all the knowen Seas, Gulfs, Bayes, Straights, Capes, Riuers, Empires, Kingdomes, Dukedomes, and Territories of ech part, with declaration also of their speciall commodities, & particular wants, which by the benefit of traffike, & entercourse of merchants, are plentifully supplied. From the Mappe he brought me to the Bible, and turning to the 107 Psalme, directed mee to the 23 & 24 verses, where I read, that they which go downe to the sea in ships, and occupy by the great waters, they see the works of the Lord, and his woonders in the deepe, &c. Which words of the Prophet together with my cousins discourse (things of high and rare delight to my yong nature) tooke in me so deepe an impression, that I constantly resolued, if euer I were preferred to the Vniuersity, where better time, and more conuenient place might be ministred for these studies, I would by Gods assistance prosecute that knowledge and kinde of literature, the doores whereof (after a sort) were so happily opened before me.

According to which my resolution, when, not long after, I was remoued to Christ-church in Oxford, my exercises of duty first performed, I fell to my intended course, and by degrees read ouer whatsoever printed or written discoueries and voyages I found extant either in the Greeke, Latine, Italian, Spanish, Portugall, French, or English languages, and in my publike lectures was the first, that produced and shewed both the olde imperfectly composed, and the new lately reformed Mappes, Globes, Spheares, and other instruments of this Art for demonstration in the common schooles, to the singular pleasure, and generall contentment of my auditory. In continuance of time, and by reason principally of my insight in this study, I grew familiarly acquainted with the chiefeft Captaines at sea, the greatest Merchants, and the best Mariners of our nation: by which meanes hauing gotten somewhat more then common knowledge, I passed at length the narrow seas into France with sir *Edward Stafford*, her Maiesties carefull and discreet Ligier, where during my five yeeres aboat with him in his dangerous and chargeable residencie in her Highnes seruice, I both heard in speech, and read in books other nations miraculously extolled for their discoueries and notable enterprises by sea, but the English of all others for their sluggish security, and continuall neglect of the like attempts especially



pecially in so long and happy a time of peace, either ignominiously reported, or exceedingly condemned: which singular opportunity, if some other people our neighbors had bene blessed with, their protestations are often and vehement, they would farre otherwise haue vsed. And that the truth and euidence hecrof may better appeare, these are the very words of *Popiliniere* in his booke called *L'Admiral de France*, and printed at Paris. *Fol. 73. pag. 1. 2.* The occasion of his speeche is the commendation of the Rhodians, who being (as we are) Islanders, were excellent in nauigation, whereupon he woondereth much that the English should not surpass in that qualitie, in this sort: *Ce qui m'a fait autrefois rechercher les occasions, qui empeschent, que les Anglois, qui ont d'esprit de moyens, & valent assez, pour s'acquies un grand honneur parmi tous les Chrestiens, ne se font plus valoir sur l'element qui leur est, & doit estre plus naturel qu'à autres peuples: qui leur doiuent ceder en la structure, accomodement & police de nauires: comme i'ay veu en plusieurs endroits parmi eux.* Thus both hearing, and reading the obloquie of our nation, and finding few or none of our owne men able to replie heerin: and further, not seeing any man to haue care to recōmend to the world, the industrious labors, and painefull trauels of our countrey men: for stopping the mouthes of the reprochers, my selfe being the last winter returned from France with the honorable the Lady Sheffield, for her passing good behauior highly esteemed in all the French court, determined notwithstanding all difficulties, to vndertake the burden of that worke wherin all others pretended either ignorance, or lacke of leasure, or want of sufficient argument, whereas (to speake truely) the huge toile, and the small profit to insue, were the chiefe causes of the refusal. I call the worke a burden, in consideration that these voyages lay so disperfed, scattered, and hidden in seuerall hucksters hands, that I now woonder at my selfe, to see how I was able to endure the delayes, curiosity, and backwardnesse of many from whom I was to receiue my originals: so that I haue iust cause to make that complaint of the maliciousnes of diuers in our time, which *Plinie* made of the men of his age: *At nos elaborata ijs abscondere atq; supprimere cupimus, & fraudare vitam etiam alienis bonis, &c.*

*Plinius. lib. 25.  
cap. 1. Naturalis  
historia.*

To harpe no longer vpon this string, & to speake a word of that iust commendation which our nation doe indeed deserue: it can not be denied, but as in all former ages, they haue bene men full of actiuity, stirrers abroad, and searchers of the remote parts of the world, so in this most famous and peerlesse gouernement of her most excellent Maiesty, her subiects through the speciall assistance, and blessing of God, in searching the most opposite corners and quarters of the world, and to speake plainly, in compassing the vaste globe of the earth more then once, haue excelled all the nations and people of the earth. For, which of the kings of this land before her Maiesty, had theyr banners euer seene in the Caspian sea? which of them hath euer dealt with the Emperour of Persia, as her Maiesty hath done, and obtained for her merchants large & louing priuileges? who euer saw before this regiment, an English Ligier in the stately porch of the Grand Signor at Constantinople? who euer found English Consuls & Agents at Tripolis in Syria, at Aleppo, at Babylon, at Balsara, and which is more, who euer heard of Englishman at Goa before now? what English shippes did heerebefore euer anker in the mighty riuer of Plate? passe and repasse the vnpassable (in former opinion) straight of Magellan, range along the coast of Chili, Peru, and all the backside of Noua Hispania, further then any Christian euer passed, trauers the mighty bredth of the South sea, land vpon the Luzones in despight of the enemy, enter into alliance, amity, and traffike with the princes of the Moluccas, & the Isle of Iaua, double the famous Cape of Bona Speranza, arriue at the Isle of Santa Helena, & last of al returne home most richly ladē with the commodities

modities of China, as the subjects of this now flourishing monarchy have done?

*Lucius Florus* in the very end of his historic *de gestis Romanorum* recordeth as a wonderfull miracle, that the *Seres*, (which I take to be the people of *Cathay*, or *China*) sent Ambassadors to Rome, to intreate friendship, as moued with the fame of the maiesty of the Roman Empire. And haue not we as good cause to admire, that the Kings of the *Moluccas*, and *Iana maior*, haue desired the fauour of her maiestic, and the commerce & traffike of her people? Is it not as strange that the borne naturalls of *Japan*, and the *Philippinaes* are here to be seene, agreeing with our climate, speaking our language, and informing vs of the state of their Easterne habitations? For mine owne part, I take it as a pledge of Gods further fauour both vnto vs and them: to them especially, vnto whose doores I doubt not in time shalbe by vs caried the incomparable treasure of the trueth of Christianity, and of the Gospell, vvhile vve vlc and exercise common trade with their marchants. I must confesse to haue read in the excellent history intituled *Origines* of *Ianmes Goropius*, a testimonie of king *Henrie* the viij. a prince of noble memory, vvhose intention vvas once, if death had not preuented him, to haue done some singular thing in this case: vvhose vvords speaking of his dealing to that end with himselfe, he being a stranger, & his history rare, I thought good in this place verbatim to record: *Ante viginti & plus eo annos ab Henrico* <sup>124 n<sup>o</sup> Goropij</sup> *Kncuetto Equite Anglo nomine Regis Henrici arram accepti, qua conuenerat, Regio* <sup>Recens originu</sup> *sumptu me totam Asiam, quoad Turcorum & Persarum Regum commendationes, &* <sup>lib. 5 pag. 494.</sup> *legationes admitterentur, peragraturum. Ab his enim duobus Asiae principibus facile se impetraturum sperabat, vt non solum tunc mihi per ipsorum fines liceret ire, sed vt commendatione etiam ipsorum ad confinia quoque daretur penetrare. Sumptus quidem non exiguus erat futurus, sed tanta erat principi cognoscendi auiditas, vt nullis pecunijs ad hoc iter necessarijs se diceret parsurum. O Dignum Regia Maestate animum, O me felicem, si Deus non ante & Kneuetum & Regem abskulisset, quam reuersus ab hac peregrinatione fuissim, &c.* But as the purpose of *Dauid* the king to builde a house and temple to God was accepted, although *Salomon* performed it: so I make no question, but that the zeale in this matter of the aforesaid most renowned prince may seeme no lesse worthy (in his kinde) of acceptance, although referred for the person of our *Salomon* her gracious Maiesty, whome I feare not to pronounce to haue receiued the same Heroicall spirit, and most honorable disposition, as an inheritance from her famous father.

Now whereas I haue alwayes noted your wisdome to haue had a speciall care of the honor of her Maiesty, the good reputation of our country, & the aduancing of nauigation, the very walles of this our Island, as the oracle is reported to haue spoken of the sea forces of *Athens*: and whereas I acknowledge in all dutifull sort how honorably both by your letter and speech I haue bene animated in this and other my trauels, I see my selfe bound to make presentment of this worke to your selfe, as the fruits of your owne encouragements, & the manifestation both of my vnfaired seruice to my prince and country, and of my particular duty to your honour: which I haue done with the lesse suspicion either of not satisfying the world, or of not answering your owne expectation, in that according to your order, it hath passed the sight, and partly also the censure of the learned phisitian *M. Doctor James*, a man many wayes very notably qualified.

And thus beseeching God, the giuer of all true honor & wisdome to increase both these blessings in you, with continuance of health, strength, happinesse, and whatsoeuer good thing els your selfe can wish, I humbly take my leaue. London the 17 of Nouember.

Your honors most humble alwayes to be  
commanded RICHARD HAKLVT.

## Richard Hakluyt to the fauourable Reader.



**H**ave thought it very requisite for thy further instruction and direction in this historie (Good Reader) to acquaint thee brieflie with the Methode and order which I have used in the whole course thereof: and by the way also to les thee understand by whose friendly aide in this my travell I have bene furthered: acknowledging that ancient speech to be no lesse true then ingenious, that the offence is great, Non agnoscere per quos profeceris, not to speake of them by whom a man in his inducours is assisted.

Concerning my proceeding therefore in this present worke, it hath bene this. Whatsoever testimonie I have found in any author of authoritie appertaining to my argument, either stranger or naturall, I have recorded the same word for word, with his particular name and page of booke: here it is extant. If the same were not reduced into our common language, I have first expressed it in the same termes wherein it is originally written, whether it were a Latine, Italian, Spanish or Portugall discourse, or whatsoever else, and thereunto in the next roome have annexed the signification and translation of the wordes in English. And to the ende that those men which were the paynefull and personall travellers might reape that good opinion and iust commendation which they have deserved, and further, that every man might answer for himselfe, iustifie his reports, and stand accountable for his owne doings, I have referred every voyage to his Author, which both in person hath performed, and in writing hath left the same: for I am not ignorant of Ptolomies assertion, that Peregrinationis historia, and not those wearie volumes bearing the titles of vniuersall Cosmographie which some men that I could name have published as their owne, being in deed most vntully and vnprouisable ramassed and burlted together, is that which must bring vs to the certayne and full discouerie of the world.

Moreover, I meddle in this worke with the Navigations onely of our owne nation: And albeit I alleage in a few places (as the matter and occasion required) some strangers as witnesses of the things done, yet are they none but such as either saythfully remember, or sufficiently confirme the travels of our owne people: of whom (to speake truth) I have receiued more light in some respects, then all our owne Historians: could afford me in this case, Bale, Foixe, and Eden onely excepted.

And it is a thing which shall principally be considered, that I stand not upon any action performed neere home, nor in any part of Europe commonly frequented by our shipping, as for example: Not upon that victorious exploit not long since atchieued in our narrow Seas agaynst that monstrous Spanish army vnder the valiant and prouident conduct of the right honourable the lord Charles Howard high Admirall of England: Nor upon the good seruices of our two wortheie Generalls in their late Portugall expedition: Not upon the two most fortunate attempts of our famous Chieftaine Sir Frauncis Drake, the one in the Baie of Cales vpon a great part of the enemies chiefeest shippes, the other neere the Islands vpon the great Carrack of the East India, the first (though peradventure not the last) of that imployment, that euer discharged Molucca spices in English portes: these (albeit singular and happy voyages of our renowned countrymen) I omit, as things distinct and without the compasse of my prescribed limites, being neither of remote length and spaciousnesse, neither of search and discouerie of strange coastes, the chiefe subiect of this my labour.

Thus much in breuities shall serue thee for the generall order. Particularlie I haue disposed and digested the whole worke into 3. partes, or as it were Classics, not without my reasons. In the first I haue martialled all our voyages of any moment that haue bene performed to the South and Southeast parts of the world, by which I chiefly meane that part of Asia which is neere it, and of the rest hit hermost towards vs: For I find that the oldest travels as well of the ancient Britains as of the English, were ordinarie to Iudea which is in Asia, termed by them the Holy land, principally for deuotions sake according to the time, although I read in Ioseph Bengorion a very authenticall Hebrew author, a testimonie of the passing of 26000. Britains valiant souldiours, to the siege and fearefull sacking of Ierusalem vnder the conduct of Vespasian and Titus the Romane Emperour, a thing in deed of all the rest most ancient. But of latter dayes I see our men haue pierced further into the East, haue passed downe the mightie river Euphrates, haue sayled from Bassara through the Persian gulf to the Citie of Ormuz, and from thence to Chaul and Goa in the East India, which passages written by the parties themselves are herein to be read. To these I haue added the Navigations of the English made for the parts of Africa, and either within or without the streights of Gibraltar: within, to Constantinople in Romania, to Alexandria, and Cayro in Egypt, to Tunes, to Goletta, to Malta, to Alger, and to Tripolis in Barbary: without, to Santa Cruz, to Asafi, to the citie of Marocco, to the River of Senega, to the Isles of  
Cape

## To the Reader.

*Cape Verde, to Guinea, to Benyn, and round abouts the dreadfull Cape of Bona Speranza, as farre as Goa.*

The north, and Northeasterne voyages of our nation I haue produced in the second place, because our accessse to these quarters of the world is later and not so ancient as the former: and yet some of our trauailes that way be of more antiquitie by many hundred yeeres, then those that haue bene made to the westerne coastes of America. Under this title thou shalt first finde the old northerne Navigations of our Britissh Kings, as of Arthur, of Malgo, of Edgar Pacificus the Saxon Monarch, with that also of Nicholous de Linna under the north pole: next to them in consequence, the discoveries of the bay of Saint Nicholas of Colgoiene of Pechora, of the Isles of Vaigats, of Nona Zembla, and of the Sea eastwards towards the riuer of Ob: after this, the opening by sea of the great Dukedome and Empire of Russia, with the notable and strange iourney of Master Ienkinson to Boghar in Baltia, whereunto thou maist adde sixe of our voyages: eleuen hundred verstes up against the streame of Dwina to the towne of Vologda: thence one hundred, and four score verstes by land to Teraflaw standing vpon the mighty riuer of Volga: there hence about two thousand and sine hundred verstes downe the streame to the ancient marit Towne of Astracan, and so to the manifold mouthes of Volga, and from thence also by ship ouer the Caspian sea into Media, and further then that also with Camels vnto Georgia, Armenia, Hyrcania, Gilan, and the cheefest Cities of the Empire of Persia: wherein the Companie of Moscouie Marchants to the perpetuall honor of their Citie, and societie, haue performed more then any one, yea then all the nations of Europe besides: which thing is also acknowledged by the most learned Cosmographers, and Historiographers of Christendome, with whose honorable testimonies of the action, not many for number, but sufficient for authoritie I haue concluded this second part.

Touching the westerne Navigations, and trauailes of ours, they succede naturallie in the third and last roome, forasmuch as in order and course these coastes, and quarters came last of all to our knowledge and experience. Herein thou shalt reade the attempt by Sea of the sonne of one of the Princes of Northwales, in sayling and searching towards the west more then 400. yeeres since: the offer made by Christopher Columbus that renowned Genoway: to the most sage Prince of noble memorie King Henrie the 7. with his prompt and cheerefull acceptation thereof, and the occasion wherempon it became fruitlesse, and at that time of no great effect to this kingdome: then follows the letters Patentes of the foresaid noble Prince giuen to Iohn Cabot a Venetian and his 3. sonne, to discover & conquer in his name, and vnder his Banners vnknooen Regions: who with that royall incouragement & contribution of the king himselfe, and some assistance in charges of English Marchants departed with 5. sailes from the Port of Brisfoll accompanied with 300. Englishmen, and first of any Christians found out that mightie and large tract of lande and Sea, from the circle Arcticke as farre as Florida, as appeareth in the discouerie thereof. The triumphant raigne of King Henry the 8. yielded some prosecution of this discouerie: for the 3. voyages performed, and the 4. intended for all Asia by his Maiesties selfe, do approue and confirme the same. Then in proceesse of yeeres ariseth the first English trade to Brasill, the first passing of some of our nation in the ordinarie Spanish fleetes to the west Indies, and the huge Citie of Mexico in Noua Hispania. Then immediatly ensue 3. voyages made by M. Iohn Hawkins now Knight, then Esquire, to Hispaniola, and the gulfe of Mexico: vpon which depende sixe verie excellent discoueries of our men, whereof some for 15. or 16. whole yeeres inhabited in New Spaine, and ranged the whole Countrie, wherein are disclosed the cheefest secretes of the west India, which may in time turne to our no smal aduantage. The next leaues thou turnest, do yeelde thee the first valiant enterprise of Sir Francis Drake vpon Nombre de Dios, the mules laden with treasure which he surprisid, and the house called the Cruzes, which his fire consumed: and therewith is ioyned an action more venterous then happie of Iohn Oxnam of Plummoth written, and confessed by a Spanyard, which with his companie passed ouer the streight Istme of Darien, and building certaine pinnacles on the west shoare, was the first Englishman that entered the South sea. To passe ouer Master Frobisher and his actions, which I haue also newly though briefly printed, and as it were reuind, what soeuer Master Iohn Davis hath performed in continuing that discouery, which Master Frobisher began for the north west passage, I haue faithfully at large communicated it with thee, that so the great good hope, & singular probabilities & almost certaintie thereof, which by his industry haue risen may be knowne generally of all men, that some may yet still prosecute so noble an action. Sir Humfrey Gilbert, that conragious Knight, and very expert in the mysteries of Navigation amongst the rest is not forgotten: his learned reasones & arguments for the prooffe of the passage before named, together with his last more commendable resolution then fortunate successe, are here both to be read. The continuance of the historie, produceth the beginnings, and proceedings of the two English Colonies planted in Virginia as the charges of sir Walter Raleigh, whose entrance vpon those newe inhabitations had bene happie, if it had ben as seruiously followed, as it was cheerefully undertaken. I could not omit in this parte

Robert Fabian

## To the Reader.

the two voyages made not long since to the South-west, whereof I thinke the Spanyard hath had some knowledge, and felt some blowes: the one of Master Edward Fenton, and his consort Master Luke Warde: the other of Master Robert Withrington, and his hardie consort Master Christopher Lister as farre as 44. degrees of southerly latitude, set out at the direction and charge of the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland, both which in divers respects may yelde both profite and pleasure to the reader, being carefully perused.

For the conclusion of all, the memorable voyage of Master Thomas Candish into the South sea, and from thence about the globe of the earth doth satisfie mee, and I doubt not but will fully content thee: which as in time it is later then that of Sir Frauncis Drake so in relation of the Philippinae, Iapan, China, and the Isle of S. Helena it is more particular, and exact: and therefore the want of the first made by Sir Frauncis Drake will be the lesse: wherein I must confesse to have taken more then ordinarie paines, meaning to have inserted it in this worke: but being of late (contrary to my expectation) seriously delt withall, not to anticipate or prevent another mans paines and charge in drawing all the services of that worthie Knight into one volume, I have yeelded unto those my freindes which pressed me in the matter, referring the further knowledge of his proceedanges, to those intended discourses.

Now for the other part of my promise, I must craue thy further patience frendly reader, and some longer suspence from the worke it selfe, in acquainting thee with those vertuous gentlemen, and others which partly for their private affection to my selfe, but chiefly for their devotion to the furtherance of this my travaile, have yeelded me their severall good assistances: for I accompt him unworthy of future favours, that is not thankfull for former benefites. In respect of a generall incouragement in this laborious travaile, it were grosse ingratitude in mee to forget, and wilfull maliciousnes not to confesse that man, whose onely name doth carrie with it sufficient estimation and love, and that is Master Edward Dier, of whom I will speake thus much in few wordes, that both my selfe and my intentions herein by his frendly meanes have bene made knowne to those, who in sundrie particulars have much steeded me. More specially in my first part, Master Richard Staper Marchant of London, hath furnished me with divers thinges touching the trade of Turkie, and other places in the East. Master William Burrough, Clarke of her Maiesties navie, and Master Anthonie Ienkinson, both gentlemen of great experience, and observations in the north Regions, have much pleased me in the second part. In the third and last besides myne owne extreme travaile in the histories of the Spanyards my cheefest light hath bene received from Sir Iohn Hawkins, Sir Walter Raleigh, and my kinsman Master Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple.

And whereas in the course of this history often mention is made of many beastes, birds, fishes, serpents, plants, fruits, herbes, rootes, apparell, armour, boates, and such other rare and strange curiosities, which wise men take great pleasure to reade of, but much more contentment to see: herein I my selfe to my singuler delight have bene as it were ravished in beholding all the premisses gathered together with no small cost, and preferred with no little diligence, in the excellent Cabinets of my very worshipfull and learned friends M. Richard Garthe, one of the Clarke of the Pettie Bags, and M. William Cope Gentleman Usser to the right Honourable and most prudent Counsellor (the Seneca of our common wealth,) the Lord Burleigh, high Treasurer of England.

Nowe, because peradventure it would bee expected as necessarie, that the descriptions of so many parts of the world would farre more easily be conceived of the Readers, by adding Geographicall, and Hydrographicall tables therunto, thou art by the way to be admonished that I have contented my selfe with inserting into the worke one of the best generall mapes of the world onely, untill the coming out of a very large and most exact terrestriall Globe, collected and reformed according to the newest, secretest, and latest discoveries, both Spanissh, Portugall, and English, composed by M. Emmerie Mollineux of Lambeth, a rare Gentleman in his profession, being therein for divers yeeres, greatly supported by the pnce and liberalitie of the worshipfull marchant M. William Sanderson.

This being the summe of those things which I thought good to admonish thee of (good Reader) it remaineth that thou take the profite and pleasure of the worke: which I wish so bee as great to thee, as my paines and labour have bene in bringing these rare fruits unto this ripeness, and in reducing these loose papers into this order. Farewell.

The excellent  
newe Globe of  
M. Mollineux.

...bath had some  
Master Luke  
Christopher  
of the right ho-  
and pleasure to

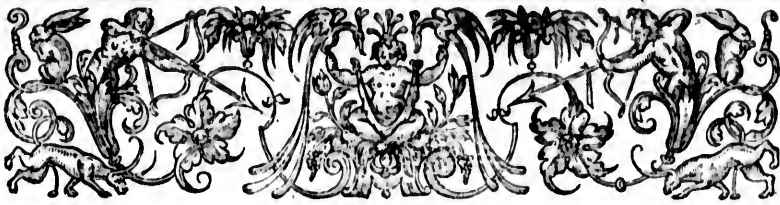
...the South Sea,  
ll fully content  
hilippinaes, la-  
nant of the first  
ore then ordi-  
to my expectati-  
ge in drawing  
friends which  
hose intended

...ader, and some  
men, and others  
furtherance of  
worthy of future  
ment in this la-  
not to confesse  
is Master Ed-  
entions herein  
e much needed  
th furnished mo-  
William Bur-  
lemen of great  
nd part. In the  
y cheefest light  
n Master Ri-

...birds, fishes, ser-  
strange curiosi-  
ee: herein I my  
gathered toge-  
of my very wor-  
and M. Wil-  
the Seneca of

...ions of so many  
graphical, and  
ntended my selfe  
the newest, se-  
Emmerie Mol-  
res, greatly sup-  
n.

...ood Reader)  
to bee



ΒΥΣ ΑΠΟΘΗΜΙΑΣ ΒΡΕΤΤΑΝΙΩΝ ΠΟΝΗΜΑ  
Βυζάντιο το Αλκυονίδων Τριών Βερεθίων.

Οσση γαίαν εχον βερεθί λιν εκουαυαν  
sic dicitur legere dicitur quibus quibus.  
Ο τριών διδμογυαυαν μετρηλιν διδμο πηλιν.  
λιναι μαιουζος εβιλαυαν οινου.  
Εβιλαυαν βρεταννιδων ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.  
η βιλαυαν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν ημεραν.

DI MARC' ANTONIO  
PIGAFETA GENTIL-  
HVOMO VICENTINO.

**I**gnota mislarci, con poco honore  
Sepolta nell' oscure, antiche carte,  
S'alcun de' figli miei con stesa et arte  
Non hauesse bor scoperto il mio splendore.  
*Ramusio pria pieno d' ardente amore*  
*Manifesto le mie piu ricche parte,*  
*Che son la doue il Maragnon diparte,*  
*E doue il Negro allaga, e'l Gange scorre.*  
*Haklynto poi senza verun risguardo*  
*Di fatica o di danno accolti' lui insieme,*  
*Cio e' ha potuto hanr da Typhi Inglesi.*  
*Onde vedrassi doue bella sguardo,*  
*V' la' Dumina agghiaccia, e' l' Obi fieme,*  
*Et altri membri miei non ben palesi.*

In eximium opus R. Haklyuti de An-  
glorum ad dissiuntissimas regi-  
ones navigationibus Guilielmi  
Camdeni Hexastichon.

**A**nglia quæ penitus toto discluditur orbe,  
Angulus orbis erat, paruus & orbis erat.  
Nunc cum lepositos alios detexerit orbes,  
Maximus orbis honos, Orbis & orbis erit.  
At quid Haklute tibi monstrant hæc debeat orbis?  
Laus tua, crede mihi, non erit orbe minor.

In pulcherrimam & præ-  
stantissimam nauigationum An-  
glorum omnium D. Richardi Haklyuti summo stu-  
dio & fide elaboratam, Philippi Ionesij  
Ætigramma.



**H**istorias veterum celebres ætate ruentes,  
Suppositis fulcit viribus Afinius:  
Nempè vt salua forent tot præca volumina, Romæ  
Instauratur sumptu Bibliotheca suo.  
Afinius Consul sequitur post Appium, anis  
Impar, par Studijs ingenioq; fuit:  
Marta Romulidum Bellonæ ancilia dicar:  
Sic virasse putes quos perisse prius.  
Approbat hinc illamq; pui centuria Senatus:  
Lusa sua fors illi est, Appie palma tibi.  
Scilicet ingenia amplecti non vltima virtus:  
At magnum est vrbem quicquid honestat opus.  
Ecce alio tandem similis contingere visa est  
Nomine materies, iudiciumq; subit.  
Que fecisse olim constat, bene fecit Edenus:  
Vtilis illa Decas proflat vbiq; sua:  
Splendida magnanimum profert incepta virorum  
Occiduis nacti qui sibi nomen aquis.  
Illaq; dum profert peccata: namq; extra profert:  
Externumq; decus prædicat illa Decas.  
Hinc Haklute tuus surgit doctissime maior  
Splendor, quo patrij est maior honoris amop.  
Centurias nobis Neptunia facta: Britannii  
Illa quidem nostri folij; facta soli.  
Quæq; diu squalidis latere oclusa tenebris  
Lumine felice tota reclusa patent.  
Quæq; diu folijs mansere inscripta solutis,  
In proprias classes tota coacta placent.  
Tota coacta placent, quid torus superbis libere,  
Improba vicinis gens macerata bonus?  
Intrepida Anglorum classis que nauita, Duxq;  
Præstiter, hic oculis sunt manifesta ruis.  
Quæ quoque facturos iterumq; iterumq; lubentes,  
In promptu præfens vacinat ur opus.  
Commoda prætereo: sensatus singula lectior  
Sentiet: atque vltra quicquid inest placidi.  
Denique de lectis sit iudex æquis: Edcnus  
Præmia, led primas Haklyute iste feret.

Eiusdem distichon.

**I**lle modò Hispanis tumidus qui tēpserit Anglos,  
Anglorum atonitus nunc videt istud opus.

The order of all the voyages comprised in this whole worke in  
*generall, together with the names of the persons, the Authours of them,*  
 and the annotations of the courle of yeeres and quarters of the  
 worlde, wherein they were performed.

*The voyages of the first part made to the South and  
 Southeast regions.*

1	 He voyage of Helena, the Empreffe, daughter of Coelus King of Britaine, and mother of Constantine the great, to Ierusalem. Anno 337. Pagina 1.2	
2	 The voyage of Constantine the great, Emperour and King of Britaine, into Greece, Egypt, Persia, and Asia. An. 339. 2.3	
3	The voyage of Pelagius Cambrius vnder Maximus King of the Britaines into Egypt, and Syria. An. 390. 3.4	
4	The voyage of Iohn Erigen vnder Alphred to Athens. An. 858. 4	
5	The voyage of Andrew Whiteman, alias Leucander, vnder Canutus the Dane to Pale- stina. An. 1020. 5	
6	The voyage of Athelarde of Bathe vnder H. the first to Egypt, & Arabia. An. 1110. 5	
7	The voyage of William Archbishoppe of Tyre, vnder Henrie the first to Hierusalem, and the cittie of Tyre in Phœnice. An. 1132. 5.6	
8	The voyage of Robert Ketenensis vnder King Steuen, to Dalmatia, Greece, and Asia. An. 1143. 6	
9	The voyage of Richard the first King of England into Asia for the recouerie of Ierusalem out of the hands of the Sarracens. Anno. 1190. 6	
10	The voyage of Baldwine Archbishop of Canterburie, into Syria and Palestina with king Richard. An. 1190. 14	
11	The voyage of Richard surnamed <i>Canonicus</i> , vnder king Richard into Syria and Palestina. An. 1190. 15	
12	The voyage of <i>Guiselmus</i> surnamed <i>Peregrinus</i> , vnder king Richard also into Palestina. An. 1190. 15	
13	The voyage of Hubert Walter, bishop of Sarum, vnder king Richard also into Syria An. 1190. 16	
14	The voyage of Robert Curson a noble man of England, and cardinall, vnder Henry the third to Damiatia in Aegypt. An. 1218. 17	
15	The voyage of Rainulfe Glanuill a valiant noble man, and Earle of Chester, vnder Henrie the third to Damiatia in Aegypt also. An. 1218. 17	
16	The voyage of William Longespee, in English Longsword, a noble man of England into Aegypt and Asia, with Lewes the French king. An. 1248. 17.18	
17	The voyage of prince Edward, the sonne of king Henrie the third into Asia. An. 1270, 20	
18	The voyage of Robert Turneham, vnder y sayd Prince Edward into Syria. An. 1270. 23	
19	The voyage of Iohn Mandeuil knight in Latin, begun in the raigne of Edward the 2. Anno. 1322. continued for the space of 33. yeeres, and ended in the raigne of Edward the 3. from England to Iudea, and from thence to India, China, Tartaria, and as farre as 33. de- grees to the south of the AEquinoctiall. 25	
20	The voyage of Machani, the first discoverer of the Island of Madera, vnder Edward the third. An. 1344. 80	
21	The voyage of Thomas Windam vnder Edward the 6. to Guinea, and the kingdome of Benin. An. 1553. 83	
22	The voyage of Robert Gaynsh vnder Queene Mary to Guinea. An. 1554. 89	
23	The voyage of William Towerfon marchant of London, vnder Queene Mary to Gui- nea. An. 1555. 98	
24	The voyage of William Towerfon aforefaid, the second time to Guinea, and the Castle of Mina. An. 1556. 112	
25	The voyage of William Towerfon aforefaid, the third time to the coaste of Guinea, and the riuer of Sestos. An. 1557. 120	
26	The first voyage of Robert Baker to Guinea. An. 1562. 130	
27	The voyage of the sayd Robert Baker to Guinea the second time. An. 1563. 135	
		28 The

worke in  
f them,  
f the

F Britaine, and  
Pagina 1.2  
Britaine, into  
2.3  
es into Egypt,  
3.4  
4  
Dane to Pale-  
5  
An. 1130. 5  
Ierusalem, and  
5.6  
reece, and Asia.  
6  
ie of Ierusalem  
6  
stina with king  
14  
a and Palestina.  
15  
into Palestina.  
15  
also into Syria  
16  
nder Henry the  
17  
er, vnder Henrie  
17  
of England into  
17.18  
ia. An. 1270. 20  
a. An. 1270. 23  
Edwarde the 2.  
of Edward the  
s farre as 33. de-  
25  
nder Edward the  
80  
d the kingdome  
83  
54. 89  
ne Mary to Gui-  
98  
a, and the Castle  
112  
oaste of Guineea,  
120  
130  
563. 135  
28 The

- 28 The voyage of George Fenner, to Guinie, & to the Islands of Cape Verde. An. 1566. 142  
29 The voyage of Thomas Steeuens, round about the Cape of *Bona Speranza*, to *Goa* in the East India. An. 1579. 160  
30 The voyage of Laurence Aldersey, to the cities of Ierusalem & Tripolis. An. 1581. 177  
31 The voyage of William Huddie, to Rio Grande in Guinie, set out by Edward Cotton of Southhamton. An. 1583. 187  
32 The voyage of Zacheus Hellier, in the Iesus of London to Tripolis in Barbarie. An. 1584. 192  
33 The voyage of Iohn Newberie, and Ralfe Fitch, to Tripolis in Syria, Aleppo, Babylon, Balsara, Ormuz, Goa. An. 1583. 208  
34 The voyage of Iohn Euefham into Egypt. An. 1586. 222  
35 The voyage of Laurence Aldersey, to the cities of Alexandria, and Cairo in Egypt. An. 1586. 224  
36 The voyage of Edward Wilkinson, with the Marchant Royall to Tripolis in Syria. Anno 1586. 227  
37 The voyage of Iohn Eldred, to Tripolis in Syria by sea, and from thence by lande and riuer to Babylon, and Balsara. An. 1583. 231  
38 The late voyage of Anthonie Ingram and his companie, to the kingdome and cittie of Benyn in Africa. An. 1588. 218.

*The Ambassages, Letters, Priuileges, and other necessarie matters of circumstance appertaining to the voyages of the first part.*

- 1  An annotation concerning the voyage of Baldwin Archbishop of Canteburie, taken out of *Giraldus Cambrensis* in his *Itinerarium Cambrie*. Page. 14  
2 The life of Sir Iohn Mandeuil knight, written by M. Bale. 23  
3  The tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandeuil in the citie of Liege noted by Ortelius in his *Itinerarium Belgij*. 24  
4 The dedication of his voyage to king Edward the 3. 25  
5 An admonition of Richard Hakluyt touching the new impression and purgation of Mandeuil. 77  
6 Certaine places alleaged out of the naturall historie of Plinie agreeing with Mandeuil in his reports of the diuers shapes of men. 77  
7 A note concerning the aide and assistance of English merchants giuen to king Iohn the first of Portugall for the winning of Ceut in Barbarie. 79  
8 The ambassage of Iohn the 2. of Portugall sent to Edward the 4. king of England, to stay Iohn Tintam and William Fabian Englishmen, preparing for a voyage to Guinie. 81  
9 The manner of entring of Soliman the great Turke, with his armie into Aleppo in Syria, marching into Persa against the great Sophie. 81  
10 The presents giuen to the great Turke at that time by his Basshaes, and the Venetian Consul in Tripolis. 82  
11 The safe conduct giuen by the great Turke to Anthonie Ienkinson at Aleppo in Syria. 82  
12 A briefe description of Africa. 84  
13 The commodities and wares that are most desired in Guinie betwixt Sierra Leona, and the furthest place of the Mine. 130  
14 The woorthie enterprife of Iohn Foxe, in deliuering 166. Christians out of the captiuitie of the Turkes at Alexandria. 150  
15 The Ambassage of Edmund Hogan merchant of London and sworne Esquier of her Maiesties person, from her highnesse to Mully Abdelmelek Emperour of Marocco, and king of Fez and Sus. 156  
16 The letters of the great Turke sent to the Queenes most excellent Maiestie from Constantinople. 163  
17 The letters of the Queenes Maiestie to the great Turke in answere of his letters. 164  
18 The large priuileges of the great Turke granted to the English merchants trading in his dominions. 166. 168  
19 The second letters of her Maiestie to the great Turke, promising a redresse of the disorders of Peter Baker of Ratclife committed in the Leuant. 171  
20 The letters patents granted by her Maiestie to Sir Edward Osborne, M. Richard Staper, and certaine other merchants of London for their trade into the dominions of the great Turke. 171  
21 Her Maiesties commission vnder her great seale to M. William Harebrowne, authorizing him her Ambassadeur in Turkie. 176  
22 The third letters of her Maiestie to the great Turke, in commendation of M. Harebrowne. 183  
23 The passeport made by the great master of Malta to certayne Englishmen of the barke Reinolds. 185  
24 A passeport in Italian giuen by the king of Algier to Thomas Shingleton. 189  
25 A letter written in Spanish by Sir Edward Osborne to the king of Algier, in the belaise of certayne English captiues there detained. 189  
26 Notes concerning the trade of Algier. 190  
27 Notes concerning the trade of Alexandria. 191  
28 The 4. letter of her Maiestie to the great Turke for the restitution of an English ship called the Iesus, and the English captiues detayned in Tripolis in Barbarie. 199  
29 The commandement of the great Turke obtained by M. Harbrowne for the quiet passing of English merchants



chants to and from his dominions.	200
30 The great Turkes letters to the king of Tripolis in Barbarie, commaunding the restitution of the English ship called the Iesus with the men and goods.	201
31 A letter of Master Harebrowne, written to the foresaid king of Tripolis, to the same purpose.	202
32 A note of the yeerely totall summe allowed by the great Turke, out of his treasure, to the officers of his Seraglio or Court.	203
33 The Great Turke his chiefe officers.	205
34 The Great Turkes yeerely revenue.	206
35 The allowances of the Great Turke to Christian Ambassadors, resident at Constantinople.	207
36 A letter of the Queenes Maiestie, written to Yeladin el Kubar, king of Cambaia.	207
37 A letter written by her Maiestie, to the king of China.	207
38 A letter of Iohn Newberie, written from Aleppo in Syria, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford.	208
39 A letter of Iohn Newberie, written to Leonard Poore of London, from Aleppo.	208
40 A letter written by Iohn Newberie to Leonard Poore, from Babylon.	209
41 His letter written from Ormuz, to Iohn Eldred, and William Shalsar Balsara.	210
42 His third letter written to Leonard Poote, from Goa, containing a large description of his voyage, trouble and cause thereof.	210
43 A letter written by Ralfe Fische to Leonard Poore, from Goa.	212
44 The money, weights, measures, and customes, vsed in Babylon, Balsara, Ormuz, Goa, Cochín, and Malacca.	213
45 The charge of a journey by land and riuer, from Aleppo in Syria, to Goa in the East India.	218
46 A declaration of all the places from whence each particular commoditie of the East India commeth.	218
47 The times or seasonable windes, called monsons, wherein the shippes depart from place to place in the East Indias.	219
48 The description of the Island of Sancta Helena, frequented by the Portugals, in their returne from the East India.	222
49 The valiant fight performed in the voyage from Turkie, by 5. ships of London, against 11. gallies, and two frigates of the king of Spaines at Pantalarea in the Leuant.	227
50 The letters patents granted by her Maiestie to certaine noble men, and marchants of London, for a trade to Barbarie.	234
51 The ambassage of Henrie Roberts, sworne Esquire of her Maiesties person, from her Highnes to Mully Hamet, Emperour of Marocco, king of Fes and Sus.	237
52 The edict of the Emperour of Marocco, in fauour of all English men trading in his dominions.	238
53 A letter of the said Emperour written to the Earle of Leicester.	238
54 A letter of the Queenes Maiestie, written to the said Emperour of Marocco.	239
55 The letters patents granted by her Maiestie, to certaine marchants of Excester, and others of the West parts, and of London, for a trade to the riuers of Senega, and Gambia in Guinie.	241

*The voyages of the second part made to the North and  
Northeast quarters.*

1 <b>T</b> he voyage of Arthur king of Britaine to Island, and the most northeasterne partes of Europe. Anno. 517.	Pag. 243. 244
2 The voyage of Malgo king of Britaine, to Island, Gotland, Orkney, Denmarke and Norway. An. 580.	244
3 The voyage of king Edgar with 4000. ships round about his large Monarchie. Anno 973.	245
4 The voyage of Nicholaus de Linna a Franciscan Frier, and an excellent Mathematician of Oxford, to all the regions situate vnder the North pole. An. 1360.	248
5 The voyage of Sir Hugh Willoughbie knight wherein he vnfortunately perished at Arzina reca in Lapland. An. 1553.	265
6 The voyage of Richard Chanceler Pilot Maior the first discouerer by sea of the kingdom of Moscouia. An. 1553.	280
7 The voyage of Steuen Burrough towards the riuer Ob intending the discouerie of the northeast passage. An. 1556.	311
8 The voyage of the foresaid Steuen Burrough from Colmogro in Russia to Wardhouse in serch of certaine English ships not hard of the yeere before. An. 1557.	326
9 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinson into Russia, wherein Ofep Napea first Ambassador from the Emperor of Moscouia to Q. Marie was transported into his countrie. An. 1557.	333
10 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinson from the Citie of Mosco in Russia, to Boghar in Bacteria. An. 1558.	347
11 The voyage of Anthonie Ienkinson through Russia, and ouer the Caspian sea into Persia. An. 1561.	365
12 The voyage of Thomas Alcocke, George Wrenne, and Richard Cheiny seruantes to the Company of Moscouie Marchants in London, into Persia. An. 1563.	374

200  
 of the English  
 201  
 202  
 Agents of his Se-  
 203  
 205  
 206  
 207  
 207  
 207  
 208  
 208  
 209  
 210  
 voyage, trouble  
 210  
 212  
 chin, and Mala-  
 213  
 218  
 cometh. 218  
 place in the East  
 219  
 ne from the East  
 222  
 allies, and two fir-  
 227  
 don, for a trade to  
 234  
 lines to Mully Ha-  
 237  
 ions. 238  
 238  
 239  
 of the West parts,  
 241  
 and  
 heasterne partes  
 Pag. 243, 244  
 ey, Denmarke  
 244  
 onarchie. Anno  
 245  
 Mathematician  
 248  
 rished at Arzina  
 265  
 of the kingdom  
 280  
 iscouerie of the  
 311  
 o Warehouse in  
 326  
 Ambassador from  
 An. 1557. 333  
 o Boghar in Ba-  
 347  
 an sea into Persia.  
 365  
 y seruantes to the  
 374  
 13 The


13 The voyage of Richard Iohnson, Alexander Kytchin, and Arthur Edwardes seruants to the forelaid companie into Persia. An. 1565.	367
14 The voyage of Thomas Southam, and Iohn Sparke by land and riuier from Colmogro to Nouogorode in Russia. An. 1566.	390
15 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinson into Russia the third time. An. 1566.	397
16 The voyage of Arthur Edwardes Agent for the Moscovie Company, Iohn Sparke, Laurence Chapman, Christopher Fawcet, and Richard Pingle seruants into Persia. 1568.	413
17 The voyage of Thomas Banister, & Geofferie Duckett Agents for the Moscovie company into Persia the fift time. An. 1569.	419
18 The voyage of William Burrough captaine of 13 English ships to the Narue in Lifeland. An. 1570.	425
19 The voyage of Anthony Ienkinson into Russia the 4. time. An. 1571.	426
20 The voyage of Christopher Burrough into Persia the 6. time. An. 1579.	440
21 The voyage of Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman sent to discouer the Northeast seas, beyond the Iland of Vaigats. An. 1580.	566
22 The voyage of Ierom Horfey ouer land from Mosco in Russia to England. 1584.	822

*The Ambassages, Treatises, Priuileges, Letters, and other obseruations depending vpon the voyages of the second part.*

1 Two testimonies of Galfridus Monumetensis, in his historie of the kings of Britaine, concerning the conquests of king Arthur.	243, 244
2 A testimonie of Master Lambard in his <i>periploica</i> touching the right and appendances of the crowne of the kingdom of Britane.	244
3 A testimonie of Master Iohn Dee touching the voyage of <i>Nicholans de Linna</i> to the North pole.	249
4 A persuasion of Robert Thorne Marchant of Brittol, and dwelling long in Siuil in Spaine, to king Henry the eight of noble memorie, so set out and further Discoueries towards the North.	250
5 The discourse of the foresayd Robert Thorne, written to Doctor Leigh the kings Ambassadour in Spaine, touching that matter.	252
6 The excellent orders and instructions of Sebastian Cabot, giuen to Sir Hugh Willoughbie and his Fleete in their voyage intended for Cathay.	259
7 The names of the twelue Counsailors appoynted in Sir Hugh Willoughbys voyage.	263
8 The names of the ships, captaines, mariners, and other officers of that first worthy enterprise.	265
9 The letters of king Edward the sixt written at that time to all the Kings, Princes, and other Potentates of the Northeast.	264
10 The othe ministred to the Captayne of the Fleete.	266
11 The othe ministred to the Masters of the ships.	267
12 A testimonie of Richard Eden concerning Clement Adams, the authour of Richard Chanceler his Discouerie, written in Latine.	270
13 The Letters of the Emperour of Russia sent to king Edward the sixt, by Richard Chanceler.	292
14 The coynes, weights, and measures vsed in Russia.	293
15 The Commission giuen to the Marchants Agents, resident in Russia.	295
16 The othe ministred to the seruants of the Moscovie company.	299
17 The Letter of George Killingworth the first Agent in Russia, written to the companie.	299
18 The first Priuileges graunted by the Emperour of Russia to the English marchants.	302
19 The Charter of the marchants of the Moscovie companie, graunted by Queene Marie.	304
20 Instructions giuen to the Purfers of the Moscovie voyages.	309
21 A discourse of the honourable receiuing into England of the first Ambassadour from the Emperour of Russia.	321
22 The description of Russia with the customes and maners of the Inhabitants.	339
23 The letters of the Queenes Maiestie written to the Emperour of Russia, requesting licence and safe conduct for Anthonie Ienkinson to passe through his Dominions into Persia.	359
24 The letter of the Queenes Maiestie to the great Sophie of Persia, sent by Anthonie Ienkinson.	361
25 The priuileges giuen by Obdolowean king of Hircania, to the companie of English marchants trading in Russia obtained by Anthonie Ienkinson.	374
26 Certaine letters of Arthur Edwards written out of Russia, Media, and Persia, to the companie of Moscovie marchants in London.	376-377-380-384
27 The distances of diuers places in Russia.	385
28 The way and distances from Saint Nicholas in Russia to the Caspian Sea.	386
29 Notes and obseruations gathered by Richard Iohnson of the severall wayes from Russia to Cathay ouer land.	388
30 An Act for the Corporation of marchants Aduenturers for the discouering of newe trades, made in the eight yeere of the Queenes Maiestie.	394
31 The priuileges graunted by the Emperour of Russia to the English marchants obtained by Anthonie Ienkinson.	397

32	The Ambassage of Thomas Randolfe Esquire from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia.	399
33	The priuileges graunted to the English marchants at M.Randolfe his sute.	402
34	A commission graunted by M.Randolfe for a discouerie to the Northeast by Sea.	406
35	Instructions giuen to the discouersers in that action.	407
36	Certaine letters in verse writ out of Moscovia by George Turberuil, Secretarie to M.Randolfe, touching the state of the countrey and manners of the people.	408, 409
37	Notes concerning the fourth English voyage into Persia.	416
38	Obseruations of the Sophie of Persia, and of the religion of the Persians.	422
39	The Ambassage of Anthonie Ienkinson from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia in the yere 1575.	426
40	A brieue rehearsal of all the trauailes of Anthonie Ienkinson.	436
41	A note of all the necessarie instruments and appurtenances belonging to the killing of the Whale.	437
42	The deposition of William Burrough to certaine interrogatories moued vnto him concerning the Narue and Keger.	438
43	The reasons of William Burrough, to dissuade the vse of a trade to the Narue by way through Sweden.	439
44	The latitudes and Meridian altitudes of diuers places in Russia from the North to the South.	453
45	Directions giuen by Richard Hakluyt Esquire to Morgan Hubblethorne Dycr, sent into Persia.	454
46	A commission giuen by Sir Rowland Hayward Knight, and George Barne Aldermen, and Governour of the Moscovie companie, to Arthur Pet, and Charles Iackman, for the discouerie by Sea towards Cathay.	455
47	Rules, and orders giuen to be obserued by them in that discouerie.	458
48	Brefe aduises giuen them by M. John Dee, to that purpose.	459
49	Instructions giuen them by Richard Hakluyt Esquire to that purpose also.	460
50	A Iornall of their discouerie written by Nicholas Chaunceller.	476
51	The letter of Gerrardus Mercator, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford touching that discouerie.	483
52	The opinion of William Burrough sent to a friend requiring his iudgement, for the fittest time of the departure of our ships towards Saint Nicholas in Russia.	487
53	The Queenes Maiesties Commission giuen to Sir Ierom Bowes, authorising him her highnesse Ambassador with the Emperour of Moscovie.	487
54	The Queenes Maiesties letters written to the Emperour by Sir Ierom Bowes, in his commendation.	489
55	The discourse of the Ambassage of Sir Ierom Bowes, to the foresayd Emperour.	491
56	The manner of preferring of suites in Russia.	490
57	A letter of Henry Lane, to William Sanderson marchant of London, contayning a brieue discourse of all things passed in our Northerne discoueries for the space of 33.yeres.	500
58	The late Ambassage of Giles Fletcher Doctor of the Ciuil lawe from her Maiestie to the Emperour of Russia.	502
59	The most solemne and magnificent Coronation of Pheodore Iuanowich the New Emperour of Russia obserued by Ierom Horsey.	819
60	The priuileges graunted by the newe Emperour to the English marchants, and obtained by the foresaide Ierom Horsey.	823
61	The honorable testimonies of diuers strangers, touching the notable discoueries of the English made in the Northeast parts.	504

### The voyages of the third and last part, made to the West, South west, and North west regions.

1	 He voyage of Madoc the sonne of Owen Gwinned prince of Northwales to the West Indies. Anno. 1170.	Pagina 506.
2	The voyage of Sebastian Cabot, borne in the citie of Bristol, wherein hee discouered a mightie tracte of land from the circle Arctike to Florida. An. 1494.	512.
3	The voyage of Sir Thomas Pert knight, and Sebastian Cabot to Brasil, Saint Domingo, and Saint Iohn de Porto Ricco. An. 1516.	515.
4	The voyage of the two ships, whereof one was called the <i>Dominus Vobiscum</i> , for discouerie of the North partes. An. 1527.	517.
5	The voyage of Master Hore, and diuers other gentlemen, to Newfound land, and Cape Briton. An. 1526. And in the 28. yere of king Henry the eight.	517.
6	The voyage made by William Hawkins, father to Sir Iohn Hawkins to Brasil. Anno 1530.	520.
7	The voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins to the West Indies. An. 1562.	521.
8	The voyage of Roger Bodenham to Saint Iohn de Vllua in the Bay of Mexico. Anno 1564.	522.
9	The second voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins to the coast of Guinea first, and then to Noua Hispania. An. 1564.	523
10	The third voyage of Sir Iohn Hawkins made with the Iesus of Lubecke, one of her Maiesties Ships to the West India. An. 1567.	553.

of Russia. 399  
 402  
 406  
 407  
 touching the  
 408.409  
 416  
 422  
 in the yeere  
 416  
 436  
 Whale. 437  
 ning the Name  
 438  
 Sweden. 439  
 ch. 453  
 ia. 454  
 Jouernour of the  
 Cathay. 455  
 458  
 459  
 460  
 476  
 erie. 483  
 ime of the depar-  
 487  
 esse Ambassador  
 487  
 endation. 489  
 491  
 490  
 e discourse of all  
 500  
 Emperour of Rus-  
 502  
 erour of Russia ob-  
 819  
 ed by the foresaide  
 823  
 nglish made in the  
 504

the  
 of Northwales to  
 Pagina 506.  
 o], wherein hee  
 e to Florida. An.  
 512.  
 Saint Domingo,  
 515.  
 biscum, for disco-  
 517.  
 d land, and Cape  
 517.  
 s to Brasill. Anno  
 520.  
 521.  
 of Mexico. Anno  
 522.  
 nd then to Noua  
 523  
 ke, one of her Ma-  
 553.  
 11 The

- 11 The voyage of Dauid Ingram from the bay of Mexico ouer land neere to the Cape Britton. An. 1561. 557.
- 12 The voyage of Robert Tomson marchant into Noua Hispania out of Spaine. An. 1555. 580.
- 13 The voyage of Iohn Chilton into the West India, with many memorable things concerning the state thereof. An. 1568. 588.
- 14 The voyage of Sir Francis Drake to *Nombre de Dios*, and *Dariene*. An. 1572. 594.
- 15 The voyage of Iohn Oxnam of Plymmouth to the West India, and ouer the streight of *Dariene* into the South sea. An. 1575. 595.
- 16 The first voyage of Sir Martin Frobisher to the North west. An. 1576. 615.
- 17 The second voyage of Sir Martin Frobisher to the same coastes. An. 1577. 622.
- 18 The third and last voyage of Sir Martin Frobisher, to *Meta Incognita*. An. 1578. 630.
- 19 The voyage of Christopher Hare, with the *Minion of London* to *Brasill*. An. 1580. 641.
- 20 The voyage of Edward Fenton, and Luke Warde, as farre as 34 degrees of Southerlic latitude. An. 1582. 647.
- 21 The voyage of Iohn Drake, after his separation from Master Fenton, at the Iland of *Santa Catalina*, to the ryuer of *Plate*. An. 1583. 639.
- 22 The voyage of Sir Humfrie Gilbert knight, to the coastes of America. An. 1583. 679.
- 23 The voyage of Philip Amadas, and Arthur Barlowe to Virginia, at the charge, and direction of Sir Walter Raleigh. An. 1584. 728.
- 24 The voyage of Sir Richard Greeneile to Virginia, for Sir Walter Raleigh. Anno 1585. 733.
- 25 The voyage made at the direction of Sir Walter Raleigh, the third time to Virginia. An. 1586. 147.
- 26 The voyage of Edward Stafford, and Iohn White, set out by the aforefaid Sir Walter Raleigh the fourth time to Virginia. An. 1587. 764.
- 27 The voyage of Iohn Dauis, for the discouerie of the Northwest passage. An. 1585. 776.
- 28 The second voyage of Iohn Dauis in the foresaid attempt. An. 1586. 781.
- 29 The voyage of Richard Pope master of the Barke called the *Sunne-shine* sent another way for the discouerie of the passage by Iohn Dauis in his second voyage. An. 1586. 787.
- 30 The third voyage of Iohn Dauis in his former enterprise, wherein hee discouered 200. leagues more to the North-west, then master Frobisher. An. 1587. 789.
- 31 The voyage of Robert Withrington, and Christopher Lister, as farre as 44. degrees to the South of the Equinoctiall, set out by the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland. An. 1586. 793.
- 32 The famous voyage of M. Thomas Candish Esquire round about the globe of the earth, in the space of two yeeres and lesse then two moneths begunne in the yeere 1586. 809.
- 33 The voyage of William Michelson, and William Mace, with a ship called the *Dogge*, to the bay of Mexico. An. 1589. 817.

*¶ The discourses, letters, priuiledges, relations and other materiall circumstances incident to the voyages of the third part.*

- 1 The offer of the discouerie of the West Indies by Christophet Columbus, to king Henry the seuenth, and the kings acceptation of the offer. Pag. 507. 508
- 2 A testimonie of Ferdinando Columbus, touching the same offer. 509
- 3 The letters patents of king Henry the seuenth, graunted vnto Iohn Cabot, and his 3. sonnes, Lewes, Sebastian, and Santius, for discouerie of newe lands. 509
- 4 A record of the Rolles touching the voyage of Iohn Cabot, and Sebastian his sonne. 511
- 5 A testimonie of Sebastian Cabot his discouerie of the West India, in his mappe cut by Clement Adams, and to be seene in her Maiesties priuie gallerie at Westminster. 511
- 6 A testimonie of Bapusta Ramusius, Secretarie to the estate of Venice, touching Sebastian Cabot. 513
- 7 A testimonie of Sebastian Cabot his voyage in the 6. chap. of the 3. Decade of Peter Martyr of Angleria. 513
- 8 The confession of Francis Lopez de *Gomara* a Spaniard, touching the discouerie of a great part of the West India by the English. 514
- 9 A record of Robert Fabian in his Chronicle not yet printed, of Sebastian Cabots first discouerie. 515
- 10 Another record of the said Robert Fabian, concerning 3. Sauaiges brought into England, and presented to the King by Sebastian Cabot. 515
- 11 The large pension graunted by king Edward the sixt, to Sebastian Cabot, constituting him ground Pilot of England. 519
- 12 An acte against the exaction of money or any other thing, by any officer for licence to traffike into Iseland, and and

- and Newe found land, made in Anno 2. Edward 6. 521
- 13 The arrival and cursete of syr Iohn Hawkins to the distressed French men in Florida, cōfessed by Laudoniere the French captaine in the discourse of his voyage. 543
- 14 A relation of the commodities of Noua Hispania, & the manners of the Inhabitants, written by Henry Hawkes merchant, who liued 5. yeeres in the countrie. 545
- 15 The relation of Dauid Ilogram concerning his trauaile in the countrie of America. 557
- 16 The discourse of Miles Philips, one of syr Iohn Hawkins companie, set on shore in the bay of Mexico, concerning the bloodie and most tyrannous cruelties of the Spaniards, vsed aganist him and his fellowe Englishmen at Mexico. 562
- 17 The discourse of syr Humfrie Gilbert knight, to prouoe a passage by the Northwest to Cathaya, and the East Indies. 597
- 18 The discourse of Richard Willes to the same purpose. 610
- 19 The relation of Thomas Wiars, concerning y<sup>e</sup> discouerie of a great land, situate in 57. degrees of latitude. 634
- 20 The notes of Richard Hakluyt Esquire, deliuered for instruction to certaine gentlemen of master Frobishers companie. 636
- 21 A letter written to master Richard Staper merchant of London, by Iohn Whithall, dwelling at Santos in Brasill. 638
- 22 The same letter answered by diuers merchants of London, and sent to him in the Minion of London. 640
- 23 Instructions giuen by the right honorable the Lords of the Counsell to Edward Fenton, for the order to be obserued in the voyage recommended vnto him. 644
- 24 A letter written to Richard Hakluyt Esquire, of the middle temple, by Anthonie Parkhurst, conteyning a true report of the state and commodities of Newe found land. 674
- 25 The letters patents graunted by her Maiestie to syr Humfrie Gilbert knight, for the inhabiting and planting of America. 677
- 26 The letters of Stephanus Parmenius a learned Hungarian, to Richard Hakluyt of Oxford from Newfound land touching the state of that Countrie. 697
- 27 The confession of Richard Clarke of Weymouth Master of the Admiral ship of Sir Humfrey Gilberts flecte, written in excuse of that fault of casting away the ship and men, imputed to his ouersight. 700
- 28 The discourse of Sir George Peccham Knight touching the possession of the Newfound landes taken in the right of the Crowne of England, of her Maiesties lawfull title thereunto, and of the commodities that would insue to this Realme by planting in them. 701
- 29 A letter of Thomas Aldworth Merchant, and then Maior of Bristol to the right honorable Sir Francis Walsingham, touching a voyage intended for westerne discoueries. 718
- 30 The discourse of Maister Christopher Carlike to satisfie and incourage our Marchants, and people in general about the action of planting in America. 718
- 31 The letters Patents granted by the Queenes Maiestie to Sir Walter Raleigh Knight for the discouering, and inhabiting of new Countries, to continue the space onely of 6. yerres and no more. 725
- 32 An accompt of the particularities of the employement of the English men left in Virginia vnder the charge and gouernement of Ralfe Lane, written by him selfe. 737
- 33 The discourse of Thomas Harriots, touching Virginia. 748
- 34 The letters Patens of the Queens Maiestie granted to Adrian Ghibert and others for the search of the north-west passage. 774
- 35 A letter of Iohn Dauis written to William Sanderfon touching his 2. voyage of discouerie. 786
- 36 His 2. letter written to the foresaid William Sanderfon touching the discouerie of his third attempt. 792
- 37 The letter of Ralfe Lane written from Virginia to Richard Hakluyt of the Temple, concerning the state thereof. 793
- 38 A verie exact and perfect description of the distances from place to place from the riuer of Plate till you come to the end of the Streight of Magelan, and againe from the riuer of Plate to Petre Guarras northward. 803
- 39 A letter of Master Thomas Candish to the right honorable the Lord Chamberlaine touching the successe of his voyage about the world. 808
- 40 The names of the Kings or Princes of Iaua at the time of our Englishmen being there. 813
- 41 Certaine wordes of the naturall language of Iaua learned and obserued by our men there. 813
- 42 Certaine notes, and references taken out of the large Mappe of China brought home by Master Thomas Candish. 813
- 43 An assignment from Sir Walter Raleigh to diuers gentlemen, and Marchants of London, for continuing the inhabitations of the English in Virginia. 815



lem eu  
sar ilan  
eo tand  
timum y  
cessante  
eam fer  
quædar  
rosolym  
in Chri  
Regnan

HE  
kti  
gular be  
was fan  
liberal G  
of nation  
quente o  
Greeke  
Der la  
but her,  
the mig  
other her

521  
 by Laudoniere  
 543  
 Henry Hawkes  
 545  
 557  
 of Mexico, con-  
 fellowe English-  
 562  
 ys, and the East  
 597  
 610  
 of latitude. 634  
 after Frobshiers  
 636  
 ing at Santos in  
 638  
 London. 640  
 e order to be ob-  
 644  
 onteyning a true  
 674  
 ing and planting  
 677  
 from Newfound  
 697  
 y Gilberts fleet,  
 700  
 ndes taken in the  
 odities that would  
 701  
 Sir Francis Wal-  
 718  
 people in general  
 718  
 e discouering, and  
 725  
 ynder the charge  
 737  
 748  
 earch of the north-  
 774  
 786  
 d attempt. 792  
 ncerning the state  
 793  
 er of Plate till you  
 uarras northward.  
 803  
 ching the successe  
 808  
 813  
 e. 813  
 by Master Thomas  
 813  
 n, for continuing the  
 815



THE FIRST PART OF THE  
 principall voyages, trauailes and discoueries  
 of the English nation, made to the South and  
 Southeast quarters of the world, with the let-  
 ters, priuiledges, discourses and treatises  
 appertaining thereto.

THE trauaile of Helena.



ELENA Flauia Augusta, serenissimi

Coeli Britannici Regis Hares, & vnica filia; Magni  
 Cōstantini Cæsaris mater, incomparabili decore, sine,  
 religione, bonitate, ac magnificentiâ piâ, Eusebio eti-  
 am teste, per totum resplenduit orbem: Inter omnes  
 ætatis suæ feminas, nulla inueniebatur eâ in liberali-  
 bus artibus doctior, nulla in instrumentis musicis pe-  
 ritior, aut in linguis nationum copiosior. Innatam ha-  
 bebat ingenij claritudinem, oris facundiam, ac morum  
 ornatissimam compositionem: Hebraicæ, Græcæ, &  
 Latine erudita. Caruerat pater alia sobole (inquit Vi-  
 rumnius) quæ Regni folio potiretur. Illam propterea  
 his instrui fecit per optimos præceptores, vt eò com-  
 modius Regni tractaret negotiis. Vnde ob incredibi-  
 lem eius pulchritudinem, atque alias eximias animi & corporis dotes, Constantius Cæsar Ca-  
 sar illam duxit in vxorem, atque ex eâ filium in Britannia genuit Constantinum Magnum. Sed  
 eo tandem Eboraci defuncto, cum Annâ illâ Euangelicâ, in sanctâ viduitate perdurauit ad vi-  
 titimum vitæ diem, tota Christianæ Religioni dedita. Sunt enim Authores, qui narrent per istam,  
 cessante persecutione, pacem Ecclesijs datam: Ad tantam cœlestis Philosophiæ cognitionem  
 eam ferunt post agnitionem Euangelium pertenuisse, vt olim multos ediderit libros, & carmina  
 quædam Græca, quæ hucusque à Pontico superesse perhibentur. Visionibus admonita Hie-  
 rosolymam petiit, & omnia saluatoris loca perlustrauit. Romæ tandem octogenaria feliciter  
 in Christo quieuit. i. j. Calendas Septembris, filio adhuc superstite, Anno salutis humanæ 337.  
 Regnante apud Britannos Ostauius. Huius corpus non minimâ nunc curâ venetijs seruiatur.

¶ The same in English.

HELENA Flauia Augusta, the heire and onely daughter of Coelus sometime the most excellent  
 King of Britaine, the mother of the Emperour Constantine the great, by reason of her sin-  
 gular beautie, faith, religion, goodness & goodly patience (according to the testimonie of Eusebius)  
 was famous in all the world. Amongst all the women of her time, there was none either in the  
 liberal Arts more learned, or in instruments of musick more skilfull, or in diuers languages  
 of nations more abundant then herselfe. She had a naturall quicknes or excellencie of wit, elo-  
 quence of speech, and a most notable grace in all her behauiour. She was teene in the Hebrew,  
 Greeke and Latine tongues.

Her father (as Virumnius reporteth) had no other child to succede in the kingdome after him  
 but her, and therefore caused her to be instructed in these things by the best teachers, that thereby  
 she might the better in time gouerne the Realme: so that by reason of her passing beautie, and  
 other her excellent gifts of body and minde, Constantius Chlorus the Emperour married her

and had by her a sonne called Constantine the great, while hee remained in Britaine. Who at length decreasing at Pophe, this Helena (no other wise then Anna of whom mention is made in the newe Testament) continued a vertuous, and holy widow to the ende of her life.

There are some writers which doe affirme, that persecution ceased, and yeace was graunted to the Christian Churches by her good meanes.

After the light and knowledge of the Gospell, he grew so skilfull in diuinitie, that hee wrote and composed diuers booke, and certaine Greeke verses also, which (as Ponticus reporteth) are yet extant. Being warned by some billions hee went to Ierusalem, and visited all the places there, which Christ had frequented. Shee liued to the age of fourescore yeeres, and then dyed at Rome the 14. day of August, in the yeere of our redemption 337. Octavius being then King of Britaine, and her sonne Constantine the Emperour then also liuing, and her body is to this day very carefully preserved at Venice.

### The life and travels of Constantine the great, Empe- rour and King of Britaine.



Laius Constantinus cognomento Magnus post Genitorem Constantium Britannorum Rex, ac Romanorum Caesar Augustus, ex Britannica matre in Britannia natus, & in Britannia creatus Imperator, patriam natalem magnificæ suæ gloriæ participem fecit. Profligatus Alemanis, Hispanis, & Francis, eorumque Regibus pro spectaculo bestijs obiectis, Galliam subiectam tenuit: Tres Helensæ matris auunculos Britannos, Leolinum, Traherum, & Marium, quos cæcæ semper fidentiores habuerat in suis fortunis, Italiam à Maxentij tyrannide feliciter liberatis, in Senatorij ordinem Romæ promouit. Innumera in eo (vt Eutropius habet) claruere tam animi, quam corporis virtutes, dum appetentissimus esset gloriæ militaris, successu semper in bellis prospero. Inter literas tam Græcas quàm Latinas, à Christianissimâ matre Helena Christi fidem edoctus, eos honorabat præcipuè, qui in Philosophiâ Christiana vitam reclinasent. Vnde ab Oceani sinibus nempè Britannis incipiens, ope fretus diuina, Religionis curam in medijs superstitionum tenebris cepit, ab Occiduis ad Indos, innumeras ad æternam spem vitæ erigens gentes. Animum diuinis exercendo studijs, noctes trahebat infomes, & quæstia scribendi diuerticula per otium frequentabat: Imperium oratione, ac Sanctis operationibus continendum ratus, Egregius Christianæ disciplinæ præco, filios ac proceres docuit, pietatem diuinitijs omnibus, atque adeo ipsi anteferre totius mundi Monarchiæ. Fallorum Deorum euersor, Impaginum cultus per Græciam, Egyptum, Persiam, Asiam, & vniuersam ditionem Romanam, repetitis abrogat legibus, iubens per edicta Christi coli, Euangelium prædicari: sacrum, Ministris honores, & alimenta dari, atque idolorum vbiq; destrui templa. Et vt fidei forma cunctis videretur: Euangelium Iesu Christi ante se semper ferri fecit, & Biblia sacra ad omnes prouincias destinari, diademaque Monarchicum primus Britannis Regibus dedit: Ecclesijs infinita præstitit, agros, annionam, stipem egenis, ægros, viduis, ac orphanis, pro quibusque vt pater sollicitus: Eusebium, Lactantium, & similes, familiarissimos habuit, & hanc ad Deum orationem indes ipsis in eius vira testibus fudit. Vnum te Deum esse nouimus, ynum te Regem intelligimus: appellamus adiutorem, nobis abs te victoria cecidit, ex te Aduersarium fumidus, &c. Pro delicijs habuit, vt Sextus Aurelianus tradit, literarum studia colere, bonas artes fouere, legere, scribere, meditari: composuit Græcè & Latinè multos libros & Epistolas. E vita Nicomedie discessit Senex, ætatis suæ Anno 66. & Imperij 32. à Christi verò incarnatione 339. Constantinopoli sepultus, Octavius in Britannijs regnante. Eius vitam in quatuor libris Eusebius Cæsariensis Græcè scripsit, & Ioannes Portesius Gallus in Latinum transfudit sermonem.

#### ¶ The same in English.

Laius Constantine, surnamed the great, King of the Brittaines after his father, and Emperour of the Romanes, borne in Britanie of Helena his mother, and there created Emperour, made his native countie partaker of his singular glorie, and renoume.

¶ During conquests and put to flight the Germans, Spaniards, Frenchmen, and their Kings for a space: hee drove out to wilde beastes, he held France it selfe as subject vnto him: and hauing happily deliuered the Italians from the tyrannie of Maxentius, hee preferred 3. of his most chiefe vniuersall Brittaines, namely Leoline, Trahere, and Marius, whom in all his actions he had found more faithfull vnto him then any others, to be of the order of the Romane Senators.

¶ Eutropius reporteth, that he infinitely excelled in the vertues both of the minde and body also, and that hauing a pleasure in the practise of warre, and in the iust commendation of Partiall

Britaine. Who at  
the mention is made in  
her life.  
peace was granted to

initie, that she wrote  
onticus reporteth) are  
visited all the places  
eres, and then dyed at  
being then King of  
her body is to this day

## Empe-

orem Cōstantium Bri-  
tannica matre in Bri-  
n naralem magnificæ  
nis, & Francis, corum-  
subiectam tenuit: Tres  
rum, & Marium, quos  
trannide felicitèr libe-  
rius habet) claruè tam  
aris, successu semper in  
a matre Helena Christi  
vitam reclinafent.

religionis curam in me-  
d æternæ spem vitæ cri-  
nines, & quaerita scriben-  
s operationibus conti-  
s docuit, pietatem diui-  
florum Deorum euerfor,  
fam ditionè Romanam,  
prædicari sacrum, Mini-  
Et vt fidei forma cunctis  
sacra ad omnes propin-  
dedit: Ecclesijs infinita  
quibusque vt pater folli-  
anc ad Deum orationem  
inum te Regem intelli-  
guerfarium iudimus, &c.  
e, bonas artes fouere, le-  
pistolas. E vita Nico-  
verò incarnatione 339.  
m in quatuor libris Eufe-  
ni transtulit sermonem.

fter his father, and Empe-  
there created Emperour,

enctmen, and theire Kings  
subiect vnto him: and ha-  
bee preferred 3. of his mo-  
om in all his actions he had  
Romane Senators.  
of the minde and body also,  
commendation of Partfall  
yposell,

power, he neuer pitched helve but his successe in the battell was alwayes victorious. His mo-  
ther Helena hauing instructed him in the faith of Christ, although hee much of all men that  
were learned in the Greeke and Latine tongues, yet he peried speciall honoy to those that spent  
their time in the studie of Diuinitie, which he called Christian Philosophie: so that beginning at  
the furthest part of the Ocean sea, which then was taken to be his owne natie soyle of Britaine,  
and crusting in the assistance of God, when the darkenes of superstition was most thicke, then hee  
vnderooke a care of Religion, stirring vp innumerable nations from the West as far as In-  
dia it selfe, to the hope of eternall life.

Hee passed many nightes without sleepe, hauing his minde occupied in diuine studie: and  
whensoeuer his leasure from greater affaires did permit him, his vacant times should be spent in  
the vse of writing & other good exercises, alluring himselfe that his kingdoms & Empire wote to  
be continued & strengthened to him by prayer and holy workes: and oftentimes taking vpon him  
as it were y person of a notable preacher of Christian discipline, he would teach his children and  
nobilitie, that godlines was to be preferred before riches, yea, before y Monarchie of all y world.

He ouerthrew the false gods of the Heathens, and by many lawes often remiued, he abrogated  
the worshipping of Images in all the countreys of Greece, Egypt, Persia, Asia, and the whole  
Romane Empire, commanding Christ onely by his Edicts to be worshipped, the sacre Gospell  
to be preached, the Ministers thereof to be honoured and relieued, and the temples of Idoles eue-  
r where to be destroyed.

Whithersoouer he went hee caused the booke of the Gospell of Christ to be still carried before  
him, that thereby it might appeare to be a forme of faith to all men, and to apperteyne generally  
to all nations.

He was the first that appointed an Imperiall Diademe, or Crowne to the Kings of Britaine.  
He was most beneficiall to all Churches, bestowing vpon them lands and fields, and vpon the  
poore, sicke persons, widowes and orphans, coine and wood, being as careful of them as if hee  
had bene their naturall father.

He vsed learned men most familiarly, as Eusebius, Lactantius and others, and they are wis-  
nesses that this was his vsuall prayer to God, O Lord we know thee to be the onely God, we are  
sure that thou art the onely King, and we call vpon thee as our helper: though thee we haue got-  
ten the victorie, and by thee we haue ouerthowen the enemy.

Sextus Aurelius reporteth, that it was his greatest delighe to imbrace the studie of learning, to  
fauour good Arts, to reade, write and meditate, and that he composed many bookes, and Epistles  
both in the Greeke and Latine tongues.

He died at Nicomedia, being then 66. yeres of age, in the 32 yere of his reigne, and in the 339.  
yere after the Incarnation of Christ, and was buried at Constantinople, Octavius being then  
King of Britaine: whose life Eusebius bishop of Cæsarea hath written in Greeke in 4. bookes,  
which afterwards were translated into the Latine tongue by Iohn Portes a French man.

## The life and trauailes of Pelagius, borne in Wales.



Elagius Cambrius ex ea Britanniz parte oriundus, famati illius Collegij Ban-  
nochenensis a Cestria non procul, præpositus erat, in quo Christianorum philo-  
sophorum, duo millia ac centum, ad plebis in Christo comoditatem militabant,  
manuum suarum laboribus, iuxta Pauli doctrinam vitantes. Postquam plures  
exhibitos, pro Christiana Repub. labores, vir eruditione insignis, & tum Græcè,  
tum Latine peritus, vt Tertullianus alter, quorundam Clericorum lacestus in-  
iurijs, grauatim tulit, ac tandem a fide defecit.

Peragratis igitur deinceps Gallijs, in Aegyptum, & Syriam aliasque orientis Regiones de-  
mum peruenit. Vbi ex earum partiu Monacho præsul ordinatus, sui nominis hæresim fabrica-  
bat: asserens hominem sine peccato nasci, ac solo voluntatis imperio sine gratia saluari posse,  
vt ita nefarius baptismum ac fidem tolleret. Cum his & confimilibus impostricis doctrinæ fe-  
cibus in patriam suam reuerfus, omnem illam Regionem, Iuliano & Cælestino Pseudoepiscopis  
sautoribus, compurcabat. Verum ante lapsum suum studia tractabat honestissima, vt post  
Gennadium Bedam, & honorium alij serunt authores, composuitque multos libros ad Christi-  
anam utilitatem. At postquam est Hereticus publicatus, multo plures edidit hæresis succursus, vt  
tes, & ex diametro cum vera pietate pugnantes, inde erat a suis Britannis in exilium pulsatus,  
in Epistola ad Martinum quintum Valdenus habet. Claruit anno post Christum incarnatum,  
390. sub Maximo Britannorum Rege.



¶ *The same in English.*

**P**elagius, boꝛne in that part of Britaine which is called Wales, was head of gouernour of the famous Colledge of Bangor, not farre from Chester, wherein liued a Societie of 2100. Diuines, of Students of Christian philosophie, applying themselues to the practise of the Christian people, and liuing by the labours of their owne handes, according to Pauls doctrine. He was a man excellently learned, and skilfull both in the Greeke and Latine tongues, and as it were another Tertullian, after his long and great trauailes for the good of the Christian Common weale, seeing himselfe abused, and iniuriously dealt withall by some of the Clergie of that time, he tooke the matter so grieuouly, that at the last he relapsed from the faith.

Whereupon he left Wales, and went into France, and hauing gone through France, he went thence into Egypt, Syria, & other Countreies of the East, and being made Priest by a certaine Pönke of those partes, he there hatshed his heresse, which according to his name was called the heresse of the Pelagians: which was, that man was boꝛne without sinne, and might be saued by the power of his owne wil without grace, that so the miserable man might take away sayth and baptisme. With this and the like dyegges of false doctrine, he returned againe into Wales, and there by the meanes of the two false Prelates Julian and Celestine, who fauoured his heresse, hee infected the whole Countrey with it. But before his fall and Apostasie from the faith, he exercised himselfe in the best studies, as Gennadius, Beda, Honorius, and other authours doe reioyce him, and wrote many bookes seruing not a little to Chyistian vtilitie: but being once fallen into his heresse, he wrote many more erroneous bookes, then he did before honest, and sincere: whereupon at the last his owne Countreymen banished him, as Walden testified in his Epistle to Pope Martin the sixt. He floꝛished in the yeere after the Incarnation, 390. Maximus being then King of Britane.

## The life and trauailes of Iohn Erigena.

**I**ohannes Erigena Britannus natione, in Meneuia vrbe, seu ad fanum Dauidis, & patricio genitore natus, dum Anglos Daci crudeles bellis ac rapinis molestarent, ac omnia illic essent tumultibus plena, longam ipse peregrinationem Athenas vsq; suscepit, annosq; quamplures, literis Græcis, Chaldaicis, & Arabicis insudauit: omnia illic inuisit Philosophorum loca, ac studia, imo & ipsum oraculum Solis, quod Aesculapius sibi construxerat. Inueniens tandem quod longo quæsierat labore in Italiam & Galliam est reuersus vbi ob insignem eruditionem, Carolo Caluo, & postea Ludouico Balbo acceptus, Dionysij Areopagita libros de cælesti Hierarchia, ex Constantinopoli tunc missos Latinos fecit, Anno. Dom. 858. Professus postea in Britanniam, Alphredi Anglorum Regis, & suorum liberorum factus est præceptor, atque ipso mox ad hortante, inter ocia literaria e Græco transtulit in tres linguas, scilicet Chaldaicam, Arabicam, & Latinam, Aristotelis moralia, de secretis secretorum, seu recto regimine Principum, opus certe exquisitum. In Malmshuriensi cænobio tandem, quo recreationis gratia se contulerat, inter legendum a quibusdam discipulis maleuolis interimebatur, An. Christi, 884.

¶ *The same in English.*

**I**ohn Erigene a Bytane, descended of honourable parents, and boꝛne in the Towne of S. Daulo in Wales, seeing the Englishmen to be oppressed with the warres and rapines of the cruel Daues, and all the land in a hurlie burlie, he in the meane time vnderooke a long iourney, euen as farre as Athens, and there spent many yeeres in the studie of the Greeke, Chaldie, and Arabian tongues: he there frequented all the places and schooles of the Philosophers, and the oracle also of the Sunne, which Aesculapius had built vnto him selfe. And hauing found at length that which he had with long trauell searched, he returned againe into Italle, and France, where for his singular learning, he was much fauoured of the two Kings Charles and Lewes, and in his being there, he translated into Latine the bookes of Dionysius Areopagita concerning the Heauenly Hierarchie, which were sent from Constantinople in the yeere 858. After this he came backe againe into his owne Countrey, and was schoolmaster vnto Alphys then King of England, and to his sonnes: and vpon his request, at his times of leasure, he translated Aristocles Morales of the Secrets of Secrets, of the right gouernement of Princes, out of Greeke into these three tongues, Chaldie, Arabian, and Latine, which he did very exquisitely. At the last, being in the Abbe of Malmshurie, whither he went for his recreation, and there according to his manner disputing, and reading to the Students, some of them mistaking and hating him, rose against him, and slue him in the yeere of Christ, 884.

The

gouvernour of the  
ette of 1100. Di  
e of the Christian  
ctrine. He was a  
nd as it were ano  
hristian Common  
rgie of that time,

ough France, he  
made Priest by a  
to his name was  
me, and might be  
might take away  
turned againe into  
ne, who favoured  
Apostasse from the  
and other authours  
e; but being once  
ore honest, and sin  
en testifeth in his  
m, 390. Maximus

and fanum Davidis,  
illis ac rapinis mo  
ipse peregrinatio  
tracis, Chaldaicis,  
a, ac studia, imo &  
Inueniens tandem  
nem eruditionem,  
ros de caelesti Hie  
Profectus postea in  
ceptor, atque ipso  
et Chaldaicam, A  
regimine Princi  
creationis gratia se  
An. Christi, 884.

Colvne of S. Da  
rapines of the cruel  
long tourney, even  
Chaldie, and Arabie  
es, and the oracle at  
found at length that  
France, where for  
Lewes, and in his  
concerning the Pea  
then King of Eng  
ated Aristotle  
of Greeke into these  
At the last, being in  
according to his man  
ng him, rose against

The

**The trauailes of Andrewe Whiteman, alias  
Leucander, Centur. 2.**



**A**ndreas Leucander alias Whiteman (iuxta Leisidum) Monachus, & Abbas Ramefisensis Cznobij tertius fuit. Hic bonis artibus studio quodam incredibili noctes atque dies inuigilabat, & operæ præciani ingens inde retulit. Accessit præterea & ardens quoddam desiderium, ea proprijs & apertis oculis videndi loca, in quibus Seruator Christus redemptionis nostri misteria omnia consummavit, quorum prius sola nomina ex scripturarum lectione nouerat: vnde & sacram Hierosolymorum urbem, miraculorum, prædicationis, ac passionis eius testem inuisit, atque domum rediens factus est Abbas. Claruisse fertur anno nati Seruatoris, 1020. sub Canuto Dano.

*¶ The same in English.*

**A**ndrew the Leucander, other wise called Whiteman (as Leland reporteth) was by profession a Monk, and the thirde Abbat of the Abbie of Ramsie: he was exceedingly giuen to the Studie of good artes, taking paines therein day & night, and profited greatly thereby. And amongst all other things, he had an incredible desire to see those places with his eyes, whererin Christ our Sauour performed and wrought all the mysteries of our Redemption, the names of whiche places he onely knewe before by the reading of the Scriptures. Whereupon he began his tourney, and went to Jerusalem a witness of the miracles, preaching and passion of Christ, and being againe returned into his Countrey, he was made the aforesaid Abbat. He finished in the yeere of Christ, 1020. vnder Canutus the Dane.

**The trauailes of one Athelarde an Englishman,  
recorded by master Bale, Centur. 2.**



**A**thelardus Bathoniensis Cznobij monachus, naturalium rerum misteria, & causas omnes, diligentia tam vnde cunque exquisita persectatus est, vt cum aliquibus veteris seculi philosphis non indignè conferri possit. Hic olim spectata indolis Adolefcens, vt virente adhuc ætate iuvenile ingenium fœcundaret, atque ad res magnas pararet, relicta dulci patria longinquas petijt regiones. Cum verò Aegyptum & Arabiam peragrans, plura inuenisset, quæ eius desiderabat animus, cum magno laborum, ac literarum lucro in Angliam tum demum reuertebatur. Claruit anno virginie partus, 1130. Henrico primo regnante.

*¶ The same in English.*

**A**thelard a Monk of the Abbie of Bathie, was so diligent a searcher of the secrets, and causes of naturall things, that he deserueth woefully to be compared with some of the auncient Philosophers. This man although young, yet being of a good wit, and being desirous to increase and enrich the same with the best things, and to prepare himselfe as it were for greater matters, left his Countrey for a time, and trauailed into forreine Regions. He went throug Egypt, and Arabia, and found out many things which he desired to his owne priuate contentment, and the profite of good letters generally, and so being satisfied, returned againe into his Countrey: he finished in the yeere 1130. Henry the first being then King of England.

**The life and trauailes of one William of Tyre,  
an Englishman. Centur. 13.**



**W**ilhelmus, Ecclesie Dominici sepulchri Hierosolymæ Regularium Canoniorum prior, natione Anglicus vir vita & moribus cõmendabilis, Anno. Dom. 1128. postquam Tyrorum Ciuitas fidei Christianæ restituta est a Guimundo Hierosolymorũ patriarcha, eidem vrbi primus Archiepiscopus præficiebatur. Est autem Tyrus Ciuitas Antiquissima, Phenicie vniuersæ Metropolis, quæ inter Syriæ prouincias, & bonorum omnium penè cõmoditate, & incolarum frequentia primum semper obtinuit locum: post conscripta quedam opuscula, & Epistolas, ad Dominum migravit, An. Christi 1136: quum duobus tantum sedisset annis, & in Tyrensi Ecclesia sepelitur.

Hic etiam  
Guilelmus  
Tyrensis cla  
ruit sub Hen  
rico primo.

*¶ The same in English.*

**W**illiam the Prior of the Canons Regular in the Church of Jerusalem, called the Lords Sepulchre, was an Englishman borne, and of a vertuous and good behauiour.

After that the Citie of Tyre was restor'd againe to the Christian faith, Cyprian the Patriarke of Ierusalem made him the first Archbishop of Tyre, in the yeere 1128. Which Tyre is a very ancient Citie, the Metropolis of all Phenicia, and hath bene accompanied the chiefest Province of Syria, both for fruitfull commodities and multitude of inhabitants. This William hauing in his life written many Bookes and Epistles, died at last in the yeere 1130, hauing bene Archbishop the space of two yeeres, and was buried in the Church of Tyre.

The trauailes of a certaine English man, whom  
master Bale remembreth in his 2. Centurie, and calleth  
him Robertus Ketenenfis.



Obertus Ketenenfis natione & cognomine Anglus, degustatis primum per Anglorum gymnasia humanarum artium elementis literarijs, vltamarinas statim visitare prouincias, in animo constituit: Peragratis ergo Gallijs, Italia, Dalmatia, & Graecia, tum demum peruenit in Asiam, vbi non paruq; labore, ac vitæ suæ periculo inter Sarracenos truculentissimum hominum genus, Arabicam linguam ad amussim didicit. In Hispaniam postea nauigio tractus, circa fluium Hiberum Astrologiæ artis studio, cum Hermannus quodam Dalmata, magni sui itineris comite se totum dedit. Claruit anno seruatoris nostri, 1143 Stephano regnante, & Papilonæ sepelitur.

Claruit sub  
Stephano.

¶ The same in English.

This Robert Ketenenfis, was called an Englishman by synname, as he was by birth: who after some time spent in the foundations of humanitie, and in the elements of good Artes in the Uniuersities of England, determined to trauaile to the partes beyond sea: and so trauayled through France, Italie, Dalmatia, and Greece, and came at last into Asia, where hee liued in great danger of his life among the cruell Sarracens, but yet learned perfectly the Arabian tongue. Afterwards hee returned by sea into Spaine, and there about the riuier Iberus, gaue him self wholly to the studie of Astrologie, with one Hermannus a Dalmatian, who had accompanied him in his long voyage. Hee florished in the yeere 1143 Steuen being then King of England, and was buried at Papilona.

The worthy voyage of Richard the first, King of England  
into Asia, for the recovery of Ierusalem out of the handes of the  
Saracens, drawn out of the booke of Actes and Monuments of the  
Church of England, written by M. Iohn Foxe.



King Richard the first of that name, for his great valoure and courage surnamed Coeur de Lion, the sone of Henry the second, after the death of his father remembering the rebellions that he had vniuersally raised against him, sought for absolution of his trespass, and in part of satisfaction for the same, agreed with Phillip the French King to take his voyage with him for the recouerie of Christs patrimonie, which they called the Holy land: whereupon the said King Richard immediately after his Coronation, to prepare himselfe the better towarde his iourney, used diuers meanes to take by lommies of moneý, and exacted a tenth of the whole Realme, the Christians to make sheekestone and ten thousand poundes, and the Iewes which then dwelt in the Realme threescore thousand.

Hauing thus gotten sufficient money for the expence, hee sent certain Charles and Barons to Phillip the French king in the time of his Parliament at S. Denis, to put him in minde of his promise made for the recouerie of Christs holy patrimonie out of the Saracens handes: To whom he sent word againe in the moneth of December, that he had bound himselfe by sollemne othe, depending vpon the Euangelists, that he the yeere next following, about the time of Easter, had certainly prepared to aduente himselfe toward that iourney, requiring him like wise not to faile, but to be ready at the terme aboue limited, appointing also the place where both the Kings shoulde meete together.

In the yere therefore 1190 King Richard hauing committed the gouernment of this Realme in his absence to the bishop of Elye then Chancelour of England, aduanced forward his iourney, and came to Turon to meete with Phillip the French king, and after that went to Vizelace, where

under the Patriarke  
of Tyres a very an-  
cient Province of  
William having in  
having bene Arche-

nom  
alleth

gustatis primum per  
raris, vltamarinas  
ergo Gallijs, Italia,  
non paru labore, ac  
minuo genus, Ara-  
na nauigio tractus,  
in Dalmata, magni  
phano regnante, &

e was by birth: who  
ness of good Artes in  
sea: and so traueled  
where hee lived in  
perfectly the Arabian  
ier Iberus, gaue him  
who had accompanie  
n King of England,

England  
ndes of the  
ments of the

valoure and courage  
second, after the death  
had vnderfullly rat-  
passe, and in part of sa-  
French King to take  
es patrimonie, which  
King Richard imme-  
the better to wardes  
ness of mone y, and ex-  
er thousand poundes,

Charles and Barons to  
in in minde of his pro-  
his hands: To whom  
e by solemn othe, be-  
me of Easter, had cer-  
the wife not to faile, but  
the Kings shoulde

ument of this Realme  
ney forwarde his iour-  
that went to Vizeliace,  
where

where the French king & he boynng together, for the more continuance of their iourney, assured themselves by solemn othe, swearing fidelitie one to the other: the forme of whose oth was this.

*That either of them should defend and maintaine the honour of the other, and beare true fidelitie vnto him, of life, members & worldly honour, and that neither of them should faile one the other in their affaires: but the French king should ayde the King of England, in defending his land and dominions, as he would himselfe defend his owne Citie of Paris if it were besieged: and that Richard King of England likewise should ayde the French king in defending his land and Dominions, no otherwise then he would defend his owne Citie of Roan if it were besieged, &c.*

The othe of fidelitie be-  
twixt King Ri-  
chard, and the  
French king.

Concerning the lawes and ordinaunces appointed by King Richarde for his Hauite, the forme thereof was this.

1. That whoso killed any person on shipboard, should be tyed with him that was slaine, and throughten into the sea.
2. And if he killed him on the land, he shoulde in like maner be tyed with the partie slaine, and be buried with him in the earth.
3. He that shalbe committed by lawfull witness to dyt out his knife or weapen to the intent to strike any man, or that hath striken any to the dytting of blood, shall loose his hand.
4. Also he that striketh any person with his hand without effusion of blood, shalbe plunged three times in the sea.
5. Irem, who so speaketh any opprobrious or contumelious wordes in reuiling or cursing one another, for so oftentimes as he hath reuiled, shall pay so many ounces of siluer.
6. Irem, a chiefe or felon that hath stolen being lawfully rebuited, shall haue his head shorne, and boyling pitch potwed upon his head, and feathers of downe treaded vpon the same, whereby he may be knowen, and so at the first landing place they shall come to, there to be cast by.

The discipline  
and orders of  
the King.

These things thus ordered, King Richard sending his Hauite by the Spardish seas, and by the Straights of Gibraltar, betweene Spaine and Africa, to meete him at Marsilia, hee himselfe went as is said to Vizeliace to the French king, which two kings from thence went to Lions, where the bridge ouer the flood Rhodanus for yress of people brake, and many both men and women were drowned: by occasion whereof the two kings for the combrance of their traines, were constrained to diuener themselves for time of their iourney, appointing both to meete together in Sicily: and so Philipp the French king toke his way to Genua, and king Richard to Marsilia, where he remained 8. dayes, appointing there his Hauite to meete him. From thence crossing ouer to Genua where the French king was, passed forward by the coastes of Italy, and entered into Tiber not farre from Rome.

King Richard staying in Marsilia 8. dayes for his Hauite which came not, hee there biter 20. Gallies, and 10. great barkes to shype over his men, and so came to Naples, and so partly by horse and wagon, & partly by the sea, passing to Falernum, came to Calabria, where after that he had heard that his ships were arrived at Messana in Sicily, he made the more speed, and so the 23. of September entred Messana with such a noyle of Trumpets and Schalmes, with such a rouse and shewe, that it was to the great wonderment and terrour both of the Frenchmen, and of all other that did heare and behold the sight.

To the said towne of Messana the French king was come before the 16. of the same moneth of September, and had taken by the Wallace of Tancredus king of Sicily for his lodging: to whom king Richard after his arrivall estranges rejoyced, and when the two kings had communed together, immediatly the French king tooke shipping and entred the seas, thinking to saile towardes the land of Jerusalem: but after he was out of the haven, the winde rising contrary against him, returned him backe againe to Messana. Then king Richard (whose lodging was prepared in the suburbs without the Citie) after he had rejoyced againe and talked with the French king, and as so had sent to Tancredus king of Sicily for deliuerance of Loane his suster (who had bene sometimes Queene of Sicily, and had obtained her to be sent unto him, the last day of September passed ouer the flood del Fare, and there getting a strong hold called de la Baguare, or le Bamare, and there placing his suster with a sufficient garrison, he returned againe to Messana.

The 2. of October king Richard tooke another strong hold called Monasterium Griffonum, situated in the midst of the riuer del Fare, betweene Messana & Calabria, from whence the Donks being expelled, he reposed there all his store and provision of victuals, which came from England or other places.

The Citizens of Messana seeing that the king of England had wonne the castle and Island de la Baguare, and also the Monasterie of the Griffons, and doubting least the king would extende his

his power further to invade their Citie, & get if he could the whole Ile of Sicily, began to stirre against the Kings armie, and to shut the Englishmen out of the gates, and kept their walles against them. The Englishmen seeing that, made to the gates, and by force would have broken them open, inso much that the King riding amongst them with his suite, and breaking diuers of their heads, could not assuage their fierrenes, such was the rage of the Englishmen against the citizens of Messana. The King seeing the furie of his people to be such, that he could not stay them,ooke boate, and went to the pallace of King Tancred, to talke of the matter with the French King, in which meane time the matter was so taken up by the wise handling of the awicidents of the citie, that both parts laying downe their armour, went home in peate.

The fourth day of the saide moneth of October, came to King Richard the Archbishop of Messana with two other Archbishops also with the French King, and sundry other Cardes, Barons, and Bishops, to intreate of peace, who as they were together consulting, and had almost concluded vpon the peate, the citizens of Messana issuing out of the towne, some went by vpon y<sup>e</sup> mountaines, some with open force inuaded y<sup>e</sup> mansion or lodging of Hugh Brune an English Capitaine. The noise whereof comming to the eares of the King, he suddenly breaking off talke with the French King and the rest, departed from them, and comming to his men, commaunded them forthwith to aerie themselves. Who then with certaine of his souldiers making vp to the toppe of the mountaine (which seemed to passe their power to climbe) there put the Citizens to flight, chasing them to wone the mountaines, vnto the very gates of the citie, whom also certaine of the Kings seruants pursued into the citie, of whome siue valiant souldiers & xvj. of the Kings seruants were slaine, the French King looking vpon, and not once willing to rescue them, contrary to his othe, and league before made with the King of England: for the French King with his men being there present, to be in the midst of them safely, and without any harme to and fro, and might well haue taken the Kings partie, more then he, if it had so liked him.

This being knowen to the English both howe their fellows were slaine, and the Frenchmen permitted in the citie, and that they were excluded and the gates barred against them, being also stopped from buying of victuall, & other things, they vpon great indignation gathered themselves in armes, half open the gates, and scaled the wals, and so winning the citie, set by their flags with the English armes vpon the wals: which when the French King did see, he was mightily offended, requiring the King of England that the Armes of France might also be set vp, & towne with his: but King Richard to that would in no case agree, notwithstanding to satisfie his minde, he was contented to take downe his Armes, and to commit the custodie of the citie to the Hospitallaries and Templaries of Ierusalem, till the time that Tancred king of Sicily and he should agree together vpon conditions.

These things being done the fift and sixt day of October, it followed then vpon the eight day of the same, that peace was concluded among the kings. In which peace, first King Richard, & Philip the French king renewed againe their othe and league before made, concerning their mutuall aide and societie, during the time of that peregrination.

Secondly, peace also was concluded betweene King Richard and Tancred King of Sicily as foresaid, with conditions, that the daughter of Tancrede in case King Richard should die without issue, should be married to Arthur Duke of Britaine the kings nephew & next heire to his crowne, whereof a soymall charte was drawen, and letters sent thereof to Pope Clement being dated the ninth of Nouember.

From this time vntill February the next yeere, these two kings kept still at Messana, either for lacke of winde and weather, or for the repairing of their shippes. And in the aforesayde February, in the yeere 1191. King Richard sent ouer his gallies to Naples, there to meete his mother Elinore, and Berengaria the daughter of Zandius King of Nauarre, whome he was purposed to marry, who by that time were come to Brundisum, vnder the conduct of Philip Carle of Flanders, and so proceeding vnto Naples, they founde the kings shippes wherein they sayled to Messana.

In this meane space, King Richard shewed himselfe exceeding bounteous and liberall to all men: to the French king first he gaue diuers shippes, vpon others likewise he bestowed riche rewards, and of his treasure and goods, he distributed largely to his souldiers and seruants about him, of whome it was reported, that he distributed more in one moneth, then any of his predecessors did in a whole yeere: by reason whereof he purchased great loue and fauour, which not onely rebounded to the advancement of his fame, but also to his singular life and profite, as the sequel afterwarth sheweth.

The first day of March following, he left the Citie of Messana, where the French King was,

and

Messana won  
by the English

by, began to stirre  
their walles a-  
rounde had broken  
making diuers of  
men against the  
he could not stay  
matter with the  
oling of the atwar-  
re.

rchbishop of Mel-  
Charles, Barons,  
ad almost conclu-  
by vpon y mount-  
English Captaine,  
off talke with the  
hundred them forth-  
to the toppe of the  
to flight, chaling  
e of the Kings ser-  
uants were  
atrary to his othe,  
is men being there  
d might well haue

nd the Frenchmen  
them, being also  
athered themselues  
by their flags with  
was mightly offer-  
tr by, & torped with  
asif his minde, he  
ie to the Hospitalls,  
and he should agree

pon the eight day of  
g Richard, & Philip  
g their mutuall adve

ed king of Sicily a-  
d should die without  
e here to his crown,  
ment being dated the

ll at Messana, either  
in the aforesayde fe-  
ere to meete his mo-  
home he was purpo-  
ct of Philip Carle of  
wherein they sayled to

s and liberal to all  
se he bestowed riche  
diuers and seruants a-  
b, then any of his pre-  
and fauour, which not  
e and profite, as the se-

he French King was,  
and

and went to Cathneia, a Citie where Tancredus king of Sicily then lay, where he was honora-  
bly received, and there remained with king Tancredus three dayes and three nightes. On the  
fourth day when he should depart, the aforesaid Tancredus offered him many rich presentes in gold  
and silver, and precious stones, whereof king Richard would receiue nothing, but one little ring  
for a token of his good will: for the which king Richard gaue againe vnto him a riche sword. At  
length when king Richard should take his leaue, king Tancredus would not let him to depart, but  
needes would giue him 4. great shippes, and 15. gallies, and furthermore he himselfe would  
needes accompanie him the space of two dayes iourney, to a place called Tauernium.

Then the next morning when they should take their leaue, Tancredus declared vnto him the  
message, which the French King a little before had sent vnto him by the Duke of Burgundie,  
the contents whereof was this: That the King of England was a false Traytour, and would  
never keepe the peace that was betwene them: and if the said Tancredus would warre against  
him, or secretly by might would invade him, he with all his power would assist him, to the destruc-  
tion of him and all his armie. To whom Richard the King protested againe, that he was no tray-  
tour, nor neuer was: and as touching the peace begunne betwixt them, the same should neuer be  
broken through him: neither could he beleuee that the French King being his good lord, and his  
woyne Companioner in that voyage, would utter any such wordes by him. Which when Tan-  
credus heard, he bringeth forth the letters of the French King, sent to him by the Duke of Bur-  
gundie, affirming moreouer, that if the Duke of Burgundie would denie the bringing of the said  
letters, he was ready to crye it with him by any of his Dukes. King Richard receauing the let-  
ters, and musing not a little vpon the same, returneth againe to Messana. The same day that  
King Richard departed, the French king came to Tauernium to speake with Tancred, and there  
abode with him that night, and on the morrowe returned to Messana againe.

From that time King Richard moued in stomacke against King Phillip, neuer thewed any  
gentle countenance of peace & amitie, as he before was wont: whereat the French king greatly  
marueling, and enquiring earnestly what should be the cause thereof, word was sent him againe  
by Phillip Carle of Flanders from King Richard, what wordes he had sent to the king of Sici-  
ly, and for testimonie thereof the letters were shewed, which he wrote by the Duke of Burgun-  
die to the King of Sicily: which when the French King vnderstood, first he helde his peace as  
guilty in his conscience, not knowing well what to answer. At length turning his tale to ano-  
ther matter, he began to quarrell with King Richard, pretending as though he sought causes to  
breake with him, and to maligne him: and therefore he forged (said he) these lies vpon him, and  
all because he by that meanes would auoide to marrie with Alise his sister, according as he had  
promised. Adding moreouer that if he would so doe, and would not marrie the said Alise his sister  
according to his othe, he would be an enemy to him, and to his, while he liued.

To this King Richard said againe, that he could by no meanes marry that woman, for so much  
as his father had carnall copulation with her, and also had by her a sonne: for prooue whereof he  
had there presently to bring forth diuers & sundry witnesses to the Kings face, to testifie with him.

In conclusion, though counsell and persuasion of diuers about the French King, agreement  
at last was made, so that King Phillip did acquite King Richard from this bond of marrying his  
sister, and King Richard againe should be bound to pay to him euery yeere for the space of five  
yeeres, two thousand markes, with certaine other conditions besides, not greatly materiall for  
this place. And thus peace being betwene them concluded the 28. day of the saide moneth of  
March, the French King launching out of the Hauen of Messana, the 22. day after in the Easter  
weeke, came with his armie to the siege of Achon.

After the departure of the French King from Messana, King Richard with his armie yet re-  
maining behind, arrived Queene Alinor the Kings mother, bringing with her Bernegera the  
king of Nauars daughter, to be espoused to King Richard: which being done, King Richard in  
April following, about the 20. day of the said moneth, departed from the Hauen of Messana with  
150. great shippes, and 53. great gallies well manned and appointed,ooke his iourney toward  
Achon: who being vpon the Seas on good Friday about the 9. houre, toke a mightie South-  
winde with a tempest, which dispersed and scattered all his shippes, some to one place, and some  
to another. The King with a fewe shippes was driuen to the Ile of Creta, and there before the  
Hauen of Rhodes cast anchor. The shippes that carried the Kings sister, Queene of Sicily, and  
Bernegera the king of Nauars daughter, with 2. shippes were driuen to the Ile of Cyprus.

The king making great mone for the shippes of his sister, and Bernegera his wife that should  
be, not knowing where they were become, after the tempest was ouerblowen, sent forth his  
Gallies diligently to seeke the rest of his shippes dispersed, but especiall the shippe wherein his  
sister

The name of  
King Richard.

sister was, and the mayden whom he should marrie, who at length were found safe and merite at the poite of Lymfzem in the Ile of Cyprus, notwithstanding the two other shippes, which were in their companie before in the same hauen, were drowned with diuers of the Kings seruantes and men of woorth, among whom was M. Roger, called Malus Carulus, the Kings Vicechancere, who was found with the Kings seale hanging about his necke.

The king of Cyprus, was then Isakius (called also the Emperour of the Gryffons) who tooke and imprisoned all Englishmen, which by shipwracke were cast vpon his land, also inueigled into his hands the goods and priyses of them which were found drowned about his coastes, neither would suffer the shippes wherein the two Ladies were to enter within the poite.

The rydings of this being brought to King Richard, he in great wrath gathering his gallies and shippes together, dooeth the land of Cyprus, where he first in gentle wise signifieth to king Isakius, how he with his Englishmen, comming as strangers to the suppoitation of the holy land, were by distresse of weather dyuen vpon his bounds, and therefore with all humble petition besought him in Gods behalfe, and for reuerence of the holy Crosse, to let goe such prisoners of his as he had in captiuitie, & to restore againe þ goods of them that were drowned, which he detayned in his hands, to be employed for the behoofe of their soules. And this the king once, twice, and thysse desired of the Emperour: but he proudly answering againe, sent the king woode, that he neither would let the captiues goe, nor render the goods of them which were drowned.

When king Richard heard this, how light the Emperour Isakius made of his so humble and honest petition, and howe that nothing coulde be gotten without violent force, estoones giueth commandement throughout all his hoste to put themselves in armour and followe him, to reuenge the iniuries receiued of that proude and cruell king of Cyprus, willing them to put their trust in God, and not to misdoubt but that the Lorde would stand with them, and giue them the victorie. The Emperour in the meane time with his people stood warding the Sea coastes, where the Englishmen should arriue, with swoydes, billes, and launces, and such other weapons as they had, setting booydes, stooles, and chertles before them as a wall: few of them were harnessed, and for the most part all buxperit and vnkillfull in the feates of warre.

When king Richard with his souldiers issuing out of their shippes, first set his bowe men before, who with their shot made a way for others to followe. The Englishmen thus winning the land vpon them, so ferrely pressed vpon the Gryffons, that after long fighting and many blowes, at last the Emperour was put to flight, whom king Richard valiantly pursued, and slue many, and whers he tooke aliuie, and had gone neere also to take the Emperour, had not the night come on and parted the battell. And thus king Richard with much spoile, and great victorie, returning to the Poite Towne of Lymfzem, which the Townes men had left for feare, found there great abundance of corne, wine, oyle and victuals.

The day after the victorie gotten, Ioanna the Kings sister, and Bernegera the mayden, entered the Poite and Towne of Lymfzem, with 50. great shippes, and 14. galliots: so that all the whole Hauie there meeting together, were 254. tall shippes, and about thre score galliots. When Isakius the Emperour, seeing no way for him to escape by Sea, the same night pitched his tents five miles off from the English army, swearing that the thirde day after, he would surely giue battell to king Richard: but he preuenting him before, suddenly the same morning before the day of battell should be, leaureth vpon the tents of the Gryffons early in the morning, they being vnawares and a sleepe, and made of them a great slaughter, insomuch that the Emperour was faine to runne away naked, leauing his tents and pautions to the Englishmen, full of horses and riche treasure, also with the Imperiall stander, the lower part whereof with a costly streamer was couered, and wought all with gold.

King Richard returning with victorie and triumphe to his sister, and Bernegera shortly after in the month of May next following, and the 12. day of the said month, married the said Bernegera daughter of Rancon, king of Nauarre, in the yle of Cyprus at Lymfzem.

The king of Cyprus seeing himselfe ouermatched, was dyuen at length to peeble himselfe with conditions to giue king Richard 20000. markes in gold for amends of such spoiles as he had gotten of them that were drowned, also to restore all the captiues againe to the King: and furthermore, he in his owne person to attende vpon the King to the land of Ierusalem in Gods seruice and his, with 400. horsemen, and 500. footemen: in pledge whereof he would giue to his hands his castles, and his onely daugher, and would hold his kingdome of him.

This done, and the Emperour swearing fidelitie to king Richard before Guido king of Ierusalem, and the prince of Antioche (who were come thither to king Richard a litle before) peace was taken, and Isakius committed to the warde of certaine keepers. Notwithstanding shortly af

nd safe and merite at  
shippes, which were  
the Kings seruantes  
the Kings Chamber-

Gryffons) who tooke  
nd, also mingled in  
t his coastes, neither  
one.

gathering his gal-  
leie wise signified to  
pposition of the ho-  
with all humble pe-  
to let goe such pris-  
were drowned, which  
of this the king orde,  
sent the king worde,  
ch were drowned.

of his so humble and  
ce, et soones giueth  
to followe him, to re-  
ng them to put their  
n, and giue them the  
ing the Sea coastes,  
such other weapons  
of them were harnes-

his bowe men besore,  
was winning the land  
and many blowes, at  
, and slue many, and  
not the night come on  
to cozie, returning to  
found there great a

the mayden, entered  
so that all the whole  
gallies. Then Ma-  
the pitched his tents  
ould surely giue bat-  
ding before the day of  
ing, they being vna-  
Emperour was faime  
ll of boyes and riche  
tostly streamer was

regera shortly after  
ried the said Berne-  
n.  
h to preide himsele  
of such spoyles as he  
ie to the King: and  
Jerusalem in Gods  
would giue to his  
int.

Suido king of Alex-  
a little before) prece  
standing shortly af-  
ter

ter he breaking from his keepers, was againe at defiance with the King: whereupon king Richard beset the Island of Cyprus round about with shippes and galkies, did in such sort preuaile, that the Subiects of the land were constrained to yeelde themselves to the King, and at last the daughter of the Emperour, and the Emperour himselfe, whom king Richard caused to be kept in fetters of gold and silver, and to be sent to the citie of Tripolis.

These things thus done, and all set in order touching the possession of the Ile of Cyprus, the keeping whereof he committed to Radulph sonne of Godfrey Lord Chamberlaine, being then the first day of June upon the sixt of the saide moneth, king Richard departed from the Ile of Cyprus, with his shippes and gallies toward the siege of Achon; and on the next morrowe came to Tyrus, where by procurement of the French King he was restrained by the Citizens to enter. The next day after, which was the sixt day of June, crossing the seas, he met with a great barke fraught with souldiers and men of warre to the number of a thousand and five hundred, which pretending to be Frenchmen, and setting foorth their flagges with the French Armes, were in deede Sarracens, secretly sent with wilde fire and certaine barrells of vnknown serpents to the defense of the towne of Achon, which king Richard at length perceiuing, et soones set upon them and so vanquished them; of whome the most were drowned and some taken a liue: which being once known in the citie of Achon, as it was a great discomfort to them, so it was a great helpe to the Christians for winning the citie.

The next day after which was the seuenth of June, King Richard came to Achon, which at that time had bene long besieged by the Christians. After whose coming it was not long, but the Pagans within the citie, seeing their wals to be undermined and towers ouerthrowen, were driuen by compulsion to escape with life and limme, so surrender the citie to the two kings.

Another great helpe to the Christians in winning the citie, was this. In the said city of Achon there was a heretic Christian among the Sarracens, who in time of the siege thereof, vsed at sundry times to call ouer the wals into the campe of the Christians, certaine bills written in Hebrew, Greeke, and Latine, wherein he disclosed to the Christians from time to time, the doings and counsels of the enemies, aduerting them how and what way they should worke, and what to beware, and alwaies his letters began thus. In nomine Patris, & Filij, & Spiritus sancti, Amen. By reason whereof the Christians were much advantaged in their proceedings; but this was a great heauines vnto them, that neither he would utter his name, nor when the citie was got den they euer vnderstand who he was.

To make of a long siege a short narration. Upon the twelfth day of July the yere aforesaid, the Princes and Captaines of the Pagans, upon agreement resorted to the caue of the Templaries to commune with the two kings touching peace, and giuing vp of their citie: the forme of which peace was thus.

- 1 That the Kings should haue the citie of Achon freely and fully deliuered vnto them, with all which was therein.
- 2 That 500. captiues of the Christians should be resorted to them, which were in Achon.
- 3 That the holy crosse should be to them rendred, and a thousand Christian captiues with two hundred horsemen, whosoever they themselves would chose out of all them which were in the power of the Saladine.
- 4 That they would giue vnto the Kings two hundred thousand Byzants, so that they themselves should remaine as pledges in the Kings hands, for the performance hereof, that if in foorth dates the aforesaid couenantes were not accomplished, they should abide the Kings mercie touching life and limme.

These couenantes being agreed vpon, the Kings sent their souldiers and seruantes into the citie, to take a hundredth of the richest and best of the citie, to close them vp in towres vnder strong keeping, and the residue they committed to be kept in houses and in streets, ministering vnto them according to their necessities: to whome not withstanding this they permitted, that so many of them as would be baptized and receiue the faith of Christ, should be free to goe whither they would: whereupon many there were of the Pagans, which for feare of death pretended to be baptized, but afterward so soone as they could, reuolued againe to the Saladine: for the which it was afterward commanded by the Kings, that none of them should be baptized against their wills.

The thirteenth day of the saide moneth of July, King Philip of France, and King Richard, after they had obtained the possession of Achon, deuided betwene them all things therein contained as well the people as golde and silver, with all other furniture whatsoeuer was remaining in the citie: who in deuiding the spoyle, were so good caruers to themselves that the Knights and Barons had but litle to their share, whereupon they began to beue themselves somewhat discontented

The foide Chamberlaine of King Richard, left gouernour of Cyprus.

A great ship of Sarracens taken by King Richard.

King Richard arrived at Achon.

The forme of peace concluded betwene the Kings and the Princes of Achon.



ed, which being knowne of the Kings they sent them and were that their wills should be satisfied. The twentieth day of July, King Richard speaking with the French King, desired him that they two with their Armies, would binde themselves by othe to remaine there still in the land of Jerusalem the space of 3. yeeres, for the winning and recovering againe of these countreys: but hee said he would sweare no such othe, and so the next day after King Richard with his wife and sister entred into the Citie of Achon, and there placed himselfe in the Kings pallace: The French king remaining in the houses of the Templaires, where he continued all the end of that moneth.

About the beginning of the month of August, Philip the French king after that hee and King Richard had made agreement betweene Guido and Conradus the Marques, about the kingdome of Jerusalem, went from Achon to Tyrus, notwithstanding King Richard and all the Princes of the Christian armie with great increase desired him to tarry, shewing what a shame it were for him to come so farre, and now to leaue undone that for which he came, and on the 3. day of August departed from Tyrus, leauiing the halfe part of the Citie of Achon, in the hands of the aforesaid Conradus Marques.

After his departure the Saracens refused to keepe their covenants made, who neither would restore the holy Crosse nor the money, nor their captiues, sending word to King Richard, that if he beheaded the pledges left with him at Achon, they would choppe off the heads of such captiues of the Christians, as were in their handes.

Shortly after this the Saladine sending great gifts to King Richard, requested the time limited for beheading of the captiues to be proroged, but the king refused to take his gifts, and to graunt his request, whereupon the Saladine caused all the Christian captiues within his possession forthwith to be beheaded, which was the 28. of August: which albeit King Richard understood, yet would not be present the time before limited for the execution of his prisoners, being the 20. day of August: vpon which day hee caused the prisoners of the Saracens openly in the sight of the Saladines armie to looke their heads: the number of whom came to two thousand and five hundred, save only that certaine of the principall of them hee reserued for purposes and considerations, especially to make exchange for the holy Crosse, and certaine other of the Christian captiues.

After this King Richard purposed to besiege the Citie of Ioppe, where by the way betwene Achon and Ioppe, nere to a towne called Ashur, Saladine with a great multitude of his Saracens came fiercely against the kings rearward, but through Gods mercifull grace in the same battail, the kings warriors acquitted themselves so well, that the Saladine was put to flight, whome the Christians pursued the space of 3. miles, and lost that same day many of his Nobles & Captaines, in such sort (as it was thought) that the Saladine was not put to such confusion 40. yeeres before, and the one Christian Captaine called James Auemus in that conflict was overthrowen.

From thence King Richard proceeding further went to Ioppe, and then to Ascalon, where hee found first the Citie forsaken of the Saracens, who durst not abide the kings coming: Ascalon, the Saladine thew to wone to the ground, & like wise forsooke the whole lande of Syria, though all which land the King had free passage without resistance: neither durst the Saracene Prince encounter after that with K. Richard. Of all which his attendances the said K. Richard sent his letters of certificate as well into England, as also to the Abbot of Clara valle in France, well hoping by the Gods willing should be able to make his repaire againe to them by Easter next.

Many other famous acts were done in this voyage by these two Kings, and moe should haue bene, had not they falling into discorde displeured themselves, by reason whereof Philip the French king returned home againe within short space: who being returned againe firstoues invaded the Countrey of Normandie, exciting also John the brother of King Richard, to take on him the kingdome of England in his brothers absence: who then made league vpon the same with the French king, and did homage vnto him, which was about the fourth yeere of King Richard. Who then being in Syria, and hearing thereof, made peace with the Turkes for thre yeeres: and not long after, King Richard the next spring following returned also, who in his returne diuised by distresse of weather, about the parts of Histria, in a towne called Synaca, was there taken by Lymphold, Duke of the same countrey, and so solde to the Emperour for sixtie thousand Markes: who for no small ioy thereof, wroteth to Philip the French king, these letters here following.

The letter of the Emperour to Philip the French king,  
concerning the taking of King Richard.

**H**Enrico Dei gratia Romanorum Imperator, & semper Augustus. Dilecto & speciali amico suo, Philippo illustri Francorum Regi salutem, & sinceram dilectionis affectum. Quoniam Imperatoria

The French Kings shamefull returne home.

The captiues of the Saracens slaine by King Richard.

A notable battayle against the Saladine.

King Richard in possession of Syria.

1193.

King Richard returned from Palestine.

ould be facit fieri, ... the King ... the Princes of the ... of August departed ...

oria Celsitudo non dubitat Regalem Magnificentiam tuam letiorem effici, de vniuersis quibus omnipotentia creatoris nostri nos ipsos, & Romanum Imperium honorauerit, & exaltauerit nobilitati tue tenore presentium declarare duximus, quod inimicus Imperij nostri, & turbator Regni tui Rex Anglia, quum esset in transendo mare ad partes suas reuersurus, accidit ut ventum rupta nauis sua, in qua ipse erat, induceret eum in partes Histria ad locum qui est inter Aquileiam, & Venetias. Vbi Rex, Dei permissione passus naufragium cum paucis euasit.

Quidam itaque fidelis noster Comes, Maynardus de Grooxce, & populus regionis illius audito quod in terra erat, & considerato diligentius, qualem, Nominatus Rex in terra promissionis, prodicionem & iraditionem, & perditionis sue cumulum exercebat, insecuti sunt, intendentes eum capturare. Ipso autem Rege in fugam conuerso, ceperunt de suis octo milites: Postmodum processit Rex ad Burgum in Archiepiscopatu Salsburghensi, qui vocatur Erisorum, ubi Fridericus de Betesow, Rege cum tribus tantum versus Austriam properante, noctu sex milites de suis cepit: Dilectum autem Consanguineum noster Lympholdus Dux Austriae, obseruata strata sepe, dictum Regem iuxta Denam in villa viciniore, in domo despecta captiuaui.

Cum itaque in nostra nunc habeatur Potestate, & ipse semper tua molestauit, & turbationis operam praestitit, & quae praemissimus, nobilitati tuae insinuarere curauimus: scientes ea dilectionis tuae beneplacita existere, animo tuo uberrimam importare letitiam. Datum apud Richeonunium 5. Kalendas Ianuae.

King Richard being thus traiterously taken, and sold to the Emperour by the Duke of Aufstridge for 60000 markes, was there kept in custodie a yeere and 3. moneths.

In some stories it is affirmed, that King Richard returning out of Asia, came to Italy with prosperous wind, where he desired of the Pope to be absolved of an othe made against his will and could not obtaine it: and so setting out from thence towards England, passing by the Courtrey of Conradus the Marques, whose death (he being slaine a litle before) was falsely imputed by the French King to the King of Englande, there traiterously was taken (as is aforesaid) by Limpoldus duke of Aufstridge.

Albeit in another storie I finde the matter more credibly set forth: which saith thus, That king Richard slew the brother of this Limpoldus, playing with him at Chesse in the French Kings Court: and Limpoldus taking his vantage, was more cruel against him and deliuered him (as is said) to the Emperour. In whose custodie he was deteyned during the tyme aboue mentioned, a yeere & 3. moneths. During which tyme of the Kings emburance, the French King in the meane season stirred warre in Romandie: and Earle John the Kings brother, made warre and invaded England, but the Barons and bishops of the land mightily withstood him.

At length it was so agreed and concluded with the Emperour, that King Richard should be released for a hundredth and foure thousand pound: of which money part should remaine to the Duke of Aufstridge, the rest should be the Emperours. The summe of which money was here gathered and made in England of Chalices, Crozles, Spines, candlesticks and other Church plate, also with publike contribution of Priests, Abbots, and other subiects of the Realme: wherof part was presently paid, and for the residue remaining, hostages and pledges were taken, which was about the fift yeere of his reigne: and then it was obtayned of the Pope, that Priests might celebrate with Chalices of latten and tinne.

At what time this aforesaid money was paid, and the hostages giuen for the ranfome of the King, I haue an olde historie which saith, that the aforesaid Duke of Aufstridge was sorely after plagued by God, with sundry plagues.

The last judgement of God upon the Duke of Austria.

- 1. First, with the burning of his chiefe Townes.
  - 2. With downing of some thousand of his men in a floud happening no man can tell how.
  - 3. By turning all the eares of his come felde into wormes.
  - 4. By taking away almost all the Nobles of his land by death.
  - 5. By breaking his owne legges falling from his horse, which legges hee was compelled to cut off with his owne hands, and afterwards died of the same: who then at his death is reported to forgive King Richard 50000. markes, and sent home the hostages that were with him. And further a certaine booke intituled Eulogium, declareth that the said Limpoldus duke of Aufstridge fell in displeasure with the bishop of Rome and died excommunicate the next yeere after, Anno 1196.
- But thus as you haue heard, Richard the King was ranfomed & deliuered from the countous captiuitie of the Emperour, and returning home made an ende of his voyage for Asia, which was both honourable to himselfe and to all Christian States, but to the Sarracens the enemies of Christianitie, terrible and dishonourable.

This Historie of King Richards voyage to Ierusalem, is very excellently and largely written in Latine by Guilielmus Neobrogenis our owne countryeman.

speciali amico suo, Quoniam Imperatoris

The life and trauailes of Baldwinus Deuonius, some-  
time Archbishop of Canterburie.

**B**aldwinus Deuonius, tenui loco Excestrię natus, vir ore facundus, exactus Philosophus, & ad omne studiorum genus per illos dies aptissimus inueniebatur. Scholarum rector primũ erat: tum postea Archidiaconus, eruditione ac sapientia in omni negotio celebris: fuit præterea Cisterciensis Monachus, & Abbas Fordensis Cænobij, magnus suorum æstimatione, ac vniuersæ eorum societati quasi Antesignanus: fuit deinde Wigorniensis præful, fuit & mortuo demum Richardo Cantuariorum Archiepiscopus, ac totius Anglię primas. Cui muneri Baldwinus sollicitè inuigilans, egregium se pastorem exhibuit, dominicum semen, quantum patiebatur eius temporis iniquitas, vbique locorum spargens. Richardus Anglorum Rex, acceptis tunc Regni insignijs, summo studio classẽ, ac omnia ad Hierosolymitarum bellum gerendum necessaria parauit. Secutus est illico Regem in Syriam, & Palestinam vsque Baldwinus, vt esset in tam Sancto (vt ipse putabar itinere) laborum, dolorum, ac periculorum particeps. Præfuit Cantuariensi Ecclesię ferè 6. annis, & Richardum Regem in Syriam secutus, anno Salutis nostrę 1190. Tyri vitam finiuit, vbi & sepultus est.

*¶ The same in English.*

**B**aldwine a Deuonshire man borne in Creter of meane parentage, was a very eloquent man, an exact philosopher, and in those daies very excellent in all kinde of studies. He was first of all a Scholemaster: after wards he became an Archdeacon, very famous for his learning & wisdom in all his doings. He was also a Cistercian Monk and Abbot of Foorde Monasterie, and the chiefe of all those that were of his order: he grewe after this to be bishop of Worcester, and at last after the death of King Richard he was promoted and made Archebishop of Canterburie, and Primas of all England. In the discharge of which place hee being very vigilant, shewed himselfe a worthy Pastor, so wing the seeve of Gods word in euery place as farre forth as the iniquitie of that time permitted. In his time King Richard with all indeuour prepared a flecte and all things necessarie for waging of warre against the Infidels at Ierusalem, taking with him the Standard and Ensignes of the kingdome. This Baldwinus estoones followed the King into Syria and Palestine, as one desirous to be partaker of his trauailes, paines, and perils in so holy a voyage. He was Archbishop of Canterburie almost six yeeres: but hauing followed the King into Syria, in the yeere 1190. he died at Tyre where he was also buried.

An annotation concerning the trauailes of the said  
*Baldwine, taken out of Ponticus Virumnius, in his Itinerarium Cambrię, lib. 2. Cap. 14. Fol. 229.*

**I**nter primos Thomę Becketi, successor hic secundus, audita saluatoris & salutiferę Crucis iniuria nostris (proh dolor) diebus per Saladinum irrogata, cruce signatus, in eiusdem obsequijs, tam remotis finibus quam propinquis, prædicationis officium viriliter assumpsit. Et postmodum iter accipiens, nauigioque fungens apud Marsiliam, transcurso tandem Pelagi profundo, in portu Tyrensi incolumis applicuit: & inde ad exercitum nostrum obfidentem pariter & obfessum Aconem transiuit: vbi multos ex nostris inueniens, & ferè cunctos principum defectu, in summa defolatione iam positos, & desperatione, alios quidem longa expectatione fatigatos, alios fame & inopia grauius afflictos, quosdam verd aeris inclementia distemperatos, diem feliciter in terra sacra clausurus extremum, singulos pro posse vinculo charitatis amplectens, sumptibus & impensis, verbis, & vitę meritis confirmauit.

*¶ The same in English.*

**T**his Baldwinus being the second succellour vnto Thomas Becket, after he had hard the wrong which was done to our Saviour, and the signe of the Crosse by Saladin the Sultan of Egypte, taking vpon him the Lords Character, hee courageously performed his office of preaching in the obedience thereof, as well in farre distant Countreys as at home. And after wardes taking his journey and imbarcking himselfe at Marsillis, hauing at length passed the Leuant Sea arriued safely in theauen of Tyrus, and from thence went ouer to Achon vnto our armie, besseging the Towne, and yet (as it were) besseged it selfe. Where finding many of our Countreymen, and almost all men remaining in wonderfull penitency, and dispaire through the withpauing of the

us, some-

acundus, exactus Phi-  
 ssumus inueniebatur,  
 nus, eruditione ac sa-  
 cienfis Monachus, &  
 e, ac vniuerfa eorum  
 araful, fuit & mortuo  
 Cui muneri Bald-  
 men, quantum patie-  
 glorum Rex, acceptis  
 um bellum gerendum  
 e Baldwinus, vt efflet  
 m particeps. Præfuit  
 tus, anno Salutis no-

the Pines, some of them tired with long expectation, others grievously afflicted with hunger and poterie, and others withempered with the heat of the weather, being ready happily to end his dayes in the Holy land, embracing every one according to his abilitie in the bond of loue, he opened them at his colles and charges, and strengthened them with his wordes and good exam-  
 amples of life.

The trauailes of one Richard fynamed  
 Canonicus.



Richardus Canonicus ad Trinitatis sanum Londini Regularis, ab ipsa pueritia, bonarum artium literas impense amauit, excoluit, ac didicit. Qui ex continuo labore atque exercitatione longa, talis tandem euasit orator, & Poeta, quales ea ætas rarissimos r...iebat. Ob id Richardo Anglorum tunc Regi charus; longam cum eo peregrinationem, in Palestinam ac Syriam, dum expugnaret Turcas, suscepit. Vnde in Angliam tum demum reuersus, omnia quæ præsens vidit in vrbibus, agris, ac militum castris, fideli narratione, tam carmine quam prosa descripsit. Neque interim omisit eiusdem Regis mores, & formam, per omnia corporis liniamenta designare, addiditque præclaro suo opere, hoc aptissimum pro titulo nomen, scilicet, Itinerarium Regis Richardi. Claruit antio redemptionis nostræ 1200. sub Ioanne Anglorum Rege.

¶ The same in English.

Richard fynamed Canonicus an obseruant Fryer of Trinitie Church in London, was in great loue with the studies of good Arts andooke paines in them and learned them. And at last by his continuall endeuour and long exercise therein, he grew to be such an Orator and Poet, as few were in that age liuing, by reason wherof he grew in fauour with Richard then King of England, and vnderooke that long voyage with him into Palestina & Syria against the Turkes, from whence being returned againe into England, hee faithfully described both in Verse and prose all such things as he had seene in the Cities, fields and tents of the souldiers, where he was present, and omitted not to note the behauiour, forme, and proportion of body in the foresaid King, giuing to his notable worke this most apt name for the title, The Iournall of King Richard. The flourish in the peece of our Redemption 1200. vnder John King of England.

The trauailes of Guilielmus Peregrinus.



Vilielmus Peregrinus, Poeta quidam per eam etatem excellens, genere Anglus florebat, literarum, vt multi tunc erant, amator maximus, & qui bona tempora melioribus impenderat studijs. Hic cum accepisset, expeditionem in Sarracenos per Regem Richardum parari, accinxit se ad iter illud, non tantum vt miles, sed etiam Peregrinus, Vidit ea quæ in Mari Hispanico fiebant, vidit quæ in Syria & Palestina commissa fuerunt, in Sultanum Babiloniæ Regem, ac perfidos Sarracenos. Omnia hæc scripsit, & viuis depinxit coloribus, ita vt quasi præ oculis, totum poneret negotium, idemque Argumentum cum Richardo Canonicum non infeliciter, Heroico pertractauit carmine, opusque iam absolutum, Huberto Cantuariorum Archiepiscopo, & Stephano Turnhamo Capitano rerum bellicarum expertissimo dedicauit, addito hoc titulo Odeporicon Richardi Regis. Multaque alia edidisse Poetam talem non dubito, sed num extent illa eius scripta, mihi non constat, Hoc tamen satis constat, eum fuisse in pretio, Anno à salutifero virginis partu 1200. sub Anglorum Rege Ioanne.

¶ The same in English.

William the Pilgrime, a very excellent Poet in those dayes and an Englishman borne, was of great fame, being much giuen to good letters, (as many then were) and bestowed his good time in the best kinde of studies. Hee vnderstanding of the preparation of King Richard against the Sarracens, prepared himselfe also for the same voyage, not onely as a Souldiour, but as a Pilgrime also. He sawe those things which happened in the Spanishe seas, and which were done in Syria and Palestina against the Sultan the King of Babylon, and the treacherous Sarracens, All which things he wrote and expelless them as it were in liuely colours, as if they had bene still in doing before his eyes: And handled the same Argument in Heroical verse

he said  
 his Itine-

is & saluteræ Crucis  
 atus, in eiusdem obse-  
 ter assumptis. Et post-  
 andem Pelagi profun-  
 obsidentem pariter &  
 cchos principum defe-  
 ga expectatione fati-  
 mentia distemperatos,  
 vinculo charitatis am-

he had had the wrong  
 ladine the Sultan of  
 his office of preaching  
 and afterwards taking  
 the Levant Sea arrived  
 our armie, besiegging the  
 our Countreymen, and  
 though the withstanding of the

which the forenamed Richard Canonicus did. And hauing finished his worke he dedicated it to Hubert Archbishop of Cantuarie, and to Stephen Turnham a most expert Captaine of the warres, giving it this Title, The Expedition of King Richard. And I doubt not but that so good a Doct as hee was published many other things, but whether they be extant yea or no, I knowe not but this I knowe, that he was a man well accompted of, and flourish'd in the yeere after the birth of Christ 1200, vnder King Iohn.

### The trauailes of Hubert Walter Bishop of Sarisburie.

**H**ubertus Walterus Sarisburiensis Episcopus, vir probus, ingenioque ac pietate clarus, inter præcipuos vnus eorum erat, qui post Richardum Regem expugnandum Saracenorum gratia in Syriam proficiscebantur. Cum ex Palestina rediens, audiret in Sicilia, quod idem Richardus in inimicorum manus incidisset, omisso itinere incepto, ad eum cursim diuertebat: Quem & ille statim, in Angliam misit, ut illic Regij Senatus autoritate, indicto pro eius redemptione tributo pecuniam colligeret, quod & industrius fecit ac Regem liberauit. Inde Cantuariorum Archiepiscopus factus, post eius mortem Ioanni illius fratri ac successori, paria fidelitatis officia præstitit. Longa enim oratione, toti Anglorum nationi persuasit, quod vir prouidus, præstans, fortis, genere nobilissimus, & imperio dignissimus esset: quo saluatus a populo fuit, atque in Regem coronatus. Composuit quædam opuscula, & ex immenso animi dolore demum obiisse fertur, Anno salutis humanæ 1205, cum sedisset annos 11. Menses octo, & dies sex. Quam vidisset, ex intestinis odijs, omnia in transmarinis regionibus pestum ire, regnante Ioanne.

#### ¶ The same in English.

**H**ubert Walter bishop of Sarisburie a vertuous man, and famous for his good wit and pietie, was one of the chiefest of them that followed King Richard into Syria going against the Sarracens. As he returned from Palestina & came in his tourney into Sicilia, he there heard of the ill fortune of the King being fallen into his enemies handes, and thereupon leauing his tourney home wards, he went presently and in all haste to the place wher the King was captiued, whom the King immediatly vpon his comming sent into England, that by the authoritie of the Council, a tribute might be collected for his redemption: which this Hubert performed with great diligence, and deliuered the King. After this hee was made Archbishop of Cantuarie, and after the death of King Richard he betwix the like duties of stuelitie and trust to his brother Iohn that succeeded him. For by a long Oration he perswaded the whole Nation of the Englishmen, that he was a very circumspect man, vertuous, valiant, borne of Noble parentage, and most worthy of the Crowne. Whereupon he was so reueired of all the people and crowned King. He wrote certaine booke, and died at the last with very great griefe of minde, in the yeere 1205, hauing bene Archbishop the space of 11. yeeres 8. moneths and fixe dayes, by reason of the ciuill discords abroade, whereby all things went topsie turue, and in the raigne of King Iohn.

### The trauailes of Robert Curfon.

**R**obertus Curfon ex nobili quodam Anglorum ortus genere, disciplinis tum prophanis, tum sacris studiosus incubuit, idque (quantum ex coniecturis colligo) in celebratissima Oxonij Academia. Præstantissimis illic institutoribus vsus, ex summa circa ingenuas artes industria, & assiduo literarum labore, famam sibi inter suos celeberrimam comparauit. Ampliora deinde meditatus Parisiorum Lutetiam, atque Romam ipsam petijt, illic Theologus Doctor, hic verò Cardinalis effectus. Vnde vterque Matthæus, Parisius, ac Westmonasterius, hoc de ipso testimonium adferunt: hic libro 2. ille 8. suorum Chronicorum. Anno Domini 1218, (inquiunt) in captione Damiatæ & Egypti vrbis, sub Ioanne Brenno Hierosolymorum Rege, fuit cum Pelagio Albanensi Magister Robertus de Curfon, Anglus, Clericus celeberrimus, genere nobilis, ac Romanæ Ecclesiæ Cardinalis, &c. Bostonus Buriensis in suo Catalogo Curfonum aliquos libros composuisse narrat. Claruit Anno superius numerato per prædictos testes, in Anglia regnante Henrico 3. Ioannis Regis filio: fuitque hic diebus Honorij tertij Romani pontificis in Angliam, Bostono teste, legatus.

#### ¶ The

he be dedicated to  
per. Captaine of the  
not but that so good  
of yea or no, I knowe  
in the peere after the

ingenoque ac pieta-  
chardum Regem ex-  
bantur. Cum ex Pa-  
inimicorū manus in-  
at: Quem & ille ita-  
, indicto pro eius re-  
gem liberavit. Inde  
tri ac successori, paria  
erfualit, quod vir pro-  
quo salutatū a popu-  
nmento animi dolore  
. Menses octo, & dies  
peffum ire, regnante

his good wit and pie-  
yria going against the  
ia, he there hard of the  
on leaving his journey  
was captiued, whom  
authoietic of the Coun-  
toured with great di-  
Canterburie, and after  
to his brother John that  
of the Englishmen, that  
stage, and most worthy  
med King. He wrote  
the peere 1205, having  
ion of the ciuill discords  
John.

genere, disciplinis tum  
um ex coniecturis col-  
lissimis illic institutoris-  
siduo literarum labo-  
Ampliora deinde me-  
betijt, illic Theologus  
s, ac Westminsterius  
corum. Anno Domini  
anno Hierosolymorum  
us, Clericus celeberr-  
riensis in suo Catalogo  
is numerato per prae-  
dic diebus Hourij ter-

¶ The

¶ The same in English.

Robert Curfon descended of a noble familie in England, vfed great diligence as well in pro-  
phane as in diuine studies in the famous vniuersitie of Oxfoꝛde (as I coniecture.) Hee hau  
there the best scholemasters that were to be gotten, and was most industrious in the Arts and con-  
tinuall exercises of learning; by means whereof he grew to be of great renowne where he liued,  
Afterward thinking of greater matters he went to Paris and thence to Rome it selfe, and at Pa-  
ris he proceeded doctor of Diuinitie, at Rome he was made Cardinal: whereupon boch Matthew  
Paris and Matthew of Westminster, produce this testimonie of him. The one in his 2. booke, the  
other in his 8. booke of Chronicles. In the yeere of our Loꝛde (say they) 1218, at the taking of  
Damiata a Citie of Egypt vnder Iohn Brenne King of Ierusalem, M. Robert Curfon an Eng-  
lishman, a most famous cleare of noble parentage and Cardinall of the Church of Rome, was  
there with Pelagius Albanensis, &c. Boston of Burie in Hopsfolke in his Catalogue repositeth,  
that he wrote diuers bookes. He flourished in the yeere aforesaid by the witnesses aforesaid. Henry  
the thirde the sonne of King Iohn being then King of England: and by the further testimonie of  
Boston this Curfon was Legate into England in ʒ dayes of Honorius the thirde bishop of Rome.

The trauailes of Raynulph Glanville Earle of Chester.



Anulphus Glanville Cestriae Comes, vir nobilissimi generis, & in vtroque iure  
eruditus, in albo illustrium virorum à me merito ponendus venit. Ita probè  
omnes Adolescentiae suae annos, legibus tum humanis, tum diuinis consecra-  
uit, vt non prius in hominem per ætatem euaserit, quam nomen decuque ab  
insigni eruditione sibi comparauerit. Cum profecti essent Francorum Heroes  
Ptolemaidem, inuito cum Ioanne Brenno Hierosolymorum Rege consilio, Dami-  
atiam Aegypti vrbe obsidendam constituebant, anno Salutis humanæ 1218. Misit illuc  
Henricus Rex, ab Honorio 3. Rom. Pontifice rogatus, cum magna armatorum manu Ranul-  
phum, ad rem Christianam iuuandam. Cuius virtus Polydoro teste, in eo bello miris omnium  
laudibus celebrata fuit. Quo confecto negotio, Ranulphus in patriam reuersus, scripsit, De legi-  
bus Angliae librum vnum, Fertur præterea, & alia quædam scripsisse, sed tempus edax rerum,  
ea nobis abstulit. Claruit anno à Seruatoris nostri natiuitate 1230 confectus senio, dum Hen-  
ricus tertius sub Antichristi tyrannide in Anglia regnaret.

¶ The same in English.

Raynulph Glanville Earle of Chester, a man of a very noble house and learned in both the  
Lawes, deserues of duetie to be here placed by me in the Catalogue of worthy and notable  
men. He applied so well all the yeeres of his youth to the studie of humane and diuine Lawes,  
that he came not so soone to the age of a man, as he had purchased to himselfe by reason of his sin-  
gular learning, renowne and honour. When the noble men of France went to Ptolomais, vpon  
on the counsell of Iohn Brenne King of Ierusalem, they resolved to bessege Damiata a Citie of  
Egypt, in the yeere 1218. And then Henry the King vpon the motion of Honorius the 3. bishop  
of Rome, sent thither this Earle Raynulph with a great power of armed souldiers, to further the  
enterprise of the Christians: whose valure in that warre (by the testimonie of Polidor Virgil)  
was marueilously commended of all men. After the ende of which busines, he being returned in-  
to his countrey, wrote a booke of the Lawes of England. It is also reported that hee wrote other  
bookes, but time the destroyer of many memorials, hath taken them from vs. He flourished in the  
yeere after the natiuitie of Christ 1230, being very aged, and in the raigne of K. Henry the 3.

The voyage of William Longespee, a notable and valiant Gentleman of England into Asia, in the yeere 1248. and in the 32. yeere of the raigne of Henric the 3. King of England.

Or, long sword.



Ewes the French King being recovered of his sickness which hee fell into, in  
the yeere 1244, vowed thereupon for a free will sacrifice to God, that he (if the  
Counsell of his Realme would suffer him,) would in his own person visite the  
Holy land; which matter was opened and debated in the Parliament of France  
helde in the yeere 1247. Where at length it was concluded, that the King ac-  
cording to his vow should take his journey into Asia, and the time thereof was

also prefixed, which should be after the feast of S. John Baptist the next yeere ensuing.

At which time William Longespee a worthy warriour, with the bishop of Worcester and certayne other great men in the Realme of England (moued with the example of the French men) prepared themselves like wise to the same iourney.

It fell out in this enterpryse, that about the beginning of October the French king assaulted and tooke Damietta, being the principall foze or hold of the Sarracens in all Egypt, Anno 1249. and hauing fortified the Citie with an able garrison left with the Duke of Burgundie, he remooued his tents from thence to goe Eastward. In whose armie followed William Longespee, accompanied with a piked number of English warriours retapning vnto him. But such was the disdain of the Frenchmen against this William Longespee & the Englishmen that they could not abide them, but slouted them after an opprobrious maner with English tailes, inso much that the French king himselfe had much adoe to keepe peare betweene them.

A foze wonne  
by the Eng-  
lishmen.

The originall cause of this grudge betweene them beganne thus. There was not farre from Alexandria in Egypt a strong foze of castles replenished with great Ladies and riche treasure of the Sarracens; which holde it chanced the saide William Longespee with his companie of English souldiers to get, more by politike dexteritie then by open foze of armes, where with hee and his retinue were greatly enriched. When the Frenchmen had knowledge hereof (they not being made ystie hereto) began to conceiue an heart burning against the English souldiers, and could not speake well of them after that.

A rich boote  
also gotten by  
the English-  
men.

It happened againe not long after, that the saide William had intelligence of a companie of riche marchants among the Sarracens going to a certaine Faire about the parts of Alexandria, hauing their camels, asses and mules, richly laden with silkes, precious iewels, spices, golde, and silver, with Cart loads of other wares, beside victuall and other furniture, whereof the souldiers then stood in great neede: he hauing secret knowledge hereof, gathered all the power of Englishmen vnto him that he could, and so by night sailing vpon the Marchants, some he slew with their guides and conducters, some he tooke, some he put to flight: the Carts with the diuers, and with him, loosing in all the skirmish but one souldier and 8. of his seruitors: of whom notwithstanding some he brought home wounded to be cured.

The iniurie of  
the French-  
men to our  
English.

This being known in the Campe, forth came the French men which all this while loytered in their paullions, and meeting this cartage by the way, tooke all the foze side waye whole to themselves, rasing the saide William and the Englishmen for aduenturing and yllusing out of the Campe without leaue or knowledge of their Generall, contrary to the discipline of warre. William said againe he had done nothing but he would answere to it, whole purpose was to haue the spoyle deuoid to the behoofe of the whole armie.

William Lon-  
gespee iustly  
foylsheth the  
French King

When this would not serue, hee being sore grieved in his minde so cowardly to be spoiled of that, which hee so aduenturously had trauailed for, went to the King to complaine: But when no reason nor complaint would serue by reason of the proude Earle of Artoys the kings brother, which vpon spight and disdain stood against him, he bidding the King farewell saide hee would serue him no longer: and so William de Longespee with the rest of his companie breaking from the French hoste went to Achon. Upon whose departure the Earle of Artoys saide, Now is the armie of Frenchmen wel ridde of these taile people, which words spoken in great despight were all taken of many good men that heard them.

But not long after when the keeper of Cayro and Babylonia, bearing a good mind to the Christian Religion, and being offended also with the Soldan, promised to deliuer the same to the French King, instructing him what course was best for him to take to accomplish it, the King hereupon in all haste sent for William Longespee, promising him a full redresse of all his iniuries before receiued: who at the Kings request came to him againe, and so ioynd with the French power.

After this it happened that the French King passing with his armie towardes Cayro aforesayde came to the great riuer Nilus, on the further part whereof the Soldan had pitched himselfe to withstand his comming ouer: there was at this time a Sarracen lately converted to Christ, seru-  
ing the Earle Robert the French Kings brother, who told him of the absence of the Soldan from his tents, and of a shallow flood in the riuer where they might easily passe ouer. Whereupon the saide Earle Robert & the Master of the Temple with a great power, esteemed to the third part of the Armie yllued ouer the Riuer, after whom followed W. Longespee with his band of English souldiers. These being ioynd together on y other side of the water, encostred the same day with the Sarracens remaining in the tents & put them to the worst. Which victorie being gotten, the French

the ensuing  
of Worcester and cer  
le of the French men)

French king assaulted  
Egypt, Anno 1249,  
Burgundie, he remoo-  
William Longespee, ac-  
n. But such was the  
shmen that they could  
tailes, in somuch that

re was not farre from  
s and riche treasure of  
his companie of Eng-  
s, where with hee and  
hereof (they not be-  
English soldiers, and

gence of a companie of  
parts of Alexandria,  
wels, spices, golde, and  
whereof the soldiers  
the power of English-  
ome he slew with the  
of the dryuers, and with  
ooke and brought with  
whom not withstanding

all this while loytered  
placide praye whole to  
and plying out of the  
ipline of warre, Wil-  
urpise was to haue the

wardly to be spoiled of  
mylaine: But when no  
oys the kings brother,  
remell saide hee would  
mpanie breaking from  
troys saide, Now is the  
in great despight were

good mind to the Chy-  
elliter the same to the  
accomplish it, the King  
redelle of all his inu-  
do so ioynd with the

towards Cayro afores-  
an had pitched himselfe  
converted to Chyll, ser-  
ence of the Soldan from  
ouer. Whereupon the  
emed to the third part of  
th his band of English  
dred the same day with  
itcopy being gotten, the  
French

French Carle surprised with pride and triumph, as though he had conquered the whole earth, would needs forwarde, deunting himselfe from the maine holde, thinking to winne the spures alone. To whome certaine sage men of the Temple, giuing him contrary counsell, aduised him not to doe so, but rather to returne and take their whole company with them, and so should they be more sure against all betraies and dangers, which might be layd principally for them. The manner of that people (they sayd) they better knewe, and had more experience thereof then he: alleaging moreover their wearied bodies, their tired horses, their famished soldiers, and the insufficiencie also of their number, which was not able to withstand the multitude of the enemies, especially at this present hunte, in which the aduersaries did well see the whole state of their dominion now to consist either in winning all, or losing all.

Which when the proude Carle did heare, being inflated with no lesse arrogancie then ignorance, with opprobrious taunts reuiled them, calling them cowardly bastards, and betrayers of the whole countrey, obiecting vnto them the common report of many, which sayd, that the land of the holy crosse might soone be trowne to Christendome, were it not for rebellious Templaries, with the Hospitallaries, and their followers.

To these contumelious rebukes, when the master of the Temple answered againe for him and his fellows, bidding them display his ensigne when he would, and where he durst, they were as ready to follow him, as he to goe before them, then began William de Longespee the worthy knight to speake, desiring the Carle to giue care to those men of experience, who had better knowledge of those countries and people then had he, commending also their counsell to be discrete and wholesome, and so turning to the master of the Temple, began with gentle wordes to mitigate him like wise. The knight had not halfe ended his talke, when the Carle taking his words out of his mouth, began to fume and sweare, crying out of those cowardly Englishmen with tailes: What a pure armie (sayd he) should we haue here, if these tailes and tailed people were purged from it, with other like wordes of villany, and much dishayne: whereunto the English knight answering againe, well, Carle Robert (sayd he) wheresoeuer you dare set your foote, my step shall goe as farre as yours, and (as I beleue) we goe this day where you shall not dare to come nere the taile of my horse, as in deede in the event it proued true: for Carle Robert would needs set forward, weening to get all the glory to himselfe before the coming of the hoste, and first inuaded a litle village of castle, or castle, called Manlor. The countrey Boones and Pagans in the villages, seeing the Christians comming, ranne out with such a maine crye and shoute, that it came to the Soldans hearing, who was nereest then our men did thinke. In the meane time, the Christians inuading and entering into the munition incircumspectly, were pelted and pashed with stones by them which stood about, whereby a great number of our men were lost, and the armie fore mayned, and almost in despaire.

Then immediatly vpon the same commeth the Soldan with all his maine power, which seeing the Christian armie to be deuided, and the brother separated from the brother, had that which he long wished for, and so inclosing them round about, that none should escape, had with them a cruell fight.

Then the earle began to repent him of his heady rashnes, but it was too late, who then seeing William the English knight doubtly fighting in the chief hunte of the enemies, cried by him most cowardly to flie, seeing God (saith he) doth fight against vs: To whome the Knight answering againe, God forbid (sayth he) that my fathers sonne should runne away from the face of a Sarracen. The Carle then turning his horse, fled away, thinking to auoid by the swiftnesse of his horse, and so taking the riuier Thafnis, oppressed with harnelle, was there sunken and drowned.

Thus the Carle being gone, the Frenchmen began to dispaire and scatter. Then William de Longespee hearing all the force of the enemies, stood against them as long as he could, wounding and slaying many a Sarracen, till at length his horse being killed, and his legges maimed, he could no longer stand, who yet notwithstanding as he was do tunc, mangled their feete and legges, and did the Sarracens much sorrow, till at last after many blowes & wounds, being stoned of the Sarracens, he yielded his life. And after the death of him, the Sarracens setting vpon the residue of the armie, whome they had compassed on euery side, deuoured and destroyed them all, in somuch that scarce one man remained alive, sauing two Templaries, one Hospitaller, and one poore rasall soldier, which brought tidings hereof to the King.

And thus by the impudent and foolish hardines of that French Carle, the Frenchmen were discomfited, and that valiant English Knight ouermatched, to the grieft of all Christian people, the gloire of the Sarracens, and the vetter destruction and ruine of the whole French armie, as afterwards it appeared.

The worthy  
answere of  
William Long  
espee to Carle  
Robert.

The cowardly  
flight of Carle  
Robert.

The valiant  
ende of William  
and Longespee.



The voyage of Prince Edward the sonne of King Henry  
the third into *Asia*, in the yeere 1270.



**A**bout the yeere of our Lord, 1267, Octobonus the Popes Legat being in England, prince Edward the sonne of King Henry, and divers other Noble men of England tooke vpon them the crosse vpon *S. Johns* day the Baptist, by the said Legates hands at Northhampton, to the reliefe of the Holy lande, and the subuersion of the enemies of the crosse of Christ. For which purpose, and for the better furnishing of the prince towards the iourney, there was granted him a subside throughout all the Realme, and in the month of May, in the yeere of our Lord, 1270. he began to set forthward,

As *Michelmas* following, he with his companie came to *Egnemortes*, which is from *Marsilia* eight leagues westward, and there taking ship againe (having a merrie & prosperous wind) within ten daies arrived at *Tuncz*, where he was with great ioy welcommed, and intertained of the Christian princes that there were to this purpose assembled, as of *Philip* the French King, whose father *Lodouicus* died a litle before, of *Carolus* the King of *Sicilia*, and the two Kings of *Nauarre*, and *Arragon*, and as this Lord Edward came thither for his father the King of England, thither came also *Henry* the sonne of the King of *Almaine* for his father, who at his returne from the voyage, was staine in a Chappell at *Viterbium*,

When prince Edward demaunded of these Kings and princes what was to be done, they answered him againe, and said, the prince of this cite and the prouince adioyning to the same, hath bene accustomed to pay tribute vnto the king of *Sicily* euery yeere: and now for that the same hath bene for the space of seuen yeeres vnpaid and moze, therefore we thought good to make inuasion vpon him. But the King knowing the same tribute to be but iustly demanded, hath now accoyding to our owne desire satisfied for the time past, and also paid his tribute before hand.

Then said he, *My Lords*, what is this to the purpose? are we not here all assembled, and haue take vpon vs the *Lords* Character to fight against the infidels & enemies of Christ? what meane you then to conclude a peace with them, God forbid we should do so, for now *J* land is plaine and hard, so that we may approach *J* holy city *Jerusalem*. Then said they, now haue we made a league with them, neither is it lawfull for vs to breake the same. But let vs returne againe to *Sicilia*, and when the winter is past we may well take shipping to *Acra*. But this counsell nothing at all liked him, neither did he see we himselfe wel pleased therewith: but after he had made them a princely banquet, he went into his closet or priuy chamber from amongst them, neither would be partaker of any of that wicked money which they had taken. They notwithstanding continuing their purpose, at the next merry wind tooke shipping, and for want of ships left 200. of their men a shoare, crying out, and piteously lamenting for the peril and hazard of death that they were in: wherewith prince Edward being somewhat moued to compassion, came backe againe to the land, and receiued and stowed them in his owne ships, being the last that went aboard.

Within seuen daies after, they arrived in the kingdome of *Sicilia*, ouer against the cite *Trapes*, calling their ankers a league from thence within the sea, for that their shippes were of great burden, and thoughtly fraught: and from the haven of the cite, they sent out barges and boates to receiue and bring such of the Nobilitie to land as would, but their hopes for the most part, and all their armour they kept still within board.

At length towards the evening, the sea began to be rough, & increased to a great tempest and a mighty: insomuch that their ships were beaten one against anothers sides, and drowned there was of them at that tempest lying at anker moze then 120. with all their armour and munition, with innumerable soules besides, and that wicked money also which they had taken before, likewise perished, and was lost.

But the tempest hurt not so much as one ship of prince Edwards, who had in number 13, nor yet had one man lost thereby, for that (as it may be presupposed) he consented not to the wicked counsell of the rest.

When in the morning the princes and kings came to the sea side, and saw all their ships drowned, and saw their men and hopes in great number cast vpon the land drowned, they had full heauie hearts, as well they might, for of all their ships and mariners, which were in number 1500. besides the common soldiers, there was no moze saued then the mariners of one onely ship, and they in this wise.

There was in that ship a good and wise Matrone, a Countesse of an Earles wife, perceiving the tempest to grow, & fearing her selfe, called to her the *W.* of the ship, & asked him whether in attempting

Legat being in Eng-  
other Noble men of  
the Baptist, by the said  
ly laude, and the sub-  
purpose, and for the bet-  
was granted him a sub-  
ur Lord, 1270. he be-

which is from Marfil-  
e & prosperous wind)  
ned, and intertained of  
ilp the French King,  
and the two Kings of  
her the King of Eng-  
ber, who at his returne

as to be done, they an-  
ning to the same, hath  
so; that the same hath  
good to make unass-  
anded, hath now acco-  
before hand.

It assembl, and haue  
of Christ what mean-  
to p land is plaine and  
haue we made a league  
e againe to Sicilia, and  
fel nothing at all liked  
made them a princely  
her would be partaker  
continuing their pur-  
of their men a boare,  
they were in: where-  
againe to the land, and  
ad.

against the citie Tra-  
shippes were of great  
ut barges and boates  
so; the most part, and

to a great tempest and  
es, and drowned there  
armour and munition,  
had taken before, like-

had in number 13, not  
uted not to the wicked

aw al their ships now-  
downen, they had full hea-  
were in number 1500.  
s of one onely ship, and

arles wife, perceiuing  
ked him whether in at-  
tempting

rempeing to the boare it were not possible to saue themselves: he answered, p to saue p ship it was  
impossible, howbeit p men that were therein by Gods helpe he doubted not. Then said the Com-  
celle, for the shippe saues no whit, saue the soules therein, and haue to cher double the value of the  
shippe: who immediately hopping the sailes with all force, ranne the shippe aground so nere the  
boare as was possible, so that with the vehemencie of the weacher and force he came withall,  
hast the ship and saued all that was within the same, as the Master had thewen, and sayd before.

Then the Kings and Princes (altering their purpose after this so great a shipwacke) returne  
ned home againe euery one vnto their owne lands. Onely Edward the sonne of the King of Eng-  
land, remained behind with his men and shipps, which the Lord had saued and preserued.

Then Prince Edwarde renouating his purpose, tooke shipping againe, and within siteme  
dayes after Easter arrivde he at Acra, and wone a land, taking with him a thousand of the best  
soldiours and most expert, and caried there a whole moneth, refreshing both his men and horses,  
and that in this space he might learne and knowe the secrets of the land. After this he tooke with  
him sixe or seven thousand soldiours, and marched forward twentye miles from Acra, and tooke  
Nazareth, and those that he founde there he slew, and afterwarde returned againe to Acra. But  
their enemies following after them, thinking to haue set vpon them at some streight or other ad-  
uantage, were espied by the Prince, and returning againe vpon them gaue a charge, and slew  
many of them, and the rest they put to flight.

The arrivall of  
Prince Ed-  
ward at Acra.

Nazareth was  
burnt by the  
Prince.

After this, about Midsummer when the Prince had vnderstanding that the Saracens began  
to gather at Cakowe which was forty miles from Acra, he marching thither set vpon them very  
early in the morning, and slew of them more then a thousand, the rest he put to flight, and tooke  
riche spoiles, marching forward till they came to a Castle named Caltrum peregrinorum, situ-  
ate vpon the sea coast, & taried there that night, & the next day they returned againe to ward Acra.

A victorie a-  
gainst the Sa-  
racens, wheres  
in 1000. of  
them were  
slaine.

In the meane season the King of Ierusalem sent vnto the Noble men of Cyprus, desiring them  
to come with speede to ayde the Christians, but they would not come, saying they would keepe  
their owne land, and goe no further. Then Prince Edward sent vnto them, desiring that at his re-  
quest they would come and ioyne in ayde with him: who immediately thereupon came vnto him  
with great preparation and furniture for the warres, saying, that at his commandment they  
were bound to doe no lesse, for that his predecessors were sometimes the gouernours of that  
their land, and that they ought alwaies to thewe their fidelitie to the Kings of England.

The Princes  
of Cyprus ac-  
knowledge no  
dueltye to the  
Princes of Eng-  
land.

Then the Christians being herewith animated, made a thirde voyage or roade, and came as  
farre as the foyle called Vincula sancti Petri, and to St. Georgius, and when they had slaine cer-  
taine there, not finding any to make resistance against them, they retired agayn, he from whence they  
came: when thus the fame of Prince Edward grew amongst his enemies, and that they began  
to stand in doubt of him, they deuiled among themselves how by some policie they might circum-  
uent him and betray him. Whereupon the great Prince and Admirall of Ioppa sent vnto him,  
saining himselfe vnder great deceit willing to become a Christian, and that he would bring with  
him a great number besides, so that they might be honourably intertained and vided of the Christi-  
ans. This talke pleased the Prince well, and perswaded him to finish the thing he had so well be-  
gun by imiting againe, who also by the same messenger sent and wrote backe vnto him diuers  
times about the same matter, whereby no mistrust should spring.

This messenger (sayeth mine Author) was one ex caute nutritis, one of the stonie hearted, that  
neither feared God, nor dreaded death.

The fift time when this messenger came, and was of the Princes seruantes searched according  
to the manner and custome what weapon and armour he had about him, as also his purse, but not  
so much as a knife could be seene about him, he was had by into the Princes chamber, & after his  
recurrence done, he pulled out certaine letters, which he deliuered the Prince from his loye, as he  
had done other's before. This was about eighthe daies after Whitsonide, vpon a Thursday, some-  
what before night, at which time the Prince was layd vpon his bed bare headed, in his Jerkin, for  
the great heate and intemperature of the weacher.

When the Prince had read the letters, it appeared by them that vpon the Saturday next fol-  
lowing, his loye would be there ready to accomplish all that he had written and promised. The  
report of these newes by the Prince to the standers by, liked them well, who drew some what  
backe to consult there of amongst themselves. In the meane time, the Spelenger kneeling, and  
making his obeisance to the Prince (questioning further with him) put his hand to his belt, as  
though he would haue pulled out some secrete letters, and suddenly he pulled out an intemomed  
knife, thinking to haue straken the Prince into the belly therewith as he laye: but the Prince lif-  
ting by his hand to defend the blowe, was stricken a great wound into the arme, and being about  
to

Prince Edward traues  
rouly wounds  
deh.

to fetch another stroke at him, the prince againe with his foote tooke him such a blowe, that he felde him to the ground: with that the prince gate him by the hand, and with such violence wapped the knife from him, that he hurt himselfe there with on the fore head, and immediately thrust the same into the belly of the Challenger and Striker, and slew him.

The princes seruants being in the next chamber not farre off, hearing the bulking, came with great haste running in, and finding the Challenger lying dead in the floore, one of them tooke by a shoole, and beate out his braynes: where at the prince was wroth for that he stroke a dead man, and one that was killed before.

But the rumour of this accident as it was strange, so it went some thoroughout all the Court, and from thence among the common people, for which they were very heauy, and greatly discouraged. To him came also the Captaine of the Temple, and brought him a costly and precious drinke against poison, least the venome of the knife should penetrate the liuely bloode, and in blessing wise sayde vnto him: did I not tell your Grace before, of the dectrine and subtiltie of this people: notwithstanding, sayde he, let your Grace take a good heart, you shall not die of this wound, my life for yours. But straight way the Surgions and Physicians were sent for, and the prince was dyed, and within fewe dayes after, the wound began to putrifie, and the flesh to looke dead and blacke: wherupon they that were about the prince, began to mutter among themselves, and were very sad and heauy.

Which thing he himselfe perceiving, said vnto them: why mutter you thus among your selues: what see you in me, can I not be healed: tell me the truth, be ye not afraid. Wherupon one said vnto him, and like your Grace you may be healed, we mistrust not, but yet it will be very painefull for you to suffer. Whay suffering (sayd he againe) restore health: yea sayth the other, on paine of losing my heade. Then sayd the prince, I commit my selfe vnto you, doe with me what you thinke good.

Then sayd one of the Physicians, is there any of your Nobles in whome your Grace repositeth speciall trust: to whome the prince answered yea, naming certaine of the Noble men that stode about him. Then said the Physician to the two, whome the prince first named, the Lorde Edmund, and the Lorde John Voylyc. And doe you also faithfully loue your Lorde and Prince: Who answered both, yea vndoubtedly. Then sayth he, take you away this Gentlewoman and Ladie (meaning his wife) and let her not see her Lorde and husband, till such time as I will you thereunto. Wherupon they tooke her from the princes presence, crying out, and wounding her hands. Then sayd they vnto her, be you contented good Ladie and Madame, it is better that one woman should weepe a little while, then that all the Realme of England should weepe a great season.

Then on the morrow they cut out all the dead and inuenedomed flesh out of the princes arme, and theye it from them, and said vnto him: how cheereth your Grace, we promise you within these fifteene dayes you shall see in your selfe abroad (if God permit) vpon your horse backe, whole and well as euer you were. And according to the promise he made the prince, it came to passe, to the no litle comfort and admiration of all his subiects.

When the great Souldan heard hereof, and that the prince was yet aliuie, he could scarcely helieve the same, and sending vnto him thre of his Nobles and princes, excused himselfe by them, calling his gods to witnes that the same was done neither by him nor his consent. Which princes and Challenger standing a looke off from the Kings some, worshipping him, fell flat vpon the ground: you (sayd the prince) doe reuerence me, but yet you loue me not. But they understood him not, because he spake in English vnto them, speaking by an Interpreter: neuertheless he honorably incertained them, and sent them away in peace.

Thus when prince Edward had bene eightene monthes in Acra, he tooke shipping about the Assumption of our Lady, as we call it, returning homeward, and after seuen weekes he arrived in Sicilia at Trapes, and from thence traueled through the mds of Apulia, till he came to Rome, where he was of the Pope honorably intertaind.

From thence he came into France, whose fame and noble prowes was there much bruted among the common people, and enuid of the Nobilitie, especially of the Earle of Chalons, who thought to haue intrapped him and his companie, as may appeare in the storie: but prince Edward continued forth his journey to Paris, and was there of the French King honorably intertaind: and after certaine dayes he went thence into Gascoyne, where he taried till that he heard of the death of the King his father, at which time he came home, and was crowned King of England, in the yeere of our Lord, 1274.

The

R

mus  
ercit  
ria coR  
riuer  
paret

1268

in the

office

armie

1280

Cont



viden

ampl

lyles,

an M

potan

botio

variet

merer

rum. F

rius q

domin

tas sep

I Oh

he sup

same

selfe i

fession

the gr

rie for

lyles

time o

bia, Sy

uch a blowe, that he feele  
ch violence wasteth the  
tarily thrust the same in

he bulking, came with  
one of them tooke by a  
stroke a dead man, and

oughout all the Court,  
sup, and greatly uscou-  
in a costly and precious  
ely blood, and in blis-  
te and subtiltie of this  
you shall not die of this  
his were sent for, and the  
sie, and the flesh to looke  
ter among themselves,

us among your selues:  
d. Whereupon one said  
et it will be very paine-  
layth the ether, on paine  
it, doe with me what you

me your Grace reposeth  
Noble men that stoude  
ed, the Lorde Edmund,  
and Prince: Who an-  
niclewoman and Ladie  
me as I will you there-  
nd winging her hands,  
o better that one woman  
o weepe a great season:  
of the princes arme, and  
omise you within these  
r horsebacke, whole and  
it came to passe, to the no

aline, he could scarcely  
es, excused himselfe by  
not his consent. Which  
hipping him, fell flat by  
me not. But they inter-  
preter: neuertheless

he tooke shipping about  
re seuen weekes he arri-  
Apulia, till he came to

as there much byted a  
Earle of Chalons, who  
he stoye: but prince Ed-  
King honourably inter-  
caried till that he heard  
crowned King of Eng-

The

## The trauaile of Robert Turneham.

**R**obertus Turneha Franciscanus, Theologix professor insignis, Lynnae celebri  
Irenorum ad ripas Ildis emporio, collegio suorum fratrum magnifice præ-  
fuit. Edwardus Princeps, cognomento Longus, Henrici tertij filius, bellicam  
expeditionem contra Sarracenos Assyriam incoletens, anno Dom. 1268. pa-  
rabat. Ad quam profectiorem quæritus quoque Orator vehemens, qui plebis  
in causa religionis animos excitaret. Turnehamus principi visus vel dignissi-  
mus est, qui munus hoc obiret. Sic tanquam signifer constitutus Assyrios vna cum Anglico ex-  
ercitu petijt, ac suum non sine laude præstitit officium. Claruit anno salutiferi partus, 1280. va-  
ria componens, sub eodem Edwardo eius nominis primo post Conquestum.

## ¶ The same in English.

**R**obert Turneham Franciscan, a notable professor of Diuinitie, was with great dignitie  
Rector of the Colledge of his Order in the famous Part Towne of Lynne, situate vpon the  
riuer of this in Norfolk. Prince Edward surnamed the Long, the soune of Henric the thirde, pre-  
pared his warlike voyage against the Sarracens dwelling in Syria, in the yeere of our Lorde,  
1268. For the which expedition some earlie preacher was sought to stirre by y peoples mindes  
in the cause of religion. And this Turneham seemed to the Prince most worthy to performe that  
office: so that he being appointed as it were a standard bearer, went into Syria with the English  
armie, and performed his duettie with good commendation. He flourished in the yeere of Christ  
1280, setting forth diuers workes vnder the same King Edward the first of that name after the  
Conquest.

## The life of Syr Iohn Mandeuill Knight, written by

Master Bale. Centur. 6.



**M**oannes Mandeuil, vir equestris ordinis, ex fano Albini oriundus, ieta a teneris  
vt aiunt, vnguiculis literarum studijs assueuerat, vt in illis bonam felicitatis  
sua partem poneret. Nam generis sui stemmata illustra, nulli vliq futura  
ducebat, nisi illa clariora doctis artibus redderet. Quare cum animum E-  
uangelica lectione ritè instituisset, transtulit sua studia ad rem Medicam, ar-  
tem inprimis liberali ingenio dignam. Sed inter alia, ingens quædam cupido  
videndi African, & Asiam, vastioris orbis partes, eius animum inuaferat. Comparato igitur  
amplo viatico, peregrè profectus est, anno à Christo nato, 1332. & domum tanquam alter V-  
lysses, post 34. annos rediens, à paucissimis quidem cognitus fuit. Interim Scythiam, Armeni-  
am Maiorem & Minorem, Aegyptum, vtramque Lybiam, Arabiam, Syriam, Mediam, Meso-  
potamiam, Persiam, Chaldaeam, Græciam, Illyrium, Tartariam, & alia spaciosi orbis regna, la-  
borioso itinere vistauit. Denique linguarum cognitione præditus, ne tot ac tantarum rerum  
varietates, & miracula quæ oculatus testis viderat, memoriæque mandauerat, obliuione præ-  
mererentur, in tribus linguis, Anglica, Gallica, & Latina, graphicè scripsit Itinerarium 33. anno-  
rum. Reuersus in Angliam, ac visis sui seculi malis, vir pius dicebat, nostris temporibus iam ve-  
rius quàm olim dici potest, virtus cessat, Ecclesia calcatur, Clerus errat, dæmon regnat, sinonia  
dominatur, &c. Leodij tandem obiit, anno Domini 1372. die 17. Nouembris, apud Guilielmi-  
tas sepultus.

## ¶ The same in English.

**I**ohn Mandeuil Knight, borne in the towne of S. Albons, was so well giuen to the studie of  
Learning from his childhood, that he seemed to plant a good part of his felicitie in the same: for  
he supposed that the honour of his birth would nothing auale him, except he could render the  
same more honourable by his knowlege in good letters. Having therefore well grounded him  
selfe in religion by reading the Scriptures, he applied his studie to the arte of Physicke, a pro-  
fession worthy a noble wit: but amongst other things, he was raiued with a mightie desire to see  
the greater partes of the world, as Asia and Africa. Having therefore provided all things necessa-  
rie for his iourney, he departed from his countrey in the yeere of Christ, 1332, and as another V-  
lysses returned home, after the space of 34. yeeres, and was then knowen to a very fewe. In the  
time of his trauaile he was in Scythia, the greater and lesse Armenia, Egypt, both Lybias, Ara-  
bia, Syria, Media, Mesopotamia, Persia, Chaldaea, Greece, Illyrium, Tartarie, and diuers other  
kingdomes

kingdomes of the world: and hauing gotten by this meanes the knowledge of the languages, least so many and great varieties, and things miraculous, whereof himselfe had bene an eye witness, should perish in oblivion, he committed his whole traueill of 33. yeeres to writing in three diuers tongues, English, French and Latine. Being arrived againe in England, and hauing seene the wickednes of that age, he gaue out this speech: In our time (sayd he) it may be spoken more cruelly then of olde, that vertue is gone, the Church is vnder foote, the Clergie is in error, the de- uill reigneth, and Simonie beareth the sway, &c.

He died at Leege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of Nouember, being there buried in the Ab- bie of the Order of the Guilielmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandeuil, in the citie  
of Leege, spoken of by Ortelius, in his booke called Itine-  
rarium Belgie, in this sort.

Fol. 15. 16.



agna & populosa Leodij suburbia, ad collium radices, in quorum iugis multa sunt, & pulcherrima monasteria, inter quæ magnificum illud, ac nobile D. Laurentio dica- tum, ab Raginardo Episcopo. Est in hac quoque regione, vel suburbijs Leodij, Guili- elmitarum Cœnobium, in quo Epitaphium hoc Ioannis à Mandeuille, excerpimus.

Epitaphium.

Hic iacet vir nobilis, D. Ioannes de Mandeuille, aliter dictus ad Barbam, Miles, Dominus de Campdi, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ professor, deuotissimus, orator, & bonorum largissi- mus pauperibus erogator, qui toto quasi orbe lustrato, Leodij diem vitæ suæ clausit ex- tremum. Anno Dom. 1371. Mensis Nouembris, Die 17.

Hæc in lapide: in quo cæzata viri armati imago, Leonem calcantis, barba bifurcata, ad caput manus benedicens, & vernacula hæc verba: *Vos qui passis sor. ms. pon. l' amon deix proies por mi.* Clipeus erat vacuus, in quo olim fuisse dicebant laminam æream, & eius in ea eidem cæzata in- signia, Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pectus lunula rubea in campo cæruleo, quem Lin- bus ambiret denticulatus ex auro. Eius nobis ostendebant, & cultros, ephipiâque, & calcaria quibus vsum fuisse asserbant, in peragrande toto serè terrarum orbe, vt clariùs testatur eius Iti- nerarium, quod typis etiam excusum passim habetur.

TABVLA PRÆSENTIS LIBRI IOAN-  
NIS MANDEVIL, SINGVLA PER OR-  
dinem capitula, & in eorum quolibet quid agitur, noti-  
ficat euidenter.

## CAPVT. I.



Ommendatio brevis terra Hierosoly-  
mitane.

2 Iter ab Anglia tam per terras  
quàm per aquas, vsque in Constan-  
tinopolim.

3 De vrbe Constantinopoli, & reliquis ibidem  
contentis.

4 Via tam per terras quàm per aquas, à Con-  
stantinopoli vsque Acharon, vel Acon.

5 Via à Francia & Flandria, per solas terras  
vsque in Hierusalem.

6 Via de Cypro vel de Hierusalem, vsque in  
Babyloniâ Egypti.

7 De Pallatio Soldani, & nominibus præteri-  
torum Soldanorum.

8 De Campo Balsami in Egypto.

9 De Nilo fluuio, & Egypti territorio.

10 De conductu Soldani.

11 De Monasterio Sinay.

12 Iter per desertum Sinay, vsque in Iudæam.

13 De cinitate Bethleem, & semita, vsque in Ie-  
rusalem.

14 De Ecclesia gloriosi sepulchri Domini in vr-  
be Ierusalem.

15 De tribus alijs Ecclesijs, & specialiter de  
Templo Domini.

16 De pluribus locis sacris extra urbem.

17 De sacris locis extra muros cinitatis.

18 De alijs locis notabilibus.

19 De Nazareth & Samaria.

20 De Territorio Galilee & Samaria.

21 De secta detestabili Sarracenorum.

22 De vita Mahometi.

23 De colloquio Aushoris cum Soldano.

24 Persuasio ad non credentes terrarum diuersi-  
tates per orbem terræ.

25 De Armenia, & Persia.

26 De Ethiopia & diamantibus, ac de infima  
& media India.

27 De foresto piperis.

28 De Ecclesia beati Thoma Apostoli.

29 De quibusdam meridionalibus insulis, &  
farina

edge of the languages, esse hab bene an etc dicitur  
es to writing in three di-  
gland, and hauing scene  
) it may be spoken moze  
ergie is in error, the de-  
g there buried in the Ab-

il, in the citie  
itine-

uorum iugis multa sunt,  
obile D. Laurentio dica-  
suburbijis Leodij, Guili-  
mandeuille, exceptimus.  
pan, Miles, Dominus de  
tor, & bonorum largifisi-  
diem vitæ suæ claufit ex-

parba bifurcata, ad caput  
amom deix proies por mi.  
nis in ea iudem celata in-  
po caruleo, quem Linn-  
ephipiæque, & calcaria  
rt clariùs testatur eius Iri-

I IOAN.  
ER OR-  
noti-

of sepulchri Domini in ur-  
Ecclesiis, & specialiter de

facris extra urbem.  
tra muros ciuitatis.  
abilibus.  
Samarie.  
lileæ & Samarie.  
ili Saracenorum.  
veti.  
thoris cum Soldano.  
credentes terrarum diuersi-  
ta.  
Persia.  
diamantibus, ac de infima

Thoma Apostoli.  
meridionalibus insulis, &  
farina

- farina & melle.
- 30 De Regno Cynocephalorum, & alijs Insulis.
- 31 De multis alijs insulis Meridionalibus.
- 32 De bona regione Mangi.
- 33 De Pygmeis, & itinere usq; prouincia Cathay.
- 34 De pallacio Imperatoris magni Chan.
- 35 De quatuor solemnitatibus, quas magnus Chan celebrat in Anno. (ris.)
- 36 De praestigijs in seculo, & de comitatu Imperatoris
- 37 Qua de causa dicitur magnus Chan.
- 38 De territorio Cathay, & moribus Tartarorum.
- 39 De sepultura Imperatoris magni Chan, & de creatione successoris.
- 40 De multis regionibus Imperio Tartaria subiectis.

- 41 De magnificentia Imperatoris India.
- 42 De frequentia Palatii, & comitatu Imperatoris presbiterio Ioanno.
- 43 De quibusdam mris per Regiones Imperij Indiae.
- 44 De loco & dispositione Vallis insanae.
- 45 De quibusdam alijs admirandis, per Indorum insulas.
- 46 De periculis & tormentis in valle insana.
- 47 De Bragmannorum insulis, & aliorum.
- 48 Aliqua de loco Paradisi terrestris per audium.
- 49 In reuertendo de Regnis Cassam, & Riboth, de Dinie Epulone, vel consimili.
- 50 De compositione huius tractatus in Cinitate Leodiensi.

**LIBER PRÆSENS, CVIVS AVTHOR EST IOANNES MANDEVILL militaris ordinis, agit de diuersis patrijs, Regionibus, Prouincijs, & insulis, Turcia, Armenia maiore & minore, Aegypto, Lybia bassa & alta, Syria, Arabia, Persia, Chaldaea, Tartaria, India, & de infinitis insulis, Ciuitatibus, villis, castris, & locis, quæ gentes, legum, morum, ac rituum inhabitant diuersorum.**

DEDICATIO LIBRI.

**R**incipi excellentissimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipue venerando, Domino Edwardo eius nominis tertio, diuina prouidentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Serenissimo, Hibernia Domino, Aquitania Duci, mari ac eim insulis occidentalibus dominanti, Christianorum encomio & ornati, vniuersarumque arma gerentium Tutori, ac Probitatis & strenuitatis exemplo, principi quoque inuicti, mirabilis Alexandri Sequaci, ac vniuerso orbi tremèdo, cum reuerentia non qua decet, cum ad salutem, & tantam reuerentiam minus sufficientes exiierint, sed quæ paritas, & possibilitas mittentis ac offerentis se extendunt, contenta tradantur.

Pars prima, continens Capita 23.

CAPVT. I.

Commendatio breuis terra Hierosolimitana.



**V**m terra Hierosolimitana, terra promissionis filiorum Dei, dignior cunctis mundi terris sit habèda multis ex causis, & præcipue illâ, quod Deus conditor cæli & mundi, ipsam tanquam dignatus fuit æstimare, vt in eo proprium filium saluatorem mundi Christum exhibuerit generi humano per incarnationem ex intermerata Virgine, & per eius conuersionem humillimâ in eadem, ac per dolorosam mortis suæ consummationem ibidem, atque inde per eius admirandam resurrectionem, ac ascensionem in cælum, & postremò quia creditur illic in fine seculi reuersurus, & omnia iudicaturus: certum est, quòd ab omnibus qui Christiano nomine à Christo dicuntur, sit tanquam à suis proprijs hæredibus diligenda, & pro cuiusque potestate ac modulo honoranda. A principibus quidem, & potentibus vt ipsam conentur de infidelium manibus recuperare, qui eam iam pridem à nobis, nostris exigentibus meritis, abstulerunt, & per annos heu plurimos possederunt: mediocribus autem & valentibus, vt per peregrinationem deuotam loca tam pia, & vestigia Christi ac discipulorum tam Sancta, principaliter in renissionem visent delictorum. Ab impotentibus verò, & impeditis, quatenus supradictos vel hortentur, vel in aliquo modo iuuent, seu certè fideles fundant orationes. Verum quia iam nostris temporibus vicius quam olim dici potest,

Loquitur secundum tempora in quibus vixit.

Virtus, Ecclesia, Clerus, demon, symonia, Cessat calcatur, errat, gignat, dominatur,

ecce iusto Dei iudicio, credita est terra tam incluta, & sacrosancta impiorum manibus Saracenorum, quod non est absq; dolore pijs mentibus audiendum, & recolendum, EGO Ioannes Mandeuill militaris ordinis saltem gerens nomen, natus & educatus in terra Angliæ, in villa sancti

sancti Albani, ducabar in Adolescentia mea tali inspiratione, vt quamvis non per potentiam, nec per vires proprias possem præfatam terram suis hæredibus recuperare, item tamen per aliquod temporis ipacium peregrinari ibidem, & salutarem aliquantulum de propinquo. Vnde in anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1322. imposui me nauigationi Marsiliensis maris & vsque in hoc temporis, Anni 1355. scilicet, per 33. annos in transmarinis partibus mansi, peregrinatus sum, ambulauit, & circuiui multas, ac diuersas patrias, regiones, prouincias, & insulas, Turciam, Anneniam maiorem, & minorem, Egyptum, Lybiam bassam & altam, Syriam, Arabiam, Persiam, Chaldeam, Ethiopie partem magnam, Tartariam, Amazoniã, Indiam minorem, & mediam, ac partem magnam de maiori, & in istis, & circum istas regiones, multas insulas, Ciuitates, vrbes, castra, villas, & loca, vbi habitant variaz gentes, aspectuum, morum, legum, ac rituum diuersorum: Attamen quia summo desiderio in terra prouisionis eram, ipsam diligentius per loca vestigiorum filij Dei perlustrare curauit, & diutius in illa steti. Quapropter & in hac prima parte huius operis iter tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi, à partibus Angliæ ad ipsam describo, & loca notabiliter sancta, quæ intra eandem sunt breuiter cõmemoro & diligenter, quatenus peregrinus tam in itinere quam in prouentione valeat hæc descriptio in aliquo deseruire.

## CAPVT. 2.

*Iter ab Angliã tam per terras quam per aquas vsq; in Constantinopolim.*

**Q**ui de Hybernia, Anglia, Scotia, Noruegia, aut Gallia iter arripit ad partes Hierosolymitanas potest saltem vsq; ad Imperialem Græciæ Ciuitatem Cõstantinopolim eligere sibi modum proficiscendi, siue per terras, siue per aquas. Et si peregrinando eligit transigere viam, tendat per Coloniam Agrippinam, & sic per Almaniam in Hungariam ad Montislanam Ciuitatem, sedem Regni Hungariæ. Et est Rex Hungariæ multum potes istis temporibus. Nam tenet & Sclauoniam, & magnam partem Regni Comanoruni, & Hungariam, & partem Regni Rusiæ. Oportet vt peregrinus in finibus Hungariæ transeat magnam Danubij flumen, & vadat in Belgradum; Hoc flumen oritur inter Montana Almaniz, & currens versus Orientem, recipit in se 40. flumina antequam finiatur in mare. De Belgrade intratur terra Bulgariæ, & transitur per Pontem petrinum fluij Maroy, & per terram Pyncenars, & tunc intratur Græcia, in Ciuitates, Sternes, Asinopape, & Andrinopolis, & sic in Constantinopolim, vbi communiter est sedes Imperatoris Græciæ. Qui autem viam eligit per aquas versus Constantinopolim nauigare, accipiat sibi portum, prout voluerit, propinquum siue remotum, Marsiliæ, Pisi, Ianuz, Venetiz, Romæ, Neapoli, vel alibi: sicque transeat Tusciam, Campaniam, Italiam, Corsicam, Sardiniam, vsque in Siciliam, quæ diuiditur ab Italia per brachium maris non magnum. In Sicilia est mons Ætna iugiter ardens, qui ibidem appellatur Mons Gibelle, & præter illum habentur ibi loca Golhan vbi sunt septem leucæ quasi semper ignem spirantes: secundum diuersitatem colorum harum flammarum estimant incolæ annum fertilem fore, vel sterilem, sicum vel humidum, calidum, vel frigidum: hæc loca vocant caminos Infernalis, & à finibus Italiæ vsque ad ista loca sunt 25. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus inueniuntur frõdes, flores, & fructus per totum annum, etiam in profunda hyeme. Regnum Siciliæ est bona, & grandis insula habens in circuiu ferè leucas 300. Et ne quis erret, vel de facili reprehendat quoties scribo leucam, intelligendum est de leuca Lombardica, quæ aliquantò maior est Geometrica; & quoties pono numerum, subintelligatur ferè, vel circiter, siue citra, & dictam intendo ponere, de 10. Lombardicis leucis: Geometrica autem leuca describitur, vt notum est, per hos versus.

*Quinq; pedes passum faciunt passus quog. centum  
Viginti quinque staduum, si millia des que  
Octo facis stadia, duplicatum dat tibi leuca.*

Postquam ita que peregrinus se credidit Deo & mari, si prospera sibi fuerit nauigatio, non ascendet in terram, donec intret aliquem portum Græciæ, scilicet, Myrroyt, Valonz, Durasc, siue alium prout Diuinæ placuerit voluntati, & exhinc ibit Constantinopolim prædictam, quæ olim Byzantium, vel Vesaton dicebatur. Hic autem notandum est, quod à portu Venetiæ, vsq; ad Cõstantinopolim directè per mare octingentæ leucæ, & 80. communiter computantur ibi contentæ.

## CAPVT. 3.

*De vrbe Constantinopoli, & reliquis ibidem contentis.*

**C**onstantinopolis pulchra est Ciuitas, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterque murata, cuius duæ partes includuntur mari Hellesponto, quod plurimi modò appellant brachium sancti

Ioannis Mandeuil peregrinatus, per tres & triginta annos continuata.

Regis Hungariæ olim potentia.

Mons Ætna. Acolides insula.

Temperies Siciliæ insule.

Leuca Lombardica. Quid sit dicta.

Portus Græciæ.

S.  
fano  
ta te  
nun  
ac i  
seu  
dia  
& e  
de il  
fed  
Sop  
clef  
& c  
nam  
pus  
quo  
hanc  
imag  
imag  
rati  
Græ  
aliqu  
Flex  
plij,  
& ex  
terra  
tum  
fuisse  
puta  
Thra  
timi  
mino  
nium  
ti an  
aqua  
tione  
Impe  
ventu  
ri, &  
Virgi  
temp  
Virgi  
& dic  
larim  
riant  
tis su  
dicen  
Rom  
tenti  
crear  
fert d

A  
ucrea

is non per potentiam,  
are, itcm tamen per a-  
de propinquo. Vnde  
nsis maris & vsque in  
s, & insulas, Iurciam,  
syrriam, Arabiam, Per-  
nam minoreni, & me-  
nultas insulas, Ciuita-  
um, legum, ac rituum  
ipsam diligentius per  
propter & in hac prima  
gliz ad ipsam descri-  
& diligenter, quate-  
n aliquo deseruit.

*inopolim.*

partes Hierosolymi-  
inopolim eligere sibi  
ligit transigere viam,  
ad Montisiant Ciui-  
mporibus. Nam tenet  
& partem Regni Rus-  
sij flumen, & vadat in  
us Orientem, recipit  
a Bulgaria, & transitur  
ratur Græcia, in Ciui-  
bi communiter est fe-  
ntinopolim nauigare,  
z, Pisi, Ianuz, Vene-  
am, Corsicam, Sardi-  
magnum. In Sicilia est  
er illum habentur ibi  
dum diuersitatem com-  
em, siccum vel humi-  
nibus Italiz vsque ad  
inueniuntur frondes,  
in Sicilia est bona, &  
de facili reprehendat  
tantò maior est Geo-  
itra, & dietam inten-  
tur, vt notum est, per

uerit nauigatio, non  
by, Valonæ, Durace,  
olim prædictam, quæ  
ortu Venetiz, vsq; ad  
iter computantur ibi

sancti Georgij, & aliqui Buke, Troia vetus, Versus locum vbi hoc brachium exit de mari est la-  
tæ terræ planities, in quâ antiquitus stetit Troia Ciuitas de qua apud Poetas mira leguntur, sed  
nunc valde modica apparent vestigia Ciuitatis. In Constantinopoli habentur multa mirabilia,  
ac insuper multæ sanctorum venerandæ reliquie, ac super omnia, preciosissima Crux Christi,  
seu maior pars illius, & tunica inconfutis, cum spongia & arundine, & vno clauorum, & dimi-  
dia parte coronæ spinæ, cuius altera medietas seruatur in Capella Regis Franciæ, Parisijs. Nani  
& ego indignus diligenter pluribus vicibus respexi partem vtramque: dabatur quoque mihi  
de illa Parisijs vnica spina, quam vsque nunc precise conseruo, & est ipsa spina non lignea  
sed velut de iuncis marinis rigida, & pûgitua. Ecclesia Cõstantinopolitana in honorem sancte  
Sophiæ, id est, ineffabilis Dei sapientiæ dedicata dicitur, & nobilissima vniuersarum mundi Ec-  
clesiarum, tam in schemate artificiosi operis, quam in seruatis ibi sacrosanctis Reliquijs: nam  
& continet corpus sanctæ Annæ matris nostræ Domine translatum illuc per Reginam Hele-  
nam ab Hierosolymis: & corpus S. Lucæ Euangelistæ translatum de Bethania Iudeæ; Et Cor-  
pus beati Ioannis Chrysostomi ipsius Ciuitatis Episcopi, cum multis alijs reliquijs preciosis;  
quoniam est ibi vas grande cum huiusmodi reliquijs velut marmoræ de Petra Enhydros,  
quod iugiter de sciplo defudans aquam, semel in anno inuenitur suo suatore repletum. Ante  
hanc Ecclesiam, super columnam marnioream habetur de ære aurato eperæ suiorio, magna  
imago Iustiniani quondam Imperatoris super equum sedentis: fuit autem primitus in manu  
imaginis fabricata sphaera rotunda, quæ iam diu è manu sua sibi cecidit, in signum quòd Imper-  
rator multarum terrarum dominium perdidit. Namque solebat esse Dominus, Romanorum,  
Græcorum, Asiæ, Syriæ, Iudeæ, Ægypti, Arabiæ, & Persiæ, at nunc solum retinet Græciam, cum  
aliquibus terris Græciæ adiacentibus, sicut Calitrum, Cholchos, Ortigo, Tylbriam, Minos,  
Flexon, Melos, Carpatas, Lemnon, Thraciam, & Macedoniam totam: Suntq; sub eo Caypo-  
plij, & alti Pynntardi, ac maxima pars Commannorum. Porrò imago tenet manum eleuatam  
& extentam in orientem, velut in signum cominationis ad Orientales infideles. De prædicta  
terra Thraciæ fuit Philosophus Aristoteles oriundus in Ciuitate Stageres, & est ibi in loco  
tumba eius velut altare, vbi & singulis annis certo diè celebratur à populo festum illius, ac si  
fuisse sanctus. Temporibus ergò magnorum consiliorum conueniunt illuc sapientes terræ, re-  
putantes sibi per inspirationem immitti consilium optimum de agendis. Item ad diuisionem  
Thraciæ & Macedoniæ sunt duo mirabiliter alti montes, vnus Olympus, alter Athos, cuius vl-  
timi vmbra oriente sole apparet ad 76. miliaria, vsque in insulam Lemnon. In horum cacu-  
mine montium ventus non currit, nec aer mouetur, quod frequentèr probatum est per inge-  
nium Astronomorum, qui quandoque ascendentes scripserunt literas in puluere, quas sequenti  
anno inueniunt quasi recentèr scriptas, & quia est ibi purus aer sine mixtione, elementis  
aque, necesse est vt ascendentes habeant secum spongas aquæ plenas pro anhelitus respira-  
tione: In prædicta autem sanctæ sophiæ Ecclesia, (sicut ibidem dicitur,) voluit olim quidam  
Imperator corpus cuiusdam sui defuncti sepelire cognati: cuius cum foderetur sepulchrum,  
ventum est ad mausoleum antiquum in quo super incineratum corpus iacebat discus auri pu-  
ri, & erat sculptum in eo literis Græcis, Hebraicis, & Latinis sc. Iesus Christus nascetur de  
Virgine, & ego credo in eum. Et erat simul inscripta data defuncti secundum modum illius  
temporis, quæ continebat duo millia annorum ante incarnationem ipsius Christi de Maria  
Virgine. Seruatur quoque hodierno tempore eadem patina in Theaurario eiusdem Ecclesiæ,  
& dicitur illud corpus fuisse Hermetis, sapientis. Omnes quidem, terrarum, regionum, & insu-  
larum homines, qui isti Greco obediunt Imperatori sunt Christiani, & baptizati, tamen va-  
riant singuli in aliquo articulo fidem suam a nostra vera fide Catholica, & diuersificant in mul-  
tis suos ritus à ritibus Romanæ Ecclesiæ, quia iamdiu omiserunt obedire Pontifici Romano,  
dicentes, quoniam beatus Petrus Apostolus habuit sedem in Antiochia, quamuis passus fuit in  
Roma: Idcirco patriarcha Antiochenus habet in illis Orientalibus partibus similem potesta-  
tem, quam Pontifex Romanus in istis Occidentalibus. Imperator etiam Constantinopolitanus  
creat eorum patriarcham, & instituit pro sua voluntate Archiepiscopos, & Episcopos, & con-  
fert dignitates, & beneficia, similiter inuenta occasione destituit, deponit, & priuat.

Ecclesia san-  
ctæ Sophiæ.

Regina Hele-  
na Britannæ.

Imago Iusti-  
niani.

Patriarchæ  
Antiocheni  
auctoritas.

C A P V T. 4.

*Via tamper terras quamper aquas à Constantinopoli vsque à Acharon.*

"Vel Achon.

**A** Constantinopoli qui voluerit ire pedes, transibit statim nauigio Brachium Sancti  
Georgij quod satis est strictum, ibique ad Rughinal quod est forte castrum, inde ad Pul-  
uereal, & hinc ad castrū Synopolū. Ex tunc intrat Capadociam, terram latam sed plenam altis  
montibus,



- montibus, deinde Turciam ad portum Theueron, & ad Ciuitatem ita dictam, nunc munitam firmis turribus, ac muris, per quam transit fluiuius Reglay. Postea tranfit sub Alpbibus Noyremont, & per valles de Mallenbrinis in districto Rupium, ac per villam Doronatum, & alias villas adiacentes fluiuijs Reglay, & Granconia, sicque peruenit ad Antiochiam minorem super Reglay, quæ vocatur nobilior Ciuitas Syriæ: Notandum autem quod Regnum olim dictum Syria, modo communiter vocatur Suria. Illa verò Antiochia, est magna, pulchra, ac firma, licet quandoque maior, pulchrior, ac firmior fuerit. Tunc autem transitur per Ciuitates Lantoniam, Gibellam, Tortusiam, Toruplam, & Berythum super mare vbi sanctus Georgius fertur occidisse Draconem. Hinc pergitur in Ciuitatem nunc dictam Acon, quondam Prolomaidem, antiquitus Acharon, quæ tempore quo eam vltimò Christiani tenebant circa annù incarnationis Domini 1280. erat Ciuitas valde fortis, sed modò apparent eius magnæ ruinæ. Porro a Constantinopoli poterit peregrinus facilius versus Hierosolymorù partes per mare nauigare quàm per terras peregrinare prædictas, si deus illi propitijs fuerit, & mare fidè cõseruauerit. Qui ergò a Cõstantinopoli iter trãsire nauigando disponit, tendat ad Ciuitatem Myrnam vbi nunc ossa Sancti Nicholai venerantur, & sic procedendo per multa maritima loca veniet ad Insulam Sio vbi crescit gummi masticum lucidum: Inde ad Insulam Pathmos Sancti Ioannis Euangelistæ, & ad Ephesum vbi idem noscitur sepultus: hanc totam minorem Asiam tenent nunc pessimi Turci, & eam appellant minorem Turciam. Post Ephesum nauigatur per plures Insulas vsq; Pateram Ciuitatem, vnde oriundus fuit beatus Nicholaus, ac per Myrtham vbi stetit Ephesus, vbi nascuntur fortia vina valde, deinde ad Insulam Cretæ, hinc Coos postea Langò, vnde Hippocrates Medicus dicitur natus: tuncq; ad grandem Insulam Rhodum: & sciendũ quod a Constantinopoli vsq; Rhodũ, per mare dicuntur ducẽtæ octuaginta leucæ. Hanc insulam totam tenent, & gubernant Christiani Hospitalarij nunc tẽporis, quæ quondam Colosse dicebatur: nempe & multi Saracenorum adhuc eam sic appellant, vnde & Epistola, quam beatus Paulus ad habitatores huius Insulæ scripsit, intitulabatur ad Colossenses. Ab hoc loco nauigando in Cyprum, aspicitur absorptio Ciuitatis Sathalia, quæ sicut olim Sodoma dicitur perijisse, propter vnicum crimen contra naturam a quodam Iuvene petulante commissum. Sciendum quod a Rhodo ad Cyprum feruntur plenè quingentæ quinquaginta leucæ: Cyprus magna, & pulchra est Insula habens Archiepiscopatũ, cum quinque Episcopatibus suffraganeis: Illuc Famogosta, est vnus de principalibus portibus mundi, in quo ferè omnium mercatores conueniunt nationum, tam Christianorum, quam multorum Paganorum, & similiter apud portum Limechon. Est ibi & Abbacia ordinis sancti Benedicti, in monte sanctæ Crucis, vbi dicitur saluati latronis seruari crux, qui in eadem cruce audiuit à Christo, Hodie mecum eris in Paradiso. Corpus etiam sancti Hylanonis seruatur ibi, in castro Damers quod Rex Cyprici diligentiſſimè custodiri: Vltra modum fortia vina nascuntur in Cypro, quæ primo rubra, post annum albescunt, & quo vetustiora, eo albiora, ac magis odorifera, ac fortia efficiuntur. Vterius paucissimæ villæ, aut Ciuitates sunt Christianorum, sed ferè omnia Saraceni possident infideles: et proh dolor, ab Anno 1200. incarnationis Domini aut circa, pacificè tenuerunt. Qui autem a Cypro prosperè legit spacia maris, poterit in duobus naturalibus diebus peruenire in portum Ioppæ, qui Iasse nunc nuncupatur, & proximus est a Ierusalem, distans 16. tantum leucas, hoc est dieta cum dimidia. Et sciendum quod circa medium, inter Cyprum, & Iasse est portus Tyri quondam munitissimæ Ciuitatis, hanc dum vltimo Saraceni à Christianis ceperunt turpissimè destruxerunt, custodientes iam curiosè portum, timore Christianorum. Ille portus non vocatur modò Tyrus, sed Sur, Nam & ab illa parte est ibi introitus terræ Surie. Ante istam Ciuitatem Tyrum habetur quidam lapis, super quem dominus noster Iesus Christus sedendo suis discipulis vel populis prædicauit. Vnde, & Christiani olim super hunc locum construxerunt Ecclesiam in nomine Saluatoris. Peregrinus vero qui ab hoc loco vult peregrinari, morosè sciat, quod ad octo leucas à Tyro in orientem est Sarcpta Sydoniorum, vbi olim Elias Propheta filium viduæ suscitauit a morte. Itemq; sciat, quod a Tyro in vnica dieta pergere potest in Achon, siue Acharon supra scripta. Circa Acon versus mare, ad 120. stadia, quorum 16. leucam constituunt, est mons Carmeli, vbi morabatur præfatus Elias, & super alium montem Villa Saffra vbi sanctus Iacobus, & Ioannes germani Apostoli nascebantur, & in quorum natiuitatis loco pulchra habetur Ecclesia. Item propè Acon ad ripam dictam Beleon, est fossa multum vtilis, & mirabilis quæ dicitur fossa Mennon, hæc est rotunda circumferentia, cuius diameter continet prope 100. cubitos, plena alba & resplendente arena, & munda ex qua conficitur mundum & perlucidum vitrum. Pro hac arena venit per aquas, & per terras, & exportatur manibus & vehiculis propè & procul, & quantumcunq; de die exhauritur, repleta manè altero reperitur: Et est in fossa venus grandis & iugis, qui mirabiliter arenam commouere videtur. Si quis autem vitrum de hac

arena

ictam, nunc munitain  
 iur sub Alpihus Noy-  
 Doronorum, & alias  
 Antiochian mino-  
 quod Regnum olim  
 magna, pulchra, ac fir-  
 nitur per Ciuitates La-  
 sanctus Georgius fer-  
 quondam Ptolomai-  
 bant circa annū incar-  
 uos magnæ ruinz. Porro  
 res per mare navigare  
 fidē cōseruauerit. Qui  
 tem "Myrnam vbi nunc  
 loca veniet ad Insulam  
 ti Ioannis Euangelistæ,  
 am tenent nunc pessimi  
 r per plures Insulas vñq;  
 icam vbi sitit Ephesus,  
 oltea Lango, vndē Hy-  
 & sciendū: quod a Con-  
 Hanc insulam totam. re-  
 Colosse dicebatur: nam  
 beatus Paulus ad habi-  
 nauigando in Cyprum,  
 perijisse, propter vnicum  
 andum quod a Rhodo ad  
 na, & pulchra est Insula  
 ue Famogosta, est vnus  
 mueniunt nationum, tam  
 Limechon. Est ibi &  
 r saluati latronis feruari  
 diso. Corpus etiam sancti  
 ntissimē custodiri: Vltra  
 n albesunt, & quo vetu-  
 cissimæ villæ, aut Ciuita-  
 et pro dolor, ab Anno  
 a Cypro prosperè legit  
 in Ioppæ, qui Iasse nunc  
 oc est diæta cum dimidia:  
 i quondam munitissimæ  
 è destruxerunt, custodi-  
 ocatur modò Tyrus, sed  
 uiratem Tyrum habetur  
 sicipulis vel populis præ-  
 ecclesiam in nomine Sal-  
 at, quod ad odo leucas à  
 filium viduæ suscitauit a  
 mon, siue Acharon supra  
 nsistunt, est mons Car-  
 a vbi sanctus Iacobus, &  
 o pulchra habetur Eccle-  
 s, & mirabilis quæ dicitur  
 inet prope 100. cubitos,  
 n & perlucidum vitrum.  
 us & vehiculis propè &  
 eritur: Et est in fossa ven-  
 quis autem vitrum de hac  
 arena

arena factum in fossa reponeret, conuerteretur iterum in arenam, & qui imponeret fructum metalli, verteretur in vitrum: nonnulli reputant hanc fossam esse spiraculum maris arenosi, de quo mari aliquid locuturus sum in sequentibus. Ab Acon via versus Ierusalem bifurcatur: nam qui tenet vnum latus potest ire secus Iordanem fluuium, in Ciuitatem Damascum, qui verò aliud, ibit in tribus aut quatuor diebus Gazam, de qua olim fortis Samson asportauit nocte fores portarum: deinde in Cesaream Philippi, & Ascalonem, & Ioppam portum supradictum, Hincque in Rama, & Castellum Emaus, & sic in Ierusalem urbem sacrosanctam.

C A P V T. 5.

*Via à Francia aut Flandria per solas terras vsque Ierusalem.*

**I**teribus, quæ per terras, & per mare a nostris partibus ducunt in terram promissionis descriptis, restat breuiter dicendum de alia via, per quam omnino mare transcendendum non est, videlicet per Almaniã, per Bohemiã, per Ptuissiam, & hinc per terram Paganorum regni Lituaniæ, & sic per longam, & pessimam terram primæ Tartariæ vsque in Indiam: Dico autem Tartariæ primæ, quoniam de hac exiit primus Imperator totius Tartariæ, qui semper vocatur Grand Can, quo vix maiorem mundus habet terrenum Dominum, excepto Imperatore superioris Indiæ, de quibus in secunda & tertia huius tractatus partibus, aliquanto est diffusus narrandum. Cuncti principes huius primæ Tartariæ, quorum summus semper vocatur Bachu, & moratur in Ciuitate Horda, reddunt Imperatori Grand Can, magna tributa. Est autem hæc prima Tartaria terra misera & sabulosa, & infructuosa: hoc enim scio, quod per aliquod tempus steti in ea, & perambulauit Insulas, regiones, & terras circumiacentes, scilicet, Russiæ, Inssa, Craco, Latton, Restau, & alias nonnullas: crescunt namque in ista Tartaria modica blada, pauca vna, & fructuum, ac frugum parua copia, exceptis herbis pro pastu Bestiarum, quarum ibi est abundantia: nam carnibus illarum vescuntur pro omnibus cibarijs, ius earum sorbentes, & pro potu bibentes lac de omni genere bestiarum. Quin etiam pauperiores manducant canes, lupos, catos, ratos, talpas, ac inures, ac huiusmodi bestiolas omnes: sed nec aliquis Princeps aut prælatus comedit vltra semel in die, & hoc parè, vel parcissimè: & sunt homines valde immundi, quia non nisi benè diuites vtuntur mappis, linteaminibus, aut lineis indumentis: sed nec habent copiam lignorum, vnde & fimum bouum, ac omnium bestiarum desiccatum ad solem accipiunt pro ignis materia, vbi se calefaciunt, & coquendo coquunt. Aestiuo tempore, cadunt ibi frequenter tempestates tonitruorum, fulminū, & grandinum, quibus domus, arbores, bestiæ, & homines, comburuntur, euelluntur, & occiduntur. Nam & quandoque subrepentè oritur ibi calor immoderatus, & improuiso frigus immoderatum. Deinq̃ cum terra illa, se multum inclinet ad polum Septentrionalem, fortius ibi gelare solet, & frequentius, ac diutius quàm ad partes nostras, vnde & quasi omnes habent ibi stupas, in quibus manducant, & operantur. Nec valet à nostris partibus ingredi ad illam nisi tempore gelicidij, quod ad introitum eius sunt tres dietæ, de via molli, aquatica, & profunda, in qua dum viator putaret se stare securum, profundetur in lutum ad tibias, ad genua, ad femora vel ad renes: hoc ergo sciendum quod paucissimi tendunt per hanc terram in viam promissionis: Nam iter est graue, distortum, longum, & periculosum sicut audistis, imò periculosius quàm scribo.

Horda est multitudo viuens in agris.

Mores Tartarorum.

Hycne præcipue iter faciunt per terram.

C A P V T. 6.

*Via de Cypro vel Ierusalem vsque in Babyloniam & Egypti.*

**D**escripto sicut potui tripliciter itinere in terram sanctam, restat videre de duabus alijs vijs, quæ incidenter solent contingere peregrinis: Multi namque illorum ex speciali deuotione desiderant visitare ossa beatissimæ Virginis Catharinæ in monte Sinay: Cum igitur ipsis sit necessarius Soldani Babyloniar conductus eo quod Imperator sit, & dominus omnium illarum terrarum, quidam postquam perueniunt in Cyprū tendunt primò in Babyloniam & Egypti, pro impetrando conductu securo, atque inde pergentes in Sinay vadunt in Ierusalem. Quidam verò postquam perfecterunt peregrinationem Hierosolymitanam, pergunt per terras ad Soldanum pro conductu, & tum in Sinay, propter quod vtramque viam breuiter describo. De Cypro in Egyptum itur per mare relinquendo Hierosolymorum terram ad manum sinistram, & accipitur primus portus Egypti, dictus Damaia: ibi quondam fuit Ciuitas valde munita, sed quod Christiani illam, prima & altera vice ceperunt, Sarraceni vltimò destruxerunt, & aliam remotius à mari eiusdem nominis Ciuitatem ædificauerunt: Hinc venitur in portum Alexandriae Egypti, quæ est Ciuitas magna, pulchra, & fortis valde, sed absq; aquis potabilibus. Adducit tamen sibi per longos ductus aquam Nili fluminis in cisternis ad potandum. Alexandria nobilis 30. stadia habet longitudinis decemque inlatum. In ea restant adhuc

Babylonia Egypti.

Damaia portus Aegypti.

plures Ecclesiæ à tempore Chriſtianorum, ſed Sarraceni non ſuſtinentes pi&cturas San&torum omnes parietes albauerunt. De Alexandria per terras venit in Babyloniam Ægypti, quæ etiã ſun data tacet ſupra prædictum Nilum fluium: Dicitur autem hæc Babylonia minor ad differentiam magnæ Babyloniæ, ſive Babel, ubi Deus linguas confudit olim, quæ tendendo inter Orientem & Septentrionem diſtat ab iſta dietas circiter 40. nec eſt ſub poteſtate Soldani, ſed Imperatoris Perſarum, qui illam tenet in homagio ab Imperatore Cathay, dicto, Grand Can. Hæc autem Babylonia Ægypti eſt Ciuitas grãdis & fortis, tamen valdè prope eam eſt alia maior dicta Cayr, in qua vt ſæpius reſidet Soldanus, quanquam Babylonia nomen per ſeculum diſſuſus eſt cognitum. Altera autem via peregrinorum de Hieroſolymis pro conductu tendentium ad Soldanum talis eſſe poteſt. Primò tendant de Ierusalem in ſuprà dictam Gazam Pa-leſtinorum, inde ad Caſtellum Dayre, atque ex tunc exitur de terra Syriæ, & intratur à ſuperiori parte in deſertum longum arenofum, & ſterile, propè ad ſeptem dietas, quod lingua eorum vocatur Abilech: tamen per illud inueniantur plura hoſpitia, ubi haberi poſſunt ad victum neceſſaria. Et qui in cundo rectum iter tenet, venit in Ciuitatem dictam, Balbes, quæ eſt ad finem Regni Halapiæ: Sicque expleto Deſerto, intratur terra Ægypti, quam ipſi Canopat vocant, & aliqui Merſur, atque ex tunc in Babyloniam, & Cayr prætatam: In iſta verò Babylonia habetur pulchra Eccleſia Mariæ virginis, in loco ubi morabatur cum filio ſuo, & Ioseph tempore ſuæ figuræ, & creditur ibi contineri corpus Virginis Barbaræ.

## CAPVT. 7.

*De Pallatio Soldani, ac numero, & nominibus præteritorum Soldanorum.*

**C**ayr ciuitas Impetialis & Regalis eſt valdè munita, & grandis, decorata ſede propria Sarracenorum Regni, ubi Dominus eorum Soldanus cõmuniter reſidere ſolet, in ſuo Calahelick, id eſt, caſtro forti, & lato, ac in euecta rupe ſtatuto. Siquidem Soldanus eorum lingua ſonant nomen ſimilis maietatis, quo nos in Latino dicimus Cæſarem, aut Imperatorem. Pro cuſtodia huius Caſtri ſunt ibidem omni tempore morantes ſex millia perſonarũ, & pro ſeruendo, dum ibi reſidet, ipſi Soldano, qui omnes de Curia eadem accipiunt neceſſaria, & donatiua. Iſte Imperator Soldanus, eſt Rex, Dominuſque quinque Regnorum magnorum: Canopat, hoc eſt, Ægypti; totius Iudææ, ſicut olim Dauid, & Salomon; Halapiæ, in terra Machyriæ, cuius ciuitas Damafcus olim erat principalis; Arabiæ, quod eſt regnum valdè protenſum, & cum hiſ poſſidet dominatus omnium Caliphorum: ad quod ſciendum, quòd quandoque fuerunt tres Caliphorum dominatus: Ex quibus primus Caliphus qui dicebatur Chaldegorum, & Arabum, erat ſedes in Ciuitate Baldac. Alter Barbarorum & Affricorum, cuius erat ſedes in Maroco ſuper Mare Hiſpaniæ. Tertius Ægypti: Eſt autem Caliphus inter eos, velut inter nos Imperator, & Papa ſimul, ſcilicet, Dominus Temporalium, & ſpiritualium. Exactis igitur Caliphis circa annum incarnationis Chriſti 1150, primus Soldanorum fuit nominatus Saraconſecundus filius eius, Saladin, qui Anno 1190. cum Turcis totam ferè terram promiſſionis abſtulit à Chriſtianis. Et ſub quo Richardus Rex Angliæ cum alijs principibus Chriſtianis cuſtodiebat paſſum Rupiũ, ne ille ſicut propoſuerat tranſire, profeciſſet vltra. Tertius Melachifala, à quo ſan&ctus Ludouicus rex Franciæ captiuabatur in bello. Quartus Turquenã, qui Regem prædictũ redimi dimiſit pro pecunia, Quintus Meleth, Sextus Melethemes, Septimus Melec dayr, ſub quo Edwardus Rex Angliæ intrauit: cum noſtris Syriam, damnificans plurimum Sarracenos. Octauus Melec ſalle. Nonus Elphi, qui Anno Incarnationis Domini 1289. deſtruxit in illis partibus enormiter Chriſtianos, & penitus omnes inde fugauit, atque recepit Tripolim Ciuitatem. Decimus Melethafferat: hic cepit Anno Domini 1291. in octaua paſchæ Accharon, fugatis vel occiſis ex ea omnibus Chriſtianis. Exinde amiſſis ſuccedentium nominibus, ſextus decimus dicebatur vel dicitur Melec Mandibron: ſub iſto ſteti ego per aliquod tempus ſtipendiarius in gueris ſuis contra Bedones, qui ei tunc temporis rebellabant. Horum etiam mores, & continentiam populorum, in ſequentibus declarabo: ſicut veraciter fateri poſſum, dum ad filiam cuiuſdam ſui Principis me obulit vxorare, & magnis dotare poſſeſſionibus, dummodò Chriſtiani- tati reſignafſem: Eumque dimiſi Soldanum, quando de partibus illis receſſi. Soldanus præter homines ad ſua caſtra ſeruanda deputatos, poteſt educere quoties velit in exercitum de hominibus de ipſius ſtipendijs viuentibus, & ad eius iugiter mandata paratis, 20. millia armatorum, ex ſola Ægypto: Et ex Syria, & Turcia, & alijs terris, 50. millia exceptis ruralibus, & Ciuitatum comitatibus, qui ſunt velut innumerabiles. Miles quidem ſtipendiarius recipit de Curia pro anni Tempore 121. aureos, & ſub tali ſtipendio ſeruit, cum tribus equis & vno Camelo. Quadringenti, vel Quingenti horum militum ordinati ſunt ſub vno rectore, qui vocatur Admirabilis: Et ille ſolus recipit de Curia tantum, ſicut omnes ſibi ſubditi: Notandum quod nunquam extraneus Nunciuſ ire permittitur ad Soldanum niſi auratis indutus veſtibus,

vel

Cayr ciuitas.

Abilech deſertum.

Caliphus quidlit.

Series Soldanorũ Ægypti.

Richardus Rex Angliæ.

Edwardus princeps Angliæ, Regis Henr. 3. filius.

Dominus Mandenil ſtipendiarius Soldani contra Arabes.

Potentia Soldani Ægypti.

es picturas Sanctorum  
iam Egypti, quæ etiã  
yonia minor ad diffe-  
n, quæ tendendo inter  
poreftate Soldani, fed  
ay, dicto, Grand Can.  
prope eam est alia ma-  
nomen per feculum  
nis pro conductu ten-  
prã dictam Gazam Pa-  
, & intratur à Superi-  
quod lingua eorum vo-  
ffunt ad victum neces-  
albes, quæ est ad finem  
ipfi Canopiat vocant, &  
erò Babyloniam habetur  
& Ioseph tempore suæ

vel panno Tartarico, aut camoleoto ad modum nobilium Sarracenorum: & oportet vt vbi-  
que primum nunciis Soldanum aspiciat, siue ad fenestras, siue alibi, vt cadat ad genua, vel pro-  
tinus ofculetur terram, quia talem reuerentiam facere, signum est quòd ille deiderat ei loqui.  
Quamdiu autem tales loquuntur sibi, aut literas ostendunt, circumstant Apparitores extensis  
brachijs, leuatos tenentes mucrones, gladios, gezas, & mackas ad ferendum, & occidendum, si  
quid dictum vel nunciatum fuerit, quòd Imperatori displiceat, quàm citò ille signauerit truci-  
dari. Veruntamen sciendum est, quòd nullus hominis personaliter ab ipso quidquam petentis  
confuevit repellere preces rationabiles, & contra eorum leges aut mortes non venientes. Porrò  
ego in Curia manens, vidi circa Soldanum vnum venerabilem, & expertum medicum, & de no-  
stris partibus oriundum: solet namque circa se retinere diuersarum medicos nationum, & quos  
nominandæ audierit esse famæ: Nos tamen rarò inuicem conuenimus ad colloquium, eò quòd  
meum seruitium cum suo modicum congruebat: longo autem postea tempore, & ab illo loco  
remotè, videlicet in Leodij ciuitate, composui hortatu & adiutorio eiusdem venerabilis viri  
hunc tractatum, sicut in fine operis totius enarrabo. Itèmq; in Cayr ciuitate ducuntur ad fo-  
rum communiter tam viri quàm mulieres aliarum legum, & nationum venales, & ad modum  
bestiarum venduntur pro pecunia ad seruendum in suis artificijs. Habetur quoque ibi domus  
plena furnis paruis, in quibus per custodes domus tam hyeme quàm æstate fouentur oua gal-  
linarum, anatum, auerum, & columbarum, vsque ad procreationem suorum pullorum, & hijs  
intendunt, pro certo pretio accipiendo à mulierculis illic oua ferentibus.

Reuerentia Sol-  
dano.

Cuius nomen  
erat M. Ioan-  
nes ad Bar-  
bam.

Mos oua fur-  
nis fouendi.

oldanorum.

ata sede propria Sarra-  
ce solet, in tuo Calaha-  
danus eorum lingua fo-  
Imperatorem. Pro cu-  
narij, & pro feruendo,  
fsaria, & donatiua. Iste  
rum: Canopat, hoc est,  
lachyriæ, cuius ciuitas  
um, & cum his possidet  
fuerunt tres Calipho-  
, & Arabum, erat sedes  
edes in Maroco super  
elut inter nos Impera  
Exactis igitur Cali-  
nominatus Saracon: se-  
m promissionis abstulit  
Christianis custodiebat  
tius Melachfala, à quo  
a, qui Regem prædictu  
us Melec dayr, sub quo  
um Sarracenos. Octa-  
struxit in illis partibus  
olim Ciuitatem. Deci-  
charon, fugatis vel oc-  
s, sextus decimus dice-  
spondiarius in guer-  
n, ipse ad filiam cuius-  
dummodò Christiani-  
cessi. Soldanum præter  
t in exercitum de ho-  
tis, 20. millia armato-  
ceptis ruralibus, & Ci-  
pendiarius recipit de  
m tribus equis & vno  
b vno rectore, qui vo-  
bi subditi: Notandum  
uratis indutus vestibus,  
vel

C A P V T 8.  
De Campo Balsami in Egypto.

**E**Xtra hanc ciuitatem Cayr, est campus seu ager Balsami: circa quod sciendum, quòd opti-  
mum totius mundi Balsamum in magno crescit Indiæ deserto, vbi Alexander Magnus di-  
citur quondam locutus fuisse arboribus Solis & Lunæ, de quo in sequentibus aliquid est scri-  
bendum. Illo itaque Indiæ Balsamo duntaxat excepto, non est liquor in vniuerso orbe, qui hu-  
ic creditur comparari. Has arbores seu arbuta Balsami fecit quondã quidam de Caliphis Ac-  
gypti de loco Engaddi inter mare mortuum, & Ierico, vbi Domino volente excreuerat, eradi-  
cari, & in agro prædicto plantari: Est tamen hoc mirandum, quòd vbiunque alibi siue propè,  
siue remotè plantantur, quamuis fortè virent, & exurgant, non tamen fructificant. Et è contra-  
rio apparet hoc miraculosum, quòd in hoc agro Cayr non se permittunt coli per Sarracenos,  
sed solummodò per Christianos, vel aliter non fructificant: Et dicunt ipsi Sarraceni hoc sæ-  
pius se tentasse: sunt autem arbuta trium, vel quatuor pedum altitudinis, velut vsque ad renes  
hominis, & lignum eorum aspiciendum, sicut vitis syluestris. Folia non marcescunt, quin prius  
marcescant fructus, cernitur ad formam Cubebæ, & gummi eorum est Balsamum. Ipsi ap-  
pellant arbores, Enoch kalsc, fructum Abebifau, & liquorem gribalse. Extrahitur verò gummi  
de arbutulis per hunc modum: De lapide acuto, vel de osse fracto dant scissuras per cortices  
in ligno, & ex vulneribus Balsamum lachrymat, quòd in vasculis suscipiunt, cauentes quout  
possunt, ne quid de illo labatur in terram. Nam si de ferro, vel alio metallo fieret incisura, li-  
quor Balsami corrumpetur à sua virtute. Veri Balsami virtutes sunt magnæ quidem, & innu-  
merosæ: nam vix aliquis mortalium scire potuit omnes, quamuis inter Physicos quinquagin-  
ta scribantur. Rarò vtique Sarraceni vendunt Christianis purum & verum Balsamum, quin  
prius commisceant, & falsificant sicut ego ipse frequenter vidi. Nam aliqui tertiam, seu quar-  
tam partem immiscunt terre bynthine. Alii ramusculos arbutarum, & fructus eorum coquant  
in oleo, quòd vendunt pro Balsamo: & quidam (quòd pessimum est) nil Balsami habentes, di-  
stillant oleum, per clauos gariophillos, & spicum nardum, & similes odoriferas species, hoc pro  
Balsamo exponentes, atque alijs pluribus modis deludunt ementes. Sed & Mercatores inui-  
cem nonnquam sophificant altera vice: probatio autem veri Balsami potest haberi pluri-  
bus modis, quorum aliquos hic describo. Est enim Citrini coloris, valdè clarum, & purum, &  
fortissimum in odoris fragrantia: si ergò apparet alterius quàm Citrini coloris, sciatum non sim-  
plicis, sed cuiuscunq; commixtæ substantiæ, vel ita spissum, vt non possit fluere, scitote sophi-  
ficatum. Item si posueris modicum veri Balsami in manus palma, non poteris sustinere cam  
linaliter in feruore splendentis Solis ad spacium recitandæ Dominicæ orationis. Item si in clara  
flamma ignis vel candelæ cereæ miseris punctum cultelli cum gutta puri Balsami, ipsa gutta de  
facile comburetur. Item si in scutella munda cum puro lacte caprino posueris modicum veri  
Balsami, statim miscebit se, & vnietur cum lacte, ita vt Balsamum non cognoscetur. Item è  
contra, si posueris verum Balsamum cum aqua Lympida, nunquam miscebit se aquæ, etiam si  
aquam moueris vehementer, imò Balsamum semper tendit ad fundum vasis, nam est in sui  
quanti-

Balsamum.

Virtutes veri  
Balsami.

Sophisticatio-  
nes Balsami.

Probatio veri  
Balsami.

quantitate valde ponderosum, & iuxta quod minus ponderosum inuenitur, amplius falsificatum noueris.

## CAPVT. 9.

*De Nilo flumio, & Aegypti territorio.*

**N**ilus supra dictus fluius Aegypti appellatus est alio nomine Gyon, cuius origo est à Paradiso terrestri. Hic venit currens per deserta Indiae Maioris, hincque per meatus subterraneos transit plures terras: exiens sub Monte Aloth, inter Indiam, & Aethiopiam, & Mauritaniam intra deserta Aegypti, irrigans totam longitudinem Aegypti vsque ad Alexandriam, ibique se perdit in mare. Sole intrante signum Canceri omni anno, hoc est, ad quindenam ante Festum Natiuitatis Ioannis Baptistae incipit paulatim fluius crescere, & inundare, quousque sol intret Virginem, quod est circa Festum Laurentij, atque ex tunc decrefcere, & minui, donec Sole veniente in Lybram intra suos alueos se conseruet: Dùmque per inundationem nimis effluit, dammificat terræ culturas, & fit Charistia in Aegypto. Et similiter dum parùm exundat, ingruit esuries, quoniam in Aegypto rarissimè pluit, aut apparent nubes, quoniam si quandoque pluerit in æstate, terra nurius adimpletur. Terra Aegypti continet in longitudine dietas quindecim, in latitudine ferè tres, & habet triginta dietas deserti: à finibus Aegypti vsque Nubiam, duodecim sunt dietæ. Hi Nubij sunt Christiani, sed nigri, velut Aethiopes, vel Mauri.

Inundatio Nili.

Raro in Aegypto pluuia.

Nubia.

Phoenix visa a Mandeuillo.

Mecha.

Phoenix auis, de qua dicitur, quod semper vnica sit in mundo, viuens per annos quingentos, quæ & seipsam comburit, ac de cineribus eius, siue per naturam, siue per miraculum alia creatur, hæc interdum apparet in Aegypto, & sicut mihi monstrabatur, vidi duabus vicibus. Modicum est maior Aquila, cristam in capite maiorem pauonis, collum habens croceum, dorsum Indicum, alas purpureas, caudam duobus coloribus, per transfuerum croceo & rubeo regulatam, qui singuli colores sunt ad splendorem Solis delectabiliter videntibus resplendentes. In Aegypto multæ habentur arbores, sexcies aut septies in anno fructificantes, ibique frequenter inueniuntur in terra Smaragdi, & circa oram Nili alij lapides pretiosi. A Babylonia Aegypti, vsque ad ciuitatem Meccam, (quam Pagani ibidem appellant Iacrib, & est in magnis desertis Arabiæ) sunt triginta duæ dietæ. In ea veneratur detestandum cadaver Machon siue Machometi honorabiliter & reuerenter in Templo eius, quod ibi vocatur Mulker, de cuius vita aliquid infra narrabo. Per prædicta itaque apparet, quod Imperator Sarracenorum Soldanus Babyloniæ, valde potens est Dominus.

## CAPVT. 10.

*De conductu Soldani, & via vsque in Sinay.*

**P**rius dictum est de reuerentia Soldani, quando ad ipsum intratur exhibenda. Sciendum ergo, cum ab eo petitur securus conductus, nemini denegare consuevit, sed datur petentibus communiter sigillum eius, in appenditione absque literis: hoc sigillum, pro vexillo in virga aut hasta dum peregrini ferunt, omnes Sarraceni videntes illud flexis genibus in terram se reuerenter inclinant, & portantibus omnem exhibent humanitatem. Verumtamen satis maior fit reuerentia literis Soldani sigillatis, quod & Admirabiles, & quicumque alij Domini, quando eis monstrantur, antequam recipiant, semultim inclinant: Deinde ambabus manibus eas capientes ponunt super propria capita, postea osculantur, & tandem legunt inclinati cum magna veneratione, quibus semel aut bis perlectis, offerunt se promptos ad explendum quicquid ibi iubetur, ac insuper exhibent deferenti, quicquid possint commodi, vel honoris: sed talem conductum per literas Soldani vix quisquam peregrinorum accipit, qui non in Curia illius stetit, vel notitiam apud illum habuerit. *Ego autem habui in recessu meo, in quibus etiam continebatur ad omnes sibi subiectos speciale mandatum, vt me permitterent intrare, & respicere singula loca, pro mea placito voluntatis, & mihi exponerent quorumcumque locorum mysteria distinctè & absque vilo velamine veritatis, ac me cum omni sodalitate mea benigne reciperent, & in cunctis rationalibus audirent, requisiti autem sine cesse foret de civitate conducerent in civitatem.* Habito itaque peregrinis conductu, ad Montem Sinay potest à Cayvnam duarum incipere semitarum, vsque vallem Helim, vbi adhuc sunt duodecim fontes aquarum. Nam vna viarum est, vt petrascat passagium maris rubri, non longè ab eodem loco, vbi olim populus Israel Duce Mose, Deo iubente, siccis pedibus transijt idem mare. Quod quidem, licet aqua sit satis clara, dicitur ibi Rubrum propter lapillos, & arenas subrussi coloris: & continet ibi nunc temporis passus maris

Literæ Soldani in gratiam Mandeuilli concessæ.

atio, cur Rubrum mare sic appellatur.

amplius falsificatum

cuius origo est à Pa-  
ue per meatus subter-  
Aethiopiã, & Mau-  
isque ad Alexandriã,  
est, ad quindenã ante  
inundare, quom̃sque  
crefcere, & minui, do-  
er inundationem nimis  
er dum parum exun-  
ent nubes, quoniam si  
continet in longitu-  
ferti: à finibus Aegyp-  
gri, velut Aethiopes, vel

per annos quingentos,  
er miraculum alia cre-  
di duabus vicibus. Mo-  
abens croceum, dor-  
terfum croceo & rubeo  
er videntibus resplen-  
no fructificantes, ibi  
ij lapides pretiosi. A Ba-  
appellant Iacrib, & est  
estandum cadaver Ma-  
iodi ibi vocatur Muket,  
l Imperator Sarraçeno-

exhibenda. Sciendum  
suevit, sed datur peten-  
sigillum, pro vexillo in  
d flexis genibus in ter-  
unitatem. Verumtamen  
, & quicumque alij Do-  
nant: Deinde ambabus  
ntur, & tandem legunt  
fferunt se promptos ad  
quicquid possint com-  
quam peregrinorum ac-  
Ego autem habui in re-  
mandatum, ut me permitt-  
mhi exponeret quorum-  
ic me cum omni fidelitate  
tem si necesse foret de ci-  
ad Montem Sinay po-  
, vbi adhuc sunt duode-  
maris rubri, non lon-  
iubente, sicis pedibus  
dicitur ibi Rubrum pro-  
tic temporis passus ma-  
ris

ris in latitudine ferè sex leucas. Transmissoque mari, ibit super hanc longè ab oris eiusdem per  
dieta quatuor, atque ex tunc relinquens mare, tendit per deserta sex aut septem dierum, vsque  
in vallem præfatam. Alia est autem via, vt de Babylonia intret Dyren deserta, tendens ad  
quendam fontem, quem dicitur Moses fecisse: & hinc ad riuum Marach, qui quondam, Mose  
imponente lignum, ab amaritudine dulcescebat, & sic tandem in præmissam vallem perueni-  
ant. Et restat via grandis diætæ ad Montem Sinay ab hac valle. Nam à Babylonia vsque in Si-  
nay, æstimatur esse via duodecim dietarum, quamuis nonnulli citius perueniunt. Hoc verè sci-  
endum, neminem peregrinorum per hæc delicta sine ductore posse tendere, cui notæ sunt viæ,  
sed nec equi valent transire, præcipuè quòd non inuenirent in desertis quid bibere. Aliquo ta-  
men modo transiunt per Camelos, eò quòd se continere possunt de potu duobus aut tribus di-  
ebus: Et oportet vt itinerantes ferant secum per viam necessaria ad victum proprium, & Ca-  
melorum, nisi quòd interdum fortè Cameli aliquid sibi abrodere possunt circa cortices arbui-  
storum, & folia ramulorum.

Vel Massa.

Abstinencia  
Camelorum  
ab aquis.

CAPVT. II.

*De Monasterio Sinay, & reliquijs beate Catherina.*

**M**ons Sinay appellatur ibi desertum Syn: quasi in radice montis istius habetur Cæno-  
bium Monachorum pergrande, cuius clausura in circuiu est firmata muris altis, & por-  
tis ferreis, pro nictu bestiarum deserti. Hi Monachi sunt Arabes, & Græci, & in magno con-  
uentu, multum Deo deuoti: viuunt in magna abstinentia, vtentes simplicibus cibariis, de lotis  
& dactylis, & huiusmodi, nec vinum potantes, festis exceptis. Illic in Ecclesia Beatæ Virginis  
& matris Catherinæ semper lampades plurimæ sunt ardentes, nam habetur ibi plena copia o-  
lei oliuarum. A posteriori parte magni altaris monstratur locus, vbi Moyssi apparuit Dominus  
in rubo ardente, ipsum rubum adhuc seruans, quem dum Monachi intrant, semper se disca-  
ceant gratia illius verbi, quo Deus iussit Moyssi ibidem, Solue calciamentum de pedibus tuis,  
locus enim in quo stas, terra sancta est: hunc locum appellant Bezeleclj, id est, ymbra Dei. Et  
propè altare tribus gradibus in altitudine, habetur capsula, seu Tumba Alabastri, sanctissima  
contines ossa Virginis. Christiani qui ibidem morantur, cum magna reuerentia aduenientibus  
peregrinis, à Monachorum prælato, seu ab alio in hoc instituto, excipiuntur. In quodam  
instrumento argenteo consuevit ossa defricare, siue linire, vt ex iis exeat modicum olei, velut pa-  
rumper sudoris, quod tamen non apparet in colore sui tanquam olei seu Balsami, sed aliquan-  
tulum pluris magnitudinis. Et ex isto traditur interdum aliquid petentibus peregrinis, sed pa-  
rum, quia nec multum exudat. Ostendere solent & caput ipsius Catherinæ cum inuolueni-  
to sanguinolento, & multas præterea sanctas, & venerabiles reliquias, quæ omnia intuitus  
sum diligenter & sæpè, oculis indignis. Habent quoque in ista Ecclesia propriam Lampadem  
quilibet Monachorum, quæ imminente illius discessu lumen per diuinum miraculum variat  
vel extinguit. Ego etiam curiosus super vno dubio quod prius audiveram, plures interrogatio-  
nes feci ab aliquibus Monachorum, vtrem scilicet prælato eorum decedente semper successor  
per diuinum signum eligeretur: & vix tandem ab eis recepi responsum, quod per vnum isto-  
rum miraculorum habetur successor, videlicet in missa sepulturæ defuncti omnibus Monacho-  
rum lampadibus extinctis, illius sola Dei nutu reaccenditur, quem fieri vult prælatum, vel de  
cælo inuenitur missus breuiculus super altare, inscriptum habens nomen prælati futuri. Intra  
hanc Ecclesiam nunquam musca, vel aranea, aut huiusmodi immundi vermiculi nascuntur,  
quod similiter per diuinum accidit miraculum: nam antè replebatur Ecclesia talibus immun-  
ditiis, & totus conuentus recederet ad construendam Ecclesiam in alio loco. Et ecce Dei ge-  
netrix virgè beata eis visibiliter obuiauit, iubens reuerti, & dicens nunquam Ecclesiam simi-  
libus infestari. In cuius obuiationis loco, in ascensu procliuo huius montis per multos gradus  
construxerunt Ecclesiam, ædificium excellens, in honorem eiusdem virginis. Et aliquot altis-  
simum, per eiusdem montis ascensum est vetus Capella, quam vocant Eliæ Prophetæ, & locum spe-  
cialiter appellant Horeb. A cuius latere in montis appendentia colitur vinea, quam nominant  
Iosue schophis, de qua quidam putare volunt, quod Sanctus Ioannes Euangelista eam prius  
plantauit. In superiori verò montis vertice, est Capella, quam dicunt Moyssi, & illic rupis ser-  
uans adhuc corporis eius formam impressam dum se abscondit, veritus dominum respicere in  
facie. Locus quoque ibi ostenditur, in quo Deus tradidit ei decem mandata, siue legem proprio  
digito scriptam, & sub rupe cauerna, in qua mansit ieiunus diebus 40. Ab hoc monte qui vo-  
catur Mosh, restat via producta ad quartam Leuceæ, vsque in montem qui dicitur Sanctæ Ca-  
therinæ per vallem speciosam, ac multum frigidam. Circa eius inediam habetur Ecclesia, no-  
mine 40. Martyrum constructa, vbi interdum veniunt Monachi cantare missam. Hic mons est  
fatis

Monachorum  
sophismata.

fatis altior Monte Moyſis, in cuius vertice Angeli Dei piè creduntur attuliſſe, & ſepeliſſe corpus ſanctiſſimæ Martyris Catharinæ cum inuolumento capitis ſuprà dicto. Attamen in ipſo certo ſepulturæ loco, licet quandoque ſtetit Capella, modo non eſt habitaculum, ſed modicus aceruus petrarum. Notandum, quòd vterque horum montium poteſt vocari mons Sinay, eò quòd totus circumiacens locus deſerti Sin appellatur. Sur deſertum inter mare Rubrum, & ſolitudinem Sinay, deſertum Sur idem Scriptura quod & Cades. Viſitatis igitur à peregrinis hiſ ſacroſanctis memorijs, & valefacto Monachis, recommendant ſe eorum orationibus, & meritis: tuncque ſolet aliquid victualium offerri peregrinis, pro inchoanda via deſerti Syriæ verſus Ieruſalem. Et ſicut dixi de priori deſerto, ſic nec illud ſecurè eſt peragrandum abſque Drogemij, id eſt, ſemitarum ductoribus, propter vaſtitudinem deſerti.

## CAPVT. 12.

*Iter à deſerto Sinay uſque ad Iudæam.*

**P**er iſtud latum & longum deſertum, moratur vel potiùs vagatur maxima multitudo malorum, & incompoſitorum hominum, qui non manent in domibus, ſed ſub pellium tabernaculis, quemadmodum & olim filij Iſrael in eodem deſerto ambulauerunt, quoniam aqua non manent ibi diu in locis certis: & ideò mutant tabernacula ſequentes aquas: non colunt terras, rarò manducant panem, ſed tantùm carnes beſtiarum deſerti quas venantur, coquentes ſuper petras calefactas ad Solem: fortes ſunt & feroces, & velut deſperati de vita propria non curantes, qui licet non habeant arma præter lanceam, & tarchiam, & caput grandi albo linteolo inuolutum, tamen non verentur exercere guerras, & inire prælia contra Dominum ſuum Soldanum: nam & ego ſtipendiarius in expeditione Soldani contra eos ſæpiùs fui. Iſti ſunt quidem Arabes, ſed notiori nomine appellantur Bedoyns & Acopars, & quamvis plurima mala agunt per deſertum, rarò tamen nocent peregrinis beatæ Virginis Catharinæ. Itaque peregrinus qui debitum tenuit iter, veniat à finibus deſerti in primam ciuitatem Iudææ, quæ dicitur Berſeba: eſt vicus grandis Hebron inde miliario vergens ad Auſtrum: Hieronymus. Noandum, Theros Mons Dei in regione Magiaw iuxta Montem. Noandum ſimiliter, Arabiam in deſerto eſſe, cui iungitur Mons, & deſertum Sarracenorum, quod vocatur Phaaran. Mihi autem videtur, quod duplici nomine, nunc Mons Sinay, nunc Oreb vocatur. Hieronymus. Phaaran nunc oppidum trans Oreb, iam iunctum Sarracenis, qui in ſolitudine vagi pererant. Hos interfecerunt filij Iſrael, cum de Monte Sinay caſtra mouiſſent. Eſt ergo, vt dixi, trans Iordanem contra Auſtralem plagam, & diſtat ab Helyn, contra Orientem, itinere dierum trium. In deſerto autem Phaaran, Scriptura commemorat habitaſſe Iſmaelem, vnde & Iſmaelita, qui nunc Sarraceni. Legimus quoque Chederlaomer percuffiſſe eos qui erant in deſerto Phaaran quod nunc dicitur Aſcalon, & circa eam Regio Paleſtinorum. Hieronymus. Hæc Berſheba erat bona & ſpectabilis, vltimo tempore Chriſtianorum, & adhuc ibi reſtant nonnullæ Eccleſiæ.

Ioannes Mandeuil militans contra Arabes. Berſheba.

Ciuitas Hebron:

Hinc ad Leucas duas venit in ciuitatem Hebron, & Hebron ab Helyn diſtat ad Meridianam plagam millibus circiter 39. de qua legitur, quòd primis temporibus fuerit habitatio maximorum Gigantium, Regumque, poſteà Dauidis. In hac eſt illa ſpelunca duplex, quæ ſeruat oſſa ſanctorum Patriarcharum, Abrahæ, Iſaac, & Iacob, Saræ, & Rebecæ, conſiſtitque ad radicem montis, & habetur ſuper iſtam cum propugnaculis ad modum caſtri conſtructa pulchra Eccleſia. Sarraceni appellant iſtam ſpeluncam Kanaackaba, cuſtodientes locum diligenter ac reuerenter propter honorem Patriarcharum, & non permittentes quenquam Chriſtianorum aut Iudæorum ingredi, niſi oſtenderit ſuper hæc ſpecialeſ gratiam à Soldano. Nam ipſi communiter reputant tam Chriſtianos quam Iudæos pro canibus, & quando deſpectiue eos volunt appellare, dicunt Kyp, id eſt, canis.

Vallis Mambre. Quercus arida.

Ab Hebron incipit vallis Mambre, quæ protenditur ferè vſque Ieruſalem: haud remotè ad Hebron eſt mons Mambre, & in ipſo monte arbor quercus arida, quæ pro antiquitate ſui, ſpeciale ſibi nomen meruit in mundo vniuerſo, vt vocetur arbor ſicca: Sarraceni autem eam dicunt Dirp: hæc creditur ſteſſiſſe ante tempora Abrahæ, tamen quidam volunt putare à mundi initio, virens donec paſſionis Chriſti tempore ſiccaretur. Hoc autem certum eſt, haberi eam ab omnibus nationibus in veneratione.

Gambil ſpecies Aromatis.

In quodam loco præfatæ vallis eſt planities, vbi per plures ſoſſas effodiunt homines Gambil, quod comeditur loco ſpecieſ aromaticarum, & per villas deſertum venale. Sed & hoc audiui, quòd nulla ibi ſoſſa ita valet exhauriri, ſi dimittatur per annum, quin inueniatur de prædicta Gambil impleta.

Ad duas leucas de Hebron, monſtratur ſepultura Loth filij fratris Abrahæ. Itè de ciuitate Hebrò per quinque leucas anioeni itineris, hoc eſt, in media die, venit in Bethleem Iudææ. Notandū, Arbe,

Arb  
puls  
locu  
cun  
ab v

B  
ſia:  
ſalta  
dece  
locu  
tūm  
prop  
quid  
per  
Eſt  
ſtra  
appa  
Hinc  
licet  
ſtra  
danti  
plaga  
copia  
neque  
terpre  
De  
temp  
in cui  
bis Sa  
iacent  
decim  
dum, E  
tur. Se  
cem tr  
Dei. Id  
& ipſi

Ieruſ  
ibus P  
ridiem  
diuerſ  
ſarum,  
baroru  
Deus r  
Itaq  
dum &  
uitatis  
Et. Ipſ  
habens  
dij con  
dum ta  
tum, ac

ulisse, & sepeliisse cor-  
pore. Attamen in ipso  
tabernaculum, sed modi-  
est vocati mons Sinay,  
inter mare Rubrum, &  
atis igitur à peregrinis  
eorum orationibus, &  
anda via deserti Syriæ  
peragrandum abique

xima multitudo malo-  
d sub pelium taberna-  
nt, quoniam aqua non  
quas: non colunt ter-  
teris venantur, coquentes  
ati de vita propria non  
caput grandi albo lin-  
xia contra Dominum  
tra eos sæpius sui. Isti  
pars, & quamvis plu-  
rginis Catharinæ. Ita-  
mam civitatem Iudææ,  
ad Austrum: Hierony-  
m. Notandum similit-  
quod vocatur Phaa-  
reb vocatur. Hierony-  
m. solitudine vagi perer-  
lent. Est ergo, vt dixi,  
Orientem, itinere die-  
Iſnaelem, vnde & Iſ-  
ſisse eos qui erant in de-  
norum. Hieronymus,  
, & adhuc ibi restant

elyn distat ad Meridia-  
is fuerit habitatiõ maxi-  
ca duplex, quæ seruat  
, consiſtitque ad radi-  
stri constructa pulchra  
e locum diligenter ac  
enquam Christianorum  
ldano. Nam ipsi com-  
ndo despectu eos vo-

m: haud remore ad He-  
anti quietate sui, speciale  
aceni autem eam dicunt  
t putare à mundi initio,  
e. 3. haberi eam ab om-

diunt homines Gambil,  
enale. Sed & hoc audi-  
inueniatur de prædicta  
a. Itè de ciuitate Hebrõ  
nlem Iudææ. Notandũ,  
Arbe,

Arbe, id est, quatuor, primum dicam de eo quod ibi tres Patriarchæ Abraham, Isaac, & Jacob se-  
pulti sunt, & Adam magnus, vt in Iudæorum libro scriptum est, licet eum quidam conditum in  
loco Caluarie suspicentur. Corrupte in nostris codicibus Arboth scribitur, alibi erat arbor  
cum in Hebræis legatur Arbe, hæc est autem eadem Hebron olim Metropolis Philistinorum,  
ab vno filiorum Caleb sortita vocabulum.

CAPVT 13.

De ciuitate Bethleem, & semita vsque in Ierusalem.

**B**ethleem Ciuitas longa sed parua, firmata est vndique fossatis fortibus: cuius modò habi-  
tatores quasi omnes sunt Christiani. In illa ad orientem honesta, & placida habetur Eccle-  
sia: (nescio an aliquam eiusdem quantitatis viderim placentiorem,) extrinsecus habens turres  
salturas, pinnacula, & propugnacula nobili artificio fabricata, & intrinsecus 44. de marmore  
decoro columnas. Ad principalis autem turris dextram in descensu 16. graduum, est diuersorij  
locus, vbi ex intacta & benedicta Virgine nascebatur Christus homo Deus. Hic locus est mul-  
timum artificiose operatus in armore, & generose depictus auro & argento, varioque colore, cui  
propè ad tres passus est præsepe in quo reclinabatur natus Dominus, ibique videtur puerus  
quidam, in quo aliqui putare volunt cecidisse stellam ductricem trium Magorum, post eius  
peractum officium.

Est etiam ante præsepe Domini, tumba beati Interpretis Hieronymi, & extra Ecclesiam mô-  
stratur cathedra, in qua residere solebat. Sub clausura huius ecclesie ad dextram, per 18. gradus  
apparet fossa, quæ dicitur ossium innocentium causa Christi ab Herode impio occisorum.  
Hinc ad quingentos, vel citra pedes habetur alia Ecclesia nomine Sancti Nicholai, in quo scilicet  
loco, post recessum Magorum beata Virgo tempus sui puerperij obseruauit. Ibique mon-  
strantur mira saxa albis respersa maculis, quod simplices narrant saxi euenisse de abun-  
dantia lactis virginis ab vberibus eiecisti. In via Bethleem ab Helya iniliario contra meridianam  
plagam iuxta viam quæ ducit Ebron, Christiani de Bethleem colunt circa ciuitatem inultam  
copiam vinearum, ad potum sui ipsorum. Nam Saraceni non colunt vineas, nec vina vendunt  
neque in manifesto bibunt, eò quod liber legis Mahomet, facit super hoc prohibitionem, & in-  
terpretatur maledictionem.

De Bethleem in Austrum duabus leucis habetur claustrum Sanctæ Charitatis, ibidem suo  
tempore Abbatissæ. A Bethleem tendendo Ierusalem inuenitur ad dimidiam leucam Ecclesia,  
in cuius loco Angelus dixit pastoribus, Annuncio vobis gaudium magnum, quod natus est no-  
bis Saluator qui est Christus Dominus. Est & tumba Rachel Patriarchæ, vbi etiam coaceruata  
iacent 12. saxa magna, quæ quidam autumant illic tumulasse Jacob, eò quod Benjamin duo-  
decimus sibi filius nascebatur ibidem. Sicque venit in Sanctam Ciuitatem Ierusalem. Notan-  
dum, Bethel vicus est 12. ab Helya ad dextram euntibus Neapoli, quæ primum Luza vocaba-  
tur. Sed ex eo tempore quo ibat ad Ieroboam filium Nebar, vituli aurei fabricati sunt, & à de-  
cem tribubus adorata, vocata est Bethauen, id est, Domus Idoli, quæ autè vocabatur Domus  
Dei. Hieronymus. Sed & Ecclesia ædificata est vbi dormiuit Jacob, pergens Mesopotamiam, vbi  
& ipsi loco Bethel, id est, domus Dei nomen imposuit.

CAPVT 14.

De Ecclesia gloriosi Sepulchri Domini in vrbe Ierusalem.

**I**erusalem cum tota terra promissionis, est quasi vna de quinque prouincijs vel pluribus, qui-  
bus Regnum Syriæ distinguitur. Iungitur autem Iudæa ad Orientem Regno Arabiæ, ad me-  
ridiem Aegypti, ad Occidentem mari magno, & ad Aquilonem Regno Syriæ. Iudæa terra per  
diuersa tempora à diuersis possessa fuit nationibus, Cananæorum, Iudæorum, Assyriorum, Per-  
sæ, Medorum, Macedonum, Græcorum, Romanorum, Christianorum, Saracenorum, Bar-  
barorum, Turcorum, & Tartarorum. Cuius rei causa merito potest æstimari, quod non sustinuit  
Deus magnos peccatores longo tempore permanere in terra sibi tam placita, & tam sancta.

Itaque peregrinus veniens in Ierusalem primò expleat suam peregrinationem, ad reueren-  
dum & sacrosanctum Domini nostri Iesu Christi sepulchrum: cuius Ecclesia est in vltima ci-  
uitatis extremitate, ad partem aquilonarem, cum proprio sui ambitus muro ipsi ciuitati adiun-  
cto. Ipsa verò Ecclesia est pulchra & rotundæ formæ cooperta desuper cum tegulis plumbeis,  
habens in Occidente turrim altam & firmam, in pauimenti Ecclesie medio ad figuram dimi-  
dij compassi habetur nobili opere Latonico ædificatum paruum Tabernaculum quasi 15. pe-  
dum tam longitudo inis quàm latitudinis, & altitudinis miro artificio intus extraque composi-  
tum, ac multum diligenter diuersis coloribus ornatum. Hoc itaque in Tabernaculo seu Capel-  
la,

Kniath-Arbe.

Taxat simpli-  
citatem vulg.

Saraceni  
non bibunt  
vinum in ma-  
nifesto,  
Sancta Cha-  
ritas.

Bethel.

Templum Se-  
pulchri.



la, ad latus dextrum, continetur incomparabilis thesaurus gloriosissimi sepulchri, habentis octo pedes longitudinis, & quinque latitudinis. Et quoniam in toto habitaculo nulla est apertura præter paruum ostium, illustratur accedentibus peregrinis pluribus lampadibus, (quarum ad minus vna coram sepulchro iugiter ardere solet) ingressus.

Sciendum, quod ante breue tempus solebat sepulchrum esse ingressis peregrinis accessibile, ad tangendum & osculandum, sed quia multi vel effringebant, vel conabantur sibi effringere aliquid de petra sepulchri, iste Soldanus Melech Mandybron fecit illud confabricari, vt nec osculari valeat, nec adiri, sed tantummodo intueri. Et ob illam causam in sinistro pariete in altitudine quinque pedum immurari effracturam petræ sepulchri ad quantitatem capitis humani, quod tanquam pro sepulchro ibi ab omnibus veneratur, tangitur, & osculatur.

Melech Mandybron Soldanus.

Mandeuillus de hoc dubitat.

Dicitur ibi quoque communiter præfatam lampadem coram sepulchro singulis annis in die Sanctæ Parascheues, hora nona extingui, & in media nocte Paschæ sine humano studio reaccendi. Quod (si ita est) euidentis diuini beneficii miraculum est. Et quamuis id plurimi Christiani simpliciter in magno pietatis merito credant, plerique tamen est in suspitione. Fortè talia Sarraceni custodes sepulchri fingentes diuulgauerunt, pro augendo emolumenta tributi, quod inde resularct, seu oblationum quæ dantur.

Singulis autem annis in die cœnæ Domini in Parascheue, & in vigilia Paschæ, tribus his diebus manet Tabernaculum hoc apertum continuè, & patet omnibus Christianis gentibus accessus, aliàs verò non per annum sine redditione tributi. Intra Ecclesiam, propè parietem dextrum, est Caluarie locus, vbi crucifixus pependit Christus Dominus. Per gradus ascenditur in hunc locum, & est rupis velut albi coloris, cum aliqua rubedine per loca commixta, habens scissuram, quam dicunt Golgotha, in qua maior pars preciosi sanguinis Christi dicitur influxisse: vbi & habetur altare constructum, ante quod consistunt tumbræ Godefridi de Bullion, & aliorum Regum Christianorum, qui circa annum incarnationis Domini, 1100. debellauerunt & obtinuerunt sanctam urbem cum tota patria ex manibus Sarracenorum, & per hoc conquisierunt sibi magnum nomen, vsque in finem sæculi duraturum. Propè ipsius crucifixionis locum continetur literis Græcis hoc scriptum: *Ἰσθὶς ἁγιασθεῖς ἵππὸς ἀπὸ τοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ, ἐν τῷ μνημείῳ τῆς σταυρώσεως. Ἰσθὶς ἁγιασθεῖς ἵππὸς ἀπὸ τοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ, ἐν τῷ μνημείῳ τῆς σταυρώσεως.* hoc est dicere, Deus Rex noster ante secula operatus est salutem in medio terræ. Item directè in loco, vbi crux sancta stetit cum Christo rupi infixa, habetur hoc exaratum in saxo rupis: *Ἰσθὶς ἁγιασθεῖς ἵππὸς ἀπὸ τοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ εὐαγγελιστοῦ, ἐν τῷ μνημείῳ τῆς σταυρώσεως.* hoc est, quod vides fundamentum est fidei mundi.

Tumba Godefridi de Bullion.

Psal. 74. 12.

Haud remotè ab hoc Caluarie monte, habetur & aliud altare, vbi iacet columna flagellationis Domini, cui stant de propinquo & aliæ columnæ quatuor de Marmore aquam iugiter resudantes, & (secundum opinionem simplicium) passionem innocentem Christi descentes. Est sub isto altari crypta, 42. graduum profunda, vbi sancta Helena Regina reperit tres cruces, videlicet Christi, & latronum cum eo crucifixorum, ac etiam clauos crucis Domini in cryptæ pariete.

Iterum taxat ignorantiam vulgi. Regina Helena Angla.

In medio autem chori huius Ecclesiæ, est locus pavementi stratus mirè & pulchrè, ad integrâ cõpalsi figuram, vbi depositum corpus Christi de cruce Ioseph ab Aramathia cum suis adiutoribus lauit & cõdiuit aromatibus. Itè infra Ecclesiam à septentrionali parte ostenditur locus, vbi Christus Magdalena apparuit post suam resurrectionem, quando eum credidit hortulanum.

Indorum Capella siue subditorum præfiteri Ioannis.

A dextro autem latere ad ingressum Ecclesiæ, habentur gradus 18. sub quibus est Capella Indorum, vbi soli peregrini de India per sacerdotes suos cantant iuxta ritum suum Missas, celebrantque diuina. Missam faciunt quidem breuissimam, conficientes in principio verbis debitis sacramentum corporis & sanguinis Christi de pane & vino, ac postea paucis orationibus additis, totum oratione Dominica concludunt officium. Hoc autem verum est, quod cum maxima attentione, reuerentia, humilitate, & deuotione se gerunt, & continent diuinis.

An Ierusalem sit in medio mundi.

Porro illud, quod quidam peruulgauerunt, aut opinati sunt, Iudæam aut Ierusalem, vel Ecclesiam istam consistere in medio totius mundi, propter prædictam scripturam, (in medio terræ) hoc intelligi non potest localiter ad mensuram corporis terræ: Nam si ad terræ latitudinem, quam æstimant inter duos polos, respiciamus, certum est Iudæam non esse in medio, quod tunc esset sub circulo Aequatoris, & esset ibi semper æquinoctium, & vtrumque polorum staret iis in horizonte. Quod utiq; nõ est ita, quod existetibus in Iudæa eleuatur multum polus arcticus.

Rursus si ad terræ longitudinem spectemus, quæ æstimari potest à Paradiso terrestri, scilicet à digniori & latiori terræ loco, versus eius Nadir, scilicet, versus locum sibi in Sphæra terræ oppositum, tunc Iudæa esset ad Antipodes paradisi, quod apparet ita non esse, quod tunc esset vatori de Iudæa ad Paradisum tendentis æqua iuneris mensura, siue tenderet versus Orientem, siue versus Occidentem. Sed hoc non est verisimile nec verum, sicut probatum constat per experientiam multorum. Mihi autem videtur, quod præfata Prophetæ scriptura, potest exponi, in medio terræ, id est, circa medium nostri habitabilis, videlicet vt Iudæa sit circa medium inter

Paradisum

sepulchri, habentis octo  
culo nulla est apertura  
pedibus, (quarum ad  
s peregrinis accessibi-  
labantur sibi effringere  
confabricari, vt nec of-  
n sinistro pariete in alti-  
tatem capitis huma-  
ofculatur.

thro singulis annis in die  
ne humano studio reac-  
nus id plurimi Christia-  
suspicione. Fortè talia  
nolumenta tributi, quod

ia Paschæ, tribus his di-  
Christianis gentibus ac-  
n, propè parietem dex-  
er gradus ascenditur in  
oca commixta, habens  
s Christi dicitur influx-  
odefici de Bullion, &  
ni, 1100. debellauerunt  
rum, & per hoc conqui-  
è ipsius crucifixionis lo-  
dio terræ. Item directè in  
atum in saxo rupis: & qd  
di.

facet columna flagellati-  
more aquam iugiter rem-  
Christi descentes. Est  
a reperit tres cruces, vide-  
omini in cryptæ pariete.  
nirè & pulchrè, ad inte-  
Aramathia cum suis adiu-  
li parte ostenditur locus,  
m credidit hortulanum.  
s, sub quibus est Capella  
a ritum suum Missas, ce-  
in principio verbis debi-  
eà paucis orationibus ad-  
rum est, quod cum maxi-  
ment diuinis.

im aut Ierusalem, vel Ec-  
scripturam, (in medio ter-  
Nam si ad terræ latitudi-  
non cise in medio, quod  
& vtrumq; polorum stare-  
ur multum polus arcticus.  
Paradiso terrestri, scilicet  
n sibi in Sphæra terræ op-  
on esse, quod tunc esset vi-  
enderet versus Orientem,  
probatum constar per ex-  
criptura, potest exponi, in  
za sit circa medium inter  
Paradisum

Paradisum & Antipodes Paradisi, distans tantum ab ipso Paradiso in oriente 96. gradibus, pro-  
ue ego ipse per viam orientalem tentauit: quanquam de hoc non videtur de facili plena cer-  
tudo haberi, eo quod in longitudine cœli nullæ stellæ manent immobiles, sicut in latitudine  
manent poli semper fixi. Vel potest ita exponi, quod Dauid qui erat Rex Iudæ, dixit in me-  
dio terræ, hoc est, in principali ciuitate terræ suæ Ierusalem, quæ erat ciuitas regalis, sive cer-  
dotalis terræ Iudæ: vel fortè spiritus sanctus, qui loquebatur per os prophete in hoc verbo vult  
intelligi non corporeum aut locale, sed totum spirituale, de quo intuitu nihil ad præsens est  
scribendum.

CAPVT. 15.

*De scribis alijs Ecclesiarum, & specialiter de templo Domini.*

**V**Ltrà duo stadia ab Ecclesia ad Meridiem sancti sepulchri habetur magnū hospitale sancti  
Ioannis Hierosolymitani, qui caput & fundamentum esse dignoscitur ordinis hospitalio-  
rum modò tenentium Rhodum insulam: in quo recipi possunt omnes Christiani peregrini cu-  
iuscunque sint conditionis, seu status, vel dignitatis. Nam Saraceni pro leui cura anxij rumoris,  
prohibent ne apud quenquam suorum Christianum pmoctet. Ad sustentationem ædificij hu-  
ius hospitalis, habentur in eo 124. columnæ marmoreæ, & in parietibus distincti 54. pilarij, Satis  
propè hunc locum in orientem, est Ecclesia quæ dicitur, de Domina nostra magna: & indè non  
remotè alia, quæ dicitur nostræ Domine latinorū, edificata super locum, vbi Maria Magdalene,  
& Maria Cleophæ cum alijs pluribus, dum Christus cruci affigebatur, flebant & dolores lamen-  
tabiles exercebant.

Item ab Ecclesia Sancti Sepulchri in orientem ad stadium cum dimidio habetur ædificium  
mirabile, ac pulchrum valdè, quod templum Domini nominatur, quod constructum est in for-  
ma rotunda, cuius circumferentiæ diameter habet 64 cubitos, & altitudo eius 126, & intrinse-  
cus pro sustentatione ædificij, multi pilarij. In medio autem templi est locus altior 14. gradi-  
bus, qui & ipse columnis vndiq; est stipatus: & secundum quatuor mundi plagas habet tem-  
plum quatuor introitus per portas Cypressinas artificiosè compositas, nobilitatq; sculptas, &  
excisas. Et ante portam aquilonarem intra templum fontem aquæ mundæ, qui quantum olim  
exundabat, tamen nunc minimè fluit. In toto circuiu ædificij extrinsecus est valdè pro arrio  
latum spaciū loci, stratum per totum pauimentum marmoribus. Hoc templum non ducitur  
stare in eodem loco vbi templum Dei stetit in tempore Christi, quo post resurrectionem a Ro-  
manis destructo, istud longo post tempore Adrianus Imperator extruxit, sed non ad formam  
templi prioris: prædictum tamen excelsum in medio templi locum vocant Iudæi sanctum  
sanctorum.

Sciatis itaq; quod Saraceni magnam exhibent huic templo reuerentiam, & honorem, se-  
plus illud discalceati intrantes, & positis genibus deuotè Deum omnipotentem exorantes,  
nulla enim ibidem habetur imago, sed multæ lampades relucentes. Neminem Christianorum  
seu Iudæorum ingredi sinunt hoc templum, reputantes eos indignos ad hoc, & nimium im-  
mundos, vnde nisi virtute literarū quas habuit a Soldano, nec ego fuisset ingressus. Ingrediens  
autem cum meis sodalibus deposuimus calciamenta, recogitantes cum multa cordis deuotio-  
ne, nos magis id facere debere, quam incredulos Saracenos.

Et verè meritò est iste locus in magna reuerentia habendus: dum enim Rex Salomon pri-  
mum in illo templo per Dei iussionem, & Dauidis patris sui commissionem edificasset, exorauit  
præsentem cuncto populo Israel, vt quicumque illic Deum pro iusta causa rogaret audiretur; &  
Dominus monstrauit ex auditionis signum per nebulam de cœlo emissam; prout narrat histo-  
ria veritatis 3. Regum libro.

Porò in eo loco vbi statuerat idem Rex ante templum altare holocausti, videlicet extra por-  
tam templi occidentalem, habetur & nunc altare, sed non ad instar, nec ad vsum primi; Nam  
Saraceni, quasi nihil curantes, traxerunt in eo lineas tanquam in astrolabio sigentes in linearum  
centro batellum, ad cuius vmbra per lineas discernuntur diei horæ.

Etiam in hac atrij parte apparent adhuc vestigia portæ speciosæ, vbi Petrus Apostolus, cum  
Euangelista Ioanne dixit contracto, In nomine Christi Iesu Nazareni surge, & statim consoli-  
dabantur illi plantæ.

CAPVT. 16.

*De pluribus locis sacris iuxta urbem.*

**V**latur ad dextram satis de propinquo habetur & alia Ecclesia, quæ nunc appellatur scho-  
la Salomonis: rursusq; ad Meridiem est & aliud templum siue Ecclesia, quæ vocatur Tem-  
plum Salomonis, quodd olim fuit caput, & fundamentum totius ordinis Templariorum.

A claustrum huius templi extrinsecus in Aquilonem habetur decora Ecclesia beatæ Annæ, in cuius  
loco

Litteræ Solda-  
ni traditæ  
Mandiullo.

Templarij à  
templo Salo-  
monis disti.

loco creditur virgo Maria in eiuſdem maris ſup vtero fuiſſe genita, & concepta parentūq; illius, ſcilicet, Ioachim & Anna, umbra ſaxea moſtratur in deſcenu Eccleſie, per 22. gradus, vbi & ad huc patris viſſa putantur quietere, ſublato inde per reginam Helenam corpore ſanctæ Annæ, & recondito (vt prædictum eſt) in Eccleſia Conſtantinopoli ſanctæ Sophiæ.

**Regina Helena, Angla.** Eſt & intra hanc Eccleſiam probatica piſcina, vbi quondam poſt motionem Angeli omnes accedentes primi, a quocunq; languore ſanabantur infirmi, quæ tamen nunc temporis ita neglecta iacet, & deformata, vt videtur immunda ciſtrina. Habetur & ante Eccleſiam arbor grandis & antiqua, de qua nonnulli fabulantur, quod ad beatæ Mariæ natiuitatem principium accepit, & ortum.

**Mons Sion.** Mons Sion eſt excelſior locus in vrbe ad cuius radicem, eſt caſtrū ſpectabile conſtruſtum per aliquem Soldanorum. In montis autem cacumine videntur multe ſepulcræ regum Iudeæ, videlicet Dauid, Salomonis, & quorundam de ſucceſſoribus ſuis. Ad introitum montis habetur capella, & in illa lapis monumenti quem Ioseph de Arimathea obuoluit ad oſtium ſepulchri eſt valde magnus, & eſt ibidem aliqua pars columnæ flagellationis, ac pars menſæ ſuper quam Dominus vltimò cænauit cum Apoſtoliſ, & inſtituit noui Teſtamenti ſacramentū ſui venerandi corporis, & ſanguinis. Sub hac capella ad aliquos gradus monſtratur locus eiſdem cænationis, videlicet cænaculi magni, & in eo vas aquarū, in quo Chriſtus lauabat pedes Apoſtolorum: iuxta quod vas, & Gamaliele, & alijs viris timoratis primus ſepultus fuit protoMartyr Stephanus.

In eo quoq; loco intrauit poſt reſurrexionē ſuam Dominus ianuſ clauſis ad diſcipulos dicens pax vobis, & agens alia, quæ plenius Euāgelica pandit Hiſtoria, actandē in die Pentecoſtes iſſdem ſpiritu ſanctū, in linguis igneis miſit ibidem. Ab hoc mōte Sion verſus ciuitatem habetur Eccleſia dedicata ſancto ſaluatori, in quo nunc dicuntur ſeruari oſſa S. Stephani ſupradicti, & ſiniſtrū brachium. S. Ioannis Chriſoſtomi, cuius corpus vt dictū eſt requieſcit Conſtantinopoli.

Item ab hoc monte verſus Auſtrum ab oppoſito plateæ, eſt pulchra Eccleſia noſtræ Domine, in cuius loco diu morabatur poſt aſcenſionem filij ſui, quamuis pro parte eiſdem temporis in valle Iofaphat manſerit: nam in iſta deſungebatur, & in illo ab Apoſtoliſ honorificè ſepulta fuit. Itemque ab hoc monte in vico cundo verſus vallem Iofaphat inuenitur fons aquæ dictus Natoria Siloe, vbi cæcus natus à Chriſto miſſus lauabat oculos, & reſtreſſus eſt videns. Et dicunt quidam ibidem ſepulcrum Iſaiam Prophetam;

**Natoria Siloe.**

Porro mons olim dictus Moria, de quo loquitur Scriptura ſacra, eſt rupis haud longè a ſupradicto templo Domini in ipſius meridie, in cuius rupis loco excelſo velut eminenti ſed edito Dominus noſter Ieſus Chriſtus frequentèr inſtruxat ſuos diſcipulos, & populos, magnaque miracula exhibebat, atque deprehentæ mulieri in adulterio omnia peccata dimittebat.

**Iohn. 8.**

Ab oppoſito autem prædicti fontis natorij habetur imago lapidea, rudi & vetuſto opere ſculpta, deformiterque detrita, quæ manus Abſalon nuncupatur, cuius ratio lib. 2. Regum monſtratur. Vbi de propè vidi Arborem Sambucum, ad quam vel citrà cuius locum (vt dicitur) Iudas traditor per ſe ſuſpenſus crepuit medius, & diſſuſa ſunt viſcera eius.

Præterea à monte Sion verſus Meridiem vltà vallem ad iactum lapidis eſt locus Aceledema, in quo cemptus ager 30. denarijs proditionis eſt, Et in quo ſunt plures ſepulcræ peregrinorum, & veſtigia cellularum, de quondam illic commorantibus Heremitis.

#### CAPVT. 17.

##### De ſacris locis extra muros Ciuitatis.

**Vallis Iofaphat.**

EXtra muros ciuitatis Ieruſalem ad plagam orientalem, eſt vallis Iofaphat cõtigua, ac ſi eſſet ſoſſata muris ipſius ciuitatis, & Eccleſia vbi ſanctus Stephanus lapidabatur, & obdormiuit in Domino. Hinc non longè eſt porta ciuitatis, quæ dicitur aurea, quæ hunc ſemper obſcurata ſeruatur. Per hanc intrauit Chriſtus ſedens aſino, & adhuc oſtenditur rupis ſeruare veſtigia animadus in tribus aut pluribus ſui locis. Statim vltà vallem Iofaphat aſpicitur mons Oliueti, ſic dictus à pluribus, quia ibi ſunt oliuarum Arbores. In planicie huius vallis decurrit riuius dictus torrens Cedron, ſecus quem habetur pulchra, & honorificata Eccleſia ſacroſanctæ ſepulcræ beatæ, & glorioſæ matris Chriſti: deſcenditur autem in Eccleſiam per gradus 44. quod extrinſecus eſt vallis inculta per fluxum fortalſe torrentis, ſeu per alios euentus propter Antiquitatem temporis. Ibi que monſtratur ſepulcrum eius vacuum. Habentur iuxta ſepulcrum duo altaria, ſub vno eſt fons Aquæ quæ putatur exire de vno Paradifi ſummine.

**Mons oliuarum.**

**Torrentis Cedron.**

Satis propè ab hac Eccleſia ad rupem Gethſemane habetur capella, vbi ſcilicet Iudejs traditus fuit Chriſtus à Iuda. In ipſa quoque rupe oſtendebatur mihi ſigura impreſſe manus ad digitorum extensionem, quæ artiſcioſus humano ſtudio ſculpi non poſſet, quam referunt Chriſtū ſua venerabili manu inclinando. ad rupem eſſiſſe, dum Iudejs impuras manus ad capiendum iniecerunt in eum. Hic ad iactum lapidis in meridie orauit ad ſuum patrem, & pro vehemēti orationis

cepta, parentuq; illius, er 22. gradus, vbi & adam corpore sanctæ Ant Sophiæ.

tionem Angeli omnes tunc temporis ita neglectam arbor grandis & a principium accepit, &

Stabile constructum per turæ regum Iudeæ, videtur montis habetur ead ostiū sepulchri est valentis super quam Dominentū sui venerandi corciusdem generationis, vias Apostolorum : iuxta Martyr Stephanus.

laus ad discipulos diandē in die Pentecostes Iesus ciuitatem habetur Stephani supradicti, & sciscit Constantinopoli, clesia nostræ Dominge, te eiusdem temporis in honorificè sepulta fuit. fons aquæ dictus Natus est videns. Et dicunt

pis haud longè a supra- lute eminenti sed edito & populos, magnaque ta dimittebat.

rudi & vetusto opere ratio lib. 2. Regum mon- sium locum (vt dicitur) lu-

pidis est locus Acedes- sepultura peregrino-

phat cōtigua, ac si effe- labatur, & obdormiuit tunc semp̄ obfirmata tur rupis scruare vesti- aspicitur mons Oliue- llis decurrit riuuulus die- esia sacrosanctæ sepul- r gradus 44. quod ex- ntus propter Antiqui- iuxta sepulchrum duo

di scilicet Iudeis tradi- presse manus ad digi- quam referunt Christū manus ad capiendum em, & pro vehementi orationis

orationis intentione sanguineum exūdauit sudorem : atque ibi non remotè videtur tumba regis Iudeæ Iosaphat, à quo & vallis sibi nomen assumpsit : & credimus in hanc vallem Christum venturum ad nouissimum, & generalissimum iudicium, vbi (Iohēle propheta testante) disceptabit de omni actione mortalium. Ad tractum sagittæ de hac tumba, est Ecclesia vbi sanctus Iacobus maior Apostolus primò post martyrium fuit sepultus, cuius modò sacrata ossa venerantur Compostellæ in Galizia.

S. Iacobi sepultura.

Ultra vallem in supremo montis Oliueti apice discipulis cernentibus, Dominus noster Iesus Christus eleuatis manibus ascendit in cœlum, & super eundem locum digna habetur Ecclesia, in qua eiusdem Ascensione tale seruatur in rupe pavementi indicium, quod sinistri pedis Christi videtur vltimum vestigium.

Hinc satis propè habetur & capella medio montis, vbi Christus sedens prædicauit octo beatitudines, vbi & creditur docuisse discipulos orationem Dominicam, scilicet, *Pater noster, &c.* Ab eo quoq; loco non distat multum Ecclesia beatæ Mariæ *Egyptiacæ*, in qua & eius tumba videtur : & haud procul inde est vicus Bethplage, vbi Christus misit ante passionis suæ tempus duos de discipulis pro asina & pullo eius. In cliuo verò huius mōtis Oliueti versus ciuitatem, monstratur locus, de quo videns Dominus Ierusalem, fleuit super illam, dicens, quòd si cognouisses & tu, &c. Atq; vltra montem in disensu eius in orientem est villa siue castellum Bethaniam, distans quasi ad leucam ab vrbe vbi in domo cuiusdam Symonis inuitatus Christus condonauit omnia peccata Mariæ Magdalene. Et in ipso castello, quòd erat fororis Marthæ, & Mariæ resuscitauit fratrem earum Lazarum quatuoriduanum mortuum;

Bethania.

De Bethania in Ierico sunt 5. leucas, quæ quondam fuit ciuitas speciosa sed iam est villa modica: ibi Diues Zachæus ascendit in arborem Sycomorum, vt videret transeuntem Dominum, & resiliens fraudata quadruplum, obtinuit peccatorum remissionem omnium.

Ierico.

Item de Bethania ad flumen Iordans est iter setè octo leucarum, per montes, ac valles deuotos, & desertos. Porrò de Bethania in orientem ad 6. leucas venit in montem magnum, vbi Christus expleto 40. dierum, ac noctium ieiunio temptatus est à diabolo, fuitq; in eodem loco quandoq; Ecclesia, sed modo habetur ibi quasi cenobiū quorūdam Christianorum, qui Georgici vocantur. Sciendum enim est, quòd vbiq; intra terram Saracenorum, & similiter multorum Paganorum inueniuntur Christiani dispersi, habitantes sub tributo, qui licet sint baptizati omnes, & beatissimam Trinitatem credentes, diuersificantur tamen nominibus, moribus, ritibus, fide, & opinionibus: ita vt semper vel in multis vel in aliquibus dissentiant à Romanæ Ecclesiæ consuetudinibus.

Christiani Georgici.

Aliqui namque eorū dicuntur Christiani Iacobitæ: hij errant circa peccatorum remissionem, dicentes, non debere confiteri homini sed soli Deo. Alij Syrij, Isti in fermentato pane consociunt Sacramentum altaris ritu Græcorum. Alij Georgici, hi omnes ferunt in capite tonsuras: clerici rotundas, laici quadratas, sequentes etiam in multis mores Græcorum. Alij Cordelarij ecce quod se cingunt de super corde. Alij Indi, Nubij, Nestorini, & Arriani.

Iacobitæ, Syrij, Georgici, Cordelarij, Indi, Nubij, Nestorini, Arriani.

Præfatus autem mons magnus, vocatur hortus Abrahæ, ex eo quod Abraham patriarcha ibi dicitur commoratus, & currit propè montem riuuulus, in cuius aqua vel fonte Deus sal per Helizèū prophetam mitti iussit, vt sanaretur sterilitas, id est, amaritudo aquæ. Nec distat hic mons à Ierico vltra grandem leucam.

C A P V T. 18.

De notabilibus alijs locis, & mari mortuo.

RVrsum de ciuitate sanctæ Ierusalem versus Occidentem itinere leucæ, habetur pulchra satis Ecclesia, in loco vbi dicitur creuisse arbor crucis salutiferæ. Arbor excelsa, digno stipite sacra Christi mēbra tangere. Tenetur istud quidè pro certa veritate nam & hoc satis testatur constructio tatar. & talis Ecclesiæ, quāuis multa aliena, & incerta scripta de crucis arbore ferantur per orbē. Hinc ad duas leucas est & alia Ecclesia, vbi obuiauerūt sibi Maria virgo, & Elizabeth eius cognata, & ad saluationem Mariæ Christi baiulæ exultauit Ioannes in vtero Elizabeth grauidæ.

Nota.

De isto quoque ad leucam est Emaus castellum, distans in spacio stadiorum 60. ab Ierusalem, vbi discipuli in cœna die resurrectionis Domini cognouerant eum in fractione panis. Porrò ab Ierusalem ad alium exitum; ad duo stadia videtur spelunca grandis de qua dicitur quòd tempore Cosdri Imperatoris Persarum, fuerunt circa Ierusalem 12. mille martyrum occisi, quorum omnium corpora leo habitans in spelunca congregauit ibidem voluntate diuina, tanquam pro singulorum sepultura obsequiosa.

Emaus castellum.

Cosdri Imperator.

Item ab vrbe ad leucas duas habetur in monte tumba sepultura sancti Samuelis prophete, qui mons nunc vocatur exultationis vel lætitiæ, eò quod peregrinis ab illa parte intratibus redidit primum sanctæ ciuitatis aspectum. Ab oppido autem Ierico in 30. stadiorum spacio venit

Mons exultationis.

ad Iordanis fluij locum, vbi beatus Ioannes Baptista Christum sacri baptismatis merebatur tingere lymphis. Et in cuius reuerendi mysterij venerationem habetur ad dimidiam leucam à fluuio ædificium honestæ Ecclesiæ consecratum in nomine eiusdem venerabilis baptistæ ministri. Ab hac Ecclesia de propè vidi donum de qua patiebar inihari narrari, quòd in eodem loco olim fuerit Ieremiæ sancti habitatio prophetæ.

Iordanis de-  
scriptio.

Notandum est. Iordanis fluius quamuis grandis non sit, bonorum tamen, piscium copiam nutrit, ortum accipiens sub monte Libanon ex duobus fontibus, scilicet Ior, & Dan, quæ nomina simul mixta nomen Iordanis efficiunt. Decurrit autem per quendam locum dictum Ma-ron, ac secus stagnum quod dicitur Mare Tyberiadis, ac subter montes Gylboe per aingnissima loca, atque in subterraneis meatibus per longum spacium se occultans tandem exit in planitie, quæ dicitur Meldam, id est, forum, quod certis temporibus ibi Nundinæ exercentur, & ad extre- num se iactat in mare mortuum.

Mare mortu-  
um.

Hoc stagnum quod vocatur mare mortuū habet longitudinis 600. ferè stadia, & latitudinis 150. & appropinquat aliqua pars huius maris ad quatuor leucas propè Ierico, videlicet ad la- tus camporum Engadi, ex quibus (vt supra dictum est) eradicatæ fuerunt arbores Balsami, quæ modò sunt in agro Cayr Ægypti. Istud mare dicitur mortuum.

Nota.

Primò quidem quòd non viuendè currit, sed est quasi lacus.

Cur mare  
mortuum di-  
catur.

Secundò quod amara est eius aqua, & fœtidum reddit odorem.

Tertiò quod propter eius amaritudinem terra adiacens littori nil viride profert.

Quartò (prout dicitur) si cadat in ea bestia, vel aliud quid viuens, vix poterit plenè mori siue submergi in octo diebus, nec nutrit in se pisces aut quid simile:

Litora quoque sua variant quam sepè colorem, & sine vlla agitatione ventorum eijcit in qui- budam locis se aqua, extra proprios terminos. Per huiusmodi aquam dicitur Deus pro indi- cibili vitio Pentapolim submersisse, Sodomam, Gomorram, Adaman, Seboim, & Segor.

Nota.

Quidam vocant hoc mare lacu Asphaltidis, alij fluium Dæmonū, aut flumen Putre. Quod autem olim propheta interpretans dixit, montes Gilboe, nec ros nec pluuia veniat super vos, magis spiritualitèr quàm literalitèr videtur intelligendum. Nam ibi crescunt altissimi cedri, & arbores poma ferentes, ad capitis quantitatem humani, ex quibus valdè saporosus fit potus.

Mare istud mortuum determinat fines terræ promissionis, & Arabiæ, Ideoq; vltra ipsum mare condidit quondam, vnus successorum Godfridi de Bollion forte & spectabile castrum, ponens illic copiosam Christianorum militiam ad terram promissionis custodiendum. Nunc verò temporis, est Soldani, & appellatur Caruth, id est mons Regalis. Sub hoc monte est villa dicta Sobal: habitat in illis partibus magna Christianorum multitudo.

C A P V T. 19.  
De Nazareth, & Samaria.

**N**Azareth in prouincia Galileæ in qua nutritus, & de qua cognominatus est Dominus vni- uersorum, distans ab Hierosolymis ad tres circiter dietas, erat quondam ciuitas, quæ nunc est dispersa, & rara domorum, quod vix villæ sibi competit nomen: & in loco Annunciationis, vbi Angelus ad Mariam dixit, *Aue gratia plena, Dominus tecum*, habebatur olim bona Ecclesia, pro qua paruū Saraceni restituerunt habitaculum, in colligendas peregrinorum offerendas.

A Nazareth redeundo per terram Galileæ, transitur per Ramathaym Sophim, vbi nascebatur fidelis Samuel propheta Domini, & per Sylo, vbi locus orationis erat antequam in Ierusalem: & per Sicheim magnæ vbertatis vallem, itur in prouinciam Samariæ, vbi habetur & bona ciuitas nunc dicta Neapolis, distans à sancta vrbe spacio solius dietæ, ac per fontem Iacob, super quem Iesus fatigatus ab itinere colloquebatur Samaritanæ, vbi & apparerit ruina destructæ Ecclesiæ quondam illic habitæ. Et est ibi villa adhuc vocata Sychem, & in eo est mausoleum Ioseph pa- triarchæ filij Iacob: ad cuius ossa visitanda sub deuotione non minus peregrini Iudæi adueni- unt, quàm Christiani.

Samaria, nunc  
sebastæ.

Hinc satis propè est mons Garizin cum vetusto templo orationis Samaritanorum: ex tunc intratur Samaria, quæ modò appellatur Sebastæ, & est illius principalis ciuitas prouinciæ. In qua fuit primum terræ mandatum corpus beati Ioannis Baptistæ, inter sacra corpora Helizæ, & Abdiæ Prophetarum, vt quorum assimilabatur virtutibus in vita, corporibus iungeretur in sepultura. Hæc quoque distat ab Hierosolymis, fortassis 2. dietas.

Nota.

Habetur & alius puteus aut fons intra illa montana, quem plerique similiter fontem Iacob appellant, cuius aqua secundum quatuor anni tempora variatur à suo colore, vt sit quandoq; clara, quandoque turbida, nunc viridis, & nunc rubra. Certum est autem tempore Apostolorū, cum Samaria recepisset verbum Dei, illos fuisse conuersos, & baptizatos, in nomine Domini

Iesu,

baptisimatis merebatur  
ad dimidium leucam à  
merabilis baptisæ mini-  
stri, quod in eodem loco

tamen piscium copiam  
et lor, & Dan, quæ no-  
tam locum dictum Ma-  
Gylboe per amnissima  
tandem exit in planitie,  
& exercebantur, & ad extre-

erè stadia, & latitudinis  
Ierico, videlicet ad lan-  
t arbore Balsami, quæ

de profert.  
poterit plenè mori sue

uentorum eiecit in qui-  
dicitur Deus pro indi-  
Seboim, & Segor.

ut flumen Putre. Quod  
pluuia veniat super vos,  
rescunt altissimi cedri, &  
è saporosus fit potus.

Idcoq; vltra ipsum ma-  
spectabile castrum, po-  
stodiendum. Nunc verò  
hoc monte est villa dicta

natus est Dominus vni-  
ndà ciuitas, quæ nunc est  
oco Annunciationis, vbi  
olim bona Ecclesia, pro  
norum offerendas.

Sophim, vbi nascetur  
tequam in Ierusalem: &  
habetur & bona ciuitas  
ntem Jacob, super quem  
uina destructæ Ecclesie  
t mausoleum Ioseph pa-  
peregrini Iudæi adueni-

amarianorum: ex tunc  
ciuitas prouinciæ. In qua  
sacra corpora Helizæ, &  
poribus iungeretur in se-

similiter fontem Jacob  
o colore, vt sit quandoq;  
m tempore Apostolorum,  
tos, in nomine Domini  
Iesu,

Iesu, & tamen postea per quendam Caliphorum peruersos, Ogerus dux Danorum per Templa-  
riorum virtutem rursum subiugauit Christianitati: sicq; post plures euentus, & variationes, illi qui  
nunc sunt Samaritæ, sinxerunt sibi hæresim propriam, & ritum ab omnibus nationibus singularem.

Ogerus  
Dux  
Danus.

Fatentur autem se credere in Deum, qui cuncta creauit: recipientque pentateucum scriptu-  
ræ, cum Pfalterio Dauidis, acerrimè contendentes, se solos dilectissimos Dei filios: qui etiam  
pro nobili differentia inuoluunt capita linteo rubeo, Saraceni autem albo, Indi croceo, & Chri-  
stiani ibi manentes Indico, hoc est, aereo, seu hiacynthino.

Tegumenti  
capitis diffe-  
rentia.

Porro à Nazareth quatuor leucas, est ciuitas olim dicta Naym, in 2. miliario Thabor montis  
contra Meridiem iuxta Endor. Ieronimus. Ante cuius portam resuscitauit Christus defunctum  
filium vnicum matris suæ, præsentibus duabus turmis hominum copiosorum. Hinc quoque ad  
leucas duas, est ciuitas Israel, vbi olim moratur pessima regina Iezabel, quam Dei iudicio  
equeorum vngulis conculcatam, canes ferè vsque ad caluariam comederunt,

## CAPVT. 20.

## De territorio Galilee, &amp; Samaria, &amp; de villa Sardenay.

Item à Nazareth ad leucæ dimidium, monstrantur in rupe vestigia pedum, quæ dicuntur esse  
Domini nostri Iesu Christi vbi de manibus Iudæorum, ipsum de alta rupe præcipitare volen-  
tium desiluit in istam. De quo saltu quidam intelligunt illud scriptumque Euangeticum, Iesus au-  
tem transiens per medium illorum ibat.

Ad quatuor autem leucas de Nazareth, est Cana Galilee, vbi Christus ad vrbanas matris  
preces, mutauit vndam in vinum optimum.

Mons Thabor

Ad distantiam quatuor leucarum à Nazareth, venit in Thabor, montè spectabile, vbi tran-  
figurabatur Christus, coram quibusdam suis Apostolis, apparentibus ibidem, Mose, & Helia,  
prophetis, voceq; dilapsa à magnifica Patris gloria, & videbatur Petro bonum ibi esse: quon-  
dam in hoc monte habebatur ciuitas, cum piuribus Ecclesijs, quarum nunc sola restant vesti-  
gia, excepto quod ille locus transfigurationis est inhabitatus, qui est Schola Dei nominatus.  
Notandum, Thabor est in medio Galilee, campus mira iucunditate sublimis, distans à "Diote-  
saria 3. miliaribus contra Orientem.

obseruetur.

Item de Nazareth in tres leucas est villa, seu castrum Zaffara, de quo recolo me supradix-  
isse capite 4. Et inde venit in Mare Galilee, quod quamuis dicatur mare, est lacus aquæ dul-  
cis longus.

Vltra centum 60. forsan stadia est lacus, bonorum piscium ferax & vber, qui etiam in alio  
loco sui vocatur mare Tyberiadis, & in alio mare Genezareth, varians sibi nomen, secundum  
ciuitates, & terras propinquas. Circa hoc mare Christus frequentè, & libentè ambulasse vi-  
detur: hic vocauit ad sui discipulatum, Petrum, & Andream, Iacobum, & Ioannem: hic super vi-  
dà ficis ambulabat vestigijs, & præcipitem Petrum filium tentantem, verbo increpationis releuat  
ne mergatur, hic denique rediuiuus à morte repleuit discipulorum rete magnis piscibus 153.

Mare Tyberi-  
adia.

Item in ciuitate Tiberiade, quæ est propè hoc mare habetur in veneratione mensa illius cæ-  
næ, quam in Emaus castello Christus cænauit, cum ab oculis comensalium euauit. Hic de  
propè monstratur mons ille fertilis, mons ille pinguis, in quo de paucis panibus, & de paucio-  
ribus piscibus iusu Christi fuerunt saturati, quinque milla hominum.

Ad initium autem prædicti maris iuxta villam Capernaum habetur fortius castrum totius  
terræ promissionis, in quo dicitur nata fuisse sancta Anna mater virginis Mariæ.

Prædictis itaq; Christi vestigijs, & terræ sanctæ locis à peregrino cum deuotione cordis &  
reuerentia debita visitatis, si desiderat reuerti, possit illud facere per Damascum, quæ est ciuitas  
longa, nobilis, & grandis, ac plena omnium rerum mercimonijs, cum tamen distat à portu ma-  
ris tribus plenè diebus, per quod spacium itineris, cuncta traijciuntur à suis equis Dromedarijs,  
& Camelis: & putatur à plerisque narrantis fundata in loco vbi Cain protoplastorum fi-  
lius Abel fratrem suum occidit.

Damascus,

A Damasco de propinquo est mons Seyr, ciuitas grandis firmata duplicibus muris ac popu-  
losa nimis, in qua sunt multi in arte Physica famosi professi. Item à Damasco haud remotè distat  
castrum satis munitum, & firmum, quod Derces est nominatum. Habent autem in illis, & vlti-  
rioribus partibus hunc usum: si quando castrum ab hostibus fuerit sic obsessum, quod Domi-  
nus eius non possit emittere nuncium amico suo remotè moranti, recipit columbam olim in  
castro, vel domo amici natam, vel educatam, quam hic sibi per certam propositionem allatam  
detinuit incauatam, & scriptas quas vult literas alligans collo columbæ, dimittit liberam vo-  
lare, quæ protinus festinat ad locum propriæ natiuitatis. Sicque videtur cognosci in illo castro  
quid agatur in isto.

Ceterum peregrinus à Damasco reuertendo, in quinque leucis venit Sardenay, quæ est villa

Villa Sardenay.

in alta rupe, cum multis Ecclesijs religionum Monachorum, & sanctarum monialium fidei Christianarum. In quarum una coram maiori altari in tabula lignea erat olim imago beatissime virginis Marię non sculpta sed depicta in plano spacio. Ex hoc creditur per valles Bokar fertiles, & profecundis pecorum gregibus exuberantes: & intratur in montana vbi copiositas est fontium qui effluent impetu de Libano. Ibi que decurrit fluminis Sabbatayr, sic dictus quod diebus Sabbatis euidenter rapidius transit, quam alijs sex diebus.

Sur, vel Tyrus.

Peruenitur hinc ad fatis altum montem, propè Tripolim ciuitatem, in qua ad præsens plures Christiani Catholicę fidei habitant iugo in hediū nimis oppressi, Ex hoc loco sibi delibet peregrinus, quem sibi maris portū accipiat ad repatriandū, videlicet Beruth, an Sur vel Tyrū. Postremò sciendum, quod terra promissionis in totali longitudine sui à Dan qui est sub Libano vsq; ad Bersaba in Aultrum continet circiter centum, & 80. leucas Lombardicas, & ab Hierico in totali latitudine circiter 60. Notandum, Dan est viculus in quarto à Peneade Milario euntibus, contra Septentrionem: vsque hodie sic vocatur terminus Iudeę, contra Septentrionem: est etiam & f. n. Ior, de quo & Iordanis fluminis erumpens alterū sortitus nomen Ior. Termini Iudeę terrę a Bersabe incipiunt vsque ad Dan, qui vsque Peneaden terminatur, Ieronimus.

## CAPVT. 21.

*De secta detestabili Saracenorum, & eorum fide.*

Diligentia Mandeuilli.

Fides Saracenorum.

**I**Ani restat vt de secta Saracenorum aliquid scribam vel compendiosè, secundum quod cum ijs frequenter colloquendo audiui, & liber Mahometi, quem Alcaron, vel Mesahaf, vel Harmè vocant, ijs præcipit, sicut illum sæpe inspexi, & studiosè perlegi.

Credunt itaq; Saraceni in Deū creatorem cęli & terre qui fecit omnia in ijs contenta, & sine quo nihil est factum. Et expectant diem nouissimum iudicij, in quo mali cum corpore & anima descensuri sunt in infernū perpetuè cruciandi, & boni equidem cum anima & corpore intraturi Paradisum sælicitatis eternę. Et hæc quidē fides pænē in cęli immortalium nationibus, lingua & ratione ventibus. Verumtamē de qualitate Paradisi est magna diuersitas inter credentes.

Nam & Saraceni & Pagani & omnes scētę præter Iudæos & baptizatos Christianos sentiunt bonorum Paradisum fore terrestrem illum de quo fuit expulsus Adam propter inobedientiam protoplastus: qui (vt putant) fluit, vel tunc fluit pluribus rimis lacūs & mellis, & vbi in domibus & mansionibus nobiliter iuxta meritum viuiscunt vsq; ædificatur auro, & argento & gemmis, perfertur omnibus corporalibus delicijs, in oblectatione animę eternaliter sine fine. Illi ergo qui fide sanctę Trinitatis carent, & Christum qui est vera lux ignorant, in tenebris ambulat. Iudei verò & omnes baptizati rectè sentiunt Paradisum cęlestem & spiritualem, vbi quilibet secundum meritum Diuinitati vnictur, per cognitionem, & amorem. Attamen Iudæi quod contra Scripturas suas sanctę Trinitati contradicunt, & Christo obloquuntur, qui est vera via, nesciunt quo vadunt. De baptizatis autē, qui firmiter fidē Catholicam in humilitate cordis sub Ecclesię præceptis seruaerunt, hi soli filij sunt lucis, & in via veniendi ad cęlestē Pardisum quē Christus verbo prædicauit, & ad quē corpore & anima, videntibus discipulis, de facto cōfendit.

Credunt etiam Saraceni, omnia esse vera, quę Deus ore prophetarum est locutus, sed in diuersitate, quia nesciunt specificari, imò specificanti contradicere defacili, vel negare. Inter omnes prophetas ponunt quatuor excellentiores, quorum supremum & excellentissimū fatentur Iesum Marię Virginis filiū, quem & asserunt, sermonē, vel loquelam, vel spiritū Dei, & pronunciatore sententiarū Dei, in iudicio generali futuro, & missū à deo ad Christianos docendos. Secundo loco Abrahamum dicunt fuisse verum Dei cultorem, & amicū.

Tertium dant Mosi locum tanquam prolocutori Dei Misso specialiter, ad instruendos Iudęos.

Quartum volunt esse Mahomet, sanctum, & verum Dei nuncium ad seipso missum, cum lege diuina in dicto libro plene contenta. Tenent itaq; indubitatè, quod beata Maria Iesum peperit, & concepit virginem: anens intacta, ac libèter loqui audire de incarnatione in ipsa facta per annunciationem Gabrielis Archangeli. Nam & Alcharo eorum dicit, ad saluationem Angeli virginem expauisse, quod tunc erat in partibus Galilęe incantator, Turquis nomine, qui per susceptam sibi formam Angeli plures virgines deslorauerat, & beatam Virginem conuenisse Angelum, an esset Turquis. Refert quoq; eam peperisse sub palma Arbore, vbi habebatur præsepe bouis, & asinę, & illic præ confusione puerperij, & verecundia ac dolore, fuisse in proximò desperatam, & infantulum in consolationem matris dixisse, mater ne timeas, Deus in te effudit secreta ad saluationem Mundi. Hęc & his similia multa ibi scribuntur figmenta, & isti plura in ter se narrando componunt, quę hoc loco ventilanda non sunt.

Et dicit liber Iesum sanctissimum omnium Prophetarum fuisse veracem in dictis & factis, benignum, pium, iustum, & ab omni vitio penitus alienum: Sanctum quoque Ioannem Euangelistam post prædictos Prophetas fuisse alijs Sanctiorem, cuius & Euangelium fatentur

tur

monialiū fidei Christi  
 go beatissimę virginis  
 Bokar fertiles, & pro  
 copiositas est fontium  
 us quod diebus Sabba-

in qua ad præsens plu-  
 hoc loco sibi delibet  
 uth, an Sur vel Tyrū.

Dan qui est sub Liba-  
 ombardicas, & ab Hie-  
 ro à Penneade Militario  
 e, contra Septentrio-  
 ritius nomen Ior. Ter-  
 terminatur, Ieronimus.

cundum quòd cum ijs  
 el Melahaf, vel Harmè

ia in ijs contenta, & sine  
 cum corpore & anima  
 na & corpore intratur  
 aliū nationibus, lingua  
 sitas inter credentes.

os Christianos sentiunt  
 propter inobedientiam  
 mellis, & vbi in domi-  
 ro, & argento & gem-

eternaliter sine fine. Illi  
 rant, in tenebris ambu-  
 spiritualem, vbi quili-  
 a. Attamen Iudæi quod  
 iunt, qui est vera via,  
 h humilitate cordis sub  
 cœlestē Pardisum quē  
 alis, de factō cōscendit,  
 n est locutus, sed in di-  
 ili, vel negarent. Inter  
 excellentissimū faten-  
 vel spiritū Dei, & pro-  
 Christianos docendos.

um.  
 ad instruendos Iudæos.  
 seipos missum, cum le-  
 beata Maria Iesum pe-  
 natione in ipsa facta per  
 d salutationem Angeli  
 quis nomine, qui per  
 Virginem conuenisse  
 ere, vbi habebatur præ-  
 plore, fuisse in proximō  
 neas, Deus in te effudit  
 gmenta, & isti plura in

cem in dictis & factis,  
 um quoque Ioannem  
 & Euangelium faten-  
 tur

ture esse plenum salutari, ac veraci doctrina, & ipsū Sanctū Ioannem illuminasse cæcos, leprosos mundasse, iustificasse mortuos, & in cælum volasse viuentem. Erat enim (prout dicit) plus quàm Propheta, & absque omni peccato, contradicente eodem de seipso, si dixerimus quòd peccatum non habemus, veritas in nobis non est: vnde & si quando Sarraceni tenent scriptum Euangelij Sancti Ioannis, aut illud beati Lucæ, missus est Angelus Gabriel, eleuant ambabus manibus pro reuerentia super caput & super oculos id ponentes, & osculantur quàm sepe cum summa deuotione. Nonnulli etiam eorum in Græco, aut Latino litterati confueuerunt cum deuotione cordis id lætitare.

Idem liber dicit Iudæos perfidos fuisse, quòd Iesu eis primū missō à Deo, & multa miracula facienti credere noluerunt, quòdque per ipsum tota gens Iudæorum fuit dignè decepta, & meritò illusa hoc modo. Iesus in hora dum Iudas eum pro signo traditionis osculabatur, posuit per Metamorphosin figuram suam, in ipsum Iudam, sicque Iudæi in ambiguo lumine nocturni temporis, pro Iesu Iudam capientes, ligantes, trahentes, deridentes, in fine crucifixerunt, putantes se omnia facere Iesu, qui protinus capto & ligato Iuda, viuus ascendit in cælum, & decemius iterum viuus ad iudicium in die finali.

Et addit, Iudæos falsissimè vsque hodie nos Christianos suo mendacio decipere, quo dicunt se Iesu crucifixisse, quem non tetegerunt. Hinc errorem tenent Sarraceni obstinati: & quoddam argumentum inire conantur. Nam si Deus (aiunt) permisisset Iesum, innocentem, & iustum ita miserabiliter occidi, censuram suæ summæ iustitię minuisset. Sed cum ipsi, vt supradictum est, in tenebris ambulant, idcirco ignorantes Dei iustitiam, statuerent voluit iustitiam, imò iniustitiam quam fabricant in corde suo, quia nos de cruce Christi scriptum nouimus, benedictum est lignum per quod fit iustitia. Illi tamen quod in aliquibus facit veræ fidei, multi quandoque eorum inuenti sunt conuersi, & plures adhuc de facili conuerterentur, si haberent prædicatores, sincerè eis verbum tractantes, quippe cum iam fateantur legem Mahometi quandoque defecturam, sicut nunc perijt lex Iudæorum, & legem Christianorum vsque in finem seculi permanfuram.

## CAPVT 22.

## De vita, &amp; nomine Mahometi.

Promissi in superioribus aliquid narrare de vita Mahometi legislatoris Sarracenorum, prout vidi in scriptis, vel audiri in partibus illis. Itaque Macho, siue Machon, vtrum in secunda syllaba scribatur N, litera, vel non idem refert: & si tertia syllaba addatur, & dicatur Machomet, vel etiam quarta, Machometus, nihil differt, quòd semper idem nomen representat. Ipsi tamen illum sepius nominant Machon. Putatur autem istum Mahomet habuisse generationis ortum de Ismael Abrahæ filio naturali de concubina Agar, vnde & vsque hodie quidam Sarracenorum dicuntur Ismaelitis, alij Agareni: sed & quidam Moabitæ, & Ammonitæ, à duobus Loth filijs Moab & Amon, genitis per incestum de proprijs filiabus.

Hic verò Machon, circa annum incarnationis Domini sexcentessimum natus, in Arabia pauper erat gratis pascens camelos, & interdum sequens Mercatores in Aegyptum fordellos illo- rum proprio collo deferens pro mercede. Et quoniam tunc temporis tota Aegyptus erat Christianæ fidei, didicit aliquid de fide nostra, quòd diuertere solebat ad cellulam Heremitæ commemorantis in deserto. Et quodammodo fabulantur Sarraceni, quod illo quandoque ingrediente cellulam, cellulæ ostium mutatum in ianuam valde patentem, velut ante palatium, & gloriantur hoc primum miraculum. Qui ex tunc conquerendo sibi pecunias, & discendo seculi actus diues est effectus, & prudens ab omnibus reputatus, in tantum, vt postmodum in terræ gubernatorem Corrozaem, (quæ est vna prouinciarum regni Arabiæ) assumeretur, ac deinde defuncto principe Codice per coniugium illius relicte in eiusdem prouinciæ principem eleuaretur. Erat autem satis somnolus, & valens, & vltra modum in verbis & factis maturus, & principalis, & satis diligebatur à suis, magis tamen metuebatur, & erat epilepticus, nemine tamen sciente. Sed tandem ab vxore comperto cōtristabatur, se tali morbido nuptam, qui versutus sefellit, & consolabatur mestam sigmento mendacij excogitati, dicens sanctum Dei Archangelum Gabrielem ad colloquendum & inspirandum sibi, quædam arcana & diuina interdum venire, & pro virtute aut claritate veniente se subito cadere & iacere ad intendendum inspirationem.

Post hoc autem, mortuo etiam Rege Arabiæ, tanta egit per simulationem sanctitatis, per donorum effusionem, & copiam promissionum, quod electus est & assumptus, in totius Arabiæ Regem.

Confirmato igitur Mahometo in regnationis suæ maiestate suprema, transactis à concepti- one Domini nostri Iesu Christi annis solaribus 612. in die Iouis feria quinta Hebdomadæ promulga-

Conuersio Sar-  
 racenorum  
 non desperan-  
 da.

Tempus Na-  
 tuitatis Ma-  
 hometi.

Fabulæ Sar-  
 racenorum.

Incrementum  
 authoritatis  
 Mahometi.

Tempus pro-  
 mulgationis  
 Alcharani.



Occasio vna  
interdicendi  
Sarracenis.

mulgavit præfatum detestandæ legis suæ librum, plenum perfidix & erroris, & à subditis tem-  
pore vitæ suæ seruari coegit, qui & vsque hodie in tanto aruo, & tot populis non sine iusto Dei  
iudicio colitur & seruatur, quamuis miserabile, & miserandum videtur, quòd tot animæ in  
illo perduntur. Erat quoque tempore regni eius, & alius Heremita in deserto Arabiæ, quem e-  
tiam quasi pro deuotione frequentare solebat, ducens secum aliquos de principibus & fami-  
lia. Super quo plures eorum attediati tractabant occidere Heremitam. Accidit tandem vna no-  
ctium, vt rex Heremitam & seipsium inebriaret, & inter loquendum ambo confopiti dormi-  
rent. Et ecce habita occasione comites gladio de latere Regis clam extracto Heremitam in-  
terfecerunt, iterum clam condentes cruentum gladium in vagina: ac ille euigilans virum  
videns occisum, magno furore succensus imposuit familiæ factum, volens omnes per iu-  
sticiam condemnari ad mortem. Cùmque coram iudicibus & sapientibus ageretur, hi omnes  
pari concordia, simili voce, & vno ore testabantur tan diuissim quàm coniunctim, Regem in  
ebrietate sua hominem occidisse, quamuis fortassis esset facti oblitus. Et in plenariam rei pro-  
bationem, dixerunt ipsum reposuisse mucronem in loculo nudum intersum, sed calido cruore  
madentem. Quo ita inuento, ac tantis rex obrutus testificationibus, nimum erubuit, plenè  
obmutuit, & confusus recessit. Et ob hoc omnibus diebus suis vna bibere renunciauit: & in  
lege sua à cunctis bibi vetuit, ac vniuersis bibètibus, colentibus, & vendentibus maledixit. Cuius  
maledictio cõuertatur in caput eius, & in verticè ipsius iniquitas eius descèdat, cùm de vino scri-  
ptum cõstet, quòd Deum & homines lætificet. Igitur de eo Sarraceni in sua superstitione deuoti-  
tatem vniueris potus eorum dulcis, delectabilis, & nutritiuus de Casaniel confectus,  
de qua & Saccarum fieri solet.

Potus Sarra-  
cenorum.

Est autem communis potus eorum dulcis, delectabilis, & nutritiuus de Casaniel confectus,  
de qua & Saccarum fieri solet.

Aliàs Mecca.

Mahometus iste post mortem suam pessimam (mors enim peccatorum pessima) conditus  
fuit honorificè in capsâ, ditissimo auro, & argento, & taxis perornata in vna ciuitate regni sui A-  
rabiæ, vbi & pro sancto, & vero Dei nuncio incipit deuotè coli à suis per annos ducentos sexa-  
ginta, atque ex tunc circa annum Domini nongentissimum cum veneratione multa cadauer e-  
ius translatum est, in digniorem ciuitatem dictam Merchel Iachrib, vbi iam longè latè que  
pro maximo sanctorum, à cordibus à diabolica fraude deceptis colitur, requiritur & adoratur.

Ogerus a  
Templariis  
proditus.

In ipsius translatione ipsa ciuitas restituebatur, & firmabatur multò honorificentius, & forti-  
tùs destructione sua, quæ per Carolum magnum Regem Franciæ antea fuit plenè annihilata, dū  
Ogerus dux Danorum præfatus in ea tenebatur captiuus, quem Templarij ad filios Brehir Regis  
Sarracenorum cum traditione vendiderant, eò quòd ipse Ogerus dictum Brehir in prælio  
occiderat, iuxta Lugdunum Franciæ ciuitatem. Et si quid nationis alterius quis ad legem  
conuerteretur Sarracenorum, dum à flamine eorum recipiendus est, dicit & facit eum Dei nunci-  
um, & repetit vsus: *Laellechella alla Mahomet zoyzel alla hebz*: quod valet tantum: Non est  
Deus nisi vnus, & Mahomet fuit eius nuncius.

CAPVT 23.

De colloquio Anthoris cum Soldano.

Error eorum  
qui putant v-  
numquemque  
in sua religio-  
ne posse beari.

Finaliter Sarraceni ponunt Iudæos malos, eò quòd legem Dei violauerunt sibi missam, & cõ-  
missam per Mosem. Et à simili probant Chriitianos malos, quòd non seruant legè Euagelij  
Christi, quam seruandam susceperint. Inest enim ijs falla persuasio ita vt putent vnūquemq; in  
ea qua natus est secta posse beari, si susceptam seruauerit illibatè: ideòq; probant ab opposito  
se esse bonos, quia, sicut dicunt, obseruant scripta legis præcepta & ceremonias sancti libri sui à  
Deo sibi transmissi per beatū nunciū suū Mahomet. Vnde & ego non tacebo quid mihi cõtigit.

Colloquium  
Soldani cum  
Mandeuillo.  
Reprehensio  
Sacerdotum.

Dominus Soldanus quodam die in castro, expulsis omnibus de camera sua, me solum retinuit  
secum tanquam pro secreto habèdo colloquio. Consuetū enim est ijs eijcere omnes tẽpore se-  
cretorum: qui diligenter à me interrogauit qualis esset gubernatio vitæ in terra nostra, breuiter  
respondèdã, bona, per Dei gratiam, qui recepto hoc verbo dixit ita non esse. *Sacerdotes*: (inquit)  
*vestri, qui seipfos exhibere debent alijs in exemplū, in malis iacent acibus, parùm curant de Templi  
seruitio: habiim & studijs se conformant mundo: se inebriant vino, continentia infringentes, cum frau-  
de negotiantes, ac praua principibus consilia ingerentes. Cõmunis quoq; populus, dum festis diebus intẽ-  
dere debent deuotioni in templo, currit in hortis, in spectaculis, in tabernis vsq; ad crapulam, & ebbri-  
etatem, & pinguia manducans & bibens, ac in bestiarum morem, luxuriam prauam exercens. In u-  
sura, dolo, rapina, furto, detractione, mendacis & perisurio viuunt plures eorum euidenter, ac  
si qui talia non agant, vs fatui reputantur, & pro nimia cordis superbia nesciunt ad libitum exco-  
gitare, qualiter se velint habere, mutando sibi indumenta, nunc longa, nunc curta nimis, quandoq; am-  
pla, quandoq; stricta ultra modum, vt in his singulis appareant derisi potius quàm vestiti: pileos quoque,  
calceos, caligas, corrigias sibi fabricant exquisitas, cum etiam e contra deberent secundum Christi  
doctrinam simplices, Deo deuoti, humiles, veraces, inuicem diligentes, inuicè concordantes, & inuicem*

Vestimento-  
rum varietas  
reprehensio.

S. I.  
de fa-  
nem  
norm  
A  
qui v  
Don  
terd  
mis,  
Print  
earu  
Ige  
uit, e  
las d  
nem  
nati,  
N  
taqu  
talite  
N  
lis o  
liber  
mur  
stiru  
nam  
Chr

ni po-  
rem  
nobi  
gis d  
circè  
E  
vel d  
per f  
quan  
de m  
A  
ciuit  
bio a  
bus  
bus,  
Si  
maic  
quia  
viqu

oris, & à subditis tem-  
pulis non sine iusto Dei  
iur, quòd tot animarū in  
ferro Arabiar, quem e-  
le principibus & fami-  
licidit tandem vna no-  
mbo consopiti dormi-  
tracto Heremitam in-  
cille euigilans virum  
volens omnes per ius-  
u ageretur, hi omnes  
oniunctim, Regem in  
it in plenariam rei pro-  
fumi, sed calido cruore  
nimium erubuit, plenè  
dere renunciauit: & in  
tibus maledixit. Cuius  
cedat, cum de vino scri-  
ua superflitione deuo-  
on verentur in secreto.  
de Casaniel confectus,

rum pessima) conditus  
na ciuitate regni sui Ar-  
r annos ducentos sexa-  
tione multa cadauer e-  
vbi iam longè latèque  
requiritur & adoratur.  
onorificentius, & forti-  
uit plenè annihila, dū  
arij ad filios Brehir Re-  
ctum Brehir in prælio  
alterius quis ad legem  
& facit eum Dei nunci-  
ualet tantum: Non est

idano.  
erunt sibi missam, & cō-  
n seruant legē Euāgelij  
ut putent vniquemq; in  
; probant ab opposito  
emonias sancti libri sui à  
acebo quid mihi cōtigit.  
a sua, me solum retinuit  
ijcere omnes tēpore se-  
in terra nostra, breuiter  
esse. *Sacerdotis* (inquit)  
parum curant de Templo  
ā infringentes, cum frau-  
us, dum festis diebus intē-  
vsg, ad crapulam, & ebbri-  
prauam exercens. In v-  
ures eorum euidenter, ac  
esciunt ad libitum exco-  
urta nimis, quandoq; am-  
uam vestiti, plectos quoque,  
rent secundum Christi sui  
concordantes, & miriam  
de

de facili remittentes. Scimus etiam eos propter peccata sua perdidisse hanc terram optimam quam te-  
nemus, nec timemus eam amittere, quam dū se taliter gubernant. At tamen non dubitamus, quin in fu-  
turum per meliorem vitam conuersationem merebuntur de nostris eam manibus recuperare.

Ad hoc ego vltra confusus & stupefactus, nequiu inuenire responsū; verebar enim oblo-  
qui veritati, quamuis ab Infidelis ore prolata, & vultu præ rubore demisso percunctatus sum,  
Domine, salua reuerentia, qualiter potestis ita plenè hoc noscere? De hominibus (ait) meis in-  
terdum mitto ad modum Mercatorū per terras, & regiones Christianorū, cum Balsamo, gem-  
mis, sericis, ac aromatis, ac per illos singula exploro, tam de statu Imperatoris, ac Pōtificum,  
Principum, ac Sac erdotum, quàm Prælatorum, nec nō æquora, prouincias, ac distinctiones  
earum.

Igitur peracta colloctione nostra satis producta, egressos principes in cameram reuoca-  
uit, ex quibus quatuor de maioribus iuxta nos aduocans, fecit eos expressè ac debite, per singu-  
las diuisiones in lingua Gallicana distinguere per partes, & singularem nomina partium, om-  
nem regionem terræ Angliæ, ac alias Christianorum terras multas, ac si inter nostros fuissent  
nati, vel multo tempore conuersati.

Nam & ipsum Soldanum audiui cum ijs bene & directè loquentem idioma Francorum. Ita-  
que in omnibus his mente consternatus obmutui, cogitans, & dolens de peccatis singulis, rem-  
taliter se habere,

Nunc piè igitur (rogo) consideremus, & corde attendamus, quantæ sit confusionis, & qua-  
lis opprobrij, dum Christiani nominis inimici nobis nostra exprobrant crimina. Et studeat qui-  
libet in melius emendare, quatenus (Deo propitio) possit in breui tempore, hæc de qua loqui-  
mur, terra Deo delecta, hæc sacrosancta terra, hæc filijs Dei promissa, nobis Dei adoptiuis re-  
stitui vel certè, quod magis exorandum est, ipsi Sarraceni ad fidem Catholicam, & Christia-  
nam obedientiam, Ecclesiæ filijs aggregari, vt simul omnes per Dominum nostrum Iesum  
Christum consubstantialem Dei filium perueniamus ad cælestem Paradisum.

Insignis Man-  
deuilli per-  
oratio.

*Explicit prima pars huius operis.*

## Secunda pars.

### CAPVT. 24.

*Persuasio ad non credentes terrarum diuersitates per orbem terræ.*



Irabilis Deus mirabilia propter semetipsum creauit, vt scilicet ab intellectu-  
alibus creaturis suis intelligeretur, & per hoc diligeretur, atque in hoc ipse  
creator, & creatura se mutuò fruerentur. Mirabilis est ergo Deus maximè in  
illo, quòd ipse solus sufficit sibi: & mirabilis in altis Dominus, hoc est, in cæ-  
lo & in cælestibus: sed & mirabilis in terris, & in terrestribus: tamen si verum  
iudicauerimus, nihil est mirabile, quod mirū videri non debet, si ille qui om-  
nipotens est, fecit quæcunque voluit in cælo & in terra. Sed ecce dum nobis contingit videre  
rem quam prius non vidimus, miratur noster animus, non quòd simpliciter mirum est, sed quod  
nobis id mirum & nouum, Deus vnus, simplex quidem est, vt creaturæ cælestes quò Deo ma-  
gis de propinquo sunt eò simplices existunt. Terrestris autem quòd in situ remotiori sint, id-  
circo magis diuersæ, magis contrariæ inter se sunt.

Ergo quicunque sapiens est non stupet animo, dum in terrenis respicit res varias, & diuersas,  
vel dum diuersa contingunt, seu inueniuntur in partibus terræ diuersis: sed qui intellectum su-  
per sentum non eleuant, & magis credunt oculo suo corporeo, quàm spiritali, & qui nun-  
quam à natiuitatis suæ loco recesserunt, isti vix volunt credere, seu possunt alijs vera narrantibus  
de mundi diuersitatibus.

At tamen tales, si vellent, de facili videre possunt suum errorem. Quia quicunque natus in vna  
ciuitate, vel patria, si tantummodò moueat se ad proximam ciuitatem, inueniet ibi procul du-  
bio aliquam differentiam, vel diuersitatem in idiomate linguæ, vel in modo loquendi, in mori-  
bus hominum, in occupationibus, in legibus, in consuetudinibus, vel etiam in agrorum fructi-  
bus, in arborum frugibus, seu in his quæ gignuntur in terra, in aere, & in aquis.

Si ergo aequaliter inueniri possit differentia in proximo, quantò maior sit distantia, tantò  
maior differentia æstimanda est in remoto, vel in remotiori, seu remotissimo loco. Vnde ego,  
quia in præcedente parte tractatus narrare cepi aliqua, quæ in his, & in peregrinatione mea  
vsque in terram promissionis sanctam vidi, de quibus etiam potest, & poterit constare multis,  
qui

Reprehensio  
incredulorū,  
qui nihil cre-  
dunt, nisi quod  
domi viderint.

qui in partibus nostris eadem peregrinatione me præcesserunt, & secuti sunt, procedam in describendo aliqua illorum, quæ vidi & percepi in deambulatione mea, qua peragravi multas alias terras, & perlegi multas vndas, vsque in multorum hoc tempus annorum, & propter insipientes, & discredentes non tacebo. Sed nec propter credentes nec sapientes fatis mouebor, ita enim vt diuersa Dei opera qui respicere non possunt oculo, saltem legant, vel audiant ex hoc scripto. Pauca vtique vidi horum quæ sunt, sed pauca horum quæ vidi, narrabo.

CAPVT. 25.

*De Armenia, Persia, & Amazonia.*

**D**E regionibus quæ Iudææ contiguantur, scilicet Arabia, Aegypto & Syria, statui modicum vltra narrare, relinquens hunc locum narrandi alijs peregrinis. Et festinans ad terras remotiores, Armeniam inuicem, non per singulas ciuitates, sed celeriter transiens, vidi à remotis amplum castrum vocatum Del espoyer, de quo mihi sustinui dici, quod sit vastum, & à nemine habitatum, nisi à fantastica quadam Domina, seruante in medio maioris aulae super perticam, volucrum rapacem, quæ dicitur Latine accipiter, vel huiusmodi: quam auem, si aliquis hominum ingre diens se custodire peruigil absq; vlla somnolentia per septem continuos dies & noctes possit, ipsa Domina in fine facti apparet concederet illi quantamcumque faceret petitionem terræ, commodi, vel honoris, sed si obdormiret, periret. Huic tamen dicto parum curavi accommodare aurem, nisi quod communiter dicebatur, in bene transacto tempore prædicta suscipiente tentata per duas personas, vnum Regem, & alterum Paltorem. Et Regi quidem quod indubitam fecit petitionem, vile successit negotium, paltori peroptime successit negotium.

Mandeuillus  
mihi facit has  
fabulas.

Artyron ciui-  
tas.  
Sabissafelle,  
Ararath.

Landania,  
Hany magna  
ciuitas,  
Tauriza ciui-  
tas famosa.  
Zadone ciui-  
tas.  
Cafach.  
Geth.  
Camaa.  
"Vel Sinar.  
Ruinae anti-  
quæ Babylo-  
niz.  
Manna Apo-  
thecariorum  
Chaldæa.  
Amazonia in-  
sula.

In Armenia maiori, est magna & bona ciuitas Artyron ad dietam propè flumini Euphratem. Et sunt ibi duo montes euecti valde, vnus Sabissafelle, alter Ararath, quorum vltimus habet per anfractus, & periodos per ascensum viæ, ferè 7. leucas, & quasi omni tempore est plenus niue.

In illo loco fertur quiescisse Arca diluuij, cuius vnicus asser môstratur, in Ecclesia Monachorū ad montis pedem habitantiū: attamē nullus hominū pro frigore nimio attetare presūmit ascensū.

Est autem & ibi ciuitas Landania, de qua nonnulli dicunt quod Noe illam fundauerat, & ciuitas magna Hany, in qua, tempore Christianorum mille habebantur Ecclesie.

In illa Arinenia sub Imperio Persæ est famosa ciuitas Tauris, vbi de mercionij ponderalibus fit inestimabilis mercatura. Hinc ad decem dietas ad Orientem habetur ciuitas Zadonia, in ea Imperator Persarum moratur, & est in eodem imperio ciuitas valde magna Cassach, quæ recto itinere dicitur stare ab Hierosolymis 55. dietis. Geth ciuitas imperialis, & melior totius Persæ in hæc terra noscitur esse, cum tamen Carnaa sit satis maior.

Circa fines Persæ in terra "Sennaar, est illa quæ olim dicebatur Babylonia, nec apparet ibi aliquid, quàm ruinae grandis & vetustæ ciuitatis, quæ ab hominibus est deserta, sed à Draconibus inhabitata, & alijs animalibus, & volucibus venenosis. Hanc terram tenet Imperator Persarum, vt supra dixi. Etiam intra fines Persæ, est terra, vbi sanctus Job patiens morabatur, quæ modò dicitur terra Sues, in cuius montanis inuenitur Manna, quod venditur in Apothecis. Huic terræ Sues contiguatur Chaldæa, quæ non est magna, quamuis nobilis regio habeatur. Et ab ista intratur Amazonia.

Amazonia est modica insula, quam absque viris solæ regunt & inhabitant mulieres: cuius rei prima causa hæc fuit.

Olim cum insula communiter à viris, & mulieribus habitabatur, Rex eius dictus Colopius cum omnibus nobilibus suis in bello contra Regnum Scithæ occisus fuit. Audientes igitur nobilium vxores ipsius insulæ se viduaras, super his in doloroso furore animi ad plures congressiones occiderunt & fugauerunt omnes aliarum mulierum maritos, ne scilicet sua ingenuitas subiaceret voluntati, & potestati plebis. Et tandem post reformatam inter se pacem mulieres inito consilio statuerunt se solas absque viris dominari in terra, atque ex tunc sumi sibi regimen per certam electionis formam, quæ robusta, agilis, sapiens, iuuenis, ac valens apparet in armis.

Sciendū tamen est, extra hanc insulam flumen esse, & alias modicas insulas, quarū vna dicitur Carmagite, de quibus licitum est ijs accersire viros, & amafios bis in anno, ita vt nulla moram trahat septem dierum naturalū sub pœna indubitata occisionis. Infanem masculū nutrire licet quoadusq; per se comedat & gradiatur, tunc transmittendus est in domū paternam. Generosæ natæ puellæ aufertur ignito cultro vber sinistrum pro scuto gerendo, de generi dextrum, ad sagittandum de arcu Turco.

Regina cum consiliariis & officialibus suis regit sapienter & bene terram, & seruat omnes sibi sub districta obedientia, per leges, & pœnas, & amendas conscriptas. Et cum circumiacentium insularum Reges contra se ad inuicem præliari solent, tunc Regina Amazoniz cum suis Nobilibus ab vna parte pro magno stipendio vocari solet in adiutoriū, vbi & inuicem sunt sapientes in consilijs, probæ in armis, acres in consilijs, & in omnibus Curæ actibus bene valentes.

CAP.

De Aethiopia, & Diamantibus, & de infima India.

uri sunt, procedam in qua peragraui multas norum, & propter infantes fatis mouebor; tant, vel audiant ex hoc irrabo.

nia. Syria, statui modicum festinas ad terras retransiens, vidi à remotis sit vastum, & à nemine s aulæ super perticam, auem, si aliquis homi- continuo dies & non- que faceret petiti- dicto parùm curauì ac- tempore prædicta fugi quidem quod inde- lic negotium.

opè fluuium Euphra- quorum vltimus habet èpore est plenus niue. Eccelesia Monachorù tare præsumit ascensù. lam fundauerat, & ci- clesiaz.

mercimonijs ponde- habetur ciuitas Zado- valdè magna Cassach, perialis, & melior to-

onia, nec apparet ibi a- era, sed à Draconibus met Imperator Perfai- cians morabatur, quæ enditur in Apothecis, obilis regio habeatur.

ant mulieres: cuius rei

cius dictus Colopius t. Audientes igitur no- ni ad plures congressi- et sua ingenuitas sub- pacem mulieres inito sumi sibi regimen per apparet in armis.

ulas, quarù vna dicitur no, ita vt nulla moram masculù nutrire licet paternam. Generosæ generi dextrum, ad fa-

erram, & seruat omnes Et cum circumiacen- Amazoniz cum suis bi & inuētæ sunt sapiē- acibus bene valētes.

C A P.

Aethiopia consistit à terra Chaldæorum in Austrum, quæ distinguitur in Orientalem Aethi- opiam, & Meridionalem, quarum prima in illis partibus vocatur Cush, propter hominum nigredinem, altera Mauritania. Et est ibi Regnum Saba, de quo legitur; quod Regi Salo- moni Reges Arabum, & Saba, dona & tributa adduxerunt. Eòque Regina Saba venit à finibus, hoc est, à longinquis terræ partibus audire sapientiam Salomonis. Omnes in Aethiopia aque in fluuijs & riparijs, & fontibus sapiunt Sal, propter nimium calorem. Est ibi vnus aquæ fons ita de nocte calidus, vt nemo in eo sustineat manum, & ita de die frigidus, vt bibi vix possit.

Mauritania. Regnum Saba

Plinius.

Generaliter isti de Mauritania Aethiopes comedunt parilm, de facili inebriantur, fluxum ventris patiuntur, nec diu viuunt.

India triplex.

De Aethiopia intratur in Indiam mediam, nam triplex est, videlicet infima, quæ in quibus- dam suis partibus est nimis frigida ad inhabitandum: Media quæ satis temperata est, & supe- rior, quæ nimis calida. In India infima propter continuum & graue frigus generatur christal- lum de aqua per gelu, sicut quidam asserunt. Sed certum est ibi haberi rupes christalli, & in il- lis gigni optimos Diamantes, quos lingua illius vocant Hamestht.

Diamantes.

Est autem diamas paruus præciosus lapis, magnæ virtutis, sicut plenius describitur in lapida- rijs. Quidam inueniuntur in magnitudine pisci, vel etiam pisci minores: alii ad quantitatem fa- bæ, sed nullus maior auellana, vel nucæ. Et dicitur de eo in partibus illis, quod si hic qui portat sit contiuens, & sobrius reddit illum magnanimum & audacem, & iuuat in causis iustis certan- tem, conseruat substantias corporales, auert praua somnia, depellit prauorum spirituum illusi- ones, fortilegia, & incantationes, ac valet contra lunaticam passionem, & demonis obsessio- nem, & venenosum quod illi appropinquauerit exsudat, & exhume scit.

Experientia Mandeuilli in diamantibus.

Optimi Diamantes de India asimulantur in colore multum christallo, sed sunt aliquantu- lum magis citrini, & pro sui duritie poliri non possunt. Inueniuntur autem ibi nonnulli subni- gri ad colorem violæ: Alii nascuntur in Arabia nigri, & tenuiores prædictis, alii in Macedonia, & quidam in Cypro, sed in mineris auri, dum prima massa in minutias confingitur, interdum reperiuntur. Sciendum enim est, sæpè plures simul crescere, nec non generant, & concipiunt inuicem de rore calii, quemadmodum & Margaritæ: quod ego pluribus tentans, accepti de rupe cespitem cum diamante masculo, & femella, plantans in pratello, & frequentans, focillans ma- defeci de rore Maii. Et ecce in breui, paruulus ex iis gignebatur, nascebatur, & adolefcebat ad debitam quantitatem: sunt verò omnes per naturam cum pluribus angulis vt trium vel qua- tuor, aut quinque laterum, & nonnulli cum lateribus senis. E contra, omnes margaritæ nascun- tur in forma sphærica, seu rotunda.

Diamantum sophisticatio.

Probario veri diamantis.

Et notandum quòd mercatores, pro diamantibus, frequenter aliud vendunt: Nam solet commixtio fieri de christallo Crochee, de Saphiro, de Lonpes Citrino, de lapide Yri, & de pari- uis petris ex murium nidis. Probatio veri diamantis haberi potest his modis.

Primò, si ita inuenitur tener, vt se poliri dimittat, non est verus.

Item si de eo non potest scindi vitrum cristallum, non est verus.

Item accipe paruum quantitatis lapidem Adamantem, qui solet sibi attrahere acum & ferrum, & pone verum diamantem super adamantem, tunc que si ministraueris ad amanti a- cum, videbis adamantem operari nihil, vero diamante præsentè, dum tamen adamas non sit di- amante maior.

Item si cultellum laminæ tenuis, habentem in manubrio inclusum vel alligatum verum dia- mantem in mensa vel asserè crexeris, protinus vt ipsi venenum appropinquabit, stabit tremu- lans atque sudans: Et notandum, quòd per luxuriosum, seu gulosum qui ferret diamantem a- mitteret virtutem ad tempus.

Terra Indiæ vnde dicta.

Insula Ormuz

Terra Indiæ appellatur ab Indo ibi corrente fluuiò, cuius anguillæ inueniuntur quando que- vltra 20. pedes in longitudine. In media India transitur per multas insulas vsque ad mare O- ceanum; in insulanis Ormuz, vbi Mercatores Venetiæ sæpè tendunt, sed viri, qui afflicti non sunt tantum sustinere calorem, ne exeat perpendicularia de corporibus propè ad genia, ibi se contra hoc debitè inuoluunt, & ligant, nec audent ibi transire nauibus ferrum continentibus, ne teneantur de rupibus adamantum.

A Balsara, per sinum Persicū ad Ormuzium nauigantes, talibus hodie vniuntur nauigijs, sine ferro- is clauis.

Hic in aliquibus Aethiopiæ partibus habitant publicè, inhonestorum vtriusque sexus ho- minum consuetudinem inhonestam gerentes, & in æstu meridiano refrigerandi causa exeunt circa cluitatem ad riparias iacere, & discurrere nudis prorsus corporibus omni pudore reiecto, ex quo procul dubio inhonesta vitia sequuntur.

ER

Insula Chaua,  
vel Chau  
forte.

Est & non longè ab ista insula regio seu insula Caua vel Chaus, quæ à primo statu multum est minorata per inare. Hi sunt infidelissimi Paganorum. Nam quidam adorant Solem, alij Lunam, ignem, aquam, & terram, arborem, vel serpentem, vel cui de manè primò obuiant. Ibi magni mures, quos nos dicimus rattas, sunt in quantitate paruorum canum. Et quoniam per caros capi non possunt, capiuntur per canes maiores.

Zarke, vel  
Zarclyas.

Corpora inortuorum non sepeliuntur ibi, nec cadauera qualibet bestiarum operiuntur, quòd ad acris æstum carnes in breui tempore consumuntur, nam & tota insula consistit sub zona torrida. Inde transferri potest per mare in Indiam superiorem, siue maiorem, videlicet Imperium Presbyteri Ioannis ad portum ciuitatis Zarke, quæ est elegans & bona satis. In ea habitant plurimi Catholicæ fidei Christiani: & habentur plurimæ Abbatiæ religioforum, quas olim Dux Danorum Ogerus constituit, vnde & vsque nunc dicuntur Ecclesiæ Dani, atque ex hoc nauigari potest in terram Lombe.

Terra Lombe.

CAPVT 27.

*De foresto Piperis, & fonte iuuentutis.*

Flandrina.  
Singlant.

**R**egio seu insula dicta Lombe, spatiosa quidem est, continens forestum dictum aliàs Tombar, longi per dietas 18. In orbe vniuerso nõ noscimus crescere piper, præterquam in hoc foresto. In quo & habentur duæ ciuitates, vna Flandrina, (& illa ciuitas inhabitata est à Iudeis, & Christianis, inter quos sæpè magna seditio oritur) altera Singlant: quas quondam Danus fertur fundasse Ogerus, vocans vnam Flandrinam, nomine auiæ suæ ex parte patris sui, alteram Florentiam nomine auiæ ex parte matris suæ, quæ mutato nomine nunc vocatur Singlant.

Piper quomodo  
creseat.

Sciendum est autem, piper ibi crescere in hunc modum: sicut nos plantamus vites aut quercus arbores robustas, vt vitis cum fructibus se spargat, vt supportetur per ramos, sic coluntur arbuta piperis ad arbores foresti, & sparantur per ramos, & dependent fructus vt botri. Et venit in eodem arbutulo triplex piper in anno.

Piper longum

Primum est quod vocatur longum piper, & venit priusquam nascuntur folia in arbutis, quemadmodum nos in arbore videmus corylo in hyeme ante folia præcedere quasdam caudulas longas, quo circa initium vindemiato, nascuntur cum folijs botri piperis viridis ad similitudinem paruorum vuarum. Quod quidem circa tempus Iulij in eadem viriditate vindemiatum, in æstu feruido siccatur ad Solem, vt accipiat nigredinem, & rugarum contractionem.

Piper album.

Postea exurgit piper album in granis minoribus, & in abundantia satis minori, quo tanquam precipiosior vtuntur in partibus illis, & rarò vendunt ad partes istas.

Primum piper appellatur Sorbotyn, secundum Fulful, tertium verò Bauos.

Sunt autem per nemus istud fera animalia, & venenosa, sicut parui serpentes, colubri, & huiusmodi, de quibus nescio quis famam diffundit per nostras partes, quòd vindemiatores piperis tales venes fugant per ignem: sed non est ita, inò vngunt brachia, manus, tibias, & pedes cum quodam succo herbæ dictæ Limonse, à quo citò diffugit omne venenum.

Mons Polembus.

In huius foresti capite sub monte Polembus, est ciuitas dicta Polemba, & sub eodem monte fons qui dicitur Iuuentutis. Aqua huius fontis reddit odorem, & saporem quasi de omni genere aromatatum, nam singulis penè horis immutat odorem, & saporem. Et quisquis per aliquos dies potat ieiuno stomacho sanatur in breui tempore, à quacunque interiori infirmitate, languore duntaxat mortis excepto: & sanè illorum qui propè sunt, & frequenter bibunt apparet per totum vitæ tempus mira iuuentus. Ego autem ter vel quater bibi, quamobrem & vsque hodie arbitror potius me corporaliter valere. Putatur enim fons ille immediate per poros subterraneos eliquari de fonte paradisi terrestri, ita quòd nulla via decurrentium super terram fluensium vicietur. In ista etiam regione, & in insulis circumquaque creseit gingiber valde bonum, vnde & mercatores sæpè ibi tendunt de Venetia pro emendo pipere & gingibere. Genes verò huius insulæ peruersæ & stolidissimæ sunt superstitionis adorantes bouem tanquam animal beatisimum, propter eius simplicitatem mansuetudinem, patientiam, & vtilitatem.

Ciuitas Polemba.

Fons Iuuentutis.

Nota.

Gingiber.

Multitudo cuiuslibet ciuitatis vel villæ vnius speciatem nutrit bouem, quem postquam laborauit in aratro per sex annos immolant manducantes pariter cum maxima solemnitate. Et quicunque inde minimam minutiam comedit, reputat se sanctificatum totum.

Porro apud Regem tenetur bos singularis, cuius custos diligentissimè vrinam in vase aureo accipit simpliciter, & desimo in vase consimili: & quotidie venit summus eorum prælatus, quem dicunt Archiprotoplastum, offert personaliter in prædictis preciosis vasibus, Domino Regi de bouis vrina & simo, atque in vrina, quam appellant Gaul, tingens manus, defricat, & perungit Regis pectus & frontem, deinde similiter de simo in multa cordis attentione, ad sinem vt

Archiprotoplastus,  
Gaul.

possint

æ à primo statu multum adorant Solem, alij Lunam primò obuiant. Ibi manent. Et quoniam per cat-

est bestiarum operiuntur, in insula conficitur sub zona maiorem, videlicet Impebona fatis. In ea habitant eligioforum, quas olim sicut Dani, atque ex hoc

stum dictum alijs Tomper, præterquam in hoc inhabitata est à Iudæis, & quondam Danus fertur patris sui, alteram Floccatur Singlant.

lantamus vites aut querper ramos, sic coluntur dent fructus vt botri. Et

entur folia in arbutis, ræcedere quasdam cauti piperis viridis ad similitudinem viriditate vindegarum contractio-

ia satis minori, quo tantas.

Bauos. serpentes, colubri, & hunda vindemiaiores piperis manus, tibias, & pedes cum lum.

ba, & sub eodem monte rem quasi de omni generis. Et quisquis per aliquos anteriori infirmitate, lanquenter bibunt apparet, quamobrem & vsque immediatè per poros suburentium super terram rescit ginger valdè bopere & gingibere. Genentiam, & vilitatem.

em, quem postquam lanaxima solemnitate. Et in totum.

me vram in vase aureo ummus eorum prælatu, preciosis vas, Domino Reas manus, defricat, & peris attentione, ad finem vt possunt

possint assequi quatuor virtutes bouis præfari.

Post regem cum reuerentia accedunt, & vnguntur Barones, principes, & post ipsos cæteri ordinati quicumque attingere possunt, putantes se sanctificari per rem penitus non valentem, imò nimis fœdâ, & inhonestam.

Præterea populi isti colunt Idola facta ad medium in forma humana, & ad medium in forma bouis. In quibus permissione Dei per eorum perfidiam maligni spiritus habitant dantes de interrogatis responsa. Et hijs Idolis offerunt infinita donaria quandoq; & sacrificant interdum proprios infantes, ipsorum sanguine Idola respergentes.

Dum hic maritus moritur, vxor comburitur cum marito, nisi de illo habeat sobolem cum quo viuere solet, & velit. Quæ sibi eligit cum prole superuiuere, non habebitur de cætero fide digna.

Vxor cum marito combusta.

Attamen in simili causa, si vir non vult cremari cum vxore mortua, non minuit ei honorem.

Et forte vinum nascitur ibi: quòd mulieres bibunt, & non viri, vt sic mulieribus crescant barbæ, sed mulieribus raduntur, & viris minime.

## CAPVT. 28.

## De Ecclesia &amp; corpore Sancti Thomæ Apostoli.

**H**inc in Meridiem pluribus exactis Insulis per viam decem dietarum venit in Regnum Mabr6, Illic in ciuitate Calamiæ, seruatur in magno templo corpus beatissimi Thomæ Apostoli Domini noster Iesu Christi in capsâ honorificata. In quo loco & martirizatus fuit, licet dicunt quidam, quod in Edissa ciuitate. Ille populus non est multum tempus transfactum, quin fuit totus in fidei religione, sed nunc est ad pessimos Gentilium ritus peruersus, nec attendit, nec veneratur reliquias sancti corporis Apostoli ibidem contentas, quanius ijs euidens, ac vile, & mirificum prætere solet beneficium, quod infra narrabo.

Regio Mabr6, vel Malaber. Calamia, vel Calumè, Thomæ Apostoli sepultura.

Per certas historias habetur Ducem Danorum Ogerum conquisiuisse has terras, & in exaltatione sanctarum Apostoli reliquiarum fecisse fieri præfatam spectabilem Ecclesiam, ac intra eam reponi in nobilissimo loculo, gemmis, auro, argentoque decenter ornato Sanctum corpus, ac deinde post annorum tempus trecentorum Assyrios abstulisse feretrum cum ipso corpore sancto in Edissam ciuitatem Mesopotamiæ, in qua & fuit martyrizatus secundum quosdam, rursusq; post sexaginta & tres annos recuperatū corpus in suam fuisse Ecclesiam restitutum, videlicet in Calamia, atque in eiusdem recuperationis signum certum dimiserunt isti, & dimitunt extra feretri loculum dependere brachium dextrum, cum manu quæ tetigisse creditur pia resurgentis vulnera Christi.

Quærendum est quæ sint istæ historias.

Eadem quoque manus solet vsque hodie suæ veræ pœnitentiæ tale manifestare miraculum vt dum partes quolibet litigantes velint vtræque suas causas iuramento confirmare, conscrip-tishinc indè causis ponantur ambæ cartulæ in Apostoli manu. Quæ cunctis] exeuntibus Ecclesiam, protinus sub vnius horæ tempore reiecta longius saltitate, veritatem sibi referuat: sed nunc sicut dicere cæpi isti populi huic beneficio Dei ingrati, & diabolica illusione exæcati mirabiliter paganizant.

Inter ea dum exirer, Monachi suos dolos potuerunt exercere.

Nam & in hac ipsa beati Thomæ Ecclesia statuerunt multa miræ magnitudinis simulachra, ex quibus vnum quòd maius est multò alijs apparet sedens homo in alto folio adoperto aureis sericis, & lapidibus præciosis, habensque ad collum suspensa pro ornato multa cinctoria præciosè gemmis, & auro contexta. Ad hoc autem Idolum adorandum confluunt peregrini à remotis partibus, & propinguis, in satis maiori copia, & valdè feruentiori deuotione quam Christiani, ad sanctum Iacobum in Galizia, quia multi eorum per totum peregrinationis iter, non audent erigere palpebras oculorum, ne fortè propter hoc deuotio intermitteretur.

Idolum in templo sancti Apostoli erectum.

Alij de propè venientes superaddunt labori itinerandi, vt ad tertium vel ad quartum passum semper cadant in genibus. Nonnulli quoque demoniaca inspiratione senetipfos per viam peregrinationis lanceolis, & cultellis nunc minoribus, nunc maioribus fauciant vulneribus per singula corporis loca, & dum ante Idolum perueniunt, excisum frustum de carne propria projiciunt ad Idolum pro offerenda, ac plagis durioribus se castigant, & quandoque spontaneè penitus se occidunt: in solemnitatibus verò, sicut in dedicatione, & sicut in thronizatione simulachrorum, fit conuentus populi, quasi totius Regni. Et ducitur cum processione maius Idolum per circuitum ciuitatis, in curru præciosissimo, modis omnibus perornato, & præcedat in numero magno puellæ cantantes binæ, & binæ ordinatissime, succeditque pluralitas Musicorum cum instrumentis varijs simphonizantes, quos continè sublequitur currus, cuius lateribus coniungit se peregrinorum exercitus, qui & venerunt de remotis.

Ibique cemitur miserabilis actus ultra modum. Nam aliqui victi ultra modum diabolica deuotione proiciunt se sub rotis currus præcedentis, vt frangantur sibi crura, brachia, latera, dorſa, nec non & colla in reuerentiam Dei sui (vt dicunt) à quo remunerationem sperant, venire ad Paradisum terrestrem.

Occidunt se  
in honorem  
Idoli.

Reprehendit  
fabulas vulgi.

Et post processionem postquam statuerunt Idolum in templo suo loco, multiplicatur coram simulachris numerus sæpè plangentium, & occidentium ultra quam credi sit facile. Ita quod quandoque in illa vnica solemnitate inueniuntur ducenta corpora, vel plura occisorum. Et assistant propinqui amici talium diaboli martyrum, cum magna musicorum melodia decantantes in sua lingua offerunt Idolis corpora, ac demum accento rogo omnia corpora comburunt in honorem Idolorum, affluentes sibi singuli aliquid de ossibus aut cineribus pro reliquijs, quas putant sibi valinuras contra quolibet infortunia, & tempestates. Et habetur ante templum aquæ lacus, velut seruatorium piscium, in quo proicit populus largissimè suas oblationes, argentû, aurû, gemmas, cyphos, & similia, quibus ministri certis temporibus exhibentes prouident Ecclesiæ, ac sibi ipsis abundantè. Quoddam fabulosum scriptum exiit per partes nostras, quod in prædicta processione circumferatur cuius pheretro corpus heath Thomæ, qui & in fine processionis populo communicaret proprijs manibus de Euchariſtiæ sacramento, sed non est ita, & nunquam fuit.

C A P V T. 29.

*De Iaua, & quibusdam alijs meridionalibus Insulis: & de farina, melle & piscibus Ogeri Ducis Danorum.*

Processio s. diciturum in Austrum.

Humanis carnis vescentes, seu di. per. 943. 21.

Mandeuillus vsus astrolabio.

Insula Rotonigo.

Iaua insula, grandis. Multa aromata in Iaua.

Victorie Ogeri Ducis Dani.

Hinc patet quod Imperium Grand Can ad Austrum valdè olim protèdebatur. ¶ Vel Tholomassi.

¶ Vel Paten.

Inde vterius procedendo in Austrum per multas & mirabiles terras quinquaginta duarum dieitarum spacio, habetur magna Insula Lamori. Illic omnes nudi incedunt, & scè omnia sunt singulis communia, nec vtuntur priuatis clauibus siue feris, imo & omnes mulieres sunt communes omnibus & singulis viris, dummodo violentia non inferatur: sed & peior est ijs consuetudo, quod libentè comedunt teneras carnes humanas; vnde & negotiatores adferunt eis crassos infantes venales: quod si non satis pingues afferuntur, eos saginant sicut nos vitulum, siue porcum.

Hic apparet in bona altitudine polus Antarcticus, & incipit modò apparere in alta Lybia, ita quod in alta Ethiopia eleuatur octodecim gradibus, prout ipse probaui Astrolabio.

Ad meridiem terræ Lamori est Insula bona, Sumebor, cuius gentes reputant se nobiliores alijs, signantes se in facie certo cauterio. Illi semper guerras gerunt contra præfatas gentes nudas de Lamory.

Ad modicam iudè distantiam habetur Insula Rotonigo abundans in bonis pluribus: sed & in Austrum sequuntur a. a. plures regiones & Insulæ, de quibus prolixum narrare fuisset.

Et est valde grandis regio Iaua, habens in circuitu ambitum leucarum duarum millium. Huius rex est valde potens, & imperans septem insularum vicinarum regibus. Terra ista est populosa valdè, & crescunt in ea species, & abundantia gingiberis, canella, gariofoli, nuces muscatæ, & mastix, cum aromatis multis. Sed & quod ibi nascatur vinum, non habent: aurum & argentum est ibi in copia immensa, quòd patet in regis Iauæ palatio, cuius palatij nobilitas non est facilè scribenda.

Cuncti gradus ascendentes ad palatij aulas, & aularum cameras, & ad thalamos Camerarum sunt solidi de argento vel auro, sed & omnis statura pauimentorum in alijs habetur ad similitudinem scacarij, vnam quadratam argenti, alteram auri, laminis valdè crassis, & in ipsis pauimentis, sunt exculpta gesta, & historiæ diuersæ. In principali verò aula, est plenariè expressa Dani Ducis Ogeri historia, à natiuitate ipsius, quousque in Franciam fantastice dicatur reuersus, cum tempore Caroli magni regis Francia; ipse Ogerus armata manu conquisiuit Christianitati ferè omnes partes transmarinas à Ierosolymis vsque ad arbores solis & Lunæ, ac propè paradisum terrestrem.

Pro hac Regione Iaua, (quæ tangit fines Imperij Tartarij) sibi subiuganda, Imperator Grand Can inultoties pugnavit, sed nunquam valuit expugnare. Hinc per mare venit ad regnum ¶ Thalamassæ, quòd & ¶ Panchon dicitur, in quo habetur magnus numerus bonarum ciuitatum. Intra hanc Insulam, quatuor sunt genera arborum, de quarum vna accipitur farina ad panem, de secunda mel, de tertia vinum, & de quarta pessimum venenum. Extrahitur autem farina de suis arboribus isto modo,

Cetero tempore anni percutitur stipes arboris vndique propè terram cum securi, & cortex in locis pluribus vulneratur, de quibus recipitur liquor spissus, qui desiccatus ad solis æstum & contritus

modum diabolica deuo-  
ra, brachia, latera, dorfa,  
onem sperant, venire ad

loco, multiplicatur com-  
am credi fit facile. Ita  
ra, vel plura occiforum.  
muficorum melodia de-  
go omnia corpora com-  
s aut cineribus pro reli-  
itates. Et habetur ante  
lus largiffimè fuas obla-  
temporibus exhibentes  
am fabulofum fcriptum  
in pheretro corpus hea-  
manibus de Euchariſtiz

ma, melle &

s quinquaginta duarum  
cedūt, & ferè omnia ſunt  
ines mulieres ſunt comed-  
& peior eſt ijs con-  
goriatiore adferunt eis  
inant ſicut nos vitulum,

o apparere in alta Lybia,  
obauu Aſtrolabio.

s reputant ſe nobiliores  
nta præfatas gentes nu-

n bonis pluribus: ſed &  
m narrare fuiſſet.

m duarum millium. Hu-  
ibus. Terra iſta eſt po-  
a, gariofoli, nuce muſ-  
um, non habent: aurum  
o, cuius palatij nobilitas

d thalamos Camerarum  
alijs habetur ad ſimili-  
e craſſis, & in ipſis pau-  
ula, eſt plenè expref-  
fantatiè dicatur reuer-  
manu conquiſiuit Chri-  
es ſolis & Lunæ, ac pro-

fubiuganda, Imperator  
ber mare venitur ad reg-  
num bonarum ciuium  
n vna accipitur farina ad  
m. Extrahitur autem fa-

a cum ſecuri, & cortex in  
ccatus ad ſolis æſtum &  
contritus

contritus reddit farinam albam, ac ſi de frumento eſſet cōfectus, attamen hic panis non eſt tri-  
ticeſi ſaporis, ſed alterius valdè boni.

Farina ex ar-  
bore.

Simili modo de ſuis arboribus mel elicitur, & vinum liquitur: excepto quod illa non ſicut  
grāmina prima deſiccantur. Fertur quoque ibidem, extractionem huius farinæ, mellis, & vini,  
per Angelum primitus fuiſſe oſtenſam prædicto Danorum Duci, illic fame cum ſuo exercitu  
laboranti. Contra venenum quod de quarto arboris genere ſillat, ſolum eſt intoxicato reme-  
dium, vt de proprio ſimo per puram aquam diſtemperato bibat.

Et eſt in hac Inſula quoddam mare mortuum, & lacus ſætidus, cuius in pleriq; locis fun-  
dus humano ingenio non valet attingi: miræ ſimilitudinis arundines creſcunt ſuper hunc  
lacum, in altitudine cedrorum aut abietum pedum quæcentorum, ita vt viginti ſocij mecum ne-  
quiuiſimus vnus caput iacentis arundinis ſubleuare de terra. Minores etiam arundines naſcun-  
tur ad fluuij ripam, habentes in terra radices longitudinis trecentorum cubitorum aut plurium,  
Ad quarum nodos radicem, inueniuntur geminæ præcioſe, de quibus expertum eſt, ſiquis vnā  
habuerit in pugno ſuo, ferrum corpori ſuo non nocebit: vnde ſi quis ibi pugnans, putat aduer-  
ſarium, ac inimicum hac gemina munitione aggreditur eum cum ſulibus non ferratis.

Immense mo-  
lis arundines.  
Sunt quidam  
lapides qui  
ſanguinem  
ſittunt: de qui-  
bus etiam  
Oſorius.  
¶ Vel Alenec.  
Elephantæ.

De hac intratur in Inſulam ¶ Calanoch, magnam & reſertam bonorum omnium, Rex eius po-  
tens eſt multum, & licitum eſt ei, quodocunq; & quibuslibet in regno vt mulieribus, de  
quibus inter dum magnū numerum tenet puerorum. Mille quadringētos habere ſolet ad præ-  
liandum elephantæ, quos ſibi nutriunt villani per regnum. Elephantæ vocant verkes.

In litore maris miraculoſè veniunt ibi ſemel in anno, per tres continuos dies, quæſi de omni  
genere piſcium marinorum, in maxima abundantia: & præbent ſe omnibus liberè capieudos  
ad manum. Nam & ego ipſe cepi quamplures. Vnde notandum, quod eodem tempore anni  
quo ſuper dicta extrahitur farina, mel, & vinum, conueniunt in hoc iſti piſces: quæ tempo mira-  
bilia fecit vno tempore Deus olim producere ſuo Ogero, quæ & in memoria illius, vſque nunc,  
ſingulis annis innouantur.

Experientia  
Mandeuilli.

Et ſunt in hoc territorio teſtudinæ terribilis quantitatæ, ſitque de maioribus Regi ac nobi-  
libus delicatus ac præcioſus cibus: mentior, ſi non quaſdam ibidem viderim teſtudinum con-  
chas, in quarum vna ſe tres homines occultarent, ſuntque omnes multum albi coloris.

Teſtudinæ  
grandiffimæ.

Si hic vir vxoratus moritur, ſepelitur & vxor vna cum eo, quatenus, ſicut ibi credunt, habeant  
eam ſtatim ſociam in ſeculo altero.

## CAPVT. 30.

## De Regnia Cynocephalorum, &amp; alijs Inſulis.

PER mare oceanum poteſt hinc veniri in Inſulam ¶ Kaffa: quicunq; ibi inſirmari videtur ad ¶ Vel Caffeca.  
mortem, ſuſpenditur ad arborem, antequam moriatur, vt non ab immundis terræ vermibus,  
ſed a cœli auibus, quas reputant Dei Angelos, comedatur.

In alia Inſula faciunt ſuos inſirmos ante mortem ab eduçtis in hoc magnis canibus ſtrangu-  
lari, manducantes in conuiuio carnes pro optimo ſerculo venationis.

Interpoſitis quoque multis Inſulis, de quibus ſubitico gratia breuitatis, habetur Inſula ¶ Vel Mekke.  
¶ Mylke, & hij videntur omnium hominum crudeliſſimi; Nam quilibet particularitè pro le-  
& modica ſtimulatione, vulnerat, fauciat, & occidit, proximum, vicinum & amicum: Et ſi  
quando diſſidentes contigerit concordari, non habebitur pax rata, niſi quiſque de alterius ſan-  
guine biberit bonum hauſtum.

Hinc nauigando per multas & diuerſas Inſulas, qui in ſingulari intrare, & moram trahere vo- ¶ Vel Traceda.  
luerit, ſtupenda multa videbit, & poterit venire in Inſulam ¶ Tracoidæ.

Illic ſunt homines abſque vilo ingenio penitus beſtiales, ſerpentibus, vermibusque veſcen-  
tes, nec inuicem loquentes, ſed conceptus ſuos ſignis & indiçijs oſtendentes. Diligunt præcio-  
ſos lapides tantummodo pulchritudinis gratia, non cauſa virtutis: & ſuper omnes vnū dili-  
gunt lapidem habentem 60. colorum varietates, qui & Tracoides vocatur propter ipſos,

Inſula Nico-  
moræ, vel Na-  
cumera.

Intratur hinc per Oceanum in regionem Niconoram, vel Nacumeram, habentem in circui-  
tuſpaciū mille leucarum: omnes ibi geniti homines habent capita ad formam canum, vnde  
& in Græco Cynocephali dicuntur. Illi etiam incedunt nudis corporibus, excepto parui pan-  
niculi operimento, ſecretiora loca & poſteriora retro tegente. Rationabiles tamen multum  
ſunt hij, & plurimum virtuoſi, ac de omni forefacto rigidam iuſtitiam exercentes. Sunt ſta-  
tura elegantes, robuſti corpore, in prælijs lanceam cum tergia lata gerentes, viriliterque, &  
prudenter pugnantes. Omnes pro deo adorant bouem, vnde & quilibet in fronte argenteam  
ſeu auream ſimilitudinem bouis deſert, & ſi quem viuū in prælio ceperint, ſine vlla miſera-  
tione manducant.

Boues adora-  
tores.



Rex multum est diues & potens, ac deuotus in superstitione. Nam circa collum gestat trecentas orientales margaritas, quibus quotidie ante comestionem orationes suas colligit, quemadmodum nos colligimus, Pater noster, &c. Ac praterea portat ad collum sūrbetum orientalem, nobilem, purum, pulchrum, resplendentem, & summe preciosum, ad longitudinem pedis humani, quem habet diligentē seruare, quod dum eo caret non tenetur pro Rege.

¶ Siue carbunculum.

Alijs forte Zeilan.

Crocodili.

Pro isto carbunculo Grand Can Imperator, per ingenium, per insidias, per precium, & per preliū sæpè laborauit, sed nihil profecit. Post istam apparet insula Syllan, habens leucas de circuitu 80. quæ paucos habet homines propter multitudinem draconum, serpentum, crocodilorum in ea. Sunt autem crocodili speciales serpentes, coloris virgulati de croceo & nigro, cum quatuor cruribus, & tibijs & latis pedum vngulis. Aliqui horum habent longitudinem quinque tenarum, aut citrà, qui dum tendunt per arenaf relinquant signum seuitæ, ac si fit ibi tractus grandis arboris truncus.

Item in hac insula habetur mons altus, & in sui vertice satis altus & distentus & magnus a quæ lacus, de quo & stulti homines fabulantur, quod primi parentes post eiecctionem suam, illam aquam primò lacrymauerunt. In huius fundo lacus nascuntur margaritæ, & habentur semper lapides preciosi. Solentque pauperes terræ, accepta à Rege licentia, semel in anno ingredi, ac piscari gemmas, qui intrantes vngunt se succo Lymonsæ, contra hirūdines, colubros, & serpentes. Sed & de lacu effluit riuius per montis descensum, in quo nonnumquam margaritæ inueniuntur, & gemmæ: dicunt etiam ibi nullum venenatum animal nocere aduenis.

Ibi videntur leones albi in mira magnitudine bouum nostrorum, & multæ diuersæ bestię, & aues, bestiolæ, & auiculæ aliarum specierum quàm in partibus istis. Nam ibi & in nonnullis alijs insulis vidi vnum mirum, de quo prius vix credidisse in narranti, videlicet anates cum duobus capitibus.

Et sciat is quod tam hic quam alibi mare apparet satis altius suo littore, imo qui a remotis aspici videt suspensum quasi ad nubes. Et de hoc admiratus fuisse in, nisi quod scriptum sciu mirabiles elationes maris.

#### C A P V T. 31.

*De multis alijs Insulis Meridionalibus, de quibus & Plinius, & Munsterus.*

¶ Vel Doudeia.

Monophthalmoi.

Aspidæ.

Hermaphroditæ.

Nota.

**V**erfus meridiem hinc legendo per mare, inuenitur regio speciosa nomine ¶ Doudim cuius rex imperat seu principatur 54. regibus in circuitu insularum.

Dum quis hic infirmatur tendit proximus ad Idolum sciscitans an morietur, & si respondit non, addit & dicere medicinam qua curabitur: si autem responderit moriturum, statim conuocatis amicis occiditur, & cum symphonia, & solemnitate comedunt eius carnes, ossa tantummodo sepelientes. In Insulis verò circumiacentibus, habentur incredibilitè diuersæ gentes. Nam vna habet homines enormis magnitudinis, cum solo in medio frontis oculo, qui absque vilo condimento manducant carnes & pisces.

Alia Insula habet homines aspectu deformes, nihil autem colli aut capitis ostendentes, vnde & Acephali nuncupantur: oculos autem habent ante ad scapulas, & in loco pectoris os apertum ad formam ferri, quo nostri caballi frænantur.

In alia Insula sunt gentes planis faciebus absque eleuatione nasorum, & palpebrarum cum parvis foraminibus oculorum, & scissura modica oris. Et in alia gentes cum superiore oris labio ita lato & amplo, vt, dum velint, totam faciem de illo tegant.

Alia generat homines parux stature cum oris foramine sic paruo, vt per fistulas alimentum, & potum sumant, & quoniam carent lingua & dentibus, monstrant per naturalia signa conceptus. Et aliqui sunt homines debite quidem stature, & forme, nisi quod habent pedes equinos, quibus ita sunt præpetes, vt syluestres bestias capiant, quas comedunt, & manducant.

In alia homines sunt toti pilosi & hispidi, vsu fimirum manibus & pedibus ambulantes, & ad arbores reptantes, qui quamuis non loquuntur, apparent rationabiles, quia regem habent, & rectores.

Et in alia omnes sunt claudi, qui quamuis pedes habeant, tamen ambulant super genua multum ridiculose, imò miserabiliter, vt de passu in passum videantur casuri in terram. Et in quadam, sexum tam masculinum, quàm femininum habentes, qui dum masculino vtuntur generant, dum feminino, impregnantur & pariunt. Atq; vt in compendio multa concludam, in singulis 54. insularum inueniuntur homines, forma, statura, actibus & moribus singulis ab inuicem differentes, de quibus potest fieri descriptio, quam pertranseo gratia breuitatis, & causa incredulitatis fortè quorundam audientium.

In

circa collum gestat tenebras suas colligit, quemlum  $\parallel$  rubetum orientat ad longitudinem pedis pro lege.

ias, per precium, & per in, habens leucas de cir, serpentum, crocodilo le croceo & nigro, cum ut longitudinem quinq; anitæ, ac si ibi tractus

& distentus & magnus ost eiectionem suam, ilgaritæ, & habentur semia, semel in anno ingredi; Udines, colubros, & serinunquam margaritæ in cere aduenis.

multæ diuersæ bestię, & Nam ibi & in nonnullis delict anates cum duotore, imo qui a remotis nisi quod scriptum sciu

## Munsteru.

nonine  $\parallel$  Doudim cuius morietur, & si respondit horiturum, statim conouius carnes, ossa tantum edibilitet diuersæ gentes. frontis oculo, qui absque

capitis ostendentes, vnde in loco peitoris os aper-

um, & palpebrarum cum cum superiore oris labio

et per fistulas alimentum, per naturalia signa con, nisi quod habent pedes has comedunt, & man-

et pedibus ambulantes, & piles, quia regem habent,

bulant super genua mulri in terram. Et in quama masculino vtuntur genemulta concludam, in finribus singulis ab inuicem preuitatis, & causa incre-

In

In istis autem meridionalibus partibus apparebat mihi eleuatio poli Antartici 33. graduū, cū 16. minutis. Et sciendū quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Arcticus 52. gradibus vel citra: Et in partibus magis septentrionalibus, vbi sunt Scoti 6a. gradibus cum quatuor minutis. Ex quo patet respiciendo ad latitudinem cœli, quæ est de polo ad polum, quod itineratio mea fuit per quantum Horizontis spheræ terræ & vltra, per quinque gradus, cum 20. minutis. Cum ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terræ circuitus sit 31500. miliarium, octo stadijs pro milliario computatis, & septingenta stadia respondeant ad vnum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terræ, perambulauit 66733. stadia cum vno tertio, quæ faciunt 4170. leucas Geometricas cum dimidia vel propè.

Australis latitudo 33. graduum 16. minutorum.

Hæc erat Eratosthenis computatio.

## CAPVT. 32.

De bona Regione  $\parallel$  Manchus. $\parallel$  Mangi.

Cum igitur tot & talia in istis Insulis vidimus monstra (quæ si explicarem scribendo vix à legentibus omnia crederentur) non curauimus vterius procedere sub polo australi, ne in maiora pericula incidereamus: sed propter auditam & inuisam nobis famositatem potentie, nobilitatis, & gloriæ Imperatoris Tartarorum, vertebam faciem cum socijs nauigare magis versus Orientem. Cumque per multas diætas sustinuissimus multa pericula maris, peruenimus in Regnum  $\parallel$  Manchus, quod est in confinibus superioris Indiæ, & iungitur ab vna parte Tartariæ. Hæc Regio Manchus, pro sui quantitate reputatur melior, delectabilior, & omnium bonorum abundantior de cunctis ibi propè Regionibus. Nam & homines, bestię, & volucres maiores & corpulentiores sunt alijs, & præ vbertate vix inuenirentur in vna ciuitate decem mendici. Formosi sunt viri, sed femine formosiores. Sed viri loco barbę, habent perpaucos pilos, rigidos, & longos ab vtraque oris parte, quemadmodum nostros videmus catos habere.

Taxat incredulitatem hominum.

$\parallel$  Vel Mangi. Descriptio Mangi uel Chinae. Pauci in China mendici. Chineses raro pilosi in barbia.  $\parallel$  Sive Lateryn. Chineses olim Christiani.

Prima quam ingrediebamur ciuitas est  $\parallel$  Lachori, distans vna diæta à mari, & mirabamur, & gauisi sumus nos inuenisse integram ciuitatem Christianæ fidei. Nam & maior pars Regni credit in Christum.

Ibi habetur in leui precio copia rerum omnium, & præcipue victualium: vnum genus est ibi serpentum in abundantia quod manducant ad omne conuiuium, & nisi pro finali serculo ministraretur de illis serpentibus, conuiuium iam modicum diceretur.

Suntque per hoc regnum pleręq; ciuitates & Ecclesię, & religiones, quas instituit dux Ogerus, quia hoc est vnum de quindecim regnis quæ quæ fuit, sicut infra dicitur.

Illic sunt elegantes albę gallinæ, quæ non vestiuntur plumis vt nostræ, sed optima lana.  $\parallel$  Canes aquatici, quos nos luras nominamus, sunt ibi multi edomiti, quod quoties mittuntur in flumen, exportant domino piscem.

Ab hoc loco per aliquas diætas, venitur ad huius regionis maximam urbem Cansay, hoc est dicere ciuitatem cœli, imo de vniuerso orbe terrarum putatur hæc maxima Ciuitatum; nam eius circuitus 59. leucis est mensus, nec est facile dicere, quàm compressæ a quamplurimus populis inhabitatur. Hæc sedet in lacu maris, quemadmodum, & Venetiæ: & habentur in ea plures quàm mille ducenti pontes, & in quolibet turres miræ magnitudinis, ac fortitudinis, munitæ peruigili custodia, & pro vrbe tuenda contra Imperatorem Grand Can.

Sunt huiusmodi etiam canes in India occidentali, teste Petro Martyre in Decadibus. Cansay, vel Quinsay, & eius descriptio.

Multi sunt ibi Christiani, & multe Religiones Christianorum, sed & de ordinibus Minorum, & prædicatorum, qui tamen ibi non mendicant; est magna pluralitas ex diuersis nationibus Mercatorum. Per Regnem nascitur vinum valde bonum, quod appellatur Bigon. Et ad leucā extra ciuitatem, Abbatia magna est, non de religione Christiana sed Pagana: & in ea forestum, siue hortus magnus vndique circumclusus, consistit arboribus, & arbutis, in cuius etiam medio mons, altus simul & latus, habens hortum vbi solum inhabitant bestiolę mirabiles, sicut Simiz, marmotæ, Lanbon, papiones, foreti & huiusmodi ad varia & multa genera, & ad numerum infinitum.

Vinum Chinesense appellatum Bigon.

Omni autem die post refectionem conuentus Abbatie, qui est valde monachus, deseruntur reliquæ ciborum cum magno additamento, in vasis auro lucentibus ad hunc hortum: & ad sonitum campanarum argentearum, quam Eleemosynarius manu gestat descendentes, & occurrentes de bestiolis duo millia aut plures sese componunt residere ad circulum more pauperum mendicorum, & traditur singulis per seruos aliquid de his cibarijs, ac nudè audita campana segregando recedunt: Cumque nos tanquam redarguentes, diceremus, cur hæc non darentur egenis, responderunt, illic pauperes non habentur, quod si inuenirentur, potius tamen dari deberent bestiolis. Habet enim eorum perfidia, & Paganissimus, animas

Falsa opinio de animarum transmigratione.

nobilium hominum post mortem ingredi corpora nobilium bestiarum, & animas ignobilium corpora bestiarum ignobilium & vilium, ad luenda videlicet crimina, donec peracta poenitentia traſeant in Paradisum: ideoque nutriunt, prout dicunt, has nobiliores bestias, siue bestiolas, quod a quibusdam nobilibus fundabatur in principio hæc Abbatia. Multa sunt alia mira in hac ciuitate, de quibus sciat, quod non omnia vobis recitabo.

## CAPVT. 33.

*De Pygmæis, & de itinere vsque in prouinciam Cathay.*

¶ Vel Chexolo.  
¶ Vel Miliarium.

**E**Vndo per Regionem eandem à dicta ciuitate Cansay, ad sex dietas venit ad nobilem urbem ITyleno, cuius muri per circuitum tendunt ad spaciū 20. ¶ leucarum: & sunt 60. petri pontes, quibus nullos memini pulchriores.

Tributum Chinenſium.

In ista fuit prima sedes regni Mangi, nec immerito, cum sit munita, delectabilis, & abundans omnibus bonis, ac deinde in prædicta Cansay, nunc autem tenetur in quadam alia ciuitate.

Copia victualium in China.

Nota, quilibet ignis soluit quolibet anno vnum balis pro tributo, quod valet vnum florenum cum dimidio, sed omnes famuli de domo vna pro vno igne computantur: summa ignium tributalium, octies centum millia. Reliqui verò Christiani mercatores, in isto vico non computantur. Copia est ibi victualium.

Hospitium Mandeuilli in China.

Quatuor fratres minores vnum potentem conuertebant apud quem hospitabar, & qui duxit me ad Abbatiam istam, ibi vidi scilicet quod hic narratur.

¶ Vel de Delay.

Ad fines itaque regni Mangi transitur grandis fluius de ¶ Dylay, maius flumen mundi, vbi strictius est continet septem miliaria. Odericus: cuius alueus in loco districtiori continet quatuor leucas. Et ex hoc in breui temporis spacio intratur Imperium Tartarorum, sequendo fluium vsque in terram Pygmæorum, per cuius medium transit.

Pygmæi.

Hij Pygmæi sunt homines statura breues ad longitudinem nostri brachij, seu trium manuum expanſarum. Tam mares quam femine formosæ, & gratiosæ, & viuunt cõmuniter ad annos sex vel septem: si qui pertingunt ad octo, mirè putantur senectutis. Ad dimidiam anni etatem nubere possunt, in secundo anno parturiunt: rationales sunt, & sensati iuxta etatem pusillam, ac satis ingeniosi ad opera de serico, & de lana arboris. Frequentè præliantur contra aues grandes patris, exercitiis congregatis hinc inde, & fit strages vtriusque. Hæc gens tam parua optime operatur sericum & bombacem. Isti Pygmæi venerunt mihi obuiam chorizãdo, Non laborant terram, prædia, seu vincas, sed morantur inter eos nostræ quantitatis homines, qui eos incolunt, sicut serui, quos & Pygmæi sæpè derident, quia si in ipsis maiores, & quod ipse non cesso mirari dum dicti homines in illa terra generant vel pariunt, non crescit proles supra Pygmæi staturam: Insula non est protensa, sed fortè 1 2. ciuitatum. Quarum vna est grandis, & bene munita, & quam Grand Can facit cum fortibus armaturis curiose seruari, contra regem Mangi.

Miraculum.

Hinc proceditur per Imperium Grand Can, ad multas ciuitates, & villas morum mirabiliter diuersorum, vsque in regnum Iamchan, quod est vnum de 12. prouincijs maximis, quibus distinguitur totum Imperium Tartarorum.

Imperium Tartarorum duodecim prouincijs distinctum. Iamchan Ciuitas nobilis.

Nobilior ciuitas huius Regni seu Prouinciæ dicitur Iamchan, abundans mercimonijs, & diuitijs infinitis, & multa præstans proprio Regi tributa, quoniam sicut illi de ciuitate fatentur, valet annuè regi quinquaginta milia cuman florenorum auri.

Summa tributum vnius Ciuitatis.

Nota. In Iamchan ciuitate est conuentus fratrum minorum: in hac sunt tres Ecclesiæ Monasteriorum: reditus simul ascendit ad 12. cuman. Odericus, Vnus cuman est decem millium. Summa tributum annui, quinquaginta milia millium Florenorum. In illis namque partibus magnas numerorum summas estimant per cuman, numerum 10. millium qui & in Flamingo dicitur Iaste.

Chitas Meke. Maximæ naues.

Ad quinque leucas ab hac ciuitate est alia dicta Meke, in qua sunt de quodam albissimi genere ligni naues maximæ cum aulis & thalamis, ac multis ædificijs, tanquam Palatium tellure fundatum.

¶ Siue Lancerin.  
¶ Vel Caremoron.

Inde per idem regnum ad viam octo dietarum per aquam dulcem, multas per ciuitates, & bonas villas, venimus ¶ Laucherim, (Odericus appellat Leuyim.) urbem formosam optimæ magnarum, sitam super flumen magnum ¶ Cacameran. Hoc flumen transit per medium Cathay, cui aqua infert damnum, quando nimis inundat, sicut palus in Ferraria, Mogus in Herbipoli: & illud sequentes intrauimus principalem prouinciam Imperij Tartariz, dictam Cathay Calay: & ista prouincia est multum distenta, ac plena ciuitatibus, & oppidis bonis, & magnis omnibusque reſerta mercimonijs, maximè sericosis operibus, & aromaticis speciebus.

Cathay, Catesay principalis prouincia.

Nauiganda

& animas ignobilium  
pnce peracta poeniten-  
s bestias, siue bestiolas,  
ta sunt alia mira in hac

Naui gando per dictum flumen versus Orientem, & itinerando per hanc Cathay provin-  
ciam ad multas dietas per plurimas vrbes & villas, venit in ciuitatem Sugarmago, abun-  
dantior omnibus in mercimoniis antedictis, quando sericum est hic vilissimum: quadra-  
ginta libras habentur ibi pro decem florenis.

Engarmago.  
Vilitas serici.

Ab hac ciuitate, multis ciuitatibus peragratu versus Orientem, veni ad ciuitatem Cambalu, Vel Camba-  
quz est antiqua in provincia Cathay: Hanc postquam Tartari ceperunt, ad dimidium miliare leck,  
fecerunt vnam ciuitatem nomine Caydo, & habet duodecim portas, & a porta in portam duo  
sunt grossa miliaria Lombardica, spaciium inter medium istarum ciuitatum habitatoribus ple-  
num est, & circuitus cuiuslibet istarum ambit 60 miliaria, Lombardica, quae faciunt octo tu-  
tonica.

In hac ciuitate Cambalu residet Imperator Magnus Can, Rex Regum terrestrium, & Domi-  
nus Dominorum terrestrium. Atque inde vterius in Orientem intratur vetus vrbs Caydo, Caydo ciui-  
tatis. Vbi communiter tenet suam sedem Imperialem Grand Can in suo palatio. Ambitus autem  
vrbs Caydo, est viginti fere leucarum, duodecim habens portas a se distantes amplius quam  
stadia 24.

C A P V T 34.

De palatio Imperatoria Grand Can.

Palatium Imperatoris Grand Can, quod est in Caydo ciuitate, continet in circuitu proprii Palatii Impe-  
muralis vltra duas leucas, & sunt in eo aulae quam plures, in forma nobiles, & in materia no-  
biliores. Aula autem sedis, quae est maxima caeterarum, habet intrinsecus pro sui sustentatione  
24. aereas columnas factas opere fusorio, de auro puro, & omnes parietes ab intus operas pelli-  
bus quorundam animalium, quae vocantur Pantheres: haec sanguinei sunt coloris, & ita remi-  
cantes, vt Sole desuper relucente, vix oculus valeat humanus sufferre splendorem, tantaeque fra-  
grantiae, vt illi approximare non possit aer infectus, vnde & ista opertura parietum appreciatur  
super tegmen aurearum laminarum.

Imperatoris Grand  
Can descriptio.

Namque stultorum aliqui Paganorum huiusmodi adorant animalia propter colorum, odo-  
rumque virtutem. Proposui retrahere calamum a describenda nobilitate, gubernatione, & mi-  
nistrantiu frequentia, atque Imperatoris magnificentia: attamen quia capsi ego, propter incre-  
dulos, & nescios, ac ineredibiles, non dimittam in toto. Quicumque enim nihil credunt, nihil  
sciunt, neque erudiri possunt, Scriptura testante, si non crederitis non intelligetis. Dico ergo,  
& verè dico, quod in huius aulae capite sit thronus, vel sedes Imperialis, excellens, & eminens in  
ascensu graduum quamplurium, in quo residere solet in plenaria maiestate, in cuius throno toto  
corpore nihil apparet minus nobile, auro, margaritis, gemmis, & lapidibus preciosis. Singuli  
gradus sunt de singulis, ac inter se diuisis magnis lapidibus, vt pote primus de Haematillo, ali-  
us de Sardo, & alius de Chrysolito, & sic vsque ad supremum gradum, qui singuli ad formam  
cuiusque gradus sunt circumfusi, & cluiforio opere firmati, auro solido, & nihilominus per su-  
perficiem auri, distinctè seminati, firmiterque inclusi lapilli cari, cum orientalibus Margaritis,  
summitas autem cum ferculo residentiae in nobilitate excisionis, & fabricatura operis tam di-  
uersa est, & mira, vt paruitatem mei ingenij excedat, quam obrem & ei cedo, vteriusque pro-  
cedo.

Inuclitur in  
incredulos.

Ad Imperatoris sinistram gradu vno basior, est sedes suae primae coniugis, tota de iaspidibus  
auro circumfusa, & in superficie aulae distinctae gemmulae cum granellis eodem schemate, & si-  
militer de iaspide. Sed adhuc submissior vno gradu est sedes coniugis secundae, nec non & sub  
illa vxoris tertiae. Nam tres proprias secum habet vxores, Odericus dicit, istas duas concu-  
binas. Itemque resident sub tertia coniuge nobiles mulieres de Imperatoris progenic, iuxta il-  
lustriam vnus cuiusque.

Sedes primae  
coniugis Im-  
peratoris.  
Sedes coniu-  
gis secundae.

Et notandum, quod per totam patriam singulae mulieres maritatae, vt intelligantur maritis  
subiectae, & vt discernantur a soluris, gestant in capitis summitate similitudinem pedis viri, lon-  
gitudinis brachij & dimidij, quadam leui materia operatam: videlicet nobiles de sericosis o-  
peribus pannorum, seu alijs caris & pulchris pannis, & preciosis lapillis, & ignobiles iuxta sta-  
tum suum de materia communiore.

Signum subie-  
ctionis vxor-  
um suae mar-  
itiae.

Ad dextram vero sedentis Imperatoris vno gradu submissus residet primogenitus eius fili-  
us, & sub ipso ordinatè in consimilibus sedibus nobiles proximi de cognitione Imperii.

Primogeniti  
Imperatoris  
sui sedes.

Item super thronum & desuper ante ipsius throni locum, tanquam pro celato seu operimen-  
to in throno residentium, & eorum ministrantium, est extensa similitudo vitis operata in pal-  
mitibus, & pampinis, de auro puro ad extensionem cubitorum quadraginta, per quadrum, at-  
que per eam dependentes botri vuarum de gemmis, & granellis quinque colorum, quorum al-  
bi

venitur ad nobilem vr-  
acarum: & sunt 60. pe-

lectabilis, & abundans  
dam alia ciuitate.

ta valet vnum florenum  
ur: summa ignium tri-  
isto vico non compu-

ospitabar, & qui duxit

aius flumen mundi, vbi  
strictiori continet qua-  
rorum, sequendo flui-

hij, seu trium manuuni  
omuniter ad annos sex  
idiam anni etatem nu-  
ta etatem puffillam, ac  
ntur contra aues gran-

ae gens tan parua op-  
chorizado, Non labo-

nomines, qui eos inco-  
& quod ipse non cesso

proles supra Pygmæi  
ft grandis, & bene mu-

ontra regem Mangi,  
las morum mirabiliter

s maximis, quibus di-

ndans mercimonijs, &  
li de ciuitate fatentur,

sunt tres Ecclesiae Mo-  
an est decem millium.

amque partibus mag-  
ui & in Flamingo dici-

quodam albissimi ge-  
nam Palatium tellure

multas per ciuitates,  
) vrben formosam

flumen transit per me-  
us in Ferraria, Mogus

perij Tartariae, dictam  
bus, & oppidis bonis,

us, & aromaticis spe-

bi sunt de christallo & beryllo, & iriſcrocei de topazio & fuluo christallo, rubei de rubetorum granis, corallo, & alibandinis, virides de Smaragdis, pyropis, & chryſolytis, nigri, de onichinis, gageis, & gerateris.

Tempore prandij in hac aula, Imperator & Imperatrices, & quiſq; de prædictis, habet mensam ſibi ſolam, quarum vilior præualeat theſauro grandi.

In ſolennitatibus ponitur menſa Imperatori de exquisito electo, ſeu de auro examinato, diſtincta diamantibus, & nobis ignotis incomparabilibus gemmis, quandoque de christallo perſpicuo, ſeu croceo, circumcluſa auro cum gemmis: quandoque de Hæmatifto, quandoque de ebore candido, vel rubicundo: interdum de ligno artiſcioſe combinato, quod deſcendit per flumina de Paradifo. Idem dicit Odericus.

His menſis aſtant Barones, & Principes pro vaſallis attentè in ſuis officijs miniſtrantes, quorum nec vnus emittete verbum aliqua præſumit audacia, niſi Imperatore annuente, vel ad illum loquente, illis dütaxat exceptis, qui certis interſpatijs canunt, aut recitant de principum geſtiſ.

Et notandum, quando in hoc ſolio Maieſtatis diebus ſolennibus reſidet Imperator, ſubſidere ad pedes eius notarios quatuor, qui omne quod Dominus loquitur, ſinguli ponunt in ſcriptis: nam quodcunque tunc ex ore illius egreditur, neceſſe eſt eſſe, vel effici, nec valet item ipſe verbum ſuum mutare, nec reuocare, niſi magno conſilio conuocato.

Vniuerſa vt enſilia quibus in ſolennitate ad has ſeruitur menſas, ſunt de nobilibus petris auro recluſis, Cyphi de Smaragdis, vel Saphyris, topaſijs, pyropis, ſue gryophis: & priuatoribus diebus, de auro probato: tiam in cameris, & cubiculis, nec reputatur ibi claritas argenti, niſi pro pilarijs, columnis, gradibus, & pauimentis.

Itius autem oſtia aulae, dum in ea reſidet, aut deambulat Imperator, multi Barones ingreſſum ſeruant intentè, & ne limen tangatur, quod hoc haberent pro augurio, & benè verberaretur, quia Imperatore præſente, nemo niſi adductus in quacunque camera, vel habitazione intro mittitur, donec interrogatus iuſſerit Imperator.

Mandeuillus ſuis pedibus menſurauit aulam Imperatoris. Carbunculus reſplendens.

Latitudinem huius Baſilicę æſtimo ad ſpatium de meis pedibus centum, & longitudinem vltra quatuor centum. In cubiculo autem Regis dormitorio, conſtat vnus pillarius, ſeu columna de auro ſolido & carbunculus concluſus in illo longitudinis pedis vnus, totum habitaculum de nocte perfundens lumine claro. Hic prout ego notaui, non eſt plene rubeus, ſed ſubruſus, quaſi coloris Hæmatifliui. Porò in vna aularum, circa medium palatii, eſt alius excellſus aſcenus, Odericus dicit pigma, ſuper quem dum placet ſtat, vel reſidet Imperator, diſſimè etiam operatus, ex auro, gemmis, baccis, margaritis, & lapidibus raris, & in quatuor angulis, imagines quatuor ſerpentum de auro puro.

Huius per tria latera dependent retia ſeu cortinæ de cordulis ſericis, in quibus ad ſingulos nodos, groſſa margarita habetur innexa, quibus cortinis tegitur officina: in eius concauitate tenetur tunica quadrata, in qua conueniunt conductus omnium potuum, qui bibuntur in Curia, & innumera vaſorum genera, quibus potus omnibus miniſtratur.

Præterea, iuxta palatii ambitum, habetur grandis parci ſpaciamentum, diuerſi generis arboribus repletum, fructus ferentibus varios, & nobis inuiſos, & in parte media, aula ſuper excelſum collem de tam mira & pulchra ſtructura, vt eius nobilitas de facili ad præſens, non poſſit deſcribi. Et vndique, per collis gyrum aquæ foſſatum profundum, & larum vltra quod pons vnicus ducit ad collem. Atque ex duobus montis lateribus, ſtagnum cum diuerſorum copia piſcium, & volucrum indomitaram, vt auarum, annatum, cignorum, ciconiarum, ardearum, & collectorum in magna pluralitate, nec non & per parcum, multæ ſylueſtres beſtiæ, & beſtiolæ quatenus per aulae fenestras poſſit Dominus pro ſolatio reſpicere volucrum aucupationes, beſtiarum venationes, & piſcium captiones.

Palatium inſtar magni vppidi. Pro India intelligit Septentrionalem Aſiæ partem Sodus.

Et hoc pro cuius dubio ſciendum, quòd in noſtris partibus rara ſint oppida cum pluribus manſionibus, quam in iſto palatio continentur.

Tota æſtate moratur in India terra frigidiffima, in hyeme in Cambalu. Odericus.

Præter palatium hoc in Caydo, habet Imperator ſimilitè tria: vnum in ciuitate Sadus, verſus Septentrionem, vbi competens eſt frigus, ibi moratur in æſtate. Cambalu, vbi competens calor, ibi moratur hyeme. Tertium in ciuitate longh, in quo & in iſto Caydo, vt ſæpius ſeruat ſedem, eò quòd in iſtis eſt aer magis temperatus, quamuis ſemper calidus videtur Noſtratibus.

#### CAPVT 35.

*De quatuor ſolennitatibus, quas Magnus Can celebrat in anno.*

**S**Ciaris quòd ego, meque ſodales, pro fama magnificentie huius Imperatoris, tradidimus noſt ſtipendiarios eſſe in guerris, contra Regem Mangi prænominatum. Et fuimus apud

lo, rubei de rubetorum  
tis, nigri, de onichinis,

fradictis, habet men-

de auro examinato, di-  
lòque de christallo per-  
examitio, quandòque  
inato, quod descendit

ficijs ministrantes, quo-  
annuente, vel ad illura  
nt de principum gestis.  
det Imperator, subside-  
inguli ponunt in scrip-  
fici, nec valet item ipse

de nobilibus petris au-  
rophis: & priuatoribus  
i claritas argenti, nisi

multi Barones in gres-  
sio, & bene verberare-  
tera, vel habitatione in-

rum, & longitudinem  
s pillaris, seu columna  
vnius, totum habita-  
t plene rubeus, sed sub-  
alati, est alius excelsum  
Imperator, distissimè e-  
n quatuor angulis, ima-

in quibus ad singulos  
in eius concavitare te-  
qui bibuntur in Curia,

n, diuersi generis arbo-  
edia, aula super excel-  
ad prælens, non possit  
um vltra quod pons v-  
n diuersiorum copia pis-  
oniarum, ardearum, &  
stres bestiar, & bestiolæ  
rum aucupationes, be-

ida cum pluribus man-

i. Odericus.

in ciuitate Sadus, ver-  
ambalu, vbi competens  
Caydo, vt sapius seruat  
us videtur Nostratibus.

anno.

Imperatoris, tradidi-  
ominantur. Et suimus  
apud

apud ipsum 15. mensibus, & certè inuenimus multò maiorem partem hominum, in mediam partem nobis non fuisse relaram: hominum (exceptis custodibus bestiarum & volucrum), qui intra palatium certa gerunt ministeria est numerus decem cum an.

Nota. Traxi moram in Cambalu tribus annis: fratres nostri locum habent in Curia sua speciali, & festis diebus statuis dant benedictionem, Odericus. Et quoniam Imperator habet sabatu plures quàm decem mille Elephantes edomitos, & velut vltra numerum alias bestias, (quarum quædam tenentur in caueis, stabulis mirabilibus, vel cænis, nec nõ & aues rapaces, & accipitres, falcones, ostrones, gryfandos gentiles, Laueroys, & Satyros, sed & auiculas loquentes, & papingos, & similes, aliaque cantantes: reputatur numerus hominum de illis curam & laborem gerentium, vltra sex cum an, & præterea iugiter ad Curiam equites cum plenarijs armaturis, quinque cum an, & de peditibus cum præstanti armaturis, cum an decem. Sed & omnes de natione quacunque mundi venientes, qui petunt describi pro Curia recipiuntur. Sic enim iussit Imperator.

Habet & medicos Paganos viginti, & totidem Physicos, atque sine his Medicos Christianos ducentos, & totidem Physicos, quoniam iste Grand Can maiorem gerit confidentiam in Medicis Christianis, quàm in suis proprijs nationis medicis.

Hoc ergò firmiter scias, quod de Curia Regis accipiunt necessaria sua iugiter vltra triginta cum an hominum, præter expensas animalium & volucrum, cum tamen in festis maioribus sint homines propè in duplo tanti. Nec valet hic Dominus defectum vllum pati pecuniæ, eò quòd in terra sua non currit moneta de argento, vel auro, aliòve metallo, sed tantùm de corio vel papyro: horum enim forma denariorum signo Imperatoris impressorum preciat minoris aut maioris valoris, secundum diuersitatem impressionis, qui per visitationem, detriti vel rupti, cum ad Regis thesaurarios deferuntur, protinus dantur pro illis noui.

Quatèr in anno celebrat Imperator festiuitates solennes.

Primam de die propriæ Natiuitatis.

Secundam de die suæ primæ præsentationis in eorum Templo, quod appellant Moseath, vbi & fit ijs, nescio quod genus circumcissionis.

Tertiam in thronizatione sui Idoli in Templo.

Quartam de die quo Idolum cepit dare responsum, seu facere diabolica mira. Plures enim in anno non tenet solennitates, nisi si quando nuptias filij aut filiz celebrat.

Itaque in istis solennitatibus est populi multitudo absque numero, omnes tamen in ordine debito, & singuli intendentes proprio ministerio: nam ad hoc ordinandum, & disponendum, electa sunt quatuor Baronum nobilium genera, ex quibus nonnulli sunt Reges, & alij Equites potentes, Duces, & Marchiones, omnes induti holosericis, quibus inserti cū certa disseminatio sunt vbi que preciosi lapides, miræ virtutis, & aurifigia speciosa, vt si quis in his partibus vnum de talibus haberet mutatorijs, dici non posset pauper imò prædiues. Et habet quodlibet millenarium in his vestibus colorem sibi proprium: primum viridem, secundum vermiculum, tertium croceum, quartum purpureum, seu indicum. Ergo in die solenni, dum de mane Maiestatis thronum conscenderit, veniunt se præsentare hoc modo Regi.

Ante primum millenarium procedit copiosa symphonia dulcis chordarum, sicut de violis, cytharis, lyris, & psalterijs, non autem de tubis aut tympanis: & præcedunt Barones per transfuersum Aulæ coram residente Domino ordinatè bini, & bini sub silentio, ferentes amabundantibus ante pectus tabulam de Iaspide, ebore, christallo, pyropo, vel Hæmatisto, & ante faciem throni inclinant se Imperatori profundè.

Illis que pertranseuntibus, succedit simili modo millenarius secundus, & tertius, atque quartus, nec auditur à quoquam vnicum verbum. Hac præsentatione cum debita maturitate perfecta, resident in basso à latere throni ad proprias mensas, multi Philosophi, seu Artista, sicut de Astronomia, Geomantia, Pyromantia, Hydromantia, Chiromantia, Necromantia, augurijs, ac aruspicijs, & huiusmodi, tenentes coram instrumenta suæ artis, alij Astrolabium, & Sphæras de auro, alij in aureis vasis arenam, prunas ardentes, aquam, vitum, oleum, & caluarias mortuorum, loquentes & respondentes, nec non de auro horologia ad minus duo: & ad cunctas horas secundum cursum horologiorum innuunt Philosophi seruis sibi ad hoc deputatis, vt faciant præstari auditum per aulam, quorum vnus aut duo conscendentes scallum, alta voce proclamant, audite, aulcultate, & omnibus intendentibus dicit Philosophorum vnus: Quilibet nunc faciat reuerentiam Imperatori, qui est filius Dei excelsi, Dominus & superior omnium Dominorum mundi, quia ecce hæc est hora. Et mox singuli in aula inclinato corpore & capite se inclinant maiestatem manentes acclij, donec idem Philosophus dicat, leuate. Atque protinus super hoc factum, Musici suis instrumentis, suauem personant melodiam.

Mandeuillus  
Per spacium  
15. mensium  
miluauit  
Grand Can.  
Vixit in Cam-  
balu tribus  
annus.

Sex cum an  
tamulorum.  
Quinque Cum-  
an equitum.  
Decem Cum-  
an peditum.

Medici Chri-  
stiani, 200. in  
aula Grand  
Can.

Vnus Cum an  
continet do-  
cem millia,  
vt in cap 33.  
Moneta de  
corio vel pa-  
pyro.

Quatuor  
festa.

Circumcisio  
quædam.

Descriptio  
pomparum  
solennium.

Postea

Mandeuilli  
interrogatio.

Postea ad aliquantam moram simili modo dicit alius Philosophorum, minimus digitus in aure: & ecce hoc omnes faciunt, donec dicat, sufficit: sic in aliam horam, seu moram dicit, manus vestra super os, & postea manus super caput. Atque in hunc modum iuxta temporis cursum imponunt facienda signa diuersa. Innuunt in eis latere magna mysteria, & quodlibet horum factorum melodia terminat Musicorum. Et sciatissimi me quandoque in tempore opportuno ab eis interrogasse de his signis, qui responderunt quod inclinare caput Domino ad illius horæ momentum, foret confirmatio omnibus diebus vitæ suæ, ad obediendum ipsi & fidelitatem obseruandam imperio, nec posse corrumpi promissionibus siue donis, quodque digitum in auricula imponere, obturatio est auditus contra omnia Imperatori, & Imperio contraria. Et sic de singulis factis singula mysteria confingentes decipiunt audientes: horum itaque fraudulento ingenio, iste Grand Can festiuatus, non nisi ad talium iudicium parari permittit cibaria, aut fieri indumenta pro suo corpore.

Offerta Im-  
peratori facta.

Dum autem est visum Curiz gubernatoribus satis de prædictis auditum, faciunt proclamatores silentium imperari, & incipit fieri offerenda Imperatori hoc inodo. Intrannt omnes qui sunt de cognatione Imperatoris Barones adornati nobilissimè pro cuiusque decencia balteis, & indumentis, quorum primus cum resonante symphonia præmittit ad oblationem quotquot valet de dextrarijs albis, & inclinans ante thronum pertranfit, atque per eundem modum singuli Baronum offerentes aliquid dignum iocale inclinans transeuntes, silentio firmè seruato.

Benedictio  
prælati.

Post hos intrantes simili modo prælati & Abbates, de iurisdictionibus & religionibus Paganorum offerunt singuli pro suo statu se reuerentèr inclinantes maiestati, & maior prælatorum benedicit Regi, & suis ac Curiz quadam suæ legis oratione.

Deinde introducuntur elephantes, leones, pardus, simia, marmoræ, & diuersæ bestiæ, quarum ductores singuli transeuntes inclinant reuerentèr, & intentè. Postremò afferuntur aquilæ, struthiones, gryphandi, accipitres, & papingi, cum diuersis auiibus & auiculis, nec non serpentes ac pisces, quorum portitores inclinant profundè, quoniam dicunt omnes terrenas creaturas debere adorationem Imperatori Grand Can filio Dei excelsi: & his perfectis,

*Musica Camena persoluunt debitam pleni.*

Deplorat Pa-  
ganorum te-  
nebras.

Nos igitur intendamus hoc loco quæso quomodo veraciter Pagani in tenebris ambulant: diabolica inuolutione mens eorum obtenebrata non videt quomodò, cum Imperator sit homo mortalis nuper natus, & similiter sicut illi infirmitate circumdatus, atque in breui cum ipsis moriturus, quem etiam non dubitant sub Deo, clamant eum non Deum, sed Dei filium, ubi vtique pro his ignorant illi non esse laudandū, nec adorandū, sed eum non intèdunt alium filium, filium in creatum & connaturalem, qui & ipsos & eum creauit, solum superlaudabilem in secula.

Insignis Man-  
deuilli pietas,  
& desiderium  
conuersionis  
Paganorum.

Et hoc alto corde considerantes, laudemus, adoremus, glorificemus & superexaltemus totis viribus Deum, qui nos filios lucis esse voluit, & salutis, nasci, baptizari, educari, erudiri sub sinceritate fidei Christianæ, exclusio schismate & errore, atque sub instituto sacrosanctæ matris Ecclesiæ, in qua sola penè ab omni circumferentia orbis terræ fides, quæ saluat, & per dilectionem operatur nunc remansit.

Et oremus instantèr pro ipsis Paganis, vt agnita veritatis luce videre possint quò ambulant, vt perueniant ad Iesum Christum eorum qualem Dei filium, atque in ipso, & per ipsum laudare & adorare solum vnum verum Deum.

C A P V T 36.

*De ludis & præstigijs in suo festo, & de suo comitatu.*

Semel in die  
comedunt.

**C**elebrato post hoc per randio satis morosè, quia nunquam est vltra semel edendum in die, de quo & eius administratione nunc longum est scribere, adfunt gesticulatores, mira visu, suauitque auditu pedibus, manibus, brachijs, humeris, capitibus, & toto corpore, ac ad singulos gestus, correspondentes debito vocis sono. Et semper sine horum mirabilium cantilena subsequitur musicorum. Ex hoc ioculatores præstò sunt, & Magi, qui suis incantationibus præstāt præstigia multa.

Magi insignes

In primis faciunt videri Solem & Lunam, oriendo, descendendo consuetum diei intra Basilicam peragere cursum, cum tanta nimirate splendoris, vt vix se inuicem homines valeant recognoscere præ fulgore, dicentes & mentientes, Solem & Lunam cæli hanc mittere reuerentiam Imperatori.

Hinc pati ludo comparent speciosæ puellæ ducere semitas & choreas, nobili gestu nobilissimum ferre poculum lactis equarum in aureis vasis, de quo, ponentes se in genibus, tradunt potum dominis & dominabus.

Tunc portantur & milites in equis, & annis quoque pleni atque parati, qui feruentibus sonipedibus se inuicem cuspidibus ad fragorem magnum confingentes lanceas committunt, & fragmenta per mensas, & pauimenta discurrunt. Ac deinde fantastice venantur per aulam, cum canibus

um, minimus digitus in  
otam, seu moram dicit,  
modum iuxta temporis  
mysteria, & quodlibet  
loque in tempore oppor-  
e caput Domino ad illi-  
bediendum ipsi & fide-  
e donis, quodque digi-  
tori, & Imperio contra-  
audientes: horum iraque  
iudicium parari permittit

um, faciunt proclama-  
do. Intraunt omnes qui  
iusque decentia balteis,  
d oblationem quotquot  
er eundem modum sin-  
silitio firmè seruato.  
s & religionibus Paga-  
, & maior prælatorum

diuersè bectis, quarum  
d afferuntur a quibus stru-  
tis, nec non serpentes ac  
s terrenas creaturas de-  
ctis,

tenebris ambulant: dia-  
m Imperator sit homo  
e in breui cum ipsis mo-  
dei Dei filium, vbi utique  
cedunt alium filium, sili-  
rlaudabilem in secula.  
, & super exaltatus totis  
educari, erudiri sub sin-  
uto sacrosanctæ matris  
uz saluat, & per dilecti-

posint quò ambulant,  
& per ipsum laudare &

mel edendum in die, de  
culatores, mira visu, sua-  
pore, ac ad singulos ge-  
ntilena subsequitur mu-  
prestât prestigia multa.  
uetum diei intra Basili-  
em homines valeant re-  
nanc mittere reuerenti-

s, nobili gestu nobilif-  
se in genibus, tradunt

qui feruentibus sonipe-  
s comminuunt, & frag-  
nantur per aulam, cum  
canibus

canibus & papionibus, ad ceruos, lupos, vrsos, & apros, ad lepores, & marnotas. Quæ singula cum ad horam pascant vana delectatione sensus corporeos, miseriam tamen inserunt præ mentis, quòd tot & tanti homines, neglecta profus animi salute, his diabolicis operationibus se dediderunt in toto. Nam certò non ita sine dæmonum consolatione & familiaritate præniilla con- fingi dicerem.

Nota: à Cambalu ad viginti dietas, est pulchrum nemus girans octo dietas in circuitu, in quo sunt omnia genera animalium: custodes habet circa eum. Triennio vel quadriennio vilitat illud Imperator, & cum multa gente nemus circumdat, canes emittuntur & aues, cum multo clamore, & feras congregant in medio memoris, ad planiciem sibi sitam. Tunc Imperator prius iacit quinque sagittas, postea alij: tunc Imperator dicit, Eya, hoc est, mina bectis, & sicut quilibet capit sagittam suam signatam, percussam, alijs recedentibus ad sua loca. Odericus.

Præterea ante Imperatoris mensam eriguntur lætæ tabulæ aureæ cum sculptis, ac si viuerent, imaginibus gallorum, pauonum ac diuersarum volucrum artificiosè, quas præligiator facit pro libitu sine apprehensione manus ire, tripudiare, chorizare, tremere, compugnare, bibere, manducare, sed & cantare: quod quidem inter cætera mihi videbatur mirabilis & aspectu delectabilis. Nullus istud plene intruci potuit, nisi qui erat in throno vel circa: & me oportet hoc loco fateri stultitiam propriam, quòd hac delectatione tractus, magnam adhibui apud Artistolam diligentiam, verbis blandis, & quibuscumque munusculis, ac melioribus promissis, quod de tali mihi traderet artem, qui sagax simul & fallax inprimis, spem meam trahebat sponsonum funibus: sed ad vltimum penitus absceidebat, dicens se vouisse Deo immortalis, ne cuiquam doceret nisi proprio filio seniori, ac per hoc me Deus ab illo malo conseruauit inuitum, & gratias nunc reddentem.

Certum est illic homines esse subtiles ad quasdam humanas artes, & ingeniosos ad fraudes super omnes, quas noui mundi partes, vnde & inter se dicunt prouerbiu, se solos videre duobus oculis, & Christianos vno, cæteros autem homines cæcos: sed mentitur iniquitas sibi, quoniam ipsi vident solo oculo terrena & transitoria, & nos Christiani duobus, quia cum terrenis videntur spiritualia, & mansura: percussit enim "Naas, id est, humani generis hostis cum illis fœdus, vt erueret omnibus oculos dextros, scilicet spirituales.

Cùm itaque narrata de præmissis debeant sufficere, quando Imperator Grand Can de vno quatuor palatorum ad aliud transire velit, vel fortè gratia visitationis aut ardui negotij per Imperium de Regno ad Regnum tendit per comitatus, quatuor exercitibus antè & retrò, & ex amobus lateribus.

Primus exercitus præcedit personam Regis per vnam de suis dietis, vt semper in hospitium, de quo recessit exercitus Rex inter nocte sequenti, & est hic primus comitatus descriptus, & statutus de numero quinquaginta cuman virorum, hoc est, quingentorum millium, semperque præuisum, & prouisum est, vt inueniant necessaria in locis, vbi habent quiescere, vel tardare siue in hospitibus, siue in tentoriis.

Secundus & tertius comitatus sunt eiusdem numeri virorum cum primo, quorum vnus ad dextram tendit Imperatoris, alius ad sinistram in distantia ab ipso ad trium vel duarum leucarum.

Quartus autem qui maior est omnibus, subsequitur Imperatorem quasi ad spatium iactus balistæ. Et adhuc sciendum est, quòd personæ horum comitatum sunt sigillatim, & summatim omnes descriptæ, vt dum vna moritur vel recedit, protinus alia inscribatur, & numerus non minuat. Ipse verò Imperator tendit residens in cella seu camera ædificata super currum grandem formæ, fortè robore, nobilem in structura, est cella de ligno Albes optimi odoris, & parietes cellæ aperti in quibusdam locis laminis aureis, quæ & ipsæ distinguuntur gemmis variis, & margaritis.

Est autem currus quatuor rotarum duntaxat, quem trahunt quatuor Elephantes ad hoc curriose instructi, cum quatuor hippis albis equæ doctis & ipsi cooperti ditissimis tegumentis, ac præter aurigas nobiliter indutos, qui currum cautissimè ducunt, ad sunt & quatuor de maioribus palatii Domini, inde ad vehiculum habentes iugem curam, de imitatione eius, & ne vltimo exercitu appropriet infra iactum (vt dixi) sagittæ. Ipse autem interdum pro sodalitate iubet formam ascendere quam vult personam, sed minimè vtrà duos. In cellæ quoque culmine, quod aperiri valet & claudi, assant in pertica quatuor grifandi, vel ostiones. Odericus: duodecim Girfalcones, vt si fortè Imperator in aere aquilam, vulturum, ardeam, vel collectorem cerneret, citò dimitteret istorum duas aut plures ad accupandum.

Nota, per Dromedarios, & cursores, & veloces, qui de hospitio ad hospitium permutantur, scit de remotis noua, Cursor enim appropinquans cornu sonat, & tunc alius præparat, & vlti-

Pulchrum nemus octo dietarum in circuitu.

Mandeuilli curiositas.

Hoc corum dictum in nouis China historijs referunt. Insignis sententia.

"1. Sam. 11. 2.

Cella seu camera ædificata super currum.

Quatuor Elephantes & quatuor equæ albæ trahentes currum Imperatoris.

Hæc hodiè vt que narrantur in historijs de Chinaram.



us currit. Odericus. Sciendumque tam primogenitum Regis, quam singulas de tribus vxoribus ducere similem apparatus in itinerando post ipsum, scilicet et cum quatuor comitatibus, antè, & retrò, & à lateribus, sed in valde minori numero personarum pro placito, & in singulis curribus sequentibus se inuicem per vnâ dietam.

Præmissa omnia sic fiunt, dum Imperatori tendendum est remotè, aliàs autem minuuntur, & distinguuntur comitatus, iuxta quod decet, vt nonnunquam omnes Imperatores etiam cum filio simul tendant, cum vna comitatum distinctione. Transcunt autem sic Imperatore per ciuitates & villas quilibet ante fores proprias præparato igne iactat puluerem aromata redolentem, stans genibus flexis ad reuerentiam illi. Et sciatis vbi propè transitum illius habentur Christianæ Abbatiz, quas olim constituit Dux Ogerus, excunt obuiam illi in processione cum vexillis, & sancta cruce, & aqua benedicta, & thuribulo, hymnum, Veni Creator spiritus, decantantes.

Nota: Ego semel cum Episcopo nostro, & alijs fratribus, iuimus obuiam per duas dietas, & portauimus thuribulum. Odericus. quos ipse à remotis videns, consuevit ad se appellare, & ad crucem suam galeatum deponere, ac reuerentèr nudo capite inclinare: & prælatus dicens super eum aliquam orationem signat cruce, & aqua benedicta aspergit. Et quoniam necesse est, vt quisque extraneus ante Regem apparens, offerat ei aliquid, prælatus in disco præsentat ei fructus, & poma, vel pyra, & hoc in numero nouenario, (ratio penitus primo capitulo proximo, quod iste numerus est plus ceteris acceptus), de quibus Imperator vnus sibi luens, reliqua tradit Dominis præsentibus: quo facto habent religiosi recedere citò, ne opprimantur multitudinis populi subsequentes.

Præfatum Domini galeatum, est ita intextum auro, diamantibus, gemmunculis, & orientabilibus margaritis, granellis, & dubletis, & prædiues in materia & artificio, vt ei non fit æquandus magni in partibus istis Regis thesaurus. Item sicut hæc sunt transcunt Imperator, fiunt & Imperatricibus, & filio seniori.

## CAPVT. 37.

*Qua de causa dicitur Grand Can.*

SI placet audire, dicam cur hic Imperator sit appellatus Grand Can. Audieram ego in partibus Ierosolymorum hunc esse sic dictum, à filio Noe, Cham: sed in terra Cathay accepi & aliam, & meram huius rei veritatem. Nam & scribendo hæc duo nomina habent differentiam, quòd filius Noe Cham scribitur quatuor elementis, quorum vltimum est M. & iste Can tribus tantum, quorum vltimum est N.

**Vera ratio huius nominis Can.**  
**Guis Can.**  
Post annos Christi 1100. illa prima Tartaria (de qua suprâ scripsi in prima parte, capitulo quinto) fuit nimis oppressa seruitute sub Regibus circumiacentium sibi nationum. Quando autem Deo placuit, maiores illius Tartariæ eleuauerunt de seipsis sibi Regem dictum Guis Can, cui & promiserunt subiectissimam obedientiam.

**"Vel Belgiam"**  
Idem cum esset prudens & strenuus 12. viriles habens filios, debellauit cum ijs & populo suo, & vicit, ac subiecit cunctos in circuitu Reges, quibus terra indebitè diu subiacuerat. Quin etiam apparente sibi in visione Angelo Dei velut milite in albo equo, & candidis armis, & hortante se, vt transiret Alpes, per montem Belgiam, & per brachium maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alias illic plurimas regiones transiit, & cepit cum filijs suis aliquas ex illis debellare, & subijcere, Deo in omnibus adiuuante patientè. Et quoniam in equo albo ei Angelus apparuit, qui etiam antè passum prædicti maris nouem orationes Deo facere iussit, idè succedentes vsq; hodiè diligunt equos albos, & nouenarium numerum habent præ ceteris in gratia. Dúmque Guis Can morti præ senio appropinquaret, conuocatos ante se filios hortabatur, & mouebat exemplo 12. telorum in simul colligatorum, quæ à nullo filiorum paritèr frangi potuerant, sed dissoluta vnumquodque per se facillè frangebatur, sic filij (inquit) dilectissimi, si per concordiam vos inuicem dilexeritis, & vixeritis seniori fratri obedientes, confido in Deo iuxta promissionem mihi ab Angelo factam, quòd omnem latissimam istam terram, & optimam illius imperio subijcietis, quod & post patris discessum strenuissimè, ac fidelissimè (Deo sibi prosperante) perfecterunt. Et quia cum propriis nominibus habebant cognomen Can, primogenitus pro differentia obtinuit nomen Grand Can, id est, Magnus Can, videlicet suprâ ceteros fratres, qui sibi in omnibus obediebant.

**Cur albi equi, & nouenarius numerus Tartaris sint in pretio.**

**Grand Can.**  
**Ochoto Can.**  
**Guis Can.**  
**Mango Can.**

Itaque iste secundus Imperator vocabatur Ochoto Can, Post quem filius eius regnavit dictus Guis Can.

Quartus autem, qui Mango Can baptizabatur, permanstique fidelis Christianus, qui etiam iussu magno exercitu cum fratre suo Hallaon in partes Arabiæ & Aegypti mandauit destrui in toto Mahometi superstitionem, & terram poni in manibus Christianorum. Et fratre cura

gulas de tribus vxoribus  
nor comitatibus, antè, &  
, & in singulis curribus

aliàs autem minuuntur,  
nes Imperatores etiam  
ante autem sic Impera-  
ctat puluerem aroma-  
bi propè transitum illi-  
eunt obuiam illi in pro-  
nymnum, Veni Creator

uiam per duas dietas, &  
l se appellare, & ad cru-  
& prælatus dicens super  
quoniam necesse est, vt  
n disco præsentat ei fru-  
rimo capitulo proximo,  
um sibi fumens, reliqua  
ne opprimantur multi-

minunculis, & orienta-  
io, vt ei non sit æquan-  
tanti Imperatori, fiunt &

Audieram ego in parti-  
terra Cathay accepi &  
na habent differentiam,  
est M. & ille Can tribus

n prima parte, capitulo  
bi nationum. Quando  
i Regem dictum Guis

lauit cum ijs & populo  
diù subiacuerat. Quin-  
t candidis armis, & hor-  
s, ad terram Cathay, &  
as ex illis debellare, &  
uo ei Angelus apparuit,  
sit, idè luciferos vsq;  
ris in gratia. Dúmque  
mortabatur, & mouebat  
et frangi potuerant, sed  
Risini, si per concordia  
o in Deo iuxta promiss-  
n, & optimam illius im-  
né (Deo sibi prosperan-  
Can, primogenitus pro-  
prà cæteros fratres, qui

lis Christianus, qui e-  
Aegypti mandauit de-  
ristianorum. Et fratre  
cura

procedente, accepit rumores de fratris sui Imperatoris morte inopinata, quapropter & redijt  
negotio imperfecto.

Quinco Cobilacan, qui etiam fuit Christianus, & regnauit 43. annis, & ædificauit magnam Cobilacan  
ciuitatem long, maiorem satis vixit Roma, in qua & continetur valdè nobile palatium Imperi-  
ale. Hinc vsq;e hodie omnes successores paganismo fixantur.

Tempore autem med erat nomè Imperatoris Echiant Can, & primogenitus eius Cosuacan Echiant Can,  
præter quem & alios filios habuit 12. de quorù nominibus conscribendis non est curè præsentis,  
Prima vxorum suorum vocabatur Serochan, quæ & est filia Præsbyteri Ioannis scilicet Im-  
peratoris Indiz.

Secunda Verouchan.

Tertia Caranthcan,

Istis duobus Imperatoribus non creditur inueniri maior Dominus sub firmamento Cæli.

In literis quæ huius Imperatoris Tartariæ scribuntur nomine ponitur semper iste Titulus, Can  
filius Dei excelsi, omnium vniuersam terram colentium summus Imperator, & Dominus Do-  
minantium omnium.

Circumferentia magni sui sigilli, continet hoc scriptum.

Deus in Cælo, Can super terram, eius fortitudo. Omnium hominum  
Imperatoris sigillum.

Sciendum quoque quod quamuis populi ibi dicuntur, & sunt Pagani, tamen & rex & omnes  
credunt in Deum immortalem, & omnipotentem, & iurant per ipsum appellantes, Yroga, id  
est, Deum Naturæ. Sed nihilominus colunt & adorant idola, & simulachra aurea, & argentea,  
lapidea, iignea, filtris, lanæ, & linea.

C A P V T. 38.

De territorio Cathay, & moribus Tartarorum.

Totum Imperium Imperatoris Grand Can distinctum est in 12. magnas prouincias, iuxta  
numerum duodecim filiorum primi Genitoris Can, quarum quælibet in se continet circi-  
ter 6. millia ciuitatum, præter villas non numeratas quæ sunt velut absque numero. Habent &  
singulæ prouinciæ regem principalem, hoc est 12. reges prouinciales, & horum quisque sub se  
reges Insularum plurimos, alij 50. alij ceterum, alij plures, qui omnes & singuli subiectissimè obei-  
diunt Grand Can Imperatori. Harù prouinciarù maior, & nobilior dicitur Cathay, quæ consistit  
in Asia profunda. Tres enim sunt Asiæ, scilicet quæ profunda dicitur, & Asia dicta maior quæ  
nobis est satis propinquior & tertia minor intra quam est Ephesus beati Ioannis Euangelistæ sep-  
pultura, de qua habes in præcedentibus. Audistis statum magnatum & nobilium esse per-  
magnificè, & gloriosum, sed sciatu longè secus esse apud communes & priuatos homines tam  
in ciuitatibus quam in forensibus totius Tartariæ. In prouincijs autem Cathay habetur tantum  
de mercimonijs specierum, & de operibus sericosis, quòd multis facilius acquirere esset prætio-  
sum indumentum, quàm camisium de lino. Vnde & quicunq; sunt alicuius honestatis non ca-  
rent desuper precioso vestimento.

Omnes tam viri quam femine similibus in forma vestibus inducuntur, videlicet valdè latis,  
& breuibus vsq;e ad genua cum apertura in lateribus quam firmant (dum volunt) ansis quibus-  
dam, nam vterque sexus est brachijs seu femoralibus plenè reclusus. Nunquam vtuntur toga aut  
collobio, sed nec caputio, vnde nec per aspectum indumentorum potest haberi differentia inter  
virum & mulierem innuptam. Sed nupta (vt supra dictum est) gestat per aliquod tegumentum  
in capite formam pedis viri.

Nubit illi vir quotquot placet mulieribus, vt nonnulli habeant decem vel duodecim vxores  
aut plures, Nam quisque maritus iungitur licentè cui libet mulieri, exceptis matre, & amita, so-  
rore, & filia. Sicut viri equitant, tendunt, & currunt per patriâ pro negotijs sic & mulieres, quo-  
niam & ipse operantur omnia ferè artificia mechanicæ sicut pannos & quicquid efficitur de  
no, corio, sericoq;e, minantq;e; carrucas, & vehicula, sed viri fabricant de ferro et de omni metallo  
lapidibus atq; ligno, nec vir nec mulier nobilis aut degener comedit vitra femel in die commu-  
niter. Multa nutriunt pecora sed nullos porcòs, parum comeditur ibi de pane exceptis mag-  
natibus & diuitibus, sed carnes edunt pecorum, bestiarum, & bestiolarum vtpote bouum, ouium,  
caprarum, equorum, asinorum, canum, cattorum, murium, & rattorum, ius carniùm forbentes,  
& omnis generis lac bibentes.

Nobiles autè bibunt lac equarù, seu inmentorù, pro nobilissimo potu & pauperes aquâ bul-  
licâ cù modico mellis, quia nec vinù ibi habetur, nec ceruisia cõficitur: & multi ac plurimi fontes  
cõsulant in sua siti, per villas, & rura. Domus, & habitacula rotundè sunt forme, compositæ & cõ-  
textæ paruis lignis, & flexilibus virgulis, ad modù cauearù quas nos facimus pro auiculis, habetes  
rotundam

Cobilacan  
Echiant Can,  
Imperator  
Tartarorum  
tempore Man-  
deuili.  
Serochan vx-  
or Grãd Can.

Yroga, Deus  
Naturæ.

12. Prouincie  
Chinæ.  
Numerus ci-  
uitatum.

Cathay.

Abundantia  
serici in Ca-  
thay.

Vestitus Tar-  
tarorum.

Tartari lac  
equarum bi-  
bunt.  
Appellatur  
Medo.  
Formæ do-  
morum.

Formæ domotum.  
Tartari Maxouij, i. in plaustris vaseries.  
Nouilunium in precio.  
Ceremoniæ Tatarorum.

Mingere intra domum peccatū capitale.

Sen Gubernatorum.  
Arma Tartarorum.

Tartari retro sagittantes.

Tartari habent paruos oculos & raram barbam.

Mos sepulchri.

rotundam in culmine aperturā præstantem duo beneficia habitationi, quoniam & ignis quem in medio domus cōstituunt fumum emittit, & pro aspiciendo lumen immittit. Intra seclusus sunt parietes vndiq; de filtro, sed & tectum filtrū est: has domus, dum locum habitandi mutare volunt, vel dum in diutina expeditione procedunt, ducunt secum in plaustris quasi tentoria.

Multas superuacuas obseruant ceremonias, quia respiciunt in vanitates & insanas falsas: solem & lunam præcipuè adorant, eisque frequenter genua curuant, & ad nouilunium, quicquid est magni estimant inchoandum.

Nullus omnino vitur calcaribus in equitudo, sed cogunt e quum flagello scorpione, reputantes peccatum non leue, si quis ad hoc flagellum appodiat, aut iumentum percuteret suo freno, pleriq; similia, quæ parū aut nihil nocent, pōderant vt grauia, sicut imponere cultellum in igne, os osse confringere, lac seu aliud porabile in terram effundere, nec non & huiusmodi multa.

Sed super hæc tenet pro grauiori admissio mingere intra domū quæ inhabitatur, & qui de tanto crimine proclamaretur assuetus, mitteretur ad mortem. Et de singulis necesse est vt consiteatur peccator Flamini sup legis, & soluat summā pecuniarū delicti. Et si peccatū deturpationis habitaculi venerit in publicum, oportebit reconciliari domū per sacerdotem, priusquā vllus audebit intrare. Insuper & peccatore necesse erit pertransire ignem, semel, bis, aut ter iuxta iudicium Flamini, quatenus per ignis acrimoniam purgetur à tanti iniquatione peccati.

Neminem hominum prohibent inter se habitare, sed indifferentèr receptant, Iudæos, Christianos, Saracenos, & homines cuiuscunq; nationis, vel legis, dicentes se satis putare suum ritum non ita securū ad salutem, nisi quandoq; traherentur ad ritū magis salutarem, quem tamen determinate nunc ignorant, imò multi de nobilibus sunt iam in Christianitate baptizati.

Attanien qui illorum sunt curiales Imperatoris non vellent in palatio publicari.

Pendè oblitus eram, quod nunc hic dico notandum, quia dum ab extra Imperium, quis veniens nuntius aut legatus cupit tradere proprijs manibus literas Imperatori, vel deponere coram illo mandata, non permittitur, donec prius in puris transeat lineis ad vnū ad minus regum pro sui purgatione, ne quid forsitan afferat cuius visū, vel odoratu seu tactu rex possit grauari.

Porò Tartari in præcincto expeditionis habent singuli duos arcus, cum magna pluralitate telorum: Nam omnes sunt sagittarij ad manum & cum rigida & longa lancea. Nobiles autem in equis preciosè phaleratis ferunt gladios, vel spatæ breues & latas, incidentes pro vno latere, & in capitibus galeas de corio cocto, non altas, sed ad capitis formam depressas.

Quicunq; de suis fugerit de prelio, ipso facto conscriptus est, vt siquādo inuentus fuerit occidatur. Si castrū vel ciuitas obfessa se illis reddere voluerit, nullam acceptant cōditionē nisi cum morte omnium inimicorum, vel si quis homo singularis se dederit victum nihilominus absque vlla miseratione occidunt, detrucentes illi protinus aures, quas postea coquentes, & in aceto (dum habuerint) ponentes mitunt inuicem ad conuiuia pro extremo ferulo: dumque ipsi in bellis arte fugam simulant, periculosum est eos insequi, quoniam acie iaciunt sagittas à tergo, quibus equos & homines occidere norunt. Et quando in prima acie comparant ad bellandum, mirabiliter sese confringunt, vt media pars numeri eorum vix credatur.

Generaliter noueritis, omnes Tartaros habere paruos oculos, & modicam vel raram barbam: In proprijs locis rarè inter se litigant, contendunt, aut pugnant, timentes legi pergrauas emendas, Et inuenitur ibi rarius vilpilio, latro, fur, homicida, iniuriās, adulter, aut fornicarius, quia tales criminatos inuestigatione sollicita requiruntur, & sine redemptione aliqua perimuntur.

Dū quis decumbit in firmis figitur lancea iuxta illic in terra, & cū appropinquauerit morti, nullus remanet iuxta ipsum, cū verò mortuus esse scitur, confestim in campis, & cum lancea sepelitur.

C A P Y T. 39.

*De sepultura Imperatoris Grand Can, & creatione successoris.*

Imperator Grand Can postquam eius cognita fuerit defunctio, desertur mox à paucis viris in Iparco palatij, ad præuisum locū vbi debeat sepeliri. Et nudato prius toto illo loco à graminibus cum cespite figitur ibi tentorium, in quo velut in folio regali de ligno corpus defuncti residens collocatur, paratūq; mensa plena coram eo cibarijs præciosis, & potu de lacte iumentorum. Instabulatur ibi & equa cum suo pullo, sed & ipse albus, nobiliter phaleratus, & ornatus certo pondere auri & argenti. Et est totum Tentorij pavementum de mundo stramide stratum.

Tuncque effodiunt in circuiu fossam latam valde, & profundam vt totum tentorium cum omnibus contentis descendat in illam. Eoq; facto ita equaliter terram planificantes adoperiunt graminibus, vt in omni tempore locus sepulchri non valeat reparare. Et quoniam ignorantia nubilo turpiter excecati putant in alio seculo homines delectationibus frui, dicunt quòd tentoriū erit ei pro hospicio, cibi ad edendū, lac ad potandū, equus ad equitandū, aurum & argentū ad respiciendū, sed & equa lac semper præstabit, & pullos equinos successiue generabit.

Post

quoniam & ignis quem mittit. Intra secus sunt in habitandis mutare vobis quasi tentoria.

es & infansias falsas : solum uilunium, quicquid

ello scorpione, reputantum percuteret suo freno, onere cultellum in igne, & huiusmodi multa.

abitatur, & qui de tanto necesse est vt confiscatur catu deturpationis habitum, priusquam uillus audebit, bis, aut ter iuxta iudicatione peccati.

ceptant, ludæos, Christus se satis putare suum risalutare, quem tamen anitate baptizati.

publicari. ra Imperium, quis uenitori, vel deponere coram ad mious, sregum pro sui possit grauari.

cum magna pluralitate lancea. Nobiles autem indentes pro vno latere, eprellas.

do inuentus fuerit occidant cõditione nisi cum nihilominus absque coquettes, & in aceto serculo : dumque ipsi in iur fugitas à tergo, qui parant ad bellandum, ar.

eam vel taram barbam : s legu pergraves emen- aut forni : aris, quia tane aliqui pericuntur. ppropinquauerit morti, ampis, & cum lancea se-

ur mox à paucis uiris in

oto illo loco à gramini- no corpus defuncti respo- potu de lacte inuento- phaleratus, & omittatus ludo stramine stratum, totum tentorium cum planificantes adpetite. Et quoniam i gno- nibus frui, dicunt quod equitandum, suam & os successine generabit. Post

Post has itaq; Imperatoris defuncti miseris exequias, nullus omnino audebit de ipso loqui coram vxoribus & filijs, & propinquis, sed nec nominare, quia per hoc purent derogari paci, & quieti illius, qua non dubitant eum dominari, in maiori satis gloria Paradisi quã hic stetit.

Igitur Imperatore Grand Can sepulto obliuioni tradito, conueniunt quã cito nobiles de septem tribubus prouinciar Cathay, & cui Imperium ex propinquitate competit, dicunt sic.

Ecco volumus prouinciam, atque precamur, ut sis nobis Dominus & Imperator.

Qui respondet.

Si uultis me super uos, sic ut in uis mei est, imperare, oportebit uos fore mihi obedientes tam ad mortem quam ad uitam.

Et respondentes dicunt.

Nos faciemus quicquid praeceperitis.

Tuncque Imperator addit hæc uerba : Ergo scitote, quod ex nunc uerbum meum acutum & scindens erit ut meus ensis : Pergit quoq; selsum in suo Philtro nigro super pauimentu in conspectu throni expanso, & cum ipso Philtro eleuatur ab omnibus, & interit Imperij solio, ac coronatur diademate precedentis Imperatoris.

Deinde singuli principes, & singula ciuitates, oppida, & uillæ per uniuersum imperium mittunt ei munera iocalia, uasa, pannos, equos, elephantes, aurum, argentum, & lapides preciosos, quorum, qualium, & quantorum uix uel in numero haberi potest æstimatio.

CAPVT. 40.

De multis regionibus Imperio Tartaria subieclit.

Reuiter & nunc intendo cursum describere aliquarum magnarum regionum & Insularum Imperij Tartariz. Et primò illas quæ descendunt à prouincia Cathay per septentrionalem plagam, usque ad fines Christianitatis Prussiz, & Russiz.

Ergo prouincia Cathay descendens in sui oriente à regno Tharsis iungitur ab occidente regno Turquescen, in quo & sunt plurimæ ciuitates, quaru formosior dicitur Ocloupar. Ipsum autem Turquescen regnu iungitur ad occidentem sui regno seu Imperio Persiz, & ad septentrionem regno Corasine, quod spaciosum est ualde, habens uersus orientem sui ultra centum digtas deserti : hoc regnu est multis bonis abundans, & appellatur eius melior ciuitas etiam Corasine.

Isti quoq; longum iungitur in occidentem uersus partes nostras regnum Commanorum, quod & similiter longum est, & latum, sed in paucis sui locis inhabitatum : Nam in quibusdam est frigus nimium, in alijs nimius calor, & in nonnullis nimia muscarum multitud.

De istis Commanis uenit olim fugata quædam pluralitas populi usque in terram Egypti que ibidem succreta nunc ita inualuit, ut suppressis indigenis uideatur regnare : Nam & de ipsis constituerunt hunc, qui modo est Soldanus, Melech Mandibron. Per Commanorum regnum decurrit Grandis fluius Echil, qui omni hyemali tempore in magna spissitudine gelatur : in superioribus quoq; parte huius regni inter duo freta Caspiæ, & Oceanii, mons sublimis est ualde Chocas. Nota quod à nostris partibus non possit usque in Indiam superiorem duci magnus exercitus per terras, nisi per tres tantummodo transitus, quorum iste est unus, qui tamen non ualet transiri nisi tempore glacie, & hic appellatur est Lodekone.

Alter per Turquescen, & per Persiam, tamen ibi sunt deserta plurium digitarum, in quibus nisi esset exercitus bene prouidus, posset perire.

Tertius ad primos fines regni Commanorum, transfretando tamen mare usque in regnum Abchaz : principalis ciuitas Commanorum dicitur Sarach.

Ab hoc regno uersus partes nostras inuenitur regio Laiton quæ est uicima paganismi, iungitur iste finis terræ Christianitatis regno Prussiz, & Russiz.

Post potestatem Imperij Tartariz descendendo à prouincia Cathay in Australem plagam uenitur uersus Persiam, Syriam, & Greciam. Uersus terram Christianorum possum aliquater in summa (quantum conuenit huic scripto) cõnotare. Dixi supra iam prouinciam Cathay iungi regno Turquescen ad occidentem, & illud quoq; iungi regno seu Imperio Persiz. Ad quod sciendum, quamuis rex Persiz habet etiam ab olim nomen Imperatoris ; quia (cũ tenet aliquas terras sui Imperij ab Imperatore Tartarorum) necesse est ut in tanto subiectus sit illi.

Sunt autem in Persia duæ regiones : una altera Persiz, quæ à regno Turquescen descendens, iungitur ad occidentem sui fluuii Pyson. In ista habentur renominatæ ciuitates, quaru meliores duæ dicuntur Bocura & Seonargant, quam aliqui appellant Samarkand : Et altera Regio bassæ Persiz, descendens à flumine Pyson, qui ad sui occidentem iungitur regno Mediz, & terræ minoris Armeniz, & ad Aquilonem mari Caspio, & ad Austrum terræ minoris Indiz.

In hac bassa Persia tres principales ciuitates sunt Aessabor, Saphaon, Sarmasale. In terra autem maioris Armeniz quondã habebantur quatuor regna, quæ nunc dicuntur subiecte Imperio Persiarum.

s. cathedra.

Turquescen. Ocloupar. Corasine. Regnum Commanorum.

Id est Volga. Vel Caucasus. Iter faciendũ tempore glacie.

Sarach. Laiton, uel Lituania.

Id est, Eufrate. Bocura, uel Bohare. Samarkand. Seu Nessab. Seu Sarmasale. Maior Armenia.

Maiores Armeniae  
Taurisae  
Regnum Mediarum  
Georgiae  
Abchazae, alias  
Alchaz.

In parte regni  
Georgiae sunt  
tenebrae.

¶ Vel Sathata.

Extensio Imperij  
Grandis  
Caucaei.  
Distantia à  
Roma ad Ca-  
thayam per  
Insulatores.

Cadilla Regio  
orientalis  
Cathayae.  
Angli nostri  
hanc bestio-  
lam nuper vi-  
derunt in  
Persia.

Bacchariae  
Regnum vel  
Boghariae.

Perfarum, habetque famam terrarum nobilissimam, & ad occidentem sui iungitur Regno Turciae.

Hæc Armenia multas valde bonas continet ciuitates, quarum famosior est Taurisa, Regnum Mediarum quod subest Regi Perfarum quamuis non latum est, tamen longum est, & ad occidentem sui regno Chaldeæ coniunctum. In Media meliores duæ ciuitates sunt, Seras, & Keremien.

Hinc ad occidentem sui iuncta est regio Georgiae, quæ modo constat diuisa in duo regna. Nam pars superior, quæ iungitur Mediæ, referuauit sibi nomen Georgiae, sed inferior pars dicitur regnum Abchaz. Ambo hæc regna, & reges eorum, sunt de fide Christiana, & homines ita deuoti vt ad minus semel in hebdomada comunicent sacramentis, iuxta ritum Græcorum confectis. Et quidem regnum Georgiae subiacet imperio Grandis: sed Abchaz nunquam ab ipso Imperatore Tartaricæ, neque Perfarum, neque Medorum domino subditi potuit, eo quod munitum est aquis & iuribus & alijs prouisionibus contra impugnationes hostiles.

Iuxta hoc regnum Abchaz habetur vnus mirum & mirabile, nam magnus est territorij locus dictus Hamson, & continens in circuiu spaciū viæ quatuor dietarum: videtur semper opertus tenebris densis vt nemo audeat illic intrare profundè, quoniam si qui presumpserint, non sunt visuri reuerti. Attamen fatentur vicini sub illis se tenebris audisse nonnumquam clamores hominum, hinnitus, mugitus, rugitus, & boatus pecudum, & bestiarum, sed & cantus gallorum, vt per hæc & alia signa constet ibi habitare gentes: nam & fluius decurrens monstrat signa sepe certissima in suo exitu: ignoratur tamen si tenebræ per totum territorium sint eiusdem densitatis, an forte sint in circuiu per aliquod spaciū, & intrinsecus plus luminosum.

Dicuntur autem tenebræ istæ olim per diuinum miraculum aduenisse. Saboere enim Imperatore Perfarum, circa annum Gratiæ ducentesimum quinquagesimum in persecutione Christianorum tendente cum pleno exercitu per hunc locum, & Christianis tyrannidem eius fugientibus, contigit ex improbitate eos ita arctari, vt se effugere desperarent, quapropter statim ad orationis refugium omnes se stementes clamauerunt ad Christum auxiliatorem suum: Et deus, qui pro puro corde Christianos ad se orantes semper exaudit, expleuit illic literam vaticinij Isaiæ: quia ecce tenebræ operient terram & caligo populos, monstrans per tenebram terrenam, quam eis superduxit, quas passuri essent inimici nominis Christi tenebras infernales, indicansque per temporalem vitam, quam sibi fidelibus conseruauit, eam quam possidaturi sunt viri Christiani vitam perpetuam, & cælestem.

Itaque hoc regnum Abchaz ad occidentem sui iungitur regno Turciae, quod in longo & lato valde extensum multas continet prouincias scilicet Iconiæ, Cappadociæ, Saure, Brike, Bescion, Patan, & Gennoch; hij omnes Turci, cum tota Syria & Arabia vsque; ad Galliziam Hispaniæ, sub sunt Imperatori Babylonice Soldano, & sunt in singulis prouincijs & regionibus ciuitates magnæ, ac multæ nimis. Consequenter huic regno Turciae ad occidentem sui in ciuitate Cathasa iungitur per mare Græciæ superior pars potestatis Imperatoris Constantinopolitani, & quasi ad Aquilonem contiguatur regno Syriæ: cuius vna prouincia est terra promissionis, prout hoc satis dictum est supra. Sunt & aliæ terræ, & Insulæ, & patriæ latæ, & spatiose, continentes in se multa regna, & reges, & gentes diuersas, de quibus nunc per singula pertractare non est consilij.

Ad suprascriptam Chaldeam iungitur Mesopotamia, & minor Armenia, & velut ad Austrum eius Ethiopia, Mauritania, Lybia alta & bassa, & Nubia. Excepto ergo duntaxat districtu Imperij Persicæ & potestate Soldani, omnes sepe pertractatæ terræ, regiones, regna, & Insulæ descendendo rursus per Aquilonem, quæ ad Austrum à prouincia Cathay, vsque; ad Christianitatem sunt de Imperio Tartaricæ Grandis. Et notandum de spacio distantia, quod insulatores de Roma, vel Venetia festinantes non per terras, quàm per mare, expendant de tempore 11 menses, & quandoque duodecim, priusquam in Cathay valeant peruenire.

Hij itaque visis describani saltem aliquas à prouincia Cathay in orientem terras Imperij Tartarorum. Illic habetur regio Cadilla spaciosa multum, simul & speciosa: crescunt namque in ea fructus ad quantitatem magnorum Cawardorum, in quibus inuenitur vna bestiola, in carne & sanguine ad formam agnelli absque lana, & manducatur: totus fructus cum bestiola. Sunt & alij plures diuersi fructus, quorum penes nos non est respectus nec usus. Nam & sunt ibi nonnullæ speciales vites ferentes botros incredibiliter magnos, quorum vnum vix virilis vir valet in hasta portare.

Et deinde in meridiem per aliquas diuitas, potest perueniri ad primas Caspicæ alpès, quæ descendendo descendunt vsque ad Amazoniam, insulam mulierum, de qua tractatum est. Inter has Alpes retinetur maxima multitudo Iudeorum decem tribuum Israel, per Dei voluntatem ita inclusa, vt in copiosa numerositate non possint à nostra parte exire, quamuis aliqui pauci nonnumquam sunt visis transisse. Habent autem competentem exitum circa insulam Amazoniæ, sed illum diligenter regina obseruat.

Potè de regione Cadilla in orientem venitur ad regnum Backariz, in qua mali & multum crudeliter

crudeliter  
(si Deus  
nam vero  
superior  
ris, & pl

Nec

fonna a

postqu

tanquã

qui plu

iaciend

potesta

catur P

quam a

nunciij

absque

nans, du

rium fer

milique

cum hu

Ergo

tionem I

Persicæ

est, quia

ratus: &

magnæ

haberi

citatus

partibus

Dominis

nibus, &

nitati pe

predixi,

Barones

uotus fu

byter lo

quindec

religio i

riore Ine

vt ei cer

sunt voc

nis annu

primi In

stum squ

tas ad te

centia:

filibus

Per m

est, habe

Regno Turciz.  
est Taurifa, Regnū Me-  
li, & ad occidentem sui  
, & Keremen.

uisa in duo regna: Nam  
terior pars dicitur regnū  
ines ita deuotū vt ad mi-  
n confectis. Et quidem  
in ipso Imperatore Tar-  
nitum est aquis & iu-

est territorij locus di-  
etur semper opertus tes-  
um pferint, non sunt visi  
lamozes hominū, hin-  
gallorum, vt per hęc & it  
signa sepe certissima  
dem densitatis, an forte

Saboere enim Impera-  
persecutione Christiani-  
nidem eius fugientibus,  
pter statim ad orationis  
suum: Et deus, qui pro  
literam vaticinij Isaię:  
ebam terrenam, quam  
rales, indicansque per  
ssuri sunt viri Christiani

, quod in longo & lato  
ure, Brike, Bescion, Pa-  
iziam Hispanię, sub sunt  
bus ciuitates magne, ac  
ciuitate Cathasa iungi-  
olitani, & quasi ad A-  
fissionis, prout hoc satis  
continentes in se multa  
re non est consilij.

& velut ad Austrum eius  
taxat districtū Imperij  
& Insulę descendendo  
stianitatem sunt de Im-  
inltiores de Roma, vel  
pre 11 menses, & quan-

tem terras Imperij Tar-  
rescunt namq; in ea fru-  
pla, in carne & sanguine  
sunt & alij plures diuer-  
nonnullę speciales vites  
et in hasta portare:

Caspiz alpes, que des-  
cratatum est. Inter has  
Dei voluntatem ita im-  
muis aliqui pauci non-  
rea insulam Amazonię,

in qua mali & multum  
crudeles

crudeles habitant homines, nec est securum icinerare per illam, quod ad modicam occasionem (si Deus non conseruaret) occiderent viatorem & manducarent. Illic sunt arbores ferentes lanam velut ouium, ex qua texunt pannos ad vestimenta. Hyppocentauri sunt ibi pro media superiori parte in forma humana, & pro inferiori figura equorum, seu taurorum, venantes in terris, & piscantes in aquis quod comedunt, & super omnia carnes hominū, quos capere possunt.

Nec non & gryphi illie apparent pro media posteriori parte in forma leonis, pro anteriori in forma aquilę. Sed sciatis, corpus magni gryphi maius esse octo leonibus de partibus illis. Nam postquā equum, bouem vel hominem, etiam asinum occiderit, leuat & aportat pleno volatur: tanquā cornua bouis aut vacę sunt illi vngulę, de quibus etiam fieri solent cippi ad bibendum, qui plurimum reputantur preciosi. Fiunt quoq; de pennis alarum eius arcus rigidi, & fortes, ad iaciendum missilia & sagittas. Ad istius regni Baccarię extremitates in Oriente finitur terra potestatis Grand Can: Et iungitur ei terra potestatis magni Imperatoris Indię, qui semper vocatur Presbyter Ioannes. Notandum, quoties per prouincias totius Imperij Grand Can, quicquam accidit, quod Imperatorē non oportet latere, confestim nuntuntur per reges aut barones nunciij in dromedarijs aut equis, qui celerrimē festinant ad certa hospitia, ad hoc ipsum, velut absque numero per imperium instituta: Isque nuncijs hospitio appropinquans, & cornu resonans, dum auditur paratur nuncijs alter, qui de manu suscipiens literas, per recentem dromedarium festinat ad aliud hospitium, & sic in breui tempore perferuntur ruinosæ ad curię aures. Similique modo nunciij pedites permutantur de hospitio in hospitium, vt citius percipiatur negotium huius nunciij: appellantur sua lingua Chidibo.

Ergo per premissa satis elucet magna esse nobilitatem, potestatem, reuerentiam, & dominationē Imperatoris Tartarię Grand Can de Cathay, & quod nullus ab ista parte Imperator, nec Persę, nec Babylonię, nec Grecię, sed nec Romę est illi comparandus. Vnde & multū miserandū est, quia ipse cum toto Imperio nec est fide Catholica illustratus, nec salutari lauacro regeneratus: & hoc oremus vt in breui eueniat, per Iesum Christum Dominum nostrum.

Explicit pars secunda huius operis.

¶ Tertia pars.

CAPVT. 41. De magnificentia Imperatoris Indię & preciositate Palatii.

Vm in præcedentibus Imperator Indię dictus sit magnus, restat de illius magnificentia aliquid poni hoc loco: cuius vtiq; gloria, nobilitas, & potestas, dici non habetur minor, quā dicti Imperatoris de Cathay: nam etsi in aliquibus videatur forsitan minor, est tamen in aliquibus satis maior, quia omne equale nō est idem cum illo cui equatur: itaq; a finibus regni Bacharię supradicti vbi contiguatur Imperio Indię, eundo per multas dietas intratur in regnum Pentoxorię quod est magne latitudinis, & abundantē in multis bonis: huius nominator ciuitas, dicitur Nyse, & in ea habet Imperator palatiū Imperiale, in quo residet dum sibi placet. Imperator iste semper vocitatus est Presbyter Ioannes, cuius nominis causam audiveram quandoq; non veram: sed in illis partibus accepi rationem indubitātā, quam breuiter hic enarro. Circa annū ab incarnatione Domini octingentesimū, dux Ogerus de Danemarchia, cum quindecim cognationis sue baronibus, & armatis viginti milibus transiit mare Grecię, & fauente sibi Deo conquifuit Christianitati per multa prælia penē omnes terras, regiones, & insulas, quas esse de potestate Grād Can prædixi, nec non & omnes, que sunt de potestate Imperij huius Imperatoris Indię. Eratq; inter Barones vnus denominatus Ioannes filius Goudebuc, regis Frisonū qui dictus Ioānes Deo deuotus fuit, & dū licuit Ecclesiariū limina inuiuit, vnde & barones ei dabant quasi per iocum Presbyter Ioannes vocabulum. Dum ergo Ogerus dietas regiones expugnatas diuideret in hijs quindecim suis cognatis, & quemlibet eorū in suo loco constituit regem, quatenus Christiana religio in illa orbis superficie semper stabilis permaneret, tradidit illi Presbytero Ioanni superiore Indiā, cū 4000. insulis, regionibus, & ipsū præfecit Imperatorē super reliquos cognatos, vt ei certa tributa impenderent, & in omnibus obedirent, atq; ex tunc omnes successores Indię sunt vocati Presbyter Ioannes, & vsq; in hodiernū tempus boni mālērunt Christiani, & religionis æmulatores. Interim cum causā matrimoniorum aut procurationis filiorum dispersa est primi Imperij integritas, & multę de insulis conuerse vel potius peruerse retrocesserunt ad vetustum squalorem paganismi primi. Nota. Recedens a Cambalu versus orientem posit 50. dietas ad terram Presbyteri Ioannes, principalis ciuitas terrę vocatur Cofan, satis parua sicut Vincentia: habet etiam sub se multas alias ciuitates, Ex pacto semper habet in vxorem vnam de filiabus Grand Can.

Per multas peruenit ad prouinciam Casan, que est secunda melior de mundo, vbi subtilior est, habet dietas 50. longior, 60. & est vna de duodecim partibus Imperij Grand Can. Oderi-

Arbor Lanifera.

Gryphones, de quibus Paulus Venetus. ↓

Cursores, Chidibo Tartaricę dicti.

Chariras Mandeuilli.



¶ Seu Pentoxoria, Ciuitas Nyse.

Narratio de rebus gestis Ogeri Ducis Danicę.

Vnde Presbyter Ioannes sit dictus.

4000. Insulę.

Cofan ciuitas.

Casan.

cus.

Thebeth.

cus. Vide infra capitulo 49. de Cassan, & de Epulone. Deinde venitur in Thebeth prouincia, quæ Indix est confinis. Itaque Rex & Imperator iste tenet spatiofissimum Imperium plenum valde multis Regionibus & Insulis amplis, diuisum inter quatuor flumina magna de Paradiso terrestri descendente, Pyson, Gyon, Tygrum, & Euphratem. Nam vltta fines orientales eius Imperij, & terrestrem Paradisum, nullus hominum habitat vel dominatur.

Insulæ Orientales.

Præterea imperat multis alijs regionibus & Insulis quæ distinguuntur per brachia maris Occani, & in quibus singulis continentur grandis numerositas ciuitatum ac villarum, & multitudo innumera populorum præ abundantia & præciositate omnium terrenorum bonorum.

Imperium Indix habetur famosum per vniuersum orbem. Sed & famosus haberetur si mercatores mundi communiter possint & auderent adire sicut Cathay. Noltrabitus enim perarum est illic accessus, tam præ longinquitate, quam præ marinis periculis. Nam exceptis alijs sunt ibi quamplures Adamantini colles, ad oram maris, & intra mare, qui sua virtute attrahunt sibi naues ferrum continentes. Quoniam & mihi nauiganti monstrabatur per nauas à remotis quasi parua Insula in mari, quam asserbant totaliter ab antiquis temporibus paulatim ibi cumulatam de nauibus per Adamantes retentis.

Latitudo Imperij præbyteri Ioannis est 4. milium iter.

Duodecim reges prouinciales.

Suse sedes Imperialis.

Estimatur autem latitudo huius Imperij per dietas quatuor mensium, sed longitudini non datur estimatio, eo quod tenditur vsque Paradisum vbi nullus accedit.

Distinguitur est Imperium per duodecim prouincias, quibus totidem præsumunt reges principales seu prouinciales, & quorum singuli habent sub se Reges, Duces, Marchiones, & Barones, præstantes atque reddentes præbytero Ioanni promptam obedientiam, & certa tributa. Sæpius & cõmunitè tenet sedem Imperator in palatio vrbis Imperialis Suse. Hoc autem Palatium tale & tantum est, vt per me non credatur debite estimandum. Istud tamen dico audentè in summa, quod grandius, nobilius, preciosius, & placidius est, in auro, gemmis, structuris, & schemate supra descripto palatio Grand Can in Caydo,

Et ex speciali sciatis, istius palatij principales portas esse de Sardonico, vndiq; in ebore circumclusas: sed & transfuersæ linearum sunt omnes Eburnæ, aularum & cubiculorum fenestras chrySTALLINÆ, Menfarum quædam Smaragdine, aliquæ Hæmatistina, & æterorumque lapidum preciosorum per aurum sibiinet coniuictorum. Et nonnullæ in toto aureæ vel gemmunculis disseminatæ, & vnaquæque de mensis cum stabilimento proprij generis. De throni quoque preciositate, quia mæx demonstrationis excellit modum, solummodo dico, singulos ascensionis gradus esse singulorum lapidum preciosorum: Primum onychis, secundum christalli, tertium iaspidis, quartum hæmatisti, quintum sardij, sextum cornelij. Et septimus qui est sub sedentis Imperatoris pedibus, ipse est, chrysolitus, omnes circumfusi, & inclusoria arte formati, auro splendido relucens. Sed & ambo throni reclinatoria ex smaragdine auro combinatis, eoque distincto nobilissimis granis, & gemmis: cuncti pariter in camera Regis dormitoria consistunt de auro luluo, disseminati bacis, & quampluribus carbuncolorum rubetis, totum de nocte habitaculum illustrantibus.

Et nihilominus in ea chrySTALLINA lampas plena balsamo pistico sed ardens & lucens, tam pro augendo lumine, quam pro corrigendo aere, tamen etiam pro ministrando optimo odore.

Forma lecti Imperatoris compacta est de puris & nobilissimis Saphyris, conclusi vtiq; aureis vel eburneis ligaturis, vt virtute lapidum capiat suauem somnum, motusq; carnis inhonesti stimuli, in eo refrenentur. Nunquam enim iungitur mulieri nisi soli coniugi propriæ, sed nec illi nisi quatuor quindenis anni videlicet in capite hyemis, veris, æstatis, & autumnii causa sobolis generandæ.

Vtiq; breuiter transcam de multa huius palatij nobilitate, mirabile hoc solummodo præmissis super addo. Quia circa medium illius in summo apice turris maioris, duo sunt nodi seu pomella de decoctissimi auri metallo miræ magnitudinis, & serene resplendentis, & in ipsis formati duo carbunculi: grandes, & lati, sua virtute tenebras effugantes, & velut splendorem plenilunij nocturno tempore mentientes.

## CAPVT. 42.

## De frequentia palatij &amp; comitatu Imperatoris.

Seruiunt & præsto sunt iugiter Domino Imperatori septem reges, qui in capite singulorum mensium, alijs septem regibus pro illis palatii ingredientibus recedunt ad propria, donec reuoluitur eis tempus statutum. Hij curam habent de gubernatione administrationum in aula maiori per subiectos eis 72. duces, & 300. & 63. comites seu barones, quorum vnusquisque optime nouit & diligenter intendit proprio ministerio.

Nam isti sunt Imperatoris Cubicularij, isti Camerarij, isti scindunt Regi morsellos: alij de apponendis curam gerunt ferulis & deponendis, de afferendis, de asportandis, alij pincernæ, Archimandritæ, ostiarij, & sic de singulis.

Nec

ur in Thebeth prouinci-  
ssimum Imperium ple-  
am vltra fines orientales  
minatur.

per brachia maris Occ-  
illarum, & multitudo in-  
m bonorum.

mosius haberetur si mer-  
ostratibus enim perrarus  
Nam exceptis alijs sunt  
sua virtute attrahunt sibi  
er nautas à remotis qua-  
ibus paulatim ibi cumu-

um, sed longitudini non

im presunt reges princi-  
Marchiones, & Barones,  
, & certa tributa. Sepius  
r. Hoc autem Palatium  
tamen dico auderit in  
mms, structuris, & sche-

eco, vndiq; in ebore cir-  
niculorum fenestras chri-  
orumq; lapidum precio-  
l gemmunculis diffemi-  
chroni quoque preciosi-  
gulos ascensionis gradus  
ristalli, tertium iaspidis,  
est sub sedentis Impera-  
ormati, auro splendido re-  
is, coque distincto nobi-  
cōsistunt de auro suluo,  
e nocte habitaculum il-

rdens & lucens, tam pro-  
ndo optimo odore.  
tris, conclusi vtiq; aureis  
carnis inhonesti stimuli,  
trix, sed nec illi nisi qua-  
causa sobolis generatq;  
oc solummodo premis-  
no sunt nodi seu pomella  
, & in ipsis formati duo  
endorem plenilunij no-

qui in capite singulorum  
ut ad propria, donec re-  
iniftrationū in aula ma-  
onum vnusquisque opti-

gi morsellos: alij de ap-  
tandis, alij pinceræ, Ar-

Nec

Nec non absque iam dictis, manducant omni die in aula coram Imperatore, duodecim Ar-  
chiepiscopi, 220. Episcopi, quibus etiam alij totidem certis temporibus succedunt per vices.  
Verum tamen ad quotidianas expensas vsque præmissas, veniunt de Curia 300. millia persona-  
rum, sed non amplius: sed sicut prædixi de Curia præcedentis Imperatoris sic nullus hic, cu-  
iuscūq; sit status, aut sexus, comedit vltra semel in die, & hoc ipsum sobriè satis: quoniam prout  
æstinare possum, expensæ duodecim hominum de nostris communiter compeniarent triginta  
hominum in partibus illis.

Dum Ioannem Presbyterum contingit procedere cum exercitu in plena exhibitione, non  
deseruntur vexilla, sed tredecim cruces magnæ altitudinis, & grossitudinis, de auro distincto  
pretiosissimis petris, in honorem Christi & luorum Apostolorum duodecim. Hæ vè ctantur in  
tingulis curribus, & singularum ad hoc maximis curribus cum custodia cuiuscunque crucis, de-  
cem mille equitum, & centum mille peditum, nec tamen hic numerus auget vel minuit prin-  
cipalem exercitum Paganorum.

Tempore pacis per terras proprias de palatio ad palatium, aut de regno ad regnum, dum  
tendere ei placet, comitatut vtiq; magna multitudine hominum antè & retrò, & ex vtroque  
laterum.

Tuncque portantur coram eo tria valde notabilia, quæ tam illi quàm omnibus ea dignè no-  
tantius esse possunt salutaria. Præcedit enim eum in spatio circiter octodecim passuum discus  
onustus velut omni genere pretiosorum vasorum auri & argenti, gemmarum, & inestimabilis  
artificij, illumque discum subsequitur propinquius Imperatori ad spatium centum passuum, a-  
lia crux lignea nullo penitus auro, nullòque colore aut preciositate artificialis operis adornata.

Dehinc ad sex passuum succedit ibidem propinquans Imperatori discus aureus terra nigeri-  
cina plenus. Sunt enim prædicti comitatus in custodiam & honorem personæ Imperatoris, dis-  
cus vasorum in ostensionem diuitiarum, & maiestatis Imperialis. Crux in recordatione passio-  
nis & mortis, quam in cruce ligni simplicis Christus passus est pro nobis. Et terra nigra in me-  
moriam dixæ mortis, qua caro ipsius Imperatoris, quæ terra est, in terram ibit corruptionis.

#### CAPVT 43.

##### De quibusdam miris per regiones India.

**L**icet plurima mira habeantur in terra Imperij Presbyteri Ioannis, ne materiam operis nimi-  
um proteletur, multa tægo silentio: & solum de quibusdam in principalibus Intulis narro.

Ergò in primis dico vidisse me magnum mare arenosum, quod est solum minuta arena sine  
vlla aqua cum lapillorum granellis currit, & fluit per altas eleuationes, & depressiones ad simi-  
litudinem maris aquæ, nec vnquam quiescit: & quòd ipse non cesso stupere, inueniuntur pis-  
ces ad litus proieciti, qui cum sint alterius formæ & speciei, quàm de nostro mari, videntur ta-  
men gustui in edendo delicatioris. Nullo tamen humano ingenio videtur hoc mare transada-  
ri, aut nauigari, aut illo piscari, sed nec propter sui longitudinem, & plura impedimenta de pro-  
pè circūiri.

Item: ab hoc latere maris per tres dietas habentur magnæ montium alpes, inter quas venit  
quasi oriens de Paradiso fluuius decurrentibus petris, nihil penitus habens aquæ, in quibus æsti-  
mandæ sunt plurimum magnarum esse virtutum, quamuis de singulis humanæ scientiæ consta-  
re non potest.

Hic petranim fluuius currit ad interitum tempus, quasi in tribus septimanæ diebus, per spa-  
tium deserti Indix plurimum dietarum, vel fluuius, quousque tandem se perdat in mare areno-  
sum prædictum, atque ex tunc ipsi lapides penitus non comparent. Tempore autem sui cursus  
nullus appropinquare præsumit, præ strepitu eius & motu: sed tempore quietis adit sine pe-  
riculo vitæ.

In Orientem versus fluuij originem ad ingressum deserti magni inter quosdam de monti-  
bus, cœmitur grandis terræ planicies tanquam spatiosi campi totalitèr arenosi, in quo videntur  
ad Solis ortum exurgere de arena, & secundum eleuationem Solis excrecere quædam virgula-  
ta, atque in seruore meridiei producere fructum. Ac de illo in Solis declinao fructus cum arbu-  
stulis paulatim minui, & in oc calu penitus deperire, vnde & nullus hominum audet illorum vti  
fructibus, ne sit quid fantasticum & nociuum.

In huius deserti interioribus, vidi homines in toto syluestres, qui etsi in superioribus formam  
prætere videantur humanam, descendunt in subterioribus ad formam bellix alicuius.

Horum quidam frontes gerunt comibus asperatas, grinientes vt feræ vel apri: alij nonnulla  
vti videntur loquela, quam nemo rationalium nouit, & quibusdam signis concepta depro-  
munt. Est et illic pluralitas syluestrium canum, qui dicuntur papiones, quibus postquam ede-  
misi,

Taxat g. iof.  
tatem Euro-  
pæorum.

Magnum ma-  
re arenosum.

In orientali  
India vsque  
hodie venti  
anniuersarij,  
arenis ostia  
fluminum sus-  
fosant.



**Papagalli.** miti, & ad venandum instructi fuerint, valent capi multæ bestiæ per desertum. Est & copiositas papigonum avium viridium in colore quas appellant phicake, & quarum diuersa sunt genera, nobiliores habent latas in rostro linguas, & in vitroque pede digitos duos. Et quædam ex istis naturaliter loquuntur verba aut prouerbia, seu salutationes, in patris idiomate, vt euidenter salutes concedant, & reddant viatoribus, & nonnunquam debitum iter errantibus per desertum ostendant. Minus autem nobiles non loquuntur ex natura, sed si latas habent linguas, & non sunt vltra duorum annorum ætatis, possunt per assiduitatem instrui ad loquelam.

Aliæ nec loquuntur, nec erudiuntur, sed solum clamitant pro voce milui, & nisi tres digitos habent in pede.

Nota: in quarta orientali Deus dedit fratribus minoribus magnam gratiam, vnde in magna Tartaria ita expellunt ab obsessis dæmones, sicut de domo canes: vnde quandoque per decem dietas ad eos adducuntur dæmoniaci alligati, & statim fratribus præcipientibus in nomine Iesu Christi, exeunt, & liberati baptizantur, & comburunt idola, & plures credunt, & quandoque exeunt idola de igne, & fratres projiciunt aquam benedictam, & clamat dæmon, Vide, de meo habitaculo expellor propter fratres miores. Ita multi credunt, & baptizantur. Odericus.

**Melescorde**  
Regio.  
\*Vel regionis.

Item nota: dum recederem de terra Præsbyteri Ioannis versus occidentem, applicui ad contratan vnam, quæ dicitur Melescorde, quæ pulchra est, & multum fertilis: inter montes duos huius contratæ fecerat quidam murum circumdantem mœrem, & in eo fontes nobilissimos, & omne delectabile. Et hunc locum dicebant paradysum, sicut hic ferè continetur. Ideo Odericus, qui postea narrat de valle infausta in hoc se terminat.

**Mischorach.**

Ad suprædictum Indiæ regnum Pentexoriæ satis propè, & lata est & longa Insula, Mischorach, bonis copiosè referta, sic qua vnum scribo præteritum mitum.

Ante paucos hos annos, villanus ditissimus, sibi valde preciosum construxerat palatum, quasi pro Paradiso terrestri, circumdatum, munitum fortalitijs, ac repletum omnibus corporalibus delicijs.

Illic aræ, turres, camere, cubicula, cum alijs ædificijs, in multo numero, & gloria permagnifica, ac historiarum picturis, inter quas, nonnunquam prodigioso artificio bestiarum & bestiolarum, & auiculæ discurrebant, volitabant, & per pugnas, garritus, collisiones, metebantur viuere.

**Ditissimi vil-**  
**lani paradysus**  
**siccius.**

Illic prata, & pometa, & seruatoria circa delicosi collis congestum, distincta velut omni genere florum, arborum, & herbarum, cum multis fontibus & riualis, quorum perspiciuitas, & fluxus in glariis suauem & auditum præstabant refectionem; & super aliquos fuerunt exceptioris artificij, circumstructi auro, & argento, & geminis, & tres principales fontes emittentes ad palatum Domini per occultas conductas, riualos vini, lactis, & mellis.

Copiosus quoque numerus formosorum puerorum, & puellarum, ætatis inter decem & sex decem annos, inditorum torquibus, & cycladibus exauratis, exercentium inter iocos cantus & spectacula, ac seruentium suo Domino prope nutum. Audiebantur ex turrim costodibus, nec non videbantur dulcisonæ symphoniarum, generum diuersorum, vt certissimè putares, non hominum, sed Angelorum: & in istis, ac similibus, deliciebatur iste villanus.

Sed & aurum liuido nil iuuat, imò nocet: quia enim hic inuidiæ & otij facibus super ingenuitatem mentis omnium generaliter nobilium principum verebatur in corde: (ingenuitas enim, & iusticia nunquam cohabitât in cordis vno domicilio) Composuerat ista sibi in hunc finem, vt per se singulos aduocaret aliquos vasallos corpore robustos, mentesq; audaces, atq; ad omnem proteritiam benè proclius: & cuiuslibet pro placitis muneribus commisit vt illum seu illum principem seu Baronem, quem dicebat sibi aduersariu, clam per insidias vel impetu occideret, promittens quenquam post factum ad se recepturum perpetuò in hunc locum: sed & velut vaticinans pseudopredicant: si quem illorum pro his flagitijs contingeret corporaliter tradi morti, nihilominus animam eius in hunc amœnum Paradysum recipi, & viuere in æternum.

**Mandeuillus**  
oculatus r. stis

Per hunc igitur modum nonnullis nobilibus occisis, & interfectis, tandem nudabatur eius nequitia tanta, & congregati regionis Barones miserum occiderunt, eius opera destruentes. Ipse ego inibi ductus, vidi fontium loca, & multa rei vestigia.

CAPVT 44.

De loco & dispositione r. v. infaustæ.

**H**Vius ad insulæ extremitates non procul à fluuio Pyson, habetur locus mirabilis pariter & terribilis, vltra omne mundanum, penè & procul: de euentibus, ac laboribus infinitis, quæ mihi messique in tempore itinerationis acciderunt hucusque subiectui, cum iam vnum de maioribus ecce narro.

um. Est & copiositas  
m diuersa sunt genera,  
s. Et quædam ex istis  
mate, vt euidenter fa-  
ntibus per desertum  
bent linguas, & non  
uelam.

lui, & nisi tres digitos  
ratiam, vnde in magna  
quandoque per decem  
ntibus in nomine Iesu  
dunt, & quandoque  
mat dæmon, Vide, de  
baptizantur. Oderi-

ntem, applicui ad con-  
is: inter montes duos  
fontes nobilissimos, &  
inetur. Ideo Odericus,

onga Insula, Mischo-

onstruxerat palatium,  
um omnibus corpora-

o, & gloria permagnio  
beliæ & belliæ, a-  
s, anctiebantur viuere.  
stincta velut omni ge-  
uorum perspicuitas, &  
uos fuerunt exceptio-  
es fontes emittentes ad

atis inter decem & sex  
n inter iocos cantus &  
arium costodibus, nec  
ne putares, non homi-

facibus super ingenu-  
de: (ingenuitas enim,  
ista sibi in hunc finem,  
audaces, atq; ad omnē  
vt illum seu illum prin-  
impetū occideret, pro-  
m: sed & velut vatici-  
oraliter tradi morti, ni-  
æternum.

ndem nudabatur eius  
opera delruentes. Ip-

Est illic in alpihus vallis infausta, quatuor ferme leucarum: longitudo vallis, quasi ad quatuor milliaria Lombardica, appellata vallis incantationis, seu periculosa, seu proprius dæmoniosa: intrā quam diebus ac noctibus resonant boatus & tumultus tonitruorum, tempestatum, clamorum, & stridorum, diuersique generis sonituum terribilium, quos illic exercet multitudo spirituum malignorum.

Propè ad vallis medium sub vna rupium, apparet omni tempore visibiliter integrū ac maximum caput dæmonis vsque ad humeros tantum, cuius speciem præ horrore nullus pleno intuitu humanus audet diu oculus sustinere: nam respicientes contrā aspiciunt truculentè, agitans oculos minaciter, tanquam ex palpebris eicturus (quæ & scintillant) flammam in altum. Totūque caput sese rotat ad minas, & variat terribiliter modum & continentiam sub repente diuersis manieribus. Exitque de illo per totum ignis obscuratus fumo, & fætor tantus, quod per magnum spatium viz pessimam vallem infectat.

Ingredi autem volentibus, apparet semper ad introitum vallis, magna copia auri, argenti, vasorum, vestium, & rerum pretiosarum, quas proculdubio ibi dæmones confingunt, quibus & ab olim multi insipientium hominum concupiscentia tracti intrarunt, & vsque nunc intrant pro colligendo thesauro: sed de Infidelibus paucissimi reuertuntur, imò nec de Christianis, qui auaritia causa ingrediuntur: per vallis autem semitam, quæ inter montes & monticulos, tortuosa & aspera est, gradientes vident, & audiunt, dæmoniacos spiritus multos volutantes, & imaginibus corporum visibilium, serpentum, volucrum, vlularum, lamiarum, & huiusmodi specierum horribilium dentibus ininitantes, vngulas erigentes, incognitos sibilos spirantes propè super capita ad aures transgredientium. Sempèrque minuitur lumen acris, donec ventum fuerit ad terribilissimum locum capitis anedicti.

Si quis autem sincerè fidei Christianus per contritionē verā & confessionē, se posuerit in statu saluationis, munitus corporis Christi mysterijs, ac signo crucis, cum intentione ibidem agendi penitentiam de admissis, & cauendi de admittendis, putatur posse hanc transire vallem securus quidem à morte, non tamen liber à laboribus, horroribus, & tormentis, & extire, de omnibus culpis præteritis corruptis, ac de futuris magis solito cautus, sicut scriptum est, territi purgabuntur.

Nota aliud mirabile magnum. Vidi cum irem per vnam vallem positam iuxta flumen quod egreditur de paradiso, vidi in ea multa corpora mortuorum, in qua etiam audiui multa genera Musicorum, qui ibi mirabiliter pulsabant: tantus erat ibi tinnitus Musicorum, quod inculsit mihi timorem horribilem.

Est autem longitudo illius vallis quasi ad quatuor milliaria Lombardica, in qua si vnus Infidelis intrat, nunquam egreditur, sed sine mora moritur: Et licet sciu, quod intrantes moriuntur, tamen acceptaui intrare, vt viderem quid ibi esset. Dum intrassem tot humana cadauera ibi vidi, quod nisi quis videret, credere non posset.

In hac valle, ab vno eius latere, vidi faciem hominis valdè horribilem, qui tantum horrorem mihi inculsit, quod putauim me spiritum exhalare, propter quod sæpè repetij verbum vitæ, scilicet, verbum Caro factum est.

Ad illam faciem non audebam accedere, nisi ad distantiam octo passuum: postea iui ad caput vallis, & ascendi super montem arenosum, in quo vndique circumspiciens, nihil videbam, nisi instrumenta musicalia, quæ audiebam fortiter pulsare. Cum fuisset in capite montis, repertum multum argentum congregatum ibi in similitudinem squammarum piscium, vnde posui in gremio, sed quod de ipso non curabam, dimisi illud, & sic illæsus transiui Deo concedente.

Sarraceni cum hoc scirent, reuerebantur me esse baptizatum, & sanctum: mortuos nunc in valle dicebant, homines infernales.

Odericus ad literam hic renninat suum librum: non fuit tot perpeffus in valle, sicut ego. Anno Domini 1331. Ianuarij nono, migravit ad Christum, in conuentu Minorum: cuius vitam statim in fine, & vsque claris miraculis diuina prouidentia approbat, & commendat, prout continebatur in quaterne, à quo concordantias hic superseminauit.

## CAPVT 45.

## De periculo &amp; tormentis in valle eadem.

Itaque dico vobis, cum ego cum sodalibus, qui simul eramus, quatuordecim diuersarum nationum ante ingressum huius tanti periculi peruenissemus, nos tractatu longo, & deliberatione acuta consiliabamur, vtrumnam ingredi deberemus, & quidam affirmabant, alij verò negabant. Erat autem in numero duo deuoti fratres, de religione beati Francisci, natione Lombardi, qui videbantur pro seipsis non multum curare ingressum, nisi quia uoluerunt nos animare ad ingressum,

ingressum, dicentes, si qui nostrum per confessionem, & Eucharistia susceptionem se ibidem praeunirent, ingrederentur cum illis: quo, ab omnibus mediante debita prouisione, quam ipsi fratres penes se gerebant peracto, parauimus mentes nostras cum pedibus ad intrandum.

Sed ecce quinque de nobis, duo Graeci & tres Hispani, semetipsos ab alijs segregantes, visi sunt alium requirere introitum nos praecedere cupientes, & certe nos illos exinde non vidimus, & quid eis acciderit an periculum subierint, vel ne ignoramus.

Nos autem nouem per vallem processimus in silentio, & cum cordis ea deuotione, quam quisque sibi potuerit obtinere: & ecce in breui transacto spatio apparuerunt cumuli massiarum auri & argenti, & preciosorum copia vasorum. Sed dico vobis pro parte mea, quia nihil horum tetigi, reputans id fallaciam daemorum confinxisse ad mittendum concupiscentiam in cor nostrum, imò sine intermissione conabar cor meum custodire ad deuotionem inceptam.

Procedentibus igitur nobis lux caeli minuebatur paulatim & augebatur horror, quoniam prope nos vndique etiam sub pedibus nostris apparebant iacere cadauera mortuorum hominum penitus defuncta: alia adhuc spirantia, & nonnulla semiuia, super quae dum nos aliquando calcare contingeret, conquerebantur, ac dolorose submurmurabant.

Et licet non certum id habebam, estimauimus hoc fieri in parte vel in toto fitione daemorum, reputans in breui tempore tantam multitudinem hominum spontaneè vallem intrasse, & si à longo tempore in ea perissent putrefactos fuisse.

Ergò in initio nostri processus quasi prope leucam inuenitur iter sub pedibus satis promptum, sed lumine tanquam ad medium nobis sufficiente, via torquebatur nimis, & asperabatur: & ecce figurae daemorum, circum & supra in aere se ferentium, ad imagines horribilium luporum, leonum, iuarum, megerarum, iuxta cuiuscunque genus, vltantium, rugentium, stridentium, gannientium, hiantes ore, intentantes dentibus, rotis, ac vnguibus, nos terrete, mordere, discerpere, deglutire.

Quapropter pro breui interdum soluto silentio nos inuicem hortabamur, ne quis pro pusillanimitate terrori cederet, & tanto deficeret in agone. Hoc igitur modo per secundam leucam expirante nobis vsque ad tenebras lumine, quouique quis vix vmbrae proximi agnoscere possit, praeter praedicta in aere tormenta, iucurrerant nobis ad tibias, & pedes pluralitas quasi porcorum, vrsorum, & caprarum grinnientium, & impellentium nos ad lapsum, quod vel ad tertium, vel quartum, aut sextum passum solatenus cadebamus in palmas, seu genua, vel prosternebamur in faciem, aut supini.

Ac superuenere praeter hoc ventorum turbines, fulgurum conuulsiones, tonitruorum boatus, grandinum calus & exundatio pluuiarum, quantas & quales nunquam accepimus in hoc mundo, quibus iactabamur, ruebamur, quassabamur, & periclitati fuimus extra narrandum.

Interdum quoque sensimus tanquam graues baculorum ictus, per humeros, dorsa, latera, & ad reas, alij quidem grauiores, alij vt puta secundum demeritum vniuscuiusque. Et certe dum per tanta tormeta, quasi exhaultis totis viribus, iam prope medium locum vallis erat ventum, accidit repente, sub vnico instanti temporis, quibusdam nostrum expalatio ita dura, vt omnes pariter collisi, & prostrati iaceremus in extasi per vnam vel duas forsitan horas.

Et isto defectu vidit quilibet suo modo spiritualem visionem supermirabilem, & excedentem omne dictum, & scriptum.

Ego verò de visione mea nihil ausus sum scribere, vel loqui, quia & fratres singuli inhibuerunt, nisi de his, quae corporaliter intuebamur, & palsi fuimus.

Grauisimum singuli sustinuumus ictum per corporis loca diuersa, vnus in facie, alius in pectore, ad costas, in dorso, vel ad humerum, & mansit cuique signum percussurae nigerrimum, ad formam virilis manus humanae:

Mirabilis ictus

Ictum autem meum in colli ceruice tali ac tanta passione, vt putabam caput abscissum de corpore auolare: & hinc ad octodecimū annum mansit mihi in prima magnitudine signum: sed & vique nunc variato colore locus ille demonstrat plenissimè cicatricem, donec cum cadauere tota mutabitur in sepulchro: porro vbi nos ab extasi in his tenebris separauimus singuli per diuinam gratiam respirando, loquendo, palpando, erigendo nos ipsos mutua humanitate, vt potuimus, recolle gemus, & cohortabamur, cum subito nobis apparuit sub tenebroso lumine, vel potius fumosa caligine, locus ille spatiosus mediae vallis, continens antedictum horribile caput daemonis, plenus furore inextimabili, & iugi occupatus exercitatione innumerorum spirituum malignorum.

Hunc ergò locum ineptū cum vitare vellemus, in toto nequiuimus extremitatem eius, quocunque girantes, nullus nostrorum perfecte aspectu audebat respicere quae gerebantur ibidem, quia

quia inuadens tremor tingere videbantur, propositum confellu

Transiimus, Dei mento: rursumque e ventorum, conuulsio banur in facies, & in titudine grinnientium hanc vallem quisque

Pòst verò exactam in vno tranquilliori le mus iminentia, & p

Nihilominus tame sus pudenda simul, &

Pro certo ergò habi tiam verborum, cum non attendebam, tum mendabam.

Per quartam autem dibus hominum cada

Nunc itaque obsec quid erga me agebat cum ex mentis intimo eripuit me indignum, commisisis, & commisi am est ex tunc propos Iesum Christum Dom

Ad hoc, addo breui nec ingrederetur hanc proximas habitatione is, & ad medendum v ret deliberationem sup

**V**T modò proceda gancium, ad itatu nonnullos, sed extra te vltra: hi operiuntur ne animalium carnes crud nes humanas.

Istorum non curau iugantibus, nauaeque li minibus sibi distis.

Versus Austrum hin dam mulieribus nascit more Basilici interfici

Et vltra hanc insulan defcibo.

Dum desponsauerit dum, qui sua idonea cla referet & vestiget sub ti. Et si postera nocte a tere ad mortis iudicium responsum, pro certis t quibus nocebantur pri

Idèòq; & viri, qui pro est, stulto desperato.

quia inuadens tremor statuebat horripilationem, extrahebat sudorem, & pudorem omnes extinguere videbantur. Nec tamen potuit esse consilium de reuertendo, ne propter immutatum proposium confestim à dæmonibus strangularemur.

Transiimus, Dei gratia nobis opitulante, sed non sine maximo horrore, fætorisque tormento: rursumque ex tunc procedentes nos apprehendebat tenebrosa, validaque tempestas, ventorum, conuulsationum, tonitruum, grandinum, & pluuiarum, cuius quassatione collabebamur in facies, & in dorso dextrorsum, & sinistrorsum, interuolvente ad tibias, sicut prius multitudinem grinniesium bestiarum, nec dubito scribere quoque amplius, quàm 500. vicibus per hanc vallem quisque nostrum sternebatur ad terram.

Pòst verò exactam tertiam leucam, cœpit nobis augeri lux aeris, ex quo animosiores effecti, in vno tranquilliori loco nos paruum paulantes, gratias Deo palmis extensis in cælum, reddidimus imminetas, & præcipue quòd nullus deesset de nouenario numero sociorum.

Nihilominus tamen spiritus in aere nobis minari non cessabant, præter dentes in derisionem sua pudenda simul, & fœda virilia & posteriora.

Pro certo ergò habeatis de his quæ vidi, & sensi, nullam possum vobis tradere & quipollentiam verborum, cum quia grauissima erant, tum quia singulis ne mihi deuotionem minueret non attendebam, tum etiam, quod præ horrore, labore, & dolore multa memoriæ non commendabam.

Per quartam autem leucam (ductrice gratia) leuuis transeuntes, sustinimus tamen sub pedibus hominum cadauera mortuorum, propè vallis exitum rerum tentamina preciosarum.

Nunc itaque obsecro magno cordis affectu, hæc legentes & audientes ego, qui in illa hora quid erga me agebat misericordissimi Dei pietas ignorabam, vt velitis pro me, simul & mecum ex inuentis incimo collaudare ipsum Dominum, qui tunc de potestate tenebrarum illarum eripuit me indignum, & prout confido, à delictis iuuentutis me purgavit, quatenus de postea commissis, & committendis, mihi propitius fore dignetur, cum iam lenior sim effectus. Quoniam etsi ex tunc proposui mores corrigere, ex nunc statuo in melius emendare, per filium eius Iesum Christum Dominum nostrum.

Ad hoc addo breuiter, quòd non suderem hortari quenquam, me consulentem, vt spontaneè ingrederetur hanc vallem insuam, quamuis ego curiosus intraui. Venientes posthac ad proximas habitationes, necesse fuit vobis intendere ad recreandum corpora cibarijs, & balneis, & ad medendum vulneribus, & quassaturis, donec per aliquod tempus vnusquisque acciperet deliberationem super suo futuro.

## CAPVT. 46.

*De quibusdam alijs aduersandis per Insulam insulas.*

**V**T modò procedam in tractatu. Scietis ad paucas inde dietas grandem insulam haberi gigantium, ad staturam altitudinis vincti quinque pedum nostrorum, de quibus ipse vidi nonnullos, sed extra terram eorum, & audiui esse intrinsecus quosdam triginta pedum, & vltra: hi operiuntur non vestibus, sed bestiarum pellibus vt cunque sibi appensus, comedentes animalium carnes crudas, & lac pro potu sorbentes, atque appetentes super omnem esum carnes humanas.

Istorum nos curauimus intrare insulam: nam & audiui quòd ad maris litus solent insidari nauigantibus, nauisque submergere, nisi interdum redimantur tribus aut quatuor per sortem hominibus sibi datis.

Versus Austrum hinc in mari Oceano, habetur inter alias insulas, vna, vbi crudelibus quibusdam mulieribus nascitur in oculis lapis rarus, & malus, quæ si per iram respexerint hominem, more Basilisci interficiunt solo visu.

Et vltra hanc insulam alia maior & populosior, vbi cura multi sunt vltus nobis insueti, vnum descibo.

Dum desponsauerit vir puellam, virginem, mandat hominem in compositum, velut ribaldum, qui sua idonea clauis per expertos super hoc diligentèr considerata, si reputatur idonea reseret & vestiget sub nocte vnica virginalem conclauem, pro mercede sibi tradita competentis. Et si postera nocte accedens sponsus ita non inuenerit, poterit, & confuevit hominem impetere ad mortis iudicium indeclinabile. Cuiusque huius moris discere voluissim causam, ac cepi responsum, pro certis temporibus apud eos, virginem habuisse in matricibus paruos serpentes, quibus nocebantur primum ad illas intrantes.

Ideoq; & viri, qui pro mercede tantum subeunt periculum, vocant sua loquela cadibrum, est, stulto desperatos.

Gigantes An-  
thropophagi.



Lasteri aspe-  
ctus mulierum

Insula vbi vir-  
gines vici-  
antur anse-  
quam nubant

Ex hac, apparet Insula in qua inter alios vsus, peruersæ sunt matres contra naturam & scripturâ, cum pepererint contristantur, & dum proles meretur iocundantur, iactantes in magno igne cum coniugio & exultatione, dumque maritus ante vxorem decedit, patebit vxoris plena dilectio, si cum corpore mariti, quod rogo traditur se iactat cremandam, vt quia in isto seculo steterunt amoris vinculo colligati, non sint alio separati.

Nec tamen intelligunt illud seculum, nisi quod sibi consingunt terrestrem Paradisum. Puerum aut minoræ annis, trahet mater secum si placet, sed ætatis puer perfectæ, eligit pro proprio placito viuere superstes, aut mori iuxta parentes.

Hic etiam non succedunt Reges per generationem sed per electionem, vt assumatur non nobilior, aut fortior, sed morigeratior, & iustior, 30 ad minus annorum, nullam habens sobolem aut vxorem, seruaturque illic iusticiæ rigor in plena censura, in omnibus & contra omnes, etiam si forte fecerit ipse Rex, qui nec eximitur a traditis legibus pro concupiscentia vel contemptione quarumlibet personarum.

Veruntamen Rex si peccauerit non occiditur ob reuerentiam, sed quoddam sub pena mortis, publicè inhibetur, ne quispiam in Regione ei verbo vel vilo factò communicet, & quoniam sui loco alter rex constituitur, necesse est illi breui vita degere vel perpetuè exulare.

Constat post ipsam, & alia Insula multis bonis locuples, & hominibus populosa, de qua recolo scribendum, quod nulla occasione comedunt tria genera carniùm, gallinarum, leporum, & auarum, quas etsi nutriant in copijs, vtuntur diutaxat pellibus aut plumis.

Cæterarum verò bestiarum & animalium licitè vescuntur carnibus pro victu, & lacte pro potu. Ibi quisq; vir licitè potest coniungi cuique mulieri, quantumcùnque propinquet, exceptis progenitoribus, patre & matre. Nam cohabitatio, & commixtio omnium virorum ad singulas mulieres apparet ibi communis, vnde mater natum parvulum suum, adicit pro sui placito cuiuscunq; viro, qui circa generationis tempus secum dormierit, nec valet vllus virorum esse certus de proprio generato, quem modum ex legem arbitror & turpeni.

Sicut ergò præfatus sum, multa mira videntur per Regiones Indorum, mira quidè nobis, sed illis assueta, quibus si nostra recitarentur assueta, audirent pro miris. Nam & dum quibusdam dixi aucas viuas apud nos nasci in arboribus, admirati sunt satis. In multis locis feminatur singulis annis sementum de ¶ Cothon, quod nos dicimus lanam arboream, exurgunt ei modica arbutula, vel potius arbutula de quibus talis lana habetur: est arbor Iuniperus, de cuius ligno deficcato, si carbones viuos sub proprijs cineribus tenueris diligenter opertos, igniti seruabuntur ad annum.

Est & genus Nucum incredibilis magnitudinis ad quantitatem magni capitis: & bestia vocata, oraffans, vel serfans, corpore in nostrorum altitudine caballorum, & collo in 20 longitudine cubitorum ad prospiciendum vltra domos & muros, quorum posteriora apparent vt hincniculi siue lerni.

¶ Vel Cothon.

Descriptio arboris Bombasum ferentis.

Nux Indica. Oraffans bestia.

Cameliones.

Genus est etiam Camelionum ad formam hynnulorum, qui semper patulo tendunt ore, vel nil manducantes. Viuunt de aere, quæ etiam ad suum libitum videntur sibi variare colorem, exceptis (vt dicitur) albo vel rubeo.

Maximi quoq; serpentes, inuicem qualitate, & genere differentes atq; colore.

Aliqui cristam in capite gerunt, quidam more hominum ad duos pedes erecti incedunt, & nonnulli qui dicuntur Reguli, venenum per ora distillare non cessant, nec non quam plures codrilli, de quibus aliquid in præcedentibus retuli: & apri in nostrorum magnitudine boum, spinosi ericij, in quantitate porcorum, leones albi in altitudine dextrariorum. Louheraus, seu Edouches per Indiam habentur, quod ferarum genus satis est maius nostris communibus equis, gerens in fronte tetri capitis tria longa cornua, ad formam pugionis, ex verâque parte sciendæntia, vt eis nonnunquam interficiant Elephantes.

Apri Ingentes. Leones albi. Louheraus.

Aliæ quoq; bestie crudeles vt vrsi cum capitibus ferè aprorum & habentes pedes senos, qui finduntur latis vngulis bis acutis, & cum caudis leonum siue pardorum.

Et quod vix credetur, mures pro quantitate, 10, aut 12, nostrorum & vespertiliones ad modum coruorum.

Sed & aucas in triplo maiores nostris, plumis induræ rubris, nisi quod in pectore & collo apparet nigredo.

Et breuiter tam ibi quàm alibi, habentur pisces, bestie, volucres, aut vermes diuersorum generum, aut specierum, de quibus hoc loco, vel inutilis, vel proluxa posset fieri narratio, quod nec illis qui nunquam propria exierunt, credibilis videretur.

C A P V T

S. I.  
BR  
ces, &  
nec iu  
valent  
creato  
Sol  
gener  
in iust  
obseq  
Ma  
Istos c  
inter c  
piscer  
cuffan  
postm  
gentib  
Pyr  
decori  
odore  
Dis  
sibi cir  
Vlt  
copus  
& pol  
veram  
Hui  
nos tra  
rium d  
bestiar  
ta, vt c  
næ, vix  
horibus  
Circ  
sub cœ  
lorum  
Pen  
stolidi  
pro dil  
Veri  
renoru  
haud p  
& est h  
decline  
hyems  
germin  
Habit  
commu  
Hijs  
nomine  
craftit  
quod z  
quarta  
las quo  
Itaq;  
vitos, m

## CAPVT. 47.

## De Bracmannorum &amp; aliorum Insula.

**B**Racmannorum Insula quasi ad medium Imperij cõsistit: Præsbyteri Ioannis, Hij licet Christiani non sunt, viuunt tamen naturali optimo more. Rudes enim & incomparati, simplices, & insciji omnis artis apparent. Non cupidi, superbi, inuidi, iracundi, gulosi, aut luxuriosi nec iurantes, fraudantes, aut mentiantur. Laborant corpore, sed intendunt animo implere quoad valent naturalem mandatum, hoc facias alijs quod tibi vis fieri credentes & adorantes omnium creatorem Deum, & sperantes ab ipso simpliciter Paradisum.

Sobrijs quoque sunt, quapropter & longo tempore viuunt: & si quis ab eorum moribus degenerat, proferbitur perpetuo sine mora, omnibus nulla posita differentia personarum, vnde & in iusto Dei iudicio, quod naturalem exercere iustitiam contendunt, Elementa eis naturaliter obleguntur, & raro eos tangit tempestas, aut fames, pestilentia aut gladius.

Magna riparia dicta Chene currit per Insulam, ministrans piscium & aquarum copiam: Istos olim Alexander rex Greecorum debellare cupiens, misit eis literas comminationis, cui inter cetera notabilia remandauerunt, nihil se habere curiosi, quod Rex tantus deberet concupiscere, nihilque ita se timere perdituros sicut pacem bonam, quam hæcenus habuerunt incõcussam: si que diuino nutu est actum vt Rex truculentus ad alia se verteret, atque in breui postmodum eaderet, quia dissipat Dominus eos, qui bella volunt, & istis manet pax multa diligentijs eam.

Pytae Insula breuis continet paucos & breues habitatores, Pygmaeis modico longiores, qui decoris vultibus nullo vnquam cibo vescentes, specialis pomi quod secum portant sustentant odore, quo si carerent ad parum, color in vultu marcesceret, & die tertia vita periret.

Discretio & rationalitas ijs adeo est modica, nec enim habent laborare nisi pro vestitu, quem sibi circa arbusta colligunt: Et conficit vniuersisq; pro 12. annis vite suæ.

Vltra hanc Insulam siluestres, & fortes habentur homines, sed bestiales, vestiti per totum corpus proprijs capillis & pilis, exceptis palmis, & faciebus, qui videntur penitus gubernatione & polita carere: venantur carnes per filias, & discurrunt piscantes in aquis, omnia cruda vorantes.

Hinc ad terræ metas manat suuius Briemer latitudinis duarum leucarum, & semis, quem nos transire nequiuimus, nec ausi sumus. Quoniam illo transmissio instant deserta 15. aut plurius dierum inhabitata nõ temporis (prout audieramus) diuersis & nobis ignotis generibus bestiarum, serpentum, draconum, gryphiu, aspidum, dyrsarum, & colebrorũ in multitudine tanta, vt centum millia armatorum simul pertingere vsque ad arbores, quæ ibi dicuntur solis & lunæ, vix possent. Attamen suo tempore Alexander magnus scribitur pertigisse, & quedam ab arboribus ficticia suscepisse responsa.

Circa has arbores excolitur Balsamum, cuius liquoris comparatio nusquam scitur contineri sub cælo. Nam ibidem homines, de istarum arborum fructibus & Balsamo vrentes dicuntur illorum virtute quadringentis aut pluribus annis viuere.

Peruenit autem & Dux Danus Ogerus, ac manducauit de illis, vnde & nonnulli præ sensus soliditate vel fidei lenitate putant ipsum adhuc alibi viuere in terris. Ego autem quia tantum pro dilatanda Christianitate laborauit arbitror magis, eum regnare cum Christo in cælis.

Versus orientales partes Indorum consistit magna regio Taprobane exuberans optimis terrenorum bonorum, in quam nauigio intrantibus in octo vel circa diebus per aquam satis tenuem, haud profundam, ibi, sicut & in alijs multis Insulis, rex non nascitur sed eligitur per partes terræ: & est hæc vna de quindecim nominatis Regionibus conquisitionis Ogeri. Ista, cum modicum declinet à circulo terræ sub Equatore, patitur in anno duas æstates, & duas hyemes, si tamen hyems aliqua dici debeat, & non magis æstas, quia nullus hic dies anni caret fructu, flore, germine.

Habitatores sunt discreti, & honesti, vnde & mercatores, de remotis partibus libenter cum ijs communicant: & sparsim per regionem habitant plurimi diuites Christiani.

Hij iunguntur due insule (quas nos vocamus, Orilla, & Argita,) quanquam illa lingua aliter nominentur. In quarum prima sunt multe minere auri, in secunda argenti, & propter quandam crassitudinem aëris continuam, per pauca apparent sydera, præter vnum quod dicunt Canopũ, quod æstimo planetam Venerem. Et quod mirum est valde, de omni lunatione ijs apparet nisi 2. quarta. Cuius rei probabilis ratio effugit etiam Astronomos valde peritos. Atque per has Insulas quoddam rubrum mare à mari Oceano segregatur.

Itaq; in Orilla in locis multis effoditur, colligitur, & conflatur optimum auri metallum, per viros, mulieres, & paruulos in hoc instructos, sed & in nonnullis ibi montibus monstrantur congrega-

congregationes bestiarum in quantitate nostrorum catulorum, in formicarum forma ac natura totali: qui pro suis viribus effodiunt, purificant, & colligunt cum intenta occupatione aurum minutias, eas reponentes, & repositas retrahentes de cavernis & specubus in cavernas & specus. Et in conferuando sunt diligentes & acres, vt nemo audeat de facili propinquare, nisi quod interdum ab illis paufantibus, seu ab astu se occultantibus, aliqui non sine periculo in dromedaris & veredarijs rapiunt, vel furantur.

Solet etiam ab eis obtineri, quod excoigato ingenio super equam quæ nuper factum & diderit, imponentes homines duas de ligno cistulas seu cophinos nouos, vacuos, & apertos à lateribus dependentes propè terram: hanc famelicam dimittunt vt se pascat ad herbas in montem: Quam formicæ videntes solam, salientes & iocantes, colludunt ad eam & ad eius con fines pro nouitate: & quoniam eis est naturale, vt circa se omne vacuum implere conentur comportant certatim aurum suum in vasculis suis mundis. Cumque homines à remotis tempus obserauerint, emittunt pullum equæ vt videat matrem, cuius aspectu iam diu stetit priuatus, ad cuius hinnitum protinus equa reuertitur onusta de auro. Hys ergo & similibus modis homines aurum diripiunt à formicis.

## CAPVT. 48.

*Aliquid de loco Paradisi terrestri per auditum.*

**A** Finibus Imperij Indiz recta linea in orientem nihil est habitatum vel habitabile, propter arripium, & montium altitudinem, & asperitatem, & propter aeris inter Alpes diueritatem: nam in multis locis, licet quandoque aer sit serenus, nunc sit spissus nunc fumosus, vel venenosus, & frequenter die medio tenebrosus. Durantque aut potius aggrauescunt huiusmodi difficultates, vsque ad illum amzissimum Paradisi locum, quem protoplauti per inobedientiam sibi & posteris perdidisse noscuntur, quod spacium si metiri posset, est multarum vtiq; diatarum. Quia iam non vltius processi, nec procedere quiuui, pauca duntaxat de illo loco referam verisimilia, quæ didici per auditum.

Paradisus terrestris dicitur locus spaciosus ad amplitudinem quasi quinque: Inularum nostrarum, Angliz, Nonnanniz, Hiberniz, Scotiz, & v. regiz, aut forsan latius plurium. Cuius situs est pertingens in altitudine ad aeris supremam superficiem, eò quod illic terra vel terre orbis sit multum spissior quam alibi per modum excentricum à vero centro mundi, nec valet hoc deinde ab aliquo experto refelli, scriptura veritatis clamante, quòd ibi sit fons irrigans vniuersam superficiem terræ: aquæ enim est natura semper fluere ad ima.

Exeunt autem ab illo fonte versus nostri partes hemispherij, hoc est nobis de illo loco in occidentem quatuor flumina, Pyion, Gyon, Tygris, & Euphrates, ab ista dimidia parte terræ circa Equatoris circulum terræ influentes, quapropter & merito credendum videtur, exire de eodem fonte & alia quatuor flumina irrigantia terram oppositam, quæ est circa alteram dimidiam partem circuli Equatoris, quamuis nos eorum fluminum loca, virtutes, & nomina ignoramus, quòd homines habitant ab alia parte Equinoctij.

Hoc tamen volo sciri pro verò & audiu, illic terræ faciem inhabitatam in maxima multitudine ciuitatum, vrbium, & regionum, quoniam & eorum institores Indiam frequentant, & nunciant sibi inuicem gentes & principes per literas, ac alijs modis destinare sunt visi.

Vnus nostrorum fluuiorum Pylon currit per Indiam, & per eius deserta quandoque sub terra, sed sæpius supra, qui & Ganges illic appellatus est, ab illo vltimo Paganitatis rege, quem Dux Ogerus deuictum cum baptizari renueret in ipso flumine proiectum submersit.

Ad litus huius reperiuntur multi lapides præciositatis immensæ & metalli grana carissimi, nec non & auri mineræ, multumque descendit in eo natans lignum Aloes ex Paradiso, quod rebus miræ virtutis inserit Salomon in Canticis.

Hinc secundus fluuius Gyon, currit per Aethiopiam, vnde dum venit in Ægyptû, accipit nomen Nilus. Tertius Tygris veniens per Assyriam influit maiorem Armeniam & Persiam: tandemque fluuij singuli per loca singula se iactant in mare per quòd desflunt vsq; ad Nador, id est, ad oppositum diametrum paradisi: Ideoq; merito estimantur omnes vniuerso orbe æque dulces originè capere, à supradicto paradisi fonte, quamuis secundum distatiam maiorem vel minorem, & secundum naturas rerum per quas meant diuersos habere inueniuntur sapores, atq; virtutes.

Porrò ipsum Paradisi locum audiui à tribus plagis, orientali, meridionali, & septentrionali, inaccessibilem tam hominibus quam bestijs, eo quòd apparet ripis perpendiculariter abscissa, tanquam inestimabilis altitudinis. Et ab occidente idest nostra parte tanquam super omnium humanorum intuitum rogas ardès, qui in scripturis rumphea flamma appellatur, vt nulli creature terrene ascensus in eò credatur nisi quibusdam volatilibus, prout decreuit iusti iudicij Deus.

Ambu-

Descriptio  
Paradis.

Gentes ad su-  
strum Aequa-  
toris.

Ganges flu-  
uius.

An  
stus, b  
dret  
eis cur  
stri de  
ti tam  
casia,  
credi h  
Qu  
glia qu

EX  
ma  
terra, t  
& peru  
dinem  
cijs, si a

Not  
habet c  
losa, di  
media  
Imperij

De il  
cim, lat  
Imperij

Vna  
nificum  
obediur  
fert face

Ciuit  
scakanj  
ciorum  
disse dep  
est illic

Hære  
Relligio  
sto, com

torum, si  
tiones cu  
vultures  
aère: Tu  
projicient

quam si  
Et ha  
homo ist  
errore de  
piterne  
fuisse nur

Hinc  
nibus co  
summa c  
poliri sibi

Ab ho  
lectabilis  
multis qu

nicatum forma ac na-  
enta occupatione auri  
in cauernas & specus  
inquinare, nisi quod in  
periculo in dromeda-

que nuper sextum edi-  
cucios, & apertos à la-  
scat ad herbas in mon-  
ad eam & ad eius con-  
um implere conetur  
ines à remotis tempus  
iam diu stetit priuatus,  
& similibus modis ho-

vel habitabile, propter  
ter Alpes diuersitatem:  
unc fumosus, vel vene-  
uescunt huiusmodi dif-  
ulti per inobedientiam  
multarum vtiq; diarta-  
taxat de illo loco refe-

inij; Insularum nostras  
is plurimum. Cuius situs  
terra vel terræ orbis sit  
undi, nec valet hoc de-  
fons irrigans vniuersam

obis de illo loco in oc-  
dimidia parte terræ cir-  
ndum videtur, exire de  
est circa alteram dimi-  
ritutes, & nomina igno-

ain in maxima multitu-  
in frequentant, & num-  
re sunt visi.  
ta quandoque sub ter-  
Paganitatis rege, quem  
in submersit.  
meralli grana carissimi.  
loes ex Paradiso, quod

in Egyptu, accipit no-  
meniam & Persiam: tan-  
nt vsq; ad Nador, id est,  
uerso orbe aq; dulces  
maiozem vel minorem,  
r sapores, atq; virtutes.  
onali, & septentrionali,  
pendiculariter abscissa,  
anquam super omnium  
pellatur, vt nulli crea-  
creuit iusti iudicij Deus.  
Ambu-

Ambulanteibus enim illuc sue repentibus hominibus oblitarent tenebræ imo rupes, aër in-  
stus, bestiae, serpentes, frigus, & cauma. Naulgare autem contra ictum fluminis nitentes impe-  
diret lotrinis recursum, ac impetuofus & quandoque subterraneus aquar cursus descendens  
cum vehementia ab euectissimo, vt dictum est, loco, qui suo quoque strepitu, per petras atq;  
strictos aliosque diuersos cadens gurgites, efficeret surdos, & aeris mutatio caecos, vnde & mul-  
tam nobiles quam ignobiles, fatua lese audacia in isto ponentes periculo perierunt, alijs exca-  
catis, alijs absurdatis, & nonnullis in ipso accessu subitanea morte peremptis. Ex quo nimirum  
credi habetur istum Deo displicere conatum.

Quapropter & ego ex illo loco statui animum ad repatriandum, quatenus Deo propitio, An-  
glia quæ me produxit seculo viuenteu, susciperet morientem.

C A P V T. 49.

*In reuertendo de Cassan, & Riboth, & de diuinit Epulone.*

**E**Xhinc de illis quæ in reuertendo vidi scribo cursim pauca, ne modum excedere videatur  
Emateria, Reuertebat itaque quasi per Aquilonare latus Imperij Presbyteri Ioannis, & nunc  
terræ, non in mari nos commendantes, transiuimus Deo Ductore, multas Insulas in multis diartis,  
& peruenimus ad regionem magnam Cassan: hæc cum sit vna de quindecim habens longitu-  
dinem diartarum 60. & latitudinem propè 30. posset esse nominatio omnibus ibi circa prouin-  
cijs, si a nostris frequentaretur.

Via per quam  
Mandeuillus  
rediit in An-  
gliam.

Cassan.

Notandum. Cassan (secundum Odericum) est melior prouincia de mundo, vbi strictior est,  
habet diartas 50. vbi longior 60. & est vna de 12. prouincijs Imperij Grand Can. est ista popu-  
losa, distincta ciuitatibus, vt quisque à quacunq; plaga de vna exeat ciuitate nouerit aliam in  
media diarta propinquam. Teneque istam regionem Cassan rex diues & potens, pro parte de  
Imperio Presbyteri Ioannis, & pro parte de Imperio Grand Can.

De ista in reuerfione nostra venimus ad regnum Riboth, quod similiter est vnum de quindecim,  
latum, & speciosum, in quo de multis bonis, habetur plena copia. Hoc tenetur in toto de  
Imperio Tartarorum.

Riboth.

Vna est ibi inter & super omnes ciuitas Sacerdotalis, & Regia, in qua Rex habet suum mag-  
nificum palatium, & summus idolorum Pontifex quem Labassi appellant, cui omnes Regni  
obediunt, & populi sicut Domino Papæ nos Christiani, quoniam & iubet, & benedicit, ac con-  
fert sacerdotibus beneficia idolorum.

Labassi, sum-  
mus idolorum  
pontifex.

Ciuitatis vndique muri sunt compacti albis & nigris lapidibus conuadratis ad modum  
scakarij, omnesque contractæ simili pavimento sunt strætæ, Tanta est illic reuerentia sacrifi-  
cium vt si quis vel in modica quantitate, sanguinem hominis, seu immolatiæ pecudis fu-  
disse deprehensus fuerit, nequaquam iudicium mortis euadet. Et inter innumeras superstitiones  
est illic vna talis.

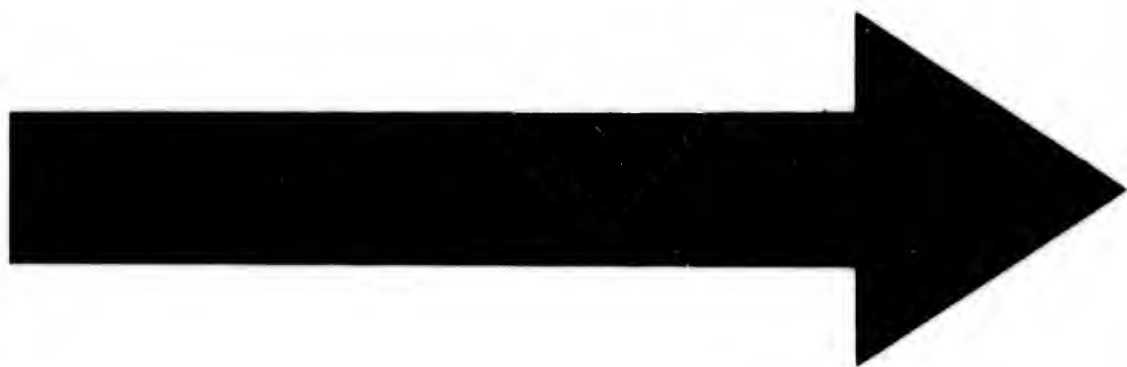
Hæres cuius pater defungitur, si alicuius vult esse reputationis, mandat cognatos, amicos,  
Relligiosos, & sacerdotes pro posse, qui certo Die conuenientes sub magno Symphoniz se-  
sto, comportant defuncti castrauer, in montis sublime cacumen. Ibi accedens dignior Præla-  
torum, funeris caput abscondit, tradens hæredi in aureo disco decantanti sub deuotione suas ora-  
tiones cum suis in propria lingua. Atque interim aues regionis rapaces, & inimundæ, vt corui,  
vultures, & aquilæ, quæ pro consuetudine optimè morem norunt, aduolant magno numero in  
aère: Tuncque Relligiosi cum sacerdotibus detruncant corpus in frustra velut in macello,  
projicientes pecias in altum auibus, ac decantantes certam ad hoc compositam orationem, tan-  
quam si nostri sacerdotes cantarent. Subuenite sancti Dei. &c.

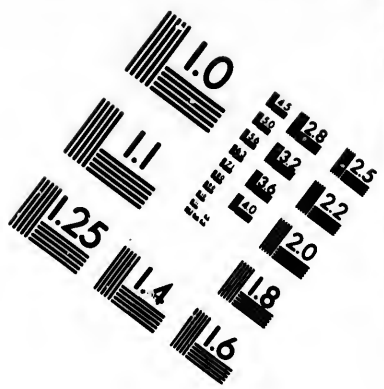
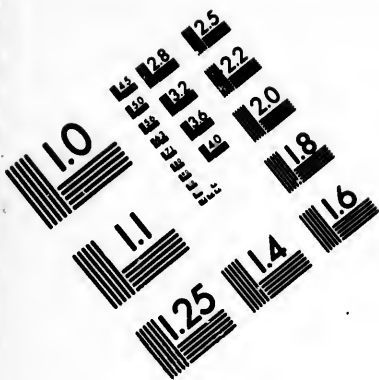
Et habet eorum oratio, hunc sensum in sua lingua. Respice quam iustus & sanctus exiit  
homo iste, quem Angeli Dei coueniunt accipere & in Paradisum deferre. Taliq; diabolico  
errore delusi, putant filius, & amici, quod defunctus sit in Paradisum translatus, viuat illic sem-  
piternè beatus, quoniam, vbi plures conuenerent volucrum, ibi maiorem lætantur & iactant  
fuisse numerum Angelorum.

Hinc deinde reuertentes, cum choris, & resonantia Musicorum, filius paratum præstat om-  
nibus conuiuium, in cuius fine pro extremo serculo, tradit singulis particulam, de patris capite  
summa cum deupione. Hanc etiam capitis caluariam filius facit postmodum debite fornari &  
poliri sibi pro cypho, in quo bibit in conuiuijs, ob recordationem amantissimi patris.

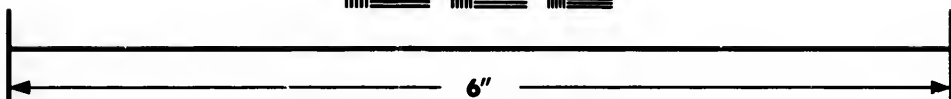
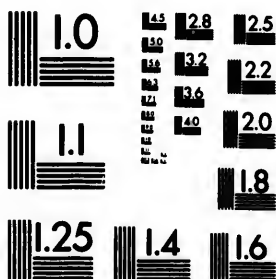
Ab hoc Regno decem dietis per potestatem Imperatoris Grand Can, inuenitur Insula de-  
lectabilis, & speciosa satis: cuius Rex est præpotens in gloria, & in diuitijs superabundans, & de  
multis quæ illic geruntur admirandis vnum recito solum.







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

15 128  
16 132  
18 125  
20 22  
25 18  
6

10  
15 128  
16 132  
18 125  
20 22

Diues Epulo.

Quòd est ibi homo quidam ditissimus nullius dignitatis nomine honoratus, sed bysso, ac serico adornatus, & splendide omni tempore epulatus: non ergo vult dici princeps, Dux, comes, miles, aut huiusmodi, licet superioritatem habeat super marchiones aliquos & barones.

Eius possessionis valor æstimatur in anno 30. cum an de assinarijs bladi, & risi, nec quærni nisi delitiosè viuere in isto seculo, vt cum diuite Epulone sepeliatur in inferno. Cum etiam sibi derelictus sit, iste viuendi modus a retrogentoribus, eum & ipse posteris derelinquet. Hic tanquam Imperiali residet palatio, cuius muri ambitus ad tractum leucæ tenditur, continens arbutta, vinea, riuulos, fontes & stagna, aulas, & cubicia auro strata depictaque mirè, & sculptura artificiosè, vltra quam vales explicare, & inter omnia ad medium palatium in cello vertice atrium amœnum, valdè tamen modico, sed cunctis præciosius, ædificio, quasi ad scema nostrarum Ecclesiarum, cum turribus, pilarijs, & colummis, in quibus nihil prominet indignus auro. Nunquam vel rarè hic exit de suo palatio cum solis pulchris quos sibi conuocat & conuariat paruis pueris & puellis, non excedentibus 16. annos ætatis. Tendit dum libet pedibus, quandoque veftatur equo, interdum ducitur vehiculo, nonnunquam vult ferri gestatorio, vel cerè puellaribus brachijs, & visitat sæpissimè præfatum præciosius ædificium: atque hijs & modis alijs excogitat delectare visum pulchris, auditum suauibus, olfactum redolentibus, tactum lenibus, & gustum pascere delicatis. Electas semper habet præsto 50. puellas ei, & de proximo exquisitissimè ministrantes tam ad mensam quàm ad cubiculum, & ad omne libitum.

Versus.

Hæ ad prandium recumbenti afferunt processionis more pro singulo serculo semper 5. genera dapum nobilium cum dulcisonæ resonantiæ cantilenæ, quarum aliquæ ei singulos detruncant genu flexo morsellos, aliquæ ponunt in ore, mundis tergeutes comedentis labia mappis.

Nam ipse quidem in mensa continet iacentes manus puras & quietas. Post deseruionem serculi primi, seruitur pro secundo in 5. alijs dapum generibus modo quo supra, & renouatur in apponendo cantus suauior melodia.

Ista absque vlla Domini cura per ministros quotidie reparantur, etiam in maiori satis quàm effor nobilitate nisi dum ipse pro placito iusserit, quandoque temperari.

Deliciosius igitur quo vult deducit carnein, non curans animam, sed nec probitatem curans terrenam, pascit sterilem, & viduæ non benefacit. Et

*Quia vniuersis sicus porcum,  
Mortem em suscipit orcus.*

Longitudo  
vnguium.  
Veniunt etiam  
in Florida  
principes lon-  
gis vnguib.  
Noua historia  
Chinensis  
hoc testatur.

Porro quod cum dixi manus tenere quietas, noueritis nimirum nil posse manibus capere vel tenere, propter longitudinem, & recuruitatem vnguium in digitis, qui sibi nullo tempore præscinduntur. Seruatur enim hoc pro nobili more patrie, & viri diuites delicati, qui proprios possunt habere ministros nõquàm sibi dimitunt vngues reserare, vnde & nonnullis circumdantur vndique manus, ac si uiderentur armatæ.

Feminarum autem mos est nobilis si habeant paruos pedes, vnde & generosarum in cunis strictissimè obuoluntur, vt vix ad medium debitz quantitatis excrefcere possint.

CAPVT. 50.

De compositione huius tractatus in nobili cimitate Leodiensi.

**N** reuertèdo igitur venitur ab hac insula per prouincias magnas Imperij Tartarorum, in quibus semper noua, semper mira, imo nonnunquam incredibilia viator potest videre, percipere, & audire.

Et Noueritis, vt prædixi, me pauca eorum vidisse, quæ in terris sunt mirabilium, sed nec hic scripsisse centesimam partem eorum quæ vidi, quod nec omnia memoria commendare potui, & de commendatis multa subtriciui, propter modestiam, quam decet omnibus astitibus addi.

Ideirco vt & alijs, qui vel antè me in partibus illis steterunt, vel ituri sunt, maneat locus narrandi siue scribendi, in modum huius pono tractatus, potius decurtans, quàm complens, quoniam aliàs loquendi non esset finis, nec artes implerentur auditu,

Concludit  
opus suum.

Itaque anno à natiuitate Domini nostri Iesu Christi 1355. in patriando, cum ad nobilem Leგიæ, seu Leodij ciuitatem peruenissem, & præ grande uitate ac artericis guttis illic decumberem in vico qui dicitur, Basselanemi, consului causa conualefcendi aliquos medicos ciuitatis: Et accidit, Dei nutu, vnum intrare physicum super alios ætate simul & canicie venerandum, ac in sua arte euidenter expertum, qui ibidem dicebatur communiter, Magister Ioannes ad barbam.

Is, dum paritè colloqueremur, interseruit aliquid dictis, per quod tandem nostra iniucem renouabatur

oratus, sed bysso, ac fe-  
princeps, Dux, comes,  
uos & barones.

di, & risi, nec querit ni-  
fermo. Cum etiam sibi  
is derelinquet. Hic tan-  
tenditur, continens ar-  
ictaque mirè, & sculp-  
alatum in cælo vertice  
quasi ad scema nostra  
prominet indignius au-  
sibi conuocat & conua-  
ndit dum libet pedibus,  
vult ferri gestatorio, vel  
edificium: atque hijs &  
atum redolentibus, ta-  
esto 50. puellas ei, & de  
culum, & ad omne li-

gulo ferculo semper 5.  
in aliquæ ei singulos de-  
entes comedentis labia

as. Post deseruicionem  
uo supra, & renouatur in

am in maiori fatis quàm  
id nec probitatem curans

è manibus capere vel te-  
ni nullo tempore præcini-  
ati, qui proprios possunt  
nullis circumdantur va-

& generosarum in cunis  
e possint.

iens.

perij Tartarorum, in qui-  
or potest videre, percipe-

mirabilium, sed nec hîc  
oriæ commendare potui,  
mmibus actibus addi.

si sunt, maneat locus nar-  
quam complens, quoni-

do, cum ad nobilem Le-  
guttis illic decumberem  
os medeos ciuitatis: Et  
& canicie venerandum,  
ter, Magister Ioannes ad

tandem nostra inuicem  
renouabatur

renouabatur antiqua notitia, quam quondam habueramus in Cayr Aegypti apud Melech Mā-  
dibron Soldanum, prout supra tetigi in 7. capitulo libri.

Qui cum in me experientiam artis suæ excellenter monstret, adhortabatur ac præcabatur  
instanter, vt de hijs quæ videram tempore peregrinationis, & itinerationis meæ per mundum,  
aliquid digererem in scriptis ad legendum, & audiendum pro vtilitate.

Sicque tandem illius monitu & adiutorio, compositus est iste tractatus, de quo certè nil scri-  
bere proposueram, donec saltem ad partes proprias in Angliā peruenissem. Et credo præmissa  
circa me, per prouidentiam & gratiam Dei contigisse, quoniam à tempore quo recessi, duo  
reges nostri ¶ Angliæ, & Franciæ, non cessauerunt inuicem exercere destructiones, deprædatio-  
nes, insidias, & interfectiones, inter quas, nisi à Domino custoditus, non transissem sine morte,  
vel mortis periculo, & sine criminum grandi cumulo. Et ecce nunc egressionis meæ anno 33.  
constitutus in Leodij ciuitate, quæ à mari Angliæ distat solum per duas diætas, audio dictas Do-  
minorum inimicitias, per gratiam Dei consopitas: quapropter & spero, ac propono de reliquo  
secundum maturiorem ætatem me posse in proprijs, intendere corporis quieti, animæq; saluti.

Hic itaque finis sit scripti, in nomine Patris, & Filij, & spiritus sancti, A M E N.

Explicit itinerarium à terra Angliæ, in partes Hierosolimitanas, & in vteriores transmarinas,  
editum primò in lingua Gallicana, à Domino Ioanne Mandeuille nilitre, suo auctore,  
Anno incarnationis Domini 1345, in Ciuitate Leodiensi: Et Paulò post in eadem ciuitate,  
translatum in dictam formam Latinam.

### Richardi Hakluyti breuis admonitio ad Lectorem.

**N** omnem Mandeuillum nostratam, eruditum & insignem Auctorem (Balao, Mercatore,  
Orselio, & alijs, scilicet) ab innumeris Scribarum, & Typographorum mendacijs repurgando,  
ex multorum, eorumque optimorum exemplarium collatione, quid præstiterim, vitorum do-  
ctorum, & eorum præcipue, qui Geographiæ, & Antiquitatis periti sunt, esto iudicium.  
Quæ autem habet de monstriferis hominum formis itinerarij sui præcedentis capitibus trigesimo, tri-  
gesimo primo, trigesimo tertio, & sparsim in sequentibus, quanquam non negem ab illo fortasse quædam  
eorum alicubi visa fuisse, maiori tamen ex parte, ex Cæio Plinio secundo hausta videntur, ut facile pa-  
tebit ea cum his Plinians, hic ideo a me appositis, collata, quæ idem Plinius, singulis suis auctoribus  
singula refert, in eorum plarisque solum suam minimè obstringens. Vale, atque aut meliora dato, aut  
his vitare mecum.

### Ex libro sexto Naturalis historiæ C. Plinij secundi,

#### Cap. 30.

**N**iuersa verò gens Ætheria appellata est, deinde Atlantia, mox à Vulcani filio Æ-  
thiope Æthiopia. Animalium hominumque effigies monstriferas circa extremita-  
tes eius gigni minimè mirum, artificij ad formanda corpora effigiesque cælandas mo-  
bilitate ignea, Ferunt certè ab Orientis parte intima gentes esse sine naribus, & quali  
totius oris planitie. Alias superiore labro orbas, alias sine linguis, Pars etiam ore concreto &  
naribus carens, vno tantum foramine spirat, potumque calamis auenæ trahit, & grana eiusdem  
auenæ, sponte prouenientis ad vescendum. Quibusdam pro sermone nutus motusque mem-  
brorum est, &c.

### Ex libro eiusdem Plinij septimo, C A P. 2. cui titulus est,

#### De Scythijs, & aliarum diuersitate gentium.

**E**sse Scytharum genera, & quidem plura, quæ corporibus humanis vescerentur, indicau-  
imus. Id ipsum incredibile fortasse, ni cogitemus in medio orbe terrarum, ac Sicilia & Italia  
fuisse gentes huius monstri, Cyclopas & Læstrigonas, & nuperimè trans Alpes hominem im-  
molarum gentium earum more solitum: quod paulum à mandando abest. Sed & iuxta eos, qui sunt  
ad Septentrionem versus, haud procul ab ipso Aquilonis exortu, specuque eius dicto, quem locum  
Gesclitron appellant, produntur Arimaspi, duos diximus, vno oculo in fronte media insignes:  
quibus assidue bellum esse circa metalla cum gryphis, ferarum volucris genere, quale vulgò  
traditur, eruente ex cuniculis aurum, mira cupiditate & feris custodientibus, & Arimaspijs ra-  
pientibus, multi, sed maximè illustres Herodotus, & Aristæus Proconnesius scribunt. Super  
alios

• alios autem Anthropophagos Scythas, in quadam conualle magna Imai montis, regio est, quæ vocatur Abarimon, in qua Iyluctres viuunt homines, auerfis post crura plantis, & nimia velocitatis, passim cum feris vagantes, Hos in alio non spirare cælo, ideoque ad finitimos reges non pertrahi, neque ad Alexandrum magnum pertractos, Beton itinerum eius mensuræ prodidit. Priores Anthropophagos, quos ad Septentrionem esse diximus decem dierum itinere supra Borysthenem amneni, ossibus humanorum caput bibere, cutibûsque cum capillo pro mantelibus ante pectora uti, Ifigonus Nicænsis, Idem in Albania gigni quosdam glauca oculorum acie, à puenitia statim canos, qui noctu plulquam interdiu cernant. Idem itinere dierum x. supra Borysthenem, Saurognatas tertio die cibum capere semper. Crates Pergamenus in Hellesponto circa Parium, genus hominum fuisse tradit, quos Ophiogenes vocat serpentum ictus contactu leuare solitos, & manu imposita venena extrahere corpori. Varro etiam nunc esse paucos ibi, quorum saluæ contra ictus serpentum medeantur. Similis & in Africa gens Pŷllorum fuit, ut Agatharchides scribit, à Pŷllo rege dicta, cuius sepulchrum in parte Syrtium maiorum est. Horum corpori ingenitum fuit virus exitiale serpentibus, ut cuius odore sopirent eas. Mos verò, liberos genitos protinus obijciendi sæuissimis earum, eoque genere pudicitiam coniugum experiendi, non profugientibus adulterino sanguine natos serpentibus. Hæc gens ipsa quidem prope intermitione sublata est à Nasamonibus, qui nunc eas tenent sedes: genus tamen hominû ex his qui profugerant, aut cum pugnatum est, abfuerant, hodiè que remanent in paucis. Simile & in Italia Marfotum gentis durat, quos à Circes filio ortos ferunt, & ideo in esse ijs vim naturalem eam. Et tamen omnibus hominibus contra serpentes inest venenum: ferunt que ictus saluæ, ut feruentis aquæ contactu fugere. Quod si in fauces penetrauerit, etiam mori: idq; maxime humani ieiuni oris, Supra Nasamonas confinèsq; illis Machlyas, Androginos esse vtriuŷque naturæ, inter se vicibus coeuntes, Calliphanes tradit. Aristoteles adijcit, dextram manum ijs virilem, leuam muliebrem esse. In eadem Africa familias quædam effascinantium, Ifigonus & Nymphodorus tradunt quarum laudatione intereat probata, areŷcant arbores, emoriantur infantes. Esse eiuŷdem generis in Triballis & Illyrijs, adijcit Ifigonus, qui visu quoque effascinant, interimantque quos diutius intueatur. In ijs præcipue oculis: quod eorum malum facilius sentire puberes, Notabilis esse quod pupillas binas in oculis singulis habeant, Huius generis & feminas in Sythia, quæ vocantur Bithyz, prodit Apollonides. Philarchus & in Ponto Thibiorum genus, multoque alios eiuŷdem naturæ: quorum notas tradit in altero oculo geminâ pupillam, in altero equi effigiem. Eiuŷdem prætereà non posse mergi, ne veste quidem de grauat. Haud dissimile ijs genus Pharnacum in Æthiopia prodidit Damon, quorum sudor tabem cõtactis corporibus afferat. Fœminas quidem omnes vbique visu nocere, quæ duplices pupillas habeant, Cicero quoque apud nos autor est. Ad eod nature, cum ferarum morem vescendi humanis visceribus in hominè genuisset, gignere etiam in toto corpore & in quorundam oculis quoque venena placuit: ne quid vsquâ mali esset, quod in hominè non esset. Haud procul vrbe Roma in Faliscorum agro familiæ sunt paucæ, quæ vocantur Hirpie: quæ sacrificio annuo, quod fit ad montem Soractem Apollini, super ambustam ligni struem ambulantes non aduruntur. Et ob id perpetuo senatusconsulto militiæ omniumq; aliorû numerum vacationem habent. Quorundam corpore partes nascuntur ad aliqua mirabile sicut Pyrrho regi pollex in dextero pede: cuius tactu lienosis medebatur. Hunc cremari cum reliquo corpore non potuisse tradunt, conconditumque loculo in templo. Præcipue India Æthiopumq; tractus, miraculis searent. Maxima in India gignuntur animalia, Indicio sunt canes grandiores cæteris. Arbores quidem tantæ proceritatis traduntur, ut sagittis superari nequeant. Hæc facit vberitas soli, temperies cœli, aquarum abundantia (si libeat credere) ut sub vna ficu turmæ condantur equitum. Arundines verò tantæ proceritatis, ut singula internodia aluco nauigabili ternos interdum homines ferant, Multos ibi quina cubita constat longitudine excedere: non expuere: non capitis, aut dentium, aut oculorum villo dolore affici, raro aliarum corporis partium: tam moderato Solis vapore durari. Philosophos eorum quos Gynnosophystas vocant, ab exortu ad Occasum præstare, contuentes Solem immobilibus oculis: feruentibus harenis toto die alternis pedibus insistere. In monte cui nomen est Milo, homines esse auerfis plantis, octonos digitos in singulis pedibus habentes, autor est Megasthenes. In multis autem montibus genus hominum capitibus caninis, ferarum pellibus velari, pro voce latratum edere, vnguibus auctum venatu & aucupio vesci. Horum supra centum viginti millia fuisse prodente se, Ctesias scribit: & in quadam gente Indiæ, feminas semel in vita parere, genitofque confestim canescere. Item hominum genus, qui Monosceli vocarentur, singulis cruribus, miræ pernicitatis ad saltum: eiuŷdemque Sciopodas vocari, quod in maiori æstu humi iacentes resupini, vmbra se pedum protegant, non longè eos à Troglodytis abesse. Rursusque ab his Occidentem versus

quof

mai montis, regio est, quæ  
ra plantis, eximie veloci-  
e ad finitimos reges non  
eius mensuræ prodidit. Pri-  
dierum itinere supra Bo-  
cum capillo pro manteli-  
dam glaucæ oculorum a-  
m itinere dierum x. supra  
gamenus in Helleponto  
erpentum iactus contactu  
nunc esse paucos ibi,  
ca gens Pnyllorum fuit, vt  
yrritium maiorum est. Ho-  
porentur eas. Mos verò, li-  
udicium coniugum ex-  
Hæc gens ipsa quidem  
les: genus tamen hominū  
manent in paucis. Simile  
ideo inesse ijs vim natu-  
num: feruntque ietas sa-  
t, etiam mori: idq; maxi-  
Androginos esse vtriusq;  
it, dextram manū ijs  
fascinantium, Ifigonus &  
at arbores, emoriuntur in-  
visu quoque effascinant,  
urum malum facilius sen-  
beant. Huius generis &  
chus & in Ponto Thibio-  
altero oculo geminā pu-  
esse quidem degrauiatos,  
quorum sudor tabem cō-  
re, quæ duplices pupillas  
morem vscendi huma-  
& in quorundam oculis  
n esset. Haud procul vrbe  
sacrificio annuo, quod  
alantes non adurunt. Et  
vacationem habent. Quo-  
i pollex in dextero pede:  
non potuisse tradunt, con-  
miraculis scarent. Maxi-  
Arbores quidem tantæ  
bli, temperies cœli, aqua-  
quitum. Arundines verò  
um homines ferant, Mul-  
capitis, aut dentium, aut  
erato Solis vapore durari.  
Occasum præstare, con-  
rennis pedibus insistere.  
os digitos in singulis pe-  
genus hominum capi-  
bus a...atum venatu &  
se, Cretias scribit: & in  
festim canescere. Item  
æ pernicitatis ad saltum:  
esupini, vmbra se pedum  
his Occidentem versus  
quos-

quosdam sine ceruice, oculos in humeris habentes. Sunt & Saryri subsolanis Indorum monti-  
bus (Cartadulorum dicitur Regio) perniciosissimum animal, tum quadrupes, tum rectè curren-  
tes humana effigie propter velocitatem, nisi senes aut ægri, non capiuntur. Choromandarum  
gentem vocat Tauron siluestrem sine voce, stridoris horrendi, hirtis corporibus, oculis glaucis,  
dentibus caninis. Eudoxus in meridianis Indiæ viris plantas esse cubitales, feminis adco par-  
uas, vt Struthopodes appellentur. Megasthenes gentem inter Nomadas Indos narium loco fo-  
ramina tantum habentem, anguium modo loripedem, vocari Syrietas. Ad extremos fines In-  
diæ ab Oriente, circa fontem Gangis, Astomorum gentem sine ore, corpore toto hirtam vestiri  
frondium lanugine, halitu tantum viuentem, & odore quem naribus trahant: nullum illis ci-  
bum, nullumque potum: tantum radicum florumque varios odores & syluestrium malorum,  
quæ secum portant longiore itinere, ne desit olfactus, grauiore paulò odore haud difficulter ex-  
animari. Supra hos extrema in parte montium Spithamæi Pygmæi narrantur, ternas spichamas  
longitudine, hoc est, ternos dodrantes non excedentes, salubri cælo, semperque vernante, mon-  
tibus ab Aquilone oppositis, quos à gruibus infestari Homerus quoq; prodidit: Fama est, insi-  
dentes arietum, caprarum que dorsis, armatos sagittis, veris tempore, vniuerso agmine ad mare  
descendere, & oua, pullosque earum alitum consumere, ternis expeditionem eam mensibus  
confici, aliter futuris gregibus non resisti. Casas eorum luto, pennisque, & ouorum putamini-  
bus construi. Aristoteles in cauernis viuere Pygmæos tradit. Cætera de his, vt reliqui. Cynros  
Indorum genus Ifigonus annis centenis quadragenis viuere. Item Aethiopus Macrobius, & Se-  
ras existimat, & qui Athon montem incolant: hos quidem quia viperinis carnibus alantur, i-  
taque nec capiti, nec vestibus eorum noxia corpori inesse animalia. Onesicritus, quibus in locis  
Indiæ vmbra non sint, corpora hominum cubitorum quinum, & binorum palmiorum existere,  
& viuere annos centum triginta, nec senescere, sed vt medio æuo mori. Crates Pergamenus In-  
dos, qui centenos annos excedant Gymnætas appellat, non pauci Macrobius. Cretias gentem  
ex his, quæ appellatur Pandore, in conuallibus sitam, annos duæcenos viuere, in iuuenta candido  
capillo, qui in senectute nigrescat. Contra alios quadragenos non excedere annos, iunctos Ma-  
crobijs, quorum femina semel pariant: idque & Agatharchides tradit, præterea locustis eos  
ali, & esse periticos. Mandrorum nomen ijs dedit Clitarchus & Megasthenes, trecentosque eo-  
rum vicos annumerat. Feminas septimo ætatis anno parere, senectam quadagesimo anno  
accedere. Antemidorus, in Taprobana insula longissimam vitam sine vilo corporis languore  
traduci. Duris, Indorum quosdam cum feris coire, mistosque & semiferos esse partus. In Calin-  
gis eiusdem Indiæ gente quinquennes concipere feminas, octauum vitæ annum non excede-  
re, & alibi cauda villosa homines nasci pernicitatis eximia, alios auribus totos contegi. Oritas  
ab Indis Arbis fluius determinat. Si nullum alium cibum nouere, quàm piscium, quos vngui-  
bus dissectos sole torrant, atque ita panem ex his faciunt, vt refert Clitarchus: Troglodytas  
super Aethiopia, valentes esse equis, Pergamenus Crates. Item Aethiopus octona cubita  
longitudine excedere, Syrbotas vocari gentem eam Nomadum Aethiopum, secundum flumen  
Astapum ad Septentrionem vregentium. Gens Menis minorum appellata, abest ab oceano di-  
erum itinere viginti, animalium, quæ Cynocephalos vocamus, lacte viuunt, quorum armenta pas-  
cit maribus interemptis, præterquam sobolis causa. In Africa solitudinibus hominum species  
obuiæ subinde fiunt, in momentoque euanescent. Hæc atque talia, ex hominum genere ludibria  
sibi, nobis miracula, ingeniosa fecit natura: & singula quidem, quæ facit indies, ac propè horas,  
quæ enumerare valeat. Ad detegendam eius potentiam, satis sit inter prodigia posuisse gentes.

This note following, concerning the aide and assistance of the  
English Marchants, giuen to King Iohn the first of Portugal, for the  
winning of Ceut in Barbarie, which was the first occasion of all the Portugall disco-  
ueries is taken out of Thomas Walsinghams Latine Chronicle. Anno 1415.



oc anno, Ioannes primus Rex Portugalliæ, fretus auxilio Mercatorum Angliæ quàm  
maximè, & Alemannorum, vicit Agarenos in terra Regis Betinarinorum, in multis eor-  
um millibus ad generum Cereris destinatis: cepitque ciuitatem eorum quàm am-  
plissimam supra mare sitam, vocatam Ceut eorum lingua.

¶ The same in English.

This yeere Iohn the first king of Portugal, being principally assisted by the help of the Eng-  
lish Marchants, and Almains, ouercame the Moores in the dominion of the King of Bar-  
barie, 1415.

||vel, vergentia

barie, putting many thousands of them to the sword, and he tooke their Citie which was very mightie, seated vpon the sea, which is called Ceur in their language.

The voyage of Macham an Englishman, wherein he first of any man, discovered the Iland of Madera, recorded verbatim in the Portugall historie, written by Anthonio Galuano.



Macham first discovered by one Macham an Englishman.

Macham made there a chappell, naming it Iesus Chappell.

In the yeere 1344. King Peter the fourth of that name, reigning in Arragon, the Chronicles of his age, write, that about this time the Iland of Madera, standing in 32. degrees, was discovered by an Englishman, which was named Macham, who sayling out of England into Spaine, with a woman that he had stolne, arrived by tempest in that Iland, and did cast anker in that haven or baye, which now is called Machico, after the name of Macham. And because his lover was sea sicke, he went on land with some of his companie, and the shippe with a good winde made faste away, and the woman died for thought. Macham, which loued her deere, built a chappell, or heremitage, to bury her in, calling it by the name of Iesus, and caused his name and hers to be written or grauen vpon the stone of her tombe, and the occasion of their arrivall there: And after ward he obtained a boate made of one tree, (for there be trees of a great compasse about) and went to sea in it, with those men that he had, and were left behinde with him, and came vpon the coast of Africke, without saile or oare. And the Spoones which sawe it, tooke it to be a maruiculous thing, and presented him vnto the King of that Countrey for a wonder, and that king also sent him and his companions for a miracle vnto the King of Castile.

In the yeere 1395. King Henry the third of that name, reigning in Castile, by the information which Macham gaue of this Iland, and also the shippe of his companie, moued many of France and Castile to goe and to discover it, and also the great Canaria, &c.

In the yeere 1417. King Iohn the second, reigning in Castile, and his mother Ladie Katherine being Regent, one Monsieur Ruben of Bracamont, which was Admirall of France, demanding the conquest of the Ilands of the Canaries, with the title of King, for a kinsman of his named Monsieur Iohn Betancourt, after that the Quene had giuen him them, and holpen him, he departed from Shupl with a good armie. And they affirme also, that the principall cause which moued him to this, was to discover the Iland of Madera, which Macham had founde, &c. ibidem pag. 2. of Anthonio Galuano.

Confirmatio treugarum inter Regem Anglię Eduardum quartum, & Ioannem secundum Regem Portugallie, datarum in oppido montis Maioris 8. Februarij, & apud Westmonasterium 13. Septembris, 1482. anno regni 22. Regis Eduardi quarti, lingua Lusitanica ex opere sequenti excerpta.

LIBRO DAS OBRAS DE GARCIA DE RESENDE,  
que tracta da vida e feitos del Rey dom Ioham secundo.  
Embaxada que el Rey mandou a el Rey D'Inglaterra. Cap. 33.



Daqui de Monte Mor mandou el Rey por embaixadores a el rey dom Duarte de Inglaterra Rey de Sousa pessoa principal e de muyto bon saber e credito, de que el Rey muyto confiana: e ho doutor Ioaõ d'Elmas, e fernam de Pina por secretario. E foram por mar muy honradamente com muy boa companhia: hos quaes foram en nome del vey confirmar as ligas antigas com Inglaterra, que polla condicão dellas ho nono Rey de hum reyno e do outro era obrigado a mandar confirmar: e tambien pera mostrarem ho titulo que el rey tinha no senhorio de Guinee, pera que depois de vsto el rey D'inglaterra defendesse em todos seus reynos, que ninguen armasse nem podesse mandar a Guinee: e assi mandasse de fazer huma armada que pera laa faziam, per mandado do Duque de Medina Sidonia, hum Ioaõ Tintam e hum Guilherme sabiam Ingrefes. Com ha qual embaixada el rey D'Inglaterra mostrou receber grande contentamento: e soy delle com muyta honra recebida, e em tudo fez inteiramente ho que pellos embaixadores lhe soy requerido: de que elles trouxeram autenticas escrituras das diligencias que con publicos pregones fizeram: e assi as promissões das apronações que eran necessarias: e com tudo muyto ben acabado, e ha vontade del rey se vieram.

¶ Este titulo togo orey in the Court.

The



The Ambassage which King Iohn the second, King of Portugall sent to Edward the fourth King of England, which in part was to stay one

John Tintam, and one William Fabian Englishmen, from proceeding in a voyage which they were preparing for Ginnee, 1481. Taken out of the Booke of the workes of Garcias de Refende, which inuiceth of the life and acts of Don Iohn the second King of Portugall. Chap. 33.



Afterwards the king sent as ambassadours from the towne of Montemaior to king Edward the fourth of England, Ruy de Soufa, a principall person, and a man of great wisdom, and estimation, and in whome the King reposed great trust, with Doctor Iohn Deluas, and Ferdinand de Pina, as Secretarie. And they made their voyage by sea very honorably, being very well accompanied. These men were sent on the behaile of their King, to confirme the auncient leagues with England, wherein it was conditioned, that the new king of the one and of the other kingdome, should be bound to send to confirme the olde leagues. And likewise they had order to shew and make him acquainted with the title which the King held in the seigneurie of Ginnee, to the intent that after the King of England had seene the same, he should give charge through all his kingdome, that no man should arme of six footed ships to Ginnee: and also to request him, that it would please him to give commandement to dissolue a certaine flecte, which one Iohn Tintam, and one William Fabian, Englishmen, were making, by commandement of the Duke of Medina Sidonia, to goe to the aforesaid partes of Ginnee. With which ambassage the King of England seemed to be very well pleased, and they were receiued of him with very great honour, and he condescended vnto all that the Ambassadours required of him, at whose hands they receaued authenticall writings of the diligence which they had perfourmed, with publication thereof by the Herolds: and also ppositors of those confirmations which were necessarie. And hauing dispatched all things well, and with the Kings good will, they returned home into their countrey.

The first cause of this ambassage. The second cause.

The third cause.

The manner of the entring of Solyman the Great Turke, with his armie into Aleppo in Syria, marching toward Persia against the Great Sophie, the fourth day of Nouember, 1553, noted by Master Anthonie Jenkinson, present at that time.

Here marched before the Grand Signior, other wise called the Great Turke, 6000. Esquiers, other wise called light horsemen very braue, clothed all in scarlet.

After, marched 10000. men, called Nortans, which be tributaries to the Great Turke, clothed all in yellow veluet, and hats of the same, of the Tartarie fashion, two foot long, with a great robe of the same colour about their foreheads, richly decked, with their bowes in their hands, of the Turkish fashion.

After them marched foure Captaines, men of armes, called in Turkish Saniaques, clothed all foure in crimlon veluet, euery one hauing vnder his banner twelue thousand men of armes well armed with their morions vpon their heads, marching in good order, with a short weapon by their sides, called in their language, Simiterro.

After came 16000. Janizaries, called the slaves of the Grand Signior, all afoote, euery one hauing his barquebuthe, who be his gard, al clothed in violet silke, and apparelled vpon their heads with a strange forme, called Cuocullucia, fashioned in this sort: the entring in of the forehead is like a skull made of white veluet, & hath a traine hanging downe behinde, in manner of a French hood, of the same colour, and vpon the forehead of the saide skull, just in the midwes of his forehead there is standing bolt vpright like a trunk of a foot long of silver, garnished most richly with Goldsmiths worke, and precious stones, and in the toppe of the saide trunk, a great bush of feathers, which waucth by and downe most hauely when he marcheth.

After this, there came 1000. pages of honour, all clothed in cloch of golde, the halfe of them carrying barquebuthes, and the other halfe Turkish bowes, with their stulles of arrows, marching in good order.

Then came three men of armes well armed, and vpon their harnesse coats of the Turkes fashion, of Libard skimes, and murions vpon their heads, their speares charged, and at the ende of their staffe bard by the head of the speere, a horse talle dier in a bloody colour, which is their ensigne: they be the challengers for the Turkes olde person.

After them came seven pages of honour in cloch of silver, vpon seven white bowes, which horse

title which was very

in he first of any in the Portu

raigning in Arragon, the Island of Madera, Spain, which was named Macha a woman that he had in that haue of baye, m. And because his loyette with a good winde led her deately, build and and caused his name and a of their arriual there: of a great compasse ande with him, and came sawe it, tooke it to be a wonder, and that king

assile, by the informati- pame, moued many of

his mother Ladie Katharine, Admirall of France, being, for a kinsman of his in them, and holpen him, the principall cause which had founde, et. ibidem

duardum quar-

um in oppido montis

, 1482. anno regni 22. ta.

RESENDE,

ndo.

Cap. 33.

es a el rey dom Duarte de la saber e credito, de que el m de Pina por secretario. anbia: los quales foram en a, que polla condicãõ del- andar confirmar: e tam- que depois de visto el rey esse mandar a Guinee: e Duque de Medina Sida- baixada el rey D'Ingla- cebeda, e em tudo fez in- rãõ antenticas e firmas: e romãões que eran neces-

The

les were covered with cloath of siluer, all embroidered and garnished with pretious stones, emeralds, diamonds, and rubies most richly.

After them also came six more pages of honour, clothed in cloath of golde, every one having his bowe in his hand, and his falchion of the Turkes fashion by his side.

Immediately after them came the Great Turke himselfe with great pompe, & magnificence, being in his countenance and gesture a wonderfull Spectacle, having onely on each side of his person one page clothed with cloath of golde: he himselfe was mounted upon a goodly white horse, adorned with a robe of cloath of golde, embroidered most richly with the most pretious stones, and upon his head a goodly white turke, containing in length by estimation fifteene yards, which was of silke and linnen wouen together, resembling something Callicut cloath, but is much more fine and rich, and in the toppe of his crowne, a little pinnach of white ostrich feathers, and his horse most richly appavelled in all points correspondent to the same.

After him followed six goodly young Ladies, mounted upon fine white hackneys, clothed in cloath of siluer, which were of the fashion of mens garments, embroidered very richly with pearle, and pretious stones, and had upon their heaves caps of Goldsmiths worke, having great shackets of beare hanging out on each side, dyed as red as blood, and the nailles of their fingers dyed of the same colour, every of them having two eunuches on each side, and little bowes in their hands, after an Antike fashion.

After marched the Great Bascha, cheefe conductor of the whole armie, clothed with a robe of Dolliman crimlon, and upon the same another short garment very rich, and about him sixtie Janizaries afoote, of his owne gard, all clothed in crimlon veluet, being armed as the Great Turkes owne Janizaries.

Then after ensued three other Baschas, with slaues about them, being afoote, to the number of thre thousand men.

After came a companie of horsemen very haue, and in all pointes well armed, to the number of foure thousand.

All this aforesaid armie, most pompous to behold, which was in number foure score, and eights thousand men, encamped about the citie of Aleppo, and the Grand Signior himselfe was lodged within the towne, in a goodly castle, situated upon a high mountaine: at the foot whereof runneth a goodly riuer, which is a branch of that famous riuer Euphrates.

The rest of his armie passed ouer the mountaines of Armenia, called now the mountaines of Camarpe, which are foure daies tourney from Aleppo, appointed there to carie the coming of the Grand Signior, with the rest of his armie, intending to march into Persia, to giue battell to the Great Sophie. So the whole armie of the Grand Signior, containing as well those that went by the mountaines, as also those that came to Aleppo, in companie with him, with horsemen and footemen, and the conductors of the camels and victuals, were the number of 300000 men.

The camels which caried munition and victuals, for the said armie, were in number 200000.

A note of the presents that were giuen at the same time in Aleppo, to the Grand Signior, and the names of the presentors.

**F**irst the Bascha of Aleppo, which is as a Viceroy, presented 100. garments of cloath of golde, and 25. horses.

The Bascha of Damasco, presented 100. garments of cloath of golde, and twentie horses, with diuers sortes of commodities, in great quantitie.

The Bascha of Amante, presented 100. garments of cloath of gold, 20. horses, and a cup of gold, with two thousand buckets.

The Saniaque of Tripolis, presented six camels, charged all with silkes, 20. horses, and a wale cloath of golde, garnished with pretious stones, esteemed worth two hundred buckets.

The Consul of the companie of the Venetians in Tripolis, came to kisse the Grand Signiors hand, and presented him a great bagen of golde, and therein 4000. buckets Venetians.

**The safe conduct or priuiledge, giuen by Sultan Solyman the Great Turke, to Master Anthony Ienkinson at Aleppo in Syria, in the yeere, 1553.**

**S**ultan Solyman, &c. to all Viceroyes, Saniaques, Cadiz, and other our Justices, Officers, and Subiects of Tripolis in Syria, Constantinople, Alexandria in Egypt, and of all other Colonies, and Cities, vnder our Dominion, and iurisdiction

with pretious stones, emeralds  
 and every one having his  
 pompe, & magnificence,  
 on each side of his person  
 a goodly white horse, a  
 most pretious stones, and  
 diverse yards, which was  
 rich, but is much more fine  
 feathers, and his horse

with hacknetts, clothed in  
 very richly with pearls,  
 like having great shackles  
 of their fingers with of the  
 like bowes in their hands,

clothed with a robe of  
 gold, and about him sitte  
 as the Great Turks

above, to the number of  
 well armed, to the number

above foure score, and eights  
 minor himselfe was lodged  
 at the foote whereof run-

to the mountaines of  
 to tarie the coming of  
 Arabia, to giue battell to the  
 as well those that went by  
 him, with horsemen and  
 number of 300000 men,  
 were in number 200000,

to the Grand

instruments of cloth of golde,

and twentie horses, with

horses, and a cup of gold,

horses, 20 horses, and a table  
 of silver buckets,

like the Grand Signiors  
 of the Venetians.

in Solyman the  
 in Syria, in

and other our Justit  
 in Constantinople, Alexan  
 der our Dominion, and  
 in Arabia

jurisdiction: we will and commaund you, that when you shall see Anthony Ienkinson, bearee  
 of these present letters, merchant of London in England, or his factor, or any other, bearing the  
 said letters for him, arrive in our voyes and hauens, with his shippe or shippes, or other vessels  
 whatsoever, that you suffer him to lade or unlade his merchandise where soeuer it shall seeme good  
 unto him, traffiking for him selfe in all our countries and dominions, without hindring or any  
 way disturbing of him, his shippe, his people, or merchandise, and without enforcing him to pay  
 any other custome or tole whatsoever, in any sort, or to any persons whosoever they be, save onely  
 our ordinarie duties, contained in our custome houses, which when he hath payde, we will that  
 he be franke, and free, as well for himselfe, as for his people, merchandise, shippe, or shippes, and  
 all other vessels whatsoever, and in so doing that he may trafficke, bargain, sell, and buy, lade,  
 and unlade, in all our foresaide Countries, landes, and dominions, in like sort, and with the  
 like liberties and priuiledges, as the Frenchmen and Venetians vse, and enjoy, and more if it  
 be possible, without the hinderance or impeachment of any man. And furthermore we charge  
 and commaunde all Ambassadors, and Consuls of the French nation, and of the Venetians, and  
 all other Consuls resident in our Countreys, in what part or prouince soeuer they be, not to con-  
 straine, or cause to be constrained by them, or the sayde Ministers and Officers whatsoever they be,  
 the sayde Anthony Ienkinson, or his factor, or his seruants, or deputies, or his merchandise, to  
 pay any kinde of consullage, or other right whatsoever, or to intermeddle or hinder his affaires,  
 and not to molest nor trouble him any manner of way, because our will and pleasure is, that he  
 shall not pay in all our Countries, any other then our ordinarie custome. And in case any man  
 hinder, and impeach him aboue and besides these our present letters, we charge you most expre-  
 ssly to defende, and assist him against the sayde Consuls, and if they will not obey our present  
 commaundement, that you aduertise vs thereof, that we may take such order for the same, that  
 others may take example thereby. Moreover, we commaunde all our Captaines of our Gal-  
 lies, and their Lieutenants, be they Royales, or other vessels, that when they shall finde the sayde  
 Ienkinson, or his factor, his shippe or shippes, with his seruants, and merchandise, that they hurt  
 him not, neyther in bodie nor goods, but that rather they assist, and defend him against all such as  
 seeke to doe him wrong, and that they ayde and helpe him with victuals, according to his want,  
 and that whosoever shall see these presents, obey the same, as they will auoide the penaltie in  
 doing the contrarie: Made in Aleppo of Syria, the yeere 961. of our holy Prophet Mahomet, &  
 in the yeere of Iesus, 1553; signed with the scepter and signet of the Grand Signior, with his  
 owne proper hande.

The very original hereof was deliuered me Rich. Hakl. by Master Ienkinson in the  
 Turkish and French tongues.

A voyage made out of England into Guinea in Affricke, at the  
 charges of certaine Merchants aduenturers of the Citie of London, in the  
 yeere of our Lorde. 1553.

**B**eing desired by certaine of my friends, to make some mention of this voyage,  
 that some memorie thereof might remaine to our posteritie, if either iniquitie of  
 time, consuming all things, or ignorance creeping in by barbarousnes and con-  
 tempt of knowledge, should hereafter bury in obliuion so worthy attempts, so  
 much the greater to be esteemed, as before neuer enterprised by English men,  
 or at the least so frequented, as at this present they are, and may be, to the great  
 commoditie of our Merchants, if the same be not hindered by the ambition of such, as for the con-  
 quering of 40. or 50. miles here and there, and erecting of certaine fortresses, thinke to be Lords  
 of halfe the world, enuying that other should enioy the commodities, which they themselves can  
 not wholly possesse. And although such as haue bene at charges in the discouering & conquering  
 of such landes, ought by good reason to haue certaine priuiledges, preeminences, and tributes  
 for the same, yet (to speake vnder correction) it may seeme somewhat rigorous, and against good  
 reason and conscience, or rather against the charitie that ought to be among Christian men, that  
 such as violently invade the dominions of other, should not permit other friendly to vse the trade  
 of merchandise in places neerer, or selborne frequented of them, wherby their trade is not hindered  
 in such places, wher they themselves haue at their owne election appointed the market of their  
 traffike. But forasmuch as at this present, it is not my intent to accuse or defend, approoue or im-  
 prooue

proove, I will cease to speake any further herof, and proceede to the description of the first voyage, as briefly and faithfully as I was advertised of the same, by the information of such credible persons, as made diligent inquisition to knowe the truth hereof, as much as shall be requisite, omitting to speake of many particular thinges, not greatly necessarie to be knowen: which neuerthelesse, with also the exact course of the navigation, shall be more fully declared in the second voyage. And if herein favour or friendship shall perhaps cause some to thinke that some haue bene sharply touched, let them lay apart favour and friendship, and give place to truth, that honest men may receive praise for well doing, and leude persons reproch, as the iust displeasur of their euil deserts, whereby others may be deterred to doe the like, and vertuous men encouraged to proceede in honest attempts.

But that these voyages may be more plainely vnderstoode of all men, I haue thought good for this purpose, before I intreat hereof, to make a briefe description of Affrica, being that great parte of the worlde, on whose West side beginneth the coast of Guinea at Cabo Verde, about twelue degrees in latitude, on this side the Equinoctiall line, and two degrees in longitude from the measuring line, so running from the North to the South, and by East in some places, within foure, four, and three degrees and a halfe into the Equinoctiall, and so forth in manner directly East and by North, for the space of thirtie six degrees, or there about, in longitude from the West to the East, as shall more plainely appeare in the description of the second voyage.

### A briefe description of Affrike, gathered by Richard Eden.

**A**ffrica the lesse are these kingdomes: the kingdome of Tunes and Constantina, which is at this day vnder Tunes, and also the region of Bugia, Tripoli, and Ezzah. This part of Affrike is very barren by reason of the great deserts, as the deserts of Numidia and Barcha. The principall portes of the kingdome of Tunes, are these: Goletta, Bizerta, Potofarnia, Boua, and Stora. The chiefe cities of Tunes, are Constantina, and Boua, with diuers other. Under this kingdome are many Ilands, as Zerbi, Lampadola, Pantalarea, Limoso, Beit, Camelara, and Malta, where at this present is the great Master of the Rhodes. Under the South of this kingdome, are the great deserts of Lybia. All the nations in this Affrica the lesse, are of the secte of Mahomet, and a rusticall people, liuing frattered in villages. The best of this part of Affrike, is Barbaria, lying on the coast of the sea Mediterraneum.

Mauritania (now called Barbaria) is diuided into two partes, as Mauritania Tingitana, and Cesarientis. Mauritania Tingitana, is now called the kingdome of Fes, and the kingdome of Marrocco. The principall cite of Fes, is called Fessa: and the chiefe cite of Marrocco, is named Marrocco.

Mauritania Cesarientis, is at this day called the kingdome of Tremisen, with also the cite called Tremisen or Telenin. This region is full of deserts, and reacheth to the sea Mediterraneum, to the cite of Oram, with the port of Massaquiber. The kingdome of Fes reacheth vnto the Ocean sea, from the West to the cite of Argilla: and the port of the sayde kingdome is called Sala.

The kingdome of Marrocco is also extended aboue the Ocean sea, vnto the cite of Azamor and Azafi, which are aboue the Ocean sea, toward the West of the saide kingdome. In Mauritania Tingitana (that is to say, in the two kingdomes of Fes, and Marrocco) are in the sea, the Ilands of Canarie, called in olde time, the fortunate Ilandes. Toward the South of this region, is the kingdome of Guinea, with Senega, Ialoso, Gamba, and many other regions of the blacke Moores, called Aethiopiens, or Negros, all which are watered with the riuer Negro, called in olde time Niger. In the said regions are no cities, but onely certaine lowe cottages made of boughes of trees, plattered with chauke, and couered with strawe. In these regions are also very great deserts.

The kingdome of Marrocco hath vnder it these seuen kingdomes: Hea, Sus, Guzula, the territorye of Marrocco, Duchala, Hazchora, and Telde. The kingdome of Fes hath as many: as Fes, Temesne, Azgar, Elabath, Errifi, Gare, and Elcauz. The kingdome of Tremisen hath these regions: Tremisen, Tenez, and Elgazaet, all which are Machometistes. But all the regions of Guinea are pure Gentiles, and idolatrous, without profession of any religion, or other knowledge of God, then by the lawe of nature.

Affrica

Affrica.  
The coast of  
Guinea.

Tunes.  
Bugia.  
Tripoli.  
Numidia.

Ilands of  
Tunes.  
Malta.

The deserts of  
Lybia.  
Barbarie.

Mauritania.  
The kingdome of Fes  
and Marrocco

Tremisen.  
Oram.  
Massaquiber.  
Sala.

Marrocco.

The Ilands of  
Canarie.  
Guinea.  
Aethiopiens.

Marrocco.  
Fes.

Tremisen.

Guinea.

the description of the first information of such countries as much as shall be requisite to be known: which have fully declared in the some to thinke that some and give place to truth, reproch, as the full description of vertuous men encouraged

en, I have thought good of Africa, being that of Guinea at Cabo Verde, and two degrees in longitude, and by East in some quincenniall, and so forth, or there about, in the description of the second

d by Ri-

of Tunes and Constanzion of Bugia, Tripoli, and of the great deserts, as the sea of the kingdom of Tunis. The chief cities of Under this kingdom are elaro, and Malta, where as its kingdom, are the great of Mahomet, and a rustic, is Barbaria, lying on the

auritania Tingitana, and Fes, and the kingdom of Fe of Marrocco, is named

sen, with also the cite called to the sea Mediterraneane of Fes reacheth unto the sayde kingdom is called

unto the cite of Azamor also kingdom. In Mauritania are in the sea, the ward the South of this many other regions of with the river Negro, captaine to be cottages made In these regions are also

Hea, Sus, Guzula, the river of Fes hath as many as one of Tremisen hath these. But all the regions of Africa, or other knowledge

Africa

Africa the great, is one of the three partes of the world, knowne in olde time, and severed from Asia, on the East by the riuer Nilus, on the West, from Europe by the pillars of Hercules. The better part is now called Barbarie, and the people Hooyes. The inner part is called Libya and Ethiopia. Africke the lesse, is in this wise bounded: On the West it hath Mauritania: On the East Cyrenaica: On the North, the sea called Medicerraneum. In this countrey was the noble cite of Carthage.

In the East side of Africke, beneath the red sea, dwelleth the great and mightie Emperour and Christian King the most John, well knowne to the Portugals in their voyages to Calicut. His dominions reach very farre on every side: and hath vnder him many other kinges both Christian and heathen that pay him tribute. This mightie prince is called Dauid the Emperour of Ethiopia. Some write that the king of Portugall sendeth him yeerly eight shippes laden with marchandise. His kingdom consisteth with the red sea, and reacheth farre into Africke toward Egypt and Barbarie. Southward it consisteth with the sea toward the Cape de Bona Speranza: and on the other side with the sea of sand, called Mare de Sabione, a very dangerous sea, lying betwene the great cite of Alcayer, or Cairo in Egypt, and the countrey of Ethiopia: In the which way are many inhabitable deserts, continuing for the space of five dayes journey. And they affirme, that if the said Christian Emperour were not hindered by those deserts (in the which is great lacke of victuals, and especially of water) he would of now haue invaded the kingdom of Egypt, and the cite of Alcayer. The chief cite of Ethiopia, where this great Emperour is resident, is called Amacaiz, being a faire cite, whose inhabitants are of the colour of an Olive. There are also many other cities, as the cite of Saau upon the riuer of Nilus, where the Emperour is accustomed to remaine in the Sommer season: There is likewise a great cite named Barbaregaf, and Alcon, from whence it is said that the Queene of Saba came to Hierusalem to heare the wisdom of Salomon. This cite is but little, yet very faire, and one of the chief cities in Ethiopia. In the said kingdom is a prouince called Manicoogo, whose king is a Hooye, and tributarie to the Emperour of Ethiopia. In this prouince are many exceeding high mountaines, upon the which is said to be the earthly Paradise: and some say that there are the trees of the Summe and Hooye, whereof the antiquitie maketh mention: yet that none can passe thither, by reason of great deserts of a hundred dayes journey. Also beyond these mountaines, is the Cape of Bona Speranza. And to haue said thus much of Africke it may suffice.

Africa the great.

Africke the lesse.

Carthage.

Prince John.

Cape de Bona Speranza. The sea of sand. Alcair.

Amacaiz.

From whence the Queene of Saba came.

Manicoogo.

The earthly Paradise. The trees of the Summe and Hooye.

The first voyage to Guinea, and Benin.



In the yeere of our Lord 1482, the twelfth day of August, sailed from Portugall with two goodly shippes, the first whereof was the Lion, with a pinelle called the Hooye, being all well furnished with men of the best sort, to the number of seven Croys, as also with victuals and necessaries requisite for such a voyage: having also two captaines, the one a stranger, called Antony Anus Pinteado, a Portugall, borne in a towne named the Port of Portugall, a wise, discrete, and sober man, who for his cunning in sailing, being as well an expert pilot as a politicke captaine, was sometime in great fauour with the king of Portugall, and so whom the coastes of Brasile and Guinea, were committed to be kept from the Frenchmen, to whom he was a terror on the sea in those partes, and was furthermore a gentleman of the king his maisters house. But as fortune in manner neuer fauorably bestoweth, neuer promiseth, but deceiveth, neuer vaileth but catcheth downe againe: and as great wealth and fauour hath at times companions emulation and envie, so as after many adventures and quarrels made against him, inforced to come into England: where in this golden voyage he was still matched with an unequal companion, and unlike match of most fortunate qualities & conditions, with verities few or none aduanced. Thus departed these noble shippes into their voyage: But first captaine Windam, putting forth of his ship at Portsmouth a kinsman of one of the head merchants, and the young heron a minister of the tragicall partes he had conceiued in his heart, and with such small beginnings made the monstrous abyss, that more happie, yea and blessed was that young man being left behind, their if he had beene taken with them, as some doe with he had done the like by theirs. Thus sailed they on their voyage, until they came to the Islands of Maidera, where they cooke in certain times for the sake of their shippes, and paid for them as they agreed of the price. At these Islands they met with a great Galion of the king of Portugall, full of vittall and ordnance: yet such as could not haue perceived if it had attempted to withstand or resist our shippes, for the which cause it was set forth, and onely to let and surrump the four shippes of their purposed voyage: but all other that should attempt the like: yet chiefly to frustrate our voyage. For the king of Portugall was strictly enjoined, that our shippes were armed to his call of Mina in these partes, whereas nothing less was meant.

The Pinelle the Lion. The Hooye.

Pinteado.

Maidera.

The scattering of ordnance.

The Islands of Maidera. A Galion of the king of Portugall.

The castle of Mina.

After

After that our Ships departed from the Island of Madera forward on their voyage, began this worthy captain Pinteado to say, as a man contented with the company of a terrible Hydra, who hitherto flattered with him, & made him a faire countenance and shew of love. Then did he take upon him to command all alone, setting nought both by captain Pinteado, and the rest of the merchant factors: sometimes with opprobrious words, and sometimes with threatening, most shamefully abusing them, taking from Pinteado the service of the boies and certaine mariners that were assigned him by the order and direction of the worshipfull merchants, and leaving him as a common mariner, which is the greatest despite and griefe that can be to a Portugale or Spaniard, to be diminished their honour, which they esteeme above all riches. Thus sailing forward on their voyage, they came to the Islands of Canarie, continuing their course thence until they arrived at the Island of S. Nicholas, where they victualed themselves with fresh meate of the flesh of wild goats, whereof is great plenty in that Island, and in manner of nothing els. From hence following on their course and carrying here and there at the desart Islands in the way, because they would not come so timely to the countrey of Guinea for the beate, and carrying somewhat too long (so) what can be well ministered in a common wealth, where inequality with tyrannie will rule alone, they came at the length to the first land of the countrey of Guinea, where they fell with the great river of Sesto, where they might for their merchantozes have laden their ships with the graines of that countrey, which is a very good fruite, and much like unto a fig as it groweth on the tree. For as the figs are full of small seedes, so is the said fruit full of graines, which are loose within the cob, having in the midst thereof a hole on every side. This kind of spice is much used in cold countreys, & may there be sold for great advantage, for exchange of other wares. But our men by the persuasion or rather imposition of this tragical Captain, not regarding and setting light by that commodity, in comparison of the fine gold they thirsted, sailed an hundred leagues further, until they came to the golden land: where not attempting to come neere the Castell pertaining to the king of Portugall, which was within the river of Mina, made sale of their ware onely on this side and beyond it; for the gold of that countrey, to the quantitie of an hundred and fiftie pounds weight, there being in sale that they might have dispatched all their ware for golde, if the intaimed tyrant of Wyndam had; or could have given care to the counsell and experience of Pinteado: For when that Wyndam not satisfied with the gold which he had (and more might have had if he had sailed about the Mina) commanding the said Pinteado (so) to beooke upon him) to lead the ships to Benin, being under the Equinoctiall line, and an hundred and fiftie leagues beyond the Mina, where he looked to have their ships laden with pepper: and being counselled of the said Pinteado, considering the late time of the yeere, for that time to goe no further, but to make sale of their wares such as they had for gold, whereby they might have bene great gainers: Wyndam not listening hereunto, fell into a sudden rage, reviling the said Pinteado, calling him Jew, with other opprobrious words, saying, This wicked Jew hath promised to bring us to such places as are not, or as he cannot bring us unto: or but if he doe not, I will cut off his eares, and naile them to the maste. Pinteado gave the foresaid counsell to goe no further for the safeguard of the men and their lives, which they should put in danger if they came too late, for the rosia which is their winter, not for cold, but for smothering heat, with close and cloudie ayre, and stopping weather, of such putrifying qualitye, that it rosted the coates off their backs: or els for coming to soone for the loosing bene of the tyme, which caused them to linger in the way. But of force and not of will, brought he the shippes before the river of Benin, where standing at an Anchor, sent their pinnelle by into the river fiftie or threescore leagues, thence certaine of the merchants with Captain Pinteado, Francisco a Portugale, Nicholas Lambert gentleman, and other merchants, were conducted to the count where the king remained, ten leagues from the river side, whither when they came, they were brought with a great company to the presence of the king, who being a blacke Hoore (although not so blacke as a blacke) sat in a great huge hall, long & wide, the walls made of earth, without windows, & roofe of thyn boordes, set in sundry places, like unto louers to let in the ayre. And here to speake of the great reverence they gave to their king, it is such, that if wee would give as much to our Saviour Christ, we should remoue from our heads many plagues which we daily deserve for our contemp and impietie.

So it is therefore, that when his noble men are in his presence, they never looke him in the face, but sit cowering, as we upon our knees, so they upon their buttocks, with their elbows upon their knees, and their hands before their faces, not looking up until the king command them. And when they are comming to ward the king, as far as they doe see him, doe they shew such reverence, sitting on the ground with their faces covered as before. Likewise when they depart from him, they turne not their backs toward him, but goe creeping backward with like reverence.

And now to speake somewhat of the communication that was betwene the King and our men,

The Islands of Canarie,  
The Island of S. Nicholas.

Guinea.

The river of Sesto.  
Craines.

The third of gold.

The Castell of Spina.

The quantitie of gold.

Benin.

Pepper.

Pinteado admitted no countenance.

The Rosia.  
Stopping weather.

Searching for Benin.

Francisco Lambert.  
The king of Benin his court.

Reverence toward the king.

W  
you  
ned  
the  
chan  
whic  
and  
cals  
agap  
sent  
with  
warr  
of all  
muel  
round  
of the  
In  
of the  
from  
water  
dang  
peere  
Win  
the co  
read  
had a  
great  
contr  
ied an  
behin  
from  
In  
spoile  
him n  
fallin  
he had  
did sp  
and fo  
dout  
left ad  
boate  
rich  
cour  
him id  
will, o  
had f  
they s  
thead  
pinc  
of the  
tion o  
hereu  
him to  
crine  
Engl  
the ki  
forma  
poor

their voyage, began this  
of a terrible storm, who  
Then did he take upon  
the rest of the merchant  
ings, most shamefully a-  
mariners that were ally-  
him as a common ma-  
Spaniard, to be danci-  
ard on their bondage, they  
they arrived at the Island  
of wild goats, where  
following on their course  
ould not come so timely  
what can be well mini-  
they came at the length  
uer of Sello, where they  
country, which is a be-  
the figs are full of small  
ing in the midst whereof  
ay there be sold for great  
rather inforcement of  
in comparison of the fine  
golden land: where not  
which was within the ri-  
the gold of that countrey,  
se that they might have  
ould have given care  
of satisfied with the gold  
ommanding the said Pin-  
Equinoctiall line, and  
eir ships laden with pep-  
of the peere, for that time  
whereby they might have  
enrage, recalling the said  
whereon Jew hath pro-  
but if he doe not, I will  
unfitt to goe no further  
if they came too late, for  
ch close and cloudie eye,  
off their backs: or els for  
to linger in the way. But  
whereby as an Anker,  
certaine of the merchants  
gentleman, and other mer-  
from the river side: where  
of the king, who being a  
of a wide, & was made  
of couriers to let in a fire,  
is such, that if wee would  
many plagues which we

you shall first understand that he himselfe could speake the Portuguese tongue, which he had lea-  
red of a child. Therefore after he had commaunded our men to stand up, and demanded of them  
the cause of their continuing into that countrey, they answered by Pinteado, that they were mer-  
chants, trauffling into those parties for the commodities of his countrey, for exchange of wares  
which they had brought from their countreys, being such as should be no lesse commodities for him  
and his peopple. The King then hauing of olde lying in a certaine slope house thirtie or fourtie kin-  
dals of pepper (euery kindall beyng an hundred weight) willed them to looke upon the same, and  
agayne to bring him a sight of such merchandises as they had brought with them. And thereupon  
sent with the Captaine and the merchants, certaine of his men to conduct them to the waters side,  
with other to bring the ware from the pin nelle to the court. Who when they were returned and the  
wares seene, the king grew to this ende with the merchants, to prouide in thirtie dayes the lading  
of all their ships with pepper. And in case their merchandises would not extend to the value of so  
much pepper, hee promised to credite them to their next returne: and thereupon sent the countrey  
round about to gather pepper, causing the same to be brought to the court: so that within the space  
of thirtie dayes they had gathered fourescore aune of pepper.

The countrey  
is a rich one  
the king of  
Spain and  
our men.

Pepper.

The things  
gathered to  
ward our  
men.

The disorder  
and death of  
our men.

In the meane season, our men partly hauing no rule of themselves, but eating without measure  
of the fruites of that countrey, and drinking the wine of the Palme trees that dropeth in the night  
from the eue of the branches of the same, and in such extreame heate running continually into the  
water, not vsed before to such sudden and vsurment alterations (then the which nothing is moze  
dangerous) were thereby brought into swellings and agues: in somuch that the latter time of the  
peere comming on, caused them to die sometimes thye, and sometimes foure or fise in a day. Then  
Windam perceiving the time of the thirtie dayes to be expired, and his men dying so fast, sent to  
the court in post to captaine Pinteado, and the rest, to come away and to cary no longer. But Pin-  
teado with the rest, wrote backe to him againe, certifying him of the great quantitie of pepper they  
had already gathered, and looked daily for much moze: desiring him furthermore to remember the  
great paye and name they should winne, if they came home prosperously, and wist shame of the  
contrary. Which answer Windam noe satisfied, and many of their men dying daily, wiled  
and commaunded them agayne either to come away forthwith, or els threatened to leaue them  
behind. Which Pinteado heard thus answer, thinking to persuade him with reason, hee took his way  
from the court toward the ships, being conducted thither with men by the kings commandement.

In the meane season Windam all ragging, brake by Pinteados Cabin, brake open his chestes,  
spoiled such provision of cold stilled waters and suckets as hee had prouided for his health, and left  
him nothing, neither of his instruments to saile by, nor yet of his apparell: and in the meane tyme  
falling sicke himselfe, died also. Whose death Pinteado comming aboard, lamented as much as if  
he had bene the dearest friend he had in the world. But certaine of the mariners and other officers  
did speer in his face, some calling him Jewe, saying that he had brought them thither to kill them:  
and some drawing their swords at him, making a shew to slay him. Then he perceiving that they  
would needes away, desired them to cary that he might fetch the rest of the merchandises that were  
left at the court, but they would not graunt his request. Then desired he them to giue him the ship  
boate, with as much of an olde saile as might serue for the same, promising them therewith to bring  
Nicholas Lambert and the rest into England, but all was in vaine. Then wrote he a letter to the  
court to the merchants, informing them of all the matter, and promising them if God would to leaue  
him life, to returne with all haste to fetch them. And thus was Pinteado kept a boordship against his  
will, shutt among the voyes of the ship, not vsed like a man, nor yet like an honest boy, but glad to  
find sauiour at the cookes hand. Then departed they, leauiug one of their ships behind them, which  
they sunke for lacke of men to cary her. After this, within fise or seuen dayes sayling, died also Pin-  
teado for decayment and thought, that strooke him to the heart: A man voyce by co. some day  
pince, and most delyciously. And of seuen some men came home to winnowsb. scarcely forty, and  
of them many died. And that no man should suspect these wordes which I haue said in commenda-  
tion of Pinteado, to be spoken upon fauour otherwise then truth, I haue thought good to adde  
hereunto the copie of the letters which the king of Portugale and the infant his voycher wrote vnto  
him to reconcile him, at such time as vpon the king his maisters displeasure (and not for any other  
crime or offence, as may appeare by the said letters) hee was onely for porraye indyced to come into  
England, where hee first perused our merchants to accept the said hostages to Guinea: But as  
the king of Portugale so late repented him that he had so punished Pinteado, vpon malicious in-  
formations of such as enuied the mans good fortune: even so may it hereby appeare, that in some ca-  
ses euen Lions themselves, may either be hindered by the contempt, or adde by the helpe of the  
poore mill, according vnto the fable of Catoe,

The death of  
Windam,  
Pinteado rent  
his chestes  
of the  
mariners.

This Lam-  
bart was a  
Portugale  
boate, whose  
father had  
bene Lord  
mayor of Lon-  
don.

The death of  
Pinteado.

Pinteado first  
perused  
our men to  
the voyage of  
Guinea.

The copie of Anthonie Anes Pinteado his letters patents, wherby the king of Portugall made him knight of his house, after all his troubles and imprisonment, which, by wrong information made to the king, he had susteined of long time, being at the last deliuered, his cause knowen and manifested to the king by a gray frier the kings Confessor.

Seven hundred reys are not sufficient. Allcayes is but a buttel.

The king do giue you to vnderstand lord Frances Desleosa, one of my counsell, and ouerseeer of my house, that in consideration of the good seruice which Anthonie Anes Pinteado, the soune of John Anes, dwelling in the towne called the Hoyt, hath done vnto me, my will and pleasure is, to make him knight of my house, allowing to him in pension seuen hundred reys monethly, and euery day one alcaze of barley, as long as he keepeth a hoyle, and to be paid according to the ordinaunce of my house. Providing alwayes that he shall receiue but one marriage gift: And this also in such condition, that the time which is excepted in our ordinaunce, forbidding such men to marry for getting such children as might succeed them in this allowance, which is fixe yeeres after the making of this patent, shall be first expired before he do marry. If therfore command you to cause this to be entered in the booke called the Matricula of our houholde, vnder the title of knights. And when it is so entered, let the Clarke of the Matricula, for the certentie thereof, write on the backe side of this Aluala, or patent, the number of the leafe wherein this our grant is entered, which done, let him returne this writing vnto the said Anthonie Anes Pinteado for his warrant.

Diego Henriques haue written this in Almarin the twenty and two day of September, in the yeere of our Lord 1551. And this beneuolence the king gaue vnto Anthonie Anes Pinteado the twentieth and five day of July this present yeere.

Rey.

### The secretaries declaration written vnder the kings grant.

Your Maiestie hath vouchsafed in respect and consideration of the good seruice of Anthonie Anes Pinteado, dwelling in the port, and soune of John Anes, to make him knight of your house, with ordinarie allowance, of seuen hundred reys pension by the moneth, and one alcaze of barley by the day, as long as he keepeth a hoyle: and to be paid according to the ordinaunce of your house, with condition that he shall haue but one marriage gift: and that not within the space of fixe yeeres after the making of these letters patents. The secretaries note. Entered in the booke of the Matricula. fol. 683.

Francisco de Siquera.

### The copie of the letter of Don Lewes the infant, and brother to the king of Portugall, sent into England to Anthonie Anes Pinteado.

Anthonie Anes Pinteado, If the infant brother to the king, haue me heartily commended vnto you, Peter Gonçalues is gone to seek you, desiring to bring you home againe into your countrey. And for that purpose, hath with him a safe conduct for you, granted by the king, that thereby you may freely and without all feare come home. And although the weather be foule and stormie, yet faile not to come: for in the time that his Maiestie hath giuen you, you may do many thinges to your contentation and gratifying the king, whereof I would be right glad: and to bring the same to passe, will do all that lieth in me for your profit. But soasmuch as Peter Gonçalues will make further declaration hereof vnto you, I say no more at this present. Written in Lisbon the eight day of December. Ann. 1552.

### The infant Don Lewes.

All these foresaid writings I saw vnder seale, in the booke of my friend Xpoual de Lese, with whom Pinteado left them, at his vnsuonate departing to Guinea. But notwithstanding all these friendly letters and faire promises, Pinteado durst not attempt to goe home, neither to take company with the Portugalls his countrey men, without the presence of other: soasmuch as he had secret admonitions that they intended to slay him, if time and place might haue serued their wicked intent.

The



The second voyage to Guinea, set out by Sir George Barne,  
Sir John Yorke, Thomas Locke, and Edward Castelyn, in the  
yeere 1554.



In the first voyage I haue declared rather the order of the hypothesis, then the course of the navigation, whereof at that time I could haue no perfect information: so in the description of this second voyage, my chiefe intent hath bene to shew the course of the same, according to the obseruation and ordinary custome of the Mariners, and as I receiued it at the hands of an expert Pilot, being one of the chiefe in this voyage, who also with his owne hands wrote a briefe declaration of the same, as he found and tried all things, not by coniecture, but by the art of sailing, and instruments pertaining to the mariners facultie. Not therefore slinking to my selfe the commendations due vnto other, neither to bolde as in any part to change or other wise dispose the order of this voyage, so well obserued by art and experience, I haue thought good to set forth the same, in such sort and phrase of speech as is commonly vsed among them, and as I receiued it of the said Pilot, as I haue said. Take it therefore as followeth.

In the yeere of our Lord 1554. the eleuenth day of October, we departed the riuer of Thames with three goodly Shippes, the one called the *Trinitie*, a Ship of the burden of seuen hore tunne, the other called the *Bartholomew*, a Shippe of the burden of iiii tunne, the third was the *John Euangelist*, a Ship of seuen hore tunne. With the said Shippes and two pinnelles (whereof the one was bound on the coast of England) we went forward on our voyage, and said at Douer foureteene dayes, we said also at Rie three or foure dayes. Whereouer last of all we touched at *Dartmouth*.

The first day of November at nine of the clocke at night, departing from the coast of England, we set of the *Start*, bearing South west all that night in the sea, and the next day all day, and the next night after, vntill the third day of the said month about noone, making our way good, did runne threescore leagues.

Item from twelue of the clocke the third day, till twelue of the clocke the fourth day of the said month, making our way good South west, did runne euery three houres two leagues, which amounteth to thirtene leagues the whole.

Item from twelue of the clocke the fourth day, to twelue of the clocke the fifth day, running South west in the sea, did runne twelue leagues.

Item from twelue of the clocke the fifth day, vntill twelue of the clocke the sixth day, running South west, did runne eightene leagues.

And so from twelue of the clocke the sixth day, vntill twelue of the clocke the seventh day, running South south west, did run euery houre two leagues, which amount to eigheteene leagues the whole.

Item from twelue of the clocke the seventh day, till three of the clocke the eighth day, South south west running in the sea, did runne thirtie leagues.

Item from three of the clocke the eighth day, vntill three of the clocke the ninth day, running South south west, did runne thirtie leagues.

Item from three of the clocke the ninth day, till three of the clocke the tenth day, in running South southeast in the sea, did run the summe of foure and twentie leagues.

Also from three of the clocke the tenth day, vntill twelue of the clocke the eleuenth day, did runne South south west the summe of twelue leagues, & from twelue of the clocke, till fixe of the said day, did runne fixe leagues.

Running South and by west in the sea, from fixe of the clocke the eleuenth, till fixe of the clocke the twelfth day, did runne fixe and thirtie leagues.

From fixe of the clocke at after noone the twelfth day, till fixe of the clocke the thirtieenth day at after noone, did runne thirtie leagues.

Item from fixe of the clocke the thirtieenth day, till fixe of the clocke the foureteenth day after noone, we were becalmed, that we could lie South west with a saile. And the fiftieenth day in the morning, the wind came to the East and East North east.

The fiftieenth day in the morning, we had sight of the isle of Madera, which doth rise to him that cometh in the North north east part vpright land in the west part of it, and very high: and to the South south east a low long land, and a long point, with a cawle thowto the middell of it, standing in two and thirtie degrees: and in the West part, many springs of water running downe from the mountaine, and many white fieldes like vnto corne fieldes, and some white houses to the South east part of it: and the toppe of the mountaine sheweth very ragged, if you may see it, and in the North east part there is a bigge or bay as though it were a harborow: Also in the said part,

Robert Gainsh  
was master of  
the John  
Euangelist.

The isle of  
Madera.

there is a rocke a litle distance from the shoore, and over the said bight, you shall see a great gap in the mountaine.

**The life of**  
**Palmeis.**  
**Teneriffa.**  
**The Canaries.**  
The nineteenth day at twelve of the clocke, we had sight of the isle of Palmeis and Teneriffa and the Canaries. The isle of Palmeis is round, and lieth Southeast and Northwest, and the Northwest part is lowest. In the South is a round hill over the head land, and an other round hill above that in the land. There are betwene the Southeast part of the isle of Madera and the Northwest part of the isle of Palmeis seven and fiftie leagues. This isle of Palmeis lieth in nine and twentie degrees. And our course from Madera to the isle of Palmeis was South, and South and by West, so that we had sight of Teneriffa and of the Canaries. The Southeast part of the isle of Palmeis, & the Northwest part of Teneriffa, lieth Southeast & Northwest, & betwene them are twentie leagues.

**Gracianaria.**  
**Forcuentura.**  
**The island of**  
**Gomera.**  
Teneriffa and the great Canarie, called Gracianaria, and the West part of Forcuentura standeth in seven and twentie degrees and a halfe. Gomera is a faire island but very ragged, & lieth Northwest off Teneriffa. And whosoever will come betwene them two islands, must come South and by East, and in the South part of Gomera is a towne and a good roade in the said part of the island: and it standeth in twentie and seven degrees and three partes. Teneriffa is an high land, and a great high pike, like a sugar loafe: and vpon the said pike is snow throughout all the whole yeere. And by reason of that pike it may be knowne about all other islands, and there we were becalmed the twentieth day of Nouember, from sixe of the clocke in the morning, vntill foure of the clocke at after noone.

**The coast of**  
**Barbarie.**  
**Cape blanke.**  
The two and twentieth day of Nouember, vnder the Tropike of Cancer, the Sunne goeth downe West and by South. Vpon the coast of Barbarie five and twentie leagues by North Cape blanke at three leagues off the maine, there are fiftene cadomes, and good shelly ground, and sand among, and no streames, and two small islands standing in the two and twentie degrees and a parte.

**The river**  
**de Oro.**  
From Gomera to Cape de las Barbas is an hundred leagues, and our course was South and by East. The said Cape standeth in two and twentie and a halfe: and all that coast is flatte, sixene or seuentene cadome deepe. Seven or eight leagues off from the riuer de Oro to Cape de las Barbas, there be many Spaniards and Portugals to trade for silber, during the moneth of Nouember: and all that coast is very low lands. Also we went from Cape de las Barbas Southsouthwest, and Southwest and by South, till we brought our selues in twentie degrees and a halfe, reckoning our selues seven leagues off: and that was the least shoales of Cape Blanke.

**The crossers**  
**of crocke bars.**  
Then we went South, vntill we brought our selues in thirtene degrees, reckoning our selues twentie and five leagues off. And in fiftene degrees, we did reare the Crossers, and we might haue reared them sooner if we had looked for them. They are not right a crosse in the moneth of Nouember, by reason that the nightes are short there. Neuerthelesse we had the sight of them the nine & twentieth day of the said moneth at night.

**Rio Grande.**  
The first of December being in thirtene degrees, we set our course South and by East, vntill the fourth day of December at twelve of the clocke the same day. Then we were in nine degrees & a parte, reckoning our selues thirty leagues of the shoales of the riuer called Rio Grande, being Northwest of them: the which shoales be thirtie leagues long.

The fourth of December, we began to set our course Southeast, we being in sixe degrees and a halfe.

The ninth day of December we set our course Eastsoutheast: the foureteenth day of the said moneth, we set our course East, we being in five degrees and a halfe, reckoning our selues thirtie and five leagues from the coast of Guinea.

The nineteenth of the said moneth, we set our course East and by North, reckoning our selues seuentene leagues distant from Cape Mensurado, the said Cape being Eastnortheast of vs, and the riuer of Sesto being East.

**Cape Mensu-**  
**rado.**  
**The riuer of**  
**Sesto.**

The one and twentieth day of the said moneth, we fell with Cape Mensurado to the Southeast, about two leagues off. This Cape may be easily knowne, by reason the rising of it is like a Doy pole head. Also toward the South, all there are three trees, whereof the Eastermost tree is the highest, and the middlemost is like a tie flacke, & the Southermost like vnto a gibet: and vpon the maine, are foure or five high hilles rising one after another like round hommockes or hillocks. And the Southeast of the three trees, handiervise: and all the coast along is white sand. The said Cape standeth within a lile in five degrees.

The two and twentieth of December, we came to the riuer of Sesto, and remained there vntill the nine and twentieth day of the said moneth. Here we thought it best to stand before vs the pinnelle

shall see a great gap in the

almes and Teneriffa and North-west and the North an other round hill above Cordera and the North-west by a nine and twentie degrees South and by West. So of the isle of Palmae, & the them are twentie leagues, of Forteuicntura, standeth very ragged, & lieth in Islands, must come South in the said part of the Africa is an high land, and about all the whole peere, there we were becalmed all foure of the clocke at afternoon, the Sunne goth twentie leagues by North good shelly ground, and and twentie degrees and

our course was South and all that coast is flatter, the river de Oro to Cape de Sibing, during the month from Cape de las Barour felues in twentie degrees the least shoales of Cape

rees, reckoning our felues others, and we might have in the moneth of November of them the nine & twen-

South and by East, until we were in nine degrees & io Grande, being West

being in five degrees and

fourteenth day of the said month our felues thirtie and

North, reckoning our felues Eastmost part of vs, and

surado to the Southeast, the rising of it is like a Baye the Eastmost tree is the into a gibet: and upon the mockes of hollocks. And is white sand. The said

and remained there until and before vs the pinnelle

to the river Dulce, called Rio Dulce, that they might have the beginning of the market before the coming of the John Evangelist.

As the river of Setto, we had a ranne of graines. This river standeth in five degrees, lacking a terce. From the river of Setto to Rio Dulce, are five and twentie leagues. Rio Dulce standeth in five degrees and a halfe. The river of Setto is easie to be knowne, by reason there is a ledge of rocks on the Southeast part of the Rode. And at the entering into the haven, are five or six trees that beare no leaves. This is a good harborow, but very narrow at the entrance into the river. There is also a rocke in the haven's mouth right as you enter. And all that coast betwene Cape de Monte, and Cape de las Palmas, lieth Southeast and by East, North-west & by West, bring three leagues off the shore. And you shall have in some places rocks two leagues off; and that betwene the river of Setto and Cape de las Palmas.

Betwene the river of Setto and the river Dulce are five and twenty leagues; and the high land that is betwene them both, is called Cackado, being eight leagues from the river of Setto. And to the Southeastward of it, is a place called Shawgro, and an other called Shyawe or Shaou, where you may get fresh water. Off this Shyawe lieth a ledge of rocks; and to the Southeastward, lieth a headland called Croke. Betwene Cackado and Croke, are nine or ten leagues. To the Southeastward off, is a harborow called saint Vincent: Right over against saint Vincent, is a rocke under the water, two leagues and a halfe off the shore. To the Southeastward of that rocke you shall see an island about three or foure leagues off; this island is not past a league off the shore. To the Eastward of the island, is a rocke that lieth about the water, and by that rocke goeth in the river Dulce, which you shall knowe by the said river and rocke. The North-west side of the haven, is flat sand, and the Southeast side thereof, is like an island, and a bare plat without any trees, and so is it not in any other place.

In the Rode, you shall ride in thirteene or fouretene fadomes good ower & sand, being the marks of the Rode to bring the island and the North-east land together, and here we anchored the last of December.

The third day of January, we came from the river Dulce.

Note that Cape de las Palmas, is a faire high land, but some low places thereof by the water side looke like red cliffs with white strakes like the waves; a cable length a piece, and this is to the East part of the Cape. This Cape is the Southemmost land in all the coast of Guineae, & standeth in foure degrees and a terce.

The coast from Cape de las Palmas to Cape Trepoyntes, or Tres Puntas, is faire and cleare without rocke or other danger.

Twentie and five leagues from Cape de las Palmas, the land is higher then in any place, but all we come to Cape Trepoyntes. And about ten leagues before you come to Cape Trepoyntes, the land riseth still higher and higher, until you come to Cape Trepoyntes. Also before you come to the said Cape, after other five leagues to the North-west part of it, there is certaine broken ground, with two great rockes, and within them in the bight of a bay, is a castell called Arca, pertaining to the king of Portugall. You shall knowe it by the said rockes that lie off it: for there is none such from Cape de las Palmas to Cape Trepoyntes. This coast lieth East and by North, West and by South. From Cape de las Palmas to the said castell, is fourestoye and sixtene leagues. And the coast lieth from the said castell to the Westemmost point of Trepoyntes, Southeast and by South, North-west and by North. Also the Westemmost point of Trepoyntes, is a low land, lying halfe a mile out in the sea; and upon the innermost necke to the land ward, is a tuft of trees, and there we arrived the cleventh day of January.

The twelfth day of January, we came to a towne called Samma or Samua, being eight leagues from Cape Trepoyntes toward Eastward. Betwene Cape Trepoyntes and the towne of Samua, is a great ledge of rocks a great way out in the sea. We continued foure dayes at that towne, and the captaine thereof would needs have a pledge a shore. But when they received the pledge, they kept him still and would traffike no more, but shot off their ordinance at vs. They have two or three pieces of ordinance and no more.

The thirteenth day of the said month, we made reckoning to come to a place called Cape Corea, where captaine Don John dwelleth, whose men entertained vs friendly. This Cape Corea is foure leagues Eastward of the castell of Mina, otherwise called La mina, or Castello de mina, where we arrived the eighteenth day of the month. Here we made sale of all our cloth, saving two of three packes.

The five and twentieth day of the same month we weighed anchor, and departed from thence to the Crinitie, which was seven leagues Eastward of vs, where she solde her wares. Then they of the

The river of Setto. Rio Dulce.

Cape de Monte.

Cape de las Palmas.

The land of Cackado.

Shawgro.

Croke.

Saint Vincent harborow.

The river Dulce.

Cape de las Palmas.

The coast of Guineae.

The castell of Arca.

The towne of Samua.

The pledge was in John White his nephew.

Cape Corea.

The castell of Mina was purchased by the king of Portugall.

Perecow.  
Perecow  
Grande.  
Cape de las  
Palmas.

The Crinitie willed vs to go Eastward of that eight or nine leagues, to sell part of their wares, in a place called Perecow, and another place named Perecow Grande, being the Eastermost place of both the West, which you shall know by a great round hill nere by it named Monte Rodondo, lying Westward from it, and by the water side are many high palme trees. From hence did we set forth homeward the thirteenth day of February, & pleavoy along till we came within seven or eight leagues to Cape Trepointes. About eight of the clocke the fifteenth day at afternoon, we did cast about to seaward: and beware of the currents, for they will deceiue you soe. Whosoeuer shall come from the coast of Mina homeward, let him be sure to make his way good West, untill he reckon himselfe as farre as Cape de las Palmas, where the current setteth alwayes to the Eastward, And within twentie leagues Eastward of Cape de las Palmas, is a riuer called De los Potos, where you may haue fresh water and halast enough, and plentie of iuoy of Elephants teeth. This riuer runneth in foure degrees, and almost two tercies. And when you reckon your selfe as farre shot as Cape de las Palmas, being in a degree, or a degree and a halfe, you may go West, and West by North, untill you come in thre degrees: and then you may go Westnorthwest, and Northwest and by West, untill you come in five degrees, and then Northwest. And in five degrees, we met Northerly winde, and great ruffling of tides. And as we could iudge, the currents went to the Northnorthwest. Furthermore betweene Cape de Monte, and Cape verde, go great currents which deceiue many men.

The currents  
from Cape  
Trepointes.

It is the  
Isle  
de Flores.  
Cape de las  
Palmas.

Currents.

The two and twentieth day of April, we were in eight degrees and two tercies: and so we ranne to the Northwest, hauing the winde at Northeast and Eastnortheast, and sometimes at East, untill we were at eightene degrees and a terce, which was on May day. And so from eightene and two tercies, we had the winde at East and Eastnortheast, and sometimes at Eastfourtheast: and then we reckoned the islands of Cape verde Eastsoutheast of vs, we iudging our selves to be eight and forty leagues off. And in twentie and one and twentie degrees, we had the winde more Easterly to the Southward then before. And so we ran to the Northwest and Northnorthwest, and sometimes North and by West and North, untill we came into one and thirte degrees, where we reckoned our selves a hundred and fourescore leagues Southwest, and by South of the island de Flores, or de los Flores, and there we met with the winde at Southsoutheast, and set our course Northeast.

The Isle  
de Flores.

In three and twentieth degrees, we had the winde at the South and Southwest, and then we set our course North northeast, and so we ran to forty degrees, and then we set our course Northeast, the wind being at the Southwest, and hauing the Isle de Flores East of vs, and xvii leagues off.

The Isle  
de Flores.

In the one and forty degrees, we met with the winde at Northeast, and so we ran Northwestward, then we met with the winde Westnorthwest, & at the West within five leagues, running toward the Northwest, and then we cast about, and lay Northeast, untill we came in two and forty degrees, where we set our course Eastnortheast, iudging the Isle de Coruo South and by West of vs, and five and thirte leagues distant from vs.

Where they  
lost the sight  
of the North  
Starre.  
How the com-  
pass is decey-  
ueth.

A remembrance, that the one and twentieth day of May we communed with John Rafe, and hee thought it best to goe Northeast, and iudged himselfe five and twentie leagues Eastward to the Isle de Flores, and in nine and thirte degrees and a halfe.

Note, that on the fourth day of September, vnder nine degrees, we lost the sight of the North Starre.

Note also, that in five and forty degrees, the compass is varied eight degrees to the West.

Item, in forty degrees, the compass did varie fiftene degrees in the whole.

Item, in thirte degrees and a halfe, the compass is varied five degrees to the West.

Be it also in memory, that two or three dayes before we came to Cape Troispoints, the pinnelle went along the shore, thinking to sell some of our wares, and so we came to anker thre or foure leagues West and by South of the Cape Troispoints, where we left the Crinitie.

The Pin-  
nelle.

Then our pinnelle came aboard with all our men, the pinnelle also tooke in more wares. They told me moreover that they would goe to a place where the Spaniards was, and had receiued much gold at the first voyage to these parties, and told mee furthermore that it was a good place: but I fearing a brigantine that was then vpon the coast, did wey and follow them, and left the Crinitie about foure leagues off from vs, and there we rode against that towne foure dayes: so that Martine by his owne desire, and assent of some of the Commissioners that were in the pinnelle, went a shore to the towne, and there John Berin went to traffique from vs, bring three unles of traffiquing at an other towne. The towne is called Samma or Samua, for Samma and Sammatera, are the names of the two first towne, where we did traffique for gold, to the Northeast of Cape Trepointes.

The towne of  
Samma.  
Sama.

Diuerse continueth the course of the voyage, as it was described by the said Pilot. Now therefore

I will

of their wares, in a place  
Easternmost place of both  
Rodondo, being West  
did we see forth home  
in seven or eight leagues  
doone, we did cast about  
Whosoever shall come  
West, vntill he reckon  
wayes to the Eastward,  
is called De los Potos,  
we reckon your selfe as farre  
may go West, and West  
Northwest, and North west  
in five degrees, we met  
the currents went to the  
verde, go great currents

degrees: and so we ranne  
sometimes at East, vntill  
from eightene and two  
thousand four hundred  
and seven, and then we  
setnesse to be eight and foye  
winde moze Easterly to  
North west, and sometimes  
west, where we reckoned  
of the Island de Flores, of de  
our course North east.

North west, and then we set  
set our course North east,  
and so viii. leagues of  
and so we ran North west  
five leagues, running to  
we came in two and foyrie  
two South and by West

with John Rafe, and hee  
leagues Eastward to the  
lost the sight of the North

degrees to the West,  
hole,  
to the West,  
Irois points, the pinnelle  
me to anker three or foure  
Cristitie.

ke in moze wares. They  
s, and had receiued much  
was a good place: but I  
n, and left the Crinitie a  
ure dayes: so that War  
ere in the pinnelle, went  
oring three miles of tra-  
Samma and Sammater-  
to the North east of Cape

said Pilot. Now therefore  
I will

I will speake somewhat of the countrey & people, and of such things as are brought from thence.  
They brought from thence at the last voyage, foure hundred pound weighte and odde of golde, of  
two and twentie carraes and one graine in linnenell: also five & thirtie buttes of graines, and about  
two hundred and fiftie Elephants teeth of all quantities. Of these, I saw & measured some of nine  
spannes in length, as they were crooked. Some of them were as bigge as a mans thigh about the  
knee, and weped about foure score and ten pound weighte a piere. They say that some one hath bene  
seene of an hundred and five and twentie pound weighte. Other there were which they call the teeth  
of calves, of one or two or three yeeres, whereof some were a foot and a halfe, some two foot, & some  
three, or more, according to the age of the beast. These great teeth of tusks, grow in the upper iaw  
downeward, and not in the nether iaw upward, wherein the Painners and Aras workers are de-  
ceiued. At this last voyage was brought from Guinea the head of an Elephant, of such huge big-  
nesse, that onely the bones of crang in thereof, beside the nether iaw and great tusks, weighed about  
two hundred weighte, and was as much as I could well lift from the ground: insomuch that con-  
sidering also herewith the weighte of two such great teeth, the nether iaw with the lesse teeth, the  
tongue, the great hanging eares, the bigge and long snout or troonke, with all the fleshy, vaines, and  
skime, with all other parts belonging to the whole head, in my iudgement it could weigh little lesse  
then five hundred weighte. This head diuers haue seene in the house of the woorthie merchant sir  
Anze in Iude, where also I saw it, and beheld it, not onely with my bodily eyes, but much moze  
with the eyes of my minde and spirit, considered by the worke, the running and wise dome of the  
workemaster: without which consideration, the sight of such strange and woonderfull things may  
rather seme curiosities, then profitable contemplations.

The Elephant (which some call an Elephante) is the biggest of all foure footed beastes, his foze-  
legges are longer then his hinder, he hath ancles in the lower part of his hinder legges, and five  
toes on his feet vndiuided, his snout or troonke is so long, & in such forme, that it is to him in the stead  
of a hand: for he nether eateth nor drinkech but by bringing his troonke to his mouth, the which he  
helpeth by his maister or keeper, therewith he ouerthoweth trees. Beside his two great tusks, he  
hath on euery side of his mouth foure teeth, where with he eateth and grindeth his meat: either of  
these teeth, are almost a spanne in length, as they grow along in the iaw, and are about two inches  
in heigte, and almost as much in thicknesse. The tuskes of the male are greater then of the fe-  
male: his tongue is very litle, and so farre in his mouth, that it cannot be seene: of all beastes they  
are most gentle and tractable, for by many sundry wayes they are taught, and doe understand: in-  
somuch that they learne to doe due honoz to a king, and are of quicke sense and sharpnesse of witte.  
When the male hath once seasoned the female, he neuer after toucheth her. The male Elephant li-  
ueth two hundred yeeres, or at the least one hundred and twentie: the female almost as long, but  
the floure of their age, is but threescore yeeres, as some write. They cannot suffer winter or colde:  
they loue rivers, and will often goe into them by to the snout, where with they blow and snuffe, and  
play in the water: but swimme they cannot, for the weighte of their bodies. Plinie and Soline  
write, that they vse none adulterie. If they happen to meet with a man in wilderness being out of  
the way, gently they will goe before him, and bring him into the plaine way. Joined in battell they  
haue no small respect vnto them that be wounded: for they bring them that are hurt or weary into  
the middle of the army to be defended: they are made tame by drinkeing the milke of barley. They  
haue continuall warre against Dragons, which desire their blood, because it is very colde: and there-  
fore the Dragon lying await as the Elephant passeth by, windeth his taile (being of exceeding  
length) about the hinder legges of the Elephant, & so slaying him, thrusteth his head into his troonke  
and exhauesth his breath, or else biteth him in the eare, whereunto he cannot reach with his troonke,  
and when the Elephant waereth same, he falleth downe on the serpent, being now full of blood, and  
with the waite of his body breaketh him: so that his owne blood with the blood of the Elephant, run-  
neth out of him mingled together, which being colde, is congealed into that substance which the A-  
pothecaries call Sanguis Draconis, (that is) Dragons blood, otherwise called Cinnabaris, although  
there be an other kinde of Cinnabaris, commonly called cinoper or vermilion, which the painters  
vse in certaine colours.

They are also of three kindes, as of the marshes, the plaines, and the mountaines, no lesse diffe-  
ring in conditions. Philostratus writeth, that as much as the Elephant of Libya in bignesse passeth  
the horse of Nysea, so much doe the Elephants of India exceede them of Libya: for of the Ele-  
phants of India, some haue bene seene of the heigte of nine cubites: the other doe so greatly feare  
them, that they dare not abide the sight of them. Of the Indian Elephants, onely the males haue  
tuskes, but of them of Echiopia and Libya, both males and females are tusked: they are of diuers heigths, as of  
twelue, thirtene, and foure score spannes, euery doynant being a measure of nine inches. Some  
write

Colde foure  
hundred  
weighte.  
Cruisers.  
Elephants  
teeth.

The head of an  
Elephant.

Sir Andrew  
Iudde.  
The contents  
of Gods worke.

The descripti-  
on and prop-  
ties of the Ele-  
phant.

Debate be-  
tweene the  
Elephant &  
the Dragon.

Sanguis Dra-  
conis.  
Cinnabaris.

The heigths  
of Elephants.

much that an Elephant is bigger then three wilde Oxen or Buffes. They of India are blacke, of the colour of a moule, but they of Ethiope or Guinea, are brown: the hide or skinne of them all is very hard, and without haire or hystles: their eares are two doynants broad, and their eyes very litle. Our men saw one drinking at a river in Guinea, as they sailed into the land.

Of other properties and conditions of the Elephant, as of their marvellous docillitie, of their sight and use in the warres, of their generation and chastitie, when they were first seene in the theaters and triumphes of the Romans, how they are taken and tamed, and when they cast their tusks, with the use of the same in medicine, who so desireth to know, let him reade Plinie, in the eight booke of his naturall historie. He also writeth in his twelfth booke, that in olde tyme they made many goodly workes of iuoy of Elephants teeth: as tables, trestles, postes of houses, railes, lattices for windows, images of their gods, and diuers other things of iuoy, both coloured and uncoloured, and intermixt with sundry kindes of precious woods, as at this day are made certaine chaires, lutes, and virginnalles. They had such plenty thereof in olde tyme, that (as far as I remember) Iosephus writeth, that one of the gates of Hierusalem was called Porta Eburnea, (that is) the Iuoy gate. The whitenesse thereof was so much esteemed, that it was thought to replicate the naturall fairnesse of mans skinn: in so much that such as went about to set footed (or rather comely) naturall beautie with colours and painting, were reppoued by this pouvere, Ebur atramento candidificare, that is, To make iuoy white with inke. The poets also, describing the faire necks of beautifull virgins, call them Eburnea colla, that is, Iuoy necks. And to haue said thus much of Elephants and iuoy, it may suffice.

Workes of  
iuoy.

The people of  
Africa.

Now therefore I will speake somewhat of the people and their manners, and manner of liuing, with an other briefe description of Africa also. It is to be vnderstood, that the people which now inhabit the regions of the coast of Guinea, and the mid parts of Africa, as Libya the inner, and Nubia, with diuers other great and large regions about the same, were in olde tyme called Ethiopes & Nigrites, which we now call Spoones, Spoones, or Negroes, a people of beauly liuing, without a God, law, religion, or common wealth, and so scorched and bereft with the heat of the sunne, that in many places they cutte it when it riseth. Of the regions and people about the inner Libya (called Libya Interior) Gemma Phrysius writeth thus.

Libya Interior.

Libya Interior, is very large and desolate in the which are many horrible wildernes and mountaines, replenished with diuers kindes of wilde and monstrous beastes and serpens. First from Mauritania or Barbarie toward the South is Gerulia, a rough and saluage region, whose inhabitants are wilde and wandering people. After these follow the people called Melanogetuli and Pharusij, which wander in the wilderness, carrying with them great gourdes of water. The Ethiopians, called Nigrites, occupie a great part of Africa, and are extended to the West Ocean, Southward also they reach to the river Nigritis, whose nature agreeth with the river of Nilus, forasmuch as it is increased and diminished at the same time, and breedeth such the like beastes as the Crocodile. By reason whereof, I thinke this to be the same river which the Portugals call Senega: For this river is also of the same nature. It is furthermore marvellous and very strange that is said of this river: And this is, that on the one side thereof, the inhabitants are of high stature and blacke, and on the other side, of brown or tawny colour, and low stature, which thing also our men confirme to be true.

Gerulia.

Ethiopes.  
Nigrites.  
The river  
Nigritis  
of Senega.

A strange  
thing.

Garamantes,  
People of  
Libya.

There are also other people of Libya called Garamantes, whose women are common: for they contract no marriage, neither haue respect to chastitie. After these are the nations of the people called Pyrei, Sachiodaphnie, Odrangi, Mimaces, Lynxamat, Dolopes, Aganging, Leuci Ethiopes, Xilice, Ethiopes, Calcei Ethiopes, and Nubi. These haue the same situation in Ptolomie that they now haue to the Kingdome of Nubia. There are certaine Christians vnder the dominion of the great Emperour of Ethiopia, called Prester John. From these toward the West, is a great nation of people called Aphricerones, whose region (as farre as may be gathered by conjecture) is the same that is now called Regnum Orguene, containing vpon the East parts of Guinea. From hence Westward, and somewhat toward the North, are the kingdomes of Gambia and Budome, not farre from the river of Senega. And from hence toward the inland regions; and along by the sea coast, are the regions of Ginea or Guinea, which we commonly call Guinee. On the West side of these regions toward the Ocean, is the cape or point called Cabo verde, or Capur viride (that is) The greene cape, to the which the Portugals first direct their course when they saile to America, or the land of Brasile. Then departing from hence, they turne to the right hand toward the quarter of the which is called Garbino, which is betwene the West and the South. But as speaks somewhat more of Ethiopia: although there are many nations of people so named, yet is Ethiopia thereby diuided into two parts, whereof the one is called Ethiopia vnder Egypte, a great

Prester John.  
Regnum  
Orguene,  
Gambia.

Called by  
Cap Verde,  
The Portugals  
navigation  
to Brasile.

Ethiopia.

and

and rich  
the river  
time cal  
dome of  
John, b  
John, y  
Indian  
de grees  
Aximian  
dwell in  
Plinie,  
There  
biest. A  
but one  
phora,  
phants  
line, ar  
with the  
ethiopia

The  
the gre  
the C  
Etha  
plentie  
basia, a  
thiopia  
the wa  
g, cha  
res Lu  
After e  
is) the  
narin  
here su  
Sot

Greeke  
in deed  
colde, b  
wildes  
ces, an  
reine p  
ny stran  
someth  
hays b  
the like  
st. p  
middle  
ken bid  
a burn  
closed  
pipes, a  
other ch  
Sot  
in the n  
alhoug  
reason  
of fire.  
Ant  
his 1 2

of India are blacke, of  
 of skine of them all is  
 and their eyes very litle,  
 and docillite, of their sight  
 first seene in the theaters  
 they call their rusk, with  
 in the eight booke of  
 they made many goodly  
 ralles, laces for win-  
 red and uncoloured, and  
 certaine chaires, laces, and  
 remember) Josephus  
 (that is) the Juoy gate,  
 defende the naturall faire-  
 rather corrupt) naturall  
 tramento can defacere,  
 late necks of beautifull  
 has much of Elephants  
 and manner of living, both  
 ple which now inhabite  
 inner, and Nubia, both  
 Ethiopes & Nigritz,  
 without a Godly re-  
 that in many places  
 Libya (called Libya In-  
 le will beverles & moun-  
 and serpents. First from  
 ge region, whole inhabi-  
 tilled Melanogell and  
 rbes of water. The  
 ed to the West Ocean,  
 toed the river of Nilus,  
 booxh the like beades as  
 which the Portugalls call  
 ellous and very strange  
 tants are of high stature  
 re, which thing also our  
 are common: for they  
 the nations of the people  
 Agangine, Leuci Ethi-  
 situation in Ptolomie  
 ans vnder the dominion  
 toward the West, is a  
 ype be gathered by con-  
 e East parts of Guinea,  
 mes of Cambra and Bu-  
 land regions, and along  
 y call Guinee. On the  
 abo verde, of Caput vi-  
 it course when they saie  
 me to the right hand co-  
 st and the South. But  
 of people is naturd, yet  
 is vnder Egypte a great  
 and

and rich region. To this pertaineth the island Meroc, embraced round about with the streames of the river Nilus. In this island women reigned in olde time. Josephus writeth, that it was some-  
 time called Sabea: and that the queene of Saba came from thence to Hierusalem, to heare the wise-  
 dome of Salomon. From hence toward the East, reigneth the said Christian Emperour Hystor  
 John, whom some call Papa Iohannes, and other say that he is called Pean Iuan (that is) great  
 John, whose Empire reacheth farre beyond Nilus, and is extended to the coastes of the red sea and  
 Indian sea. The middle of the region is almost in threeforse and sixe degrees of longitude, & twelue  
 degrees of latitude. About this region inhabite the people called Clodi, Risophagi, Babylonij,  
 Axionite, Molili, and Moliba. After these is the region called Troglodytica, whose inhabitants  
 dwell in caues and denes: for these are their houses, and the flesh of serpents their meat, as writeth  
 Plinie, and Diodorus Siculus. They haue no speech, but rather a grinning and chattering,  
 There are also people without heades, called Blemines, hauing their eyes and mouth in their  
 breast. Like wise Strucophagi, and naked Ganphantes: Satyrs also, which haue nothing of men  
 but onely shape. Moreover Oripei, great hunters. Mennones also, and the region of Sniyrno-  
 phora, which bringeth forth myrrh. After these is the region of Azania, in the which many Ele-  
 phants are found. A great part of the other regions of Africa that are beyond the Equinoctiall  
 line, are now ascribed to the kingdome of Melinde, whose inhabitants are accustomed to traffike  
 with the nations of Arabie, and their king is ioynd in friendship with the king of Portugall & pay-  
 eth tribute to Hester John.

The other Ethiopie, called Ethiopia Interior (that is) the inner Ethiopie, is not yet knowne for  
 the greatnesse thereof, but onely by the sea coastes: yet is it described in this maner. First from  
 the Equinoctiall toward the South, is a great region of Ethiopians, which bringeth forth white  
 Elephants, Eggers, and the beastes called Rhinocerontes. Also a region that bringeth forth  
 plenty of cyamome, lying betwene the branches of Nilus. Also the kingdome of Habesh of Ha-  
 basia, a region of Christian men, lying both on this side and beyond Nilus. Here are also the E-  
 thiopians, called Ichchiophagi (that is) such as liue onely by fish, and were sometimes subdued by  
 the waues of great Alexander. Furthermore the Ethiopians called Rhapsij, and Anthropopha-  
 gi, that are accustomed to mans flesh, inhabite the regions neere vnto the mountaines called Mon-  
 tes Lunæ (that is) the mountaines of the Moone. Gazatia is vnder the Tropike of Capricorne.  
 After this, followeth the front of Africa, the Cape of Buena Speranza, or Caput Bonæ Spei, (that  
 is) the Cape of good hope, by the which they passe that saile from Spaine to Calicut. But by what  
 names the Capes and gulfs are called, so farre as the same are in euery globe and card, it were  
 here superfluous to rehearse them.

Some write that Affrica was so named by the Grecians, because it is without colde. For the  
 Greeke letter Alpha or A, signifieth yuation, void, or without: and Phrice, signifieth colde. For  
 in beeh although in the head of Winter, they haue a cloudie and tempestuous season, yet is it not  
 colde, but rather smothering hotte, with hotte showres of raine also; and somewhere such scorching  
 wiyses, that what by one meanes and other, they seeme at certein times to liue as it were in forma-  
 res, and in maner already halfe way in Purgatorie or hell. Gemma Phrisus writeth, that in cer-  
 teine partes of Affrica, as in Atlas the greater, the aye in the night season is seene shinning, with ma-  
 ny strang: fires and flames rising in maner as high as the Moone: and that in the clement are  
 sometime heard as it were the sound of pipes, trumpets and drummes; which noises may per-  
 haps be caused by the vehement and sundry motions of such fire: exhalations in the aye, as we see  
 the like in many experiences wrought by fire, aye, & wind. The hollownesse also, and diuers r-  
 flections and breaking of the clouds, may be great causes hereof, beside the vehement colde of the  
 middle region of these aye, whereby the said fire exhalations, ascending thither, are suddenly stric-  
 ken backe with great force: for euery common and daily experience teacheth vs, by the whistling  
 of a burning torch, what noise fire maketh in the aye, and much more where it strieth when it is in-  
 closed with aye, as appeareth in gunnes, and as the like is seene in only aire inclosed, as in Organ  
 pipes, and such other instruments that go by winde. For winde (as say the Philosophers) is none  
 other then aye vehemently moved, as the see in a paire of bellows, and such other.

Some of our men of good credit that were in this last voyage to Guinea, affirme earnestly that  
 in the night season they felt a sensible heat to come from the beames of the moone. The which thing,  
 although it be strange and insensible to vs that inhabite colde regions, yet doth it stand with good  
 reason that it may so be, so farre as the nature of starres and planetes (as writeth Plinie) consisteth  
 of fire, and consisteth in it a spirit of life, which cannot be without heat.

And that the Moone giueth heate vpon the earth, the Prophet Dauid seemeth to confirme in  
 his 121 Psalm, where speaking of such men as are defended from euill by Gods protection,  
 he

The island of  
 Meroc.  
 The queene of  
 Saba.  
 Hester John  
 Emperour of  
 Ethiopia.  
 People of the  
 East side of  
 Africa.  
 People with-  
 out heads.  
 Ethiopians.  
 White Ele-  
 phants.  
 Habasia.  
 Ichchiophagi.  
 Anthropopha-  
 gi.  
 Montes Lunæ.  
 Gazatia.  
 Cape bonæ  
 Spei.  
 Africa with-  
 out colde.  
 The winter of  
 Africa.  
 Flames of fire  
 & noise in the  
 aye.  
 The middle  
 region of the  
 aye is colde.  
 The strife of  
 elements.  
 Winde.  
 The heat of  
 the Moone.  
 The nature of  
 the starres.

he saith thus: Per diem Sol non exuret te, nec Luna per noctem. That is to say, In the day the Sunne shall not burne thee, nor the Moone by night.

They say furthermore that in certaine places of the sea, they saw certaine streames of water, which they call spoures, falling out of the aire into the sea, and that some of these are as bigge as the great pillars of Churches: in somuch that sometimes they fall into shippes, and put them in great danger of downing. Some saie that these should be the Cataracts of heauen, which were all opened at Noes floud. But I thinke them rather to be such furious and eruptions as Aristotle in his booke de Mundo saith, to chance in the sea. For speaking of such strange things as are seene often times in the sea, he writeth thus. Oftentimes also euen in the sea are seene euaporations of fire, and such eruptions and breaking forth of springs, that the mouthes of riuers are opened, Whirlpooles, and furions are caused of such other vehement motions, not onely in the middest of the sea, but also in creekes and streights. At certaine times also, a great quantitie of water is suddenly lifted vpp and carried about with the Moone, &c. By which wordes of Aristotle it doth appeare that such waters be lifted vpp in one place at one time, and suddenly fall downe in another place at another time. And herunto perhaps pertaineth it that Richard Chancellor tolde me that he heard Sebastian Cabot report, that (as farre as I remember) either about the coastes of Brasile or Rio de Plata, his shippe or pinnelle was suddenly lifted from the sea, and cast vpon land, I wot not howe farre. The which thing, and such other like wonderfull and strange workes of nature wold I consider, and call to remembrance the narrowness of mans understanding and knowledge, in comparison of her mightie power, I can but cease to maruell and confesse with Plinie, that nothing is to her impossible, the least part of whose power is not yet knowen to men. Many things more our men saw and considered in this voyage, too much to be noted, wherof I haue thought good to put some in memorie, that the reader may as well take pleasure in the varietie of things, as knowledge of the hypothesis. Among other things theretofore touching the maners and nature of the people, this may seeme strange, that their princes and noble men vse to pounce and case their skinnes with yette knots in diuers formes, as it were branched damaske, thinking that to be a decent ornament. And albeit they goe in maner all naked, yet are many of them, and especially their women, in maner laden with collars, hyslets, hoopcs, and chaines, either of golde, copper, or iuoy. I my selfe haue one of their hyslets of iuoy, weighing two pound and the ounces of Troy weight, which make eight and thirtie ounces: this one of their women did weare vpon her arme. It is made of one whole pier of the biggest part of the tooth, turned and somewhat carued, with a hole in the middest, wherein they put their hands to weare it on their arme. Some haue of euery arme one, and as many on their legs, where with some of them are so galled, that although they are in maner made lame thereby, yet will they by no means leaue them off. Some weare also on their legs great shackles of bright copper, which they thinke to be no lesse comely. They weare also collars, hyslets, garlands, and girdles, of certaine blew bones like beates. Likewise some of their women weare on their bare armes certaine yocshewes, made of the plates of beaten golde. On their fingers also they weare rings, made of golden wires, with a knot or wreath, like vnto that which children make in a ring of a rush. Among other things of golde that our men bought of them for exchange of their wares, were certaine doggs chaines and collers.

They are very warie people in their bargaining, and will not lose one sparke of golde of any value. They vse weights and measures, and are very circumspect in occupying the same. They that shall haue to do with them, must vse them gently: for they will not traffike or buy in any wares if they be euill vsed. At the first voyage that our men had into these parties, it so chanced, that at their departure from the first place where they did traffike, one of them either stole a muske catte, or tooke her away by force, not mistrusting that that should haue hindered their bargaining in another place whither they intended to go. But for all the haste they could make with full sailes, the fame of their misusage so preuened them, that the people of that place also, offended thereby, wou to bring in no wares: in somuch that they were enforced either to restore the cat, or pay for her at their price, before they could traffike there.

Their houses are made of foure postes or trees and covered with boughes.

Their feeding. Their common feeding is of rootes, and such fishes as they take, wherof they haue great plenty.

Fleeing fishes. There are also such fleeing fishes as are seene in the sea of the West Indies. Our men sailed of their fishes, hoping to youde store thereof: but they would take no sale, and must therefore be eaten fresh, which as some say. Notwithstanding, other affirme that if they be salted immediately after they be taken, they will last vncorrupted ten or twelue dayes. But this is more strange, that part of such flesh as they carried with them out of England, and gunned there, became sweet againe at their returne to the climate of temperate regions.

They



at is to say, In the day the

ertaine streames of water, of these are as bigge as grapes, and put them in great vessels of beauen, which were all in eruptions as Aristotle in strange things as are seen in sea are seene euaporations of bushes of riuers are opened, not oney in the middell of quantitie of water is sudden of Aristotle it doth appeare botome in an other place at celler tolde me that he heard of coastes of Brasile of Rio de upon land, I wot not howe booke of nature wilde I con- and knowledge, in compa- Plinie, that nothing is to n. Spay things more one I haue thought good to write of things, as knowledge of nature of the people, this to raise their skinnes with what to be a decent opaiment, specially their women, in maner of, or wooy. I my selfe haue of Troy weight, which make arme. It is made of one with a hole in the middell, of euery arme one, and as me they are in maner made lame on their legs great shackles of so collars, baskets, garlands, their women beare on their On their fingers also they that which children make in a of them for exchange of their

one sparke of golde of any occupying the same. They traffike of thing in any waies, it is chanced, that at their to sole a muske catte, or tooke hanging in another place of full scales, the same of thereby, won by bring in no y for her at their price, before

ughes. er of they haue great plennie. Indies. Our men salced of, and must therefore be eaten immediatly after they be taken, age, that part of such flesh as meet againe at their returne to

They

They use also a strange making of bryad, in this maner. They grinde betwene two stones with their handes as much soyn as they thinke may suffice their family, & when they haue thus brought it to flour, they put thereto a certaine quantitie of water, and make thereof very thynne dough, which they sticke vpo some post of their houses, where it is baked by the heat of the sunne: so that when the matter of the house is any of his family wil eat thereof, they take it downe & eat it.

Then bryad.

They haue very faire tobacco, the earre whereof is two handfulls in length, and as bigge as a great Bulrush, and almost foure inches about where it is biggest. The stemme of straw seemeth to be almost as bigge as the litle finger of a mans hand, or litle lesse. The graines of this tobacco are as big as our prason, round also, and very white, and somewhat shining, like pearles that haue lost their colour. A most of the substance of them turned into flour, & maketh litle bryanne or none. I told in one eare two hundred & threescore graines. The eare is inclosed in three blades longer then it selfe, & of two ynches broad a piece. And by this fruitfulness the Sunne seemeth partly to recompence such grieues and molestations as they otherwile receiue by the feruent heate thereof. It is doubtlesse a worthy contemplation to consider the contrary effects of the Sunne: or rather the contrary passions of such things as receiue the influence of his beames, either to their hurt or benefite. Their drinke is either water, or the iuice that droppech from the cut branches of the barren Date trees, called Palmites. For either they hang great gourdes at the said branches euery evening, and let them so hang all night, or els they set them on the ground vnder the trees, that the droppech may fall therein. They say that this kinde of drinke is in taste much like unto wybe, but somewhat sweeter, and more ypleasant. They cut the branches euery evening, because they are feared by in the day by the heate of the Sunne. They haue also great Peanes as bigge as chestnuts, and very hard with a shell in the head of a huske.

Their tobacco.

The Sunne.

Their drinke.

Spay things more might be saide of the maners of the people, and of the wonders and monstrous things that are engendred in Affricke. But it shall suffice to haue saide thus much of such things as our men partly saue, and partly brought with them.

And whereas before speaking of the fruite of graines, I described the same to haue holes by the hole (as in beede it is, as it is brought hither) yet was I afterwarde enbourned, that those holes were made to put stringes or twigges through the fruite, thereby to hang them by to dry at the Sunne. They grow not past a foote and a halfe, or two foote from the ground, and are as redde as blood when they are gathered. The graines themselves are called of the Portugals Grana Paradis.

Grana.

At their comming home, the keeles of their shippes were maruelously ouergrowne with certaine shelles of two ynches length and more, as thicke as they coude stande, and of such bignesse that a man might put his thumme in the mouthes of them. They certainly affirme that in these there groweth a certaine slimie substance, which at the length slipping out of the shell and falling in the sea, becommeth those foules which we call Barnacles. The like shelles haue bene seene in shippes returning from Ireland, but these shels were not past halfe an inch in length. Of the other that came from Guinea, I saue the Pyrmose lying in the Docke, and in maner covered with the said shelles, which in my iudgement should greatly hinder her sayling. Their shippes were also in many places eaten with the wommes called Bromas or Bissas, whereof mention is made in the Decades. These creepe betwene the plankes, which they eate though in many places.

Shelles that ricuise to shipps.

Barnacles.

Bromas. Bissas.

Among other things that chaficed to them in this voyage, this is worthy to be noted, that where as they sailed thither in seven weekes, they could returne in no lesse space then twentis weekes. The cause whereof they say to be this: That about the coast of Cabo Verde, the winde is euer at the East, by reason whereof they were enforced to saile farre out of their course into the maine Ocean, to finde the winde at the West to bring them home. There died of our men at this last voyage about twentie and foure, whereof many died at their returne into the clyme of the colde regions, as betwene the Islands of Azores and England. They brought with them certaine blacke slaues, whereof some were tall and strong men, and could wel agree with our meates and drinckes. The colde and moyst ayre doth somewhat offend them. Yet doubtlesse men that are borne in hotte Regions, may better abide colde, then men that are borne in colde Regions may abide heate, for almost as vehement heate resolucth the radicall moysture of mens bodies, as colde constraincth and prestreth the same.

The beach of our men.

Blacke shippes brought into England. Colde may be better abiden then heate.

This is also to be considered as a secret worke of nature, that throughout al Affricke vnder the Equinortiall line, and neere about the same on both sides, the regions are extreme hotte, and the people very blacke. Whereas contrarily such regions of the West Indies as are vnder the same line are very temperate, and the people neither blacke, nor with curlde and thoz wooll on their beaues, as haue they of Affricke, but of the colour of an Olive, with long and blacke beare on their beaues: the cause of which variete is declared in diuers places in the Decades.

It is also worthy to be noted that some of them that were at this voyage take note that in that they outtooke the course of the Spanne, so that they had it from them at noone, the 11th. day of March. And to haue said thus much of these voyages, it may suffice.

The first voyage made by M. William Towrson Merchant of London, to the coast of Guinea, with two Shippes, in the yeere 1555.

September.



Upon monday the 30. day of September we departed from the Isle of Wight, out of the haven of Newport with 2. good shippes, the one called the Hart the other the Hinde, both of London, and the Masters of them were John Ralphe, and William Carter, for a voyage to be made vnto the Riuer de Sellos in Guinea, and to other haunts there about.

October.

It fell out by the varietie of winde, that it was the 14. day of October before we could fetch Dartmouth: and being there arrived we continued in that roade six dayes, and the 20. of October we warpe out of the haven, & set saile directing our course towards the South-west, and the next morning we were runne by estimation 30. leagues.

The 21. we suppose we ranne 36. leagues, the 22. 40. leagues, the 23. 20. leagues, the 24. but 12. by reason of the foule weather, and change of winde.

The 25. day wee ranne about 20. leagues, the 26. about 12. and all the night laye at trie with much raine and foule weather.

The 27. the winde and seas were high, yet we made some way.

The 28. day the Hinde pooye brake with a sea some what about the helme, whereupon William Carter & Richard Gresham with their marchants agreed to set saile, and go backe againe for England, and for that purpose hoysed by their saile, and we seeing it shote off a peere to cause them to tary for vs, and hoysed our fore saile and went to the: and they to lve vs that they would not keepe the seas, and required mee to agree that they might returne, and we also with them to amende the fault, whereunto I would not agree, seeing the fault to bee no worse then it was, and our Master John Ralphe offered them that hee himselfe would goe in her, which thing they hearing saide that they were as able to keepe her as hee, and William Carter made answer, that as long as the company would continue with him, he would not refuse the voyage: so we lay at hull about an houre after, and then it pleased God to sende vs a faire winde at North and by East, and we ranne our course that day by estimation 25. leagues.

The 29. day wee ranne about 40. leagues, the 30. about 50. and the 31. and last of October about 40.

November.

The first of November we found our selues to be in 31. degrees of latitude by the reckoning of our Master. This day we ranne about 40. leagues also.

The 2. day we ranne 36. leagues.

Porto Sancto.

The 3. day we had sight of Porto Sancto, which is a small Island lying in the sea, about three leagues long, and a league & a halfe broad, & is possessed by Portingals. It riseth as we came from the North North-west like two small hilles neere together. The East ende of the same Island is a high land like a saddle with a halley, which makes it to beare that soyme. The west ende of it is lower with certaine small round hillockes. This Island lyeth in thirtie and three degrees. The same day at 11. of the clocke wee rayled the Isle of Madera, which lyeth 12. leagues from Porto Sancto, towards the South-west: that Island is a faire Islande and fruitfull, and is inhabited by Portingals, it riseth afarre off like a great whole lande and high. By thire of the clocke this day at after noone we were thwart of Porto Sancto, and wee set our course South-west to leaue the Isle of Madera to the Eastward, as we did Porto Sancto. These two Islandes were the first land that we sawe since we left the coast of England. About 3. of the clocke after midnight we were thwart of Madera, within three leagues of the West ende of it, and by meanes of the high hilles there, we were becalmed: We suppose we ranne this day and night 30. leagues.

Madera.

The fourth day wee laye becalmed vnder the Isle of Madera, vntill one of the clocke at after noone, and then the winde comming into the East, wee went our course, and ranne that day 15. leagues.

Tenerif.

The 5. day we ranne 15. leagues more.

The 6. day in the morning we rayled the Isle of Tenerif, otherwisse called the Pike, because it is a very high Island with a pike vpon the toppe like a loose of Sugar. The same night we rayled the Isle of Palma, which is a high land also, and to the Westward of the Isle of Tenerif.

Palma.

The

...the me: That is, that  
...at noon the 11th day

...Towson Mar-  
...Shippes,

...from the Isle of Wight,  
...one called the Hart the  
...River de Seltes in Gui-

...4. day of October before  
...that made five dayes, and  
...rse towards the South-

...20. leagues, the 24. but  
...the night laye at Erie with

...the time, whereupon Wil-  
...me, and go backe againe  
...hoote off a peere to cause  
...to be that they would  
...and we also with them to  
...no worse then it was, and  
...er, which thing they hea-  
...ter made answers, that as  
...woopge: so we lay at hull  
...North and by East, and

...the 31. and last of October  
...itude by the reckoning of

...ing in the sea, about three  
...it such as we came from  
...de of the same Island is a  
...me. The west end of it is  
...and three degrees. The  
...12. leagues from Porto  
...ricall, and is inhabited by  
...pire of the clothe this day  
...Southwest, to leave the  
...Islands were the first land  
...after midnight we were  
...meanes of the high hills  
...leagues.

...one of the clocke at after-  
...e, and ranne that day 15.

...called the Pike, because it  
...The same night we saw  
...the Isle of Tenerif.

The

The 7. day we perceivd the Isle of Gomera, which is an Island standing betwix Tenerif and  
Palma, about 12. leagues Eastward from Palma, and 8. leagues Westward from Tenerif: and  
for feare of being becalmed with the Isle of Tenerif, we left both it, and Gomera to the Eastward  
of us, and went betwixt Palma and Gomera. We ranne this day and night 30. leagues.

Note that these Islands be 60. leagues from Madera, and that there are 3. Islands more to the  
Westward of Tenerif, named the Grand Canaria, Forteventura, & Lanceroc, of which Islands  
we came not in sight: they be inhabited by Spaniards.

This day also we had sight of the Isle of Ferro, which is to the Southward 12. leagues from  
the other Islands, and is possessed by Spaniards. All this day and night by reason of the winde  
wee could not double the point of the Isle of Ferro, except wee should have gone to the West-  
ward of it which had bene much out of our course: therefore we kept about, and ranne backe five  
houres East North-east to the ende we might double it upon the next boopse, the winde continu-  
ing South-east, which both we bene often seized upon that coast by any travellers: for the winde  
contineth there for the most part North-east, and East North-east: so upon the other boopse by the  
next boopage we were in a manner with the Island, and had room enough to double the same.

The 8. day we kept our course as neere the winde as we could, because that our due course to  
fetch the coast of Barbary, was South-east and by East, but by the scant winde we could not goe  
our due course, but went as neere it as we could, and ranne this day and night 27. leagues.

The 9. day we ranne 30. leagues, the 10. 25. leagues, the 11. 24.

The 12. day we saw a faile under our Lee, which was as we thought a fisherman, so that we  
went downe to have spoken with him, but within one houre there fell such a foggie, that we could  
not see the shippe nor one of us the other: we shot off divers pieces to the Hinde, but she heard them  
not: at after noone the shot off a piece which wee heard, and made her answer with another: and  
within one halfe houre after the foggie brake up, and we were within 4. leagues of the shoare upon  
the coast of Barbarie, and were sounded and had 24. fathom water. The Barke also came roomie  
with us and there ancred by reason of the contrary winde. When we fell with the lande, we could  
not judge justly what part of the land it was; because the most part of that coast is lowe land, and  
no part to be judged of it but the forepart of the shoare, which is white like chalke or sande, and be-  
ing deep into the hard shoare: there immediately wee beganne to fish, and founde great store of a  
kinde of fish which the Portugals commonly fish for upon that coast; which they call Pergosles,  
the Frenchmen call them Saders, and our men, salt water bycames. Before the clearing up of  
the foggie, the shippe which we followed shapen us such a course that wee could see her no more,  
by reason of our shooting off to finde the Hinde againe. This part of the coast of Barbarie, by  
our Pilots reckoning is about 126. leagues to the Eastward of the rivier del Oro.

Rivier del Oro

The 13. day in the after noone wee spied a saile coming towards us, which wee judged  
to be the saile that wee sawe the day before, and as soone as wee spied him we raised the Hinde  
to way her ancre and to goe towards him, and manned out our Schiffe in like case to laye him  
aboard, to discern what hee was, and we our selves within halfe an houre after wayed also:  
but after the saile had espied us, he kept about, and turned backe againe, and shortly after there  
fell such another foggie, that wee could not see him: which foggie continued all that night, so  
that we were constrained to leave the chace. This after noone the winde came about, and we  
went our course South-west, and by West, to goe cleare off the coast, and we ranne that night 16.  
leagues.

The fourteenth day in the morning was very foggie: but about twelke a clocke wee espied  
a Caruell of 60. ranne which was fishing, and we sent our Schiffe to him with five men, and all  
without any weapon saving their Dares. The Caruell for halfe let slippe her ancre, and see  
saile; and they seeing that, fearing that they should not fetch her, woulde cry for no weapons, and  
in the ende overtook the Caruell, and made her to strike saile, and brought her away, although  
they had foureteene or sixteen men aboard, every man his weapon, but they had not the heart  
to resist our men. After they were come to us, they let fall their ancre, for wee had cast ancre be-  
cause the winde was not good: I caused then the Schiffe to come for mee, and I went aboard of  
them to see that no harme should be done to them, nor to take any thing but that which they  
might spare us for our money. So we tooke of them three Capnets of figges, two small pees of  
ape, 2. pees of water soure hogged heads of salt fish which they had taken upon the coast, and cer-  
taine stey fish which they did not esteeme, because there is such store upon that coast, that in an  
houre and sometime lesse, a man may take as much fish as will suffice threete men a day.  
In these things, and for some wine which wee byanke aboard of them, and ches of foure great  
cannes which they sent aboard of our Schippes, I payed them twentie and seven Pilsolers,

A Caruell too  
ken.

Great store of  
fish upon the  
coast of Bar-  
barie.

which was twice as much as they willingly would have taken; and so let them goe to their ancre and cable which they had let slippe, and got it againe by our helpe. After this we set saile, but the wind caused us to ancre againe about 12 leagues off the river Del oro, as the Portugals tolde vs. There were 5 Canoes more in this place, but when they came vs, they made all away for feare for vs.

The Tropike of Cancer is 23. and a halfe.

The 15. day we rode still because of the winde. The 16. day we set saile and ranne our course 40. leagues. This day by the reckoning of our Pilots, we were right under the Tropike of Cancer. The 17. day we ranne 25. leagues with in sight for the most part of the coast of Barbarie.

Cape Blanco.

The 18. day we ranne 20. leagues, and at 12. of the clocke by the reckoning of our Pilots we were thwart of Cape Blanco.

Cape Verde.

The 19. day we ranne our course 30. leagues. The 20. day we ranne 26. leagues, the 21. 34. leagues, and the 22. 30. leagues. And this 22. day our Pilots reckoned vs to be thwart of Cape Verde.

8. Degreers and a halfe. December.

The 23. day we ranne our course 28. leagues, the 24. 25. leagues, the 25. 12. leagues, the 26. 12. leagues, the 27. 15. leagues, the 28. by reason we were becalmed, but 3. leagues, the 29. 25. leagues, the 30. 8. leagues; and this day at 12. of the clocke, we found our selues to be in 8. degreers and a halfe of latitude.

The first of December we ranne 20. leagues, the 2. day being becalmed, but 4. leagues, the 3. day 16. leagues.

The 4. day we had terrible thunder and lightning, with exceeding gre at gusts of raine called Ternados, which continued not about halfe an houre; we ranne our course 28. leagues.

The 5. day we ranne 20. leagues, the 6. day 8. leagues by reason of variable winde, the 7. day but 4. leagues.

The 8. day we had more thunder and lightning, and we ranne about 6. leagues. The 9. day we ranne 8. leagues, the 10. day 10. leagues, the 11. day 12. leagues.

The coast of Guinea.

The 12. day we had sight of the land of Guinea, which as soone as we sawe we halled into the lande North-east; and about 12. of the clocke at night we were nere the shoare within less then 2. leagues; and then we kept about and sounded, and founde 18. fadom water. Afterwards we saw a light towards the shoare, which we thought to have bene a shippe, and thereby judged it to be the river de Sestos, which light as soone as we espied, we came to an ancre and armed our toppes, and made al things ready to fight, because we doubted that it might be some Portugall or French man; this night we remained at an ancre, but in the morning we sawe no man, onely we espied 4. rocks about 2. English miles from vs, one great rock, and the three other small ones, which when we sawe, we supposed that the light came from the shoare, and so weaped and set saile East South-east along the shoare, because the Piloter did not well knowe the place, but thought that we were not so farre to the East as the river de Sestos.

This land all along is a low land, and full of very high trees all along the shoare, so that it is not possible to knowe the place that a man doeth fall to, excepte it be by the latitude: In these 24. houres I thinke we ranne 16. leagues, for all the night we had a great gale as we were under saile, and had withall stoye of thunder and lightning.

The 13. day for the most part we ranne East South-east all along the shoare, within 2. leagues alwayes of the same, and founde the land all as at the first, full of woods and great rocks harde above the shoare, and the billowes beating so foze, that the Ras brake upon the shoare as white as snowe, and the water mounted so high that a man might easily discern it foure leagues off in such wise that no boate could land there. Thus we ranne untill twelve of the clocke, and then theyooke I summe after judged them selves to be 24. leagues past the river de Sestos to the Eastward, by reason whereof we halke into the shoare within two English miles, and there ancreed and founde fifteene fadom water, and all off from the shoare the sea so smooth, that we might well have rode by an Hawker. All that after noone we reinnued our boate and made her a saile, to the ende that she might goe along by the shoare to seeke some place to water in; for we could not goe backe againe to the river de Sestos, because the winde blowes alwayes contrary, and the current runneth alwayes to the Eastward, which was also against vs.

The Current sitting Eastward.

The fourteenth day we set saile and went backe againe along the coast, and sent our boates two adooze the shoare to seeke a watering place, which they founde about twelve of the clocke, and we being sure that the sea, twice with divers boates of the Countrey, small, long and narrow, and in every boate one man, and no more, to the game their bread which they beare, and were very glad of it. About foure of the clocke our boates came to vs with fresh water; and this night we

we ancre  
The  
all the  
found  
English  
then  
where  
uer de  
ly betw  
that a  
it come  
wers fal  
somew  
The  
and go  
ter of a  
nature,  
on their  
and the  
skinn  
women  
the mot  
The  
nels, &  
lephan  
Hary;  
maxim  
The  
ry for  
made  
howe  
day we  
Cape  
was so  
Lould  
we in  
boate  
obvie  
and the  
a thre  
that w  
and th  
with g  
parde  
so. In  
woke  
when  
ner, fu  
A  
see no  
none,  
which  
baker  
River  
The  
beaut

to let them goe to their an-  
 After this we set saile,  
 el oro, as the Portingals  
 us, they made all away  
 by the reckoning of our  
 ranne 25. leagues with  
 reckoning of our Pilots we  
 o leagues. And this 22.  
 the 25. 12. leagues, the 26.  
 ut 3. leagues, the 29. 25.  
 le lies to be in 8. degrees  
 ned, but 4. leagues, the 3.  
 great gulfs ofaine called  
 the 18. leagues.  
 variable winds, the 7. day  
 6. leagues.  
 12. leagues.  
 the same we halled into the  
 the shoare within lesse then  
 Afterwards we saw  
 thereby we judge it to be the  
 and armed our toppes.  
 some Portingal of French  
 man, one of the other 4.  
 other small ones, which  
 wayes and set saile East  
 place, but thought that we  
 the shoare, so that it is  
 by the latitude: In these  
 at gale as we were under  
 shoare, within 2. leagues  
 us and great rocks harde  
 upon the shoare as white  
 me it foure leagues off in  
 ue of the clocke, and then  
 ver de Sefos to the Cast  
 5. miles, and there ancred  
 oth, that we might well  
 and made her a saile, so the  
 in: for we could not goe  
 contrary, and the current  
 coast, and sent our boates  
 out the side of the clocke,  
 rep, small, long and nar-  
 ch they did vnto, and were  
 sh water: and this a night  
 we

we ancred against a F. Act.  
 The 15. day we wayed and set sail to goe neere the shoare, and with our leade we sounded  
 all the way, and found sometimes rocks, and sometimes faire grounde, and as the shallowest  
 found seven fadoms at wayes at the least. So in line we sounde 7. fadom and a halfe within an  
 English mile of the shoare, and there we ancred, in a manner before the mouth of the Riuer, and  
 then we sent our boates into the Riuer for water, which went about a mile within the Riuer,  
 where they had very good water. This Riuer lyeth by estimation eight leagues beyond the Ri-  
 uer de Sefos, and is called in the Carde, Riuer S. Vincent, but it is so harde to finde, that a boate  
 being within halfe a mile of it, shall not be able to discern that it is a Riuer: by reason that at direct-  
 ly before the mouth of it, there lyeth a ledge of rocks, which is much broader then the Riuer, so  
 that a boate must runne in along the shoare a good way betwixt the rocks, and the shoare before  
 it come to the mouth of the Riuer, and being within it, it is a great Riuer and diuers other Ri-  
 uers falls into it: The going into it is somewhat ill, because that at the entering, the seas doe goe  
 somewhat high, but being once within it it is as calme as the Thames.

There are neere to the sea upon this Riuer diuers inhabitants, which are mightie bigge men  
 and goe all naked except some thing before their priuie partes, which is like a clothe about a quar-  
 ter of a yerde long made of the barke of trees, and yet it is like a clothe: for the barke is of that  
 nature, that it will spinne small after the maner of linnen. Some of them also weare the like by-  
 on their heades being painted with diuers colours, but the most part of them goe bare headed,  
 and their heades are clipped and shorne of diuers sortes, and the most part of them haue their  
 skiuir of their bodies rased with diuers workes, in maner of a leather Jerkin. The men and  
 women goe so alike, that one cannot knowe a man from a woman but by their heades, which in  
 the most part be very foule and long, hanging downe lowe like the bodde of a goatte,

This same morning we went into the Riuer with our Skiffe, and carried certaine basons, ma-  
 nels, &c. And there we tooke that day one hogthead and 100. li. waight of graine, and two O-  
 lephants teeth at a reasonable good reckoning: We solde them both basons, and Spanellios, and  
 Margarets, but they desired most to haue basons: For the most part of our basons we had by esti-  
 mation about 30. li. for a peece, and for an Olyphants tooth of 30. li. waight, we gaue them 6.

The 16. day in the morning we went into the Riuer with our Skiffe, and tooke some of euery  
 sort of our Spatchhandie with vs, and shewed it to the Negroes, but they esteemed it not, but  
 made light of it, and also of the basons, Spanellios and Margarets, which yesterday they did buy:  
 howbeit for the basons they would haue giuen vs some graines, but to no purpose, so that this  
 day we tooke not by estimation about one hundred pound waight of graine, by means of their  
 Captaine, who would suffer no man to sell any thing but through his handes, and at his price: hee  
 was so subtil, that for a bason hee would not giue 15. pounde waight of graine, and sometimes  
 would offer vs small distils, whereas before wee had baskets full, and when hee sawe that  
 wee would not take them in contentment, the Captaine departed, and caused all the rest of the  
 boates to depart, thinking belike that we would haue followed them, and haue giuen them their  
 owne askings. But after that we perceiued their fetch, we wayed our Grapnel and went away,  
 and then we went on lande in a small Towne to see the fashions of the Countrey, and there came  
 a threelooke of them about vs, and at the first they were afraid of vs, but in the ende perceiuing  
 that we did no hurt, they would come to vs and take vs by the hande and bee familiar with vs,  
 and then we went into their Townes, which were like to twentie small houels, all covered ouer  
 with great leaues and baggage, and all the sides open, and a scaffolde vnder the house about a  
 yerde high, where they worke many pretie thinges of the barkes of trees, and there they lye al-  
 so. In some of their houses they worke yon and make faire bartes, and diuers other thinges to  
 worke their boates, and other things withall, and the women worke as well as the men. But  
 when we were there diuers of the women to the we vs pleasure daunced and sung after their ma-  
 ner, full ill to our eares. Their song was thus:  
 Sakere, fakere, ho, ho, Sakere, fakere, ho, ho.

And with these wordes they leape and daunce and clappe their handes. Besides wee coulde  
 see none that they had, but two goattes, small dogges, and small heimes: other beastes wee sawe  
 none. After that wee had well marked all thinges we departed and went aboarde our Shippes,  
 which thing the Captaine of the other to wone perceiuing, sent 2. of his seruants in a boate with a  
 basket of graine, and made vs signes that if when we had slepe we would come againe into their  
 Riuer, we should haue store of graine, and so shewed vs his graine and departed.

The 17. day in the morning because we thought that the Negroes would haue done something  
 because the captaine sent for vs, I required the Spatter to goe on shoare, and sent the rest of our  
 Spatchants

Riuer S. Vin- cent.

cloth made of the barke of trees.

The Negroes race their shuines.

Graines of Guinea, Spanellios, Margarets.

The description of their Townes and houses.

merchants with him, and caried aboarde my selfe by reason that the last dayes affirmed our things so litle: so when the Spasser & the rest came into the river, the Capitaine with diuers others came to them, and broughte graines with them, and after that hee sawe that I was not there, hee made signes to know where I was, and they made signes to him againe that I was in the ship: and then he made signes to know who was Capitaine by the name of Diago, for so they call their Capitaine, and they pointed to the Spasser of the Shippe: then hee beganne to shewe his graines, but he held them so vntreasonably, that there was no profite to be made of them: which things the Spasser perceiuing, and seeing that they had no store of graines, came away, and tooke not above 50. pound waighe of graines. Then hee went a shoare to the litle towne where we were the day before, and one of them plucked a godw, wherewith the Negroes were offended, and came many of them to our men with their darts and great targets, and made signes to them to depart: which our men did, hauing but one bowe and 2. or 3. swoodes, and went aboarde the boate and came away from them: and as soon as they were come aboarde we wayed & set saile, but the winde was off the sea, so that we could not get one cleare of certaine rocks, & therefore we came to an ancre againe.

Diago the name  
of a Capitaine.

The latitude  
of S. Vincents  
river is 4. deg  
rees and a  
halfe.  
The sides of  
receding length.

Long peale  
stalkes.

Long two  
minded beastes.

This river is called Riuer S. Vincent, standing in 4. degrees and a halfe, & it ebberth and floweth there euery 12. houres, but not much water when it ebberth the most: while we were there, it ebbed 1. fadome and a halfe of water.

This countrey as farre as we could perceiue is altogether woody, and all strange trees, whereof we know none, and they were of many sorts, with great leaues like great dockes, which bee higher then any man is able to reach the toppes of them.

There are certaine peason by the sea side, which growe vpon great and very long stalkes, one of the stalkes I measured and found it 27. paces long, and doeth grow vpon the sand like to trees, and that so neere the sea, that sometimes the sea floweth into the woods as wee might perceiue by the water markes.

The trees and all things in this place grow continually greene. Diuers of the women haue such exceeding long beastes, that some of them will lay the same vpon the ground and lie downe by them, but all the women haue not such beastes.

At this place all the day the winde bloweth off the sea, and all the night off the lande, but wee found it to differ sometimes, which our Spasser marueled at.

This night at 9. of the clocke the winde came by at the East, which ordinarily about that time was wont to come out of the North North west off the shoare: yet we wayed and halled off South with that winde all night into the sea, but the next morning we halled in againe to the lande, and tooke in 6. Tunnes of water for our Shippe, and I thinke the Hindeooke in as much.

I could not perceiue that here was any golde, or any other good things for people be so wilde and idle, that they giue themselves to seeke out steeching: if they would take paines they might gather great store of graines, but in this place I could not perceiue 2. tunne.

There are many foules in the countrey, but the people will not take the paines to take them. I obserued some of their wordes of speech, which I thought good here to set downe.

The language  
about the Ri-  
uer of S. Vinc-  
cent.

Bezow, bezow,  
Manegeate afoye,  
Crocow afoye,  
Zeramme afoye,  
Beggesacke,  
Begge come,  
Borke,  
Coutrecke,  
Veede,  
Brekeke,  
Diago,

Is their salutation,  
Graines nough,  
Hennes nough,  
Here you nough?  
Giue me a knife.  
Giue me beead,  
Holde your peare,  
He lye,  
But sooth, or emptie,  
Rowe.

Their Capitaine, and some call him Dabo, These and other wordes they speake very thicke, and oftentimes recite one word three times together, and at the last time longer then at the two first.

The 18. day towards night, as we were sayling along the coast, we met with certaine boats in the sea, & the men shewed vs that there was a riuer thwart of vs, where there were graines to be sold, but we thought it not good to carie there, least the other ships should get before vs. This riuer had lying before it 3. great rocks, and 5. small rocks, one great tree, and a litle creet right by the riuer, which in height exceeded all the rest: we halled this night along the coast 10. leagues.

The 19. day as we coasted the shoare, about twelue of the clocke there came out to vs 3. boates to tell vs that they had graines, & brought some with them for a shew, but we could not carie there.

¶

last day hee affirmed our  
captaine with diuers others  
that I was not there, hee  
said that I was in the ship:  
Diago, say to they call their  
name to the we his graines,  
of them: which things the  
way, andooke not about  
me where we were the day  
we offended, and came many  
to them to depart: which  
the boate and came away  
e, but the winde was off the  
came to an ancre againe,  
halfe, & it ebbed and flow-  
: while we were there, it

and all strange trees, where  
the great rockes, which bee

great and very long stalkes,  
grow upon the sand like to  
woods as wee might per-

sons of the women haue such  
grounde and lie downe by

to get off the lande, but wee

ordinarily about that time  
sailed and halled off South  
n againe to the lande, and  
ke in as much.

ings for people be so wilde  
the paines they might ge-  
ne,  
the paines to take them.  
e to set downe.

in Dabo. These and other  
times together, and at the

met with certaine boats in  
there were graines to be  
get before vs. This riuer  
a little tree right by the ri-  
coast 10. leagues.

we came out to vs 3. boates  
we could not carie there.

we

we proceeded along the coast, & ankered by the shoare all the night, and ran this day 10. leagues.

The twentieth day, the Spinde hauing ankered by vs amongst rockes, and soule ground, lost a small anker. At noone, as we passed along the coast, there came forth a Negro to vs, making signes, that if we would goe a shoare, wee should haue graines; and where we ankered at night, there came another to vs, and brought graines, and shewed vs them; and made signes that wee should tarp, and made a fire vpon the land in the night, meaning thereby to tel vs where we should land, and so they did in diuers other places vpon the coast, where they saue vs to anker.

In all the places that we haue ankered, since we came from our toatring place, we haue found the tide alwaies running to the Westwards, and all along the coast many rockes hard aboard the shoare, and many of them a league of the shoare or more, we ran this day twelue leagues.

The 21. day, although we ranne all day with a good gale of winde, yet the tides came so foze out of the coast, that we were not able to runne about six leagues: and this day there came some Negroes to vs, as there had done other times.

The 22. we ranne all day and night, to double a point, called Dos palmas, and ranne sixteene leagues.

The 23. day, about thre of the clocke, we were thwart of the point, and before we came to the westermost part of it, we saue a great ledge of rockes, which lie west from the Cape, about thre leagues, and a league or more from the land. Shortly after, we had sight of the Eastermost part of the Cape, which lieth foure leagues from the Westermost part, and vpon the very corner thereof, lie two greene places, as it were closes, and to the westwards of the Cape, the land parted from the Cape, as it were a Baye, whereby it may well be knowen. Foure leagues more beyond that, there lieth a head land in the sea, and about two leagues beyond the head lande, there goeth in a great Bay, as it were a riuer, before which place we ankered all that night, which we did, least in the night we should ouerrunne a riuer, where the last yere, they had all their Elephants teeth.

This Cape Dos palmas, lieth vnder foure degrees and a halfe, and betwixt the said Cape, and the riuer de Sestos, is the greatest store of graines to be had, and being past the said Cape, there is no great store els where.

Where we ankered this night, we found that the tide, which before ranne alwaies to the westward, from this Cape runneth all to the Eastward: this day we ranne some 16. leagues.

The 24. day running our course, about eight of the clocke there came forth to vs certaine boates, which brought with them small egges, which were soft without shels, and they made vs signes, that there was within the land fresh water, and Goates: and the Spatter thinking that it was the riuer which we sought, cast anker, and sent the boate on shoare, with one that knewe the riuer, and comming neere the shoare, he perceived that it was not the riuer, and so came backe againe, and went along the shoare, with their oares and saile, and wee waied, and ranne along the shoare also: and being thirtene leagues beyond the Cape, the Spatter perceived a place, which he iudged to be the riuer, when we were in deede two miles short past it: yet the boate came from the shoare, and they that were in her, said, that there was no riuer: notwithstanding we came to an anker, and the Spatter and I tooke five men with vs in the boate, and when he came neere the shoare, he perceived that it was the same riuer which he did seeke: so we rowed in, and found the entrance very ill, by reason that the sea goeth so high; and being entred, diuers boates came to vs, and shewed vs that they had Elephants teeth, and they brought vs one about eight pound, and a litle one of a pound, which we bought: then they brought certaine teeth to the riuer side, making signes, that if the next day we would come againe, they would sell vs them: so we gaue vnto two Capitaines, to either of them a manillio, and so we departed, and came aboard, and sent out the other boate to another place, where certaine boates that came into the sea, made vs signes that there was fresh water: and being come thither, they found a towne, but no riuer, yet the people brought them fresh water, and shewed them an Elephants tooth, making signes that the next day they would sell them teeth, and so they came aboard.

This riuer lieth by the Carde thirtene leagues from the Cape Dos palmas, and there lieth to the westwards of the same, a rocke about a league in the sea, and the riuer it selfe hath a point of land comming out into the sea, where vpon groweth five trees, which may well be discerned two or thre leagues of, comming from the westward, but the riuer can not be perceived w'ill such time, as a man be hard by it, and then a man may perceiue a litle towne on each side the riuer, and to each towne there belongeth a Capitaine. The riuer is but small, but the water is good and fresh.

Two miles beyond the riuer, where the other towne is, there lieth another point into the sea, which is greene like a close, and not about six trees vpon it, which growe out of them from the other,

The tides and nature of the shoare.

The point of Palmas.

That was the yere 1554.

The tides running eastward.

A towne.

other, whereby the coast may well be knowne: for along all the coast that we haue hitherto sailed by, I haue not seene so much bare land.

In this place, and three or foure leagues to the westward of it, all along the shoare, there grow many Palme trees, whereof they make their wine De Palma. These trees may easily be knowne almost two leagues off, for they be very high, and white bodied, and straight, and be biggest in the middes: they haue no boughes, but onely a round bush in the toppe of them: and at the toppe of the same trees, they haue a hole, and there they hang a bottell, and the ioyce of the tree runneth out of the said hole into the bottell, and that is their wine.

*Cape Tres  
Puntas.*

From the Cape Dos palmas, to the Cape Tres puntas, there are 100. leagues: and to the port where we purpose to make sales of our cloth beyond the Cape Tres puntas, forty leagues.

Note: that betwixt the riuer De Sestos, and the Cape Dos palmas, is the place where all the graines be gathered.

The language of the people of this place, as farre as I could perceiue, differeth not much from the language of those, which dwell where we watered before: but the people of this place be more gentle in nature then y other, & goodlier men: their building & apparel is all one with the others.

Their desire in this place was most of all to haue Spanillios and Spargacets, as for the rest of our things, they did little esteeme them.

The 25. day, being the day of the natiuitie of Christ, we sent our boates and skiffes for water for our shippes, which that day filled as much water, as we had caskes emptye, which was about two tunnes for vs, and one tunne for the Spane.

*Their manner  
of swearing by  
the water of  
the sea.*

About nine of the clocke, there came boates to vs forth, from both of the places aforesaide, and brought with them certaine teeth, and after they had caused me to swear by the water of the sea, that I would not hurt them, they came aboard our shippe three of foure of them, and we gaue them to eate of all such things as we had, and they did eate and drinke of all things, as well as we our selues. Afterwardes we bought all their teeth, which were in number foureteene, and of those foureteene there were ten small: afterwardes, they departed, making vs signes, that the next day we should come to their towines.

*Two towines.*

The 26. day, because we would not trifle long at this place, I required the Spaster to goe w<sup>th</sup> to one of the towines, and to take two of our marchants with him, and I my selfe went to the other, and tooke one with me, because these two towines stand three miles asunder. To these places we caried somewhat of euery kind of marchandize that we had: and he had at the one towine, nine teeth, which were but small, and at the other towine where I was, I had eleuen, which were also not bigger, and we left aboard with the Spaster, certaine manillios, wherewith he bought twelue teeth aboard the shippe, in our absence: and hauing bought these of them, we perceiued that they had no more teeth: so in the place where I was, one brought to me a small goate, which I bought, and to the Spaster of the other place, they brought five small hennes, which he bought also, and after that, we sawe there was nothing els to be had, we departed, and by one of the clocke, we met aboard, and then waied, and went East our course eightene leagues still within sight of land.

The 27. day we ranne twentie leagues,

The 28. the wind varied, and we ranne into the sea, and the wind comming againe off the sea, we fell with the land againe, and the first of the land which we raised, shewed as a great red cliffe round, but not very high, and to the Eastward of that, another smaller red cliffe, and right about that, into the land a round hammoke, and greene, which we tooke to be trees. We ranne in these 24. houres, not about foure leagues.

The 29. day comming neere to the shoare, we perceiued the red cliffe aforesaide, to haue right vpon the top of it a great beape of trees, and all to the westward of it full of red cliffes, as farre as we could see, and all along the shoare, as well vpon the cliffes, as otherwise, full of wood: within a mile of the said great cliffe, there is a riuer to the Eastward, and no cliffes, that we could see, except one small cliffe, which is hard by it. We ranne this day and night, twelue leagues.

The winds that we had in this place, by the reportes of the people, and of those that haue bene there, haue not bene seene often, but in the night, at North off the land, & in the day South off the sea, and most commonly North west, and South west.

The 30. day, we made our way twentie leagues.

The 31. day, we went our course by the shoare Northward: this land is all along a low shoare, and full of wood, as all the coast is, for the most part, and no rockes. This morning came out many boates, which went a fishing, which be greater boates then those which we sawe before, so that in some of them there sate five men, but the fashion of the boates is all one. In the afternoone about three of the clocke, we had sight of a towine hard by the sea side, which our Pilots iudged to be 25. leagues

leagues



we have hitherto sail-  
ing the shore, there grow-  
s may easily be knowne  
be, and be biggest in the  
hem: and at the toppe of  
force of the tree runneth

leagues: and to the port  
was forty leagues.  
is the place where all the

differech not much from  
ple of this place be moze  
is all one with the others.  
garets, as for the rest of

tes and skiffes for water  
mpie, which was about

the places aforesaide, and  
re by the water of the sea,  
them, and we gaue them  
ings, as well as we our  
fourteene, and of those  
signes, that the next day

red the Spatter to goe  
ny selfe went to the other,  
ver. To these places we  
d at the one towne, nine  
eleven, which were also  
d with he bought twelve  
1, we perceined that they  
it goate, which I bought,  
ich he bought also, and at  
me of the clocke, we met  
within sight of land.

ming againe off the sea,  
wed as a great red cliffe  
ed cliffe, and right about  
rees. We ranne in these

aforesaide, to haue right  
l of red cliffes, as farre as  
ise, full of wood: within  
ffes, that we could see, ex-  
we lue leagues.

to of those that haue bene  
in the day South off the

is all along a low shoare,  
is morning came out ma-  
we sawe before, so that  
In the afternoon about  
Pilots iudged to be 25.  
leagues

leagues to the westwards of the Cape, Tres puntas. About foure of the clocke we met with many  
fisher boates, but none of them would come nere to vs, sauing two of whome we bought certaine  
fish.

Between these two Capes, we haue found the wind freest in the day, and specially about ten  
of the clocke, with great gales: the nightes we found calmest. In these 24. houres we made way  
thirteen leagues.

The first day of Januarie in the morning, we perceined the lande to rise higher then it did be- Januarie.  
fore, which our Pilots iudged to be the Cape, and halles in as nere to the land as they could:  
we ranne this day twenty leagues.

The second day in the morning, when we were come nere to the place, our Pilots perceined  
that it was not the Cape, as they thought it had bene: we made way this day but eight leagues.

The third day in the morning, we fell with the Cape Tres puntas, and in the night passed, as Cape Tres  
Puntas.  
our Pilots said, by one of the Pointingalls callies, which is eight leagues to the westwards of the  
Cape: upon the first sight of the Cape, we discerned it a very high land, and all growen over with  
trees, and comming nere to it, we perceined two head lands, as it were two Bayes betwix  
them, which opened right to the westward, and the uttermost of them is the Caserne Cape, there  
we perceined the middle Cape, and the Eastmost Cape: the middle Cape standeth not aboue  
a league from the west Cape, although the Caroe betwix them to be three leagues one from the  
other: and that middle Cape hath right before the point of it, a small rocke so nere to it, that it can  
not be discerned from the Cape, except a man be nere to the shoare, and vpon the same Cape  
standeth a great beape of trees, and when a man is thwart the same Cape, to the Eastward, there  
riseth hard by it a round greene hommoke, which commeth out of the maine.

The third Cape is about a league beyond the middle Cape, and is a high land like to the other  
Capes, and betwix the middle and the third commeth out a litle head or point of a land out of the  
maine, and diuers rocks hard aboard the shoare.

Before we came to the Capes, being about eight leagues off them, we had the lande South-  
east, and by East, and being past the Capes, the land runneth in againe East North-east.

About two leagues beyond the farthest Cape, there is a low glade about two miles long, and  
then the land riseth high againe, and diuers head lands rise one beyond another, and diuers rocks  
lie at the point of the first head land. The middell of these Capes, is the nearest to the South-  
wards, I meane further into the sea, then any of the other, so that being to the Eastward of it, it  
may be discerned farre off, and being so to the Eastward, it riseth with two small rockes.

This day we anchored for feare of ouerthooting a towne, called S. Johns. We ranne this day  
not aboue eight leagues. In the afternoon this day, there came a boate of the countrey from the  
shoare, with five men in her, and went along by vs, as we thought, to discern our flaggs, but they  
would not come nere vs, and when they had well looked vpon vs, they departed.

The fourth day in the morning, sailing by the coast, we espyed a ledge of rockes by the shoare,  
and to the westwards of them two great greene hills standing together, so that betwix them it  
was hollowe, like a saddle, and within the said rockes, the Spatter thought the aforesaid towne  
had stode, and therefore we manned our boates, and took with vs cloth, and other marchandize,  
and towe a shoare, but going along by the coast, we sawe that there was no towne, therefore we  
went aboard againe.

From these two hills aforesaid, about two leagues to the Eastward, lie out into the sea almost  
two miles, a ledge of rockes, and beyond that a great Bay, which runneth into the North North-  
westward, and the land in this place lieth North North-east along the shoare: but the uttermost  
point of the land in this place that we could see, lay North-east, and by East from vs.

After that we were with a small gale of wind runne past that uttermost head land, we sawe a  
great red cliffe, which the Spatter againe iudged to be the towne of S. Johns, and then weooke  
our boate with marchandise, and went thither, and when we came thither, we perceined that there  
was a towne vpon the toppe of the hill, and so we went toward it, and when we were hard by it,  
the people of the towne came together a great sort of them, and wauid vs to come in with a peece  
of cloth, and so we went into a very faire Baye, which lieth to the Eastward of the cliffe, wherupon  
on the towne standeth, and being within the cliffe, we let fall our graynell, and after that we had  
carried there a good space, they sent a boate aboard of vs, to shewe vs that they had golde, and they  
shew vs a peece about halfe a crowne weight, and required to knowe vs our measure, & our weight,  
that they might shew their Capaine thereof: and we gaue them a measure of two elles, and a  
weight of two Angels to shew vnto him, which theyooke, and went on shoare, and shew us  
to their Capaine, and then they brought vs a measure of two elles, one quarter and a halfe, and  
one

one cruasado weight of golde, making vs signes that so much they would giue, for the like measure, and kille they would not haue. After this, we tarried there about an houre, and when we sawe that they would doe no otherwise, and withall vnderstoode, that all the best places were before vs, we departed to our Shippes, and water, and ranne along the shoare, & went before with our boate, and hauing sailed about a league, we came to a point, where there lay forth a lodge of rocks, like to the others before spoken of, and being past that people, the spasser spere a place, which he said plainly was the towne of Don John: the night was come vpon vs, so that we could not well discern it, but we anchored as neere vnto the place as we could.

The towne of  
Don John.

The first day in the morning, we perceived it to be the same towne in deede, and we manned our boates, and went thither, and because that the last yeere the Portugals at that place tooke a way a man from them, and after shot at them with great bases, and did beate them from the place, wee let fall our grapnell almost a base (that is) of the shoare, and there we laye about two bowes, and no boates came to vs. Then certaint of our men, with the Indies boate, went into a Baye, which lieth to the Eastward of the Towne, and within that Baye, they found a goodly fresh river, and afterwards they came, and issued to vs also to come in, because they perceived the Negroes to come downe to that place, which we did: and immediately the Negroes came to vs, and made vs signes that they had golde, but none of them would come aboard our boates, neither could we perceive any boates that they had to come withall, so that we iudged that the Portugals had spoiled their boates, because we saw halfe of their towne destroyed.

After hauing staied there a good space, and seeing that they would not come to vs, thrust our boates heaves a shoare, being both well appointed, and then the Capitaine of the Towne came downe, being a graue man: and he came with his dart in his hand, and sixe tall men after him, & uery one with his dart, and his target, and their darts were all of yron, faire and sharpe, and there came another after them, which carried the Capitaine's shoule: we saluted him, and put off our caps, and botwed our selues, and he like one that thought well of himselfe, did not moue his cappe, nor scant botwed his body, and face him downe very solemnly vpon his shoule: but all his men put off their caps to vs, and botwed downe themselves.

He was clothed from the loines downe, with a cloath of that Countrey making, wrapped about him, and made fast about his loines with a girdle, and his cap of a certaine cloath of the Countrey also, and bare legges, and bare footed, and all bare about the loines, except his head.

His seruants, some of them had cloath about their loines, and some nothing but a cloath betwixt their legges, and made fast before, and behind, to their girdles, and caps of their owne making, some like a basker, and some like a great wide purse of beastes skinne.

Their weapons

All their cloath, cordes, girdles, fishing lines, and all such like things which they haue, they make of the bark of certaine trees, and thereof they can worke things very prettily, and yron worke they can make very fine, of all such things as they doe occupie, as darts, subookes, hooking yrons, yron heades, and great daggers, some of them as long as a wood kniue, which be of both sides exceeding sharpe, and bended after the manner of Turkie blades, and the most part of them haue hanging at their left side one of those great daggers.

Their targets be made of such pills as their cloath is made of, and very closely wrought, and they be in forme square, and very great, and somewhat longer then they be broad, so that kneeling downe, they make their targets to couer their whole body. Their bowes be short, and of a prettie strength, as much as a man is able to drawe with one of his fingers, and the string is of the bark of a tree, made flat, and about a quarter of an ynche broad: as for their arrowes, I haue not as yet seene any of them, for they had wrapped them vp close, and because I was busie, I coulde not stande about it, to haue them open them. Their golde also they worke very well.

When the Capitaine was set, I sent him two elles of cloath, and two basons, and gave them vnto him, and he sent againe for a waite of the same measure, and I sent him a weight of two Angels, which he would not take, neither would he suffer the towne to buy any thing, but the basons of brasse: so that we solde that day 74. basons, vnto the men of the towne, for about halfe an Angel weight, one with another, and nine white basons, which we solde for a quarter of an Angel a peece, or thereabouts.

We shewed them all our other things which we had, but they did not esteeme them.

About two of the cloath, the Capitaine, who did depart in the morning from vs, came againe, and brought with him to present me withall, a henne, and two great rootes, which I receiued, and after made me signes, that the countrey would come to his towne that night, and bring great store of golde, which in deed about 4. of the cloath they did: for there came about 100. men by day 3.

Capitaines,

Captaine  
stayed  
saw down  
one fort  
gill, and  
which by  
it grew  
weight  
for his  
The

tingals,  
and land  
the night  
tingals,  
commen  
and mo  
which to  
his waig  
making  
giuen th  
iudged t  
came ba  
boates h  
depart,  
elles, an  
the boat  
and the  
they wa  
for the  
and Rich  
and two  
and mea  
point.

The  
dances,  
many of  
to fetch  
but goe  
delicious  
so they  
made to  
Why  
gaffe, w  
three ou  
noone, b  
oune of  
This

and was  
made th  
to be vs,  
two ven  
and the  
ther, th  
to his t  
the last

The  
we had  
there is

to giue, for the like mea-  
 sure, and when we saw  
 best places were before us,  
 went before with our boate,  
 to fetch a lodge of rocks,  
 after spied a place, which he  
 vs, so that we could not see

deede, and we manned our  
 at that place tooke away  
 them from the place, we  
 about two hundred, and no  
 went into a Baye, which is  
 goodly fresh river, and as  
 perferred the Negroes to  
 we came to vs, and made us  
 ntes, neither could we see  
 the Portugals had spoken

not come to vs, thrust our  
 caine of the Towne came  
 five tall men after him, &  
 faire and Garpe, and there  
 him, and put off our caps,  
 not noose his cappe, nor  
 le: but all his men put off

making, wrapped about  
 fine cloth of the Countrey  
 pe his head.

being but a cloth betwixt  
 ps of their owne making,

which they haue, they make  
 rectly, and yon woyle they  
 kes, hooking yrons, yron  
 be of both sides exceed-  
 part of them haue haue

very closely wrought, and  
 when they be broad, so that  
 their bowes be short, and of  
 grees, and the stringe is of  
 for their arrows, I haue  
 and because I was bo-  
 we also they woyle ve-

hundred, and gave them  
 me him a weight of two  
 up any thing, but the ba-  
 tone, for about halfe an  
 for a quarter of an Angel

extreme them.  
 g from vs, came againe,  
 notes, which I receiued,  
 at night, and being great  
 about 100. men by day 3.  
 Captaines,

Captaines, well appointed with their wares, and bowes, and when they came to vs, every man  
 stiked vnto his wate upon the shoare, and the Captaines had foolcs brought them, and they  
 face downe, and sent a young man aboard of vs, which brought a measure with him of an ell, and  
 one fourth part, and one extreme part, and he would haue that foure times for a waight of one An-  
 gell, and twelue graines: I offered him two elles, as I had done before for two Angels weight,  
 which he esteemed nothing, but still stucke at his foure measures of of said: yet in the ende, when  
 it grew very late, and I made him signes that I would depart, he came to foure elles, for the  
 weight abovesaid, and other wise he would not deale, and so we departed. This day we tooke  
 for balons the ounces and a halfe, and one eight part.

The first day in the morning we manned our boates, and the shiffe well, for feare of the Por-  
 tingals, which the last yeere had taken away a man from the other shippes, and went on shoare,  
 and landed, because they had no boates to come to vs, and so the young man which was with vs  
 the night before, was sent aboard, who seemed to haue dealt and bargained before with the Por-  
 tingals, for he could speake a litle Portugall, and was perfect in weightes, and measures: at his  
 coming, he offered vs as he had done before, one Angell, and twelue graines, for foure elles,  
 and more he would not giue, and made signes; that if we would not take that, we should depart,  
 which we did: but before we did in deede depart, I offered him of some rotten cloth three elles for  
 his waight of an Angell, and twelue graines, which he would not take, and then we departed,  
 making signes to him that we would goe away, as in deed we would haue done, rather then haue  
 giuen that measure, although the cloth was ill, seeing we were so neere to the places, which we  
 iudged to be better for sale. Then we went aboard our shippes, which lay about a league of, and  
 came backe againe to the shoare for sande, and balaster: and then the Captaine perceiuing that the  
 boates had brought no marchandise, but came onely for water, and sand, and seeing that we would  
 depart, came vnto them, making signes againe, to knowe together we would not giue the foure  
 elles, and they made signes againe, that we would giue them but three, and when they sawe that  
 the boates were ready to depart, they came vnto them, and gaue them the weight of one Angell,  
 and twelue graines, which we required before, and made signes, that if we would come againe,  
 they would take three elles. So when the boates came aboard, we laid wares in them both, and  
 for the speedier dispatch, I and John Sauill went in one boate, and the Master Iohn Makeworth,  
 and Richard Curllin, in the other, and went on shoare, and that night I tooke for my part, fiftie  
 and two ounces, and in the other boate they tooke eight ounces and a quarter, all by one weight,  
 and measure, and so being very late, we departed, and went aboard, and tooke in all this day three  
 pound.

The seventh day we went a shoare againe, and that day I tooke in our boate three pound, 19,  
 ounces, so that we dispatched almost all the cloth that we caried with vs, before noone, and then  
 many of the people were departed, & those that remained, had kiele golde, yet they made vs signes  
 to fetch them some latten balons, which I would not, because I purposed not to trifle out the time,  
 but goe thence with speede to Don Johns towne. But Iohn Sauill, and Iohn Makeworth, were  
 desirous to goe againe: and I, loth to hinder them of any profit, consented, but went not my selfe:  
 so they tooke eighteene ounces of gold, and came away, seeing that the people at a certaine cri-  
 made, were departed.

While they were at the shoare, there came a young fellow, which could speake a litle Portu-  
 galle, with three more with him, and to him I solde 39. balons, and two small white sawcers, for  
 three ounces, &c. which was the best reckoning that we did make of any balons: and in the fore-  
 noone, when I was at the shoare, the Master solde five balons vnto the same fellow, for halfe an  
 ounce of golde.

This fellow, as farre as we could perceiue, had bene taken into the Castle by the Portugals,  
 and was gotten away from them, for he told vs, that the Portugals were bad men, and that they  
 made them slaues, if they could take them, and would put yrons upon their legges, and besides he  
 told vs, that as many Frenchmen, or Englishmen, as they could take (for he could name these  
 two very well.) they would hang them: he told vs further, that there were 60. men in the castle,  
 and that every yeere there came thither two shippes, one great, and one small cartuell, and fur-  
 ther, that Don Iohn, had wares with the Portugals, which gaue me the better courage to goe  
 to his towne, which lieth but foure leagues from the Castle, where hence our men were beaten  
 the last yeere.

This fellow came aboard our shippe without feate, and as soone as he came, he demanded, why  
 we had not brought againe their men, which the last yeere we tooke away, and could tell vs, that  
 there were five taken away by Englishmen: we made him answer, that they were in England  
 well

60. Portugals in the cas-  
 tle of Espina.

The English  
 in anno 1554.  
 tooke away 5.  
 Negroes.

well used, and were there kept till they could speake the language, & then they should be brought againe, to be a helpe to Englishmen in this Countrey : and then he spake no more of that matter.

Our boates being come aboard, we landed, and set saile, and a litle after spied a great fire upon the shoare, and by the light of the fire we might discern a white thing, which they took to be the Castle, and for feare of overshooting the towne of Don Iohn, we there anchored, two leagues of the shoare, for it is hard to fetch vpp a towne here, if a shippe over shoot it. This day we tooke seven pound, and five ounces of golde.

This towne lieth in a great Bay, which is very deepe.

The people in this place desired most to haue balons, and cloth. They would bie some of them also, many trinkes, as knives, hoptetailes, hoxnes : and some of our men going a shoare, found a cappe, a dagger, a bat, &c.

They showed vs a certaine course cloth, which I thinke to be made in France : for it was course wooll, and a small rhyed, and as thicke as wollen, and striped with stripes of greene, white, yellow, &c. Divers of the people did weare about their neckes great beades of glasse of diuers colours. Here also I learned some of their language, as followeth :

Matta, mattea,	} Is their salutation.	
Dassee, dassee,		
Sheke,		
Cowrre,		
Cracca,		
Basina,		
Foco, foco,		
Molta,		
		I thanke you,
		Golde.
	Cut.	
	Knives.	
	Balons.	
	Cloth.	
	Such, or great stone.	

This language formerly partly to be comprised.

Sight of the castle of spina.

Don Iohns towne desired best.

The eight day in the morning, we had sight of the Castle, but by reason of a miste that then fel, we could not haue the perfect sight of it, till we were almost at the towne of Don Iohn, and then it cleared vp, and we sawe it, and a white house, as it were a Chappell upon the hill about it : then we halled into the shoare, within two English miles of Don Iohns towne, and there anchored in souen sadom water. Here, as in many other places before, we perceiued that the current went with the winde.

The land here is in some places lowe, and in some high, and full of wood altogether.

The towne of Don Iohn is but litle, of about twentie houses, and the most part of the towne is walled in with a wall of a mans height, made with reede or sedge, or some such thing. Here we staied two or three ho wres after we had anchored, to see if any man would come vnto vs : and looking that none did come, we manned our boates, and put in marchandize, and went, and anchored with our boates nere to the shoare : then they sent out a man to vs, who made vs signes, that that was the towne of Don Iohn, and that he himselfe was in the Countrey, and would be at home at the going downe of the Sunne, and when he had done, he required a reward, as the most part of them will doe, which come first aboard, and I gave him one ell of cloth, and he departed, and that night we heard no more of him.

The ninth day in the morning, we went againe with our boates to the shoare, and there came forth a boate to vs, who made signes that Don Iohn was not come home, but would be at home this day : and to that place also came another boate from the other towne, a mile from this, which is called Don Deuis, and brought with him gold, to shew vs, making signes that we should come thither. I then left in this place Iohn Sauill, and Iohn Makevons, and tooke the Spinde, and went to the other towne, and there anchored, and tooke cloth, and went to shoare with the boate, and by and by the boates came to vs, and brought a measure of foure passos long & a halfe, and the wred vs a weight of an Angell, and twelue graines, which they would giue for so much, and not otherwise : I staied, and made no bargain. And all this day the barke lay at Don Iohns towne, and did nothing, hauing answer that he was not come home.

The tenth day we went againe to the shoare, and there came out a boate with good stoye of gold, and hauing giuen the matter off a long time, and hauing brought the measure to a naile lesse then three elles, and their weight to an Angell and twentie grains, and could not bring them to more, I did conclude with them and solde, and within one quarter of an ho wre, I tooke one pound and a quarter of an ounce of gold : and then they made me signes to carry, till they had parted their cloth upon the shoare, as their manner is, and they would come againe, and so they went away, and layd the cloth all abroad vpon the sand, peere by peere, and by and by one came running downe from the towne to them, and spake vnto them, & forthwith euery man made as much haste as he could away, and went into the woods, to hide his golde, and his cloth : we mistrusted some knowe

then they should be brought  
like no more of that matter,  
after spied a great fire upon  
which they took to be the  
ankered, two leagues of the  
This day we tooke seven

they would be some of them  
then going a shoare, found a

de in France: for it was  
with skippers of green,  
great beades of glasse of wh  
th:

ason of a miste that they set  
one of Don Iohn, and then  
upon the hill about it: then  
one, and there ankered in so  
that the current went with

of wood altogether.  
to the most part of the towne  
of some such thing. Here we  
ould come into vs: and lea  
ize, and went, and ankered  
to made by signes, that they  
ize, and would be at home at  
board, as the most part of  
and he departed, and that

the shoare, and there came  
me, but would be at home  
one, a mile from this, which  
signes that we should come  
and tooke the Hinde, and  
shoare with the boate, and  
long of a halfe, and the wa  
for so much, and not other  
at Don Iohns to tunc, and

ate with good stoye of gold,  
measure to a maile lesse then  
do not bring them to more,  
ize, I tooke one pound and  
they had parted their cloth  
do they went away, and  
one came running downe  
made as much haste as he  
we mistrusted some knave

r7

rie, and being waied by them to come a shoare, yet we would not but went aboard the Hinde, and  
perceiued upon the hill 30. men which we iudged to be Portingals: and they went by to the toppe  
of the hill and there mustered and shewed themselves, hauing a flagge with them. They being  
desirous to know what the Harb did, tooke the Hinde's boate and went towards her, and when it  
came nere to them, they shot off two pieces of ordnance which I marvelled at: I made as much  
haste as I could to her, and met her boate & Schiffe coming from the shoare in all haste, and wee  
met aboard together. They shewed me that they had bene a shoare all that day, and had giuen to the  
2. sonnes of Don Iohn, to either of them 3. parces and a halfe of cloth, and 3. balons betwixt them,  
and had deliuered him more 3. yards of cloth and the waight of an Angel and 12. graines, and be-  
ing on land did carie for his answer, and in the meane time the Portingals came running from the  
hill upon them, wherof the Negroes a litle before had giuen them warning, and had them to goe  
away but they perceiued it not. The sonne of Don Iohn conspired with the Portingals against  
them, so that they were almost shot upon them, but yet they recouered their boate and set off from the  
shoare, and the Portingals shot their calkeeters at them, but hurt no man, and then the Shippe percei-  
uing it, shot off the 2. pieces aforesaid among them. Whereupon, we layed bales in both the boates,  
and in the Schiffe and manned them well, and went a shoare againe, but because of the winde we  
could not land, but lay off in the sea about 10. stoye and shot at them, but the hill succoured them, and  
they from the rocks and from the hilles shot at vs with their halfe bakes, & the Negroes more for  
feare then for loue stood by them to helpe them, and when we sawe that the Negroes were in such  
subiection vnto them that they durst not sell vs any thing for feare of them we went aboard, and  
that night y<sup>e</sup> winde kept at the East, so that we could not with our ship fetch the Hinde, but I tooke  
the boate in the night and went aboard the barke to see what was there to be done, and in the mor-  
ning we perceiued the towne to be in like case layd with Portingals, so we wayed & went along  
the coast. This towne of Iohn de Viso standeth vpon an hill like the towne of Don Iohn, but it  
hath bene burned, so that there are not passing 6. houses in it: the most part of the golde that comes  
thither comes out of the coast, & no doubt if the people durst for feare of y<sup>e</sup> Portingals bring forth  
their golde, there would be had good stoye: but they dare not sell any thing, their subiection is so great  
to the Portingals. The 1. day running by the shoare we had sight of a litle towne 4. leagues fro the  
last to tunc that we came from, & about halfe a league from that of another towne vpo a hill, & halfe  
a league from that also of another great towne vpo the shoare: whither we went to see what could  
there be done if we would doe nothing, then to returne to the other towne, because wee thought  
that the Portingals would leaue the towne vpon our departure. Here grew some contention a-  
bout one Gresham aboard the Hinde, who refused to undertake further paines without further  
wages: but the matter was quieted, for Packman tooke the charge which he refused, and so wee  
went towards the shoare, but the winde scanted so that we could not doe it. Along from the castles  
into this place are very high hilles which may be seene aboue all other hilles, but they are full of  
wood, & great red cliffs by the sea side. The boates of these places are somewhat large & bigge,  
for one of them will carry 12. men, but their foyme is alike with the former boats of the coast. There  
are about these towne's few riuers: their language differeth not fro the language vsed at Don Iohns  
towne: but euery one can speake 3. or 4. wordes of Portugiue, which they vsed altogether to vs.

We saw this night about 5. of the clocke 22. boates running along the shoare to the Westward,  
wherupon we suspected some knauierte intended against vs. The 12. day therefore we set saile  
and went further along the coast, & descried more towne's, wherin were greater houses then in the  
other towne's, & the people came out of the towne's to looke vpon vs, but we could see no boates.  
Two mile beyond the Eastmost towne are blacke rocks, which blacke rocks continue to y<sup>e</sup> bitter-  
most cape of the land, which is about a league off, & then y<sup>e</sup> land runnes in East northeast, & a sandy  
shoare againe: vpon these blacke rocks came downe certaine Negroes, which waied vs to a white  
flag, but we perceiuing y<sup>e</sup> principal place to be nere, would not stay, but bare still along the shoare:  
and as soone as we had opened y<sup>e</sup> point of the land, we raised another head land about a league of  
the point, which had a rocke lying off it into the sea, & that they thought to be the place which we  
sought. When we came almost thwart the place they knew it, & we put wares into our boate, & the  
ship being within halfe a mile of the place ancred in y<sup>e</sup> sadom water, and faire ground. We went  
on shoare with our boate, and ancred about 10. of the clocke in the forenoon: we saw many boates  
lying vpon the shoare, and diuers came by vs, but none of them would come nere vs, bring as we  
iudged astrayed of vs: because that foure men were taken perforce the last yeere from this place, so  
that no man came to vs, wherupon we went aboard againe, and thought here to haue made no  
sale: yet towards night a great foze came downe to the water side, and waied vs on shoare  
with a white flagge, and afterwarde their Captaine came downe and many men with him,

The Portingals of the Cas-  
tle of Espina  
inuaied our  
men.

The towne of  
Don Iohn de  
Viso.

Some men  
then away by  
the English.

R

and

and late him downe by the shoare vnder a tree: which when I perceiued, I tooke things with me to giue him: at last he sent a boate to call to vs, which would not come neere vs, but made vs signes to come againe the next day: but in fine, I got them to come aboard in offering them things to giue to their captaine, which were two ellcs of cloth, one laxon bason, one white bason, a bottle, a great piece of beete, & 6. bisket cakes, which they receiued making vs signes to come againe the next day, saying, that their Captaine was Grand Capirane as appeared by those that attended vpon him with their darts, and targets, and other weapons.

This towne is very great and stands vpon a hill among trees, so that it cannot well be seen except a man be neere it: to the Eastward of it vpon the hill hard by the towne stand two high trees, which is a good marke to knowe the towne. And vnder the towne lieth another hill lower then it, whereupon the sea beates: and that ende next the sea is all great blacke rocks, and beyond the towne in a bay lieth a nother small towne.

The 13. day in the morning wee tooke our boate and went to shoare, and stayed till came a clocke and no man came to vs: wee went about therefore to returne aboord, and when the Negroes sawe that, they came running downe with a flagge to waite vs againe, so wee adreced againe, and then one shewed vs that the Captaine would come downe by and by: wee sawe a saile in the meane time passe by vs, but it was small, and wee regarded it not. Being on shoare wee made a Tilt with our Dares and saile, and then there came a boate to vs with five men in her, who brought vs againe our bottle, and brought me a henne, making signes by the sunne, that within 2. houres the marchants of the countrey would come downe and buye all that wee had: so I gaue them 6. Spanillios to carry to their Captaine, and they made signes to haue a pledge of vs, and they would leaue vs another man: and we willing to doe so, put one of our men in their boate, but they would not giue vs one of theirs, so wee tooke our man againe, and there carried for the marchants: and shortly after one came downe ataped like their Captaine, with a great traine after him, who saluted vs friendly, and one of the chiefest of them went & late downe vnder a tree, where the last yere the Captaine was wout to sit: and at last we perceiued a great many of them to stand at the ende of a hollow way, & behinde them the Portingals had planted a base, who suddenly shot at vs, but ouerthot vs, and yet we were in a maner hard by them, and they shot at vs againe before we could ship our oares to get away, but did no hurt. When the Negroes came to the rocks hard by vs, and discharged Calceuers at vs, and againe the Portingals shotte off their base twice more, and then our ship shot at them, but the rocks and hills defended them.

Then we went aboard to goe from this place, seeing the Negroes bent against vs, because that the last yere M. Gainsh did take away the Captaines sonne, and 3. others from this place with their gold, and all that they had about them: which was the cause that they became friends with the Portingals, whom before they hated as did appeare the last yere by the courteous intertainment which the Trinitie had there, when the Captaine came aboord the ship, and brought them to his towne, and offered them ground to build a castile in, and there they had good sales.

The 14. day we wayed & pilen backe againe to seeke the Hinde, which in 5. morning we met, and so we turned both backe to 5. Eastwards to see what we could do at that place where the Trinitie did sel her 8. stifles the last yere. The Hinde had taken 18. ounces & a halfe more of golde of other Negroes, the day after that we left them. This day about 1. of the clocke we espied certaine boates vpon the sand & men by them, and went to them with marchandises, and took 3. ounces of gold for 18. suffs of cloth, euery suffe 3. yardes & a halfe after one Angel, and 12. graines the suffe, and then they made me signes that the next day I should haue golde ynough: so the Hatter tooke the Hinde with Iohn Sauil, and Iohn Makeworth, & went to seeke the place aforesaid, & I with Richard Pakeman remained in this place, to see what we could doe the next days: and when the Negroes perceiued our ship to go away, they feared that the other would follow, & so sent forth 2. boats to vs with 4. men in them, requiring vs to carry & to giue them one man for a pledge, and 2. of them should carry with vs for him, so Edward M. Morleis seruant seeing these men so earnest therein offered himselfe to be pledge, & we let him go for 2. of them, one whereof had vs waights and scales, and a chaine of gold about his necke, and another about his arme. They did eate of such things as we had and were well contented. In the night the Negroes kept a light vpon the shoare the west of vs, & about 1. of the clocke we hard & saw the light of a base which shot off twice at the said light, and by 5. by discharged 2. calceuers, which in the end we perceiued to be 5. Portingals, which they followed vs to place to place, to giue warning to the people of the countrey, that they should not deale with vs. The 15. day in the morning the captaine came downe with 100. men with him, and brought his wife, & many others brought their wines also, because their towne was 8. mile by in the Countrey, and they determined to lie by the sea side till they had bought what they would.

M. Robert  
Gainsbers  
voyage to  
Guinea in An.  
no 1554.

M. Portingale  
Wigandine.

Wil.  
When  
else  
and his  
againe  
casket.  
which  
courts  
downe  
The  
but why  
leagues  
a halfe  
ket of g  
this day  
ll. 4. ou  
The  
a quart  
who had  
The  
and a do  
shindie  
and oth  
ward to  
and vni  
ouces,  
day up  
march  
right ch  
would  
quarter  
1. II. an  
the sho  
we man  
were g  
The  
groes,  
and ha  
The  
cers of  
carrie  
maine  
winde  
up to  
comes  
all the  
this bo  
haue m  
The  
league  
the 10  
Th  
rame  
Th  
Th  
leache  
league  
rame  
by real

ued, Iooke things with me  
nerre vs, but made vs signes  
in offering them things  
one white balon, a bottle,  
vs signes to come againe the  
eared by those that attende

that it cannot well be seen  
to the stand two high trees,  
by another hill lower then it,  
blacke rockes, and beyond the

oare, and stayed till terme a  
e aboarde; and when the Ne-  
vs againe, so wee ancred a  
by and by: wee sawe a safe  
not. Being on shoare wee  
vs with five men in her, who  
by the sunne, that within 2  
all that wee had: so I gave  
to haue a pledge of vs, and  
of our men in their boate, but  
and there carried for the ma-  
ne, with a great raine after  
e to come vnder a tree, where  
great many of them to stand  
e a safe, who suddenly shot  
they shot at vs againe before  
s came to the rockes hard by  
of their bale thowd more, and

ent against vs, because that  
others from this place with  
they became friends with  
by the courteous intertaine-  
the ship, and brought them to  
had good sales.

which in þ morning we met,  
at that place where the Tri-  
e a halfe more of golde of  
e clocke we espied certaine  
ifes, andooke 3. ounces of  
l, and 12. graines the fuffe,  
ough: so the Master tooke  
ace aforesaid, & I with Ri-  
e next day: and when the Ne-  
low, & so sent forth 2. boats  
for a pledge, and 2. of them  
men so earnest therein of  
ad þs waights and scales,  
y did eate of such things as  
ghte vpon the shoare thwart  
e off twice at the said light,  
þ Portingals Bigandine  
e coterrey, that they shoulde  
e with 100. men with him,  
their towne was 8. mile by  
bought what they would,  
Open

When he was come he sent our man aboard, and required to haue two men pledges, and he him-  
self would come aboard, and I sent him 2. of whom he tooke but one, and so came aboard vs, he  
and his wife, with diuers of his friends, & brought me a goat, and two great rootes, & I gave him  
againe a lacton balon, a white balon, 6. manillas, and a bottel of Spalmeite, and to his wife a smal  
raker. After this we began to make our measure and weight: and hee had a waight of his owne  
which held one Angel and 14. graines, and required a measure of 4. elles and a halfe. In fine we  
concluded the 8. part for one Angel, and 20. graines, and before wee had done, they tooke mine  
owne weight and measure.

The 16. day I tooke 8. li. 1. ounce of gold: and since þ departure of the Hinde I had not of her,  
but when our pledge went into the countrey the first night, he said he saw her cast ancre about five  
leagues from this place. The 17. day I sold about 17. pierces of cloch, andooke 4. li. 4. ounces and  
a halfe of gold. The 18. day the captaine desired to haue some of our wine, and offered halfe a buc-  
ker of gold for a bottel: but I gave it him freely, and made him and his traine vnder his belides. And  
this day also I tooke 5. li. 5. ounces of gold. The 19. day we sold about 18. clothes, andooke 4.  
li. 4. ounces and one quarter of golde.

The 20. day we tooke 3. li. 6. ounces and a quarter of gold. The 21. we tooke 8. li. 7. ounces and  
a quarter. The 22. 7. li. 8. ounces & a quarter. And this night about 4. of the clocke the captaine  
who had layen all this while vpon the shoare, went away with all the rest of the people with him.

The 23. day we were waied a shoare by other Negroes, and solde them cloch, caskets, knives,  
and a dosen of bels, andooke 1. li. 10. ounces of gold. The 24. like wise we sold bels, sheeres, and  
shindles, andooke 2. li. 1. ounce, and a quarter of golde. The 25. day we sold 7. dosen of smal bels,  
and other things, and then perceiving their gold to be done, we wayed & set saile and went to lee-  
ward to seeke the Hinde, and about 5. of the clocke at night we had sight of her, and bare with her,  
and vnderstood that she had made some sales. The 26. day we receiued out of the Hinde 48. li. 3.  
ounces, & 1. eight part of gold, which they had taken in the time that we were from them. And this  
day vpon the request of a Negro that came vnto vs from a captaine, we went to shoare with our  
merchandise, andooke 7. li. and 1. ounce of gold. At this place they required no gages of vs, but at  
night they sent a man aboard vs, which lay with vs all night, because we might knowe that they  
would also come to vs the next day. The 27. day in both our Shippes we tooke 8. li. 1. ounce, three  
quarters and halfe a quarter of golde. The 28. we made sales for the companie, andooke  
1. li. and halfe an ounce of golde. The 29. day in the morning we heard 2. saleures shot off vpon  
the shoare, which we iudged to be either by the Portingals, or by the Negroes of the Portingals:  
we manned our boates and armed our selues and went to shoare, but could finde nothing: for they  
were gone. The 30. day we made more sales for the companie, and for the Masters.

The 31. we sent our boate to shoare to take in sand for ballast, and there our men mette the Ne-  
groes, with whom they had made sale the day before a fishing, which did helpe them to fill lande,  
and hauing no gold, sold fish to our men for their handkerchiefs, and nightkerchiefs.

The 1. day of Februarie we wayed and went to another place, andooke 1. li. 9. ounces 3. quar-  
ters of gold. The 2. day we made more sales: but hauing bin wred our victuals, we determined to  
tarie no long time vpon the coast, because the most part of our drinke was spent, and that which re-  
mained grew soure. The 3. and 4. dayes we made some sales, though not greatly, and finding the  
winde this 4. day to come off the shoare, wee set saile & ranne along the shoare to the Westwards:  
vpon this coast we found by experience, that ordinarily about 2. of the clocke in the night the winde  
comes off the shoare at Northnortheast, and so continueth untill 8. of the clocke in the morning: and  
at the rest of the day and night it comes out of the Southwest: and as for the tide of current vpon  
this shoare, it goeth continually with the winde. The 5. day we continued sayling, and thought to  
haue met with some English ships, but found none.

The 6. day we went our course Southwest to fetch vnder the line, and ranne by estimation 24.  
leagues. The 7. day we ranne about 20. leagues, the 8. day, 12. leagues, the 9. day, 16. leagues,  
the 10. day, 18. leagues, the 11. day, 16. leagues, and so many more the 12. day.

The 13. day we thought our selues by our reckoning to be cleare of the Cape dos Palmas, and  
ranne 12. leagues.

The 14. day we ranne 16. leagues, the 15. 20. leagues, and so many more the 16. day.

The 17. day in the after noone the winde came by at the Northwest with a Ternado, and soule  
weather continued all day and night, with thunder & lightning: we ranne this day not about 4.  
leagues. The 18. day we had another Ternado, the winde being at Northwest, and by West: we  
ranne this day 12. leagues. The 19. day we ranne 10. leagues. The 20. day not about 5. leagues,  
by reason of the great change of windes, and soule weather.

Februarie.

They returned  
for England.

The 21. we ranne our course with a good gale 5. leagues.  
 The 22. day Christopher Rawlinsou our Cooper, who had bene sicke for the space of one moneth before, died about 8. of the clocke at night, whose will I made before his death. This night we descried two saile of tal ships, but were content to passe quietly, and therefore went not roome with them. This day by our reckoning we were thwart of the Capede Monte, which is to the Westward of the River de Sestos, about 30. leagues.

Cape de Espir.

The 23. day we received William Lobber for our Cooke, perceiving that the Cooke himselfe was weake and not able to doe that service for which he was shipped.

The 24. day we ranne about 20. leagues, the 25. day 25. leagues, the 26. day 16. leagues.

The 27. day we had a great Ternado out of the South-east with much raine, which continued not about one houre, and then the winde came againe to the South-west with a good gale: and we made way this day 12. leagues.

The 28. day we had another Ternado out of the North, and North-north-west, but continued not long, and so became calme againe presently.

The 29. day we ranne (because of the varietie of winde,) not about 7. leagues.

March.

The first day of March in a Ternado we lost the Hinde, whereupon we set up a light, and shot off a peece but could not heare of her, so that then we strooke our saile and taried for her, and in the morning had sight of her againe, 3. leagues a sterne of vs. We ranne as we accompted this day 6. leagues.

The 2. day we ranne 16. leagues, the 3. 20. leagues, the 4. 20. leagues more.

The 5. day we had sight of a Carnel of about 100. tunnes to the winde wards of vs, and when she was thwart of vs we call about and gaue her the chale breill 4. of the clocke, but coulde not see her.

Cape Verde in latitude 14. degrees and a halfe.

From this day till the 22. of this moneth wee went our course directly. Upon which 22. day we found our selues to be in the height of Cape Verde, which standes in 14. degrees, and a halfe.

From this day till the 29. day we continued our course, and then we found our selues to be in 22. degrees. This day one of our men called William King, who had bene long sicke, died in his sleepe, his apparell was distributed to those that lackt it, and his money was kept for his friends, to be deliuered them at our coming home.

The 30. day we founde our selues to be vnder the Tropike,

The 31. day we went our course, and made way 18. leagues.

April.

From the 1. day of April to the 20. we went our course, and then found our selues to be in the height of the Acores.

May.

The seuenth day of May wee fell with the South part of Irelande, and going on shoare with our boate had fresh vyinke, and two sheepe of the countrey people, which were wilde Kernes, and we gaue them golde for them, and boughte further such other victuals as wee had neede of, and thought would serue vs till we arriued in England.

The 12. of May we fell with the Isle of Lundy in the Chammel of Bristol, which lyeth about 5. leagues from the maine land of England.

The 13. day wee came betwixt the flat Holmes and the steepe Holmes, which are about 7. leagues from Bristol.

Their arrival at Bristol.

The 14. day with the afternoone tide we went into the Port of Bristol called Hungrode, and there ancred in safetie, and gaue thanks to God for our safe arriuall.

### The second voyage made by M. William Towrson to the coast of Guinea, and the Castle of Mina, in the yere 1556.

with the Tiger of London, a shippe of 120. tunnes, the Hart of London of 60. tunnes, and a Pinneffe of 16. tunnes.



November.

The 14. day of September, the yere abovesaid, at 8. of the clocke in the morning we departed from Harwicke, and directed our course for the Isle of Sillye, to meeete there with the Hart and Pinneffe, which were rigged and victualled at Bristol, but arriuing there the 28. day we founde them not, and therefore after long lying at hull to tarrie for them, but not espyring them, we turned backe to Plimmouth the 12. day of October, and being there, the Hart and the Pinneffe came to vs; so that the 15. of November we all departed together from Plimmouth at one of the clocke



clocke for the spare of one mo  
 fore his death. This night  
 therefore went not round  
 de Monte, which is to the  
 that the Cooke himselfe  
 the 26. day 16. leagues,  
 much raine, which continued  
 rest with a good gale: and we  
 north-west, but continued not  
 the 7. leagues,  
 we set up a light, and the  
 and carried for her, and in the  
 as we accompted this day  
 was more,  
 windwards of vs, and when  
 the clocke, but could not  
 rectly. Upon which 22. day  
 in 14. degrees, and a halfe.  
 we found our selues to be in  
 bene long sicke, died in his  
 y was kept for his friends,  
 found our selues to be in the  
 e, and going on shoare with  
 which were wilde Kernes, and  
 as we had neede of, and  
 of Bristol, which lyeth about  
 Holmes, which are about 7.  
 stoll called Hungrode, and  
 Towrson to  
 the yere 1556.  
 e Hart of London  
 of the clocke in the morning  
 arte for the Isle of Sillye, to  
 be rigged and victualled at  
 them not, and therefore after  
 them, we turned backe to  
 e, the Hart and the Pinelle  
 om Plymouth at one of the  
 clocke

clocke in the afternoone, and the 28. day we had sight of the Isle of Porto Sancto, and the next day  
 in the morning of Madeira.  
 The 3. day of December we fell with the Isle of Palma, and the 9. we were shunns of the Cape  
 Blanke, and found there certaine Cattails fishing for Pargoes.  
 The 19. we found our selues in the height of Sierra Leona, and all this day we ranne thwatt  
 of certaine Currents, which did set to the West South-westward so fast as if it had bene the over-  
 fall of a sand, making a great noyse like unto a straine of tyde gate when the water is shoalen and  
 to ppoone whether we could finde ground in this place, we founden and had 150. fathoms, and no  
 ground, and so departed.  
 The 30. of December we fell with the coast of Guinea, and had first sight of it about 4. leagues  
 off. The best marke that we could take of the place to knowe it, was three hilles, which laye  
 North-east and by East from vs: betwixt the Northmost and the middle, there are two high and  
 great trees standing in sight as if were a sailer by each one from another, and a little more to the  
 North-westward are certaine hommocks. Having sailed somewhat into the shoare, we tooke  
 our selues to be thote somewhat past the River de Sestos, so that we heye about to fetch it. And  
 a little after we had sight of three sailes of shippes, and two pinnelles which were in the weather  
 of vs, and having sight of them, we made our selues ready to meete them, and halled off our shippes  
 to strike the wind as we could: and having sayled about an houre or two, they also  
 went about, and went as we went to make themselves ready, and when we had them in chase,  
 they went away from vs: but when they had made themselves ready, they kept about againe,  
 and came with vs very finely appointed with their streamers, and pendants and ensignes, and  
 noyse of trumpets very brauely: so when we met, they had the weather of vs, and wee being de-  
 termined to fight if they had bene Portugals, would them to come under our lee, which they de-  
 nien stoutly: then we demanded of them whence they were, and they saide of France, we tolde  
 them againe that we were of London in England. They asked of vs what Portugals wee had  
 seen, wee answered, none but fishermen: then they tolde vs that there were certaine Portugall  
 shippes gone to the Mina to defende it, and that they mette with another at the River de Sestos,  
 which was a shippe of two hundred, which they had burned, and had saved none but the Master  
 and two or three Negroes, and certaine others which were soye hurued, which they left a shoase  
 there. Then they desired to come aboarde of vs with their boates to talke with vs, and wee gaue  
 them leave. Then the Captaine of the Admirall and divers others came aboarde very friend-  
 ly, desiring vs to keepe them company because of the Portugals, and to goe to the Mina with  
 them: wee tolde them that we had not watered, and that we were but now fallen with the coast,  
 and they shewed vs that we were fiftie leagues past the River de Sestos: notwithstanding there  
 was water enough to see had, and they would helpe vs to water with their owne boates, be-  
 cause they would haue our companis. And tolde vs further, that they had bene sixe weekes  
 upon the coast, and had gotten but three tunne of graines amongst them all: and when wee had  
 heard them, we made our reckoning that although the Wine were cleare, yet if they did goe be-  
 fore vs they would make our market, and if it were not cleare, then if the Portugals were there  
 and did take them, they would understande that wee were behinde, and so would waite for vs,  
 And further wee made accompt, that if wee wente with them wee should doe as well as they if the  
 coast were cleare: if it were not cleare, then by them, wee were assured to be the stronger. There-  
 fore having considered thus much of their gentle offers, wee tolde them that the next day wee  
 would conferre more largely of the matter. Whereupon they desired mee to come the next day  
 to dinner to them, and to bring the Masters of our shippes with mee, and such merchants as I  
 thought good, promising to giue vs water out of their owne shippes if we would take it, or els to  
 carie with vs, and helpe vs to water with their owne boates and Pinnelles.  
 The one and thirtieth day in the morning, the Admirall sent his boate aboarde for mee, and I  
 tooke our Masters and certaine of our Marchants and went to him, who had provided a notable  
 banquet for vs, and increased vs very friendly, desiring vs still to keepe his companie, promi-  
 sing that what victuals were in his shippes, or other things that might doe vs pleasure untill  
 the end, wee should have the one halfe of it, offering vs if wee would, to furnish his Flagges, and  
 to be at our commandement in all things.  
 In the end we agreed to come to an ancre, and to leave our boate on shoare with the Admirals  
 boate, and one of his Pinnelles, and an Almaine which they had brought out of France, to seeke  
 water, as for our Pinnelle she came to an ancre to seaward of vs, and would not come at vs. All  
 this night the boates continued on shoare.  
 The first day of January our boates came to us againe and had found no raine, whereupon we  
 departed

December.

Sierra Leona

They admit  
certaine  
of us  
into their  
companie.

wayes and set sail, and anchor againe at another River,

The 2. day we went into the River and bargained, and tooke 5. small Clippans teeth.

The 3. day we tooke 5. more.

The 4. day the French Admirall and we tooke 15. small teeth. This day we tooke 30. men with vs & went to seeke Clippans, our men being all well armed with harquebusses, pikes, long bowes, rollebowes, partizans, long swords, and sworde and bucklers: we founde 2. Clippans which we strooke diuers times with harquebusses and long bowes, but they went away from vs and hurt one of our men. The 5. day we set sail and ranne along the coast.

The 6. day we fell with the River of S. Andros, at which place the land is somewhat high to the Westward of the River, and a faire bay also to the Westward of it: but to the Eastward of it, it is lowe land.

The 7. day we went into the River and found no village, but certaine wilde Negroes not accustomed to trade. It is a very great River, and 7. fadom water in some places at the entering: here we filled water, and after set sail.

The 8. day we sailed along the shoare and came to the red clifles, and went forwarde in sayling the 9. day also.

The 10. day we came together to confere with Captaine Blundel Admirall of the French ships, Jerom Baudet his vice Admirall, and John de Orleans master of a ship of 70. tunne, and with their marchants, and agreed that when God should sende vs to any place where we might make sale, that we should be of one accord and not one of vs hurt the market of the other, but certaine of our boates to make the price for all the rest, and then one boate to make sale for every shippe. This night our boates going to the shoate met with certaine Negroes, who said that they had gold, and therefore we here cast ancre.

The 11. day all the day we tooke but one halfe Angel waighe of 4. graine, which we tooke by hand, for the people of this place had no waighe: the Negroes called this place Allowe.

The 12. day we ranne along the coast and found but one towne, but no boates would come out to vs, and therefore we went our course.

The 13. day I tooke my boate and went along the shoare, & passed by diuers small towne, and was waied to come on shoare at 3. places, but the sea went so high upon the shoare, that it was not possible for vs to land, neither could they come to vs if they had had boates, as I could see none but at one place, where there was one that would haue come vnto vs, but the land wath went so foze, that it hurt vs in his boate, and one of the men was drowned, which the people lamented, and cried so foze, that we might easily heare them, and they got his body out of the sea, and carried it amongst them to their towne.

The 14. day we came within Baker shot of the castle, & straight way they set foze an Almace to deterte vs, and when they perceiued that we were no Portingals, they ran within the towne a gaine for there is a great towne by the castle, which is called by the Negroes, Dondow. With out this there lie two great rocks like Islands, and the castle standeth vpon a point which the west almost like an Island. Before we came at this castle, we found the land for 5. or 6. leagues to bee high land, and about 7. leagues before we came to the castle, low land well we came at the castle, and then we found a land high againe. This castle standeth about 5. leagues on this side the Cape Trois points. Here I tooke the boate with our Negroes and ranne along the shoare, till I came to the Cape & found two small towne, but no boates at them, neither any crasique to be had. At these places our Negroes did vnderstand them well, and one of them went a shoare at all the places, and was well receiued of them: this night we ancre at the Cape Trois points.

The 15. day I tooke our boate & went along the shoare, & about 3. leagues beyond the Castr most part of the Cape we found a faire bay where we ran in, and found a small towne, and certaine boates which belonged to the same towne, but the Negroes in a long time would not come to vs, but at the last by the perswasion of our owne Negroes one boate came to vs, and with him we sent George our Negro a shoare, and after he had talked with them, they came aboard our boates with our fence, & I gaue to their captaine a balon, & two strings of Pargarets, & they desired vs about 5. duckets waighe of golde, but they required so much for it that we would not take it, because the Frenchmen and we had agreed to make price of our goods all in one boat, & the price being made then euery man to sell in his owne boate, and no man to giue more then the price which should be set by vs all. This place is called Bulle, & here the Negroes were very glad of our Negroes and they took them all the friendship they could, when they had tolde them that they were the men that were taken away, bring now againe brought by vs.

The Negroes here desired vs, that a month since there were 3. ships that fought together, & the

In assault  
upon Clippans.

The River of  
S. Andros.

Capitaine  
Blundel the  
French Admirall.

Allowe.

Dondow, a  
great towne.

The castle of  
Trois points.

Cape Trois  
points.

Bulle.

two ship  
Porting  
shippe  
about the  
name of  
there  
another  
names

The  
a Baye  
Cape.  
when the  
them, the  
So, after  
them, we  
for it.

The  
wilde, an  
them, and  
were the

The  
groes

The  
point  
here to  
after the  
Negroes  
much to  
foze of  
him from  
caused  
be, with  
and alla  
for the  
an Eng  
Gayns

The  
Negro  
Angel  
Christie.

The  
I for m

21. our  
by land  
the wo  
in the

Ch  
men, a  
pointe  
like, a  
and or  
to be  
the we

Ch  
West

Cliphants teech.

is day we took 30. men  
barquebusts, pikers, long  
we found 2. Cliphants  
they went away from vs

lands is somewhat high  
but to the Eastwarde of

the wilde Negroes not so  
lax as the entering here

went forwarde in sayling

of the French ship,  
70. annes, and with their  
ere we might make sale,

other, but certaine of our  
le for every shippe. This  
id that they had gold, and

aines, which we took by  
place Allowe.

his boates would come out

diuers small towres, and  
the shore, that it was not

as I could see none but  
we land waly went so for,

people lamented, and cried  
sea, and carried it amongst

they set forth an Almade  
ran within the towne a

negroes, Dondow. Which  
on a point which the north

for 5. or 6. leagues to see  
till we came at the castle,

ues on this side the Cape  
of the shore, till I came

ny traffique to be had. At  
ene a shoare at all the pla

rois points,  
agues beyond the Castle

small towne, and certaine  
he would not come to vs,

vs, and with him we sent  
we aboard our boate with

o they shewed vs about  
to not take it, because the  
ut. & the price being made

the price which should be  
glad of our Negroes and  
they were the men that

at fought together, & the  
two

two shippes put the other to flight, and before that at the castle of Mina there were 4. shippes of the  
Portingals, which met with one French man, which Frenchman caused them all to flee, which  
shippe we took to be the Roebarge: for the Frenchmen of our company judged her to be there  
about that time, with her pinasse also: and further, that after her went a shippe of twelve scope,  
named the Swander, all alone, and after her a shippe of foure scope, and both for the Mina. And  
there were two others also which they left, one at Cape Verde, called the Leuiere of Diepe, and  
another at the river De Seltos, besides these three, which all this time be in our companie, whose  
names be these:

The Espoyer of Hableness, which is the Admirall, whose Captaine is Denys Blundell.

The Leuiere of Roan Viceadmirall, whose Master is Jerom Bowder.

The other is of Hunfleur, whose Master is called Iohn de Orleans

The thirteene day, I went along the shoare, with two pinasses of the Frenchmens, and found  
a Baye, and a fresh riuer, and after that went to a towne called Hanta, twelve leagues beyond the  
Cape. At this towne our Negroes were well known, and the men of the towne wept for joy,  
when they saw them, and demaunded of them where Anthony, and Binne had bene: and they told  
them, that they had bene at London in England, and should be brought home the next voyage.  
So, after this, our Negroes came aboard, with other Negroes, which brought a weight with  
them, which was so small, that we could not giue them the halfe of that which they demaunded  
for it.

Hanta.

The Negroes here told vs, that there were five Portingall shippes at the Castle, and one pin-  
nass, and that the Portingals did much harme to their Countrey, and that they lived in feare of  
them, and we told them againe, that we would defend them from the Portingals, whereof they  
were very glad.

The 17. day we went a shoare, and the Frenchmen with vs, but did no great good, the Ne-  
groes were so unreasonable, we solde foure scope Spanellios for one ounce of golde.

Shamma.

Then we departed, and went to Shamma, and went into the riuer, with five boates well ap-  
pointed with men and ordnance, and with our noyses of trumpets, and drummes, for we thought  
here to haue found some Portingals, but there were none: so we sent our Negroes a shoare, and  
after them went diuers of vs, and were very well receiued, and the people were very glad of our  
Negroes, specially one of their brothers wives, and one of their aunes, which receiued them with  
much ioy, and so did all the rest of the people, as if they had bene their naturall brethren: we com-  
forted the Captaine, and to bid him, that he should not feare the Portingals, for we would defende  
him from them: whereupon we caused our boates to shoote off their bales, and barquebusts: and  
caused our men to come on shoare with their long bowes, and they shot before the captaine, which  
he, with all the rest of the people, wounded much at, specially to see them shoote so farre as they did,  
and aimed to waite their bowes, but could not. When it grew to be late, we departed to our ships,  
for we looked euerie bowe for the Portingals. And here the Negroes shewed vs, that there was  
an English shippe at the Mina, which had brought one of the Negroes againe, which Robert  
Gaynhooke took away.

The Negroes brought home by our men.

Mina.

The 18. day we went into the riuer, with no lesse strength then before, and concluded with the  
Negroes to giue them for euerie fustle two yardes and three nailles of cloth, and to take for it one  
Angell Duckett: so that we took in all 70. Duckets, whereof the Frenchmen had fortye, and we  
thirtie.

The 19. day we went a shoare, euerie man for himselfe, and took a good quantitie of golde, and  
I for my part took foure pound and two ounces and a halfe of golde, and our Parts boate took  
21. ounces. At night, the Negroes shewed vs, that the next day the Portingals would be with vs,  
by land or by sea: and when we were ready to depart, we heard diuers barquebusts shoote off in  
the woods by vs, which we knew to be Portingals, which durst come no nearer to vs, but shot off  
in the woods, to see if they could feare vs, and so make vs to leave our traffique.

The 20. day, we manned our five boates, and also a great boate of the Frenchmens, with our  
men, and the Admiralls, twelve of them in their murrions, and coiffes, and the rest all well ap-  
pointed, with foure trumpets, a drumme, and a life, and the boate all hanged with streamers of  
like, and pendans very faire, and went into the riuer, and traffiked, our man of warre lying off,  
and on in the riuer to waite vs, but we heard no more of the Portingals. This day the Negroes  
told vs, that there were certaine shippes come into Hanta, which towne is about two leagues to  
the westward of this place.

The 21. day we manned our boates againe, and went to a place a league from this, to the  
westward, and there found many Negroes, with another Captaine, and solde at the same rate  
that

that we had done with the others.

The 22. day, we went a shoare againe, and trafficked in like sort quickly, and I tooke four pound and five ounces of golde.

The 23. day, about night, the Negroes with their Captaine, came to vs, and tolde vs that the king of Portugals shippes were departed from the Castle, meaning the next day to plye to the windward, so come to vs, giuing vs warning to take heede to our selues: we told them againe, that we were very glad of their coming, and would be ready at all times to meete them: and to assure them that we were glad of it, we sounded our trumpets, and shot off certaine bales, wherof the Negroes were very glad, and requested vs, that if the Portugals sought to hinder our traffike, to shew them all the extremitie that we could, promising vs, that if they came by land, they would aduertise vs thereof.

The 24. we went a shoare with our trumpets, and drummes, and trafficked, and I had the Captaine of the towne to dinner.

Five sailes of Portugals descriced.

The 25. day, we being a shoare, our ships had descriced five sailes of the King of the Portugals, and our shippes shotte off ordinance to call vs away, and we threwe euery man his caske a shoare for water, and went to our shippes, and by that time we had waied, and giuen order one to another what to doe, it was night, so that that night nothing was done: we let saile, and lay close all night, to get the winde if we could: we were neere some of them, and one shotte off a peece, which we iudged to be the Admirall of the Portugals, to cause the rest to come and speake with him: so all this night we made our selues ready for fight.

The 26. we came in with the shoare, and had sight of the Portugals, where they rid at anker, and we bare with them, and we gaue all our men white scarfs, to the ende that the Frenchmen might knowe one the other, if we came to boording: but the night came vpon vs, that we could not fetch them, but we ankered within Demy culuering shot of them.

The sight with the Portugals galle.

The 27. day we waied, and so did the Portugals, and about eleven of the clocke, we had the winde of them, and then we went roome with them, which when they perceiued, they kept about to the shoare againe, and we after them, and when they were so neere the shoare, that they could not well runne any further on that boord, they kept about againe, and lay to the sea ward, and then we kept about with them, and were a head of them, and tooke in our topsailes, and taried for them, and the first that came by, was a small barke, which sailed so well, that she taried not for any of vs, and carried good ordinance, and as soone as she came by, she shot at vs, and ouerthot vs, and then she shot at the Admirall of the Frenchmen, and shot him through in two or three places, and went forth a head of vs, because we were in our fighting sailes: then came by another caruell under our lee in like case, which shotte at vs, and at the Frenchman, and hurt two of his men, and shot him thorough the mayne maste. And after them came by the Admirall under our Lee also, but he was not able to doe vs so much harme as the small shippes, because he carried ordinance higher then they, neither were we able to make a good shot at any of them, because our shippe was so weak in the side, that she laide all her ordinance in the sea: wherfore we thought to lay the great shippe a boord, and as soone as the French Admirall went roome with him, he fell a sterne, & could not fetch him, and after he fel a sterne of two catuels moze, and could fetch none of them, but fell to lee ward of them all: and when he was to lee ward, he kept about to the shoare ward, and left vs, and then we put out our topsailes, and gaue them chase, and both the other Frenchmen kept the wind, and would not come neere vs, and our owne shippe was a sterne, so that she could not come to vs: and after we had followed them about two howres to the sea ward, they kept about againe towards the shoare, thinking to pay vs as they went along by, & to haue the wind of the French Admirall, which before ran in towards the shoare, & we kept about with them, and kept still the wind of them, thinking that our Viceadmirall, and the other, would haue followed vs, as we willed them to doe: but after that the Portugall was past by them, and euery one had shot at vs & our Viceadmirall, both our Viceadmirall, and the two Frenchmen, and our owne pinnelle, left vs in the lapp, and ran to sea ward, and we ran still along, and kept the wind of them, to succour the French Admirall, who was vnder all of their leas, and when they met with him, euery one went roome with him, & gaue him the broad side, and after they cast about againe, and durst not boord him, because they saw vs in the weather of them, or els without doubt they had taken or sunke them: for three of them which were the smallest, went so fast, that it was not possible for a ship to boord them, and carried such ordinance, that if they had had the weather of vs, they would haue troubled three of the best ships that we had, and as for their Admirall, and Viceadmirall, they were both notably appointed.

The French forsake our 1587.

When the Frenchman was cleare of them, he laye as neere the winde as he could: and we followed them still towards the shoare, and then the Admirall ranne to sea after the

rest,

quicly, and I tooke four  
to vs, and tolde vs that the  
the next day to plye to the  
es: we told them againe,  
times to meete them: and to  
of certaine bales, whereof  
sought to hinder our traf-  
they came by land, they

staken, and I had the Cap-

of the King of the Pop-  
we threwe every man his  
had waied, and given op-  
g was done: we set sayle,  
one of them, and one boote  
cause the rest to come an

where they rid at anker,  
knew that the Frenchmen  
e upon vs, that we could

of the clocke, we had the  
received, they kept about  
the shoare, that they could  
y to the seaward, and then  
sailes, and caried for them,  
he cared not for any of vs,  
ouertshot vs, and then he  
ree places, and went forth  
ther caruell vnder our lee  
is men, and shot him thro-  
ur Lee also, but he was  
d ordinance higher then  
r shype was so weake in  
to lay the great shype a-  
a sterne, & could not fetch  
them, but fell to leeward  
red, and left vs, and then  
omen kept the wind, and  
ould not come to vs: and  
r about againe towards

of the French Admirall,  
ept til the wind of them,  
s we willed them to doe  
vs our Viceadmirall,  
ft vs in the lappes, and ran  
the French Admirall, who  
roome with him, & gaue  
m, because they sawe vs  
for three of them which  
em, and caried such odd-  
hee of the best ships that  
wby appointed,

winde as he could: and  
ranne to Sea after the  
rest,

rest, and left vs all alone: and when the Portugals perceiued that we were alone, and gaue them chase, they kept about with vs, and we with them, to keepe the wind of them, and we ranne still within baste shot of them; but they shot not at vs, because we had the weather of them, and sawe that they could doe vs no hurt: and thus we followed one another till night, and in the night we lost them, but as for all the rest of our Shippes, they packed on all the sailes that they could, and ranne to sea, and, as they themselues confesse, they prayed for vs, but as for helpe at their hands we could haue none.

The 28. day we met with our Viceadmirall our pinnelle, and two of the French men, and the chid was sler, which was a shippe of foure score tunne, and belonged to Roan: and when I had the sight of the rest of our Shippes, I tooke our skiffe, and went to them, to knowe, why they lost vs in such a case, and Iohn Kire made me answere, that his shippe would neither feare nor feere, and as for the pinnelle, Iohn Daucis made me answere, that he would doe nothing, and that he could carry her no further, for her rudder was broken, so that the Hart was glad to towne her. Then I went to the French Admirall, and found himselfe to be a man of good stomake, but the one halfe of his men were sicke, and dead, and then I talked with the smaller French man, and he made me answere, that he could doe nothing, saying, that his shippe would beare no saile, and had sickeene all of his men dead, and sicke, so he made vs plaine answere, that he was able to doe nothing. After this, the Frenchmen durst not anker for feare of the Portugals.

The 29. day, the Master of the pinnelle came to vs, and saide, that they were not able to keepe her any longer, and then we viewed her, and seeing that there was no remedie, her rudder with all the yon worke being broken both aloft and belowe, we agreed to bryake her by, and to put the men into the Hart. So weooke out of her foure bales, one anker, and certaine fire wood, and set her on fire, and afterwards ranne along the coast.

The English  
pinnelle giuen  
up.

The thirtieth day, we went into the Shoare, and spake with certaine Negroes, who tolde vs, that some French Shippes had bene there, but we could not bargaine with them, they were so vnrasonable.

The 31. day, I went to shoare, but did not traffike.

The first day of Februarye we waied, seeing we could not bying the Negroes to any reason, Februarye. and came to another place, which standeth vpon a hill.

The second day we waied hence, and had sight of a saile, which departed from the place aforesaid, and shot off two peeces for his pinnelle, which was a shoare: then I tooke our boate, and the Frenchmen tooke theirs, and went with the saile to descey him, and when we had rowed about a league, we had sight of the pinnelle: the shippe was gone so farre, that we could not reach her: but the pinnelle we found to be the French men, which ranne away from vs, when we were in sight with the Portugals. After this, we went to the shoare, and found the Negroes vnrasonable in their prices, and dealt not with them.

The thirde day, I went to a towne foure leagues from vs, and shot off two peeces, and the Captaine came to vs, and I sent Thomas Rippen a land, who knewe the Captaine, and as soone as he came a shoare, the Captaine knewe him, and diuers of the Negroes, who then began to aske for me, and hauing tolde the Captaine that I was in the boate, he made no longer tarrying, but by and by caused two boates to be put to the sea, and came to me himselfe, and when he sawe me, he cried to me, before he came to the boate, and seemed to be the gladdest man alive, and so did all the company that knewe me, and I gaue him a reward, as the manner of the Countrey is, and caused the Frenchmen to giue another, promising the next day to giue him wine: and that night, because it was late, he would not talke of any price, but left me a pledge, and tooke another of me, and so departed.

The fourth day, going on shoare, I found that the Shippes of France, which had bene there, had done much hurt to our markets, but yet I tooke sive ounces and a halfe of golde.

The fift day I tooke eight ounces and one eighthe part of golde: but I sawe that the Negroes perceiued the difference in cloch, betwixt ours and that which the Frenchmen had, which was better, and vvaater then ours: and then I told the Captaine Blundell, that I would goe to the Leeward, because I perceiued, that being there where his cloch was solde, I should doe no good, whereof he was loze.

The sixt day, there came an Almade, and Negroes aboard me, requesting me to come to their towne, for they had much golde, and many marchants: and so I went, and found their olde Captaine gone, and another in his place: but this night we did no good, because the marchants were not come downe: so he requirred a pledge, which I let him haue, and tooke another of him.

The seuenth day, George our Negro came to vs, who had followed vs at the least thirtieth leagues, George the Negro.

leagues in a small boate, and when he came, the Negroes and we loone concluded of price. I tooke this day five pound and one ounce, & three quarters of gold. This Negro we had left at Shamma, at the time of the fight, who saw that he sawe the fight being a shoare, and that when we were gone from the Portugals, the Portugals came into their river, and tolde them, that the Englishmen had slaine two Portugals with a peece, which was in deede out of our shippe, and they required harbour there, but the Captaine of Shamma would not suffer them.

The eight day, we tooke nineteene pound, three ounces and a halfe.

The ninth day, we tooke two pound, five ounces, and a halfe.

The tenth day, three pound.

The 11. day, came to vs Ierome Bawick, the Viceadmirall of the French men, and his pinnelle, and he shewed vs, that where we left them, there was no good to be done, and said, he would goe to the Eastward, but we tolde him he should not: and thereupon commaunded him to goe to his companie, which he was appointed to be with, which he refused to doe, until he had shot three or foure peeces at their pinnelle, and when the ship saw that, he kept about, and came to seaward, & durst come no neerer to vs, so the pinnelle went after her. We tooke this day 1. pound, 5. ounces.

The 12. day, there came one of the French mens pinnelle to vs, laden with cloth, and would haue made sale: but I would not suffer him, and therefore tooke him, and sent him aboard of our shippe, and caused him to ride there all day. We tooke five pound, five ounces, and a halfe.

The 13. day, we tooke in sande to ballast our shippe.

The 14. day, we tooke of some Negroes foure ounces of golde.

The 15. we ranne farther along the shoare.

The 16. we came to another towne.

The 17. day, I went a shoare, and vnderstoode that three of the Portugall ships were at the same, and the other two at Shamma. The Captaine of this towne was gone to the principall towne, to speake with their King, and would retorne homely as they tolde me, and so he did, and brought me a weight and measure, and I sent a man to see that principall towne, and their King. The Portugall shippes rid so neere vs, that within three houres they might be with vs, yet we were all contented to tary for sales.

The 18. day, certaine of the Kings seruants came to vs, and we tooke one pound, two ounces, and one eight part of gold.

The 19. day, we tooke five pound, and one ounce.

The 20. day, one pound and foure ounces.

The 21. I tooke foure pound and one ounce, and the Negroes enquired for fine cloth, and I opened two peeces, which were not fine enough, as they said, but seeing that we had no other, they bought of them. At night I provided a gift, or present, and sent one merchant, and a martiner with it to the King, to certifie him of our want of victuals, by reason whereof, we could not stay long: for in deede we searched our shippe, and the most part of our beere was leaked out of all our barrells.

The 22. day, we tooke three ounces and a halfe.

The 23. our men came from the King Ebaane, and tolde vs, that he had receiued them very friendly, but he had litle golde, but promised, if we would tary, to sende into all his countrey, for gold for vs, and he willed our men at their comming home, to speake to our King, to send men and provision into his countrey, to build a Castle, and to bring Tailors with them, to make them apparel, and good wares, and they should be sure to sell them: but for that present, the Frenchmen had filled them full of cloth.

This towne standeth about foure leagues by in the land, and is, by the estimation of our men, as bigge in circuite as London, but the building is like to the rest of the countrey. They haue about this towne, great store of the wheate of the Countrey, and they iudge, that on one side of the towne, there were 1000. rikes of wheate, and another sort of corne, which is called mill, which is much used in Spaine. About this towne, they keepe good watch euery night, and haue to warne the watchmen certaine cordes made fast ouer their waies, which leade into the towne, and certaine bels vpon them, so that if any man touch the cordes, the bels ring, and then the watchmen runne forth of their watch houses, to see what they be: and if they be enemies, if they passe the cord, they haue provision with certaine nets banged ouer the waies, where they must passe, to let fall vpon them, and so take them, & other wise then by the waies it is not possible to enter the towne, by reason of the thickets, and bushes, which are about the same, and the towne is also walled round about with long cordes, and bound together with sedge, and certaine barkes of trees.

When our men came to the towne, it was about five of the clocke in the morning, for there they

Two Portugals slaine by the English.

The French men divided by the English.

King Ebaane.

The offer of the King to the English.

A towne in circuite as big as London.

A pretty device to deluery the enemies.

crenell  
King  
haue  
brought  
them, an  
ced, and  
which by  
made the  
ceremonie  
First  
some of  
they set  
take out  
haue cert  
put in for  
All the  
vantage o  
other two  
vintners  
cented th  
and wau  
month is  
This  
The  
The  
The  
The  
The  
went too  
The f  
cher: be  
we took  
Mowre,  
The st  
the five  
The r  
vs, and t  
the one  
that prese  
land, and  
three leag  
in the mo  
be farre a  
about tw  
was urr  
would lo  
when he  
came to h  
and they  
maile ouer  
The fi  
and to ret  
course the  
The r  
The r  
place, is  
The r

concluded of price. I took  
gro we had left at Sham-  
me, and that when we were  
de them, that the English  
our shippe, and they ro-  
n.

French men, and his pin-  
done, and said, he would  
mmanded him to go to  
e, until we had shot thre  
ut, and came to leeward,  
day 1. pound, 5. ounces,  
n with cloth, and would  
and sent him aboard of our  
ances, and a halfe.

all shippes were at the ca-  
to the pynctyal towne,  
and so he did, and brought  
e., and their King. The  
be with vs, yet we were  
one pound, two ounces,

red for fine cloth, and I o-  
that we had no other, they  
erchiant, and a martinet  
therof, we could not stay  
was leaked out of all our

had receiued them very  
into all his countrey, for  
our king, so send men and  
sh them, to make them ap-  
pyesent, the Frenchmen

the estimation of our men,  
countrey. They haue a  
age, that on one side of the  
sh is called mill, which is  
night, and haue to warne  
to the towne, and certaine  
then the watchmen runne  
if they passe the cord, they  
must passe, to let fall vpon  
to enter the towne, by rea-  
is also walked round about  
reez.

the morning, for there they  
trawell

trawell alwaies in the night, by reason of the heats of the day: and about nine of the clocke, the King sent for them, for there may no man come to him, before he be sent for, and then they would haue carried their present with them: but the Negroes told them, that they must be thre times brought before him, before they might offer their gift: and when they came to him, he talked with them, and receiued them very friendly, and kept them about halfe an houre, and then they departed, and after that, sent for them againe thre times, and last of all, they brought him their present, which he receiued thankfully, and then caused a pot of wine of Palme to be brought forth, and made them drinke, and before they drinke, both here, and in all the Countrey, they vse certaine ceremonies.

The things  
friendly inter-  
tainment of  
our men.

First, they bring forth their pot of drinke, and then they make a hole in the ground, and put some of the drinke into it, and they cast the earth vpon it, which they digged forth before, and then they set the pot vpon the same, then they take a litle thing made of a goode, and with that they take out of the same drinke, and put it vpon the ground in thre places, and in diuers places they haue certaine bunches of the pills of Palme trees, set in the ground before them, and there they put in some drinke, doing great reuerence in all places to the same Palme trees.

Their ceremo-  
nies in drink-  
ing.

All these ceremonies first done, the King tooke a cup of golde, and they put him in wine, and he dranke of it, and when he dranke, the people cried all with one voice, Abaan, Abaan, with certaine other wordes, like as they cry commonly in Flanders, vpon the Twelue night, the kinning drinke: and when he had drinke, then they gaue drinke to euery one, and that done, the King licensed them to depart, and euery one that departeth from him, boweth thre times towards him, and waueth with both hands together, as they bowe, and then doe depart. The King hath commonly sitting by him, eight or ten ancient men, with gray beards.

This day we tooke one pound and ten ounces of golde.

The 24. day, we tooke thre pound and seven ounces.

The 25. we tooke thre ounces, and thre quarters.

The 26. we tooke two pound and ten ounces.

The 27. two pound and six ounces.

The 28. four pound, and then seeing that there was no more golde to be had, we waited, and went forth.

The first day of March, we came to a towne called Mowre, but we found no boates nor people there: but being ready to depart, there came two Almades to vs from another towne, of whome we tooke two ounces and a halfe of golde: and they tolde vs that the Negroes that dwelled at Mowre, were gone to dwell at Lagwaa.

March.  
Mowre.

Lagwaa.

The second day, we came thwart of the Castle, and about two leagues off, and there sawe all the five Hojtingall shippes at anker, and this day by night, we fetched Shamma.

Their returne.

The third day, we had sight of one tall shippe, of about two hundred tunne in the weather of vs, and within lesse then two leagues of our shippes, and then we sawe two more a sterne of her, the one a shippe of five hundred or more, and the other a pinnell, and these were a newe fleet at that present arrived out of Hojtingall. Whereupon we waited, and made shift to double out of the land, and then the winde comming to the South south west, the Hart going roome with them, fell thre leagues to the leeward of vs. These Hojtingalls gaue vs the chase from nine of the clocke in the morning, all fur at night, but did no good against vs. At last, we perceiuing the Admiral to be farre a sterne of his companie, because his maine toppemast was spent, determined to calke about with them againe, because we were sure to weather them, and the winde being as it was, it was our best course: but the Hart was so farre to the leeward, that we could not doe it, except we would loose her companie, so that we tooke in some of our sailes, and went roome with him: which when he perceiued, he loosed too, and was able to lie as neere as he did before. At night, when we came to him, he would not speake to vs: then we asked of his companie, why he went so roome, and they made excuse that they were able to beare no saile by, for feare of bearing their foretopmast over board: but this was a simple excuse.

The fourth day, being put from our waiting place, we began to seeth our meate in salt water, and to rebate our allowance of drinke, to make it indure the longer: and so concluded to set our course thence, so our owne countrey.

The twelue of March, I found my selfe thwart of Cape Dos palmas.

The 16. day, we fell with the land, which we iudged to be the Cape Miserado, about which place is very much high land.

Cape Miserado.

The 17. we lay South south west, with a pretty gale.

The 18. day, we lost sight of the Hart, and I thinke the wilfull Passer ranne in with the Hoare

shoare of purpose to loose vs, being offended, that I told him of his otiose folly.

The 19. day, we bare a small saile, to tarp for the Part, but could not descry her.

*Two small Islands by Sierra Leona.*

*Spain.*

*Spain.*

The 27. day, we fell in sight of two small Islands, which Ipe by our reckoning five leagues off the headlands of Sierra Leona: and before we came in sight of the same Islands, we made our reckoning to be forty or thirtie leagues at the least off them. Therefore all they that saile this way, are to regard the currents, which sette North Northwest, or els they may be much distressed.

The 14. of Aprill, we met with two great shippes of Portugall, which although they were in the weather of vs, yet came not roomie with vs, whereby we iudged that they were bounde for Callicut.

The 18. day, we were in the height of Cape De Verde.

The 23. one of our companie, called Edmond Perkin, deceased.

The 24. we were directly under the Tropike of Cancer.

The first day of Maye, Henric Willson our Steward died: and the next day died Iohn Vanderwood.

The fift day, we were in the height of S. Michael.

The 9. day, we met with two tall shippes, bound for New found lande, as we iudged, being Disainers, but as it well sel out, we had the weather of them, so that they were able to doe nothing to vs.

The 20. day, we met with a shippe of 60. tunne, and we thought it had bene the Part, but it was not, we iudged it to be an English shippe.

The 22. we met with the same shippe againe, but she was in the weather of vs, and so kept the wind still.

*A French by name.*

The 23. we had sight of a shippe in the weather of vs, which was a Frenchman, of 90. tunne, who came with vs as stoutly and as desperately as might be, and comming neere vs, perceiued, that we had bene vpon a long voyage, and iudging vs to be weak, as in deede we were, came neerer vs, and thought to haue laide vs aboard, and there kept by some of his men in armour, and commaunded vs to strike saile: whereupon we sent them some of our stiffe, crosse barres, and chaine shot, and arrows, so thicke, that it made the vpper worke of their shippe see about their eares, and we spoiled with all his men, and toare his shippe miserably with our great ordnance, and then he beganne to fall a sterne of vs, and to packe on his sailes, and to get away: and we shing that, gaue him foure or fise good peeces more for his sake well, and thus we were rid of this Frenchman, who did vs no harme at all. We had aboard vs a Frenchman a Trumpetter, who being sicke, and lying in his bed, tooke his trumpet notwithstanding, and blew, till he could blow no more, and so died.

The 26. we had sight of another saile, & we went toome to haue spoken with her, but could not.

The 28. we conferred together, and agreed to goe into Seuerne, and so to Byssol, but the same night we had sight of the Lizard, and by reason of the winde, we were not able to double the land end, so goe into Seuerne, but were forced to beare in with the Lizard.

The 29. day, about nine of the clocke in the morning, we arrived safely in Plymmouth, and praised God for our good arriuall.

### The third and last voyage of Maister William Towrson, to the coast of Guinie, and the Castle de Mina, in the yeere, 1557.

The 30. day of January, the yeere aboue sayd, we departed out of the Towne of Plymmouth, with three shippes, and a pinnelle, whereof the names were these:

1. The Minion, Admirall of the fleet.
2. The Chrystopher, Viceadmirall.
3. The Tyger.
4. A pinnelle, called the Vnicorne: being all bound for the Canaries, and from thence, by the grace of God, to the coast of Guinie.

*It is to be understood, that at this time, there was warre betwixt England, and France.*

The next day, being the last of this month, in the afternoone, we mette with two Hulkes of Dantzick, the one called the Rose, a shippe of 400. tunnes, and the other called the Vnicorne, of 150. tunnes, the Master of the Rose was called Nicholas Masse, and the Master of the Vnicorne, Melchior White, both laden at Bourdeaux, and for the most part, with wines. When we came to them, we caused them to hoist forth their voyers, and to come, and speak with vs, and we examined euery one of them a part, what Frenchmens goods they had in their shippes, and they saide, they

*Wil...*  
they ha  
their fa  
caused  
certain  
cers of h  
Where  
smaller  
examin  
also the  
mans, a  
gues of  
their le  
With  
we coul  
man wo  
make sa  
if the tw  
and after  
feare of  
the mon  
wee hop  
ly as it  
our voy  
aboard  
so that i  
the win  
losse of  
them an  
And a  
storing  
of the tw  
But i  
Master  
place, it  
time we  
the voya  
shoul ta  
to couch  
and a ha  
Hore  
Dire  
A sma  
The Ch  
Ten  
A qu  
Shal  
Chel  
Dire  
out their  
of their  
running  
ande in  
tooke for  
deux, the  
The  
uire; an  
The  
who sent



e folly,  
descrip her.  
ur reckoning five leagues  
same Islands, we made  
efore all they that saile this  
els they may be much de-  
which although they were  
ed that they were bounde

e next day died John Va-  
nde, as we judged, being  
p were able to doe nothing  
had bene the Part, but it  
weather of vs, and so kept

a Frenchman, of 90 tunne,  
nning nere vs. perceiued,  
as in deede we were, came  
of his men in armour, and  
ruffe, crosse barres, and  
their shippe flee about their  
p with our great ordinance,  
nd to get away: and we find  
nd thus we were rid of this  
yman a Trumpetter, who  
nd blew, still he could blow

ken with her, but could not  
nd so to Wyllol, but the same  
not able to double the land

safely in Plymmouth, and

Towrson, to the  
eere, 1557.

parted out of the Shownde of  
roof the names were these:

ound for the Canaries, and

e mette with two hulkes of  
rther called the Vnicorne, of  
the Master of the Vnicorne,  
th wines. When we came to  
peak with vs, and we exam-  
their shippes, and they laide,  
they

they had none: but by the contrarieties of their tales, and by the suspition which wee gathered of their false charter parties, we perceiued that they had French mens goods in them: we therefore caused one of them to fetch vs his bills of lading, and because hee denied that he had any, we sent certaine with him, who caused him to goe to the place where hee had hid them, and by the differences of his bills of lading, and his talke, we gathered as before, that they had Frenchmens goods. Whereupon wee examined them straightly, and first the purser of the Vnicorne which was the smaller shippe: he confessed that they had 32. tunnes and a hoghead of a Frenchmans. Then we examined the Master in like case, and he acknowledged the same to be true. Then wee examined also the Master of the great shippe, and he confessed that hee had 128. tunnes of the same Frenchmans, and moze they would not confesse, but saide that all the rest was laden by one Peter Lewgues of Hamburge, to bee deliuered to one Henry Summer of Camphire, notwithstanding all their letters were directed to Hamburge, and written in Dutch without, and within in French.

When they had confessed that they had thus much French mens goods within their shippes, we conferred together what was best to be done with them, William Cretton and Edward Selman were of the opinion, that it should bee good either to carie them into Spaine, and there to make sale of the goods, or els into Ireland, or to returne backe againe into Englands with them if the winde would permit it. But I, waying what charge we had of our Masters, first by mouth, and after wards by writing, that for no such matter wee shoulde in any case prolong the time, for feare of losing the voyage, and considering that the time of the yeere was very farre spent, and the money that wee should make of the wines not very much, in respect of the commoditie which wee hoped for by the voyage, perswaded them that to goe into Ireland the winde being Easterly as it was, might be an occasion that wee should be locked in there with that winde, and so loose our voyage, and to carie them into Spaine (seeing they sailed so ill that hauing all their sailes abroade, we kept them companie onely with our foresailes, and without any toppc sailes abroade, so that in euery two dayes sayling, they would haue hindered vs more then one, and besides that the winde being Easterly) we should not be able to seaze the coast with them: besides all this the losse of time when we came thither was to be considered, wherupon I thought it not good to carie them any further.

And as for carrying them into England, although the winde had bene good as it was not, considering what charge we had of our Masters, to shift vs out of the way for feare of a stay by reason of the warres, I held it not in any wise conuenient.

But notwithstanding all this, certaine of our companie not being herewith satisfied, went to our Master to know his opinion therein, who made them a plaine answer, that to cariy them into any place, it was not the best way nor the profite of their Masters. And he tolde them further, that if the time were prolonged one moneth longer before they passed the Cape, but a fewe men would goe the voyage. All these things considered, we all paused, and determined at the last, that euery man should take out of the hulks so much as he could wel bestow for necessaries, and the next morning to conclude what should be further done with them. So we tooke out of them for vs 14. tunnes and a halfe of wine, and one tunne we put into the pinnell.

The French mens goods seized, in the time of the warre upon the loss of Calais.

- None we tooke out one hoghead of Aquauitz.
- Six cakes of rossen,
- A small halter for eyes: and certaine chellenuts,
- The Christopher tooke out,
- Ten tunnes of wine, and one hoghead.
- A quantite of Aquauitz,
- Shall lynes,
- Chellenuts.

Six double bales with their chambers, And their men broke by the hulks chettes, and tooke out their Compasses, and running glasses, the sounding leade and line, and candles: and cast some of their beest ouer boord, and spoiled them so much, that of very pittie we gaue them a Compasse, a running glasse, a lead and a line, certaine bread and candles, and what apparell of theirs we could finde in their ship, we gaue them againe, and some money also of that which William Crompton tooke for the ransom of a poore Frenchman, who being their Pilot downe the Riuer of Bourdeaux, they were not able to set him a shoare againe by reason of the foule weather.

The Tyger also tooke out of the smaller hulke, 6. or 7. tunnes of wine, one hoghead of Aquauitz: and certaine rossen, and two Bales he tooke out of the great hulke.

The 1 day of February in the morning, we all came together againe sauing W. Crompton, <sup>schuartz</sup>. who sent vs word that he was contented to agree to that order which we should take.

From Edward Selman was of this opinion, that it was not best to let the ships depart, but we men into them to carrie them into England, which thing neither we nor our Master would agree unto, because we thought it not good to vnturn our ships going out ward, considering how dangerous the time was: so that in fine we agreed to let them depart, and giue them the rest of the wine which they had in their ships of the Frenchmens for the freight of that which we had taken, and for their opbinance, rossen, Aquauitz, chellenuts, and other things which the company had taken from them, so we received a bill of their hands, that they confessed how much Frenchmens goods they had, and then we let them depart.

The 3. day in the morning we found a great leake in the stemme of our ship, and in one houre pumped 400. strokes, and besides we found that our boltspyete and foymaste were both sprung, that wee could not well beare any sailes vpon them, and finding our selues to be 24. leagues or thereabout North from Cape finister, wee bare with the Tyger and the wed the Master that we would rume South to rume vnder the Cape to stoppe our leake, and fill our mastes, which Richard Packman agreed vnto: then we bare with the Christopher, and the wed them therof in like case, but the Master answered nothing thereto. Yet thinking that hee knowing our necessity would haue followed vs, we rume South to haue the Cape abooye, and so did the Tyger, but the Christopher kept her course South and by West, and would not come neere vs, so that in the afternoon we were forced to goe roome with him againe, and refuse the going with the Cape, vponing both our mast and ship in great danger, which with the helpe of the carpenters in 3. houres in smooth water might haue bene mended.

The 4. day in the morning the Tyger sprung the woolings of her boltspyete, and so was forced to take in her topsailes and mainesail, and with her foresaile lay to the Westwarde to mende the same againe, and we followed her, but the Christopher did not.

The 5. day we reckoned our selues to be in the height of Cape S. Vincent.

The 7. day we met with the winde at South with gusts of raine, lightning, and thunder, and so continued all night following the winde, sometimes South, and sometimes Southsouthwest: but alwayes as soone as the gusts were done, the winde came againe to the North-east. This night we were in the heighe of Porto Sancto.

The 10. day we reckoned our selues to be 25. leagues from the Grand Canarie, and this day about 9. of the clocke our pinnelle brake her rudder, so that we were forced to tow her at the sterne of the Minion, which we were able to doe, and yet kept company with the rest of our ships. About 11. of the clocke this day we had sight of the Grand Canarie.

The 11. day when we came to the Island we perceived that it was the Isle of Tenerif, and then in derde we had sight of the Grand Canarie, which lieth 12. leagues to the Eastwards of Tenerif: and because the road of Tenerif is soule ground, and nothing was there to be gotten for the helping of our pinnelle, hauing the winde large, we agreed to goe with the Grand Canarie.

The 12. day we came into the roade of the towne of Canarie, which lyeth one league from the same towne. And after we had shot off diuers pieces of ordynance to salute the towne and the castle, the gouernour and captaines of the Island sent to vs which were the captaines of the shippes, requiring vs to come a shoare, And when we came to them they received vs very friendly, offering vs their owne Jewets to ride to the towne, and what other friendship they could be to vs: and we went to the towne with two English Marchants which lay there, and remained in their house that day. The second day following we came abooye to deliuer our marchandise, and to get our pinnelle mended.

The 14. day came into the roade the Spanish flecte which was bounde to the Emperours Indies, which were in number nineteene saile, whereof 6. were shippes of 400. and 500. a pierce, the rest were of 200. 150. and of 100. When they were come to an ancre they saluted vs with ordynance, and so wee did them in like case. And afterwards the Admirall (who was a knight) sent his pinnelle to desire me to come to him, and when I came to him hee received mee friendly, and was desirous to heare somewhat of the State of England and Flanders. And after he had made me a banquet I departed, and I being gone vnto the boate, hee caused one of his gentlemen to desire Francisco the Portingale which was my interpreter, to require mee to firtle my flagge, declaring that he was General of the Emperours flecte. Which thing (being come abooye) Francisco strewed me: and because I refused to firtle it, but kept it footy still, certaine of the soulers in the shippes, shotte diuers harquebush shotte about the shippe, and ouer the flagge: and at the same time there came certaine gentlemen abooye our shippe to see her: to whome I said, that if they would not cause those their men to leaue shooting, I would shoote the best ordynance I had through their sides. And when they perceived that I was offended they departed, and caused their men of warre

and

Two English  
Marchants  
larger in the  
Grand Canarie.

The Spanish  
West Indian  
flecte of 19.  
saile.

Wil.  
and sou  
had put  
could, e  
them, a  
my flag  
ingent  
The  
The  
had sig  
The  
Blanke  
The  
went to  
her and  
the clo  
beyond  
were of  
land fou  
to whic  
and har  
and int  
wee car  
like cal  
any pla  
It be  
we got  
Gama  
had tal  
long tir  
me he v  
The  
from th  
that tol  
that the  
goodly  
we can  
their tr  
their ca  
after d  
minet  
The  
the pin  
of the  
The  
Monte  
The  
us char  
part. A  
The  
The  
Ch  
wars  
The  
and co  
the riu  
gale to  
us fire  
were e

let the ships depart, but we  
our Master would agree  
and, considering how danger  
give them the rest of the wine  
which we had taken, and for  
the company had taken from  
ch Frenchmens goods they

of our ship, and in one hour  
foremasse were both spoyng,  
it sculde to be 24. leagues  
shewed the Master that we  
to fill our mallets, which Ri  
the word I hem thereof in like  
thee knowing our necessity  
and so did the Tyger, but the  
me nere vs, so that in the af  
going with the Cape, put  
the carpenters in 3. hours in

blemyete, and so was forced  
the Westwarde to me we the

Incident,  
lightning, and thunder, and  
sometimes Southsouthwest  
to the Northeast. This night

Grand Canarie, and this day  
need to towe her at the firme  
by the rest of our ships. About

the Isle of Teneris, and then  
to the Eastwarde of Tene  
here to be gotten for the best  
Grand Canarie.

lyeth one league from the  
uate the towne and the castle,  
captaines of the shippes, w  
ed vs very friendly, offering  
they could the vs: and we  
and remained in their house  
merchandise, and to get our

ounde to the Emperours In-  
of 400. and 500. a piece, the  
re they saluted vs with ord  
ill (who was a knight,) sent  
e received mee friendly, and  
3. And after he had made me  
e to furlie my flagge, declar  
Francisco  
taine of the souldiers in the  
flagge: and at the same time  
me I said, that if they would  
dinance I had through their  
d caused their men of warre  
and

and souldiers to shoote no more, and afterwards they came to mee againe, and tolde me that they  
had punished their men. That done, I shewed them the shippe and made them such cheere as I  
coude, which they received very thankfully: and the day following they sent for mee to dine with  
them, and sent me word that their General was very sozie that any man should require me to furlie  
my flagge, and that it was without his consent: and therefore hee requested mee not to thinke any  
ungentleness to be in him, promising that no man of his should misdeemeane himselfe.

The 17. day we set saile in the roade of Grand Canarie, and pproceded on our voyage.  
The 20. in the morning we had sight of the coast of Barbarie, and running along the shoare we  
had sight of the river del Oro, which lieth almost vnder the tropike of Cancer.

The 21. day we found our selues to be in 20. degrees and a halfe, which is the height of Cape  
Blanke. The 25. we had sight of the land in the bay to the Northward of Cape Verde.

The 26. I tooke Francisco and Francis Castelin with mee, and went into the pinnelle, and so  
went to the Tyger which was nearer the shoare then the other ships, and went aboard her, and with  
her and the other shippes we ranne West and by South, and West Southwest, untill about 4. of  
the clocke, at which time we were hard abooze the Cape, and then we ranne in Southwest, and  
beyond the Cape about 4. leagues we found a faire Island, and besides that 2. or 3. Islands, which  
were of very high rocks, being full of buiers foyes of sea foule, and of pigeons, with other foyes of  
land foules, and so many, that the whole Island was covered with the dunge thereof, and seemed  
so white as if the whole Island had bene of chyalke, and within those Islands was a very faire bay,  
and hard aboord the rocks 8. fadom water, and faire ground. And when we perceived the baye,  
and understanding that the Frenchmen had a great trade there, which we were desirous to know,  
we came to an ancre with the Tyger. And after that the Minion and the Christopher ancred in  
like case: then we caused the pinnelle to runne beyonde another Cape of land, to see if there were  
any place to trade in there.

It being nere night I tooke our cocke and the Tygers staffe, and went to the Island, where  
we got certaine foules like unto Gannarros: and then I came aboord againe and took two of the  
Gannarros which we had taken, and carried them to the Captaine of the Christopher, and when I  
had talked with him, I founde him not willing to carie there, neither was I desirous to spend any  
long time there, but onely to attempt what was to be done: The Master of the Christe oher tolde  
me he wold not carie, being not bound for that place.

The 27. the Captaine of the Tyger and Edwardo Selman came to me, and John Makeworth  
from the Christopher, and then we agreed to take the pinnelle, & to come along the shoare, because  
that where we ride no Negroes came to vs, and the night before our pinnelle brought vs word,  
that there was a very faire Island. And when I came beyond the point I found it so, and vntill a  
goodly Bay, and we satte upon the maiore certaine Negroes which waited vs on shoare, and then  
we came to an ancre with the pinnelle, & went a shoare with our cocke, and they shewed vs where  
their trade was, and that they had Elephants teeth, malles, and hides, and offered vs to fetch bowtie  
their captaine, if we would send a man with them, and they would leaue a pledge for him: then we  
asked them when any shippe had bene there, and some of them said not in 8. moneths, others, in 6.  
moneths, and others in 4. and that they were Frenchmen.

Then we perceiving the Christopher was willing to carie, departed from them, & set saile with  
the pinnelle & went aboard the Tyger. And I understanding of some contention betwixt the Master  
of the Minion, and the Captaine of the Christopher, was not worth the reporting.  
The 28. day of March we set saile with the coast of Guine 2.5. leagues to the Eastward of Cape de  
Monte, beside a river called Rio de palmas.

The 29. we went to the shoare, & found one man that could speake some Portugise, who tolde  
vs that there were 3. French ships passed by: one of them 2. moneths past, & the other 1. moneth  
past. In this place I received 29. Elephants teeth, and 2. ounces and halfe a quarter of gold.

The 2. day we set saile to the river de Sestos, which is a quarter of the way to the  
The 3. day we set saile with the same river.

The 24. day we sent in our boates to take water, and romaged our shippes, and deliuered such  
wares to the Christopher and Tyger as they had neede of.

The 25. we came together, and agreed to send the Tyger to another river to the in her water,  
and to see what the road to do to graignes. After that we tooke merchandise with vs, and were  
the river, and there we found a Negro which was borne in Lisbon, left there by a ship of Portin  
gale which was burned the last yeere at this river in fighting with 3. Frenchmen: and hee tolde  
vs further, that two moneths past there were 3. French ships at this place, and 6. weekes past there  
were also 3. French shippes at the river, and 15. dayes past there was one. All which shippes were  
gone

River del Oro.

Frances Cas  
teline.

4. Islands.

A great trade  
of the French  
men at Cape  
Verde.

A faire Island  
where the  
French trade.

Elephants  
teeth, malles,  
and hides.

The River de  
Sestos.

gone towards the Mine. This day we took but few graines.

The 19. day considering that the Frenchmen were gone before vs, and that by reason of the unwholsome ayres of this place 14. of our men in the Minion were fallen sicke, we determined to depart, and with all speede to goe to the Mina.

The 21. wee came to the river de Poros, where some of our boates went in for water, and I went in with our cocke, and took 12. small Elephants teeth.

The 23. day, after wee had taken as many teeth as we could get, about 9. of the clocke wee set sail to goe towards the Mina.

The 27. day being by my reckoning 20. leagues from the Cape Trespoints, our pinnelle broke one of the gudgions of her rudder, so that we were forced to tow her. This day also we called the Botelvaire before vs, and layd to his charge certaine masters, wherein he had misdeemed him selfe: but upon his submission & intreatie of pardon, and promise of better behauiour, we (desirous of peace and quietnes) forgave him.

The 28. we mended our pinnelles rudder.

The 29. we ranne along the coast.

The 31. we came to Hanta, and made sale of certaine Spanillios.

April 1558.

They discric  
the saile of the  
Portingals.

The first of April we had sight of five sailes of Portingals, whereupon we set sail and went off to sea to get the winde of them, which wee should haue had if the winde had kept his ordinary course, which is all the day at the South-west, and West South-west: but this day with a flauie it kept all the day at the East, and East South-east, so that the Portingals had the winde of vs, and came roome with the Tyger and vs untill night, and brought them selfe lues all saue one, which saile was not so well as the rest, within shotte of vs: then it fell calme, and the winde came by to the South-west, wherbeit it was neere night, and the Christopher by means of her boate, was about foure leagues to the leeward of vs. We tacked and ranne into the weather of the Admirall, and chere more of his companie, and when we were neere him, we spake to him, but he would not answer: then we call about and lay in the weather of him; and calling about wee shotte at vs, and then we shot at him, and shotte him foure or five times through. They shot diuers times through our sailes, but hurt no man. The Tyger and the pinnelle because it was night, kept out their sailes and would not meddle with them; after wee had thus fought together two houres or more, and would not lay him aboard because it was night, we left shooting one at the other, and kept still the weather of them. Then the Tigean and the pinnelle kept about and came to vs, and afterwards being neere the shoare, we 3. kept about and lay to the sea, and shotte off a peece to giue warning to the Christopher.

The sight.

This night about twelue of the clocke being very little winde, and the Mastee of the Tiger a sleepe, by the euill workes of his men the shippes fell aboard of vs, and with her beare hooked cut our maine saile, and her boate being herin vs was broken and sunke, with certaine Portingals in her, and the shippes wailes were broken with her onclegers: yet in the ende we cleared her without any more hurt, but she was in hazard to be broken to lues to the water.

The second day we had sight of the Christopher, and were neere vnto her, so that I took our boate and went to her. And when I came thither, they betwixt mee, that after the Portingals had left vs, they went all roome with him, and about twelue a clocke at night mette him, and shotte at him, and hee at them, and they shotte him through the sailes in diuers places, and did no other great hurt. And when wee had vnderstoode that they had bene with him as well as with vs, we agreed altogether to secke them (if wee might finde them,) and keepe a weather our places of traffique.

The 7. we ranne all day to the South-west wards to secke the Portingals, but could haue no sight of them, and halied into the shoare.

Lagua.

The fourth day when we had sight of land, we found that the current had set vs thre leagues to the Eastwards of our reckoning, which we wondered at: for the first lande wee made, was Lagua. Then I caused our boate to be manned, and the Christophers also, and went to the shoare and took our Negro with vs. And on shoare wee learned that there were foure French shippes vpon the coast; one at Perinnen, which is six leagues to the Westward of Lagua; another at Weamba, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Lagua; a thirde at Perecow, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Weamba; and the fourth at Egrand, which is foure leagues to the Eastward of Perecow.

Perinnen.

Weamba,  
Perecow,  
Egrand.

When we had intelligence of these newes, we agreed to goe to the Eastward with the French men to put them from their traffique, and shotte off two or thre peeces in our boates to cause the shippes to wape: and hauing bene about one houre vnder saile, we had sight of one of the French men

, and that by reason of the  
en sick, wee determined

ments in for water, and I

at 9. of the clocke wee set

points our pinnelle byke  
his day also we called the  
he had misbeheaved him  
re behauiour, we (desirous

m we set saile and went off

we had kept his ordinary

ut this day with a flawe it

als had the winde of vs, and

ness all saue one, which sai-

d the winde came by to the

nes of her boate, was about

rather of the Admirall, and

him, but he would not an-

about her shotte at vs, and

shot diuers times through

night, kept out their sailes

r two houres or more, and

at the other, and kept still

came to vs, and afterwards

a piece to giue warning to

to the Mast of the Tiger a

with her sheare booke cut

we, with certaine Marchan-

in the ende we cleared her

the water.

to her, so that Iooke our

at after the Portugals had

light mette him, and shotte

places, and did no other

him as well as with vs, wee

we a weather our places of

ingals, but could we haue no

had set vs thier leagnes

saue wee made, was La-

alls, and went to the shore

ere foure French Shippes

nde of Laguna: another at

Pericow, which is foure

ch is foure leagnes to the

owards with the French

in our boates to cause the

ght of one of the French

men

men and his selfe, halting off from Weamba to whome wee gaue chase, and agreed in the night for  
fear of ouerbooting them, that the Minion should first come to ancre, & after that about 3. houres,  
the Tyger and the Christopher to beare along all night.

The 5. day we found 3. of the French Shippes at ancre: one called La foye de Honfleur, a Shippe  
of 220. tunnes; another called the Ventercule or smal Roebarge of Honfleur, of 100. tunnes,  
both appertaining to the Shawdet of Honfleur, the 3. was called the Mulet de Barville a Shippe  
of 120. tunnes, and this Shippe belonged to certaine Marchants of Roan.

When we came to them we determined to lay the Admirall abooze, the Christopher the Vice-  
admirall, and the Tyger the smallest; but when we came nere them they wayed, and the Christo-  
pher being the headmost & the weacernmost man, went roome with the Admirall; the Roebarge  
went so fast that we could not fetch her. The first that wee came to was the Mulet, and her wee  
layd abooze and entred our men, and tooke her, which Shippe was the richest except the Admirall.  
For the Admirall had taken about 80. li. of gold, and the Roebarge had taken but 22. pound, and  
all this we learned of the Frenchmen, who knewe it very well: for they were all in conference toge-  
ther and had bene vpon the coast of Mina 2. moneths and oude dayes: howbeit the Roebarge had  
bene there before them with another Ship of Diepe, and a Caruell which had beaten all the coast,  
and was departed one moneth before our arriuing there, & they 3. had taken about 700. li. of gold.

As soone as we had layd the Ship abooze, and left certaine men in her to keepe her, we set saile  
and gaue chase to the other 2. Shippes, & chased them all day and night, & the next day until 3. a clocke  
in the afternoon, but we could not fetch them, and therefore seeing that we brought our felues ve-  
ry farre to leeward of our place, we left the chase, & kept about againe to goe with the hoare.

The 7. day I sent for the capitaine, marchants & masters of the other Shippes, and when they came  
we wayed the gold which we had from the Frenchmen, which wayed 50. li. and 5. ounces of gold,  
this done we agreed to put men out of euery Ship into the pisse to keepe her.

The 12. day we came to the further place of the Mine called Egrand, and being come to an  
ancre discharged all the marchants goods out of the pisse, and would haue sold the Ship with the vic-  
tuals to the Frenchmen, but because she was leake they would not take her, but desired vs to saue  
their liues in taking them into our owne Shippes: then we agreed to take out the victuals and stinke  
the Shippe, and deuide the men among our Shippes.

The 14. at night wee made an ende of discharging the pisse, and deuide all the French-  
men except 4. which were sicke and not able to helpe themselues, which 4. both the Christopher  
and the Tyger refused to take, leaving them in their ship alone in the night, so that about midnigte  
I was forced to fetch them into our Ship.

The 15. of April, moouing our companie for the boyage of Binnie, the most part of them all re-  
fused it. The 16. seeing the intwillingness of the companie to goe thither, we determined to spend  
as much time vpon the coast as we could, to the end we might make our boyage, & agreed to leaue  
the Minion here at Egrand, the Tyger to go to Pericow which is 4. leagnes off, & the Christopher  
to goe to Weamba, which is 10. leagnes to the wecward of this place: and if any of them both  
should haue light of more sailes then they thought good to meddle withall, to come roome to their  
felowes, to wit, first the Christopher to come with the Tyger, and then both they to come with vs.

We remained in this place called Egrand until the last day of April, in which time many of our  
men fell sicke, and 6. of them died, And here we could haue no traffique with the Negroes but 3. or 4.  
dayes in the weeke, and all the rest of the weeke they would not come at vs. We here lost our an-  
cre and broke a cable, and in the waying of another ancre some of our men were hurt.

The 3. of May not hauing the pinnelle sent vs with cloth from the other Shippes as they promi-  
sed, we sold French cloth, and gaue but 3. pards thereof to euery fuffe.

The 5. day the Negroes departed, and to lve vs they would come to vs againe within 4. dayes,  
which we determined there to carie, although we had diuers of our men sicke.

The 8. day at our cloth in the Minion being sold, I called the companie together, to know to be-  
ther they would carie the sale of the cloth taken in the pisse at this place or no: they answered, that  
in respect of the death of some of their men, and the present sickness of 20. more, they would not carie,  
but repaire to the other Shippes, of whome they had heard nothing since the 27. of April: and yet they  
had our pinnelle with them, ouely to carie newes from one to another.

The 9. day we determined to depart hence to our felowes, to see what they had done, and to ac-  
comp what was to be done at the towne of Don Iohn.

The 10. day in the morning we set saile to seeke the Christopher and the Tyger.

The 11. day the capitaine of the Christopher came to vs, and told vs that they could finde small  
things at the places where they had bene.

The English  
boote the  
Frenchmen.

50. pound of  
goide taken in  
the French  
pisse.

25. mule.

Our men die  
of sickness.

30. or.

Sickness.

The 12. William Crompton and I in our small pinnelle went to the Tyger and the Christopher at Perenine.

The 13. we sent away the Tyger to Egrande, because we founde nothing to doe at Perenine, worth the tarrying for.

The 14. our great pinnelle came to vs, and presently we put cloch into her, and sent her backe to Weamba where she had bene before, and had taken there 10. li. of golde.

The 15. the Minion came to vs, and the next day we went a shoare with our boates, and tooke but one ounce of golde.

Mowre.

The 19. day hauing set saille we came to an ancre before Mowre, and there we tarried 2. dayes, but tooke not an ounce of golde.

The 21. we came to an ancre before Don Johns towne.

The great  
towne of Don  
John.

The 22. we manned our boates and went to shoare, but the Negroes would not come at vs; then the Captaine of the Christopher and I tooke a Schiffe and 8. men with vs, and went and talked with the Negroes, and they said that they would send a man to the great towne, where Don John himselfe laye, to aduertise him of our coming.

The 23. we went a shoare againe, & the Negroes told vs that this day the marchants of Don John would come towne: so we tarried there vntill night, and no man would come to vs: but the uers of the Negroes made vs signes to depart.

The 24. the captaine of the Christopher tooke his boate & went to Mowre, and when he came thither certaine Negroes came to him to know the price of his wares, but in the end there came an Almabe, which he iudged came from the castle, & caused all the Negroes to depart from him: and when he saw they would come no more to him, he went a shoare and tooke certaine men with him, and then the Negroes cast stones at them, & would not suffer them to come by to their towne. And when they saw that, they tooke certaine of their Almades, & put them to the sea, & after wards departed. The same morning I went a shoare at Don Johns towne & tooke a white flag with me, but none of the Negroes coude come to me, which caused vs to iudge that the Portingals were in the towne. After this our boate came to vs well manned, and I sent one man by to the towne with a white flagge in his hand, but when he was come thither all the Negroes went away and would not speake with him. Then I sent one alone into the woods after them, but they in no case would come to vs. When we saw that, we tooke 12. goats and 14. hennes, which we found in the towne, and went aboard without doing any further hurt to the towne: and when I came aboard, I found our pinnelle come frō Cormatin, which had taken there 2. li. 5. ounces of gold. Then after much a doe with the forward Spariners, we went thitherwards with our ship, & the Christopher went to Mowre.

Cormatin.

A fight with  
the Negroes.

The 25. day the Master of the Christopher sent his boate to the shoare for ballast, and the Negroes would haue beaten the companie from the shoare, whereupon the companie resisted them, and slew and hurt many of them, and hauing put them to flight, burned their towne and brake all their boates. The 26. day our pinnelle came to vs from Cormatin, and had taken 2. li. 11. ounces of gold: and John Shirife told vs that the Negroes of that place were very detestous to haue a ship come backe againe to their towne. The 27. we wayed and went to Cormatin.

June.

The 28. the Christopher came to vs from Mowre, and taffiqued there two dayes. The second day of June the Tiger came to vs from Egrande, and the pinnelle from Weamba, and they two had taken about 50. li. of golde since they departed from vs.

The 4. day we departed from Cormatin to ply by to Shamma, being not able to tarrie any longer vpon the coast for lacke of victuals, and specially of drinke.

The 7. day we had sight of 5. of the king of Portingals ships, which came to an ancre besides the Castle.

The 8. day George and Binny came to vs, and brought with them about 2. li. of golde. This night the Christopher and the pinnelle came by to vs, which had bene 3. dayes a sterne of vs, and the Master of the pinnelle tolde vs their extremitie for want of victual, and therefore they desired to be taken out of the pinnelle, but we intreated them to goe to the pinnelle againe, and gaue them beere, bread, porke and stockfish to victual them vntill such time as we came to Shamma, that we might send her away with some of our Frenchmen.

The 10. day in the morning I tooke our small pinnelle, and the Captaine of the Christopher with me, and manned her well and went to the castle to victual the Portingals ships, and there we found one ship of about 300. tunne, and 4. cartuels: when we had well victualled them, we returned backe againe to our ships which we found 7. leagues at sea.

The 11. day in the morning we found our 2. lues well shot toward Shamma, and the Tiger with vs, but the Minion & the pinnelle had not wayed that night, so that we were out of sight of them: and

the Tyger and the Christo-  
phing to doe at Percine,

ber, and sent her backe to  
with our boates, and tooke  
there we tarried 2. dayes,

would not come at vs; then  
sh vs, and went and talked  
to towne, where Don Iohn  
ay the marchants of Don  
would come to vs; but he

Mowre, and when he came  
ut in the end there came an  
es to depart from him: and  
ke certaine men with him,  
me by to their towne. And  
to the sea, & after wards be-  
ooke a white flag with me,  
hat the Portugals were in  
man by to the towne with  
oes went away and would

but they in no case would  
which we found in the towne,  
then I came aboard, I found  
of gold. When after much a  
the Christophert went to  
the shoare for balaste, and  
pon the companie refused  
burned their towne and  
matin, and had taken 2. li.  
lace were very desirous to  
went to Cormatin,  
re two dayes,  
e pinnelle from Weamba,  
s.

ing not able to carrie any  
came to an ancre besides

about 2. li. of golde. This  
dayes a sterne of vs, and  
and therefore they desired  
sle againe, and gaue them  
ame to Shamma, that we

peasie of the Christophert  
ingals ships, and there we  
vited them, we returned

Shamma, and the Tyger with  
were out of sight of them  
and

and hauing brought our selues in the wether of the Portugals ships, we came to an anker to car-  
rie for the Spinion, or els we might haue fetched Shamma. At night the Spinion, and the pinnelle  
came by to vs, but could not fetch so farre to the weatherward as we, and therefore they ankered  
about a league a wether the castle, and we waited in the Christophert, and went roome with her.

The 12. day the Tyger came roome with vs, and she and the Christophert finding themselves  
to stand in great need of victuals, would haue gone with the Portugals shippes to haue fetched  
some of them forth: but our matter and companie would in no case consent to goe with them, for  
feare of hanging when we came home: and the ocher two ships being fully minded to haue gone,  
and fearing that their owne companie would accuse them, durst not goe to them.

After this, by reason of the want of victuals in the pinnelle, which could receiue no victuals  
from the ocher ships, but from vs onely, we tooke out all our men, and put 12. French men into  
her, and gaue them victuals to bring them to Shamma.

The 19. day the Tyger and Spinion arrived at Shamma, and the Christophert within two  
leagues off them, but could not fetch the winde by reason of the scantnesse of the winde, which  
bath bene so scant, that in fifteene dayes we haue plied to the windewards but twelue leagues,  
which before we did in one day and a night.

The 20. day I tooke our pinnelle, and went to the towne of Shamma to speake with the cap-  
taine, and he tolde me that there was no golde there to be had, nor so much as a den to be bought,  
and all by reason of the accord which he had made with the Portugals, and I seeing that, depa-  
red peaceably from him.

The 21. I put such things as we had into our small pinnelle, and tooke one merchant of our  
ship, and another of the Tyger, and sent her to Hanta, to attempt, if she could doe any thing there:  
that night she could do nothing but were promised to haue some golde the next day.

The next day (which was the 22.) being come, we sent our pinnelle to Hanta againe, but there  
neither the capitaine nor the Negroes durst traffike with vs, but inticed vs from place to place, and  
all to no purpote.

This day we put away our pinnelle, with five and twentie Frenchmen in her, and gaue them  
for their victuals,

- 2. Driefats of beead.
- 2. Cume of beere and syder.
- 1. Doghead of wine.
- 15. Dogheads of water.
- 1. Doghead of beefe.
- 2. Firkins of butter.
- 75. Stockefish.
- 1. Bartell of honey.

They put the  
French men  
with victuals  
into the pin-  
nelle.

Of these 25. men, we set 15. at their ransome, which 15. were taken in the Spulet: the o-  
thers, some came to vs in a pinnelle, and some from the shoare, and therefore we put them at no  
ransome.

The pinnelle with two bales, and all her apparell, we set at fortye crownes. The names of the  
Frenchmen, which we put in her, were these, being all of them ransomed,

Out of the Chrystopher, we set these men.

- Peter Huguille, of Battuille.
- Robert Hauerte, of Roan.
- Stephen Benner, of Honfleur.
- Michael Haguille, of Battuille.
- John Chapon, of Battuille.
- Legier le Feuer, of Honfleur.
- Barnardine Adam, of Blankuiste.

Out of the Tyger, these.

- Ricard de Mont, of Roan.
- Peter Nefew, of Honfleur.

Out of the Minion, these.

- Oliuer Bowcher, of Honfleur.
- Thomas D'Orleance, of Honfleur.
- Hubert Colyn, of Battuille.
- Michael Vacre, of Honfleur.
- Maryn le Buc, of Honfleur.

Maryn

Maryn Ofleraye. All which were equally ransomed for sixe crownes a peece.

The 23. of June, our pinnelle came to vs from Hanta, and told vs, that the Negroes had kept very ill with them, and would not traffike with them to any purpose.

Shamma  
burne by the  
English.

The 24. we tooke our boate, and pinnelle, and manned them well, and went to the towne of Shamma, and because the Captaine thereof was become subject to the Portugals, we burned the towne, and our men seeking the spoile of such cristles as were there, found a Portugall chell, wherein was some of his apparell, and his weightes, and one letter sent to him from the Castle, whereby we gathered, that the Portugall had bene there of a long time.

Their returne  
hoineward.

The 25. day, about thre of the clocke at afternoone, we set saile, and put into the sea, for our returne to England.

The current.

The last day of this moneth, wee fell with the shoare againe, and made our reckoning to be eightene leagues to the weatherward of the place where we set off. When we came to make the land, we found our selues to be eightene leagues to the lee ward of the place, where we set off, which came to passe, by reason of the extreame current that runneth to the Eastward: when we perceiued our selues so abused, we agreed to cast about againe, and to lye as neere the winde as we coulde, to fetch the line.

July.  
S. Thomas  
Island.

The seventh of July, we had sight of the Isle of S. Thomas, and thought to haue sought the roade, to haue ankered there: but the next morning the winde came about, and wee kept our course.

The ninth, the winde varying, we kept about againe, and fell with the Island of S. Thomas, and seeking the roade, were becalmed neere the Island, and with the current were put neere the shoare, but could haue noe ground to anker: so that we were forced to hoist our pinnelle, and the other shippes their sailes to towne from the Island, which did little good, but in the end the winde put vs thre leagues off the shoare.

The tenth day, the Christopher, and the Tyger, cast about, whereby we iudged them to haue agreed together, to goe seeke some shippes in the roade, and to leaue vs: our men were not willing to goe after them, for feare of running in with the Island againe, and of putting our selues into the same danger that we were in the night before: but we shot off a peece, and put out two lightes, and they answered vs with lightes againe: whereupon we kept our course, & thought that they had followed vs, but in the morning we could not see them, so that they left vs willingly, and we determined to follow them no more.

But the 11. day, we altered our opinion, and course, and consented to cast about againe for the Island, to seeke our shippes, and about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, we met with them.

Our men vnder  
the line.

The 12. we fell againe with the Island of S. Thomas, and the same night we found our selues directly vnder the line.

This Island is a very high Island, and being vpon the west side of it, you shall see a very high picke, which is very smal, and straight, as it were the steeple of a Church, which picke lieth directly vnder the line, and at the same South end of the Island, to the westward thereof, lieth a small Island, about a mile from the great Island.

August.

The third of August, we departed from the Isle of S. Thomas, and met the winde at the south west.

The first day, we found our selues in eight degrees.

The 12. day, we were in the height of Cape Verde.

The Island of  
Salt.

The 22. day, we fell with one of the Isles of Cape Verde, called the Isle of Salt, and being informed by a Scottish man, that we tooke among the French men vpon the coast, that there were fresh victuals to be had, we came to an anker there.

The 23. day, in the morning, we manned our skiffe, and went a shoare, and found no houses, but we saw foure men, which kept themselves alwaies farre from vs, as for cattell, we could finde none, but great store of goates, and they were so wild, that we could not take about thre or foure of them: but there we had good store of fische, and vpon a small Island, which lay by the same, we had great store of sea birds.

At night, the Christopher brake her cable, and lost an anker, so that she could tary no longer, so we all waied, and set saile. Vpon the same Island, we left the Scottish men, which was the occasion of our going a land at that place, but how he was left, we could not tell: but as we iudged, the people of the Island found him sleeping, and so carried him away: for at night I went my selfe to the Island to seeke him, but could heare nothing of him.

The 24. day, the Master of the Tyger came aboard vs, & told vs that his men were so weake, and the shippe so leake, that he was not able to keepe her about the water, and therefore requiered

Wh  
us to go  
creas  
could  
the fish  
The  
Lucia, S  
by  
The  
day, Phil  
ger, and  
ster bet  
day we  
if we cou  
The  
went thi  
caline, lo  
wind, an  
The 2  
were be  
The  
me, to vi  
in her, w  
the shipp  
away.  
The  
The  
her by, 2  
The  
The  
speake v  
not come  
The  
known  
ber, and  
The  
The  
The  
weg, fo  
for Vigo  
The  
England  
knowing  
hope off  
weake, s  
Porting  
trouble  
came ou  
of time, a  
ces of o  
ring our  
was chie  
was gou  
shot a be  
At th  
leagues  
not abou  
a shippe.



crowes a peece,  
that the Negroes had deat

and went to the towne of  
Portingals, we burne  
found a Portugall chell,  
me to him from the Cattle,  
re.

and put into the sea, for we

made our reckoning to be  
When we came to make the  
the place, where we set off,  
the Eastward: when we  
lye as neere the winde as

ought to haue sought the  
about, and wee kept our

the Island of S. Thomas,  
arrant were put neere the  
bosse out our pinnell, and  
good, but in the ende the

we iudged them to haue  
our men were not willing  
of putting our selues into  
ce, and put out two lightes,  
se, I thought that they had  
vs willingly, and we do

call about againe for the  
one, we met with them,  
might we found our selues

t, you shall see a very high  
h, which picke lieth direct  
ward thereof, lieth a small

met the winde at the south

Isle of Salt, and being  
upon the coast, that there

and found no houses, but  
for cattell, we could finde  
take about thye of foure  
which lay by the same, we

we could say no longer,  
men, which was the oc-  
cell: but as we iudged,  
at night I went my selfe

his men were so weake,  
t, and therefore requested

us to gett backe againe to the Island, that we might discharge her, and give her vp: but we in-  
crease him to take paine with her a while, and we put a French Carpenter into her, to see if he  
could finde the leake. This day we tooke a view of all our men, both those that were whole, and  
the sick also, and we found that in all the three Shippes, were not about thirtie sound men.

The great in-  
conuenience  
by late staying  
upon the coast  
of Guine.

The 25. we had sight of the Isle of S. Nicholas, and the day following, of the other Isles, S.  
Lucia, S. Vincent, and S. Anthonie, which foure Isles lye the one from the other, North-west, and  
by West, South-east, and by East.

The 26. we came againe with the Island of S. Anthonie, and could not double the Cape. This  
day, Philip Iones, the Master of the Christopher, came aboard vs, who had bene aboard the Ty-  
ger, and tolde vs that they were not able to keepe the Tyger, because she was leake, and the Spa-  
nier very weake, and said further, he had agreed with the Master and the company, that if the next  
day we could double the Island, we should runne to the leeward of it, and there discharge her: but  
if we could not double it, then to put in betwixt the Island of S. Vincent, and S. Anthonie, to see  
if we could discharge her.

The 27. seeing we could not double the Island, we put in betwixt the foresaid Islands, and  
went through them, but found no roade, and therefore carried for our fellowes, and by and by it fell  
calme, so that we were in hazard to fall aboard one of another, but God sent vs a small gale of  
wind, and we went before them, and left them a sterne.

The 28. we were out of sight of our company: but we kept about, and saw them againe, for they  
were becalmed under the Island all night.

September.

The third day of September, I went aboard the Tyger, with the Master, and merchants with  
me, to view the Shippe, and men: and we found the Shippe very leake, and onely six labouring men  
in her, whereof one was the Master Gunner: so that we seeing that they were not able to keepe  
the Shippe, agreed to take in the men, and of the goods what we could saue, and then to put the ship  
aboy.

The fifth day, we went to discharge the Tyger.

The eight day, hauing taken out the artillerie, goods, victuals, and gold of the Tyger, we gaue  
her vp, 25. degrees by North the line.

The Tyger gi-  
uen by.

The 27. we had sight of two of the Isles of the Azores, S. Marie, and S. Michael.

The 28. day, running along by S. Michael, we had sight of diuers small cartuels, but we could  
speake with none of them. In the night, about twelue of the clocke, we saw a Shippe, but she would  
not come roome with vs.

The third day of October, we had sight of another saile, and bare roome with her, to haue  
knowne some newes of England: but the weakenes of our Shippe, and men, caused vs to leaue  
her, and keepe our course.

October.

The fourth of October, we found our selues to be 41. degrees and a halfe from the line.

The fifth day, the weather was very foule with winde, and raie.

The first day, the Christopher came to vs, and willed vs to put with the Cape, for they also  
were so weake, that they were not able to keepe the sea, and we being weak also, we agreed to go  
for Vigo, being a place, whither many Englishmen frequent.

The 8. day, the Christopher took some roome with the Cape, but we hauing a merrie winde for  
England, and fearing the danger of enemies, which ordinarily lye about the Cape: besides, not  
knowing the state of our Countrey, and Spayne, and although it were peace, yet there was litle  
hope of friendship at their hands, considering the voyage that we had made, and we also being so  
weake, that by force and violence, we could come by nothing, and doubting also that the King of  
Portingall knowing of our being there, might worke some way with the counsell of Spayne, to  
trouble vs, and further, considering that if we did put in with any harbour, we should not be able to  
come out againe, all we sent for more men into England, which would be a great charge, and losse  
of time, and meanes of many dangers. All these things pondered, we agreed to loose off two pec-  
ces of ordinarie, to waite the Christopher, and then we went our course for England: the hea-  
ring our peece, followed vs, and we carried a light for her, but the next day in the morning, it  
was thicke, and we could not see her in the afternoone neither, so that we suspected, that either she  
was gone with Spayne, or els that she had put forth more sailes then we in the night, and was  
not a head of vs, so that then we put forth our top sailes, and went our course with England.

At the time when the Christopher left vs, we were within 120. leagues of England, and 45.  
leagues North-west, and by West, from Cape Finister: and at the same time, in our ships we had  
not about fye martiners, and six merchants in health, which was but a weake companie for such  
a Shippe, to seeke a foreign harbor,

The

Extreme  
weakness of  
our men.

The 16. day, about five of the clocke at night, we met with a great storme at the Westmouth well, and well, and our men being weak, and not able to handle our sailes, we lost the same night our maine saile, foresaile, and spere saile, & were forced to lye a bulling, until the eighteenth day, and then we made ready an othe course of a foresaile, and put it to the parte, and there with finding our felues far shot into the Sleet, we bare with our owne coast, but that foresaile continued not above two howres, before it was blown from the parte with a great, and then we were forced to lie a hull againe, until the nineteenth day of October, in the morning, and then we put an othe bonnet to our forespard, which, by the good blessing and providence of God, brought us to the Isle of Wight, where we arrived the 20. of October, in the afternoone.

The commodities and wares, that are most desired in  
*Guinie, betwixt Sierra Liona, and the furthest*  
place of the Myne,

**M**ans of halle, and some of leade.  
Basons of diuers sortes, but the most lacton.  
Pots of course tyme, of a quart, and more.  
Some coines of yron.  
Pargarets, and certaine other sleight beades.  
Some blewe Coyrall.  
Some horse taitles.  
Linnen cloth principally.  
Balons of Flanders.  
Some redde cloth of a lowe price, and some kerse.  
Ketteis of Duchland with brassen handles.  
Some great halle balons graued, such as in Flanders they see upon their cupboards.  
Some great balons of pewter, and e toyes graued.  
Some lauers, such as be for water.  
Great knives of a lowe price.  
Sleight Flanders calkers.  
Chests of Roan of a lowe price, or any other chests.  
Great yinnes.  
Coule French coverings.  
Baking sheetes good stone.  
Shoydes, daggers, stile mantels, and golmes clothes, hats, red caps, Spanish blankets,  
ars heads, hammers, shov peeces of yron, sleight beas, gloues of a lowe price, leather bags, and what other trifles you will.

The first voyage of Robert Baker to Guinie, with the *Minion,*  
and *Primrose,* set out in October, 1562. by Sir William Garrard,

Sir William Chester, M. Thomas Lodge, Anthony Hickman, & Edward Castelin.

**A** men whose heads be feughe  
with care, haue seldom rest:  
(For through the head the body strait  
with sorrow is opprest.)  
So I that late on bed  
lay wake, for that the watch  
Pursued mine eye, and caught my bed  
no sleepe at all to catch:  
To thinke upon my chaunce  
which hath me now becom,  
To lie a prisoner here in France,  
for ransome where I bid:  
And feeling still such thoughts  
to chike in head to ruine,  
As in the sommer day the moats  
doe fall into the Sunne,  
To wake then by a rose,  
fancie to put to flight:  
And thus a while I doe purpise  
to pass away the night.  
Morpheus I yetter  
had small regard of me,  
Therefore I should be but deceiv'd  
on bed longer to lie.  
And thus without delay  
rising as soone of sleepe,  
I hoped Cynthia to see  
in at my grate to peep:  
Who passing on her way,  
she knowing well my case,  
How I in darke dungeon there lay  
alwaies looking for grace:

at home at the Westfow  
les, we lost the same night  
g, until the eighteenth day,  
parce, and there with finding  
that foylefalle continued not  
and then we were forced to  
g, and then we put an othe  
God, brought vs to the Ile

ost desired in  
rthest

upon their cupboards,

chaps; Spanish Blankets,  
rest of a lowe price, teacher

with the Minion,  
William Garward,

Edward Castelm.

repale

Decem 1

regie map

afe,

there lay

ce:

To

To me then walking cho  
in darke withouten light,  
She wipe her face, and straight did show  
the best countenance she might:  
A Monneye eke my head  
and lendes for a space,  
And olde fanthes a way now fled  
she putteth new in place.  
Then leaning in my grate  
wherein full bright she shinde,  
And brewing her thus on her gate  
she mazed straight my minde:  
And makes me thinke anon  
how oft in Ginnie lande  
she was my friend, when I have gone  
all night vpon the sande,  
Talking and watching eke  
least any boate of ship  
At any time, while we had slepe  
perhaps by vs might slip.  
And straight with ardent fire  
my head inflameth shee,  
Eke me inspires with whole desire  
to put in memoire,  
Chose dangers I haue bid  
and Laberinth that I  
haue pass without the clue of thesede,  
eke harder teopardie.  
I then gin take in hand  
straight way to put in rime,  
Such trauell, as in Ginnie lande  
I haue pass in my time.  
But hauing writte a while  
I fall faint by the way,  
And eke at night I looke that stile  
whiche I haue writte that day.  
And thinke my doings then  
unto the future, to be  
set forth in print before all men,  
for euery one to see.  
Eke with dispaire therefore  
my pen I cast a way,  
And did intende this neuer more  
hereafter to assay.  
My fellow prisoner then  
is Edward Gages some  
willes me to take againe my pen  
and ender that I begonne.  
By this our friends (sayth he)  
shall right well vnderstande  
And knowe the great trauels that we  
haue pass in Heathen lande.  
Take pen therefore againe  
in hande, if you requite,  
And thinke (saith he) thereof no paine  
to graunt this my desire.  
Then once againe my bed  
my hand a worke doth sette:

His Edward Gages some, whole name was George Gage.

But first I fall vpon my bed  
and there deepe sighes I sette,  
To see that this to talke  
is giuen me silly wight:  
And of Minerua helpe I aske  
that she me teach aright.  
Helpe now without delay,  
helpe, helpe, ye Muses nine,  
O Cleo, and Calliope,  
shewe me how to define  
In condigne stile and phrase  
eche thing in euery line,  
To you I giue loe all the praise  
the trauell onely mine.  
Giue care then ye that long  
to know of my estate,  
Whiche am in France in prison strong  
as I wrote home of late:  
Against all lawe of right  
as I doe thinke in deede,  
Sith that the warre is ended quite,  
and peace is well agreede,  
Yet least perchance you might  
much maruell, how that I  
Into a Frenchmans powre should light  
in prison here to lie:  
Giue no we attentue heerde,  
a strange tale gin I tell,  
How I this yeare haue bene bestreede,  
scraping the gates of hell,  
Poze harde I thinke truly,  
in moze daunger of life,  
Than olde Orpheus did when he  
through hell did seeke his wife,  
Whose musike so did founde  
in pleasant play of string,  
That Cerberus that he with hounde  
(who as the Poets sing  
hauing three huge heads great,  
whiche doe continually  
Still breach out fire flames of heate  
most horrible to see)  
Did giue him leaue to passe  
in at the gates of Hell:  
Of which gate he chiefe porter was  
the Poets thus me tell,  
And how he pass alone  
through great king Plutos Court  
Hea ferried ouer with Charon  
and yet he did no hurt,  
Well to my purpose now,  
in Hell what hurt had hee?  
Perchance he: might strange sighes moue  
and vgly spitts there see:  
Perhaps eke Tantalus,  
there making of his moue,  
Who staru'd alwayes: and Sisyphus  
still rolling by the stone,

The warre of Acton harrn.

Caron portner of Hell.

Dec

Yet Orpheus passed by,  
 and went still on his way,  
 There was no torment came him nigh  
 or heate to make him stay.  
 And if a Gods name woulde  
 at hazarde play my life  
 In Guinic lande, to seeke for golde,  
 as Orpheus sought his wife,  
 At which false lande of Guinic  
 I was eke once before,  
 And scapt the deach as narrowly  
 as Orpheus did and more.  
 Which first ill lucke will I  
 recite, then iudge you please,  
 If loue plagued me not now rightly  
 this yeare to goe againe.  
 The other yeere before  
 when Neptune vs had brought  
 Safely vnto that burning shoze,  
 for which so long we sought,  
 One day when typpie was fall  
 in sea at anker holde,  
 The sailes vpstir'd, all businesse past  
 the boateswaine then I colde,  
 That he forch with shoulde see  
 the small yinnelle well mande,  
 Eke all things therein prest to be  
 that we shoulde haue a lanbe,  
 And gumer see that ye  
 want not bo towe, pike, or bill,  
 Pour of ordinance well pymed be  
 with linstocks burning still.  
 With merchandize a shoze,  
 we hied to traffike then,  
 Spaking the sea some vs before,  
 by force of nine good men.  
 And rowing long, at last  
 a riuer we espie,  
 In at the which we bare full fall  
 to see what there might be.  
 And entring in, we see  
 a number of blacke soules,  
 Whose likelinnell seem'd men to be,  
 but all as blacke as coles.  
 Their Capatne comes to me  
 as naked as my nasse,  
 Not hauing witte of boueltie  
 to couer once his talle.  
 By which I doe here gesse  
 and gather by the way,  
 That he from man and manlinnell  
 was vnde and cleane astray.  
 And sitting in a croug,  
 a boate made of a logge,  
 The very same tohercin you know  
 we vsle to serue a hogge,  
 A loofe he staid at first,  
 put water to his cheeke,

His first voye  
 age 1762.

A signe that he would not vs trust  
 vnlesse we did the like.  
 That signe we did likewise,  
 to put him out of feare,  
 And shewd him much haue marchandise  
 to make him come vs neare.  
 The wisde man then did come,  
 by signes now crieth the fiend  
 Of those gay things to giue him some  
 and I should be his friend.  
 I traffiat there that time  
 for such things as they had,  
 At night to ship I caried him,  
 where I with clothes him clad,  
 Pea, made him there good cheere,  
 and he by signes againe  
 Colde vs that he would fraighte vs then  
 after a day or twaine.  
 And eene thus as we were  
 in talke, looking about,  
 Our boate he sa we with wares that there  
 was tied at sterne without:  
 Which boate he wieting still,  
 as then well stuf with ware,  
 We thinking he had ment no ill,  
 had thereof little care.  
 And the next moone, againe  
 we caried him a shoze,  
 Eke barrd there that day with them  
 as we had done before,  
 But when Phœbus began  
 somewhat for to vnto neare  
 To Icarus his Court, the some  
 of Dedalus most deare,  
 (Whose chauce it is to dwell  
 amidst the Ocean flood,  
 Because that he obseru'd not well  
 his fathers counsell good)  
 We then with falle and ope  
 to ship began to hie,  
 That we might seech aboord, before  
 the day had lost his eye,  
 To ship we come at last  
 which rto foure leagues from shoze  
 Refresh vs after trauelle past,  
 taken that day before,  
 Then, as it was our guise,  
 our boate at sterne we tie,  
 Eke therein leaue our marchandise,  
 as they were wont to be.  
 With crouches then two or three  
 this Capatne comes by night  
 Aboord our boate, where he with wares  
 himselte now fraigbeeth quight.  
 The watch now hearing this,  
 the boate they had vs by fall:  
 But gone was all the marchandise,  
 and they escape and pass.

The first of  
 the voyage.

The

A conflict  
 betwene  
 the shre  
 of our men

The next morn then by day  
 againe we went to shore,  
 A mends to haue for that which they  
 had stolne the night before,  
 But all in vaine was it,  
 our signes were now too bad,  
 They would not vnderstand a whit  
 of any thing they had,  
 But as though they had knowng  
 for to reuenged be,  
 As we row'd downe the streame along  
 after comes hee and hee,  
 A hundred boates come frō  
 the stermost towne I say,  
 At least meets vs as many mo  
 before, so make vs stay,  
 In euery boat two men,  
 and gre at long targetts twaine:  
 Spott of their darts had long strings then  
 to picke and pull againe,  
 Notingunners to your charge,  
 giue list all acote,  
 Ech saue for feare forakes his barge,  
 and ducks in water low,  
 We downe the streame amaine  
 do row to get the sea,  
 They ouertake vs loose againe,  
 and let vs of our way,  
 Then did the flames daro weere,  
 with dart and targett thicke,  
 With diuells shied eyes they peere  
 where they their darts may sticke,  
 Now Spaniards do put  
 with right good will the pike,  
 The halberd of the harque bulle  
 the naked slaue doth strike,  
 Though purge and body right  
 that doth hee falleth dead,  
 His fellow then in heauie plight,  
 doth swimme away afraid,  
 To bathe in braynly blood,  
 then scerch the gray goose wing,  
 The halberders at hand be good,  
 and he to that all doth ring,  
 Yet gunner play thy part,  
 make halberd walk againe,  
 And fellows row with like good heart  
 that we may get the maine,  
 Our arrowes all now spent,  
 the Negros gan appoch:  
 But pikes in hand already bent  
 the blacke head fast doth hock,  
 Their capaine being wood,  
 a villaine long and large,  
 With poi ned dart in hand doth shoud  
 himselfe under his charge,  
 And hark when he comes  
 to enter in our boat,

A conflict  
 betweene  
 the Negros  
 & our men.

Our maisters mate, his pike erst soone  
 strike's though his targe and throat,  
 The capaine now past charge  
 of this brutish blake garo,  
 His pike he balde backe which in targe  
 alas was fixed hard:  
 And wexling it with might,  
 to pull it forth in hand,  
 A deadly dart strikes him too right  
 and in his flesh sticks fast,  
 He stands still like a man,  
 and shrikes not once therfore,  
 But strikes him with his otone dart then  
 which shot at him before,  
 Then presse they on, and shake  
 their darts on euery side,  
 Which in our flesh doth lighte, and make  
 both death wounds and wide,  
 The gunner at that sound  
 with two darts strooke at last,  
 Whynks not yet though the double wound  
 with streames of blood our brast,  
 And che the maisters mate,  
 of stomacke bolde and stout,  
 For all his wound receiv'd of late,  
 yet stirred not a foot,  
 But kept his standyng still,  
 till that a deathfull dart  
 Did strike him through the ribs so ill,  
 that scarce it mist his hart,  
 The dart our hal'd quickly,  
 his guts came out withall,  
 And so great streames of blood that he  
 for faintesse downe gan fall,  
 The Negros seeing this,  
 how he for dead doth lie,  
 Who erst so valiant you'd twols,  
 they gladly shout and cry:  
 And then do minde as there  
 to enter in his place,  
 They thinke so many wounded were  
 the rest would yeld for grace,  
 We then stand by the pike,  
 and soute row on our boat,  
 Their darts among vs fast they strike  
 that few were free if not,  
 In legges and the in thigh,  
 some wounded eke in th' arme,  
 Pea many darts strike vs hard by,  
 that mist and did no harme,  
 By little thus at last,  
 in great danger of life  
 We got the sea, and almost past  
 the danger erst so life,  
 Then gan they all retire  
 such all othe darts were spent  
 They had nought to reuenge their ire,  
 and thus away they went.

Dur

is trust  
 merchandise  
 are,  
 me,  
 send  
 him some  
 o.  
 ad,  
 n,  
 in clad,  
 there,  
 right vs then  
 are that there  
 at:  
 ill,  
 bare,  
 to ill,  
 with them  
 are  
 me  
 ell  
 well  
 be, before  
 from shore  
 ill,  
 handse,  
 three  
 night  
 with water  
 mighte,  
 ill,  
 ill,  
 handse,  
 The

The theft of  
 the Negros  
 on.

Six of our  
men wounded

Our boat to ship both me,  
where two eyes make lost way  
Six of vs nine were wounded so,  
the French for dead there lay.  
Lo here how cruelly  
the fiends ment vs to kill,  
Causelesse you see if they trulpy  
on vs might had their will.  
And yet we gaue before  
much merchandise away,  
Among those slaves, thinking therefore  
to haue friendship for aye,  
And Orpheus past I too  
the passage quietly,  
Among the soules in Charons boat,  
and yet to say trulpy  
I neuer read that he  
paid for his passage there,  
Who past and repall for to see  
if that his wife there were,  
Nor yet that he paid ought,  
or any byde there gaue  
To any office, while he sought  
his wife againe to haue,  
Whereby I surely gesse  
these men with whom that we  
haue had to do, are fiends more fierce  
then those in hell shal be,  
Well we now scape thus  
the danger I haue tolde,  
Aboord we come, where feyn of vs  
could stand no to bring colde,  
Our wounds now being best,  
to meat went they that list,  
But I desired rather rest,  
for this in minde I wist.  
That if I might get once  
a sleepe that were full sound,  
I should not feele my weary bones  
nor yet my sinarting wound,  
And lying long aloft  
vpon my bed in paine,  
Unto Morpheus call'd I oft  
that he would not vntaine  
To heare my then poore waight,  
but send me helpe with speed  
That I might haue good rest this night  
of which I had great need,  
He thought then by and by,  
there hung a beauiwaight,  
A each eye lid, which clos'd mine eye,  
and eke my head was seaight,  
And being sleight a sleepe,  
I fell into a sweaue,  
That of my wound Iooke no keepe,  
I dream'd I was in beauen,  
Where as me thought I see  
god Mars in armo, byght.

His arming sword naked holdes he  
in hand, ready to fight,  
Castor and Pollux there  
all complet stand him by,  
Least if that Mars conuinc'd were  
they might reuenged be,  
Then came marching along  
the great blake smith Vulcan,  
Hauing a Masse of yron strong,  
and thus at last began:  
O Mars, thou God of might,  
what is the cause that thou  
hast chaleng'd me with thee to fight  
to please am I not,  
Whereof if that thou hast  
any great grudge to me,  
Before this day he spent and past  
it shall reuenged be,  
Then spake god Mars and said,  
for that thou charlishly wight,  
Thy brutish blake people hast made  
with bold whire men to fight  
Which call'd on me for aid,  
I bid thee warre for this,  
Then answered Vulcan straight and said  
that that coast sure was his,  
And therefore he would kill  
his blake burnt men defense,  
And if he might, all other kill  
whire to that coast w'd send,  
Dea thus (said he) in doubt  
that he his men had slain,  
And ere that we should passe this coast  
he would ha kill againe,  
Now marcheth Mars againe  
and fiercely gins to fight,  
The sturdy smith strikes free againe  
whose blowes did whire they fight,  
But Iupiter that sat  
in his great royall throne  
Hearing this noise maruill'd thereat,  
and straight way sendeth one  
To know the cause thereof:  
but hearing them in fight,  
Commandeth them for to leaue off  
by vertue of his might,  
And of Vulcan demands  
the cause: then answered he,  
O mightie Ioue, whose power commands  
and rules all things that be,  
Who as a word hast power  
all things to destroy cleane,  
And in the moment of an houre,  
cauld them restore againe,  
The same God licence me  
to speake now here my minde:  
It is not Ioue, but Mars that is,  
who that I was assignd,

And

And pointed king of most  
 of all the Ginie land,  
 A people is on my coast  
 which doth me no man withstand,  
 They do my people strike,  
 they do this day them kill,  
 To whom I minde to do the like  
 if I may have my will,  
 Then Iupiter bespake:  
 O Vulcan then said he,  
 Let this thy rage and anger stake  
 for this time presently,  
 But if at any time  
 they shall me thus againe,  
 Doe as thou list, that that ge is thine,  
 I will not meddle then,  
 I know them well (saith he)  
 these men need not to feare,  
 They have to fruitfull a countrey  
 that there is none the like,  
 But if they can not be  
 there with content, but still  
 Will seeke for golde in countrey,  
 woyke then with them thy will,  
 And therewith straighte doth send  
 a punishment in post,  
 To whom (saith he) see that thou went  
 unto the wester coast,  
 To Eolus the king,  
 command him thus from me,  
 That he straighte way without kingring  
 do set at libertie,

His servant Zephius,  
 which wote to looke to looke,  
 The that he do command him thus,  
 that he straighte way do go  
 To Vulcans coast in hall,  
 a ship where he shall staid,  
 Which ship he must with gentle blast  
 and che with moderate waide,  
 Conduct fast to that coast  
 which Albion west hight,  
 And that no stormes do them withstand  
 by day or che by night,  
 I sleeping all this space,  
 as it were in a crance,  
 The masse of them that had apace  
 do waken me by chance,  
 Then looking out to know  
 what waide do blow in state,  
 The matter straighte came to me this  
 and thus said by and by,  
 All our ill lucke is past,  
 we have a merie waide,  
 I hope Englands shippes waide last,  
 yet once againe to staid,  
 When this I ha verdains  
 to loue I wotred then,  
 For weasing cleave the Ginie land  
 for comming there againe,  
 And passing on in post  
 with favourable waides,  
 We all arrivd on Englands coast  
 with passing cheerefull minde,

The second voyage to Guinie, and the river of Selto, set out  
 in the Month of November 1563, by Sir William Gerrard, Sir  
 William Chester, Sir Thomas Lodge, Maister Benjamin Goslon, Maister William  
 Winter, Maister Lionell Ducker, Anthonie Hickman, and Edward Castellin,  
 with two ships, the one called the Iohn Baptist, wherein went for Maister, Lau-  
 rence Rondell: and the other the Marlin, wherein went also for Maister, Robert  
 Reuell, hauing for Factors, Robert Baker, Iustinian Goodwine, James Gliddell,  
 and George Gage: and written in verse by the foresaid Robert Baker.

YOU heard before, that home I goe  
 from Ginea at the last,  
 But by and by, I quite forgoe  
 the joynties I had past,  
 And ships rigged also,  
 with speed to ship againe,  
 I being then requir'd to goe,  
 did not deieue them plaine,  
 But granted them to goe,  
 unhappie foolish waite,  
 When they command, che there to do  
 the best service I might,  
 In fine, to go our way  
 now serveth time and tide,  
 Having nothing vs to stay,  
 what should we longer bide?

The hempen band with helpe  
 of Partners doth theate  
 To wey and reave that stonchfull helpe,  
 by from his mothers teat,  
 The Haider then gan cheere  
 with silver whilst he blast,  
 His Partners, which at the Neere  
 are laboying wondrous fast,  
 Some other then againe,  
 the mainepart by to hoist,  
 The hard haier doth hale a maine,  
 whilst other at a trice  
 Cut saile without delay:  
 the rest that be below,  
 Both theats about do hale straitway  
 and boldens all let go.

The Helme a Hariner  
 in hand then stant way to she,  
 The Pike the what course to the  
 within his card bed lookt,  
 A gaine with liuer blask,  
 the Hariter doch not faile,  
 To cause his mates forch way in hall  
 abroad so put more saile,  
 We then lanch from the flope,  
 sich warre we knowe to right,  
 And kept in sea aloofe therefor  
 two dayes and oke a night,  
 And, as it is the guile,  
 to topple a man we send,  
 Who straight a sale of two espies,  
 with whom we then do mend,  
 A loofe would some with one,  
 and roomeward tow to the rest:  
 But with the called ship we gone,  
 whom we thinke to be best,  
 At last, in comming were  
 as captaines use to do,  
 I hale them, and of whence they were  
 I did desire to knowe:  
 Of France when they had said,  
 we weaved them a maine,  
 But they nothing there with us  
 did like to be againe,  
 We then our selues aduise  
 through hope of purchase here,  
 A maine say we, ye wily gallant  
 of you shall bute to deere,  
 To arme the maine top cho  
 the bowe waile good eke,  
 His mace on the forepart also  
 makes hall to do the like,  
 To top both stoncs and barte  
 good fello wes boue space:  
 The quarter maffers with glad hearts  
 do kin to eck one his place,  
 Our toplasses strike we cho  
 and sic our sailes to sighe,  
 Our bulwarke at maine mast also  
 is made like with a right,  
 Upon our poope eke then  
 right subtilly we lay  
 powder, to blowe by all such men,  
 as euer theraway,  
 Our Crumpeier aloft  
 no to sounde the seats of war,  
 The bralen pieres toyng oft  
 sike forch both chaine and bar,  
 Some on the yardecs againe  
 do weaue with naked sword,  
 And crying loud to them amaine  
 they bid us come aboard,  
 To both his side in blood  
 the graigoose fleeth in hall:

And Hariners as Lions wood,  
 do criit aboard as fast,  
 No to stie f aulious sic  
 right good to sicke pray,  
 And hills at first some dead comely  
 eck thing within shot may,  
 A arme ye no to my mates I say,  
 see that ye nothing lacke,  
 At euer loope then gins straight way  
 a barquebully to cracke,  
 Their saile to burne, we shoot  
 our arrowes of holle fire,  
 And pikes burning therewith about  
 laud toke with like desire,  
 The straight way sich for whire  
 the streward call I then,  
 With fiery spie enough therein  
 I thinke bute my men,  
 And then euen with a loope  
 our lime pot ppesto fall,  
 This wily gallant we clap aboard  
 and enter him with hall,  
 Their nettings now gan tear  
 with what of heauis stone,  
 And some mace heads with us  
 who neuer could make more,  
 The barquebully awake  
 which he on top doch he,  
 Discharge full of bades that doch smoke  
 to kill his enemy,  
 Which in his enemies top  
 doch sighe, there it is keepe,  
 Yet he at last a deadly tope  
 is made from thence to keepe,  
 Then durteth oke with hall  
 into this frenchmans top,  
 Who cuts eck rope, and makes to fall  
 his yarde, withouten stop,  
 Then Hariners belowe,  
 as carelesse of the pike,  
 Do hem, and hill still as they goe,  
 and force not where they strike,  
 And still the crumpeier sound  
 with pleasinge blast doch cheare  
 Eek Hariner, so in that sound  
 that they nothing did feare,  
 The Hariter then also,  
 his mates to cheare in sighe,  
 His whistle chearefully doch blowe,  
 whereby strait euer night  
 So fierce begins to be,  
 that frenchmen gin to stoe,  
 And English men as right worthy  
 do catch for pillage cho,  
 What would you more I say  
 but tell the truth alway,  
 We v the our matters to this day  
 we caried him along,



Unto a Port in Spain,  
 which sure is call'd the Groine,  
 Whereas we for a rich lading plaine  
 receiued ready coine,  
 Well thus this good lucke past,  
 we through sale shew vs scoure,  
 To Ginney coast eke come at last,  
 O that unhappie houre.  
 My hand alas for feare  
 no to shakes, of this to witte,  
 Mine eye almost full frange with teare,  
 eke lets me to intice.  
 What should I here recite  
 the miserie I had,  
 When none of you will scarce credit  
 that ere it was so bad?  
 Well, yet I would as say  
 to tell it, if I might,  
 But O Minerua, helpe me aye,  
 my wits asford be quite.  
 Dea helpe, ye muses nine,  
 let no thonghe me withstand,  
 Aid me this thing well to define,  
 which here I take in hand,  
 Well, thus it forwene the,  
 in Ginney now arriv'd,  
 Nine men in boat to shore we go,  
 where we traffike espide,  
 And parting at midday  
 from ship, on good intent  
 In hope of traffike there I say  
 to shore away we went.  
 Our ships then riding fast  
 in sea at anker bigge,  
 We minded to dispatch in hall,  
 eke to returne that night.  
 But being hard by land,  
 there suddenly doth rise  
 A mightie winde, where with it rains  
 and thunders, in such wise,  
 That we by shore did ride,  
 where we best Port might finde,  
 Our ships we thinke from anker slide,  
 a crize before the winde.  
 This night Vulcan begins  
 on vs reueng'd to be,  
 And thunderbolts about he flings  
 most terrible to see,  
 Admixt with fierie flame  
 which cracks about our eares,  
 And thus gins he to play his game,  
 as now to hym appears.  
 He Eolus hath seer  
 herein to be his friend,  
 And all the whirling windees with speed  
 among vs doth he send.  
 Thus hard by shore we lay,  
 this wet and weary night,

But on next mornie and all the day  
 of ship we had no sight.  
 For Vulcan all this night  
 from fierie forage so fast  
 Sent thunder bolts with such great light,  
 that when the night was past,  
 The next day there remaind  
 so great smoke all about,  
 Such like a mist, eke there with raine,  
 that we were wet through out.  
 And thus in smoke maides he  
 to part vs from our ship:  
 Thus were a one eke another see,  
 and so haue we the slip.  
 Our ships then backe againe,  
 thinking we were behind,  
 Do saile by shore a day or twaine  
 in hope there vs to finde.  
 And we the contrary,  
 do row along the shore  
 Forward, thinking our ships to be  
 still sailing vs before.  
 They sailing thus two dayes or three,  
 and could not finde vs than,  
 Do thinke that in that foule night we  
 were drowned euer man.  
 Our ship then netwes doth beare,  
 when he to England wends  
 That we nine surely drowned were,  
 and thus doth tell our friends:  
 While we thus being lost,  
 allie in miserie  
 Do row in hope yet on this coast,  
 our ships to finde truly.  
 Well thus one day we spent,  
 the next and third likewise,  
 But all in vaine was our intent,  
 no man a saile espies:  
 Three dayes be now cleane past  
 since any of vs nine,  
 Of any kinde of food hath taste,  
 and thus gan we to pine,  
 Till at the last bare need  
 bids vs hale in with land,  
 That we might get some root or weede  
 our hunger to with stand:  
 And being come to shore,  
 with Negros we increat,  
 That for our wares which we had there  
 they would giue vs to eat,  
 Then fetch they vs of roots,  
 and such things as they had,  
 We gave to them our wares to boote  
 and were therof right glad.  
 To sea go we againe,  
 in hope along the shore  
 To finde our ships, yet thinking plaine  
 that they had bene before.

And thus with saile and oze  
 twelue dayes we went hard by  
 The strange vnrcomforable shoze  
 where we nothing espiē,  
 But all thicke woods and bush  
 and mightie wilbernelle,  
 Out of the which oftentimes do rush  
 strange beasts both wilde and fierse,  
 Whereof oft times we see,  
 at going downe of Summe,  
 Diuers descend in companie,  
 and to the sea they come,  
 Where as vpon the sand  
 they lie and chew the cud:  
 Sometime in water eke they stand  
 and wallow in the floud,  
 The Elephant we see,  
 a great vnwieldie beast,  
 With water fills his troonke right hie  
 and blowes it on the rest,  
 The Hart I saw likewise  
 delighted in the soile,  
 The wilde Boze eke after his guise  
 with snout in earth doth moile.  
 A great strange beast also,  
 the Antelope I worne  
 I there did see, and many mo,  
 which erst I haue not seene,  
 And oftentimes we see  
 a man a shoze of twaine,  
 Who strait byings out his Almadie  
 and to vs to vs a maine,  
 Here let we anker fall,  
 of wares a shew we make,  
 We bid him choose among them all,  
 what wares that he will take  
 To bring to vs some fish,  
 and fresh water therfore,  
 Or else of meat some dainties dish,  
 which their cookes dresse a shoze.  
 They bring vs by and by  
 great roots and berres eke,  
 Which grow vpon the high palme tree,  
 such meat as they do like,  
 We drinke eke of their wine  
 much like our whey to see:  
 Which is the sappe as I haue seene  
 that runnes out of a tree,  
 Thus do they bring ech thing  
 which they thinke to be good,  
 Sometime wilde hony combes they bring  
 which they finde in the wood,  
 With roots and baggage eke  
 our corpes we thus sustaine  
 From famine, though it be so weake,  
 that death was figured plaine  
 In euery ioynnt, for lacke  
 of sustenance and rest,

That still we thinke our hearts would  
 with sorowes so oppress. *(speake)*  
 We now alongst the coast  
 haue saild so many a mile,  
 That sure we be our ships be lost,  
 what should we do this while:  
 In Heathen land we be,  
 impossible it is  
 That we should fetch our owne countrey  
 in such a boat as this.  
 We now gan to perceiue  
 that we had outpast  
 The Melegete coast so much,  
 that we were come at last  
 vnto the coast of Myne,  
 for Niegros came aboord  
 With weightes to poise their golde so fine,  
 yea speaking euery woord  
 In Portugesse right well  
 demanding traffike there,  
 If we had any wares to sell,  
 and where our ships then were:  
 We answered them againe,  
 we had two ships at sea, *Two ships*  
 The which would come traffike with the  
 we thought within a day,  
 The cause why we thus saie,  
 was hope to be well vsde:  
 But seeing this, as men delmad  
 away we went, and mulde  
 Whither our ships were gone,  
 what way were best for vs:  
 Shall we here perish now such ones  
 no, let vs not do thus:  
 We see all hope is past  
 our ships to finde againe,  
 And here our liues do shorten fall  
 in miserie and paine:  
 For why the raging heat  
 of Summe, being so extreme,  
 Consumes our flesh away in sweat,  
 as deeply it is seene,  
 The Ternados againe  
 so often in a weeke,  
 With great lightnings, thunder and raine  
 with such abundance eke,  
 Doe so beat vs by night,  
 that we sleepe not at all,  
 Whereby our strength is bared quite,  
 no man an oze can hale,  
 How hard liue we, alas:  
 three whole dayes oft be past,  
 Ere we po oze men (a heauy case)  
 of any thing doe tast,  
 These twentie dayes ye see,  
 we haue sit still ech one,  
 Which we do of necessite,  
 for place to walke is none.

Our legs now vs deceiue,  
 Swolne euery iaine withall,  
 With this disease, which, by your leaue,  
 the Scurue men doe call,  
 We cannot long endure  
 in this case as we be,  
 To leaue our boate I am right sure,  
 compeld we must agree,  
 Thrice waues for vs there is,  
 and this is my request,  
 That we may of these thre deceiue,  
 to choosethereof the best.  
 The Castle of the Mine  
 is not farre hence, we know,  
 To morrow moyne we there may be,  
 if chieker you will goe.  
 There Portugals do lie,  
 and christened men they be :  
 If we dare trust their curtesie,  
 the worst is hanging glee.  
 Our miserie may make  
 them pittie vs the moze,  
 Mine such yong men great paines would  
 for life to hale an oze. (take  
 Their Gallies may perhaps  
 lacke such yong men as we,  
 And thus it may fall in our laps,  
 all Galep slaves to be,  
 During our life, and this  
 we shall be sure to haue,  
 Although we row, such meate as is  
 the allowance of a slaue.  
 But here we rowe and serue,  
 our misery is so gre:  
 The slaue with meate inough they serue,  
 that he may teare his oze.  
 If this you will not like,  
 the next way is to goe :  
 vnto the Negros, and to seeke  
 what friendship they will shew.  
 But what fauour would ye  
 of these men looke to haue :  
 Who beakly sauage people be,  
 farre worse then any slaue :  
 If Cannibals they be  
 in kind, we doe not know,  
 But if they be, then welcome we,  
 to pot straight way we goe,  
 They naked goe like wilde,  
 for shame we cannot so :  
 We cannot liue after their guise,  
 thus naked for to goe.  
 By roces and leaues they liue,  
 as beastes doe in the wood :  
 Among these heathen who can chynic,  
 with this so wilde a food :  
 The piercing brace againe,  
 that frozeth with such strength,

Piercing our naked flesh with paine,  
 will vs consume at length.  
 The third and last is this,  
 (if those two you refuse)  
 To die in miserable wise,  
 here in the boate you chuse,  
 And this iudge by the way,  
 moze trust is to be giuen,  
 vnto the Portugals at way,  
 sith they be christened men,  
 Then to these heathen foze,  
 which beakly are ye see :  
 Who of our death will make a sport,  
 if Cannibals they be.  
 We all with one consent,  
 now with despising plaine:  
 (Such if we die as innocet,  
 the moze it is our gaine)  
 Our sayle we hope in hast,  
 with speed we mind to go  
 vnto the castell, now noe past  
 a twentie leagues vs fro,  
 And sayling all this day,  
 we spied late in the night,  
 As we pass by thus on our way,  
 vpon the shore a light.  
 Thou sayd our Boate swaine thus,  
 by this great light a shore,  
 Ceasique there seemes, will you let vs  
 anker this night theretofore,  
 And trie if we may get,  
 this next morning by day,  
 Some kind of food for vs to eate,  
 and then to goe our way :  
 We anker there that night,  
 the next morning to thore :  
 And in the place, where we the light  
 did see the night before,  
 A watch house now there stood,  
 vpon a rocke without :  
 Hard by a great blacke crosse of wood,  
 which putteth vs in doubt,  
 What place that this should be,  
 and looking to the shore,  
 A Castell there we gan espie,  
 this made vs doubt the moze,  
 Wherein we saw did stand  
 a Portingall of twaine :  
 Who held a white flag in his hand,  
 and waued vs amaine.  
 Our ketch as trade now shakes,  
 wherby we gan retire,  
 And he at vs a shot then makes,  
 a Negro giuing fire,  
 A piece discharged thus,  
 the killing pellet lightes,  
 I thinke within a yard of vs,  
 but none of vs it hit.

We w<sup>ch</sup> then we had there  
 a good ship, she of twaine,  
 But helplese now, we to use a hope  
 to know th' end of our paine,  
 The nearer that we went  
 to them unto the hope,  
 To yeld our selues, as first we ment  
 they still did shoot the moze.  
 Now Canons loud gan roze,  
 and Culuerins now cracht,  
 The Castell eke it thundred soze,  
 as though the wals weere sackt.  
 Some shot both lighte hard by,  
 some ouer vs againe:  
 But though the shot so thicke doth sic,  
 yet to we we in a maine,  
 That now so nere we be  
 unto the castell wall,  
 That none of them at vs we see,  
 can make a shot at all.  
 We ment a land to goe,  
 their curtesie to trie:  
 But from the wal great stones they thow,  
 and therewith by and by,  
 The Negros marching downe,  
 in battell ray do come,  
 With dart and target from the towne,  
 and follo w all a thomme.  
 A bowe in hand some bent,  
 with poynted arrow prest,  
 To strike therewith they be full bent,  
 a pined English best.  
 But stones come downe so fast  
 on vs on euery side,  
 We thinke our boats bottom would hysht  
 if long we thus abide,  
 And arrowes sic so thicke,  
 hyshting at euery care,  
 Which both in clothes and kely do sticke,  
 that w<sup>ch</sup>: as men past feare,  
 Cry now, I launch launche in hatt,  
 hale of the boate a maine:  
 Foure men in banke let them sit fast  
 and rowe to sea againe.  
 The other fise like men,  
 do manfully in hand,  
 Take by each kind of weapon then,  
 these wolues here to wichland,  
 A harquebush takes one,  
 another bends his bowe,  
 Among the slaues then do wone fals one,  
 and other here I trowe.  
 At those Poringals then thoot we,  
 vpon the Foxt which stand,  
 In long fine white shirts as we see,  
 and linckocks in th' hand,  
 And of these shirts so white  
 we painted some full red,

Striking their open corps in sight,  
 with dunt of arrow head,  
 For we saw they had there  
 no Gallies vs to take,  
 Where threatenings the rowd vs not feare  
 of make vs once to shake.  
 Then Canons loud gan roze,  
 and pellets sic about,  
 And each man halset hard his oze  
 and mooued not a foote.  
 Pea though the powder sent  
 the pellets thicke away,  
 Yet spite of th<sup>em</sup> cleane though we went  
 at last, and got the sea,  
 And pieces charging fall,  
 the y shot after vs so,  
 That wonder was it how we past  
 the furie of our foe.  
 The pined arme felt not  
 as now, the heauie oze:  
 With foure such ozes was neuer boat,  
 I thinke, row'd so befoze,  
 To seaward scaping so,  
 these Negroes we see there,  
 Came rowing after vs to know,  
 what countrey men we were:  
 We answered Englishmen,  
 and that thit her we came,  
 With wares to traasque th<sup>ere</sup> with them,  
 if they had meant the same,  
 They Portuguse doe speake  
 righte naturall twis:  
 And of our ship to know they seeke,  
 how big and where she is.  
 We answered them againe  
 we had two ships at sea,  
 Right well appointed full of men,  
 that straight would take their way  
 Along the coast for gold,  
 they tary but for vs,  
 Which came with wares there to haue sold  
 but that they w<sup>ch</sup> d vs thus,  
 Then gan they vs to pray,  
 if we lackt any thing,  
 To anker there all that whole day,  
 and they to vs would bying  
 All things that we doe want,  
 they soze say they be:  
 But we their words yet trusting scant,  
 refuse their curtesie.  
 We aske them of this hold  
 what place that it should be,  
 Then they againe thus straight vs told  
 that Poringals the lie.  
 And how that point they say,  
 which there hard by we see,  
 Was one of Cape three points, that lay  
 the Westermost of these.

Cape three  
points.

Withouten

in sight,  
not feare  
ough we went  
we past  
never boat,  
ere,  
now,  
were?  
n,  
e,  
re with them,  
are.  
ke  
ep seeke,  
s,  
f men,  
their way  
ere to haue sold  
s.  
le day,  
g  
s,  
issing scaut,  
e,  
hte vs told  
b,  
e,  
ntes, that lay Cape three  
pounds.  
Withouen

Withouen further speere,  
we holde one saile to see,  
Spinding a friendlier place to seech,  
and thus we part our way.  
We mind cras to spoone  
the Portingals up wape  
But now I aske rather what you loue  
Negros will shew a shoye,  
We then with saile wape  
went backe againe in shoye  
I thinke longers I thinke, and wape  
from thence where we were chaff  
And here we anker fall  
aboard the Negros come  
We gaine gay things wape them all,  
and thus their hearts we wonne,  
At last aboard comes one  
that was the Kings chiefe somer  
To whom by signes I made great mone,  
how that I was wdone,  
Had lost our ships, and the  
were almost star'd for meate,  
And knew not where our ships to seeke,  
of any thing to ease.  
I offered him our wares,  
and to him take them all:  
But he perceiving na in the crates,  
which from our eyes did fall,  
Had great pittie on vs,  
and sayd he wou'd haue nought,  
But straighte by signes he wou'd vs then,  
that we should take no thought.  
As one whom God had sent,  
and hope for vs in shoye,  
To know in half a way he went,  
the Kings pleasure on shoye.  
And came forthwith againe,  
yea, haue vs come a land:  
Whereof God knowes we were full faue,  
when this we vnderstand.  
Each man hankes to his ope,  
to hale the boate a land:  
Where as we see vpon the shoye,  
five hundred Negros stand.  
Our men to wading in a maine,  
the billoin went to hie,  
That straighte a waue ouerwhelms vs  
and there in sea we lie. (cleare  
The Negros by and by,  
come swimming vs to saue  
And brought vs all to land quicky,  
not one backe play the knaue.  
The Kings come after this,  
a stout and valiant man,  
In whom I thinke Nature shoyd,  
with waight all that she can,  
He then I say vnturne vnder  
them straighte to saue our boate,

To worke for health goe many hands,  
and vying the same a floate,  
Some I wonne to saue an ope,  
some due for things be lost:  
I thinke there beise to hale a shoye,  
five hundred men almost.  
Our house thus halde up vye,  
all things straighte way were brought  
The which we with our soules eie,  
no man that durst herpe ouge.  
Then vs they led a way,  
knowing we wanted meate,  
And gaue vs vs, euen such as the y  
themselves doo daily eate.  
Was neuer Diale in wood  
halfe so much wondered at,  
As we were then poore men alas,  
which there among them sat.  
We feared yet our part,  
and wishe a month were past.  
For each man there went with his darr,  
which made vs oft agast.  
We lay vpon the ground,  
with them there all that night:  
But fearing still a deadly wound,  
we could not sleepe a whit.  
Two dayes thus past we well,  
no man vs offered wong:  
The cause thereof I gin you tell,  
they thought this them among:  
Our ships had bene at sea,  
and would come there before  
Two dayes, to seech vs thence a way,  
and giue them wares good shoye.  
But when they thus heare tell  
how that our ships be lost,  
And that we know not very well,  
when ships will come to coast:  
They ther wape wearie straighte,  
and they which did befoye  
At sundy times giue vs to eate,  
did giue vs now no more,  
Our lo'uance waite so small,  
that neuer nine I gett,  
Where seru'd the like, yet still withall,  
it waped less and less.  
Some run now in the wood,  
and there for woocys do seeke,  
Bafe meate would here be counted good,  
too had that we mislike.  
Our clothes now rot with sweate,  
and from our backs do fall,  
Saue that whom nature tells for shame,  
we couer noughte at all.  
One runs to seeke for clay  
to fashion straighte a pot,  
And hardens it in Shunne all day:  
an ocher saileth not

To fetch home wood for night,  
and the for fire longht.  
That we our woads and things fetch might  
if any home were brought.  
The rest the wood doth seeke,  
the euery bush and tree  
For berries and such baggage like,  
which should seeme meate to bee.  
Our fingers serue in stead,  
both of pickaxe and spade,  
To dig and pull up euery weed,  
that growt within the shade.  
The digg for rootes the ground,  
and searche on euery hylle  
For berries, which if we had found,  
then straight way to the fire:  
Where we roast some of thost,  
the rest fetch in a pot,  
And of this banquet nought we lose,  
no fragment resteth noe.  
The night as beaues we lie  
the bare hard earth vpon,  
And round by vs a great fire lighte  
to keepe wild beaues vs from.  
But what should I recite,  
or couer to declare  
My sorowes past, or the endite  
of my hard Ginnie fate?  
I feele here to enlarge  
my miserie in that land,  
A top in head doth not to me charge,  
as here to hold my hand,  
In fine, what would ye mooe,  
the heat did so exceed,  
That wanting cloths it straight to soe,  
no man could it abide,  
The countrey the so wald be,  
and vnehealthfull withall,  
That hungry stomacks neuer fill'd,  
doth cause faint bodies fall,  
Our men fall sicke apace,  
and cherishing haue none:  
That now of nine, within thoye space  
we be left thre alone,  
Alas, what great agast  
to vs thre liuing yet,  
Was it to see, that death so fast  
away our fellowes str:

And then to loue on his  
we call for helpe and grace,  
And him bestroch vnfaindly,  
to fetch vs from this place.  
From this wild heathen land,  
to Chastellaine againe,  
Or else to lay on vs his hand,  
and rid vs from our paine.  
Least that we ouerpass  
with too much miserie,  
Perhaps as weake beaue our behest  
wher we owe God an high.  
And least we liuing here  
among this heathen, might  
Perchance for need to that which were  
right betwixt in his sight.  
Well, so my purpose then,  
when we to loue thus crye,  
To helpe vs hence poore silly men  
from this our miserie.  
He hearing vs at length,  
how we to him doe call,  
He helpe vs with his wanted strength,  
an straighte thither withall,  
A French ship sent us last,  
with wher we thre go hence:  
But sit in earth there lie full fast,  
and neuer like come thence.  
This French man as I say,  
through sale and surging seas,  
As brought from Ginnie land, a way  
to France, the Lord we praise.  
And warre he proued to plaine  
when we entered his ship:  
A prisoner therefore I remaine,  
and hence I can not slip  
Till that my ransom be  
agreed vpon, and paid,  
Which being leuied yet so hie,  
no agreement can be made.  
And such is to my chance,  
the meane time to abide  
A prisoner for ransom in France,  
till God send time and tide.  
From whence this idle time  
to England I doe send:  
And thus till I haue further time,  
this Tragedie I end.

R. Baker.

### The voyage of M. George Fenner to Guinie, and the Islands of

Cape Verde, in the yeere 1606. with three ships, to wit, the Admirall, called the Castel of Comfort, the May Flower, and the George, and a Pinnesse also. Written by Walter Wren.



On the 10. day of December in the yeere abovesayd, we departed from Wilmouth, and the 12. day we were thwarf of Wane,

The 15. day in the morning being Sunday, we had sight of Cape Finister, and the same night we lost the company of our Admirall, wherfore we sayled along the coast of Portugall, hoping that our Admirall had bene before vs.

The

The 18. day we met with a French Ship, of whom we made inquirie for our Admirall, but he could not tell us the wayes of him: so we followed our course to the Islands of the Canaries.

The 25. day in the morning we fell with a small Island called Porto Santo, and within 3. houres we had sight of another Island called Madera, which is 6. leagues from Porto Santo,

The last 25. day being the day of the Equinixie, we hoised out our boate, and set Master Edward Fenner Captaine of the May Flower aboard vs being in the George, with the Paister whose name was Robert Courtiſe, and others of the sayd ship, and treated them with such cheere as God had sent vs.

The 28. day we fell with an Island called Tenerif, which is 27. leagues from the said Island, and on the East ſide thereof we came to an anker in foyle ſadome water, within a bafe ſhoete of the ſhoie, in a little Baie, wherein were three or foure ſmall houſes: which Baie and houſes were diſtant from a little towne called Santa Cruz, a league or thereabout, and as we roade in the ſayd Baie, we might ſee an Island called the grand Canarie, which was 6. or 7. leagues from vs.

The 29. day the May Flower ſo that ſhe could not ſet into the roade where we were at an anker, by reaſon the wind was off the ſhoie, & becauſe ſhe bare roomer from the land then we did, in the morning came bearing in with the towne of Santa Cruz, thinking to come to an anker in the roade againſt the towne, and befoze ſhe came within the reach of any of their ordnance, they ſhot at her foure pieces, which cauſed her to come roomer with vs, and came at laſt to an anker by vs. And about one of the clocke in the after noone, the ſoynamed Captaine of the May Flower, wrote a letter a ſhoie, directing it to the head officer of the towne of Santa Cruz, to the intent to vnderſtand the pretence of the ſhooting of the ſayd ordnance.

The letter being written, Robert Courtiſe maſter of the May Flower, and Walter Wren, were appointed to deliuer the ſame a land at the three or foure houſes, to be conuicted to the ſoylſayd towne, and ſo went with ſixe men in the boate, and rowed to the ſhoie as neere as they might, for ſetting the boate on ground, for the ſea went cruellly at the ſhoie.

The people ſtood in number 30. perſons, with ſuch armour as they had: the ſoylſayd Wren called to them in Spaniſh, declaring to them that they had a letter, which they would very gladly haue conuicted vnto the towne, ſhewing that they would traffique with them as merchants, deſiring their helpe for the conuicance of the ſame letter. Which that one of the Spaniards tolled vs to come on land, & we ſhould be welcome, but doubting the worſt, the ſayd Walter answered them, that they would not come a land, vntill they had anſwere of their letter which they had brought.

Whereupon one of the Spaniards vntiaid himſelfe, and lepe into the water, and ſwamme to the boate, whom we receiued. And he ſaluted vs, and demaunded what our requeſt was: we made him anſwere, that by miſfortune we loſt the companie of our Admirall, and being bound to this Island to traffique for wines and other things neceſſarie for vs, doe heare mind to ſtay vntill ſhe come.

Concerning our letter, he made vs anſwere that he would with all diligence carie it, and deliuer it according to the direction, and ſo the ſayd Walter knit the letter in a bladder, and deliuered it vnto him, and alſo gaue him foure royals of Spaniſh money for his paines: and promiſing that we ſhould haue anſwere of it, heooke his leaue, and ſwamme againe a ſhoie, where the people ſtood ready to receiue him. And after that they had talked with him, and vnderſtood our meaning, ſome of them ſpew vpon their hats, and the other put them off holding them in their hands, and made vs very curteous ſignes, alwayes deſiring that the boate would come a land, but we reſtating the roade backe againe aboard.

The 30. day the Governours brother of Santa Cruz, came aboard the May Flower, with ſixe or ſeuen Spaniards with him, who concluded with the Captaine that we might come a ſhoie and traffique with them, but that day we did not, for we had no ſufficient pledge of theirs for our aſſurance. Our Captaine entertained them well, and at their departure gaue them foure pieces of ordnance for a farewell, and beſtowed vpon them two chekes with other things.

The ſayd Governours brother promiſed our Captaine that he ſhould haue ſufficient pledges the morow following, which was not done, whereupon we grew ſuſpicious, and went not that day a ſhoie.

The firſt day of Januarie, our Captaine ſent Nicholas Day, and Iohn Sumpter a ſhoie, who were very well entertained with as many of our companie as went after them.

In the ſayd Island is a maruelous high hill called the Pike, which is a ſacre off more like a cloud in the aie, then any other thing: the hill is round and ſomewhat ſmall at the top, it hath not bene known that euer any man could go vpon the top thereof. And although it ſtand in 28. degrees which is as hot in Januarie, as it is in England at September, yet is the top of the ſaid hill ſnowed, and ſummer ſeldome without ſnow.

our behest  
light  
the  
which were  
ie  
p men  
d strength  
ill  
ence:  
fall,  
ce.  
tras,  
nd, away  
iſt.  
ne  
ce,  
R. Baker.  
nd the Islands of  
mirall, called the Ca  
Written by Walter Wren.  
arcs from Plimmouth,  
light of Cape Finiſter,  
wherefoze we ſayled  
ad bene befoze vs.  
The

In this Island about two leagues from the said Santa Cruz, is a citie called Anagona.

The third day we departed about the Westernne point of the Island, about 12. or 14. leagues from Santa Cruz, into a Baie which is right against the house of one Pedro de Soufes, in which Baie we came to an anker the 5. day, where we heard that our Admirall had bene there at an anker 7. dayes before vs, and was gone thence to an Island called Goimera, wherupon we set saile px sently to seeke him.

They inerte their Admirall againe.

The 6. day we came to an anker against the towne of Goimera, where we finde our Admirall, which was very ioyfull of our coming, and we also of his sight.

In the sayd roade we found Edward Cooke in a tall ship, and a ship of the Copperminits of London, which the Portugals had trecherously surprisid in the Baie of Santa Cruz, upon the coast of Barbarie, which ship we left there all spoiled.

Our General and merchants bought in the said towne for our provision, 14. butts of wine, which cost 15. ducats a butt, which were offered vs at Santa Cruz in Tenerif, for 8, 9, and 10. ducats.

The 9. day we departed from this roade to an other Baie, about 3. leagues off, and thereooke in fresh water: and so the 10. day we set saile towards Cape Blanke, which is on the coast of Ginnie.

It good CAP used.

The 12. day we fell into a Baie to the Eastward of Cape Pargos, which is 35. leagues from Cape Blanke. But hauing no knowledge of that coast, we went with Cape Blanke, and at the fall of the land we founded, and had 16. fadome water two leagues from the shoie. The land is very lowe, and white sand. Upon the fall of the sayd coast, beware how you boiote in 12. or 10. fadome, for within 2. or 3. castes of the lead you may be on ground.

The 17. day, we set saile from Cape Blanke, directing our course South and by East, and South among, and so fell into a Baie to the Eastward of Cape Verde, about 16. leagues, and about 6. leagues from the shoie. The sayd land seemed vnto vs as if it had bene a great number of Hills vnder saile, being in deed nothing els but the land which was full of Hammocks, some high some lowe, with high trees on them. We bare with the sayd land till we were within 3. leagues of the shoie, and then we founded, and found 28. fadome water, blacke oafe. This day we saw much fish in sundry sculs swimming with their noses with the bümme of the water.

Cape Verde.

Passing along this coast, we might see two small round hills, seeming to vs about a league one from the other, which is the Cape, and betwene them are great shoie of trees, and in all our dayes sailing we saw no land so high, as the said two hills.

The 19. day we came to an anker at the Cape, in a roade fast by the Westernmost side of two hills, in 10. fadome of water, where you may ride in five or six fadome, for the ground is faire, and alwayes you shall haue the wind off the shoie. And as soone as we were all at an anker, our General came aboard vs, and with him the master of the Admirall, whose name was William Bats, and with them the Captaine of the Viceadmirall, whose name was master Edward Fenner, and Robert Currisse the master, and dined aboard of vs, being in the George, whererin was Captaine John Heywood, and John Smith of Hampton master, and there we concluded to goe a land, to which was halfe a mile from vs: and by the counsell of William Bats, both Captaine and merchants and diuers of the company went without armour: for he sayd, that although the people were blacke and naked, yet they were ciuill: so that he would needes giue the venter, without the consent of the rest, to go without weapon. Thus they rowed to shoie, where, we being in the ship might see a great company of Negroes naked, walking to and fro by the sea side where the landing place was, waiting for the coming of our men, who came too soone, and landed to their losse as fell out afterwards.

The foolish rashness of Wm. Bats, persuading the company to land thus armed.

There went a shoie the Admirals kiffe, and the May Flowers boate, and in them the number of 20. persons of thereabouts, as master George Fenner the General, his brother master Edward Fenner, Thomas Valentine, John Worme and Francis Leigh marchants, John Haward, William Bats, Nicholas Day, John Tomson, and others.

At their coming to the shoie there were 100. Negroes of byward, with their bowes and arrows: our Captaines and merchants talked with them, and according to the vse of the countrey, the one demanded pledges of the other, and they were content to deliuer 3. of their Negroes for 5. of our men. Our 5. mens names were these, John Haward, Wil. Bats, Nich. Day, Joh. Tomson, and Joh. Currisse: these were deliuered them, and we receiued 3. Negroes into our Admirals kiffe.

Cruet, muske, gold & graine, the commodities of Cape Verde.

Our men being a shoie among the Negroes, begaine to talke with them, declaring what wares and merchandise we had, as woollen cloth, linnen cloth, iron, specle and other things. The Negroes answered againe they had cruet, muske, gold and graine, which pleased our captaines and merchants very well. Then the Negroes desired to haue a sight of some of our wares, to the which our merchants were content, and shortly with stut aboard one of the boates for part of their merchandise, and



called Anagona, about 12, or 14 leagues Petto de Soules, in which I had bene there at in an a, whereupon wee see sayle

we finde our Admirall, of the Coppermines of Santa Cruz, upon the coast

of 14, but of wine, 8, 9, and 10. Ducats. goes off, and thereooke in is on the coast of Ginnie, which is 35. leagues from Cape Blanke, and at the in the Hoze. The land is you bozow in 12, or 10.

South and by East, and about 16, leagues, and ad bene a great number of of Daimonks, some high were within 3. leagues of his day we saw much fish

to us about a league one crees, and in all our dayes

the steepest side of two hills, the ground is faire, and al at an anchor, our Generall was William Bats, and Edward Fenner, and Roretin was Capaine John to goe a land, which was ne and merchants and di people were blacke and without the consent of the g in the ship might see a where the landing place ed to their loist as fell out

and in them the number his bocher matter Ed- merchants, John Haward,

with their bowes and ar the use of the countrey, the their Negros for 5. of our 7, Joh. Tomson, and Ioh. Admirals (kiffe,

em, declaring what ware the things. The Negros our captiues and mer- wares, to the which our art of their merchandize; and

and in the same time while the boace went to the ship, our five men were walking on the Hoare with the Negroes, and our Generall and Marchants stayed in the other boate by the sea side, hauing the 3. Negroes with them.

Our boate then came againe, and brought yron and other merchandize, with bread, wine, and cheefe, which they gaue vnto them. Then two of the Negroes (which were the pledges) made themselves sick, desiring to goe aboarde, promising to sende other two for them. Capaine Hayward perceiuing that our men had let the Negroes come a shoare, asked what they meane, (and doubting the way) began to dyrt toward the boate, and two of three of the Negroes followed him. And when he came to the boate they beganne to stay him, and he made signes vnto them that he would let the them moze dyinke and bread: notwithstanding, when hee was entering into the boate, one of them caught him by the breeches, and would haue stayed him, but hee sprang from him and leapt into the boate. And as soone as hee was in, one of the Negroes a shoare began to blowe a pipe, and presently the other Negro that was in our boate, sitting on the boates side, and halter Wormes sword by him, suddenly dytwe the sworde out of the scaberde and cast himselfe into the sea, and swomme a shoare: and presently the Negroes layde handes on our men that were on shoare, and tooke thye of them with great violence, and toare all their apparell from their backs, and left them nothing to couer them, and many of them thotte so thicke at our men in our boates, that they coulde scarce see hande to any Dare to rowe from the shoare, yet (by the helpe of God) they got from them with their boates, although many of them were hurt with their poysoned arrowes: and the poyson is incurable if the arrowe enter within the skinnie and bytwe bloud, and except the poyson be presently sucked out, or the place where any man is hurt, be furthwith cut away, hee dieth within foure dayes, and within three houres after they be hurt or picked, where soeuer it be, although but at the little toe, yet it striketh vp to the heart, and taketh away the stomacke, and causeth the partie maruelously to vomit, being able to vooke neither meate nor dyinke.

The Negro teachers.

The Negroes hauing vied our men with such cruelty, whose names were Nicholas Day, William Bats, and Iohn Tomson, ledde them away to a towne which was within a mile of the water side of there about.

The 20. day we sent too lande a boate of skiffe wherein were eight persons, and one of them was the sayd Iohn Tomson and our interpreter, which was a Frenchman, (for there was one of the Negroes which spake good French) they carried with them two harquebusses, two car- gues, and a mantell.

The cause of sending them was to learne what ransom they demanded for Bats and Day, whome they detained. And when they came to the shoare, and tolde the Negroes what they desired, they went and fetched them from among the trees, and brought them loose amongst fourtie or fiftie of them. And being come within a stones cast of the sea side, William Bats byake from them, and ranne as fast as hee coulde into the sea towardes the boate, and hee was not so soone in the water but hee fell downe, either being out of breath or his footing sayling him in the sande being soft: so that the Negroes came and fell on him and tooke him, and halled him, that wee thought they had torie him in pieres. For they toare againe all the apparell from his backe, so that some of them caried our men againe to the towne, and the rest thotte at vs with their poysoned arrowes, and hurt one of our men called Androwes in the small of the legge, who being come aboarde, (for all that our Surgeons coulde doe) wee thought hee would haue died.

The danger of poysoned arrowes.

Our Generall (notwithstanding all this villanie,) sent againe to them, and offered them any thing that they desired for the ransom of our men, but they would not deliuer them: giuing vs this answer, That there was in the sayd shoare thye weekes before wee came, an English shippe which had taken thye of their people, and untill wee did bring of sence them againe, wee shoulde not haue our men, although wee would glue our thye shippes with their furniture.

The answers of the Negroes.

The 21. day a French shippe of the burden of fourescore tunnes, (or there abouts,) came to the place where we were, being bounde to tradique at the Cape: we tolde them of the detayning of our two men by the Negroes: and seeing that these Frenchmen were very well welcome to the Negroes, we wished them to see whether they coulde procure them againe of the Negroes, and bring them along with them, and our Generall promised the Frenchmen 100. li. to obtaine them. So we committed the matter to the Frenchmen and departed.

Of our men that were hurt by the Negroes arrowes, foure died, and one to saue his life, had his arme cut off. Androwes that was last of all hurt, laye lame not able to helpe himselfe oney

onely two recovered of their hurts. So we placed other men in the roomes of those that were lost, and set sail.

The 26. day betwene Cape Verde, and Bona vista, we saw many flying fishes of the bignes of herrings, whereof two flew into our boate, which we towed at our sterne.

Bona vista.

The 28. day we set with an Island called Bona vista, which is from Cape Verde 86. leagues. The Northside of the saide Island is full of white sandie hills, and dales, and somewhat high lande.

The saide day we came to an ancre within the Westermost point, about a league within the point, and found in our sounding faire sande in tenne foorc water, but you may goe neere till you be in five or sixe fadom, for the ground is faire.

As soone as we were at an ancre, our Generall sent his pinnell a land, and founde five or sixe small houses, but the people were fledde into the mountaines: and the next day hee sent a shoare a gaine, and mette with 2. Portingals, who willingly went aboarde with his men, and at their coming he welcommed them, although they were but poore and simple, & gaue eche of them a peece of shoes, and so let them a shoare againe.

The 30. day we wayed and sailed into a bay within a small Island about a league from vs, and tooke plentie of diuers sortes of fish. The foresaide Island lyeth in sixtene degrees. And if you meane to ancre in the saide bay, you may boote in foure or five fadome of the Southermost point of the saide Island, which you may see when you ride in the roade. But beware of the middle of the bay, for there lyeth a ridge of rocks, which at a lowe water breaketh, yet there is thre fadom water ouer them.

A good ancre  
in this bay.

The last day of Januarie our Generall with certaine of his men went a shoare in the bay to the houses, where he found twelue Portingals. In all the Island there were not about 30. persons, which were banish'd men for a time, some for moze yerres, some for leile, and amongst them there was one simple man which was their captaine.

Banished  
Portingals.

They liue upon goates flesh, cockes, hennes, and fresh water: other victuals they haue none, sauing fish, which they esteeme not, neither haue they any boates to take them.

Great store of  
goates.

They reported that this Islande was giuen by the king of Portingall, to one of his Gentlemen, who hath let it sooth to rent for one hundred ducates a yere, which rent is reared onely in goates skinner. For by their speeches there hath bene sent sooth of the saide Island into Portingale 40000. skinner in one yere.

We went to these men maruelously welcome, and to their powers very well intertaines, and they gaue vs the flesh of as many hee-goats as we would haue, and tooke much paines for vs in taking them, and bringing them from the mountaines upon their asses.

They haue there great store of the ople of Coxoyles, which Coxoyle is a fish which swimmeth in the sea, with a shell on his backe as broad as a target. It raineth not in this Island but in threer moneths of the yere, from the middell of Iuly to the middell of October, and it is here as wayes very boote. Nine haue bene brought hither, but by reason of the heate and drought they haue died.

February.

The Isle of  
Maiyo.

The 3. of Februarie we departed from this Island, and the same day fell with another Island called the Isle of Maiyo, which is 14. leagues from the other Island: there is in the middell of the way betwene these 2. Islands a banger which is alwayes to be seene.

A. Xago.

We ancred in the Northwest side of the saide Isle in a faire bay, of eight fadoms water and faire sande, but here we stayed not, but the fourth day wayed and sailed to another Island called S. Iago, which lyeth off the said Islande of Maiyo East and by South, and about five leagues from the other. Being come within the Westermost point, we sawe a faire roade, and a small towne by the water side, and also a foze of platfome by it: there wee purposed to come to ancre, and our Marchants to make some sale. But before we came within their shoore, they let lie at vs two pices, whereupon we went roomer and sailed along the shoore two or threer leagues from the roade, where we found a small bay and two or threer small houses, where we came to an ancre in 14. fadom faire ground.

Within an houre after we had ancred, we might see diuers boyemen and footemen on the land right against vs riding, and running to and fro.

The next day being the sixt of Februarie, a great companie of these boyemen and footmen appeared on the shoare side, into whom our Generall sent, to vnderstande whether they would quietly traque with them: And they sent him woyle againe, desiring that they might speake with him, promising that if he came to traque as a marchant, he should be welcome, and also that he should haue any thing that he of the marchant would wish reason demaunde.

When

...of those that were led,  
...flying fishes of the bigges  
...Cape Verde 86 leagues,  
...bales, and somewhat high

...about a league within the  
...you may goe nere till you  
...land, and founde five of the  
...next day hee sent a boate  
...his men, and at their com-  
...gave eche of them a pair

...about a league from vs, and  
...xtene degrees. And if you  
...of the Southemost point  
...but beware of the middle of  
...th, yet there is three fadoms

...went a boate in the baye to  
...were not above 30 persons,  
...le, and amongst them there

...er victuals they have none,  
...he them.

...ngall, to one of his Gentles  
...which rent is reared onely in  
...the same Island into Porti-

...s very well entertained, and  
...ooke much paines for vs in  
...

...people is a fish which swim-  
...eth not in this Island but in  
...f October, and it is here ab-  
...the heate and brought they

...y fell with another Island  
...here is in the middle of the

...of eight fadoms water and  
...ed to another Island called  
...and about five leagues one  
...a faire roade, and a small  
...purpose to come to nere,  
...their shotte, they let fire at vs  
...two or three leagues from  
...where we came to an anchor

...n and footemen on the land

...er horsemen and footemen  
...stande together they would  
...ing that they might speake  
...to be welcome, and also that  
...maunde.

When

When this and were was brought unto our Generall, he was very glad thereof, and the whole  
company, and presently (with as much speede as he could) hee caused his boates to be made rea-  
dy: but doubting the villanie of the Portugals, armed his boates, putting a double baste in the  
head of his pinnele, and two single bastes in the head of his Skiffe, and so sent to the May flour  
and the George, and willed them in like sort to man their two boates.

These boates being thus manned and well appointed, our Generall entered into his skiffe,  
and with the rest rowed to the shoare where were threescore horsemen or more, and two hundred  
footemen ready to receive them. Our Generall marvelled that they came in so great a num-  
ber and all armed, and therefore with a flagge of truce sent to them to knowe their pleasure:  
and they answered them with many faire promises and othes, that their purpose was all true,  
and that they meant like Gentlemen and Marchants to traffique with him, declaring also that  
their Captaine was coming to speake with him; and therefore desired our Generall to come  
and speake with him himselfe.

With this answer the boate returned, and then our Generall caused his pinnele to rowe to  
them, and as he came nere the shoare, they came in a great company with much obsequance, ope-  
ning their handes, and armes aboade, bowing themselves with their bowmes off, with as much  
humble salutations outwardly as they might earnestly desiring our Generall and Marchants  
to come a lande to them, whereunto hee would not agree, without sufficient gages of Gentlemen  
and Marchants. At length they promised to sende two gages to our Generalls contentment,  
spanning fresh water, victuall, money, or Negroes for ware, if it were such as they liked: and  
therefore desired our Generall and Marchants to sende them a boate in writing, the quantitie of  
their wares, and the names of them: all which our Generall departed to performe, looking for  
their answer the morowe following. And being gone a litle from the shoare, hee caused his bas-  
tard carriers, and bargabulles to be shotte off, and our shippes in like case shotte off five or sixe pic-  
ces of great ordnance, and so came aboode to prepare the note. The Portugals most of them  
departed, leaving those that were left to watch and to receive the note, which about four or five a  
clocke in the after noone was sent, and it was received. But all the purposes of the Portugals,  
were villainously to betray us (as shall appeare hereafter,) although we meant in truth to buy  
them, friendly to traffique with them.

The creature  
in the Portugals  
gave in the  
Jago to our  
men.

There was to the Westwards of vs, and about two leagues from vs, a towne behinde a point  
led by the sea side, where they had certaine Caruels, 3 Shippes, and also two Brigandines,  
whereof they (with all the speede that they might) made ready foure Caruels, and both the Bri-  
gandines which were like two Gallies, and furnished them both with men and ordnance, as much  
as they could carrie, and as soone as it was night, they came rowing and falling towards vs: so  
that the land being high, and the weather somewhat cloudie or myste, and they comming all the  
way close under the boate, we could not see them till they were right against one of our shippes  
called the May flour.

By this time it was about one or two of the clocke in the morning, and the May flour roade  
nearer them then the other two by a baste shotte, so that they made a sure accompt either to haue  
taken her or burnt her. In the meane time our men that had the watche (litle thinking of such  
villanous treacheries after so many faire wordes,) were singing and playing one with the other,  
and made such a noise, that (being but a small gale of winde, and riding nere the lande) they  
might heare vs, from the shoare: so that we supposed that they made accompt that we had espied  
them, which in verie we had not, neither had any one piece of ordnance primed, or any other thing  
in a readinesse.

They came so nere vs that they were within gunshot of vs, & then one of our men chanced to  
see a light, & then looking out spied the 4. shippes, and suddenly cried out, Gallies, gallies, at which  
cry we were all amazed, and looch with they shotte at vs all the great ordnance that they had, and  
their bargabulles, and carriers, and so lighted certaine tronks of pieces of wilde fire, and a ll of  
them with our boates, (as well they ran the boate as they in the shippes) gave a great shout, and so  
continued hallooing with great noises, till appoyching neerer and neerer unto the May  
flour. These (with all the speede that we might) made ready one piece of ordnance and  
shotte at them, which caused them somewhat to staye, so they recharged their ordnance and shotte  
at vs freshly againe, and while they shotte this second time at vs, we had made ready three  
pieces which wee shotte at them, but they appoyched still some way, but at last we might haue  
taken a shipp, and so to them. Whereupon wee having a gale of winde off the shoare, bow-  
ed our boates, and our cable at the halye, and went towards our Admirall, and they  
continued hallooing and singing as vs, and layeing at our Admirall, but our Admirall shotte  
one

one such piece at them that it made them to retire, and at length to warpe away like traitors and villaines, and although they thus suddenly tooke all their hope at vs, yet they hurt neither man nor boy of ours, but what we did to them we know not.

The 16<sup>th</sup> of  
Fuego.

But seeing the villanie of these men, we thought it best to stay there no longer, but immediately set sail to wards an Island called Fuego, 12 leagues from the said Island of S. Iago. At which Island of Fuego we came to an ancre the 11. day of this moneth, against a white chappell in the West end of the said Island, within halfe a league of a litle towne, and within a league of the about of the vetermost point of the said Island.

In this Island is a marvellous high hill which doth burne continually, and the inhabitants reported that about 3. yeeres past, the whole Island was like to be burned with the abundance of fire that came out of it.

Wills.

About a league from the said chappel to the Westward is a goodly spring of fresh water, where we had as much as wee would. Wheate they haue none growing here, but a certaine seebe that they call Mill, and certaine peason like Guinie peason, which Mill maketh good byead, but they haue here good store of rother beastes and goates. Their marchandise is cotton which groweth there.

Cotton in  
Fuego.

The inhabitants are Portingals, which haue commandement fro the king to traquie neither with Englishmen nor Frenchmen for victual of any other thing, except they be forced so to doe.

The 16<sup>th</sup> of  
May.

There lieth off this Island another called Ilha Braua, which is not passing two leagues our, and hath good store of goates and many trees, but there are not passing three or foure persons dwelling in it.

They returne  
March.

The 25. day of February we departed towards the Islands of Azores, and on the 23. day of March we had sight of one of them called Flores, and then we might see another Island to the Northward of it called Cuervo, lying 2. leagues of thereabouts off the other.

The 27. we came to an ancre in Cuervo ouer against a village of about twelue simple houses: but in the night by a gale of winde, which roused vs to waken our ancre after vs, we hoysed sail and went to the adjacent Island of Flores, where wee sawe strange streames of water running downe from the high cliffes by reason of the great abundance of raine that had suddenly fallen.

The 29. day we came againe to Cuervo and cast ancre, but a storme arose and continued leasse of eight houres together, so that wee let slippe a cable and ancre, and after the storme was alwayes we came againe thinking to haue recovered the same, but the Portingals had either taken it, or spoiled it: the cable was new and neuer wet before, and both the cable and ancre was better worth then 40. li. So that we account our stunes much beholding to the honest Portingals.

April.

The 18. day of April wee tooke in water at the Island of Flores, and heaving ancre, our cable was fretted in sundry places with a rocke and so burst, where wee lost that cable and ancre also, and so parted to our coast.

Then wee set sail to an Islande named Faiall, about the which lie three other Islands, the one called Pico, the other S. George, and the other Graciola, which wee had sight of on the 28. day.

Woods.

May.

The 29. we came to an ancre in the South-west side of Fayal in a faire bay, and 22. fadome water gainst a litle towne, where we had both fresh water and fresh victual. In this Island by the report of the inhabitants, there groweth certaine greene woad, which by their speeches is farre better then the woad of S. Michael, or of Tercera.

10 Portingall  
Shallop of  
400. tonnes.

The eight day of May we came to Tercera, where we mette with a Portingall shippe, and having bestidance of a cable and ancre, our Generall caused vs to keepe her company, to see if she could conveniently spare vs any. The next morning we might see bearing with vs a great shippe and two Caruels, which wee iudged to be of the king of Portingals Armado, and so they were, whereupon wee prepared our selues for our defence. The said shippe was one of the kings Gallies, about the burden of foure hundred tonnes, with about three hundred men in her, the shippe being well appointed with blasse pieces both great and small, and some of them so bigge, that their shotte was as great as a mans head, the other two Caruels were also very warlike and well appointed both with men and munition.

11 light  
bow  
sternes  
and  
English  
ship,  
and 7. West  
Indians.

As soone as they were within shotte of vs, they aimed vs againe with their shotte, we keeping our course, the greatest shippe shot at vs first, and the caruell also, and wee prepared our selues, and made all things cleare for our safety as neere as we could. Then the great shippe shot at vs all her broad side, & her faire greatest pieces that laye in her sterne, and therewith hurt some of our men, and wee with the best wee could with our shotte to requite it. At last this other

Caruel

Caruels came off the shoare, and two other pinnacles full of men, and deliuered them abooyde the great shippe, and so wente backe againe with two men in a peece of them. The shippe and the Caruels gaue vs the first day thyee sightes, and when the night was come, they left off shooting, yet notwithstanding kept hard by vs all the night. In the meane time wee had as much as wee coulde doe all the night to mende our ropes, and to strengthen our bulwarkes, putting our trust in God, and resoluing our selues rather to die in our defense, then to bee taken by such wretches.

The next day being the 10. of May in the morning, there were come to ayde the saide Portugals, 4. great Armados of Caruels moze which made seuen, of which 4. threer of them were at the least 100. Annes apiece, the other not so bigge, but all well appointed and full of men. All these together came bearing with vs being in our Admirall, and one of the great Caruels came to ayde abooyde (as we iudged) for they had prepared their false nettings, and all things for that purpose, so that the Gallias came up in our starboord side, and the Caruel in our larboord side.

Our Captaine and Spallier perceiving their pretence, caused our gunners to make all our ordinance ready with crossebarres, chainesbotte, and halleshot: so the shippe and Caruell came by, and as soone as they were right in our sides, they shote at vs as much ordnance as they coulde, thinking to haue layde vs presently abooyde: wherupon wee gaue them such a beate with both our sides, that they were both glad to fall asterne vs, and so paused the space of two or thyeer houres being a very small gale of winde.

Then came by the other five and shot all at vs, and so fel all asterne vs, and then went to countell together.

Then our small barke named the George came to vs, and wee conferr'd together a great space. And as the Portugall shippes and Caruels were comming to vs againe, our barke minding to fall asterne of vs, and so to come by againe, fell quickly upon the lee, and by reason of the litle winde, it was so long before she coulde fill her sailes againe, that both the shippe and Caruels were come by to vs, and the falling in among them, made reasonable shift with them, but they got a head of her, so that she coulde not fetch vs: then 5. of the Caruels followed her, but we sawe shee defende her selfe against them all.

Then came the great shippe and the Caruell to vs, and fought with vs all that day with their ordinance.

The May floure our other consort, being very good by the winde,ooke the benefite thereof, and halde all that day close by the winde, but coulde not come neere vs. So when night againe was come, they gaue over their fight and followed vs all the night.

In these many fights it coulde not other wise bee, but needes some of our men must be slaine, (as they were indeede) and diuers hurt, and our tackle much spoyled: yet for all this wee did our best indouour to repaire all things, and to stand to it to the death, with our assured trust in the mercie and helpe of God.

This night the May floure came by to vs, and our Captaine tolde them his harmes and spoyles, and wished them if they coulde spare halfe a dosen fresh men, to hoyle out their boate and sende them to him, but they coulde not spare any, and so bare away againe. Which when our enemies sawe in the next morning, that we were one from another, they came by to vs againe and gaue vs a great fight with much hallowing and hooping, making accompt either to booyde vs or els to sinke vs: but although our companie was but small, yet least they shoulde see vs any whit dismayde, when they hallowed wee hallowed also as fast as they, and waued to them to come and booyde vs if they durst, but that they woulde not, seeing vs still so couragious, and having giuen vs that day 4. sightes, at night they forsooke vs with shame, as they came to vs at the first with pride.

They had made in our shippe some leakes with their shotte which we againe stopped with all speed, and that being done, weooke some rest after our long labour and trouble.

The next day in the morning the May floure came to vs, and brought vs sixe men in her boate, which did vs much pleasure, and we sent to them some of our hurt men.

Then we directed our course for our owne countrey, and by the second day of June wee were neere to our owne coast, and founded being thwart the Lizard.

The thirde day we had sighte of a shippe which was a Portugall, who bare with vs, and at his comming to vs (the weather being caline,) our Captaine caused him to hoyle forth his boate to come abooyde to speake with him, and at their comming our Captaine and Marchants demanded of them what ware they had, and whether they were bounde, and they made answer that their lading was Sugar and coccon. Then our Captaine and Marchants shewed them

The 7. May  
Portugals depart  
with shame  
from our Eng  
lish shipp.

**A** Portugall  
ship (notwith-  
standing all  
their villainies)  
defended by  
our men from  
Rowers.

them 5. Negroes that wee had, and asked them whether they would buy them, which they were very desirous to doe, and agreed to giue for them 40. chests of Sugar, which chests were small hauing not about 26. loanes in a peece: so they with their boate did fetch five of the chests, and deliuered them, and went for more, and when they had laden their boate and were come againe, wee might see bearing with vs, a great shippe and a small, which our Captaine supposed to be men of warre of Rowers, and then killed the Portugals to carrie their sugar to their shippe againe, purposing to make our selues readie for our defence. But the Portugals earnestly intreated our Captaine not so to forsake them, and promised him (if he would safegard them,) to giue him about the bargaine 10. chests of sugar: whereupon our Captaine was content, and the Portugall not being good of faith, we spared our topsailes for her; so at last the foresaide ship bare with vs, and (seeing that we did not feare them) gaue vs ouer. And the next morning came two others bearing with vs, and seeing vs not about to slee a toe from them, forsooke vs also.

The 5. day of June wee had light of the Starr, and about noone wee were chwart of the bay of Lime, and so founded, and had 35. fadom water.

The six day wee came in at the Needles, and so came to an ancre vnder the Ile of Wight at a place called Meadhole, and from thence sailed to Southampton, where wee made an end of this voyage.

### The worthie enterprise of Iohn Fox an Englishman in deliuering 266. Christians out of the captiuitie of the Turkes at Alexandria, the 3. of Ianuarie 1577.



**A**mong our Marchants here in England it is a common voyage, to traffique into Spaine: whereunto a shippe, being called The three halfe Moones, named with eights and thirtie men, and well furnished with Munitions, the better to encounter their enemies withal, & hauing towne & tide, set from Portsmouth 1563, and bended her iourney towardes Siuilla a Citie in Spaine, intending there to traffique with them. And falling nerre the Streights, they perceived themselves to be beset round about with eights Gallies of the Turkes, in such wise, that there was no way for them to flee or escape away, but that either they must peeble or else bee sunk. Which the owner perceiving, manfully encouraged his companie, exhorting them valiantly to the we their manhood, shewing them that God was their God, and not their enemies, requesting them also not to faint in seeing such a heape of their enemies ready to deuoure them; putting them in minde also, that if it were Gods pleasure to giue them into their enemies hands, it was not they, that ought to shewe one displeasur look of countenance there against; but to take it patiently, and not to prescribe a day and time for their deliuerance, as the Citizens of Bethulia did, but to put themselves vnder his merrie. And againe, if it were his minde and good will to shewe his mightie power by them, if their enemies were tenne times so many, they were not able to stande in their byndes, putting them likewise in minde of the olde and auncient worthinesse of their Countrey men, who in the hardest extremities haue alwayes most pleased and gone away conquerours, yea, and where it hath bene almost impossible. Such (quoth he) hath bene the valiantnesse of our countrey men; and such hath bene the mightie power of our God.

With such other like encouragements, exhorting them to behaue themselves manfully, they fell all on their knees making their Prayers heartily vnto God: who being all risen vp againe, perceived their enemies by their signes and defiance bent to the spoyle, whose merrie was nothing else but crueltie; whereupon euery man tooke him to his weapon.

Then stood vp one Groue the Spalder, being a comely man, with his sword and target, holding them vp in defiance against his enemies. So likewise stood vp the owner, the Spalder mate, Bodelwaime, Purser and euery man well appointed. Nowe likewise sounded by the drummes, trumpets and flutes, which would haue encouraged any man, had been neuer so little heart of courage in him.

Then takerh him to his charge Iohn Fox the gunner in the disposing of his pieces in order to the best effect; and sendi: g his bullets towards the Turkes, who likewise bestowed their pieces thise as fast toward the Christians. But shortly they were nere, so that the bowmen fell to their charge in sending forth their arrows so thicke amongst the Gallies, & also in doubling their shot so fast vpon the Gallies, that there were twise so many of the Turkes slaine, as the number of the Christians were in all. But the Turkes discharged twise as fast against the Christians, & so long,

buy them, which they were, which chests were small each one of the chests, and in and were come againe, were became supposed to be men of to their shippe againe, purpose earnestly intricated our Capt. (hem.) to give him about the and the Portugall not being ip bare with vs, and (seeing two others bearing with vs,

ere were thwart of the bay of under the Ile of Wight: at a where wee made an ende of

an English- the captivitie of

mon voyage, to traffique in three halfe Moones, named Sumitions, the better to enter from Portsmouth 1563, aine, intending there to tra- percieued themselves to be there was no way for them take. Which the owner per- to shewe their manhood, telling them also not to 'aim ing them in minde also, that was not their that oug to be it patiently, and not to pe- a do, but to put themselves to shewe his mightie power le to stande in their best, of their Countreymen, who way conquerours, p. a, and valiantwelle of our countrey-

themselves manfully, they being all risen up againe, people, whose merite was no

his sworde and target, hol up the owner, the Spawnt we likewise founded by the man, had been neuer to like

ing of his pieces in order to the wide beddowed their pieces that the botwome fell to their & also in doubling their bot saine, as the number of the of the Christians, & so long that

that the ship was very soze stricken & huiled under water. Which the Turkes perceiuing, made the more haste to come aboard the shippe: which ere they could doe, many a Turke bought it verely with the losse of their liues. Pet was all in vaine, and booyded they were, where they found so boe a skimmish, that it had bene better they had not medled with the feast. For the Englishmen shewed themselves men in deede, in working manfully with their bowe bills, and bolbarbs: where the owner, master, boateswaine, and their company roode to it so lustily, that the Turkes were halfe dissmaied. But chiefly the boateswaine shewed himself valiane about the rest: for he sa- red amongst the Turkes like a wood Lyon: for there was none of them that either could or durst stand in his face: till at the last there came a shot from the Turkes, which brake his whistle a sun- der, and smote him on the breast, so that he fell downe, hiding them farewell, & to be of good com- for, encouraging them likewise to waime praise by death, rather then to liue captiues in miserie and shame. Which they hearing, in deede intended to haue done, as it appeared by their skirmish: but the yeare and stroe of the Turkes was so great, that they were not able long to endure, but were so ouerwhelmd, that they could not wield their weapons: by reason wherof, they must needs be taken, which none of them intended to haue bene, but rather to haue died: except onely the Spawnters mate, who shynke from the skirmish, like a notable coward, esteeming neither the valoure of his name, nor accounting of the present example of his fellowes, nor hauing respect to the miserie, whereunto he should be put. But in fine, so it was, that the Turkes were victors, wherof they had no great cause to reioyce, or triumph. Then would it haue grieued any hard heart to see these Infidels so violently intrating the Christians, not hauing any respect of their manhood which they had cast off, nor yet respecting their owne state, how they might haue met with such a bootie, as might haue giuen them the ouerthrow: but no remorse herof, or any thing els doth bytule their fierce and tyranious dealing, but that the Christians must needs to the gallies, to serue in newe offices: and they were no looner in them, but their garments were pulled ouer their eares, and come from their backs, and they set to the oars.

I will make no mention of their miseries, being now under their enemies raging stripes. I thinke there is no man will iudge their face good, or their bodies buloden of stripes, and not pestered with too much heate, and also with too much cold: but I will goe to my purpose, which is, to shew the ende of those, being in meere miserie, which continually doe call on God with a stedfast hope, that he will deliuer them, and with a sure faith, that he can doe it.

Right to the citie of Alexandria, being a haven to wne, and vnder the dominion of the Turkes, there is a roade, being made very sensible with strong walls, wherinto the Turkes doe customa- bly bring their gallies on shoare euery yeere, in the winter season, and there doe trimme them, and lay them vp againe in the spring time. In which roade there is a pison, whereto the captiues & such prisoners as serue in the gallies, are put for all that time, untill the seas be calme and passable for the gallies, euery prisoner being most grievously laben with yrons on their legges, to their great paine, and soze disabling of them to any labour taking. Into which pison were these Christians put, and fast warded all the winter season. But ere it was long, the Spawnter and the owner, by meanes of friends, were redecem'd: the rest abiding still by the miserie, while that they were all, though reason of their ill vblage and woyle fare, miserably starued: sauing one John Fox, who (as some men can abide harder and more miserie, then ocher some can, so can some likewise make more shift, and woike more deuises to helpe their state and liuing, then ocher some can doe) being somewhat skilfull in the craft of a Barbour, by reason thereof made great shift in helping his fare now and then with a good meale. In so much, till at the last, God sent him sauaour in the sight of the keeper of the pison, so that he had leaue to goe in and out to the roade, at his pleasure, paying a certaine stipend vnto the keeper, and wearing a locke about his legge: which libertie likewise, fire more had vpon like sufferance: who by reason of their long imprisonment, not being feared or suspected to start aside, or that they would wooke the Turkes any mischief, had libertie to goe in and out at the said roade, in such manner, as this John Fox did, with yrons on their legges, and to returne againe at night.

In the yeere of our Lord 1577, in the winter season, the Gallies happily comming to their accustomed harborow, and being discharged of all their masts, sailes, and ocher such furniture, as vnto gallies doe appertaine, and all the Spawnters and martiners of them being then nested in their owne homes: there remained in the pison of the said roade two hundred threetye and eghte Christian prisoners, who had bene taken by the Turkes forer, and were of siterene sundry nati- ons. Among which there were three Englishmen, wherof one was named John Fox of Woodbridge in Suffolke, the ocher William Wickney of Portsmouth in the Countie of South- hampton, and the third Robert Moore of Harwich in the Countie of Essex. Which John Fox

The valour of death of these Spawnters.

The English men carried prisoners vnto an Spawnter neere Marsand byla.

having

having bene thirtene or fouerene yeeres vnder their gentle entreatance, & being too too weary thereof, minding his escape, wiled with himselfe by what meanes it might be brought to passe: and continually pondering with himselfe thereof, tooke a good heart vnto him, in hope that God would not be alwaies scourging his childzen, and neuer crassing to pray him to further his pretended enterpryse, if that it should rebound to his glory.

Not farre from the roade, and somewhat from thence, at one side of the Citie, there was a certaine Alituaing house, which one Peter Vnticaro had hired, paying also a certaine fee vnto the keeper of the roade. This Peter Vnticaro was a Spaniard boyne, and a Christian, and had bene prisoner above thirtie yeeres, and neuer practised any meanes to escape, but kept himselfe quiet without touch or suspect of any conspiracie: vntill that nowe this Iohn Foxe vling much thither, they brake one to another their minds, concerning the restraint of their libertie and imprisonment. So that this Iohn Foxe at length opening vnto this Vnticaro the deuisse which he would saue put in practise, made priuie one moze to this their intent. Which thre debated of this matter, at such times as they could compass to meeete together: insomuch that at seuen weekes ende they had sufficiently concluded howe the matter should be, if it pleased God to farther them thereto: who making sūe moze priuie to this their deuisse, whome they thought that they might safely trust, determined in threer nightes after to accomplish their deliberate purpose. Whereupon the same Iohn Foxe, and Peter Vnticaro, and the other sūe, appointed to meeete all together in the prison the next day, being the last day of December: where this Iohn Foxe certified the rest of the prisoners, what their intent and deuisse was, and howe and when they minded to bring their purpose to passe: who therunto perswaded them without much a doe to further their deuisse. Which the same Iohn Foxe seeing, deliuered vnto them a sort of files, which he had gathered together for this purpose, by the meanes of Peter Vnticaro, charging them that euery man should be ready discharged of his yrons by eight of the clocke on the next day at night.

The last of December.

Januarie.

On the next day at night, this false Iohn Foxe, and his sūe other companions, being all come to the house of Peter Vnticaro, passing the time a way in mirth for feare of suspect, till the night came on, so that it was time for them to put in practise their deuisse, sent Peter Vnticaro to the master of the roade, in the name of one of the Spallers of the citie, with whom this keeper was acquainted, and at whose request he also would come at the first: who desired him to take the paines to meeete him there, promising him, that he would bring him backe againe. The keeper agreed to goe with him, willing the warders not to barre the gate, saying, that he would not stay long, but wold come againe with all speede.

In the meane season, the other seuen had provided them of such weapons, as they could get in that house: and Iohn Foxe tooke him to an olde rustie sword blade, without either hilt or pomell, which he made to serue his turne, in bending the hand ende of the sword, in order of a pomell, and the other had got such spies and glaiues as they found in the house.

The keeper now being come vnto the house, and perceiving no light, nor hearing any noise, straightway suspected the matter: and returning backe ward, Iohn Foxe standing behind the corner of the house, stepped forth vnto him: who perceiving it to be Iohn Foxe, sayde, O Foxe, what haue I deserued of thee, that thou shouldst seeke my death? Thou villaine (quoth Foxe) hast bene a bloodsucker of many a Christians blood, and now thou shalt knowe what thou hast deserued at my handes: where with he lift vp his bright shining sword of ten yeeres rust, and stroke him so maine a blowe, as therewithall his head cleaued asunder, so that he fell stark dead to the ground. Whereupon Peter Vnticaro went in, and certified the rest how the case stood with the keeper: who came presently forth, and some with their spies ranne him through, and the other with their glaiues beueled him in sunder, cut off his head, and mangled him so, that no man should discerne what he was.

Then marched they toward the roade, wherinto they entered softly, where were sūe warders, whom one of them asked, saying, who was there? quoth Foxe & his company, all friends. Which when they were all within, yroued contrary: for quoth Foxe, my maisters, here is not to euery man a man, wherefore looke you play your parts. Who so behaued themselves in deede, that they had dispatched these sūe quickly. Then Iohn Foxe, intending not to be barred of his enterpryse, and minding to worke surely in that which he went about, barred the gate surely, and planted a Cannon against it.

Then entered they into the Gaillers lodge, where they found the keyes of the foxtresse and prison by his bed side, and there had they all better weapon. In this chamber was a chest, wherein was a rich treasure, and all in buckets, which this Peter Vnticaro, and two moze, opening, stuffed themselves to full as they could, betwene their shirts and their skinne: which Iohn Foxe would not

once



nce, & being too too weary  
might be brought to passe  
into him, in hope that God  
may him to further his pro-

the Citie, there was a crew  
also a certaine see vnto  
& a Christian, and had  
escape, but kept himselfe  
Iohn Foxe vsing much  
of the ir libertie and impu-  
the deuil which he would  
thee debated of this mat-  
that at seuen weekes ende  
God to farther them there-  
thee that they might safe-  
te purpose. Whereupon  
to meete all together in the  
Fox certified the rest of the  
bindes to bring their pur-  
cher their deuil. Which  
had gathered together for  
ery man should be ready

companions, being all come  
of suspect, all the night  
nt Peter Vnticaro to the  
whome this keeper was  
desired him to take the  
the againe. The keeper  
ng, that he would not say

ions, as they could get in  
out either bit of yonell,  
in neede of a yonell, and

ot, nor hearing any noyse,  
standing behind the cop-  
Fox, sayde, O Fox, what  
ne (quoth Fox) hast bene  
what thou hast deserued at  
s rust, and stroke him so  
stake dead to the ground,  
stooke with the keeper:  
, and the other with their  
no man should discerns

where were five warders,  
any, all friends. Which  
here is not to euer  
themselves in neede, that they  
red of his enterprise, and  
rely, and planted a Ca-

of the forreille and prison  
was a chest, wherein was  
the opening, stuffed them-  
ch Iohn Fox would not  
once

more couch, and saide, that it was his and their libertie which he sought for, to the honour of his God, and not to make a matter of the wicked creature of the Infidels. Yet did these words strike nothing into their stomakes, they did it for a good intent: so did Saule saue the fawcell Open, to offer vnto the Lord, and they to serue their owne turne. But neither did Saule scape the wrath of God therefore, neither had these that thing which they desired so, and did thirst after. Surely is Gods iudice, he that they put their trust in, to deliuer them from the tyrannous hands of their enemies, (be it say) could supply their want of necessaries.

Howe these eight, being armed with such weapons, as they thought well of, thinking themselves sufficient champions to encounter a stronger enemy, and comming vnto the prison, Fox opened the gates and doores thereof, and called forth all the prisoners, whom he set, some to ramming vp the gate, some to the ramming vp of a certaine gallie, which was the best in all the roade, and was called the capitaine of Alexandria, wherinto some caried masses, sailes, oares, and other such furniture, as doth belong vnto a gallie.

At the prison were certaine warders, whome Iohn Fox and his company slew: in the killing of whome, there were eight more of the Turkes, which perreiuened them, and got them to the toppe of the prison: vnto whome Iohn Fox, and his company, were saine to come by ladders, where they found a hot skirmish. For some of them were there slaine, some wounded, and some but scared, and not hurt. As Iohn Fox was thistle shot through his apparell, and not hurt. Peter Vnticaro, and the other two, that had armed them with the duckets, were slaine, as not able to wield themselves, being so pestered with the weight and vnease carrying of the wicked and prophane creature: and also diuers Christians were a well hurt about that skirmish, as Turkes slaine.

Amongst the Turkes was one chynst thowme, who (let vs not say that it was ill fortune) fell off from the coppe of the prison wall, and made such a lowing, that the inhabitants there about (as here and there scattering fhoode a houle or two) came and dauid him, so that they vnderstoode the case, how that the prisoners were paying their ransomes: where with they raised both Alexandria, which lay on the west side of the roade, and a Castle which was at the Citie's end, next to the roade, and also an other Forreille which lay on the North side of the roade: so that now they had no way to escape, but one, which by mans reason (the two holdes lying so vpon the mouth of the roade) might seeme impossible to be a way for them. So was the red sea impossible for the Israelites to passe through, the hills and rockes lay so on the one side, and their enemies compassed them on the other. So was it impossible, that the wals of Iericho should fall downe, being neither vndermined, nor yet rammed at with engines, nor yet any mans wisdome, policie, or helpe set out thereunto. Such impossibilities can our God make possible. He that helde the Lions iates from renting Daniel asunder, yea, yet from once touching him to his hurt: can not he hold yroning canons of this belld force? He that kept the fieres rage in the hot burning Oven, from the three chyliden, that praised his name, can not he keepe the fieres flaming blades from among his elect?

How is the roade fraught with lustie souldiers, labourers, and mariners, who are saine to stand to their eackling, in setting to euery man his hand, some to the carrying in of victuals, some munitions, some oares, and some one thing, some another, but most are keeping their enemy from the wall of the roade. But to be shot, there was no time mispent, no man idle, nor any mans labour ill bestowed, or in vaine. So that in short time, this gallie was ready trimmed vp. Wherinto euery man leaped in all haste, hopping by the sailes lustily, peelding themselves to his merrie and grace, in whose hands is both winde and weather.

How is this gallie on shore, and out of the safetie of the roade: nowe haue the two Castles full power vpon the gallie, now is there no remedie but sinke: how can it be auoided? the canons leaue from both sides, and the gallie is ruen in the middell, and betwene them both. What man can woulde to live it? there is no man, but would thinke it must needs be sinke.

There was not one of them that feared the shotte, which went thundring round about their eares, nor yet were they scared or touched, with sine and fortie shot, which came from the Castles. Here did God vnto Iohn Foxe his wonder, he shielded now this gallie, and had tried their faith to the vttermost. How commeth his speciall helpe: yea, euen when man thinks them past all helpe, then equieth he himselfe downe from heauen with his mightie power, then is his present remedie made ready. For he saile away, being not once touched with the glance of a shot, and are quickly out of the water, carrying with them, might they see them comming downe by desperes to the water side, in companie like vnto swarms of bees, making the way to come after them with gallies, in building them selves to beate vp the gallies, which would be a stout peece of worke for them to doe, for that they had neither oares, masses, sailes, gables, nor any thing els ready in any

any gally. But yet they are carrying them into them, some into one gally, and some into an other, so that, bring such a confusion amongst them, without any certaine guide, it were a thing impossible to ouertake them: beside that, there was no man that would take charge of a gally, the weather was so rough, and there was such an amassment amongst them. And verely I thinke that God was amazed thereat: it could not be but he must blush for shame, he can speake neuer a word for duines, much lesse can he helpe them in such an extremite. Well, howsoever it is, he is very much to blame, to suffer them to receive such a gibe. But howsoever their God behaued himselfe, our God shewed himselfe a God in deede, and that he was the onely liuing God: for the seas were swift vnder his faithfull, which made the enemies agast to behold them, a skilfuller Pilot leades them, and their mariners bestirre them lustily: but the Turkes had neither mariners, nor pilot, nor any skilfull sparrer, that was in a readinesse at this pinch.

When the Christians were safe out of the enemies coast, Iohn Fox called to them all, willing them to be thankfull vnto almighty God for their deliuerie, and most humbly to fall downe vpon their knees, beseeching him to aide them vnto their friends land, and not to bring them into another daunger, like her had mosse mightily deliuered them from so greene a chalydome and bondage.

Thus when euery man had made his petition, they fell straight way to their labour with the oares, in helping one another, when they were wearied, and with great labour striving to come to some Christian land, as nere as they could gesse by the starres. But the windes were so vniuers, one while blowing them this way, an other while that way, so that they were now in a netwe mast, thinking that God had forsaken them, and left them to a greater banger. And forasmuch as there were no victuals now left in the gally, it might haue bene a cause to them, (if they had bene the Israelites) to haue murmured against their God: but they knew how that their God, who had deliuered them out of Egypt, was such a louing and mercifull God, as that he would not suffer them to be confounded, in whome he had wrought so greene a wonder: but what calamitie couer they sustained, they knew it was but for their farther triall, and also (in putting them in minde of their farther miserie) to cause them not to triumph and glory in themselves therefore. Hauing (if) no victuals in the gally, it might seeme, one miserie continually to fall vpon an others necke, but to be byeste, the famine grew to be so greene, that in 28. daies, wherein they were on the sea, there died eight persons, to the astonishment of all the rest.

Extremite: of  
famine.

So it fell out, that vpon the 29. day, after they set from Alexandria, they fell on the Isle of Candie, and landed at Gallipoli, where they were made much of by the Abbot and Monks there, who caused them to stay there, while they were well refreshed and eased. They kept there the winter, where with Iohn Fox had killed the keeper, esteeming it as a most precious iewel, and being it by for a monument.

Iohn Fox his  
sword kept as  
a monument  
in Gallipoli.

When they thought good, hauing leave to depart from thence, they sailed along the coast, till they arrived at Tarento, where they sold their gally, and deusted it, euery man hauing a part thereof. The Turkes receiving so shamefull a foile at their hand, pursued the Christians, and scoured the seas, where they could imagine that they had bene their course. And the Christians had departed from thence on the one day in the morning, and seuen gallyes of the Turkes came thither that night, as it was certified by those who followed Fox, and his companie, fearing lest they should haue bene met with. And then they came a foote to Naples, where they departed afterward, euery man taking him to his next way home. From whence Iohn Fox tooke his iourney vnto Rome, where he was well entertained of an Englishman, who presented his worthy deede vnto the Pope, who rewarded him liberally, and gaue him his letters vnto the king of Spaine, where he was very well entertained of him there, who for this his most worthy enterprise, gaue him in fee thent pence a day. From whence being desirous to come into his owne country, he came thither at such time as he came mens pence, which was in the yeere of our Lord God, 1579. Who being come into England, went vnto the Court, and shewed all his trauell vnto the Countess, who considering of the state of this man, in that he had spent and lost a great part of his youth, in chalydome and bondage, extended to him their liberality, to helpe to reuoluate him into an age, to their right honour, and to the encouragement of all true hearted Christians.

The copie of the certificate for Iohn Fox, and his companie, made  
by the Prior, and the brethren of Gallipoli, where they first landed.

WE the Prior, & Fathers of the Couert of the Americians, of the city of Gallipoli, of the order of Preachers do testifie, that vpon 29. of January last past, 1577. there came in

John  
to the f  
fific an  
and one  
haue re  
to the f  
prison:  
the chie  
refuse  
is about  
haue ra

I Fr  
I Fr  
I Fr  
I Fr

BE it  
Fox  
fourteen  
uarie b  
four an  
stians,  
riued fir  
and chie  
Naples.  
Ypon  
nith Co  
stressed  
that tak  
him free  
rizable a  
you will  
Rome, &

T  
R  
/

To  
no  
ferred  
gallye,  
tian ca  
daine d  
ow cor  
him eig  
ner, &

to the said citie a certaine gallie from Alexandria, taken from the Turkes, with two hundred fiftie and eight Christians, whereof was principal, Master Iohn Fox, an English man, a gunner, and one of the chiefest that did accomplish that great worke, whereby so many Christians haue recovered their liberties. In token and remembrance whereof, vpon our earnest request to the same Iohn Fox, he hath left here an olde sword, where with he slewe the keeper of the prison: which sword we doe as a monument and memoriall of so worthie a deede, hang vp in the chiefe place of our Couent house. And for because all things aforesaid, are such as we will testifie to be true, as they are orderly passed, and haue therefore good credite, that so much as is aboue expressed is true, and for the more faith thereof, we the Prior, and Fathers aforesaid, haue ratified and subscribed these presents, Yeuen in Gallipoly, the third of Feb. 1577.

*I Frier Vincint Barba, Prior of the same place confirme the premises, as they are aboue written.*

*I Frier Albert Damaro, of Gallipoly, Subprior, confirme as much.*

*I Frier Anthony Cellere of Gallo, confirme as aforesaid.*

*I Frier Bartlemew of Gallipoly, confirme as aboue said.*

*I Frier Francis of Gallipoly, confirme as much.*

### The Bishop of Rome his letters, in the behalfe of

*Iohn Fox.*

**B**E it knowne vnto all men, to whome this writing shal come, that the bringer hereof Iohn Fox Englishman, a Gunner, after he had serued captiue in the Turkes gallies, by the space of fouretee yeeres, at length, thorow God his helpe, taking good opportunitie, the third of Ianuarie last past, slew the keeper of the prison, (whom he first stroke on the face) together with foure and twentie other Turkes, by the assistance of his fellow prisoners: and with 266 Christians, (of whose libertie he was the author) launched from Alexandria, and from thence, arrived first at Gallipoly in Candie, and afterwards at Tarento in Apulia: the written testimony and credite of which things, as also of others, the same Iohn Fox hath in publike tables from Naples.

Vpon Easter eue, he came to Rome, and is now determined to take his journey to the Spanish Court, hoping there to obtaine some reliefe toward his liuing: wherefore the poore distressed man humbly beseecheth, and we in his behalfe, do in the bowels of Christ, desire you, that taking compassion of his former captiuitie, and present penurie, you doe not onely suffer him freely to passe throughout all your cities and townes, but also succour him with your charitable almes, the reward whereof, you shall hereafter most assuredly receiue, which we hope you will afford to him, whome with tender affection of pitie, wee commend vnto you. At Rome, the xx. of Aprill. 1577.

*Thomas Grolos Englishman, Bishop of Astraphen.*

*Richard Sillescu Prior Anglia.*

*Andreas Ludovicus, Register to our Soueraigne Lord the Pope, which for the greater credite of the premises, haue set my scale to these presents. At Rome, the day and yeere aboue written.*

*Mauricius Clement, the governour and keeper of the English Hospitall in the citie.*

### The King of Spaine his letters to the Lieutenant, for the placing of Iohn Fox in the office of a Gunner, &c.

**T**O the illustrious Prince, Vespasian Gonsaga Colonna, our Lieutenant and Captaine General of our Realme of Valentia, hauing consideration, that Iohn Fox Englishman, hath serued vs, and was one of the most principall, which tooke away from the Turkes a certaine gallie, which they haue brought to Tarento, wherein were two hundred, fiftie and eight Christian captiues. We licencé him to practise, and giue him the office of a Gunner, and haue ordained, that he goe to our said Realme, there to serue in the said office in the Gallies, which by our commandement are lately made. And we doe commaund, that you cause to be paid to him eight duckets pay a month, for the time that he shall serue in the saide Gallies as a Gunner, or till we can otherwise prouide for him, the said eight duckets monethly of the money which

which is already of our prouision, present and to come, and to haue regarde of those which come with him. From Escoriall the tenth of August, 1577.

I the King.

Iuan del Gado.

And vnder that a confirmation of the Council.

Verfes written by A. M. to the curteous Readers, who was present at Rome, when Iohn Fox received his letters of the Pope.

**L**earning at large all fables vainely vsde,  
all trifling toyes that doe no truebe importe:  
Loe here how the ad (as length) though long do-  
vnfoldeth plaine a true and rare report: (sift)  
To glad those minds, who seek their countries rest  
by prefer'd paines & enlarge their happy health.  
At Rome I was, when Fox did there arine:  
therefore I may sufficiently expresse  
What gallant joy his doedes did there remaine  
in the hearts of those which heard his valliantnes.  
And how the Pope did recompence his paines,  
and letter's gave to moue his greater gaines.

But yet I know that many doe mislooke,  
that those his paines are fables and vntrue;  
Not onely I in this will beare him out,  
but diuerso more that did his patients view.  
And vnto those so boldly I dare say: (say)  
that nauight: but truely Iohn Fox doth here be-  
Besides heere: one was slaine with him in thral,  
laity returned into our native land:  
This witness can this matter persell all,  
what needeth more? for witness he may stand.  
And thus I ende, vnfoldeing what I know:  
the other man more larger proofs can show.

Honos alit artes. A. M.

The ambassage of Master Edmund Hogan, one of the sworne Esquires of her Maiesties person, from her Highnes, to Mully Abdelmelech, Emperour of Maroccus, and King of Fez, and Sus: in the yeere 1577. written by himselfe.

¶ 47.



¶ After the  
gan the arri-  
wall at 16 in  
26. Arthur.

Edmund Hogan, being appointed Ambassadour from the Queenes Maie-  
tie, to the aboue named Emperour and King Mully Abdelmelech, departed with  
my companie, and seruants from London, the two and twentieth day of April  
1577, being imbarked in the good shippe, called the Gallion of London, and ar-  
riued in Asafi, a port of Barbarie, the one and twentieth day of Maye, next follow-  
ing. Immediately I sent Leonell Edgerton a squire, with my letters, vnto  
Iohn Williams, and Iohn Bampton, who dispatched a Crocero to Maroccus, to know  
the kings pleasure for my repaire to the Court, which letters came to their hands on the Thurf  
day night.

They with all speede, gaue the King vnderstanding of it, who being glad thereof, speeded the  
next day certaine Capitaines, with souldiers, and tenes, with ocher prouision, to Asafi: to chat by  
on Whitsonday at night, the said Capitaines, with Iohn Bampton, Robert Walshborne, and Ro-  
bert Lyon, and the kings officers, came late to Asafi.

In the meane time, I remained a boord, & caused some of the goods to be discharged for light-  
ning of the shippe, and I wrote in my letters, that I would not leaue, till I haue the Kings  
pleasure.

The 22. day, being Saturday, the Duke speede arrived into the roade about two of the clocke  
in the afternoone.

The 27. day, being Whitsonday, came aboard the Gallion Iohn Bampton, and others, gi-  
uing me to vnderstand, how much the King reioiced of my safe arriuall, comming from the  
Queenes Maieitie, and how that for my safe conuulite to the Court he had sent foure Capitaines,  
and 100. souldiers well appoynted, with a hoyle furnisher, which he used himselfe to ride on, with  
al ocher furniture according to theyr wisher me also to come on land, in þ best order I could, as hel-  
for my selfe, as my men, which I do, hauing to the number of 100. men, wherof three were come  
petter's.

¶ 48

the regarde of those which

The ships being four, appointed themselves in the best order they could, for the best shew, and for all their ordnance, to the value of twenty thousand in powder.

At my coming a horse, I found all the footmen well appointed on horsebacke, the Captaines, and the Governour of the towne standing as neere the water side as they could, with a Jewett of the kings, and received me from the boate, declaring how glad his maiestie was of my safe arrivall, comming from the Queenes maiestie my maistrise, and that he had sent them to attend upon me, bring his pleasure that I should tarry there on horse, five or sixe dayes for my refreshing.

So being mounted upon the Jewett, they conducted mee through the towne into a faire field upon the sea side, where was a tent pitched for me, and all the ground spread with Turkie carpets, and the Cattle discharged a peale of ordnance, and all things necessarie were brought into my tent, where I both took my table, and lodged, and had other convenient tentes for my servants.

The souldiours environed the tentes, and watched about vs day and night as long as I lay there, although I sought my speerdier dispatch.

On the Wednesday towards night, I took my horse and traualled ten miles to the first place of water that we could finde, and there pitched our tentes till the next morning, and so traualled sixteen of the clocke, and then pitched our tentes till 4. and so traualled as long as day light would last, about 26. miles that day.

The next day being Friday, I traualled in like order, but eight and twenty miles at the last, and by a River being about three miles within sight of the Citie of Moroccous wee pitched our tentes.

Immediately after came all our English merchants, and the French on horsebacke to meete me, and before night there came an Alcaide from the king with sixtie men, and divers mules laden with victuall and banker, for my supper, declaring unto me how glad the king shewed himselfe to heare of the Queenes maiestie, and that his pleasure was I should be received into his countrey as never any Christian the like: and desired to knowe what time the next day I would come into his citie, because he would that all the Christians, as also his nobilitie, should meete me, and bailed John Bampton to be with him early in the morning, which he did.

About steern of the clocke being accompanied with the French and English merchants, and a great number of souldiours, I passed towards the Citie, and by that time I had traualled two miles, there met me all the Christians of the Spaniards and Portugals to receive me, which I thought was more by the kings commandement, then of any good will of themselves: for some of them although they speake me faire, hung downe their heads like dogs, and especially the Portugals, and I countenanred them accordingly.

So I passed on till I came within two English miles of the Citie, and then John Bampton returned, shewing mee that the king was so glad of my coming, that hee could not desire to doe too much, to shewe the good will that hee did owe to the Queenes Maiestie, and her Realme.

His counsaillers mette me without the gates, and at the entrie of the gates, his footemen and guard were placed on both sides of my horse, and so brought me to the kings palace.

The king sat in his chaire with his counsaile about him, as well the Moores as the Elchies, and, according to his order given unto mee before, I there declared my message in Spanish, and made delivrie of the Queenes Maiesties letters, and all that I spake at that present in Spanish, hee caused one of his Elchies to declare the same to the Moores present in the Larbe tongue.

Which done, he answered me agayne in Spanish, praising to the Queenes Maiestie great thanks, and offering himselfe and his countrey to bee at her Graces commandement, and then committed certayne of his Counsaillers to conduct mee to my lodging, not being farre from the Court.

The house was faire after the fashion of that countrey, being daily well furnished with all kind of victuall at the kings charge.

The same night hee sent for mee to the Court, and I had conference with him about the space of two houers, where I thoughtly declared the charge committed unto mee from her Maiestie, finding him conformable, willing to pleasure, and not to vexe her Maiestie with any demerits, more then conveniently hee might willingly consent unto, hee knowing that out of his countrey, the Realme of England might be better served with lackes, then hee in confinement from be.

In Barbary they have no Junes, but they labour to open harbours where they can find water.

The singular humilitie of the king to our Ambassadors.

The Spaniards and Portugals were commoved by the king in paine of death, to meete the English Ambassadors.

formation of the Council, ers, who was pre- the Pope.

any doe misdeeds, all bears him out, has did his patents view, why I dare say: (my- meth John Fox doth here be- stance with him in shew, our native Land: master perfect all, I for virtues be may stand, holding what I know: no larger proofs can shewe.

ates. A. M.

ne of the sworne to Mully Abdelme- yeere 1577. written by

om the Queenes Maistie, delmelech, departed with and twentieth day of April, Gallion of London, and on day of Pope, next following, with my letters, directed to Maroccus, to knowe their bands on the Turk

g glad there of, shewed the sion, to Asafi: for that by bert Washborne, and Ro-

to be discharged for light till I knewe the Kings

and about two of the clocke Bampton, and others, g- uall, comming from the had sent foure Captaines, d himselfe to ride on, with best order I could, as hee, whereof there were three

Ch

The king of Spain sought to disgrace the Quenes and her Ambassador.

Further he gave mee to understand, that the king of Spaine had sent unto him for a licence, that an Ambassadour of his might come into his country, and had made great meanes that the Quenes Maieitie of England sent any unto him, that he would not give any credit or entertainment, albeit (sayd he) I knowe what the king of Spaine is, and what the Quenes of England and her Realme is: for I neither like of him nor of his religion, being so governed by the Inquisition, that he can doe nothing of himselfe.

Therefore when he cometh vpon the licence which I haue granted, he shall well see how he shall come to my presence as you haue done, and shall daily: for I minde to accept of you, as my companion, and one of my house, whereas he shall attend thence dayes after hee hath done his message.

After the end of this speech, I deliuered Sir Thomas Greshams letters, when as hee took me by the hand, and led me to wane a long court, to a palace, where there ranne a faire fontaine of water, and there sitting himselfe in a chaire, he commanded me to sit downe in another, and there called for such simple Gallians as he had.

The king of Spaine sent into England for Gallians.

Then I presented him with a great bale of Luce, which he most thankfully accepted, and then he was desirous to heare of the Gallians, and I tolde him that there was great care had to provide them, and that I did not doubt, but vpon my returne they should come with the first ship. He is willing to giue them good entertainment with provision of victuall, and to liue according to their law and conscienc: wherein he veyeth none to the contrary.

I find him to be one that liueth greatly in the feare of God, being well exercised in the Scriptures, as well in the olde Testament, as also in the New, and he beareth a greater affection to our Nation then to others, because of our religion, which for sundry workes of holles, and the Moores called him the Christian king.

A rich gift bestowed vpon our Ambassadour.

The same night being the first of Iune, I continued with him till twelue of the clocke, and he seemed to haue so good liking of me, he tooke from his girdle, a Hoop dagger being set with 200. Stones, rubies, and turkies, and did bestow it vpon me, and so I being conducted, returned to my lodging for that time.

The next day because he knew it to be Sunday and our Sabbath day he did let me rest. On the Monday in the afternoon he sent for me, and I had conference with him againe, & Gresham. Likewise on the Tuesday by three of the clocke he sent for me into his garden, finding him layd vpon a silke bed, complaining of a sore leg: per after long conference hee walked into an other Orchard, where as hauing a faire banketting house, and a great water, and a new galle in it, he went aboord the galle, and tooke me with him, and passed the space of two or thre bowlers, he toying the great experience he had in Gallies, wherein (as he sayd) he had exercised himselfe eigheteen yeeres in his youth.

After supper he shewed me his hoyses and other commodities that he had about his house, and since that night I haue not seene him, so that he hath kepte in with his sore legge, but he hath sent to me daily.

Iune.

The 13. of Iune at five of the clocke at night, I had againe audience with the king, and I continued with him till midnight, hauing debated as well for the Quenes commission, as for the well dealing with her merchants for their traffique here in these partes, saying, he would do much more for the Quenes maieitie and the Realme, offering that all English ships with her subjects may with good securitie enter into his portes and dominions, as well in trade of merchaundise, as for victuall & water, as also in time of warre with any her enemies, to bring in prizes, and to make sales as occasion should serue, or els to depart againe with them at their pleasure.

The offers of the king to our English merchants.

Like wise for all English shippes that shall passe along his coast of Barbarie, and choise to the Desertes into the Leuane seas, that he would graunt safe conduct that the said shippes and merchants with their goods, might passe into the Leuane seas, and so to the Turkes dominions, and the king of Argiers, as his owne, and that he would write to the Turke, and to the king of Argier his letters for the well vsing of our shippes and goods.

Also that hereafter no Englishmen, that by any meanes may be taken captiues, shall bee sold within any of his dominions: whereupon I declared that the Quenes maieitie accepting of this his offers, was pleased to confirme the intercourse, and trade of our merchants within this his country, as also to pleasure him with such commodities as he should haue need of, so farre as the necessities and wants of his country in trade of merchaundise, so as he required nothing contrary to his honour and law, and the breach of league with the christian princes her neighbours.

A good promise.

The

first unto him for a license, made great means that he should give my credit in inter-  
change the Queene of Cyprus  
being so governed by the In-

ed, he shall well see how it  
prooll you for the Queenes

ly: for I minde to accept of  
the next dayes after her last

orders, when as hee took me  
to a faire fontaine of water  
in another, and there called

me humblyly accepted, and then  
was great care had to pro-  
ceede with the first ship, he  
it, and to live according to

will exercised in the Scrip-  
tured a greater affection to one  
of the other, and the Moores

twelve of the clocke, and he  
bagger being set with 200,  
conducted, returned to my

ay he did let me rest. But on  
with him againe, as usualle,  
his garden, finding him lay  
downe in another ship

to a new galley in it, he went  
to these bowers, he being the  
first himselfe eighteenth years

he had about his house, and  
his fore leggs, but he had the

me with the king, and I com-  
mission, as for the well  
being, he would do much more  
ships with her subjects may  
made of merchandises, as for  
in prison, and to make take  
sure.

Barbarie, and the joy in the  
the said ships and merchants  
of dominions, and the king of  
king of Argier his letters for

when captives, shall see the  
his matricke accepting of their  
rebanes within this his rob-  
bers of, to furnish the neces-  
sities nothing contrary to the  
weighty.

Tr

The same night I presented the king with the case of combes, and desired his matricke to have  
speciall regard that the ships might be laden backe againe, for that I found the case of Shal peter  
in readinesse in John Bampton's hands: He answered me that I should haue all the assistance  
therein that he could, but that in Sus he thought to haue some stoyes in his house there, as also that the  
Mountayners had made much in a readinesse: I requested that he would send to him, which he pro-  
mised to doe.

The eighteenth day I was with him againe, and so continued there till night, and he showed  
me his house with passing in trucking with water Spaniels, and baiting buls with his English  
dogges.

At this time I moued him againe for the sending downe to Sus, which he graunted to doe, and  
the 24. day there departed Alcaide Mammie, with Lionell Edgerton, and Rowland Guy to Sus,  
and carried with them for our accompts and his company, the kings letters to his brother Muly  
Hammer, and Alcaide Shauan, and the Clericoy.

The 23. day the king sent me out of Morocco to his garden called Shersbonare, with his gard,  
and Alcaide Mamoure, and the 24. at night I came to the court to see a Spanish dance, and a play  
of his Elchies. He promised me audience the next day being Tuesday, but he put it off till Thurs-  
day: and the Thursday at night I was sent for to the king after supper, and then he sent Alcaide  
Rodwan, and Alcaide Gowry to conferre with me, but after a litle talke I desired to be brought  
to the king for my dispatch. And being brought to him, I presented two bills of John Bampton  
which he had in the for provision of Shal peter, also two bills for the quiet traffique of our English  
merchants, and bills for sugars to be made by the Jewes, as well for the debts paid, as hereafter,  
and for good order in the Ingenios. Also I moued him againe for the Shal peter, and other dispat-  
ches, which he referred to be agreed vpon by the two Alcaides. But the Friday being the 20. the  
Alcaides could not internd it, and vpon Saturday Alcaide Rodwan fell sick, so on Sunday we  
made meanes to the king, and that afternoon I was sent for to conferre vpon the bargaine, with  
the Alcaides and others, but did not agree.

Upon Tuesday I wrote a letter to the king for my dispatch, and the same afternoon I  
was called againe to the court, and referred all things to the king, accepting his offer of Shal-  
peter.

That night againe the king had me into his galley, and the Spaniels did hunt the ducke.  
The Thursday I was appointed to way the 200. kintals grosse of Shal peter, and that after-  
noone the Tabye came vnto me to my lodging, shewing me that the king was offended with John  
Bampton for diuers causes.

The Sunday night last, being the 7. of July, I got the king to forgive all to John Bampton, July,  
and the king promised me to speake againe with me vpon Monday.

Upon Tuesday I wrote to him againe for my dispatch, and then he sent Fray Lewes to me, and  
said that he had order to write.

Upon Wednesday I wrote againe, and hee sent mee word that vpon Thursday I should  
come and be dispatched, so that I should depart vpon Friday without faile, being the twelfth  
of July.

So the Friday after according to the kings order and appointment, I went to court, and where-  
as motion and petition was made for the confirmation of the demands which I had preferred, they  
were all graunted, and likewise the priuiledges which were on the behalfe of our English mer-  
chants requested, were with great fauour and readinesse peesed vnto. And whereas the Jewes  
there resident, were to our men in certaine round summes indebted, the Emperors pleasure and  
commandement was, that they should without further excuse or delay, pay and discharge the  
same. And thus at length I was dismissed with great honor and speciall countenance, such as hath  
not ordinarily bene the use to other Ambassadors of the Christians.

And touching the private affaires intrated vpon betwixt her Matricke and the Empero, I had  
letters from him to satisfie her highnesse therein. So to conclude, hauing receiued the like honou-  
rable countenance from his court, as I had for my repaire at my first landing, I embarked my selfe  
with my Ioyseys company, and arriuing not long after in England, I repaired to her matrickes  
Court, and ended my Ambassage to her highnesse good liking, with relation of my seruice per-  
formed,

A Letter written from Goa, the principall Citie of all the East Indies, by one Thomas Steuens an Englishman, and sent to his father, M. Thomas Steuens, An. 1579.



After most humble commendations: These shall be to crave your daily blessing, with like commendations unto my mother, and with all, so certifie you of my being, according to your will and my dutie. I wrote unto you taking my journey from Zambie to Doytingall, which letters I thinke are come to your handes, so that presuming thereupon, I thinke I have the lesse need at this time to tell you the cause of my departing, which uncerteinly in one word I may conclude, if I doe but name, obedience. I came to Lisbon to ward the ende of March, eight dayes before the departure of the ships, so late that if the y had not bene stayed about some weightie matters, they had bene long gone before our comming: in so much that there were others ordained to goe in our places, that the kings psonall our and ours also might not be in bayne. Neuertheless, our sudden comming tooke place, and the 4. of Aprill, five shippes departed for Goa, where in besides shipmen and souldiours, there were a great number of children which in the seas beare out better then men, and two mariell, when that many women also passe very well. The setting forth from the porte, I neede not to tell how welcome it is with trumpets, and shooting of ordinaunce, you may easly imagine it, considering that they goe in the maner of warre. The tenth of the foylsayd moneth, we came to the sight of Ponta Sancto netre unto Madera, where an English ship ste upon ours, (which was then also alone) with a few shots, which did no harme, but after that our ships had laied out her greatest ordinaunce, they straight departed as they came. The English ship was very faire and great, which I was sorry to see so ill occupied, for she went raving about, so that wee save her againe at the Canarian Isles, unto the which we came the 13. of the said moneth, and good saifure wee had to wonder at the high mountaine of the Island Tenerif, for wee wandered betwene that and great Canaria foure dayes by reason of contrary windes: and besides, such cruell weather wee had untill the 14. of May, that they departed to compass the Cape of Good Hope that yeere. Neuertheless, taking our voiage betwene Guinea, and the Islands of Capo Verde, without seeing of any land at all, we arrived at length unto the coast of Guine, which the Doytingalls so call, chiefly that part of the burning Zone, which is from the 6. degree unto the Equinoctiall, in which partes they suffered so many inconveniencies of heates, and lacke of windes, that they thinke themselves happy when they have passed it: for sometimes the ship standeth there almost by the space of many dayes, sometime to be most horrible tempests, we found most quiet calmes which was very troublesome to those ships which be the greatest of all other, and cannot goe without good windes. In so much, that when it is tempest almost intollecable to other ships, and maketh them maine all their sailes, these hope by and sake excellant well, unless the waters be too too furious, which seldom happened in our navigation. You shall understand, that being passed the line, they cannot straight way goe the way to the promontorie: but according to the wind, they draw a litle as neerer South as they can to put themselves in the latitude of the point, which is 35. degrees and an halfe, and then they take their course towards the East, and so compass the point. But the wind served us so, that at 30. degrees we did direct our course toward the point of promontorie of Good Hope.

You know that it is hard to saile from East to West, contrary, because there is no fixed point in all the side, whereby they may direct their course, wherefore I shall tell you what helpe God promised for these men. There is not a fowle that appeareth, or signe in the aere, or in the sea, which they have not wisiten, which have made the voyages heretofore. Wherefore, partly by their own experience, & pondering what what space the ship is able to make with such a wind, & such direction,

and partly by the experience of others, they know that the wind which is called the West wind, is the best to saile with, and that the wind which is called the East wind, is the worst to saile with. And therefore the ships which are bound to the East Indies, take their course towards the West Indies, and so come to the East Indies. And the ships which are bound to the West Indies, take their course towards the East Indies, and so come to the West Indies. And the ships which are bound to the North Indies, take their course towards the South Indies, and so come to the North Indies. And the ships which are bound to the South Indies, take their course towards the North Indies, and so come to the South Indies. And the ships which are bound to the East Indies, take their course towards the West Indies, and so come to the East Indies. And the ships which are bound to the West Indies, take their course towards the East Indies, and so come to the West Indies. And the ships which are bound to the North Indies, take their course towards the South Indies, and so come to the North Indies. And the ships which are bound to the South Indies, take their course towards the North Indies, and so come to the South Indies.



all the East  
his father,

daily blessing,  
of my being,  
turney from 3.  
so that y<sup>e</sup> w<sup>o</sup>ld  
u the cause of  
obedience. 3  
e ships, so late  
come before our  
kings p<sup>ro</sup>u<sup>l</sup>  
place, and the  
there were a  
ell, when that  
o sell how so  
ndering the  
ght of Porto  
en also alone)  
e ell obedient,  
hich I was so  
the Canarian  
o wonder at  
reat Canaria  
till the 14. of  
elett, taking  
p land at all,  
that part of the  
ey suffered so  
pp when they  
pes, sometime  
A part of this  
n whole some,  
which is ha-  
a thing swim-  
colour much  
e and biggish,  
his thing is so  
ay, from the 6.  
winds, partly  
ing our course  
e side, we found  
wayes w<sup>o</sup>uld  
come to choke  
ch, hot when  
s, these hope  
ned in our na-  
y goe the next  
h as the year  
hen they take  
that at 30. de

no fixed point  
pes God  
he sea, which  
their own ex-  
suey direction,  
and

and partly by the experience of others, whose booke and nauigations they haue, they geue v<sup>e</sup> here-  
shows they be, touching degrees of longitude, so of latitude they be alwayes sure: but the greatest  
and best in busines of all, is to marke the variation of the needle of compass, which in the Meridian  
of the Island of S. Michael, which is one of the Azores in the latitude of 41. if borne is iust 7. North,  
and thence th<sup>o</sup>wardes the East so much, that betwixt the Meridian aforesaid, and the point  
of Africa is carterly 3. of 4. quarters of 32. And againe in y<sup>e</sup> point of Affrike, a litle beyond the point  
that is called Cape das Agulias (in English the needles) it returneth againe vnto the North, and  
that place passed it th<sup>o</sup>wardes againe toward the West, as it did before proportionally. As touching  
our first signes, the manner we came to the people of Affrike, the more strange kindes of Fowles ap-  
peared, insomuch that when we came within no lesse then 30. leagues (almost an 100. miles) and  
600. miles as we thought from any Island, as good as 3000. fowles of sundry kindes folowed our  
ship: some of them so great that their wings being opened from one point to the other, contained 7.  
spans, as the mariners said. A maruelous thing to see how God prouided, so y<sup>e</sup> in so wide a sea these  
fowles are all fat, & nothing wanteth them. The Waxingals haue vnto the all according to some  
propertie which they haue: some they cal Ruskialles, because their tail is be not proportionable to  
their bodies, but long & smal like a rusk, some forked tailed because they be very broad and forked,  
some deluet Steuens, because they haue wings of the colour of velvet, & boweth them as a man bow-  
eth his elbow. This bird is alwayes welcome, so he appeareth next the Cape. I should neuer  
make an end if I should tell all particulars: but it shal suffice briefly to touch a few, which yet shal be  
sufficient, if you marke them to giue occasion to glorifie almightie God in his wonderful works, and  
such variety in his creatures. And to speake somewhat of fishes in all places of calme, especially in  
the bayning Zone, there is y<sup>e</sup> line (so) without we neuer saw any) they waited on our ship fishes as long  
as a man, which they cal Tuberones, they come to eate such things as from the ship fall into the sea,  
not refusing men themselves if they lye vpon them. And if they find any meat tied in the sea, they  
take it for theirs. These haue waiting on them 6. or 7. small fishes (which neuer depart) with garbes  
blew and greene round about their bodies, like comely serving men: and they go two or thre before  
him, and some on euery side. Spoutour, they haue other fishes which cleaue alwayes vnto their bo-  
dy, and seme to take such superfluities as grow about them, and they are said to enter into their bo-  
dies also to purge them if they neede. The mariners in time past haue eate of them, but since they  
haue seme them eate men, their stomacks abhoire them. Fewer theleste, they draw the up with gr<sup>o</sup>at  
hookes, and kill of them as many as they can, thinking that they haue made a great reuenge. There  
is another kind of fish as big almost as a herring, which hath wings and fierch, and they are together  
in great number. These haue two enemies, the one in the sea, the other in the air. In the sea the fish  
which is called Albocore, as big as a Salmon foloweth them with great swiftnesse to take them.  
This poore fish not being able to swim fast, so he hath no finnes, but swimmeth with moouing of  
his talle, flouting his wings, lieth himselfe about the water, and fierch not very high: The Albo-  
core seeing that, although he haue no wings, yet glieth he a great leape out of the water, and some-  
times catcheth him, so he keepeth himselfe vnder the water going that way on as fast as he fierch.  
And when the fish being wearie of the air, or thinking himselfe out of danger, returneth into the wa-  
ter, the Albocore meeteth with him: but sometime his other enemy the sea Crow, catcheth him be-  
fore he falleth. With these and like fishes, but alwayes making our supplications to God for good  
weather and saluation of the ship, we came at length vnto the point, so famous and feared of all men.  
but we found there no tempe<sup>st</sup>, on y<sup>e</sup> great waues, where our Pilot was a litle ouerset: so wher-  
as commonly all other shoues come within sight of land, but seeing signs ordinarie, and finding bot-  
tome, go their way sure and safe, he thinking himselfe to haue wind at will, th<sup>o</sup> so nigh the land,  
that the wind turning into the South, and the waues being exceeding great, rolled vs so neere the  
land, that the ship stood in lesse then 14. fadoms of water, no more then six miles from the Cape,  
which is called Las Agulias, and there we stode as w<sup>o</sup>ldly call away: for vnder vs were rockes of  
maine stone so sharp, and cutting, that no anker could hold the ship, the th<sup>o</sup>se so euill that nothing  
could take land, and the land is full of Tigers, and people that are sauage, and killers of all  
strangers, that we had no hope of life nor comfort, but ouely in God and a good conscience. Not-  
withstanding, after we had lost ankers, holling by the cables for to get the ship a coast in some safe  
place, or when it should please God, he pleased his mercie suddenly, where no man looked for helpe,  
so all our cables with vnto from the land, and so we escaped thanks be to God. And the day folow-  
ing, being in the place where they are alwayes woont to catch fish, we also fell a fishing, and so ma-  
ny they took that they serued all the ship for that day, and part of the next. And one of them pulled  
by a currall of great biggish and price. For there they say (as we sawe by experience) that the cur-  
ralls be grow in the manner of stalkes vpon the rockes in the bottoome, and waue hard and red. The

The variation  
of the compa-  
ss.

Signes about  
the Cape of Bo-  
na Speranca.

Fishes on the  
sea coast of  
Africa.

Not.

Contin.

Two waues  
beyond the  
Cape of Good  
Hope.

day of perill was the 29. of July. And you shall understand that the Cape passed, there bee two waues to India: one within the Isle of S. Laurence, which they take willingly, because they refresh themselves at Molambique a fortnight or a month, not without great need, and thence in a month more, land in Goa. The other is without the Isle S. Laurence, which they take when they see too late, and come so late to the point, that they haue no time to take the foresayd Molambique, and then they goe brauely, because in this way they take no port. And by reason of the long nauigation, and want of food and water, they fall into sundry diseases, their gummes were great and swell, and they are faine to cut them a way, their legs swell, and all the body becommeth sore, and so benumbed, that they cannot stirre hand nor foote, and so they die for weakness, others fall into fluxes and agues, and die thereby. And this way it was our chance to make: yet though we had more then one hundred and fiftie sick, there died not past 27, which losse they esteemed not much in respect of other times. Though some of ours were diseased in this sort, yet thanks be to God, I had my health all the way, contrary to the expectation of many: God send me my health in well in the land, if it may be, to his honour and seruice. This way is full of pyrite rocks and quick sandes, so that sometimes we durst not saile by night, but by the providence of God we saw nothing, nor neuer found botome until we came to the coast of India. When we had passed againe the line, and were come to the third degree, or somewhat more, we sawe crabs swimming on the water that were red as though they had bene sodden, but this was no signe of land. After, about the 11. degree, the space of many dayes, more then ten thousand fishes by estimation followed round about our ship, whereof we caught so many, that for fiftene dayes we did eate nothing els, and they serued our curie very well: for at this time we had neither meate nor almost any thing els to eate, our nauigation growing so long that it bye we nere to fteuen monthes, where as commonly they goe it in fteue, I meane when they saile the timer way. But these fishes were not signe of land, but rather of deepe sea. At length we tooke a couple of birdes, which were a kind of Hawks, whereof they toied much, thinking that they had bene of India, but in deede they were of Arabia, as wee found afterward. And we that thought we had bene nere India, were in the same latitude nere Zocotera, an Isle in the mouth of the red sea. But there God sent vs great winds from the North east or Northnortheast, whereupon unwillingly they bare vp toward the East, and thus we went ten dayes without seeing signe of land, whereby they perceived their error: for they had directed their course before, alwayes Northeast, couecting to multiple degrees of latitude, but partly the difference of the Needle, and most of all the running seas, which at that time ran Northwell, had drawn vs to this other danger, had not God sent vs this wind, which at length waues larger, and restored vs to our right course. These running seas be so perillous that they deceiue the most part of the gouernours, and some be so litle curious, contenting themselves with ordinarie experience, that they care not to seke out any meane to know when they swaue, neither by the compass, nor by any other triall. The first signe of land, were certaine sowles which they knew to be of India: the second, boughes of palmes & sedges: the third, snakes swimming on the water, and a substance which they call by the name of a coine of mony, as byoad, and as round as a groat, wonder fully printed and stamped of nature, like vnto some coine. And these two last signes be so certaine, that the next day after, if the wind serue, they see land, which we did to our great ioy, when all our water (so you know they make no beere in those partes) and victuals began to faile vs. And so Goa we came the 24. of October, there being receiued with passing great charitie. The people be tawny, but not disfigured in their lippes and noses, as the Moores and Cafres of Ethiopia. They that be not of reputation, or at least the most part, goe naked, laying an apyon of a spanne long, and as much in bredth before them, and a lace two fingers broad before them, girded about with a string and no more: and thus they thinke themselves as well as we with all our trimming. Of the fruits and trees that be here, I cannot now speake, for I should make another letter as long as this. For hitherto I haue not seene tree here, whose like I haue seene in Europe, the vine excepted, which neuertheless here is to us purpose, so that all the wines are brought out of Portugall. The drink of this countrey is good water, or wine of the Palme tree, or of a fruite called Cocos. And this shall suffice for this time. If God send me my health, I shall haue opportunitye to write to you once againe. Nowe the length of my letter compelleth me to take my leaue, and thus I wish your most prosperous health. From Goa the 10. of Nouember. 1570

They com-  
monly saile  
from Lisbonne  
to Goa in fteue  
monthes.

Running seas  
very danger-  
ous.

Certaine signes  
of land.

They arrivd  
at Goa the 24.  
of October.

Your louing Sonne

Thomas Steuens.

The

pe passed, there bee  
 illingly, because they  
 as need, and therefore in a  
 which they take when they  
 the foresayd Molam  
 and by reason of the long  
 ric gummess were great  
 the body becommeth sup  
 y weakness, others fall  
 to make: yet though we  
 losse they esteemed not  
 is lost, yet thanks be to  
 God send me my health  
 of pinnie rocks and quick  
 of God we saw nothing,  
 and passed againe the line,  
 running on the water the  
 After, about the 11, we  
 followed round about  
 nothing els, and they  
 off any thing els to ear,  
 here as commonly they  
 are not signe of land, but  
 and of Palukes, wherof  
 wert of Arabia, as were  
 the same latitude were  
 winds from the North  
 East, and thus we went  
 our: for they had directed  
 latitude, but partly the  
 me ran North west, but  
 length wayed larger, and  
 they decreue the most part  
 of y<sup>e</sup> ordinary experience,  
 neither by the compass,  
 which they knew to be of  
 ming on the water, and a  
 sound as a groar, wonder  
 all signes be so certain,  
 at great joy, when all our  
 can so sayle vs. And so  
 charitie. The people be  
 afres of Ethiopia. They  
 of a spaine long, and as  
 ved about with a string  
 trimming. Of the fruites  
 eer as long as this. For  
 the vine excepted, which  
 Boytingall. The wine  
 led Coroe. And thus shall  
 to write to you care  
 thus I with your most

ing Sonne  
 Thomas Steuens.

The

The letters sent from the Imperiall Musfulmanlike highnesse  
 of Zuldán Murad Chan, to the sacred regall Maieſtie of Elizabeth  
 Queene of England, the fiftenth of March 1579, concerning the grant of the  
 first priuileges.



H greatness and glorie most renowned Elizabeth, most sacred Queene, and  
 noble prince of the most mightie worshippers of Iesus, most wise gouernor of the  
 causes and affaires of the people and familie of Nazareth, cloud of most pleasaunt  
 raine, and sweetest fountaine of noblenesse and vertue, labie and haire of the  
 perpetual happynesse and glorie of the noble Realme of England, (whom all  
 eyes serke vnto and submit themselues) we with most prosperous successe and  
 happie ends to all your actions, and doe offer vnto you such pleasures and curtisies as are wooy-  
 chp of our mutual and eternall familiaritie: thus ending (as best be seemeth vs) our former salu-  
 tations.

In most friendly maner we giue you to vnderstand, that a certeine man hath come vnto vs in  
 the name of your most excellent Regall Maieſtie, commending vnto vs from you all kindeſſe,  
 curtesie and friendly offices on your part, and did humbly require that our Imperiall highnesse  
 would vouchsafe to giue leaue and libertie to him and vnto two other merchants of your king-  
 dome to reſort hither and returne againe, and that by way of traffike they might be ſuffered to trade  
 hither with their goods and merchandizes to our Imperiall dominions, and in like ſort to make  
 their returne.

These two  
 were Sir Tho-  
 ward Bohone  
 and maister  
 Rich. Wapler.

Our ſtately Court and Countrey hath bene euer open for the acceſſe both of our enemies and  
 friends. But because we are informed that your most excellent Regall Maieſtie doth abound with  
 good will, humanitie, & all kinde of louing affection towards vs, ſo much the rather shall the ſame  
 our Countrey be alwayes open to ſuch of your ſubiectes, as by way of merchandize shall trade hi-  
 ther: and we will neuer faile to aid and ſuccor any of them that are or shall be willing to eſteeme of  
 our friendſhip, ſauoz, and aſſiſtance: but will reckon it ſome part of our dutie to grauntie them by all  
 good meanes. And ſo farre as our Imperiall highnesse is giuen to vnderſtand that your most  
 excellent Regall Maieſtie doth excell in bounty and curteſie, we therefore haue ſent out our Imp-  
 eriall commandement to all our kings, iudges, and trauellers by ſea, to all our Captaines and vo-  
 luntarie ſeaſaring men, all condemned perſons, and officers of Ioyes and cuſtomes, ſtraightely  
 charging and commanding them, that ſuch foresaid perſons as shall reſort hither by ſea from the  
 Realme of England, either with great or ſmall veſſels to trade by way of merchandize, may law-  
 fully come to our Imperiall dominions, and ſceely returne home againe, and that no man shall  
 dare to moleſt or trouble them. And if in like ſort they ſhall come into our deminions by land, ei-  
 ther on foot or on horſebacke, no man shall at any time withſtand or hinder them: but as our fa-  
 miliar and confederates, the French, Venetians, Polonians, and the King of Germanie, with  
 diuers other our neighbours about vs, haue libertie to come hither, and to returne againe into their  
 ſome countreies, in like ſort the merchants of your most excellent Regall Maieſties kingdome,  
 ſhall haue ſafe conduct and leaue to repaire hither to our Imperiall dominions, and ſo to recurrence a-  
 gaine into their owne Countrey: ſtraightely charging that they be ſuffered to life and trade all kinde  
 of merchandize as any other Chriſtians do, without let or diſturbance of any.

We call the  
 Germane em-  
 peror; but King  
 of Germanie.

Therefore when theſe our Imperiall letters shall be brought to your most excellent Regal  
 Maieſtie, it shall be meet, according to our beneuolence, humanitie and familiaritie towards your  
 most excellent Maieſtie, that you likewise be thinke your ſelfe of your like beneuolence, humanitie  
 and friendſhippe towards vs, to open the gate thereof vnto vs, and to nourish by all good meanes  
 this kindneſſe and friendſhip: and that like libertie may be granted by your highnesse to our ſub-  
 iectes and merchants to come with their merchandizes to your dominions, either by ſea with their  
 ſhips, or by land with their wagons or horſes, and to returne home againe: and that your most ex-  
 cellent Regall Maieſtie do alwayes declare your humanitie, good will, and friendſhip towards vs,  
 and of wayes keepe open the doore thereof vnto vs.

The Turke do-  
 mandeth like  
 priuileges for  
 his ſubiectes in  
 the Rumen  
 dominions.

Given at our citie of Conſtantiopole the fifteneſh day of March, and in the ſeete of our most ho-  
 ly prophete Mahomet 937.

It ſhall be the  
 yeere 1579.

The

*The answer of her Maiestie to the aforesaid Letters of the Great Turke, sent the 25 of October 1579., in the Prudence of London by Maister Richard Stanley.*



**L**IZABETHA Dei ter maximi, & vnici cœli, terrarq; Conditoris gratia, Angliæ, Franciæ & Hiberniæ regina, fidei Christianæ contra omnes omnium inter Christianos degentium, & Christi nomen falso profrentium Idololatrias inuictissima & potentissima Defensatrix, augustissimo, inuictissimoq; principi Sultan Murad Chan, Turcici regni dominatori potentissimo, Imperijq; orientis Monarchæ supra omnes soli & supremo, salutem, & multos cum rerum optimarū affluentia felices, & fortunatos annos. Augustissimo & inuictissimo accepimus inuictissimæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudinis literas, die decimo quinto Martij currentis anni ad nos scriptas Constantinopoli, ex quibus intelligimus quā benignè quāq; clementer, literæ supplices quæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudini, a quodam subdito nostro Guiljelmo Harebrowno in Imperiali Celsitudinis vestræ ciuitate Constantinopoli commorante offerbantur, literæ profectionis pro se & socijs eius duobus hominibus mercatoribus subditis nostris cum mercibus suis ad terras ditioneq; Imperio vestro subiectas tam per mare quā per terras, indeq; reuersionis veniæ potestatisq; humillimam complexæ petitionem; ab inuictissima vestra Cæsareæ celsitudine, acceptæ fuerunt. Neq; id solum, sed quā mira cum facilitate, dignaq; augustissima Cæsareæ clementia, quod erat in dictis literis supplicibus positum, ci socijsq; suis donatum & concessum fuit, pro ea, vt videtur, solum opinione, quā de nobis, & nostra amicitia vestra celsitudo concepit. Quod singulare beneficium in dictos subditos nostros collatum tam gratè tamq; beneuolè accepimus (maximas celsitudini vestræ propterea & agentes, & habentes gratias) nullo vt vnquam patiemur tempore, pro facultatum nostrarum ratione, proq; ea quā nobis inscruiter maximus mundi monarcha Deus (per quem & cuius auspicijs regnamus) naturæ bonitate, qua remotissimas nos esse voluit, & abhorrentes ab ingratitude omni vel minima suspitione, docuitq; nullorum vnquam vt principum, vllis in nos meritis nos sineremus vinci, aut superari, vt apud ingratam principem tantum beneficium deposuisse, se vestra Celsitudo existimet. Proptereaq; animum nostrum in presentiarum, vestræ celsitudini inuictissimæ, benè sentiendo & prædicando, quantopere nos obliuiscas beneficii huius in subditos nostros collati putemus memoriā sempiternā: longè vberiorē, & ampliotem gratitudinis erga vestram celsitudinem nostræ refectionem daturæ, cum tempora incidēt vt possimus, & à nobis desiderabitur. Quoniam autem quæ nostris paucis subditis, eaq; suis ipsorum precibus, sine vlla intercessione nostra concessa donatio est, in æquè libera potestate sita est ad omnes terras ditioneq; Imperio vestro subiectas, cum mercibus suis tam per mare quā per terras, eundi & redeund; atq; inuictissimæ Cæsareæ vestræ celsitudinis consideratis, Gallis, Polonis, Venetis, atq; adeo regis Romanorum subditis largita vnquam aut donata fuit, celsitudinem vestram rogamus ne tam singularis beneficiæ laus in tam angustis terminis duorum aut trium hominum concludatur, sed ad vniuersos subditos nostros diffusa, propagatāque, celsitudinis vestræ beneficium eò reddat augustius, quò eiuſdem donario latius patebit, & ad plures pertinebit. Cuius tam singularis in nos beneficii meritum, eò erit celsitudini vestræ minus pœnitendum, quò sunt merces illæ, quibus regna nostra abundant, & aliorum principū ditiones egent, tam humanis vsibus commode tamq; necessariæ, nulla gens vt sit, quæ eis carere queat, proptereaq; longissimis, difficillimisq; itineribus conquisitis non vehementer gaudeat. Carius autem distrahunt alijs, quo ex labore suo quisq; victū & quæstū quarit, adeo vt in earū acquisitione vtilitas, in emptione autē ab alijs onus sit. Vtilitas celsitudinis vestræ subditis augebitur liberā hac paucorum nostrorum hominum ad terras vestras profectione: onus minuetur, profectionis quoumqueq; subditorum nostrorum donatione. Accedet præterea quæ à nobis in celsitudinis vestræ subditos prouincietur, par, æquaq; meriti exercendarum libertas, quoties & quando voluerint, ad regna dominiaq; nostra mercaturæ gratia accedere. Quā celsitudinis vestræ pollicemur, tam amplam lateq; patentem fore, quā est vlla à confederatorum vestrorum vllis principibus antedictis, regibus videlicet, Romanorum, Gallorum, Pollonorum, ac republica Veneta, celsitudinis vestræ subditis vilo vnquam tempore concessa & donata. Quia in re si honestæ petitioni nostræ inuictissima Cæsareæ vestra celsitudo dignabitur auscultare, facietq; vt acceptis nostris literis intelligamus gratum nē habitura sit quod ab ea contendimus & rogamus, ea proposita præstitaq; securitate, quæ subditos nostros quoscunq; ad dominia sua, terra, mariq; proficiscentes, indeq; reuertētes tutos & securos reddat ab omni quorumcunq; subditorum suorum iniuria, efficiemus, vt quæ

Deus

Deus opt. max. in regna  
um vt principum animo  
bis cum contrahendam,  
quibus carere nequeunt  
alluenter tamq; cum  
succurratur. Facit præter  
mā beneuolentiæ signifi  
rum, qui captiui ericemi  
in celsitudinem vestram  
gentium se gerendo in  
bertate donati, nobis pr  
stræ Celsitudinis in nos h  
omnes est acerrimus ido  
fos Deos Zelotes, præca  
tate eorum donorum t  
Datæ à Regia nostra C  
fis Octobris, Anno Iesu

**E**Lizabeth by the grace  
of England, France and  
Christian faith against all  
opposeth the name of Turke  
Chan, the most mightie  
Sponerch of the East Em  
the best things.

God Imperiall and  
highnesse written to vs  
by he wnderstand howe  
by wone a subiect of ours.  
telle for the obtaining of  
also, to come with merch  
gouernement, and from  
of your most inuincible  
and wofulie your Imper  
companye in regard onely  
our amitie; which singu  
good part (yeelding for  
accasion to your said high  
to thinke so great a pleasa  
and by whose grace we re  
the least suspition of ing  
the good demerits of othe  
your highnesse, by well co  
in an euerlasting remem  
more large and plentiful  
the same shall be looke d

But whereas that gr  
without any intercession  
all the lauds and kingdo  
our was granted to any  
Dolonians, the Veneti  
highnesse that the comm  
two or thre men onely,  
well goodnesse may app  
number of persons, Th  
less repent you of, by h

itoris gratia,  
mes oranium  
um Idolola-  
tiamque  
tumo, Impe-  
multos cum  
Tunc Cæsar,  
artij curren-  
quãmq; cle-  
Guilielmo  
ante offerre  
subditis no-  
re quã per  
ab inuidissi-  
m facilitate,  
scium, ei so-  
de nobis, &  
subditos no-  
propterea &  
in nostrum  
quem & cu-  
merentes ab  
um, vllis in  
beneficium  
ntiarum, ver-  
tas beneficij  
, & amplio-  
mpora in-  
subditis, etq;  
libera pote-  
stus tam per  
linis confer-  
uani aut do-  
am angustis  
stros diffusa,  
onario latius  
erit celsitu-  
nt, & alio-  
gens vsq;  
s non vehem-  
uztũ quã-  
tilitas celsi-  
tetas vestras  
donatione,  
uãq; merita  
mercatorum  
entem fore,  
delicet, Ro-  
tis vllis va-  
tima Cæsar  
gamus gra-  
securitate,  
reuerentes  
mus, vt que  
Dei

Deus opt. max. in regna dominiãq; nostra conculit comunoda (quã tam singularia sunt, omnium vt principum animos pelliceant ad ansiciam, summeq; necessitudinis coniunctionem vobiscum contrahendam, stabiliendãque quo liberius tantis summi Dei beneficijs fruatur, quibus carere nequeunt) nostri subditi ad regna dominiãque Celsitudinis vestrã aduehant rã affluenter tamq; cumulate, vt vtriq; incommodo prædicto necessitatis & oneris plenissime succurratur. Facit prætereã singularis ista Celsitudinis vestrã in nos Gentemque nostram summe benevolentie significatio ac fides, vt eandem in causam quorundam subditorum nostrorum, qui captiui tremibus vestris detineantur, interellemus, rogemusque, vt quoniam nullo in celsitudinem vestram peccato suo, siue arma in eam ferendo, siue iniquis præter fas & ius gentium se gerendo in suos subditos, in hanc calamitatem inciderint, soluti vinculis, & libertate donati, nobis pro sua fide & obsequio inseruientes, causam vberiore præbeant vestrã Celsitudinis in nos humanitatem prædicandi: & Deum illum, qui solus, & supra omnia & omnes est acerrimus idololatriæ vindicator, sui que honoris contra Gentium & aliorum falsos Deos Zelotes, præcabinus, vt vestram inuictissimam Cæsaream Celsitudinem, omni beatitate eorum donorum fortunet, quã sola & summe iure merito habentur desideratissima.

Datã è Regia nostra Grenouici, prope ciuitatem nostram Londinum, quinto decimo Mensis Octobris, Anno Iesu Christi Saluatoris nostri 1579, Regni verò nostri vicefimo primo.

*¶ The same in English.*

**E**Lizabeth by the grace of the most mightie God, and onely Creatour of heauen and earth, of England, France and Ireland Queene, the most inuincible and most mightie defender of the Christian faith against all kinde of idolatries, of all that liue among the Christians, and falselie possesse the name of Christ, vnto the most Imperiall and most inuincible prince, Suldan Murad Chan, the most mightie ruler of the kingdome of Turkie, sole and aboue all, and most souereigne Monarch of the East Emperre, greeting, and many happy and fortunate peeres, with abundance of the best things.

Most Imperiall and most inuincible Emperour, we haue receiued the letters of your mightie highnesse written to vs from Constantinople the twentieth day of March this present yeere, wherby we vnderstand howe gracious, and howe fauorably the humble petitions of our William Parabowne a subiect of ours, resident in the Imperiall citie of your highnesse presented vnto your Majesty also, to come with merchandizes both by sea & land, to the countries and territories subiect to your gouernement, and from thence againe to returne home with good leaue and libertie, were accepted of your most inuincible Imperiall highnesse, and not that onely, but with an extraordinary speed and worthy your Imperiall grace, that which was craved by petition was granted to him, and his companie in regard onely (as it seemeth) of that opinion which your highnesse conceived of vs and our amitie; which singular benefite done to our aforesaid subiects, we take so thankesfull, and in so good part (preiding for the same our greatest thanks to your highnesse) that we will neuer giue occasion to your said highnesse (according as time, and the respect of our affaires will permitt) once to thinke so great a pleasure bestowed vpon an vngreatfull prince. For the almighty God, by whose, and by whose grace we reigne, hath planted in vs this goodnesse of nature, that we detest & abhorre the least suspicion of ingratitude, & hath taught vs not to suffer our selues to be ouermatched with the good demerits of other princes. And therefore at this time we do extend our good minde vnto your highnesse, by well conceiuing, and publishing also abroad, how much we repute our selfe bound in an euermaking remembrance for this good pleasure to our subiects, meaning to feelle a much more large and plentifull satisfaction of our thankesfullnesse, when time conuenient shall fall out, and the same shall be looked for at our hands.

But whereas that grant which was giuen to a few of our subiects, and at their onely request without any intercession of ours, standeth in as free a libertie of coming and going to and from all the lands and kingdomes subiect to your maiestie, both by land and sea with merchandizes, as euer was granted to any of your imperiall highnesse confederates, as namely to the French, the Polonians, the Venetians, as also to the subiects of the king of the Romans, we desire of your highnesse that the commendation of such singular cunctie may not be so narrowly restrained to two or three men onely, but may be enlarged to all our subiects in generall, that thereby your highnesse goodnesse may appeare the more notable, by reason of the granting of the same to a greater number of persons. The bestowing of which so singular a benefite your highnesse shall so much the less repent you of, by how much the more fit & necessarie for the vse of man those commodities are,

where with

wherein our kingdoms do abound, and the kingdoms of other princes do want, so there is no nation that can be without them, but are glad to come by them, although by very long and diverse travels: and when they have them, they sell them much better to others, because every man seeketh to make profit by his labor: so that in the getting of them there is profit, but in the buying of them from others there is loss. But this profit will be increased to the subjects of your highness by the free access of a few of our subjects to your dominions, as also the loss and burden will be eased, by the permission of generall access to all our people. And furthermore we will grant as equal and as free a libertie to the subjects of your highness wish vs for the use of traffike, when they will, and as often as they will, to come, and go to and from vs and our kingdoms, which libertie we promise to your highness shall be as ample, and as large as any was ever given or granted to your subjects by the apostolicall princes your confederates, as namely the king of the Romans, of France, of Poland, and the common wealth of Venice. In which matter, if your most invincible imperiall highness shall be content to incline to our reasonable request, and shall give order upon these our letters, that we may have knowledge how the same is accepted of you, and whether it will be granted, with sufficient securitie for our subjects to go, and returne safe and secure from all violences and injuries of your people, we on the other side will give order, that those commodities which amongstie God hath bestowed upon our kingdoms (which are in deed so excellent, that by reason of them all princes are bounden to enter, and confirme leagues of amitie & good neighborhood with vs, by that meanes to enjoy these so great blessings of God, which we have, and they can in no case waive) our subjects shall bring them so abundantly and plentifully to the kingdoms and dominions of your highness, that both the former inconveniences of necessitie, and loss, shall most sufficiently be taken away.

Moreover the significance and assurance of your highness great affection to vs and our nation, doth cause vs also to intercede and use mediation on the behalfe of certaine of our subjects, who are detaineed as slaves and captives in your galleies, for whom we craue, that you should order that they be taken into that miserie, not by any offence of theirs, by bearing of armes against your highness, or in behaving of themselves contrary to honestie, and to the law of nations, they may be delivered from their bondage, and restored to libertie, for their service towards vs, according to their vertue: which thing shall yield much more abundant cause to vs of commending your clemencie, and of beseeching that God (who onely is above all things, and all men, and is a most severe revenger of all violence, and is jealous of his honor against the false gods of the nations) to adorne your most invincible imperiall highness with all the blessings of those gifts, which onely & deservedly are accounted most worthy of asking.

Given at our palace of Greenwich, nere to our citie of London, the five and twentieth day of October, in the yere of Iesus Christ our Saviour 1579, and of our reigne the one and twentieth.

The charter of the privileges granted to the English, and league of the Great Turke with the Queenes Maiestie in respect of traffike, dated in June 1580.



Mmensa & maxima ex potestate potentissimi, terribilibusque verbis & nunquam finienda, innumerabili clementia & ineffabili auxilio sanctissimi & pura mente colendissimi tremendissimi que vniuersitatum creatoris, principis temporum presentium, vnicuius modernæ ætatis monarcha, totius orbis terrarum potentibus scepra diuidere potens, clementiæ, gratiæque diuinæ vmbra, regnorum, prouinciarumque & urbium ciuitatumque distributor permultarum: Nos sacratissimus Cesar Muzulmanicus, Meccha, id est domus diuinæ, Medina, gloriosissima & beatissima Ierusalem, Aegypti fertilissima, Iemen & Zouan, Eden & Canan, Sami paciferæ & Hebes, Iabza & Pazra, Zeruzub & Halepiz, Caramariæ & Diabekirau & Dulkadiriz, Babyloniz, & totius triplicis Arabiz, Euzorum & Georgianorum, Cypri diuitis, & regnorum Afrix, Ozakior, Camporum Maris albi & nigri, Græciæ & Mesopotaniæ, Affricæ & Goletz, Algeris & Tripolis occidentalis, selectissimæque Europæ, Bude, & Temesinar, & regnorum transalpinorum & his similibus permultorum princeps Cesarue sacerrimus, potentissimus Murad Chan, filius principis Zelim Chan, qui fuit Zoleiman Chan, qui fuit Zelim Chan, qui fuit Paiczid Chan, qui fuit Meheued Chan, &c.

Nos princeps potentissimus Murad Chan, hoc in signum nostræ Cesaræ amicitiæ significamus & manifestamus, quod in temporibus modernis Regina Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Elizabetha in Christianitate honoratissima Regina (cuius mercatorum exitus sit felicissimus)

res to want, so there is no  
ly by very long and diffi-  
t, because every man is chere  
t, but in the buying of them  
of your highness by the  
and burden will be eased, by  
we will grant as equall and  
affaire. when they will, and as  
libertie we promise  
of grante to your subjects  
of France, of Spaine,  
in inuincible impetall high  
pber upon the for letters,  
ether it will be grante, wh  
in all violences and injuries  
which admittie God  
pprecation of them all pynes  
good with vs, by that meanes  
no case want) our subjects  
efficiently be taken away,  
fection to vs and our nation,  
of our subjects, who are be-  
the forasmuch as they are be-  
against your highness, as in  
they may be deliuered from  
pding to the due: which  
remence, and of be seking  
ere returne of all solatue,  
ne your most inuincible im-  
serued by are accourto most

the five and twentieth day of  
the one and twentieth.

English, and  
Caesie in respect

ibilibusque verbis & nun-  
bili auxilio sanctissimi &  
itatum creatoris, princeps  
marcha, totius orbis terra-  
, gratiaq; diuina vinbra,  
distributor permultarum  
Medinae, gloriosissima  
& Canan, Sami pacifera  
Kiruaq & Dulkadira, Ba-  
ri diuina, & regnorum A-  
z, Africae & Goleae, Al-  
har, & regnorum transil-  
us, potentissimus Murad  
Belim Chan, qui fuit Paie-

Caesare amicicia signifi-  
ca, Francie, & Hibernie  
um exitus sit felicissimus)  
ad

ad nostrā ex celsam, & iustitia plenā, fulgidissimāque portā, quā omnibus principibus mūdi est  
refugium & requies, per egregium Gulielmū Harebronū literas misit suas, quibus sua maiestas  
significauit, quod tempore preterito, quidā subditū sui uenisset ad nostrā portam ex celsam, &  
sua obedientiā erga eam demonstrauissent, & ob eam causam illis quoq; ad nostras ditiones  
mercandi gratia venire & redire poscerēt, uenia & potestas fuisset data: & quod in locis & hos-  
pitij eorū per mare & terrā nemo auderet impedire & illis dampnū facere, mandatū Caesarem  
fuisse datū: & quod hanc nostrā gratiā, quā paucis hominibus suis maiestatis demonstrauisse-  
mus, uniuersis suis subditis concederemus, petebat. Quare, quemadmodum cū serenissimis be-  
neuolentiā & obedientiā, seruiciūque sua demonstrantibus erga nostrā portā excellens regibus &  
principibus confederatis (ut sunt rex Gallorū, Veneti, & rex Polonorū & ceteri) pacē & fir-  
ditū sanctissimū pepigimus: sic etiā cū præfata Regina amicitia est uolendiū, pacē & fœdus et-  
iam iustissimū. Illius igitur homines, & uniuersi mercatores, sine aliquo impedimento cū suis merci-  
bus & oneribus cunctis ad nostras ditiones Cæsareas pacificē & securē ueniant, & suā exerces-  
ant mercaturā, maneant in suis statibus, & secūdū suos mores negocientur. Et adhuc, sua mai-  
estas significabat ex hominibus suis aliquos iam dudū captos fuisse, & in captiuitate detinēdi, &  
quod hi dimitterentur petebat, & quod sicut alijs principibus nobiscū confederatis priuilegia  
& mandata Cæsarea ut daremus, nostrę Cæsareę celebritudini placeret. Quare secundū nostrā  
beneuolentiā & gratiam innatam, optata suā maiestatis apud nos grata fuere: Et hoc nostrū  
priuilegium iustitijs plebium dedimus maiestati suæ: Et Beglerbegis, Zanziacbegis, famulus nos-  
tris, & Kazijs, id est, iudicibus, & omnibus teioniatoribus omnium locorum, portuū, & uadorū  
firmiter mandamus, ut donec ex parte præfate reginæ fœdus, & pax, & eorū conditiones arti-  
culūq; (ut conuenit) custodiuntur, & seruātur, nostrę quoq; Cæsareę celebritudinis mandata sunt:

Fœdus Turcic  
Imperatoris cum  
Regina iustissimū.

1 Vt præfate Reginę homines, & subditi eius quibuscumq; rebus & mercibus, oneribus & sup-  
pellectilibus per mare in magnis & paruis nauibus, per terram autem homines cum oneribus  
& pecoribus, securē & pacificē ad nostras ditiones Cæsareas ueniant, & nemo illis noceat, sed  
securē & sine aliquo impedimento negocientur, & in suis statibus & conditionibus permaneant.

Artinū turc  
priuilegiū.

2 Item, si præfati homines & mercatores in suis redditibus uis & negociationibus aliquo modo  
caperentur, sine aliqua tergiversatione dimittantur libere, & que.

3 Item, si naues eorum ad aliquos portus & loca uenire uoluerint, pacificē & otiosi in tempo-  
re, & sine impedimento ueniant, & discedant in sua loca.

4 Item, si in tempestatibus maris naues eorum essent in periculo & auxilio opus esset illis,  
naues nostræ Cæsareę celebritudinis, eantque homines, & aliorum naues hominūque statim  
auxilium & opem ferant illis, mandamus. (omane)

5 Item, si edulia suis pecunijs emere uoluerint, nemo resistat illis, sed sine impedimento edulia  
6 Item, si infortunij maris naues eorū in terrā profecerit, Belgi & iudices, & ceteri nostri subditi  
sine auxilio illis, merces & res eorū que remanserint iterū reddantur illis, & nemo impediat illos.

7 Item, si præfate reginæ homines, eorū interpretes, & mercatores, siue per terram, siue per  
mare mercandi gratiā ad nostras ditiones uenire uelint, legitimo telonio, & uestigall reddito,  
pacificē uagentur, capitanei & reges maris & nauium, & aliud genus hominum per mare uan-  
gantium in personis, & rebus eorum, pecoribusque, ne noceant illis.

8 Item, si aliquis ex Anglis debitor, aut ære alieno esset obstrictus, inuenietque non possit,  
ratione debitorum alterius nullus nisi esset fideiussor, capiat, aut impediatur.

9 Item, si Anglus testamentum fecerit, & sua bona cuiuscunq; legauerit, illi dentur bona illius,  
& si sine testamento moreretur, consul eorum cuiuscunq; sociorum mortui hominis dixerit de-  
bere dari, illi dentur bona mortui hominis.

10 Item, si Angli, & ad Angliam pertinentium locorū mercatores & interpretes, in uenden-  
dis & emendis mercibus fideiussionibus & rebus aliquid negocij habuerint, ad iudicē ueniant,  
& in librum inscribi faciant negotium, & si uoluerint, literas quoq; acceptant à iudice, prop-  
terea quod si aliquid incident, uideant librum & literas, & secundū tenorē eorū perficiantur  
negocia eorū suspecta: si autem neq; in libris inscriberentur, neq; literas haberent, iudex falsa  
testimonia non admittat, sed secundū iustitiam legem administrans non sinat illos impediri.

11 Item, si aliquis dixerit quod isti Christiani nostræ fidei Muzulmanice maledixerint, &  
eam uicuperijs affecterint, in hoc negotio etiam & alijs, testes falsi minime admittantur.

12 Item, si aliquis eorum aliquod facinus patraret, & fugiens non possit inueniri, nullus nisi  
esset fideiussor pro alterius factō retineatur.

13 Item, si aliquod mancipium Anglicum inueniretur, & consul eorū peteret illud, exami-  
netur diligenter mancipium, & si inuentum fuerit Anglicum, accipiat, & reddatur Anglis.

14 Item

14 Item, si aliquis ex Anglis hac venerit habitandi aut mercandi gratia, siue sit vxoratus, siue sit sine vxore, non soluat censum.

15 Item, si in Alexandria, in Damasco, in Samia, in Tunis, in Tripoli occidentali, in Aegypti portibus & in alijs omnibus locis, vbicunq; voluerint facere Consules, faciant: Et iterum inuenerint eos mutare, & in loca prioru consulum alios locare, liberè faciant, & nemo illis resistat.

16 Item, si illorum interpretes in alijs negotijs occupatus abesset, donec veniret interpretes, expectetur, & interim nemo illos impediatur.

17 Item, si Angli inter se aliquam licentiam haberent & vellet ad suos consules ire, nemo resistat illis, sed liberè veniant ad Consules suos, vt secundum mores eorum finiatur lis orta.

18 Item, si post tempus aut datum huius priuilegij, piratae, aut alij aliqui liberi gubernatores nauium per mare vagantes, aliquem ex Anglis ceperint, & trans mare vel cis mare venderint, secundum iustitiam examinetur: & si Anglus inuentus fuerit, & religionem Muzulmanicam assumpserit, liberè dimittatur: si autem adhuc esset Christianus, Anglis reddatur, & euptores suam pecuniam ab illo petant, a quo emerant.

19 Item, si nostrae Casareae Celsitudinis naues armatae exiuerint ad mare, & ibi inuenerint naues Anglicas merces portantes, nemo impediatur illas, imò amicè tractentur, & nullum damnum faciant illis: Quemadmodum Gallis, Venetis, & ceteris nobiscum confederatis regibus, & principibus priuilegium, & articulos priuilegij dedimus, & concessimus, simili modo his quoque Anglis priuilegium & articulos priuilegij dedimus & concessimus, & contra legem diuinam, & hoc priuilegium, nemo vnquam aliquid audeat facere.

20 Item, si naues magna, & parua in itinere & loco vbi stant detinebuntur, nemo illos audeat impedire, sed potius auxilio sint illis.

21 Item, si latrones & fures vi rapent naues illorum, nauiumque merces, magna diligentia quarantur latrones & fures, & seuerissime puniantur.

22 Ad extremum, Beglerbegij, & Zanziarbegij, Capitanei nostri, Mancipia, & per mare nauigantes serui Capitaneorum, & ludices, & Teloniatore, & Gubernatores nauium Reiz diti, & liberi Reiz, omnes isti praefati, secundum tenorem huius priuilegij, tenoremque articulo- rum eius, omnia facere teneantur, & debeant. Et de hoc in priuilegio descriptum factus, & pax illius Maiestatis ex parte sanctè seruabitur, & custodietur, ex parte etiam nostra Casarea custodiri, & obseruari mandamus.

Datum Constantinopoli, anno nostri prophetæ Sanctissimi 988, in principio mensis Iunii, anno autem Iesu 1580.

### The interpretation of the letters, or priuilege of the most mightie and Misubnanlike Emperour *Zildan Murad Chan*, granted at the request

of Elizabeth by the grace of the most mightie God, and only Creator of heauen & earth, of England, France and Ireland Queene, confirming a peace and league betwix both the said princes and their subiects.

**W**E most sacred Musulmanlike Emperour, by the infinite & exceeding great power, by the euerruling and woonderfull clemencie, and by the vnspreakable helpe of the most mightie and most holy God, creator of all things, to be worshipped and feared with all pureness of minde, and reuerence of speech. The prince of these present times, the onely Monarch of this age, able to giue scepters to the potentates of the whole world, the shadow of the diuine mercy and grace, the distributor of many kingdoms, prouinces, towne & cities, Prince, and most sacred Emperour of Mescha, the isle of Cyprus, of the house of Medina, of the most glorious and blessed Jerusalem, of the most fertile Egypte, Yemen, and Iouan Eden & Chanaan, of the peaceable, and of Hebes of Jobra, and Hazra, of Feruzab and Palepia, of Camaria and Diabekiruan, of Dulhadria, of Babilon, and of all the three Arabias, of the Syrians & Georgians, of Cyprus the rich, and of the kingdoms of Asia of Dzakio, of the tract of the White and Blaque sea, of Grecia and Mesopotamia, of Africa & Seleta, of Algeria, and of Tripolis in the West, of the most choise and principall Europe, of India and Cemeluar, and of the kingdoms beyond the Alps, and many others such like, most mightie Murad Chan, the sonne of the Emperour Zelim Chan, which was the sonne of Zoliman Chan, which was the same of Zelim Chan, which was the sonne of Haisid Chan, which was the sonne of Behemed Chan, &c.

We most mightie prince Murad Chan, in token of our imperiall friendship, do signifie & declare, that now of late Elizabeth Queene of England, France, & Ireland, the most honorable Queene of

Christendome (to whom we name William Harcourte, which is a refuge in the English, that we would graunte no onely to a few of which the most excellent of seruices to wards our lonia and others) so as said Queene. There to come vnto our Impeachment, so as to the fashions of their own. And further her self then prisoners, and we and that as we had granted, concerning our Maestie to graunte a Queene.

Wherefore according to the request were acceptable to reason & our seruants, and our vnto and passage, that of, are kept and obserued and pleasure is, come to our princely vnto and by sea, in great number shall hurt the names and orders of the

2 Item, if the aforesaid and dealings by any rauenation.

3 Item, if their ship so to doe in peace, and

4 Item, if it shall be lost and perishing, and men and ships be ready

5 Item, if they shall them, but they shall be

6 Item, if by any our Beges and Iudges of theirs as shall be to them.

7 Item, if the people like sake, either by the they shall haue quiet for any kinde of percell them.

8 Item, if any Christian upon doeth absent him other mans debt, except

9 Item, if any Christian shall giue his



Christendome (to whose marchants wee with happie successe sent her letters by her worthy servant William Harbrowne, unto our Raely and most magnificem Porche replenished with iurisdiction, which is a refuge and sanctuary to all the princes of the world, by which letters her Majesty signified, that whereas heretofore certaine of her subiects had repaired to our saide Raely Porche, and had shewed their obedience to the same, and for that cause had desired that leave and libertie might also be graunted unto them, to come and goe for traffique sake too and from our dominions, and that our Imperiall commaundment might be given, that no man should presume to hurt or hinder them in any of their abodes or passages by sea or land, and whereas she requested that we would graunt to all her subiects in generall, this our favour, which before wee had extended onely to a few of her people: therefore as wee have entered into amitie, and most holy league with the most excellent kings and princes our confederats, shewing their deuotion, and obedience of seruices to wards our Raely Porche (as namely the French king, the Venecians, the king of Polonia and others) so also we have contracted an inuiolable amitie, peace and league with the aforesaid Queene. Therefore we give licence to all her people, and marchants, peaceably and safely to come unto our Imperiall dominions, with all their merchandise and goods without any impeachment, to exercise their traffique, to vse their owne customes, and to buy and sell according to the fashions of their owne countrey.

And further her Majesty signified unto vs, that certaine of her people had heretofore bene taken prisoners, and were detained in captiuitie, and required that they might bee set at libertie, and that as we had graunted unto other princes our confederats, priuiledges, and Imperiall decrees, concerning our most inuiolable league with them, so it would please our Imperiall Majesty to graunt and confirme the like priuiledges, and princely decrees to the aforesayde Queene.

Therefore according to our humanitie and gracious ingrafted disposition, the requests of her Majesty were accepted of vs, and wee have graunted unto her Majesty this priuiledge of ours agreeable to reason & equitie. And we straightly commaunde all our Beglerbegs, and Zanzibegs, our seruants, and our Reyz, that is to say, our Judges, and all our customers in all places, hauens and passages, that as long as this league and amitie with the conditions, and articles thereof, are kept and obserued on the behalfe of the aforesaid Queene, 1 Our Imperiall commaundment and pleasure is, that the people and subiects of the same Queene, may safely and securely come to our princely dominions, with their goods and merchandise, and ladinges, and other commodities by sea, in great and small vessels, and by land with their carriages and cattels, and that no man shall hurt them, but they may buy and sell without any hinderance, and obserue the customes and orders of their owne countrey.

2 Item, if the aforesaid people and marchants shall be at any time in the course of their iourneys, and dealings by any meanes taken, they shall bee deliuered and enlarged, without any excuse or rauillation.

3 Item, if their ships purpose to arriue in any of our ports and hauens, it shall be lawfull for them to doe in peace, and from thence againe to depart, without any let or impediment.

4 Item, if it shall happen that any of their ships in tempestuous weather shall bee in danger of loss and perishing, and thereupon shall stand in neede of our helpe, we will, and commaund that our men and ships be ready to helpe and succour them.

5 Item, if they shall be willing to buy any victuals for their money, no person shall withstande them, but they shall buy the same without any disturbance to the contrary.

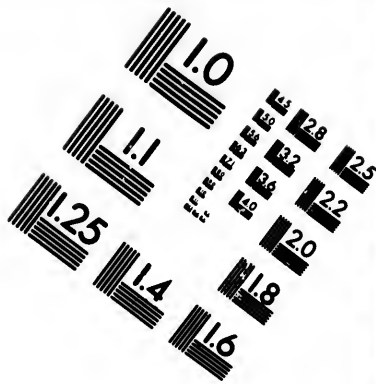
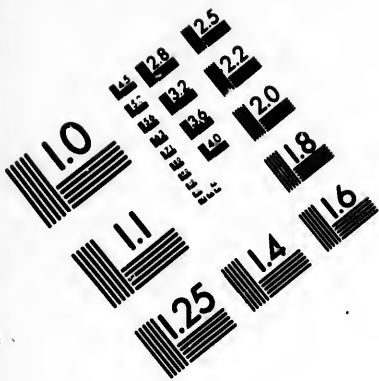
6 Item, if by any casualtie their shippes shall bee diuenc on shore in perill of shipwacke, our Beges and Judges, and other our subiects shall succour them, and such wares, and goods of theirs as shall bee recouered from the loss, shall bee restored to them, and no man shall wrong them.

7 Item, if the people of the aforesaid Queene, their interpreters and marchants, shall for traffique sake, either by lande or sea repaire to our dominions paying our lawfull coll and custome, they shall haue quiet passage, and none of our Captaines or gouernours of the sea, and shippes, nor any kinde of persons, shall either in their bodies, or in their goods and cattels, any way molest them.

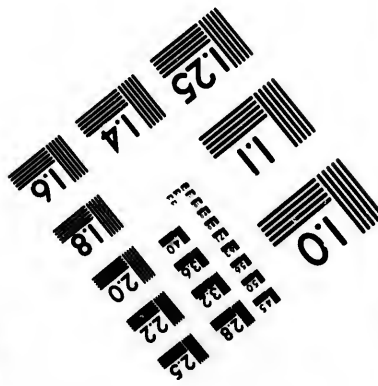
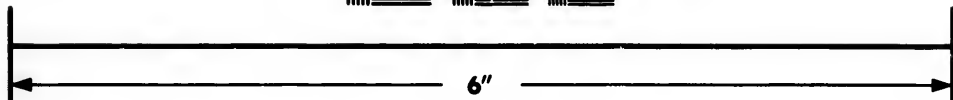
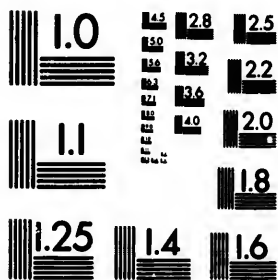
8 Item, if any Englishman shall growe in debt, and so owe money to any other man, and thereupon doeth absent himselfe that hee can not be founde, let no man arrest or apprehend him for any other mans debt, except he be the creditor.

9 Item, if any Englishman shall make his will and testament, to whome soeuer by the same hee shall give his goods, the partie shall haue them accordingly, and if hee die intestate,





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 2.8 2.5  
1.6 3.2  
1.8 2.2  
2.0  
1.8

10  
1.5 1.8 2.0  
2.2

he to whom the Consull or gouernour of the societie shall say the goods of the dead are to be giuen, he shall haue the same.

10 Item, if the Englishmen of the marchants and interpreters of any places vnder the iurisdiction of England, shall happen in the buying and selling of wares, by promises or othervise to come in controuersie, let them goe to the Iudge, and cause the matter to be entred into a booke, and if they will, let them also take letters of the Iudge testifying the same, that men may see the booke and letters, whatsoeuer thing shall happen, and that according to the tenor thereof of the matter in controuersie and in doubt may be ended: but if such things be neither entred in booke, nor yet the persons haue taken letters of the Iudge, yet he shall admit no false witness, but shall execute the law according to iustice, and shall not suffer them to be abused.

11 Item, if any man shall say, that these being Christians shall speake any thing to the derogation of our holy faith and religion, and shall slander the same, in this matter as in all others, let no false witnesses in any case be admitted.

12 Item, if any one of them shall commit any great crime, and dying thereupon can not be found, let no man be arrested, or detained for another mans fact, except he be his suretie.

13 Item, if any slaue shall be found to be an Englishman, and their Consull or gouernour shall sue for his libertie, let the same slaue be diligently examined, and if he be found in deed to be English, let him be discharged and restored to the Englishmen.

14 Item, if any Englishman shall come hither either to dwell or traffique, whether he be married or unmarried, he shall pay no polle or head money.

15 Item, if either in Alexandria, Damasco, Samos, Tunes, Tripolis in *West*, the port towne of Egypt, or in any other places, they purpose to choole to themselves Consuls or gouernours, let them doe so, and if they will alter them at any time, and in the roome of the former Consuls place others, let them doe so also, and no man shall restraine them.

16 Item, if their interpreter shall be at any time absent, being occupied in other serious matters, let the thing then in question be stayed and deferred till his coming, and in the meane time no man shall trouble them.

17 Item, if any variance or controuersie shall arise among the Englishmen, and thereupon they shall appeale to their Consuls or gouernours, let no man molest them, but let them freely doe so, that the controuersie begunne, may be finished according to their owne customes.

18 Item, if after the time and date of this priuledge, any pirates or other free gouernours of ships trading the sea, shall take any Englishman, and shall make sale of him, either beyonde the sea, or on this side of the sea, the matter shall be examined according to iustice, and if the partie shall be found to be English, and shall receiue the holy religion, then let him freely be discharged, but if he will still remaine a Christian, let him then be restored to the Englishmen, and the buyers shall demaunde their money againe of them who sold the man.

19 Item, if the ships of warre of our Imperiall highnes shall at any time goe forth to sea, and shall finde any English ships laden with marchandise, no man shall hinder them, but rather shall vse them friendly, and doe them no wrong, euen as we haue giuen and granted articles and priuiledges, to the French, Venetians, and other Kings and princes our confederats, so also we haue giuen the like to the English: and contrary to this our diuine lawe and priuiledge, let no man presume to doe anything.

20 Item, if either their great or small ships shall in the course of their voyage, or in any place to which they come, be stayed or arrested, let no man continue the same arrest, but rather helpe and assist them.

21 Item, if any theenes and robbers shall by force take away any of their ships, and marchandise, let the same theenes and robbers be sought, and searched for with all diligence, and let them be punished most severely.

22 Last of all the Beglerbegs, and Zanzicbegs, our Captaines, our slaues and seruants of Captaines vsing the sea, and our Iudges, customers and gouernours of shippes called Reiz, and free Reiz, all these according to the tenor of this priuledge and article, shall be bounde to doe accordingly, and, as long as the Queene of England on her part shall duely keepe and obserue this league and holy peate, expressed in this priuledge, we also for our Imperiall part, doe charge and commaunde the same so long to be straightly kept and obserued.

Giuen at Constantinople, in the 988. yeere of our most holy prophete, in the beginning of the moneth of Iune, And in the yeere of Iesus vs, the 1580.

Her

Her Maiesties letters to the Turke or Grand Signior 1581.  
promising redresse of the disorders of Peter Baker of Ratcliffe,  
committed in the Levant.



Lizabech by the diuine grace of the eternall God, of England, Fraunce and Irelande, most sacred Queene, and of the most Christian faith, against all the wrongness of his most holy Name the zealous and mightie defendour, &c. To the most renowned and Emperious Caesar, Sulcan Murad Chan, Emperour of all the dominions of Turkie, and of all the East Monarchie chiefe about all others who soeuer, most fortunate possessors with the successe of all true happinesse. As with very great desire we wish and embrace the loue and amitie of foireigne Princes, and in the same by all good dueties and means wee seeke to be confirmed: so to vs there may be nothing more grieuous and disliking then that any thing should happen through the default of our subiects, which any way might bring our faith and fidelitie into suspicion: Although wee are not ignorant howe many good princes by the like misadenture be abused, where the doings of the subiects are imputed to the want of good gouernment. But such matters of importance and so well appoyued we may not omit: such is to vs the sacred estimation of our honour, and of our Christian profession, as we would the same should appeare aswell in the concluding of our promises and agreements, as in the faithfull performing of the same.

The matter which by these our letters we specially beholde, is a most iniurious and grieuous wrong which of late came vnto our vnderstanding, that should be done vnto certaine of your subiects by certaine of our subiects, as yet not apprehended: but with all seueritie vpon their apprehension they are to be warned for the same. And as the deede in it selfe is most wicked, so is it much more intollerable, by how much it doeth infringe the credite of our faith, violateth the force of our authoritie, and impeacheth the estimation of our word faithfully given vnto your Imperiall dignitie. In which so great a disorder if wee should not manifest our hatred towards so wicked and euill disposed persons, wee might not onely most iustly be repproued in the iudgement of all such as truly fauour Justice, but also of all Princes the patrones of right and equitie, might not lesse be condemned. That therefore considered, which of our parts is obtained in this cause which may be to the good liking of your highnesse, wee are most especially to request of your Imperiall Maiestie, that through the default and disorder of a sort of euill and wicked disposed persons, you will not withpayne your gracious fauour from vs, neither to hinder the traffique of our subiects, which by vertue of your highnesse sufferance, and power of your licence are permitted to trade vnto your dominions and countreys, or that either in their persons or goods they be prejudiced their trauesing by land or by water, promising vnto your greatnesse most faithfully, that the goods whereof your subiects by great wrong and violence haue bene spoyled, shall wholie againe be restored, if either by the lines or possessions of the robbers it may any way be brought to passe: And that hereafter (as now being caught by this euill example) wee will haue speciall care that none vnder the title of our authoritie, shall be suffered to commit any the like wrongs or iniuries.

Neither they which haue committed these euill parts, had any power vnder your highnesse safeconduit graunted vnto our subiects, but from some other safe conduit, whether it were true or fained, we knowe not, or whether they boughte it of any person within the gouernment of Marceils: but vnder the colour thereof they haue done that, which the truth of our dealing doeth directly abhorre. Notwithstanding howsoever it be, wee will surely measure their euill proceedings with most sharpe and iust correction, and that it shall repent them of the impeachment of our honours, as also it shall be an example of our indignation, that others may dread at all times to commit the like offence. Wherefore that our amitie might be continued, as if this vnfortunate happe had neuer chaunced, and that the singular affection of our subiects towards your Imperiall Maiestie bowen, and daily more and more desired, might be conserued and defended, wee thencemore doe make our humble suite vnto your greatnesse: And for so great goodnesse towards vs and our people graunted, doe most humbly pray vnto the Almighty creatour of heauen and earth, euer to maintaine and keepe your most renowned Maiestie in all happinesse and prosperitie.

Dated at our palace of Greenwich the 26. of June, Anno 1581.

This was Baker of Ratcliffe, who with the barke called the Koe, robbed certaine Christians in the Levant.

The letters patents, or priuiledges graunted by her Ma-  
iestie to Sir Edward Osborne, Master Richard Staper, and cer-  
taine other Marchants of London for their trade into the dominions of  
the great Turke, in the yeere 1581.



Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, de-  
fender of the faith, &c. To all our officers, ministers, and subiects, and to all  
other people as well within this our Realme of England, as els where  
vnder our obeylance, iurisdiction, or otherwiſe, vnto whome theſe our letters ſhall  
be ſene, thewel of read, greeting. Where our welbeloued ſubiect Edward  
Osborne Alderman of our Cite of London, and Richard Staper of our ſaide  
Cite merchant, haue by great adventure and induſtrie, with their great coſtes and charges, by  
the ſpace of ſundry late yeeres, trauielled, and cauſed trauaile to be taken, as well by ſecret and  
good meanes, as by dangerous wayes and paſſages both by lande and ſea, to finde out and ſe-  
open a trade of marchandize and traffique into the landes, Iſlands, dominions, and territories of  
the great Turke, commonly called the Grand Signior, not heretofore in the memoire of any man  
now liuing knownen to be commonly vſed and frequented by way of marchandize, by any the mar-  
chants of any ſubiectes of vs, or our progenitours; and alſo haue by their like good meanes and  
induftrie, and great charges pꝛocuted of the ſaide Grand Signior (in our name), amitie, ſafetie,  
and freedom, for trade and traffique of marchandize to be vſed, and continued by our ſubiectes  
within his ſaide dominions, whereby there is good and apparant hope and likelihoode both that  
many good offices may be done for the peace of Chriſtendome, and reliefe of many Chriſtians  
that be or may happen to be in thraldome or neceſſitie vnder the ſaide Grand Signior, his vaſſals  
or ſubiectes, and alſo good, and profitabie vent and vterance may be had of the commodities of our  
Realme, and ſundry other great benefices to the aduancement of our honour, and dignitie royal,  
the increaſe of the reuenues of our Crowne, and generall wealth of our Realme; Knowe ye  
that hereupon, wee greatly tendering the wealth of our people, and the incouragement of our ſub-  
iects in their good enterpriſes for the aduancement of the common weale, haue of our ſpeciall  
grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, giuen and graunted, and by theſe preſents to  
vs, our heires and ſucceſſours, doe giue and graunt vnto our ſaide truſtie, and welbeloued ſub-  
iects Edward Osborne, and vnto Thomas Smith of London eſquire, Richard Staper, and Wil-  
liam Garret of London merchants, their executours, and adminiſtratours, and to the executours  
and adminiſtratours of them, and of euery of them, that they, and euery of them, and ſuch other  
perſon and perſons Engliſhmen boyne, not exceeding the number of twelue, as they the ſaide  
Edward and Richard ſhall appoint, nominate, or admit to be parteners, aduenturers, or doers  
with them the ſaide Edward, Thomas, Richard, and William, in their ſocietie by themſelues,  
their ſeruants, factours or deputies, and to ſuch others as ſhall be nominated according to the  
honour of theſe our letters patents, ſhall and may during the terme of ſeven yeeres from the date  
of theſe patents, freely trade, traffique, and vſe ſeates of marchandize inco, and from the dominions of  
the ſaid Grand Signior, and euery of them, in ſuch order, and maner, ſoyne, liberties and condition  
to all intents and purpoſes as ſhalbe betweene them limited and agreed, and not otherwiſe, with-  
out any moleſtation, impeachment, or diſturbance, any lawe, ſtatute, vſage, diuerſitie of religion or  
faith, or other cauſe or matter whatſoever to the contrary notwithstanding.

And that it ſhalbe lawfull to the ſaid Edward and Richard their executours and adminiſtratours,  
(during the ſaid terme) to appoint or admit to be parteners and aduenturers with them the ſaide  
Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, ſuch perſons not exceeding the number of twelue (as a-  
foye is ſaid) to traffique and vſe the ſaid trade & ſeate of marchandize according to our ſaide graunt.  
And that all and euery ſuch perſon and perſons, as ſhall hereafter fortune to be appointed or ad-  
mitted as parteners in the ſaid trade or traffique according to theſe our letters patents, ſhall and  
may from the time of ſuch appointment or admittance, haue and enioy the freedom and libertie  
of the ſaid trade and traffique, during the reſidue of the ſaid terme of ſeven yeeres according to ſuch  
limitation and agreement as is aforeſaid, and that it ſhall and may be lawfull to and for the ſaide  
Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executours and adminiſtratours, ſeruants, fac-  
tours and deputies, and all ſuch as ſhall be ſo appointed, nominated or admitted, to be parteners  
or aduenturers in the ſaide trade, or ſo many of them as can and will, to aſſemble themſelues for  
or about any the matters, cauſes, affaires or buſineſſe of the ſaid trade in any place or places for the  
ſame

ed by her Ma-  
Staper, and cer-  
the dominions of

France and Ireland, vo-  
ers, and subiects, and to all  
England, as els where by  
whome these our letters shall  
belonged subiects Edward  
Richard Staper of our saide  
great colles and charges, by  
taken, as well by secret and  
and sea, to finde out and sit  
dominions, and territories of  
in the memoire of any man  
merchandise, by any the man-  
ether like good meanes and  
our name,) amitie, safetie,  
and continued by our subiects  
and likephoothe both that  
reliefe of many Chyilians  
and of the commodities of our  
honour, and dignitie royal,  
of our Realme, Knowe we  
in encouragement of our lab-  
in weale, haue of our special  
and by these presents by  
trustie, and welbeloued sub-  
Richard Staper, and Wil-  
amours, and to the egeruous  
ery of them, and such other  
of twelue, as they the saide  
ners, aduenturers, or doers  
their societie by themselves,  
minated according to the  
euen yeeres from the date of  
, and from the dominions of  
pyme, liberties and condition  
red, and not oherwise, with-  
lage, diuersitie of religion of  
ecutors and administratoys,  
urers with them the saide  
of the number of twelue (as  
according to our saide graunt,  
pentine to be appointed of  
our letters patents, shall and  
by the freedom and libertie  
ten yeeres according to such  
the lawfull to and for the saide  
ministratoys, seruantes, fac-  
or admitter, to be partners  
to assemble themselves for  
in any place or places for the  
same

same comment, from time to time during the saide terme of 7. yeeres, within our dominions or  
elsewhere, and to make, ordeine, and constitute reasonable lawes and ordinaunces, for the good go-  
ernment of the saide companie, and for the better advancement and continuance of the saide trade  
and traffique, not being contrarie or repugnant to the lawes, estatutes or customes of our Realme,  
and the same lawes or ordinaunces to made to put in vye, and execute accordingly, and at their plea-  
sures to reuoke the same lawes and ordinaunces, or any of them, as occasion shall require.

And in consideration that the said Edward Osborne hath bene the principall letter tooth and  
voer in the opening, & putting in vye of the saide trade, we do therefore especiall y ordeine, constitute,  
and provide by these patents, that the said Edward Osborne shall be gouernour of all such as by  
vertue of these our letters patents, shall be partners, aduenturers, or traffiquers in the saide trade,  
during the saide terme of seven yeeres, if hee so long liue: And that if the saide Edward shall hap-  
pen to decease during the saide terme, the said Richard Staper then liuing, then the saide Richard  
Staper shall likewise be gouernour during the residue of the saide terme (if he so long liue) and that  
if the said Edward and Richard shall both happen to decease during the saide terme, then the part-  
ners or aduenturers for the time being, or the greatest part of them, shall from time to time as ne-  
cessitie shall require, choose and elect a gouernour of the saide companie.

Provides alwayes, that if there shall happen any great or bigent occasion to remooue or dis-  
place any person that shall be gouernour of the saide fellowship, that then it shall, and may be law-  
full for vs, our heires and successours, to remooue, and displace euery such gouernour, and to place  
another of the saide fellowship in the same office, during such time as such person should haue en-  
toyed the same, according to this our graunt, if there had bene no cause to the contrary.

And wee further for vs, our heires, and successours, of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge,  
and meere motion, doe graunt to the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and  
William Garret, their executours and administratoys, that nothing shall be done to be of force or  
validitie touching the saide trade or traffique, or the exercise thereof, without or against the con-  
sent of the saide Edward, during such time as hee shall be Gouernour as aforesaide. And af-  
ter that time without the content of the Gouernour for the time being, and of the moze part of the  
saide companie.

And further, wee of our moze ample and abundant grace, meere motion and certaine know-  
ledge, haue graunted, and by these patents for vs, our heires and successours, doe graunt to the saide  
Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executours and administratoys, that they, the saide  
Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executours and administratoys, and the saide person  
and persons, by them the said Edward and Richard to be nominated, or appointed as aforesaide, shall,  
together, with such two other persons, as wee our heires or successours from time to time during  
the saide terme shall nominate, shall haue the whole trade and traffique, and the whole entire onely  
libertie, vse and priuilege of trading, and traffiquing, and vying feace of marchandise, into, and from  
the said dominions of the said Grand Signior, and euery of them. And when there shall be no such  
persons so nominated or appointed by vs, our heires or successours, that then the said Edward Os-  
burne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, their executours and administratoys,  
and such persons by them so to be appointed, shall haue the saide whole trade and traffique, and the  
whole entire, and onely libertie, vse, and priuilege of trading and traffiquing aforesaid. And that  
they the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executours and administratoys, and also  
all such as shall so be nominated or appointed to be partners or aduenturers in the saide trade, accord-  
ing to such agreement as is abovesaide, and euery of them, their seruants, factours and deputies,  
shall haue full and free authoritie, libertie, facultie, licence and powver to trade and traffique into and  
from all and euery the saide dominions of the saide Grand Signior, and into, and from all places  
where, by occasion of the saide trade, they shall happen to arrive or come, whether they be Chyilians,  
Turkes, Gentiles or other, and into, & from all seas, riuers, portes, regions, territories, dominions,  
coasts & places, with their shippes, barkes, pinnacles & other vessels, and with such mariners and men,  
as they will lead with them or send for the saide trade, as they shall thinke good at their owne proper  
cost & expences, any law, statute, vylage, or matter whatsoeuer to the contrary notwithstanding. And  
that it shall be lawfull for the said, Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, and to the persons afores-  
said, and to & for the mariners and sea men to be vied & employed in the saide trade and voyage to see  
and place in the tops of their shippes & other vessels the armes of England with the red croffe ouer  
the same, as heretofore they haue vied & red croffe, any matter or thing to the contrary notwithstanding.

And we of our further royal fauor, & of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge & meere motion  
haue graunted, & by these presents doe graunt to the said Edward Osborne, Tho. Smith, Richard  
Staper, & William Garret, their executours & administratoys by these presents, that the said lands,  
territorie &



territories, and dominions of the said Grand Signior, or any of them, shall not be visited, frequented, nor haunted by way of merchandise by any other our subjects during the said terme, contrary to the true meaning of these patents.

And by vertue of our high prerogative to pall (which we will not haue argued or brought in question) we straightly charge and commaunde, and prohibite for vs, our heires, and successours, all our subjects (of what degree or qualitie soeuer they bee) that none of them directly, or indirectly, doe visite, haue, frequent or trade, traffique, or adventure by way of merchandise into, or from any of the Dominions of the said Grand Signior, or other places abovesaid by water or by lande (other then the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, their executors or administrators, or such as shalbe admitted, and nominated as is aforesaid,) without expresse licence, agreement, and consent of the said Governour, and compaigne of the more part of them, wherof the said Governour alwayes to be one, vpon paine of our high indignation, and of forfeiture and losse, as well of the ship and shippes, with the furniture thereof, as also of the goods, merchandizes, and things whatsoever they be of those our subjects which shall attempt, or presume to saile, traffique, or adventure, to or from any the dominions, or places abovesaid, contrary to the prohibition aforesaid: the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of vs our heires and successours, and the other halfe to the vse of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, and the said compaigne, and further to suffer imprisonment during our pleasure, & such other punishment as to vs, or to our high contempt shall seeme meete and conuenient.

And further of our grace speciall, certaine knowledg, and meere motion we haue considered and graunted, and by these patents for vs our heires and successours, doe consider and graunte to the said Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, their executors and administrators, that we our heires and successours during the said terme, will not graunt libertie, licence or power to any person or persons whatsoever, contrary to the tenor of these our letters patents, to saile, passe, trade, or traffique into or from the said dominions of the said Grand Signior or any of them, without the consent of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard & William, and such as shalbe named or appointed as aforesaid, or the most of them. And that if at any time hereafter during the said terme, the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, or the survivors of them, shall admit or nominate any of our subjects to be partners & adventurers in the said trade to the number of 12. or vnder as aforesaid, that then we our heires and successours at the instance and petition of the said Edward, Thomas, Richard, and William, or the survivors of them in our Chancerie to be made, and vpon the sight of these presents, will graunt, and make to the said Edward, Thomas, Richard and William, or to the survivors of them, & to such persons as shalbe nominated or appointed by their speciall names, surnames, and additions as is aforesaid, new letters patents vnder the great seale of England in due forme of lawe with like agreement, clauses, prohibitions, prouisoos and articles, (mutatis mutandis) as in these our letters patents are contained, for, and during the residue of the said terme of 7. yeeres then remaining vnexpired. And that the sight of these presents shalbe sufficient warrant to the Lord Chancellor, or Lord keeper of the great seale for the time being, for the making, sealing and passing of such newe letters patents, without further writte or warrant for the same to be required, had, or obtained.

And the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, and Richard Staper, and William Garret and such others as shalbe so nominated and appointed, as is aforesaid, so be of their trade or compaigne, shall yeerely during 6. of the last yeeres of the said 7. yeeres, lade out of this our Realme, and bring home yeerely, for, and in the feate and trade of merchandizing aforesaid, so much goods and merchandizes, as the custome, and subside inwards and outwards, shall amount in the whole to the summe of 500. li. yeerely. So that the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret and the said persons so to be nominated as is aforesaid, or any of them, or their shippe or shippes be not barred, stayed, restrained or let by any reasonable occasion from the said trade or traffique, and so that the said shippe or shippes doe not perish by any misfortune, or be spoiled by the way in their voyage.

And further, the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, and such others as shall bee appointed as aforesaid to bee of their said trade or compaigne, shall giue notice vnto the Lord Admirall of England, or to some of the principall officers of the Admiralte for the time being, of such shippe or shippes as they shall set forth in the same voyage, and of the number of mariners appointed to goe in the same ship or shippes, by the space of threene dayes before the setting or going forth of the same shippe or shippes. And also the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, and such other as shall bee by them the said Edward and Richard, nominated to bee of the said trade,

shall

shall not be visited, straying  
the said terme, contrary

have argued or brought in  
our heires, and successours,  
of them directely, or indi-  
rectly, by way of marchandise into  
the said shires, by water  
courses, their executors, or ad-  
ministrators, without expresse licence,  
writte, or part of them, tubercot  
of them, and of forfeiture and  
of the goods, marchandizes,  
of the said shires, or presume to saile, tra-  
vel, or contrary to the prohibition  
of them, and successours, and the  
said company, and the said  
punishment as to vs, for so

motion we have condiscen-  
dered, and condiscend and grant  
our administrators, that we our  
grace, or power to any person  
to saile, trade, or tra-  
vel, without the consente-  
ment, or appointment as aforesaid  
of the said Edward,  
we nominate any of our sub-  
jects, or vnder as aforesaid is saide,  
the said Edward, Thomas, Ri-  
chard, and upon the sight of  
the said Edward, and William, or to the  
said by their speciall names,  
in the great seale of England in  
the said articles, (mutatis mu-  
tandis) of the said terme of  
years, shall be sufficient warrant  
for the making, sealing,  
and warrant for the same to be

and William Garret and  
of their trade or companie,  
in this our Realme, and bying  
so much goods and man-  
ner, amount in the whole to the  
said Smith, Richard Staper,  
and, or any of them, or their  
heires, or successours, on any  
occasion from the said  
any misfortune, or be spo-

harde Staper, and Wil-  
liam Garret, and any  
of their trade or companie,  
of some of the principall officers  
of the said shires, by the  
said ship or shippes, by the  
said company or shippes. And also  
William Garret, and any  
of the said trade,  
shall

shall and will as the setting forth of these shippes, or shippes, for the same voyage, permit, and  
suffer the Master of the Ordnance of vs, our heires, and successours, or some others, our of their  
principall officers of the Ordnance, to take a view of the number and quantity of such Ordnance,  
powder, and munition, as shall be caried in the said shippes, or shippes, and shall also at the returne  
of the same shippes, or shippes, suffer a view to be taken, and upon request made, make an accompe  
to the said officers of our Ordnance, of the expenses, and waikes of the said Ordnance, powder,  
and munition, so to be caried in the same shippes, or shippes.

Provided alwaies, that if any of the said trade or companie, or their seruants, factors, or sailers,  
in any shippes by them laden, shall commit any yctracie or outrage upon the seas, and that, if the said  
companie or societie shall not, or doe not, within reasonable time, after complaint made, or notice  
given to the said companie, or to any of them, either facilitate or recompence the parties that so shall  
become to be robbed, or spoiled by any of the said companie, or sailers, in the said shippes, or els shall  
not doe their endeavour to the uttermost of their reasonable power, to haue the parties so offending  
punished for the same their offences, that then, and from thenceforth, these present letters patents  
shall be utterly void, cease, and determine.

Provided like wise, that if it shall hereafter appeare unto vs, our heires, or successours, that this  
grant, or the continuance thereof in the whole, or in any part thereof, shall not be profitable to vs,  
our heires, our successours, or to this our Realme, that then, and from thence forth, upon, and after  
one full yeeres warning, to be given unto the said companie, or to the Governour thereof, by vs,  
our heires, or successours, this present grant shall cease, be void, and determine, to all intents, con-  
structions, and purposes.

Provided also, that we, our heires, and successours, from time to time, during the said 7. yeeres,  
may lawfully nominate, appoint, and authorize two persons, being fit men, to be of the said com-  
panie, and for want of lacke of them, two others to be aduencurers in the said trade, for such stocke  
and summe of monie, as they shall put in, so that the said persons to be nominated, or authorized,  
shall be contributory to all charges of the said trade & aduventure indifferently, according to their  
stocks, and as other aduencurers of the said trade, shall doe for their stocks, and so that like wise  
they doe obserue the orders of the said companie, allowable by this our grant: and that such per-  
sons so to be appointed, by vs, our heires, or successours, shall, and may, with the said companie, and  
fellowship, use the trade and seate of marchandise aforesaid, and all the liberties and privileges  
heretofore granted, according to the meaning of these our letters patents, any thing in these  
our letters patents contained to the contrary notwithstanding.

And further of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, we haue condescen-  
ded, and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires, and successours, doe condescend, and grant  
to the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, their execu-  
tors, and administrators, that if at the ende of the said terme of seven yeeres, it shall seeme meere,  
and convenient unto the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William  
Garret, or the suruiuer of them, that this present grant shall be continued: and if that also it shall  
appeare unto vs, our heires, or successours, that the continuance thereof shall not be preiudiciall, or  
hurtfull to this our Realme, that then we, our heires, or successours, at the instance, and petition of  
the said Edward Osborne, Thomas Smith, Richard Staper, and William Garret, or the suruiuer  
of them, so be made to vs, our heires, or successours, will grant and make to the said Edward, Tho-  
mas, Richard, and William, or the suruiuer of them, and to such other persons, as so shall be by the  
said Edward, and Richard nominated and appointed, new letters patents, vnder the great seale of  
England, in due forme of lawe, with like covenants, grantes, clauses, and articles, as in these pre-  
sents are contained, or with addition of other necessarie articles, or change of these in some part, for  
and during the full terme of seven yeeres, then next following, dwelling, and strictly comman-  
ding, and charging all and singular our Admirals, Viceadmirals, Iudices, Spaiers, Sheriffs,  
Chiefes, Constables, Balliues, and all & singular our other officers, ministers, liege men, and  
subjects whatsoeuer, to be aiding, sauouring, helping, and assisting unto the said Governour, and  
companie, and their successours, and to their Deputies, officers, seruants, allies, and ministers,  
and every of them, in executing, and enjoying the premises, as well on land as on sea, from time  
to time, and at all times when you, or any of you, shall be hereunto requirred, any statute, acte, ordi-  
nance, proclamacon, or restraint heretofore had, made, set forth, ordained, or provided, or  
any other matter, cause, or thing to the contrary, in any wise notwithstanding.

In witness whereof, we haue caused these our letters to be made patents, witness our selfe, at  
Westminster, the 11. day of September, in the 23. yeere of our Raigne.

The

The Queenes commision vnder her great seale, to her seruant  
*Master William Harebrowne, to be her Maiesties Ambassadour, or*  
 Agent, in the partes of Turkie. 1582.



Elizabetha, Dei Optimi Maximi, conditoris, & rectoris vnici clementia, Anglie, Francie, & Hibernie Regina, veræ fidei contra Idololatrias falsæ Christi-  
 nomem profitentes inuicta & potentissima propugnatrix, vniuersis, & singu-  
 lis præsentibus has literas visuris, & inspecturis, salutem. Cùm augustissimus, &  
 inuictissimus princeps, Zuldán Murad Can, Turcici Regni Dominator po-  
 tentissimus, imperijque Orientis Monarcha, sedus, amicitiamque nobiscum  
 percellerit, iuraueritque, (quam nos perpetuis futuris temporibus, quantum in nobis erit, inui-  
 olatè seruare destinamus) ad eamque magis ornandam, illustrandamque concesserit idem augu-  
 stissimus Imperator subditis nostris liberam suam merces exercendi rationem in omnibus Mu-  
 sulmanici imperij sui partibus, cum tam ampla priuilegiorum concessione, quam alijs bonis  
 principibus, socijs, & federatis nostris largitus est, quorum priuilegiorum donationem, nos  
 gratam, acceptamque habentes, pari cum animi gratitudine colere certum habemus, delibera-  
 tumque, nihil in votis habentes potius, quam bonorum erga nos principum animos beneuolos  
 honoratissima mente fouere, promereri que: Sciatís, nos de singulari erga nos, obsequiumque  
 nostrum, fide, obseruantia, prudentia, & dexteritate multum nobis chari Guilielmi Harebrowne,  
 è custodibus corporis nostri vnici, plurimum confidentes, cum Oratorem, Nuntium, Procura-  
 torem, & Agentem nostrum, certum, & indubitatum, ordinamus, facimus, & constituimus, per  
 præsentés: dantes ei, & concedentes potestatem, autoritatem, nomine nostro, & pro nobis  
 prædictum amicitie fœdus confirmandi, priuilegiorum concessionem in manus suas capiendi,  
 ratamque habendi, omnibus & singulis subditis nostris, Musulmanicis oris, terrisque negotian-  
 tibus, pro Maiestatis nostræ autoritate præcipiendi, mandandique, vt sint in suis commercijs,  
 quamdiu, quotiesque cum Musulmanicis versantur, dictorum priuilegiorum præscripto ob-  
 temperantes in omnibus, ac per omnia, ad obsequia tanta amicitia digna se componentes, ac  
 in delinquentes in fœdus nostrum iustitiam exequatur. Potestatem, & autoritatem ei damus in  
 omnes, & singulos subditos nostros in quibuscunque locis, & partibus Musulmanici Imperij  
 dominationi subiectis negotiantes, constituendi emporiorum suorum sedes, in quibus voluerit  
 portubus, & ciuitatibus, in alijs vetandi, in constitutis autem emporiorum sedibus, consules en-  
 randi, leges, præceptionesque ferendi, condendique, quarum ex præscripto, dicti nostri subditi,  
 & eorum quilibet sese publicè, & priuatim gerant, eorum violatores corrigendi, castigandique,  
 omnia denique & singula faciendi, perimplendique, quæ ad dictorum subditorum nostrorum  
 honestam gubernationem, & commercij exercendi in illis partibus rationem pertinent, pro-  
 mittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regio, nos ratum, gratum, & firmum habituras, quæcumque dic-  
 tus Orator, & Agens noster, à legibus nostris non abhorrentia in præmissis aut præmissorum  
 aliquo fecerit. In cuius rei testimonium, has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes, & sigilli nostri  
 impressione iussimus muniri. Datum è castro nostro Windsoꝛie, 20. die Mensis Nouembꝛie.  
 Anno Iesu Christi, 1582. regni verò nostri, vicefimo quarto.

*¶ The same in English.*

Elizabeth, by the clemencie of the most good and most great God, the only creator and gouer-  
 nour of all things, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, inuincible, and most mightie  
 defender of the true faith, against all Idolaters falsly professing the name of Christ, to all and sin-  
 gular persons to whose sight and view, these our present letters may come, greeting. Whereas  
 the most renowned, and most inuincible Prince, Zuldán Murad Can, the most mighty gouernour  
 of the kingdome of Turkie, and Monarch of the East Empire, hath entered into league and friend-  
 ship with vs, (which we for our part, as much as lieth in vs, do purpose solemnly, and inuolably  
 to keepe in all times to come,) and whereas for the better countenancing and authorising of the  
 same, the foresaid renowned Emperour hath granted vnto our subjects free libertie of traf-  
 fike, in all the partes of his sacred Empire, with as ample, and large a graunt of priuileg-  
 ges, as is giuen to other good Princes, our neighbours, and confederats, the graunt of  
 which priuilegges, wee taking very thankfully, and acceptably, are certaintly, and thorowly  
 determined to keepe and maintaine, with the like goodnes and curtesie of minde, desiring  
 nothing more, then with an honourable respect to nourish, and deserue the beneuolent affec-  
 tions of good Princes toward vs: Knowe yee, that wee thinking well, and hauing good con-  
 fidence in the singular trustines, obedience, willdome, and disposition, of our wellbeloued seruant  
 William Harebrowne, one of the Esquires of our bodie, towardes vs, and our seruice, doebv  
 these

e, to her seruant  
Ambassadour or

toris vnici clementia, An-  
Idololatræ falsò Christi  
matric, vniuersis, & singu-  
Cùm augustissimus, &  
ici Regni Dominator po-  
amicitiâque nobiscum  
uantum in nobis erit, in-  
e concefferit idem augu-  
rationem in omnibus My-  
fessionem, quàm alijs bonis  
giorum donationem, nos  
ertum habemus, delibera-  
cipum animos beneuolos  
i erga nos, obsequiûmque  
i Guilielmi Harebrowne,  
orem, Nuntium, Procura-  
imus, & constituimus, per  
mine nostro, & pro nobis  
m in manus suas capiendi,  
is oris, semisque negotian-  
vt sint in suis commercijs,  
ilegiorum: præscripto ob-  
digna se componentes, ac  
: autoritatem ei damus in  
ibus Musulmanici Imperiij  
n sedes, in quibus voluerit  
orum sedibus, consules en-  
cripto, dicti nostri subdij,  
corrigendi, castigandique,  
um subditorum nostrorum  
rationem pertinent, pro-  
habituuras, quæcumque di-  
ærmis aut præmissorum  
us patentes, & sigilli nostri  
b. die Mensis Nouembrijs.

the only creator and gover-  
nour, and most mightie  
king of Christ, to all and e-  
uery, greeting. Whereas  
the most mightie gouernour  
hath entered into league and friend-  
ship solemnly, and inuolubly  
with us, and authorizing of the  
said subjects free libertie of traf-  
fike, and graunt of priuiledges  
of confederats, the graunt of  
the same, and thorough  
the beneuolent affecti-  
on, and hauing good con-  
sideration of our wellbeloued seruants  
and our seruice, doeth

these presents make, ordaine, and constitute him, our true and vndoubted Mayor, Spelling, De-  
putie, and Agent, Giuing and granting vnto him, power, and authoritie, in our name, and for vs,  
to confirme the foresaid league of friendship, to take into his bandes, and to ratifie the grant of the  
priuiledges, and to commaunde, and enforce by the authoritie of our Spalckie, all and singular  
our subjects, trading and dealing in any of the coastes, and Kingdomes of that Empire, that as  
long as they remaine in traffike with his subiects, they be obedient to the prescription and order  
of the foresaid priuiledges, applying themselves in all things, and thorough all things, to such  
duties, and seruices, as appertaine to so great a league, and friendship, and the offenders against  
this our league, to receiue iustice, and punishment accordingly. We further gaue vnto him power  
and authoritie, ouer all and singular our subiects, dealing, and vsing traffike in any place or part  
whatsoeuer, subject to the gouernement of that Empire, to appoint the places of their traf-  
fikes, in what haven or citty it shall please him, and to prohibite them from all other places, and  
wheresoeuer their traffikes are appointed to be kept, there to make and create Consuls, or Gouer-  
nours, to enact lawes, and statutes, by the vertue and tenor whereof, all our foresaid subiects, and  
euery one of them, shall boch publikely, and priuately vse and behaue themselves, to correct and  
punish the breachers of those lawes: and last of all, to doe and fulfill all and singular things whoso-  
euer, which shall seeme requisite and conuenient for the honest and orderly gouernement of our  
said subiects, and of the manner of their traffike in those parts, Promising assuredly, and in the word  
of a Prince, that whatsoeuer shall be done of our said Mayor, and Agent, in all or in any of the pre-  
misses, not repugnant and contrary to our lawes, shall be accepted, ratified, and confirmed by vs.  
In witness whereof, we haue caused these our letters to be made patents, and our seale thereun-  
to to be appended, Giuen at our Castle of Windsor, the 20. day of Nouember, in the yeere of  
Christ, 1582. and of our raigne the 24.

The first voyage or iourney, made by Master Lawrence Alder-  
sey, Marchant of London, to the Cities of Ierusalem, and Tripolis, &c.  
In the yeere, 1581. Penned and set downe by himselfe,



Departed from London, the first day of April, in the yeere of our Lorde, 1581,  
and the next morning, being Sunday, I arrived at Grauesende, where I found  
a Craier laden with beere, then ready to depart, for Flushing: I, and the companie  
that was with me, staid there that day, vntill one of the clocke in the after-  
noone the next day: and then I, and Thomas God, with foure or five more that  
were in the companie, to goe to Antwerpe, imbarked our selues in that Craier,  
and so set safte, and departed: but the winde being quite contrary, we were set on shoare, a mile or  
two before we came to Quinborough: in the euening, we made our way to the towne, so that we  
lay in the streets all that night, till two of the clocke the next morning, and then by chance Tho-  
mas God happened vpon a tenants house of his, by whome we were brought to Quinborough,  
where we were well entertained, and well refreshed our selues.

Upon Wednesday, the fift of April, we tooke the seas againe, (the wind being some what good)  
and it serued vs so well, that we arrived at Flushing vpon the next day, at foure of the clocke in the  
afternoone. Upon Friday in the afternoone, I arrived at Antwerpe, and hauing dispatched my  
busines there by Saturday, I tooke my passage for Dort, where I arrived vpon Sunday, the  
ninth of the same moneth, staying there but that night: and in the morning, hauing found companie  
that went to Wezell, I tooke my passage with them in a small boate, the boate being heauie  
laden, & soe pestered with passengers, and but one man and a boy, to guide the same: and the  
water which being very rough, I caused them to land me at Gorcom, but foure mile from Dort,  
and there staid that night, and the next day I tooke a stronger boate, better manned, and lesse pe-  
stered, in which boate, I thanke God, I was safely deliuered at Neumegen.

From thence, I tooke my passage to Collen, in a stronge hoy, laden with household stuffe, and  
some other merchandize, and about threelue passengers, besides my selfe. From Neumegen, we  
departed vpon Wednesday, the 12. of April, with very scant wind, by reason whereof, we were de-  
ry long vpon the way, and many times set on ground in great danger, besides the perill of the  
Spalecontents, who were vpon both sides of the riuier. One euening, as we lay at anker, the wind  
being contrary, there came about threene of the Spalecontents, in a great ship boate, and thought  
to haue boorded vs, but our watch perceiuing them comming, called vs, the rest of our companie  
being all ready and appointed for them, discharged a peece or two at them: they nothing affraid,  
still

til came vpon vs, although those 2. peeces were discharged, & I being fast in sleepe in my Cabbin, was therewith awake and asking what the matter was, one told me, that the Spale contents were coming aboard vs: whereupon I being some what amazed, rose out of my Cabbin, and betooke me to my sword, for that was the best weapon I had, and by I went to the top of the hatches, and when I perceiued them comming, I procured halfe a dosen to discharge at once, to let them vnderstand, that there were those in the ship, that would bid them welcome: and when those peeces were all at one instant discharged, they were amazed, and staied, and wist not what to doe. Then I, with the best dutch I had, called to them, and asked them wherfore they came out, they should be welcome to vs, with the best cheere that we were able to make, and so shot off another volley, and shewed our selues with long pipes, swoords, and other weapons, in such order, that they went their waies, and would not accept our entertainment, nor thanke vs for our good will: we were four daies in danger of them, the wind was to contrary. Then at the last, we procured the Master to go on shoare, to hire a couple of hoyses to rowe the ship, which he did, and vpon Sunday, the 16. of the same moneth, we landed at Wezell, and there hired a waggon, to goe ouer land to Collen, because I had halfe to be at Venice, before this moneth were out.

Vpon Tuesday, the 17. of Aprill, I set from Wezell by lande, and that day I dined at Dui- burge, which is three Dutch miles from Wezell, and I lay all night at Thistleborough, which is within five miles of Collen, and vpon Wednesday I came to Collen, about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, and staied there till Tuesday, the 24. of the same moneth, and then set to wardes Mentz.

The monuments of the Cite of Collen scene by Aldersj.

The monuments which I sawe at Collen, be these. I sawe the tombe (as they say) of the three Kings of Collen, which are very faire, inclosed in copper, and Masse said in it euery day: it is in the great Church of Collen.

I was also in the Church of S. Vrula, where I found the people at a sermon, made by a Jesuite: to which sermon, he sedes the people, here rejoyced all the schollers of the said Jesuite, who haue their learning there for nothing: I reckoned and numbred them, to be fixe hundred and more, as they came out, and yet I suppose there are as many more, as I numbred, which went out at an other doore of the Church, so that I could not number them all. Also I sawe the tombe of S. Vrula there, and the tombe of the English King, that was her husband, whose skuls are kept in silver for great monuments, and the plate of silver is made to open, so that euery booke that will, may see the skuls: and there are the bones and skuls of a great many of other virgins, and ladies of England, to the number of ten thousand, the skuls of all which Ladies, were layned also, and the skuls of all the virgins were gilt, and put in cases of purple, and crimson velvet: also the bones of S. Vrula, and most of the bones of the Ladies, with the bones of the Pope, that came with them from Rome, (as they say) be all gilt.

This S. Vrula was a Queene of Wales, and her husband was a King, of a Kings some of England, and his name was Enterius, which were all statue, comming homewardes from Rome, at Collen, with the Pope in their companie, that had christened them at Rome, (for they were all heathen people before) and thinking to be their conductoꝝ home, was slaine with them. There I sawe also (as they told me) the wedding ring of S. Vrula: there are the bones and skuls also of the seven brethren, and the mother of them, mentioned in the Machabees, which were all martyred, for not obeying the tyrants commaundement. I sawe also one of the pots, that (by their report) had water in it at the marriage in Cana of Galile, which Christ turned into wine: and I dranke out of the same pot, which is made of white marble, and holdeth about a gallon, and the foot of it is trimmed with silke of diuers colours.

From Collen, I was commended by George Castler to Augusta, to one Elias Gensle, to wardes which place I went vpon Tuesday the 24. of Aprill, and in the way, I sawe many faire cities, and haue cities, wherein I entred not, as Punt, which is foure Dutch miles from Collen.

The Castle of Drageyfield, is a mile from Punt, which standeth vpon a very high mountaine, and is very strong, and of each side of it, is a Castle of two more: it is built within the rocke, so as it is insynceivable, if it were withall well fortified. Then came we to Andernaga, a great Cite, which is not farre from the Castle of Drageyfield: from thence to Coplands, which is also a great Cite: thence to S. Cure, and Elhelde, two great Cities also: and then to the house of the Pallgraue; which is vpon the river of Rhene, which is not to be come vnto, but by water.

Vpon Sunday, the nine and twentieth of Aprill, at twelue of the clocke, I came to Mentz, where I staied but till thre of the same day, and then tooke passage for Vpnam, where I lay all that night.

Mentz

ing fast in sleepe in my Cab-  
la me, that the pale contents  
role out of my Cabbin, and  
I went to the top of the bay  
to dislodge at once, to let  
me welcome: and when that  
was, and wist not what to do,  
therefoze they came not, they  
make, and so shot off another  
spoons, in such order, that they  
take vs for our good will: we  
at the last, we procured the  
they be did, and upon Sunday,  
waggon, to goe ouer land in  
out.

and that day I dined at Dui-  
at Thistleborough, which  
n, about foure of the clocke in  
mech, and then set towarde

mbre (as they say) of the three  
said in it every day: it is in

t a sermon, made by a Jesu-  
iters of the said Iesuite, who  
hem, to be sixe hundred and  
as I number, which went  
in all. Also I sawe the tombe of  
ulband, whose skulls are open  
to open, so that every body  
great many of other virgins,  
all which Ladies, were clothed  
of purple, and crimson velvet  
with the bones of the Pope,

a King, or a Kings soune of  
ing homewards from Rome,  
at Rome, (for they were all  
saine with them. There I  
the bones and skulls also of the  
s, which were all martyrs,  
the pots, that (by their reposes)  
ned into wine: and I dranke  
a gallon, and the foot of it is

sta, to one Elias Genese, to  
the way, I sawe many faire  
Dutch miles from Collen,  
upon a very high mountaine,  
built within the rocks, so as  
to Andermaga, a great Citie,  
Coplans, which is also a  
also: and then to the house of  
be come vnto, but by way

cke, I came to Mentz, where  
pnam, where I lay all that

Mentz

Mentz is a very great Citie, and beautifull: the Bishopp thereof is in dignitie, and authoritie, a  
great Prince, his Pallatice like a Princes Pallatice, his barges like dwelling houses, so large,  
and so full as it were of Chambers, that euery one of his seruants hath his doore, and therunto  
his locke and key of his Chamber in the barge: they haue in the saide barge a dining Chamber,  
walkes, great tables to play at vice of cardes, and much moze then I speake of, because I sawe  
not all.

Upon Thursday, the thirde day of May, I came to Augusta, where I deliuered the letter I had  
to paster Ienise, from paster Cassler, whome I found very willing to please me, in any thing  
that I could or would reasonably demaund. He first furnished me with a horse to Venice, for my  
money, and then tooke me with him a walking, to shewe me the Citie, for that I had a day to tarry  
there, for him that was to be my guide.

He shewed me first the stee house, which is very faire, and beautifull: then he brought me to  
the finest garden, and orchard, that euer I sawe in my life: for there was in it a place for Canarie  
birdes, as large as a faire Chamber, trimmed with wyer both aboue and beneath, with fine little  
branches of trees, for them to sit in, which was full of those Canarie birdes. There was such an  
other for Turtle dooves: also there were two pigeon houses, tyning to them, hauing in them  
fiftye both of Turtle dooves, and pigeons. In the same garden also, were sixe or seuen fishponds, all  
raised about, and full of very good fish. Also, seuen or eight fine fountaines, of water spyrings, of di-  
uers fashions: as for fruit, there wanted none of all sortes, as oranges, figges, raisons, wall-  
nuts, grapes, besides apples, peares, all birds, small nuts, and such other fruit, as we haue in  
England.

The description  
of Augusta  
in Germany.

Then did he bring me to the water tower of the same Citie, that by a sleight and deuise, hath  
the water brought vp as high, as any Church in the towne, and to tell you the strange beauties of  
all, it passeth my capacitie. Then he brought me to another very faire garden, called the shooters  
hole, where are butts for the long bowe, the crosse bowe, the stone bowe, the long peece, and for di-  
uers other exercises moze.

After this, we walked about the walls of the Citie, where is a great, broade, and deepe ditch,  
upon one side of the towne, so full of fish, as euer I sawe any pond in my life, and it is reserved  
onely for the Staters of the Citie. And upon the other side of the Citie, is also a pleasaure place all  
greene, wherein Deere are kept, and when it pleaseth the Staters to hunt for their pleasure, thi-  
ther they resorte, and haue their courses with Grayhounds, which are kept for that pur-  
pose.

The fift of May, I departed from Augusta, towards Venice, and came thither upon Wednesday,  
day, the thirteenth of the same moneth. It is needles to speake of the height of the mountaine,  
that I passed ouer, and of the danger thereof, it is so well knowne already to the world: the height  
of them is maruelous, and I was the space of sixe daies in passing them.

Venice.

I came to Venice at the time of a Faire, which lasted fouretee daies, wherein I sawe very  
many, and faire betwes of wares. I came thither too soone for the first passage, which went away  
from Venice, about the seventh or eighth of May, and with them about thre score pilgrims, which  
shipp was cast away at a towne called Estria, two miles from Venice, and all the men in her, sa-  
uing thirtie, or thereabout, lost.

Within eight daies after fell Corpus Christi day, which was a day amongst them of processio-  
on, in which was shewed the plate, and treasure of Venice, which is esteemed to be worth two mil-  
lions of pounds, but I doe not accompt it worth halfe a quarter of that money, except there be  
moze then I sawe. To speake of the sumptuousnes of the Copes, and Vestments of the Church,  
I leaue, but the truth is, they be very sumptuous, many of them set all ouer with pearle, & made  
of clothe of golde. And for the Iesuites, I thinke there be as many at Venice, as there be in Col-  
len.

The number of Iewes, is there thought to be 1000, who dwell in a certaine place of the Ci-  
tie, & haue also a place, to which they resorte to pray, which is called the Jewes Synagogue. They  
all, and their offspring, vse to weare red caps, (for so they are commanded) because they may there,  
by be knowne from other men. For my farther knowledge of these people, I went into their Si-  
nagogue upon a Saturday, which is their Sabbath day: and I founde them in their seruite of  
papers, very deuout: they receiue the true bookes of Moses, and honour them, by carrying them  
about their Church, as the Papistes doe their crosse.

The number  
of Iewes in  
Venice.

Their Synagogue is in forme round, and the people sit round about it, & in the middell, there  
is a place for him that readeth to the rest: as for their apparell, all of them weare a large white  
labour ouer their garment, which reacheth from their head, downe to the ground.

The

The *Palmes* they sing as we doe, hauing no image, nor vsing any manner of *Idolatrie*: there error is, that they beleue not in *Christ*, nor yet receiue the *New Testament*. This *Citie of Venice* is very faire, and greatly to be commended, where in is good order for all things: and also it is very strong, and populous: it standeth vpon the maine sea, and hath many *Ilands* about it, that belong to it.

To tell you of the *Duke of Venice*, & of the *Seigniorie*: there is one chosen that euer beareth the name of a *Duke*, but in truth, he is but seruant to the *Seigniorie*, for of himselfe he can do little: it is no other wise with him, then with a *Priest*, that is at *Mass* vpon a festiual day, which putting on his golden garment, seemeth to be a great man, but if any man come vnto him, and craue some friendshipp at his handes, he will say, you must goe to the *Maisters of the parill*, for I can not pleasure you, ocher wise then by preferring of your suite: and so it is with the *Duke of Venice*, if any man hauing a *suete*, come to him, and make his complaint, and deliuer his supplication, it is not in him to helpe him, but he will tell him, you must come this day, or that day, and then I will preferre your suite to the *Seigniorie*, and doe you the best friendshipp that I may. Further more, if any man bring a letter vnto him, he may not open it, but in the presence of the *Seigniorie*, and they are to see it first, which being read, perhaps they will deliuer it to him, perhaps not. Of the *Seigniorie* there be about three hundred, and about fortye of the *ppriete Councill* of *Venice*, who usually are attired in gownes of crimisen *Satten*, or crimisen *Damask*, when they sitte in *Council*.

In the *Citie of Venice*, no man may weare a weapon, except he be a souldier for the *Seigniorie*, or a scholler of *Padua*, or a gentleman of great countenance, and yet he may not doe that without licence.

The crosses of  
the *Seigniorie* of  
*Venice*.

As for the women of *Venice*, they be rather monsters, then women. Euery *Shoemakers* or *Tailors* wife, will haue a gowne of silke, and one to carie vpon her traine, wearing their shoes very nere halfe a yard high from the ground: if a stranger meete one of them, he will surely thinke, by the face that she goeth with, that he meeteth a *Ladie*.

This cross  
bring at *Venice*  
for *Jerusalem*

I departed from this *Citie of Venice*, vpon *Whitsommer* day, being the foure and twentieth of *June*, and thinking that the *Shippe* would the next day depart, I stayed, and laye a *Shippeboard* all night, and we were made beleue from time to time, that we should this day, and that day depart, but we taried still, till the foureteenth of *July*, and then with scant winde we sette saile, and sailed that day, and that night, not about fiftie *Italian* miles: and vpon the threene day at night, the winde turned flat contrarie, so that the *Maister* knewe we not wher to goe: and about the fifth houre of the night, which we reckon to be about one of the *clocke* after midnight, the *Pilot* descried a saile, and at last perceiued it to be a *Galle of the Turkes*, whereupon we were in great feare.

The *Maister* being a wise fellowe, and a good sayler, beganne to deuise howe to escape the danger, and to lose little of our way: and while hee he, and all of vs, were in our dumps, God sent vs a merry gale of winde, that we ranne three trope and tenne leagues before it was twelue a *clocke* the next day, and in fixe dayes after, we were seuen leagues past *Zanra*: and vpon *Whitsunday* morning, being the thre and twentieth of the same moneth, we came to the sight of *Candia* which day the winde came contrarie, with great blastes, and stormes, vntill the eight and twentieth of the same moneth: in which time, the *Mariners* cried out vpon me, because I was an *English* man, and saide, I was no good *Christian*, and wisshed that I were in the middell of the *Sea*, saying, that they, and the *Shippe*, were the woyle for me. I answered, cruelly it may well be, for I thinke my selfe the woyle creature in the woyle, and consider you your selues also, as I doe my selfe, and then vsed your discretion. The *Friers* preached, and the sermon being done, I was demanded whether I did vnderstand him: I answered, yea, and tolde the *Frier* himselfe, thus you saide in your sermon, that we were not all good *Christians*: or els it were not possible for vs to haue such weather: to which I answered, be you well assured, that we are not in deede all good *Christians*, for there are in the *Shippe* some, that holde very vnchristian opinions: so by that time I satisfied him, although (they saide) that I would not see, when they sayd the *procellion*, and honoured their images, and prayed to our *Ladie*, and *S. Marke*.

There was also a Gentleman, an *Italian*, which was a passenger in the *Shippe*, and he tolde me what they said of me, because I would not sing *Salue Regina*, and *Aue Maria*, as they did: I told them, that they that prayed to so many, or sought helpe of any other, then of God the *Father*, or of *Iesus Christ* his onely sonne, goe a wrong way to worke, and robbed God of his honour, and brought their owne destructions.

All this was tolde the *Friers*, but I heard nothing of it in thre dayes after: and then at mee

manner of idolatry: there  
ment. This Cite of Ve-  
forz all things: and also  
many Islands about it,

chosen that ever beareth the  
of himselfe he can do litle:  
festiuall day, which putting  
e into him, and craue some  
of the parrish, for I can not  
with the Duke of Venice, if  
liuer his supplication, it is  
that day, and then I will  
at I may. Furthermore, if  
nce of the Seignioye, and  
to him, perhaps not. Of the  
le Counsell of Venice, who  
ke, when they sit in Coun-

a souldier for the Seignio-  
et he may not doe that with

n. Every Shoemakers of  
ine, wearing their shoes very  
em, he will surely thinke, by

ing the foure and twentieth of  
yed, and laye a Shippe down  
uld this day, and that day do  
me winde we sette saille, and  
on the sixteene day at night,  
it to doe: and about the six-  
ter midnighe, the Pilot des-  
whereupon we were in great

deuise howe to escape the  
s, were in our dumps. God  
eagues before it was twelue  
past Zanra: and vpon thur-  
came to the sight of Candia  
f, untill the eight and twen-  
me, because I was an Eng-  
re in the midst of the Sea,  
cruely it may well be, for  
your selues also, as I doe  
the sermon being done, I  
nd tolde the Friar himselfe,  
s; or els it were not possible  
ed, that we are not in derre  
by christian opinions: so for  
when they sayd the pprocell

e in the shippe, and he tolde me  
e Maria, as they did: I tolde  
en of God the Father, of  
ed God of his honour, and

oules after: and then at eue-  
ing

ning prayer, they sent the purser about with the image of our Ladie to carry one to kiss, and I pe-  
ceiving it toene another way from him, and would not see it: yet at last he fetched his course about,  
so that he came to me, and offered it to me as he did to others, but I refused it: wh: vpon there was  
a great sicke the patron and all the friers were tolde of it, and every one said I was a Lutheran, and  
so called me: but two of the friers that were of greatest authoritie, seemed to beare me better good  
will then the rest, and travelled to the patron in my behalf, and made all well againe.

The second day of the we arrived in Cyprus, at a towne called Gyllagh: the people there  
be very rude, and like beasts, and no better, they eat their meat stryng vpon the ground, with the y-  
legs a cross like cattons, they brod for the most part be hard bones, but yet some of them haue layne  
mattraes to lie vpon.

Upon thursdai the right of August we came to Joppa in a small barke, which we hyed betwixt  
Gyllagh and Salina, and could not be suffered to come on land till noone the next day, and then  
we were permitted by the great Basba, who satte vpon the top of a hill to see vs sent away. Being  
come on land, we might not enter into any house for victualles, but were to content our selues with  
our owne provision, and that which we boight to carry with vs was taken from vs. I had a paire  
of stirrups, which I bought at Venice to serue me in my iourney, and trying to make them fit for  
me, when the Basba saw me vpon before the rest of the companie, he sent one to dismount me, and to  
strike me, whereupon I turned me to the Basba, and made a long legge, saying, Grand mercye  
Seignioye, and after a while we were hoisted vpon litle asses, and sent away, with about fiftie light  
hoymen to be our conduct through the wilderness, called Deserta scelix, who made vs good sport  
by the way with they pikes, gunnes, and sauchins,

That day, being St. Laurence day, we came to Rama, which is tenne Italian miles from Jop-  
pa, and there we stayed that night, and payed to the captaine of the castell, every man a chekin,  
which is seven shillings and two pence sterling. So then we had a new gard of souldiers, and left  
the other.

The house we lodged in at Rama, had a doore so low to enter into, that I was faine to creepe  
in, as it were vpon my knees, and within it are thre roomes to lodge travellers that come that way:  
there are no beds, except a man buy a mat, and lay it on the ground, that is all the provision, with-  
out shooles or benches to sit vpon. Our victualles were brought vs out of the towne, as hennes,  
eggs, bread, great store of fruite, as pomegranets, figges, grapes, ynges, and such like, and  
winke, we buye out of the well. The towne it selfe is so ruinated, that I take it rather to be a heape  
of bones then a towne.

Then the next morning we thought to haue gone away, but we could not be permitted that day,  
so we stayed thre till two of the clocke the next morning, and then with a fresh gard of souldiers  
we departed to ward Jerusalem. We had not ridden fixe English miles, but we were encountred  
with a great number of the Arabians, who stayed vs, and would not suffer vs to passe till they had  
somewhat, so it cost vs for all our gard about twentie shillings a man betwixt Joppa and Jeru-  
salem. These Arabians troubled vs often times. Our Truchman that payed the money for vs  
was stricken to done, and his head broken because he would not giue them as much as they as-  
ked: and they that haue refused both him and vs, stood still, and durst doe nothing, which  
was to our cost.

Being come to the of Jerusalem, the maner is to kneele downe, and giue God thanks,  
that it hath pleased him to bring vs to that holy place where he himselfe had bene: and there we  
leaued our horses, and go on foot to the towne, and being come to the gates, there they tooke our  
names, and our fathers names, and so we were permitted to go to our lodgings.

The gouernour of the house met vs a mile out of the towne, and very curiously had vs all wel-  
come, and brought vs to the monastrie. The gates of the citie are all couered with yron, the en-  
trance into the house of the Christians, is a very low and narrow doore, hard of plated with yron,  
and then come we into a very darke entry: the place is a monastrie: there we lay, and dined of free  
cost, we fared reasonable well, the bread and wine was excellent good, the chambers cleane, and all  
the meat well serued in, with cleane linnen.

We lay at the monastrie two dayes, friday and saturday, and then we went to Bethlem with  
two of the of the friers of the house with vs: in the way thither we saw many monuments, as:  
The mountaine where the Angell tooke by Abarucke by the haire, and brought him to Daniel  
in the Lions denne.

The fontaine of the prophet Jeremie.  
The place where the wise men mette that went to Bethlem to worship Christ, where is a foun-  
taine of stone.

CYPRUS.  
Gyllagh.

Joppa.

The Basba of  
Joppa.

Rama.

Crosses of  
the Arabians.

His arrival  
in the sight of  
Jerusalem.

The monas-  
teries in and  
about Jeru-  
salem.



Being come to Bethlem we saw the place where Christ was borne, which is not a chapel with two altars, whereupon they say masse: the place is built with gray marble, and hath bene beautifull, but now it is partly decayed.

Nere thereto is the sepulchre of the innocents slaine by Herod, the sepulchre of Paul, of Jerome, and of Eusebius.

Also a litle from this monasterie is a place vnder the ground, where the virgin Mary abode with Christ when Herod sought him, to destroy him.

We stayed at Bethlem that night, and the next day we went from thence to the mountaines of Judea, which are about eight miles from Jerusalem, where are the ruines of an olde monasterie. In the mid way from the monasterie to Jerusalem is the place where John Baptist was borne, being now an olde monasterie, and cattle kept in it. Also a mile from Jerusalem is a place called Inuentio sancte crucis, where the wood was found that made the crosse.

In the citie of Jerusalem we saw the hall where Pilate sat in iudgement when Christ was condemned, the staires whereof are at Rome, as they tolde vs. A litle from the one is the house where the virgyn Mary was borne.

There is also the piscina of silpooe, where the sicke folkes were healed, which is by the walles of Jerusalem, but the poole is now dry.

The mount of Caluaria is a great church, and within the dooze thereof, which is litle, and barred with yron, and fine great holes in it to looke in, like the holes of sauerne doozes in London, they be that are appointed to receive our money with a carpet vnder them vpon a banke of stone, and theye legs a crosse like carols: hauing paid our money, we are permitted to go into the church: right against the church doze is the graue where Christ was buried, with a great long stone of white marble ouer it, and railed about, the outside of the sepulchre is very foule, by means that euery man scraues his name and marke vpon it, and is ill kept.

Within the sepulchre is a partition, and in the further part thereof is a place like an altar, where they say masse, and at the dooze thereof is the waite whereupon the an gell sat when he said to Mary, He is risen, which stone was also rolled to the dooze of the sepulchre.

The altar stone within the sepulchre is of white marble, the place able to containe but foure persons, right ouer the sepulchre is a deuill or lanterne for light, and ouer that a great loue, such as we in England in ancient houses. There is also the chapell of the sepulchre, and in the mids thereof is a canopy as it were of a bed, with a great sort of Calbridge egges hanging at it, with tapers of like and lamps.

Behinde the sepulchre is a litle chapell for the Chaldeans and Syrians.

Vpon the right hand coming into the church is the tombe of Baldwine king of France, and of his sonne: and in the same place the tombe of Helchise dech.

There is a chapell also in the same church erected to S. Helen, through which we go by to the place where Christ was crucified: the staires are fiftie steps high, there are two altars in it: before the high altar is the place where the crosse stood, the hole whereof is trimmed about with siluer, and the depth of it is halfe a mans arme deepe: the rent also of the mountaine there to be seene, in the creuis whereof a man may put his arme.

Vpon the other side of the mount of Caluaria is the place where Abrahamsould haue sacrificed his sonne. Where also is a chapell, and the place paved with stones of diuers colours.

There is also the house of Amas the high priest, and the Olive tree whereunto Christ was borne when he was whipt. Also the house of Caiphas, and by it the prison where Christ was kept, which is but the roome of one man, and hath no light but the opening of the dooze.

Withouthe Jerusalem in the ballie of Iosaphat, is a church vnder the ground, like to the Synagogue in Pauls, where the sepulchre of the virgyn Mary is: the staires be very broad, and vpon the staires going downe are two sepulchres: vpon the left hand Ierh Iosaphat, and vpon the right hand Ierh Iosaphat and Anna, the father and mother of the virgyn Mary.

Going out of the valley of Iosaphat, we came to mount Oliuet, where Christ praied vnto his father before his death: and there is to be seene (as they tolde me) the water and bloud that fell from the eyes of Christ. A litle higher vpon the same mount is the place where the Apostles slept, and watched not. At the foot of the mount is the place where Christ was imprisoned.

Vpon the mountaine also is the place where Christ stood when he wept ouer Jerusalem, and where he ascended into heauen.

After hauing seene all these monuments, I with my company set from Jerusalem, the 20 day of August, and came againe to Ioppa the 22 of the same moneth, where we took shipping yesternight for Tripolis, & in 4. dayes we came to Specina the place where the ships lie that come for Tripolis.

S. Helens  
chapell.

His departure  
from Jerusa-  
lem.

... which is no in a chapel  
... marble, and bath bene

... pulchre of Paul, of Jerome,

... in Spary abode with

... to the mountaines of

... of an olde monastier.

... John Baptist was borne

... Jerusalem is a place call

... when Christ was con

... is the house where the

... which is by the wall

... which is little, and barne

... in London, they be

... into the church: right

... of white mar

... by means that every man

... is a place like an altar, where

... well sat when he said to Spary

... able to containe but four pe

... that a great tower, such as we

... and in the mids thereof

... hanging at it, with tallis of

... mians.

... of

... hough which we go up to the

... are two altars in it: being

... about with siluer, and

... there to be seene, in the

... could haue sacrificed

... ours.

... whereunto Christ was both

... where Christ was kept, which

... dooze.

... the ground, like to the spous

... ry board, and vpon the flayes

... and vpon the right hand lieth

The cite of Tripolis is a mile and a halfe within the land, so that no ship can come further then  
... so that night I came thither, where I lay nine dayes for passage, and at last we embarked  
... in a good ship of Venice called the new Nauie Ragazona. We entered the ship the second  
... of September, the fourth we set saile, the seventh we came to Salina, which is 140 miles from  
... Tripolis: there we stayed four dayes to take in more lading, in which meane time I fell sicke of an  
... ague, but recovered againe, I praise God.

Tripolis is  
... in  
... Syria.

Salina is a ruinated citie, and was destroyed by the Turke ten yeeres past: there are in it now  
... but seuentene persons, women and children. A litle from this citie of Salina, is a salt piece of  
... ground, where the water groweth salt that raineth vpon it.

Salina.

Thursday the 21 of September, we came to Hisslagh, and there we stayed eight dayes for more  
... lading: the 28 of September before we came to Hisslagh, and within ten miles of the towne, as we  
... lay at an anchor, because the winde was contrarie, there came a great boat full of men to boord vs,  
... they made an excuse to seeke for foure men which (they said) our shippe had taken from theirs about  
... Tripolis, but our captaine would not suffer any of them to come in to vs.

Hisslagh a  
... towne in  
... Cyprus.

The next morning they came to vs againe with a great gally, manned with 500 men at the least,  
... whereupon our captaine sent the boat to them with two lue men to know their pleasure: they said  
... they sought foure men, and therefore would talke with our maister: so then the maisters mate was  
... sent them, and him they kept, and went their way: the next morning they came againe with him, and  
... with three other gallies, and then would needs speake with our captaine, who went to them in a  
... gowne of crimlon damaske, and other very haue apparell, and five or sixe other gentlemen richly  
... also appaualled. They hauing the Turkes safe conduct, shewed it to the captaine of the gallies, and  
... laid it vpon his head, charging him to obey it: so with much adoe, and with the gift of 100 pices of  
... gold we were quit of them, and had our man againe.

That day as aforesaid, we came to Hisslagh, and there stayed eight dayes, and at last departed  
... towards Candie, with a scant winde.

Candie.

The 11 day of October we were boorded with foure gallies, manned with 1200 men, which  
... also made a steruentele arrant, and troubled vs very much, but our captaines passpor, and the gift of  
... 100 chekins discharged vs all.

The 27 of October we passed by Zante with a merry winde, the 29 by Corfu, and the thirti of  
... November we arrived at Ettria, and there we left our great ship, and tooke small boats to bring vs  
... to Venice.

Zante.  
... Ettria.

The 9 of November I arrived againe at Venice in good health, where I staid thine dayes, and  
... the 25 of the same moneth I came to Augusta, and staid there but one day.

The 27 of November I set towards Rozenberge, where I came the 29, and there stayed till  
... the 9 of December, and was very well intertrained of the English merchants there: and the gouer-  
... nor of the towne sent me and my company sixtene gallons of excellent good wine.

From thence I went to Frankford, from Frankford to Collen, from Collen to Amiam, from  
... Amiam to Entrige, from Entrige to Dox, from Dox to Antwerpe, from Antwerpe to Fushing,  
... from Fushing to London, where I arrived vpon Twelue cue in safetie, & gaue thanks to God, ha-  
... uing finished my iourney to Jerusalem & home againe, in the space of nine moneths and five dayes.

The Queenes letter to the Great Turke 1582. written in com-  
... mendation of M. Harebroune, when he was sent Ambassador.

**E**LIZABETH &c. Augustissimo inuictissimoque principi, &c. Cum ad postula-  
... tum nostrum Casarea vestra Maiestas anno saluatoris nostri Iesu 1580, pacis fer-  
... dandae nobiscum pepigerit, conuictum cum liberalissima priuilegiorum quorundam  
... concessione, quorum beneficio subditi nostri cum omni securitate tutissime liberi-  
... tasque ad vniuersas & singulas Musulmanici imperij vestri partes terra marisque proficisci, in iis-  
... que commercij exercendi gratia, negotiari, habitare, manere, exindeque ire & redire eum volent  
... queant, ad ijs qui sub Casarea vestra Maiestate in magistratu sunt vbiq; locorum protegendi  
... defendendique sine vlla vel corporum, vel bonorum lesione: nos tantae concessionis beneficium  
... gratum accepturum; habentes, quantum in nobis est, approbamus confirmamusque; pollicentes  
... in verbo regio, quod nos eandem pacem sine vlla violatione factam te stantique; conseruabimus:  
... faciemusque; vt subditi nostri priuilegiorum sibi indultorum concessione ita vtantur, vt Casaream  
... vestram Maiestatem magnificentiissima sua liberalitatis nunquam poenitere queat. Quoniam  
... autem concessio huius virtus in vlti potius quam verbis, Maiestatis vtriusque; nostrum lentem-  
... tia, ponenda videtur, voluimus hunc mandatarium virum Guillelmum Harebroune, ex satelliti-  
... bus quibus ad corporis nostri tutelam vtimur vnum, virum compluribus virtutibus ornatum,

ad

Q2

ad

ad Cæsaream vestram Maiestatem ablegare, qui tum nomine nostro vobis gratias ageret, tum ut eius opera vteremur ad eam subditorum nostrorum mercimoniolorum rationem stabilendam tam in Imperiali vestra ciuitate Constantinopoli, quam alijs imperij vestri Musulmanicis locis, quæ ex præscripto priuilegiorum Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis benignitate conceditur, & ex vii subditorum vtriusq; nostrum erit. Ad quam rem quoniam opus illi erit Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis autoritate, summa contentione ab eadem rogamus, velit id agere apud omnes qui sub se in magistratu sunt, ut quibuscunq; poterunt melioribus modis huius nostræ mandatorum in Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis placito exequendo, adiutores sint & esse velint. Ei enim hanc curam demandauimus, in qua quam fidem suam sit honeste liberaturus erga Maiestatem vtriusq; nostrum neuiquam dubitamus: cui etiam, ut in omnibus sint obtemperantes nostri subditi quantum Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis concessio patitur, volumus. Præterea, cum præclarus vir Mustafa sacre Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestatis Musulmannorum interpres egregiam nauarit operam ut hoc inter nos fœdus fieret, rogamus summopere ut in nostram gratiam eum in Mustafaracarum ordinem Cæsareæ vestræ Maiestas recipere dignetur. Si in his alijsq; omnibus honestis causis hic noster agens subditiq; nostri Imperatoris vestræ sublimitatis æquanimitem sentierint, florebit inter has gentes nobile commercium, & nos omnibus officijs huic vestræ Maiestatis fauori & beneuolentiæ (si vlla ratione rebus vestris commodare poterimus) respondere libentissimè semper paratæ erimus. Deus optimus maximus mundi opifex, &c.

Mustafa inscribes

*¶ The same in English.*

Elizabeth by the grace of the most mighty God and onely creator of heauen and earth, of England, France, and Ireland Queene, the most inuincible and most mighty defender of the Christian faith against all kinde of idolatries of all that liue among the Christians and falsly profess the name of Christ, vnto the most Imperiall & most inuincible prince, Sultan Murad Chan, the most mightie ruler of the kingdome of Turkie, sole aboue all and most soueraigne Monarch of the East Empire, greeting.

Whereas at our request your Imperiall Maiestie in the yeere of our Saniou Iesus 1580, hath entered into a league of peace with vs, whereunto was vntied a most large & bountifull grant of certaine priuileges, by benefit whereof our subiects may with all security most safely and freely traueil by sea and land into all and singular parts of your Musulmanlike Empire, and in the same exercising the trade of merchandize may traffike, dwell, remaine, depart from thence, and returne thither at their pleasure, and in all places be mainteyned & defended from all damage of bodie and goods by such as are in authoritie vnder your Imperiall Maiestie: we thankfully & gratefully receiving the benefit of so great a priuilege, as much as in vs lieth do appoyne & confirme the same, promising in the word of a prince, that we will keepe the said league perfect and inuiolable, and will cause our subiects so to vse the grant of the priuileges giuen vnto them, as your Imperiall Maiestie shall neuer haue occasion to repent you of your most princely liberality. And because the force of this grant, in the iudgement of both our Maiesties, seemeth rather to consist in the vse thereof, then in the words, we thought good to send vnto your Imperiall Maiestie this our ambassadoe William Harchoyne, one of the esquires of our bodie, which both on our behalfe should yeeld thanks vnto your Maiestie, and also that we might vse his good in deuoy for the establishing of such order in our subiects trade of merchandize aswell in your Imperiall citie of Constantinople, as in other places of your Musulmanlike Empire, as according to þ præscript of the priuileges is granted by your princely Maiesties goodnesse, and shalbe for the benefit of both our subiects. For performance whereof, because he standeth in need of your Imperiall Maiesties authoritie, we earnestly beseech the same, that you would cause all those which be in authoritie vnder your highnesse, by all their best meanes to aide and assist this our ambassadoe in executing this your Imperiall Maiesties pleasure, for vnto him we haue committed this charge: wherein how honestly he will discharge his credit toward both our Maiesties, I no whit stand in doubt: to whom also our pleasure is, that all our subiects shalbe obedient, as far as the grant of your Imperiall Maiestie doth permit. Moreover, whereas the woorthy personage Mustafa your Imperiall Maiesties interpreter hath taken speciall paines for the procuring of this league betweene vs, we earnestly beseech you that for our sakes your Imperiall Maiestie would vouchsafe to aduance him vnto the degree of the Mustafaraks or thiefe pensioner. If in these and in all other honest causes our aforesaid agent and our subiects shall finde your Imperiall highnesse fauor, a noble traffike will flourish betweene these nations, and we (if by any way we may stand your state in stead) will alwayes most willingly be ready to requite this your Maiesties fauor and good will with all kinde of good offices. Almighty God the maker of the world, preserve and keepe your Imperiall Maiestie, &c.

¶ William Harchoyne sent ambassadoe to the Turke.

¶ A request for the preferring of Mustafa 289.

ro vobis gratias ageret, cum  
orum rationem stabiliendam  
ij vestri Musulmanici locis,  
nitate conceditur, & ex vlti  
i erit Casarez vestre Maie-  
agere apud omnes qui sub  
huic nostro mandatorio in  
velint. Ei enim hanc curam  
ga Maiestatem vtriusq; no-  
erantes no stri subditi quan-  
rea, cum preclarus vir Mu-  
egregiam nauarit operam  
gratiam cum in Mustafara-  
his alijq; omnibus honestis  
tatis æquanimitate senten-  
tatijs huic vestre Maiesta-  
poterimus) responderelli-  
opifex, &c.

of heauen and earth, of King  
mighty defender of the Chri-  
stians and fully proteste the  
altan Spurad Chan, the most  
eretique Monarch of the East

Sanctio Ihesu 1580, habet  
e & bountifull grant of  
most safely and freely traueil  
mpire, and in the same exerci-  
thence, and returne without  
damage of bodie and goods  
ctually & gratefully retaining  
outfirme the same, promising  
autolabte, and will cause our  
Imperiall Maiestatie shall ne-  
because the force of this grant  
be therof, then in the woode,  
Lador William Darcypoune,  
to thanks into your Maiestaty,  
ch order in our subiects trade  
in other places of your Maie-  
ranted by your princely Maie-  
formance wherof, because he  
y beleeche the same, that you  
all their best meanes to adde  
ethies pleasure, for into him  
ge his credit toward both our  
at all our subiects shall be obe-  
Doyouer, wherreas they woode  
taken speciall paines for the  
for our sakes your Imperiall  
Mustafaras on these pensioners,  
subiects shall finde your Maie-  
tions, and we (if by any way  
by to requite this your Maie-  
God the maker of the world,

The

The passport made by the great Maister of Malta vnto the  
Englishmen in the barke Reynolds. 1582.

**R**ere Hugo de Lombenz Verdala, Dei gratia sacre domus hospitalis sancti Io-  
annis Hierosolimitani magister humilis, pauperumque Iesu Christi cultos,  
vniuersi & singulis principibus ecclesiasticis & secularibus, archiepiscopis,  
episcopis, ducibus, marchionibus, baronibus, nobilibus, capitaneis, vicedo-  
minis, præfectis, castellanis, admiralijis, & quibuscunque triremium vel ali-  
orum nauigiorum patronis, ac ciuitatum rectoribus, potestatibus ac magistra-  
tibus, ceterisque officialibus, & quibuscunque personis cuiusvis dignitatis, gradus, status &  
conditionis fuerint, vbi libet locorum & terrarum constitutis, salutem.

Notum facimus & in verbo veritatis attestamus, *come nel mese di Maggio proximo passato le  
nostre galere vennero dal viaggio di Barberia, done habendo mandato per soccorrere a vngalionetto  
de Christiani che hauea dato trauerso in quelle parti, essendo arrinati sopra questa isola alla parte de  
ponente trouarono vna naue Ingleſa, sopra cargo de essa il magnifico Giouanni Keale, & David Filly  
patrono, volendo la reconoscere che name fosse, ban visto, che se metterea in ordine per defenderſi, dubi-  
tando che dette nostre galere fossero de inimici: & per che un marinaro, rinoltoſe contra la volonta de  
detti magnifico Giouanni Keale & David Filly, habbi tirato vn tiro di aringheria verso vna de dette  
galere, & che non se amangnaua la vela de la Maieſtra secondo la volonta de detti magnifico Gio-  
uanni Keale & David Filly patrono, fu rimenzata detta naue nel presente general porto di Malta, ſe-  
condo l'ordine del venerando generale de dette galere, & essendo qua, monſignor Inquifitore ha impe-  
dia quella per conto del ſanto officio, & si diede parte alla ſantita di noſtro ſignor Gregorio papa xiiij.  
a la ſua ſalucenciata per andarſene al ſuo viaggio. Han dor q, humilmente ſupplicato detti magnifi-  
co Giouanni Keale & David Filly per nome & parte delli magnifici Edwardo Oſborn ſenatore &  
Richardo Staper mercanti Ingleſi della nobile Citta di Londra, & anco di Thomaso Wilkinſon ſcri-  
uano, piloti, nocberi, & marinari: gli voleſſimo dare le noſtre lettere patente & ſaluo conductione, accio  
che potranno andare & ritornare quando gli parera commodato con alcuna roba & mercantia a loro  
beniſta: ſi come noi, eſſendo coſa giuſta & che retonera commodato a noſtra religione & a queſti for-  
reſteri, per tenor de li preſenti ſe gli habbiamo conſeſſe con le conditione per ſo infra ſcritte. videlicet:*

*Chè ogni volta che detti mercadanti con sopradetta name o con altra non porteranno mercantia de  
contra bando, & che conſtara per fede autentica & con lettere patente de ſanita poteran liberalmen-  
te vtilitarſe de tutte le vtilitaria neceſſarie, & praticare in queſta iſola & domini, & poi partiri ſene  
& ſeguire ſuo viaggio per done voleſſero in leuante o altroue, come tutti altri vaſelli & ſpecialmente  
de Franceſi & altri nationi, & di vendere & comprare qual ſi voglia mercantia a loro beniſta,*

*Item, che potera portare poluere de canone & di archibuzo, ſalnitro, carboni di per a roſetta, plati-  
ne de rame, ſtagno, acciaio, ferro, carife commune, tela groſſa bianca per far tende de galere, balle de  
ferro de calibro, petre de molino fine, arbore & antenne de galere, baſtardi & alteri. Et in conſuſione,  
haueudo viſto che loro per il tempo che reſtarano qua, ſi portano da ſideli & Catholicici Chriſtiani, &  
che ſua ſantita habbia tirato bono il ſaluo conductione del gran Turco a loro conſeſſo, per il timor della  
armata Turkeſca & di altri vaſelli de inimici, inherendo alla volonta di ſua ſantita, & maſſime per  
che hauera de andare & paſſare per diuerſi lochi & tanto lontani come Inghilterra, Flandra, & tutti  
parti di ponente, & in altroue, a noi ha parſo farle le preſente noſtre lettere patente come ſideli conuer-  
ſatore noſtro, accio piu ſecuramente & ſenſa obſtaculo poſſa andare & ritornare quando li parera a con-  
dettanane o con altre a loro beniſta. Per tanto dunque tutti & ciaſcun di voi ſudetti aſſetuoſa-  
mente pregamo, che per qual ſi voglia de voſtra inuiſidione, alla quale detto magnifico Giouanni Keale  
& David Filly a nome quo ſupra con la naue & marinari de detti loro principali o altri caſchera, nauig-  
are, paſſare, & venire ſicuramente, alla libera, ſenſa alcuno diſturbo o altro impedimento li laſciate,  
& ſacciate laſciare ſtare, & paſſare, tornare, & quando li parera partire, talmente che per amore &  
contemplatione noſtra il detto magnifico Giouanni Keale a nome quo ſupra con le naue, marinari, &  
mercantia non habbi diſſiculta, ſaſtudio & retentione alcuna, anzi ſe gli dia ogni agio & ſanore, coſa  
de qua di voi giuſta, & a noi gratiſſima de recompenſarſi con vgnale & maggior ſeruitio, quando  
dall'occasione ne ſaremo rechieſti. Et ſuaſamente comandammo a tutti & qual ſi voglia religioſi  
& frati de noſtra religione di qual ſi voglia conditione, grado & ſtato che ſiano, & a tutti riceuitori &  
procuratori noſtri in tutti & qual ſi voglia priorati noſtri deputati & deputandi in vertu di ſanta obe-  
dientia, & a tutti noſtri vaſelli & alla giuriditione di noſtra religione ſoggetti, che in tale & per tale  
tempo & reſpuito il detto magnifico Giouanni Keale a nome vi ſupra, naue, marinari, & mercan-  
tia, ſenſa permettere, che nel detto ſuo viaggio, o in alcun altro luogo ſia moleſtato, o in qual ſi voglia*

*maneta impedita, anzi tutto le cose sue, & negozi loro san da voi agiontati & conuincamente favoriti. In cuius rei testimonium Bulla nostra magistralis in cera nigra presentibus est impressa. Data Malta in conuentu nostro die duo decimo Mensis Iulij. 1582.*

*¶ The same in English.*

**F**ather Hugo of Loubeur, Archbald, by the grace of God, maister of the holy house, the hospitall of St. John at Ierusalem, and an humble keeper of the pooze of Iesus Christ, to all & every prince ecclesiasticall & secular, archbishops, bishops, Dukes, Marqueses, Barons, Captaines, Viceroys, Princes, Castellanes, Admirals, and whatsoeuer patrons of small boats, or other greater ships, and gouernors of cities, potentates and magistrates, and to other officers and persons whatsoeuer, of what dignitie, degree, state and condition soeuer they be, dwelling in all places and landes, greeting.

We make it knowne, and in the woꝝ of truth doe witness, that in the moneth of May last past, our gallies came on the voyage from Barbarie, where hauing commandement to succor a liele ship of the Christians which was diuen ouer into that part, being arrived vpon this island on the West part they found one English ship vnder the charge of the worshipfull John Keele, and David Fillie maister: & our men willing to know what ship it was, they seemed to put themselves in order for their defence, doubting that the said our gallies were of the enemies, and therefore one mariner reuolued contrary to the will of the worshipfull John Keele, and David Fillie maister, and had shot off a peece of artillerie against one of the said gallies, and because he would not strike amaine her saile, according to the will of the said worshipfull John Keele, and David Fillie maister, the said ship was brought backe againe vnto the present port of Malta, according to the order of the reuerend generall of the said gallies: and in being there, maister Inquisitor said it by authoritie of the holy office, and in that behalfe by the holinesse of our Lord pope Gregory the thirtie, in the end was licensed to depart on her voyage. They therefore the said worshipfull John Keele, and David Fillie, in the name and behalfe of the worshipfull maister Edward Osborne alderman, and Richard Sta- per, English merchants of the noble citie of London, haue humbly besought together with Thomas Wilkinson the purser, pilots, maister and mariners, that we would giue our letters patents, and safe conducts, that they might go and returne, when they shall see opportunitie, with their goods and merchandizes at their pleasure: whereupon the thing seeming vnto vs iust, and that it might be for the profit of our religion, and of these strangers, by the tenor of these presents we haue granted the same to them: yet, with the conditions hereunder written. viz.

That euery time the said merchants of the said ship, or with any other, shall not bring such merchandize as is forbidden, and that by sufficient prooff, and letters testimoniall it appeareth that they are free from the infections of the plague, they may victuall themselves with all necessarie victuals, and traffike with vs, and in this island and dominion, and afterward may depart, and follow their voyage whither they will into the Levant or els where, as all other vessels, and especially of France and other nations do, and sell and buy whatsoeuer merchandize they shall thinke good.

Item, that they may bring powder for cannon and harquebush, salpeter, cole of Petracolle, places of laccin, tinne, Steele, yron, common harties white, course canvas to make saile for the gallies, balles of yron for shot, fine millstones, trees and mats for gallies, litle and others, and in conclusion, hauing seene that they for the time of their abode heere, did behaue themselves like faithfull and catholike Christians, and that his holinesse hath allowed the safeconduct of the great Turke to them granted for feare of the Turkish armie, and other vessels of the enemy, submitting our selues to the pleasures of his holinesse, and especially because our people haue occasion to passe by diuers places so farre off, as England, Flanders, and all parts Westwards, and in other places, we haue vouchsafed to make these our letters patents, as to our faithfull trafficant, so as more surely, and without let they may go and returne when they shall thinke good, with the said ship or with others at their pleasure: we therefore pray all and euery of your subiects effectuously that by what part soeuer of your iurisdiction, vnto the which the said worshipfull John Keele, and David Fillie by name abovesaid, with the ship and mariners of the said principall place or other, shall haue accesse, saile, and passe, and come safely with libertie without any disturbance or other impediment, that you giue leave, and cause leave to be given that they may passe, stay and returne, and when they please, depart, in such sort, that for our loue and contentation the said worshipfull John Keele, with the ship and mariners haue no let, hinderance, or retention, also that you giue all helpe and fauor, a thing worthy of your iustice, and to vs most acceptable, to be recompensed with equall and greater iustice, when vpon occasion it shall be required.

et continuante favoriti.  
 me est impressa. Date M.

of holy boule, the hospitall of  
 Christ, to all & every prince  
 rons, Captaines, Admiralls,  
 boats, or other greater ships,  
 and persons whatsoever,  
 ing in all places and Landes,

the moneth of May last past,  
 indement to succor a litle ship  
 upon this island on the Coast  
 of John Keele, and David Filie  
 to put themselves in order  
 s, and therefore one mariner  
 Filie master, and had shot  
 would not strike againe her  
 Filie master, the said ship  
 the order of the rucuerd ge  
 by authoritie of the holy of  
 thirtenth, in the end was  
 John Keele, and David Filie,  
 Doerman, and Richard Sw  
 ought together with Thomas  
 give our letters patents, and  
 poyntitie, with their goods  
 to vs int, and that it might be  
 se presents we have granted

her, shall not bring such men  
 moniall it appeareth that they  
 with all necessarie victuals,  
 may depart, and followe the  
 this, and especially of France  
 shall thinke good.

lepreter, cole of Newcastle,  
 to make saile for the gallies,  
 and others, and in conclusion,  
 themselves like faithfull and  
 of the great Turke to them  
 ie, submitting our selves to  
 the occasion to pass by divers  
 and in other places, we have  
 cant, so as more surety, and  
 the said ship or with others  
 duously that by what part so  
 keele, and David Filie by  
 ce or other, shall have access,  
 other impediment, that you  
 turne, and when they please,  
 all John Keele, with the ship  
 all helpe and favor, a thing  
 with equall and greater fa-

And

And finally, we commaund all, and whatsoever religious people, and brothers of our religion, of  
 whatsoever condition, degree, and state they be, and all our receivers and procurators, in all and  
 whatsoever our provinces deputed, and to be deputed by vertue of the holy obedience, and all our peo-  
 ple, and all that are subject to the iurisdiction of our religion, that in, and by the same they hold, and  
 repare the sayd worshipfull John Keele in the name as abovesayd, the shippe, mariners, and mer-  
 chandise, without let in the same their voyage, or in any other place, that they be not molested, nor  
 in any wise hindered, but that in all their causes and businesse they be of you holpen, and furthered  
 continually. In witness whereof, our seale of government is impressed to these presents in blacke  
 waxe, Given at Malta in our Convent, the twelfth of the moneth of July, in the yeare, 1582.

Certaine remembrances of an intended voyage to Brasill, and the  
 River of Plate, by the Edward Cotton, a shippe of M. Edward Cottons of  
 Southhampton, which perished through extreme negligence neere Rio  
 grande in Ginnie, the 17. of July, 1583.

Articles of Couenants agreed upon between Edward Cotton esquier, owner of the good ship  
 called the Edward Cotton of Southhampton, and of all the merchandises in her laden of the  
 one part, and William Huddie gentleman, captaine of the said ship, John Hooper his lieutenant,  
 John Foster master, Hugh Smith Pilot for the whole voyage, and William Cheefman merchant,  
 on the other part.

1 Item, to observe and keep the daily order of Common praier aboard the ship, & the com-  
 panie to be called thereunto, at the least once in the day, to be pronounced openly.

2 Item, that they be ready with the first faire wind, to set saille and sailes in the  
 voyage, and not to put into any port or harbour, but being forcibly constrained by  
 weather, or other apparent and vrgent cause.

3 Item, that they take in, at or about the Isles of Cape Verde, to the quantitie of 25. or 30.  
 cunnes of salt, to be imployed among other the owners merchadize, at Santos, & S. Vincents, to his  
 only behoofe, & the rest of the salt, so much as shall be needen for victuall, and for sauing of the hides  
 to be kept aboard, & the same salt to be provided either at the fishermens hands nere the said Isles for  
 trucke of commodities, or els to be taken in at the abovesaid Isles, at the discretion of the abouenamed.

4 Item, upon the due performance of this voyage, the owner bindeth himselfe by this deede, to  
 yeeld unto any such of the company, as shall refuse their shares befoze they depart from the coast of  
 England, 20. markes a single share for the dutie of the whole voyage, making not about 75. shares  
 single in the whole.

5 Item, the company according as they be appointed by the officers of the sayd shippe abouen-  
 amed, shall at all times be as well readie to doe their painfull inuoy, not onely aboard, but in all la-  
 bours at the land, according to the direction given by the abouenamed officers, upon paine of for-  
 feiture of their shares and wages the same to be deuided amongst the company.

6 Item, that the shares be taken at their returne out of all the traine oyle, and hides of the scales,  
 and of all other commodities gotten by their handie labour, and of the salt that shall be venden and  
 other commodities, at, or nere the coast of Brasill, to allow after 9. li. the tunne freight, whereof one  
 third to goe to the companie.

7 Item, that if any man shall practise by any deuise or deuises whatsoever, to alter the voyage  
 from the true purpose and intent of the owner, viz. to make their first port at Santos, and S. Vin-  
 cents, and thence to reuertuall and traffike, and from thence to the riuer of Plate, to make their voy-  
 age by the traine, and hide of the scales, with such other commodities as are there to be had, accord-  
 ing as the owner, with diuers that haue government in the said ship, are bound to her tightnes by  
 their deces obligacion in great summes, that all such practisers upon due prooffe made, shall loose  
 their whole intertainment due by hires or otherwise for this said voyage to be aduoyd by the cap-  
 taine, his lieutenant, the master, pilot and merchant, or thre of them at the least, whereof the Cap-  
 taine to be one.

8 Item, that the yinnelle be ready at all times to serue the merchans turne vpon his demaund,  
 to take in wares and commodities, and to cary and reuoyce, and from the shore, when, and as oft as  
 need shall bee, and to giue due attendance at the merchant, and merchaunts direction, during the  
 whole voyage.

9 Item, that no head or chiefe officer being set downe for such an officer vnder the hand of the  
 owner, at the going to sea of the said ship, shall or may be displaced from his said place of office, with-  
 out

our great cause, and his misdeemeanor to be adjudged by the captaine and his lieutenant, the master, the Pilot, and the merchant, or by the consent of 3. of them at the least.

10 Item that upon the returne of the ship to the coast of England, the master and Pilot put not into any port of harbour, to the Westward of Southampton, but forced by weather, or such like vrgent cause,

William Huddie.

John Foster.

John Hooper.

William Cheefman.

Hugh Smith.

**A direction as well for the Captaine, and other my friends of the ship, as especially for William Cheefman Merchant, for the voyage to the Riuer of Plate.**

**A**T your coming to the Isle of S. Sebastian, vpon the coast of Brasill, you shall according to your discretions, make sale of such commodities, as you may thinke will be there about well vended, and like wise to buy commodities without making longer stay there then your victuals bee providing, but rather to bespeake commodities against your returne from the riuer of Plate, especially of Amber, Sugar, Greene ginger, Cotton Wool, and some quantitie of the peppers of the countrey there. Also for Barats and Spunkies, and the beast called Serrabosa. Also you shall barrell vp of the beefe called Petune, two or thre barreles, and to lose no good oportunitie, to gather of the Indian figs, and the graines of them to preferue drie, in such quantitie as conveniently may be done: and touching the making of the traine, and preferring of the hides, I leaue it wholly to the order and the discretion of the chiefe of the company. Also that in any road where the ship shall ride vpon the coast of America, that trial be made with the bags, for the pearle Distors, and the same being taken, to be opened and searched for pearle in the presence of the Captaine, his lieutenant, the master, the pilot, and merchant, or three of them, whereof the Captaine or his lieutenant to be one, and to remaine in the custodie of the Captaine and merchant, vnder two lockes, either of them to haue a key to his owne locke, and that a true inuenteorie be deliuered also to the master and pilot of the sayd pearle or other iewels of price gotten in the sayd voyage, to the intent that no partie be defrauded of his due, and that no concealment bee made of any such thing vpon forfeiture, the partie to lose his share and dutie for the voyage that shal so conceal and not reueale it vnto the officers aboue named. Also to doe your best endeavour to try for the best Ore of gold, silver, or other rich metals whatsoeuer. Forget not also to bring the kernels & seeds of strange plants with you, the Palmico with his fruite inclosed in him, Serue God, keepe good watch, and stand alwayes vpon your gard.

Edward Cotton.

These things being thus ordered, and the ship of the burden of 260. tunnes, with 83. men of all sortes furnished, and fully appointed for the voyage, began to set saile from Hurst Castle vpon Friday the 20. of May, Anno 1583. and the 17. day of July ensuing, fell with the coast of Guinie, to take in fresh water, where, through meree villouce negligence, they perished vpon a sand, with the most part of the men in her, as appeareth by the confession of one that escaped, the substance and tenor whereof is this.

**The confession of William Bends, Masters Mate in the Edward Cotton, the 21. of October, An. 1584.**

**H**Ue saith that the 17. day of July, Anno 1583, hauing some lacke of fresh water, they put roome vpon the coast of Guinie, where they were set vpon a sand about 8. leagues from the shore, and this Examinate with 29. more, got into the pinnelle, who arrived in an Island, being desolate of people, and fve miles in compasse, where they rested 18. dayes through force of weather, not hauing els to eate but grasse. The rest of the company, the ship being splitted in two, and in quarters, got them into one of the after quarters, and by the helpe of raftes came also a shore into another Island, nere to Rio grande, where they all died as he supposeth.

The other 30. in the pinnelle, at the end of 18. dayes, departed that Island, and came to Saint Domingo,

his lieutenant, the master,  
the master and Pilot put me  
forced by weather, or such

John Foster.  
William Cheefman.

other my friends of  
merchant, for the voyage

of of Brasill, you shall accoy  
you may thinke will be there  
ie making longer stay there  
inimobilities against your re-  
nger, Cotton Wool, and  
and Spunkies, and the best  
two or three barrels, and to  
of them to preferre dye, in  
of the traine, and prefering  
fe of the company. Also that  
all be made with the drags,  
hed for pearle in the yelme  
of three of them, whereof the  
the Captaine and merchant,  
at a true inuentoye be deli-  
vryce gotten in the sayd voy-  
age, in case of any  
in case of any  
voyage that shal so conceale  
it in deuour to cry for the best  
to bying the kernels & seeds  
Serue God, keepe good

Edward Cotton.

comes, with 83. men of  
saile from Hurst Castle by  
sailing, fell with the coast of  
ence, three perished upon a  
tion of one that escaped, the

late in the Edward

cke of fresh water, they put  
d about 8. leagues from the  
rued in an Island, being de-  
es through force of weather,  
ing splitted in two, and in  
raftes came also a shoie into  
teeth.

Island, and came to Saint  
Domingo,

Domingo, where comming on shoie they were taken of the Moores, and stripped naked. And they buried one Coxe an old man alius, notwithstanding his pitifull lamcutation and skreakings: the rest having Rice and water allowed them, liued there a certaine time. This Examinate was at last sold to a Portugall, with whom he dwelt the space of a quarter of a yeere, and in the end a Portugall Caruell comming thither, his master laded the same with Negroes, and he obtained leaue of his master to goe in the same Caruell and by that meane arrived at Liffone, and from thence came into England the 17. of October, 1584. leauing behind him of his company alius, Richard Hacker, John Baker, John Mathew, and a boy, with two others which were gone beyond D. Domingoes: all which, as he saith, were so sicke and diseased, that he iudgeth them to be long before this time dead.

One care an  
all English  
allure by the  
Drogers of  
Rio grande in  
Guinea.

The Passport in Italian granted to Thomas Shingleton English-  
man, by the king of Algier. 1583.

**N**Oi Assam Bascha Vicere & lochotenente e capitano della iurisdictione de Algier doniamo e concediamo libero salvo condotto a Thomas Shingleton mercadante, che possi con suo vassello e marinari de che natione se siano, a mercadanti di qual si voglia natione, andare & venire, e negoziare, e contrattare liberamente in questa citta de Algier & altri lochi de la nostra iurisdictione cosi di ponente come di Levante: & cosi anchora comandiamo al capitano di mare di Algier & d'altri lochi de nostra iurisdictione, Rais de Vasselli & capitani de Levante, & altri capitani di vasselli tanto grossi como piccoli, si commanda a qual si voglia, che trouando il sopradetto Thomas Shingleton Inglese nella mari di Genoua, Francia, Napoli, Calabria, e Sardinia con suo vassello e mercantia, & homini de che natione si siano, non gli debba molestare, ne pigliare, ne toccare cosa de, ne nessuna manera tanto di denare, como di qual si voglia altra robba, sotto la pena e disgracia di perder la vita & la robba: Et per quanto habete a caro la gratia del Gran Signor nostro patrono, Soltan Murates Ottomano, lo lasciare andare per suo cammino senza dargli nessuno impedimento. Dato in Algier in nostro regio Palazzo, spillato del nostro regio sigillo, e fermato della gran ferma, & scritto del nostro regio Secretario il di 23. de Lenaro, 1583.

The same in English.

**W**E Assam Bascha Vicerey and lieutenant, and capitaine of the iurisdiction of Algier, giue and graunt free safeconduct to Thomas Shingleton merchant, that with his ship & mariners of what nation soeuer they be, and with his merchandize of what countrey soeuer, he may goe and come, and trade and traffique freely in this cite of Algier, & other places of our iurisdiction, as well of the West as of the East. And in like sort we further command the capitaine of the sea of Algier, and other places of our iurisdiction, the Reiz of vessels and capitaine of the Leuant, and other capitaine of vessels as well great as small, who soeuer they be, we do command them, That finding the foresayd Thomas Shingleton Englishman in the seas of Genoua, Fraunce, Naples, Calabria, and Sardinia, with his ship and merchandize, and men of what nation soeuer they be, that they molest them not, neither take nor touch any kind of thing of theirs, neither money nor any other kind of goods, vnder paine and perill of losing of their liues and goods: and as you make account of the fauour of the Grand Signor our sayd Sultán Murates Hottoman, so see you let him passe on his way without any manner of impediment. Dated at Algier in our kingly palace, signed with our prince's signet, and sealed with our great seale, and written by our Secretarie of estate, the 23. of Ianuarie, 1583.

A letter written in Spanish by Sir Edward Osborne to the king of  
Argier, the 20. of Iuly, 1584. in the behalfe of certaine English captiues  
there detained.

**M**uy alto y poderoso Rey,  
Sea fernida vistra alteza. Como la muy alta y potentissima magestad del Gran Señor tiene heredo articulos de privilegios con la Serenissima Magestad de nuestra Reyna d'Inglaterra, para los vassallos della poder libremente yr y volver y yr y volver por mar y tierra en los dominios de su potentissima Magestad, Como a la clara parece por los dichos articulos, de que embiamos el traslado al Señor Juan Tipton nuestro



nuestro commissario, para lo muestrear a vuestra Alteza. Contra el tenor de los quales articulos por dos galeras de su ciudad de Argier ha sido hechado al fondo en la mar un de nuestros navios que venia de Petras, que es en la Morea, cargado de corintes y otras mercaderias, que alla se compraron, y las mas de la gente della matados y ahogados en la mar: y el resto estan desentidos por esclavos: cosa muy contraria a los dichos articulos y privilegios. Que es ocasion, que por esto supplicamos a vuestra Alteza muy humilmente, que pues que la potentissima magestad del Gran Senor es seruida nos favorezer por los dichos articulos, tambien sea seruida vuestra Alteza assistirnos en ellos, otorgandonos por vuestra autoridad su ayuda y favor, segun que esperamos, para que puedan estar libres, y volver para aca aquellas pobres hombres ansí hechos esclavos, como dicho es. Tansi mismo, que mande vuestra Alteza dar orden a los capitanes, maestros y gente de las galeras, que nos dexen de aqui adelante hazer nuestro trafico con seys naos cada año para Turquia a los dominios del Gran Senor a paz, y a salvo, por no contrariar a los dichos nuestros privilegios; Llevando cada una de nuestras dichas naos por se conoscoer, un salvo conducedo de su alta y potentissima magestad. T con esta vuestra tan señalada merced y favor que en esto recibieremos, quedaremos nosotros con grandissima obligacion a vuestra Alteza de servir la por el, segun que el dicho Senor Juan Tipton, a quien nos reportamos de todo lo demas mejor informera a vuestra Alteza: Cuya serenissima persona y estado supplicamos y pidimos a Dios omnipotente prospere y acrezente con toda felicidad y honra. De la ciudad de Londres a los veynte dias de Julio del mil y quinientos y ochenta y quatro años.

Al servicio de vuestra Alteza por y en nombre de todos los tratantes en Turquia, lo el mayor de Londres, Edward Osborne.

### ¶ The same in English.

**R**ight high and mightie king,  
 I pray it please your highnesse to understand, that the most high and most mightie maiestie of the Grand Signor hath confirmed certaine articles of priviledges with the most excellent maiestie of our Queene of England, that her subiects may freely go and come, and traffique by sea and land in the dominions of his most mightie maiestie, as appeareth more at large by the said articles, wherof we have sent the copy unto you, John Tipton our Coimissarie, to shew the same unto your highnesse. Against the tenor of which articles, one of our ships which came from Petras which is in Morea, laden with currants and other merchandizes which were bought in those partes, was sunk by 2. gallees of your cite of Argier, and the greatest number of the men thereof were slaine and wounded in the sea, the restore being detained as slaves: An acte very contrary to the meaning of the foresaid articles and priviledges, which is the occasion that by their petyenes we beseech your highnesse very humbly, that since it hath pleased the most mightie maiestie of the Grand Signor to favour us with the said priviledges, it would please your highnesse in like maner to assist us in the same, granting us by your authoritie, your aide and favour, according as our hope is, that these poore men so detained in captivitie, as is aforesaid, may be set at libertie, and retorne into their countrey. And likewise that your highnesse would send to give order to the capitaines, masters and people of your gallees, that from henceforth they would suffer us to use our traffique with six shippes secretly into Turkie unto the dominions of the Grand Signor in peace and safetie, that they doe not withstand those our said priviledges, every one of our foresaid ships carrying with them a pallenore of his most high and most mightie maiestie to be knowne by. And for that your so singular favour and curtesie which in so doing we shall receive, we on our part wish all bounden dutie unto your highnesse, will seeke to honour you in that behalfe, according as the said master John Tipton (to whom we referre our selues touching all other circumstances) shall move at large enforce you your highnesse, whose most excellent person and estate, we pray and beseech admightie God to prosper and increase with all felicitie and honour. From the Cite of London the 20. of July, 1584.

At the service of your highnesse, for and in the name of the whole Company trading into Turkie, I Master of London, Edward Osborne.

### Notes concerning the trade of Argier.

The money of Argier,



The money that is coined in Argier, is a piece of gold called Afiano, and Doublaes, and two Doublaes make an Afiano, but the Doubla is most used, for all things bee solde by Doublaes, which Doubla is fiftie of their Aspers there.

The Asper there is not so good by halfe and more, as that in Constantinople: for the Chekin of gold of the Turkes made at Constantinople, is at Argier woorth an hundred and fiftie Aspers, and at Constantinople it is but 66. Aspers.

The

An English ship sunk by two gallees of Argier.

Bye an  
 all  
 which  
 you m  
 must d  
 ful, is  
 when  
 dia, b

de los quales articulos por des  
nuestros navios que venia de  
alla se compraron, y las mas  
por esclavos: cosa muy com-  
plicamos a voftra Alteza  
es servida nos favorezer por  
otorgandonos por voftra au-  
tes. y bolner para aca aquellos  
nde voftra Alteza dar orden  
plante hazer nuestro trafico  
y a salvo, por no coñrirar a  
nos por se conofcer. un salvo  
hada merced y favor que en  
la Alteza de servir la por el  
lo demas, mejor informera a  
Dios omnipotente profere  
veynete dias de Julio del mil y

fra. Alca. a por y en nombre de toda  
en Turquia, lo el imper de Londres,  
Edward Osborne.

most mightie maletie of  
the most excellent maichie  
and traffique by sea and land  
by the said articles, wher  
in the same vnto your high-  
ness Petras which is in Mo-  
thole partes, was lunked by  
proof were slaine and woun-  
p to the meaning of the  
enes we beseech your high-  
ness of the Grand Signor to sa-  
ie manner to assist vs in the  
as our hope is, that these  
and returne into their coun-  
peynes, masters and peo-  
e traffique with six shippes  
nd safetie, that they doe not  
ying with them a passeport  
at your so singular fauour  
ounden dueitie vnto your  
o master John Tipton (w  
oye at large enforme your  
almightie God to prosper  
e 20. of July, 1584.

our highnesse for and in the name of  
any trading into Turkie, I Master of  
and Osborne.

iano, and Doublets, and  
for all things bee sold by

Constantinople: for the  
woorth an hundred and fiftie

The

The pistolet and roials of place are most currant there.  
The said pistoles goeth for 150. Aspers there: and the piece of 4. roials goeth for 40. Aspers, but  
sometimes is sold for more, as men need them to carry by into Turkie.

Their Asianos and doublets are pieces of course gold, woorth here but 40. shillings the ounce,  
in the same is currant in no place of Turkie out of the kingdome of Argier, neither the Aspers, for  
that they be lesse then others be, for they come them in Argier.

The custome to the king is inward 10. per centum, to the Turke, to be paid of the commodities  
it selle, as it shall be rated. The custome.

There is another custome to the Elemine, of one & an halfe per centum, which is to the Justice  
of the Christians: the goods by this custome are rated as they are for the kings custome.

Having paid custome inwards, you pay none outwards for any commodity that you doe lade,  
more then a reward to the gate keepers.

The waight there is called a Cantare for fine wares, as mettals refined, and spices, &c. which is  
here 120. li. subtil. The waights.

Wetall not refined, as lead, iron, and such grosse wares are sold by a great Cantare, which is  
halfe as big againe: so it is 180. li. subtil of ours here.

The measure of coine is by a measure called a Curtia, which is about 4. bushels of our mea-  
sure, and coine is plentifull there and good cheape, except when there happeneth a very dry yere. The measure.

The surest lodging for a Christian there, is in a Jewes house: for if he haue any hurt, the Jew  
and his goods shall make it good, so the Jew taketh great care of the Christian and his goods that  
lieth in his house, for feare of punishment. The surest  
lodging for a  
Christian.

An Englishman called Thomas Williams, which is M. John Tiptons man, lieth about trade of  
merchandise in the streete called The Soca of the Jewes.

### Notes concerning the trade in Alexandria.

**A**lexandria in Egypt is a free port, and when a man commeth within the Castels,  
presently the Ermyne sends aboard to haue one come and speake with him, to know  
what goods are aboard: and then he will set guards aboard the shippe to see all the  
goods discharged. And then from the Ermine you goe to the \* Bye, onely for that  
he will inquire newes of you, and so from thence to the Consuls house where you  
lie. The Clergians haue a Consul themselves, But all other nations goe to the French nations  
Consul, who will giue you a chamber for your selues apart, if you will so haue it.

This is ano-  
ther officer.

The custome inward of all commodities, are ten in the hundred, and the custome is paid in wares  
also that you buy for the same wares in barter you pay also ten in the hundred, at the labing of the  
wares. But if you sell for money, you pay no more custome but the ten aforesaid, and one and a halfe  
in the hundred, which is for the custome of the goods you lade for the said money, for more custome  
you pay not. But for all the money you bring thither, you pay nothing for the custome of the same.  
And if you sell your wares for money, and with the same money buy wares, you pay but two in the  
hundred for the custome thereof. And if you steale any custome, if it bee taken, you pay double cu-  
stome for that you steale.

Other small  
custome you  
pay besides,  
which may be  
at two in the  
hundred: and  
for Consullage  
you pay thro  
in the hundred

The waight of Alexandria is called Pois Forforeine, which is a kintal in that place, which ma-  
keth at Marceils 109. li. of Marceils waight, at 15. ounces the pound, which is 103. li. of 16. oun-  
ces to the li. There is another waight called Pois Gerrin, which is 150. li. of Marceils waight, by  
which are sold all things to eat: but spice is sold by the former waight.

From Alexandria to Cairo is three dayes journey, but you must take a Janissarie with you: and  
to goe up thither by water, it is 8. dayes journey. Roials of Spaine are currant money there, and are  
the best money you can carry. And 4. roials are woorth 13. Medins, and 2. Medins, are 3. Aspers.  
Pistolets and crownes of France, and Dollers will goe, but of all Roials are best.

Cairo three  
dayes journey  
from Alexan-  
dria by land.

Rice is not permitted to goe out of the land, but is kept for a victuall. But with a present to the  
Bye and Ermine somewhat passeth.

All forces of spices be gathered after the bargain is made, and they be Moores which you deale  
withall, which be good people and not ill disposed. And after you be searched & haue leaue to passe,  
you must presently depart out of the port, and if you doe not, they will search you againe. And you  
must depart in the day, for in the night the castles will not suffer you to be part. The dutie to the Con-  
sul is 2. in the hundred, for his aide, and meate and drinke and all. And the port of Alexandria is good  
when one is within it with good anchors and cables, Saluer is better currant then gold in Alexan-  
dria, but both are good.

Commonly

Commonly the Caravans come thither in October from Mecca to Cairo, and from thence to Alexandria, where the merchants be that buy the spices, and there fore the spices are brought to Alexandria, where each Christian nation remaineth at the Consuls houses. Yet oftentimes the Christians go up to Cairo to buy drugs and other commodities there as they see cause. And the commodities there vendible, are all sortes of herbes, but the most part betwix, and of clothes all colours except mingled colours and blacks. Pepper is usually sold for 24. denars the quintal, Ginger for 14. denars. You must take caravans to make bags to put your commodity in from Alexandria, for there is none. There is also fine flaxe, and good sorte of Buffe hides.

The voiage made to Tripolis in Barbarie, in the yeere 1584. with a ship called the *Iesus*, wherein the adventures and distresses of some Englishmen are truly reported, and other necessarie circumstances obierued. Written by Thomas Sanders.



This voiage was set forth by the right worshipfull, Sir Edward Osborne knight, chiefe merchant of all the Turkish company, and one master Richard Stapers, the ship being of the burthen of one hundred tunne, called the *Iesus*, he was builded at Farmne a riuer by Portsmouth. The owners were master Thomas Thomson, Nicholas Carnabie, and John Gilman. The master (under God) was one Zacheus Helier of Black-wall, and his mate was one Richard Morris of that place: their Pilot was one Anthony Ierado a French man, of the poynture of Massilis: the purser was one William Thomson our owners forme: the merchants factors were Romane Sonnings, a Frenchman, and Richard Skegs seruant vnto the said master Stapers. The owners were bound vnto the merchants by charter partie therupon, in one thousand markes, that the said ship by Gods permission should goe for Tripolis in Barbarie, that is to say, first from Portesmouthe to Newhauen in Normandie, from thence to S. Lukar, otherwise called S. Lucas in Andeluzia, and from thence to Tripolie, which is in the East part of Africa, & so to returne vnto London. But here ought euery man to note and consider the workes of our God that (many times) what man doth determine, God doth disappoint. The said master hauing some occasion to go to Farmne, tooke with him the Pilot and the Purser, and returning againe by meanes of a peece of wind, the boate wherein they were, was drowned, the said master, the purser, and all the company: ouely the said Pilot by experience in swimming saued himselfe: these were the beginnings of our sorowes. After which the said masters mate would not proceed in that voiage, and the owner hearing of this misfortune, and the vnwillingnesse of the masters mate, did send downe one Richard Deimond, and shipped him for master, who did chuse for his mate one Andrew Dier, and so the said ship departed on her voiage accordingly: that is to say, about the 16. of October, in An. 1584. she made saile from Portesmouthe, and the 18. day then next following she arrived into Newhauen, where our said last master Deimond by a surfeit died. The factors then appointed the said Andrew Dier being then masters mate, to be their master for that voiage, who did chuse to be his mates, the two quarter masters of the same ship, to wit, Peter Austine, and Shillabey, and for purser was shipped one Richard Burges. Afterward about the 8. day of Nouember, we made saile forthward, and by force of weather we were driuen backe againe into Portesmouthe, where we refreshed our vituals and other necessaries, and then the wind came faire. About the 29. day then next following, we departed thence, and the first day of December by meanes of a contrary winde, we were driuen to Plimmouth. The 18. day then next following, we made forthward againe, and by force of weather we were driuen to Falmouth, where we remained vntill the first day of Ianuarie: at which time the wind coming faire, we departed thence, & about the 20. day of the said moneth we arrived safely at S. Lucas. And about the 9. day of March next following, we made saile from thence, and about the 18. day of the same moneth we came to Tripolis in Barbarie, where we were very well interained by the king of that country, and also of the commons. The commodities of that place are sweete oiles: the king there is a merchant, and the rather (willing to preferre himselfe before his commons) requested our said factors to traffique with him, and promised them that if they would take his oiles at his owne price, they should pay no manner of custome, and they tooke of him certaine tunnes of oile: and afterward perceiuing that they might haue farre better cheape notwithstanding the custome free, they desired the king to licence them to take the oiles at the pleasure of his commons, for that his price did exceed theirs: whereunto the king would not agree, but was rather contented to abate his price, insomuch that the factors bought all their oiles of the kings custome free, and so laded the same aboard.

Open doorth  
purpoise, and  
God doth  
dispoise.

It new master  
chosen.

The new mas-  
ter died.

The *Iesus*  
arrived in  
Tripolis.

Cairo, and from thence to the spices are brought into houses. But oftentimes they see cause. And the comers, and of clothes all colours, and the quinal, Ginger, and other in from Alexandria, for

the yeere 1584. with distresses of some Englishes observed. Written by

Edward Osburne knight, master Richard Stapers, the the Iesus, she was builded at master Thomas Thomlon, (vnder God) was one Zane Richard Morris of that prouince of Masillis: the factories were Romane Son-Stapers. The owners were markes, that the sayd ship first from Portefmouth in the shaddes of Lucas in Andel-land, so to returne vnto London, so that (many times) what the occasion to go to Farme, rances of a perrie of wind, she did all the company: onely the beginnings of our voyage, and the owner hearing of this one one Richard Deimond, Dier, and so the said ship departed, in An. 1584. she made into Newhauen, where continued the said Andrew Dier, and so to be his Spares, the two and for purser was shipped vnder the saile forthward, and by the we refreshed our victuals, then next following, we departed vnto the maine, and by force of weather in Ianuarie: at which tyme the money was arrived safely at from thence, and about the we were very well intended, that place are sweete himself before his commons) if they would take his othes of him certaine runnes of the we notwithstanding the pleasure of his commons, free, but was rather content the kings custome free, and

In

In the meane time there came to that place one Miles Dickenon, in a shippe of Britlow, who together with our said Factory tooke a house to themselves there. Our Factory Romaine Sonnings desired to buy a commodity in the market, and wanting money, desired the said Miles Dickenon to lende him an hundred Chikinoes vntill hee came to his lodging, which hee did, and afterward the same Sonnings mette with Miles Dickenon in the streete, and deliuered him money bound up in a vnder: saying, master Dickenon here is the money that I borrowed of you, and so thanked him for the same: hee doubted nothing lesse then fallshood, which is seldom known among marchantes, and specially being together in one house, and is the more detestable betwene Christians, they being in Turkie among the heathen. The said Dickenon did not tell the money presently, vntill hee came to his lodging, and then finding nine Chikinoes lacking of his hundred, which was about threepounds, for that every Chikinoe is worth seuen shillings of English money, he came to the said Romaine Sonnings and deliuered him his handkerchiefe, and asked him howe many Chikinoes hee had deliuered him? Sonnings answered, an hundred: Dickenon said no: and so they protested and swore on both partes. But in the ende the said Romaine Sonnings did sweare deeply with detestable othes and curses, and prayed God that hee might bewe his workes on him, that other might take ensample thereby, and that hee might be hangd like a dogge, and neuer come into England againe, if hee did not deliuer vnto the said Dickenon an hundred Chikinoes. And here behold a notable example of all blasphemers, curses and sweares, how God rewarded him accordingly: for many times it cometh to passe, that God sheweth his miracles vpon such monstrous blasphemers, to the insample of others, as now hereafter you shall here what befell to this Romaine Sonnings.

There was a man in the said towne a pledge, whose name was Patrone Norado, who the yere before had done this Sonnings some pleasure there. The foresaide Patrone Norado was indebted vnto a Turke of that towne, in the summe of foure hundred and fiftie crownes, for certaine goods sent by him into Chyistendome in a shippe of his owne, and by his owne brother, and himselfe remained in Tripolis as pledge, vntill his saide brothers returne: and as the report went there, after his brothers arrival into Chyistendome, hee came among lewde companie, and lost his brothers saide shippe and goods at dice, and neuer returned vnto him againe.

The said Patrone Norado being boyde of all hope, and finding no waye opportunite, consulted with the said Sonnings for to swimme a sea boorde the Islands, and the shippe being then out of danger should take him in, (as after was confessed) and so to goe to Tallowne in the prouince of Masillis, with this Patrone Norado, and there to take in the rest of his lading.

The shippe being ready the first day of May, and hauing her sailes all aboarde, our sayde Factory did take their leaue of the King, who very courteously bidde them fare well, and when they came aboarde, they commanded the Master and the companie hastily to get out the shippe: the Master answered that it was impossible, for that the winde was contrary and overblowd. And he required vs vpon forfeiture of our handes, that wee should doe our inuouere to get her forth. Then went we to warpe out the shippe, and presently the king sent a boate aboarde of vs, with three men in her, commanding the said Sonnings to come a boate: at whose coming the king demaunded of him custome for the oyles: Sonnings answered him that his highness had promised to deliuer them custome free. But notwithstanding the king weighed not his saide promise, and as an infidel that hath not the feare of God before his eyes, nor regard of his worde, albeit hee was a King, hee caused the said Sonnings to pay the custome to the uttermost penny. And afterwarde willed him to make haste away, saying, that the Janizaries would haue the oyle alsoare againe.

These Janizaries are souldiers there vnder the great Turke, and their power is about the Kings. And so the saide Factory departed from the king, and came to the waterside, and called for a boate to come a boorde, and hee brought with him the foresaid Patrone Norado. The companie inquisitive to know what man that was, Sonnings answered, that he was his countreyman, a challenger: I pray God saide the companie, that wee come not into trouble by this man. Then said Sonnings angrily, what haue you to do with any matters of mine? if any thing chance otherwise then well, I must answer for all.

None the Turke vnto whom this Patrone Norado was indebted, maling him, (supposed him to bee aboarde of our shippe,) presently went vnto the King, and tolde him that hee thought that his pledge Patrone Norado was aboarde of the English shippe, whereupon the King presently sent a boate aboarde of vs, with three men in her, commanding the said Sonnings to come a boate, and not speaking any thing as touching the man, hee saide that hee would come presently in his owne boate, but as soone as they were gone, he willed vs to warpe forth the

Another ship of 25000 was sent to Tripolis.

A conspiracy planned by the French Factory, and being a Turke ship made of 4500 crownes.

The beginning of their troubles, and occasion of all their miserie.

Shippe,

Shippe, and said that he would see the knaves hanged before hee would goe a shoare. And when the king sawe that hee came not a shoare, but still continued warping a way the shippe, he straight commaunded the gunner of the bulwarke next unto vs, to shoote thre shottes without ball. Then we came all to the saide Sonnings, and asked of him what the matter was that we were shot at, he saide that it was the Janizaries who would haue the oyle a shoare againe, and willed vs to make haste away, and after that hee had discharged thre shottes without ball, hee commaunded all the gunners in the towne to doe their endeouore to sinke vs, but the Turkish gunners coulde not once strike vs, wherefore the king sent presently to the Banio; (this Banio is the prison wheremas all the captiues lay at night) and promised if that there were any that coulde either sinke vs, or els cause vs to come in againe, he should haue a hundred crownes and his libertie. With that came forth a Spaniard called Sebastian, which had bene an olde seruitour in Flanders, and hee said, that upon the performance of that promise, hee would undertake either to sinke vs, or to cause vs to come in againe, and thereto hee would gage his life, and at the first shotte hee split our ridders head in pices, and the second shotte hee strake vs vnder the water, and the thirde shotte hee shotte vs through our foremasse with a Coluring shotte, and thus hee hauing rent both our rudder and made, and shotte vs vnder water, we were enforced to goe in againe.

*All Spanish captiues shot at vs, and made the ship to perise.*

This Sebastian for all his diligence hereth, had neither his libertie, nor an hundred crownes, as promised by the saide king, but after his seruice done was committed againe to prison, whereby may appeare the regard that a Turke or infidel hath of his word, although he be able to performe it, yea more, though he be a king.

Then our marchants seeing no remedie, they together with five of our companie went a shoare, and then they ceased shooting, they shotte unto vs in the whole, nine and thirtie shottes, without the hurt of any man.

And when our marchants came a shoare, the king commaunded presently that they with the rest of our companie that were with them, should be chained foure and foure, to a hundred waight of yron, and when we came in with the ship, there came presently about an hundred Turkes aboute of vs, and they searched vs, and stripe our very clothes from our backs, and brake open our chests, and made spoyle of all that we had: and the Christian cauitiues likewise that came a boorde of vs, made spoyle of our goods, and bled vs as ill as the Turkes did. And our matters mate hauing a Geneva Bible in his hand, there came the kings chiefe gunner, and tooke it out from him, who hee tooke me of it; and I hauing the language, went presently to the kings treasurer, and tolde him of it, saying, that such it was the will of God that wee should fall into their handes, yet that they should graunt vs to vfe our consciences to our owne discretion, as they suffer the Spaniards and other nations to vfe theirs, and he graunted vs: then I tolde him that the master gunner had taken away a Bible from one of our men: the Treasurer went presently and commaunded him to deliuer by the Bible againe, which hee did: and within a litle after hee tooke it from the man againe, and I shewed the Treasurer of it, and presently hee commaunded him to deliuer it againe: saying, thou villaine, wilt thou turne to Christianitie againe? for hee was a Renegado, which before that first was a Christian, & afterwards becometh a Turke, and so hee deliuered me the Bible the second time. And then I hauing it in my hand, the gunner came to mee, and spake these wordes, saying, thou dogge, I wil haue the booke in despite of thee, and tooke it from me, sayinge, I thou tell the kings treasurer of it any more, by Spahomet I will be reuenged of thee. Forwithstanding I went the third time unto the kings Treasurer, and tolde him of it, and he came with me, saying thus unto the gunner: by the head of the great Turke, if thou take it from him againe, thou shalt haue an hundred battenadoes. And forthwith hee deliuered mee the booke, saying, hee had not the value of a pinne of the spoyle of the ship, which was the better for him, as hereafter you shall heare: for there was none, neither Christian nor Turke that tooke the value of a pennynge of our goods from vs, but perished both bodie and goods within seuenteen moneths following, as hereafter shall plainly appeare.

*All Turke took a Geneva Bible for his share of the spoyle.*

*All that had share of the spoyle (shortly after) by Gods judgement died.*

Then came the Guardian Basha which is the keeper of the kings captiues, to seech vs all a shoare, and then I remembering the miserable estate of poore distressed captiues, in the time of their bondage to those infidels, went to mee owne chest, and tooke out thereof a iarre of oyle, and filled a basket full of white Ruske to carrie a shoare with mee, but before I came to the Banio, the Turkish boyes had taken away almost all my bread, and the keeper saide, deliuer mee the iarre of oyle, and when thou comest to the Banio thou shalt haue it againe, but I neuer had it of him any more.

But when I came to the Banio, and saide our marchants and all the rest of our companie in chains, and we all ready to receive the same reward, what heart in the world is there to haue but

to goe a shoare. And when  
 a way the Shippe, he straight  
 shoores without ball. Then  
 was that we were shot at,  
 and killed vs to make  
 all, hee commannded all the  
 with gunners could not one  
 is the prison whereas all  
 vnder either sinke vs, or els  
 is libertie. With that came  
 in Flanders, and hee said, that  
 to sinke vs, or to cause vs to  
 in a floote hee spile our rudders  
 the shorde floote hee shot vs  
 being rent both our rudder and

no, an hundred crownes  
 to againe to prison, whereby  
 ough to be able to performe

due of our companie were a  
 whole, nine and thirtie shotes,  
 presently that they with the  
 foure, to a hundred weight of  
 an hundred Turkes adonies  
 es, and brake open our chests,  
 wisse that came a boote of vs,  
 our matters mate having a  
 ooke it out from him, who  
 lings treasurer, and tolde him  
 to their bandes, yet that they  
 y suffered the Spaniards and  
 the master gunner had  
 wely and commannded him to  
 ooke it from the man againe,  
 him to deliuer it againe say  
 as a Renegado, which wisse  
 he deliuered me the Bible the  
 mee, and spake these wordes,  
 he it from me, sayinge If thou  
 nges of thee. For with stand  
 n of it, and he came with me,  
 ou mee it from him againe,  
 ee the booke, sayinge, hee  
 ter for him, as heereafter you  
 ke the value of a penny worth  
 entene moneths following.

ngs captiues, to fetch vs all  
 ed captiues, in the time of  
 out thereof a tarre of oyle, and  
 foze I came to the Banio, she  
 aide, deliuer mee the tarre of  
 ne, but I neuer had it of him

all the rest of our companie in  
 the world is there to be had

would have picke our side, hearing of seeing the lamentable greeting there was betwixt vs: all  
 this happened the first of May, 1584.

And the second day of the same moneth, the king with all his counsell sat in judgement upon  
 us. The first that were had sayd to be arraignes, were the Spaniards, and the English, and the king  
 asked them whether they came not a shoare when he sent for them. And Romaine Sonnings an  
 other, that though hee were king on shoare, and might be commannded there, so was he as concerning  
 that that were vnder him: and therefore said, if any offence be, the fault is wholly in my selfe, and  
 in no other. Then forth with the king gaue iudgement, that the said Romaine Sonnings should  
 be hanged ouer the Royhead Bulwarke, from whence hee conveyed the sizenamed Patrone No-  
 rado, and then hee called for our Spalier Andrew Dier, and wiled setme to goe to him, and so condemn  
 ed him to be hanged ouer the walles of the Westward bulwarke.

Then fell one other Spaniard (named Richard Skege) vpon his knees before the king, and saide,  
 I beseech your highnesse either to pardon our Spalier, or else suffer me to die for him, for hee is the  
 cause of this cause. And then the people of that countrey, fauouring the said Richard Skege, be-  
 sought the king to pardon them both. So then the king spake these wordes: Behold, for thy  
 sake, I pardon the Spalier. Then presently the Turkes shouted, and cried, saying: A wop wop  
 the Spalier from the presence of the king. And then hee came into the Banio whereas we were, and  
 tolde vs what had happened, and wee all reioyced at the good happe of master Skege, that hee was  
 saued, and our Spalier for his sake.

Our matters our topy was turned to double topy, for in the meane time the kings minde was  
 altered: for that one of his counsell had aduised him, that vntill the Spalier died also, by the lawe  
 they could not confiscate the Shippe nor goods, neither captiue any of the men: whereupon the  
 king sent for our Spalier againe, and gaue him another iudgement after his pardon for one cause,  
 which was that hee should bee hanged. Here all true Christians may see what trust a Christian  
 man may put in an infidels promise, who being a King, pardoned a man wote, as you haue  
 heard, and within an houre after hanged him for the same cause before a whole multitude: and al-  
 so promised our Spalier their oyle custome free, and at their going away made them pay the  
 vntill penie for the custome thereof.

And when that Romaine Sonnings saw no remedie but that hee should die, hee proceeded to turne  
 Turke, hoping thereby to haue saued his life. Then saide the Turke, If thou wilt turne Turke,  
 spake the wop that thereunto belong: and hee did so. Then saide the y into him, How thou shalt  
 be in the faith of a Turke, and so hee did, as the Turkes reported that were at his execution. And  
 the sizenamed Patrone Norado, whereas before hee had libertie and did nothing, hee then was con-  
 demned slau perpetual, excepte these were payntes made of the foresaid summe of money.

Then the king commannded all vs, who were in number five and thientie, of the which, two  
 were hanged (as you haue heard) and one died the first day we came on shoare, by the visitation of  
 Almighty God: and the other three and thientie hee condemned slaues perpetually vnto the great  
 Turke, and the shippe and goods were confiscated to the use of the great Turke: and then wee all  
 fell vnto our knees, giuing God thanks for this sorrowfull visitation, and giuing our  
 felix wop to the Almighty power of God, vnto whome all secrets are knowne, that hee of his  
 goodnes would vouchsafe to looke vpon vs.

Here may all true Christian hearts see the wonderfull workes of God shewed vpon such in-  
 fidel blasphemers, wopemasters, and rannagate Christians, and so you shall reade in the ende of  
 this booke of the like vpon the vnfaithfull king and all his children, and of as many asooke any  
 portion of the said goods.

Our first to be we our miserabie bondage and slauerie, and vnto whole small pittance and al-  
 littance wee were tied, for every faw men had allowance but faw adpers of bread in a day, which  
 is but two pence English: and our lodging was to lye on the bare booyes, with a very simple  
 cope to cover vs, here were also forreably and most vnderly hamed, head and beard, and within  
 three dayes after: I and five more of my fellows together, with foure foye Italians and Spa-  
 niards, were sent forth in a Galee to take a Greekeish Carmoel, which came into Arabia to steale  
 Negroes, and went out of Tripolis vnto that place, which was two hundred and fourtie leagues  
 off, but we were chained three and three to an oare, and wee were naked aboute the girde, and  
 the Dorelwaime of the Galley walked about the middle, and his spade adoye the middle, and vnto  
 them a bulls pisse vnto in their handes, and when they should choller cold, they would  
 strike the Christians for no cause: And they allowed vs but halfe a pounde of bread a man  
 in a day without any other kind of sustenance, wnter excepten. And when wee came to the  
 place wher was the Greekeish Carmoel, the were not allowed any victualles, neither, beards, and

The English  
 men arraigne.

Spalier Dier  
 commannded to  
 be hanged  
 ouer a bul-  
 warke.

A French  
 man turned  
 Turke, in  
 hope of his  
 life, and after-  
 ward was  
 hanged.

Every five  
 men allowance  
 but two pence  
 of bread a  
 day.

of any other instrument about vs, nor at any other time in the night, upon paine of one hundred *linadoes*; we were then also cruellly manackled in such sort, that we could not put our handes the length of one foot a sunder the one from the other, and euery night they searched our chains three times, to see if they were slacke ruetted: After continued fight with the *Carmos* of the *houles*, and then weooke it, & lost but two of our men in that fight, but there were slain of the *Greekes* five, and 14. were cruellly hurt, and they that were sound, were presently made slaues, and chained to the oares; and within fifteene dayes after we returned againe into *Tripolis*; and then we were put to all manner of slaueerie. I was put to heve stones, and other to carrie stones, and some to draine the *Cart* with earth, and some to make meyer, and some to draine stones; (so at that time the *Turkes* builden a church) And thus we were put to all kinde of slaueerie that was to be done. And in the time of our being there, the *Moores* that are the husbandmen of the countrey, rebelled against the king, because he would haue constrained them to pay greater tribute then heretofore they had done, so that the souldiours of *Tripolis* marcht forth of the towne to haue opposed battell against the *Moores* for their rebellion, and the king sent with them foure pieces of ordinance, which were draynen by the captiues twentie miles into the countrey after them, and at the sight therof the *Moores* fled, and then the captiues returned backe againe. Then I and certaine *Christians* more, were sent twelue mile into the countrey with a *Cart* to lode timber, and we returned againe the same day.

The *Turkes* builden a church.

The *Christians* sent 3. times a weeke 30. miles to fetch wood.

Nowe the king had 18. captiues, which thre times a weeke went to fetch wood thirtie miles from the towne, and on a tyme he appointed me for one of the 18. and we departed at eight of the clocke in the night, and upon the way as we rode upon the camels, I demanded of one of our companie, who did direct vs the way: hee saide, that there was a *Moore* in our companie which was our guide, and I demanded of them how *Tripolis* and the wood bare one off the other, and he saide, *East Northweest*, and *West Southweest*. And at midnichte of neere thereabouts, as I was riding upon my camel, I fell asleepe, and the guide and all the rest rode away from me, not thinking but I had bene among them. When I awooke, and finding my selfe alone, darst not call my hallo, for feare least the wilde *Moores* should heare mee, because they holde this opinion, that in killing a *Christians* they doe God good seruice: and musing with my selfe what were best for me to doe, if I should goe forth, and the wilde *Moores* should happe to meete with mee, they would kill mee; and on the other side, if I should returne backe to *Tripolis* without any wood or companie, I should be most miserablie bled therefore: of two euils, rather I had to goe forth to the losing of my life, then to turne backe and trust to their mercie, fearing to bee used as before I had seene others: for vnderstanding by some of my companie before, how *Tripolis* and the said wood did lie one off another, by the *North* starre I went forth at aduenture, and as God would haue it, I came right to the place where they were, euen about an houre before day: there altogether we rested and gaue our camels prouender, and althoone as the day appeared, we rode all into the wood: and I seeing no wood there, but a sicke here and a sicke there, about the bignesse of a mans arme growing in the sand, it caused me to marueile how so many camels should be loden in that place. The wood was *Tunsteepe*, we needed no axe nor edge toole to cut it, but pluckt it by strength of hands rootes and all, which a man might easily do, and so gathered it together, a lode at one place and so at another, & laded our camels, & came home about tenen of the clocke that night following, because I fell lame and my camel was tired, I left my wood in the way.

Eightene captiues run away from *Tripolis*.

The indgement of God upon *Malpemetra*.

There was in *Tripolis* that time a *Venetian*, whose name was *Benedetto Venetiano*, and seuentene captiues more of his companie, which ranne away from *Tripolis* in a boate, and came in sight of an *Island* called *Malta*, which lieth fourtie leagues from *Tripolis* right *North*, and being within a mile of the shoare, & very faire weather, one of their companie saide, *In dispetto de dio adesso venio a pilliar terra*, which is as much to say: In the despite of God I shall no more fetch the shoare, and presently there arose a mightie storme, with thunder and raime, and the winde at *North*, their boate being very smal, so that they were forced to beare by rorance, & so sheare right afore the winde ouer against the coast of *Barbaric* from whence they came, and rowing vp and downe the coast, their victuals being spent, the 21. day after their departure they were enforced through the want of food to come ashore, thinking to haue stolne some sheepe: but the *Moores* of the countrey very craftily (perceiuing their intent) gathered together a threescore horsemen, and hid themselues behinde a sandie hill, and when the *Christians* were come all a shoare, and past by halfe a mile into the countrey, the *Moores* rode betwixt them and their boate, and some of them pursued the *Christians*, and they were all taken and brought to *Tripolis*, from whence they had before escaped: and presently the king commaunded that the foresaide *Benedetto* with one more of his companie should lose their eares, and the rest to be most cruellly beate, which was presently

upon paine of our hanches  
could not put our hands the  
they searched our chains the  
Carrosall the houses, and  
ere slain of the Greeces the  
specially made slaves, and this  
into Tripolis; and then were  
to carrie stones, and some  
to vnto Mones, (so) as the  
of Auerie that was to be  
bandmen of the country, to  
ay greater tribute then heretofore  
of the coune to haue  
with them foure pieces of  
the country after them, and  
backe againe. Then I and  
with a Cart to lode timber, and

at to fetch wood thirte miles  
to we departed at eight of the  
I remaunders of one of our  
loope in our companie which  
bare one off the other, and  
ere thereabouts, as I was  
away from me, not thinking  
selfe alone, darst not call my  
to be the chis opinion, that in  
y selfe what were best for me  
meete with mee, they woulde  
without any word of comp  
I had to goe forth to the  
to be used as before I had  
Tripolis and the said wood  
and as God would haue it,  
the day: there altogether we  
we rode all into the wood:  
the bignesse of a mans arme  
should be loben in that place,  
but pluckt it by by strength of  
together, a litle at one place  
a clocke that might followe  
day.

Benedetto Venetiano, and  
Tripolis in a boate, and came  
Tripolis right forth, and be  
pantie said, In dispetto de dio  
of God I shall not we fetch  
and raine, and the winde at  
by roome, so to heare right  
they came, and returning vp  
departure they were susped  
the sheepe: but the Moores of  
er a threescore boismen, and  
some all a shoare, and pass by  
their boate, and some of them  
Tripolis, from whence they  
said Benedetto with me  
I trustly heauen, which was  
presently

presently dour. This king had a soune which was a ruler in an Island called Gerbi, whereun  
to arrived an English ship called the Greene Dragon, of the which was master one M. Blonker,  
who hauing a very unhappie boy in that shippe, and vnderstanding that whosoener would turne  
Turke should be well entertained of the kings soune, this boy did runne a shoare, and voluntarily  
turne Turke. Shortly after the kings soune came to Tripolis to visit his father, and seeing our  
companie, he greatly fancied Richard Burges our purser, and James Smith: they were both young  
men, therefore he was very desirous to haue them to turne Turkes, but they would not yeeld to his  
desire, saying, we are your fathers slaues, and as slaues wee will serue him. Then his father the  
king sent for them, and asked them if they woulde turne Turke? and they saide: If it please your  
highnes, Christians we were bozne, and so we will remaine, & beseeched the king that they might  
not be enforced therunto. The king had there before in his house, a soune of a yeoman of our  
Queenes guard, whom the kings soune had enforced to turne Turke, his name was Iohn Nelson:  
him the king caused to be brought to these young men, and then said vnto them: I will not you be are  
this your countreyman companie, and be Turke as he is: and they said, that they would not yeeld  
therunto during life. But it fell out, that within a moneth after, the kings soune went home to  
Gerbi againe, being fixe score miles from Tripolis, and carried our two foresaid young men with  
him, which were Richard Burges, and James Smith: and after their departure from vs, they sent  
vs a letter, signifying that there was no violence shewed vnto them as yet, but within thre dayes  
after they were violently used, for that the kings soune demanded of them againe, if that they  
would turne Turke? then answered Richard Burges, a Christian I am, and so I will remaine.  
Then the kings soune very angerly saide vnto him: by Mahomet thou shalt presently bee made  
Turke. Then called hee for his men, and commaunded them to make him Turke, and they did  
so, and circumcised him, and would haue had him speake the wordes that therunto belonged, but  
he answered them stoutly that he would not: and although they had put on him the habite of a  
Turke, yet said he, a Christian I was bozne, and so I will remaine, though you force mee to doe  
otherwise.

And then he called for the other, and commaunded him to be made Turke perforce also: but hee  
was very strong, for it was so much as eight of the kings somes men could doe to holde him, so in  
the ende they circumcised him, and made him Turke. Now to passe ouer a litle, and so to theue the  
matter of our deliuerance out of that miserable captiuitie.

In Spay aforesaid, shortly after our apprehension, I wrote a letter into Englande vnto my fa  
ther, dwelling in Eauisoke in Deuonshire, signifying vnto him the whole estate of our calamities:  
and I wrote also to Constantine to the English Embassadour, both which letters were  
faithfully deliuered. But when my father had receiued my letter, and vnderstood the true ty of our  
misday, and the occasion thereof, and what had happened to the offenders, he certified the right ho  
norable the earle of Bedford therof, who in short space acquainted her highnes with y<sup>e</sup> whole cause  
thereof, & her maiestie like a most mercifull princesse, renouing her subiects, presentlyooke order  
for our deliuerance. Therupon the right worshipful sir Edward Osborne knight, directed his let  
ters with all speede to the English Embassadour in Constantinople, to procure our deliuerie:  
and he obtained the great Turkes commission, and sent it forth with to Tripolis, by one master Ed  
ward Barton, together with a Justice of the great Turkes, and one souldiour, and another Turke,  
and a Greeke which was his interpreter, which could speake besides Greeke, Turkish, Italian,  
Spanish and English. And when they came to Tripolis, they were well interteined. And the  
first night they did lie in a captaines house in the townes all our companie that were in Tripolis,  
came that night for to to master Barton and the other commissioners to see them. Then master  
Barton said vnto vs, welcome my good countreyman, and louingly interteined vs, and at our de  
parture from him he gaue vs two shillings, and saide, serue God, for to morrowe I hope you shall  
be as free as euer you were. We all gaue him thanks and so departed.

The next day in the morning very early, the king hauing intelligence of their coming, sent  
hope to the keeper; that none of the Englishmen (meaning our companie) shoulde goe to  
work. Then hee sent for master Barton and the other commissioners, and demanded of the  
said master Barton his message: the Justice answered, that the great Turke his Soueraigne  
had sent them vnto him, signifying that hee was informed that a certaine English shippe called  
the Iesus, was by him the said king confiscated, about twelue moneths since, and nowe my saide  
Soueraigne hath here sent his especiall commission by vs vnto you, for the deliuerance of the  
said ship and goods, and also the free liberte & deliuerance of the Englishmen of the same shippe,  
whome you haue taken, and kept in captiuitie. And further the same Justice saide, I am author  
ized by my saide Soueraigne the great Turke to see it done: And therefore I commaunde you by

The kings  
soune had a  
captiue that  
was to be  
one of the  
Queenes ma  
sisters guard,  
that was for  
ced to turne  
Turke.

The first mis  
sion for those  
Englishmen  
deliuerie.



The English  
men releas'd.

vertue of this commission, presently to make restitution of the premises or the value thereof, and so did the Justices deliver unto the King the great Turkes commission to the effect aforesaid, which commission the King with all obedience received: and after the perusing of the same, hee for he which commanded all the English captiues to bee brought before him, and then willed the keeper to strike off all our yrons, which done, the King saide, You Englishmen, for that you haue offended the lawes of this place, by the same lawes therefore some of your companie were condemned to die as you knowe, and you to be perpetuall captiues during your liues: notwithstanding, seeing it hath pleased my soueraigne lorde the great Turke to pardon your saide offences, and to giue you your freedom and libertie, behold, here I make deliuey of you to this English Gentleman: so hee deliuered vs all that were there, being thirteene in number, to master Barton, who required also those two young men which the kings sonne had taken with him. Then the king answered that it was against their lawe to deliuer them, for that they were turned Turkes: and touching the ship and goods, the king saide, that he had solde her, but would make restitution of the value, and as much of the goods as came vnto his handes, and so the King arose and went to dinner, and commaunded a Jewe to goe with master Barton and the other commissioners, to shewe them their lodging, which was a house provided and appointed them by the saide king. And because I had the Italian and Spanish tongues, by which their most traffique in that countrey is, Master Barton made mee his Cater to buy his victuals for him and his companie, and deliuered mee money needefull for the same. Thus were we let at libertie the 28. day of April, 1585.

The plagues  
and punishments  
that happened to  
the king and  
his people.

So we to returne to the kings plagues and punishments, which Almighty God at his will and pleasure sendeth vpon men in the sight of the worlde, and likewise of the plagues that befall his children and others aforesaid. First when we were made bondmen, being the second day of May 1584. the King had 300. captiues, and before the month was expired, there died of them of the plague 150. And whereas there were 26. men of our companie, of whome two were hanged, and one died the same day that we were made bondslaves, that present month there died 9. more of our companie of the plague, & other two were forced to turne Turkes as before is rehearsed: and on the 4. day of June next following, the king lost 150. camels, which were taken from him by the wild Moores: and on the 28. day of the said month of June, one Geoffrey Maltees, a renegado of Malta, ran away to his countrey, & stole a Bigandine which the king had builded for to take the Christians withal, & carried with him 12. Christians more which were the kings captiues. Afterward about the 10. day of July next following, the king rood forth vpon the greatest & fairest mare that might be seen, as white as any swan: he had not ridden 40. paces fro his house, but on a sudden the same mare fell downe vnder him stark dead, & I with 6. more were commaunded to burie her skinn, shoes and all, which we did. And about three monthes after our deliuerie, Master Barton, with all the residue of his companie, departed from Tripolie to Zante, in a vessel, called a Settea, of one Marcus Segoorus, who dwelt in Zante, and after our arrivall at Zante, we remained 15. daies there, aboard our vessel, before we could haue Platego (that is, leane to come a shoare) because the plague was in that place, from whence we came: and about three daies after, we came a shoare, thither came another Settea of Marfills bound for Constantinople. Then did

Two English  
men shipped  
to Constantinople  
with  
Barton.

The soldiers  
of Tripolie  
kill the king.

Master Barton, and his company, with two more of our company, shipped themselves as passengers in the same Settea, and went to Constantinople. But the other nine of vs that remained in Zante, about three monthes after, shipped ourselves in a shippe of the said Marcus Segoorus, which came to Zante, and was bound for England. In which three monthes, the soldiers of Tripolie killed the said king. And then the kings sonne, according to the custome there, went to Constantinople, to surrender vp all his fathers treasure, goods, captiues, and concubines, vnto the Great Turke, and tooke with him our said Purcell, Richard Burges, and James Smith, and also the other two Englishmen, which he the said kings sonne had intored to be corraue Turkes, as is aforesaid. And the y the said Englishmen, finding now some opportunity, concluded with the Christian captiues, which were going with them vnto Constantinople, being in number about one hundred and fiftie, to kill the kings sonne, and all the Turkes which were aboard of the Galley, and principally the said Englishmen commaued vnto the said Christian captiues, weapons for that purpose. And when they came into the maine sea, towards Constantinople (vpon the faithfull promise of the said Christian captiues) these four Englishmen leapt suddenly into the Crosia, that is, into the midst of the Galley, where the canon lieth, and with their swordes bygone, did fight against all the foresaid Turkes, and for want of helpe of the saide Christian captiues, who faulde by their promise, the said Master Blonkers boy was killed, and the saide James Smith, and our Purcell Richard Burges, and the other Englishman, were taken and bound into chaines, to be hanged at their arrivall in Constantinople: and as the Lopes will was, about two daies after, passing

millis of the value thereof, and  
 mission to the effect aforesaid,  
 r the perulling of the same, her  
 efore him, and then tolled the  
 Englishmen, for that you did  
 your company were condemn  
 your lives: notwithstanding,  
 edon your saide offences, and to  
 p of you to this English Gen  
 umber, to master Barton, who  
 with him. Then the king  
 were turned Turkes: and to  
 u to make restitution of the  
 King arose and went to dinner,  
 commissioners, to the we then  
 the saide king. And because  
 that countrey is, after Bar  
 anie, and deliuered mee money  
 April, 1585.

Almighty God at his will and  
 of the plagues that befall his  
 n, being the second day of Sep  
 tember, there died of them of the  
 wolome two were hanged, and  
 moneth there died 9. more of  
 es as before is rehearsed: and  
 they were taken from him by the  
 sney Maltees, a rennegado of  
 ing had builded for to take the  
 ere the kings captiues. After  
 upon the greatest & fairest mare  
 s fro his house, but on a sudden  
 were commanded to burie her  
 our deliuerie, after Barton,  
 ante, in a vessell, called a Ser  
 riuall at Zante, wee remain  
 ego (that is, leane to come a  
 e: and about three daies after,  
 Constantinople. Then did  
 shippe themselues as passen  
 er nine of vs that remained in  
 said Marcus Segoorus, which  
 uthers, the soldiers of Tripolie  
 me there, went to Constanti  
 d concubines, into the Great  
 d James Smith, and also the  
 o becorde Turkes, as is afores  
 e, concluded with the Christian  
 king in number about one hun  
 dre a boord of the Galley, and  
 e weapons for that purpose,  
 upon the faithfull promise of  
 into the Crosia, that is, into  
 s captiues, did fight against  
 captiues, who saillie vnto  
 saide James Smith, and our  
 and bound into chains; to be  
 all times, about two daies after,  
 passing

passing through the gulfe of Venice, at an Island called Cephalonia, they met with 2. of Duke  
 of Venice his Gallies, which tooke that Galley, and killed the kings sonne, and his mother, and  
 all the Turkes that were there, in number, 150, and they saued the Christian captiues, and would  
 haue killed the two Englishmen, because they were circumcised, and become Turkes, had not the  
 other Christian captiues excused them, saying, that they were infourted to be Turkes, by the kings  
 order: shewed the Venecians also, how they did enterprise at sea to fight against all the Turkes,  
 and that their two fellowes were slaine in that fight. Then the Venecians saued them, and they,  
 with all the residue of the said captiues, had their libertie, which were in number, 150. of these  
 boats, and the said Gallie, and all the Turkes treasure, was confiscated to the vse of the State of  
 Venice, and from thence our two Englishmen trauelled homeward by land, and in this meane  
 time, wee had one more of our companie, which died in Zante, and after ward the other eight ship  
 ped themselues at Zante, in a shippe of the saide Marcus Segoorus, which was bound for Eng  
 land: and before we departed thence, there arriued the Assention, and the George Bonauenture  
 of London, in Cephalonia, in a harbour there, called Arrogostoria, whose marchantes agreed  
 with the marchants of our shippe, and so laded all the marchandise of our shippe into the said ship  
 of London, who tooke vs eight also in as passengers, and so we came home, and within two mo  
 neths after our arriual at London, our said Purser Richard Burges, and his fellow, came home  
 also, for the which we are bound to praise Almighty God, during our liues, & as dutie bindeth vs,  
 to pray for the preservation of our most gracious Queene, for the great care her Maestie had ouer  
 vs, her poore subiects, in seeking and procuring of our deliuerance aforesaid: and also for her ho  
 norable yuiue Council, and especially for the prosperitie and good estate of the house of the late  
 deceased, the right honorable the Earle of Bedford, whose howe I must confess, most diligent  
 at the suite of my father now departed, trauelled herein: for the which I rest continually bounden  
 to his, whose soule I doubt not, but is a ready in the heauens in toy, with the Almighty: vnto  
 which place he vouchsafe to bring vs all, that for our sames suffered most vile and shameful death  
 vpon the Crosse, there to liue perpetually world without end, Amen.

Two gallies  
 of Venice  
 tooke the king  
 of Cyprus  
 his galley, and  
 killed the  
 kings sonne,  
 and all the  
 Turkes in it,  
 and released all  
 the Christians  
 being in num  
 ber 150.

The Queenes letters to the Turke, 1584. for the restitution of  
 the shippe, called the Iesus, and the English captiues detained in Tripo  
 lie in Barbarie, and for certaine other prisoners in Argiers.



Libabetha, Dei ter maximi & vnici coeli terraeque conditoris gratia, Anglia,  
 Franciae, & Hiberniae Regina, fidei Christianae contra omnes omnium inter  
 Christianos degentium, Christi que nomen falso profitentium idololatrias,  
 inuicissimas & potentissimas defenstrae: augustissimae, inuicissimaeque prin  
 cipi, Sultan Murad Can, Musulmanici regni dominatoris potentissimo, impe  
 rijque Orientis Monarchae, supra omnes soli & supremo salutem, & multos  
 cum summa rerum optimarum affluentia faelicis & fortunatos appos.

Augustissime & potentissime Imperator, biennio iam peracto, ad Caesarem vestram Maie  
 state scripsimus, vt dilectus noster famulus Guilielmus Harebtonus, vir ornatissimus pro lega  
 to nostro Constantinopoli, aliisque Musulmanici imperij ditonibus, sublimi vestra auctorita  
 te recipetur: simul etiam Angli subditi nostri commercium & mercaturam, in omnibus illis  
 prouinciis exercent, non minus liberè, quam Galli, Poloni, Veneti, Germani, ceterique vestri  
 confederati, qui varias Orientis partes peragunt, operam nauantes, vt inuicissimè commercii  
 coniungatur Oriens cum Occidente.

Que privilegia, cum nostris subditis Anglis inuicissimè vestra Maiestas literis & diplomate  
 suo liberalissime indulserit, facere non potuimus, quia quas maximas animus noster capere  
 potest gratias, eo nomine ageremus: sperantes fore, vt hæc insignita commerciorum ratio max  
 imas utilitates, & commoda vsuque, tam in imperii vestri ditonibus, quam regni nostri prouin  
 cias secum adferat.

Ad vt plane fiat, cum nuper subditi nostri nonnulli Tripoli in Barbaria & Argelle ab eius dor  
 minis voluntatem vestram forte nescientibus male habiti fuerint, & immariter diuerti  
 Caesarem vestram Maiestatem beneuolè rogauimus, vt per Legatum nostrum, eorum causam  
 cognoscas, & postremo, eorum prouinciarum protegibus ac praesectis imperes: vt nostri liberè  
 in illis locis, sine vi aut iniuria deinceps versari, & negotia gerere possint.

Hænos omni opera vicissim studebimus ea omnia praestare, quae Imperatoris vestri Maie  
 stati villo pacto gratia fore intelligemus: quam Deus vnicus mundi conditor optimis maxi  
 mus diuicissimè in eorum & florentem seruet. Datur in palatio nostro Londini, quinto die  
 Mensis

Mensis Septembris: anno Iesu Christi Seruatoris nostri, 1584. Regni verò nostri vicessimo

*The same in English.*

**E**lizabeth by the grace of the most high God, and onely maker of heauen and earth, of England, France, and Ireland Queene, and of the Christian faith, against all the Idolaters and false professors of the name of Christ dwelling among the Christians, most inuincible and puissant defender: to the most valiant and inuincible Prince, Sultan Murad Can, the most mightie Ruler of the kingdome of Musulman, and of the East Empire the onely and highest Monarch above all, health, and many happie and fortunate peeres, with great aboundance of the best things.

Most noble and puissant Emperour, about two peeres now passed, we wrote vnto your Imperiall Maiestie, that our welbeloued seruant, William Harebrowne, a man of great reputation and honour, might be receaued vnder your high authoritie, for our Ambassadour in Constantinople, and other places, vnder the obedience of your Empire of Musulman: And also that the Englishmen, being our subiects, might exercise entrecoure and marchandize in all those Provinces, no lesse freely then the French, Polonians, Venetians, Germanes, and other your confederates, which traueil through diuerse of the East parts: endeavouring that by mutuall traffike, the East may be opened and knit to the West.

Which priuiledges, when as your most puissant Maiestie, by your letters and vnder your dispensation most liberally and fauourably granted to our subiects of England, we could no lesse doe, but in that respect giue you as great thankes, as our heart could conceaue, trusting that it wol come to passe, that this order of traffike, so well obtained, will bring with it selfe most great profits and commodities to both sides, as well to the parties subiect to your Empire, as to the Provinces of our kingdome. Which thing that it may be done in plaine and effectuall manner, when as some of our subiects of late at Tripolis in Barbarie, and at Argier, were by the inhabitants of those places (being perhaps ignorant of your pleasure) euill increased and grieuouly vexed, we doe friendly and lovingly desire your Imperiall Maiestie, that you will vnderstand their causes by our Ambassadour, and afterward giue commaundement to the Lieutenants and Presidents of those provinces, that our people may henceforth freely, without any violence, or iniurie, traueil, and doe their busines in those places.

And we againe with all endeavour, shall studie to performe all those things, which we shall in any wise vnderstand to be acceptable to your Imperiall Maiestie, which God, the onely maker of the world, most best and most great, long keepe in health, and flourishing. Given in our pallace at London, the first day of the moneth of September, in the peere of Iesus Christ our sauour, 1584, and of our raigne, the 26.

**The commandement obtained of the Grand Signior by her  
Majesties Ambassadour, for the quiet passing of her subiects to, & from  
his dominions, sent in Anno 1584. to the Viceroyes of Argier, Tunes, and Tripolis in  
Barbarie.**



**W**our Beglerbege of Argier. We certifie thee, by this our commandement, that the right honorable, William Harebrowne, Ambassadour to the Queenes Maiestie of England, hath signified vnto vs, that the shippes of that Countrey, in their coming, and returning to and from our Empire, one the one parts of the seas haue the Spaniards, Florentines, Sicilians, and Portese, on the other part our Countreys, commited to your charge, which aboue sayd Christians, will not quietly suffer their egresse and regress into, and out of our dominions, but doe take, and make the men captiues, and forsee the shippes, and goods, as the last peere the Malceses did one, which they tooke at Gerbi, and to that ende, doe continually lie in waite for them, to their destruction, whereupon they are constrained to stand to their defense; at any indignities as they might meete with them: wherefore considering by this meane they must stand vpon their guard, when they shall see any galley a farre off, whereof yf meeting with any of your galleies, and not knowing them, in their defense they doe shoote at them, and yet after, when they do certainly knowpe them, doe not shoote any more, but requisite to passe peaceably on their voyage, which you woulde denie, saying, the peace is broken; for that you haue shoote at vs, and so doe make priue of them, contrary to our priuiledges, and agaynst reason for the preventing

Regni verò nostri vicissimo

of heauen and earth, of Eng  
gainst all the Idolaters and  
most inuincible and pas  
urad Can, the most mightie  
onely and highest Sponard  
reat abountance of the be

we wrote vnto your Ma  
e, a man of great reputation  
mballadour in Constantino  
man: And also that the Eng  
mbize in all those Prouinces  
and other your confederats  
y mutual traffike, the Call

at letters and vnder your  
England, we could no lesse  
conceane, trusting that it wil  
with it selfe most great pro  
your Empire, as to the Ho  
and effectuall manner, when  
were by the inhabitants of  
ed and grieuouly vexed, we  
will vnderstand their causes  
utendants and Presidents of  
violence, or iniurie, trauel

e things, which we shall in  
ich God, the onely maker of  
ng. Given in our pallace at  
us Christ our sauour, 1584.

d Signior by her  
r subiects to, & from  
er, Tunes, and Tripolis in

y this our commandement,  
mballadour to the Queenes  
the shippes of that Countrey,  
Empire, one the one part of  
ians, and Palatines, on the o  
e, which aboue sayd Christi  
our dominions, but doe take  
I peere the Malefies did on  
waight for them, to their de  
any iniuries as they might  
stand vpon their gard, when  
our gallies, and not knowe  
en they do certainly knowe  
n their voyage, which you  
wrote at vs, and so doe  
reasons for the preventing

of which in our time the said Ambassadors had required this our commandement. We therefore  
fore command thee, that vpon the hereof, thou doe not permit any such matter in us for whatso  
er, but suffer the said English ship to passe in peace, according to the tenor of our commande  
ment given, without any billidance, or let, by any meanes vpon the way, although the meeting  
with thy gallies, and not doing them a farre off, they taking them for enemies, should shoote  
at them, yet shall you not suffer them to hurt them therefore, but quietly to passe. Wherefore looke  
that they may haue right, according to our priuiledge giuen them, and suffering any that ab  
solutely handle, and will not obey this our commandement, presently certifie vs to our porch,  
that we may give order for his punishment: and with reuerence giue faithfull credite to this our  
commandement, which hauing read thou shalt againe returne it vnto them that present it. From  
our pallace in Constantinople, the prime of Iune, 1584.

The Turkes letter to the King of Tripolis in Barbarie, commanding the restitution of an English shippe, called the Iesus, with the men, and goods, sent from Constantinople, by Mahomet Beg, a Iustice of the Great Turkes, and an English Gentleman, called Master Edward Barton. Anno 1584.

Honorable and worthy Passa Romadan Beglerbeg, most wise and prudent Iudge  
of the West Tripolis, we with the ende of all thy enterprises happie, and prosp  
erous. By these our Highnes letters, we certifie thee, that the right Honorable,  
William Harebrowne, Amballadour in our most famous porch, for the most  
excellent Queenes Maestie of England, in person, and by letters hath certified  
our Highnes, that a certaine shippe, with all her furniture, and artilerie, worth  
two thousand duckets, arriuing in the port of Tripolis, and discharged of her la  
ding, and marchandize, paid our custome according to order, and againe the marchants laden their  
shippe with oile, which by constraint they were bound to buy of you, and hauing answered in  
like manner the custome for the same, determined to depart: a Frenchman assidant to the Spar  
chant, unknown to the Englishmen, caried away with him another Frenchman, indebted to a  
certaine spoore in foure hundred duckets, and by force cauled the Englishmen, and shippe to de  
part: who neither suspecting fraude, nor deceite, hoisted sailes. In the meane time, this man, whose  
debet the Frenchman had stolen away, went to the Passa with the supplication, by whose  
meanes, and force of the Castle, the Englishmen were constrained to returne into the port, where  
the Frenchman, author of the null, with the Master of the shippe an Englishman, innocent of the  
crime, were hangen, and fixe and thwentie Englishmen cast into prison, of whom through famine,  
shark, and stroke of the prison, eleven died, and the rest like to die. Further, it was signified to our  
Maestie also, that the marchandize and other goods, with the shippe, were worth 7600. duckets:  
which things if they be so, this is our commandement, which was granted and giuen by our Ma  
estie, that the English shippe, and all the marchandize, and whatsoever els taken away, be wholly  
restored, and that the Englishmen be let goe free, and suffered to returne into their Countrey.  
Wherefore when this our commandement shall come vnto thee, we straightly commaund, that the  
fore said busines be diligently looked vnto, and discharged. And if it be so, that a Frenchman, and  
an Englishman hath done this craft, and wickednes vnknotwen to the Englishmen, and as au  
thor of the wickednes is punished, and that the Englishmen committed nothing against the peace  
and league, or their articles: also if they paid custome according to order, it is against law, custome  
of Countrey, and their priuiledge, to hinder or hurt them. Neither is it meete, their shippe, mar  
chandize, and all their goods taken, should be withholden. Wee will therefore, that the English  
shippe, marchandize, and all other their goods, without exception, be restored to the Englishmen:  
also that the men be let goe free, and if they will, let none hinder them, to returne peaceably into  
their Countrey: doe not commit, that they another time complaine of this matter, and to the  
business is dispatched, certifie vs at our most famous porch. Dated in the Citie of Constantino  
ple, in the 22. yeere of Mahomet, and in the ende of the moneth of October, and the yeere of Je  
sus, 1584.

of which in our time the said Ambassadors had required this our commandement. We therefore  
fore command thee, that vpon the hereof, thou doe not permit any such matter in us for whatso  
er, but suffer the said English ship to passe in peace, according to the tenor of our commande  
ment given, without any billidance, or let, by any meanes vpon the way, although the meeting  
with thy gallies, and not doing them a farre off, they taking them for enemies, should shoote  
at them, yet shall you not suffer them to hurt them therefore, but quietly to passe. Wherefore looke  
that they may haue right, according to our priuiledge giuen them, and suffering any that ab  
solutely handle, and will not obey this our commandement, presently certifie vs to our porch,  
that we may give order for his punishment: and with reuerence giue faithfull credite to this our  
commandement, which hauing read thou shalt againe returne it vnto them that present it. From  
our pallace in Constantinople, the prime of Iune, 1584.

A letter of Matter William Harebrowne, the English Amba-  
*sador*, Ligier in Constantinople to the Bassa Romanan, the Begler-  
 beg of Tripolis in Barbarie, for the restoring of an English shippe called the Ictus,  
 spooyd with the goods, and men, detained as slaues, 1585.



**M**olto magnifico Signor, Noi bastata significato per diverse lettere di quanto havessate ettenuto una nave nostra chiamata Ictus, sopra il quale in agimo di Riccardo Skeggs uno de gli nostri mercanti di esse gia morto, venimmo un certo Francese per nome Carlo che chiamato Romano Sonings, il quale per non esser ben portato secondo che doveva, volendo importar seco un altro Francese debitore a certi vostri scelsi mercanti, per giustizia era appiccato col patron Inglese Andre Dier, che come semplice cre-  
 duto del detto Francese senza aver licenza della vostra Magnificenza, quando da vostra  
 magnifica Signoria gli era mandato, La morte del detto triste Francese approuiamo come cosa ben-  
 fessia. Ma al contrario, come lei ha confiscato la detta nave e mercantia in essa, et fatto scelsi li mari-  
 nari, como cosa molto contraria a li privilegij dal Gran Signor quattro anni passati concessi, et da ni  
 confirmati di parte de la Serenissima Magesta di Inghilterra nostra patrona, e molto contraria a la lega  
 del detto Gran Signor, il quale essendo dal sopra detto a pieno informato, noi a conceduto il suo regio  
 mandamento di restituzione, la qual mandiamo a vostra magnifica Signoria col presente portator E-  
 doardo Barton vostro Secretario, et Mahumed Beg, droghemano di sua porta eccelsa, con altre let-  
 tere del eccellentissimo Vizir, et illustrissimo capitano di mar: chiedendo, tanto di parte del Gran Sig-  
 nor, quanto di sua Serenissima Magesta di U.S.M. che gli huomini, ogli, nave col firmamento, dena-  
 ri, et tutti altri beni qualconqua da lei, et per vostro ordine de gli nostri tolti siano resti a questo vostro  
 Secretario liberamente senza rapacho alcuno, como il Gran Signor da sua gratia noi ha conceduto,  
 specialmente per esser detti resti comprati per ordine di sua Serenissima Magesta, per provisione  
 de la Corte sua. Il qual non facendo, protestiamo per questa nostra al incontro a di esso tutti snarrati danti  
 che non succedere per questa ragione, come mandano di quelli contrario a la Santa lega per parte de li  
 duoi Rei, patrami nostri, como per la prinale epistola mostrer a il nostro, consta: per observatione de gli  
 quali noi stiamo di fermo et questa e excusa Potra. Et resti responderete nel altro mondo al solo Iddio,  
 et qua al Gran Signor questo inasistito peccato commesso da lei al incontro a di tanti poteracchi chi per  
 questa accusa de lei sono in parte morti, en parte restati da esso en duro cattiveria. Al contrario, piaccio  
 de lei che di questo incommodo resti restar come in gratia del Signor Iddio, et li nostri patroni, amiche-  
 volmente, debbo contenta a par vostro di nostrasce prenderle povera nazione, et fidel servitor: al patron  
 ad impireto questa nostra iustificata domanda per poter restituarli in grand honore et commodo per  
 la strada di mar chiancia, che saranno a Ladue tra li nostri in quella vostra pronuncia. Et quali general-  
 mente tanto quella, como tutti altri chi ne lmar riscuotere, siano secondo che manda il Grand Signor  
 da vostra Signoria magnifica, amichevolmente a scolti et ricevuti: Et noi non mancheremo al debi-  
 to di ottimo amico in qualconche occasione vostra piaccio lei ammetta nostra, como desideramoli  
 Signor Iddio lei conceda (adimplendo questa nostra giusta richiesta, per carar noi di piu futura feli-  
 cia in questo negocio, et lei di d'Paratia) ogni vera felicitate et supremo honore. Data in palazzo no-  
 stro cho fu da Capama appresso Pera di 15, di Genaro, 1585.

Edoardo Bar-  
 ton & Mahu-  
 med Beg.

Il Ambasciatore de la Magesta Serenissima d'Inghilterra,  
 amico de vostra Signoria magnifica, piaccio lei.

### The same in English.

**R**ight honorable Lord, hath bene signified unto us by diverse letters, what hath fallen out  
 concerning a certaine shippe of ours, called the Ictus, into which for the helpe of Richard  
 Skeggs, one of our marchants in the same navy deceased, there was admitted a certaine French  
 man, called Romano Sonings, which for his ill behaviour, according to his velleitie, seeking to car-  
 ry away with him another Frenchman, which was indebted to certaine of your people, without  
 paying his credits, was hanged by sentence of iustice, together with Andrew Dier, the Master  
 of the said ship, who simply and without fraude, giving credite to the said Frenchman, without  
 any knowledge of his euill fact, did not returne when he was commanded, by your honorable  
 Lordshippe. The death of the said Ictus Frenchman, was approue as a thing well done,  
 but contrariwise, whereas your Lordshippe hath confiscated, the said shippe, with the  
 goods therein, and hath made slaues of the Barriners, as a thing altogether contrarie to the  
 priuiledges of the Grand Signior, granted foure yeeres since, and confirmed by us on the behalfe

of the m  
 to the le  
 gramen  
 of the  
 Justice  
 Capitai  
 shigrid  
 nature,  
 nent, de  
 goodnes  
 manden  
 perform  
 uerment  
 fwoyne  
 pear.  
 Court.  
 vnto the  
 which b  
 vnto. C  
 Almighty  
 you to th  
 curue to  
 come, m  
 ighers, w  
 Shigrid  
 the dutie  
 tie God  
 deliuer  
 vnto, ar  
 rie, 158

Ab

For  
 creat  
 much an  
 one hun  
 The  
 hap, amo  
 pound.  
 The  
 from an  
 atway pe  
 lanitari  
 and fite  
 The  
 peere ly  
 The  
 in Anat  
 ser moue  
 the bun  
 The  
 stoye an  
 The  
 by the y

English Ambaf-  
ador, the Begler  
Shippe, called the Iesus

...ho passato etre di una nave  
...diardo Skegg, uno de giu-  
...ancefe per sopra cargo chia-  
...raio scivolo che donno po-  
...corri vostri senza pagare  
...e Diet, che come simplicere-  
...retrorna, quando da vobis  
...se apprommo como cosa ben-  
...essa, e fatto sciani li mari-  
...ni passati concessi, e da noi  
...na, e molto contraria a la liga  
...o, noi a conceduto il suo regale  
...oria col presente portator E-  
...ua porta excosla, con altre let-  
...santo di parte del Gran Sig-  
...ly, name col formimento de  
...tri toli sansi resti a questo an-  
...sua gratia noi ha concedua  
...a Magestà, per pronofina  
...ontra di esso tutti fueri dani  
...io a la Santa lga girata de li  
...confita: per obfermatione de gli  
...nel altro mondo al solo Iddio  
...ra di tanti poteracchi, chi per  
...inierio. Al contrario, piacet-  
...io, e li nostri patroni, amiche-  
...e, e fidel sermior: al patrono  
...etand bonore: e Comuido per  
...a provincia. Et quali general-  
...lo che manda il Grand Signor,  
...noi non mancheremo al desi-  
...ticia nostra, como desideramo il  
...r: canor noi di phi futura sui-  
...bonore. Data in palazzo no-  
...a Serenissima: ma a Angiltera,  
...magnifica: n. lo lei.

letters, what hath fallen out,  
which, for the helpe of Richard  
admitted a certaine French  
g to his desert, seeking to ca-  
aine of your people, without  
th Andrew Diet, the Master  
saide Frenchman, without  
manded, by your honorable  
proue as a thing well done,  
the sayde Shippe, with the  
ng altogether contrary to the  
confirmed by vs on the behalfe  
of

of the most excellent, the Queenes Maiestie of England, our Mistres, and altogether contrary to the league of the saide Grand Signior, who being fully informed of the aforesayd cause, hath granted unto vs his royall commandement of restitution, which wee sende vnto your honorable Lordshippe, by the present bearer Edward Barton, our Secretarie, and Mahomet Beg, one of the Iustices of his Stately Court, with other letters of the most excellent Admirall, and most valiant Captaine of the Sea, requiring your honorable Lordshippe, as well on the behalfe of the Grand Signior, as of the Queenes most excellent Maiestie my Mistres, that the men, oiles, shippe, furniture, money, and all other goods whatsoeuer, by your Lordshippe, and your order taken from our men, be restoyed vnto this my Secretarie freely, without delay, as the Grand Signior of his goodnes hath granted vnto vs, especially in regard that the same oiles were bought by the commandement of our Queenes most excellent Maiestie, for the provision of her Court. Which if you performe not, we protest by these our letters against you, that you are the cause of all the inconueniences which may ensue vpon this occasion, as the author thereof, contrary to the holy league sworn by both our Princes, as by the pmiileidges, which this our seruant will shewe you, may appear: For the seeing of which league performed, wee remaine here as a Ligier in this Stately Court. And by this meanes you shal answer in another world, vnto God alone, and in this world vnto the Grand Signior, for this hainous tume committed by you against so many poore soules, which by this your crueltie are in part dead, and in part detained by you in most miserable captiuitie. Contrary wise, if it shall please you to auoid this mischiefe, and to remaine in the fauour of Almighty God, and of our Princes, you shal friendly fulfill this our iust demand (as it behoueth you to shew your selfe a prudent Gouvernour, and faithfull seruant vnto your Lord,) & the same may turne to your great honour, and profit, by the trade of marchandize, which our men in time to come, may vse in that gouernment of yours: which generally, as well those poore men, as all others, which you shal meete at the sea, ought to be according to the commandement of the Grand Signior, friendly entertained and receiued of your honorable Lordshippe, and we will not faile in the duties of a speciall friend, whensoever you shall haue occasion to vse vs, as we desire. Almighty God grant vnto your Lordshippe, (in the fulfilling of this our iust request, wherby we may be deliuered from further trouble in this matter, and your selfe from further displeasure) all true felicitie, and increase of honour. Given in our Pallace from Capama in Pera, the 15. of Ianuarie, 1585.

A briefe extract specifying the certaine daily payments, answered quarterly in time of peace, by the Grand Signior, out of his treasure, to the officers of his Seraglio, or Court, successiue in degrees: collected in a yeerely totall summe, as followeth.

For his owne diet every day, one thousand and one aspers, according to a former custome receaued from his ancestors: notwithstanding, that other wise his diurnall expence is very much, and not certainly knowen, which summe maketh sterling monie by the peece, 2. thousand, one hundred, 92. pound, three shillings, eight pence.

The 45. thousand Janissaries, reparted into sundry places of his dominions, at five aspers the day, amounteth by the yeere, sixe hundred, foure scoze and eleuen thousand, and three hundredth pounds.

The Azamogians, tribute children, farre surmount that number, for that they are collected from among the Christians, from whom betweene the peeres of five and twelue, they are pulled away yeerely perforce: whereof I suppose those in seruice may be equal in number with the Janissaries above saide, at three aspers a day, one with another, which is two hundred, foure scoze and fiftene thousand, sixe hundred and fiftie pounds.

The five Basha, wherof the Citeroy is supreme, at one thousand aspers the day, besides their yeerely revenues, amounteth sterling by the yeere, ten thousand, nine hundred and fiftie pounds.

The five Beglerbegs, chiefe Presidents of Greece, Hungarie, and Sclauonia, being in Europe, in Anatolia, and Carmania of Asia, at one thousand aspers the day: as also to eigheteene other gouernours of Provinces, at five hundred aspers the day, amounteth by the yeere, thirtie thousand, sixe hundred, and three scoze pounds.

The Basha, Admirall of the Sea, one thousand aspers the day, two thousand, one hundred, foure scoze and ten thousand pounds.

The Aga of the Janissaries, Generall of the footemen, sixe hundred aspers the day, and maketh by the yeere in sterling monie, one thousand, foure scoze and fiftene pounds.

The

The Imbrahur Bassa, Master of his hoste, one hundred and fiftie aspers the day, is sterling money, three hundred and eight and twenty pounds.

The chiefe Equire under him, one hundred and fiftie aspers, is three hundred and eight and twenty pounds.

The Agaas of the Spahi, Capitaines of the horsemen, fixe, at one hundred and fiftie aspers to either of them, maketh sterling, one thousand, nine hundred, three score and eleven pounds.

The Capagi Bassas hee payers four, one hundred and fiftie aspers to each, and maketh out in sterling money by the yeere, one thousand, three hundred, and foureteeen pounds.

The Sifinghir Bassa, Controuler of the household, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and maketh out in sterling money by the yeere, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Chiaus Bassa, Captaine of the Pensioners, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and amounteth to by the yeere, in sterling money, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Capigilar Caiasi, Captaine of his barge, one hundred and twentie aspers the day, and maketh out by the yeere in sterling money, two hundred, three score and two pounds, i 6, shillings.

The Solach Bassi, Captaine of his garde, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Giebrigi Bassi, Master of the armourie, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Topagi Bassi, Master of the artillerie, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Echim Bassi, Whilition to his person, one hundred and twentie aspers, two hundred, three score and two pounds, sixteeen shillings.

To fortye Whilitions under him, to each fortye aspers, is three thousand, eight hundred, three score and sixe pounds, sixteeen shillings.

The Mustafaracas spear men, attending on his person, in number five hundred, to either three score aspers, and maketh sterling, three score and five thousand, and seven hundred pounds.

The Chingeri, gentlemen, attending vpon his diet, fortye, at fortye aspers each of them, and amounteth to sterling by the yeere, three thousand, five hundred and four pounds.

The Chiaus Pensioners, four hundred and fortye, at thirtie aspers, twentie eight thousand, nine hundred, and eight pounds.

The Capagi payers of the Court and Citie, four hundred, at eight aspers, and maketh sterling money by the yeere, seven thousand, and eight pounds.

The Solachi, archers of his garde, three hundred and twentie, at nine aspers, and commeth to in English monie, the summe of five thousand, three hundred and sixe pounds.

The Spahi, men of Armes of the Court and the Citie, ten thousand, at twentie five aspers, and maketh of English money, five hundred, fortye and seven thousand, and five hundred pounds.

The Janissaries sixteeen thousand, at six aspers, is two hundred and ten thousand, and two hundred and fortye pounds.

The Giebegi furbushers of armour, one thousand, five hundred, at sixe aspers, and amounteth to sterling money, nineteene thousand, seven hundred, and foure score pounds.

The Seiehir, seruitors in his Esquier or stable, five hundred, at two aspers, and maketh sterling money, two thousand, one hundred, foure score and ten pounds.

The Saeh, Sadlers and hie makers, five hundred, at seven aspers, seven thousand, sixe hundred, three score and five pounds.

The Catergi, Cariers vpon Mules, two hundred, at five aspers, two thousand, one hundred, foure score and ten pounds.

The Cinegi, Cariers vpon Camels, one thousand, five hundred, at eight aspers, and amounteth in sterling money, to twentie five thousand, two hundred, and foure score pounds.

The Reiz, or Capitaines of the Gallies, three hundred, at ten aspers, and amounteth in English money by the yeere, the summe of five thousand, five hundred, three score and ten pounds.

The Alechingi, Master of the said Gallies, three hundred, at seven aspers, four thousand, five hundred, foure score and nineteene pounds.

The Getti, Boatswaines thereof, three hundred, at sixe aspers, is three thousand, nine hundred, fortye and two pounds.

The Oda Bassi, Purifiers, three hundred, at five aspers, maketh three thousand, two hundred, and foure score pounds.

Ch

...ers the day, is sterling mo-  
 ... hundred and eight an  
 ... hundred and fiftie aspers  
 ... and eleven pounds,  
 ... to each, and maketh out in  
 ... one pounds,  
 ... twentieth aspers the day, and  
 ... two pounds, sixteen shi  
 ... twentieth aspers the day, and  
 ... and two pounds; sixteen  
 ... twentieth aspers the day, and  
 ... two pounds, 16. shillings,  
 ... aspers, two hundred, three  
 ... twentieth aspers, two hundred,  
 ... twentieth aspers, two hundred, three  
 ... twentieth aspers, two hundred, three  
 ... thousand, eight hundred, three  
 ... er five hundred, to either three  
 ... seven hundred pounds.  
 ... twentieth aspers each of them, and a  
 ... four pounds.  
 ... aspers, twentieth eight thousand,  
 ... twentieth aspers, and maketh five  
 ... nine aspers, and commeth to  
 ... five pounds,  
 ... and, at twentieth five aspers, and  
 ... five hundred pounds,  
 ... and ten thousand, and two hun  
 ... at five aspers, and amounteth  
 ... e pounds.  
 ... aspers, and maketh sterling  
 ... seven thousand, five hundred,  
 ... two thousand, one hundred,  
 ... at eight aspers, and amount  
 ... are three pounds,  
 ... aspers, and amounteth in English  
 ... three and ten pounds,  
 ... en aspers, four thousand, five  
 ... is three thousand, nine hun  
 ... three thousand, two hundred, and

*Ch*

The Azappi souldiers two thousand six hundred at foure Aspers, wherof the six hundred doe continually keepe the gallies, two and thertie thousand, seven hundred foure scoze and six pound.  
 The Mariers Bassi masters ouer the shipwighes and hakers of the maue, nine, at 20. Aspers the pice, amounteth 20 three thousand foure scoze and foure pound, foure shillings.  
 The Master Bassi shipwighes and hakers, one thousand at fourteen Aspers, and amounteth to by the yeere thertie thousand, six hundred three scoze pound.  
 Summa totalis of daily payments, amounteth by the yeere sterling, one million, nine hundred three scoze eight thousand, seven hundred thirtie five pounds, nineteene shillings eight pence, answered quarterly without default, with the summe of foure hundred foure scoze twelue thousand, one hundred foure scoze and foure pounds foure shillings eleven pence, and is soz euery day five thousand three hundred foure scoze and thirtene pounds, sixtene shillings ten pence.

**Annuities of lands neuer improoued five times more in value then their summes mentioned, giuen by the sayd Grand Signior, as followeth.**

- To the Uiceroy for his Timar or annuicie, 60. thousand gold ducats.
  - To the second Bassa for his annuicie, 50. thousand ducats.
  - To the third Bassa for his annuicie, 40. thousand ducats.
  - To the fourth Bassa for his annuicie, 30. thousand ducats.
  - To the fifth Bassa for his annuicie, 20. thousand ducats.
  - To the captaine of the Janissaries, 20. thousand ducats.
  - To the leu Merhorbassi master of his hoste, 15. thousand ducats.
  - To the captaine of the pensioners, 10. thousand ducats.
  - To the Captaine of his guard, 5. thousand ducats.
- Summa totalis, 90. thousand li. sterling.

Beside these aboue specified, he sundrie other annuities giuen to diuers others of his aforesayd officers, as also to certaine called Sahims, diminishing from thye thousand to two hundred ducats, esteemed treble to surmount the annuicie abouesayd.

**The Turkes chiefe officers.**

The Uiceroy is high Treasurer, notwithstanding that under him be thye Subtreasurers called Telladers, which be accountable to him of the receipts out of Europe, Asia and Africa, saue their yeerly annuicie of lands.

The lord Chancellor is called Nissangi Bassa, who sealeth with a certaine proper character such licences, safe conductes, passeportes, especiall graunts, &c. as proceed from the Grand Signior: notwithstanding all letters to foreyn princes so firm'd, be after inclosed in a bagge, and sealed by the Grand Signior, with a signet which he ordinarily weareth about his necke, credited of them to haue bene of ancient appertaining to king Salomon the wise.

The Admiral giueth his voyce in the election of all Begies, captaines of Islands, to whom hee giueth their charge, as also appointeth the Subbassas, Bailies or Constables ouer cities & townes vpon the Sea coastes about Constantinople, and in the Archipelago, wherof he reapeth great profite.

The Subbassi of Pera paieeth him yeerly fiftene thousand ducats, and so likewise either of the others according as they are placed.

The Reskhop serueth in office to the Uiceroy and Chancellor, as Secretarie, and so likewise doth the Cogy D. of the Rolls, before which two, passe all writings presented to, or granted by the said Uiceroy and Chancellor, offices of especiall credite and like profite, mozeouer rewarded with annuities of lands.

There be also two chiefe iudges named Ladies Liguire, the one ouer Europe, and the other ouer Asia and Africa, which in court do sit on the bench at the left hand of the Bassas. These sell all offices to the vnder iudges of the land called Cadies, wherof is ouer in euery cite or towne, before whom all matters in controuersie are by iudgement decided, as also penalties and corrections for crimes obtained to be executed vpon the offenders by the Subbassi.



The number of Souldiers continually attending vpon the Beglerbegs the Governours of Prouinces and Sangiacks, and their petie Captains maintained of these Prouinces.

The Beglerbegs of

Græcia, fortye thousand.	}	persons.
Buda, fiftene thousand.		
Sclauonia, fiftene thousand.		
Anatolia, fiftene thousand.		
Caramania, fiftene thousand.		
Armenia, eightene thousand.		
Persia, twentie thousand.		
Vidrum, fiftene thousand.		
Chirusta, fiftene thousand.		
Caramiti, thirtie thousand.		
Gierful, two and thirtie thousand.		

The Beglerbegs of

Bagdat, five and twentie thousand.	}	persons.
Balsara, two and twentie thousand.		
Lassaija, seuentene thousand.		
Aleppo, five and twentie thousand.		
Damasco, seuentene thousand.		
Cairo, twelue thousand.		
Abes, twelue thousand.		
Meca, eight thousand.		
Cyprus, eightene thousand.		
Tunes in Barbarie, eight thousand.		
Tripolis in Syria, eight thousand.		
Algier, fortye thousand.		

Whose Sangiacks and petie captaines bee three hundred sixtie eight, euery of which retaining continually in pay from five hundred, to two hundred souldiers, may be one with another at the least, three hundred thousand persons.

Chiefe officers in his *Serraglio* about his persons, be these.

}	Capiaga, High porter.
	Alnader Bassi, Thefurer.
	Oda Bassi, Chamberlaine.
	Killergi Bassi, Steward.
	Saraiga, Comptroller.
	Peskerolen, Groome of the chamber.
	Edostoglan, Gentleman of the Tower.
	Sehetaraga, Armour bearer.
	Choatara, he that carrieth his riding cloke.
	Ebietaraga, Groome of the steele.

There be many other meaner officers, which I esteeme superfluous to write.

### The Turkes yeerely reuenu.

The Grand Signiors annual reuenu is said to be 14. millions and an halfe of golden ducats, which is sterling five millions, eight score thousand pounds.

The tribute paid by the Christians his subjects, is one gold ducat yeerely for the redemption of euery head, which may amount vnto not so little as one million of golden ducats, which is sterling three hundred three score thousand pound.

Howeouer, in time of warre he exacteth manifold summes for maintenance of his armie and use of the sayd Christians.

The Emperour payeth him yeerely tribute for Hungarie, three score thousand dollars, which is sterling 13. thousand pound, besides presents to the Viceroy and Bassas, which are said to surmount twentie thousand dollars.

Arabac.

Ambassadors allowances.

The ambassadour of the Emperour is allowed one thousand Aspers the day, The ambassadour of the French king heretofore enioied the like: but of late yeeres by means of displeasure conceiued by Mahumet then Viceroy, it was reduced to sixe crownes the day, besides the poyson of his Equier of stable.

The ambassadour of Poland, and for the state of Venice are not Lodgers as these two abouesaid. The said Polack is allowed twelue French crownes the day, vuring his abode, which may be for a moneth. Very seldome doe the state of Venice send any ambassadour otherwile, then enioyed of veyent necessitie: but in stead thereof keepe there their Agent, president ouer their merchants, of the termed a Baille, who hath none allowance of the Grand Signior, although his pay & state is in manner as magnificall as y other abovesaid ambassadoys. The Spanish ambassadour was equall with others in familiarities: but for so much as he would not according to custome follow the list of other ambassadoys in making present to the Grand Signior, he had none allowance. His abode there was 3 yeeres, at the end wherof hauing concluded a truce for 6 yeeres, taking place from his first coming in Nouember last past, 158. he was neuer admitted to y presence of the Grand signior.

A letter written from the Queenes maiestie, to Yeladin el Kubar

king of Cambaia, by Iohn Newberie. In February. An. 1583.

**E**Lizabeth by the grace of God, &c. To the most inuincible, and most mightie prince, Ioyd Yeladin el Kubar king of Cambaya. Inuincible Emperour, &c. The great affection which our subiects haue, to visit the most distant places of the world, not without good will and intention to introduce the trade of merchandize of all nations whatsoeuer they can, by which means the mutuall and friendly traffique of merchandize on both sides may come, is the cause that the bearer of this letter Iohn Newberie, toinly with those that bee in his company, with a courteous and honest boldnes, doe repaire to the borders and countries of your Empire, we doubt not but that your imperiall maiestie through your roiall grace, will fauourably and friendly accept him. And that you would doe it the rather for our sake, to make vs greatly beholding to your maiestie. We should moze earnestly, & with moze words require it if we did thinke it needfull. But by the singular report that is of your imperiall maiesties humanitie in these veyent most partes of the world, we are greatly eased of that burden, and therefore we vse the sweeter & lesse hopes: onely we request that because they are our subiects, they may be honestly intreated and rewarded. And that in respect of the hard iourney which they haue undertaken to places so far distant, it would please your maiestie with some libertie and securitie of voyage to gratifie it, with such priuiledges as to you shall seeme good: which certesse if your imperiall maiestie shall to our subiects at our requests performe, we, according to our roiall honour will recompence the same with as many benefites as we can. And herewith we bid your Imperiall maiestie to farewell.

A letter written by her maiestie to the king of China, in Febr. 1583.

**E**Lizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England. Most Inueriall and inuincible prince, our honest subiect Iohn Newberie the bringer herof, who with our fauor hath taken in hand the voyage which now he pursueth to the partes & countries of your empire, not trusting vpon any other ground then vpon the fauor of your imperiall clemencie and humanitie, is moued to undertake a thing of so much difficultie, being perswaded that he hauing entered into so many perils, your maiestie will not dislike the same, especially if it may appeare that it be not damageable vnto your roiall maiestie, & that to your people it will bring some profit: of both which things he not doubting, with moze willing mind hath prepared himselfe for his destined voyage vnto vs wel liked of. For by this means we perceiue, that y profit which by y mutual trade on both sides, all the princes our neighbors in the West do rectiue, your imperiall maiestie and those that be subiect vnder your dominion, to their great loy & benefit shal haue the same, which consisteth in the transporting outward of such things wherof we haue plenty, and in bringing in such things as we stand in need of. It cannot otherwile be, but that seeing we are borne and made to haue neede one of another, & that we are bound to aide one another, but that your imperiall maiestie will wel like of it, & by your subiects with like induer will be accepted. For the increase wherof, if your imperiall maiestie shall adde the securitie of passage, with other priuiledges most necessary to vse the trade with your men, your maiestie shal do that which belongeth to a most honorable & liberall prince, and desire so much of vs, as by no continuance of length of time shall be forgotten. Which request of ours, we do most instantly desire to be taken in good part of your maiestie, and so great a benefit towards vs and our men, we shall endeour by diligence to requite when time shall serue thereunto. The God almightie long preserve your imperiall maiestie.

persons,

persons,

ight, every of which retaining  
may be one with another at the

ersons, be these.

ous to write.

and an halfe of golden ducats,

at secretly for the redemption of  
golden ducats, which is sterling

aintenance of his armie and

oze thousand dollers, which is  
has, which are said to surmount

Arabaf.

A Letter of M. John Newberie, written from Aleppo, to M.  
Richard Hakluyt of Oxford, the 28. of May, An. 1583.

**R**Ight welbeloued, and my assured good friend, I heartily commend me vnto you, hoping of your good health, &c. After we set sail from Grauesende, which was the 13. day of February last, we remained vpon our coast vntill the 11. day of March, and that day we set sail from Falmouth, and neuer anchored till we arriued in the road of Tripolis in Syria, which was the last day of Apriill last past, where we stayed 14. dayes: and the 20. of this present we came hither to Aleppo, and with Gods helpe, within five or sixe dayes goe from hence towards the Indies. Since my comming to Tripolis I haue made very earnest inquirie both there and here, for the booke of Cosmographie of Abilsada Ismael, but by no means can heare of it. Some say that possibly it may be had in Persia, but not withstanding I will not faile to make inquirie for it, both in Babylon, and in Balsara, and if I can finde it in any of these places, I will send it you from thence. The letter which you deliuered me for to copy out, that came from master Thomas Steuens in Goa, as also the note you gaue me of Francis Fernandes the Portugall, I brought thence with me among other writings vnto waies, the which I haue sent you here inclosed. There is great preparation for the warres in Persia, and from hence is gone the Bassha of a towne called Rahemer, and shortly after goeth the Bassha of Tripolis, and the Bassha of Damasco, but they haue not all with them about 6000. men from hence, and they goe to a towne called Asmerome, which is three dayes iourney from Trapezunde, where they shall meete with diuers Capitains and souldiours that come from Constantinople and other places thereof, which goe altogether into Persia. This yeere many men goe into the warres, and so hath there euer yeere since the beginning thereof, which is eight yeeres or thereabouts, but very few of them returne againe. Notwithstanding, they get of the Persians, and make castles and holds in their countrey. I pray you make my hearty commendations to M. Peter Guillame, and M. Phillip Iones, and to M. Walker Warner, and to all the rest of our friends, M. Peter Fitch hath him heartily commended vnto you: and so I commit you to the tuition of the almighty, who blesse and keepe you, and send vs a joyfull meeting. From Aleppo, the 28. of May, 1583.

Abilsada Ismael  
his Cosmographic.

Your louing friend to command  
in all that I may,  
John Newberie.

Another letter of the sayd M. Newberie, written to M. Walter  
Leonard Poore of London, from Aleppo,

**R**Ight welbeloued, my very hearty commendations vnto you, and the rest of my friends remembered. My last I sent you was of the 25. of February last, from Deele out of the Downes, after which time with contrary winde me remained vpon our owne coast, vntill the 11. day of March, and then wee set sail from Falmouth, and the 13. day the winde came contrary with a very great storme, which continued 8. dayes, and in this great storme we had some of our goods wet, but God be thanked no great hurt done. After which time we sailed with a faire wind within the Straights, and so remained at sea, and anchored at no place vntill our comming into the road of Tripolis in Syria, which was the last day of Apriill. This was a very good passage, God make vs thankfull for it. The 14. day of this present we came from Tripolis, and the 20. day arriued here in Aleppo, and with the helpe of God to morrow or next day, we begin our voyage towards Babylon and Balsara, and so into India. Our good friend master Barret hath him commended to you, who hath sent you in the Emanuell a ball of nutmegs for the small cristles you sent him, which I hope long since you haue receiued. Also he hath by his letter certified you in what order hee sold those things, whereof I can say nothing, because I haue not seene the accompt thereof, neither haue demanded it: for euer since our comming hither he hath bene still busie about the dispatch of the ship, and our voyage, and I likewise in buying of things here to carie to Balsara, and the Indies. We haue bought in currall for 1200. and odde ducats, and amber for 400. ducats, and some soper and broken glasse, with all other small cristles, all which things I hope will serue very well in those places that we shall goe vnto. All the rest of the account of the Barke Reynolds, was sent home in the Emanuell, which was 3600. ducats, which is 200. pound more then it was rated. For master Stapers rated it but at 1100. li. and it is 1300. pound, so that our part is 200. pound.

March, 11.

The last of  
Apriill.

Curral.  
amber greese.  
Soper.  
Broken glasse.

W. L.

from Aleppo, to M.

truly commend me unto you, from Grauesende, which was our coast until the 11. day of and neuer anchored till the 16. last day of April last past, sent me came hither to Alep- wards the Indies. Since my and here, for the booke of Cal- me say that possibly it may be it, both in Babylon, and in u from thence. The letter as Steuens in Goa, as all the thence with me among a re is great preparation for the ed Rahemet, and shortly after haue not all with them about which is thre dayes journey and souldours that come from to Persia. This yeere many aning thereof, which is right standing, they get of the pre- e my heartie commendations arner, and to all the rest of our I commit you to the wis- meeting. From Aleppo,

our louing friend to command in all that I may,  
John Newberie.

ritten to Maltre  
20.

unto you, and the rest of my 25. of February last, from contrary winde me temerous, and then wee set saile from many with a very great boone, we had some of our goods wet, with a faire wind within the comming into the road of Tri- good passage, God make vs and the 20. day arriued here in our voyage towards Baby- had him commended to you, trifles you sent him, which I ed you in what order hee sold e the accompt thereof, neither still busie about the dispatch of o carry to Balsara, and the mber for 400. ducats, and some I hope will serue very well be e Barke Reynolds, was sent pound more then it was rated, so that our part is 200. pound.  
Bablon

Belides such profit as it shall please God to send thereof: wherefore you shall doe very well to fixe ake to master Seapers for the account. And if you would couernt your selfe to trauell for thre or foure yeres, I would wish you to come hither or go to Cair, if any go thither. For we doubt not if you had remained there but thre or foure moneths, you would like so well of the place, that I thinke you would not desire to returne againe in 3. or 4. yeres. And if it should be my chance to remaine in any place out of England, I would choose this before all other that I know. My reason is, the place is healthfull and pleasant, and the gaines very good, and no doubt the profit will be hereafter better, things being used in good order: for there should come in euery ship the fourth part of her Carga- son in money, which would helpe to put away our commodities at a very good price. Also to haue the very good ships to come to gether, would doe very well: for in so doing, the danger of the voy- age might be accounted as little as from London to Antwerpe. Master Giles Porter and master Edmond Porter, went from Tripolis in a small berke to Iaffa, the same day that we came from thence, which was the 14. day of this present, so that no doubt but long since they are in Ierusa- lem: God send them and vs safe returne. At this instant I haue receiued the account of Mr. Bar- ree, and the rest of the rings, with two & twentie ducats, two medins in ready monie, & so there is nothing remaining in his hands but a few bookes, and with Thomas Bostocke I left certaine small trifles, which I pray you demaund. And so once againe with my heartie commendations I commit you to the cution of the almighty, who alwayes preserue vs. From Aleppo the 29. of May, 1583.

Yours assured. John Newbery.

Another letter of M. Newberie to the aforesayd

M. Poore, written from Babylon.

**W**hilst I sent you, was the 29. of May last past from Aleppo, by George Gill the purser of the Tiger, which the last day of the same month came from thence, and arriued at Feluge the 19. day of June, which Feluge is one dayes journey from hence, notwithstanding some of our company came woe hither till the last day of the last month, which was for want of Camels to carry our goods: for at this time of the yeere, by reason of the great heate that is here, Camels are very hard to be gotten. And since our comming hither wee haue found very small sales, but diuers say that in the winter our commodities will be very well sold, I pray God their words may prooue true. I thinke cloch, hersele and time, haue neuer bene here at so lowe prices as they are now. Notwithstanding, if I had here so much ready money as the commodities are woorth, I would not doubt to make a very good profit of this voyage hither, and to Balsara, and so by Gods helpe there will be reasonable profit made of the voyage. But with halfe money and halfe commodity, may be bought here the best sort of spices, and other commodities that are brought from the Indies, & with our money there is here at this instant small good to be done. With Gods helpe two daies hence, I mind to go from hence to Balsara, & from thence of force I must goe to Ormuz for want of a man that speaketh the Indian tongue. At my being in Aleppo I hired two Nataranics, and one of them hath bene twice in the Indies, and hath the language very well, but he is a very slow seldo, and therefore I will not take him with me.

The best sort of spices at Babylon, Balsara, Ormuz.

Here follow the prices of Wares as they are woorth here at this instant.

- Cloues and Spices, the bateman, 5. ducats.
- Cynamom 6. ducats, and few to be gotten.
- Summege, the bateman, 45. medins, and 40. medins maketh a ducat.
- Ginger, 40. medins.
- Pepper, 75. medins.
- Carderra, the bateman, 50. medins.
- Steel the churle, 70. ducats, and a churle is 27. rottils and a halfe of Aleppo.
- Shille, much better then that which commeth from Persia, 11. ducats and a halfe the bateman, and euery bateman here maketh 7. pound and 5. ounces English weight. From Babylon the 20. day of July, 1583.

The prices of spices at Balsara.

Yours, John Newbery.

S. 3.

Maltre

Master Newberie his letter from Ormuz, to Iohn Eldred and  
William Shals at Balsara.

**R**ight welbelouen and my assured good friends, I hartely commend me unto you, hoping of your good healths, &c. To certifie you of my boiage, after I departed fro you, time will not permit but the 4. of this present we arrived here, and the tenth day I with the rest were committed to prison, and about the middle of the next moneth the Capitaine will send vs all in his ship for Goa. The cause why we are taken, as they say, is, for that I brought letters from Don Anthonio. But the truth is, Michael Stropene was the only cause, vpon letters that his brother wrote him from Aleppo. God knoweth how we shall be delt withall in Goa, and therefore if you can procure our matters to send the king of Spaine his letters for our releasement, you should doe vs great good: for they cannot with iustice put vs to death. It may be that they will cut our throates, or keepe vs long in prison: Gods will be done. All those commodities that I brought hither, had bene very well sold, if this trouble had not chanced. You shall doe well to send with all speed a messenger by land from Balsara to Aleppo, for to certifie of this mischance, although it cost 30. or 40. crownes, for that we may be the sooner released, and I shall be the better able to profite this againe which is now like to be lost: I pray you make my heartie commendations, &c. From out of the prison in Ormuz, this 21. of September, 1583.

His second Letter to the foresaid Iohn Eldred,  
and William Shals.



The barke of the Jewes is arrived here two dayes past, by whom I knowe you did write, but your letters are not like to come to my handes. This bringer hath shewed me here very great curtesie, wherefoze I pray you shew him what fauour you may. About the middle of the next moneth I thinke we shall depart from hence, God be our guide. I thinke Andrew will goe by land to Aleppo, wherein I pray you touch him what you may: but if he should not goe, then I pray you dispatch away a messenger with as much speed as possibly you may. I can say no more, but doe for me as you would I should doe for you in the like cause, and so wish my very heartie commendations, &c. From out of the prison in Ormuz, this 24. day of September, 1583.

Yours, Iohn Newberie.

His third letter to Master Leonard Poore,  
written from Goa.



Michael Stropene an Italian accused our men to be spies.

**L**ast I sent you was from Ormuz, whereby I certified you what had happened there vnto me, and the rest of my company, which was, that foure dayes after our arrivall there, wee were all committed to prison, except one Italian which came with me from Aleppo, whom the Capitaine neuer examined, onely demanded what countreyman he was, but I make account Michael Stropene, who accused vs, had informed the Capitaine of him. The first day we arrived there, this Stropene accused vs that we were spies sent from Don Antonio, besides diuers other lies: notwithstanding if we had bene of any other countrey then of England, we might freely have traded with them. And although we be Englishmen, I know no reason to the contrary, but that we may trade hither and thither as well as other nations, for all nations doe, and may come freely to Ormuz, as Frenchmen, Flemmings, Almaines, Hungarians, Italians, Greekes, Armenians, Mastarines, Turkes and Hooyes, Jewes and Gentiles, Persians, Moscovites, and there is no nation that they seeke for to trouble, except ours: wherefoze it were contrary to all iustice and reason that they should suffer all nations to trade with them, and to forbid vs. But now I haue as great libertie as any other nation, except it be to goe out of the countrey, which thing as yet I desire not. But I thinke hereafter, and before it be long, if I shall be desirous to goe from hence, that they will not denie me licence. Before we might be suffered to come out of prison, I was forced to put in sureties for 2000. pardoas, not to depart from hence without licence of the Viceroy: otherwile except this, we haue as much libertie as any other nation, for I haue our goods again, and haue taken an house in the chiefest streete in the towne, called the Rue drete, where we sell our goods.

There

to John Eldred and

rtely commend me unto you,
voyage, after I departed frō
e arrived here, and the tenth
about the middle of the next
Goa. The cause why we are
n Don Antonio. But the
s together wrote him from A-
if you can procure our ma-
ould doe vs great good: for
our throates, or keepe vs long
ether, had bene very well sold,
ed a messenger by land from
o, 01 40. crownes, for that we
again which is no w like to
out of the prison in Ormuz,

n Eldred,

ast, by whom I knowe you
my handes. This binger
I pray you shew him what
onely I thinke wee shall w-
drew will goe by land to A-
may: but if he should be
as possibly you may. I can
like cause, and so wch my
uz, this 24. day of Septem

s, John Newberie.

Poorc,

ified you what had happened
was, that foure dayes after
, except one Italian which
never examined, onely do-
ccount Michael Stropens.
The first day wee arrived
ntonio, besides diuers other
England, wee might freely
no reason to the contrary, but
nations doe, and may come
s, Italians, Greekes, Arme-
ns, of countries, and there is
e contrary to all iustice and
id vs. But now I haue vs
p, which thing as yet I desire
to goe from hence, that they
prison. I was forced to put in
of the Uiceroy ocherwise I
goods again, and haue taken
we sell our goods.

There

There were two causes which moued the captaine of Ormuz to imprison vs, & afterwards to send vs hither. The first was, because Michael Stropens had accused vs of many matters, which were most false. And the second was for that M. Drake at his being at Maluco, caused two pieces of his ordinance to be shot at a gallion of the kinges of Portugal, as they say. But of these things I did not know at Ormuz: and in the shippe that we were sent in came the chiefeest iustice of Ormuz, who was called Queado; generall of that place, he had bene there three yeeres, so that now his time was expired: which Queado is a great friend to the captaine in Ormuz, who certeyne dayes after our comming from thence, sent for me into his chamber; and there began to demand of me many things, to the which I answered: and amongst the rest, he said, that M. Drake was sent out of England with many shippes, and came to Maluco, and there laded cloues, and finding a gallion there of the kinges of Portugal, he caused two pieces of his greatest ordinance to be shot at the same: and so perceiving that this did greatly grieue them, I asked, if they would be reuenged of me for that which M. Drake had done: to the which he answered, No: although his meaning was to the contrary.

He said moreover, that the cause why the captaine of Ormuz did send me for Goa, was, for that the Uiceroy would understand of me, what newes there was of Don Antonio, and whether he were in England, yea or no, and that it might be all for the best that I was sent hither, the which I trust in God will so fall out, although contrary to his expectation: for had it not pleased God to put into the mindes of the archbishop and other two Iudges or Iesuits of S. Pauls college to stand our friends, we might have rotted in prison. The archbishop is a very good man, who hath two yong men to his seruants, the one of them was borne at Hamborough, and is called Bernard Bogers: and the other was borne at Enchulen, whose name is Job: Leiscot, who did vs great pleasure: for by them the archbishop was many times put in minde of vs. And the two good fathers of S. Paul, who trauelled very much for vs, the one of the is called Iudges Marke, who was borne in Flanders, & the other was borne in Wiltshire in England, and is called Padre Thomas Struens.

Also I chanced to finde heere a yong man, who was borne in Antwerpe, but the most part of his bringing up hath bene in London, his name is Francis de Rea, and with him it was my hap to be acquainted in Aleppo, who also hath done me great pleasure heere.

In the prison at Ormuz we remained many dayes, also we lay a long time at sea comming hither, and fortytwich at our arriuall heere were carried to prison, and the next day after were sent for heere the Queado, who is the chiefeest iustice, to be examined: and when we were examined, he presently sent vs backe againe to prison.

And after our being heere in prison thirteene dayes, James Storie went into the monasterie of S. Paul, where he remaineth, and is made one of the companie, which life he liketh very well.

And vpon S. Thomas day (which was two and twentie dayes after our arriuall here) I came out of prison, and the next day after came our Ralph Fitch, and William Bets.

If these troubles had not chanced, I had bene in possibilitie to haue made as good a voyage as euer any man made with so much money. Many of our things I haue solde very well, both heere and at Ormuz in prison, notwithstanding the captaine willed me (if I would) to sell what I could before we imbarked: and so with officers I went diuers times out of the castle in the morning, and sold such things, and at night returned againe to the prison, and all things that I solde they did write, and at our imbarking from thence, the captaine gaue order that I should deliuer all my many wiche goods into the hands of the seruano, or purser of the ship, which I did, and the seruano made a remembrance, which he left there with the captaine, that my selfe and the rest with money & goods he should deliuer into the hands of the Queado; generall of India: but at our arriuall heere, the Queado would neither meddle with goods nor money, for that he could not proue any thing against vs: wherefore the goods remained in the ship nine or ten dayes after our arriual, and then, for that the ship was to saile from hence, the seruano sent the goods on shore, and heere they remained a day and a night, and no body to receive them. In the end they suffered this binger to receive them, who came with me from Ormuz, and put them into an house which he had hired for me, where they remained foure or five dayes. But afterward when they should deliuer the money, it was concluded by the iustice, that both the money and goods should be deliuered into the possessors hands, where they remained foureteeen dayes after my comming out of prison. At my being in Aleppo, I bought a foumeine of silver and gilt, five knives, five spoones, and one fork trimmed with royall so: five and twentie chickens, which the captaine of Ormuz did take, and payed for the same twentie parangs, which is one hundred lardnes, and was woorth there or heere one hundred chickens. Also he had five emerauds set in golde, which were woorth five hundred or five hundred crownes, and payed

Two causes of our imprisonment at Ormuz.

This is he whose letters to his father from Goa are before youe put downe, and he was sometimes of S. Pauls college in Ormuz.

James Storie their painter.

They arrived at Goa the 20 of November 1583.

for

for the same an hundred pardas. Also he had nineteene & a halfe pikes of cloth, which cost in London twentie shillings the pike, and was worth nine or tenne crownes the pike, and he payed for the same twelue lardes a pike. Also he had two pieces of greene Kerries, which were woorth foure and twentie pardas the piece, and payed for them sixtene pardas a piece: besides diuers other trifles, that the officers and others had in the like order, and some for nothing at all. But the cause of all this was Michael Sropene, which came to Dymuz not woorth a penie, and not worth thirtie or fortie thousand crownes, and he grieueth that any other stranger should trade thither but himselfe. But that shall not skil, for I trust in God to goe both thither and hither, and to buy and sell as freelic as he or any other. There is verie great good to be done in diuers of our commodities, and in like maner there is great profit to be made with commodities of this country, to be carried to Aleppo.

It were long for me to write, and tedious for you to read of all things that haue passed since my parting from you. But for all the troubles that haue chanced since mine arriuall in Dymuz, this bringer is able to certifie you. I minde to stay heere: wherefore if you will write vnto me, you may send your letters to some friend at A. I. bone, and from thence by the shippes they may be coueyed hither. Let the direction of your letters be either in Portugall or Spanishe, whereby they may come the better to my hands. From Goa this 20 day of Januarie. 1584.

### A Letter written from Goa by Ralph Fitch to M. Leonard

*Poore aboue said.*



Dear friend Maister Hooye, &c. Since my departure from Aleppo, I haue not written vnto you any letters, by reason that at Babylon I was sicke of the fluxe, and being sicke, I went from thence for Balsara, which was twelue dayes iourney downe the riuer Tigris, where we had extreme hotte weather, which was good for my disease, ill fare, and woollie lodging, by reason our boate was pestered with people. In eight dayes, that which I did eat was very small, so that if we had stayed two dayes longer vpon the water, I thinke I had died: but coming to Balsara, presently I mended, I thanke God. There we stayed foureteene dayes, and then we imbarked our selues for Dymuz, where we arrived the fifth of September, and went put in prison the ninth of the same month, where we continued vntill the eleuenth of October, and then were thye for this cite of Goa in the capteines shippe, with an hundred and foureteene hoyses, and about two hundred men: and passing by Diu and Chaul, where we went on land to water the twentieth of Nouember, we arrived at Goa the nine and twentieth of the said month, where for our better intertainment we were presently put into a saye strong prison, where we continued vntill the two & twentieth of December. It was the will of God that we found there two Padres, the one an Englishman, the other a Flemming. The English mans name is Padre Thomas Stevens, the others Padre Marco, of the order of S. Paul. These did sue for vs vnto the Vicroy and other officers, and stood vs in as much stead, as our liues and goods were woorth: for if they had not stucke to vs, if we had escaped with our liues, yet we had had long imprisonment.

October 11.

Diu.  
Chaul.

The Italians  
are great enemies  
for the  
trade in the  
East.

After foureteene dayes imprisonment they offered vs, if we could get in surties for two thousand duckets, we should goe abroad in the towne: which when we could not doe, the said Padres found surties for vs, that we should not depart the country without the licence of the Vicroy. It doth spite the Italians to see vs abroad: and many maruell at our deliuerie. The painter is in the cloister of Saint Paul, and is of their order, and likely there verie well. While we were in prison, both at Dymuz and heere, there was a great deale of our goods pilfered and lost, and we haue bene at great charges in gifts and ocherwise, so that a great deale of our goodes is consumed. There is much of our things which will sell very well, and some we shall get nothing for. I hope in God that at the returne of the Vicroy, which is gone to Chaul and to Diu, they say, to winne a caille of the Hooyes, whose returne is thought will be about Easter, then we shall get our libertie, and our surties discharged. Then I thinke it will be our best way, either one or both to returne, because our troubles haue bene so great, and so much of our goods spoiled, and lost. But if it please God that I come into England, by Gods helpe, I will returne hither againe. It is a braue and pleasaunt country, and very fruitfull. The Summer is almost all the yeere long, but the chiefest at Christmas.

The day and the night are all of one length, very litle difference, and marvellous great store of fruits. For all our great troubles, yet are we fat and well liking, for victualles are heere plenty

of cloeth, which cost in London  
the pike, and he payed for the  
s, which were woorth foure  
piece: besides diuers other  
clothing at all. But the cause  
with a penie, and now both  
stranger should trade thither  
hither and thither, and to buy  
dove in diuers of our com-  
modities of this countrey, to

to M. Leonard

departure from Aleppo, I have  
the Babylon I was sick of the  
Balsara, which was twelve  
had extreme hotte weather,  
most lodging, by reason our  
that which I did eat was  
ter, I thinke I had died: but  
we stayed foureteene dayes,  
the city of September, and were  
the eleventh of October, and  
hundred and foureteene dayes  
ere we went on land to the  
city of the said month, where  
Babylon, where we continued  
we found there two Padres,  
name is Padre Thomas Ste-  
ue for vs vnto the Clergy  
ods were woorth: for if they  
long imprisonment.

put in surties for two thou-  
ould not doe, the said Padres  
the licence of the Clergy,  
re deliuerie. The painter is  
erie well. While we were  
ods pilfered and lost, and the  
deale of our goodes is could  
d some we shall get nothing  
gone to Chaul and to Diu,  
will be about Easter, then  
it will be our best way, either  
much of our goodes spoiled,  
y helpe, I will returne hither  
Summer is almost all the

and marvellous great store  
of victualles are here plenty  
tic

tic and good cheape. And here I will passe over to certifie you of strange things, breill our mee-  
ting, for it would be too long to write thereof. And thus I commit you to God, who cure preferue  
you and us all. From Goa in the East Indies the 25 of Januarie 1584.

Yours to command  
RALPH FITCH.

The money and measures of Babylon, Balsara, and the Indies,  
with the customes, &c. written from Aleppo in Syria, Anno 1584: by  
William Barret.

#### B A B Y L O N:

The weight, measure, and money currant there, and the  
customes of merchandize.



Spana of Babylon is of Aleppo 1 roue 5 ounces and a halfe: and 68 manacs  
& three seventh parts, make a quintall of Aleppo, which is 494 li. 8 ounces of  
London: and 100 manacs is a quintall of Babylon, which maketh in Aleppo  
146 rouses, and of London 722 li. and so much is the said quintall: but the mer-  
chants accord is by so much the mana, & in the said place they bate the tare in all  
sorts of commodities, according to the order of Aleppo touching the tare.

The measure of Babylon is greater then that of Aleppo 21 in y 100. For buying 100 pikcs  
of any measurable ware from Aleppo thither, there is found but 82 pikcs in Babylon, so that the  
100 pikcs of Babylon is of Aleppo 121 pike & very little lesse.

The currant mony of Babylō are Sayes, which Say is 5 medines as in Aleppo, & 40 medines  
being 8 sayes maketh a ducket currant, and 47 medines passeth in value as the ducket of golde of  
Genire, and the dollers of the best sort are woorth 33 medines. The rials of plate are sold by the 100  
drams at pise, according as they be in request: but among the merchants they bargain by the 100  
mercals, which are 150 drams of Aleppo, which 150 drams are 135 single rials of plate: but in the  
mint of castile, they take them by the hundred drams, which is 90 rials of plate, & those of the mint  
give 5 medines lesse in eery 100 drams then they are woorth to be solde among the merchants, and  
make payment at the the terme of 40 dayes in Sayes.

The custome in Babylon as well inward as outward, is in this maner: Small wares at 6 per  
100. Coall, and amber at 5 and a halfe per 100. Genire cloth, English cloth, Kerlies, Gokaynes,  
Chamblets, Silks, Telnets, Damaskes, Battins, & such like at 5 per 100: and they rate the goods  
without reason as they lust themselves. The Coats, Boabo, and other exactions 6 medines per  
hale, all which they pay presently in readie mony according to the custome and vse of the Emperour.

To the Ermin of the mint the ordinarie vse is to give 30 Sayes in curratie, otherwaise he would  
by auoytie of his office come aboard, and for despight make such search in the barke, that he would  
turne all things to his turne.

#### B A L S A R A:

The weight, measure, and money in the citie of Balsara.

A Spana of Balsara answereth 5 rouses 2 offices & a halfe of Aleppo weight, and 19 manacs &  
one fourth part of Balsara answereth the quintall of Aleppo, which is 494 rouses, 8 ounces  
English, & 20 manacs is the quintall of Balsara, which is 104 Alpine, and of London 514 li. 8  
offices, and so much is the sayd quintall, but the merchants bargain at so much the mana of tollene  
(which is all one) and they abate the tare in eery mana, as the sort of spice is, and the order taken  
therfore in that place.

The measure of Balsara is called a pike, which is iust as the measure of Babylon, to say, 100  
pikcs of Balsara maketh of Aleppo 121 pikcs, vt supra in the rate of Babylon.

The currant mony of Balsara is as followeth. There is a sort of shillers of copper called Chial,  
whereof 12 make a manedine, which is the value of one medine Aleppine, the said manedine is  
of silver, having the Spoyeske stamp on both sides, and two of these make a damine, which is 2 me-  
dines Aleppine.

The said damine is of silver, having the Turkeske stamp on both sides, and 2 & a halfe of these  
make a say, which is iust in value as the say of Aleppo.

The said say is of the similitude and stamp of Aleppo, being (as apperres) 60 Chialcs. Also  
one say and 20 Chialcs make a lamine, which is of Aleppo money 6 medines and a halfe.

The said lamine is a strange piece of money, not being round as all other currant money is.  
Christianitie,



Chistianitie, but is a small rod of silver of the greatnesse of the penne of a goose feather, wherewith we use to write, and in length about one eighthe part thereof, which is twisted, so that the two ends meet at the full halfe part, and in the head thereof is a stampe Turkesco, and these be the best currant money in all the Indies, and 6 of these larinnes make a ducket, which is 40 medines of eight sayes of Aleppo.

The ducket of golde is worth there 7 larinnes, and one danine, which is of Aleppo money 48 medines and a halfe.

The Venetian money is worth larinnes 88 per 100 meticals, which is 150 dyams of Aleppo, vt supra.

The rials of plate are worth 88 larinnes by the 100 meticals, and albeit among the merchants they sell by the 100 meticals, yet in the mint of castile they sell by the 100 dyams, hauing there lesse then the worth 5 medines in eech hundred dyams, and haue their payment made in 40 dayes, made them in sayes of larinnes.

The custome of the said places, as well in ward as out ward, are alike of all sortes of goods, to say 6 by the 100, and Coaso, Boabo, & scriuan medines 6 by the bale inward and outward, to say, inward, and as much outward: but who so leauech his goods in the custome house payeth nothing, where otherwise at the taking thereof a wap, he should pay 3 med. by the bale, and of the said goods there is no other duty to pay, and this cometh to passe when the customers esteeme the goods too high. For in such a case they may be dyuen to take so much commoditie as the custome amounteth to, and not to pay them in money, for such is the order from the Graud Signior.

Hauing paid the custome, it behoueth to haue a quitance or cocket sealed and firm'd with the customers hand, in confirmation of the dispatch and clearing, and before departure thence, to cause the said customer to cause search to be made, to the end that at the voyages returne there be no caullation made, as it often times happeneth.

Note that 100 meticals of Ballara weigh 17 ounces and a halfe scottish Venetian, and of Aleppo dyams 150, vt supra.

The freight of the barks from Dymuz to Ballara, I would say from Ballara to Dymuz, they pay according to the greatnesse thereof. To say, for cariage of 100 cares 180 larinnes, those of 15 cares 270 larinnes, those of 20 cares 360 larinnes, those of 30 cares 540 larinnes. Note that a care is 4 quintals of Ballara. They pay also to the pilot of the barke for his otme cariage one care, and to all the rest of the martiners amongst them 3 cares freight, which is in the whole 4 cares, and paying the abovesaid prices and freightes, they are at no charges of vidualles with them, but it is requisite that the same be declared in the charter partie, with the condition that they lade not aboard one rottilo more then the freight, vnder paines that finding more in Dymuz, it is forfeite, and besides that to pay the freight of that which they haue laden.

And in this acco<sup>nt</sup>, it behoueth to deale warlike, and in the presence of the Ermin or some other honest man (whereof there are but few) for they are the worst people in all Arabia. And this diligence must be put in execution, to the end the barks may not be overladen, because they are to passe many lands betwixt Ballara and Dymuz.

## O R M V Z :

The weight, measure, and money currant in the kingdome of Ormuz.

Spices and drugs they weigh by the barre, and of every sort of goods the weight is different. To say, of some drugs 3 quintals, and 3 erubi or roues, and other some 4 quintals 25 rottiloes, and yet both is called a barre, which barre, as well great as litle, is 20 strafoli, and every strafoli is 10 manars, and every manar 23 chians, and every chians 10 meticals and a halfe. Note that euery quintall maketh 4 erubi or roues, and every roue 32 rottiloes, & every rottilo 16 ounces, and every ounce 7 meticals, so that the quintall cometh to be 128 rottiloes, which is Aleppine 26 rottiloes and one third part, which is 132 li. English weight. And contrariwise the quintall of Aleppo (which is 494 rottiloes 8 ounces English) maketh 477 rottiloes and a halfe of Dymuz, which is 3 quintals 2 roues, 29 rottiloes and a halfe.

What a rottilo is.

Note that there are bars of diuers weights, vt supra, of which they bargin simple, according to the sort of commoditie, but if they bargin of the great barre, the same is 7 quintals and 24 rottiloes, which is 958 li. 9 ounces of London weight, and of Aleppo 193 rottiloes and a halfe.

Touching the money of Dymuz, they bargin in merchandise at so many leches by the barre, which lech is 100 Asarie, and maketh larinnes 190 & a halfe, which maketh pardaos 38, & larinnes one halfe, at larinnes 5 by the pardao. One Asarie is sadines 10, and euery sadine is 100 danarie.

The larinne is worth 5 sadines and one fourth part, so that the sadine is worth of Aleppo money 1 medicine

of a goose feather, wherewith  
is wetted, so that the two ends  
settle, and these be the best cur-  
which is 40 medines of eight

which is of Aleppo money 48  
which is 150 diamas of Aleppo,

to albeit among the merchants  
100 diamas, hauing there lesse  
ment made in 40 dayes, made

like of all sorts of goods, to say  
ward and outward, to say, in  
custome house payeth nothing,  
the bale, and of the said goods  
homers esteeme the goods too  
little as the custome amounteth  
Signior.

that sealed and firm'd with the  
foze departure thence, to cause  
pages returne there be no ca-

of the Venetian, and of Alep-

from Bassara to Dymuz, they  
are 180 larinies, those of 15  
larinies. Note that a tara is  
is some carriage one chare, and  
in the whole 4 carres, and pay-  
altes with them, but it is requi-  
that they lade not aboard one  
it is forreie, and besides that to

of the Ermin of some other  
in all Arabia. And this billi-  
laden, because they are to pass

dome of Ormuz.

is the weight is different. Ca-  
re 4 quintals 25 rotloes, and  
asafoli, and euery frafall is 10  
and a halfe. Note that euery  
rotlo 16 ounces, and euery  
which is Aleppine 26 rotloes  
the quintall of Aleppo (which  
Dymuz, which is 3 quintals

to bargaen simple, according to  
is 7 quintals and 24 rotloes,  
oes and a halfe.

so many leches by the barre,  
maketh parbaes 38, & larinies  
they lade in 100 banarie.  
me is worth of Aleppo mou  
1 medine

1 medine & 1 fourth part, & the larinie as in Bassara worth of Aleppo money 6 medincs & a halfe.  
The parbae is 5 larinies of Bassara.

There is also stamped in Dymuz a seraphine of golde, which is litle and round, and is worth 24  
larinies, which maketh 30 medincs of Aleppo.

The Venetian mony is worth in Dymuz larinies 88 per 100: meticals, and the rials are worth  
larinies 86 lesse one saebine, which is euery thousand meticals, 382 asures: but those that will not  
sell them, use to melt them, and make them so many larinies in the king of Dymus his mine, where-  
by they cleere 2 per 100, and somewhat more: and this they do because neither Venetian mony  
nor rials runne as currant in Dymuz, per aduise.

The measure of Dymuz is of 2 fozes, the one called Codo which increaseth vpon the measure of  
Aleppo 3 per 100, for bringting 100 pikas of any measurable wares from Aleppo to Dymuz, it is  
found in Dymuz to be 103 Codes. Also these measures of Dymuz increaseth vpon those of Bassa-  
ra and Babylon 25 and two third parts per 100: for bringting 100 pikas of any measurable wares  
from Bassara or Babylon, there is found in Dymuz 125 codes and two third parts.

The other measure is called a bare, which was sent from the king of Portugall to the India, by  
which they sell things of small value, which measure is of 5 palmes or spannes, and is one codo and  
two third parts, so that buying 100 codes of any measurable wares, and returning to measure it by  
the said bare, there is sold but 60 wares, contrariwise 100 wares maketh 166 codes & 2 third parts.

Note that all such ships as lade hoyses in Dymuz for Goa or any other place of India, lading 10  
hoyses or by wares, in what places soeuer the said hoyses be taken a shoze in the India, the merchan-  
dize which is to be discharged out of that shippe wherein the said hoyses come, are bound to pay no  
custome at all, but if they lade one hoyle lesse then tenne, then the goods are bound to pay the whole  
custome. And this law was made by Don Emanuel king of Portugall, but it is to be diligente-  
ly forseeke, whether all those hoyses laden be bound to pay the king his custome: for many times  
by the king of Portugall his commandement there is fauor shewed to the king of Cochyn his bro-  
ther of Armes, so that his hoyses that come in the same shippe, are not to answer custome: as for  
example, if there were foure hoyses laden in one shippe, all which were to pay custome to the king,  
and one other of the king of Cochins which were not to pay any custome, the same causeth all  
the merchandize of that shippe to be subiect to pay custome, per aduise. But if they lade ten hoyses  
vpon purpose to pay the king his custome in Goa, and in the voyage any of them should die in that  
case, if they bring the taile of the dead hoyle to the custome in Goa, then the merchandize is free from  
all custome, because they were laden in Dymuz to pay custome in Goa. Howeouer if the hoyses  
should die before the middelt of the voyage, they pay no custome at all, and if they die in the mids  
of the voyage, then they pay halfe custome, but if any hoyle die after the mid voyage, they pay custome  
no lesse then if they arriue safe. Notwithstanding, the merchandize (whether the said hoyses die be-  
fore or in the mid voyage or after the mid voyage) are free from all custome.

The custome of Dymuz is a leuen in the 100, to say, 10 for the king, and one for the arming of  
the silks: but for small wares as glasses, and looking glasses of all sorts, and such like, made for  
apparell, pay no custome. But cloth of Woolle, Karlicks, Pokaynes, Chamlets, and all fozes of  
Silke, Saffron, and such like, pay custome, being esteemed reasonable.

There is also another custome, which they call calda, which is, that one bringting his goods into  
Dymuz, with purpose to send the same further into India, the same is bound to pay 3 by the 100,  
but none other are bound to pay this custome, except the Armenians, Moores, and Iewes: for the  
Portugalles and Venetians pay nothing thereof.

Note that in Dymuz they abate tare of all fozes of commodities, by an order obserued of custome.  
The freight by Dymuz to Chaull, Goa, and Cochyn, as follo weth: Pokaynes larinies 6 per  
table of 60 pikas, Aquariola 8 larinies by ordinarie chist, readings 10 larinies by chist, which is a  
quintall of froues 128. Ruuia of Chalang larinies 10 per quintall, glasses larinies 8 per chist, of 4  
foot & a halfe, glasses in great chist 14 & 15 larinies by chist. Small wares larinies 12 by chist of  
5 foote. Tamari for Galthat ladinies 2 and a halfe; and 3 by the fardle. Tamari for Diu and  
Chaull 4 larinies, and 4 and a halfe by bale. Other vugges and things which come from Per-  
sia pay according to the greatnesse of the bales.

The freight mentioned they pay as appereth, wth they ship 3 said goods in ships where hoyses go:  
wherewith not hauing hoyses, they pay somewhat lesse, because of the custome which they are to pay.

The use of the India shippers is, that the patrons thereof are not at any charge neither with any  
passenger nor yet with any mariner in the shippe, but that euery one at the beginning of the voyage  
do furnish to mainteine his owne table (if he will eat) & for drinke they haue a great barre of water,  
which is garded with great custodie.

## G O A:

The weight, measure, and money currant in Goa.

**T**he quintall of Goa is 5 manaes, and 8 larines, & the mana is 24 rotiloes, so that the quintall of Goa is 128 rot., and euery rot. is 16 ounces, which is of Venice weight 1 li. and a half, so that the quintall of Goa is 192 li. scilicet Venice, which is 26 rotiloes 8 ounces Aleppo, and of London weight 132 li. English, as the weight of Dymuz.

All the merchandize, spices and drugs, are solde by this quintall, excepte some drugs, as ligni de China, Galanga, & others, whereof they bargin at so much per candill, aduertising that there be two sorts of candill, one of 16 manaes, the other of 20 manaes, that of 16 manaes cometh to be iust 3 quintals, and that of 20 manaes, 3 quintals, 3 roues. Note that 4 roues make a quintall, and the roue is 32 rotiloes, as in Dymuz.

Note that 4 roues make a quintall.

There is also another sort of weight, which they call Marto, which is 8 ounces or one halfe a rotilo of Goa, & 9 ounces of Venice scilicet: with this they weigh amber, muske, ambacran, cinice, and other fine wares.

There is also another sort of weight called Spangialino, which is 5 graines of Venice weight, & there with they weigh diamonds, and otheriewels.

Sparks of Tartaria by the way of China.

Note that in Goa they vse not to abate any tare of any goods, excepte of sacks or wraps, & there fore it requirith great aduise in buying of the goods, especially in the muske of Tartaria which cometh by way of China, in bladders, and so weigh it without any tare relating.

The measure of Goa is called a code, which increaseth vpon the measure of Babylon & Bassara after the rate of 17 & one eight part by the 100, so that bringing 100 pikas of any measurable ware from thence to Goa, it is found 117 pikas 7 eight parts, and bringing 100 codes from Dymuz to Goa there is found but 93 codes and one fourth part.

There is also the vare in Goa, which is iust as the vare of Dymuz, and therewith they measure onely things that are of small value.

For the mony of Goa, there is a kinde of mony made of lead and tin mingled, being thicke and round, and stamped on the one side with the spherate or map of the world, and on the other side two arrowes, & 5 rounds: and this kinde of mony is called Balaruchi, and 15 of these make a vinton of naughtie mony, and 5 vintons make a tanga, and 4 vintons make a tanga of base mony: so that the tanga of base mony is 60 balaruchies, and the tanga of good mony 75 balaruchies, and 5 tangas make a seraphine of golde, which in merc hawoize is worth 5 tangas good mony: but if one would change them into balaruchies, he may haue 5 tangas, and 16 balaruchies, which ouerplus they call cerafagio, & when they bargin of the parday of golde, each parday is ment to be 6 tangas good mony, but in merc hawoize they vse not to demand pardayes of golde in Goa, excepte it be for jewels and hoyses, for all the rest they take of seraphins of silver peraduilo.

The trials of plate, I say the riall of 8 is worth per custome and commandment of the king of Portugall, 400 reyes, and euery rey is one barsuce and one fourth part, which makes tangas 6, and 53 balaruchies as their iust value, but for that the said trials are excellent silver and currant in diuers places of the India, and chiefly in Malacha, where the ships are to depart at their due times (called Spousons) euery one to haue the said trials pay more then they are worth, and the ouerplus, as is abouesaid they call cerafagio. And first they giue the iust value of the 100 trials, of 8 at 5 tangas 50 balaruchies a piece, which done, they giue seraphins 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 15, vntill 22 by the 100, according as they are in request.

The ducket of golde is worth 9 tangas and a halfe good mony, and yet not stable in price, for that when the ships depart from Goa to Cochim they pay them at 9 tangas and 3 fourth parts, and 10 tangas, and that is the most that they are worth.

The larines are worth by iust value balaruchies 93 and 3 fourth parts, and 4 larines make a seraphine of silver, which is 5 tangas of good mony, and these also haue cerafagion of 6, 7, 8, 10, vntill 16, by the 100, for when the ships depart for the Mozet, to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaita, or Bassant, all carry of the same, because it is mony more currant then any other.

There is also a sort of seraphins of golde of the stampe of Dymuz, whereof there are but few in Goa, but being there, they are worth 5 larines & somewhat more, according as they are in request.

There is also another little sort of mony, round, hauing on the one side a crosse, and on the other side a crowne, which is worth one halfe a tanga of good mony, and another of the same stampe lesse then that which they call Imicuo de buona moneda, which is worth 18 balaruchies 3 fourth parts a piece.

Note that if a man bargaine in merchandize, it be houery to demaunde tangas of good mony,

A Lic  
and Orm  
in cr  
tals and a  
good, an  
The m  
The m  
value is 1  
The cu  
that the

For the  
is of v  
tic of the  
2 roues, an  
Note that  
the which  
The m  
to their m  
f of the  
tingall, an  
The C  
The C  
mony, di  
There  
mony, to  
one side, an  
There  
worth 6, an  
ges good  
The r

rotiilos, so that the quintall  
of gold weight 1 li. and a halfe,  
& 8 ounces Aleppo, and of

except some drugs, as ligno de  
aduerfiling that there be thoo  
manaes commeth to be iust 3  
vices make a quintall, and the

ounces of one halfe a rottilo of  
unilke, ambacau, ciuct, and

graines of Cienice weight, &

pt of sacks of wapes, & thereby  
in the milke of Tartaria  
it any tare rebating.

measure of Babylon & Balsa  
100 pikes of any measurable  
thing 100 codes from 27

and therewith they measure

mingled, being thicke and  
2 lb, and on the other side two

15 of these make a binton of  
a tanga of base money: so that

75 basaruches, and 5 tangas  
good money: but if one would

richies, which ouerplus they  
is meant to be 6 tangas good  
in Goa, except it be for iust

commandment of the king of  
part, which makes tangas 6,

prellent siluer and current in  
re to depart at th: it due times

are worth, and the ouerplus  
of the 100 rials, of 8 at 5 tan-

8, 9, 10, 12, 15, vntill 22 by

and yet not stable in price,  
tangas and 3 fourth parts,

parts, and 4 larines make a  
to haue satisfaction of 6, 7, 8,

to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cam  
nt then any other.

whereof there are but few in  
ording as they are in request,

the side a crosse, and on the o-  
p, and another of the same

th is worth 18 basaruches 3  
ande tangas of good money

by nominating tangas onely, is vnderstood to be base money of 60. basaruches, which mean-  
ing of the good money vs supra.

The custome of Goa is 8. in the 100. inward, and as much outward, and the goods are elee-  
med iustly rather to the marchants advantage then the kings. The custome they paye in this or-  
der. Comming with a shippe from Ormuz. to Goa without voyles, they pay 8. in the 100. whe-  
ther they sell part of all, but if they would carle of the saide marchandise to any other place, they  
pay none other custome, except others buy it and carie it forth of the countrey, and then they pay  
8. in the 100. And if one hauing payd the custome should sell to another with composition to passe it  
though as for his proper account to laue the custome, this may not be, because the seller is ynto his  
owe, whether he sende the goods for his owne accompt, or for the accompt of any others, that haue  
bought the same, and being found to the contrary, they pay custome as abouesaid. And in this or-  
der the marchants pay of all the goods which come from any part of the Indies. But if they come  
from Ormuz to Goa with voyles, they are not subject to pay any custome inward, notwithstanding  
if they send all of any part thereof for any other place, or returne it to Ormuz, they pay the custome  
outward, although they could not sell.

They vse also in Goa amongst the comon foyle, to bar gaine for coales, wood, lime & such like as  
so many braganines, amounting 24. basaruches for one braganine, albeit there is no such money  
stamp. The custome of the Portugals, is, that any Moore or Gentile, of what condition or state  
soever he be, may not depart from Goa to go within the land, without licence of certaine deputies  
deputed for that office, who (if they be Moores or Gentiles) doe set a seale vpon the arme, hauing  
thereon the armes of Portugal, to be knowen of the porters of the citie, whether they haue the saide  
licence or no.

## COCHIN.

The waight, measure, and money, currant in Cochin.

All the marchandise which they sell or buy within the said citie, they bargain for it at so many  
Aerafines per quintal, which is 128. rotiilos of iust waight with the quintal & Rottilo of Goa,  
and Ormuz: aduerfiling & there are diuers sorts of barres according to the sort of commodities, and  
in waighing they reason at so much the barre. Note that there are barres of 3. quintals & 3. quin-  
tals and a halfe, and 4. quintals. They abate a vsed tare of all marchandise, according to the sort of  
goods, and order taken for the same.

The measure of Goa, and Cochin are all one.

The money of Cochin are all the same sorts which are currant in Goa, but the ducat of golde  
is 10. tangas of good money.

The custome of Cochin as well inward, as outward for all strangers, is 8. in the hundred, but  
that that haue bene married 4. yeres in the countrey pay but 4. in the hundred per adulo.

## MALACHA.

The waight, measure, and money of Malaca.

For the marchandise bought and solde in the citie, they reason at so much the barre, which barre  
is of diuers sorts, great and small, according to the ancient custome of the said citie, and diuer-  
tie of the goods. But for the clothes they bargain at so much the barre, which barre is 3. quintals  
2. ounces, and 10. rotiilos, as I haue abouesaid, all kind of drugs haue their sorts of barres limited,  
Note that every quintal is 4. rones, and every rone 32. rotiilos, which is 128. rotiilos the quintal,  
the which answereth to Aleppo 95. rotiilos, and to London 472. li. per quintal.

The measures of Malaca are as the measures of Goa. In Malaca they abate tare according  
to their distinction and agreement, for that there is no iust tare limited.

For the money of Malaca, the least money currant is of tunc stamped with the armes of Por-  
tingall, and 12. of these make a Chazza.

The Chazza is also of tunc with the said armes, and 2. of these make a challaine.

The Challaine is of tunc with the said armes, and 40. of these make a Tanga of Goa good  
money, but not stamped in Malaca.

There is also a sort of siluer money which they call Parachynes, and is worth 6. tangas of good  
money, which is 300. reyes, and is stamped with two letters, S. T. which is S. Thomas on the  
one side, and the armes of Portugal on the other side.

There is also a kinde of money called cruzados stamped with the armes of Portugal, and is  
worth 6. tangas good money, the larines are every 9. of them worth 2. cruzados, which is 12. tan-  
gas good money, and these larines be of those which are stamped in Balsara, and Ormuz.

The rials of 8, they call Pardaos de Reales, and are worth 7. tangas of good money.

The custome of Malaca is 10. in the 100. as well inwarde as outwarde, and those which pay the custome inwards, if in case they send the same goods for any other place within terme of a year and a day, pay no custome for the same.

*A note of charges from Aleppo to Goa, as followeth.*

127. by the  
cannels burz  
den.

<b>F</b> or camels from Aleppo to Birtha,	Medines 60. per somme.
<b>F</b> or mules from Aleppo to Birtha,	med. 45. per somme.
<b>F</b> or custome at Birtha,	med. 10. per somme.
<b>F</b> or Auania of the Cady at Birtha,	med. 200.
<b>F</b> or 4. dishes reasonis, and 20. pounds sope,	med. 35.
<b>F</b> or present to the Ermine the somme of	med. 400.
<b>F</b> or a barke of 30. or 35. sommes, Dur. 60. is	med. 2400. per barke.
<b>F</b> or meate for the men the somme of	med. 200.
<b>F</b> or custome at Racca the somme of	med. 5. per somme.
<b>F</b> or 3. platters, readings, and 15. pounds of sope,	med. 25.
<b>F</b> or custome to king Aborislei, Dur. 20. is	med. 800.
<b>F</b> or custome at Dea the somme of	med. 230. per barke.
<b>F</b> or 4. dishes reasonis, and 20. pounds of sope.	med. 35.
<b>F</b> or custome at Bosara, the somme of	med. 10. per barke.
<b>F</b> or 2. dishes reasonis, and 10. pound of sope,	med. 17.
<b>F</b> or custome in Anna, in 10. per somme,	med. 10. per somme.
<b>F</b> or 4. dishes of reasonis, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 35.
<b>F</b> or custome in Adite, medines 10. per barke,	med. 10. per barke.
<b>F</b> or 2. dishes reasonis, and 10. pound of sope,	med. 17.
<b>F</b> or custome at Gweke,	med. 10. per barke.
<b>F</b> or 2. dishes reasonis, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 17.
<b>F</b> or custome in Ist,	med. 10. per somme.
<b>F</b> or 4. platters reasonis, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 35.
<b>C</b> harges of presents at Felugia,	med. 20.
<b>F</b> or camels from Felugia to Babylon,	med. 30. per somme.
<b>F</b> or custome in Babylon, as in the booke appeareth.	
<b>F</b> or barke from Babylon to Balsara,	med. 900.
<b>F</b> or custome of small wares, at Corno,	med. 200. per somme.
<b>F</b> or custome of clothes at Corno, the somme of	med. per somme.
<b>F</b> or 3. dishes reasonis, and 20. pound of sope,	med. 26.
<b>F</b> or freight from Balsara to Ormuz, according to the greatnesse, as in this booke appeareth.	
<b>F</b> or custome in Ormuz, as is abovesaid in this booke.	
<b>F</b> or freight from Ormuz to Goa, as is in this booke shewed.	
<b>F</b> or custome in Goa, as is abovesaid.	

*A declaration of the places whence the goods subscribed doe come.*

<b>C</b> loves, from Malucho, Tarenate Ambona, by way of Iaua.	<b>G</b> inger Belledin, from the countrie within Cambaia.
<b>M</b> ustineggs, from Banda.	<b>G</b> inger Soratin, from Sorat within Cambaia.
<b>M</b> aces from Banda, Iaua, and Malacha.	<b>G</b> inger Mordassi, from Mordas within Cambaia.
<b>P</b> epper Galuyie, from Cochlin.	<b>G</b> inger Meckin, from Mecca.
<b>P</b> epper common, from Mallaur.	<b>S</b> trabolans of all sorts, from Cambaia.
<b>S</b> innamon, from Seilan.	<b>W</b> hite sucker from Zindi, Cambaia, and China.
<b>T</b> inne, from Malacha.	<b>C</b> orcunia, from diuers places of India.
<b>S</b> ambals wilde, from Cochlin.	<b>C</b> ypolle of Leuant, from Mallaur.
<b>S</b> ambals domestike, from Malaca.	<b>C</b> homin, from Balsara.
<b>U</b> erzini, from S. Thomas, and from China.	<b>R</b> equitria, from Arabia Felix.
<b>S</b> picknard, from Zindi, and Laor.	<b>G</b> arble of Nutmeggs from Banda.
<b>U</b> icksilver, from China.	<b>S</b> al Armoniake, from Zindi and Cambaia.
<b>C</b> alls, from Cambaia, Bengala, Istria & Siria.	<b>Z</b> edoari, from diuers places of India.
<b>G</b> inger Dabulin, from Dabul.	<b>C</b> ubeb, from China.

Amorie,

Amorie  
Camphor  
Myrror  
Costo  
Borazo  
Ala fetid  
Seraign  
Cassa, si  
Socraz  
dena  
Storax  
Tulia  
Cagiers  
Ruuia  
Lunime  
nople  
Chopra  
Oppopa  
Lignum  
laca,  
Demnar  
Galange  
Laccha  
Carabbe  
Coloqui  
Agaric  
Scamon  
Edellium  
Cardam  
Cardam  
Tamarin  
Aloe Sec  
Aloe Ep  
Sulfan  
Lignum  
Rhapon  
Turbit  
Ruts of  
India  
Nux vor  
Sanguis  
Armonia  
Spodio  
Margara

**N**o  
beg  
during th  
all the fan  
together  
maine in  
ach by r

and those which per  
place within terme of a year

followeth.

60. per | somme.  
per somme.  
per somme.

per barke.

per somme.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

per barke.

Amomum, from China.  
Camphora, from Brimco neere to China.  
Myrra, from Arabia Felix.  
Costo dulce, from Zindi, and Cambaia.  
Borazo, from Cambaia, and Laor.  
Afa fetida, from Laor.  
Mace, from Bengala.  
Serapi, from Persia.  
Cassa, from Cambaia, and from Gran Cayro.  
Secorax calamita, from Rhodes to sap, from A-  
dena, and Canemarie within Caramania.  
Secorax liquida, from Rhodes.  
Tutia, from Persia.  
Cagiers, from Mallauer, and Maldia.  
Ruua to die twichal, from Chalangi.  
Lumme di Rocca, from China, and Constanti-  
nople.  
Chopra, from Cochin and Mallauar.  
Oppopanax, from Persia.  
Lignum Aloes, from Cochin, China, and Ma-  
laca.  
Demnar, from Siacca and Blinton.  
Galange, from China, Chaul, Goa, & Cochin.  
Laccha, from Pegu, and Ballagate.  
Carabbe, from Almanie.  
Coloquintida, from Cyprus.  
Agaricum, from Allemania.  
Scamonea, from Syria, and Persia.  
Bellium, from Arabia felix, and Mecca.  
Cardamomum small, from Barcellona.  
Cardamomum great, from Bengala.  
Tamarinda, from Balsara.  
Aloe Secutrina, from Secutra.  
Aloe Epatica, from Par.  
Saffran, from Balsara, and Persia.  
Lignum de China, from China.  
Raioponicum, from Persia, and Puglia.  
Tins, from Secutra.  
Turbit, from Diu, and Cambaia.  
Ruts of India, from Goa, and other parts of  
India.  
Nux vomica, from Mallauar.  
Sanguis Draconis, from Secutra.  
Amoniago, from Persia.  
Spodio di Cana, from Cochin.  
Margaratina, from Ballagate,

Spitke from Tartarie, by way of China.  
Ambrachan, from Melinde, and Mosambique.  
Indico, from Zindi and Cambaia.  
Silbes sine, from China.  
Long pepper, from Bengala and Malaca.  
Laton, from China.  
Momia, from the great Cayre.  
Belzuinum Mandolalo, from Sian, and Baros.  
Belzuinum burned from Bonnia.  
Castorium, from Almanie.  
Corallina, from the reaf sea.  
Mastik, from Scio.  
Mella, from Romania.  
Opium, from Puglia, and Cambaia.  
Calamus Aromaticus, from Constantinople.  
Capari, from Alexandria and other places.  
Dates, from Arabia felix, and Alexandria.  
Dictamnium album, from Lombardia.  
Draganti, from Morea.  
Euphorbium, from Barbaria.  
Epithymum, from Candia.  
Sena, from Mecca.  
Gumme Arabike, from Zaffo.  
Grana, from Coronto.  
Ladanum, from Cyprus and Candia.  
Lapis lazudis, from Persia.  
Lapis Zudass, from Zafferto.  
Lapis Spongij, is found in sponges.  
Lapis Hermatites, from Almanie.  
Manna, from Persia.  
Auripigmentu, from many places of Turkie.  
Pilawo, from Barbaria.  
Pistaches, from Doria.  
Mome-seede, from Persia.  
Sumack, from Cyprus.  
Sebesten, from Cyprus.  
Galbanum, from Persia.  
Dente d'Abolio, from Melinde, & Mosambique.  
Folium Indicum, from Goa, and Cochin.  
Diasprum viride, from Cambaia.  
Petra Bezzuar, from Tartaria.  
Sarcacolla, from Persia.  
Melleghete, from the West parts.  
Sugo di Requillicie, from Arabia felix.  
Chochenilo, from the West Indians.  
Rubarbe, from Persia, and China.

*The times or seasonable windes called monsons, where-  
in the ships depart from place to place in the East Indies.*

**N**Ote that the cite of Goa, is the principall place of all the Oriental India, & the winter there  
beginneth the 15. of May which beyn great raine, & so continueth till the 1. of August, so that  
during that space, no ship can passe ouer the bar of Goa, because though the continual shoures of raine  
all the lands to yne together were vnto a mountaine called Oghane, & all these lands being to yned  
together, runne into the shoales of the barre and port of Goa, and can haue no other issue, but to re-  
maine in that port, and therefore is shut vp until the first of August, but at the 10. of August it ope-  
neth by reason of the raine which ceaseth, and the sea doeth then scoure the sands away againe.

The monson from Goa to the Northward, to say, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, Daman, Bassani, and other places.

The shippes depart betwixt the tenth and 24. of August, for the Northward places above saide, and to these places they may saile all times of the yeere, except in the winter, which beginneth and endeth at the times above saide.

The monson from the North parts, for Goa.

The shippes depart from Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, and other places Northwardes for Goa, betwixt the 8. and 15. of Januarie, and come to Goa about the ende of Februarie.

The first monson from Diu for the straight of Mecca.

The ships depart from Diu about the 15. of Januarie, and returne from the Straights of Diu in the moneth of August.

The second monson from Diu for the straight of Mecca.

The ships depart betwixt the 25. and first of September, and returne from the Straights of Diu, the 1. and 25. of May.

The monson from Secutra for Ormuz.

The ships depart about the tenth of August for Ormuz: albeit Secutra is an Islande and hath but few ships, which depart as above saide.

The monson wherein the Moores of the firme land come to Goa.

About the 15. of September the Moores of the firme lande beginne to come to Goa, and they come from all parts, as well from Balgatte, Lezanegar, as also from Sudalcao, and other places.

The monson wherein the Moores of the firme land depart from Goa.

They depart from Goa betwixt the 10. and 15. day of November. Note that by going for the North is meant the departing from Goa, for Chaul, Diu, Cambaia, Daman, Bassani, Ghassan, and other places unto Zindi, and by the South is understoode, departing from Goa, for Cochin, and all that coast unto Cape Comorin.

The first monson from Goa for Ormuz.

The shippes depart in the moneth of October from Goa, for Ormuz, passing with Easterly winde along the coast of Persia.

The second monson from Goa to Ormuz.

The ships depart about the 20. of Januarie passing by the like navigation and winde as in the first monson, and this is called of the Portugals and Indians Entremonson.

The 3. monson from Goa to Ormuz.

The ships depart betwixt the 25. of March, and 6. of April, having Easterly winde, till they passe Secutra, and then they haue Westerly winde, and therefore they set their course ouer to the coast of Arabia, till they come to Cape Rafalgate, and the Straight of Ormuz, and this monson is most troublesome of all: for they make 2. navigations in the height of Seylan, which is 6. degrees and somewhat lower.

The first monson from Ormuz for Chaul and Goa.

The ships depart from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa in the moneth of September, with North, and Northeast winde.

The second monson from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa.

The second monson is betwixt the 25. and last of December, with like winde as the former monson.

The 3. monson from Ormuz for Chaul, and Goa.

The 3. monson the ships depart from Ormuz, for Chaul, and Goa, betwixt the 1. and 15. of April, & they saile with Southeast winde, East & Northeast winde, coasting upon the Arabia side from Cape Molandon unto Cape Rafalgate, and having lost sight of Cape Rafalgate, they haue Westerly winde, and so come for Chaul and Goa, and if the said ships depart not before the 25. of April, they are not then to depart that monson, but to winter in Ormuz because of the winter.

The first monson from Ormuz for Zindi.

The ships depart for Ormuz betwixt the 15. and 20. of April.

The 2. monson from Ormuz for Zindi.

The ships depart betwixt the 10. and 20. of October for Zindi from Ormuz.

The monson from Ormuz for the red sea.

The ships depart from Ormuz betwixt the 1. and last of Januarie.

Hithero I have noted the monsons of the ships departing from Goa to the Northward: Now folowe the monsons wherem the ships depart from Goa to the Southward.

¶ The monson from Goa for Calicut, Cochin, Seilan, and all that coast.

The ships depart from those places betwixt the 1. and 15. of August, and there they staid it navigable all the yeere except in the winter, which continueth as is abovesaid, from the 15. of Note. Appril the 10. of August. In like manner the ships come from these places for Goa at euery time in the yeere except in the winter, but of all other the best time is to come in November, December and Januarie:

The first monson from Goa for Pegu.

The ships depart from Goa betwixt the 15. and 20. of April, and winter at S. Thomas, and after the 5. of August, they depart from S. Thomas for Pegu.

The 2. monson from Goa for Pegu.

The ships depart from Goa, betwixt the 8. and 24. of August, going straight for Pegu, and if they passe the 24. of August, they cannot passe that monson, neither is there any more monsons till Appril, as is abovesaid. Note that the chief trade is, to take money of S. Thomas rials, and paracion, and to goe to S. Thomas, and thers to buy T.ellami, which is fine cloth of India, wherof there is great quantitie made in Chara Mandel, and brought thither, and other merchandize are not good for that place except some dozen of very faire Emeraude orientall. For of golde, silver, and Rubies, there is sufficient store in Pegu.

The monson from Pegu for the Indies.

The ships depart from Pegu betwixt the 15. & 25. of Januarie, and come to Goa about the 25. of March, in the beginning of April. Note, that if it passe the 10. of May before the saide ships be arriued in Goa, they can not come thither that monson, and if they haue not then set the coast of India, they shall with great perill fetch S. Thomas.

The first monson from Goa, for Malaca.

The ships depart betwixt the 15. and last of September, and arriue in Malaca about the ende of October.

The second monson from Goa to Malaca.

The ships depart about the 5. of May from Goa, and arriue in Malaca about the 15. of June.

The first monson from Malaca to Goa.

The ships depart about the 10. of September, and come to Goa about the ende of October.

The second monson from Malaca to Goa.

The ships depart from Malaca about the 10. of February, and come to Goa about the ende of March. But if the said ships should stay till the 10. of May, they can not enter into Goa, and if at that time also they should not be arriued at Cochin, they are forced to returne to Malaca, because the winter and contrary windes then come vpon them.

The monson from Goa, for China.

The ships depart from Goa in the moneth of April.

The monson from China for Goa.

The ships depart to be the 10. of May in Goa, and being not then arriued, they turne backe to Cochin, and if they cannot fetch Cochin, they returne to Malaca.

The monson from Goa to the Moluccaes.

The ships depart about the 10. of 15. of May, which time being past, the shippes can not passe out the bay of Goa for the cause abovesaid.

The monson of the ships of the Molluccaes arriual in Goa.

The ships which come from Molluccaes arriue vpon the barre of Goa about the 15. of April.

The monsons of the Poringall ships for the Indies.

The ships which come frō Poringall depart thence ordinarily betwixt the 10. & 15. of March, comming the straight way during the moneth of July to the coast of Melinde, and Mofambique, and from thence goe straight for Goa, and if in the moneth of July they should not be at the coast of Melinde, they ran in no wise that yeere fetch the Melinde, but returne to the Isle of S. Helena, and so are not able that time being past to fetch the coast of India, and to come straight for Goa. Therefore (as is aboue said) they returne to the Island of S. Helena, and if they cannot make the saide Island, then they rime a loss vpon the coast of Guinea: but if the saide shippes bee arriued in time vpon the coast of Melinde, they set forwardes for Goa, and if by the sithene of

Note,



Note.

December they can not see the Goa, they then goe for Cochin, but if they see they can not see the Cochin, they returne to Mosambique to winter there upon the same coast. A West in the yeere of our Lord 1580, there arriv'd the Ship called San Lorenzo, bring wonderful soye sea Venen, the 8. of October, which was accounted as a miracle for that the like had not bene seene before.

The monson from India for  
Portingall.

The Shippes depart from Cochin betwene the 15. and last of January, going on til they have sight of Capo de buona speranza, and the Isle of S. Helena, which Islande is about the midway, being in 16. degrees to the South. And it is a litle Island being fruitful of all things which a man can imagine, with great soye of fruite: and this Islande is a great succour to the Shippes which returne for Portingall. And not long since, the said Island was founde by the Portingals, and was discovered by a Shippe that came from the Indies in a great storme, in which they founde such abundance of wilde beastes, and boates, and all soye of fruite, that by meanes thereof that poore Shippe, which had bene 4. moneths at sea, refreshed themselves both with water and meate very well, and this Island they called S. Helens, because it was discovered upon S. Helens day. And undoubtedly this Island is a great succour, and so great an ayde to the Shippes of Portingall, that many would surely perish if that helpe wanted. And therefore the king of Portingal caused a Church to be made there for deuotion of S. Helena: where there are onely resident Eremites, and all other are forbidden to inhabit there by the kings commaundement, to the ende that the Shippes may be the more sufficiently furnished with victuals, because the Shippes which come from India come but slenderly victualled, because there groweth no corne there, neither make they any wine: but the Shippes which come from Portingal to the Indies touch not in the saide Island, because they set out being sufficiently furnished with bread, and water from Portingal for 8. moneths voyage. Any other people then the 2. Eremites abovesaide, can not inhabit this Island, except some Act man that may be seethere a boare to remaine in the Eremites companie, for his helpe and recourtie.

Note.

The monson from Goa to Mosambique.

The Shippes depart betwixt the 10. and 15. of January.

The monson from Mosambique to Goa.

The Shippes depart betwene the 8. and last of August, and arrive in Chaul of Goa in the month of October, till the 15. of November.

The monson from Ormuz to Bengala.

The Shippes depart betwixt the 15. and 20. of June, and goe to winter at Teue and depart thence about the 15. of August for Bengala.

### The voyage passed by sea into Egypt, by John Euesham Gentleman. Anno 1586.



The 5. of December 1586, we departed from Grauesend in the Tiger of London, wherein was Master under God for the voyage Robert Rickman, and the 21. day at night we came to the Isle of Wight: departing from thence in the morning following we had a faire winde, so that on the 27. day we came in sight of the rocke of Lisbon, and so sayling along we came in sight of the South Cape, the 29. of the same, and on the morrowe with a Westerly winde we entered the Straights: and the 2. of January we being as high as Cape de Gate, we departed from our sette to wards Argier. And the 4. day we arrived at the port of Argier abovesaid, where we stayed till the first of March. At which time we set saile to wards a place called Tunis, to the Eastward of Argier 100. leagues, where we arrived the 8. of the same. This Tunis is a small cite by 12. miles from the sea, and at the port of rode where shipping doe ride, is a castle of fort called the Goletta, sometimes in the handes of the Christians, but now in the Turkes: at which place we remained till the thirde of April: at which time we set saile to wards Alexandria, and having sometime faire windes, sometime contrary, we passed on the 12. day betwene Sicilia and Malta, (where weere advoyning hath bene the soye and holde of the Knights of the Rhodes) and so the 19. day we set with the Isle of Candie, and from thence to Alexandria, where we arrived the 27. of April, and there continued till the 5. of October.

The description  
of the  
cite of Alexan.

The said cite of Alexandria is an olde thing decayed or ruinated, having bene a faire and great cite neere two miles in length, being all walled underneath for provision of fresh water, which

they say they can not seeke  
coast. Albeit in the peere of  
berthal some sea beares, the  
bene serene before.

uary, going on till they have  
stande is about the midway,  
full of all things which  
great succour to the shipping  
founde by the Portugals,  
toyme, in which they founde  
by meanes thereof that poore  
with water and meate very  
upon S. Helens day. And  
ships of Portingall, that many  
Portingal caused a Church to  
be erected, and all other  
that the shipping may be  
me from India come but  
they any waine: but the ships  
because they set out being  
withs voyage. Any other  
cept some sick man that may  
pe and recourtie.

Chaul of Goa in the month

at Teue and depart thence

John Euesham

Send in the Tiger of London,  
Robert Ricknan, and the 21,  
bring from thence in the moy  
27. day wee came in sight of  
in sight of the South Cape,  
westerly winde wee entered the  
we departed from our there  
said, where we stayed till the  
units, to the Eastward of Ar  
is a small citle by 2. miles  
le of foze called the Goletta,  
at which place we remained  
ndia, and having sometime  
ne Sicilia and Malta, (where  
nodes) and so the 19. day we  
we arrived the 27. of April, and

having bene a faice and great  
abundon of fresh water, which  
water

water cometh thither but once every peere, out of one of the foure riuers of paradise (as it is ter-  
med) called Nilus, which in September floweth neere eightene foote uppbe higher, then his  
accustomed manner, and so the banke being cut, as it were a fluce, about thirtie miles from Alex-  
andria, at a towne called Rocetto, it doth so come to the saide Cite, with such abundance, that  
barres of the lue runne doe come upon the same water, which water doth fill all the valleys, fe-  
sternes, and wels in the said Cite, with very good water, and doth so continue good, till the next  
peere following; for they haue there very litle raine, or none at all, yet haue they exceeding great  
wells. Also they haue very good coyne, and very plentifull: all the Countrey is very hot, especi-  
ally in the moneths of August, September, and October. Also, within the saide Cite, there is a  
pillar of Marble, called by the Turkes, King Pharoos needle, and it is foure square, euery square  
is twelue foote, and it is in height 90. foote. Also, there is without the wals of the said Cite, about  
twentie scope paces, another marble piller, being rounde, called Pompey his piller: this piller  
standeth vpon a great square stone, euery square is sixtene foote, and the same stone is sixtene  
foote high, and the compass of the piller is 27. foote, and the height of it is 101. feete, which is a  
wonder to thinke how euer it was possible to set the said piller vpon the said square stone. The  
port of the said Cite is strongly fortified with two strong Castles, and one other Castle within  
the Cite, being all very well planted with munition: and there is to the Eastward of this Cite,  
about three daies iourney the Cite of Grand Cayro, otherwile called Memphis: it hath in it by  
repose of the registers booke, which we did see, to the number of 2400. Churches, and is won-  
derfully populous, and is one daies iourney about the wals, which was iourneyed by one of our  
sparriners, for triall thereof. Also, neere to the said Cite, there is a place called the Pyrammides,  
being, as I may well terme it, one of the nine wonders of the world: that is, seven severall pla-  
ces of flint and marble stone, foure square, the wals thereof are seven partes thicke in those places  
that we did see: the height is in length about twentie scope euery square, being built as it were  
a pointed diamond, broad at the foote, and small or narrow at the toppe: the height of them, to our  
iudgement, doth surmount twice the height of Paules steeple: within the saide Pyrammides, no  
man doth know what there is, for that they haue no entrance, but in the one of them, there is a hole  
where the wall is broken, and so we went in there, hauing torch light with vs, for that it hath no  
light to it, and within the same, is at it were a great hall, in the which there is a colly tombe,  
which tombe they say, was made for King Pharo in his life time, but he was not buried there, be-  
ing drowned in the red sea: also there are certaine barres, or dungions, which goe downe very  
depe vnder those Pyrammides, with faire staires, but no man dare dence to go down into them,  
by reason that they can carry no light with them, for the damp of the earth doth put out the light:  
the red sea is but three daies iourney from this place, and Ierusalem about seven daies iourney  
from thence: but to returne to Cayro. There is a Castle, wherein is the house that Pharoos wifes  
were kept in, and in the Pallace of Court thereof, standeth 55. marble pillars, in such order, as  
our Exchange standeth in London: the saide pillars are in height 60. foote, and in compass 14.  
foote: also in the said Cite, is the Castle where Ioseph was in prison, where to this day they put  
in rich men, when the King would haue any summe of money of them: there are seven gates to  
the said prison, and it goeth neere 50. partes downe right: also, the water that serueth this Cas-  
tle, cometh out of the foresaid riuer of Nilus, vpon a wal made with arches, sixe miles long, and  
it is twelue foote thicke. Also there are in old Cayro two Monasteries, the one called S. Georges,  
the other S. Maries: & in the Courts where the Churches be, was the house of King Pharo. In  
this Cite is great store of marchandize, especially pepper, and nutmegs, which come thither by  
land, out of the East India: and it is very plentifull of all manner of victuals, especially of bread,  
meats, and hearbes: to the Eastward of Cayro, there is a Well, sixe miles of, called Maria,  
and as they say, when the Virgin Marie fled from Bethleem, and came into Aegypt, and being  
there, had neither water, nor any other thing to sustaine them, by the prouidence of God, an Angel  
came from heauen, and strake the ground with his wings, where presently issued out a fountaine  
of water: and the wall did open, where the Israelites did hide themselves, which fountaine of wel,  
is walled foure square, to this day. Also we were at an olde Cite, all ruined and destroyed, cal-  
led in olde time, the great Cite of Carthage, where Hannibal, and Queene Dido dwelt: this ci-  
tie was but narrow, but was very long: for there was, and is yet to bee seene, one streete three  
miles long, to which Cite fresh water was brought vpon arches (as afoze) about 25. miles, of  
which arches, some are standing to this day. Also we were at diuers other places, on the coast, as  
we came from Cayro, but of other antiquities, we saw but fewe. The towne of Argier, which was  
our first of last year, within the streights, standeth vpon the side of an hill, close vpon the sea Shore:  
it is very strong both by sea, and land, and it is very well victualled with all manner of fruites,  
bread

Cayro

Carthage

Argier

bread, and fish, good store, and very cheape: It is inhabited with Turkes, Moores, and Jewes, and so are Alexandria and Cayro. In this towne are a great number of Christian captives, whereof there are of Englishmen onely 15. from which port we set saile towards England, the twenty of Januarie, Anno 1587. and the 30. day of the said moneth, we arrived at Dartmouth, on the coast of England.

The second voyage of Master Laurence Aldersley, to the Cities of Alexandria, and Cayro in Egypt. Anno 1586.



Embarked my selfe at Bristol, in the Hercules a good ship of London, and we saile the 21. day of February, about ten of the clocke in the morning, having a merry wind: but the 23. day there arose a very great storme, and in the mid of it we descried a small boate of the burden of ten tunnes, with foure men in her, in very great danger, who called a maine for our helpe. Whereupon our Master made towards them, and tooke them into our shippe, and let the boate, which was laden with timber, and appertained to Chesham, to runne a drift. The same night about midnight, arose another great storme, but the wind was latge with vs, untill the 27. of the same moneth, which then grew somewhat contrary: yet notwithstanding, we held on our course, and the tenth day of March, we descried a saile about Cape Sprac, which is a litle on this side the streight of Gibraltar, but we spake not with her. The next day we descried twelue saile more, with whom we thought to haue spoken, to haue learned what they were, but they made very fast away, and we gaue them ouer.

Thursday the 16. of March, we had sight of the streights, and of the coast of Barbaric. The 18. day we passed them, and sailed towards Petras. Upon the 23. of March, we met with the Centurion of London, which came from Genoa, by whom we sent letters to England, and the same men also which we tooke in, vpon the coast of England, before mentioned.

The 29. of March, we came to Goleta, a small Island, and had sight of two shippes, which we iudged to be of England.

Tuesday the fourth of April, we were before Malta, and being there becalmed, our Master rescued the two shippe boates to be had out, and they towed the shippe, till we were out of sight of the Castle of Malta. The 9. day of April, we came to Zante, and being before the towne, William Aldridge, seruant to Master Thomas Cordall of London, came aboard vs, with whom our Master, and 12. more of our companie, thought to haue gone on shoare, but they could not be permitted: so we all came aboard againe, and went to Petras, where we arrived vpon good Friday, and lay there with good entertainment, at the English house, where was the Consul Master Grims, Ralfe Ashley, & Iohn Doddington, who very kindly went with vs, and shewed vs the pleasures of the towne.

They brought vs to the house of the Cady, who was made then to vnderstand of the 20. Turkes that we had aboard, which were to go to Constantinople, being redeemed out of captiuitie, by Sir Francis Drake, in the west Indias, and brought with him into England, & by order of the Queenes Maiestie, sent now into their Countrey. Whereupon the Cady commanded them to be brought before him, that he might see them: and when he had talked with them, and vnderstoode how strangely they were deliuered, he maruailed much, and admited the Queenes Maiestie of England, who being but a woman, is notwithstanding of such power and renowne amongst all the princes of Christendome, with many other honorable words of commending her Maiestie. So he tooke the names of those 20. Turkes, and receyued them in their great booke, so remaine in perpetuall memorie. After this, our foresaid countrey men brought me to the Chappell of S. Andrew, where his tombe or sepulchre is, and the boord vpon which he was beheaded, which boord is now so rotten, that if any man offer to cut it, it falleth to powder, yet I brought some of it away with me. Upon Tuesday in Easter weeke, we set out towards Zante againe, and the 24. of April, with much a doo, we were all permitted to come on shoare, and I was carried to the English house in Zante, where I was very well entertained. The commodities of Zante, are currans, and of the situation of the towne is vnder a very great high hill, vpon which standeth a very strong Castle, which commandeth the towne. At Zante we tooke in a captaine, and 16. souldiers, with other passengers. We departed from Zante, vpon Tuesday 15. of April, & the next day we ankred at a small Island, called Scriualia, which is desolate of people, hauing a few religious men, who entertained vs well, without taking any moue: but of curtesie we bestowed vnto what vsd them

Goleta.

Malta.

Zante.

Petras.

Scriualia.

Turkes, Moores, and Jewes,  
of Christian captives, who  
towards England, the French  
arrived at Dartmouth, on the

dersey, to the Cities  
86.

a good ship of London, and in  
clocke in the morning, having  
great stowme, and in the mos  
tennes, with foure men in  
our helpe. Whereupon our  
to our shippe, and let the boate  
ranne a waile. The same night  
with vs, untill the 27. of the  
standing, we held on our course,  
which is a little on this side the  
we desired twelue saile may  
ep were, but they made very lit

of the coast of Barbarie. The 18.  
of March, we met with the Cen  
turers to England, and the four  
mentioned.

the sight of two shippes, which we

there becalmed, our Mast ran  
e, till we were out of sight of  
being before the towne, William  
aboord vs, with whom our Spe  
re, but they could not be perm  
arrived vpon good Friday, and  
was the Consul of the Gians,  
vs, and the wed vs the pleasures

n to understand of the 20. Turke  
became out of captiuitie, by  
England, & by order of the Queene  
commanded them to be brought  
b them, and understood how  
the Queene's Maieste of Eng  
and renoume amongst all the  
naming her Maieste. So he  
great books, so remaine in  
me to the Chappell of S. Au  
he was beheaded, which booke  
e, yet I brought some of it aw  
Zante againe, and the 24. of  
and I was carried to the English  
modities of Zante, are returned,  
vpon which standeth a very  
in a captaine, and 16. souldiers,  
the 15. of April, & the next day be  
ple, sauing a few religious men,  
we bestowed some what vpon them  
by

for their maintenance, and then they gave vs a couple of leane sheepe, which we carried aboard.  
The last day of April, we arrived at Candie, at a Castle, called Sowdaye, where we sette  
the Captaine, souldiers, and mariners a shoare, which we took in at Zante, with all their car  
riage.

The second day of May we set saile againe, and the fourth day came to the Islands of Milo.  
where we anchored, and found the people there very curteous, and took in such necessaries as we  
wanted. The Islands are in my judgement a hundred in number, and all within the compass of  
a hundred miles.

The 11. day, the Chaus, which is the greatest man there in authoritie, for certaine offences  
done in a little Chappell by the water side, which they said one of our shippe had done, and impu  
tied it to me, because I was seene goe into it three daies before, came to vs, and made much a doe,  
so that we were faine to come out of our shippe armed, but by three peeces of golde the bragging  
was ended, and we came to our shippe. This day we also set saile, and the next day passed by the  
Castle of Serpeto, which is an olde ruinaced thing, and standeth vnder a high side.

The 13. day, we passed by the Islands of Paris, and the Island of the bankes of Helicon, and the  
Island called Dixer, where are many Boares, and the women be Wittches. The same day also  
we passed by the Castle of Tino, standing vpon a very high mountaine, and neere vnto it is the  
Island of Diana.

The 15. of May, we came to Sio, where I staid 33. daies. In it is a very proper towne, after the  
building of that Countrey, and the people are cruill: and while we were here, there came in five  
gallies, which had bene at Alexandria, and one of them which was the Admirall, had a Prince of  
the Moores prisoner, to whom they took about Alexandria, and they went to present him to the  
Turke. The towne standeth in a valley, and along the water side pleasantly. There are about 26.  
windmills about it, and the commodities of it, are cotton wooll, cotton parne, mallike, and some o  
ther huyes.

As we remained at Sio, there grew a great controuersie betweene the mariners of the Her  
cules, and the Grekes of the towne of Sio, about the bringing home of the Turkes, which  
the Grekes took in ill part, and the boies cried out, Viue el Re Philippi: whereupon our men beate  
the boies, and they threw stones, and to a byotle began, and some of our men were hurt: but the  
Grekes were fetcht out of their houses, and manacled together with yrons, and threatened to the  
gallies: about foure of them were sent to the prison, and what became of them, when wee were  
gone, we know not, for we went thence within 2. daies after, which was the nineteenth of June.

The 20. day we passed by the Island of Singonina, an Island risen by the casting of stones in  
that place: the substance of the ground there is bymstone, and burneth sometimes so much, that it  
bloweth vp the rocks.

The 22. of June, we came to Cyprus, and had sight in the way of the aforesaid five gallies,  
that came from Alexandria, one whereof came vnto vs, and required a present for himselfe, and  
for two of the other gallies, which we for quietnes sake gaue them.

The 27. of June, we came to Tripolis, where I staid till the sixt of July, and then tooke pas  
sage in a small barke, called a Caramafate, which was a passage boate, and was bound for Bick  
bert, thirtene miles on this side Alexandria, which boate was freighted with Turkes, Moores,  
and Jewes.

The 20. day of July, this barke which I passed in, ranne vpon a rocke, and was in very great  
danger, so that we all began, some to be ready to swimme, some to leape into the shippe boate, but  
it pleased God to set vs quickly off the rocke, and without much harme.

The 28. of July, I came to Bickbert, where I was well entertained of a Iewe, which was  
the Customier there, giuing me good hadue, and vsinking water himselfe: having broken my fall  
with him, he prouiden me a Camell for my carriage, and a Spule for me to ride vpon, and a Spooze  
to runne by me to the Citie of Alexandria, who had charge to see me safe in the English house,  
whether I came, but found no English men there: but then my guide brought me aboard a shippe  
of a Dutchman Martyns, called the Tyger of London, where I was well receaued of the Mastor of  
the said shippe, whose name was Thomas Rickman, and of all the companie.

The said Mastor hauing made me good cheere, and made me also binke of the water of Ni  
lus, hauing the keyes of the English house, went thither with me himselfe, and appointed me a  
faire Chamber, and left a man with me, to prouide me all things that I needed, and euery day  
came himselfe to me, and carried me into the Citie, and showed me the monuments thereof, which  
be these.

He brought me first to Pompey his pillar, which is a mighty thing, of gray marble, and all of  
one

May.  
The Islands  
of Sio, in old  
time called  
Siojabra.

Sio.

Singonina.

Bickbert

The English  
house in Alex  
andria.

The monu  
ments of Alex  
andria.

one stone, in height by estimation, about 52. paces, and the compass about five fadome.

The Citie hath three gates, one called the gate of Barbaria, the other of Merina, and the third of Rosetto.

He brought me to a stone in a street of the Citie, whereupon S. Marke was beheaded: to the place where S. Catherine died, having there hid her selfe, because she would not marrie: also to the Bath of S. Catherine.

I sawe there also, Pharoes needle, which is a thing in height almost equall with Pompeys pillar, and is in compass sixe fadome, and a halfe, and all of one stone.

It was brought also to a most brave and daintie Bath, where we washed our selves: the Bath being of marble, and of very curious workmanship.

The Citie standeth upon great arches, or bowes, like unto Churches, with mightie pillars of marble, to holde up the foundation: which arches are built to receive the water of the river of Nilus, which is for the use of the Citie. It hath three Castles, and a hundred Churches: but the part that is destroyed of it, is five times more then that part which standeth.

**Rosetto.** The last day of July, I departed from Alexandria, towards Cayro, in a passage boate, where, in first I went to Rosetto, standing by the river side, having thirtene or foureene great Churches in it, their building there is of stone & hycke, but as for lodging, there is little, except we bring it with vs.

From Rosetto, we passed along the river of Nilus, which is so famous in the world, stiffe as broad as the Thames at London: on both sides growe Date trees, in great abundance. The people be rude, insomuch that a man can not trauell without a Janissar, to conduct him.

**The Turkes Lent.** The time that I staid in Aegypte, was the Turkes and Moores Lent, in all which time they burne lamps in their Churches, as many as may hang in them: their Lent dureth 40. daies, and they haue three Lents in the yeere: during which time they neither eate nor drinke in the day time, but all the night they doe nothing els.

Between Rosetto, and Cayro, there are along the water side thre hundred cities and townes, and the length of the way is not about thre hundred miles.

**Cayro.** To this famous Citie of Cayro, I came the sixt day of August, where I found Master William Alday, and William Caesar, who entertained me in very good sort. Master Caesar brought me to see the Pyramides, which are three in number, one whereof King Pharao made for his owne tombe, the tombe it selfe is almost in the top of it: the monuments be high, and in forme 4. square, and euery of the squares is as long, as a man may shoot a rowing arrowe, and as high as a church. I sawe also the ruines of the Citie of Memphis, hard by these Pyramides.

The house of Ioseph is yet standing in Cayro, which is a sumptuous thing, having a place to walke in of 56. mightie pillars, all gilt with gold, but I sawe it not, being then lame.

The 11. day of August, the land was cut at Cayro, to let in the water of the river of Nilus, which was done with great joy, and triumph.

The 12. of August, I set from Cayro, towards Alexandria againe, and came thither the 14. of August. The 26. day, there was kept a great feast of the Turkes, and Moores, which lasted two daies, and for a day they neuer ceased shooting off of great Ordnance.

**The English Consul at Argier.** From Alexandria I sailed to Argier, where I lay with Master Typron, Consul of the English nation, who vsed me most kindly, and at his owne charge. He brought me to the kings Court, and into the presence of the King, to see him, and the manners of the Court: the King doth onely beare the name of a King, but the greatest government is in the hands of the souldiers.

The King of Poranca is prisoner in Argier, who coming to Constantinople, to acknowledge a dutie to the great Turke, was betrayed by his owne Nephew, who wrote to the Turke, that he went onely as a spie, by that meanes to get his kingdome. I heard at Argier of seven gallies that were at that time cast away at a towne called Formenera, thre of them were of Argier, the other foure were the Christians.

We found here also thirtene English men, which were by force of weather put into the Bay of Tunes, where they were very ill vsed by the Moores, who forced them to leaue their bark: whereupon they went to the Council of Argier, to require a redress and remedie for the injury. They were all belonging to the shippe, called the Golden Noble of London, whereof Master Birde is owner. The Master was Stephen Haselwood, and the Captaine Edmond Bence.

The third day of December, the pinnace called the Mooneshine of London, came to Argier with a prize, which they tooke upon the coast of Spaine, laden with sugar, hides, and ginger: the pinnace also belonging to the Golden Noble: and at Argier they made sale both of shippe and goods, where we left them as our coming away, which was the seventh day of January:

about five fadome.  
 ber of Merina, and the third

marke was beheaded: to the  
 would not marrie: also to the

all equall with Pompeys pil  
 washed our selues: the Bath

arches, with mightie pillars  
 leaued the water of the river of  
 hundred Churches: but the  
 bath.

ro, in a passage boate, where  
 of foureene great Chur  
 here is little, excepte we bring

amous in the world, twice as  
 in great abundance. The  
 ar, to conduct him.

Leue, in all which time they  
 their Lent indureth 40. water,  
 they eate nor drinke in the day

re hundred cities and townes,

where I found Master Willi-  
 e, Master Czar bringing me  
 Pharao made for his owne  
 high, and in forme 4. square,  
 one, and as high as a church,  
 amidst.

uous thing, hauing a place to  
 be, being then lame.  
 e water of the river of Nilus,

re, and came thither the 14. of  
 and Boozes, which lasted two  
 ce.

Typton, Consul of the Eng  
 ought me to the kings Court,  
 Court: the King both onely  
 os of the souldiers.

Constantinople, to acknowledg  
 to write to the Turke, that he  
 at Argier of seven gallies that  
 if them were of Argier, the

e of weahter put into the Bay  
 to them to leaue their burke  
 remedie for the insury. They  
 downe, whereof Master Birde is  
 Edmond Bence.

e of London, came to Argier  
 sugar, hoes, and ginger: the  
 made sale both of shippes and  
 the fourth day of January:  
 and

and the first day of February. I landed at Dartmouth, and the seventh day came to London, with  
 humble thanks to Almighty God, for my safe arrivall.

A true report of a worthie fight, performed in the voyage from  
 Turke, by five shippes of London, against eleven gallies, and two fri-  
 gats of the King of Spaines, at Pantalarea within the Streights,

Anno, 1586. Written by Philip Iones.



The Merchants of London, being of the incorporation for the Turke trade, ha-  
 uing receaued intelligence, and aduertisements, from time to time, that the  
 King of Spaine grudging at the prosperitie of this kingdome, had not onely of  
 late arrested all English shippes, bodies, and goods, in Spaine, but also malign-  
 ing the quiet traffike which they vsed to and in the dominions, and prouinces,  
 vnder the obedience of the Great Turke, had giuen order to the Capitaines of  
 his gallies, in the Leuant, to hinder the passage of all English shippes, and to endeavour by their  
 best meanes, to intercept, take, and spolie them, their persons, and goods: they hereupon thought  
 it their best course to sette out their flecte for Turke, in such strength and abilitie for their de-  
 fence, that the purpose of their Spanish enemy, might the better be preuened, and the voyage  
 accomplished with greater securitie to the men and shippes. For which cause, five sai. and foure  
 shippes, appertaining to London, and intending onely a Sparchaues voyage, were provided and  
 furnished with all things belonging to the seas, the names whereof were these.

1. The Marchant Royall, a very braue and goodly shippe, and of great report.
2. The Tobie.
3. The Edward Bonauenture.
4. The William, and Iohn.
5. The Susan.

These five departing from the coast of England, in the month of Nouember, 1585, kept to-  
 gether as one flecte, till they came as high as the Isle of Sicilie, within the Leuant. And there ac-  
 cording to the order and direction of the voyage, each shippe began to take leaue of the rest, and to  
 separate himselfe, setting his course for the particular porte, whereunto he was bound: one for  
 Tripolis in Syria, another for Constantinople, the chiefe Citie of the Turkes Empire, situated  
 vpon the coast of Romania, called of olde Thracia, and the rest to those places, whereunto they  
 were piously appointed. But before they deuided themselves, they altogether consulted, of and a-  
 bout a certaine and speciall place for their meeting againe after the lading of their goods at their  
 severall portes. And in conclusion, the generall agreement was to meete at Zante, an Islande  
 nere to the maine continent of the West part of Morea, well known of all the Pilots, & thought  
 to be the fittest place for their Rendeuous. Concerning which meeting, it was also couenanted  
 on eche side, and promised, that whatsoeuer ship of these 5. should first arrive at Zante, should there  
 stay and expect the coming of the rest of the flecte, for the space of 20. dayes. This being done,  
 the man made his best hast according as winde and weather would serue him to fulfill his course,  
 and to dispatch his businesse; and no neede was there to admonish or incourage any man, seeing  
 no time was ill spent, nor oportunitie omitted on any side, in the performance of eche mans buerie,  
 according to his place.

It fell out that the Tobie which was bound for Constantinople had made such good speede,  
 and gotten such good weahter, that the first of all the rest came backe to the appointed place of  
 Zante, and not forgetting the former conclusion, did there call ancre, attending the arrivall of the  
 rest of the flecte, which accordingly (their busines first perfoymed) failed not to keepe promise. The  
 first next after the Tobie was the Royal marchant, which together with the William & Iohn came  
 from Tripolis in Syria, and arrived at Zante within the compasse of the foresaide time limited.  
 These ships in token of the ioy on all parts conceiued for their happy meeting, spared not to dishear-  
 ging of their ordnance, the sounding of drummes and trumpets, the speading of Ensignes, with  
 other warlike and ioyfull behaviours, expressing by these outward signes, the inward gladnesse  
 of their myndes, being all as ready to ioyne together in mutuall consent to resist the cruel enemy,  
 as ioyne in sporting manner they made mythe and pastime among themselves. These thre had  
 not bene long in the haven, but the Edward Bonauenture also, together with the Susan her con-  
 syle, were come from Venice with their lading, the sight of whom increased the ioy of the rest, and  
 they no lesse glad of the presence of the others, saluted them in most friendly and kinde sort, accor-  
 ding to the maner of the seas: and whereas some of these ships stode at that instant in some want  
 of

of victuals they were all content to stay in the port, till the necessities of each Shippe were supplied, and nothing wanted to set out for their returne.

In this port of Zante, the newes was fresh and current, of two severall armies, and fleets, provided by the King of Spaine, and lying in waite to intercept them: the one consisting of 30. strong gallies, so well appointed in all respects for the warre, that no necessarie thing wanted: and this fleet hovered about the Streights of Gibraltar. The other armie had in it 20. Gallies, whereof some were of Sicilie, and some of the Island of Malta, under the charge and government of Iohn Andreas Dorea, a Captaine of name, serving the King of Spaine. These two victuals and strong fleets, waited and attended in the Seas for none, but the English Shippes, and no doubt, made their accompt and sure reckoning, that not a Shippe should escape their furie. And the opinion also of the Inhabitantes of the Isle of Zante, was, that in respect of the number of gallies in both these armies, having received such streight commandement from the king, our King and men being but few, and litle, in comparison of them, it was a thing in humane reason impossible, that we should passe either without spoiling, if we resisted, or without composition at the last, and acknowledgement of dutie to the Spanish king.

But it was neither the report of the attendance of these armies, nor the opinions of the people, nor any thing els, that could daune, or dismay the courages of our men, who grounding themselves upon the goodnes of their cause, & the promise of God, to be delivred from such as with our reason, sought their destruction, carried resolute mindes, notwithstanding all impediments to adventure thorough the seas, and to finish their navigation, maugre the beautes of the Spanish soldiers. But least they should seeme too carelesse, and too secure of their estate, and by laying the whole and entire burden of their safetie, upon Gods providence, should foolishly presume altogether of his helpe, and neglect the meanes which was put into their hands, they failed not to enter into counsell among themselves, and to deliberate advisedly for their best defense. And in the end, with generall consent, the Marchant Royall was appointed Admirall of the Fleets, and the Tobie Viceadmirall, by whose orders the rest promised to be directed, and each Shippe vowed not to speake from another, whatsoever extremitie should fall out, but to stand to it to the death, for the honour of their Countrey, and the frustrating of the hope of the ambitious, and proud enemye.

Thus in good order they left Zante, and the Castle of Grecia, and committed themselves to gaine to the seas, and proceeded in their course and voyage, in quietnes, without sight of any enemye, till they came neere to Pantalarea, an Island so called, betwixt Sicilie, and the coast of Africa: into sight whereof, they came the 13. day of July, 1586. And the same day in the morning, about 7. of the clocke, they descried 17. sailes in number, which were of the gallies, lying in waite of purpose for them, in and about that place. As soone as the English Shippes had spied them, they by and by, according to a common order, made themselves ready for a fight, laid out their Ordnance, stooped, charged, and primed them, displayed their ensignes, and left nothing indone to arme themselves thoroughly. In the meane time, the gallies moze and moze approached the Ship, and in their banners there appeared the armes of the Isles of Sicilia, and Malta, being all as then in the service and pay of the Spaniards. Immediately, both the Admiralls of the gallies, sent from each of them a frigate, to the Admirall of our English Shippes, which being come neere them, the Christian frigate first hailed them, and demanded of them whence they were: they answered that they were of England, the armes whereof appeared in their colours. Whereupon the said frigate communicated with them, & asked, why they delated to send or come with their captaines and purfers to Don Pedro de Leiva, their Generall, to acknowledge their dutie, & obedience to him, in the name of the Spanish king, Lord of those seas: our men replied, & said, that they owed no such dutie or obedience to him, & therefore would acknowledge none, but commanded the frigate to depart with that answer, & not to stay longer a halving, upon her peril. With that away she went, & by comes toward them the other frigate of Malta, & she in like sort hailed the Admirall, & would needs know whence they were, & where they had bene. Our Englishmen in the Admirall, not obtaining an answer, tolde them that they were of England, Merchants of London, had bene at Turkie, & were now returning home: & to be requited in this case, they also demanded of the frigate whence she, & the rest of the gallies were: the messenger answered, we are of Malta, & for mine owne part, my name is Cavalero. These gallies are in service, & pay to the king of Spaine, under the conduct of Don Pedro de Leiva, a noble man of Spaine, who hath bene commanded hither by the King, with this present force and armie, of purpose to intercept you. You shal therefore (quoth he) be well to repaire to him, to know his pleasure, he is a noble man of good behaviour & curtesie, & meanes you no ill. The Captaine of the English Admirall, whose name was Master Edward Wilkinson now one of the 6. masters of her Majesties royal navie, replied, & said, we purpose not at this time

of each Shippe were supplied  
seuerall armies, and heres  
m: the one consisting of 30,  
no necessarie thing wanted:  
armie had in it 20, Cap  
a, under the charge and go  
King of Spaine. These two  
but the English shippes, and  
would escape their furie, and  
respect of the number of gal  
ment from the king, our shipp  
in humane reason impossi  
out composition at the last,

of the opinions of the people,  
men, who grounding them  
delivered from such as with  
standing all impediments to  
the deuides of the Spanis  
their estate, and by laying the  
uld foolishly presume altho  
hands, they failed not to enter  
best defense. And in the end,  
all of the Fleete, and the To  
und each shippe vowed not to  
to it to the death, for the ho  
ous, and your enemy.

and committed themselves  
es, without sight of any ene  
e Sicilie, and the coast of Al  
the same day in the morning,  
of the gallies, lying in wait  
shippes had spied them, they  
sight, laied out their Dr  
and left nothing undone to  
and more appoched the ships,  
and Malta, being all as then  
ng come neere them, the Sh  
they answered that they  
ereupon the said frigate app  
their captaines and puruers to  
obedience to him, in the name  
they owed no such dutie un  
ved the frigate to depart with  
at way she went, & by comes  
miral, & would needes know  
miral, nor disdaining an an  
had bene at Turkie, & were  
ed of the frigate whence she,  
alra, & for mine owne part,  
of Spaine, under y conduct  
manded hither by the King,  
I therefore (quoth he) haue  
our & curtesie, & means  
Mastur Edward Wilkinson  
we purpose not at this time

to make trall of Don Pedro his curtesie, whereof we are suspitious and doubtfull, and not with  
one good cause: using withall good words: the messenger, and willing him to come aboard him,  
promittin securitie and good usage, that thereby he might the better know the Spaniards minde:  
whereupon he in deed left his frigate, and came aboard him, whom he entertained in friendly sort,  
and caused a cuppe of wine to be brayne for him, which he tooke, and begame, with his cappe in his  
hand, and with returned termes, to drinke to the health of the Queene of England, speaking very  
honorable of her Maiestie, and giuing good speeches of the courteous usage, and intertainment  
that he himselfe had receiued in London, at the time that the Duke of Alensou, brother to the late  
French King was last in England: and after he had well drunke, he tooke his leaue, speaking well  
of the sufficientie and goodnesse of our shippes, and especiallie of the Merchaut Royall, which he  
confessed to haue seene before, riding in the Thames neere London. He was no sooner come to  
Don Pedro de Leuia, the Spanish generall, but he was sent off againe, and returned to the Eng  
lish Admirall, saying that the pleasure of the generall was this, that either their captaines, mai  
sters, and puruers should come to him with speed, or els he would set upon them, and either take  
them or slake them. The replie was made by M. Wilkinson aforesaid, that not a man should come  
to him: and for the byagge and threat of Don Pedro, it was not that Spanissh byauado that should  
make them yeeld a roe to their hindrance, but they were as readie to make resistance, as he to offer  
an iniurie. Whereupon Caualiero the messenger left byagging, and began to perswade them in  
quiet sort, and with many words, but all his laboz was to no purpose, and as his threat did nothing  
terrifie them, so his persuation did nothing moue them, to doe that which he required. At the last  
he increased to haue the merchant of the Admirall caried by him as a messenger to the generall, that  
so he might be satisfied, and assured of their mindes by one of their owne companie. But M. Wil  
kinson would agree to no such thing, although Richard Rowie the merchant himselfe seemed  
willing to be employed in that message, and labozed by reasonable persuations to induce M. Wil  
kinson to grant it, as hoping to be an occasion by his presence and discreet answers to satisfie the  
generall, and thereby to saue the effusion of Christi an blood, if it should grow to a battell. And he  
knew so much the more willing to be sent, by how much deeper the othes and protestations of  
this Caualiero were, that he would (as he was a true knighe and a souldior) deliuer him backe a  
gain in safetie to his companie. Albeit, M. Wilkinson, which by his long experience had receiued  
sufficient triall of Spanissh inconstancie and periurie, wisshed him in no case to put his life and li  
bertie in hazard vpon a Spaniards oth. But at last, vpon much intreatie, he yeilded to let him  
goe to the generall, thinking in deed that good speeches, and answers of reason would haue con  
tented him, whereas otherwise, refusal to doe so, might peraduenture haue prouoked the more  
discontentment.

Spanissh Rowie therefore passing to the Spanissh generall, the rest of the gallies hauing espied  
him, thought in deed that the English were rather determined to yeeld then to fight, and therefore  
came flocking about y frigate, euerie man crying out, Que nuemas, que nuemas, haue these English  
men yeilded: the frigate answered, No so, they neither haue, nor purpose to yeeld, onely they haue  
sent a man of their companie to speake with our generall: and being come to the gallie where can he  
was, he throwd himselfe to M. Rowie in his armor, his gard of souldiors attending vpon him in  
armor also, and begame to speake very proudly in this sort: Thou Englishman, from whence is  
your fleet, why stand ye aloofe off, know ye not your dutie to the Catholike king, whose person I  
here represent: Where are your billes of lading, your letters, passports, and the chiefe of your  
men? Thinke ye my attendance in these seas to be in vaine, or my person to no purpose? Let all  
these things be done out of hand as I command, vpon paine of my further displeasure & the spoile  
of you all: These wordes of the Spanissh generall were not so outrageously pronounced, as they  
were mildly answered by mastur Rowie, who, tolde him that they were all merchant men, being  
traffike in honest sort, and seeking to passe quietly, if they were not byged further then reason: as  
for the king of Spaine, he thought (for his part) that there was amitie betwixt him and his soue  
reigne the Queene of England, so that neither he nor his officers should goe about to offer any  
such iniurie to English merchants, who as they were farre from giuing offence to any man, so they  
would be loath to take an abuse at the handes of any, or lie downe to their losse, where their abili  
tie was able to make defence. And as touching his commandement aforesaid, for the acknow  
ledging of dutie; in such particular sort, he tolde him, that where there was no dutie owing, there  
none should be performed, assuring him that their whole companie, and shippes in generall, stood  
resolute vpon the negative, and would not yeeld to any such vntreasonable demand, ioynd with  
such importunous and absolute manner of commanding. They then said he, if they will neither come  
to yeeld, nor shew obedience to me in the name of my king, I will either slake them or bring them  
to



to harbor, and so tell them from me. Which that the frigot came away with *Sp. Rowit*, and brought him aboard the English Admirall againe, according to promise: who was no sooner entred in, but by and by defiance was sounded on both sides, the Spaniards hewed off the noses of the gallees, that nothing might hinder the leuell of the shot, and the English on the other side courageously prepared themselves to the combat, euery man according to his roome, bent to performe his office with alacritie and diligence. In the meane time a cannon was discharged from out the Admirall of the gallees, which being the onset of the fight, was presently answered by the English Admirall with a culuering: so the skirmish began, and grew hot and terrible, there was no powder nor shot spared: ech English shippe matched it selfe in good order against two Spanish gallees, besides the inequality of the frigats on the Spaniards side: and although our men performed their parts with singular valure, according to their strength, insomuch that the enimie as amazed therewith would often times pause and stay, and consult what was best to be done, yet they ceased not in the midst of their businesse to make prayer to almighty God the reuenger of all euils, and the giuer of victories, that it would please him to assist them in y good quarrell of theirs, in defending themselves against so proud a tyrant, to teach their hands to war, & their fingers to fight, that y glory of the victory might rebound to his name, and to the honoz of true religion, which the insolent enemy sought to much to ouerthrow. Contrarily, the foolish Spaniards they cryed out according to their maner, uoe to God, but to our Lady (as they terme the virgin *Spary*) saying, O Lady helpe, O blessed Lady giue vs the victory, and the honoz therof shalbe thine. Thus with blowes and papers on both sides the fight continued furious and sharpe, and doubtfull a long time to which part the victory would incline: till at the last the Admirall of the gallees of Sicilie began to waurre from the fight, & to holde by her side for feare of sinking, and after her went also two others in like case, whom all the foze of them inclosed, laboring by all their meanes to keepe them about water, being ready by the foze of English shot which they had receiu'd to perish in the seas: and what slaughter was done among the Spaniards themselves, the English were vncertaine, but by a probable coniecture apparant a far off, they supposed their losse was so great, that they wanted men to continue the charging of their pieces: wherupon with shame and dishonoz, after sixe houres spent in the battell, they with their themselves: and the English contented in respect of their deepe lading rather to continue their voyage then to follow the chase, ceased from further blowes, with the losse onely of two men slaine, amongst them all, and another hurt in his arme, whom *Sp. Wilkinson* with his good words & friendly promises did so comfort, that he nothing esteemed the smart of his wound in respect of the honoz of the victory, and the shameful repulse of the enemy.

A fight of sixe  
houres.

This with dueittfull thanks to the mercy of God for his gracious assistance in that danger, the English ships proceeded in theirs navigation, & comming as high as *Alger*, a port to lye vpon the coast of *Barbarie* they fell with it, of purpose to refresh themselves after their wearinesse, & to take in such supplie of fresh water & victuals, as they needed: they were no sooner entred into the port, but immediatly the king therof sent a messenger to the ships to know what they were, with which messenger the chiefe maister of ech ship repaired to the king, and acquainted him not onely with the state of their ships, in respect of marchandize, but with the late fight which they had passed with the Spanish gallees, reporting euery particular circumstance in word as it fell out in action: wherof the said king shewed himselfe maruellous glad, intertaining them in the best sort, and promising abundant reliefe of all their wances, making generall proclamation in the citie vpon paine of death, that no man of what degree or state soeuer he were, should presume either to hinder them in their affaires, or to offer them any manner of iniury in body or goods. By vertue wherof they dispatched all things in excellent good sort, with all fauoz and peaceableness: onely such prisoners & captiues of the Spaniards as were in the citie, seeing the good vantage which they receiued, & hearing also what seruice they had performed against the foze laid gallees, grudged exceedingly against them, & sought as much as they could to practise some mischief against them: and one amongst the rest seeing an Englishman alone in a certaine lane of the citie, came vpon him suddenly, and with his knife thrust him in the side, yet made no such great wound, but that it was easily recovered. The English company hearing of it, acquainted the king with the fact, who immediatly sent both for the party that had receiued the wound, and the offender also, and caused an executioner in the presence of himselfe and the English, to chastise the slaue euen to death, which was performed to the end that no man should presume to commit the like part, or to do any thing in contempt of his royall commandment.

The English hauing receiued this good iustice at the kings hands, & all other things that they wanted, or could craue for the furnishing of their shippes, took their leaue of him, and of the rest of their friends, that were resident in *Alger*, and put out to sea, looking to meet with the second arme of the Spanish king, which waited for them about the mouth of the strights of *Cybalat*, which

with **S.** Rowat, and brought  
was no sooner entered in, but  
off the noses of the galleys,  
the other side courageously  
to performe his office with  
from out the Admirall of the  
by the English Admirall with  
was no powder nor those Spa-  
panish galleys, besides the in-  
men performed their parts with  
as amazed there with would  
they ceased not in the midst of  
uils, and the grier of victories,  
defending themselves against so  
at y glory of the victory might  
so to the enemy fought so much  
according to their manner, not to  
by seipe, **S.** blessed Lady giue  
s and prayers on both sides the  
which part the victory would in-  
carpe from the fight, & to holde  
in like safe, whom all the sort of  
later, being ready by the sort of  
laughter was done among the  
diable countere apparant a far  
continue the charging of their  
e in the battell, they withour  
ing rather to continue their top-  
dise onely of two men slaine, a  
n with his good woordes, a firm  
would in respect of the honoy of

his assistance in that danger, the  
Alger, a port to come vpon the  
after their wearinesse, & to take  
no sooner entered into the port,  
to what they were, with which  
quainted him not onely with the  
which they had p: sessed with the  
as it fell out in action: whereof  
in the best sort, and promising  
in the cite vpon paine of death,  
ther to hinder them in their at-  
tue wherof they dispatched all  
ly such prisoners & captiues of  
ey received, & hearing also what  
redingly against them, & sought  
one amongst the rest seeing an  
penly, and with his knife thrust  
recovered. The English com-  
ely sent both for the party that  
out in the presence of himselfe  
formed to the end that no man  
pe of his royall commandement,  
s, & all other things that they  
leante of him, and of the rest of  
ing to meet with the second ar-  
of the straight of Gibraltar,  
which

which they were of necessitie to passe, But comming nere to the said straight, it pleased God to  
raile at that instant, a very darke and mistie fogge so that one shippe could not discern another, if it  
were 40 paces off: by means whereof, together with the notable faire Easterne windes that then  
blew most fixe for their course, they passed with great speed through the straight, and might haue  
passed with that good gale, had there bene 500 galleys to withstand them, and the ayre neuer so  
clere for euery shippe to be seene. But yet the Spanish galleys had a sight of them when they were  
come within three English miles of the towne, & made after them in all possible haste, and although  
they saw that they were farre out of their reach, yet in a vaine furie & foolish pride, they shot off their  
ordnance, and made a fire in the sea as if they had bene in the midst of them, which vanity of theirs  
ministered to our men noceable matter of pleasure and mirth, seeing men to fight with shadowes, and  
to take so great paines to so small purpose.

But thus it pleased God to deride, and delude all the forces of that proud Spanish king, which  
he had provided of purpose to distresse the English, who notwithstanding, passed through both his  
armies, in the one, little hurt, and in the other nothing touched, to the glory of his immortall name,  
the honoy of our prince and countray, and the iust commendation of each mans seruice, performed in  
that voyage.

The voyage of M. Iohn Eldred to Tripolis in Syria by sea, and  
from thence by land and riuer to Babylon and Balsara. 1583.



Departed out of London in the ship called the **Tyger** in the companie of **S.** John  
Newberie, **S.** Ralph Fitch, and six or seuen other honest merchants vpon  
Shroue munday 1583, and arriued in Tripolis of Syria the first of May next  
insuing: at our landing we went on maping vpon **S.** Georges Island, a place  
where Christians dying aboard the shippes are wont to be buried. In this cite  
our English marchantes haue a consull, & our nation abide together in one house  
with him called Fondeghi Ingles, builded of stone, square, in maner like a cloister, and euery man  
his seuerall chamber, as it is the vse of all other Christians of seuerall nations. This towne stand-  
eth vnder a part of the mountaine of **Libanus** two English miles distant from the port: on the side  
of which port, trending in foyme of an halfe moone, stand sixe blockeboules of smal foyses, where in is  
some very good artillerie, and the foyses are kept with about an hundred Janissaries. Eighte before  
this towne from the seaward, is a banke of mouing sand, which gathereth and increaseth with the  
Western windes, in such sort, that, according to an olde prophetic among them, this banke is like  
to swallow vp and ouertwheime the towne: for euery yeere it increaseth and eateth vp many gar-  
dens, although they vse all pollicie to diminish the same, and to make it firme ground. The cite  
is about the bignesse of **Byzantion**, and walled about, though the walles be of no great foice. The  
chief strength of the place is in a citadell, which standeth on the South side within the walles, and  
ouerlooketh the whole towne, and is stronglie kept with 200 Janissaries and good artillerie. A  
riuer passeth through the middelt of the cite, wherewith they water their gardens and mulberie  
trees, on which there grow abundance of silke woymes, wherewith they make great quantity of  
very white silke, which is the chiefest naturall commoditie to be found in and about this place.  
This towne is moxe frequented with Christian marchantes, to wit, Venetians, Genouois, Floren-  
tines, Spartians, Sicilians, Ragules, and lately with Englishmen, then any other port of the  
Turks dominions. From Tripolis I departed the 14 of May with a carauan, passing three dayes  
vnder the ridge of moue **Libanus**, at the end wherof we arriued in a cite called **Hammah**, which  
standeth on a goodly plaine replenished with corne & cotton ywooll. On these mountaines which he  
passeth, grow great quantity of gail trees, which are somewhat like our oaks, but lesser & moxe croo-  
ked: on the best tree a man shall not finde aboue a pound of gail: s. This towne of **Hammah** is fal-  
len, and falleth moxe & moxe to decay, and at this day there is scarce one halfe of the wall standing,  
which hath bene very strong and faire: but because it cost many mens liues to win it, the Turke  
will not haue it repayed, and hath written in the Arabian tongue ouer the castle gate, which stand-  
eth in the middelt of the towne, these woordes: Cursed be the father & the sonne that shall lay their  
hands to the repairing heerof. Refreshing our selues one day here, we passed forward with ca-  
uels three dayes moxe vntill we came to **Aleppo**, where we arriued the 21 of May. This is the  
greatest place of trade for a dry towne that is in all those parts: for herbe refoze **Ietues**, **Carta-  
gians**, **Perlians**, **Armenians**, **Egyptians**, **Indians**, & many sorts of Christians, & inioy freedom of  
their consciences, & bring thither many kindes of rich merchandizes. In the middelt of this towne al-  
so standeth a goodly castle raised on hie with a garison of 4 or 5 hundred Janissaries, within foure  
miles

The description  
of Tripolis in  
Syria.

The cite of  
Hammah.  
Cotten wood,  
Gail trees.

the sayde.

miles round about are goodly gardens and vineyards and trees, which beare goodly fruit were vnto the rivers side, which is but small, the walles are about thre English miles in compass, but the suburbs are almost as much more. The towne is greatly peopled. We departed from thence with our camels the last of May with *Sp. John* *Herberic* and his companie, and came to *Birrah* in thre dayes, being a small towne situated vpon the riuer *Euphrates*, where it beginneth first to take his name, being here gathered into one channell, whereas before it runneth downe in many folde branches, and is therefore called by the people of the countrey by a name which signifieth a thousand heads. There is plentie of victualles wherof we all furnished our selues for our long journey downe the aforesaid riuer. And according to the manner of those that trauell downe by water, we prepared a small barke for the conuoyance of our selues and of our goods. These boates are flatte bottomed, because the riuer is shallow in many places: and when men trauell in the moneth of *Julie*, *August*, and *September*, the water being then at the lowest, they are constrained to carie with them a spare boate or two to lighten their owne boates: if they chance to fall on the shoalders. We were eight and twentieth dayes vpon the water betwene *Birrah* and *Felugia*, where we disembarked our selues and our goodes. Eueny night after the Sunne setteth, we tie our barke to a stake, goe on land to gather stiches, and set on our pot with rice or hused wheat, and hauing supped, the merchants lie aboard the barke, and the mariners vpon the shores side as nere as they can into the same. In many places vpon the riuers side we mette with troopes of Arabians, of whom we bought milke, butter, egges, and lambes, and gaue them in barter, (for they care not for money) glasses, combes, corall, amber, to hang about their armes and neckes, and for churned milke we gaue them bread and pomgranat peeles, wherewith they vse to tamic their goats skinnes which they churme with ball. Their haire, apparell, and colour are altogether like to those that abound *Egyptians*, which heretofore haue gone about in *England*. Their women all without exception, weare a great round ring in one of their nostrils, of golde, silver, or yron, according to their abilitie, and about their armes & smalles of their legs they haue hoopcs of golde, silver, or yron. All of them as well women and children, as men, are very great swimmers, and often times swimming they brought vs milke to our barke in vessels, vpon their heads. These people are very cheerefull, which I proued to my cost: for they stole a casket of mine, with thinges of good value in the same, from vnder my mans head as he was asleepe: and therefore traouellers keepe good watch as they passe downe the riuer. *Euphrates* at *Birrah* is about the breadth of the *Chames* at *Lambeth*, and in some places narrower, in some broader: it runneth very swiftly, almost as fast as the riuer of *Trent*: it hath diuers foyses of fish in it, but all are scaled, some as bigge as salmons, like barbels. We landed at *Felugia* the eight and twentieth of *June*, where we made our abode seuen dayes, for lacke of camels to carie our goods to *Babylon*: the beate at that time of the yeere is such in those partes, that men are loath to let out their camels to trauell. This *Felugia* is a village of some hundred houses, and a place appointed for discharging of such goods as come downe the riuer: the inhabitants are *Arabians*. Not finding camels here, we were constrained to vnload our goods, and hired an hundred asses to carie our *English* merchandizes ouer to *New Babylon*, ouer a long desert, in crossing wherof we spent eightene hours traouelling by night, and part of the morning, to avoid the great heat.

In this place which we crossed ouer, stood the olde mightie citie of *Babylon*, many olde ruines wherof are easilie to be seene by day light, which I *John* *Eldred* haue often beheld, at my good leisure, hauing made thre voyages betwene the *New* citie of *Babylon* and *Aleppo* ouer this desert. Here also are yet standing the ruines of the olde towne of *Babell*, which being vpon a plaine ground seemeth a farre off very great, but the nearer you come to it, the lesse and lesse it appeereth: sundry times I haue gone thither to see it, and found the remanens yet standing about a quarter of a mile in compass, and almost as high as the stone worke of *Pauls* steeple in *London*, but it is much bigger. The hyckes remaining in this most auncient monument be halfe a yard thicke, and thre quarters of a yard long, being dyed in the Sunne onely, and betwene euery course of hyckes there lieth a course of mattes made of canes, which remaine founde and not perished, although they had bene laped within one yeere. The citie of *New Babylon* ioynech vpon the aforesaid small desert where the *Olde* citie was, and the riuer of *Cygris* runneth close vnder the wall, and they may if they will open a sluice, and let the water of the same runne round about the towne. It is about two *English* miles in compass, and the inhabitant's generall y speak thre languages, to wit, the *Persian*, *Arabian* and *Turkish* tongues: the people are of the *Spaniards* complexion: and the women generallie weare in one of the nostrils of their noses a ring like a wedding ring, but somewhat greater, with a pearle and a *Turkish* Stone set therein: and thus they doe be they neuer so poore.

Birrah.

Euphrates shallow.

Eight &amp; twentieth dayes iourney by riuer.

Arabians buy on the riuer of Euphrates.

The Arabian women weare golde rings in their nostrils.

Euphrates described.

Felugia.

The ruines of olde Babylon.

New Babylon. The riuer Cygris.

which beare goodly fruit were  
 English milcs in compall, but  
 v. We departed from there  
 v. company, and came to Bira  
 es, where it beginneth first to  
 it cometh downe in maner  
 y by a name which signifieth a  
 ished our selues for our long  
 of those that trauell downe by  
 of our goods. These boats  
 and when men trauell in the  
 the lowell, they are contrap  
 ce, if they chance to fall on the  
 the Bira and Felugia, where  
 the Sunne setteth, we tie our  
 thrice of husel wheat, and ha  
 non the shoes lye as in cre as  
 ce with troopes of Arabians,  
 m in barter, (for they care not  
 s and netkes, and for churme  
 to tame their goat skines  
 gether like to those bagaband  
 women all without exception,  
 on, according to their abilitie,  
 ide, ficut of yon. All of them  
 o often times swimming they  
 eople are very thewful, which  
 of good value in the same, from  
 eepe good watr as they passe  
 Thames at Lambeth, and in  
 almost as fast as the river of  
 ge as salmons, like barbels,  
 ade our abode fewe dayes, for  
 me of the yeere is such in these  
 Felugia is a village of some  
 as come downe the river: the  
 strained to vnlade our goods,  
 to New Babylon, ouer a boate  
 night, and part of the morning,

of Babylon, many olde wits  
 he often beheld, at my good  
 in and Aleppo ouer this desert,  
 which being vpon a plaine good  
 er and lesser it appeareth: I  
 standing about a quarter of a  
 steple in London, but it by  
 nument be halfe a yard thicke,  
 and betwene euery course of  
 e sounde and not perished, as  
 to Babylon iourneth vpon the  
 ygris runneth close vnder the  
 e same runne round about the  
 vitants generallly speake these  
 e people are of the Spaniards  
 kes of their noses a ring like  
 stone set therein: and thus

Th

This is a place of very great traffique, and a very great thonghsare from the East Indies to  
 Aleppo. The towne is very well furnished with victuals which come downe the river of Tigris  
 from Mosul which was called Ninine in olde time. They bring these victuals and diuers sortes  
 of merchandises vpon raftes bozue vpon goatcs skins blowne vp ful of wind in maner of bladders.  
 And when they haue discharged their goods, they sell the raftes for fire, and let the wind out of their  
 goatcs skins, and carry them home agame vpon their asses by land to make other voyages downe  
 the river. The building here is most of brycke dyed in the sunne, and very little of no stone to be  
 found: their houses are all flat roofed and lowe. They haue no fire for eight moneths together,  
 nor almost any cloudes in the skie, night nor day. Their Winter is in Nouember, December, Ja  
 nuarie and Februarie, which is as warme as our Sommer in England in a maner. This I know  
 by good experience, because my abode at seuerall times in this cite of Babylon, hath bene at the less  
 the space of two yeeres. As we come to the cite, we passe ouer the river of Tigris on a great brydge  
 made with boates chained together with two mightie chaines of iron. From thence we departed  
 in flat bottom barkes moze strong and greater then those of Euphrates, and were eight and twen  
 tie dayes also in passing downe this river to Balsara, but we might haue done it in eightene or  
 tesse, if the water had bene higher. Upon the waters side by the way stand diuers towncs resem  
 bling much the names of the old prophets: the first towne they call Ozeah, and another Zecchi  
 ah. Before we come to Balsara by one dayes iourney, the two rivers of Tigris and Euphrates  
 meete, and there standeth a Caste called Curra kept by the Turkes, where all merchants pay a  
 small custome. Here the two rivers ioined together, begin to be eight or nine miles broad: here al  
 so it beginneth to ebbe and flow, and the water ouerflowing maketh the counrey all about very fr  
 itle of coye, rice, pulse, and dates. The towne of Balsara is a mile and an halfe in circuit: all the  
 buildings, castle and wals, are made of brycke dyed in the sunne. The Turke hath here sixe hun  
 dred Janineries, besides other souldiours continually in garison and pay, but his chief strength  
 is of gallies which are about sixe and twentie or thirtie very faire and furnished with goodly ordi  
 nance. To this port of Balsara come monethly diuers ships from Ormuz, laden with all sortes of  
 Indian merchandise, as spices, drugs, Indico, and Calcut cloth. These ships are usually from  
 foure to three foye tonnes, hauing their planks sowed together with coye made of the barke of  
 Dates, and in stead of Deane they vse the shuicrings of the barke of the Apprees, and of the  
 same they also make their tarking. They haue no kind of yron worke belonging to these vessels,  
 but onely their ankercs. From this place sixe dayes sayling downe the Gulfe, they goe to a place  
 called Baharem in the midway to Ormuz. There they fish for pearles foure moneths in the yeere,  
 to wit, in June, Iulij, August, and September. My abode in Balsara was full sixe moneths,  
 during which time I receiued diuers letters from master John Newberie from Ormuz, who as hee  
 passed that way with her maiesties letters to Yeladin el Kubar, that is, Yeladin the great, king of  
 Cambaia, and vnto the mightie Emperour of China, was traiterously there arrested, and all his  
 company by the Portugals, and afterward sent prisoner to Goa: where after a long and cruell  
 imprisonment, he and his companions were deliuered vpon suertes, not to depart the towne with  
 out leaue, at the sute of one father Thomas Struens, an English religious man which they found  
 there, but what became afterward of thre of them, is not knowen vnto this day. The fourth  
 which was a painter called John Storie, became religious in the Colledge of S. Paul in Goa,  
 as we vnderstood by their letters. I and my companion William Shales hauing departed  
 our business at Balsara imbarcad our selues in company of securtie barkes all laden with merchan  
 dise, hauing euery barke fourtene men to draw them, like our Westerne bargemen on y<sup>e</sup> Thames,  
 and we were foure dayes comming by against the streame to Babylon, where arriuing and  
 paying our custome, we with all other sortes of merchants bought vs camels, hired vs men to lade  
 and drawe them, furnished our selues with rice, butter, bisket, honie made of Dates, Onions and  
 Dates: and euery merchant bought a proportion of liue mutons, and hired certaine shepheards  
 to drawe them with vs: we also bought vs tentes to lie in, and to put our goods vnder, & in this our  
 Carauan were foure thousand Camels laden with spices and other rich merchandises. These Ca  
 melcs will liue very well two or thre dayes without water: their feeding is on Tuffles, Clove  
 wood, Bagdalene and other ston y weeds which they find vpon the way. The gouernment and  
 berding of all quartels and duties to be paid, the whole Carauan committeth to one speciall rich  
 merchant of the company, of whom honestie they conceiue best. In passing from Babylon to A  
 leppo, we spent foure dayes, traouailing twente and foure and twentie miles a day, resting one  
 selues commonly from two of the clocke in the afternoone, vntill thre in the morning, at which time  
 we begin to take our iourney. Eight dayes iourney from Babylon toward Aleppo, nere vnto a  
 towne called Hire, as we cross the river Euphrates by boates, about 3. miles from the towne there

Raftes borne  
vpon blab  
bers of goatcs  
skins.

Seldome rain.

Eight and  
twentie dayes  
iourney more  
by river, from  
Babylon to  
Balsara.

Curra castle.

Balsara.

Ships made  
built out from  
in the Persian  
Gulfe.

Yeladin el Ku  
bar King of  
Cambaia.

Returnd  
from Balsara  
to Aleppo.

Their victu  
ation of victu  
als.

A Carauan of  
four thousand  
and Camels.

Springe of  
sare.

is a valley wherein are many springes thowring out aboundantly at great mouthes, a kinde of black substance like unto tarre, which serueth all the countrey to make stanch their barkes and boates: euerie one of these springes make a noise like vnto a smiches foage in the blowing and puffing out of this matter, which neuer ceaseth night nor day, and the noise may be heard a mile off continually. This vale swaloweth up all heauie things that come vpon it. The people of the countrey call it in their language Babil gehenam, that is to say, Hell doore. As we passed through these deserts, we saw certaine wild beasts, as wild asses all white, Roebucks, wolues, leopards, foxes, and many hares, whereof we chased and killed many. Aborise, the king of the wandring Arabians in these deserts, hath a dutie of foerie shillings sterling, vpon euery Camels lode, which he sendeth his officers to receiue of the Carauans, and in consideration hereof, he taketh vpon him to conduct the said Carauans if they need his helpe, and to defend them against certaine prowling cheeues. I and my companion William Shales came to Aleppo with the Carauan the eleuenth of June, 1584, where we were hospitably receiued twentie miles distant from the towne by master William Barret our Consul, accompanied with his people and Janissaries, who fell sick immediately and departed this life within eight dayes after, and elected before his death, M. Anthonie Bate Consul of our English nation in his place, who laudably supplied the said gouernment thre yeeres. In which meane time I made two voiages moxe vnto Babylon, and returned by the way aforesaid, ouer the deserts of Arabia, And afterwards as one desirous to see other partes of the countrey, I went from Aleppo to Antioch, which is distant thence 60. English miles, and from thence went down to Tripolis, where going aboard a small vessel, I arriued at Ioppe, and traualled to Rama, Lyria, Gaza, Ierusalem, Bethleem, to the riuer of Iordban, and the sea of lake of Sodome, and returned backe to Ioppe, and from thence by sea to Tripolis, of which places because many others haue published large discourses, I surcease to write. Within few dayes after imbarcking my selfe at Tripolis the 22. of December, I arriued (God be thanked) in safetie here in the riuer of Thames with diuers English merchants, the 26. of March, 1588, in the Hercules of London, which was the richest ship of English merchants goods that euer was knowen to come into this realme.

William Barret.  
Consul in  
Aleppo.  
Anthonie Bate.

### The Letters patents or priuiledges granted by her Maieltie

to certaine Noble men and merchants of London, for a trade to  
Barbarie, in the yeere, 1585.



Lizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the Treasurer & Barons of our Exchequer, and to all Sheriffs, Stricks, Constables, customers, collectors of our customes and subsidies, controllers, searchers, and keepers of our haunts and creekes, portes and passages, within this our realme of England and the dominions of the same, and to all our officers, ministers and subiects, and to all other whosoever to whom it shall or may appertaine, and to euery of them greeting. Whereas it is made evidently and apparently knowen vnto vs, that of late yeeres our right trustie and right welbeloued counsellors, Ambrose Erie of Warwike, and Robert Erie of Leicester, and also our louing and naturall subiects, Thomas Starkie of our cite of London Alderman, Ierard Gore the elder, and all his sonnes, Thomas Gore the elder, Arthur Atie gentleman, Alexander Auenon, Richard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbeney, William Sherington, Thomas Branlic, Anthonie Garrard, Robert How, Henry Colthirst, Edward Holmden, John Swinnerton, Robert Walkaden, Simon Lawrence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William Bond, Henry Farrington, John Tedcastle, Walter Williams, William Brune, John Suzan, John Newton, Thomas Owen, Roger Afield, Robert Wafburne, Reinold Guy, Thomas Hitchcocke, George Lydiar, John Cartwright, Henrie Paiton, John Boldroe, Robert Bowyer, Anthonie Daffell, Augustine Lane, Robert Lion and Thomas Dodde, all of London, merchants now trading into the countrey of Barbarie, in the partes of Affrica, under the gouernment of Muly Hammet Sheriffe, Emperour of Morocco, and king of Fesse and Sus, haue sustained great and grieuous losses, and are like to sustaine greater if it should not be prevented: In tender consideration whereof, and for that diuers mercantile of the same countries are very necessarie and conuenient for the vse and defence of this our realme of England, and for diuers other causes vs specially mouing, minding the reliefe and benefite of our sayd subiects, and the quiet traffique and good gouernment to be had, and vsed among them in their said trade, of our speciall grace, certaine knowledge, and meere motion haue giuen and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, doe giue and graunt vnto the sayd Eries of Warwike and Leicester, Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore the elder, Arthur Atie gentleman, Alexander

Auenon,

great mouches, a kinde of black  
by their barkes and boates: to  
be blowing and puffing out  
we heard a mile off continual  
people of the countrey call it  
passed through the deserts,  
s, leopards, foxes, and many  
imping Arabians in these de-  
serts, which he sendeth his offi-  
upon him to conduct the said  
spowling ebeues. I and my  
leueneth of June, 1584, where  
matter William Barret our  
immediatly and departed this  
nie Bate Consul of our Eng-  
res. In which meane time  
ofesaid, ouer the deserts of A-  
ep, I went from Aleppo to  
went down to Tripolis, where  
a, Lyria, Gaza, Ierusalem,  
returned backe to Ioppe, and  
haue published large discou-  
at Tripolis the 22. of Decem-  
s with diuers English men  
as the richest ship of English

by her Maieltie  
for a trade to

France and Ireland, defende  
the Chequer, and to all spai-  
customs and subsidies, com-  
reons, portes and passages,  
ons of the same, and to all our  
hofoeuer to whom it shall  
be evidently and apparantly  
oued counsellors, Ambroise  
and naturall subiects, Tho-  
and all his sonnes, Thomas  
Stapers, William Iennings,  
onie Garrard, Robert How,  
alkaden, Simon Lawrence,  
hn Tedcastle, Walter Wil-  
en, Roger Afild, Robert  
ohn Cartwright, Henrie  
ine Lane, Robert Lion and  
countrey of Barbarie, in the  
Emperoz of Moroccos, and  
are like to sustaine greater  
at diuers mercantile of the  
re of this our realme of Eng-  
eliefe and benefite of our sap-  
ped among them in their said  
be giuen and granted, and by  
into the sayd Erles of War-  
Aucnoo, Alexander

Auenon, Richard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbenie, William Sherington, Tho-  
mas Bramlie, Anthonie Garrard, Robert Howe, Henry Colchirst, Edward Holmden, John  
Swinnerton, Robert Walkaden, Simon Lawrence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William  
Bond, Henry Farington, John Tedcastle, Walter Williams, William Brune, Iohn Suzan, Iohn  
Newton, Thomas Owen, Roger Afild, Robert Washborne, Rainold Guie, Thomas Hitch-  
cocke, George Lidiate, Iohn Cartwright, Henrie Payron, Iohn Baldro, Robert Bowyer,  
Anthonie Daisel, Augulstine Lane, Robert Lion & Thomas Dodde, that they and euery of them  
by themselves, or by their factozs or seruants, & none others, shall and may, for, and during the space  
of twelue yeeres, haue and enjoy the whole freedome and libertie in the sayd traffique or trade, un-  
to or from the sayd countrey of Barbarie, or to or from any part thereof, for the buying and selling of  
all manner of wares and merchandizes whatsoever, that now or accustomedly heretofore haue bene  
bought or transported, frō, to the said countrey of Barbarie, or from or to any of the cities, towne, or  
places, portes, toads, hauens, harborz or creekes of the said countrey of Barbarie, any law, statute,  
graunt, matter, customes or priuiledges, to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding.

And for the better establishing, ordering and gouerning of the sayd Erles of Warwike and Lei-  
cester, Thomas Starkie, &c. abouesayd, their factozs, seruants and allignes in the trade aforesaid,  
we for vs our heires and successors, doe by these presents giue and graunt full licence to the sayd  
Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore the elder, and the rest aforesayd, and to euery of them from time to  
time, during the said terme of twelue yeeres, at their pleasures to assemble, and meete together in  
any place or places conuenient within our citie of London, or els where, to consult of, and for the  
said trade, and with the consent of the said Erle of Leicester, to make and establish good and neces-  
sarie orders and ordinaunces, for, and touching the same, and all such orders and ordinaunces so made,  
to put in bre and execute, and them or any of them with the consent of the sayd Erle of Leicester, to  
alter, change and make voyd, and if need be, to make new, as at any time during the said terme, they  
or the most part of them then liuing and trading, shall find conuenient.

Provided alwayes, that the ordinaunces or any of them bee not contrary or repugnant to the  
lawes, statutes or customes of this our Realme of England. And to the intent that they onely to  
whom the sayd libertie of traffique is graunted by these our Letters patents, and none other our sub-  
iects whatsoever, without their speciall consent and licence before had, should during the said terme  
haue trade or traffique for any manner of merchandizes, to, or from the sayd countrey of Barbarie,  
or to, or from any Citie, Towne, place, port, harbour or creeke within the sayd countrey of Bar-  
barie, or out of our sayd Realme and dominions, we doe by these presents straightly charge,  
command, and prohibite all and euery our Subiects whatsoever, other then onely the sayde  
Erles of Warwike and Leicester, Thomas Starkie and the rest abouesayd, and euery of them by  
themselves or by their factozs or seruants during the sayd terme, to trade or traffique for, or with  
any merchandize, to, or from the sayd countrey of Barbarie, or to, or from any the dominions  
of the same, as they tender our fauour, and will annoy our high displeasure, and upon paine of im-  
prisonment of his and their bodies, at our will and pleasure, and of forfeiting all the merchandi-  
ses, or the full value thereof, where with they or any of them during the sayd terme, shall trade or  
traffique to or from the sayd countrey of Barbarie, or to, or from the dominions of the same, contra-  
ry to this our priuiledge and prohibition, unless it be by and with the expresse licence, consent, and  
agreement of the sayd Erles of Warwike and Leicester, Thomas Starkie, Ierard Gore, the el-  
der, and all his sonnes, Thomas Gore the elder, Arthur Aticgentlemait, Alexander Auenon, Ri-  
chard Stapers, William Iennings, Arthur Dawbenie, William Sherington, Thomas Bramlie,  
Anthonie Garrard, Robert Howe, Henry Colchirst, Edward Holmden, Iohn Swinnerton, Ro-  
bert Walkaden, Simon Lawrence, Nicholas Stile, Oliuer Stile, William Bond, Henric Faring-  
ton, Iohn Tedcastle, Walter Williams, William Brune, Iohn Suzan, Iohn Newton, Thomas  
Owen, Roger Afild, Robert Washborne, Rainold Guy, Thomas Hitchcocke, George Lidiate,  
&c. or by, and with the expresse licence and consent of the moze part of them then liuing and  
trading, first had and obtained, so alwayes, that the sayde Erle of Leicester bee one, if he be li-  
uing.

And we further for vs our heires and successors of our speciall grace, mette motion and cer-  
taine knowledg, doe graunt to the sayde Erles of Warwike and Leicester, Thomas Starkie,  
and the rest abouesayd, and to euery of them, that nothing shall be done, to be of force or validitie  
touching the sayd trade or traffique, or the exercise thereof, without or against the consent of the  
sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie (and the others before named) during the time of these our Letters pa-  
tents for 12. yeeres as aforesayd.

And for that the sayd Erles, Thomas Starkie, &c. and euery of them aforesayd should not bee  
pre:

prevented or interrupted in this their sayd trade, we doe by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, straightly prohibite and forbid all manner of person or persons, as well strangers of what nation or countrey soever, as our owne Subjects, other then onely the sayd Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. and every of them as aforesayd, that they nor any of them from henceforth during the sayd terme of 12. yeeres, doe or shall buye, or cause to be brought into this our Realme of England, or to any the dominions thereof, any manner of merchandizes whatsoever growing, or being made within the sayd countrey of Barbarie, or within any the dominions thereof, vntill it be by and with the licence, consent and agreement of the sayd Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. or with the consent and licence of the more part of them then liuing, first had and obtayned, so alwayes the said Erls of Leicester (if he be liuing) be one, vnder the paine that euery one that shall offend or doe against this our present prohibition here last about mentioned in these presents, shall forfeite and lose all, and singular the said merchandizes to be landed in any our realmes and dominions, contrary to the tenor and true meaning of this our prohibition in that behalfe provided: the one moitie of all and euery which said forfeitures whatsoever mentioned or specified in these our present Letters patents, shall be to vs our heires and successours: And the other moitie of all and euery the sayd forfeitures, we doe by these presents of our certaine knowledg and meeet motion, cleerly and wholy for vs, our heires and successours, giue and graunt vnto the sayd Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. And these our Letters patents vpon the onely sight thereof, without any further warrant shall be sufficient authority to our Treasurer of England for the time being, to our Barons of the Exchequer, and to all other our officers that shall haue to deale in this behalfe, to make full allowance vnto the sayd Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. their deputies or assignes of the one moitie of all and singular the goods, merchandizes and things whatsoever mentioned in these our present Letters patents, to be forfeited at any time or times during the sayd terme of twelue yeeres: which sayd allowance we doe straightly charge and commaund from time to time to be made to the sayd Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. and to euery of them accordingly, without any manner of delay or demall of any of our officers whatsoever, as they tender our fauour and the furtherance of our good pleasure. And we doe straightly charge and commaund, and by these presents prohibite all and singular, Customers and Collectors of our customes & subsidies, and comptrollers of the same, of, and within our Citie and port of London, and all other portes, creeks, & places within this our Realme of England, and euery of them, that they ne any of them take or perceiue, or cause, or suffer to be taken, receiued, or perceiued for vs & in our name, or to our vse, or to the uses of our heires or successours of any person or persons, any summe or summes of money, or other things whatsoever during the sayd terme of 12. yeeres, for, and in the name & lieu of place of any custome, subsidie and other thing or duties to vs, our heires or successours due or to be due for the customes & subsidies of any merchandizes whatsoever growing, being made or comming out of the said countrey of Barbarie, or out of the dominions thereof, nor make, cause, nor suffer to be made any entrie into our or their bookes of customes and subsidies, nor make any agreement for the subsidies and customes, of, and for any the said merchandizes, being onely with, and in the name of the said Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. or the most part of them, as they and euery of them will answer at their vetermost perils to the contrary. And for the better and more sure obseruation of this our graunt, we wil, and graunt for vs our heires & successours by these presents, that the Treasurer & barons of our Exchequer for the time being, by force of this our graunt or euolment thereof in the said court, at all and euery time and times during the said terme of 12. yeeres, at & vpon request made vnto them by the said Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. or by the attorneis, factors, deputies or assignes of them, or the most part of them then liuing and trading, shal and may make and direct vnder the seale of the said Exchequer, one or more sufficient writ or writs, close or patents, vnto euery or any of our said customers, collectors or controllers of our heires and successours in all and euery, or to any port or portes, creeks, haven, or other place within this our realme of England, as the said Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. or any the attorneis, factors, deputies or assignes of them or the most part of them then liuing & trading, shal at any time require, commaund and straightly charging them and euery of them, that they nor any of them at any time or times during the said terme of 12. yeeres, make any entrie of any wares or merchandizes whatsoever, growing, being made or comming out of the said countrey of Barbarie or the dominions thereof, or receiue or take any custome, subsidie or other entrie, or make any agreement for the same, other then with or in the name of the said Erls, Thomas Starke, &c. the factor or factors, deputies or assignes of them or the most part of them then liuing and trading, according to this our graunt, and the true meaning thereof, & according to our said will and pleasure before in these presents declared. In witness whereof we haue caused these our letters to be made patents. Witness our selfe at Westminster the first day of July in the 27. yeere of our reigne.

...es for vs, our he yres and luo  
s, as well strangers of wher  
sayd Eric, Thomas Star  
henceforth during the sayd  
our Realme of England, or  
er growing, or being made  
therof, vnkisse it bee by and  
Starkie, &c. or with the com  
med, so alwayes the said Eric  
at shall offend or doe against  
es, shall forfeit and lose all  
nd dominions, contrary to the  
be the one moitie of all and e  
e our present Letters patens,  
every the sayd forfeitures,  
clearly and wholy for vs,  
omas Starkie, &c. And these  
warrant shall bee sufficient  
or Barons of the Exchequer,  
make full allowance unto the  
one moitie of all and singular  
our present Letters patens in  
ces: which sayd allowance we  
to the sayd Eric, Thomas  
of delay or demur of any one  
of our good pleasure. And we  
e all and singular, Customs  
same, of, and within our Citie  
this our Realme of England,  
or suffer to be taken, received,  
or successors of any person or  
during the sayd terme of 12,  
and other thing of duties to vs,  
of any merchandizes whateo  
barbarie, or out of the dominions  
their bookes of customs and sub  
for any the said merchandis, sa  
, &c. or the most part of them,  
the contrary. And for the better  
vs our heires & successors by  
time being, by force of this our  
d times during the said terme  
Thomas Starkie, &c. or by the  
m then living and erading, shal  
me sufficient wite or writs,  
or controllers of our heires and  
or other places within this our  
the attourneis, factors, deputies  
at any time require, comma  
ny of them at any time or times  
or merchandizes whateoer,  
barie or the dominions therof,  
p agreement for the same, other  
the factors or factors, deputies  
according to this our grante, and  
ejoye in these presents declared  
ents. Witness our selfe at

The

**The Ambassage of M. Henrie Roberts, one of the sworne  
Esquires of her Maiesties person, from her highnesse to Mully  
Hamet Emperour of Marocco, and king of Fes, and Sus, in the yere 1585  
who remained there as Liger for the space of 3. yeere. Written briefly  
by himselfe.**

**V**pon an incorporation granted to the companie of Barbarie Marchants resident  
in London, I Henrie Roberts one of her Maiesties Sworne Esquires of her per  
son, was appointed her highnesse messenger, and Agent unto the aforesaid Mully  
Hamet Emperour of Marocco, king of Fes and Sus. And after I had received  
my Commission, instructions, and her Maiesties letters, I departed from Lon  
don the 14. of August in the yere 1585, in a tall Shippe called the Ascension, in  
company of the Minion and Hopewel, and we all arrived in safetie at Alasi a port of Barbarie,  
the 14. of September next following. The Alcaide of the towne (being the kings officer there,  
and as he were Governor of the place) received mee with all humanitie and honour, according to the  
customs of the countrey, lodging me in the chiefe house of the towne, from whence I dispatched  
a messenger (which in their language they call a Trottero) to advertise the Emperour of my ar  
rival: who immediatly gaue order, and sent certaine souldiers for my guard and conduct, and hor  
ses for my selfe, and mules for mine owne and my companies carriages. Thus being accompa  
nied with Sr. Richard Evans, Edward Saltcor, and other English marchants resident there in the  
countrey, with my traine of Moores and cariages, I came at length to the river of Ansis, which  
is within 4. miles of Marocco: and there by the water side I pitched my tents under the Olive  
trees: where I mette with all the English marchants by themselves, and the French, the Dutch,  
and divers other Chyilians, which attended my coming. And after we had dined, and spent one  
the heat of the day, about 4. of the clocke in the afternoone wee all set forwarde toward the citie of  
Marocco, where wee arrived the said day, being the 14. of September, and I was lodged by the  
Emperours appointment in a faire house in the Iudaria or Iurie, which is the place where the  
Jewes have their abode, and is the fairest place, and quiettest lodging in all the citie.

After I had rested my selfe three dayes, I had access to the kings presence, delivered my mes  
sage and her Maiesties letters, and was received with all humanitie, and had favourable audience  
from time to time for thre yeeres: during which space I abode there in his Court, as her Ma  
iesties Agent and Liger: and whensoever I had occasion of business, I was admitted either to his  
Maiestie himselfe, or to his vice Roy, whose name was Alcaide Brene Saphiana, a very wise and  
discrete person, & the chiefeest about his Maiestie. The particulars of my service for divers good  
and reasonable causes, I forbeare here to put downe in writing.

After leave obtained, and an honourable reward bestowed by the Emperour upon me, I depar  
ted from his Court at Marocco the 18. of August 1588. toward a garden of his, which is called  
Shoresdenares, where hee promised mee I should stay but one day for his letters: howbeit, upon  
some occasion I was stayed untill the 14. of September at the kings charges, with 40. or 50.  
horse attending upon me for my guard and safetie.

From thence at length I was conducted with all things necessarie to the port of Sanra Cruz,  
being the dayes journey from Marocco, and the place where our shippes doe commonly take in  
their lading, where I arrived the 21. of the same moneth. In this port I stayed 43. dayes, and at  
length the second of November I imbarqued myselfe, and one Marshok Reiz a Captaine and a  
Gentleman, which the Emperour sent with mee upon an Embassage to her Maiestie: and after  
much toment and foule weather at sea, on the 21. peeres day I came on land at S. Iues in Corne  
wall, from whence passing by lands both together by towards London, we were met withou the  
citie with the aylered marchants of the Barbarie companie, well mounted all on horsebacke, to the  
number of 40. or 50. horse, and so the Embassage and my selfe being both in Coche, entered the  
Citie by archlight, on Sunday at night the 12. of Januarie 1589.

**Este es vn traslado bien y fielmente sacado da vna carta real del Rey  
Muley Hamet de Fes y Emperador de Marruecos, cuyo tenor es este, que Segue.**

**O**n el nombre de Dios piadoso y misericordioso, &c. El sermo de Dios soberano el con  
quistador por su reyno, el suso esser en sacado por Dios Emperador de los Moros, hijo  
del Emperador de los Moros, Iariffe haceni, el que perpetua su honra y ensalce su esla  
do. Se ponia este nuestro real mandado en manos de los criados de nuestras altaz puer  
nas los morradores Ingleses; para que por el sepas todos los que la presente vieren,  
como



como nuestra alto Consejo les anpara con el favor de Dios de todo aquello, que les empeciere y danuare en qualquiera manera que fueren offendidos, y en qualquiera viaze, que fueren, ninguno les captiua en estos nuestros reynos, y puertos, y lugares, que a vos pertenescen: y que les cubre el anparo de nuestro poder de qualquiera fatiga, y ningun los impida con mano de enemidad, ni se dar a causa, de que se agramen en qualquiera manera con el favor de Dios y de su amparo. T mandamos a los Alcaydes de los nuestrs puertos y fortalezas, y a los que en estos nuestros reynos tienen cargo, y a toda la gente común, que no les alleguen en ninguna manera, con orden, de que sean offendidos en ninguna manera, y esto será necessariamente: Qne es escrita en los medios dias de Rebel segundo anno de nueuecientos y noventa y seys.

Concorda el dia d'esta carta con veynte dias de Março del anno de mil y quiniento y ochenta y siete, lo qual yo Abdel Ratiman el Catan interprete per su Magestad aquí, y romance de verbo ad verbum, como en el se contiene, y en Fee dello firmo de my nombre fecho vt supra, Abdel Rahman el Catan.

*This is a copie well and truly translated of an edict of Mully Hamet King of Fez and Emperour of Maruecos, whose tenor is as followeth, to wit, That no Englishmen should bee molested or made slaues in any part of his Dominions, obtained by the aforesaid M. Henrie Roberts.*

The same in English.

**I**n the name of the pitiful & the mercifull God, &c. The seruant of the supream God the conqueror in his cause, the successor advanced by God to be Emperour of the Moores, the soune of the Emperour of the Moores, the Jariff, the Hazeni, whose honor God long increaseth & advance his estate. This our princely commandement is to be liuered into the hands of the English merchants, which remaine in the protection of our stately palaces: to the end that all men which shall see this present writing, may vnderstand that our princely counsaile will defend them by the fauor of God, from any thing that may impeach or hurt them in what soeuer they shall be voynged: and that, which may soeuer they shall crauaile, no man shall take them captiue in these our kingdomes, ports, & places which belong vnto vs, which also may protect and defend them by our authoritie from any molestatid whatsoeuer: and that no man shall binder them by laying violente hand vpon them, & shall not giue occasion that they may be grieued or voynged by the voyz and assistance of God. And we charge & command our officers of our hauens & fortresses, and all such as beare any authoritie in these our dominions, and likewise al the common people, that in no wise they doe molest them, in such soye that they be no way offendid or voynged. And this our commandement shall remaine inuolabile, being registred in the middle of the moneth of Rebel in the yere of nine hundredth sixtete and sixe.

The date of this letter agreeth with the 20. of March 1587. which I Abdel Rahman el Catan interpreter for his Maiestie, haue translated and turned out of the Arabian into spanish word for word as it contained therein: and in witness thereof haue subscribed my name as aforesaid.

Abdel Rahman el Catan.

### En nombre de Dios el piadoso piadador.

Oracion de Dios sobre nuestro Sennor, y Propheta Mahumet, y los allegados a el,

A letter of Mully Hamet to the Earle of Leicester.

**E**L fierno de Dios, y muy guerrero, y enalsado por la gracia de Dios, Myra Momany, hijo de Myra Momany, nieto de Mera Momany, el Jariff, el Hazeny, que Dios sostenga y sustenga, y enbalse sus mädados, para el Señor muy affamado y muy illustre, muy estimado el Conde de Leicester, despues de dar las loores devidas a Dios, y las oraciones, y saludes devidas a le Propheta Mahumet. Seruirá esta por os hazer saber que ligó a qui a nuestra real Corte vuestra carta, y entendimos lo que en ella se contiene. Y nuestro Ambaxador, que aquí está en nuestra corte me a entender la causa de la tardança de los rebenes hasta agora: el qual desuanto recibimos, y nos damos por satisfechor. Y quanto a lo que a nos escriuies por causa de Iuan Herman, y lo mesmo que nos la dicho el Ambaxador sobre el, antes que llegasse vuestra carta, por la queua del ambaxador, que se nos la dicho del, y aiamos mandado prender lo, y assi queda aora preso, y quedra hasta que se le haga la justicia que mas se le ha de hazer. Y con tanto nuestro Señor os teng a en su guarda. Hecha en vuestra corte real en Marruecos, que Dios sostenga, el 28. dias del mes de Remodan anno 96.

### In the name of the mercifull and pitifull God.

The blessing of god light vpon our lord & prophet Mahumet, & those that are obedient vnto him. The seruant of God both mightie in warre & mightily exalted by the grace of God Myra Momany, the soune of Myra momany, Jariff, Hazeni, whose kingdome God mainteine & advance

lo, que les espeziere y donare  
le fueren, ninguno les captiua  
ni les cubre el anparo de nuestro  
reid, ni se dar a causa, de que se  
mandamos a los Alcaydes de la  
en cargo, y a toda la gente com  
pendidos en ninguna manera,  
segundo anno de nueue cientos,

no de mil y quiniento y och  
ete per su Magestad Gaude, y  
e, y en Fee dello firmo de my

LET of Mully Hamet King  
olloweth, to wit, That no Eng  
t of his Dominions, obtained

se seruant of the supream God  
to be Emperoz of the Moores,  
Jacy, whose honoz God long  
andement is deliuered into the  
of our Saceray palaces: to the end  
of our princely counsaile will be  
to hurt them in what soe forer  
no man shal take them captiues  
tho also may pprotect and defend  
no man shal binder them by law  
we grieued in any soze by the  
of our hauens & fortresses, and  
of the common people, that in  
ceded of tynged. And this our  
word of the monerth of Rabel in

Abdel Rahman el Catan interpro  
uan into spanish word for word as i  
as me as atorecaid,  
mean.

ador.  
met, y los allegados a el,  
lo Dios, Myra Momaryn hijo de  
axery, que Dios sustenga su rry  
ny illustre, muy estimado de el Comde  
y saludes demidas a la Propheta  
la real Corte vuestra carta, y en  
sistá en nuestra corte me dio a con  
nento recibimos, y nos damos por  
man, y lo mesmo que nos ha dicho  
del ambaxador, que se uia a quez  
era hasta a que se la haga la inficia  
er dia. Hecha en nuestra corte real  
de 1586.

fulfull God.  
those that are obedie vnto him,  
by the Grace of God Myra Mo  
le kingdoms God mainteine &  
aduaunt

aduaunt his authoritie: Unto the right famous, right noble, and right highly esteemed Carle of  
Leicester, after due prailes giuen vnto God, & due blessings & salutations rendered vnto þe prophete  
Mahumet: These are to giue you to vnderstand, þe your letters arriued here in our royal Court,  
and we wel perceiue the contentes thereof. And your Embassadors which remaineth here in our court  
to do me the cause of the sctones of the gages or pledges vntill this time: which reckoning we ac  
cept of, & hold our selues as satisfied. And as touching the matter wherof you write vnto vs con  
cerning Iohn Herman, & the selfe same complaint which your Embassadors haue made of him, be  
fore the coming of your letter, we had already commanded him to be taken vpon þe same: which  
your Embassadors had made of him, wherupon he stil remaineth in hold, & shall so continue vntill  
further iustice be done vpon him according to his desert. And so our Loyde keepe you in his safe  
garde. Written at our royal court in Maruecos, which God maintaine, the 20. day of the mo  
neth Reithodan, Anno 1586.

which is  
writ by 1587.

The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Emperour of Marocco.

Vy alto, y muy poderoso Señor,  
Miendo entendido de parte de nuestro Agente la mucha aficion, y voluntad, que nos teneys,  
y quanta honra, y favor le hazeys por amor nuestro, para dar nos tanto mayor testimonio de  
vuestra amistad, hemos recebido de lo vno, y de lo otro muy grande contento, y satisfacion: y  
assi no podemos dexar de agradecerlo, como mereceys. Vuestras cartas hemos tambien rece  
bidas, con ellas holgamosnos infinitamente, por venir de parte de un Principe, a quien tenemos tanta ob  
ligacion. Nuestro Agente nos ha escrito sobre ciertas cosas, que desseyssis ser os embiadas de aqui: y aun  
que queriamos poder os en ello puntualmente cõplaxer, como pidixis, ha sucedido, que las guerras en que  
somos al presente occupadas, no nos lo consienten del todo: Hemos pero mandado, que se os satisfaga en  
parte, y conforme a lo que por agora la necesidad nos permite, como mas particularmente os lo declararã  
nuestro Agente: esperado, que lo recibereys en buena parte, y conforme al animo, con que os lo concede  
mos. Y porque nos ha sido referido, que auys prometido de proceder contra un Iuan Herman vassallo  
nuestro, (el qual nos ha grauamente ofendido) de la manera, que os lo demandaremos, auemos dado orden  
a nuestro dicho Agente de deziros mas particularmente lo que dessemos ser hecho a cerca deste ne  
gocio rogando os, que lo mandeys assi cumplir: y que seys seruido de favorecer siempre al dicho Agente,  
y tener lo en buen credito, como hasta agora auys hecho, sin permitir, que nadie os haga mudar de pa  
reter a cerca de las calumnias, que le podran levantar, ny dudar, que no cumplamos muy por entero to  
do lo que de vuestra parte os prometiere. Nuestro Senor guarde vuestra muy alta y muy poderosa perso  
na. Hecha en nuestra Corte Real de Grenecio a 20. de Julio 1587.

The Ambros  
letters to the  
Emperour.

The same in English.

Right high and mightie Prince, Having vnderstoode from our Agent the great affec  
tion & good wil which you beare vs, and how great honour and fauoz you shewe him for  
our sake, to the end to giue vs moze ample testimonie of your friendship, we haue recei  
ued ver y great contentment & satisfaction, as wel of the vne as of the other: and withall  
we could not omit to magnifie you, according to your desert. We haue also receiued your letters,  
and do not a little reioyce therof, because they come from a yince vnto whome we are so much be  
holden. Our Agent hath writtern vnto vs concerning certaine things which you desire to be  
sent vnto you from hence. And albeit we wish that wee could particularly satisfie you, as you de  
sire, yet it is fallen out, that the warres, wherewith at this present we be busted, will not suffer vs fully  
to doe the same: neuerthelesse, we haue commanded to satisfie you in part, and according as the  
present necessitie doeth permit vs, as our Agent will declare vnto you moze particularly, hoping  
you will receiue it in good part, and according to the good will wherewith we graunt the same,  
And because it hath bene signified vnto vs that you haue promised to procede in iustice against  
one Iohn Herman our subiect, which hath grieuouly offened vs, in such sort as we haue sent word  
vnto you, we haue giuen order to our saide Agente to informe you moze particularly in that which  
we desire to be done in this busines, praying you also to command the same to be put in execution:  
and that it would please you alwayes to fauour our saide Agente and to hold him in good credite, as  
you haue done hitherto, not suffering your selfe to be changed in your opinion, for all þe false reports  
which they may raise against him, nor to doubt that we will not accomplish at large all that he shal  
promise you on our behalfe. Our Loyd keepe and preserve your right high and mightie person.  
Written in our royal Court at Greenwich the 20. of July, 1587.

John Her  
man an Eng  
lish rebel.

A Patent graunted to certaine marchants of Exceter, and others of the West parts, and of London, for a trade to the riuer of Senega and Gambia in Guinea, 1588.



Lizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, France and Ireland, sendour of the faith, &c. To our Treasurer and Admirall of England, our Treasurer and Barons of our Exchequer, and all and eury our officers, ministers and subiects whatsoeuer, greeting. Whereas our welbeloued subiects William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicolas Spicer, and John Doricot of our Citie of Exceter marchants, John Yong of Coliton in our Countie of Deuon marchant,

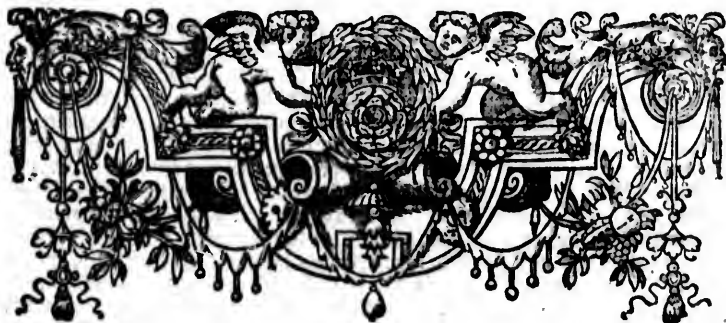
Richard Doderidge of Barnestable in our saide Countie of Deuon Marchant, Antonie Dassel, and Nicolas Turner of our citie of London marchants, haue bene perswaded and earnestly moued by certaine Portingals resident within our Dominions, to undertake and set forwarde a voyage to certaine places on the coast of Guinea: videlicet, from the Southemmost part of the Riuer commonly called by the name of the Riuer of Senega, and from and within that Riuer all along that coast vnto the Southemmost part of another Riuer commonly called by the name of Gambia, and within that Riuer: which, as we are informed, they haue already ones performed accordingly: And for that we are credibly giuen to vnderstand that the further prosecuting of the same voyage, and the due and orderly establishing of an orderly traffique and trade of marchandise into those countreys, will not onely in time be very beneficiall to these our Realmes and dominions, but also be a great succour and reliefe vnto the present distressed estate of those Portingals, who by our princely fauour liue and continue here vnder our protection: And considering that the aduenturing and enterprising of a newe trade can not be a matter of small charge and hazard to the aduenturers in the beginning: we haue therefore thought it conuenient, that our said louing subiects William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yong, Richard Doderidge, Antonie Dassel, and Nicholas Turner, for the better encouragement to proceede in their saide aduenture and trade in the saide countreys, shall haue the sole vse and exercise thereof for a certaine time. In consideration whereof, and for other weightie reasons and considerations vs specially mouing, of our speciall grace, certaine knowlege and meere motion, we haue giuen & graunted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors doe giue and graunte vnto the saide William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yong, Richard Doderidge, Antonie Dassel and Nicholas Turner, and to eury of them, and to such other our subiects as they or the most part of them shall thinke conuenient to receiue into their companie and societie, to be traders with them into the saide countreys, that they and eury of them by themselves or by their seruants or Factors and none others, shall and may for and during the full space and terme of tenne yeeres next ensuing the date of these presents, haue and enioy the free & whole traffique, trade and seate of marchandise, to & from the saide Southemmost part of the saide Riuer, commonly called by the name of the Riuer of Senega: and from and within that Riuer all along the coast of Guinea, vnto the Southemmost part of the saide Riuer, commonly called by the name of the Riuer of Gambia, and within that Riuer also. And that they the said William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yong, Richard Doderidge, Antonie Dassel and Nicholas Turner, & eury of them, by themselves or by their seruants or Factors, & such as they or the most part of them shall receiue into their companie and societie, to be traders with them into the saide Countreys (as is aforesaid) and none others, shall and may, for, and during the saide space and terme of tenne yeeres, haue and enioy the sole & whole traffique or trade of marchandise into & from the saide places afoze limited and described, for the buying & selling, bartering and changing of and with any goods, wares, and marchandises whatsoeuer, to be vended had or found, at or within any of the cities, townes, or places situated or being in the countreys, parts & coasts of Guinea before limited, any law, statute, or graunt, matter, custome or priuiledges to the contrary in any wise not withstanding. And for the better ordering, establishing, and governing of the saide societie & companie in the saide trade and traffique of marchandise, and the quiet, orderly and lawfull exercise of the same, We for vs, our heires, and successors, doe by these presents giue and graunt full license and authoritie vnto the said William Brayley, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yong, Richard Doderidge, Antonie Dassel, and Nicholas Turner, and to such others as they shall receiue into their saide societie and companie to be traders into the saide countreys, as is aforesaid, and to eury of them, that they or the most part of them shall and may at all conuenient times at their pleasures, assemble and meete together in any place or places conuenient, as well within our

101, Gambia.



from time to time duely made and performed accordingly, without any delay or denial of any our officers aforesaid, or any other our officers or ministers whatsoever. And we doe straightly charge and command, and by these presents prohibie, all and singular our customers, collectors, and farmers of our customes and subsidies, and controulers of the same, of and within our portes of the citie of London, and the Citie of Exeter, and all other portes, creekes, and places, within this our Realme of England, and euery of them, and all other our officers and ministers whatsoever, which haue or shall haue any dealing or intermedling, touching our said customes or subsidies, that they, ne any of them by themselves, their clerkes, deputies, or substitutes, or any of them take or receaue, or in any wise cause or suffer to be taken or receaued for vs, or in our name, or to our vse, or for, or in the names or to the uses of our heires or successors, of any person, or persons, any summe or summes of money, or other things whatsoever, during the said terme of ten yeeres, for, or in the name, vse, or place of any custome, subsidie, or other thing or dutie, to vs, our heires, or successors, due, or to be due, for the customes or subsidies of any such goods, wares, or marchandizes, to be transported, caried, or brought to or from the priuiledged places, before in these presents mentioned, or any of them: nor make, nor cause to be made any entry into, or of the booke of subsidies or customes, nor make any agreement for the customes or subsidies, of, or for any goods, wares, or marchandizes, to be sent to, or returned from any the priuiledged places, before in these presents mentioned, sauing onely with, and in the name, and by the consenc of the saide William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Dassel, & Nicholas Turner, or of some of them, or of such as they, or the most part of them, shall receaue into their societie and company, as aforesaid. Provided alwaies, that if at any time hereafter, we our selues, by our writing signed with our proper hand, or any five or more of our priuie Councell, for the time being, shall, by our direction, and by writing signed and subscribed with their hands, signify and notifie to the saide William Brailey, Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spicer, John Doricot, John Yonge, Richard Doderige, Anthony Dassel, and Nicholas Turner, or to any of them, or to any other, whom they, or the most part of them shall receaue into their companie and societie, as is aforesaid, or otherwise to our officers in our portes of Exeter, or Plymouth, by them to be notified to such as shall haue interest in this speciall priuiledge, that our will and pleasure is, that the said trade and traffike shall cease, and be no longer continued into the said coastes and partes of Guinea, before limited: then immediately from and after the ende of sixe monthes next ensuing, after such signification and notification so to be giuen to any of the saide companie and societie, as is aforesaid, or otherwise to our officers in our portes of Exeter, or Plymouth, by them to be notified to such as shall haue interest in this speciall priuiledge, these our present letters patentes, and our grant therein contained, shall be utterly void, and of none effect, ne ballie in the lawe, to all intents and purposes: any thing before mentioned to the contrarie in any wise notwithstanding. Witnesse our selfe at Westminster, the thirde day of May, in the thirtieth yeere of our Raigue, 1588.

The ende of the first part.



*Patent for Senega.*

any delay or denial of any our  
And we doe straightly charge  
customers, collectors, and fact  
of and within our portes of the ci  
s, and places, within this our  
rers and ministers whatsoeuer,  
our said customes or subsidies,  
a substituters, or any of them take  
vs, or in our name, or to our use,  
of any person, or persons, any  
the said terme of ten yeeres, in  
g or dutie, to vs, our heires, or  
goods, wares, or marchandis  
places, before in these pteints  
into, or of the bookes of sub  
subsidies, of, or for any goods,  
uilege places, before in theie  
the consent of the saide William  
nge, Richard Doderige, An  
they, or the most part of them,  
ved alwaies, that if at any time  
hand, or any like or more of our  
writing signed and subscribed  
Gilbert Smith, Nicholas Spi  
assell, and Nicholas Turner, or  
shall receaue into their compa  
nyes of Exeter, or Plymouth, by  
uilege, that our will and plea  
continued into the said coastes  
after the ende of sixe monethes  
n to any of the saide companie  
nyes of Exeter, or Plymouth,  
peciall pteuilege, these  
ained, shall be utterly  
ll intents and pur  
erie in any wise  
minister,  
secre



King



T

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

land,

the

with

early

space,

for the

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

...

M  
cern In  
Gunn

A  
and a  
king  
way



THE SECOND PART OF THE  
 principall Navigations, Voyages and Discoveries of the English nation, made to the North and Northeast quarters of the World, with the directions, letters, priuiledges, discourses & obseruations incident to the same.

*Certaine testimonies concerning king Arthur and his Conquests of the North Regions, taken out of the historie of the Kings of England, written by Galfridus Monmouthensis, and newly printed at Heidelberge, An. 1587.*

*Lib. 9. cap. 10.*



**¶** Anno Christi, 517. Arthurus, secundo regni sui anno, subiugatis totius Hyberniæ partibus, classem suam direxit in Islandiam, eamque debellato populo subiugauit. Ex in diuulgato per cæteras insulas rumore, quod ei nulla Prouincia resistere poterat, Doldauius Rex Gotlandiæ, & Gunfacius Rex Orcadum vitro venerunt, promissioq; vestigali subiectionem fecerunt. Emenis deinde hyeme, reuersus est in Britanniam, statimq; Regni in firmam pacem renouans, moram duodecim annis ibidem fecit.

*¶ The same in English.*

**I**n the yeere of Christ, 517, king Arthur in the second yeere of his raigne, hauing subdued all partes of Ireland, sailed with his fleet into Island, and brought it and the people thereof vnder his subiection. The rumour, after wards being spread throughout all the other Islands, that no countrey was able to withstand him, Doldauius the king of Godland, and Gunfacius the king of Orkney, came voluntarily vnto him and yielded him their obedience, promising to pay him tribute. The Winter being spent, he returned into England, and establishing his kingdom in perfect peace, he continued there for the space of 12. yeeres.

*Lib. 9. cap. 12.*

**M**issis deinde in diuersa regna Legatis, inuitantur tam ex Gallijs, quam ex collateralibus Insulis Cæani, qui ad curiam venire deberent, &c. Et pauld post: Ex collateralibus autem Insulis, Guillaumurius Rex Hyberniæ, Maluasius Rex Islandiæ, Doldauius Rex Gotlandiæ, Gunnafus Rex Orchardum, Lot Rex Noruegiæ, Aschilius Rex Danorum.

*¶ The same in English.*

**A**s for that king Arthur sending his messengers into diuers kingdoms, he summoned such as were to come to his Court, as well out of France, as out of the adiacent Islands of the Sea, &c. and a little after. From those adiacent Islands came Guillaumurius king of Ireland, Maluasius king of Island, Doldauius king of Godland, Gunnafus king of Orkney, Lot the king of Norway, and Aschilius the king of Denmarke.



## Lib. 9. cap. 19.

**A**T Reges cæterarum insularum, quoniam non duxerant in morem Equites habere, pedes quot quisque debebat promittunt, ita ut ex sex Insulis, videlicet, Hyberniz, Islandiz, Gotlandiz, Orcadum, Noruegiz, atque Daciz, sexies viginti millia essent annumerata.

## ¶ The same in English.

**B**ut the kings of the other Islands, because it was not their custome to beare by horses, promised the king as many footmen, as every man was bound to send: so that out of the six Islands, namely, of Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmarke, the king had five hundred thousand souldiers sent him.

A testimonie out of the foresaid *Galfridus Monumetensis*, concerning the Conquests of Malgo, king of England.

## Lib. 11. cap. 7.

**V**ortiporio successit Malgo, omnium ferè Britanniz pulcherrimus, multorum tyrannorum depulsor, robustus armis, largior cæteris, & vltra modum probitate præclarus. Hic etiam totam Insulam obtinuit, & sex conprouinciales Oceani Insulas: Hyberniam videlicet, atque Islandiam, Gotlandiam, Orcades, Noruegiam, Daciam, adiecit dirissimis præliis; potestati sue.

## ¶ The same in English.

**M**algo succeeded Vortiporius which was the goodliest man in person of all Britaine, a prince that expelled many tyrants. He was strong and valiant in warre, taller then most men that then liued, and exceeding famous for his vertues. This king also obtained the government of the whole Island of Britaine, and by most sharpe battailes he recovered to his Empire the six Islands of the Ocean sea, which before had bene made tributaries by king Arthur, namely, Ireland, Island, Gotland, Orkney, Norway and Denmarke.

A testimonie of the right and appendances of the crowne of the kingdome of Britaine, taken out of Master Lambard his

*Peripetula*, fol. 137. pag. 2.



**A**rthurus quæ fuit quondam incleissimus Rex Britonum, vir magnus fuit & animosus, & miles illustris. Parum fuit ei regnum istud, non fuit animus eius contentus regno Britanniz. Subiugauit igitur sibi strenuè Scantiam totam, que modo Noruegia vocatur, & omnes insulas vltra Scantiam, scz. Islandiam, & Grenlandiam, quæ sunt de appendicijs Noruegiz, & Suechordam, & Hyberniam, & Gutlandiam, & Daciam, Semelandiam, Winlandiam, Cutlandiam, Roc, Femelandiam, Wirelandiam, Flandriam, Cherelam, Lappam, & omnes alias terras & insulas Orientalis Oceani vsq; Russiam (in Lappa scilicet posuit Orientalem metam regni Britanniz) & multas insulas vltra Scantiam, vsq; dum sub Septentrione, quæ sunt de appendicibus Scantiz, quæ modo Noruegia vocatur. Fuerunt autem ibi Christiani occultè. Arthurus autem Christianus optimus fuit, & fecit eos baptizari, & vnum Deum per totam Noruegiam venerari, & vnam fidem Christi semper inuoluntatim custodire, & suscipere. Ceperunt vniuersi proceres Noruegiz vxores suas de nobili gente Britonum tempore illo, vnde Noruegenses dicunt se exisse de gente & sanguine regni huius. Impetrauit eius temporibus illis Arthurus Rex à domino Papa, & à Curia Romana, quod confirmata sit Noruegia, in perpetuum coronæ Britanniz in augmentum regni huius, vocauitq; illam dictam Arthurus Cameram Britanniz. Hac verò de causa dicunt Noruegenses, se debere in regno isto cohabitare & dicunt se esse de corpore regni huius, scilicet de coronâ Britanniz. Maluerunt enim manere in regno isto, quam in terra eorum propria. Terra enim eorû arida est, & montuosa, & sterilis, & non sunt ibi segetes nisi per loca. Ista verò opulenta est, & fertilis, & crescunt hic segetes, & cætera vniuersa. Qua ex causa sæpius per vices gesta sunt vella atrocissima inter Anglos & Noruegenses, & interfecti sunt innumerabiles. Occupauerunt verò Noruegenses terras multas & insulas regni huius, quas adhuc detinent occupatas, nec potuerunt vnquam postea penitus euelli. Tandem modò confederati sunt nobis fide, & sacramentis, & per vxores suas, quas postea ceperunt de sanguine nostro, & per affinitates, & coniugia. Ita deum constituit, & eis cõcessit bonus rex Edouardus propinquus noster (qui fuit optimus filius pacis) per commune consilium totius regni. Qua de causa possent, & debent prædicti de castris nobiscum cohabitare, & remanere in regno, sicut coniurati fratres nostri.

of The same in English.

**A** Rthur which was sometimes the most renowned king of the Britains, was a mightie, and valiant man, and a famous warrior. This kingdome was too little for him, and his mind was not contented with it. He therefore valiantly subdued all Scantia, which is now called Norway, and all the Islands beyond Norway, as witte Island and Greenland, which are appertaining unto Norway, Sweeland, Ireland, Godland, Denmarke, Semeland, Windland, Curland, Roe, Ferneland, Wireland, Flanders, Cherilland, Lapland, and all the other lands and Islands of the East Sea even unto Russia (in which Lapland he placed the Easterly bounds of his Britissh Empire) and many other Islands beyond Norway, even under the North pole, which are appendances of Scantia, so called Norway. These people were wild and savage, and had not in them the love of God nor of their neighbors, because all evil cometh from the North, yet there were among them certain Christians living in secret. But king Arthur was an exceeding good Christian, and caused them to be baptized, and throughout all Norway to worship one God, and to receive and keepe inviolably for ever, faith in Christ onely. At that time all the noble men of Norway tooko witness of the noble nation of the Britains, who upon the Norfes say, that they are descended of the race and blood of this kingdome. The aforesayd king Arthur obtained also in those dayes of the Pope of court of Rome that Norway should be for ever annexed to the crowne of Britaine for the enlargment of this kingdome, and he called it the chamber of Britaine. For this cause the Norfes say, that they ought to dwell with us in this kingdome, to wit, that they belong to the crowne of Britaine: for they had rather dwell here then in their owne native countrey, which is drie and full of mountains, and barren, and no graine growing there, but in certaine places. But this countrey of Britaine is fruitfull, whererin corne and all other good things doe grow and increase: for which cause many cruell battels have bene oftentimes fought betwixt the Englishmen and the people of Norway, and infinite numbers of people have bene slain, and the Norfes have possessed many lands and Islands of this Empire, which unto this day they doe possesse, neither could they ever afterwards be fully expelled. But now at length they are incorporated with us by the receiving of our religion and sacraments, and by taking wives of our nation, and by affinity, and marriages. For so the good king Edward (who was a notable maintainer of peace) obtained and granted unto them by the generall consent of the whole kingdome, so that the people may, and ought from henceforth to dwell and remaine in this kingdome with us as our loving and sworne brethren.

The nauigation of king Edgar, taken out of *M. Dee* his  
 discourie of the British Monarchie, pag. 54, 55, &c.

**H**ave oftentimes (said he) and many waies looked into the state of earthly kingdomes, generally the whole world ouer (as farre as it may be yet knowne to christian men commonly) being a studie of no great difficultie, but rather a pur pose somewhat amicable to a perfect Cosmographer, to find himselfe Cosmopolites, a citizen and member of the whole and ouerly one mysticall citie vniuersall, and so consequently to meditate of the Cosmopolicall government thereof, vnder the king almightie, passing on very swiftly toward the most dreadfull and most comfortable terme prefixed.

And I find (said he) that if this Britissh Monarchie would heretofore haue followed the aduantages which they haue had outward, they might very well ere this, haue surpassed by iustice, and godly loy, any particular Monarchie els, that euer was on earth since mans creation: and that to all such purposes as to God are most acceptable, and to all perfect common wealths, most honorable, possible, and comfortable.

But yet (said he) there is a little Locke of Lady Occasion, sticking in the stre, by our bandes to each hold on, whereto we may yet once more (before all be utterly past, and for euer) discreetly and valiantly recover and enjoy, if not all our ancient and due appurtenances to this Imperiall Britissh monarchie, yet at the least some such notable portion thereof, as (all circumstances duly and iustly appertaining to peace and amitie with foreyn princes being offered & used) this may become the most peaceable, most rich, most puissant, & most flourishing monarchie of all els (this day) in christendome. Peaceable, I say, euen with the most part of the selfe same respectes that good king Edgar had (being but a Saxon) and by such means, as he chiefly in this Empire did see in proofe and see triumphantly, wherupon his surname was Pacificus, most aptly and iustly. This peaceable king Edgar had in his minde about six hundred yeeres past, the representation of a great part of the selfe same Idæa, which from about 600 y, & by no mans deulle hath dreamed down into my imagination,

morem Equites habere, pedes, videlicet, Hyberniam, Islandiam, et millia essent annumerata.

come to byed by hoyses, p... to: so that out of the str. Mar... marke, the king had the stop

Monumetensu, CONCER

errimus, multorum tyranno... m probitate pꝛclarus. Hic... insulas: Hyberniam videlicet, adiecit dirisimis pꝛelij; pot-

n person of all Britaine, a prince... uare, taller then most men that... obtained the government of the... to his Empire the five Islands... Arthur, namelý, Ireland, Island,

es of the crowne

r Lambard his

num, vir magnus fuit & animo-  
 non fuit animus eius contentus  
 antiam totam, que modo Nor-  
 z. Islandiam, & Greenlandiam,  
 n, & Hyberniam, & Gulandiam,  
 Femelandiam, Wirelandiam,  
 Orientalis Oceani vsq; Russi-  
 z) & multas insulas vltra Scan-  
 tianz, que modo Norveia vo-  
 christianus optimus fuit, & fecit  
 vnam fidem Christi tempera-  
 Norveiz vxores suas de nobili  
 sse de gente & sanguine regni  
 Papa, & à Curia Romana, quod  
 mentum regni huius, vocauitq;  
 dicunt Norwegienfes, se debere  
 ves, scilicet de coronâ Britannia.  
 pria. Terra enim eorum arida est,  
 & vides opulenta est, & fertillis, &  
 rices gesta sunt bella atrocis-  
 sibilis. Occupauerit verò Nor-  
 uent occupatas, nec potuerunt  
 te nobis fide, & sacramento, &  
 affinitates, & coniugia. In de-  
 nofter (qui fuit optimus filius  
 nt, & debent pꝛædicti de con-  
 trates nostri.

being as it becometh a Subject carefull for the godly prosperitie of this British Empire under our most peaceable Queene Elizabeth.

Novus Hidor.

For, AEdgarus pacificus, Regni sui prospiciens utilitati, pariter & quieti, quatuor milia octingentas sibi robustas congregavit naues, & quibus mille ducentas, in plaga Angliæ Orientali, mille ducentas in Occidentali, mille ducentas in Australi, mille ducentas in Septentrionali pelago constituit, vt ad defensionē regni sui, contra exterarū nationes, bellorū discrimina sustinerent.

A wise dome imperiall, most diligently to be imitated, videlicet, prospicere, to foresee. A charitable kingly parent, that was toucht with ardent zeale, for procuring the publike profite of his kingdome, yea and also the peaceable enjoyng thereof. A of an incredible masse of treasure, a kingly portion, yet, in his coffers remaining: if then he had, (or late before) any warres, seeing no notable tax, or contribution publike is hystorically mentioned to haue bin for the charges leuied: if in peace he himselfe flourish'd to wealth; A marueilous politicall, and princely prouidence, in time of peace to foresee, and prouene, (and that most piously, and inuincibly) all possible malice, fraude, force, and mischief foraine. A most discrete libera little to such excellent vles, putting out his treasure so abundantly. A faithfull English people (then,) and worthe subjects, of such an Imperiall and godlie Governour. A your true, and willing hearts, and blessed ready hands (then,) so to impart such abundance of victuals for those huge Nauies maintenance: so (I say) as neither want of famine, seemed (sonly) to be feared of you, for any intollerable want likely to ensue thereby, by vnices of victuals complained of to be vnrasonably enhauns'd by you, finding for their great talcs to good, and rare opportunitye.

This peaceable king Edgar, was one of the perfect Imperiall Monarches of this British Empire, and therefore thus his fame remaineth (for euer) receyued.

Chera Regia,  
Henrici secundi.

Anglici orbis Basileus, flos, & Decus AEdgarus, non minus memorabilis Anglis, quam Cyrus Persis, Romulus Romanis, Alexander Macedonibus, Arfaces Parthis, Carolus Francis. Anno vitæ 37. Regni sui cum fratre, & post 21. Idibus Iulij obiit, & apud Glascon sepelitur.

**O** Glastonbury, Glastonbury, the treasure of the carcases of so famous, and so many persons (Quæ olim mater sanctorum dicta es, & ab alijs, riuulus sanctorum, quam ab ipsis discipulis Domini, & edificatam fuisse venerabilis habet Antiquorum auctoritas) How lamentable is thy case now? howe hath hypocritie and pride wrought thy desolation? though I omit here the names of very many other, both excellent holy men, and mighty princes, whose carcases are committed to thy custody, yet that Apostolike Joseph, that triumphant British Arthur, & now this peaceable and prouident Monarch king Edgar, doe force me with a certaine sorrowfull recurrence, here to celebrat thy memory.

This peaceable king Edgar (as by ancient Records may appere) his Sommer progress, and peregrin chief pastimes were, the sayling round about this whole Isle of Albion, garden with his grand nauie of 4000, sayle at the least, parted into 4. equall partes of petite Nauies, each one being of 1000. ships, for so it is anciently receyued.

Ramphus Ce-  
lensis.

Idem quoque AEdgarus, 4000. naues congregauit, ex quibus omni anno, post festum Paschale, 1000. naues ad quamlibet Angliæ partem statuit, sic, ætate Insulam circumnauigauit: hyeme verò, iudicia in Prouincia exercuit: & hæc omnia ad sui exercitium, & ad hostium fecit terrorem.

**C**ould, and would that peaceable and wise king Edgar, before need, as being in peace and quiet with all nations about him, and notwithstanding mistrusting his possible enemies, make his pastimes so royally, politically, and triumphantly, with so many thousand ships, and at the least with ten times so many men as ships, and that peregrin: and that we being not assured of such neigbours friendship, as may become to vs as cruel and tyrannicall enemies as neuer king Edgar needed to dread the like, and they as many and mightie princes, as neuer king Edgar coped with the like, shall we (said he) not iudge it some part of wisdom, to simulate carefully in some liell proportion (though not with so many thousands) the prosperous pastimes of peaceable king Edgar, that so Antonicall Alexander? yea prosperous pastimes these may be iustly counted, by which he also made euident to the whole world, that as he wisely knew the ancient bounds and limits of this British Empire, so that he could and would totally, iustly, & triumphantly erise the same, spite of the deuil, & manage the force of any foreign power. And all that, so highly and faithfull to the glory of God finally intended and brought to passe, as the wisest and godliest prelates and counsellors of those dayes (so counted of and receyued) could best advise & direct him, or perchance, but sincerely commend and virtuously encourage him in, he being of himselfe so bent, as purposing first inuincible to forside the chiefest and uttermost walls of his Islandish Monarchie, against all foreign encombrance possible.

of this British Empire

... quieti, quatuor milia... in Septentrionali... prospera, co... the publick... of his... a king... seeing no... in for the charges... in and... in time... all possible... frame... sent vses, pointing out his... subjects, of such an Imperial... ready hands... so (I say) as neither... pant likely to... you, finding for their great late

Souarches of this British Em

... memorabilis Anglis, quam... Arfaces Parthis, Caro... 21. Idibus Iulij obiit, & a...

... famous, and so many persons... quorum, quam ab ipsis disci... (authoritas) How lamentable is... though I omit here the... inces, whose carcasses are com... British Artur, & now this peac... joyful reverence, here to ce...

... his Sommer progress, the Isle of Albion, garden with... of peccie Dauides, each one bo...

... ubus omni anno, post festum... utiue, sic, & illate Insulam cir... : & haec omnia ad sui exer...

... as being in peace and quiet... possible enemies, make his... sand ships, and at the least with... not assured of such neigbours... neuer king Edgar needed to... Edgar coped with the like, shall... some little proposition (though... king Edgar, that... by which he also made evident... mits of his British Empire, ... spite of the devil, & manage... to the glory of God finally in... counsellors of those vapes (to... sincerely commends and... first innocible to forsaide the... sojourn encombrance possible.

Ans

And in this fortification... and assisting to crush best his owne overlighte and iudgement, in preely vntoing the same in every quarter thereof, and that as it were for his pastime Imperiall, also in Summer time, to the end that afterward in all securitie, he might in Winter time (vacare) be at convenient leisure on land, chiefly to see how Gods due honour, and secondly to vnderstand, and diligently to listen to the causes & complaints of his commons. For as Mathewus Westmonasteriensis of him to his Imperiall commendation hath left vs a remembrance,

Habebat autem praeterea consuetudinem, per omnes Regni prouincias transire, vt intelligeret quomodo legum iura, & suorum statuta decretorum, a principibus obseruarentur, & ne pauperes a potentibus praediciam passi, opprimerentur, diligenter inuestigare solebat: in vno fortitudini, in altero Iusticie studens, & Reipub. regniq; vtilitati consulens in vtroque. Hinc hostibus circumquaq; timor, & amor omnium erga eum excreuerat subditorum.

Thus we see how in opportunity, this peaceable Edgar mortured to this Empire such prosperous securitie, that his true and faithful subjects, all manner of waies (that is at home and also at sea, both our ward and in ward) might peaceably, safely and securely employ their toyes and trauels for the maruelous enriching of this kingdome, and pleasuring very many other, carrying forth the naturall commodities of this land, abounding here about our necessarie vses (and due scope reserved) and like wise againe furnishing the same with all necessarie and not superfluous foreign commodities, left from force of foreign conquests. This was in deed (as before is recorded) a kingly prouidence, Religijs, Regniq; vtilitati consulens, &c. besides with great diligence and industrie publique to be seene, and by his meanes enjoyed, he himselfe vied most gladly the aduantage of that securitie, in administering of Iustice, or causing the same to be executed all his kingdome ouer, not querulosity, thowningly or thowningly spinning the ragged and tattered serue of his supplaine, holding by to his simple called bits of complaint or petition, and that homely conuersed, or afraid at, and timorously bawling from the sickly pale face of feeble limmed iustice, extremely constrained to so speake for himselfe, and partially smothering his owne conscience, so fauour of maintain the foule fault and trespass, vnto a full of any his subjects, how mightie or necessarie soeuer, they (eis) were, due diligently made teare, least Pauperes a potentibus praediciam passi, opprimerentur.

Thus his publique securitie was for aye, and true loue of his owne subjects, guarding him at home, and the heavenly spirits directing all his good purposes, as well iustice and equitie in all quarters of this Albion to flourish. For which his peaceable and prosperous beatus as the excellent king his grand obedience, he became not in silent by declined to tyrannicall regnment (as some princes in other countries haue made their liues Constantinopolitane) but with all his foresaid: fruitful and abundant wealth, triumphant peace, with securitie and Justice ouer all his Christianitie prevailing, his heart was continually, and most zealously bene to set forth the glory, laud and honour of the almighty Creator, the beautifull and euerlasting king, by such vniuersall and purely meanes, as (they) were deemed to God most acceptable, as many monuments yet to our eyes remaining, doe of him vniuocably testifie: As this, for one.

Altonantis Dei largisua clementia, qui est rex Regum, Ego AEdgarus Anglonim Basileus omniumq; Regum Insularum, Oceanique Britanniam circumiacentis, cunctarumq; nationum, quae infra eandem insulam Imperator, & Dominus, gratias ago ipsi Deo omnipotenti Regimeo, qui meum Imperium sic ampliauit, & exaltauit super regnum, patrum meorum: qui licet Monarchiam totius Angliae adepti sunt a tempore Athelfani (qui primus regnum Anglorum, & omnes Nationes, quae Britanniam incolunt, sibi Armis subegit) nullum tamen sortini ultra eius fines imperium suum distare aggressus est. Mihi autem concessit sic propria Diuinitas, eunt Anglorum Imperio, omnia regna Insularum Oceani, cum suis ferocissimis Regibus, vique Noruegiam, maximamq; partem Hyberniae, cum sua nobilissima Chitate Dublinia, Anglorum regno subdidit. Quos etiam omnes, meis Imperijs collata subdere Dei fauente gratia coegi. Quapropter & ego Christi gloriam, & laudem exaltare, & eius seruitium amplificare deuotus disposui, & per meos fideles Fautores, Dunstanum Archiepiscopum, Aethelwoldum, & Oswaldum episcopos quos mihi patres spirituales, & Confessores elegi magna ex parte, secuturum quod disposui, effeci, &c.

Et charta fundationis Basilicae Cathedralis Wintoniae.

And againe this in another Monument.

Omnipotenti Dei, &c. Ipsi nunc & gratia susculus, Ego AEdgarus Basileus dilectae Insulae Albionis, subditis abbas Keperis Scotorum, Cumbrorum, ac Brytonum, & omnium circumcirca Regionum, quae in pace perfuens, studiosus sollicitus de laudibus creatoris omniu

Fundatio Ecclesiae Cathedralis Eboracensis.

A a. 3.

occupor

occupor addendis: Ne unum inertia, nostritq; diebus (plus æquo) seruitus eius tepescere videatur, &c. 18. mei terreni Imperij anno, &c. Anno Incarnationis Dominicæ, 973.

Ego AEdgarus totius Albionis Basileus hoc priuilegium (tanta roboratum auctoritate) crucis Thaumate confirmauit.

So that by all these rehearsed Records, it is most euident, the peaceable king Edgar, was one of those Monarchs, in whose hands (if life had sufficed) the incredible valour and priuilege granted by God and nature unto this British monarchie, might haue bene peaceably purchased in such sort, as the very blessing and fauour of the diuine Trinitie hath laid means for our industrie to attaine to, and enioyed the same by.

And though sundry other valiant princes and kings of this land I could recite, which in times past haue either by intent gone about, or by wise and valiant exploit, haue mettelly well prospered towards this Islandish appropiate Supremacie attaining, yet neuer any other reasonable meanes was used, or by humane wit, or industrie can be contriued, to all purposes sufficient, but only by our sea forces prevailing, and so by our surmountable enioying all within the sea limites of our British royaltie contained.

To which incredible polietical miſterie attaining, no calter, reader, or perfecter place and introduction, is (as yet) come to my imagination, then is the present and continuall seruice of thre score good and tall warlike shippes, with twentie smaller barkes, and thre 80. shippes (great and small) with 6600. seamen furnished, and all singularly well appointed for seruice both on sea and land, faithfully and diligently to be done in such circumstances and discrete order, as partly I haue in other places declared, and further (upon good occasion offered) may declare.

This grand naute of peaceable king Edgar, of so many thousand shippes, and they furnished with an hundred thousand men at the least, with all the final insignes of those sea forces, so inuincible, continually maintained, the order of the execution of these seruices, the godly and imperiall successe thereof, see in a manner kingly lessons and propheticall encouragements to be left, euen now to be as prouident for publique securitie as he was, to be as skillfull of our sea right and royall limites, and wisely to find our selues as able to recouer and enioy the same as he was, who could not chuse, but with the passing and secretly saying about this British Albion, with all the lesser Isles next adiacent round about it, he could not chuse I say, but by such full and peaceable possession, since himself (accepting to right, and his hearts desire) the true and soueraigne Monarch of all the British Ocean, questioning any way his empire of Albion and Ireland, with the lesser Islands next adiacent: with memorie all together, as with one very precious jewel Imperiall, he adioyned the title and crowne of his regalitie, as with the testimonie auncient of the States and nobles of his Empire, to continue to perpetuall memorie the title of his chiefe lordly dignitie, in this very tenor of words before also remembered.

Ego AEdgarus Anglorum Basileus, omniumq; Regum, Insularum, Oceanaq; Britanniam circumiacentis, cunctarumq; nationum, quæ in ista eam includuntur, Imperator, & Dominus.

**The voyage of Nicholas de Lynna, a Franciscan Frier, and an excellent Mathematician of Oxford, to all the Regions, situate vnder the North pole, in the yeere 1369. and in the reigne of Edward the 3. king of England.**

Vod ad descriptionem (partium Septentrionalium) artius, eam nos accepimus ex Itinerario Iacobi Choyen Bulgoducensis, qui quædam ex rebus gestis Arthuri Britannici citat, maiorem autem partem & posteriora, à Sacerdote quodam apud Regem Noruegiæ, An. dom. 1364. didicit. Descenderat is ex illis quos Arthurus ad has habitandas insulas miserat, & referebat, An. 1369. Minoriam quædam Anglium Oxoniensem Mathematicum in eas insulas venisse, ipsiq; relictis ad vltiora arte, Magica profectum descripsisse omnia, & Astrolabio dimensum esse in hanc subiectam formam scilicet, vti ex Iacobo collegimus. Euripos illos quatuor dicebat tanto impetu ad interiorem voraginem rapi, vt naves semel ingressæ nullo vento retroagi possent, nequæ verò inquam tantum ibi ventus esse, vt mole frumentariæ circumageat sufficiat. Simillima his habet Giralduſus Cambrensis (qui floruit, An. 1210.) in libro de mirabilibus Hyberniæ, sic enim scribit. Non procul ab insulis Hebridibus Islandia, &c. ex parte Boreali, est maria quædam miranda vorago, in quam à remotis partibus omnes vindique fludus marini tanquam ex condiclo flumini, & recurrit, qui in secretæ naturæ penetralia se ibi transfundentes, quasi in Abyssum vorantur. Si verò naves hæc forte tranfire

Note the  
Aurenes ma-  
rines repaite  
oure the Brit-  
ish Ocean sea,  
reimb about  
the British  
Empire.

The words of  
Gerardus Mer-  
mor, in the  
front of his  
general Map,  
upon the de-  
scription of  
the North  
partes.

eruitus eius respicere  
minicæ. 973.  
tanta roboratum authon

ble king Edgar, was one of  
ue and privilege granted  
ably purchased in such sort,  
so; our industrie to attaine

ould recte, which in times  
ue meely well prosper  
y other reasonable meanes  
sufficient, but only by our  
a limites of our Britthrop

perfecter place and inroad  
tinnall seruice of thersore  
So. ships (great and small)  
eruire both on sea and land,  
as partly I haue in other

ppes, and they furnish  
these sea forces, to inuinc  
e goodly and imperiall suc  
nesses to his left, euen not  
a right and rovall limite,  
e was, who could not chuse,  
with all the lesser Isles nee

peaceable possession, same  
ne Monarch of all the Dy  
b the lesser Islands next an  
imperiall, be aduoynd the  
nces and nobles of his Em  
ritie, in this very tenor of

um, Oceanusq; Britanniam  
duuntur, Imperator, & Do

Frier, and an excel  
ms, situate vnder the  
rd the 3. king of England.

et, eam nos accepimus ex  
rebus gestis Arthuri Bri  
tre quodam apud Regem  
uos Arthurus ad has habi  
nglun Oxoniensis Ma  
gica profectum descrip  
re, vii ex Iacobo collogi  
aginem spæ, vt naues le  
tum ibi ventu esse, vt mo  
Cambrensis (qui floruit,  
procul ab insulis Hebridi  
9, in quam à remotis par  
recurrunt, qui in secreta  
Si verò naves in hac sorte  
transire

magis conuenit, sanra rapitur, & attrahitur fluctuum violentia, vt eam statim irruocabili  
ter vis vocatitatis absorbeat.

Quibus veragines hulus Oceani, a quatuor oppositis mundi partibus Philosophi descri  
bunt, vnde & tam marinos fluctus, quam & æolicos status casualiter peruenire nonnulli con  
iectant.

¶ The same in English.

**T** During the description of the North parts I haue taken the same out of the voyage of  
James Cnopen of Hartzeuan Duf he, which allegeth certaine conquests of Arthur king of  
Britaine: and the most part, and chiefest things among the rest, he learned of a certaine priest in the  
king of Norwayes court, in the yeere 1364. This priest was descended from them which king  
Arthur had bene to inhabit these Islands, and he reported that in the yeere 1360, a certaine Eng  
lish frier, a Franciscan, and a Mathematician of Oxford, came into those islands, who leauing  
them, and passing further by his Spagittall Arte, described all those places that he saw, and tooke  
the height of them with his Astrolabe, according to the forme that I (Gerard Mercator) haue set  
downe, in my mappe, and as I haue taken it out of the aforesaid James Cnopen. He said that  
these foure Indyaughes were dyuine into an inward gulfe of whirtpoolle, with so great a force,  
that the shippes which once entered therein, could by no meanes be dyuyn backe againe, and that there  
is neuer in those partes so much winde blowing, as mighte be sufficient to dyuyn a coyne mill.

Giraldus Cambrensis (who flourished in the yeere 1210, vnder king John) in his booke of the  
miracles of Ireland, hath certeine wordes altogether alike with theſe, videlicet:

How farre from these islands (namely the Delphides, Island &c.) towards the North there is a  
certaine wonderfull whirtpoolle of the sea, wherein all the maurs of the sea from farre haue their  
course and recourse, as it were without stoppe: which, there conueying themselves into the secret  
recesses of nature, are swallowed up, as it were, into a bottomlesse pit, and if it chance that any  
shippe do pass this way, it is pulled, and dyuyn with such a violence of the maurs, that estimation  
without remedy, the force of the whirtpoolle demoueth the same.

The Philosophers describe the foure indyaughes of this Ocean sea, in the foure opposite quarters  
of the world, from whence many do coniecture that as well the flowing of the sea, as the blasts of  
the winde, haue their first originall.

There is a no  
table whirle  
poole on the  
coast of flow  
wap, called  
whatestrande,  
about the la  
titude of 68.

A Testimonie of the learned Mathematician, maister

John Dee, touching the foresaid voyage of

Nicholas de Lynna.



**A** Nno. 1360 (that is to wit, in the 34 yeere of the reigne of the triumphant king  
Edward the third) a frier of Oxford, being a good Astronomer, went in companie  
with others to the most Northern islands of the world, and there leauing  
his company together, he trauelled alone, and purposely descried all the Nor  
thern islands, with the indyauing seas: and the record thereof at his returne he  
deliuered to the king of England. The name of which booke is Inuentio Fortu  
nis (alter fortuna) qui liber incipit a gradu 54 vsq; ad polum. Which frier for study purpo  
ses after that, did three times passe from England thither, and home againe.

Inuentio For  
tunata.

It is to be noted, that from the bayes of Lynne in Norfolk (wherof the foresaid Franciscan  
frier tooke his name) to Island, it is not above a fowntyges sayling with an ordinarie winde, and  
hath bene of many yeeres a very common and usuall trade: which further appeareth by the pri  
uileges granted to the Fishermen of the towne of Blacknie in the said countie of Norfolk, by  
king Edward the third, for their exemption and freedom from his ordinarie leuie, in respect of  
their trade to Island.

Anno. 1364. 31.  
Edwardi 3. 31.

A

A declaration of the Indies and landes discovered, and subdued  
unto the Emperour, and the king of Portugall: And also of other

partes of the Indies and rich Countries to be discovered, which the wo-  
shipfull M. Robert Thorne merchant of London (who dwelt  
long in the citie of Siuill in Spaine) exhorted king  
Henrie the eight to take in hand.

MOST EXCELLENT PRINCE,



Experience proueth that naturallly all Princes be desirous to extend  
large their dominions and kingdomes. Wherefor it is not to be maruelled, to  
see them every day procure the same, not regarding any cost, perill, and labour,  
that may thereby chance, but rather it is to be maruelled, if there be any prince  
content to liue quiet with his owne dominions. For surely the people would  
thinke he lacketh the noble courage and spirit of all other.

The world knoweth that the desires of Princes haue bene so stricke to obtaine their purpose,  
that they haue adventured and yppoued thinges to mans coniecture impossible, the which they  
haue made possible, and also thinges difficult haue made easill: and thus to obtaine their purpose,  
haue in maner turned by and downe the whole world so many times, that the people inhabiting  
in the farthest regions of the Occident haue pursued with great diffire, labours and perils, to pro-  
cease and enter into the farthest regions of the Orient: and in likewise those people of the same  
partes of the Orient, haue had no less labour and desire to enter and penetrate into the farthest  
lend of the Occident, and so following their purchase haue not ceased vntill they could passe no fur-  
ther by reason of the great seas.

This naturall inclination is cause, that scarcely it may be said, there is any kingdome that  
is not king quiet, but that his owne imagination, or other Princes his neighbours doe trouble him.  
God and nature hath prouided to your Grace, and to your Gracious progenitors, this Realme of  
England, and set it in so fruitefull a place, and within such limits, that it should seeme to be a place  
quiet and aparted from all the foresaid desire. One speciall cause is, for that it is compassed with  
the Sea: by reason thereof it seemes, this notwithstanding, their desires and noble courages haue  
bene most commonly like vnto others: and with maruelous great labours, costes and perils,  
they haue trauelled and passed the Seas, making warre, not onely with Kinges and domi-  
ons nigh neighbours, but also with them of farr countries, and so haue wonne and con-  
quered many rich and fayre dominions, and amplified this your Graces Realme with great victorie  
and glory. And also now of late your Grace hauing like couragious desire, and not without iust  
cause, to enlarge this your kingdome, and demand your limits and tribute of the Frenching,  
which at that present he restrained, your Grace in person passed with a great power into France,  
putting your Graces person to great paine and labour, and without doubt victoriously you haue  
conquered the said Realme of France, as he began, if your aduersitie had not returned himselfe,  
and knowledged your Graces right and title: and so promised trustly to pay the tribute then due,  
and fulfill your request in all thinges, and also desired your Grace for peace, the which of your de-  
merite you could not refuse.

Now I considering this your noble courage and desire, and also percelling that your Grace  
may at your pleasure, to your greater glory, by a godly meane, with little cost, perill, or labour,  
your Grace or any of your subiects, amplify and enrich this your said Realme, I know it is my  
duty to write to you this secret vnto your Grace, which hitherto, as I suppose, hath bene  
hid: which is, that with a small number of ships there may be discovered sundry rich lands and  
kingdomes, in the which without doubt your Grace shall winne perpetuall riches, and your sub-  
iects infinite profit: To which places there is less way to discover, which is into the  
East: for that of the four parts of the world, it seemeth thre parts are discovered by other prin-  
ces. For out of Spaine they haue discovered all the Indies and Seas Orientall, and our  
Portingall all the Indies and Seas Orientall: so that by this part of the Orient and Occident,  
they haue compassed the world. For the one of them departing toward the Orient, and the other  
toward the Occident, were againe in the course or way of the middelt of the day, and so then had  
discovered a great part of the same Seas and coastes by the Spaniards. So that now rest to  
be discovered the said North partes, the which it seemeth to me, is onely your charge and duty.  
Because the situation of this your Realme is thereunto necesse and appetit of all other: and also  
for that you haue already taken it in hande. And in mine opinion it will not seeme well

to desire.

The discovery  
of the world.

By Sebastian  
Cabal and the  
Thomas Diaz  
in the eight  
partes of the  
world. With  
this is the  
voyage spoken  
of by Gonzalo  
de Oviedo,  
that came to  
the Portugalls.

ered, and subdued  
And also of other  
which the wor-  
(who dwell  
king

INCE,

be desirous to extend  
it is not to be marvellous  
ing any cost, perill, and labour,  
ruelled, if there be any paine  
of surely the people would  
l other.

urne to obtaine their purpos  
e impossible, the which they  
thous to obtaine their purpos  
en, that the people thinking  
e, labours and perils, to pers  
twise those people of the side  
nd penetrate into the farther  
ndicill they could passe no fo

there is any kingdome able  
ne neighbours doe trouble him,  
ypogreuous, this Realme of  
hat it should seeme to be a place  
s, for that it is compassed with  
sides and noble courages by  
e labours, toiles and perils,  
ely with Kinges and barons  
to have wisdom and conque  
e Realme with great victorie  
nd ite, and not without ill  
nd tribute of the French King,  
ch a great power into France,  
out doubt if it pleased you  
rie had not reclaimed himselfe,  
ely to pay the tribute then we  
n peare, the which of your do

nd perceiving that your Grace  
ch little cost, perill, or labour in  
said Realme, I know it is by  
erto, as I suppose, hath bene  
covered with the labour  
perpetuall stay, and your sub  
ted discover, which is into the  
s are discovered by other  
Seas Orientall, and out  
art of the Orient and Occiden  
ward the Orient, and the other  
est of the day, and so then was  
mpards. So that now rest  
is onely your charge and bur  
nd aspect of all other: and also  
opinion it will not seeme well

to leave so great and profitable an enterprise, seeing it may be easily and with so little cost, labour, and danger, be followed and obtained it though heretofore your Grace hath made thereof a proofe, and found not the commodities thereby as you trusted; at this time it shall be no impediment: For there may be now found remedies for the things then lacked, and the inconveniences and lets removed, that then were cause your Graces desire tooke no full effect, which is, the courts to be changed, and follow the aforesaid new courts. And concerning the mariners, shippes, and provision, an order may be devised and taken more convenient, much better then hitherto. The reason wherof, and by Gods grace, no doubt your purpose shall take effect. Surely the cost herein will be nothing, in comparison to the great profit. The labour is much less, yea nothing at all, where so great honour and glory is hoped for: and considering well the courses, trust the danger and way is shorter to us, then to Spaine or Portugall, as by evident reasons appeareth.

And now to declare something of the commoditie and vantage of this Navigation and discovery, it is very cleere and certaine, that the Seas that commonly men say, without great danger, difficultie and perill, yea rather it is impossible to passe, that those same seas be navigable and without any such danger, but that shippes may passe and have in them perpetual clearness of the way without any darkeness of the night: which thing is a great commoditie for the navigantes, to see at all times round about them, as well the safegardes as daungers, and how great difference it is betwene the commoditie and perils of other which lesse the most part of every foure and threentie houres the said light, and goe in darkeness groping their way, I thinke there is none so ignorant but perceiveth this more plainly, then it can be expressed. Yea what a vantage shall your Graces subjects have also by this light to discover the strange Landes, countries, and coastes: for if they that be discovered, to saile by them in darkeness is with great danger, much more then the coastes not discovered be dangerous to traueil by night or in darkeness. Yet these dangers or darkeness hath not letted the Spaniards and Portugals and other, to discover many unknown Realmes, to their great perill. Which considered (and that your Graces subjects may have the same light) it will seeme your Graces subjects to be without any such danger, in leauing to do this glorious and noble enterprise. For they being past this little way which they named so dangerous, (which may be two or three leagues before they come to the Pole, and as much more after they passe the Pole) it is cleere that from thence forth the seas and Landes are as temperate as in these partes, and that then it may be at the will and pleasure of the mariners, to choose whether they will saile by the coastes that be colde, temperate or hot. For they being past the Pole, it is plain, they may decline to what part they will.

If they will goe toward the Orient, they shall into the regions of all the Tartarians that extend toward the midday, and from thence they may goe and proceed to the land of the Chinas, and from thence to the land of Cathay Orientall, which is of all the maine land most Orientall that can be reckoned from our habitation. And if from thence they doe continue their navigation, following the coastes that returne toward the Occident, they shall fall in with Malacca, and so with all the Indies which we call Orientall, and following that way, may returne hither by the Cape of Buona Speranza: and thus they shall compass the whole worlde. And if they will take their course after they be past the Pole, toward the Occident, they shall goe in the backe side of the new found land, which of late was discovered by your Graces subjects, untill they come to the backe side and South Seas of the Indies Occidentall. And so continuing their voyage they may returne thow the Arright of Magellan to this countrey, and so they compass also the world by that way: and if they goe this third way, and after they be past the Pole, goe right toward the Pole Arctique, and then decline toward the Landes and Islands situated betwene the Tropikes, and vnder the Equinoctiall, without doubt they shall finde there the richest Landes and Islands: of the world of golde, precious Stones, balines, spices, and other things that we heere see: none which come out of strange countreies, and may returne the same way.

By this it appeareth, your Grace hath not onely a great advantage of the riches, but also your subjects shall not traueil halfe of the way that other doe, which goe round about as aforesaid.

Now.

Tartaria.  
China.

As to found  
land discover  
ed by the  
English.

The



The booke made by the right worshipfull M. Robert Thorne  
in the yeere 1527, in *Siuill*, to *Doctour Ley*, Lord ambassadour for king  
Henrie the eight, to Charles the Emperour, being an information of the  
parts of the world, discovered by him and the king of Portugall:  
and also of the way to the Moluccaes by the North.



Right noble and reuerend in Gt. I haue receiued your letters, and haue pro-  
cured and sent to him of your seruant, who your Loydschippe wrote, should be  
sicke in Merchena. I cannot there by els where heare of him, without he be  
returned to you, or gone to S. Lucas, and Saxe. I cannot iudge but that of  
some contagious sickness he died, so that the owner of the house for des-  
troying his house would bury him secretly, and not be knowne of it. For such  
things haue often times happened in this countrey.

Also to write unto your Loydschippe of the new trade of Spicerie of the Emperour, there is no  
doubt but that the Islands are fertile of Cloues, Nutmegs, Peace, and Cinnamon: and that the  
said Islands, with other there about, abound with golde, Rubies, Diamonds, Ballasit, Sa-  
naces, Facinets, and other Stones & pectles, as all other lands that are vnder and nere the Equi-  
noctiall. For we see, where nature giuech anything, she is no nigard. For as with vs and o-  
ther, that are aparted from the said Equinoctiall, our metalls be Lead, Tinne, and Iron, so theirs  
be Golde, Siluer, and Copper. And as our fruites and graines be Apples, Nuts, and Come, so  
theirs be Dates, Nutmegs, Pepper, Cloues, and other Spices. And as we haue Icar, Amber,  
Cristall, Jasper, and other like stones, so haue they Rubies, Diamonds, Ballasit, Sapphyres,  
Facinets, and other like. And though some say that of such precious metalls, graines, or kinde of  
spices, and precious stones, the abundance and quantie is nothing so great, as our metalle fruites  
or Stones about rehearsed: yet if it be well considered, how the quantie of the earth vnder the E-  
quinoctiall to both the Tropheall lines, (in which space is found the said Golde, Spices and pre-  
cious Stones) is as much in quantie, as almost all the earth from the Tropicks to both the  
Poles: it can not be denied but there is more quantie of the said metalls, fruites, spices, and pre-  
cious Stones, then there is of the other metalls and other things before rehearsed. And I see that  
the preciousness of these things is measured after the distance that is betwene vs, and the things  
that we haue appetite vnto. For in this nauigation of the Spicerie was discovered, that these I-  
lands nothing set by Golde, but set more by a knife and a nail of Iron, then by his quantie of  
Golde: and with reason, as the thing more necessarie for mans seruice. And I doubt not but to  
them should be as precious our coyne and seeds, if they might haue them, as to vs their spices: and  
likewise the pieces of glasse that here we haue counterfeited, are as precious to them, as to vs their  
Stones: which by experience is scene daily by them that haue trade thither. This of the riches of  
those counteries is sufficient.

Doctour Ley's  
letters.

Touching that your Loydschippe wrote, whether it may be profit able to the Emperour or no, it  
may be without doubt of great profit: if as the king of Portugall doth, he would become a mer-  
chant, and prouide shippes and their lading, and trade thither alone, and defend the trade of these  
Islands for himselfe. But other greater businesse withholdeth him from this. But still, as now  
it is begunne to be occupied, it would come to much. For the shippes comming in safetie, there  
would thither many euery yeere, of which to the Emperour is due of all the wares and icicles that  
come from thence the fifth part for his custome cleare without any cost. And besides this he pur-  
ceth in euery floze a certaine quantie of money, of which he enioyeth of the gaines poynt and  
poundes like as other aduenturers doe. In a floze of three shippes and a carauell that went from  
this cite armed by the merchants of it, which departed in April last past, I and my partener haue  
one thousand foure hundred duckets that we employed in the said floze, principally for that two  
Englishmen, friends of mine, which are somewhat learned in Cosmographie, should goe in the  
same shippes, to bring me certaine relation of the situation of the countrey, and to be expert in the  
nauigation of those seas, and there to haue informations of many other things, and aduise that I  
desire to know especially. Seeing in these quarters are shippes, and mariners of that countrey,  
and cardes by which they saile, though much be like ours: that they should procure to haue the said  
cardes, and learne how they vnderstand them, and especially to know what nauigation they haue  
for those Islands Northwards, and North-eastward.

This was the  
first where in  
I aduise discou-  
ered the river  
of Plate, 1526.

More.

For if from the said Islands the sea did extend, without interposition of land, to saile from the  
North point to the North-east point one thousand seuen hundred or one thousand eights hundred  
leagues,

A. Robert Thorne  
Ambassadour for king  
of Portugall:  
North.

your letters, and have your  
Loydschippe voyce, should be  
heard of him, without he be  
I cannot judge but that of  
owner of the voyle for who  
not be knowne of it. For such  
re,

of the Emperour, there is no  
and Cumamom: and that the  
Diamonds, Balastis, Stra-  
re under and nere the Equi-  
tor. For as with vs and  
s, Cinne, and Ypon, so these  
Apples, Nuts, and Come, so  
and as we have Tre, Amber,  
woods, Ballastis, Sapphyres,  
mettals, grains, of kinde of  
great, as our mettale, frutes  
of the earth vnder the E-  
said Solde, Spices and yeri-  
in the Tropiques, to both the  
reals, frutes, Spices, and yeri-  
re asked. And I see that  
betwene vs, and the things  
was discovered, that these I-  
yon, then by his quantitie of  
vice. And I doubt not but to  
vern, as to vntier spices and  
erious to them, as to be their  
hisher. This of the riches of

ble to the Emperour of no, it  
both, he would become a mer-  
ce, and defend the trade of these  
from this. But still, as now  
pes coming in safetie, there  
all the waers and rivers that  
off. And besides this be pur-  
opeth of the gabies pound and  
and a carauell that went from  
pall, I and my partener have  
rece, principally for that two  
mographic, should goe in the  
untrey, and to be expert in the  
ber things, and aduise that I  
and mariners of that country,  
should procure to haue the said  
what navigation they haue

tion of land, to saile from the  
of one thousand eight hundred  
leagues,

leagues, they should come to the New founde islandes that were discovered, and so we should be  
nere to the said Spiceries by almost two thousand leagues then the Emperour, or the king of  
Portingall are. And to aduise your Loydschippe whether of these Spiceries of the king of Portin-  
gall of the Emperours is nere, and also of the titles that either of them hath, and how our New  
founde landes are parted from it, (for that by writing without some demonstration, it were hard to  
give any declaration of it) I haue caused that your Loydschippe shall receiue herewith a little Shappe  
of Carte of the world: the which, I feare me, shall put your Loydschippe to moye labour to vnder-  
stand, then me to make it, onely for that it is made in so litle roome that it cannot be but obscurely  
set out, that is desired to be seene in it, and also for that I am in this science litle expert: Yet to re-  
medy in part this difficultie, it is necessary to declare to your Loydschippe my intent, with which I  
trust you shall perceiue in this Card part of your desire, if, for that I can not expresse mine intent,  
with my declaration I do not make it moye obscure.

First, your Loydschippe knoweth that the Cosmographers haue diuided the earth by 360 de-  
grees in latitude, and as many in longitude, vnder the which is comprehended all the roundness of  
the earth: the latitude being diuided into foure quarters, ninetie degrees amount to euery quarter,  
which they measure by the altitude of the Poles, that is the North and South partes, being from  
the line Equinoctiall till they come right vnder the North parte the said ninetie degrees: and as  
much from the said line Equinoctiall to the South parte be other ninetie degrees. And as much  
more is also from either of the said partes againe to the Equinoctiall. Which imagined to be  
cross, is soone perceiued thus, 360 degrees of latitude to be consumed in the said foure quarters of  
ninetie degrees a quarter, so that this latitude is the measure of the world from North to South,  
and from South to North. And the longitude, in which are also counted other 360, is counted  
from West to East, or from East to West, as in the Card is set.

The said latitude your Loydschippe may see marked and diuided in the end of this Card on the  
left hand: so that if you would know in what degrees of latitude any region or coast standeth, take a  
compass, and set the one foot of the same in the Equinoctiall line right against the said region, and  
apply the other foot of the compass to the said region or coast, and then set the said compass at the  
end of the Card, where the degrees are diuided. And the one foot of the compass standing in the  
line Equinoctiall, the other will shew in the scale the degrees of altitude or latitude that the said re-  
gion is in. Also the longitude of the world I haue set out in the nether part of the Card, contain-  
ing also 360 degrees: which begin to be counted after Palestine and other Cosmographers from  
an head land called Capo verde, which is ouer against a little cross made in the part Occidentall,  
where the diuision of the degrees be ginnereth, and endeth in the same Capo verde.

Now to know in what longitude any land is, your Loydschippe must take a ruler or a compass,  
and set the one foot of the compass vpon the land or coast whose longitude you would know, and  
extend the other foot of the compass to the next part of one of the transferral lines in the Orien-  
tall or Occidentall part: which done, set the one foot of the compass in the said transferral line at  
the end of the nether scale, the scale of longitude, and the other foot sheweth the degree of longi-  
tude that the region is in. And your Loydschippe must vnderstand that this Card though litle, con-  
taineth the vniuersall whole world betwix two Collateral lines, the one in the Occidentall part  
descendeth perpendicular vpon the 175 degree, and the other in the Orientall on the 170 degree,  
whose distance measurith the scale of longitude. And that which is without the two said transferral  
lines, is onely to shew how the Orientall part is ioyned with the Occident, and Occident with  
the Orient. For that that is set without the line in the Orientall part, is the same that is set within  
the other line in the Occidentall part: and that that is set without the line in the Occidentall part,  
is the same that is set within the line on the Orientall part, to shew that though this figure of the  
world in plaine of flate seemeth to haue an end, yet one imagining that this said Carde were set  
vpon a round thing, where the ends should touch by the lines, it would plainly appaere how  
the Orient part ioyneth with the Occident, as there without the lines it is described and figured.

And for moye declaration of the said Card, your Loydschippe shall vnderstand, that beginning  
on the part Occidentall within the line, the first land that is set out, is the maine land and Island  
of the Indies of the Emperour. Which maine land or coast goeth Northward, and finisheth in the  
land that we found, which is called herre Terra de Labrador. So that it appeareth the said land  
that we found, and the Indies to be all one maine land.

The said coast from the said Indies Southward, as by the Card your Loydschippe may see,  
contineth to a certaine straight Sea, called Estrecho de todos Santos: by which straight Sea  
the Spaniards goe to the Spiceries, as I shall declare moye at large: the which straight Sea  
is right against the three hundred fiftene degrees of longitude, and is of latitude or altitude from  
the

The New  
founde landes  
discovered by  
the English.

Shappe of  
the world.

To know the  
latitudes.

To know the  
longitudes.

It is called  
the straight Sea  
of Saglante.

the Equinoctiall three and fiftie degrees. The first land from the said beginning of the Card toward the Orient are certaine Iſlandes of the Canaries, and Iſlandes of Capo verde. But the first maine land west to the line Equinoctiall is the said Capo verde, and from thence Northward by the streight of this Sea of Italie. And so followeth Spaine, France, Flanders, Flaimes, Denmark, and Norway, which is the highest part toward the North. And ouer against Flanders are our Iſlandes of England and Ireland. Of the landes and coastes within the streights I haue set out onely the Regions, diuiding them by lines of their limits, by which plainly I thinke your Lordship may see, in what situation euery region is, and of what height, and with what regions it is ioynd. I do thinke few are left out of all Europe. In the parts of Asia and Africa I could not so well make the said diuisions: for that theye are not so well knowne, nor need not so much. This I write because in the said Card be made the said lines and strikes, that your Lordship should vnderstand wherefoe they doe strue. Also returning to the foresaid Capo verde, the coast goeth Southward to a Cape called Capo de buona speranza: which is right ouer against the 60 or 65 degree of longitude. And by this Cape goe the Portugals to their Spicerie. For from this Cape toward the Orient is the land of Calicut, as your Lordship may see in the head land ouer against the 130 degree. From the said Cape of Buona speranza the coast returneth toward the line Equinoctiall, and passing forth, entereth the red sea, & returning out, entereth againe into the gulf of Persia, & returneth toward the Equinoctiall line, all that it commeth to the head land, called Calicut aforesaid, and from thence the coast making a gulfe, where is the riuer of Ganges, returneth toward the line to a head land called Malaca, where is the principall Spicerie: and from this Cape returneth and maketh a great gulfe, and after the coast goeth right toward the Orient, and ouer against this last gulfe and coast, be many Iſlandes, which be Iſlandes of the Spicerie, of the Emperour. Upon which the Portugals and he be at variance.

Not.

The said coast goeth toward the Orient, and endeth right against the 155 degrees, and after returneth toward the Occident Northward: which coast not yet plainly knowen, I may suppose to the New found land found by vs, that I spake of before. So that I finish with this brief declaration of the Card aforesaid. Well I know I should also haue declared how the coastes within the streights of the Sea of Italie runne. It is plaine that passing the streights on the North side of that Sea after the coast of Granada, and with that which pretaines to Spaine, is the coast of that which France hath in Italie. And then followeth in one piece all Italie, which land hath an arme of the Sea, with a gulfe which is called Mare Adriaticum. And in the bottom of this gulfe is the cite of Venice. And on the other part of the said gulfe is Sclauonia, and next Syria, then the streights of Constantinople, and then the sea called Euxinus, which is within the said streights: and coming out of the said streights, followeth Turcia maior (though now on both sides it is called Turcia.) And so the coast runneth Southward to Syria, and ouer against the said Turcia are the Iſlandes of Rhodes, Candie, and Cypus. And ouer against Italie are the Iſlandes of Sicilia and Sardinia. And ouer against Spaine is Gatoza and Pinocza. In the end of the gulfe of Syria is Iudea. And from thence returneth the coast toward the Occident, till it commeth to the streights where we beganne, which all is the coast of Aſſike or Barbarie. Also your Lordshippe shall vnderstand that the coastes of the Sea throughout all the world, I haue coloured with yellow, for that it may appeare that all that is within the line coloured yellow, is to be imagined to be maine land or Iſland: and all without the said line so coloured to be Sea: whereby it is easie and light to know it. Albeit in this little roome any other description would rather haue made it obscure then cleere. Also the said coastes of the Sea are all set iustly after the manner and forme as they lie, as the navigation appooueth them throughout all the Card, saue onely the coastes and Iſles of the Spicerie of the Emperour which is from ouer against the 160 to the 125 degrees of longitude. For these coastes and situations of the Iſlands, euery of the Cosmographers and pilots of Portugall and Spaine do set after their purpose. The Spaniards more toward the Orient, because they should appertaine to the Emperour: and the Portugals more toward the Occident, for that they should fall within their iurisdiction. So that the pilots and nauigants whither, which in such cases should declare the truth, by their industrie do set them fallily euer one to fauor his prince. And for this cause can be no certaine situation of that coast and Iſlands, till this difference betwixt them be verified. Now to come to the purpose of your Lordships demand touching the difference betwixt the Emperour and the king of Portugall, I vnderstand it better, I must declare the beginning of this discovery. Though peradventure your Lordship may say that in that I haue written ought of purpose, I fall in the proverbe, A gemino ouo bellum: But your Lordship commanded me to be large, and I take licence to be voligious, and so the peradventure tedious, but your Lordship knoweth that Nihil ignorantia verbosius.

Doroſo Epſc  
Doriland.

beginning of the Card  
 of Capo verde. But the  
 and from thence Northward  
 France, Flanders, Almaine,  
 And ouer against Fla  
 andes within the streights  
 by which plainly I thinke  
 the passage, and with what  
 parts of Asia and Africa  
 women, nor need not so much  
 as that your Lordship should  
 Capo verde, the road goeth  
 ouer against the 60 & 65  
 degree. For from this Cape  
 toward the head land ouer against  
 toward the line Equi  
 into the gulfes of Persia,  
 land, called Calicut alo  
 mages, returneth toward the  
 and from this Cape toward  
 the Orient, and ouer against  
 the Indies of the Emperour.

the 15 degrees, and after  
 ly knowe, I may ioyne to  
 finally with this byre de  
 clared how the coasts with  
 the streights on the East  
 of Spaine, in the coast of  
 Italic, which land hath an  
 And in the bottom of this  
 Scythia, and next Ori  
 ent, which is within the said  
 (though now on both sides  
 and ouer against the said  
 Italic are the Islands  
 and Sincora. In the end  
 of the Orient, till it come  
 to Barbarie. Also your  
 the world, I haue coloured  
 redd yellow, is to be imagi  
 ned to be Sea: whereby it is  
 described would rather haue  
 been called after the manner  
 of the Card, saue only the coasts  
 from the 160 to the 215 degrees  
 the Cosmographers and pi  
 lours more towards the O  
 rient, as the Portugals more toward  
 the west, and the pilots and nauigants  
 do see them fall by euery one  
 of the coast and Islands, till this  
 our Lordship demand to  
 know, I understand it better, I  
 your Lordship may say that  
 no ouerbellum: But your  
 and so be peraduenture

In

In the yere 1484. the king of Portingall minded to arme certaine Caruelles to discover the  
 Spierie. Then forasmuch as he feared that being discovered, euery other Prince would sende  
 an arme thither, so that the cost and perill of discovering should be his, and the profitte common:  
 wherefore first he gaue knowledge of this his minde to all princes Christianes, saying that he  
 would seeke amongst the indoles newe possessions of regions, and therefore would make a cer  
 taine arme: and that if any of them would helpe in the cost of the said arme, he should enioy his  
 part of the profitte of honour that should come of it. And as then this discovering was holden for a  
 strange thing and vncertaine. Nowe they say, that all the Princes of Christenome answered,  
 that they would be no part of such an arme, nor yet of the profitte that might come of it. After the  
 which he gaue knowledge to the Pope of his purpose, and of the answer of all the Princes, desir  
 ing him that seeing that none would helpe in the costes, that he would iudge all that should be  
 founde and discovered to be of his iurisdiction, and commaunde that none other Prince should in  
 termeddle therewith. The Pope said not as Christ saith, Quis me constituat iudicem inter vos? The Pope re  
 sponded. He did not refuse, but making himselfe as Lord and Iudge of all, not onely graunted that all that  
 should be discovered from Orient to Occident, should be the kings of Portingall, but also, that by  
 on great censures no other Prince should discover but hee. And if they did, all to be the kings of  
 Portingall. So he armed a flecter, and in the yere 1497. were discovered the Islands of Calicut,  
 from whence is brought all the spice he hath.

The Pope re  
sponded.

After this in the yere 1492. the king of Spaine willing to discover lands toward the Occident  
 without making any such diligence, or taking licence of the king of Portingall, armed certaine  
 Caruels, and then discovered this India Occidentall, especially two Islands of the sayde India,  
 that in this Card I set forth, naming the one la Dominica, and the other Cuba, and brought the cer  
 taine golde from thence. Of the which when the king of Portingall had knowledge, hee sent to the  
 king of Spaine, requiring him to giue him the said Islands. For that by the sentence of the Pope  
 all that should be discovered was his, and that hee should not proceede further in the discoverie  
 without his licence. And at the same time it seemeth that out of Castill, into Portingall had gone  
 a number of burning infinite number of Jewes that were expelled out of Spaine, for that they  
 would not turne to be Christians, and carried with them infinite number of golde and silver. So  
 that it seemeth that the king of Spaine answered, that it was reason that the king of Portingall  
 shold be obedient to that which the Pope had decreed, hee would giue him the sayde  
 Islands of the Indies. Nowe for as much as it was decreed betwixt the sayde kings, that none  
 should receive the others subiects fugitiues, nor their goods, therefore the king of Portingall should  
 pay and returne to the king of Spaine a million of golde or more, that the Jewes had caried out of  
 Spaine to Portingall, & that in so doing he would giue these Islands, and desist from any more dis  
 couering. And not fulfilling this, hee would not onely not giue these Islands, but procure to disco  
 uer more where they thought best. It seemeth that the king of Portingall would not, or could not  
 with his ease pay this money. And so not paying, that he could not let the king of Spaine to disco  
 uer: so that hee encrept not toward the Orient where he had begun to founde the Spierie. And  
 contented to the king of Spaine, that touching this discovering they should deuide the world be  
 twene them two. And that all that should be discovered from Cape Verde, where this Card be  
 ginneth to be counted, the degrees of longitude to 180. of the sayde scale of longitude, which is  
 half the world toward the Orient, & sinth in this Card right ouer against a litle crosse made at  
 the said 180. degrees, to be the king of Portugals. And all the land from the said Crosse toward  
 the Occident, vntill it ioyneth with the other Crosse in the Orient, which conteineth the other  
 hundred and eightie degrees, that is the other halfe of the world, to be the king of Spaines. So  
 that from the land ouer against the said hundred & eightie degrees vntill it sinth in the three hun  
 dred and eightie on both the ends of the Card, is the iurisdiction of the king of Spaine. So after this  
 manner they deuided the world betweene them.

Now for that these Islands of Spierie fall neere the terme and limits betweene these Prin  
 ces (so) as by the said Card you may see they beginne from one hundred and eightie degrees of lon  
 gitude, and ende in 215. It seemeth all that falleth from 160. to 180. degrees, should be of Por  
 tingall: and all the rest of Spaine. And so) that their Cosmographers and Pilots could not  
 agree in the situation of the sayde Islandes (for the Portugals set them all within their 180.  
 degrees, and the Spaniards set them all without): and so) that in measuring, all the Cosmo  
 graphers of both parties, or what other that euer haue bene cannot giue certaine order to  
 measure the longitude of the world, as they doe of the latitude: for that there is no starre  
 fixed from East to West, as are the starres of the Poles from North to South, but all mo  
 ueth with the moving diuine: no manner can bee founde howe certainly it may be measured,  
 but

The longi  
tudes hard to  
be founde out.

B b

but by coniectures, as the Navigants haue esteemed the way they haue gone. But it is manifest that Spaine had the situation of all the lands from Cape Verde, toward the Orient of the Portingals to their 180. degrees. And in all their Cardes they neuer hitherto set the said Islands within their limitation of the said 180. degrees, (Though they knewe very well of the Islands) will note that the Spaniards discovered them. And it is knowne that the king of Portingall had trade to these Islands also, but would neuer suffer Portingall to goe thither from Calicut: for so much as hee knewe that it fell out of his dominion: least by going thither there might come some knowledge of those other Islands of the king of Spaine, but bought the cloues of Merchants of the countrey, that brought them to Calicut, much dearer then they would haue cost, if hee had sent for them, thinking after this maner it would abide alwayes secret. And now that it is discovered hee sendes and keepes the Spaniards from the trade all that he can.

Also it should seeme that when this foresaid consent of the diuision of the world was agreed of betwene them, the king of Portingall had already discovered certaine Islands that lye ouer against Cape Verde, and also certaine part of the maine lande of India toward the South, from whence hee sette Brasil, and called it the lande of Brasil. So for that all should come in his terme and limites, hee tooke three hundred and seuenie leagues beyonde Cape Verde: and after this, his 180. degrees, being his part of the world, should begin in the Carde right ouer against the 340. degrees, where I haue made a litle compass with a crosse, and should be smyth at the 160. degree, where also I haue made another litle marke. And after this computation without any controuersie, the Islands of the Spicerie fall out of the Portingals domination. So that now the Spaniards say to the Portingals, that if they would beginne their 180. degrees from the said Cape Verde, so the intent they should extend more toward the Orient, and so to touche those Islands of the Spicerie of the Emperour, which is all that is betwene the two crosses made in this Carde, that then the Islands of Cape Verde and the lande of Brasil that the Portingals now obtaine, is out of the said limitation, and that they are of the Emperours. Or if their 180. degrees they count from the 370. leagues beyonde the said Cape Verde, to include in it the said Islands and lande of Brasil, then plainly appeareth the said 180. degrees should finish long before they came to these Islands of the Spicerie of the Emperour: As by this Carde your Lordship may see. For their limites should begin at the 340. degrees of this Carde, and end at 160. degrees, where I haue made two litle markes of the compass with crosses in them.

So that plainly it should appeare by reason, that the Portingals should leaue these Islands of Cape Verde and lande of Brasil, if they would haue part of the Spicerie of the Emperour: or els holding these, they haue no part there. To this the Portingals say, that they will beginne their 180. degrees from the selfe same Cape Verde: for that it may extend so much more toward the Orient, and touche these Islands of the Emperours: and would winne these Islands of Cape Verde and land of Brasil neuertheless, as a thing that they possessed before the consent of this limitation was made.

So none can verely tell which hath the best reason. They be not yet agreed, Quare sub iudice lis est.

But without doubt (by all coniectures of reason,) the said Islands fall all without the limitation of Portingall, and pertaine to Spaine, as it appeareth by the most part of all the Cardes made by the Portingals, save those they haue fallen of late purpose.

But now touching that your Lordship wote, whether that which we discovered toucheth any thing the foresaid coastes: once it appeareth plainly, that the Newe founde lande that wee discovered, is all a maine lande with the Indies Occidental, from whence the Emperour hath all the golde and pearles: and so continueth of coast more then 5000. leagues of length, as by this Carde appeareth. For from the said Newe lande it proceedeth toward the Occident to the Indies, and from the Indies returneth toward the Orient, and after turneth Southward by till it come to the Straites of Todos Santos, which I reckon to be more then 5000. leagues.

So that to the Indies it should seeme that wee haue some title, at least that for our discovering wee might trade thither as other doe. But all this is nothing nere the Spicerie.

So we thin (if from the said Newe founde lande the Sea bee navigable) there is no doubt, but sailing Northward and passing the Pole descending to the Equinoctiall line, wee shall hitte these Islands, and it should be a much shorter way, then either the Spaniards or the Portingals haue. For wee be distant from the Pole but thirtie and nine degrees, and from the Pole to the Equinoctiall be 90. the which added together, be an hundred twenty and nine degrees, leagues 1480. and miles 7440: Where wee should finde these Islands. And the Navigation of the Spaniards to the Spicerie is, as by this Carde you may see, from Spaine to the Islands

This found  
land discovered  
by the  
Englishmen.

Note.

To litle by  
the Pole.

Islands of Canarie, and from  
to the Cape of the maine land  
Southward to the Straites  
is 1700. or 1800. leagues  
line Equinoctiall to the  
4100. leagues.

The Navigation of the  
made to ward the Cape Verde  
called Capo de bona Espera  
Cape to the Islands of Spaine

So that by this Navigation  
where our Newe founde lande  
ble, wee should goe to the  
And though wee were in  
Portingall, wee should be by  
little rich of golde and Spice  
to should, if we may passe v  
der no litle profitable to our  
king of Portingall.

But it is a generall opinion  
It, and the colde so much to  
under the line Equinoctiall

Yet since (by experience)  
chose, I thinke the same should  
Nihil fit vacuum in re  
navigable. If I should wish  
formeth not requisite for this  
great interest, yet I haue had  
it to my will, it should be the  
Northward bee navigable  
ous, and come from the facte  
ed of my father, which with  
res of the Newe found land  
mariners would then haue v  
dies from whence all the gol  
pearls, and is aforesaid.

Also in this Carde by the  
Cape of head land, where I,  
Carde I thinke nothing be  
Spicerie: which, for that (as  
circumstantion howe they land  
Carde should haue, or that a  
the mountaines and Rivers  
the sea, the names of all p  
litle space would not consen

Your Lordship may see th  
the room is occupie. Many  
of all Ports a put to silence, b  
is not for Spaine to fall by, b  
Am if by this your Lordship  
not maruelle, by reason of th  
make a bigger and a better s  
in this and all other nothing  
Scientiam perueniens. Also  
rule of Cosmographie, it wou  
should not haue bene so plain  
And also these degrees of lo  
along by I line Equinoctiall,

Islands of Canarie, and from these Islands they runne <sup>now</sup> the line Equinoctiall Southward to the Cape of the maine land of the Indians, called the Cape of S. Augulline, and from this Cape Southward to the Straites of Todos Sanctos, in the which Navigation to the saide Straites is 1700. or 1800. leagues: and from these Straites being past them, they returne towarde the line Equinoctiall to the Islands of Spicrie, which are distant from the saide Straites 4200. or 4300. leagues.

By the Straites of Magellan.

The Navigation of the Portingals to the saide Islands, is departing from Portingall Southward towarde the Cape Verde, and from thence to another Cape passing the line Equinoctiall called Capo de bona Iperansa, and from Portingall to the Cape is 1800. leagues, and from this Cape to the Islands of Spicrie of the Emperour is 2500. leagues.

So that by this Navigation amounteth all to 4300. leagues. So that (as afoze is said,) if betwene our the we founde landes of Norway, or Island, the seas towarde the North be Navigable, we should goe to these Islandes a shorter way by more then 2000. leagues.

And though wee went not to the saide Islandes, for that they are the Emperours of kings of Portingall, we should by the way and coming once to the line Equinoctiall, finde landes so full rich of golde and Spicrie, as all other landes are under the saide line Equinoctiall: and also should, if we may passe under the North, enjoy the Navigation of all Tartarie. Which should be no lesse profitable to our commodities of clothe, then these Spicries to the Emperour, and king of Portingall.

Howe to write to England.

But it is a generall opinion of all Cosmographers, that passing the seventh clime, the sea is all Ice, and the cold so much that none can suffer it. And hitherto they had all the like opinion, that under the line Equinoctiall for much heate the land was uninhabitable.

Objection.

Yet since (by experience is proved) no land so much habitable nor more temperate. And to conclude, I thinke the same should be founde under the North, if it were experimented. For as all things, Nihil sit vacuum in rerum natura: So I judge, there is no lande uninhabitable, nor Sea unnavigable. If I should write the reason that persuadeth this unto me, it should be to praise, and if seeme not requisite for this present matter. God knoweth that though by it I should have no great interest, yet I have had and still have no litle minde of this businesse: So that if I had facultie to my will, it should be the first thing that I woulde understande, even to attempt, if our Seas Northward be Navigable to the Pole, or no. I reason, that as some sicknesses are hereditariou, and come from the father to the sonne, so this inclination of desire of this discoverie I inherit of my father, which with another merchant of Brittowe named Hugh Eliot, were the discoverers of the first new found landes, of the which there is no doubt, (as nowe plainly appeareth) if the mariners would then have bene ruled, and followed their Pilots minde, the lands of the West Indies (from whence all the golde cometh) had bene ours, for all is one coast, as by the Carte appeareth, and is afoze said.

Answers.

A true opinion.

A voyage of discoverie by the Pole.

The cause why the West Indies were not ours: which also should be written in an English map.

Also in this Carte by the coastes where you see C. your Lordship shall understande it is set for Cape of head land, where I. for Island, where P. for Point, where R. for River. Also in all this litle Carte I thinke nothing be erred touching the situation of the lande, save onely in these Islands of Spicrie: which, for that (as afoze is said,) every one seetheth them after his minde, there can be no confirmation howe they stande. I doe not denie, that there lacke many things, that a confirmate Carte should have, or that a right good demonstration bestreth. For there should be expressed all the mountaines and Rivers that are principall of name in the earth, with the names of Portes of the sea, the names of all principall cities, which all I might have set, but not in this Carte, for the litle space would not consent.

Your Lordship may see that seeing onely the names almost of every Region, and yet not of all, the roome is occupied, many Islands are also left out, for the said lacke of roome, the names almost of all Portes put to silence, with the roses of the windes or pointes of the compasse: For that this is not for Pilots to saile by, but a summarie declaration of that which your Lordship commandeth. And if by this your Lordship cannot wel perceive the meaning of this Card, of the which I woulde not marvelle, by reason of the rude composition of it, will it please your Lordship to advise mee to make a bigger and a better Mappe, or els that I may cause one to be made. For I knowe my selfe in this and all other nothing perfect, but Licet semper discens, nunquam tamen ad perfectam scientiam perveniens. Also I knowe, to set the forme Sphericall of the world in Plano after the true rule of Cosmographie, it would have bene made otherwise then this is: howbeit the demonstration should not have bene to plaine.

And also these degrees of longitude, that I set in the lower part of this card, should have bene set along by the line Equinoctiall, & to them must be imagined. For the degrees of longitude neede either

of the poles are nothing equal in bignesse to them in the Equinoctiall; But these are set so by that setting them along the Equinoctiall, it woulde haue made obscure a great part of the mappe. Many other curiosities may bee required, which for the nonce I did not see fit to write, as well for that the intent I had principally was to satisfie your doubt touching the Spicerie, as in that I lacke treasure and time. I trust your Lordship correcting that which is erred, will accept my good will, which is to doe any thing that I may in your Lordships seruice. But from henceforth I knowe your Lordship will rather commaund me to keepe silence, then to be large, when you shall be wearied with the reading of this discourse. Iesus p̄s̄erue your estate and health.

Your Lordships  
Robert Thorne 1527.

**A**lso this Carte and that which I wrote touching the variance betwene the Emperor and the king of Portugall, is not to bee shewed or communicated there with any of that Court. For though there is nothing in it prejudiciall to the Emperours, yet it may bee a cause of paine to the makers; as well for that none may make these Cartes, but certayne appointed and allowed for makers, as for that peradventure it would not sounde well to them, that a stranger should knowe or discouer their secrets: and woulde appeare worst of all, if they vnderstand that I write touching the short way to the Spicerie by our Seas. Though peradventure of troth it is not to be looked to, as a thing that by all opinions is impossible, and I thinke neuer will come to effect: and therefore neither here nor elsewhere is it to be spoken of. For to moue it amongst wise men, it should be had in derision. And therefore to none I woulde haue written nor spoken of such things, but to your Lordshippe, to whom boldly I commit in this all my foolish fancie as to my selfe. But if it please God that into Englands I may come with your Lordshippe, I will shewe some coniectures of reason, though against the generall opinion of Cosmographers, by which shall appeare this that I say not to lacke some foundation. And till that time I beseeche your Lordshippe let it bee put to silence: and in the meane season it may please God to sende our two Englishmen, that are gone to the Spicerie, which may also bring more plaine declaration of that which in this case might be desired.

Also I knowe I needed not to haue bene so p̄s̄erue in the declaration of this Carte to your Lordship, if the said Carte had bene very well made after the rules of Cosmographie. For your Lordship would soone vnderstande it better then I, or any other that could haue made it: and so it should appeare that I shewed Delphinum narac. But for that I haue made it after my rude manner, it is necessarie that I be p̄s̄erue of glosse of mine owne worke, or els your Lordship should haue had much labour to vnderstande it, which now with it also cannot be excused, it is so grossly done. But I knowe you looked for no curious things of mee, and therefore I trust your Lordship will accept this, and holde me for excused. In other mens letters that they write they crave pardon that at this present they write no larger: but I must finish, as being pardon that at this present I write so largely. Iesus p̄s̄erue your Lordship with augmentation of dignities.

Your seruant Robert  
Thorne, 1527.

*Epitaphium M. Roberti Thorni, sepulti in Ecclesia  
Templariorum LONDINI.*

**R**obenus iacethic Thorne, quem Britolia quondam  
Pratoris merito legit ad officium.  
Huic etenim semper magna Respublica cura,  
Charior & eunctis patria diuitijs.  
Ferre inopi auxilium, tristes componere lites,  
Dulce huic consilio quoque iurare fuit.  
Qui plus exaudis miserorum vota p̄cesque,  
Christe huic caeli des regione locum.

Ordinances

Ordinances

rection of

red by the  
and compa  
ons. Islands  
and in the 7  
the grace of  
the Church



Item, for as much  
and hys men to the  
tion of all lawes & sta  
Imperiall of his real  
present voyage trauel  
till it shall be accom  
tpe it behooueth euery  
her his said charge, an

Item, where hert  
obedience to the Cap  
tion of these present or  
the 12. counsaillers in  
and p̄s̄eruation of th  
in all acts and feates  
ment and p̄s̄erment  
shall once euery weeke  
cent that euery man w

Item, euery pers  
him shall complice) all  
time to time comma  
with the assent of the  
voyage, as also in disc  
Item, all courtiers  
ior, matters, & matters  
boyces brutely ag  
in all counsaillers and

Item, that the s  
kinde & whether may  
come about the Admir  
for counsaile or consu

Item, that the m  
put in memorie the  
lands, sides, elements  
by the order of the  
ding the Spaders tog  
obseruations, and not  
and wherein they disc  
put the same into a co  
in propozitioning of th  
charge of the compar

Item, that all em  
such like, as be searche  
decerned aduiscably

Ordinances, instructions, and aduertisements of and for the direction of the intended voyage for Cathaye, compiled, made, and deliuered by the right worshipfull M. Sebastian Cabota Esquier, gouernour of the mysterie and companie of the Marchants aduenuers for the discouerie of Regions, Dominions, Islands & places vnknowen, the 9. day of May in the yere of our Lord God 1553. and in the 7. yere of the raigne of our most dread soueraigne Lord Edward the 6. by the grace of God king of England, Fraunce and Ireland, defender of the faith, and of the Church of England and Ireland, in earth supream head.



**I**n the Captaine general, with the piloe maior, the matters, marchantes & other officers, to be so knit and accorded in unitie, loue, conformitie, and obedience in euery degre on all sides, that no dissention, variance, or contention may rise or spring betwixt them and the marchants of this companie, to the damage or hindrance of the voyage: for that dissention (by many experiences) hath ouerthromen many notable intrudes and likely enterprises and exploits.

- 1 Item, for as much as euery person hath given an othe to be true, faithfull, and loyall subjects, and to be to the kings most excellent Maestie, his heires and successors, and for the obseruation of a ll lawes & Statutes, made for the preservation of his most excellent Maestie, & his crowne Imperiall of his realmes of England and Ireland, and to serue his grace, the Realme, and this present voyage truely, and not to give up, intermit, or leaue off the said voyage and enterprise until it shall be accomplished, so farre forth as possibilitie & life of man may serue or extend: Therefore it behooueth euery person in his degre, as well for conscience, as for dutie sake, so to remembre his said charge, and the accomplishment thereof.
- 2 Item, where furthermore euery marchant or passenger in his shippe, hath given like othe to be obedient to the Captaine general, and to euery Captaine and matter in his ship, for the obseruation of these present orders contained in this booke, and all other which hereafter shall be made by the said countailers in this present booke named, as the most part of them, for the better conduction, and preservation of the fleet, and achieving of the voyage, and to be prompt, ready and obedient in all acts and orders of honorable action, and dutie to be ministered, shewed & executed in accordance and performance of the voyage and exploit: therefore it is conuenient that this present booke shall once euery weeke (by the discretion of the Captaine) be read to the said companie, so the intent that euery man may the better remember his othe, conscience, dutie and charge.
- 3 Item, euery person by virtue of his othe, to doe effectually & with good will (as farre forth as him shall compele) all and euery such act and deed, verbe and deede, as shall be him of them from time to time commaunded, committed and enjoyned (during the voyage) by the Captaine general, with the assent of the Countail and assistants, as well in and during the whole Navigation and voyage, as also in discouering and landing, as cases and occasions shall require.
- 4 Item, all courses in Navigation to be set and kept, by the aduice of the Captaine, Piloe maior, matters, & matters mates, with the assents of the countailers, & the most number of them, and in hopes uniformly agreeing in one to preuaile, and take place, so that the Captaine general, shall in all countailles and assemblies haue a double voyer.
- 5 Item, that the fleet shall keepe together, and not separate themselves asunder, as much as by winde & weather may be done or permitted, & that the Captaines, Piloes & matters shall speedily come aboard the Admiral, when and as often as he shall seme to haue iust cause to assemble them for counsaile or consultation to be had concerning the affaires of the fleet and voyage.
- 6 Item, that the marchantes and other faithful persons in writing, shall dayly write, describe, and put in memoire the Navigation of euery day and night with the points, and obseruation of the lands, sides, elements, a kinde of the sunne, course of the moone and Starres, and the same notes by the order of the Matter and piloe of euery ship to be put in writing, the Captaine general assembling the Matters together once euery weeke (if winde and we other shal serue) to conferre all the obseruations, and notes of the said ships, so the intent it may appeare wherein the notes doe agree, and wherein they differ, and upon good debatement, deliberation, and conclusion determined, to put the same into a common ledger, to remaine of record for the companie: the like order to be kept in proportioning of the Cardes, Astrolabes, and other instruments prepared for the voyage, at the charge of the companie.
- 7 Item, that all enterprises and exploits of discouering or landing to search Isles, regions, and such like, to be searched, attempted, and enterprised by good deliberation, and common assent, determined aduicely. And that in all enterprises, notable amballages, suites, requests, or presentment

Ordinances



provisions of victuals, of pleasures or pleasures, to be done and executed by the Captaine or General in person, or by such other, as he by common assent shall appoint or assigne to doe or cause to be done in the same.

9 Item, the steward and cooke of every ship, and their associates, to give and render to the Captaine and other head officers of their shippe truely (as oftener) if it shall seeme requisite, a full and plaine and perfect account of expenses of the victuals, as well flesh, fish, bird, mee, or bread, as also of berre, wine, oyle, vinegar, and all other kinde of victualing under their charge, and they, and every of them so to order and dispense the same, that no waste or unprofitable expence be made otherwile then reason and necessitie shall commaund.

10 Item, when any inferior officer of meane office of what degree or condition he shall be, shall be tried vntue, remisse, negligent, or unprofitable in or about his office in the voyage, or not to do his duty in his charge accordingly, then every such officer to be punished or remooved at the discretion of the Captaine and assistants, of the most part of them, and the person so remooved not to be repented, accepted, or taken from the time of his remoouing, any more for an officer, but to remaine in such condition and place, as hee shall be assigned vnto, and none of the companie to resist such chastisement or worthy punishment, as shall be ministered to him moderately, according to the fault or desert of his offence, after the lawes and common customes of the sea, in such cases heretofore used and observed.

11 Item, if any Partner or officer inferior shall be found by his labour not meete nor worthy the place that he is presently shipped for, such person may be whipped and put on lande at any place within the kings Maiesties realme & dominion, and any other person more able & worthy to be put in his place, at the discretion of the Captaine and matters, & order to be taken that the partie dismissed shall be allowed proportionably, the value of that hee shall have deserved to the time of his dismissal or discharge, & he to give order with sureties, pawns, or other assurance, to repay the overplus of that hee shall have receiued, which he shall not have deserved, & such wages to be made with the partie newly placed as shall be thought reasonable, & he to haue the furniture of all such necessaries as were prepared for the partie dismissed, according to right and conscience.

12 Item, that no blaspheming of God, or detestable swearing be vsed... in any ship, nor communication of ribaldrye, filthy tales, or vngodly talke to be suffered in the company of any ship, neither dicing, carding, rabling, nor other vile games to be frequented, whereby ensueth not onely pueritie to the players, but also strife, variance, brawling, fighting, and oftentimes murder to the utter destruction of the parties, and prowoking of Gods most full wrath, and sword of vengeance. These and all such like peccances, and corractions of vice, and sinnes to be eschewed, and the offenders once monished, and not reforming, to be punished at the discretion of the Captaine and matter, as appertaineth.

13 Item, that morning and evening prayer, with other common seruices appointed by the kings Maiestie, and lawes of this Realme to be read and said in every ship daily by the minister in the Admirall, and the marchant or some other person learned in other ships, and the Bible or psalms, to be read deuoutly and Christianly to Gods honour, and for his grace to be obtained, and had by humble and heartie prayer of the Nauigants accordingly.

14 Item that every officer is to be charged by inuentorie with the particulars of his charge, and to render a perfect account of the distraying of the same together with modest and temperate dispending of powder, shot, and vse of all kinde of artillerie, which is not to be misused, but diligently to be preferred for the necessarie defence of the fleet and voyage, together with due keeping of all instruments of your Nauigation, and other requisites.

15 Item, no liquors to be spilt on the balast, nor stichins to be left within boord; the cooke room, and all other places to be kept cleane for the better health of the companie, the gromets & pages to be brought vp according to the laudable order and vse of the sea, as well in learning of Nauigation, as in exercising of that which to them appertaineth.

16 Item, the liuries in apparel given to the mariners, to be kept by the Marchants, and not to be worne, but by the order of the Captaine. When hee shall see cause to muster of the woe them in good array, for the advancement and honour of the voyage, and the liuries to be redelivered to the keeping of the marchants, vntill it shall be thought comenient for every person to haue the full vse of his garment.

17 Item, when any Partner or any other passenger shall haue neede of any necessarie furniture of apparell for his body, and conseruation of his health, the same shall be deliuered him by the Marchant, at the assignment of the Captaine and Master of that shippe, wherein such neede persons shall be, at such reasonable price as the same cost, without any gaine to be exacted by

the captain General in  
me to doe of chuse to be done

give and render to the Cap  
shall receive requite, a m  
h, b' her, meate of bread, as  
nder their charge, and they  
mpossible exerce be more

dition he shall be, shall be tried  
age, or not to die himselfe  
prouced at the discretion of  
remoued not to bee repa  
ficer, but to remaine in such  
pantie to redit such chasit  
a cropping to the fault of  
a such cases heretofore

hour not meete nor worke  
ped and put on lande at any  
person more able & worke  
der to be taken that the p  
pauze deserued to the time  
eher assurance, to repay the  
n, & such wages to be made  
ue the furniture of all such  
e and confidence.

rt... my ship, nor comm  
onny any of any ship, neither  
ereby ensuew not onely p  
rentimes murder to the w  
and sword of vengeance,  
s to be eschewed, and the d  
of the Capitaine and ma

seruices appointed by the  
ship dayly by the minis  
r ships, and the Bible of p  
for his grace to be obtained,

particulars of his charge,  
with modest and temperate  
to be misused, but diligend  
gether with due keeping of

bin booy: the rooke roome,  
ante, the gronats & pages  
del in learning of Nauig

by the Sparchar: s, and not  
to muster of the we them in  
ries to be redwarred to the  
p person to haue the full de

of any necessarie furniture  
bee deliuered him by the  
eppie, wherein such neede  
any gaine to bee sparce  
by

by the marchants, the value thereof to be entered by the marchant in his booke, and the same to be intimated of the parties wages, that so shall receive, and wear the same.

18. Item the sick, diseas'd, weake, and distred person within booy, to be tended, relieved, comforted, and holpen in the time of his infirmite, and every manner of person, without respect, to beate anothers burden, and no man to refuse such labour as shall be put to him, for the most behoofe, and publick wealth of the voyage, and enterprise, to be achieved exactly.

19. Item if any person shall fortune to die, or miscary in the voyage, such apparell, and other goods, as he shall haue at the time of his death, is to be kept by the order of the Capitaine, and officer of the shippe, and an inventory to be made of it, and conserved to the use of his wife, and children, or otherwise according to his mind, and wil, and the day of his death to be entered in the Sparchar: s, and other warres booke: to the intent it may be knowen what wages he shall haue deserued to his death, and what shall rest due to him.

20. Item that the Sparchar: s appointed for this present voyage, shall not make any sale of any kind of Sparchar: s, or open their commodities to any foreign princes, or any of their subiects, without the consente, p'uisite, or agreement of the Capitaine, the cape Sparchar: s, and the assistants, or soure of them, whereof the Capitaine General, the Pilot Major, and cape Sparchar: s, to be the, and every of the partie Sparchar: s to heve his reckoning to the Cape Sparchar: s, when they, or any of them shall be required: and no commutation of trucke to be made by any of the partie Sparchar: s, without the assent abouersaid: and all wares, and commodities trucked, bought, or giuen to the companie, by way of marchandise, trucke, or any other respect, to be broken by the Sparchar: s, and to be well oyled, packed, and conserved in one Haulle entire, and not to be broken or altered, untill the shipped shall returne to the right discharges, and in receipt of all goods, wares, and marchandizes so trucked, bought, or otherwise dispended, to be presented to the Governour, Consul, and Assistants in London, in good order, to the intent the Kings Office may be truly answered of that which to his grace by his grant of corporation is limited, according to our most bound duties, and the whole companie also to haue that which by right vnto them appertaineth, and no embezement shall be used, but the truth of the whole voyage to be open, to the common wealth and benefite of the whole companie, and myserie, as appertaineth, without guile, fraude, or male engine.

King of  
warre  
ration.

21. Item no particular person, to hinder or prejudice the common stocke of the companie, in sale or p'rement of his owne proper wares, and things, and no particular emergent or purchase to be employed to any seuerall p'ofite, untill the common stocke of the companie shall be furnished, and no person to hinder the common benefite in such purchases or conuengences, as shall p'p'ortune to any one of them, by his owne proper pollicie, industrie, or chance, nor no contention to rise in that behalf, by any occasion of felwell, stone, pearles, pretious mettals, or other things of the region, where it shall chance the same to rise, or to be found, bought, trucked, p'ermuted, or giuen to any person to be bounden in such case, and upon such occasion, by order, and direction, as the Generall, Capitaine, and the Councell shall establish and determine, to whose order and discretion the same is left: for that of things vncertaine, no certaine rules may or can be giuen.

22. Item not to disclose to any nation, the state of our religion, but to passe it over in silence, without any declaration of it, seeming to beare with such lawes, and rites, as the place hath, where you shall arrive.

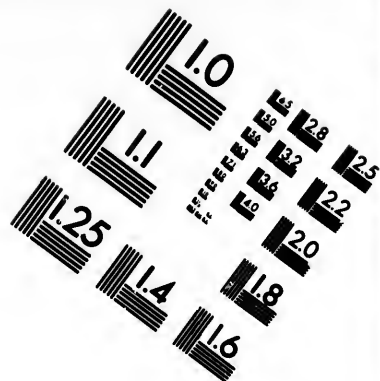
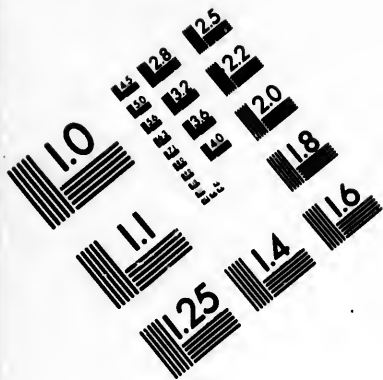
23. Item for as much as our people, and shippes, may appeare vnto them strange and vncouth, and their also to ours: it is to be considered, howe they may be v'ed, learning knowe of their natures, and dispositions, by some one such person, as you may first either allure, or take to be brought aboord your shippes, and there to learne as you may, without violence or force, and no woman to be temptred, or intreated to incontinencie, or dishonellie.

24. Item the person so taken, to be well entertained, v'ed, and apparell'd, to be set on land, to the intent that he, or she may assure other to v'atue nigh to shewe the commodities: and if the person taken, may be made dumbe with your beere, or wine, you shall knowe the secrets of his heart.

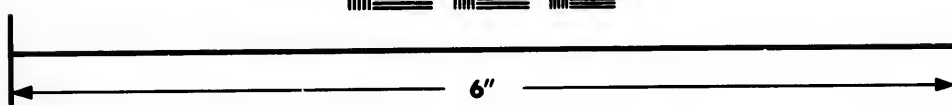
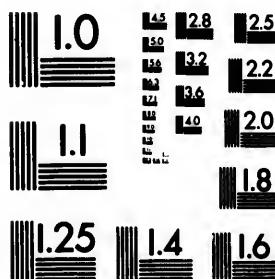
25. Item our people may not passe further into a land, then that they may be able to recouer their p'p'rieties, or shippes, & not to reuolt the faire wayes of the strange people, which be many times cruel, subtle, and false, nor to be v'atue into perill of losse, for the desire of golde, siluer, or riches, and likewise your owne commodities aboute all together, and in commengance thereto not much to desire the foreign commodities: neuerthelesse take them as for friendship, or by way of p'ermutation.

26. Item every nation and region is to be considered abuisedly, and not to p'prouke them by any v'abaine, laughing, contemp't, or such like, but to vse them with prudent circumspection, with all gentleness, and curtelie, and not to tary long in one place, untill you shall haue attained the most  
worke





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

5  
1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0

10  
11  
12  
15  
20

worthy place & may be found in such sort as you may returne in victuals sufficient, prosperously.

27. Item the names of the people of every Island, are to be taken in writing, with the commodities, and incommodities of the same their natures, qualities, and dispositions, the size of the same, and what things they are most desirous of, and what commodities they will most willingly depart th, & what metals they haue in hills, mountaines, streames, or riuers, in, or vnder the earth.

28. Item if people shall appeare gathering of stones, golde, metall, or other like, on the same, your priuities may vnto night, making what things they gather, vnto of playing vpon the sponne, or such other instruments, as may allure them to harkeuing to farrate, or desire to see, and heare your instruments, and votes, but keepe you out of danger, and the way to them no point of signe of rigour, or hostilitie.

29. Item if you shall be invited into any Lords or Rulers house, to dinner, or other parlance, goe in such order of strength, that you may be stronger then they, and be warie of woods, and bushes, and that your weapons be not out of your possessions.

30. Item if you shall see them weare Lions or Beares skines, hauing long bowes, and arrows, be not afraid of that sight: for such be wyse often times moze to feare strangers, then in any other cause.

31. Item there are people, that can swimme in the sea, hauens, & riuers, naked, hauing bowes and shafts, couering to vnto night your ships, which if they shall find not well watched, or watched, they will assault, desirous of the bodies of men, which they couet for meate: if you resist them, they dye, and so will flee, and therefore diligent watch is to be kept both day & night, in some Islands.

32. Item if occasion shall serue, that you may giue aduertisements of your proceedings in such things as may correspond to the expectation of the company, and likelihood of successe in the voyage, passing such dangers of the seas, perils of ice, incollerable coldes, and other impediments, which by sundry authors & writers, haue mislaid matter of suspicion in some heads, that this voyage could not succede for the extremitie of the North pole, lacke of passage, & such like, which haue caused waivering minds, and doubtful heads, not onely to withdraue themselves from the aduenture of this voyage, but also dissuaded others from the same, the certaintie whereof, when you shall haue tried by experience (most certaine spatter of all worldly knowledge) then for declaration of the crueltie which you shall haue experienced, you may by common assent of counsell, sende either by land, or waterways, such two or one person, to bring the same by credite, as you shall thinke may passe in safetie: which sending is not to be done, but vpon urgent causes, in likely successe of the voyage, in finding of passage, in towardlines of beneficiall traffike, or such other like, whereby the companie being aduertised of your estates and proceedings, may further prouide, soyle, and determine that, which may seeme most good and beneficiall for the publike wealthe of the same: either prouiding before hand such things, as shall be requisite for the continuance of the voyage, or els otherwise to dispose, as occasion shall serue: in which things your wisdomes and discretions are to be vsed, and the words, and the contents of this capitule, by you much to be pondered, in that you be not ignorant, how many persons, as wel the kings of Spaine, the Lords of his honorable Counsell, this whole companie, as also your wiues, children, kinsfolkes, allies, friends, and familiars, be replenished in their hearts with ardent desire to learne and know your estates, conditions, and wellfares, and in what likelihood you be in, to obtaine this notable enterprise, which is to yet no lesse to succede to you, then the Orient and Occident Indiae haue to the high benefit of the Emperour, and kings of Portugal, whose subiects industries, and traualles by sea, haue enriched them, by those lands and Islands, which were to all Cosmographers, and other writers both unknowne, and also by apparances of reasonboide of experience thought and reputed inhabitable for extremities of heates, and coldes, and yet in deepe tried most rich, peoples, temperate, and so comonious, as all Europe hath not the like.

33. Item no conspiracies, parttakings, factions, false tales, vntreue reports, which be the very seedes, & frutes of contention, discorde, and confusion, by euil tongues, to be suffered, but the same, & all other vngodlines, to be chastised charitably with brotherly loue, and alwaies obedience to be vsed, and practised by al persons in their degrees, not onely for dutie, and conscience sake to our Lord God, vnder whose mercifull hand nauigants aboue all other creatures, naturally be most high, and vicine, but also for prudent and worldly policie, and publike weale, conseruing and alwaies hauing present in your mindes that you be all one most royall kings subiects, and naturals, with daily remembrance of the great importance of the voyage, the honour, glorie, profite, and benefite that depend of, and vpon the same, toward the common wealthe of this noble Realme, the aduancement of you the travelers therein, your wiues, and children, and so to embowen your selues as that you may satisfie the expectation of them, who at their great costes, charges, and expenses,

vicinals sufficient, prosperously, taken in buying, with the rans, and disposition, the like of the bodies they will most willingly, of rivers, in, or under the earth, metall, or other like, on the same, or using of playing upon the mining to fantasia, or desire to see, ger, and shewe to them no point

ase, to dinner, or other parlance, and be warts of woods, and any nes, having long bowes, and an voye to feare strangers, then for a

s. & rivers, naked, having bowes and not well watchen, or warden, of meate: if you resist them, they each day & night, in some Islands, of your proceedings in such likelihood of successe in the voye, oldes, and other impediments, suspicion in some heabs, that this che of passage, & such like, which which to themselves from the as

the certaintie whereof, when you ly knowledge) then for declaracion common assent of counsell, some crime by credit, as you shal thinke urgent causes, in likely successe of adlike, or such other like, whereby may further provide, forrest, and the publike weale of the same: of the continuance of the voyage, as your wisdomes and discrecion by you much to be pondered, by Patricke, the Lords of his honours kinfolkes, allies, friends, and so on, and knowe your estates, countrie is notable enterraine, which is to have to the high benefite of the and traualles by sea, have riches, wbers, and other wnters both inough and reputed inhabitable b, peoples, semperate, and so com

verue reports, which be the very gues to be suffred, but the same, and allwaies obedience to be vatic, and conscience sake to ward nature, naturally be most might, weale, considering and allowed king's subjects, and naturals, with honour, glorie, peace, and benechall of this noble Realme, the cheltyen, and so to endeavor your great colles, charges, and expensas,

expensas have so furnished you in good sort, and plentie of all necessaries, as the like was never in any Realme seen, used; or knowen requisite and needfull, for such an exploit, which is most likely to be achieved, and brought to good effect, if every person in his vocation, shall endeavour himselfe according to his charge, and most bounden dutie: praying the living God, to give you his grace, so accomplish your charge to his glorie, whose merittfull hand shall prosper your voyage, and preserve you from all dangers.

In witness whereof, Sebastian Cabota, Governour aforesaid, to these present ordinances have subscribed my name and put my seale, the day and yeere above written.

The names of the twelue Counsellors appointed in this voyage.

- 1 Sir Hugh Willoughbie Knight, Captaine Generall.
  - 2 Richard Chancelor Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, and Pilot generall of the fleet.
  - 3 George Burton Cape Marchant.
  - 4 Master Richard Stafford Minister.
  - 5 Thomas Langlie Marchant.
  - 6 James Dalabere Gentleman.
  - 7 William Gesserion Master of the Bona Speranza Admirall.
  - 8 Stephen Burrough Master of the Edward Bonaventure.
  - 9 Cornelius Durfirth Master of the Confidentia.
  - 10 Roger Wilson.
  - 11 John Buckland.
  - 12 Richard Ingram.
- } Masters mate.

Exemplar Epistolæ seu literarum Misiviarum, quas illustrissimus Princeps Eduardus, eius nominis Sextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, misit ad Principes septentrionalem, ac Orientalem mundi plagam inhabitantes iuxta mare glaciale, nec non Indiam Orientalem. Anno Domini 1553. Regni sui anno septimo, & vltimo.



**E**duardus sextus, Angliæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex, &c. Omnibus Regibus & principibus ac dominis, & cunctis Iudicibus terræ, & Ducibus eius, quibuscumque est excellens aliqua dignitas in ea, cunctis in locis quæ sunt sub vniuerso caelo: Pax, tranquillitas, & honor vobis, terris, & regionibus vestris quæ imperio vestro subiacent, cuique vestrum quemadmodum conuenit ei. Propterea quod indidit Deus Opt. Max. hominibus præ cunctis aliis viuentibus, cor & desiderium tale, vt appetat quisque cum aliis societatem habere, amare, & vicissim amari, beneficijs afficere, & mutua accipere beneficia studeat, id eo cuique pro facultate sua hoc desiderium in omnibus quidem hominibus beneficijs fouere & conseruare conuenit, in illis autem maxime, qui hoc desiderio adducti, à remotis etiam regionibus ad eos veniunt. Quo enim longius iter eius rei gratia ingressi sunt, eo ardentius in eis hoc desiderium fuisse declarant. Insuper etiam ad hoc, nos patrum maiorumque nostrorum exempla inuitant, qui semper humanissime susceperunt, & benignissime tractauerunt illos, qui tum à locis propinquis, tum à remotis, eos amice adibant, eorum se protectioni commendantes. Quod si omnibus id præ stare æquum est, certe mercatoribus imprimis præstari debet, qui per vniuersum orbem discurrunt, mare circumnaustrantes & aridam, vt res bonas & viles, quæ Dei beneficium in regione eorum inueniuntur, ad remotissimas regiones & regna adferant, atque inde vicissim referant, quod suæ regioni vtile ibi repererint: vt & populi ad quos eunt, non destituantur commodis quæ non profert illis terra eorum, & ipsi sint participes rerum quibus illi abundant. Nam Deus cæli & terræ humano generi maxime consulens, noluit vt omnia in qualis regione inuenirentur, quò regio ope alterius regionis indigeret, & gens ab alia gente commo dum aliquod expectaret, ac ita stabiliiretur amicitia inter omnes, singulisque omnibus beneficijs quærenter. Hoc itaque incunde, ac stabiliendæ amicitij desiderio moti viri quidam regni nostri, in remotas maritimas regiones instituerunt, vt inter nostros & illos populos, vicijs & mercibus inferendis & efferendis aperirent, nosque rogauerunt vt id illis concederemus. Qui petitioni

petitioni illorum annuentes, concessimus viro honorabili & forti, Hugoni Wilbeo, & alijs qui cum eo sunt seruis nostris fidei & charis, vt pro sua voluntate, in regiones eis prius incognitas eant, quæ situri ea quibus nos caremus, & adducant illis ex nostris terris, id quo illi carent. Atque ita illis & nobis commodum inde accedat, sitque amicitia perpetua, & fœdus indissolubile inter illos & nos, dum permittent illi nos accipere de rebus, quibus superabundant in regionis suis, & nos concedemus illis ex regnis nostris res, quibus deficiuntur. Rogamus itaque vos Reges & Principes, & omnes quibus aliqua est potestas in terra, vt virtus istis nostris, transitum permittatis per regiones vestras. Non enim tangent quicquam ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis. Cogitate quod homines & ipsi sunt. Et si qua re caruerint, oramus pro vestra beneficentia, cum vos illis tribuatis, accipientes vicissim ab eis, quod poterunt rependere vobis. Ita vos gerite erga eos, quemadmodum cuperitis vt nos, & subditi nostri, nos gereremus erga seruos vestros, si quando transferint per regiones nostras. Atque promittimus vobis per Deum omnium quæ celo, terra & mari continentur, perque vitam nostram, & tranquillitatem regnorum nostrorum, nos pari benignitate seruos vestros accepturos, si ad regna nostra aliquando venerint. Atque à nobis & subditis nostris, ac si nati fuissent in regnis nostris ita benigne tractabuntur, vt rependamus vobis benignitatem, quam nostris exhibueritis. Postquam vos Reges, Principes, &c. rogauimus, vt humanitate & beneficentia omni prosequamini seruos nostros nobis charos, oramus omnipotentem Deum nostrum, vt vobis diurnam vitam largiatur, & pacem que nullam habeat finem. Scriptum Londini, quæ ciuitas est primaria regni nostri. Anno 5515, à creato mundo, mense Iar, 14. die mensis, anno septimo regni nostri.

### The copie of the letters missiue, which the right noble Prince

*Edward the sixt sent to the Kings, Princes, and other Potentates, inhabiting the Northeatt partes of the world, toward the mightie Empire of Cathay,*

at such time as Sir Hugh Willoughby knight, and Richard Chancelor, with their companie, attempted their voyage thither in the yeere of

Christ, 1553. and the seuenth and last yeere of

his raigne.



**E**dward the sixt, by the grace of God, King of England, France, and Ireland, &c. To all Kings, Princes, Rulers, Judges, and Governours of the earth, and all other hauing any excellent dignitie on the same, in all places vnder the vniuersall heauen: peace, tranquillitie, and honour, be vnto you, and your lands and regions, which are vnder your dominions, and to euery of you, as is comement.

Forasmuch as the great and Almighty God hath giuen vnto mankind, aboue all other living creatures, such a heart and desire, that euery man desireth to ioyne friendship with other, to loue, and be loued, also to giue and receaue mutuall benefites: it is therefore the duetie of all men, according to their power, to maintaine and increase this desire in euery man, with well desiring to all men, and especially to the we this good affection to such, as being moued with this desire, come vnto them from farre Countreies. For howe much the longer voyage they haue attempted for this intent, so much the more doe they thereby declare that this desire hath bene ardent in them. Furthermore also, the examples of our fathers and predecessors doe inuite vs hereto, forasmuch as they haue euer gently and louingly intreated such as of friendly minde came to them, as well from Countreies neere hand, as farre remote, commending themselves to their protection. And if it be right and equitie to thewe such humanitie toward all men, doubtles the same ought chiefly to be the wep to Harribants, who wandering about the world, search both the land and the sea, to carry such good and profitable things, as are found in their Countreies, to remote regions and kingdomes, and againe to bring from the same, such things as they finde their commodious for their owne Countreies: both as well that the people, to whom they goe, may not be destitute of such commodities as their Countreies bring not foorth to them, as that also they may be partakers of such things, wherof they abound. For the God of heauen and earth, greatly prouiding for mankind, would not that all things should be founde in or giuen, to the ende that one should haue neede of another: that by this means friendship might be established among all men, and euery one seeke to grauntie all. For the establishing and furtherance of which vniuersall amitie, certayne men of our Realme, moued herewith by the same desire, haue intreated and taken vpon them a voyage by sea into farre Countreies, to the intent that betwixte our people and them, a way may be opened to bring in, & carry out marchandise



... , Hagoni Wilbeo, & alij in regiones eis prius incognitas terris, id quo illi carere perpetua, & fecus indissolubilibus superabundant in reguntur. Rogamus itaque vos ut viris istis nostris, transsum ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis, sicut pro vestra beneficentia, committimus vobis. Ita vos gerere ceteremus erga seruos vestros, sicut vobis per Deum omnium quae utilitatem regionum nostrorum a nostra aliquando venient, sicut ita benigne tractabuntur, sicut sicutquam vos Reges, Principes, & alij seruos nostros nobis charitativam largiatur, & pacem quae a regni nostri. Anno 5515. nostri.

right noble Prince  
other Potentates, inhabiting the Empire of Cathay, the hard Chancellor, with in the yeere of

England, France, and Ireland, and Governours of the earth, the same, in all places under the your, be unto you, and your lands, and to every of you, as is com-

mankind, aboute all other thinge friendship with other, to love, therefore the duetie of all men, every man, with well defending being moved with this desire, longer voyage they have attempted this desire hath bene ardent in excessions doe invite us hereunto, as of friendly minde came to sending themselves to their part toward all men, doubtlesse the about the world, search both the found in their Countreies, to the such things as they finde there able, to whome they goe, may not worth to them, as that also they God of heauen and earth, great be founde in our gion, to the names friendship might be. For the establishing and further, moved hereunto by the hard so farre Countreies, to the bringing in, & carry out marchant

... des, desiring us to further their enterpryse. Also assenting to their petition, have licensed the right valiant and worthy sir Hugh Willoughby, knight, and other our trustie and faithfull servants, which are with him, according to their desire, to goe to Countreies to them heretofore unknowne, as well to seeke such things as we lacke, as also to carry unto them from our regions, such things as they lacke. So that hereby not onely commoditie may ensue both to them and us, but also an indissoluble and perpetuall league of friendship be established betwene us both, while they permit us to take of their things, such whereof they have abundance in their regions, and we againe grant them such things of ours, whereof they are destitute. We therefore desire you kings & princes, and al other, to whome there is any power on the earth, to permit unto these our servants, free passage by your regions and dominions: for they shall not touch any thing of yours buttelling unto you. Consider you that they also are men. If therefore they shall stand in neede of any thing, we desire you of all humanitie, and for the nobilitie which is in you, to aide and helpe them with such things as they lacke, receiving againe of them such things as they shall be able to give you in recompence. Show your selves so towards them, as you would that we and our subiects should receive our selves towards your servants, if at any time they shall passe by our regions.

Thus doing, we promise you by the God of all things that are contained in heauen, earth, and the sea, and by the life and tranquillitie of our kingdomes, that we will with like humanitie accept your servants, if at any time they shall come to our kingdomes, where they shall as friendly and gently be entertained, as if they were borne in our Dominions, that we may hereby recompence the favour and benignitie which you have shewed to our men. Thus after we have desired you Kings and princes, &c. With all humanitie and favour, to entertaine our welbelovied servants, we will pray our Almighty God, to grant you long life, and peace, which never shall have ende. Written in London, which is the chiefe Citie of our kingdome, in the yeere from the creation of the world, 5515. in the moneth of Ihar, the fourteenth day of the moneth, and seventh yeere of our raigne.

This letter was written also in Greeke, and diuers other languages.

The true copie of a note found written in one of the two ships, to wit, the Speranza, which wintred in Lappia, where sir Hugh Willoughby, and all his companie died, being frozen to death. Anno 1553.



The voyage intended for the discoverie of Cathay, and diuers other regions, dominions, Islands, and places unknowne, set forth by the right worshipfull, Master Sebastian Cabota, Esquire, and Governour of the mysterie and companie of the Marchants Adventurers of the Citie of London: which flecte being furnished, did set forth the tenth day of May, 1553. and in the seventh yeere of our most dread Soueraigne Lord, and King, Edward the sixt.

The names of the shippes of the flecte, and of their burden, together with the names of the Captaines, and Counsellors, Pilot Maior, Masters of the shippes, Marchants, with other officers, and Marriners, as hereafter followeth.

The Bona Esperanza, Admirall of the flecte, of 120. tunnes, hauing with her a pinnet, and a boat.

Sir Hugh Willoughby, knight, Captaine Generall of the flecte.

William Gefferson, Master of the Shippe.

Roger Wilson, his Mate.

William Gittons, Charles Barret, Gabriel Willoughby, John Andrewes, Alexander Woodford, Ralfe Chatterton, Marchants.

Marriners and officers according to the custome, and vse of the Seas,

John Brooke, Master Gunner.

Nicholas Anthony, Boate swaine.

John VVeb, his Mate.

Christopher Banbrucke, Thomas Dauison, Robert Rosse, Thomas Simpson, quarter Masters.

William VVhite, James Smith, Thomas Painter, John Smith, their Mates.

Richard Gwinne, George Goufwin, Carpenters,

Robert

Mar. I would read this, that is, in the Arabicke language, mixt of Turkish and Egyptian, & which is interpreted by them the ninth day of the month to the sea

Robert Gwinne, *Butler*,  
 Laurence Edwards, *his Mate, and Cooper*,  
 Richard Morgan, *Cook*,  
 Thomas Nashe, *his Mate*,  
 VVilliam Light, John Brande, Cumber Chelise, George Blage, Thomas VValker, Thomas  
 Allen, Edward Smith, Edward Hunt, John Fawknor, Rowland Brooke,  
 Alexander Gardiner, Richard Molton, *Surgeons, which two were taken in at Harwicke,*  
*Discharged at Harwicke, by reason of sickness, George Blake, Nicholas Anthony,*  
*For pickerie ducked at the yarde arme, and so discharged Thomas Nashe.*  
 The Edward Bonauenture, of 160, tunnes, with her a pinnelle, and a boate,  
 Richard Chancellor, *Captaine, and Pilot* *Maioy of the fleet.*  
 Stephen Burrough, *Maister of the shipp.*  
 John Buckland, *his Mate.*  
 George Burton, Arthur Edwards, *Partchants,*  
 John Stafford, *Spinniler.*  
 James Dallaber, Nicholas Newbarrow, John Segswike, Thomas Francis, John Haff, Ri-  
 chard Iohnson, VVilliam Kempe.

Marriners and officers, according to the custome and vie of the Seas.

Robert Stanton, *Maister Gunner.*  
 John VValker, *his Mate.*  
 Iames Longe, John Cocks, *Gunnets.*  
 Thomas VValter, *Surgeon.*  
 Peter Palmer, *Boatswaine.*  
 Richard Strowde, *his Mate.*  
 John Robinsou, John Carowe, Thomas Stone, Robert Lisbie, *quarter Masters.*  
 John Austen, *Steward:* Patricke Steuens, *his Mate.*  
 Austen Iacks, *Cook.*  
 VVilliam Euery, *Cooper.*  
 Griffin VVaghams, *Carpenter.*  
 Thomas Scellton, Thomas Townes, John Robinsou, John White, William Laurence, Mica-  
 butter, John Browne, William Morren, William Waton, Thomas Handcocks, Edward Pa-  
 cie, Thomas Browne, Arthur Pet, George Phibaric, Edward Patterfon, William Beare, John  
 Potter, Nicholas Lawrence, William Burrough, Roger Welford, John Williams,

*William Burrough, notice  
 Clarke of her  
 Quantities na-  
 me.*  
*The shipps ship*

The Bona Confidentia, of 90, tunnes, having with her a pinnelle, and a boate,  
 Cornelius Durfoorth, *Maister of the shippe.*  
 Richard Ingram, *his Mate.*  
 Thomas Langlic, Edward Keuer, Henrie Dorset, *Partchants.*

Mariners and officers, according to the vie and customes of the Seas.

Henrie Tailer, *Maister Gunner.*  
 George Thurland, *his Mate.*  
 William Hamane, *Boatswaine,*  
 John Edwards, *his Mate,*  
 Thomas Kirbie, Henrie Dickenson, John Hays, William Shepwash, *quarter Masters.*  
 John Reine, *Steward,*  
 Thomas Hante, *Cook.* William Laffie, *his Mate.*  
 Nicholas Knight, *Carpenter.*  
 Peter Lewike, Nicholas Wiggleworth, John Moore, William Chapman, Brian Chelie,  
 William Barrie, Richard Wood, Clement Gibfon, John Clarocke, Erasmus Bently, John Du-  
 forth.

The Iuramentum, or othe, ministred to the Captaine.

**Y**OU shall sweare to be a faithfull, true, and loyall subiect in all pointes and duties, due to a sub-  
 iect appertaining to our Soueraigne Lord, the Kings Maestie, his heires, and successors,  
 that you shall wel and truly, to the uttermost of your capacite, wit, and knowledge, serve this pre-  
 sent voyage, committed to your charge, and not to give up, nor sooner intermit the same, until you  
 shall have achieved the same, so farre forth, as you may without danger of your life, and limb  
 of the fleet: you shall give good, true, and faithfull counsell to the said societie, and to such as shall  
 be

lage, Thomas Walker, Thomas  
Brooke.  
Two were taken in at Harwich.  
Nicholas Anthony.  
Thomas Nashe.  
messes, and a boate.

Thomas Francis, John Haff, R.  
and vice of the Seas.

Shibie, quarter Masters.

White, William Laurence, Miles  
Thomas Handcocks, Edward P.  
Patterfon, William Beare, John  
elford, John Williams.  
pinelle, and a boate.

customes of the Sea.

Shepwash, quarter Masters.

William Chapman, Brian Chelie,  
arocke, Erasmus Bently, John Du-

to the Captaine.

at all points and duties, that to a ship  
daietie, his beere, and succour  
e, wit, and knowledge, serve this  
sooner intermit the same, will  
without danger of your life, and  
to the said societie, and so forth.

have the charge w<sup>th</sup> or vnder you, and not to disclose the secrets, or privities of the same to any  
person by any manner of meane, to the prejudice, hurt, or damage of it. You shall minister iustice to  
all men vnder your charge, without respect of person, or any affection, that might mooue you to de-  
cline from the true ministracion of iustice. And further, you shall obserue, and cause to be obserued,  
as much as in you lieth, all and singular such rules, articles, p<sup>ro</sup>visions hitherto made, or hereafter  
to be made for the preservation of safeconduict of the fleet and boyage, and benefit of the company.  
You shall not permit nor suffer the stocke of goods of the company to be wasted, imbezeld, or con-  
sumed, but shall conferre the same whole and entyre, without diminishment, untill you shall have  
deliuered, or cause to be deliuered the same, to the vse of the company. And finally you shall vse  
your selfe in all points, soyes, and conditions, as to a faithfull captaine, and by order of this company  
shall belong and appertaine: So helpe you God, &c.

### The othe ministred to the Maister of the shippe, &c.



Thou shalt sweare by the holy conuents in that booke, that you according, and to  
the vettermost of your knowledg, and good vnderstanding in mariners science  
and craft, shall in your vocation doe your best to conduct the good shippe called  
the R. &c. whereof you now are Maister vnder God, both vnto and from the  
portes of your discouerie, and so vse your indetour and faithfull diligence, in  
charging, discharging, lading againe, and roomaging of the same shippe, as  
may be most for the benefit and profit of this righte worthyfull fellowship: and you shall not  
privilyly bargen, buy, sell, exchange, barter, or distribute any goods, wares, merchandize, or things  
whatsoeuer (necessarie tackles and vittualles for the shippe onely excepted) to or for your owne lu-  
cre, gaine or profit, neither to nor for the private lucre, gaine, or profit of any other person or per-  
sons whatsoeuer. And further. If you shall know any boatswaine, mariner, or any other person or  
persons whatsoeuer, to buy, sell, barter, trucke, or exchange any goods, wares, merchandizes, or  
things for private account, reckoning or behalfe, you shall doe your best to withstand and let the  
same: and if you can not commodiously so doe, that then before the discharge of such goods bought  
for private account, you shall giue knowledg thereof to the Cape merchant of this said fellowship for  
the time being. And you shall not receiue nor take, nor suffer to be receiued or taken into your said  
shippe during this boyage any maner person or persons whatsoeuer, going or returning, but one-  
ly those mariners which without fraud or guile shall be hyed to be of your company, and to serue  
in mariners craft and science onely: So helpe you God, &c.

These foresaid shippes being fully furnished with their pinnelles and boates, well appointed  
with all maner of artillery, and other things necessarie for their defence with all the men aforesaid,  
departed from Ratcliffe, and sailed vnto Dersforth, the 10 day of May, 1555.

The 11 day about two of the clocke, we departed from Dersforth, passing by Greenewich, salu-  
ting the kings Maiestie then being there, shooting off our ordnance, & so sailed vnto Blackewall,  
and there remained untill the 17 day, and that day in the morning we went from Blackewall, and  
came to Woolwich by nine of the clocke, and there remained one tide, and so the same night vnto  
Dersforth.

The 18 day from Dersforth vnto Grauesend, and there remained untill the twentieth day: that  
day being Saturday, from Grauesend vnto Tilberie Hope, remaining there untill the thw and  
thwentieth day.

The 22 day from Tilberie Hope to Hollie hauen.  
The 23 day from Hollie hauen, till we came against Lee, and there remained that night, by  
reason that the winde was contrary to vs.

The 24 day the winde being in the Southwest in the morning, we sailed along the coast ouer  
the Spits, untill we came against S. Olyth, about five of the clocke at night, and there came to  
anker, and abode there all that night.

The 25 day about ten of the clocke, we departed from S. Olyth, and so sailed forward vnto  
the Haff, and there abode that night for winde and tide.

The 26 day at five of the clocke in the morning, we weped our anker, and sailed ouer the Haff,  
the winde being at the Southwest, untill we came to Parwill wandes, and there came to an anker,  
and abode there untill the 28 day.

The same day being Trinitie Sunday about 7 of the clocke before noone we weped our ankers,  
and

and sailed till we came adwarth Wallfurye, and there came to an anker.

The 29 day from thence to Holmehead, where we stayed that day, where we consulted which way, and what courtes were best to be holden for the discouerie of our voyage, and there agreed.

The 30 day of May at five of the clocke in the morning we set sail, and came against the mouth about three leagues into the sea, riding there at anker all that night.

The last of May into the sea five leagues North-east, and there carped that night, where the winde blew very soze.

June.

The first of June the winde being at North contrary to vs; we came backe againe to Harewell, and remained there vntill the 15 day, carping for the winde, for all this time the winde was contrary to our purpose.

The 15 day being at Harewell in the latitude of 52 degrees, in the morning we wayed our anchors, and went sooth into the wandes about two miles from the towne, and lay there that night.

The 16 day at eight of the clocke we set forward, and sailed vntill we came adwarth Alborough, and there stayed that night.

The 17 day about five of the clocke before noone we went backe vnto Orfordness, and there remained vntill the 19 day.

The 19 day at eight of the clocke in the morning we went backe to Harewell, and abode there three dayes tarrying for the winde.

The 23 day of June the winde being faire in the South-west we sailed into the seas to Orfordness, and from thence into the seas ten leagues North-east: then being past the sands, we changed our course five leagues North-north-east: about midnight we changed our course againe, and went due North continuing in the same vnto the 27 day.

The 27 day about seven of the clocke North-north-west 42 leagues, to the end to fall vnto Shetland: then the winde beared to the West, so that we could lie but North and by West, continuing in the same course 40 leagues, whereby we could not fetch Shetland: then we sailed North 16 leagues by estimation, after that North and by West, and North-north-west, then South-east, with diuers other courses, traueling and tracing the seas, by reason of stormie and manifold contrary windes, vntill the 14 day of July: and then the same entering into Leo, we discovered land Eastward of vs, vnto the which we sailed that night as much as we might: and after we went on shoze with our pinnelle, and found little houses to the number of 30, where we knewe that it was inhabited, but the people were fled away, as we iudged, for feare of vs.

July.

The land was all full of little Islands, and that innumerable, which were called (as we learned afterwards) Aegeland and Walgeland, which lieth from Orfordness North and by east, being in the latitude of 66 degrees. The distance betwene Orfordness and Aegeland 250 leagues. Then we sailed from thence 12 leagues North-west, and found many other Islands, and there came to an anker the 19 day, and named our pinnelle, and went on shoze to the Islands, and found people mowing and making of hay, which came to the shoze and welcomed vs. In which place were an innumerable sort of Islands, which were called the Isles of Ross, being vnder the dominion of the king of Denmarke: which place was in latitude 66 degrees, and 30 minurs. The winde being contrary, we remained there three dayes, and there was an innumerable sort of fowles of diuers kindes, of which we tooke very many.

In this land dwelt another, as it seemeth.

Ross Islands.

The 22 day the winde coming faire, we departed from Ross, sailing North-north-east, keeping the sea vntill the 27 day, and then we dyed nere vnto the land, which was still East of vs: then went sooth our pinnelle to seeke harbours, and found many good harbours, of the which we entered into one with our shippes, which was called Seansew, and the land being Islands, were called Lewfoot, or Lofoot, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being all vnder the king of Denmarke: but we could not learne how farre it was from the maine land, and we remained there vntill the 30 day, being in latitude 68 degrees, & from the foresaid Ross about 30 leagues North-north-east.

Seansew Harbour.

August.

The 30 day of July about noone we wayed our anchors, and went into the Seas, and sailed along these Islands North-north-east, keeping the land still in sight vntill the second day of August: then haling in close aboord the land, to the intent to knowe what lande it was, there came a skiffe of the Island aboord of vs, of whom we asked many questions, who shewed vnto vs, that the Island was called Synnam, which is the latitude of 69 degree, and from Seansew in thirtie leagues, being also vnder the king of Denmarke, and that there was no merchandise there, but onely dyed fish, and traime oyle. Then we being purposed to goe vnto Finmarke, inquired of him, if we might haue a pilot to bring vs vnto Finmarke, & he said, that if we could beare in, we should haue a good harbour, and on the next day a pilot to bring vs to Finmarke, vnto the which

Synnam.

...ker.  
 ...day, where we consulted which  
 ...our voyage, and there agreed  
 ...re sail, and came against Pe  
 ...e night.  
 ...rped that night, where the winde  
 ...we came backe againe to Har  
 ...for all this time the winde was  
 ...in the morning we wayed our an  
 ...we, and lay there that night.  
 ...ntill we came adwarth Albu  
 ...c into Olyfordelle, and there to  
 ...ke to Warewell, and above there  
 ...we hailed into the seas to Olyfo  
 ...being past the sands, we changed  
 ...red our course againe, and went  
 ...leagues, to the end to fall with  
 ...ie but North and by West, com  
 ...fecte Shetland: then we sailed  
 ...nd Northnorthwest, then South  
 ...reason of sundrie and manifold  
 ...ntering into Leo, we discouered  
 ...such as we might: and after we  
 ...mber of 30, where we knew the  
 ...fear of vs.  
 ...which were called (as we know  
 ...the same North and by east, being  
 ...elle and Eggeleand 250 leagues.  
 ...many other Ilandes, and there  
 ...in thoye to the Ilandes, and found  
 ...welcomed vs. In which place  
 ...of Ross, being under the domin  
 ...ees, and 30 minutes. The winde  
 ...numerable foxt of fowles of di  
 ...ff, sailing Northnortheast, had  
 ...which was still East of vs:  
 ...good harbours, of the which we  
 ...the land being Ilandes, were  
 ...very gentle people, being also  
 ...was from the maine land and  
 ...from the fore said Ross about  
 ...went into the Seas, and sailed a  
 ...till the second day of September  
 ...what lande it was, there came a  
 ...who shewed vnto vs, that the  
 ...rees, and from Seande with  
 ...was no merchandise there, but  
 ...unto Finmarke, inquired of him  
 ...if we could beare in, we should  
 ...Finmarke, vnto the wardens,  
 ...which

which is the strongest holde in Finmarke, and most resorted to by report. But when we would have entered into an harbour, the land being very high on every side, there came such floues of mist, and terrible whirlwindes, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were constrained to take the sea againe, our pinnesse being vnsuited: we sailed North and by East, the winde increasing so fast that we were not able to beare any sail, butooke them in, and lay a while, to the end to let the flame ouer passe, And that night by violence of winde, and thickenesse of mist, we were not able to keepe together within sight, and then about midnight we lost our pinnesse, which was a vnsuited vnto vs. Althow as it was day, and the fogge ouerpast, we looked about, and at the last we descried one of our shippes to Leeward of vs: then we spied an hallocke of our fore sail, and bare roome with her, which was the Confidence, but the Edward we could not see. When the flau somewhat abating, we and the Confidence hoisted by our sailes the fourth day, sailing Northeast and by North, to the end to fall with the Wardhouse, as we did consulte to do before, in case we should part company. Thus running Northeast and by North, and Northeast fiftie leagues, then we founden, and had 160 fadoms, where by we thought to be farre from land, and perceived that the land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our course the first day, and sailed South east and by South eight and forty leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Wardhouse.

Spa Hugh Willoughbie lost the sight of the Edward.

The eighth day much winde rising at the West Northwell, we not knowing how the coast lay, strooke our sailes, and lay adrift, where we founden, and found 160 fadoms as aforesaid.  
 The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South Southeast, we sailed Northeast 25 leagues.  
 The tenth day we founden, and could get no ground, neither yet could see any land, whereat we wondered: then the winde coming at the North east, we ranne Southeast about 48 leagues.  
 The 11 day, the winde being at South, we founden, and found 40 fadoms, and faire land.  
 The 12 day, the winde being at South and by East, we lay with our saile East, and East and by North 30 leagues.  
 The 14 day early in the morning, we descried land, which land we bare with all, holding out our boat to discouer what land it might be: but the boat could not come to land the water was so shoale, where was very much ice also, but there was no similitude of habitation, and this land lyeth from Spennam East and by North 160 leagues, being in latitude 72 degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward the 15, 16 and 17 day.  
 The 18 day, the winde coming at the North east, and the Confidence being troubled with high water, and Docked, we thought it good to seek a harbour for her remedie: then we bare toome the 18 day Southsoutheast, about 70 leagues.  
 The 21 day we founden, and found 10 fadome, after that we founden againe, and found but 7 fadome, so shoale and shoalder water, and yet could see no land, where we marvelled greatly: to a man the danger, we bare roome into the sea all that night Northwell and by West.  
 The next day we founden, and had 20 fadoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West Southwell until the 23 day: then we descried Lohse land, vnto which we bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared vnto vs inhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that land, which lyeth West Southwell, and East North east, and much winde blowing at the West, we hailed into the sea North and by East 30 leagues. Then the winde coming about at the North east, we sailed West North well: after that, the winde bearing to the Northwell, we lay with our sailes West Southwell, about 14 leagues, and then descried land, and bare in with it, being the 28 day, finding shoale water, and bare in till we came to 3 fadome, then perceiving it to be shoale water, and also seeing by the sands, we hailed out againe North east along that land but till we came to the point thereof. That land turning to the Westward, we ranne along 16 leagues Northwell: then coming into a fayre bay, we went on land with our boat, which place was uninhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had bene there, by crosses, and other signes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

North to this land, in 72 degrees.

The fourth day of September we lost sight of land, by reason of contrary windes, and the eighth day we descried land againe. Within two dayes after we lost the sight of it: then turning West and by South about 30 leagues, we gat the sight of land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiving it to be a lee shoare, we gat vs into the sea, to the end to haue sea roome.  
 The 12 of September we hailed to shoarward againe, hauing then in different winde and weather: then being neere vnto the shoare, and the tide almost spent, we ranne to an anchor in 30 fadoms water.  
 The 13 day we came along the coast, which lay Northwell & by West, & Southeast & by East.  
 The 14 day we came to an anchor within two leagues of the shoare, hauing 60 fadoms.

September.

There we went a Hoie with our boat, and found two or three good harbours, the land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The 15 day we came still along the coast till the 17 day: then the winde being contrary unto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the bay which we had found before, and so we bare roamer with the same, howbeit we could not accomplish our desire that day. The next day being the 18 of September, we entered into the haven, and there came to an anker at 6 fadoms. This haven runneth into the maine, about two leagues, and is in breadth halfe a league, wherein were very many leale fishes, and other great fishes, and vpon the maine we saw beares, great deere, foxes, with diuers strange beasts, as guloines, and such other which were to vs vnkno'wne, and also wonderfull. Thus remaining in this haven the space of a weeke, seeing the yeere farre spent, and also very euill wether, as frost, snow, and haile, as though it had bene the berpe of winter. we thought best to winter there. Wherefore we sent out three men Southwardwest, to search if they could finde people, who went three dayes iourney, but could finde none: after that, we sent other three Westward foure dayes iourney, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three men Southward three dayes iourney, who in like sort returned without finding of people, or any similitude of habitation.

In this haven  
they died.

101, Eltons.

Were embeth  
Sir Hugh  
Willoughbie  
his note, which  
was written  
with his owne  
hand.

These two notes following, were written vpon the outside of this Pamphlet, or Booke.

- 1 The proceedings of Sir Hugh Willoughbie after he was separated from the Edward Bouaenture.
- 2 Our Shippe being at an anker in the harbour called Stertier in the Island Lofootc.

The riuer of haven wherein Sir Hugh Willoughbie with the companie of his two Shippes perished for colde, is called Arzina in Lapland, neere vnto Kego.

### The Testimonie of M. Richard Eden in his Decades, concerning this Booke.

**A**ND whereas (saith he) I haue before made mention how Poscouie was in our time discovered, by Richard Chancellor in his voyage toward Cathay, by the direction and information of M. Sebastian Cabota, who long before had this secret in his minde: I shall not need here to describe that voyage, soasmuch as the same is largely and fully written in the Latine tongue, by that learned young man Clement Adams, Schoolemaister to the Queenes bestshemen, as he receiued it at the mouth of the said Richard Chancellor.

### Noua Anglorum, ad Moscouitas nauigatio Hugone Willowbeio Equite classis praeefecto, & Richardo Cancelero Nauarcho. Authore Clemente Adamo, Anglo.

Quas ob causas  
suscepit sit hec  
nauigatio, & qui-  
bus authoribus  
& de nauigati-  
one ad Mosco-  
uicorum fines,

**R**

ostquam merces nostras apud finitimas gentes fordere negotiatores nostri amaduuerunt, quæq; aorum nostrorum memoria certatim a peregrinis mercatoribus expeterent, imminuto iam precio, etiam exportatæ fastidiosum reperirent extorem, exoticarum verò mercium precia in immensum extenderentur, Londinenses quidam viri graues ac reipub. suæ imprimis amantes hanc cogitationem susceperunt, quò huic malo mederentur. Nec quærentibus (vt videbatur) remedium defuit, quo tantum incommodum declinarent. Nam cum Hispanorum ac Lusitanorum opes (inuentis nuper nouis terris) magnoperè auctas viderent, eandem viam sibi inuisitendam rati, nouam nauigationem institunt. Cum eodem tempore Sebastianus Cabota vir celeberrimus in vrbe moraretur, cœpère primo cum illo agere, ac serèdò consultare, ac re deinum inter plures iactata, tandem conuenit tres naues expedire, quibus a quilonaris mundi tractus diligenter perlustratus, nostris etiam pateret, atq; ad ignota regna viam patefaceret. Ad hanc rem tam arduam & difficilem, cum multa forent dispicienda, primum veluti in senatum quendam viros graues, ac prudentiæ spectatæ legunt, qui collatis consilijs sententias suas exponerent, & in omnem euentum salubriter prospicerent. Lectus hic senatulus censuit in rem fore quandam pecuniæ summam publicè cogi, qua tot naues instruerentur. Et ne quisquam priuatiæ graui pecunia premeretur, placuit vicenas quinas libras viritim colligi: (tantum enim impendebat qui in hoc quasi nouum collegium voluit ascisci.) Coacta itaq; ad sex millia librarum summa

Sebastianus  
Cabota.

Sex millia libra-  
rum coacta.

tres

good harbor, you shal, the land being  
we canne still along the coast  
it best to returne vnto the  
same, for heere we could not accom-  
moder, we entred into the bay, and  
the maine, about two leagues, and  
of other great fishes, and by the  
aid, as I haue obserued, and such other  
winning in this bayen the space of a  
month, and haue, as though I  
were here, we sent out three men  
the three dayes iourney, but could  
not iourney, which also returned with  
the three dayes iourney, who in like  
manner.

the outside of this

he was separated from the

and departed in the Island

the companie of his two shippes

in his Decades,

how Postouie was in our time  
ward Cathay, by the direction  
he had this letter in his minde: I  
as the same is largely and fully  
element Adams, schoolemaster to  
Richard Chancellor.

Hugone Willowbeio  
Nauarcho.

ordine negotiatores nostri  
certatim a peregrinis mercibus  
in exportatæ fastidiosum repe-  
tia in immensum extendenda  
æ imprimis amantes hanc co-  
erentibus (vt videbatur) reme-  
in Hispanorum ac Lusitanorum  
eandem viam sibi insistentem  
bastianus Cabota vir celeberrimus  
consultare, ac re deum inter  
monaris mundi tractus diligen-  
parat faceret. Ad hanc rem tam  
luti in senatum quendam viros  
sententias suas exponerent, & in  
sensuit in rem fore quandam  
ne quisquam priuatim graui-  
i: (tantum enim impendebat  
ad sex millia librarum summa  
res

tres naues mercantur, quarum maximam partem de integro ædificandam, ac reficiendam cu-  
rant. Qua quidem in re, mercatorum cura, an fabricarum diligentia, maiori me afficiat ad-  
miracione, penitus est incertum. Illi enim assamenta firmissima pulchreque; siccata ad nauium  
fabricam comparant: hi in defesso labore, ac arte summa, eadem inter se committunt, rimis stu-  
pe obstructis, ac carinis picatis, vnus etiam imam partem inuento peracri, & ingenioso muni-  
uerunt. Acceperant enim in quibusdam Oceani partibus teredines generari, quæ vel crassissi-  
ma etiamnum robora perforarent. Quo magis ab hoc periculo nauigantes forent securi, par-  
tem nauis vndis depressam, tenuibus plumbi laminis obducunt. Post fabricatas naues, ac arma-  
mentis instructas, cepit illos non minor viatici sollicitudo: quod pro temporis ratione, & na-  
uigationis longinquitate fuerat prospiciendum. Ad hæc, cum prospicerent Orientalem orbis  
plagam esse petendam, non minor periculum erat: octodecim mensium conuictu naucleri tenerent,  
vt an pateret aditus iam tum in incerto erat: octodecim mensium conuictu nauis instruant,  
quod quidem hoc consilio faciunt: cum nostris per illam immensam, & horrendam frigidam oram  
suerat trajiciendum, prudenter in rem consulentes, sex mensium cibaria præbent, quo illuc nauig-  
gare, totidem mensium, quo ibi moram facere hiberno celo reditum negante: rursum tantum-  
dem quo remeare possunt, assignant. Post repositam (vt diximus) penam, post arma omnis gene-  
ris in naues congesta, Duces ac quasi antesignani tantæ rei deerant: cui esset multi sese offerrent  
viri rerum ancipitem ignari, tamen Hugo Willowbeius vir imprimis strenuus, ac non obscuro  
loco natus, hanc curam sibi delegari impensius postulat, cuius facile præ cæteris, cum ob cor-  
poris formam (erat enim proceræ staturæ) tum ob singularem in re bellica industriam a mer-  
catorum collegio haberetur ratio. Constituitur ergo Nauarchus, assignaturque; illi nauis prætorica,  
sic vt in cæteris quoque; imperium haberet. Cum de reliquarum præfectis consularetur, ac  
huic muniti multi offerrentur, omnium consensu vicit Richardus Chancellor, vir ob multa in-  
genij documenta spectabilis, in quo vno summa conficiendi negotij spes erat. Hunc aluerat  
Henricus Sydenius, adolescens nobilis, Regique; Edouardo apprime charus, qui mercatorum  
collegium adiens, pro singulari sua facundia coram in hanc sententiam verba fecit.

Teredines quæ  
naues perforant.

Hugo Willow-  
beius Nauar-  
chus.

Richardus  
Chancellorus.

Oratio D. Hen-  
rici Sydenij.

Vehementer pium institutum vestrum amplector (viri honestissimi) qui pro egregia vestra  
erga patriam pietate in rem, & Angliæ (vt spero) vtilem, ac patriæ honorificam, animo & co-  
gitatione incumbitis. Quem quidem conatum vestrum, nos quoque; pro viribus adiuuare pa-  
ramur: nec quicquam nobis tam charum ducimus, quod non liberet: huius tam laudabilis  
propositi nomine expenderimus. Imprimisque mihi gratulor, me illud ingenium fouisse,  
quod vobis tam præclara molientibus, aliquo modo vsui esse possit. Nihilominus tamen, vos  
huius rei uelocios esse nolim: me Chancellorum eo animo a me dimittere, non quod fastidiam,  
vel quod mihi grauis alumnus esse videatur, sed vt promptam in adiuuando vestro consilio  
voluntatem meam pariter intelligeretis, atque; Cancelero meo commendatione mea a vobis  
debita tribueretur authoritas. Vos illum fama, ego illum experientia, vos verbis, ego rebus,  
vos sermone & congressu, ego quotidiano conuictu hominis ingenium penitus habeo per-  
spectum, & exploratum: Nec latere vos debet, (honestissimi patres) quanta discrimina, &  
vestro, & patriæ nomine, aditurus est. Cuius (si propicia numina proficiscen-tem seruent) nos  
non immemores esse decebit. Nos pecuniolam fortunæ alex credimus, ille dulcissimam vi-  
tam præuissimam nari, & incertis periculorum casibus exponet. Nos cum notis, amicis, ac  
cognatis suauem, ac placidam vitam transigemus, ille dum ignotos, & indomitos nautas in  
officio continere studebit, quantis laboribus frangetur? quot curis, vigilijsque; angetur? quas  
molestias deuorare cogetur? Nos patrias sedes tenebimus, ille extera & ignota regna petet:  
Ille Barbaris & feris gentibus salutem committet, ille etiam monstrificis ponti belluis caput  
obiciet. Quapropter pro periculorum magnitudine, pro officij sui dignitate, vestro fauo-  
re abeunte proficisci, & (si fors ferat) vt conspiciamus reducens, liberaliter quoque; munerari  
conueniet.

Postquam hæc, aut non longe alia, multo disertissime egregius adolescens perorasset, alius  
illum contemplari, alius a proximo sciscitari, alius (cui nota viri virtus) tacite gaudere, ac arca-  
nam spem concipere, illum olim in magnum virum euasurum, atque; putare inchoatas has adolef-  
centis virtutes magnoperè olim patriam ornaturas. Conticescentibus omnibus, grauissimis pa-  
trum visum est, de orientali orbis tractu quoad eius fieri potest sciscitari, inuestigare, ac diligen-  
ter perquirere: accersiebantur hoc nomine Tartari duo, qui regi erant ab Equili: aderat inter-  
pres, illi per interpretem super patria, super gente, super patrio more interrogati, nihil penitus  
responderunt. Quippe qui (vt falsè quidam palam dixit) poculis exhauriens potius, quàm po-  
pularum moribus discendis magis erant assueti. Post multa vtrò citroque; iactata, tandem censent,  
soluendi tempus constitui, quod multum anni iam consumptum visum est plerisque; & si prolixiorum  
morum

moram interponerent, fore ut glacies viam obstrueret. Placuit itaq; omnibus, ut ad viginti  
 diem Maij præfecti, nauisq; naues conscenderent: ac ex portu Radlisenfi, secundo æstu  
 soluerent. Illi salutatis necessarii, alius cognate & natis, alius cognatis & affinis, alius a-  
 mico cognatis chariore, ad dictum diem adfunt: solutis iam nauibus, & acciprocante & flu-  
 leni cursu Grenouicum feruntur, remigibus interim grandiores naues celocibus, seu specula-  
 torijs nauiculis remulantibus. Hi nouo vestitu coloris Veneti elegantè ornati, incumbunt  
 remis atq; æquora vertunt. Cùm nunc proximè Grenouicensem Regiam essent, sub adue-  
 nientium famam, effundunt sese vulgi, concurrat vulgus, stabat frequens in ripa, prospicit  
 ex fenestris Senatus Regius; alij turrilum fastigia ascendunt, vibrantur bombardarum submi-  
 na, Tartariz voluuntur nubes, Maxem sonant crepitacula, reboant summa montium iuga,  
 reboant valles, reboant vndæ, claræque Nauarum percellit sydera clamor, stat alius in puppi,  
 ac gestu quo potest amicis valedicit, alij in foris obambulant, hic cancellatis funibus pendet,  
 ille antennis libratur, alius è summo malo prospicit, in summa, cuiusdam triumphalis pom-  
 pæ festa facies fuit. At (heu dolos) optimus Rex Eduardus, cuius præcipuè nomine hic tan-  
 tus apparatus, per valetudinem solus aberat: quorum discessum tristissima illius mors (ac  
 nunquam sicis oculis mihi memoranda) post paucos dies subsecuta est. Volouicum tandem  
 delati figunt naues: inde soluturi, cum aut æstus reciprocatio, aut secundior status ad nauigand-  
 um inuitaret: nec mora Harouicensem portum petunt, in quo non sine maximo tædio ac  
 summo temporis detrimto diu morantur. Ad postremum tamen nacti idoneam ad nauigand-  
 um tempestatem, passis velis in altum feruntur, salutato prius natali solo, quod an  
 quam postea forent reuifuri, penitus ignorabant. Respiciunt subinde tristes, nec lachrymis  
 temperant nonnulli, cogitantes in quàm dubios casus erant ituri, & quàm ancipitem euen-  
 tum maris erant experituri: Torquebat præter cæteros Richardum Cancelerum præfectum  
 Edouardi Boniuenturi penuriz metus, nam & pars viatici in portu Harouicensi putrida com-  
 perta est, viniq; cadi infirmi ac fragiles. Mouit etiam illum paternus amor: reliquit enim abi-  
 ens duos filios paruulos orphanos futuros, si asperior aliquis casus ipsum sustulisset: mouit il-  
 lum miserorum & infelicitum comitû fortuna, quorum salutem cum sua coniunctam esse scri-  
 bebatur: dum multiplici curarum ambrage Canceleri animus excruciat, tandem post multo-  
 rum dierum velsificationem, tellus procul visa, ad quam Nauiculi naues dirigunt: Infulam esse  
 comperit Roslam: in hac consumptis aliquot diebus, vterius nauigant septentrionem pe-  
 tentes, rursus aliz apparent infulæ: nomen his Crux infularum: post has cum aliquandiu na-  
 ues vna velsificassent, præfectus nauium Willoubeius, vir in consilijs minimè præceps, erecto  
 vexillo, reliquarum nauium primates euocat, ut his consiliorum adiutoribus, & sollicitudinum  
 socijs vsus, de reliqua administratione facilius statueret. Illi ex composito adfunt, ac inter cæ-  
 tera conuenit, si qua grauior tempestas ingrueret, ac classiculam disijceret, omnes Vardhouffii  
 Norduegiz portum non incelebrem cursu peterent, quiq; primi incolumes illuc appulissent,  
 dum reliquæ naues eò conuenirent, in anchoris expectarent. Eodem die iam in pomeridianum  
 tempus inclinato, circiter quartam, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, & immensæ fluctus tanta  
 vi se incitauerunt, ut naues institutum cursum tenere non possent, sed aliz aliò, magno sui cum  
 periculo vagè disijcerentur. Inclamat Nauarchus voce qua potest maxima Cancelerum, enitè  
 rogat ne longius abscedat: at ille, nec velle, nec si maxime vellet, posse, modò ille Nauarchidis  
 suæ cursum, erat enim velocior suo, temperaret. Verùm nescio quo casu Willobæi nauis dum  
 plenis velis fertur, tanta vi abrepta est, ut aliquot horarum spacio è conspectu penitus euolau-  
 rit. Tertia etiam pari euentu ablata comites amisit. Prætoriz certè celox in puppim illisa, con-  
 spicientibus ex ipsa Edouardo nauis, fluctibus est obruta. Reliqui, fati comitû suorum, qui in-  
 columes nuper redierunt, penitus sunt ignari. Quod si acerbior casus infelices premit, si pe-  
 lagi seuitia innocios absorbit, aut si in aliena terra indigi oberrent, digni certè meliøre sorte  
 viri, quibusq; si viuant, in patriam reditum; sin crudelior mortis fortuna infonses rapuit, mollem  
 tumulum precemur, Richardus Cancelerus solus cum comitibus relictus, ac incerto reliquorū  
 casu mæstus, ad destinatum portū contendit, sociorum aduentum (si salui essent) ibi expecta-  
 turus. Hic septem dierum mora interposita, cùm se frustra expectatione torqueri videret, na-  
 uigationem subire in animo habebat. Cum itaq; omnino certum illi esset, nauem ex portu e-  
 ducere, fortè cum Scotis quibusdam in congressum colloquiumq; venit. Qui cum illius ani-  
 mum exploratum haberent, & eius rationibus optimè consultum cupientes, vehementer illum  
 ab instituto consilio deterere conantur, ac pericula in maius extollentes, eius constantiam labe-  
 factare nituntur. At Cancelerus mobilitate ac leuitate ingenij nihil turpius existimans, & per-  
 suasissimum habens fortem virū maius in se dedecus admittere non posse, quàm si metu fractus  
 & debilitatus, periculorū casus refugeret, Scotorum oratione nihil deterritus, in proposito sus-  
 ceptoq;



itaq; omnibus, vt ad vigeffimo Radlifeni, fecundo aftu cognatis & affinibus, alius auiibus, ac reciprocante aftu, naues celocibus, feu fpeculaelegantem ornat, incumbunt Regiam effent, fub adueffreqvens in ripa, profpecteantur bombardarum fulmineoant fummam montium iuga, tra clamor, fiat alius in puppi, ic cancellatis funibus pender, , cuiusdam triumphalis pomium præcipiè nomine hic tantum triftiffima illius mors (acuta eft. Volouicum tandem fecundior flatus ad nauigatio non fine maximo tædio acmen nafti idoneam ad nauiprius natali folo, quod an vabinde triftes, nec lachrymifuri, & quam ancipitem euentum Cancellorum præfectum Harouiceni putrida comernus amor: reliquit enim abitus ipfum fufcuffit: mouit ilcum fua coniunctam effe fciaciatur, tandem poft multo in naues dirigunt: Infulam effe nauigant feptentrionem pe: poft has cum aliquandiu nauilijs minimè præceps, erebto adiutoribus, & follicitudinumompofto adfunt, ac inter cadifficgeret, omnes Vardhouffim in columes illic appuliffent, nem die iam in pomeridianumta eft, & immenfi fluctus tanta, fed alie aliò, magno fui cum ft maxima Cancellorum, enizè, poffe, modò ille Nauarchidus quo cafu Willobæ: nauis dum è confpectu penitus euolauèrè celox in puppi illifa, conui, fati comitù fuorum, qui incafus infelices premit, fi peent, digni certè meliore forte intuna infontes rapuit, mollem relictus, ac incerto reliquorū m (fi falui effent) ibi expectatione torqueri videret, nam illi effet, nauem ex portu:q; venit. Qui cum illius anicupientes, vehementer illum blères, eius conftantiam labeihil turpius exiftimans, & peron poffe, quàm fi metu fractus nil deterius, in propofito fufcepto;

ceptoq; confilio permanfit, ftatuens aut efficere quod propofuerat, aut certè morti occumbere. Qui in eadem naue cum Cancelero erant, effi comitum difceffu quos auulferat tempeftatis furia plurimum angerentur, & ancipiti curfus ductu commouerentur, tanta tamen & tam fecunda voluntate in Cancellorum reperiebantur, vt eius ductu & aufpicijs omnes cafus tentaret, ac certum capitis periculum adire non reformidarent. Hoc tam conftans fodalium ftudium follicitudinem Ducis non mediocriter auxit. Ille enim pari animo erga illos affectus, metuebat ne quo fua errore fociorum faluti malè confultum videri poffit. Breuiter poftèaq; iam fpen fua de reliquarum nauium reditu extrenuari & euanelcere vidit, curfus fortunam in maris experitur, mundi q; inane, ac naturæ damnata petit, eoufque prouectus, dum omnis nox ablata, folisque continuus fulgor vafum mare illuftraret. Itaque continua luce per aliquot dies vfus, tandem Diuino numine fortunante, in ingentem quandam finem deueniunt, qui circiter centum millia paffuum latitudine collegit. In hunc penitus ingreffus, naue ad anchoras deligata, dum circum circa profpiciant, fortè haud procul cernunt fchapham pifcatoriam, quam Cancellorus cum paucis ingreffus a dire voluit, feicitarurus est pifcatoribus, quæ terra, qui populus, qui mores. At illi inuitata nauis magnitudine percuffi (neque enim tam vafte naues in illis regionibus vifuntur) præcipites fele fugæ mandabant: Cæterum Cancellorus fugientes afsequitur: Illi pauidi ac metu femianimes, ad genua ducis aduoluti pedibus ofcula offerunt. At Dux pro fua fingulari humanitate placidis oculis intrueret, geftu ac nutu confolatur, fupplicum illi recufat, proftrotoq; amplexus in pedes adleuat: Mirum quantum fauoris hæc humanitas officio concellarit. Hij enim dimiffi rumorem diffipant de noua gente, de humanitate fingulari. Hæc fama vbi percrebuit, ac currere vulgus, vltro viaticum offerre, nec commercium recufare, nifi quod magna religione obftingerentur, ne principe inconfulto peregrinas merces emerent. Mox docentur noftri terram effe Ruffiam, atque Mofcouiam, & in illis locis Euan Vafliuich (hoc enim erat principi nomen) plurimas nationes imperio ac ditione fua regere ac gubernare. Viciffim rogat Barbarus noftros, vnde genus ducunt, aut quid petunt in terra aliena. Ad hoc noftri, fele Angligenas, ab illuftriffimo Rege Edwardo sexto in illu orbem miffos, habere fe ad illorum Principem regis fui mandata, nec quicquam vltra querere, quam principis fui amicitiam ac popularibus fuis commercia, qua quidem ex re maximas vtilitates in vtriusque regni populos collatas iri fperabant. Non inuitis auribus audiunt hæc Barbari, ac vltro operam fua pollicentur, vt tam æqua & honefta poftulata ad principis fui aures primo quoque tempore perferretur. Tum Cancellorus à Toparchis, qui cum reliquis confluerant, comeatum petit ac obfides pofcit in nauem, in tutelam fua fuorumq; falutis. Cui Toparchæ, fui arbitrij non effe, quid ftatuat princeps, quod in fua manu fit, id velle prætare, quòdque folum poffunt, comeatum pollicentur. Dum hæc aguntur, veredarium clam dimitunt qui Imperatoris renitiet, de ignoz gentis appulfus, fimul vt illius animum explorarent, quid ille ftatuat. Allatū nuntium pergratum fuit principi, adeò quidem, vt vltro etiam ad Regiam inuicaret, aut fi terreftis itineris longinquitas molefta ipsis videretur, commerciorum copiam fuis facit: promittit infuper, fi libet ad fe venire, veredariorum equorum impenfam. Interea Toparchæ diem ex die ducere, varias excufationes prætexere, nunc reliquorum Toparcharum confenfum, nunc ardua Reipnægetia ceffatione fua obtendere, tantisper tempus proferre cupientes, dum reuerfus nuntius fe de principis voluntate certiorem faceret. Verum Cancellorus poftquam fe longa & inani expectatione fufpenfum teneri, & tempus data opera extrahi videret, ferid inftat, vt promiffi fide liberent: quod fi facere neglexerint, fe vltreius nauigaturū affimat. At Mofcouitz, tametsi adhuc Regiæ voluntatis incerti effent, & noftorum difceffum metuerent, (habebant enim merces, quas illi magnoperè expebant) comeatu inftituunt. Atq; ita iter longiffimū ac multò moleftiffimum ingreffus eft. Quod quidem trahis, quærum plurimus illi genti vfus, confecit: Trahis geftantur, trahis onera vehuntur, deniq; vix alia nouerunt vehicula. Huius rei caufa eft rigidiffimum folum horrendo gelu Hybernis menfibus concretum, de quo paulò poft differeamus. Maiori itineris parte iam peracta, fuperuenit veredarium fupra oftendimus, clam ab Irenarchis diuiffum qui (quo cafu incertum) à via aberrauerat, ac littora Maris Tartaris vicina petuerat, ratus fele noftorum nauem ibi inuenturum. Hic poft longum errorem tandem ad noftros redijt, ac Duce in via affecutus, literas Imperatorias, illas quidem humanitatis pleniffimas Cancelero atulit. Quibus imperabatur, vt veredi illi comitibusque fuis fine prætio fuppeditarentur: Quod quidem tanta alacritate ab omnibus in reliquo itinere factitatum eft, vt in magnam contentionem venerint, & poft rixam pugnis etiam dileceptarent, vtri veredos fuos trahere iungerent. Tandem poft magnas longiffimi itineris moleftias (confeceat enim quindecies centena millia paffuum) Mofcuam Regiam vrbem delatus eft: de qua, ac Mofcouitarum Cæfare, de que illuftribus Mofcouitz vrbibus, paulò poft plura fumus fcripturi.

Traharum vñs.

Litteræ humaniffimæ Imperatoris ad Cancele- rum.

De

## De Moscouia, quæ &amp; Russia dicitur.

**M**oscouia quæ & Russia alba nominatur, terra est amplissima, hinc inde varijs generibus contermina, à meridie atque Oriente Tartaris cingitur: Septentrionale latus Oceanus Scythicus ambit. Ad Occidentem tenent Lapones, gens Iyluestris, nec vlli populo commercio linguæ nota: post hos Austrum versus incolunt Succi, dein Finlandia, ab hac Liouij, iuxta hos Lituani. Pluribus ac maximis fluminibus irrigua est, multisque locis palustris. Nobilissima fluminum Rha, quod illi materna idiomate Volgam, Tanais quem Don, Boristhenes quem hodie Neper nominant: horum Rha, atque Boristhenes, eodem lacu orti, immensa terræ spacia peragrunt. Rha amcenos amnes in se recipiens, ac ex ipso statim fonte Orientem petens, post varios flexus ac curfus ambages aduenas aquas, suasque in Caspiū mare pluribus ostijs exonerat.

Tanais fonte haud spectabili ab ipsa scatebra grandescens, tandē in amplum lacū se diffundit: post euagantes aquas in arcum cogens angustus labitur, ac post aliquot passuum millia, iterum in lacum diffusus (quem Iuan appellant) flexuoso metu vadit, donec in vicina Volge peruenit. Deinde quasi comitem auerſatus, transuerso cursu flexens in meridiem contendit, ac Mæoticam paludem petit.

Boristhenes quem ex eodem fonte cum Rha ortum diximus, cognatas aquas in austrum defert, subinde auxiliares amnes recipiens: hic maximas gentes præterluens, tandem in pontum Euxinum sese condit.

Haber & Moscouia lacus, & stagna: lacus etiam deciduo syderum semine, pisces generant: Inter hos principatum tenet Bellij ozera, vel ob hoc præcipuè memorabilis, quod arx munitissima in eo sit extructa, quo Moscouitarum princeps gazam suam confert, si quando bellorum terror premit.

Quod ad Rypheæ iuga spectat perpetuis niuib; candidia, vnde veteres Tanaim ortum habere somniarunt, reliquaque naturæ portenta, quæ Græcia olim finxit, nec nostri qui nuper redierunt, videre, nec Trimestri spatio illic versati, ac Moscouitarū alloquio vt cunq; imbuti, audiū cognouerunt. Terram esse planam, ac campestem illi, ac raro in montes assurgere: & qua vergit in Septentrionem latissimè saltus habere. Plurima ibi abies, vnde ad struendas ædes maritima. Hi saltus feras alunt, vros, vrsos, lupos nigros, aliāmq; feram nostro orbi non visam, quam illi Rossomakkam nominant: rarum feræ ingenium, & spectabile: satura enim & distenta, duorum stipitum angustias quærit, per quas se transmittens, ventris onus (quod alias non egerit) excolat: vros equites vt plurimum venantur, vros pedites lignijs furcis. Septentrionalis tractus tam horrenidi frigoris esse dicitur, vt ex humidis lignis in foco structis distillans liquor in siritiam concreſcat: tanta diuersitas tantillo spacio, vt hinc prunam, illinc glaciem in eadem face cemas. Postquam hyemare apud illos incipit, assidua gelu incrementa capit, nec se prius remittit, quàm solis radij nostrum orbem reuidentes canescentem terram fulgore exhilarat, tristeq; gelu tepore soluit. Nautæ certè nostri, qui in naue remanserant ex inferiori stego in foros scandentes, tam subita Lipothymia nonnunquam sunt correpti, vt intermortui subinde reuerent: tanta erat illic rigentis cœli inclementia: Australiora illius aliquantū mitiora sunt.

Frigoris asperitas.

## De Moscuæ Regia vrbe, &amp; de Moscouitarum Rege.

**R**eliquum est vt promissa opusculi pars à nobis dicatur, deq; Moscuæ regia vrbe, & de Moscouitarum principe latius paulò disseramus, cuius imperium amplissimum est, opesq; hoc tempore insignes: Et quoniā ipsa vrbs facillè inter cæteras principatum tenet, meritò sibi primum locum vendicet. Vrbs amplitudo, vt nostri affirmant, Londinum cum suburbio magnitudine æquat. Aedificia habet multa, sed cultu nequaquam nostris conferenda. Vici plures sunt, sed incompōsiti, vix lapide non sternuntur vt nostræ: ædium parietes lignij sunt, recta scandulis vt plurimum muniuntur: iūcta oppido arx est & elegans, & munita. Huic à Septentrione ante dicitur vrbs lateritio muro. Ipsiū etiam arcis mœnia, lateribus struuntur, quorum crassities pedes ostodecim colligit: ab altera parte sicca fossa munitur castellum, ab altera flumine Volgda alluitur, quod in Orientem tendens sociales aquas Occæ adiungit. Sunt in castro nouæ ædes sacræ non inuolutæ quas tenent cœnobitæ: habent etiam papam suum, ac quosdam alios præfules, qui omnes vt plurimum in arce degunt: Ipsiū certè Principis Regia minus culta, quadratæ formæ, & structuræ humilis, nostrorum palatiorum nitore longè superatur: fenestrarum angustiq; nunc vitrijs nunc specularibus lumen admittit. Attalica magnifica nostratū principum aulis ornamenta, illis decant. Vndiq; parietibus adherent scamne, necq; id solum in Imperatoris Regia, verum etiā vbicq; in priuatorum edibus. Exactis iam duodecim ab ingressu in vrbe diebus, adest nuntius ad Regiæ ædes nostros inuitans. Angli moram pertæsi cupidè paruere. Itaque in aulam ingressi, honorandum centum Aulicorum cœtū aureo cultu ad talos

vsque

citur.

hinc inde varijs gentibus  
pentionale latu Oceanum  
nec vlll populo conuercio  
lia, ab hac Liouonij, iuxta hos  
lis palustris. Nobilissima flu-  
Don, Borithensis quem ho-  
orti, immensa terræ spacia  
fonte Orientem petens, post  
nare pluribus ostijs exonerat,  
ndē in amplum lacū se diffun-  
post aliquot passuum millia,  
vadit, donec in vicina Volgæ  
stans in meridiem contendit,

ognatas aquas in austrum de-  
ter lucens, tandem in pontum

erum semine, pisces generant:  
memorabilis, quod arx munifi-  
n confert, si quando bellorum

nde veteres Tanaim ortum ha-  
nxit, nec nostri qui nuper redi-  
alloquio vtunq; imbui, audiu  
montes assurgere: & qua ver-  
ynde ad struendas ædēs mare-  
nostro orbi non visam, quam  
ile: futura enim & distenta, du-  
tris onus (quod alias non egerit  
s lignijs furcis. Septentrionalis  
in foco structis distillaa liquoe  
unam, illinc glaciem in eadem  
i incrementa capit, nec se prius  
em terram fulgore exhilarat, tri-  
erant ex inferiori stego in foros  
vt intermortui subinde ruerent:  
quantō mitiora sunt.

uitarum Rege.

g; Moscuæ regia vrbe, & de Mos-  
amplissimum est, opēq; hoc  
ncipatum tenet, merito sibi pri-  
ondinum cum suburbio magni-  
tris conferēda. Vici plures sunt,  
arietes lignij sunt, recta scandu-  
nunita. Huic à Septentrione an-  
pus struuntur, quorum crassities  
astellum, ab altera flumine Vo-  
æ adiungit. Sunt in castro nouē  
in papam suum, ac quosdam a-  
ertē Principis Regia minus cul-  
n nitore longē superatur: fene-  
ūt. Attalica magnifica nostratū  
herent scamna, neq; id solum in  
caētis iam duodecim ab ingressu  
ns. Angli moram pertæsi cupidē  
orum cœtū aureo cultu ad talos  
vsque

rique demisso ornatum, considerare conspiciunt: Exinde in saluatorium admissi, mirum quan-  
tum fulgor Imperatorius nostrorum oculos perstrinxerit. Russorum enim Imperator Regali in  
solio sublimis, ac aureo diademate insigniter conspicuus, regiōq; paludamento aurificū opere  
spectabili ornatu sedit: aureum bacillum gemmis distinctum dextra tenet, ac præter cetera  
Regalis opulentiæ decora, inerat etiam in vultu maiestas tanto fastigio digna: stant iuxta hinc  
& hinc Archigrammateus ac silentiarius, & ipsi Regali auro vestiti. Deinde centum quinquag-  
inta patrum concessus, aureo vestitu magnificus cubiculi subsellia vndiq; prætexuit. Poterat  
tantæ maiestatis patrum, poterat tam augustus venerādorū patrum conspectus in suo mē-  
tem excutere: At Cancellus constanti vultu, Regia maiestate more salutata, Regis Edouardi  
litteras tradit: lectis literis pauca de Regis nostri incolumitate interrogat: quibus Angli pau-  
cis respondent: mox à nostris per Archigrammatea dono Imperatori oblato (quod ipse nudato  
capite obtulit, nam antea erat opertus) Moscouitarum Princeps Anglos in prandij tempus, ad  
quod ipsos inuitauit, dimittit: postquam horas duas in illius cubiculo qui principi est à sup-  
plicibus inorati sunt, accessit vtiutis ad epulas: in aureum palatiū (vt ipsi nominabant, licet parum  
excultum) introducū Russorum Cæsarem alto toro assidentem argenteo amictū decoratū, at-  
que altero iam diademate insignitum offendunt. Nostri ex aduerso colloceati mensæ accubi-  
bunt, stat ingens medio in palatio abacus, ab imo quadratus paulum assurgit. Huic orbis incū-  
bit, vnde in metam fastigiatur, lationi semper orbe contractiorem sustinente: hunc gaza Regia  
adornabat, tanta copia vt pondere etiam grauaret. Melior certè pars vasorum, ac potiorum  
omnium ex auro lectissimo fabricata. Quatuor ollæ magnitudine conspicuæ, reliquam aureo-  
rum vasulorum magnificenciam præcipuè illustrant. Tæta enim proceritatis existerunt, vt  
quinos propè pedes altitudine colligerent: fuerunt etiam argentea quædam Dolia, à nostris  
minoribus capacitate non longè differentia, quibus principis potum priuatim seruant. Quatu-  
or mensæ ad singula Trichinij latera singulæ dispositæ ac mundissimis mappis strætæ, quibus ab  
humilliori solo ternis gradibus erat ascensus, celeberrimo conuiuuarum catu instruantur. Hæ, fo-  
ris lineati, intusq; preciosissimis pellibus vestiti, regalem cœnam ornant. Cum princeps cul-  
trum vel panem attreret signo crucis frontem prius munit. Qui in amicitia principis palmam  
tenent, cōsiliorūq; participes sunt, eidē thoro adhibiti, remotiore loco ab ipso sedent. Porro  
hic dum expectantur epulæ, veteri ac quasi auito Moscouitarum principum more, ipse Impera-  
tor singulos conuiuis pane primum donat, cum donotium suorum titulo, ac elata voce in nūc  
modum. Magnus Moscouitarum Dux, ac summus Russiæ Imperator Ioannes Vasiliuich (dein-  
de qui periret accipientē nominat) te pane donat. Sub hoc assurgunt conuiuis vniuersi, ac mox  
residunt. Peracto principis munere, celebri dapiferorum pompa incedit Atriensis, ac salutato  
principis Cygnellum aurea in lance mensæ admouet: mox tollit, ac structo, cum septem com-  
mitibus in frusta discernendū tradit. Hæc in mensam paulo post illata, pari ceremoniæ celebra-  
tate conuiuis distribuuntur. Dum hæc aguntur & ipse Atriensis pane donatus delibet, ac hono-  
rata principis celsitudine mox recedit. De reliquorū ordine missum, cum omnino incompo-  
siti sunt illati, nihil certi referre possunt nostri. Illud certè constat, vniuersum esculentorum, ac  
potiorum omnium apparatus, quibus centum conuiuis ministratum est, lectissimi auri fuisse,  
mensalq; ipsas vasis aded fuisse onustas, vt nonnullis etiam in mensa deesset locus: Neq; ve-  
rò silentio inuoluendum est ministros centum quadraginta, aurea veste ornatos ter ipso conui-  
uij tempore cultum mutauisse: Ministri quoq; pane ac potu donantur similibus (quo reliqui) mo-  
do. Ad postremum finito prandio, ac illatis lucernis (erat enim iam mox) conuiuas ac familia-  
res omnes nomine appellat, vt non immeritò mirum videatur tot ac tam varia cognōniina  
principi alioqui occupatissimo, memoria non excidere: Donatiui, ac citadorum nominum  
ratio est, vt Moscouitæ referunt, tum vt familiam probe noscat, tum vt qui principis amicitia  
exciderunt hoc modo norēntur.

### De re Militari Moscouitarum.

Quoties finitimorum iniurię principem in bellū euocant, haud vnq; tam infra trecenta vi-  
rorum millia in hostem armat. Ex quorum numero, centum circiter millia in aciem secū  
educens, reliqua in tutelam Imperij in præsidijs aptis in locis disponit. Colonus nullū, nullum  
Mercatorem in militiam legit, tanta enim est populi multitudo, vt his domi relictis, iuuentus  
bellis gerendis abundè suppeditetur. Quoscuq; in expeditionem ducit, proprio sumptu seip-  
sos alunt: pedestrem pugnam non nouerunt, equites in aciem procedūt. Arua sunt his lorica,  
& galea, lorica foris auro regitur, vel holoserico etiam gregario militi. Impenitæ uauet opulenti-  
am ostentare. Arcu ac sagittis vtuntur more Turcarum. Lanceas etiam in aciem gerunt: stape-  
da adductiore equitant, idq; vt Turcæ: Genus est hominū, algoris vltra omnem fidem patiens,

ac

ac victus parcissimum. Nam cum tellus alta niue candet, cum terra horrido gelu astricta riges, tamen hic Sarmata, sago stipitibus, vnde ventus ac niues scruunt, expasso, exiguum ignem sibi fruit, atq; uersus a vento iacet: sago illi pro tecto est: sago pro muro: in summa sago instar omnium est. Hic incola niuium aqua, è gelido amne petita, ac similagine auenz admixta, conuiuium suum instruit: ac his dapibus satius, ac lautè pascitur, ad ignem decumbit, lateraque huiusmodi lautitiarum crapula defessa, rigenti solo perunt. Huic rigens solum pro pluma, triculus seu cilex pro ceruicali. Si quis etiam non lautiori pabulo nutritus quam herus, hero est contubernalis. Quam merito hic ignobilis & obscurus Sarmata, effeminatâ ducibus nostris molliciem exprobrat, qui cœlo longè elementiore, pellitis ocreis reuonibusq; vtuntur. Hic est gregariorum militum apparatus. At qui illustriori dignitatis sunt loco, instructiores paulò in militiam proficiscuntur. Ipsius quidem Imperatoris apparatus vel tum maximè est insignis: Tentorii enim vela, vt plurimum aurea sunt, spectabili etiamnum plumariorum opere in margantibus ornata. Quoties cum hoste conferendum est, incompositi in hostile agmen procedunt: neque a ciem dirigunt (vt mos est nostris) sed in insidijs collocati aduersarios adoriuntur. Ipsorum equi bidui in ediam facillè ferunt. In bello vt plurimum arborum cortices, ac virgultorum mollia his sunt pro pabulo: bimestri spatio hanc tantam penuriam, etiam vegeti, ac fortes & equos & eques non rarò perferunt. Si cuius opera in bello strenua princeps vsus est, huc prædico aut humido aliquo donat, in alimentum sui suorūmq; qui tamè ad ipsum Imperatorè post eius mortem redit, si nulla proles virilis sexus ipsi contingat: nam si numerosam etiam sceminarum sobolem genuerit, tamen hunc hereditariū agrum vendicat princeps, nisi quod exiguam fortè partem ad dotandas puellas princeps concedat. Porro qui Imperatoris munificentiâ illo modo muneratur, graui pecunia astringitur tot milites in bello alere, cum necessitas postulat, quot illius fundi redditus Imperatoris censura abundè nutrire possit. Haud melioris sunt forte, quibus hereditario iure agri contingunt. Nam si moriuntur, nec sobolem masculam reliquerint, decedentis prædica fisco Imperatoris statim cedunt. Super hæc, si opimus aliquis, bello inutilis ab Aulicis principibus deferatur, quod rei militari in idoneus amplas facultates habeat, quibus multi clari sanguinis viri bello apti nutrantur, mox arcessitur infelix, opibusq; quas tantis cum sudoribus, quas tot laboribus per omnem vitam comparauit, tantillo temporis momento exiit, nisi quod particulam aliquam à principe recipit, ad se, cõiugem, liberos, ac domesticos alendos. Hæc autem à populo Imperatoris suo tam alacriter sunt, vt credas illos aliena restituisse, non sua alieno dedisse. His bonis pro meritis singulorum aulicos suos donat princeps. In Bellis etiam, quo quis sæpius in expeditione mittitur, eo propensior in se principis fauorem augurat, etiã cum suis impensis seipsum alar: sicuti antea à nobis dictū est: tantum est apud omnes ducis vi obsequiū.

Ingens Regum  
obseruatiã.

### De Legatis Ducis Moscouitarum.

**N**on minori magnificentia quam qua diximus, Legatos suos in obeundis negotijs ad ceteros reges mittit Moscouita: nam nostris Moscuæ agentibus, legatos duos ad Poloniam Regem iter suscipientes vel ingressos, quingenti Equites ornatissimi comitabantur, quorum melior pars veste aurea, ac serico induebatur, & qui inculcissimè cymatili, vt interim equorum strata, auro argentòq; inducta, & spectabili Phrygiõnum opere ornata silentio transam: habebant in super centum sonipedes albos pulcherrimosq; in quos (si alicuius tædiū ipsos in itinere cepisset) cum vellent transcenderent. Sed nunc tempus exigit vt ad quasdam alias Moscouitarum vrbes orationem conuertamus, & merces quibus abundant breuiter perstringamus.

### Novogardia.

**S**equitur Moscuam celeberrima vrbiū Novogardia, quæ vt illi dignitate est inferior, in magnitudine non parum superat. Emporium est totius Imperij longè nobilissimum: & licet regiam sedem sibi princeps Moscuæ constituit, suminis tamen opportunus interlapus, ac post in mare Sarmaticum exoneratus, facit Mercatorum conuentu, ipsa Regia vrbe celebratiorem. Huic vrbi ob summam optimi lini ac canabis abundantiam, inter reliquas regni vrbes facillè datur palma: vendit etiam coria, mel, & ceram. Instituerunt ibi Collegium mercatorum Flandri, qui pari perfidia vsi apud illos, qua nupsit apud nos, priuilegia amiserant, quæ sibi restitui, nostris ibi morantibus enixè à duce postularunt. Hi, audito nostrorum accessu, literas expediunt ad principem, nostros falsis criminibus onerant, & in suspicionem piraticæ vocant, itaq; hortantur vt detineat, ac in vincula conijciat: Hæc cum nostris nuntiata sunt, in summam desperationem adducuntur domum reditionis: Princeps tamen multè illustrissimus, regijs scriptis confirmatus, fidem nequaquam mendacibus literis adhibuit.

Flandrorum  
Mercatorum  
mendaces literæ  
ad Regem ad-  
gressus nostrorum.

Ycraslaui.

a horrèdo gelu astricta niges,  
 , ex passio, exiguum ignem si-  
 m pro muro: in summa sagù  
 ac simlagine auenz admox-  
 id ignem decumbit, lateraque  
 rigens solum pro pluma, tris-  
 tus quam herus hero est con-  
 eminatâ ducibus moltris mol-  
 nibusq; vtuntur. Hic est gre-  
 , instructiores paulo in mili-  
 m inaximè est insignis: Ten-  
 mriorum opere margaritisq;  
 ostile agmen procurrunt: ne-  
 duerfarios adoriuntur. Ipsorū  
 , eortices, ac virgultorum mol-  
 tiam vegeti, ac fortes & equus  
 ps vsus est, hūc prædico aut fun-  
 Imperatorē post eius mortem  
 n etiam sceminarum sobolem  
 quod exiguam fortè partem ad  
 uificentia illo modo muneran-  
 sfitas postulat, quot illius fun-  
 ri sunt sorte, quibus hæredita-  
 am reliquerint, de cedētis præ-  
 bello inutilis ab Aulicis prin-  
 ueat, quibus multi clari langu-  
 as tantis cum sudoribus, quas  
 momento exiuit, nisi quod  
 domesticos alendos. Hæc au-  
 diena restituisse, non sua alieno  
 cepts. In Bellis etiam, quo quis  
 orem auguratur, etiā cum suis  
 pud omnes ducis sui obsequiū.

rum.

os in obeundis negotijs ad ex-  
 ibus, legatos duos ad Poloniz  
 atissimi comitabantur, quorum  
 & cymarili, vt interim eorum  
 ornata silentio transeam: habe-  
 si alienius tædiū ipsos in itinere  
 vt ad qualdam alias Moscouit-  
 ant breuiter perstringamus.

vt illi dignitate est inferior, ita  
 trij longè nobilissimum: & licet  
 oportunos interlapfus, ac post  
 ipsa Regia vrbe celebrationem  
 reliquis regi vrbes faciliè da-  
 ollegium mercatorum Flandri,  
 amiserant, quæ sibi restitui, no-  
 rum accessu, literas expedit ad  
 piraticæ vocant, itaq; horran-  
 ata sunt, in summam desperatio-  
 illustrissimus, regijs scriptis con-

Ycrassauia.

## Ycrassauia.

**C**elebratur quoque Ycrassauia propter coria, seuum ac fruges quibus plurimum abundat.  
 Ceramij etiam orbes ibi sunt venales, licet alijs in locis maior sit copia: sita hæc est ab  
 vrbe Regia ad lapidem ducentissimum: totum interuallum plurimos habet vicos populosis-  
 mos: abundant agri frugibus, quas Moscuam tanta copia conuehunt, vt aliquando antea  
 diano videas septingentenas vel octingentenas trahas vltro cirrôq; conuehentes, vel  
 fallamenta yehentes. Veniunt à milleimo lapide Moscuam, mercatum fruges, trahitque ve-  
 hunt. Hij sunt Aquilonis incolæ, nam tanta est ibi frigris immanitas, vt segetes non crescant,  
 aut si crescant non maturescunt. Hij fallamenta, pelles, & coria, merces afferunt.

## Vologda.

**V**ologda quingentis quinquaginta millibus passuū interiectis, ab vrbe Metropolitana di-  
 stans, mercimonia habet, seuum ac linum, tamen si lini maior vis Nouogardiz vaneat.

## Plescouia.

**P**ropter Mellis ceræq; præcipuam vim à mercatoribus frequentatur Plescouia.

## Colmogora.

**M**ittit Aquilonaris Russiæ tractus raras ac preciosas pelles: in his sunt vel præcipui Zabel-  
 linæ, Dominarum nostrarū ceruicibus imprimis expetitæ: habent etiam pelles martias,  
 vulpinas, candidas, nigras, & rufas, leporinas, & armelinas, aliâsq; Barbaris nominibus dictas, be-  
 ueres, ningas, miniueras: gignit vicinum mare belluam à Barbatis Mors nominatam: hæc den-  
 tium administrulo rupes scandens pabulum petir. Hanc cupiunt Russi ob dentium insignem, v-  
 sum, qui non minor his est, quam elephantorum nostratibus. Hæc mercimonia ceruorum dor-  
 si ad oppidum Lampas feruntur. Deinceps mercatores vrbe Colmogorâ petunt, atq; ibi  
 Hyberno tempore, celebrerimæ sunt illarum mercium nundinæ: suppeditat hæc vrbs vndiquâ-  
 que vicinæ regioni affatim saleem ac fallamenta: mittunt & Aquilonares Russi oleum à Barba-  
 tis, Trein nominatum, quod in quodam flumine Vna dicto faciunt, licet non solum ibi habeat-  
 ur: coquunt etiam marinam aquam vnde ipsis constat vis magna salis.

Vna flumen,  
vel Vvina.De dissidentium lite, & quibus arbitris fini-  
antur certamina.

**N**unc quoniam de insignioribus vrbibus ea diximus, quæ locus postulauit, superest vt de  
 iuris forma qua vtuntur Moscouitæ, quatenus ad notitiam nostram peruenit, perferiba-  
 mus. Si qua lis apud eos oritur, fundorum Dominos, iudices primum constituunt: hij si compo-  
 nere licem non possunt, superiori magistratu certamen deferunt. Accusator à magistratu pe-  
 tit, vt liceat sibi aduersarium in ius vocare. Mox facta potestate fatellitem vocat ac rēpm si-  
 fit, ac in ius rapit: huius tibias flagris cædit Licitor, donec proferat, qui legi fatisset: at reus si  
 eius fidei non sit, vt vadem inueniat, manibus collo constrictis à Licitore trahitur, verberibusq;  
 eoque afficitur, donec ad dicendam causam coram Iudice sistatur. Reus itaque à magistratu  
 interrogatus (verbi gratia in questione alieni æris) an in illius ære alieno sit à quo accusatur,  
 ille in iudicis: Ad hæc Iudex, qui potes in iudicari? tum reus, iureiurando. Mox à magistratu  
 prohibetur Licitor amplius verberare, donec certiori fide de lite constet: leguleios non alunt:  
 Quisq; sibi Aduocatus est, atq; accusantis querela, rei q; defensio supplicum literarum forma  
 principi traditur, nulla principis sententiâ petentiū. Ipse Imperator omnē licem maiorum præ-  
 ferriam controuersiarū cognoscit, ac cognita lite sententiam fert. Ille summa æquitate certami-  
 na dirimit, quod in summæ maiestatis principe præcipua laude dignū reor. Id licet sancto ani-  
 mi proposito faciat, mirè tamen mali magistratus idem peruertunt, quos quidē in crimine de-  
 prehensos, iureiurante principis vindicat. Ad postremum cum vtrâq; pars, quibus potuit argu-  
 menti causam suam confirmauit, rogat Iudex accusatorem, an vlla causæ suæ argumenta ad-  
 huc superint? respondet se vel pugilem suum manu strenua etiam in hoste comprobaturum,  
 ac postulat vt singulari certamine congredi liceat, copiâque certandi vtrique facta, ambo in

Legulei non a-  
luntur in Mos-  
couia.

mono-

Pugiles Mer-  
cenarij.

monomachiam ruunt: aut si alteruter vel uterque parum strenuus, aut pugna minus habilis sit, pugiles publicos substituunt: habent enim pugiles, quibus solo hoc quæstu victus constat. Hij armati in arenam descendunt: tela sunt vt plurimum claua bellica, & venabulum: fit pugna pedestris. Cuius igitur pugil in certamine superatur, is absque mora in vincula conijcitur, vbi miseris modis tractatur, donec cum aduersario certamen finiat. Præter hæc, si vterq; ortus sit claris parentibus, atque alter alterum priuatum hostem deposcit, annuit Iudex, nec tum vicarij pugillibus fas est vti. Porro qui splendidiori loco natus est, hostem obscuriori ortu familia, in certamine respuit. Si quis pauper ære alieno strictus, creditori soluendo non sit, abducit illum creditor, atque cotisq; opere faciundo exercet, vel alteri operam obærati elocat, donec operando debitum persoluit: sunt qui sponte, se, coniugem, ac liberos opulencioribus per omnem vitam emancipabunt, vt in initio exiguam pecuniolæ summam accipiant, ac post pro reliqua vita alimenta capiant: adeo illis vilescit libertas.

### De furum supplicijs.

SI quis furto deprehensus sit, in carcerem conijciunt, ac flagris subinde cædunt, neque ob primam noxam suspendunt, vt nos, atque hæc, legem misericordiae appellat: qui secundò delinquit, illi nasum præcidunt, ac stigmatis frontem signant: Tertia noxa crucem meretur, Multi, & infiq;es sunt crumenisecæ: quod si principis seueritas ipsos non tolleret, non esset resistere illorum prouentui.

### De Religione.

GRÆCÆ Ecclesiæ dogma amplectuntur: simulachra Diuorum in templis non admittunt: tabulas tamen diuorum, imaginibus pictas in sacris ædibus frequentes habent: has adorant, his dona offerunt, his cereos accendunt, has etiam sacro fonte aspergunt, alioqui illis nullus est honos. Simulachra nostra nullam diuinitatis vim habere asserunt, quòd in templis dicantur perinde vt à statuarijs emiuntur. Priuatis in ædibus statuas instar penatium colunt. Hæ in obscurissima parte donius vt plurimum statuunt. Si quis domum vicini intrat, priuina omnium penates salutat, etiam cum non videat: si scamnum aut sella stet in proximo, subinde frontem illidens in sellam, ac crebro capite & corpore nutans lærem adorat. Sacrorum ac prophanorum virorum in vestitu nulla diuersitas. Nulli nec sacro nec profano interdicitur matrimonium. Cæterum si Ecclesiastici vxor è vita decedat, secundas nuptias repetere non licet. Quocirca ex sacerdotibus (vt vocant) secularibus sunt plerumque Monachi, quibus perpetua imperatur castitas. Sacra officia in templis materno idiomate fiunt. Ex pane fermentato Eucharistiam consecrant, ac post consecrationem, lance in capite per templum circumferunt nec participare volentem prohibent. Nouum ac vetus testamentum in templis legunt lingua vernacula tam offensare, vt nec ipse qui legit intelligat. Dum illa leguntur, garrule, confabulari, ac obstrepere licet, in reliquo officio, summani modestiam ac sanctimoniam præ se ferunt. Orationem dominicam decimus quisque haud nouit. At Symbolum Apostolicum, aut Decalogum Moïsis nemo aut admodum pauci, aiunt enim rem tam arcanam ac sacram in vulgus temere enuntiarum non oportere. Decalogum etiam sanguine Christi antiquatum esse. Humaniores literas omnino respiciunt. Cognitionis Græcæ, Latinæ aut Hebraicæ lingue penitus sunt ignari: singulis annis quaterna celebrant ieiunia quæ ab ipsis diuorum festis dominant. Primum cum nostro quadragesimali ieiunio exordium habet. Secundum diui Petri ieiunium dicitur. Tertio, dat nomen Diua Maria. Quartum, à Philippo nomen capit. Ac sicuti nos quadragesimam nostram à die Mercurij auspicamur, ita illi à die solis: diebus Sabbati carne vescuntur, Hebdomadis has esuriales ferias præcedentibus lacticijs viuunt. Ac vulgo appellant butyri ieiunia. Hoc tempore mutuo sese inuisunt vicini, ac pacis oculis vicissim excipiunt, in signum mutui amoris ac concordie Christianæ. Nam sub illis ieiunandi temporibus frequentius quàm aliàs sacrosanctam cœnam aduunt. Post septem dies ab incepto ieiunio, crebro inuisunt templa, aut domi sese continent, ac orationi plurimum vacant. Nec illa septimana alio quàm oleribus vescuntur. Ex octo septimanæ huius ieiunio, pristinam bibendi intemperiam repetunt, sunt enim bibones insignes. Districtè seruant ieiunia sua, nec vilius rei esum nisi holerum ac salsamentorum tunc temporis sibi indulgent: die Mercurij ac Veneris quauis septimana ieiunare solent.

Secundæ nuptiæ  
prohibentur  
militia.

Quaterna ieiunia  
singulis annis.

Plurima

uus, aut pugnae minus habilia fit,  
lo hoc quatuor victus constat, Hii  
alica, & venabulum: fit pugna pe-  
ora in vincula conijcitur, vbi mi-  
præter hæc, si vterq; ortus sit claris  
iunxit Index, nec tum vicarijs pa-  
um obscurior ortum familia, in  
ri foluendo non fit, abducit illum  
um obrerati elocatur, donec operan-  
os opulentionibus per omnem vi-  
accipiant, ac post pro reliqua vi-

ris subinde cædunt, neque ob pri-  
cordia: appellant: qui secundò  
et: Tertia noxa crucem meretur,  
is ipsos non tolleret, non esset re-

orum in templis non admittunt:  
bus frequenter habent: has ado-  
to fonte aspergunt, alioqui illis  
abere asserunt, quòd in templis  
atuas instar penatum colunt. Hæc  
omium vicini intrat, primum om-  
it sella stet in proximo, subinde  
larem adorat. Sacrorum ac pro-  
neq; prophano interdicitur ma-  
on nec nuptias repetere non licet.  
imque Monachi, quibus pepe-  
nate fiunt. Ex pane fermentato  
capite per templum circumfer-  
tamentum in templis leguntur li-  
Dum illa leguntur, garrule, con-  
destiam ac sanctimoniam præ se  
te. At Symbolum Apostolicum,  
im rem tam arcanam ac sacram  
sanguine Christi antiquam ef-  
æ, Latinæ aut Hebraicæ lingue  
a quæ ab ipsis diuorum festis de-  
dium habet. Secundum diui Pe-  
n, à Philippo nomen capit. Ac  
re, ita illi à die solis: diebus Sab-  
dentibus lacticiis viuunt. Ac  
sunt vicini, ac pacis osculis vi-  
sianæ. Nam sub illis ieiunandi  
sunt. Post septem dies ab in-  
nent; ac orationi plurimum ve-  
to septimanæ huius ieiunio pri-  
signis. Districtè seruati ieiunio  
temporis sibi indulgentiæ die Me-

Plurima

Plurima tibi extruuntur Benedictinorum Cœnobii: his magni sunt agrorū redditus: nam ter-  
ciam fundorū partem totius Imperij tenent Monachi. Istis per omnem vitam usus carniū in-  
terdicitur: Alimenta sunt falsamenta, lac & butyrum. Nec ex instituto relligionis recentia pi-  
ces edunt. Quaternis tamen illis quæ memorauimus ieiunijs, ne piscibus quidem viuunt. Cau-  
libus, ac cucumeribus sale cōditis, radiculisque (quæ perennare facile faciunt) illis victus con-  
stat. Pons est his valde tenuis ac dilutus. Quotidie in Templis rem diuinam faciunt: sacrum of-  
ficiū antelucano adunt, quod aduentante iam die finitur. Circa nonam diei celebratur  
missa. Post hanc pranditur: à prandio sacrum officium repetunt, nec non à cœna. Prandentibus  
cœnauibus legitur euangeliorum interpretatio. Quoties alicuius monasterij Antistes con-  
cedit facti, Princeps Cœnobij bona inuadit, armenta, greges, suppellectilem, aurum, argentum,  
rapit. Aucis qui defuncto Antistiti dignitate succedit hæc ab imperatore pecunia redimit.

Ædes sacre lignijs trabibus contextuntur. Ac plerumque a surgit turris scandulis tecta. Foris  
adduntur ædi porticus. In cœmiterijs fabricas ædificant ligneas in quibus libratur campanæ,  
nunc singulæ, nunc binæ, nunc trinæ.

Non omittenda vt rara ita & ridicula gentis consuetudo: defunctorum cadauera loculis cō-  
dunt, ac manū cadaueris codicillos indunt. Horum summa est, defunctum fuisse Russum Rus-  
forum, fidem amplexum, ac in eadem fide decessisse. Hæc literæ Diuo Petro mittuntur: lectis li-  
teris mox (vt illi aiunt) admittitur, & vt syncerioris fidei sectatori, beatorum etiam sedes quar-  
Latinis Christianis conceditur. Nos enim semichristianos esse contendunt, sese autem synce-  
ros ac genuinos. Hæc sunt indoctæ Barbarie pudenda deliramenta.

### De idololatriæ Moscouitæ, Tartaris conterminis.

Tartarorum confinia tenent Moscouitæ idololatræ. Percelebre est illis idolon aurea vetula  
dicum. Si qua grauior calamitas gentem premit, veluti fames, bellum, vel pestis, Idolum  
suum statim consulunt. Quod hoc modo faciunt, Coram simulacro prostrati preces fundunt,  
mox crepitaculum tympanum in medio statuunt: hoc sorte lecti circumstant: Argenteum bu-  
sinem tympano imponunt, bacillo concutitur tympanum. Ac cui circumiacentium accedit  
bubo, protenus interficitur. Statim nescio quibus Idoli præstigijs vitæ restitutus, malorum cau-  
sas exponit, itaque placato Idoli numine, non ita multo post publica calamitate liberantur,

### De ædium priuatarum forma, ac de cultu populi.

Priuatorum domus vbiuis truneis abiegnis contextuntur: Inferiori trabe quodam aluo su-  
periacentis rotunditatem ita exepiente, vt hac sola admittitur, omnem propemodum fla-  
tum excludant. Solent tamen iuncturæ muscari. Forma ædiū quadrata est, fenestras peranguste,  
per quas impage translucida pelle obducta lumen admittunt. Domorum tecta tabulatis fiunt,  
arborum corticibus foris inductis, Intus ad parietes lata habent scamna. Hæc vulgò pro accubi-  
tis, lectorum enim vsus vulgò ignotus, Ignis in Hypocaustis mane structus, totam domum pro-  
modo tepidam vel calidam reddit, Vulgi amictus vt plurimum laneus est. Piliis vtuntur fastigia-  
tis, in modum metæ, in quibus etiam nobilitatis est insigne: quòd enim porrectiori ac elatori  
vntur pilo, eò splendidiore vulgò habentur.

### Conclusio ad Serenissimam Reginam

Mariam.

Ec sunt ter Maxima Regina, quæ tui Angli modo reduces retulerunt. Quod si per-  
tuam excellentissimam Maiestatem liceat illuc denuò Nauigare, non dubitant tui,  
æteas gentes nominis tui fulgorem penetraturum, quæ tribus solum Heroibus, à  
condito mundo sine amulo gentis patere. ANNO 1554.

Dd

The

The newe Navigation and discouerie of the kingdome  
of Moscouia, by the Northeast, in the yeere 1553: Enterprised  
by Sir Hugh Willoughbie knight, and performed by Richard Chancellor,  
Pilot maior of the voyage. Translated out of the former Latine into  
English.

Upon what  
occasions, and  
by whom this  
voyage was  
set out, and of  
the discouerie  
of Spilscouie  
by the North.



What time our Marchants perceived the commodities and wares of England to be in small request with the Countreys and people about vs, and neede unto vs, and that those Marchandizes which strangers in the time and memorie of our auncestors did earnestly seeke and desire, were now neglected, and the price thereof abated, although by vs carried to their owne portes, and all forreine marchandises in great account, and their prices wonderfully raised: certaine graue citizens of London, and men of great wisdom, and carefull of the good of their Countrey, beganne to thinke with themselves, howe this mischiefe might be remedied: neither was a remedie (as it then appeared) wanting to their desire, for the auoyding of so great an inconuenience: for seeing that the wealth of the Spaniards and Portingals, by the discouerie and searche of newe trades and Countreys was marueilously increased, supposing the same to be a courtesie and meane for them also to obtaine the like, they thereupon resolved upon a newe and strange Navigation. And whereas at the same time our Sebastian Cabota, a man in those dayes very renowned, happened to be in London, they beganne first of all to deale and consulte diligently with him, and after much speache and conference together, it was at last concluded that thre shippes should be prepared and furnished out, for the search and discouerie of the Northerne part of the world, to open a way and passage to our men for traualle to newe and vnknown kingdomes.

3. Shippes furnished  
for the  
discouerie.

And whereas many things seemed necellarie to be regarded in this so harde and difficult a matter, they first make choyce of certaine graue and wise persons in manner of a Senate or companie, which shoulde laye their heads together, and giue their iudgements, and prouide things requisite and profitable for all occasions: by this companie it was thought expedient, that a certaine summe of money shoulde publicly be collected to serue for the furnishing of so many shippes. And lest any private man shoulde be too much oppressed and charged, a course was taken, that every man willing to be of the societie, shoulde disburse the portion of twentie and six pounds a peece: so that in short time by this meane the summe of five thousand pounds being gathered, the thre shippes were bought, the most part wherof they prouided to be newly built and trimmed. But in this action, I wrote not whether I may more admire the care of the Marchants, or the diligence of the Shippwrightes: for the Marchants, they gette very strong and well seasoned planks for the building, the Shippwrightes, they with dayly practise, and their great skill, doe fitte them for the dispatche of the shippes: they calke them, pitche them, and among the rest, they make one most stanche and firme, by an excellent and ingenious inuention. For they had heard that in certaine partes of the Ocean, a kinde of worme is bredde, which many times yeareth and eateth through the strongest oake that is: and therefore that the Spaniards, and the rest to be employed in this voyage might be free and safe from this danger, they couer a peece of the keele of the shippe with thinne sheets of leade: and hauing thus built the shippes, and furnished them with armour and artillerie, then followed a second care no lesse troublesome and necellarie then the former, namely, the prouision of victuals, which was to be made according to the time and length of the voyage. And whereas they afore determined to haue the East part of the world sayled unto, and yet that the sea towards the same was not open, except they kept the Northerne tract, where as yet it was doubtfull whether there were any passage yea or no, they resolved to victual the shippes for eigheteene moneths, which they did for this reason. For our men being to passe that huge and colde part of the world, they wisely foreseeing it, allowe them five moneths victuall to saile to the place, so much more to remaine there if the extremitie of the winter hindered their returne, and so much more also for the time of their comming home.

Prouision of  
victuals for  
18. moneths.

Choice of cap-  
taines and  
Pilots.

Sir Hugh  
Willoughbie.

Howe this prouision being made and carried aboarde, with armour and munition of all sorts, sufficient Capitaines and gouernours of so great an enterpryse were as yet wanting: to which office and place, although many men, (and some boyse of experience) offered themselves, yet one Sir Hugh Willoughbie a most valiant Gentleman, and well boyne, very earnestly requested to haue that care and charge committed vnto him: of whome before all others, both by reason



of the kingdome  
1553: Enterprised  
by Richard Chancellor,  
the former Latine into

commodities and wares of Eng  
s and people about vs, and nece  
strangers in the time and memo  
s were now neglected, and the  
their owne portes, and all forre  
les wonderfully raised: certaine  
ull of the good of their Countrey,  
be remedied: neither was a co  
oping of so great an incoment  
s, by the discouerie and searche of  
osing the same to bee a courte an  
upon a newe and strange kin  
a man in those dayes very renow  
and consult diligently with him,  
cluded that three shippes shou  
the northerne part of the world,  
unknowne kingdomes.

ed in this so harde and difficult  
as in manner of a Senate of coun  
iugements, and proude things  
as thought expedient, that a cre  
ue for the furnishing of so many  
essed and charged, a courte was  
the portion of twentie and fixe  
of fixe thousand pounds being  
they prouided to bee newly built  
may more admire the care of the  
Parchants, they gette very  
deuoyghtes, they with dayly na  
of the shippes: they talke them  
firme, by an excellent and ingo  
of the Ocean, a kinde of womans  
ngest oake that is: and therefore  
might bee free and safe from this  
the sweetes of leade: and hauing  
erie, then followed a second care  
the prouision of victuals, which  
And whereas they afoze beten  
at the sea to wards the same was  
it was doubtfull whether there  
for eigheteene moneths, which  
re and colde part of the world,  
sile to the place, so much more  
urne, and so much more also by

mour and munition of all sorts  
were as yet wanting: to which  
erience) offered themselves, yet  
boone, very earnestly requested  
etope all others, both by reason  
of

of his goodly personage (for hee was of a tall stature) as also for his singular skill in the seruices  
of warre, the companie of the Parchants made greater accompt: so that at the last they con  
ceded and made choyce of him for the Generall of this voyage, and appointed to him the Admi  
rall, with authoritie and commaunde ouer all the rest. And for the gouernement of the other shippes  
although diuers men seemed willing, and made offers of themselves thereunto, yet by a com  
mon consent one Richard Chancellor, a man of great estimation for many good partes of witte in  
him, was brought by by one master Henrie Sidney, a noble young Gentleman and very much  
beloued of king Edward, who at this time comming to the place where the Parchants were ga  
thered together, beganne a very eloquent speache of Exhortation, and spake to them after this maner  
following.

Richard  
Chancellor  
Grand Captaine  
now in 1553  
now.

My very worshipfull friends, I cannot but greatly commende your present godly and be  
nious intention, in the serious enterprising (for the singular loue you beare to your Countrey,  
a matter, which (I hope) will prouee profitable for this nation, and honourable to this our land,  
which intention of yours (wee also of the Nobilitie) are ready to our power to helpe and fur  
ther: neither doe wee holde any thing so deare and precious vnto vs, which wee will not wil  
lingly forgoe, and lay out in so commendable a cause. But principally I reioyce in my selfe, that  
I haue nourished and maintained that witte, which is like by some meanes and in some measure,  
to professe and seeke you in this worthy action. But yet I would not haue you ignorant of this  
one thing, that I doe not see part with Chancellor, not because I make lixe reckoning of the man,  
or that his maintenance is burdalous and chargeable vnto mee, but that you might conceiue  
and vnderstande, my good will and promptitude for the furtherance of this busiuelles, and that the  
authoritie and estimation which hee deserueth may be giuen him. You know the man by report,  
I by experience, you by wordes; I by deedes, you by speache and companie, but I by the dayly  
triall of his life, haue a full and perfect knowledge of him. And you are also to remember, into  
howe many perils for your sakes, and his Countreys loue, hee is now to runne: whereof it is  
requisite that wee bee not vnumdefull, if it please God to sende him good successe. Wee come  
not a little money to the chaunce and hazard of fortune: Wee committs his life, (a thing to a man  
of all things most deare) to the raging Sea, and the vncertainties of many dangers. Wee shall  
here thus and rest at home quietly with our friends, and acquaintance: but hee in the meane  
time labouring to keepe the ignorant and unruly Parriners in good order and obedience, with  
howe many cares shall hee trouble and vexe himselfe, with howe many troubles shall hee beake  
himselfe, and howe many disquietings shall hee be forced to sustaine: Wee shall keepe our  
stone reades and Countrey, Wee shall seeke strange and unknowne kingdomes. Wee shall com  
mit his safetie to barbarous and cruell people, and shall hazarde his life amongst the monstrous  
and terrible beastes of the Sea. Wherefore in respect of the greatnesse of the dangers, and the ex  
cellencie of his charge, you are to fauour and loue the man thus departing from vs, and if it fall so  
happily out that hee returne againe, it is your part and vnicie also, liberally to rewarde  
him.

Henry  
Sidney his  
Orator.

After that this noble yong Gentleman had deliuered this or some such like speache, much  
more eloquently then I can possible report it, the companie then present beganne one to looke  
upon another, one to question and conferre with another: and some (to whom the vertue and sus  
tencie of the man was knowne) began secretly to reioyce with themselves, and to conceiue a  
speciall hope, that the man would prouee in time very rare and excellent, and that his vertues al  
ready appearing and shining to the world, would growe to the great honour and aduancement  
of this kingdome.

After all this, the companie growing to some silence, it seemed good to them that were of great  
estimation amongst them, to inquire, searche and seeke what might be learned and knowne, con  
cerning the Easterly part or tract of the world. For which cause 2. Tartarians, which were then  
of the Kings Seable, were sent for, & an interpreter was gotten to be present, by whom they were  
demanded touching their Countrey and the maners of their nation. But they were able to an  
swere nothing to the purpose: being in deede more acquainted (as one there merrily and openly  
saide) to talke portes, then to learne the states and dispositions of people. But after much adoe and  
many things passed about this matter, they grewe at last to this issue, to set vpon and appoint a  
time for the departure of the shippes: because diuers were of opinion, that a great part of the  
best time of the yeere was already spent, and if the delays grewe longer, the way would be  
longe and harde by the force of the Ice, and the colde climate: and therefore it was thought  
best by the opinion of them all, that by the twentieth day of May, the Captaines and Parriners  
should

They depa  
red from Mat  
ch the 20.  
of May 1553

shoulde take shipping, and depart from Raliffe vpon the ebbe, if it so pleased God. They being saluted their acquaintance, one his wife, another his chylozen, another his kindefolkes, and another his friendes deerer then his kindefolkes, were present and ready at the day appointed, and having wayed ancre, they departed with the turning of the water, and sayling easily came first to Grenewich. The greater Shippes were towed downe with boores, and oares, and the mariners being all apparelled in *Walter* of skie coloured clothe, rowed a maine, and way way with diligence. And being come neere to Grenewich (where the Court then laye) presently vpon the newes thereof the Courtiers came running out, and the common people flockt together, standing very thicke vpon the shoare: the priuie Councell, they lookt out at the windows of the Court, and the rest ranne vp to the toppes of the towres: the Shippes hereupon discharge their Ordnance, and shoote off their peeces after the maner of warre, and of the sea, in such sort that the tops of the hilles sounded therewith, the valleys, and the waters gaue an Echo, and the mariners they shouted in such sort, that the skie rang againe with the noyse thereof. One stood in the poope of the Shippe, and by his gesture biddes fare well to his friendes in the best maner he coulde. Another walkes vpon the battes, another climbes the showes, another standes vpon the maine parte, and another in the toppe of the Shippe. To see how, it was a very triumphe (as euer a foie) in all respects to the beholders. But (alas) the good King *Edward* (in respect of whome principally all this was prepared,) hee onely by reason of his sickenesse was absent from this shewe, and not long after the departure of these Shippes, the lamentable and most sorrowfull accident of his death followed.

But to proceede in the matter.

The Shippes going downe with the tyde, came at last to Woolwiche, where they stayed and cast ancre, with purpose to depart thence againe, as soone as the turning of the water, and a better winde shoulde vayne them to set saile. After this they departed and came to Harwiche, in which port they stayed long, not without great losse and consuming of time: yet at the last with a good winde they hoysed vp saile, and committed themselves to the sea, giuing their last adieu to their native Countrey, which they knewe not whether they shoulde euer returne to see againe or noe. Many of them looked oftentimes backe, and coulde not refrain from cares, considering into what hazards they were to fall, and what vncertainties of the sea they were to make triall of.

Amongst the rest *Richard Chanceler*, the *Captaine* of the *Edwarde Bonauenture*, was not a little grieued with the feare of wanting vituals, part whereof was founde to bee corrupt, and perished at Harwiche, and the hoggshheads of wine also leaked, and were not stanch: his naturall and fatherly affection also somewhat troubled him, for hee left behinde him his two little sonnes, which were in the case of *Orphanes* if hee shoulde not well: the estate also of his comely maner was in his care, being in the former respects after a sort vnhappie, and were to abide with himselfe euery good or badde accident: but in the meane time while his minde was thus toymed with the multiplicite of sorowes and cares, after many dayes sayling, they kenned lande apace off, wherunto the Pilots directed the Shippes: and being come to it they launde, and finde it to be *Rose Island*, where they stayed certaine dayes, and afterwards set saile againe, and proceeding towards the North, they espied certaine other Islands, which were called the *Crosse of 3 Islands*. From which places when they were a litle departed, *master Willoughbie* the *Generall*, a man of good iudgement and prouidence in all his actions, erected and set out his flagge, by which hee called together the chiefe men of the other Shippes, that by the helpe and assistance of their counsels, the order of the gouernement, and conduction of the Shippes in the whole voyage, might be the better: who being come together accordingly, they conclude and agree, that if any great tempest should arise at any time, and happen to disperie and scatter them, euery Shippe shoulde inuoye his selfe to goe to *Wardhouse*, a haven or castell of some name in the kingdome of *Norway*, and that they that arrived there first in safetie, shoulde staye and expect the coming of the rest.

The very same day in the afternoone, about foure of the clocke, so great a tempest suddenly arose, and the Seas were so outrageous, that the Shippes coulde not keepe their intended course, but some were perforce driven one way, and some another way, to their great perill and hazard. The generall with his lowdest voyce, cried out to *Richard Chanceler*, and earnestly requested him not to goe farre from him: but hee neither woulde nor coulde keepe companie with him, if hee coulde still so fall: for the Admirall was of better saile then his Shippe. But the saide Admirall (I knowe not by what meanes) bearing all his sailes, was carried away with so great force and swiftnesse, that not long after hee was quite out of sight, and the third Shippe also with the

it so pleased God. They  
n, another his kinsfolkes, and  
readie at the day appointed,  
water, and sayling easily came  
twi boates, and oares, and the  
othe, rowed a maine, and made  
where the Court then laye) yo  
the common people flocke to  
they looke out at the windowes  
the shippes hereupon discharge  
re, and of the sea, insomuch that  
ers gaw an Echo, and the ma  
the noise thercof. One of the  
s friends in the best maner be  
spowes, another standes upon  
joye, it was a very triumphe of  
o King Edwarde (in respect  
of his sickenesse was absent from  
table and most joyefull acci

olwiche, where they stayed and  
t the turning of the water, and a  
parted and came to Harwiche,  
suming of time: yet at the last  
ues to the sea, giving their last  
they shoulde ever returne to se  
ld not refrain from tears, con  
less of the sea they were to make

warde Bonaventure, was not a  
as founde to bee corrupt, and po  
nd were not stanch: his naturall  
hinde him his two little sonnes,  
Race also of his companie too,  
and were to adoe with him  
his minde was thus comforted  
pling, they kenned lande safere  
ie they lande, and finde it to be  
let safie againe, and proceeding  
ere called the Coast of Islands,  
loughbie the Generall, a man  
er out his flaggie, by which hee  
pe and assistance of their coun  
the whole voyage, might be  
and agree, that if any great tem  
per, every shippe shoulde take  
name in the kingdome of Nor  
Dape and expect the coming

e, so great a tempest suddenly  
oe keape their intended course,  
to their great perill and hazarde  
celer, and earnestly requested  
e keepe companie with him, if  
hippe. But the said Admirall  
arried away with so great force  
to the thirde shippe also with the  
same

same danger and like rage, was dispersed and lost.

The shippe boate of the Admirall (striking against the shippe,) was overtaken in the  
light and wisde of the Sparriners of the Bonaventure: and as for them that are already retur  
ned and arrived, they knowe nothing of the rest of the shippes what was become of them.

They returne  
the next morn  
not knowing  
what was be  
come of the  
other 2. shippes.

But if it be so, that any miserable misshapen have overtaken them, If the rage and furie of the  
Sea have deuoured those good men, or if as yet they liue, and wander by and dolene in strange  
Countreies, I must needs say they were men worthy of better fortune, and if they be liuing, let vs  
wish them safetie and a good returne, but if the crueltie of death hath taken holde of them, God  
sende them a Christian graue and Sepulchre.

Nowe Richard Chanceler with his shippe and companie being thus left alone, and be  
come very pensie, heauie, and sorrowfull, by this dispersion of the flecte, hee (according to  
the order before taken,) shapeth his course for Wardhouse in Norway, there to expect and abide  
the arrival of the rest of the shippes. And being come thither, and hauing stayed there the space  
of 7. daies, and looked in vaine for their coming, he determined at length to proceede alone  
in the purposed voyage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell  
in companie and speache with certaine Scottisshmen: who hauing vnderstanding of his inten  
tion, and wishing well to his actions, beganne earnestly to dissuade him from the further pro  
secution of the discouerie, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fall into, and omitted no  
reason that might serue to that purpose. But hee holding nothing so ignominious and reproch  
full, as inconstancie and leuitie of minde, and perfwading himselfe that a man of valure coulde  
not commit a more dishonourable part then for feare of danger to auoyde and shunne great at  
tempes, was nothing at all changed or discouraged with the speeches and wordes of the Scots,  
remaining steadfast and immutable in his first resolution: determining either to bring that to  
pass which was intended, or els to die the death.

And as for them which were with master Chanceler in his shippe, although they had great  
cause of discomfort by the losse of their companie (whome the fore saide tempest had separated  
from them,) and were not a litle troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in re  
spect of their doubtfull course: yet notwithstanding, they were of such consent and agreement of  
minde with master Chanceler, that they were resolute, and prepared vnder his direction and  
government, to make pproofe and triall of all adventures, without all feare or mistrust of future  
dangers. Which constancie of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increaseth their Cap  
taines carefulnesse: for hee being swallowed vp with like good will and loue towards them,  
feared least through any error of his, the safetie of the companie shoulde bee endangered. To  
conclude, when they sawe their desire and hope of the arrivall of the rest of the shippes to bee en  
erly day more and more frustrated, they provided to sea againe, and master Chanceler helde on his  
course towards that vnknown part of the world, and sailed so fast, that hee came at last to the  
place where hee founde no light at all, but a continuall light and brightnesse of the Sunne shi  
ning clearely vpon the huge and mightie Sea. And hauing the benefite of this per etuall lighte  
for certaine daies, at the length it pleased God to bring them into a certaine great Bay, which  
was of one hundred miles or thereabout ouer. Whereinto they entred, and somewhat farre  
within it cast ancre, and looking euery way about them, it happened that they espied a floure off a  
certaine silver boate, which master Chanceler, accompanied with a fewe of his men, went to  
uaues to common with the silfmermen that were in it, and to knowe of them what Countrey  
it was, and what people, and of what maner of liuing they were: but they being amazed with  
the strange greatnesse of his shippe, (for in these partes before that time they had neuer seene the  
like) beganne presently to auoyde and to flee: but hee still following them, at last outcrooke  
them, and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) prostrated them  
selves before him, offering to kill his feete: but hee (according to his great and singular cour  
tesie,) looked pleasantly vpon them, comforting them by signes and gestures, retuling thair  
wretches and reuerences of theirs, and taking them by in all louing love from the ground. And it  
is strange to consider howe much fauour afterwards in that place, this humanitie of his did  
procure to himselfe. For they being dismissed, spread by and by a report abroade of the ar  
riual of a strange nation, of a singular gentlenesse and courtesie: whereupon the common peo  
ple came together offering to these newe come guests victuals freely, and not refusing to tradique  
with them, except they had bene bound by a certaine religious vse and custome, not to buy any for  
reine commodities, without the knowledge and consent of the king.

By this time our men had learned that this Countrey was called Ruffia, or Moscouie, and that Euan Vasiluich (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and governed

The discouerie  
of Ruffia.

farre and wide in those places. And the barbarous Russes asked likewise of our men wherunto they were, and what they came for: wherunto answer was made, that they were Englishmen sent into those coastes, from the most excellent King Edward the first, hauing from him in commendement certaine things to beaker to their King, and seeking nothing els, but his amitie and friendship, and traicque with his people, wherby they doubted not, but that great commodities and profitte would growe to the subjects of very kingdomes.

The barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherance to acquaine their king out of hande with so honest and reasonable a request.

In the meane time master Chancelour increased victuals for his money of the gouernour of that place, who together with others came abooupe him, and required hostages of them likewise for the more assurance of safetie to himselfe, and his companie. To whome the Gouernours answered, that they knew not in that case the will of their king, but yet were willing in such things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him: which was as then to abooupe him the benches of victuals.

Nowe whiles these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to certifie him of the arrivall of a strange nation, and withall to knowe his pleasure concerning them. Which message was very welcome vnto him, inasmuch that voluntarily hee invited them to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a iourney, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee graunted libertie to his subjects to bargain, and to traicque with them: and further promised, (that if it would please them to come to him,) hee himselfe would beare the whole charges of poste horses. In the meane time the gouernours of the place deferred the matter from day to day, pretending diuers excuses, and saying one while that the consent of all the gouernours, and another while, that the great and waig hie affaires of the kingdome compelled them to deferre their answer: and this they did of purpose, so long to protract the time, vntill the messenger (sent before to the king) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But Master Chancelour, (seeing himselfe helde in this suspence with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him,) they posted the matter off so often, was very instant with them to performe their promise: which if they would not doe, hee tolde them that hee would depart, and proceede in his voyage. So that the Moscouites (although as yet they knewe not the minde of their king) yet fearing the departure in deede of our men, who had such wares and commodities as they greatly desired, they at last resolved to furnish our people with all things necessarie, and to conduct them by lande to the presence of their king. And so Master Chancelour beganne his iourney, which was very long and most troublesome, whereto hee had the vse of certaine sleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are caried themselves vpon sleds, and all their carriages are in the same sort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause wherof is the exceeding hardnes of the ground, congealed in the winter time by the force of the colde, which in those places is very extreme and horrible, wherof hereafter we will say something.

But nowe they hauing passed the greater part of their iourney, mette at last with the Sclendeman (of whom I spake before) sent to the king secretly from the Iustices of gouernours, who by some ill happe had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea side, which is neere to the Countrey of the Tartars, thinking there to haue founde our Shippe. But hauing long erred and wandered out of his way, at the last in his dreer returne hee mette (as hee was coming) our Capitaine on the way. To whome hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all courtesie, and in the most louing manner that could be: whereto hee commended was given, that post horses should bee gotten for him and the rest of his companie without any money. Which thing was of all the Russes in the rest of their iourney so willingly done, that they beganne to quarell, sea, and to fight also, in straining and contending which of them should beare their post horses to the sledde: so that after much adoe, and great paines taken in this long and wearie iourney, (for they had trauielled very nere fiftene hundred miles) master Chancelour came at last to Mosco, the chiefe citie of the kingdome, and the seate of the king: of which citie and of the Emperour himselfe, and of the principall cities of Moscouie, we will speake immediately more at large in this discourse.

The Emperours courtiers letters to M. Chancelour.

Of Mos-

Of Moscouie, which is also called Russia.

Moscouie, which hath the name also of Russia the white, is a very large, and spacious Countrey, every way bounden with others nations. Towards the South and the East it is compassed with Tartaria: the Northern side of it stretcheth to the Scythian Ocean: upon the West part, border the Lappians, a rude, and savage nation, living in woods, whose language is not knowne to any other people: next unto these, more towards the South, is Sweedia, then Finlandia, then Livonia, and last of all Lithuania. This Countrey of Moscouie, hath also very many, and great rivers in it, and is marvellous ground in many places: and as for the rivers, the greatest, and most famous amongst all the rest, is that, which the Russes in their owne tongue call Volga, but others know it by the name of Rha. Next unto it in fame, is Tanais, which they call Don, and the other Borithenes, which at this day they call Neper. Two of these, to wit, Rha, and Borithenes, falling both out of one fountaine, runne very farre through the land: Rha receiuing many other pleasant rivers into it, and turning from the very head or spring of it towards the East, after many crooked turnings and windings, dischargeth it selfe, and all the other waters, and rivers, that fall into it, by diuers passages into the Caspian Sea. Tanais, springing from a fountaine of great name in those partes, and growing great neere to his head, spers it selfe at length very largely, and makes a great lake: and then growing narrow againe, both so runne for certaine miles, until it fall into another lake, which they call Iuan: and there hence, fetching a very crooked course, comes very neere to the river Volga: but obtaining as it were, the companie of any other river, doth there turne it selfe againe from Volga, and runnes toward the South, and falls at last into the Lake of Mceotis. Borithenes, which comes from the same head that Rha doth, (as we said before) carrieth both it selfe, and other waters that are neere unto it, towards the South, not retarding the mixture of other small rivers: and running by many great and large Countreies, falls at last into Pontus Euxinus. Besides these rivers, are also in Moscouie certaine lakes, and pooles, the lakes byeebe fitte by the celestiall influence: and amongst them all, the chiefest and most principall, is called Bellij Islera, which is very famous by reason of a very strong Towne built in it, wherein the Kings of Moscouie reserue and repose their treasure, in all time of warre, and danger.

The mightie lake of Bellij Islera.

Concerning the Riphean mountaines, whereupon the snow lieth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that Tanais the river did spring, and that the rest of the wonders of nature, which the Grecians fained and invented of olde were there to be seene, our men which lately came from thence, neither sawe them, nor yet haue brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remained there for the space of three moneths, and had gotten in that time some intelligence of the language of Moscouie. The whole Countrey is plaine, and champion, and few hills in it: and towards the North it hath very large and spacious woods, wherein is great store of fere trees, a wood very necessarie, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beastes bred in those woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Mottes, and another kind of beast unknowne to vs, but called by them Rossomakka: and the nature of the same is very rare, and wonderfull: for when it is great with young, and ready to bring forth, it seeketh out some narrow place betweene two flakes, and so going through them, presseth it selfe, and by that means is eased of her burden, which other wise could not be done. They hunt their buffes for the most part a horsebacke, but their Beares afoote, with wooden speeres. The north partes of the Countrey, are reported to be so colde, that the very ice of water, which distilleth out of the most wood, whith they lay upon the fire, is presently congealed and frozen: the diuersitie growing suddnly to be so great, that in one and the selfe same firebrand, a man shall see both fire and ice. When the winter doth once beginne there, it doth still more and more increase, by a perpetuall of cold: neither doth that colde flake, until the force of the Summe beames both dissolve the colde, and make glad the earth returning to it againe. Our mariners which we sent in the ship in the meanest time to keepe it, in their going up onely from their cabbins to the battes, had their breath oftentimes so stifled, by taken a snuff, that they oftentimes fell downe, as men very neere dead, so great is the sharpness of that colde climate: but as for the South partes of the Countrey, they are somewhat more temperate.

The sharpness of the winter in Moscouie.

Of Mosco, the chiefe Citie of the kingdome, and of the Emperour thereof.

It remaineth that a larger discourse be made of Mosco, the principall Citie of that Countrey, and of the Prince also, as before we haue promised. The Emperour and government of the King

like wise of our men to be done, that they were Englishmen be like, having from him in coming nothing els, but his amitie to not, but that great communitie  
 mitted their ayde and furtherance request.  
 his money of the governour of required hostages of them like e. To whom the Governours yet were willing in such things to also, to be him the benefice of  
 messenger unto the Emperour, to move his pleasure concerning that voluntarily hee imitted so long a iourney, they thought bargain, and to traffique with me to him, hee himselfe would the governours of the place by saying one while that the con- waighte affaires of the king of purpose, so long to protract me with relation of his will and  
 ence with long and vaine expect the matter off so often, ) was very would not doe, hee tolde them the Moscouites (although as yet in deede of our men, who had resolved to furnish our people presence of their king. And so and most trouble some, when very common, for they are come soze, the people almost not feeding hardnes of the ground, sole places is very extreme and  
 mette at last with the Slew Justice of governour, who which is neere to the Countrey being long erred and wandered as comming) our Captaine on ers, which were written to him therein expresse commandment of his companie without any they so willingly done, that they being which of them should put paines taken in this long and ted miles) matter Chancellor of the king: of which title, and ic, wee will speake immediately

Of Mos-

These manners  
of building.

is very large, and his wealth at this time exceeding great. And because the Citie of Mosco is the chiefeft of all the rest, it seemeth of it selfe to challenge the first place in this discourse. Our men say, that in bignesse it is as great as the Citie of London, with the Suburbes thereof. There are many and great buildings in it, but for beautie and fairness, nothing comparable to ours. There are many Townes, and Villages also, but built out of oyster, and with no hauntsomenesse: their streets and houses are not paved with stone, as ours are: the walles of their houses are of wood: the roofes for the most part, are covered with single booydes. There is hard by the Citie a very faire Castle, strong, and furnished with artillerie, wherunto the Citie is loyned directly towards the North, with a bricke wall: the walls also of the Castle are built with bricke, and are in breadth of thicknes eighteene foote. This Castle hath on the one side a byle ditch, on the other side, the riuer Volga, whereby it is made almost inespugnable. The same Volga extending towards the East doth admit into it the companie of the riuer Occa.

In the Castle aforesayde, there are in number nine Churches, or Chappels, not altogether vnpleasant, which are vsed and kept by certaine religious men, ouer whom there is after a sort, a Patriarke, or Gouernour, and with him other reuerent Fathers, all which for the greater part, dwell within the Castle. As for the Kings Court and Pallace, it is not of the neatest, onely in forme it is foure square, and of louise building, much surpassed and excelled by the beautie and elegance of the houses of the King of England. The windowes are very narrowly built, and some of them by glasse, some other by lattices admitteth the light: and whereas the Pallaces of our Princes are becket, and adorned with hangings of clothe of golde, there is none such there: they build and loyne to all their walls, benches, and that not onely in the Court of the Emperour, but in all private mens houses.

Nowe after that they had remained about twelue daies in the Citie, there was then a Messenger sent vnto them, to bring them to the Kings house: and they being after a sort wearied with their long stay, were very ready, and willing so to doe: and being entered within the gates of the Court, there saze a very honorable companie of Courtiers, to the number of one hundred, all apparelled in cloth of golde, downe to their ankles: and there hence being conducted into the chamber of presence, our men beganne to wonder at the State of the Emperour: his seate was a loft, in a very royall chaire, hauing on his head a Diademe, or Crowne of golde, apparelled with a robe all of Goldsmithes worke, and in his hand he helde a Scepter garnished, and beset with precious stones: and besides all other notes and appareance of honour, there was a State in his countenance, proportionable with the excellencie of his estate: on the one side of him stood his chiefe Secretarie, on the other side, the great Commander of Silence, both of them arrayed so in cloth of golde: and then there saze the Counsel of one hundred, and sitte in number, all in like sort arrayed, and of great state. This so honorable an assemblie, so great a State of the Emperour, and of the place, might very well haue amazed our men, and haue daffe them out of countenance: but not withstanding, Walter Chancellor being there with all nothing dismayed, sat downe, and did his dutie to the Emperour, after the manner of England, and withall, deliuered vnto him the letters of their King, Edward the sixt. The Emperour hauing taken, & read the letters, began a litle to question with them, and to aske them of the welfare of our King: wherunto our men answered him directly, & in fewe wordes: hereupon our men presented some thing to the Emperour, by the chiefe Secretarie, which at the deliuerie of it, put off his hat, being before all the time countenance: and so the Emperour hauing invited them to dinner, dismissed them from his presence: and going into the chamber of him that was Master of the Requests to the Emperour, & hauing staid there the space of two houres, at the last, the Messenger commeth, and calleth them to dinner: they goe, and being conducted into the golden Court, (for so they call it, although not very fair) they find the Emperour sitting vpon a high and stately seate, apparelled with a robe of siluer, and with an other Diademe on his heade: our men being placed ouer against him, sitte downe in the midde of the roome, stood a mightie Cupboorde vpon a square foote, wherupon stood also a round boorde, in manner of a Diamond, byade beneath, and towards the toppe narrow, and euery steppe rose vpp more narrowe then another. Vpon this Cupboorde was placed the Emperours place, which was so much, that the very Cupboorde it selfe was scarce able to sustayne the weight of it: the better part of all the vessels, and goblets, was made of very fine golde: and amongst the rest, there were foure pots of very large bignes, which did adorne the rest of the place, in great reputation: for they were so bigge, that they thought them at the least, five foote long. There were also vpon this Cupboorde, certaine bluer calkes, not much differing from the quantitie of our Pykins, wherein was reserved the Emperours drinke: on each side of the Hall, stood foure Tables, each of them ladde, and covered with

St. Edwards  
letters deliuered  
reth.

cause the cite of Mosco in the  
in this discourse. Our men say,  
urbes thereof. There are many  
comparable to ours. There  
and with no banesomen: their  
walls of their houses are of  
wales. There is hard by the Cite  
into the Cite is layed down  
Table are built with brick, and  
the one side a bye ditch, on the  
ble. The same Volga running  
ca.

of Chappels, not altogether  
uer whom, there is after a long  
all which for the greater part,  
is not of the nearest, only in  
and excell'd by the beautie and  
are very narrowly built, and  
and whereas the Pallaces of  
golde, there is none such there  
in the Court of the Emperour,

Cite, there was then a Spel-  
ding after a sort wearied with  
entered within the gates of the  
number of one hundred, all ap-  
being conducted into the cham-  
e Emperour: his seat was a  
Crowne of golde, apparelled  
a Scepter garnished, and best  
of honour, there was a Pall-  
ate: on the one side of him stood  
Attence, both of them arrayed  
and sitted in number, all in like  
to great a Spelidie of the Em-  
and have dash't them out of coun-  
shall nothing distinate, falow,  
and withall, delivered vnto him  
taken, & read the letters, began  
king: whereunto our men  
and some thing to the Emperour,  
being before all the time com-  
them from his presence: and  
the Emperour, & hauing finish-  
ed, and called them to dinner:  
call it, although not very fair)  
celled with a robe of siluer, and  
against him, sate downe in the  
foote, whereupon stood al-  
and towards the toppe was  
Upon this Cupboard was  
Cupboard it selfe was set  
fels, and goblets, was made  
of very large bignes, which  
is bigge, that they thought  
cupboard, certaine silver chasses,  
was reserved the Emperours  
of them ladde, and covered with  
very

very cleane cable clothes, whereunto the companie ascended by three steps of begettes: all which  
were filled with the attendants present: the ghests were all apparell'd with linnen without, and  
with rich shirms within, and so did notably set out this royall feast. The Emperour, when he  
took any bread of knife into his hand, doth first of all crosse himselfe upon his forehead: they  
that are in speciall fauour with the Emperour, sate upon the same bench with him, but somewhat  
farre from him: and before the comming in of the meate, the Emperour himselfe, according to an  
ancient custome of the kings of Moscou, doth first bestow a peece of bread upon every one of his  
ghests, with a loud pronounciation of his title, and honour, in this manner: The great Duke of  
Moscou, and chiefe Emperour of Russia, John Basiluwich, (so then the officer nameth the ghest)  
doth giue thee bread. Whereupon all the ghests rise vp, and by and by sit downe againe. This done,  
the Gentleman Vsher of the Hall comes in, with a notable companie of seruants, carrying the di-  
shes, and hauing done his reuerence to the Emperour, puts a young Schawne in a golden platter  
upon the table, and immediately takes it thence againe, deliuering it to the Caruer, and leu-  
er of his fellowes to be cut vp: which being performed, the meate is then distributed to the  
ghests, with the like pompe, and ceremonies. In the meane time, the Gentleman Vsher receiues  
his bread, and casteth to the Emperour, and after ward, hauing done his reuerence, he departs.  
Carrying the rest of the dishes, because they were brought in out of order, our men can report  
certaintie: but this is true, that all the furniture of dishes, and drinkeing vessels, which were then  
for the vse of a hundred ghests, was all of pure golde, and the tables were so laden with vessels of  
golde, that there was no roome for some to stand vpon them.

We may not forget, that there were 140. seruicours in cloth of golde, that in the dinner  
time, changed thyle their habit and apparell, which seruicours are in like sort serued with bread  
from the Emperour, as the rest of the ghests. Last of all, dinner being ended, and candles brought  
in, (for by this time night was come) the Emperour calleth all his ghests and Noble men by  
their names, in such sorte, that it seemes miraculours, that a Prince, otherwise occupied in great  
matters of estate, should so wel remember so many and sundry particular names. The Russes told  
our men, that the reason thereof, as also of the bestowing of bread in that manner, was to the ende  
that the Emperour might keepe the knowledge of his owne household: and withall, that such as  
are vnder his displeasure, might by this meane be knowen.

### Of the discipline of warre amongst the Russes.

Whensoever the iniuries of their neighbours doe call the King tooch to battell, he neuer  
armeth a lesse number against the enemye, then 300. thousand soldiers, 100. thousand  
horses, and the rest of his armye, he leaueth in garrison in some fit places,  
for the better safetie of his Empire. He selleth no husbandmen, nor Parbans: for the Countrey  
is so populous, that these being left at home, the youth of the Realme is sufficient for all his wars.  
As many as goe out to warfare, doe youtie all things of their owne cost: they fight not on foote,  
but altogether on horsebacke: their armour is a coate of maille, & a helmet: the coate of maille about  
is gilded, or els adorned with silke, although it pertaine to a common souldier: they haue a great  
vse in shewing their wealth: they vse bowes, and arrowes, as the Turkes do: they carry lances al-  
so into the field. They ride with a short stirrop, after the manner of the Turkes: they are a kinde  
of people most sparing in diet, and most patient in extremities of cold, about all others. For when  
the ground is covered with snowe, and is growen terrible and hard with the frost, this Russe  
hangs vp his mane, or souldiers coate, against that part from whence the winde and snowe  
blowes, and so making a litte fire, lieth downe with his backe towards the weather: this mane  
of his serues him for his bed, wall, house and all: his drinke is the cold water of the riuer, mingled  
with oaremeale, and this is all his good cheere, and he thinketh himselfe well, and daintily feede  
therewith, and so lieth downe by his fire, and vpon the hard ground, rosted as it were his  
warre does thus daintily stuffed: the hard ground is his feather bed, and some blocke of stone his  
pillow: and so for his horse, he is as it were a chamberfellow with his spader, faring both alike,  
how liuely may this barbarous, and rude Russe, condemne the daintines and nicenes of our  
Captaines, who liuing in a soft and aise much more temperate, yet commonly vse furred boots,  
and clothes: But this much of the furniture of their common souldiers. But those that are of high-  
er degrees, come into the field, a litte better prouided. As for the furniture of the Emperour  
himselfe, it is then above all other times, most notable. The coverings of his tence for the most  
part, are all of golde, adorned with stones of great price, and with the curious workmanship of plu-  
mbers: as often as they are to skirmish with the enemye, they goe forth without any order at  
all:

all: they make no towings, nor militarie diuisions of their men, as we doe, but lying by the most part, in ambush, doe suddenly set vpon the enemye. Their hostes can well obtaine two whole daies from any meate. They feede vpon the barkes of trees, and the most tender branches in all the time of warre. And this is ane and miserable manner of liuing, both the horse and his. Spawer can well endure, sometimes for the space of two moneths, iustie, and in good state of body. If any man behaue himselfe valiantly in the field, to the contentation of the Emperour, he bestoweth vpon him in recompense of his seruice, some farme, or so much ground as he and his may liue vpon, which notwithstanding after his deatch, returneth againe to the Emperour, if he die without a male issue. For although his daughters be neuer so many, yet no part of that inheritance cometh to them, except peraduenture the Emperour of his goodnes, giue some portion of the land amongst them, to bestowe them withall. As for the man, whoseuer he be, that is in this sorte rewarded by the Emperours liberalltie, he is bound in a great summe, to maintaine so many souldiers in the warre, when needs shall require, as that land, in the opinion of the Emperour, is able to maintaine. And all those, to whome any lands fall by inheritance, are in no better condition: for if they die without any male issue, all their lands fall into the hands of the Emperour: and moreover, if there be any riche man amongst them, who in his owne person is vsit for the warres, and yet hath such wealth, that thereby many noble men and warriors might be maintaineed, if any of the Courtiers present his name to the Emperour, the unhappy man is by and by sent for, and in that instant, deprived of all his riches, which with great paine, and trauel all his life time, he had gotten together: except perhaps some small portion thereof be left him, to maintaine his wife, children, and familie. But all this is done of all the people so willingly at the Emperours commaundement, that a man would thinke, they rather make restitution of other mens goods, then giue that which is their owne to other men. Nowe the Emperour hauing taken these goods into his hands, bestoweth them among his Courtiers, according to their desert: & the oftener that a man is sent to the warres, the more fauour he thinketh is boyne to him by the Emperour, although he goe vpon his owne charge, as I said before. So great is the obedience of all men generally in their Prince.

### Of the Ambassadors of the Emperour of Moscouie.

The Moscouie, with no lesse pompe, and magnificence, then that which we haue spoken of, sends his Ambassadors to forren Princes, in the affaires of estate. For while our men were abiding in the Citie of Mosco, there were two Ambassadors sent to the King of Poland, accompanied with 500. notable horse, and the greater part of the men were arrayed in cloth of golde, and of silke, and the worst apparell was of garments of a blew colour, to speake nothing of the trappings of the horses, which were adorned with gold and siluer, and very curiously embrodered: they had also with them one hundred white and faire spare horses, to vse them at such times, as any wearines came vpon them. But nowe the time requireth me to speake briefly of other Cities of the Moscouites, and of the wares and commodities that the Countrey yeeldeth.

### Nouogorode.

Next vnto Mosco, the Citie of Nouogorode is reputed the chiefe of Russia: for although it be in *Hauesie* inferior to it, yet in greatnes it goeth beyond it. It is the chiefe and greatest Harre Towne of all Moscouie: and albeit the Emperours seat is not there, but at Mosco, yet the commodiousnes of the riuer, falling into that gulf, which is called *Sinus Finnicus*, wher by it is well frequented by *Harrhans*, makes it more famous, then Mosco it selfe. This towne excels all the rest in the commodities of flaxe, and hempe: it yeeldes also hides, bone, and waxe. The Flemmings there, sometimes had a house of merchandise, but by reason that they were like all dealing there, which they did with vs; they lost their priuiledges, a restitution wherof, they earnestly sued for, at the time that our men were there. But those Flemmings hearing of the arrivall of our men in those partes, wrote their letters to the Emperour against them, accusing them for pirates and rouers, wishing him to detain, and imprison them. Which things when they were known of our men, they conceaued feare, that they should neuer haue returned home. But the Emperour beleuing rather the Kings letters, which our men brought, then the lying and false suggestions of the Flemmings, used no ill intreatie towards them.

The haueury  
of the Flem-  
mings against  
our men.

Ycraslau.



we doe; but I saye it: the most  
can well abtaine two whole  
the most tender branches in all  
both the horse and his spall  
and in good state of body. If any  
of the Emperour, he bestoweth  
toward as he and his may line up  
part of that inheritance comes  
some portion of the land amon-  
be, that is in this soye returned  
maintaine so many souldiers by  
of the Emperour, is able to main-  
in no better condition: for if they  
of the Emperour: and moreover,  
is unfit for the warres, and yet  
might be maintained, if any of the  
is by and by sent for, and in that  
cause all his life time, he had good  
him, to maintaine his wife, child-  
ty at the Emperours command:  
if other mens goods, then give  
having taken these goods into his  
deserts: & the oftener that a man  
n by the Emperour, although he  
obedience of all men generally in

### ur of Moscouie.

which we have spoken of,  
estate. For while our men were  
to the King of Poland, accompa-  
were arrayed in cloth of golde, and  
ur, to speake nothing of the trap-  
very curiously embroidered: they  
to use them at such times, as we  
speake briefly of other Cities of  
ntrey peeldeth.

the chiefest of Russia: for although  
and it. It is the chiefest and great-  
seate is not there, but at Mosco,  
ch is called Sinus Finnicus, where  
then Mosco it selfe. This towne  
side also hives, honie, and waxe,  
but by reason that they be of the  
inildredges, a restitution inbred,  
those Flemmings hearing of the  
Emperour against them, accusing  
them. Which thing when they  
never have returned home. The  
men brought, then the lying and  
of them.

### Yeraslaue.

### Yeraslaue.

Yeraslaue also is a Towne of some good fame, for the commodities of hives, tallo we, and come,  
which it yeeldes in great abundance. Cakes of waxe are there also to be solde, although  
other places have greater store: this Yeraslaue is distant from Mosco, about two hundred miles:  
and betwixt them are many populous villages. Their fieldes yeelde such store of come, that in con-  
sparing it towardes Mosco, sometimes in a forenoone, a man shall see seven hundred or eight  
hundred sleds, going and coming, laden with come and salt fishe: the people come a thousand  
miles to Mosco, to buy that come, and then carry it away upon sleds: and these are those people  
that dwell in the North parts, where the cold is so terrible, that no come doth grow there, or if it  
spring up, it never comes to ripeness. The commodities that they bring with them, are salt fishe,  
skins, and hives.

### Vologda.

Vologda being from Mosco, 550. miles, yeeldes the commodities of hempe, and flaxe also: al-  
though the greatest store of flaxe is solde at Nouogrode.

### Plesco.

The Towne of Plesco, is frequented of Merchants for the good store of honie, and waxe, that  
it yeeldeth.

### Colmagro.

The North parts of Russia yeelde very rare and precious skins: and amongst the rest,  
those principally, which we call Sables, woone about the neckes of our Noble women, and  
Ladies: it hath also Martys skins, white, blacke, and red. Foxe skins, skins of Beares, and  
Coytes, and others, which they call and terme barbarously, as Beuers, Mures, and Minuers.  
The sea adjoyning, hives a certaine beast, which they call the Mors, which seeketh his foode up-  
on the rocks, climbing by the helpe of his teeth. The Russes use to take them, for the great  
value that is in their teeth, whereof they make as great accompt, as we doe of the Elephants  
tooth. These commodities they carry upon Deeres backs to the towne of Lampas: and from  
thence to Colmagro, and there in the winter time, are kept great Faires for the sale of them. This  
City of Colmagro, serues all the Countrey about it with salt, and salt fishe. The Russes also of  
the North parts, send thither stle, which they call traine, which they make in a riuer called Vna,  
although it be also made else where: and here they use to boile the water of the sea, whereof they  
make very great store of salt.

### Of controuersies in Lawe, and how they are ended.

Having hitherto spoken so much of the chiefest Cities of Russia, as the matter required: it re-  
maineth that wee speake some what of the lawes, that the Moscouits doe use, as farre forth  
as the same are come to our knowledge. If any controuersie arise among them, they first make  
the Lord and Lords Judges in the matter, and if they can not end it, then they preferre it to the Pa-  
gistrate. The plaintif craueth of the said Pagistrate, that he may haue leaue to enter lawe against  
his aduersarie: and hauing obtained it, the officer fetcheth the defendant, and beateth him on the  
higges, till he bring forth a suretie for him: but if he be not of such credite, as to procure a suretie,  
then we his hands by an officer tied to his necke, and he is beaten all the way, till he come before  
the Judge. The Judge then asketh him (as for example in the matter of debt) whether he oweth  
any thing to the plaintif. If he denie it, then saith the Judge, how canst thou deny it: the defend-  
ant answereth, by an othe: thereupon the officer is commaunded to cease from beating of him,  
till the matter be further tried. They haue no Lawyers, but every man is his owne Advocate,  
and both the complaint of the accuser, and the answer of the defendant, are in manner of petition  
delivered to the Emperour, intrusting iustice at his hands. The Emperour himselfe heareth euery  
great controuersie, and upon the hearing of it, giueth iudgement, and that with great equitie,  
which I take to be a thing worthy of speciall commendation, in the Paletie of a Prince. But al-  
though he do this with a good purpose of mind, yet the corrupt Pagistrates be: wonderfully per-  
uert

uert the same: but if the Emperour take them in any fault, he doth punish them most severely. Now at the last, when eche partie hath defended his cause with his best reasons, the Judge demandeth of the accuser, whether he hath any moze to say for himselfe: he answereth, that he will trie the matter in fight by his Champion, or else intreateth that in fight betwixt the mistues, the matter may be ended: which being granted, they both fight it out: or if both of them, or either of them, seeme unfit for that kind of triall, then they haue publike Champions to be hired, which liue by ending of quarrels. These Champions are armed with yron axes, and speares, and fight on horse, and he whose Champion is overcome, is by and by taken, and imprisoned, and terribly handled, vntill he agree with his aduersarie. But if either of them be of any good calling, and degree, and doe challenge one another to fight, the Judge granteth it: in which case they may not vse publike Champions. And he that is of any good birth, doth contemne the other, if he be basely borne, and will not fight with him. If a poore man happen to growe in debt, his Creditor takes him, and maketh him pay the debt, in working either to himselfe, or to some other man, whose wages he taketh by. And there are some among them, that vse willingly to make themselves, their wiues, and children, bondslaves vnto rich men, to haue a little money at the first into their haubds, and so to fight after contents themselves with meate and drinke: so little accompt doe they make of libertie.

### Of punishments vpon theeues.

If any man be taken vpon committing of theft, he is imprisoned, and often beaten, but not hanged for the first offence, as the manner is with vs: and this they call the lawe of merrie. If that offender be the second time, hath his nose cut off, and is burnt in the forehead with a hot yron. The third time, he is hanged. There are many cutpurfes among them, and if the rigour of the Prince did not cut them off, they could not be auoided.

### Of their religion.

They maintaine the opinions of the Greeke Church: they suffer no grauen images of saints in their Churches, but their pictures painted in tables they haue in great abundance, which they do adore, and offer vnto, and burne waxe candles before them, and cast holy water vpon them, without other honour. They say that our images, which are set vp in Churches, and carued, haue no diuinitie in them. In their private houses, they haue images for their household saints, and in the most part, they are put in the darke place of the house: he that comes into his neighbours house, doth first salute his saints, although he see them not. If any foote, or stoele stand in his way, he oftentimes beatech his hote vpon the same, and often ducking downe with his head, and bopye, worshippeth the chiefe Image. The habite, and attire of the Priestes, and of the Laymen, doeth nothing at all differ: as for marriage, it is forbidden to no man: onely this is reuewed, and he lye amongst them for a rule, and custome, that if a Priestes wife doe die, he may not marry againe, nor take a second wife: and therefore they of secular Priestes, as they call them, are made Spoukes, to whom then chastitie for euer is commanded. Their deuine seruice is al done, and said in their owne language, that euery man may vnderstand it: they receaue the Lodes Supper with leauened bread, and of the consecration, they carry it about the Church in a labere, and prohibite no man from receauing and taking of it, that is willing so to doe. They vse both the Olde, and the Newe Testament, and read both in their owne language, but so confusedly, that they themselves that doe read, vnderstand not what themselves doe say: and while any part of either Testament is read, there is libertie giuen by custome to prattle, talke, and make a noise: but in the time of the rest of the seruice, they vse very great silence, and reuerence, and behaue themselves very modestly, and in good sort. As touching the Lodes prayer, the ten commandments, they knowe it not: and for the articles of our faith, and the ten commandments, no man at the least, very fewe of them doe either knowe them, or can say them: their opinion is, that such secrete and holy things as they are, should not rashly and imprudently be communicated with the common people. They holde for a Spairime amongst them, that the olde Lawe, and the commandments also are all abolished by the death and blood of Christ: all studies and letters of humanitie, they utterly refuse: concerning the Latine, Greeke, and Hebrue tongues, they are altogether ignorant in them.

Every yeere they celebrate foure severall fastes, which they call according to the names of the Saints: the first beginnes with them, at the time that our L. cutt begimmes. The second is called amongst them, the fast of S. Peter. The third is taken from the day of the Virgin Marie. And the fourth

both punish them most severely, his best reasons, the Judge dema... be answereth, that he will trie the betwixt themselves, the magis... if both of them, or either of them, pions to be hired, which live by m... s, and speares, and sighe on foot, mypioned, and terribly bounde, w... good calling, and degree, and w... which case they may not be publike the other, if he be basely borne, and... he, his Cerebriz takes him, and ma... ther man, whose wages he taketh... themselves, their wives, and chi... it into their handes, and to requir... pt doe they make of libertie,

recues.

men, and often beaten, but not ban... ey call the lawe of mercie. He that... the forehead with a hot yron. The... them, and if the rigour of the yron

to suffer no greaun images of saint... ey haue in great abundance, which... ren, and cast holy water vpon them, by in Churches, and carried home... for their household saintes, and by... he that comes into his neighbour... y foynne of stooke stand in his way, ... king downe with his head, and be... the Priestes, and of the Lay men, ... man: onely this is receaued, ... his wife doe die, he may not marry... priestles, as they call them, are made... ric deuine seruice is a vowe, and so... they reueare the Lordes Supper... about the Church in a satuer, and... thing to do doe. They vse both the... language, but so confusedly, that... es doe say: and whilsle any part of... y prattle, talke, and make a noyse... silence, and reuerence, and before... Lordes prater, the tenth man among... he ten commandments, no man of... y them: their opinion is, that such... udently be communicated with the... at the olde Lawe, and the comman... : all studies and letters of huma... Quebue congues, they are alway

cal according to the names of the... ent begimnes. The second is called... day of the Virgin Marie. And the... fourth

fourth, and last, begimnes vpon S. Philips day. But as we begin our Lent vpon Wednesday, so they begin theirs vpon the Sunday. Upon the Saturday they eate flesh: whensoever any of those fasting fasters doe vnto weere, looke what weeke doth immediatly goe before them; the same weeke they liue altogether vpon white meates, and in their common language, they call those weeks, the fast of butter.

In the time of their fasts, the neighbours euery where goe from one to another, and visite one another, and kisse one another with kisses of peace, in token of their mutuall loue, and Christian concord: and then also, they doe more often then at any other time, goe to the holie Communion. When seuen daies are past, from the beginning of the fast, then they often doe either goe to their Churches, or keepe themselves at home, and vse often prater: and for that seuen nightes, they eate nothing but hearbes: but after that seuen night fast is once past, then they returne to their old intemperance of drinking, for they are notable fastpots. As for the keeping of their fasting daies, they doe it very streightly, neither doe they eate any thing besides hearbes, and salt fish, as long as those fasting daies do endure: but vpon euery Wednesday and Friday, in euery weeke through out the yeere, they fast.

There are very many Monasteries, of the order of S. Benedict, amongst them, to which many great liuings, for their maintenance doe belong: for the Friars and the Monkes, doe at the least possesse the third part of the liuings, throughout the whole Moscouite Empire: to those Monkes that are of this order, there is amongst them a perpetuall prohibition, that they may eate no flesh: and therefore their meate is onely salt fish, milke, and butter: neither is it permitted them by the lawes, and customes of their religion, to eate any fresh fish at all: and at those foure fasting times, whereof we spake before, they eate no fish at all: onely they liue with hearbes, and cucumbers, which they doe continually for that purpose cause, and take order to grow and spring, for their vse and diet.

As for their drinke, it is very weake, and small: for the discharge of their office, they doe euery day say seruice, and that earely in the mornings before day: and they doe in such sort, and with such obseruation begin their seruice, that they will be sure to make an ende of it, before day: and about nine of the clocke in the morning, they celebrate the Communion. When they haue so done, they goe to dinner, and after dinner, they go againe to seruice, and the like also after supper: and in the meane time, while they are at dinner, there is some exposition, or interpretation of the Gospel vfed. Whensoever any Abbot of any monasterie dieth, the Emperour taketh all his household stuffe, hearbes, storcks of theeye, golde, siluer, and all that he hath: or els hee that is to succeed him in his place and dignitie, doth redeeme all those things, and bineth them of the Emperour in money.

Their churches are built of timber, and the towers of their churches for the most part are covered with spingle boordes. At the doores of their churches, they usually build some entrance or porch as we doe, and in their churchyardes they erect a certain house of wood, wherein they set by their bells, wherein sometimes they haue but one, in some two, and in some also three.

There is one vse and custome amongst them, which is strange and rare, but yet it is very ridiculous, and that is this: when any man dieth amongst them, they take the dead body and put it in a coffine of chest, and in the hand of the corpes they put a little scroll, and in the same there are these wordes writen, that the same man died a Russe of Russes, hauing receiued the faith, and died in the same. This writing or letter they say they send to S. Peter, who receiuing it (as they affirme) reades it, and by and by admitts him into heauen, and that his glory and place is higher and greater then the glory of the Christians of the Latin church, reputing themselves to bee followers of a more sincere faith and religion then they: they hold opinion that wee are but halfe christians, and themselves onely to bee the true and perfect church: these are the foolish and childish dotages of such ignorant Barbarians.

Of the Moscouites that are Idolaters, dwelling neere to Tartaria.

There is a certaine part of Moscouie, bordering vpon the countries of the Tartars, where in those Moscouites dwell, are very great idolaters: they haue one famous idol amongst them, which they call the Golden old wife, and they haue a custome that whensoever any plague or any calamitie doeth afflict the countrey, as hunger, warre, or such like, then they goe by and by to consult with their idoll, which they doe after this manner: they fall downe prostrate before the idoll, and praye vnto it, and put in the presence of the same, C e. 1. a cymball:

Act.

Aurea vetula, or Zelotibaba.

a cymball, and about the same certaine persons stand, which are chosen amongst them by lot: up on their cymball they place a silver cove, and sound the cymball, and to whomsoever of those lotted persons that cove goeth, he is taken, and by and by slaine: and immediately, I know not by what illusions of the deuil, or idoll, he is againe restored to life, and then doth reucale and deliuer the causes of the present calamitie. And by this meanes knowing how to pacifie the idoll, they are deliuered from the imminent danger.

### Of the forme of their priuate houfes, and of the apparell of the people.



**T**he common houfes of the countrey are euery where built of beames of fere tree: the lower beames do so receiue the round holownesse of the uppermost, that by the meanes of the building thereupon, they resist, and expell all windes that blowe, and where the timber is ioined together, there they stop the chinks with moss. The forme and fashion of their houles in all places is foure square, with straight and narrow windowes, where by with a transparent casement made of couered with skinn like to parchment, they receiue the light. The roofes of their houles are made of booydes covered without with the bark of trees: within their houles they haue benches or griezes hard by their wals, which commonly they sleepe vpon, for the common people know not the vse of beds: they haue floozes wherein in the morning they make a fire, and the same fire doth either moderately warme, or make very hot the whole house.

The apparell of the people for the most part is made of wooll, their caps are picked like vnto a rike or diamond, broad beneath, and sharpe vptward. In the maner of making whereof, there is a signe and representation of nobilitie: for the loftier or higher their caps are, the greater is their birth supposed to be, and the greater reuerence is giuen them by the common people.

### The Conclusion to Queene Mary.

**T**hese are the things most excellent Queene, which your Subiects newly returned from Russia haue brought home concerning the state of that countrey: wherefore if your maiestie shall be fauourable, and graunt a continuance of the trauell, there is no doubt but that the honour and renowne of your name will be syled amongst those nations, wherunto three onely noble personages from the very creation haue had access, to whom no man hath bene comparable.

### The copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Russia his letters sent to King Edward the sixth, by the hands of Richard Chanceler.

Iuan Vasileuich, that is to say, John the sonne of Basilus.



**R**e Almighty power of God, and the incomprehensible holie Trinitie, right full Christian beliefe, &c. The great Duke Iuan Vasileuich, by the grace of God Emperour of all Russia, and great Duke of Vlademerskij, Moskouiskij, Nouogrodskij, Cazanskij, Pskanskij, Smolenskij, Tuerskij, Hugorskij, Permskij, Veatskij, Bolgarskij, with diuers other lands, Emperour also and great Duke of Nouogoroda, and in the lowe Countreies of Chernigouskij, Rezanskij, Volotskij, Refskij, Belskij, Rostouskij, Yaroslouskij, Belocherskij, Oodorskij, Odorskij, Condinski, and many other Countreies, Lord ouer all the North coast, greeting.

Before all right great and worthy of honour, Edward King of England, &c. according to our most hartie and good zeale, with good intent and friendly desire, and according to our holy Christian faith, and great gouernance, and being in the light of great vnderstanding, our answere by this our honourable writing vnto your kingly gouernance, at the request of your faithful seruant, Richard Chanceler, with his companie, as they shall let you wisely know, is thus. In the strength of the twentieth yere of our gouernance, be it known, that at our sea coastes, arrived a Shippe, with one Richard, and his companie, and said, that he was desirous to come into our Dominions, and according to his request, hath seene our Maiestie, and our eyes: and hath declared vnto vs your Maiesties desire, as that we should graunt vnto your subiects, to goe and come, and in our Dominions, and among our subiects, to frequent free Parts, with all sortes of marchandizes, and by the same to haue waies for their returne. And they haue also deliuered vs your letters, which

That is, come into our eyes &c.

declare

hosen amongst them by lot: up  
to whomsoever of those letters  
reioate ly, I knowe not by what  
doch reucale and deliuer the cau  
paricite the idoll, they are deliue

, and of the

where built of beames of fire  
to wanelle of the hypermost, that  
resist, and expell all windes that  
there they stop the chynkes with  
all places is foure square, with  
transparent casement made of  
roothes of their houses are made  
it houses they haue benches of  
the common people knowe not  
ke a fire, and the same fire doth

their caps are picked like unto a  
of making whereof, there is a  
ps are, the greater is their bith  
mon people.

Mary.

Subiects newly returned from  
countrey: wherefore if your ma  
re traitell, there is no doubt but  
amongst those nations, where  
access, to whom no man hath

Emperour of Rufsia  
hands of Richard

rechenfible holie Trinitie, right  
ian Vasiluich, by the grace of  
of Vlademerskij, Moskoukij,  
lenskii, Tuerskij, Hugorskij,  
verlands, Emperour also and  
Countreies of Chernigouskij,  
Belocherskii, Oodorskij, Ob  
North coast, greeting.

England, &c. according to our  
d according to our holy Chriti  
standing, our answere by this  
of your faithfull seruant, Ri  
knowe is thus. In the strength  
ur fea coales, arrived a shippe,  
s to come into our Dominions,  
s: and hath declared unto vs  
to goe and come, and in our  
sortes of marchandizes, and by  
clitured vs your letters, which  
declat

declare the same request. And hereupon we haue giuen order, that where soeuer your faithfull ser  
uante Hugh Willoughbie land or touch in our dominions, to be well euer tained, who as yet is not  
arrived, as your seruant Richard can declare.

And we with christian belife and faithfullnesse, and according to your honourable request, and  
my honourable commaundement will noe leaue it vnbouie, and are furthermoe willing that you  
send unto vs your ships and vessels, when and as often as they may haue passage, with good assu  
rance on our part to see them harmelesse. And if you send one of your maiesties counsell to create  
with vs whereby your countrey merchants may with all kindes of wares, and where they will  
make their market in our dominions, they shall haue their free parte with all free liberties  
through my whole dominions with all kindes of wares, to come and goe at their pleasure, without  
any let, damage, or impediment, according to this our letter, our word and our seale which we haue  
commaunded to be vnder sealed. Written in our dominion, in our towne and our palace in the ca  
mpe of Mosco, in the yeere seven thousand and sixtie, the second moneth of February.

This letter was written in the Polcouian tongue, in letters much like to the Greeke letters, ve  
ry faire written in paper, with a broad seale hanging at the same, sealed in paper upon waxe. This  
seale was much like the broad seale of England, hauing on the one side the image of a mā an horse  
backe in complete harnesse fighting with a dragon. Under this letter was another paper written in  
the Dutch tongue, which was the interpretation of the other written in the Polcouian letters.  
These letters were sent the next yeere after the date of king Edwards letters, 1554.

The coines, waights and measures vsed in Ruffia, written

by Iohn Hassé, in the yeere, 1554.



As much as it is most necessary for all merchants which seeke to haue traffique in  
any strange regions, first to acquaint themselves with the coines of those landes  
with which they doe intend to ioine in traffique, and how they are called from the  
valuation of the highest piece to the lowest, and in what sort they make their pai  
ments, as also what their common waights and measures be, For these causes I  
haue thought good to write some thing thereof according to mine owne know  
ledge and experience, so the end that the merchants of that new Adventure, may the better vnder  
stand how the wealth of that new frequented trade will arise.

First, it is to be noted that the Emperour of Ruffia hath no other coines then silver in all his  
land, which goeth for payment amongst merchants, yet notwithstanding there is a coine of copper,  
which serueth for the reliefe of the poore in Mosco, and no where els, and that is but onely for quars,  
water and fruite, as nuts, apples, and such other like. The name of which money is called Hole or  
Holes, of which Holes there goe to the least of the silver coines, 18. But I will not stand vpon  
this, because it is no current money among merchants.

No coines of  
gold in Ruffia,  
but all of sil  
uer.

Of silver coines there be these sortes of pieces: the least is a Poledenga, the second a Denga,  
the third, Nowgrote, which is as much to say in English as halfe penie, penie, and two penie, and  
by other valued money then this, there is none: there are oftentimes there coines of gold, but they  
come out of foreyn countreies, whereof there is no ordinarie valuation, but they passe according to the  
agreement of merchants.

Their order in summing of money is this: as we say in England, halfe penie, penie, shilling and  
pound, so say they, Poledenga, Denga, Altine and Rubble: There goeth two Poledengas to a  
Denga, six Dengaes to an Altine, and 23. Altines, and two Dengaes to a Rubble.

Concerning the waights of Ruffia they are these. There are two sortes of pounds in vse amongst  
them, the one great, the other small: the great pound is iust two small pounds: they call the great  
waight by the name of Beafemar, and the small they call the Skalla waight: with this small waight  
they weigh their silver coines, of the which the Emperour hath commaunded to put to euery small  
pound three Rubbles of silver, and with the same waight they weigh all Grocerie wares, and al  
most all other wares which come into the land, except those which they weigh by the Pode, as hops  
salt, iron, lead, tinne and barric with diuers others: notwithstanding they vse to weigh barric moye  
often by the small waight then by the great.

The waights  
in Ruffia.

Whensoever you find the prices of your wares rated by the Pode, consider that to be the great  
waight, and the pound to be the small. Also they deuide the small pound into 48. parts, and they cal  
the eight and fortieth part a Slotnike, by the which Slotnike the retailers sell their wares out of  
their shoppes, as Goldsmiths, Grocers, Silke sellers and such other like as we doe vse to retails

by the ounce: and as for their great waight which they call the Beasmar, they sell by pood, or ship pond. The pood doth containe of the great waight, 40. pounds, and of the small 80. there goe 10. poods to a Shippond.

Yet you must consider that their great waight is not full with ours: for I take not their great pound to be full 13. ounces, but about 12. I thinke it be. But for your iust prooffe, waigh 6. rubbles of Russia money with our pound waight, and then shall you see what it lacketh: for 6. rubbles of Russia is by the Emperours Standard, the great pound: so that I thinke it the next way to know the iust waight, as well of the great pound as of the small.

The waight of  
Wardhouse.

There is another waight needfull to be knowne, which is the waight of Wardhouse, for so much as they weigh all their dyffise by waight, which waight is the Basemare, as they of Russia doe use, notwithstanding there is another sort in it: the names of those waights are these: the marke pound, the great pound, the weie, and the shippond. The marke pound is to be understood as our pound, and their great pound is 24. of their marke pound: the weie is 3. great pound, and 8. weie is a shippond.

The Russia  
measures.

Nowe concerning their measures. As they haue two sortes of waights, so they haue also two sortes of measures: wherewith they measure cloth both linnen and woollen: they call the one an Arshine, and the other a Locut: the Arshine I take to bee as much as the Flaunders ell, and their Locut halfe an English yard: with their Arshine they may mete all such sortes of clothes as cometh into the land, and with the Locut all such cloth both linnen and woollen, as they make themselves. And whereas wee use to giue yard and inch, or yard and handfull, they doe giue no thing but bare measure.

The measure  
of Wardhouse  
in cloth, is the  
measure of  
Danke.

They haue also a measure wherewith they doe mete their coine, which they call a Setfooth, and the halfe of that an Dsimine: this Setfooth I take to be three bushels of London measure. And as for their binke measure, they call it a Spanne, which is much like a bucket, and of that I neuer sawe any true rate, but that some was greater then other some. And as for the measures of Wardhouse wherewith they mete their cloth, there is no difference between that & the measure of Danske, which is halfe an English ell.

The Turkes  
and Armeni-  
ans pay cus-  
tome.

Concerning the tolles and customes of Russia, it was reported to mee in Moscovia, that the Turkes and Armenians pay the tenth penie custome of all the Wares they bring into the Emperours land, and about that they pay for all such goods as they waigh at the Emperours beame, two pence of the Rubble, which the buyer or seller must make report of to the Master of the beame: they also pay a certayne Hoyle toll, which is in diuers places of his Realme foure pence of a hoyle.

The Dutch  
nation lost  
their priuile-  
ges, and res-  
newed them  
with a great  
summe.

The Dutch nation are free of this: notwithstanding for certaine offences, they had lost their priuileges which they haue recouered this Sommer to their great charge. It was reported to mee by a Justice of that countrey, that they paid for it thirtie thousand Rubbles, and also that Rye, Dorpte and Reuell haue peeled themselves vnder the gouernement of the Emperour of Russia: whether this was a bragge of the Russes or not, I know not, but thus he sayd, and in deed whiles wee were there, there came a great Ambassadors out of Liffeland, for the assurance of their priuileges.

The commo-  
dities of Rus-  
sa.

To speake somewhat of the commodities of this countrey, it is to bee understood, that there is a certaine place foure scoye miles from the Sea called Colmogro: to which place there resort all the sortes of Wares that are in the North partes, as Oiles, Salt, Stockfish, Salmon, Fethers and Fures: their Salt they make of salt water by the Sea side: their Oiles they make of Seales, whereof they haue great store which is brought out of the Bay where our shippes came in: they make it in the Spring of the yeere, and bring it to Colmogro to sell, and the merchants there carie it to Nouogrode, and so sell it to the Dutch nation. Their Stockfish and Salmon cometh from a place called Mallums, not farre from Wardhouse: their Salmon and their Salt they carie to Mosco, and their dyffise they carry to Nouogrode, and sell it there to the Leeflanders.

The Fures and Fethers which come to Colmogro, as Sables, Beavers, Spinkes, Armin, Lettis, Graies, Wooluerings, and white Fozes, with Deere Skimmes, they are brought thither, by the men of Penninge, Lampne, and Powltezer, which fetch them from the Samoydes that are counted sauage people: and the merchants that bring these Fures, doe use to trucke with the merchants of Colmogro for Cloth, Tinne, Barrie, and such other like, and the merchants of Colmogro carie them to Nouogrode, Vologda, or Mosco, and sell them there. The Fethers which come from Penning they doe little esteeme.

Four merchants doe desire to know the next place of Russia for their standing house, in mine opinion

askmar, they sell by pood, or they  
and of the small 80. there goe 10.

ours: for I take not their great  
for your iust pood, weigh 6. rub  
re what it lacketh: for 6. rubbles  
I thinke it the next way to know

the waight of Wardhouse, for so  
is the Watermark, as they of Rus  
of those waights are these: the  
marke pound is to be understood  
the wrie is 3. great pound, and 8.

waights, so they haue also two  
woollen: they call the one an  
much as the Flaunders ell, and  
p mete all such sortes of clothes  
linen and woollens, as they make  
and handfull, they doe giue wo

which they call a Setfooth, and  
shells of London measure. And as  
re a bucket, and of that I neuer  
nd as for the measures of Ward  
en that & the measure of Danske,

to mee in Moscouia, that the  
sares they bring into the Empe  
waight at the Emperours beame,  
report of to the Master of the  
aces of his Realme foure pence of

ine offences, they had lost their  
eat charge. It was reported to  
ousand Rubbles, and also that  
renewment of the Emperour of  
not, but thus he sayd, and in deed  
reland, for the assurance of their

to be understood, that there is  
ro: to which place there resort  
holt, Stockfish, Salmon, Fe  
side: & in Diles they make of  
the Bay where our shippes came  
gre to sell, and the merchants  
their Stockfish and Salmon  
house: their Salmon and their  
ogrode, and sell it there to the

es, Beavers, Minkes, Armb  
innes, they are brought thither,  
them from the Samoydes that  
Furres, doe vse to trucke with  
other like, and the merchans  
and sell them there. The Fe

for ther standing house, in mine  
opinion

opinion I take it to be Vologda, which is a great towne standing in the heart of Russia, with ma-  
ny great and good townes about it. There is great plenty of corne, victuals, and of all such  
wares as are raised in Russia, but specially, flaxe, hempe, tallow and bacon: there is also great  
store of waxe, but it cometh from the Mosko.

The towne of Vologda is meetest for our merchants, because, it lieth amongst all the best  
townes of Russia, and there is no towne in Russia but trades with it: also the water is a great com-  
modity to it. If they please themselves in Mosco or Nouogrode, their charge will be great and  
wonderfull, but not so in Vologda: for all things will there be had better cheape by the one  
half. And for their vent, I know no place so meetest is likely that some will thinke the Mosko to be  
the meetest by the reason of the court, but by that reason I take it to be worse: for the charge there  
would be so great by crauers and expences, that the moitie of the profit would be wholly consu-  
med, which in the other place will be saved. And yet notwithstanding our merchants may be  
there in the Winter to serue the Emperour and his court. The Emperour is a great merchant  
himselfe of ware and fables, which with good foresight may be procured to their hands: as for o-  
ther commodities there are little or none in Moscouia, besides those aboue rehearsed: if there be  
other, it is brought thither by the Turkes, who will be daintie to buy our clothes considering the  
charges of carriage ouer land.

Our merchants may doe well to thouide for the Russes such wares as the Dutch nation doeth  
serue them of, as Flaunders and Holland clothes, which I beleue, they shall serue better and with  
less charge then they of Rye or Dorpr, or Reuel: for it is no small aduenture to bring their clothes  
out of Flaunders to either of these places, and their charge not little to carry them ouer land to No-  
uogrode, which is from Rye nine hundred Russia miles.

This Nouogrode is a place well furnished with Flaxe, Ware, Hides, tallow and many other  
things: the best flaxe in Russia is brought thither and there sold by the hundred bundels, which is  
done also at Vologda, and they that bring the flaxe to Nouogrode, dwell as nere Vologda, as  
Nouogrode, and when they heare of the vterance which they may haue with our nation, they will  
as willingly come to them as goe to the other.

They haue in Russia two sortes of flaxe, the one is called great flaxe, and the other small: that  
which they call great flaxe is better by foure rubbles in 100. bundles then the small: It is much  
longer then the other, and cleaner without wood: and whereas of the small flaxe there goe 27. or  
28. bundles to a Hoppon, there goeth not of the greater sort about 22. or 24. at the most. There  
are many other trifles in Russia, as sope, mase, &c. but I thinke there will be no great account made  
of them.

Vologda and  
the state there  
of.

The emperour  
of Moscouia  
is a merchant  
himselfe.

Two sortes of  
flaxe.

Articles conceiued and determined for the Commission of the  
Merchants of this company resident in Russia, and at the Wardhouse,  
for the second voiage, 1555. the first of May, as followeth.

**R**ich, the Governour, Consuls, Assistants and whole company assembled this  
day in open court, committeth and authorizeth Richard Gray and George Kil-  
lingworth, jointly and severally to be Agents, Factors, and Attornies general  
and speciall, for the whole bodie of this companie, to buy sell, trucke, change and  
permutte all, and every kind and kindes of wares, merchandizes and goods to the  
said company appertaining, now laden and shipped in the good ship called y<sup>e</sup> Ed-  
ward Bonanenture, appointed for Russia, the same to utter and sell to the most commodity, profite  
and advantage of the said coporation, be it for ready money, wares & merchandizes, or trucke, pre-  
sently or for time, as occasion and benefite of the company shall require, and all such wares as they of  
either of them shall buy, trucke or provide, or cause to be bought for the company to lade them home-  
ward in good order and condition as by prudent course of merchandizes, shall and ought to apper-  
taine, which article rememberth also to Iohn Brooke for the Wardhouse, as in the 17. & 18. articles  
of this commission appereth.

Item, it is also committed, as aboue, to the said Agents, to binde and charge the said company  
by debt for wares bypon credit, as good opportunitie and occasion shall serue, with power to charge  
and binde the said company, and their successors for the payments of such things as shall be taken up  
for credit, and the said Agents to be relieved, ab opere facti dandi.

Item, full authoritie and power is committed to the sayd first named factors, together with  
Richard Chancelor grand Pilot of this fleet, to repaire to the Emperours court, there to present  
the

the king and Queenes maiesties letters, written in Greeke, Wolsh, and Italian, and to give and exhibit the merchants presents at such time and place as shall bee thought most expedient, they, or one of them to demand, and humbly desire of the Emperour such further grantees and priviledges to bee made to this company, as may bee beneficiall for the same, to continue in traffique with his subjects, according to such instructions as be in this be halfe devised and delivred to the Agents, whereunto relation is to be had, and some one of these persons to attend vpon the court for the obtaining of the same, as to their discretions shall be thought good.

4 Item, that all the sayd Agents doe well consider, pover and weigh such articles as bee delivred to them to knowe the natures, dispositions, lawes, customes, maners and behaviours of the people of the countreys where they shall traffique, as well of the Nobilitie as of the Labours, Soperchances, Barriers and common people, and to use diligently the subtilties of their bargaining, buying and selling, making as fe to debtees as possible may be, and to be circumspet, that no lawe neither of religion nor politiue be broken or transgressed by them or any minister under them, ne yet by any mariner or other person of our nation, and to forgette that all tolles, customes, and such other rites be so duely paid, that no forfeiture or confiscation may ensue to our goods either outward or inward, and that all things passe with quiet, without breach of the publique peace or common tranquillite of any of the places where they shall arrive or traffique.

5 Item, that provision bee made in Mosco or elsewhere, in one or moe good townes, where good trade shall bee found for a house or houses for the Agents, and companie to inhabit and dwell at your accustomed diets, with warehouses, sellers, and other houses of offices requisite, and that none of the inferiour ministers of what place or vocation to euer be hee, doe lie out of the house of the Agents without licence to bee given, and that every inferiour officer shall be obedient to the orders, rules and governments of the sayd Agents, and in case any disobedient person shall bee found among any of them, then such person to be punished for his misbehaviour, at the discretion of the sayd Agents, or of one of them in the absence of the other.

6 Item, if any person of the sayde ministers shall bee of such pride or obstinacie, that after one or two honest admonitions, hee will not bee reformed nor reconciled from his faultes, then the sayde Agents to displace every such person from the place or vocation to him here committed, and some other discrete person to occupie the same, as to the sayde Agents by their discretions shall seeme meet.

7 Item, if any person shall bee found so arrogant, that he will not be ordered nor reformed by the sayd Agents or by one of them in the absence of the other, then the sayde person to bee delivred to the Justice of the countrey, to receiue such punishment, as the lawes of the countrey doe require.

8 Item, that the sayde Agents and factours shall daily one bother in the morning conferre and confute together what shall bee most convenient and beneficiall for the companie, and such orders as they shall determine, to bee written by the Secretarie of the companie in a booke to bee provided for that purpose, and no inferiour person to infringe or breake any such order or devise, but to observe the same exactly, vpon such reasonable payne as the Agents shall put him to by discretion.

9 Item, that the sayd Agents shall in the ende of every weeke, or oftener as occasion shall require, peruse, see and trie, not onely the Cashiers bookes, reckonings and accounts, signing the same with their handes, but also shall receive and take weckely the account of every other officer, as well of the Vendes, as of the emperours, and also of the state of the household expenles, making thereof a perfect declaration as shall appertaine, the same accounts also to be signed by the sayd Agents handes.

10 Item, that no inferiour minister shall take vpon him to make any bargain or sale of any wares, merchandizes or goods, but by the Commission and Warrantie of the sayde Agents under their handes, and hee not to transgress his Commission by any way, pretense or colour.

11 Item, that every inferiour minister, that is to vnderstand, all Clerkes and pong merchants being at the order of the sayde Agents, shall ride, goe, saile and trauaile to all such place, and places, as they or he shall be appointed unto by the sayd Agents, and effectually to follow and doe all that which to him or them shall be committed, well and truly to the most benefit of the company, according to the charge to him or them committed, euen as by their othes, duties and bonds of their masters they be bounden and charged to doe.

12 Item, that at every moneths ende, all accounts and reckonings shall bee brought in to perfect order, into the Lidger or memoriall, and the decrees, orders, and rules of the Agents



h, and Italian, and to give and  
ll bee thought most expedient  
your such further graces and  
for the same, to continue in cr  
be halfe deuised and deliuered  
persons to attend vpo the con  
t good.

weigh such articles as bee deli  
matters and behaviours of the  
mobilitie as of the Lawiers,  
the subtilities of their bargai  
se, and to be circumspect, tha  
y them of any induiter vnder  
yefsee that all toles, customes,  
ation may ensue to our goods  
without breach of the publike  
arrise of traffique.

one or more good towmes, where  
and companie to inhabite and  
her houles of offices requisite,  
in so euer he bee, doe his ou  
y inferiour officer shall be obo  
in case any disobedient pro  
ved for his misbehaviour, at  
the other.

side of obstinacie, that after me  
ed from his faultes, then the  
e to him here committed, and  
vents by their discretions shall

not be ordered nor resumed by  
the sayde person to bee deli  
the lawes of the countrey ne

er in the morning conference and  
the companie, and such orders  
pende in a booke to bee possi  
any such order of deuis, but  
agents shall put him to by de

of oftener as occasion shall in  
ings and accounts, firming the  
account of every other officer,  
the household expenses, making  
ills to be firming by the sayd A.

ke any bargain or sale of any  
mercandise of the sayde Agents  
by any way, pretende or co

all Clerkes and yong men  
and traualle to all such place,  
and effectually to follow and  
to the most benefit of the com  
their other, duties and bound

honings shall bee brought in  
s, orders, and rules of the  
Agents

Agents together with the priuileges, and coppies of letters, may & shall be well and truly written  
by the secretarie, in such forme as shall be appointed for it, and that copies of all their doings, may be  
sent home with the said shipp at her returne.

13 Item, that all the Agents do diligently learne and obserue all kinde of wares, as well na  
turall as forren, that be beneficiall for this Realme, to be solde for the benefit of the companie, and  
what kinde of our commodities and other things of these West partes, be most vendible in those  
Realmes with profit, giuing a perfect aduise of all such things requisite.

14 Item, if the Empeour will enter into bargen with you for the whole masse of your stocke,  
and will haue the trade of it to beeter to his owne subiectes, then debating the matter prudently a  
mong your selues, set such high prices of your commodities, as you may assure your selues to be  
gainers in your owne wares, and yet to buy theirs at such base prices, as you may beere also make  
a commodity and gaine at home, hauing in your mindes the notable charges that the companie  
haue withered in aduancing this voyage; and the great charges that they sustaine daily in wages, <sup>now.</sup>  
briualles and other things: all which must be required by the wise handling of this voyage, which  
being the first yeildens shalbe a perpetuall yeildens for euer: and therefore all circumspection is  
to be vted, and to perseuere in this first enterpryse, which God blest and prosper vnder you, to his glo  
ry, and the publike wealth of this Realme, whereof the Queenes Maiceste, and the Lords of the  
counsell haue conceiued great hope, whose expectations are not to be frustrated.

15 Item, it is to be had in minde, that you vse all waies and meanes possible to learne how  
men may passe from Russia, either by land or by sea to Cathaia, and what may be heard of our  
other shippes, and to what knowledge you may come, by conferring with the learned or well tra  
uelled persons, either naturall or forren, such as haue trauelled from the North to the South.

16 Item, it is committed to the said Agents, that if they shall be certified credibly, that any  
of our said shippes be arrived in any place wherunto passage is to be had by water or by land,  
that then arrive of the companie, at the discretion of the Agents shall be appointed to be sent to  
them, to learne their estate and condition, to visit, refresh, relieue, and furnish them with all neces  
saries and requisites, at the common charges of the companie, and to imbarce, accept, and intreat  
them as our deare and welbeloued brethren of this our societie, to their reioycing and comfort, ad  
uertising wh:ough Walloughbith and others of our carefulnesse of them and their long absence,  
with our desire to heare of them, with all other things done in their absence for their commodity, no  
less then if they had beene present.

17 Item, it is decreed, that when the shippes shall arrive at this going forth at the Wardhouse,  
that their Agents, with Whaiter Chancelier grand pilot, John Brooke merchant, deputed for the  
Wardhouse, with John Duckland master of the Edward, John Howler master, and John Rob  
bins pilot of the Phillip and Gary shall conferre and consult together, what is most profitable to be  
done therefore for the benefit of the companie, and to consider whether they may bargen with the  
captaine of the caille, and the inhabitants in that place, or alongt the coast for a large quantitie of  
fish, hie or wet, killed by the naturals, or to be taken by our men at a price reasonable for trucke of  
cloth, meale, salt or beere, and what trainecople, or other commodities is to be had there at this  
time, or any other season of the yeere, and whether there will be had or found sufficient lading for  
both the said shippes, to be bought there, and how they may conferre with the naturals for a conti  
nuance in hauing the place, if profit will so arise to the companie, and to consider whether the Ed  
ward in her returne may receiue at the Wardhouse any kinde of lading home ward, and what it  
may amount vnto, and whether it shall be expedient for the Phillip to abide at Wardhouse the re  
turne of the Edward out of Russia, or getting with the Phillip, to returne with the first good minde to  
England, without abiding for the Edward, and so to conclude and accord certaine lies among them  
shew vpon their arrival, that the certaintie may (vpon good deliberation) be so ordered and deter  
mined betwene both shippes, that the one may be assured of the other, and these determinations to  
be put in writing duplicate to remaine with each ship, according to such order as shall be taken be  
twene them.

The Phillip  
and Gary.

18 Item, that John Brooke our merchant for the Wardhouse take good aduise of the rest of  
our Agents, how to vse himselfe in all affaires, while the shippe shall be at the Wardhouse, he to see  
good order to be kept, make bargens aduisedly, not crediting the people vntill their natures, dispo  
sitions and fidelities shall be well tried, make no debts, but to take ware for ware in hand, and ra  
ther be trusted then to trust. <sup>now.</sup> Note diligencely what be the best wares for those parts, and how to  
the fish selleth on the coast, and by what meane it is to be bought at the most aduantage, what kinde  
and diversities of foyes in fishes be, and whether it will keepe better in bulke piled, or in caske. <sup>now.</sup>

19 Item, he to haue a diligent eye and circumspection to the beere, salt, and other liquid wares,  
and

and not to suffer any waite to be made by the company, and he in all contracts to require advise, counsell, and consent of the maister and pilot, the merchant to be our housewife, as our speciall trust is in him, he to tender that no lawes nor customes of the countrey be broken by any of the company, and to tender to the peace, and other officers, all that which to them doth appertaine, the company to be quiet, void of all quarrelling, fighting, or brawling, absteine from all exercise of drinking, as much as may be, and in all to vse and behaue themselves as to quiet merchants doth, and ought to appertaine.

20 Item, it is decreed by the company, that the Edward shall returne home this yeere with as much wares as may be convenient, and profitably provided, bought, and laden in Russia, and the rest to be taken in at the Warehouse, as by the Agents shall be appointed. But by all meanes it is to be foretold and noted, that the Edward returne home, and not to winter in any foreign place, but to come home, and bring with her all the whole adventures of the merchantes, with such further advise for the next yeeres provision, as they shall give.

21 Item, it is further decreed and ordeined, inviolable to be observed, that when the good shippes, or either of them (by Gods grace) shall returne home to the coastes of Englande, that neither of them shall staye or touche in any Haven or Port of Englande, otherwise then winde and weather shall serve, but shall directly saile and come to the Port of the cite of London, the place of their right discharge, and that no bulke be hoked, hatched opened, chaf, fardell, crulle, barrill, sacke, or whatsoeuer thing it shall be, be brought out of the shippe, until the company shall give order for the same, and appoint such persons of the company as shall be thought meete for that purpose, to take view, and consider the shippe and her lading, and shall give order for the breaking up of the said bulke, or give licence by discretion, for thinges to be brought to land. And that every officer shall helpe the ende of his charge to him first committed, and to examine the waistes and losses, and to deliuer the remainder to the vse and benefite of the company, according to such order as shall be appointed in that behalf.

22 Item, the company chooseth, willet, and requirerth, not onely all the said Agents, pilots, maisters, merchantes, clerkes, boatewaines, stewards, skafemaisters, and all other officers and ministers of this present voyage, being put in charge and trust dayly to perseue, reade, and obey such instructions as be made, given, and deliuered to them for perfect knowledge of the people of Russia, Spotskita, Warehouse, and other places, their dispositions, lawes, maners, customes, vses, tolles, carriages, coines, weights, numbers, measures, wares, merchandizes, commodities, and in commodities, the one to be accepted and embraced, the other to be rejected and utterly abandoned, to the intent that every man taking charge, may be so well taught, perfect, and readily instructed in all the premises, that, by ignorance, no losse or prejudice may grow or chance to the company, assuring themselves, that forasmuch as the company hath travailed and laboured so in their their instructions to them given, that every man may be perfect, and fully learned to eschew all losses, hurts and damages that may insue by prejudice or colour of none knowledge, the company entendeth not to allowe, or accept ignorance for any lawfull or iust cause of excuse, in that which shall be misorderd by negligence, the burden whereof shall light upon the negligent offending person, especially upon such as of their owne heads, or temeritie, will take upon him or them to do or attempt any thing, whereby prejudice may arise, without the commission of the Agents as above is mentioned, whereunto relation be had.

23 Forasmuch as it is not possible to write and indite such prescribed orders, rules and commissions to you the Agents and factours, but that occasion, time and place, and the pleasures of the princes, together with the operation of successe of fortune shall change or shift the same, although not in the whole, yet in part, therefore the said company doe commit to you their deare and much beloved Agents and factours, to doe in this behalfe for the commodities and wealth of this company, as by your discretions, upon good advised deliberations shall be thought good and beneficiall. Wherunto alwayes, that the honour, good name, fame, credit, and estimation of the same company be conserved and preserved: which to confirme we beseech the living Lord to his glory, the publique benefite of this realme, our common profit, and your prailes.

Finally for the service, and due accomplishment of all the premises, every Agent and minister of and for this voyage, hath not onely given a coppyall thereof upon the Evangelistes to observe, and cause to be observed, this commission, and every part, clause and sentence of the same, as much as in him lyeth, as well for his owne parte as for any other person, but also have bounde themselves and their friends to the company in severall summes of money, expressed in the Actes, and Receyves of this societie, for the tithes and fidelities of them for the better,

all contracts to require advice, house, as our speciall truste broken by any of the company doth appertaine, the companye from all excess of buying, let merchants both, and ought

shall returne home this yeere wounded, bought, and laden the Agentes shall be awaye Edward returne home, and with her all the whole ab the next yeeres pousion, as

be observed, that when the to the coastes of Cap bove of Englands, or betwome to the Boote of the citie of hoked, hatbes opened, chought out of the Shippe, will ons of the company as shall be and her lading, and shall give ion, for things to be brought e to him first committed, and to se and benefite of the company,

nely all the said Agents, pilots, eters, and all other officers and ply to peruse, reade, and they fert knowledge of the people of s, lawes, manners, customes, merchandizes, commodities, to be rected and utterly chaughe, perished, and ready may grow of chance to the comavelled and laboured so in chee fully learned it. eschew all lone knowledge, the company cause of excess, in that whi upon the negligent offending ill take upon him of them to be commission of the Agents as a

scribed orders, rules and com place, and the pleasures of the age of list the same, although nit to you their deare and inye roditie and wealth of this come thought good and beneficial. estimation of the same compa ning Lord to his glory, the pub

mises, every Agent and mini upon the Evangelists to ob ause and sentence of the same, ocher person, but also have l summes of money, expel sibilities of them for the better, and

and also manifeste rectification of the truth, and of their othes, promises, and bands aforesaid, they have to this commission subscribed particularly their severall handes, and the companie also in confirmation of the same, haue set their seale. Given the day, month, and yeeres first aboue mentioned.

The othe ministred to the seruants of the fellowshippe.



Swear by the holy contents of that booke, that ye shall well, faithfully & truly, and by right, and with all your endeavour, serue this right worshipfull company in that order, which by this fellowshippes Agent of Agents in the dominions of the Emperour of Russia &c, shall be unto you committed, by commission, commandement, or other his direction. And that you shall be obedient and faithful to the same our Agent of Agents, and that well, and truly and by right, according to the commission, charge, commandement, or other direction of the said Agent of Agents to you from time to time given and to be given, you shall prosecute and doe all that which in you lieth, for the good renowne, commoditie, benefit and profit of the said fellowshippe: and you shall not directly or indirectly, openly or covertly doe, exercise or use any trade or feat of merchandize for your owne private account, commodity, gaine or profit, or for the account of or for any other person or persons, without consent or licence of this said fellowshippe, first obtayned in writing. And if you shall know or vnderstand any other person or persons to use, exercise or doe any trade, traffike or feat of merchandize, to or for his or their owne account or accounts, at any time or times hereafter, that they ye shall truly and plainly disclose, open, utter and reveale, and bring the same unto this said fellowshippe, without fraud, colour, couin or delay: So helpe you God, &c.

The letter of M. George Killingworth, the companies first Agent in Moscoue, touching their interteinement in their second voyage. Anno 1555 the 27 of Nouember in Mosco.



Ight worshipfull, my duetic considered, &c. It may please your worship to vnderstand, that at the making heereof we all be in good health, thanks be to God, saue onely William our cooke as we came from Colmagro fell into the riuer out of the boat, and was drowned: and the 11 day of September we came to Uologda, and there we layed all our wares vp, and solde very little: but one merchant would haue giuen vs 12 robes for a yoad cloth, and he said he would haue had them all, and 4 altines for a pound of sugar, but we did refuse it because he was the first, and the merchants were not come thither, nor would not come before winter, trusting to haue moze: but I feare it will not be much better. Yet notwithstanding we did for the best. And the house that our wares lie in, cost from that day vntill Easter ten robes. And the 28 day of September we did determine with our selues that it was good for M. Gray, Arthur Edwardes, Thomas Parson, Christopher Hudson, John Segewicke, Richard Johnson, and Richard Good, to tarie at Uologda, and M. Chanceler, Henry Lane, Edward White, Robert Best and I should go to Mosco. And we did lade the Emperours sugar, with part of all sortes of wares to haue had to the Hofco with vs, and the way was so deepe, that we were faine to turne backe, and leaue it still at Uologda till the frost. And we went forth with post horse, & the charge of every horse being still ten in number, comes to 10 s. 7 d. halfe pene, besides the guides, and we came to the Hofco the fourth day of October, and were lodged that night in a simple house: but the next day we were sent for to the Emperour his secretarie, and he had vs welcome with a cheerefull countenance and cheerefull wordes, and he shewed him that we had a letter from our Quenes grace to the Emperour his grace, and then he desired to see them all, and that they might remaine with him, to haue them perfect, that the true meaning might be declared to the Emperour, and so we did: and then we were appointed to a better house: and the seuench day the secretarie sent for vs againe, and then he shewed vs that we should haue a better house, for it was the Emperour his will, that we should haue all things that we did lacke, and did send vs meade of two sorts, and two hens, our house free, and currey two dayes to receiue eight hens, seuen alines, and two pence in money, and meadow a certaine, and a prooze fellow to make cleane our house, and to do that wherunto we would set him: and we had giuen many rewards before, which you shall perceiue by ocher, and so we gaue the messengers

Quene sent letters to the Emperour of Russia.

grew a reward with thanks: and the ninth day we were sent to make us ready to speake with the Emperour on the morrow. And the letters were sent us, that we might deliuer them our selves, and we came before him the tenth day: and before we came to his presence we went thowto a great chamber, where stood many small runnes, pailles, bowles and pots of silver. I meane, like walking bowles, all parfell gill: and within that another chamber, wherein sate (I thinke) were a hundred in cloth of golde, and then into the chamber where his grace sat, and there I thinke were more then in the other chamber also in cloth of golde, and we did our duety, and there we did his grace our queenes graces letters, with a note of your present which was left in Uologda: and then his grace did aske how our Quenes grace did, calling her cousin, saying that he was glad that we were come in health into his Realme, and we went one by one vnto him, andooke him by the hand, and then his grace did bid vs go in health, and come to dinner againe, and we dined in his presence, and were set with our faces to wards his grace, and none in the chamber sate with their backs to wards him, being, I thinke, were a hundred at dinner then, and all serued with golde, as platters, chargers, pottes, cuppes, and all not slender, but very massy, and yet a great number of platters of golde, standing still on the cupboord, not moued: and diuers times in the dinner time his grace sent us meat and drinke from his owne table, and when we had dined we went by to his grace, and receiued a cuppe with drinke at his owne hand, and the same night his grace sent certaine gentlemen to vs with diuers sortes of wine and mead, to whome we gaue a reward. And after ward we were by diuers Italians counsell'd to take heed whom we did trust to make the copie of the priuileges that we would desire to haue, for feare it should not be writen in the Russe tongue, as we did meane. So first a Russian did write for vs a heuillate to the Emperour, the tenour wherof was, that we did desire a stronger priuillage: & when the Secretary saw it, he did deliuer it to his grace, and when we came againe, his grace willed vs to write our mindes, and he would see it, and so we did. And his grace is so troubled with preparations to warres, that as yet we haue no answer: but we haue bene requir'd of his Secretary, and of the vnder Chancelour, to know what wares we had brought into the Realme, and what wares we doe intend to haue, that are, or may be had in this Realme: and we shew'd them, and they shew'd the Emperour therof. And then they said his graces pleasure was, that his best merchants of the Mosco should be spoken to, to meet and talke with vs. And so a day was appointed, and we mette in the Secretary his office, and there was the vnder Chancelour, who was not past two yerres since the Emperours merchant, and not his Chancelour: and then the conclusion of our talke was, that the Chancelour willed vs to bethinke vs, where we would desire to haue a house or houses, that we might come to them as to our owne house, and for merchandize to be made preparation for vs, and they would know our prices of our wares and frite: and we answered, that for our prices they must see the wares before we could make any price thereof, for the like in goodnesse had not bene brought into the Realme, and we did looke for an example of all sortes of our wares to come from Uologda, with the first shew, and then they should see them, and then we would shew them the prices of them: and like wise we could not tell them what we would giue them iustly, till we did know as well their iust weight as their measures (for in all places where we did come, all weightes and measures did vary) then the Secretary (who had made promise vnto vs before) said, that we should haue all the iust measures vnder seale, & he that was found faulty in the contrary, to buy or sell with any other measure then that, the law was, that he should be punished: he said moreover, that if it so happen that any of our merchants do promise by couenant at any time to deliuer you any certaine sum of wares in such a place, and of such like goodnesse, at such a day, for such a certaine price, that then because of wantance, we should cause it to be writen, according as the bargen is, before a iustice or the next ruler to the place: if he did not keepe couenant and promise in all points, according to his couenant, that then looke what losse or hinderance we could iustly proue that we haue thereby, he should make it good, if he be worth so much: and in like case we must doe to them, and to that we did agree, saue onely if it were to come ouer the sea, then if any such fortune should be (as God forbid) that the shippe should mischance or be robbed, & the poofe to be made that such kinde of wares were laden, the English merchants to beare no losse to the other merchant. When the Chancelour said, me thinks you shall be best to haue your house at Colmogro, which is but 100 miles from the right discharge of the ships, and yet I trust the ships shall come neerer hereafter, because the ships may not carry long for their lading, which is 1000 miles from Uologda by water, and all our merchants shall bring all our merchandize to Colmogro to you, and so shall our merchants, neither go empty nor come empty: for if that they lacke lading homeward, there is sale, which is good ware here, that they may come laden againe: so we were very glad to heare that, and did agree to his saying: for we shall neuer the less, if we will, haue a house at Uologda, & at the Mosco, yea, & at Mouogrode, or where we will in

The Italians  
counsell'd to our  
people.

The discreite  
of weightes &  
measures in  
Russia.

Colmogro.

Russian

make vs ready to speake with the  
 might deliuer them our selves,  
 presence we went to jobs a great  
 of silver. I meane, like washing  
 face (I thinke) were a hundred  
 there I thinke were more then  
 shewed his grace our quarters  
 goda: and then his grace did as he  
 was glad that we were come in  
 the him by the hand, and then his  
 lined in his presence, and were he  
 with their backs towards him,  
 rich golde, as platters, chargers,  
 eat number of platters of golde,  
 the dinner time his grace sent vs  
 went by to his grace, and recei-  
 his grace sent certaine gentlemen  
 a reward. And after ward we  
 all to make the copie of the piti-  
 in in the Russe conque, as we did  
 troz, the tenour wherof was, that  
 he did deliuer it to his grace, and  
 and he would see it, and so we did.  
 as per we haue no illuere: but  
 our, to know what wares we had  
 that are, or may be had in this  
 troz. And then they said his gra-  
 spoken to, to meet and talke with  
 his office, and there was the ma-  
 n merchant, and not his Chan-  
 celour. Whilke vs to berinke vs,  
 e come to them as to our owne  
 they would know our prices of our  
 will see the wares before we could  
 bought into the Realme, and we  
 Cologoda, with the first shipp,  
 prices of them: and like wise we  
 know as well their iust weight  
 es and measures did vary: then  
 we should haue all the iust mea-  
 us or sell with any other measure  
 er, that if it so happen that any of  
 any certaine sum of wares in such  
 price, that then because of bond-  
 before a iustice or the next ruler to  
 copying to his covenant, that then  
 there by, he should make it good, if  
 that we did agree, saue onely if it  
 God forbid) that the shipp should  
 of wares were laden, the English  
 celo) said, me thinks you shall do  
 m the right discharge of the ship,  
 ships may not tary long for their  
 our merchants shall bring all our  
 ther go empty nor come empty:  
 ware here, that they may come lo-  
 wis saying: for we shall neuer the-  
 Mouogrode, or where we will in  
 Rutland.

Rutland. But the three and twentieth of this present we were with the secretery, and then among  
 other talks, we moued, that if we should tary at Colmogro with our wares, and should not come  
 to Cologoda, or further to seeke our market, but tary still at Colmogro, and then the merchants of  
 the Spoto and others should not come and bring their wares, and so the shippes should come,  
 and not haue their lading ready, that then it were a great losse and hinderance for vs: then sayd he  
 againe to vs, that the merchants had bene againe together with him, and had put the like doubt,  
 that if they should come and bring their wares to Colmogro, and that they should not finde wares  
 there sufficient to serue them, that then they should be at great losse and hinderance, they leauing  
 their other trades to fall to that: and to that we did answer, that after the time that we doe appoint  
 with them to bring their wares to Colmogro, God willing, they should neuer come thither, but at  
 the beginning of the yeere, they should finde that our merchants would haue at the least for a thou-  
 sand rubles, although the shippes were not come: so that he said, that then we must talke further  
 with the merchants: so that as yet I know not, but that we shall haue need of one house at Colmo-  
 gro, and another at Cologoda, and if that they bring not their wares to Colmogro, then we shall  
 be sure to buy some at Cologoda, and to be out of bondage.

Cologoda.

And thus may we continue three or foure yeeres, and in this space we shall know the countrey  
 and the merchants, and which way to saue our selues best, and where to plant our houses, and  
 where to seeke for wares: for the Spoto is not best for any kinde of wares for vs to buy, saue onely  
 woyle, which we can not haue vnder seven pence the Russe pound, and it lacks two ounces of our  
 pound, neither will it be much better cheape, for I haue bidden sixe pence for a pound. And I haue  
 bought more, five hundred weight of yarne, which standes me in eight pence for a bushing the Russe  
 pound one with another. And if we had receiued any stoze of money, and were dispatched here  
 of that we tary for, as I doubt not but we shall be shortly (you know what I meane) then as soone  
 as we haue made sale, I do intend to goe to Mouogrode, and to Jolitto, whence all the great  
 number of the best tow stoze cometh, and such wares as are there I trust to buy part. And feare  
 you not, we will do that may be done, if God send vs health, desiring you to prepare fully for one  
 shipp to be ready in the beginning of Apyll to depart off the coast of England.

Mouogrode.

Concerning all those things which we haue done in the wares, you shall receiue a perfect note  
 by the next bearer (God willing) for he that carrieth these from vs is a merchant of Turtwell, and  
 he was caused to tary these by the commandement of the Emperour his secretery, whose name  
 is Euan Mecallawiche wekawate, whom we take to be our very friend. And if it please you to  
 send any letters to Dantiske, to Robert Elton, or to William Matsons seruant Dunstan Mat-  
 son to be conueyed to vs, it may please you to inclose ours in a letter sent from you to him, written  
 in Polish, Dutch, Latine, or Italian: so inclosed, comming to the Spoto to his handes, he will  
 conuey our letters to vs wheresouer we be. And I haue written to Dantiske already to them  
 for the conuenance of letters from thence.

The Russian secretery Dunstan Matson.

And to certifie you of the weather here, men say, that these hundred yeeres was neuer so warme  
 weather in this countrey at this time of the yeere. But as yester night we receiued a letter from  
 Christopher Hudson from a citie called Pereslaue, who is comming hither with certaine of our  
 wares, but the winter did decreue him, so that he was faine to tary by the way: and he wrote that  
 the Emperours present was deliuered to a gentleman at Cologoda, and the sledde did ouertrow,  
 and the butte of Pollocke was lost, which made vs all very sorry.

I pray you be not offended with these my rude letters, for lacke of time: but as soone as sale is  
 made, I will finde the meanes to conuey you a letter with speed: for the way is made so doubtfull,  
 that the right messenger is so much in doubt, that he would not haue any letters of any effect sent  
 by any man if he might, for he knowes not of these: and to say the truth, the way is not for him to  
 reauell in. But I will make another shift beside, which I trust shall serue the turne till he come, if  
 sales be made before he be ready, which is and shall be as pleaseth God: who euer preferre your  
 worship, and send vs good sales. Written in haste.

By yours to command

GEORGE KILLINGWORTH

Draper.

A

A copie of the first Priuileges granted by the Emperour  
of *Russia* to the *English* Merchantes, in  
the yeere 1555.

**H**yn Casilivich, by the grace of God, Emperour of *Russia*, great Duke of *Uogrode*, *Polsouia*, &c. To all people that shall see, reade, heare, or vnderstand these presents, greeting. Forasmuch as God hath planted all Realmes and Dominions in the whole world with sundry commodities, so as the one hath need of the amity and commodities of the other, and by meanes thereof, traffike vsed from one to another, and amity thereby increased, and for that as amongst men nothing is more to be desired then amity, without the which no creature being of a naturall good disposition can liue in quietnesse, so that it is as trouble some to be utterly wanting, as it is perceived to be grieuous to the body to lacke ayre, fire, or any ocher necessities most requisite for the conseruation and maintenance thereof in health, considering also how needfull merchandise is, which furnisheth men of all that which is conuenient for theyr liuing, and nouriture, for their clothing, trimming, the satisfiing of their deligthes, and all ocher thinges conuenient and profitabie for them, and that merchandise bringeth the same commodities from diuers quarters, in so great abundance, as by meanes thereof nothing is lacking in any part, and that all thinges be in euery place (where euery course of merchandise is receiued and embraced) generally in such sort, as amity thereby is entered into, and planted to continue, and the iniopers thereof be as men liuing in a golden world. Upon these respects, and ocher weighty and good considerations, vs heereunto mouing, and chiefly vpon the contemplation of the gracious letters, directed from the right high, right excellent, and right mighty Queene *Mary*, by the grace of God, Queene of *England*, *France*, &c. in the fauour of her subiects, merchantes, the gouernour, consuls, assistants, and comminallty of merchantes aduocaters, for viscouery of *lands*, &c.

Know ye therefore, that we of our grace especiall, meere motion, and certaine knowledg, here giuen and granted, and by these presents, for vs, our heyyes and successours, doe giue and grant, as much as in vs is and lyeth, vnto *Sebastian Cabota* Gouernour, *Sir George Barnes* knight, &c. Consuls: *Sir John Shelham*, &c. Assistants, and to the comminallty of the aforesaid fellow shippe, and to theyr successours for euer, and to the successours of euery of them, these articles, grans, immunities, franchises, liberties and priuileges, and euery of them heereafter following, expressed and declared, videlicet:

1 First, we for vs, our heyyes and successours, do by these presents giue and grant free licence, faculty, authoriy and power vnto the said Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants, and comminallty of the said fellow shippe, and to their successours for euer, that all and singular the merchantes of the same company, their Agents, factours, doers of their businesse, attornies, seruants, and ministres, and euery of them may at all times heereafter for euer more surely, freely, and safely with theyr shippes, merchandizes, goods, and thinges whatsoeuer, saile, come, and enter into all and singular our *lands*, countreyes, dominions, cities, townes, villages, castles, ports, iurisdictiones and detraicts by sea, land, or fresh waters, and there tary, abide, and sojourne, and buy, sell, barter and change all kinde of merchandizes with all maner of merchantes and people, of whatsoeuer nation, right condition, state or degrees they bee, and with the same or other shippes, wares, merchandizes, goods, and thinges, whatsoeuer they be, vnto other *Emppres*, *Kingdomes*, *Dukeodomes*, parts, and to any other place or places at theyr pleasure and liberty, by sea, land or fresh waters may depart, and exercise all kinde of merchandizes in our *Emppre* and dominions, and euery part thereof, freely and quietly, without any restraint, impeachment, pnye, exaction, yess, straight custome, toll, imposition, or subbidie to be demanded, taxed, or payed, or at any time heereafter to be demanded, taxed, set, leuied, or inferred vpon them or any of them, or vpon their goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes and thinges, of, for, or vpon any part or partell thereof, or vpon the goods, shippes, wares, merchandizes, and thinges of any of them, so that they shall not need any other safe conduct or licence generall, ne speciall, of vs, our heyyes or successours, neither shall be bound to aske any safe conduct or licence in any of the aforesaid places subiect vnto vs.

2 Item, we giue and grant to the sayd merchantes, this power and libertie, that they, ne any of them, ne theyr goods, wares, merchandizes or thinges, ne any part thereof, shall be by any meanes, within our dominions, *landes*, countreyes, castles, townes, villages, or other place or places of our iurisdiction, at any time heereafter attached, stayed, arrested, ne disturbed for any

by the Emperour  
antes, in

our of Russia, great Duke of  
ball see, trade, beare, or understand  
hath planted all Realmes and Do-  
nities, so as the one hath need  
meanes thercof, traffike vied from  
to for that as amongst men nothing  
being of a naturall good disposi-  
p wanting, as it is pertained to be  
most requisite for the construction  
of all merchandize is, which furni-  
mouriture, for their clothing, trim-  
ment and profitable for them, and  
quarters, in so great abundance, as  
they be in euery place (where eu-  
p in such sort, as amity thereby is  
as men liuing in a golden world  
vs heerunto moouing, and which  
be the right high, right excellent, and  
England, France, &c. in the same  
communitie of merchants adu-  
ce, and certaine knowledge, haue  
successors, doe giue and grant, as  
Sir George Barnes knight, &c.  
of euery of them, these articles,  
euery of them hereafter following,

sents giue and grant free licen-  
s, Assaunts, and communitie of  
and singular the merchants of the  
trumpets, seruants, and ministers,  
ely, freely, and safely with they  
re, and enter into all and singular  
ports, iurisdictiones and detraints  
s, and buy, sell, barter and change  
ple, of whatsoever nation, right  
trippes, wares, merchandises,  
kingdomes, Dukedomes, parts,  
sea, land or freshwaters may be  
dominions, and euery part ther-  
exaction, prest, straight custome,  
any time hereafter to be deman-  
upon their goods, shippes, wares,  
reof, or upon the goods, shippes,  
will not need any other safe con-  
neither shall be bound to aske any  
s.

and libertie, that they, ne any of  
re thereof, shall be by any meanes,  
illages, or other place or places of  
d, ne disturbed for any dete,  
te

ce, or other thing, for the which they be not principall debtors or sureties, ne also for any offence  
of trespass committed, or that shall be committed, but onely for such as they, or any of them shall  
actually commit, and the same offences (if any such happen,) shall be by vs onely heard, and de-  
termined.

3 Item, we giue and graunt, that the saide Marchants shall and may haue free libertie, power,  
and authoritie to name, choose, and assigne byokers, byppers, packers, wagers, measurers, wago-  
ners, and all other meetz and necessarie labourers, for to serue them in their seate of Marchandi-  
set, and minister, and giue vnto them and euery of them a copyvall othe, to serue them well and  
truelly in their offices, and binding them or any of them doing contrary to his or their othe, may pu-  
nish and dismisse them, and from time to time choose, sweare, and admit ocher in their place, or  
places, without contradiction; let, vexation, or disturbance, either of vs, our heires or successours, or  
of any other our Iudices, officers, ministers, or subiects whatsoever.

4 Item, we do giue and graunt vnto the saide Marchants and their successours, that such per-  
son as is, or shall be commended vnto vs, our heires or successours, by the Gouernour, Con-  
sile, and assistants of the saide fellowship, resident within the Citie of London within the Realme  
of Englands, to bee their chiefe Factor within this our Empire and Dominions, may, and  
shall haue full power and authoritie to gouerne and rule all Englishmen, that haue had, or shall  
haue access, or repaire in or to this saide Empire and iurisdictiones, or any part thereof, and shall  
and may minister vnto them, and euery of them good iustice, in all their causes, plaints, quarrels,  
and disputes betweene them moued, and to bee moued, and assemble, deliberate, consult,  
conclue, define, determine, and make such Actes, and ordinaunces, as her to commended with  
his assistants shall thinke good and meete, for the good order, gouernement and rule of the saide  
Marchants, and all other Englishmen repairing to this our saide Empire and Dominions, of  
any part thereof, and to set and leuie vpon all, and euery Englishmen, offender or offenders, of  
such their Actes and ordinaunces made, and to bee made, penalties, and mulctes by fine or im-  
prisonment.

5 Item, if it happen, that any of the saide Marchants, or other Englishman, as one or more  
doe rebell against such chiefe Factor or Factors, or his or their deputies, and will not despo-  
se him, or shew himselfe to obey them, and euery of them, as shall appertaine, if the saide Rebels or  
disobedient doe come, and bee founde in our saide Empire and iurisdictiones, or any part  
and place thereof, then wee promise and graunt, that all and euery our officers, ministers, and  
subiects shall effectually ayde and assist the saide chiefe Factor, or Factors, and their deputies,  
and for their power shall really worke, to bring such rebell or disobedient Rebels, or disobedi-  
ents to due obedience: And to that intent shall sende vnto the same Factor or Factors, and their  
deputies vpon request therfore to be made, pylions, and instruments for punishments from time  
to time.

6 Item, wee promise vnto the saide Marchants, and their successours vpon their request, to exhi-  
bit, and doe vnto them good, exact, and fauourable iustice, with expedition in all their causes, and  
that when they or any of them, shall haue access, or come to, or before any of our Iudices, for any  
their plaints moued, and to bee moued betweene any our Subiects or ocher stranger, and  
them, or any of them, that them they shall bee first, and furthwith heard, as soone as the partie  
which they shall finde before our Iudices shall bee depeached, which partie being heard furthwith,  
and aldone as may bee, the saide English Marchants shall bee ridde, and dispatched: And if any  
action shall be moued by or against any of the saide Marchants, being absent out of our saide  
Empire and Dominions, then such Marchants may substitute an Attorney in all and sin-  
gular his causes to bee followed as neede shall require, and as shall seeme to him expe-  
dient.

7 Item, wee graunt, and promise to the saide Marchants, and to their successours, that if the  
same Marchants or any of them shall bee wounded, or (which God forbidde) slaine in any part,  
or place of our Empire, or Dominions, then good information thereof giuen, Wee and our  
Iudices, and other officers, shall execute due correction and punishment without delaye, ac-  
cording to the exigence of the case: So that it shall bee an example to all ocher, not to com-  
mit the like. And if it shall chaunce the Factors, seruants, or Ministers of the saide Mar-  
chants or any of them, to trespass or offende, whereby they or any of them shall incurre the  
danger of death or punishment, the goods, wares, merchandises, and things of their Masters,  
shall not therfore be forfeited, confiscated, spoiled, ne seiled by any means, by vs, our heires, or  
successours, or by any our officers, ministers or subiects, but shall remaine to their vse, franke,  
free, and discharged from all punishment and losse.

ff

8 Item,

8 Item, wee graunt that if any of the English nation be arrested for any debt, hee shall not be layed in prison, so farre, as he can put in sufficient suretie or paime: Neither shall any Sergeant, or officer leade them, or any of them to prison, before he shall haue knownen whether the chief factor, or factors, or their deputies, shall be sureties, or lying in paime for such arrested: then the officers shall release the partie, and shall set him or them at libertie.

9 Moreover, wee giue, graunt, and promise to the saide Marchants, that if any of their Shippes or other vessels, shall bee spoyled, robbed, or dammified, in sayling, anchoring or returning, or from our sayde Empires, and Dominions, or any part thereof, by any Pirates, Marchants, or other person, whatsoever hee or they bee, that then and in such case, wee will doe all that in vs is, to cause restitution, reparation, and satisfaction to bee duely made to the saide English Marchants by our letters and otherwise, as shall stande with our honour, and bee consonant to equite and iustice.

8 Item, for vs, our heires and successours, wee doe promise and graunt, to performe, maintain, corroborate, authenticate, and obserue all and singular the aforesayde libertie, franchises, and priuiledges, like as presently wee firmly doe intende, and will corroborate, authenticate, and performe the same by all meane and way that wee can, as much as may bee to the commoditie and profite of the saide English Marchants, and their successours for euer.

And to the intent that all and singular the saide giftes, graunts and promises, may be inuincibly obserued and performed, wee the saide John Vasiluich by the grace of God Emperour of Russia, great duke of Nouogrode, Mosco, &c. for vs, our heires and successours, by our Imperiall and Royall woerde in heade of an othe, haue and doe promise by these presents, inuincibly to mainteine and obserue, and cause to bee inuincibly obserued and maintained, all and singular the aforesayde giftes, graunts, and promises from time to time, and at all and euery time and times hereafter. And for the more corroboracion hereof haue caused our Signet hereunto to be put Dated in our Castell of Mosco, the 20. day of \_\_\_\_\_ in the yeere.

### The Charter of the Marchants of Russia, graunted upon the discoverie of the saide Countrey, by King Philip and Queene Mary.



Philip and Mary, by the grace of God, King and Queene, &c. To all manner of officers, true Iurie men, ministers and Subiects, and to all other people, as well within this our Realme or els where vnder our obeytaunce, iurisdiction, and rule, or otherwise vnto whome these our letters shall bee shewed, scene, or read, greeting.

Whereas wee be credibly informed, that our right trustie, right faithfull, and welbeloued Counsaillers, William Marques of Winchester, Lorde high Treasurer of this our Realme of England, Henry Earle of Arundel, Lord Steward of our householde, John Earle of Bedford, Lorde keeper of our priuie Seale, William Earle of Pembroke, William Lope Haward of Effingham, Lorde high Admirall of our saide Realme of England, &c. Haue at their owne aduenture, costes and charges, provided, rigged, and tacked certaine Shippes, pinesses, and other merche vessels, and the same furnished with all thinges necessarie, haue aduanced and set forthwarde, for to discover, descric, and finde Isles, landes, territories, Dominions, and Signities vnknownen, and by our subiects before this not commonly by Sea frequented, which by the sufferance and grace of Almighty God, it shall chauce them sayling Northwardes, North eastwardes, and Northwellwardes, or any parts thereof, in that race or course which other Christian Monarches, (being with vs in league and amitie) haue not heretofore by Seas traqued, haunted, or frequented, to finde and attaine by their saide aduenture, as well for the glorye of God, as for the illustrating of our honour, and dignitie royal, in the increase of the reuenues of our Crowne, and generall wealch of this and other our Realmes and Dominions, and of our subiects of the same: And to this intent our subiects aboue specified and named, haue most humbly beseeched vs, that our abundant grace, fauour and clemencie, may be graciously extended vnto them in this behalfe: Whereupon we inclined to the petition of the foresaid our Counsaillers, subiects and Marchants, and willing to animate, aduance, further and nourish them in their said goodly, honest, and good purpose, and, as we hope, profitable aduenture, & that they may the more willingly, and readily achieve the same. Of our especiall grace, certaine knowledge and meere motion, haue graunted, and by these presents doe graunt, for vs, our heires and successours, vnto our saide right

The discoverie principally intended for Gods glorye.

trustie,



ed for any debt, hee shall not be  
: neither shall any Sergeant,  
known whether the chiefé f  
of such arrears: then the officers  
hants, that if any of their shippes  
ing, anchoring or returning to  
of, by any Pirats, Marchants,  
well safe, wee will doe all that in  
made to the saide English Spa  
our, and bee consonant to equite

and graunt, to performe, main  
afore saide liberties, franchises,  
will incorporate, autentike, and  
as may bee to the commoditie  
for euer.  
as and promises, may be immo  
the grace of God Emperour  
s and successours, by our Impe  
le by these presents, inuialib  
nd maintained, all and singular  
at all and euery time and times  
our Signet hereunto to be put  
recte.

ussia, graunted  
rey, by King

and Queene, &c. To all maner  
jects, and to all other people, as  
nder our obedience, iurisdiction,  
letters shall bee betwé, fern, n

our right trustie, right faithfull,  
er, Lorde high Treasurer of this  
ard of our housholde, John Cate  
e of Pembroke, William Lope  
e of England, &c. Haue at their  
kled certain shippes, pinelles,  
necessarie, haue aduanced and  
opies, Dominions, and Seig  
y by Sea frequented, which by  
n sayling thowt wardes, thowt  
ce of course which other Chy  
c heretofore by Seas traqued,  
as well for the || gloie of God,  
increase of the revenues of our  
Dominions, and of our subiects  
amed, haue most humbly besee  
raciously extended vnto them in  
our Counsaillers, subiects and  
them in their said godly, honest,  
ey may the moze willingly, and  
pledge and meere motion, haue  
successours, vnto our saide right  
trustie,

trustie and right faithfull, and right welbeloued Counsaillers, and the ocher befoze named per  
sons, that they by the name of Marchants aduenturers of England, for the discouerie of lands, ter  
ritories, Isles, Dominions, and Seignories vnknown, and not befoze that late aduenture of en  
terpryse by sea of Nauigation, commonly frequented as aforesaid, shalbe from hencefoorth one bo  
die and perpetuall fellowship and communitie of themselves, both in dede and in name, and  
them by the names of Marchants aduenturers for the discouerie of Landes, territories, Isles and  
Seignories vnknown, and not by the Seas, and Nauigations, befoze their saide late aduenture  
of enterpryse by sea of Nauigation commonly frequented, Wee doe incorporate, name, and declare  
by these presents, and that the same fellowship of communitie from hencefoorth shall be, and may  
haue one Governour of the said fellowship, and communitie of Marchants aduenturers.

And in consideration that one Sebastian Cabota, hath bene the chiefest letter foorth of this  
voyage of voyage, therefore we make, ordeine, and constitute him the said Sebastian to be the first  
and present governour of the same fellowship and communitie, by these presents. To haue and  
enjoy the said office of Governour, to him the said Sebastian Cabota during his natural life, with  
out amouing of diminishing from the same roome.

Sebastian  
Cabota first  
Governour of  
the aforesaid  
companye.

And furthermore, we graunt vnto the same fellowship and communitie and their successours,  
that they the saide fellowship and communitie, and their successours after the decease of the saide  
Sebastian Cabota, shall, and may freely and lawfully in places conuenient, and honest, assemble  
themselues together, of so many of them as will, or can assemble together, as well within our  
Citie of London, or elsewhere, as it shall please them in such sort and maner, as other worthyfull  
corporations of our saide Citie haue vsed to assemble, and there yeerely name, elect and choole one  
Governour of two, of themselves, and their liberties, and also as well yeerely during the natural  
life of the said Sebastian Cabota now Governour, as also at the election of such said Governour  
of governours befoze his decease, to choole, name and appoint eight and twentie of the most sad,  
discreet, and honest persons of the saide fellowship, and communitie of Marchant aduenturers,  
as is aboue specified, and 4. of the most expert and skilfull persons of the same 28. to be named and  
called Consuls, and 24. of the residue, to be named and called Assistants to the saide Governour of  
governours, and Consuls for the time being, which shall remaine and stand in their authorites for  
one whole yeere then next following. And if it shall fortune the saide Governour, Consuls, and  
assistants, or any of them to be elected, and chosen as is aforesaid, to die within the yeere after  
his or their election, that then and so often, it shall and may be lawfull to and for the saide fellow  
ship and communitie, to elect and chuse of themselves ocher Governour of governours, Consuls  
and assistants, in the place and steade of such as so shall happen to die, to serue out the same  
yeere.

And further we doe make, ordeine, and constitute, George Barnes knight and Alderman of our  
Citie of London, William Garret, Alderman of our saide Citie, Anthonie Husie, and John Suth  
cot, to be the first and present 4. Consuls of the said fellowship and communitie by these presents,  
to haue & enjoy the said offices of Consuls to them the said George Barnes, William Garret, An  
thonie Husie, & John Suthcot, for terme of one whole yeere next after the date of these our letters  
patentes: And wee doe likewise, make, ordeine and constitute Sir John Gresham knight, Sir An  
drew lude, knight, Sir Thomas White knight, Sir, John Yorke knight, Thomas Offley the el  
der, Thomas Lodge, Henry Herdson, John Hopkins, William Watson, Williã Clifton, Richard  
Pointer, Richard Chamberlaine, William Mallorie, Thomas Pallie the elder, William Allen,  
Henry Becher, Jeffrey Walkenden, Richard Fowles, Rowland Heyward, George Eaton, Iohn  
Eilor, John Sparke, Blase Sanders, and Miles Mording, to be the first and present 24. Assistants to  
the saide Governour of governours, and Consuls, and to the saide fellowship and communitie by  
these presents, to haue and enjoy the said offices of assistants to them for terme of one whole yeere,  
next after the date of these our letters patentes. And further, we for vs, our betres & successours,  
as much as in vs is, will & graunt by these presents vnto the said Governour, Consuls, assistants,  
fellowship & company of Marchants aduenturers aforesaid, & to their successours, that the said Go  
uernour of governours, 4. Consuls, & 24. assistants, that now by these patentes are nominated and  
appointed, or that hereafter by the said fellowship, & communitie of marchants aduenturers, or the  
more part of them, which shalbe then present, so frõ time to time to be chosen, so that there be 15. at  
the least, wholy agreed therof, the said Governour of governours, or one of them, & 2. of the said Co  
suls shalbe there, & 12. of the residue of the said number of 15. shalbe of the said assistants, and in the  
absence of such Governour, that then 3. of the saide Consuls, and 12. of the saide assistants at the  
least for the time being, shal & may haue, vse, and exercise full power & authoritie, to rule & gouerne  
all and singular the Marchants of the said fellowship and communitie, & to execute, & do full and  
specie

Sir George  
Barnes, Will  
iam Garret,  
Anthonie Hu  
sie, Joh. Suth  
cot, the first 4.  
Consuls.

speedie iustice to them, and euery of them, in all their causes, differences, variances, controuersies, quarrels, and complaints, within any our Realmes, dominions, and iurisdictiones onely moued, and to be moued touching their Marchandise, traffiques, and occupiers aforesaide, or the good order or rule of them or any of them.

Also wee for vs, our heires and successours, so much as in vs is, doe likewise by these presents graunte, that the said Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie, and their successours, shall and may haue perpetuall succession, and a common Seale which shall perpetually serue for the affaires and businesse of the saide fellowship and communalitie. And that they and their successours, shall and may be for euer able persons, and capax in the lawe, for to purchase and possesse in fee and perpetuallie, and for terme of life, or liues, or for terme of yeere or otherwise, landes, tenements, rentes, reuerfions, and other possessions, and hereditaments, whatsoeuer they bee, by the name of the Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie of the Marchants aduenturers by Seas and Navigations, for the discouerie of landes, territories, Isles, Dominions, and Seignories vnknownen, and before the saide last aduenture or enterpryse by Seas not frequented, as before is specified, and by the same names, that and may lawfully alien, graunt, lett and lett the same, or any part thereof to any person or persons, able in the lawe to take and receiue the same. So that they doe not graunt nor alien the same, or any part thereof into mortmaine, without speciall licence of vs, our heires or successours, first had and obtained.

Also, wee for vs, our heires and successours haue graunted, and by these presents doe graunte vnto the saide Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship, and communalitie of the saide Marchants and to their successours, that they and their successours, shall, and may lawfully purchase vnto them and their successours for euer, landes, tenements and hereditaments whatsoever, of the cleare pecetely value of 3. score 6. pounds, thirterne shillings and foure pence of lawfull money of Englaunde and not aboue, as well of such landes, tenements, and hereditaments, as bee holden or shall bee holden of vs, our heires or successours, as of any other person or persons, the Statutes p'ouided against alienations into mortmaine, or any of them, or any article or clause in them or any of them contained, or any other lawe, custome, statute, or p'ouision to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding. And that they by the name of the Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers, for the discouerie of landes, territories, Isles, dominions, and Seignories vnknownen by the Seas and Navigations, and not before the saide late aduenture or enterpryse by Seas frequented as aforesaide, shall and may be able in the lawe, to impleade, and be impleaded, to answere, and to be answered, to defende, and to be defended by foze whatsoever Iudge or Iustice, temporall or spirituall, or other persons whatsoever, in whatsoever court, or court, and in all actions personall, real, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaintes of nouel disseison, and also in all plaintes, suites, quarrels, affaires, businesse and demaundes whatsoever they bee, touching and concerning the saide fellowship and communalitie, and the affaires and businesse of the same onely, in as ample maner and foyme, as any other cop'ozation of this our Realme may doe.

Moreouer, wee for vs, our heires and successours, haue giuen and graunted, and by these presents doe giue and graunt vnto the saide Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowship, and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers aforesaide, and to their successours, that the saide Governour, or Governours, Consuls and assistants, and their successours, in maner, foyme, and nombre afoze rehearsed, shall haue full power and authoritie from time to time hereafter, to make, ordeine, establish and erect all such Statutes, actes and ordinaunces, for the gouernement, good condition, and laudable rule of the saide fellowship and communalitie of Marchants aduenturers aforesaide, as to them shalbe thought good, meete, conuenient and necessarie, and also to admitte vnto the saide Cop'ozation and fellowship to be free of the same, such and as many persons, as to them shall bee thought good, meete, conuenient, and necessarie. And that euery such person or persons, as shall fortime hereafter to bee admitted into the saide fellowship, communalitie and cop'ozation, shall from the time of his or their admittance, bee free of the same: And also wee will, and by these presents graunt for vs, our heires and successours, vnto the saide Governours, Consuls, assistants, fellowship, communalitie, of Marchant aduenturers aforesaide, and to their successours, that the Governour, or governours, Consuls and assistants of the same, in maner, foyme, and nombre afoze rehearsed, and their successours, for the time being, shall, and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents from time to time, as to them shall seeme good, to limit, lett, ordeine and make mulctes, and penalties by fines, forfeitures, & imprisonmentes, or any of them vpon any offender of the saide fellowship and communalitie, for any offence touching the same fellowship

ences, variacions, controuersies  
and iurisdictiones onely moueth,  
occupiers aforesaide, of the good

doe likewise by these presents  
and communalitie, and their suc-  
cessors which shall perpetually  
communalitie. And that they and  
their heirs, for to purchase  
lands, or for terme of yeeres, or other-  
wise, and hereditaments, inhabi-  
tations, fellowshipp and communalitie  
the discouerie of landes, territories,  
the saide last adventure of com-  
mune names, that and may labo-  
ry person or persons, able in the  
not alien the same, or any part  
of their successours, first had and

and by these presents doe graunt  
communalitie of the saide Spane  
all, and may lawfully purchase  
hereditaments whatsoeuer, of the  
fourth pence of lawfull money of  
England hereditaments, as bee holden  
of every person or persons, the Statutes  
of any article or clause in them or  
contrary in any title  
of Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp  
of landes, territories, Isles, de-  
partments, and not before the saide  
Act and may bee able in the lawe,  
defence, and to bee defended be-  
fore persons whatsoeuer, in what  
manner, and in euery of them, and  
quarters, affaires, businesses and  
the saide fellowshipp and commu-  
nalitie in any manner and forme, as any other

and graunted, and by these pre-  
sents, fellowshipp, and com-  
munitie, that the saide Governours,  
in manner, forme, and number  
time hereafter, to make, ordeine,  
the gouernment, good condition,  
the saide Governours, Consuls, as-  
sistants, and to their successours,  
in same, in manner, forme, and num-  
ber, and may haue full power and  
authoritie, to limit, set, ordeine  
and to any of them upon any  
cause touching the same fellow-  
shipp

shipp and communalitie, and also that all acts and ordinaunces by them or their successours to bee  
made, which time shall thinke not necessarie or prejudiciall to the saide fellowshipp of communalitie,  
at all times to reuoke, breake, frustrate, and dilate, repeale and dissolue at their pleasure and liber-  
tie. And further, wee will that if any of the saide fellowshipp and communalitie shall be founde con-  
trarious, rebellious, or disobedient to the saide Governour or Governours, Consuls, and the saide  
assistants for the time being, or to any Statutes, acts or ordinaunces, by them made or to bee made,  
that then the saide Governour or Governours, Consuls, and the saide assistants, in manner, forme,  
and number aboue specified, for the time being, shall and may by vertue of these presents, mulct,  
and punish euery such offender or offenders, as the qualitie of the offence requireth, according to  
their good discretions.

And further, we will that none of the saide offender or offenders, shall decline from the power  
of the saide Governour, or Governours, Consuls and assistants, in manner, forme, and number  
abouesaid for the time being: so alwayes, that the saide acts, Statutes and ordinaunces, doe onely  
touch and concerne the saide Governour or Governours, Consuls, assistants, and the saide fel-  
lowshipp and communalitie of our befoze named Marchants aduenturers, of the men of the same  
fellowshipp and communalitie, and none other; And so alwayes, that such their acts, Statutes and  
ordinaunces, bee not against our prerogatiue, lawes, Statutes, and customes of our Realme and  
Dominions, nor contrary to the feuerall dutie of any our subiects, towardes vs, our heires and  
successours, nor contrary to any compacts, treaties or leagues, by vs or any our progenitours,  
heretofore had or made, or hereafter by vs, our heires and successours to bee made, to or with any  
prince or potentate, nor also to the prejudice of the coppozation of the Mayor, commu-  
nalties and Citizens of our cite of London, nor to the prejudice of any person or persons,  
whoe politique, or coppozate, or incorpozate, iustly pretending, claying, or hauing any li-  
berties, franchises, priuiledges, rightes or preheminences, by vertue or pretext of any  
grant, gift, or letters patents, by vs, or any our progenitours, heretofore giuen, graunted, or  
made.

Moreover, we for vs, our heires, and successours, will, and by these presents, doe graunt vnto  
the saide Governours, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp and communalitie of our Marchants aforesaid,  
that their saide Governour or Governours, Consuls and assistants, and their successours for the time  
being, in manner, forme and number aboue rehearsed, shall haue full power and authoritie to assigne,  
constitute and ordaine one officer, or diuers officers as well within our aforesaid Citie of Lon-  
don, as also in any other place or places of this our Realme of England, or elswhere within  
our dominions, which officer or officers, wee will to be named and called by the name of Ser-  
uant or Seruants to the fellowshipp of communalitie of the saide Marchants, and that the same Ser-  
uant or Seruants, shall and may haue full power and authoritie by these presents, to take, le-  
uie and gather all manner fines, forfeitures, penalties and multes of euery person and persons,  
of the saide fellowshipp and communalitie conuict, and that shall be conuictes, vpon or for breaking  
of any Statutes, acts, ordinaunces, to be made by the saide Governour or Governours, Consuls and  
assistants for the time being.

And further, we will and also graunt for vs, our heires and successours, that the saide offi-  
cer or officers, shall haue further power and authoritie for the default of payment, or for dis-  
obedience in this behalfe (if neede bee) to set bandes, and arrest, as well the body and bodies,  
as the goods and chattels of such offender, and offenders, and transgressors, in euery place and  
places not franchised: and if it shall fortune any such offender or offenders, their goods and  
chattels of any part thereof, to bee in any Citie, borowne, towne incorpozate, or other place  
franchised or priuiledged, where the saide officer or officers, may not lawfully intronic or inter-  
meddle, that then the Mayor, Sheriffes, bayliffes, and other head officers, or ministers, within euery  
such Citie, borowne, towne incorpozate, or place or places franchised, vpon a precept to them, or  
any of them, to be directed from the Governour or Governours, Consuls and assistants of the saide  
fellowshipp, in number and forme aforesaid, vnder the common seale of the saide fellowshipp & commu-  
nalitie for the time being, shall & may attach and arrest the body or bodies of such offender or offen-  
ders, as also take, and seise the goods and chattels of all and euery such offender or offenders, be-  
ing within any such place or places franchised, and the same bodie and bodies, goods and chat-  
tels of all and euery such offender and offenders, being within any such place or places franchised,  
and euery part thereof so attached and seazed, shall according to the tenor and purport of the saide  
precept, returne, and deliuer vnto the saide officer, or officers of the aforesaid fellowshipp, and  
communalitie.

And further, we will & graunt for vs, our heires & successours by these presents, that al, & euery such  
Mayor,

Palot, Shiriffe, bayliffe, or other head officers or ministers, of any citie, bovyne, towne incorporate, or other places franchised, shall not bee impeached, molested, vexed or sued in any our court of courtes, for executing or putting in execution of any of the said precept or precepts.

And furthermore, wee of our ample and abundant grace, merre motion, and certaine knowlledge, for vs, our heires, and successours, as much as in vs is, have given and graunted, and by these presents doe give and graunte, unto the saide Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp, and communitie of Marchants adventurers, and to their successours, and to the Factors, and Factours, assigne and assignes of every of them, full and free aurboytie, libertie, facultie and licence, and power to saile to all portes, regions, dominions, territories, landes, Isles, Islands, and coastes of the sea, whersoever before their late adventurure or enterpryse unknowne, or by our Marchants and subiects by the seas not heretofore commonly frequented, under our banner, standard, flags, and Ensignes, with their shippe, shippes, barkes, pinnettes, and all other vessels of whatsoeuer portage, bulke, quantitie or qualitie they may be, and with any Marchantes, and men as they will leade with them in such shippe or shippes, or other vessels at their owne and proper costes and expences, for to traffique, descric, discover, and finde, whatsoeuer Ile, Islands, countie, regions, poyntes, creekes, armes of the sea, rivers & streames, as wel of Gentile, as of any other Emperour, king, prince, governour or Lord whatsoeuer he or they shalbe, and in whatsoeuer part of the world they be situated, being before the saide late adventurure or enterpryse unknowne, and by our Marchants and subiects not commonly frequented: and to enter and land in the same, without any manner of denying, paine, penalitie or forfeiture to bee had or taken by any our lawes, statutes or Statutes to our vse, or to the vse of our heires or successours for the same.

And we have also graunted, and by these presents, for vs, our heires and successours, doe graunte unto the said Governours, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp and communitie, and to their successours, and to their Factors and assignes, and to every of them, licence for to reare, plant, erect, and fasten our banners, standards, flags, and Ensignes, in whatsoeuer citie, towne, village, castle, Ile, or maine lande, which shalbe by them newly found, without any the penalities, forfeitures, or damages aforesaide, and that the said fellowshipp and communitie, and their successours, Factors and assignes and every of them, shall and may subdue, possesse and occupie, all maner cities, townes, Isles, and maine landes of infidelitie, which is or shall bee by them, or any of them newly founde or descried, as our vassals and subiects, and for to acquire and get the Dominion, title, and jurisdiction of the same Cities, Townes, Castles, villages, Isles, and maine landes, which shall bee by them, or any of them newly discovered or founde unto vs, our heires and successours for ever.

And furthermore, whereas by the voyage of our Subiects in this last yeere attempted by Navigation, towards the discoverie and disclosure of unknowne places, Realmes, Islands, and Dominions by the seas not frequented, it hath pleased Almighty God to cause one of the three shippes by them first set forth for the voyage, and purpose above mentioend, named the Edward Bonaventure, to arrive, abide, and winter within the Empire and dominions of the high and mightie Prince our cousin and brother, Lorde Iohn Basiliiuch Emperour of all Russia, Volodomerskie, great duke of Moscouie, &c. Who, of his clemencie, for our love and zeale, did not onely admitt the Captaine, and Marchants our subiects into his protection, and princely presence, but also received and entertained them very graciously, and honourably, granting unto them by his letters adressed unto vs, franke access into all his Seigniories and Dominions, with licence freely to traffique in and out with all his Subiects in all kinde of Marchandise, with divers other gracious priviledges, liberties and immunities specified in his saide letters under his Signet: Knowe yee therefore that wee of our further royall favour and munificence, of our merre motion, certaine knowlledge, and speciall grace, for vs our heires, and successours, have given and graunted, and by these presents doe give and graunte unto the same Governour, Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp, and communitie above named, and to their successours, as much as in vs is, that all the maine landes, Isles, portes, havens, creekes, and Rivers of the said mightie Emperour of all Russia, and great duke of Mosco, &c. And all, and singular other landes, Dominions, territories, Isles, Portes, havens, creekes, rivers, armes of the Sea of all and other Emperour, king, prince, rulers and governours, whersoever he or they before the saide late adventurure or enterpryse not knowne, or by our foresaide Marchants and subiects by the seas, not commonly frequented, nor by any part nor parcel thereof lying Northwards, North-eastwards, or North-westwards, as is aforesaid by sea shal not be visited, frequented nor halited by any our subiects, other then of the said company & fellowshipp, & their successours without expresse licence, agreement, and consent of the Governour, Consuls, and Assistants of the said fellowshipp

*In Philip and  
Suzanne  
heres by doe  
vassal Pope  
Islanders  
division.*

*Annus 1554.*

*The Spots  
vires print  
edges into  
the English.*

*The largesse  
of the privi-  
leges of the  
Spots vire  
company.*

ritie, boyowe, towne incorpore, beved or sued in any our court or recey of preceptes.

ere motion, and certaine knowe have given and graunted, and by Consuls, assistants, fellowshipp, resources, and to the F actors, and merchantie, libertie, facultie and libertioles, landes, Isles, Islands, enterpryse unknowne, and by frequented, under our banner, ban- sinnelles, and all other benefits of with any Partners, and men- nesses at their owne and privat- actiover Isle, Islands, countrey, as wel of Gentile, as of any othe- yshalbe, and in whatsoever part- enter and land in the same, with- of taken by any our lawes, so- for the same.

heires and successors, doe graunt Communalitie, and to their succes- nre for to reare, plant, erect, and- cite, towne, villlage, castle, Ile, the penalties, forfeitures, or wa- their successors, F actors and al- upie, all maner cities, townes, t, or any of them newly founde- t the Dominion, title, and herit- and maine landes, which shall- us, our heires and successors

n this last] yetre attempted by- n places, Realmes, Islands,- ightie God to cause one of the- ase about mentioned, named the- Empire and dominions of the- asliviuch Emperour of all Rus- ck. mentie, for our love and- subiects into his protection, and- p graciously, and honourably,- accesse into all his Seignioies- all his Subiects in all kinde of- and immunities specified in his- one of our further royall favour- and speciall grace, for vs our- these presents doe give and- pe, and communalitie about na- the landes, Isles, portes, havens, and great duke of Mosco, &c. s, Portes, havens, creekes, &c. lers and governours, whatsoever- by our foresaide Partners- in) parcel thereof lying North- that not be visited, frequented- ship, or their successors without- s, and Assistants of the said Is- toship

ship, and Communalitie about named, or the more part of them, in manner and number aforesaid, for the time being, upon paine of forfeiture, and losse, as well of the Shippe, and Shippes, with the appertinences, as also of all the goods, marchandize, and things whatsoever they be, of those our Subiects, not being of the said fellowshipp, and Communalitie, which shall attempt or presume to sail to any of those places, which be, or hereafter shall happen to be founde, and trafficked into, the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of vs, our heires, and successors, and the other halfe to be to the vse of the said fellowshipp, and Communalitie. And if it shall fortune, any stranger, or strangers, for to attempt to hurt, hinder, or endamage the same Partners, their Factors, Deputies, or Assignes, or any of them, in sailing, going, or returning at any time in the said adventure, or for to sail or trade to or from any those places, lands, or coastes, which by the said Partners, their Factors, Deputies, and Assignes have bene, or shall be desired, discovered, and found, or frequented, as well within the coastes and limits of gentilitie, as within the dominions and Seignioies of the said mighty Emperour and Duke, and of all, and every other Emperour, King, Prince, Ruler, and Governour whatsoever, he, or they be, before the said late adventure, or enterpryse not knownen by any our said Partners, and Subiects, by the least not commonly frequented, and lying Northwards, Northwestwards, or Northeastwards as aforesaid, then we will, and grant, and by these presents doe licence, and authorize for vs, our heires, and successors, the said Partners, their Factors, Deputies, and Assignes, and every of them, to doe their best in their defense, to resist the same their enterpryse, and attempts. Willing therefore, and straightly commanding, and charging, all and singular our Officers, Admirals, Sherifes, Constables, Con- stables, Bailiffs, and all and singular other our Ministers, and Liege men, and Subiects whatsoever, to be aiding, favouring, helping, and assisting unto the said Governour, or Governours, Consuls, Assistants, fellowshipp, and Communalitie, and to their Successors, and Deputies, Factors, Deputies, and Assignes, and to the Deputies, Factors, and Assignes of every of them, in executing and enjoying the premises, as well on land, as in the sea, from time to time, and at all times, when you, or any of you, shall be thereunto required. In witness whereof, &c.

Anno 1555.

Apud Westmonasterium, 6. die Feb. Annis regnorum nostrorum, primo & secundo.

Certaine instructions deliuered in the third voyage, Anno 1556. for Russia, to every Purser, and the rest of the seruants, taken for the voyage, which may serue, as good and necessary directions, to all other like aduenturers.



First you shall before the Shippe doth begin to lade, goe aboard, and that there take, and write one inventory, by the aduise of the Master, or of some other principall officer there aboard, of all the tackle, apparel, cables, anchors, ordnance, chambers, shot, powder, artillery, and of all other necessaries whatsoever doth belong to the said ship; and the same listy taken, you shall write in a booke, making the said Master, or such officer priuite of that which you have so written, so that the same may not be denied, when they shall call accompt thereof: that done, you shall write a copie of the same, with your owne hand, which you shall deliuer before the shippe shall depart, for the voyage to the companies hooker keeper here to be kept to their behalfe, so the tyme that they may be listy answered the same, when time shall require: and this order to be keene and kept every voyage orderly, by the pursers of the companies owne shippe, in any tyme.

2. Also when the Shippe becometh to lade, you shall be ready a boord with your booke, to enter such goods as shall be brought a boord, to be laden for the companie, packed, or unpacked, taking the markes and numbers of every packe, fardell, trulle, or packer, croun, pa, chest, fatte, butt, pipe, pyncheon, whole barrell, halfe barrell, fykin, or other cask, maunde, or basker, or any other thing, which may, or shall be packed by any other manner of waies, or deuise. And first, all such packes, or trulles, &c. as shall be brought aboard to be laden, not marked by the companie's marke, you shall doe the best to let that the same be not laden, and to inquire diligently to knowe the owners thereof, if you can, and what commoditye the same is, that is so brought aboard to be laden: if you can not knowe the owners of such goods, learne what you can thereof, as well making a note in your booke, as also to send or bring word thereof to the Agent, and to some one of the four Partners with him aduoynd, so speedily as you can, if it be here laden, or to be laden in this riuier, being not marked with the companie's marke, as is aforesaid: and when the said shippe hath re- ceaued

ceived in all that the companies Agent will have laden, you shall make a iust copie of that which is laden, writing the parcels, the markes and numbers of every thing plainly, which you shall likewise deliver to the sayd booke keeper to the use aforesaid.

3 Also when the ship is ready to depart, you shall come for your cockets and letters to the Agent, and shall shew him all such letters as you have received of any person or persons privately or openly, to be delivered to any person or persons in Russia or elsewhere, and also to declare if you know to any other that shall passe in the ship either master or mariner that hath received any letters to be privately delivered to any there, directed from any person or persons, other then from the Agent here to the Agent there: which letters so by you received, you shall not carry with you, without you be licensed so to doe by the Agent here, and some of the foure merchants, as is aforesaid; and such others as doe passe, having received any private letters to be delivered, you shall all that in you lieth, let the deliverie of them at your arriving in Russia: and also if you have or doe receive, or shall know any other that doth or hath received any goods or ready money to be imploied in Russia, or to be delivered there to any person or persons from any person or persons, other then such as be the companies goods, and that under their marke, you shall before the shipp doth depart, declare the same truly to the said Agent, and to some of the other merchants to him adioyned, as it is before declared.

4 Also when the ship is ready to depart, and hath the master and the whole company aboard, you shall diligently foresee and take heed, that there passe not any private person or persons, other then such as be authorized to passe in the said ship, without the licence or warrant of one of the Courtiers and of the assistants, for the same his passage, to be first shewed. And if there bee any such person or persons that is to passe and will passe without shewing the same warrant, you shall let the passage of any such to the uttermost of your power: And for that there may no such private person passe under the cloke and colour of some mariner, you shall upon the waiving of your shippes anchor, call the master and the mariners within boord by their names and that by your booke, to the ende that you may see that you have neither more nor lesse, but iust the number for the voyage.

5 Also you must have in remembrance, that if it shall chauce the ship to bee put into any harbour in this coast by contrary winde or otherwise in making the voyage, to send word thence from time to time as the case shall require, by your letters in this manner. To master I. B. Agent for the company of the *Nedro* trades in S. in London: If you doe here any to bring your letters, write that which he must have for the voyage. And for your better knowledge and learning, you shall do very well to keepe a daily note of the voyage both outwards and homewards.

6 And principally see that you forget not daily in all the voyage both morning and evening, to call the company within boord to prayer, in which doing you shall please God, and the voyage will have the better successe thereby, and the company prosper the better.

7 Also in calme weather and at other times when you shall fortune to come to anchor in the seas during the voyage, you shall for the companies profit, and for good husbanding of the biscuits aboard, call upon the Boateswaine and other of the company to use such hooke and other engines as they have aboard to take fish with, that such fish so taken may bee eaten for the use aforesaid: and if there bee no such engines aboard, then to provide some before you goe thence.

8 And when God shall send you in safetie into the Baie of St. Nicholas at an anchor, you shall goe a shoope with the first boate that shall depart from the ship, taking with you such letters as you have to deliver to the Agent there: and if he bee not there at your coming a land, then send the companies letters to Colmogro to him by some sure mariner or otherwise, as the master and you shall thinke best: but goe not your selfe at any hand, nor yet from aboard the ship, unless it bee a shoope to treat with the Agent for the lading of the ship that you be appointed in, which you shall apply diligently to have done so speedily as may bee. And for the discharging of the goods there in the Baie, to bee carried from thence, see that you doe looke well to the unloading thereof, that there bee none other goods sent a shoope then the companies, and according to the notes entered in your booke as aforesaid: if there bee, enquire diligently for whom they bee, and what goods they be, noting who is the receiver of the sayd goods, in such sort that the company may have the true knowledge thereof at your coming home.

make a iust copie of that which is plainly, which you shall likewise

cocks and letters to the person of persons primarily of here, and also to declare if you that hath received any letters from, other then from the Agent doe carry with you, without your consent, as is aforesaid: and such you shall all that in you lieth, have of doe receive, or that know bee imploied in Russia, or to be, other then such as be the companye doeth depart, declare to him adioyned, as it is before

and the whole company aboard, private person or persons, officer of warrant of one of the Court. And if there be any such the same warrant, you shall be that there may no such thing be in the waying of your ships and that by your bookes, to the iust the number for the day

the ship to be put into any the voyage, to send word to the same. To master I. B. Agent any to bring your letters, knowledge and learning, you and homeward.

both morning and evening, to please God, and the voyage in

come to come to anker in the good husbanding of the blow to be such bookes and other may be eaten for the count to be some before you goe from

Nicholas at an anker, you shall bring with you such letters as you concerning a land, then send the herwise, as the master and you aboard the ship, unless it be appointed in, which you shall discharging of the goods that sell to the unloading thereof, according to the notes entered in they be, and what goods the company may have the use

9. Also there a shoare, and likewise aboard, you shall spye, and search as secretly as you may, to learne and knowe what bargaining, buying, and selling there is, with the Master, and the mariners of the shippe, and the Rulles, or with the companies servants there: and that which you shall perceive and learne, you shall keepe a note thereof in your booke, secretly to your selfe, which you shall open, and disclose at your coming home, to the Governours, and the Assistants, in such sort, as the truth of their secret trades, and occupings may be revealed, and known. You shall neede alwaies to haue Argosies, or to spye their secret packing and comaine, as well on land, as aboard the shippe, of and for such furre, and other commodities, as secretly they doe use to buy, packe, and conuey hit her. If you will be vigilant, and secrete in this article, you can not misse to spye their private packing one with another, either on shoare, or aboard the shippe: woike herein wisely, and you shall deserue great thanks of the whole companie.

10. Also at the lading againe of the shippe, you shall continue and abide a boord, to the ende that you may note and write in your booke, all such goods and marchandise, as shall be brought and laden, which you shall orderly note in all sortes as heretofore, as in the second article partly it is toucht: and in any wise, put the Master and the companie in remembrance, to looke and see the substantiallly, to the roomaging of the shippe, by faire meanes or theaues, as you shall see and thinke will serue for the best.

11. Thus when the shippe is fully laden againe, and all things aboard in good order, and that you doe fortune to goe a shoare to the Agent for your letters, and dispatch a way: you shall demand whether all the goods be laden that were brought thither, and to knowe the truth thereof, you shall repaire to the companys storehouse there, at S. Nicholas, to see if there be any goods left, in the said storehouse: if there be, you shall demand why they be not laden, and to note what kind of goods they be, that be so left: and seeing any of the shippes there, not fully laden, you shall put the Agent in remembrance to lade those goods so left, if any such be to be laden, as is aforesaid. And thus you sending you a faire wind, to make speede and way.

12. Finally, when God shall sende you to arrive againe vpon this coast in safetie, either at Harwich, or els where, goe not you a land, if you may possible, to the ende, that when you be gone a shoare, there may no goods be sent privately ashoate to be sold, or els to be sold aboard the shippe, in your absence, but keepe you still aboard, if you can by any means, for the causes aforesaid, and write the companie a letter from the shippe of your good arrivall, which you may conuey to them by land, by some boy or marriner of the shippe, or otherwile as you shall thinke best: and likewise when God shall send you and the shippe, into the river here, doe not in any wise depart out of the shippe that you be in, untill the companie doe send some other aboard the shippe, in your steede and place, to keepe the said shippe in your absence.

The Nauigation and discouerie toward the Riuer of Ob, made by Master Stephen Burrowe, Master of the Pinnesse called the Serchechrist, with diuers things worth the noting, passed in the yeere, 1556.

Departed from Ratliffe to Blackewall, the 23. of April, Saturday being S. Mattheus Markes day, we departed from Blackewall to Grays.

The 27. being Sunday, the right worshipfull Sebastian Cabota, came aboard our Pinnesse at Grauesende, accompanied with diuers Gentlemen, and Gentlewomen, who after that they had viewed our Pinnesse, and tasted of such cheere as we could make them aboard, they went on shoare, giving to our Patrons right liberall rewarde: and the good olde Gentleman, Master Cabota, gave to the poore most liberall almes, wishing them to may for the good fortune, and prosperous success of the Serchechrist, our Pinnesse. And then at the signe of the Christopher, he and his friends banquetted, and made me, and them that were in my companie, great cheere: and for very top that he had to see the towarnes of our intended discouerie, he entred into the haire himselfe, amongst the rest of the young and lustie companie: which being ended, he, and his friends departed most gently, commending vs to the gouernance of Almighty God.

Tuesday we rode still at Grauesende, making prouision for such things as we wanted.

Wednesday in the morning, we departed from Grauesende, the wind being at South-west, and that night we came to an anker thwart of our Ladie of Hollands.

Thursday at thre of the clocke in the morning, we waited, and by right of the clocke, we were at an anker in Orwell wannes, and then incontinent I went aboard the Edward Bonauenture, where

27  
28  
29  
30

where the Worshipfull companie of Marchantes appointed me to be, untill the said good shipp arrived at Warhouse. Then I returned againe into the pinnell.

Note.

Maye.

1 Friday being the first day of May, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, the wind being at South east, and by East, we waied, and went into Orwell haven.

2 Saturday at five of the clocke in the morning, the winde being at South, and by West, we went into the Wlands, but at two of the clocke at afternoone, the wind shifted, and came by at East and by North, and began to blow a good gale: and at foure of the clocke, we waied, and went againe into Harewich.

4 Sunday at three a clocke in the morning, we came againe out of Harewich, the wind being at West Northwest, and by eight of the clocke, we were thwart of Wyfodnesse, and then the winde shifted, and came at South southeast: and at two of the clocke, we were thwart of Sotwale, and there weooke in our sailes, and staid for the pinnell untill foure of the clocke, which pinnell we sent thither the thir day, to fetch certayne men, and necessaries for the Philip and Marie, and then we set off North east, untill five of the clocke: at the same time Yarmouth Steeple was off by West Northwest, eight leagues, and then we set our course North.

5 From that untill Tuesday five a clocke in the morning, North 18. leagues. From that untill a South sunne North, and by West, the latitude being 54. degrees and a halfe, the wind being at this present at South west, and by West.

The variation of the compass.

6 From that untill Wednesday five of the clocke in the morning, North, and by West: and at this present five a clocke the wind shifted, and came at West northwest: we had the latitude this day, in 55. degrees, 14. minutes: the variation of the compass, from North to East almost 13. degrees. From that unto a west sunne, five leagues northeast: and at this present the wind shifted to the northeast.

From that untill Thursday five a clocke in the morning, 5. leagues north west, and by north. From that untill a south sunne, three leagues northwest: we sounded at this present, and had 45. fadome, and small mingled white and blacke sand, and some mathes like Hering bones. We had the latitude this day at noone, in 55. degrees, 23. minutes.

From that untill a west sunne, north, five leagues.

8 From that untill Friday, a southeast sunne, East ten leagues, the wind at north a stiffe gale.

9 From that untill Saturday, a northeast sunne, five leagues south west, and then we call about to the Northward, the wind being at West, and by north.

From that untill a south west sunne, north east, and by north, eight leagues, and then the winde shifted to the northwards.

10 From that untill a west sunne, two leagues East, and by north.

11 From that untill Sunday three of the clocke in the morning, five leagues East, and by north, the wind at north west.

From that untill a west sunne, southeast, and by South, 13. leagues and a halfe.

From that unto a south south west sunne, three leagues south south west, and then the winde shifted, and came at west, and by north.

From that untill a west sunne, north northwest.

12 From that untill Tuesday in the morning, three of the clocke, north northwest, 25. leagues, and then north and by west.

From that unto a south sunne north, and by west, 14. leagues, and then it waied thicke, and the wind came at the north west, and by west.

From that untill a north west sunne, East northeast, and halfe a point to the Northward, four leagues scane.

13 From that untill Wednesday, a south sunne north east, and by East, and then we were in 57. degrees, 57. minutes.

From that unto a North west sunne, East northeast, four leagues.

14 From that untill the 14. day, a south sunne, three leagues and a halfe, East northeast, and then we call about, the wind being at northeast.

15 This Friday we were within 7. leagues of the shoare, on the coast of Norway: the latitude at a south sunne, 58. degrees and a halfe, where we saw three sailes, beside our owne companie: and thus we followed the shoare of land, which lieth north northwest, north, and by west, and by north, and by north, as it doth appeare by the plat.

Shore



to be, untill the said good shippe

opening, the wind being at South

ing at South, and by West, the

of Harewich, the wind being at

18 leagues. From that untill a

North, and by West: and at this

leagues north west, and by north

the wind at north a stiffe gale.

leagues, and then the wind

leagues East, and by north,

outh, 13 leagues and a halfe.

outh north west, 25 leagues, and

and then it waxed thicke, and the

point to the Northwards, four

all, and then we were in 57, do

nes.

halfe, East north east, and then

coast of Norway: the latitude at

beside our owne companie: and

South

Monday at an East sunne, we came to S. Dunstons Island, which I named. It was  
of the East, two leagues and a halfe, the wind being at Southeast: the latitude this day at a South  
sunne, 59. degrees, 42. minutes. Also the high round mountaine bare East of vs, at a South  
sunne: and when this hill is East of you, and being bound to the Northward, the land lieth North,  
and halfe a point Westward, from this said South sunne, unto a North sunne twentie leagues  
Northward west along the shoare.

Upon Sunday at sixe of the clocke in the morning, the farthest land that we could see that lay  
Northward west, was East of vs thye leagues, and then it tended to the Northwards, and to the  
Eastwards of the North, which head land I iudge to be Scowenelle. At seven of the clocke, we  
changed our course, and went North, the winde being at Southsoutheast, and it waxed very thicke  
and mistie, and when it cleared, we went Northnortheast. At a South sunne we lost sight of the  
Serchechrist, because of the miste, making our way North. And when we lost sight of the shoare,  
and pinnelle, we were within two leagues and a halfe of the shoare: the last land that we sawe,  
when this miste came upon vs, which is to the Northwards of Scowenelle, lay Northnortheast,  
and Southsouthwest, and we made our way North, untill a West sunne sixe leagues.

From that untill Monday thye a clocke in the morning, ten leagues, Northnortheast: and then  
we went North, and by East, because the winde came at the West South west with thicke myste:  
the latitude this day, at a South sunne thirtie thye degrees and a halfe truely degrees: at this season  
we had sight of our Pinnelle againe.

From that untill Tuesday a South sunne North northeast, fourtie four leagues, and then  
North east, from a South sunne untill eight of the clocke, fiftene leagues Northeast.

From that untill Wednesday, a South sunne North northeast, except the first watch North  
east: then had we the latitude in thirtie seven degrees, thirtie nine minutes. From that unto a North  
west sunne, eightene leagues Northeast, and then we were within two leagues of the shoare, and  
saw the high land to the Southwardes of Lowfoote breake out through the miste, and then we  
went North and by East.

From the sayd North west sunne untill foure of the clocke in the morning, North, and by East,  
ten leagues and a halfe: and then North northeast untill a South sunne, the latitude being sixe  
nine degrees, and a halfe. From that untill halfe an houre past seven of the clocke, North  
northeast, eleven leagues and a halfe, and then we went Northeast, ten leagues. From that,  
thye leagues and a halfe, East Northeast, and then we sawe the lande through the cloudes and  
haze thwarte on the boarde side of vs, the winde being then at the South south west.

From that untill Saturday, at eight of the clocke in the morning, East Northeast, and to the  
Northwardes fourtie eight leagues, and then the winde came up at North, we being abovee the  
shoare, and thwart of the Chappel, which I suppose is called Kedilwike: then we cast the shippe  
head to the Sea wardes, because the winde was very scant: and then I caused the Pinnelle to  
beare in with the shoare, to see whether she might finde an harborough for the ships or not, and that  
she found and sawe two roaders rive in the sounde: and also she sawe houses. But notwithstanding,  
God be praised, the winde enlarged upon vs, that we had not occasion to goe into the harborough:  
and then the Pinnelle bare her Hyslen mast over boorde with flagge and all, and lost the  
flagge: with the mast there fell two men over boorde, but God be praised, they were saved: the  
flagge was a token, whereby we might understand whether there were a good harbour there or  
not.

At a North sunne the North cape (which I so named the first voyage) was thwart of vs, which  
is nine leagues to the Eastwardes of the foresayd Chappel from the Eastermost point of it.

June.

The Sunday we weyed in Coppus Christi Bay, at a Northeast and by East sunne: the Bay is  
almost halfe a league deepe: the head lande which is Coppus Christi point, lyeth South  
east, and by East, one league from the head of the Baye, where we had a great tyde, like a race  
over the flood: the Bay is at the least two leagues ouer: so doe I imagine from the faire soyle and  
to Coppus Christi point tenne leagues Southeast, and by East: It floweth in this Baye, at a  
South and by West moone full sea. From that we weyed untill seven a clocke at afternoone  
twentie leagues Southeast, and by South: and then we took in all our sayles, because it was  
then verie myste, and also we met with much yce, that came out of the Baye, and then we went  
South Southeast with our foresayle: at eight of the clocke, we heard a piece of ordnance, which  
was out of the Edward, which bade vs farewell, and then we shot off another piece, and bade her  
farewell.

S. Dunstons Island 16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

West to the Chappel.

The North cape so named by Stephen Burrough.

The (Cremery)

farewell: we could not see the other, because of the thicke mist: at a North-west sunne, it began somewhat to cleere, and then we sawe a head land, and the shoare trenched to the South-west ward, which I judged to be about Crose Island: it was of vs at a north north-west sunne, west south-west.

8 From this north north-west sunne, untill Sunday, we went South-east, and this morning we came at anker among the shoales that lie off, of point Looke out, & north-east, and by East sunne, the wind being at East south-east. At this point Looke out, a south Spooone maketh a full sea. Cape good fortune lieth from the Isle of Crose south-east, and betwene them is tenne leagues: point Looke out, lieth from Cape Good fortune, East south-east, and betwene them are six leagues: S. Edmonds point lieth from point Looke out East south-east, and halfe a point to the southwards, and betwene them are six leagues. There is betwene these two points, a Baye that is halfe a league deepe, and is full of shoales, and dangers. At a south-east sunne we wated, and turned to the westwards, the winde being at East south-east: and at a south-east sunne, we came to an anker, being then a full sea, in five fadoms and a halfe water. It lieth at this place where we roade, and also at point Looke out, foure fadome water. At a West north-west sunne we wated, and dyued to the westwards, untill Tuesday, a north north-east sunne, and then being a high water, we came to an anker open of the river Colape, in eight fadome water. Cape S. Bernarde lieth from S. Edmonds point, south-east, and by south, and betwixt them are six leagues, and also betwixt them is the River Colape, into which River we went this evening.

10  
The latitude  
of Colape.

11  
A Ruffe boe  
die.

Tuesday we roade still in the said River, the winde being at north: we sent our skiffe a lande to be dyelled: the latitude of the mouth of the River Cola, is sixtie five degrees, fortye and eight minutes.

Thursday at 6. of the clocke in the morning, there came aboard of vs one of the Ruffe Lobias, rowing with twentie oares, and there were foure and twentic men in her. The Spatter of the boate presented me with a great loafe of bread, and sixe ringes of bread, which they call Colaches, and foure dyed pikses, and a pecke of fine oatermeale, and I gave unto the Spatter of the boate, a combe, and a small glasse: and he declared unto me, that he was bound to Pechora, and after that, I made them to drinke, the tide being somewhat broken, they genely departed. The Spatters name was Pheother.

Whereas the tenth day, I sent our pinnelle on shoare to be mended, because she was leake, and weake, with the Carpenter, and three men more to helpe him, the weather chanced so, that it was Sunday, before they could get aboard our shippe. All that time they were without provision of victuals, but onely a litle bread, which they spent by Thursday at night, thinking to have come aboard when they had liked, but wind and weather denied them: in somuch that they were faine to eate grasse, and such weedes, as they could finde then aboute grounde, but fresh water they had plentie, but the meate with some of them could scant stame by reason of their queasie stomackes.

14

From Thursday at afternoone, untill Sunday in the morning, our barke did ride such a roade sted, that it was to be marvelled, without the helpe of God, howe she was able to abide it.

In the bight of the southeast shoare of the river Cola, there is a good roade in five fadoms, or foure fadome and a halfe, at a lowe water: but you shall haue no lande north North-east of you then. I proued with our pinnelle, that the depth goeth on the southeast shoare.

18

Thursday we wated our ankers in the River Cola, and went into the Sea seven or eight leagues, where we mette with the winde farre northerly, that of force it constrained vs to goe & gaine backe into the saide River, where came aboard of vs sundry of their boates, which declared unto me that they were also bound to the northwards, a fishing for Hoyle, and Salmon, and gave me liberally of their white and wheaten bread.

Lobias having  
24. men a  
peere.

From Colape  
to Pechora is  
but 7. or 8.  
daies sailing.

As we roade in this river, we sawe daily comming downe the river many of their Lobias, and they that had least, had foure and twentic men in them, and at the last they grew to thirtie saile of them: and amongst the rest, there was one of them whose name was Gabriel, who shewed me very much friendship, and he declared unto me, that all they were bound to Pechora, a fishing for Salmon, and Hoyle: in somuch that he shewed mee by demonstrations, that with a faire winde we had seven or eight daies sailing to the River Pechora, so that I was glad of their companie. This Gabriel promised to giue mee warning of shoales, as hee did in deede.

21

Sunday being the one and twentieth day, Gabriel gave me a barrell of meede, and one of his

speciall

speciall friends gave  
Sunday we depa  
for the winde, they  
no often strike their

Tuesday at an  
that from the Cape  
full of shoales and da  
first day we came to  
the said Cape, into  
five night there were  
all. We had twentie

This afternoone  
companie that he kept  
with two of three tri  
company had gotten  
Wednesday being

found it almost drie  
to see our sailes, and  
nere a high water: a  
barre in the entrance

to lead it in, and befo  
ground on the lee sh  
in a very byeach, th  
others also, the win  
beene bywound for th  
our ankers were to  
also sent it vs.

thom long, thinking  
anker came home, a  
other small anker th  
these two ankers we  
and when the barke  
that day with our ma

The Thursday w  
for a North-north-east  
Friday at afternoo  
winde at East south  
as home as we were  
of their small boates,  
much friendship, and  
bene loe. This Sab  
after we had thus con  
fige, and made them  
ther of their skiffes at  
dwelt in Colmogro,  
month. This fore said  
him thanks for the lo  
manner, that if the pre  
brought nothing with  
they leave and went  
hoops, and by the ea  
then the other: but po  
there were 17 Lobias

The next high wa  
company and neig  
to the river Colape.  
And as I underd

well summe, it be  
to the Southwe  
well summe, we

to this morning we  
and by East summe,  
erly a full sea. Cape  
is tenue leagues  
ene them are five  
halfe a point to the  
two points, a Cape  
all summe we way  
urtheast summe, we  
hich at this place  
t north well summe  
lune, and then be  
me water. Cape  
twixt them are five  
oe went this way

at our skiffe a lane  
s, forie and eight

the Russe Lodians,  
The Spatter of the  
ch they call Cola  
the Spatter of the  
id to Pechora, and  
ely departed. The

use she was leake,  
her chanced so, that  
were without prom  
e, thinking to bur  
uch that they were  
ide, but fresh water  
son of their queere

ke did ride surly a  
e was able to abide

e in five fadome, a  
h Northeast of you

Sea seuen or eight  
strained vs to goe  
ace s, which becla  
and Salmou, and

py of their Lodians,  
ey grewe to chine  
Gabriel, who shew  
ound to Pechora, a  
onstrations, that  
ora, so that I was  
ales, as hee did in

erde, and one of his  
Speciall

Speciall friends gaue me a barrell of beere, which was carped vpon mens backs, at least two miles.  
Sunday we departed from the riuer Cola, with all the rest of the said Lodias, but sailing be-  
fore the winde, they were all too good for vs: but according to promise, this Gabriel and his friend  
did often strike their sailes, and carped for vs forsaking their owne company.

22  
The curellie  
of one Gabriel.

Tuesday at an Eastnortheast sunne we were thwart of Cape S. John. It is to be vnderstood,  
that from the Cape S. John vnto the riuer of bay that goeth to Pezen, it is all sinke land, and  
full of shoales and dangers, you shall haue scant two fathom water, and see no land. And this ye-  
sday we came to an anker thwart off a crosse, which is 4 or 5 leagues to the Northwards of  
the said Cape, into which creeke Gabriel and his fellow rowed, but we could not get in: and be-  
fore night there were about 20 saile that went into the said creeke, the winde being at the North-  
west. We had indifferent good layd bang.

23  
of good a nee  
cellary note.

This afternoone Gabriel came aboard with big skiffe, and then I rewarded him for the good  
company that he kept with vs ouer the shoales with two small puoy combs, and a Steele glaife,  
with two of thre crisses more, for which he was not vgratefull. But notwithstanding, his first  
company had gotten further to the Northwards.

Wednesday being Midsummer day, we sent our skiffe a land to sound the creeke, where they  
found it almost drye at a low water. And all the Lodias within were on ground.

24

Although the harborough were euill, yet the stormy similitude of Northerly windes tempted vs  
to set our sailes, and we let slip a cable and an anker, and bare twixt the harborough, for it was then  
nere a high water: and as of wayes in such iournes, barteries do chance, when we came vpon the  
bette in the entrance of the creeke, the winde did thinke so suddenly vpon vs, that we were not able  
to lead it in, and before we could haue flatted the shippe before the winde, we should haue bene on  
ground on the lee shoze, so that we were constrained to let fall an anker vnder our sailes, and rode  
in a very brach, thinking to haue warpe in. Gabriel came out with his skiffe, and so did sundry  
others also, shewing their good will to helpe vs, but all to no purpose, for they were likely to haue  
bene byrned for their labor, in so much that I desired Gabriel to lend me his anker, because our  
owne ankers were too bigge for our skiffe to lay out, who sent me his owne, and boyrowed another  
also and sent it vs. Then we layd out one of those ankers, with a hawser which he had of 140 fa-  
thom long, thinking to haue warpe in, but it would not be: for as we hoped vpon the said warpe the  
anker came home, so that we were faine to beare the end of the warpe, that we rushed in vpon the  
other small anker that Gabriel sent aboard, and layd that anker to seawards: and then betwene  
these two ankers we trauesed the shippes head to seawards, and set our foreside and maine saile,  
and when the barke had way, we cut the hawser, and so gat the sea to our friend, and crept out all  
that day with our maine coyse.

The Thursday we went roome with Cape S. John, where we found indifferent good rode  
for a Northnortheast wind, and for a nee, for a North and by West winde.

25

Friday at afternoone we weped, and departed from thence, the weather being meetly faire, & the  
winde at Eastsoutheast, and plyed for the place where we left our cable and anker, and our hawser:  
as soone as we were at an anker, the foreside Gabriel came aboard of vs, with thre or foure more  
of their small boates, and brought with them of their Aquauit: and meade, professing vnto me very  
much friendship, and reioyced to see vs againe, declaring that they earnestly thought that we had  
bene lost. This Gabriel declared vnto me, that they had saued both the ankers and our hawser, and  
after we had thus commended, I caused 4 or 5 of them to goe into my cabbin, where I gaue them  
figg and made them such cheere as I could. While I was thus banking of them, there came ano-  
ther of their skiffes aboard, with one who was a Kerill, whose name afterwards I learned, & that he  
dwelt in Colmogro, and Gabriel dwelled in the towne of Colay, which is not far from the riuers  
mouth. This foreside Kerill said vnto me that one of the ankers which I boyrowed was his, I gaue  
him thanks for the lone of it, thinking it had bene sufficient. And as I continued in our accustomed  
manner, that if the present which they brought were worthy intertainment, they had it accordingly, he  
brought nothing with him, & therefore I regarded him but little. And thus we ended, and they tooke  
their leaue and went a shoze. At their comming a shoze, Gabriel and Kerill were at vnicouenient  
wayes, and by the eares, as I vnderstand: the cause was because the one had better intertainment  
then the other: but you shall vnderstand that Gabriel was not able to make his party good, because  
there were 17 lodias of Kerills company who tooke his part, and but 2 of Gabriels company.

26

The next high water Gabriel and his company departed from thence, and rowed to their former  
company and neighbors, which were in number 28 of them at the least, and all of them belonging  
to the riuer Colay.

Twenty eight  
lodias belong-  
ing to Cola.

And as I vnderstood Kerill made reckoning that his hawser which was fast in his anker should  
haue

27

haue beene his owne, and at first would not deliuer it to our boat, insomuch that I sent him word that I would complaine vpon him, whereupon he deliuered the halfe to my company.

The next day being Saturday, I sent our boat on shore to fetch fresh water and wood, and at their comming on shore this Kerill welcomed our men most gently, and also banketed them: and in the meane time caused some of his men to fill our baricoes with water, and to helpe our men to beare wood into their boat: and then he put on his best like coate, and his collar of pearles, and came aboard againe, and brought his present with him: and thus hauing more respect vnto his present then to his person, because I perceiued him to be valnegious, I hadde him welcome, and gaue him a dish of figges: and then he declared vnto me that his father was a gentleman, and that he was able to shew me pleasure, and not Gabriel, who was but a priests sonne.

28

After their departure from vs, we weped, and plyed all the ebbe to the winde ward, the winde being Northely, & towards night it waied vnto Noym, so that of force we were constrained to go vnto Cape S. John againe, in which Noyme we lost our skiffe at our sterne, that we bought at Wardhouse, and there we rode vntill the fourth of July. The latitude of Cape S. John is 66 degrees 50 minurs. And it is to be noted, that the land of Cape S. John is of height from the full sea marke, as I iudge 10 fathoms, being cleane without any trees growiug, & also without stones or rocks, and consists onely of blacke earth, which is so rotten, that if any of it fall into the sea, it will swimme as though it were a piere of wood. In which place, about thre leagues from the shore you shall not haue about 9 fadom water, and clay ground.

The latitude of Cape S. John 66 degrees 50 minurs.

Earth swimmeing about water like wood.

## Iulie.

4

Saturday at a Northnorthwest sunne, the winde came at Eastnortheast, & then we weped and plyed to the Northwards, and as we were two leagues short past the Cape, we saw a house standing in a valley, which is doubtly to be seene in those parts, and by and by I saw thre men on the top of the hill. Then I iudged them, as it afterwards prooued, that they were men which came from some other place to set traps to take vermin for their furrer, which trappes we did perceiue very thicke alongst the shore as we went.

5

Sunday at an East sunne we were thwart off the creeke where the Russes lay, and there came to an anker, and perceiuing the most part of the L. odias to be gone, we thought it not good to tye any longer there, but weped, and spent all the ebbe, plying to the windewards.

6

Sunday at a South sunne it was high water. All alongst the coast it floweth little, onely a South moone makes a full sea: and as we were a weying we espied the Russe L. odias, which we first lost. They came out of a creeke amongst the sandy hilles, which hilles begonne 1 1/2 leagues Northnortheast from Cape S. John.

7

Plying this ebbe to an end, we came to an anker 6 leagues Northnortheast from the place where we saw the Russes come out: and there the Russes harboured themselves within a fooneke bank, but there was not water enough for vs.

At a North sunne we weped, and plyed to the Northwards, the land lying Northnortheast, and Southsouthwest, vntill a South sunne, and then we were in the latitude of 68 degrees & a halfe: and in this latitude ende those sandy hilles, and the land beginneth to lie North and by West, South and by East, and Northnorthwest, and to the Westwards, and there the water becometh to wate deepe.

The latitude 68 degrees and a halfe.

At a Northwest sunne, we came to an anker within halfe a league of the shore, where we had good plenty of fish, both haddocks and cobs, riding in 10 fathom water.

8

Tuesday we weped, and plyed nether the head land, which is called Caninoz, the winde being at East and by North.

9

Thursday the winde being skant we turned to windewards the ebbe, to get about Caninoz: the latitude this day at noone was 68 degrees 40 minurs.

10

Friday we turned to the windeward of the ebbe, but to no purpose: and as we rode at an anker, we saw the similitude of a Noyme rising at Northnorthwest, and could not tell where to get rode nee succoy for that winde, and harborough we knew none: and that land which we rode vnder with the winde was a lee shore. And as I was mulling what was best to be done, I saw a saile come out of a creeke vnder the the foresaid Caninoz, which was my friend Gabriel, who forsooke his harborough and company, and came as nere vs as he might, and pointed vs to the Eastwards, and then we weped, and followed him, and went East and by South, the winde being at Westnorthwest, and very misty.

11

Saturday we went Eastsoutheast & followed Gabriel, and he brought vs into an harborough called

in, inasmuch that I sent him to my company, with fresh water and wood, and also banked them: and to help our men to eat, and his collar of pearls, and a hauberk more respect unto his parents, I badde him welcome, and his father was a gentleman, and had a pyriels forme.

to the winde wards, the winde of force we were constrained to goe little at our sterne, that we being in latitude of Cape S. John is 66 S. John is of height from the hills groweing, & also without stones, but if any of it fall into the sea, it is about thre leagues from the

Northeast, & then we weped, and the Cape, we saw a house standing by I saw thre men on the top of were men which came from some place we did perceiue very thicke

the Russes lay, and there came, we thought it not good to trye windewards.

the coast it floweth little, onely a spied the Russe Lobias, which we which hills begonne 15 leagues

Northwest from the place where ourselves within a soone becke,

land lying Northwest, and latitude of 68 degrees & a halfe: west to the North and by West, and there the water becommeth

of the shoare, where we had good

is called Caninos, the winde be

ebbe, to get about Caninos: the

of: and as we rode at an anchor, I did not tell where to get rode nor to which we rode vnder with that done, I saw a saile come out of the, who forsooke his harbor to the Eastwards, and then we being at Westnorthwest, and

hrought vs into an harbor called

called Porogioners, which is 30 leagues from Caninos, and we had upon the barre going in two fa-  
vours and a fourth part: and after we were past in over the barre, it was yet deeper, for we had 5 fa-  
thoms, 4 and a halfe, and 3 fathom, &c. our barke being moored, I sent some of our men to shoare  
to yong wood, where they had plenty of yiste wood, but none growing: and in this place we  
found plenty of yong fowle, as gullies, sea-pies, and others, whereof the Russes would eat none,  
where we were nothing sorry, for there came the more to our part.

Monday our men cut wood on shoare, and brought it aboard, and we ballasted our shippe with  
stones.

This morning Gabriel saw a smoke on the way who rowed into it with his skiff, which smoke  
was two leagues from the place where we rood: and at a Northwest sunne he came aboard againe,  
and brought with him a Samoyd, which was but a yong man: his apparell was then strange in-  
to vs, and he presented me with thre yong wilde geese, and one yong barnacle.

Monday I sent a man to the maine in Gabriels boat, and he brought vs a boord eight barricoes  
of fresh water: the latitude of the said Porogioners is thre eight degrees and a tierce. It floweth  
there at a Southsouthwest moone full sea, and byeth two fadome and a halfe water.

At a Westnorthwest sunne we departed from this place, and went East 25 leagues, and then  
saw an Island North and by West of vs eight leagues, which Island is called Volgoiue: and  
from the Eastermost part of this Island, there lyeth a sand East and by South seven leagues  
long.

Wednesday at a North and by East sunne, Sweetmoze was South of vs 5 leagues,  
This day at afternoone we went in over the dangerous barre of Pechora, and had upon the  
barre but one fathom water.

Thursday we rood still.

Friday I went on shoare, and obserued the variation of the compasse, which was thre de-  
grees and a halfe from the North to the West: the latitude this day was thre nine degrees thre  
minutes.

From two or thre leagues to the Eastward of Smerinos, vntill the entering of the river Pechora,  
it is all sandy hills, and towards Pechora the sandy hills are very low.

It is higher on the barre of Pechora foure foot water, and it floweth there at a Southwest moone  
a full sea.

Sunday at a North and by East sunne, we weped, and came out over the sayd dangerous  
barre, where we had but sixe foot water: inasmuch that we found a foot talle water continuing ouer  
then we did going in. I thinke the reason was, because when we went in, the winde was off the  
sea, which caused the sandes to heape on either side of vs, and we kept in the smooth st betweene  
the heaches, which we durst not haue done, except we had seene the Russes to haue gone in be-  
fore vs: and at our comming out the winde was off the shoare, and saye water, and then the sandes  
did not appeare with heaches as at our going in: we thanke God, that our shippe did ryde so li-  
tle water.

When we were a scaboard the barre, the winde scanted vpon vs, and was at Eastnorthwest, in-  
asmuch that we stopped the ebbes, and plyed all the flouds to the windewards, and made our way  
Eastnorthwest.

Thursday at a Northwest sunne we thought that we had seene land at East, or East & by North  
of vs: which afterwarde prooued to be a monstrous heape of yce.

Within a little more then halfe an houre after we first saw this yce, we were inclosed within  
it before we were aware of it, which was a fearefull sight to see: for, for the space of the houres, it  
was as much as we could do to keepe our shippe aloofe from one heape of yce, and beare roomer  
from another, with as much winde as we might beare a coast. And when we had past from the  
dangere of this yce, we lay to the Eastward close by the winde.

The next day we were againe troubled with the yce.

Thursday being calme, we plyed to the windwards, the winde being Northethly. We had the  
latitude this day at noone in 70 degrees 11 minutes.

We had not come past two houres Northwest, the winde being at Northnorthwest and North-  
east and by North a good gale, but we met againe with another heape of yce: we breathered the head  
of it, and lay a time to the leeward, and made way West 6 leagues.

Friday at a Southeast sunne, we cast about to the Eastward, the winde being at Northnorth-  
west: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 15 minutes.

On S. James his day bolting to the windwards, we had the latitude at noone in thre de-  
grees thre minutes. The same day at a Southwest sunne, there was a monstrous Whale  
aboard

Porogioners  
all barboi.

Wist wood.

Samoyd.

Volgoiue an  
Island.

This sand bet  
weene to be it  
whereupon  
Charles Jack-  
man verried  
Pechora.

15

16

17

The variation  
of the compas.

20

21

22

23

The latitude  
70 degrees  
11 minutes.

24

25

aboard of vs, so nere to our side that we might haue thrust a sword or any other weapon in him, which we durst not doe for feare he should haue outspowen our shippe: and then I called my company together, and all of vs bowed, and with the cry that we made he departed from vs: there was as much a bowe water of his backe as the breadth of our pinnelle, and at his falling downe, he made such a terrible noise in the water, that a man would greatly haue marvelled, except he had knowen the cause of it: but, God be thanked, we were quietly deliuered of him. And a little after we spied certaine Islands, with which we bare, and found good harbor in 15 or 18 fathom, and blacke oze: we came to an anker at a Nozthead sunne, & named the Island *S. James his Island*, where we found fresh water.

*S. James  
Island.*

26

Sunday much winde blowing, we rode still.

27

*The variation  
of the compas  
7 degrees and  
a half.*

Sunday I went on shoare, and tooke the latitude, which was 70 degrees 42 minutes: the variation of the compasse, was 7 degrees and a half from the North to the West.

28

*The relation  
of Ioshake.  
The way to  
the river of  
Obbe.  
It mighte kill  
in Noua Zembla.*

Tuesday we plyed to the Westwards alongst the shoare, the winde being at Northwest, and as I was about to come to anker, we saw a saile coming about the point, whereunder we thought to haue ankered. Then I sent a skiffe aboard of him, and at their coming aboard, they took acquaintance of them, and the chiefe man said he had bene in our company in the river Colay, and also declared vnto them, that we were past the way which should bring vs to the Ob. This man, said he, is called Noua Zembla, that is to say, the New land: and then he came aboard him self with his skiffe, and at his coming aboard he tolde me the like, and said further, that in this Noua Zembla is the highest mountaine in the world, as he thought, and that Canien Bolshay, which is on the maine of Pechora, is not to be compared to this mountaine, but I saw it not: he made me also certaine demonstrations of the way to the Ob, and seemed to make haste on his owne way, being very lothe to tary, because the yeere was farre past, and his neighbour had set Pechora, and not he: so I gaue him a steele glass, two pewter spoones, and a paire of beluer shepeth knives: and then he seemed somewhat the more willing to tary, and shewed me as much as he knewe of our purpose: he also gaue me 17 white geese, and shewed me that foure of their lodias were taken vpon perforce from Caninox to this Noua Zembla. This mans name was Ioshake.

*Ioshake.*

29

Wednesday, as we plyed to the Eastwards, we espied another saile, which was one of the Ioshaks company, and we bare roome, and spake with him, who in like sort tolde vs of the Ob, as the other had done.

30

31

*The Islands  
of Aigats.*

Thursday, we plyed to the Eastwards, the winde being at Eastnortheast.

Friday, the gale of winde began to increase, and came Westlerly withall, so that by a North west sunne we were at an anker among the Islands of Aigats, where we saw two small boats, the one of them came aboard of vs, and presented me with a great loafe of beead: and they tolde me that they were all of Colmagro, except one man that dwelt at Pechora, who seemed to be the chiefest among them in killing of the moose.

There were some of their company on shoare, which did chase a white beare ouer the high dills into the water, which beare, the lodia that was aboard of vs, killed in our sight.

This day there was a great gale of winde at North, and we saw so much yce flying a sea aboard, that it was then no going to sea.

## August.

1

*Samoyds.*

Saturday I went a shoare, and there I saw three moyses, that they had killed: they held one each of a moyse, which was not great, at a roble, and one white beare skinn at three robes, and two robes: they further tolde me, that there were people called Samoyds on the great Island, and that they would not abide them nor vs, who haue no houses, but only coverings made of beere skimes, set ouer them with stakes: they are men expert in shooting, and haue great plenty of beere.

This night there fell a cruell storme, the winde being at West.

2

Sunday we had very much winde, with plenty of snow, and we rode with two ankers a head.

3

*The manners  
of the Sa-  
moyds.*

Sunday we weped and went roome with another Island, which was due leagues Eastnortheast from vs: and there I met againe with Ioshake, and went on shoare with him, and he brought me to a heape of the Samoyds Idols, which were in number about 300, the worst, and the most ridiculous worke that euer I saw: the eyes and mouthes of sundry of them were blouty, they had the shape of men, women, and children, very grossly wrought, & that which they had made in other parts, was also sprinkled with blood. Some of their Idols were an olde sticke with two or three notches, made with a knife, in it. I saw much of the footing of the said Samoyds, and of the sleds that they ride in. There was one of their sleds broken, and lay by the heape of Idols, and there I saw a beere skinn which the fowles had spoiled: and before certaine of their Idols blocks were made

as high as their mouths, being all bloudy, I thought that to be the table wher on they offered their sacrifice: I saw also the instruments, wherupon they had roasted flesh, and as farre as I could perceive they make their fire directly vnder the spit.

as high as their mouths, being all bloudy, I thought that to be the table wher on they offered their sacrifice: I saw also the instruments, wherupon they had roasted flesh, and as farre as I could perceive they make their fire directly vnder the spit.

Lozhake being there present, tolde me that these Samoyds were not so hurtfull as they of Ob are, and that they haue no houses, as in deed I saw none, but onely tents made of deere skimes, which they vnderpoype with stakes and poles: they boats are made of deere skimes, and when they come on shoare they carry their boates with them vpon their backs: for theye carriages they haue no other beastes to serue them, but deere onely. As for bread and come they haue none, excepte the Russes bring it to them: their knowledge is very base, for they know no letter.

The Samoyds of the Ob, very hurtfull and shrewd people.

as 70 degrees 42 minutes: the bath to the West.

Tuesday we turned for the harborough where Lozhaks barke lay, wheretas before we rood vnder an Island. And there he came aboard of vs, and said vnto me: if God send winde and weather to send, I will goe to the Ob with you, because the moyses were skant at these Islands of Vaigats: but if he could not get to the river of Ob, then he said he would goe to the river of Pamezap, where the people were not altogether so sauage as the Samoyds of the Ob are: he desired me that they will shooe at all men to the vttermost of their power, that can not speake theye speech.

4

winde being at Northwest, and as the point, wheremunder we thought their comming aboard, they tooke to company in the riuer Colay, and bying vs to the Ob. This land, and then he came aboard him selfe, and said further, that in this No- uember, and that Camien Bolkhay, which is a pair of velvet sberbed kumies: he tolde me as much as he knew, that foure of their lodias were by his name was Lozhake.

Wednesday we saw a terrible heape of yee appoach neere vnto vs, and therefore we thought good with all speed possible to depart from thence, and so I returned to the Westwards againe, to the Island where we were the 31 of July.

5

Thursday I went a shoare, and tooke the latitude, which was 70 degrees 35 minutes: and the variation of the compasse was 8 degrees from the North to the West.

6

her saile, which was one of the Lo like foxe tolde vs of the Ob, as

Lozhake and the two small Lodias of Pechora departed from this Island, while I was on shoare taking the latitude, and went to the Southwards: I marvelled why he departed so suddenly, and went over the shoales amongst the Islands where it was impossible for vs to follow them. But after I perceiued them to be weather wise.

The latitude. The variation of the compasse.

Calmothraff. afterly withall, so that by a North

Friday we rood still, the winde being at Northwesterly, with a cruell storme. The yee came in so abundantly about vs at both ends of the Island that we rood vnder, that it was a fearefull sight to beholde: the storme continued with snow, raine, and haile plenty.

7

to a white beare ouer the high hills

Saturday we rood still also, the storme being somewhat abated, but it was altogether misty, that we were not able to see a cables length about vs, the winde being at North-east and by East.

8

to so much yce bying a leaboard,

Sunday at foure of the clocke in the morning we departed from this Island, the winde being at South-east and as we were cleere a sea boord the small Islands and shoales, it came so thicke with mistes, that we could not see a base shotte from vs. Then we tooke in all our sailes to make little way.

9

they had killed they held one tooth skime at thre tobles and two

At a South-east sunne it wared cleere, and then we set our sayles, and lay close by the winde to the Southwards alongst the Islands of Vaigats. At a West sunne we tooke in our sayle againe because of the great mist and raine. We sounded at this place, and had fise and twenty fathoms water, and soft blacke oze, being thre leagues from the shoare, the winde being at South and by East, but still misty.

10

we rode with two ankers a head,

Sunday at an East sunne we sounded, and had 40 fathoms, and oze, still misty: at noone we sounded againe, and had 56 fathom, still misty.

11

which was thre leagues Calmoth

Tuesday at an Calmoth-east sunne, we let fall our anker, in thre and twenty fadome, the mist still continuing.

12

he said Samoyds, and of the heape of idols, and there I saw

Wednesday at thre of the clocke in the morning the mist brake vp, the winde being at North-east by East, and then we saw part of the Islands of Vaigats, which we bare withall, and went Calmoth-east close by the winde: at a West sunne we were at an anker vnder the South-west part of the said Vaigats, and then I sent our skiffe to shoare with thre men in her, to see if they might speake with any of the Samoyds, but could not: all that day was raine, but noe windie.

13

of their idols blocks were made

Thursday the winde came Westerly, so that we were faine to seeke vs another place to ride in, because the winde came a leaboard land, and although it were misty, yet we followed the shoare by our lead: and as we brought land in the winde of vs, we let fall our anker. At a West sunne the mist brake vp, so that we might see about vs, and then we might perceiue that we were entred into a sound.

14

This afternoone weooke in two or thre skiffes lading of stones to ballast our skiffe withall. It bred here foure foot water, and floweth by fits, vncertaine to be iudged.

The vncertaine of ebbing & flowing.

Friday we rood still in the sound, the winde at South-west, with very much raine, and at the end of the raine it wared againe misty.

- 15 Saturday there was much winde at West, and much raine, and then againe mist.
- 16 Sunday was very misty, and much winde.
- 17 Monday very misty, the winde at Westnorthwest.
- 18 Tuesday was also misty, except at noone: then the sunne brake out through the mist, so that we had the latitude in 70 degrees 10 minutes: the afternoone was misty againe, the winde being at Westnorthwest.
- 19 Wednesday at three of the clocke afternoone the mist brake up, and the winde came at Eastnorth east, and then we weped, and went South & by East, untill seven of the clocke, eight leagues, thinking to haue had sight of the sandy hills that are to the Eastwardes of the river Berchoja. At a Northwest sonne we tooke in our maine saile, because the winde increased, and went with fore saile Westnorthwest, the winde being at Eastnorth east: at night there grew so terrible a storme, that we sa to noc the like, although we had inured many stormes since we came out of England. It was wonderfull that our barke was able to brooke such monstrous and terrible seas, without the great helpe of God, who neuer faileth them at need, that put their trust in him.
- 20 Thursday at a Southsouthwest sunne, thanks be to God, the storme was at the highest, & then the winde began to slake, and came Northerly withall, and then I reckoned the Westermost point of the river Berchoja to be South of vs 15 leagues. At a Westsouthwest sunne we set our maine saile, and lay close by the winde, the winde being at Northwest and by North, making but little way, because the billow went so high: at midnichte we cast about, and the shippe caped North northeast, making little way.
- 21 Friday at noone we had the latitude in 70 degrees 8 minutes, and we sounded, and had 29 fathoms sand, and in maner streiny ground. At a West sunne we cast about to the Westwardes, and a little after the winde came by at West.
- 23 Saturday was calme: the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees and a tierce, we sounded here, and had nine and forty fathoms and oze, which oze signified that we were to wards Noua Zembla.
- They were within 15 leagues of Berchoja.
- They returned the 22 of August.
- And thus we being out of all hope to discover any more to the Easterward this yere, we thought it best to returne, and that for three causes.
- The first, the continuall North east and Northerly windes, which haue more power after a man is past to the Eastwardes of Caninoz, then in any place that I doe know in these Northerly regions.
- Second, because of the great & terrible abundance of yce, which we saw to with our eyes, and we doubt greater store abideth in those parts: I aduentured already somewhat too farre in it, but I thanke God for my safe deliuerance from it.
- Third, because the nightes waxed darke, and the winter began to draw on with his stormes: and therefore I resolved to take the first best winde that God should send, & plie to wards the bay of St. Nicholas, and to see if we might do any good there, if God would permit it.
- This present Saturday we saw very much yce, and were within two or three leagues of it: it lay vnder vs as though it had borne a firme land as farre as we might see from Northwest of vs to the Eastwardes: and this afternoone the Lord sent vs a little gale of winde at South, so that we bare cleere off the Westermost part of it, thanks be to God. And then againe at night it waxed calme againe, and the winde was at Southwest: we made our way untill Sunday noone North west and by West, and then we had the latitude in 70 degrees and a halfe, the winde at South west: there was a billow, so that we could not discern to take the latitude exactly, but by a reasonable guess.
- 24 Sunday there was a prety gale of winde at South, so that we went West and by South, the latitude this day at noone was 70 degrees 10 minutes: we had little winde all day: at a Westnorthwest sunne we sounded, and had 29 fathoms, blacke sandy oze, & then we were North east 5 leagues from the North east part of the Island Colgoiue.
- 25 Tuesday, the winde all Westerly, we plied to the winde wards.
- 26 Wednesday, the winde was also Westerly, and calme: we had the latitude this day in 70 degrees 10 minutes, we being within 3 leagues of the North part of the Island Colgoiue.
- 27 Thursday, we went roome about the Westermost part of the Island, seeking where we might finde a place to ride in for a North west winde, but could finde none, and then we cast about againe to the seawards, and the winde came at Westsouth west, and this morning we had plenty of snow.
- 28 Friday, the winde being at South west and by West, we plied to the winde wards.
- 29 Saturday, the winde being at South, we plied to the Westwardes, and at afternoone the mist brake up, and then we might see the land seven or eight leagues to the Eastwardes of Caninoz:

we found  
had 19 f  
might be  
to the W  
about to  
we cast a  
ding.  
about  
will have  
plentie, s  
to a way  
A little  
were later  
South

T  
han  
The  
the next  
our imple  
accepting

A d



duke of  
kie, Reza  
Condins  
ensuing  
so, his r  
step of V  
king and  
Austria,  
ambassa  
give men  
and friend  
commo  
barber an  
to the Co  
Pilot, an  
said Arth  
ode, tall  
Ruffies a  
ped with  
called the  
sterling,  
(had) part



in againe mist.

through the mist, so that we  
againe, the winde being at

the winde came at Eastnorpe  
the clocke, eight leagues, thro  
of the river Iperhaya. At a  
aled, and went with foze late  
re to so terrible a storme, that  
we came out of England. It  
and terrible seas, without  
e crust in him.

me was at the highest, & then  
skoned the Westmost point  
Southwest sunne we set our  
it and by South, making but  
e, and the shippe caped South

and we founde, and had 29  
all about to the Westwards,

rees and a tierce, we founde  
that we were towards Noua

erward this yere, we thought

our moze power after a man  
know in these Northwyre

we sawe with our eyes, and we  
met what too farre in it, but

aw on with his storme; and  
e plie towards the bay of S.

two or three leagues of it it  
nightlee from Southwest  
le of winde at South, so that  
then against night it was  
ntill Sunday noone North  
halfe, the winde at South  
titude exactly, but by a read

went West and by South,  
ad little winde all day: at 1  
p 27, & then we were North

the latitude this day in 70  
Island Colgoiue.

and, seeking where we might  
then we call about againe to  
we had plenty of inore.

the winde wards,  
ds, and at afternoone the mist  
the Eastwards of Caninoz;

we founde a little before and had 35. fadomes and 072. And a while after we founde againe, and had 19. fadome and sand: then wee were within 3. leagues and a halfe of the shoze, and towards night there came downe so much wind, that we were faine to bring our ship a trie, and laid her head to the Westwards.

Sunday, the winde became moze calme, and then it wazed very mistie: At noone wee call about to the Eastwards, the wind being at South, and ranne eight howers on that boord, and then we call about and caped West south west: we founde and had 32. fathom.s, and tought oaze like clay.

Sunday we doubled about Caninoz, and came at an anker there, to the intent that wee might kill some fish if God would permit it, and there we gate a great Masse, which Masses were there so plenty, that they would scarce ly suffer any ocher fish to come neere the hookes: the said Masses cari- on a way sundry of our hookes and leads.

A little after at a West Sunne, the winde began to blow stormie at West south west, so that we were faine to trie and forsake our fishing ground, and went close by the wind South west and South west and by West, making our way South south west,

September.

Tuesday at a West Sunne, we founde and had 20. fathoms, and broken Wilkethels: A re- coned Caninoze to be 24. leagues North north east from vs.

The eleuenth day we arrived at Colnogro, and there wee wintered, expecting the approach of the next Summer to proceed farther in our intended Discouerie for the Ob: which (by reason of our imployments to Warhouse the next Spring for the search of some English ships) was not accordingly performed.

A discourse of the honourable receiuing into England of the

first Ambassador from the Emperour of Russia, in the yeere of Christ, 1556.

and in the third yeere of the raigene of Queene Mary, setting

for the third voiage to Moscovie. Registered by M.

John Inceut Protonotarie.



is here recorder by writing and autenticall testimonie, partly for memoie of things done, and partly for the veritie to be knowne to posteritie in time to come, that whereas the most high and mightie Euan Vasiluich Emperour of all Russia, great duke of Volodimer, Moscovie, and Nouogrode, Emperour of Cassan, and of Astrachan, lord of Piskie, and great duke of Simolenskie, Tuerskie, Yowgoriskie, Permiskie, Viatskie, Boligarskie, and Siberiskie, Emperour and great duke of many others, as Nouogrode in the nether countries, Charnogoskie, Rzanskie, Volodfkie, Rezewskie, Bielskie, Roltoskie, Yeraslaueskie, Bialazarskie, Woodarskie, Opdorskie, Condinskie, and many other countries, and lord ouer all those partes, in the yeere of our Lord God, ending the account of the Latin church, 1556. sent by the sea from the port of S. Nicholas in Russia, his right honorable ambassado; surnamed Osep Napea, his high officer in the towne and countrey of Vologda, to the most famous and excellent princes, Philip and Mary by the grace of God, king and Queene of England, Spaine, France and Ireland, defenders of the faith, Archdukes of Austria, dukes of Burgundie, Millaine & Brabant, counties of Hapsurge, Flanders and Tyroll, his ambassado; and Orato; with certaine letters tenderly conueied, together with certain presents and gifts mentioned in the foote of this memorial, as a manifest argument and token of a mutual amitie and friendship to be made and continued betwene their maiesties and subiects respectiue, for the commoditie and benefit of both the realmes and people: which Orato; was the 20. day of Iuly, imbarked and shipped, in, and vpon a good English ship named the Edward Bonauenture, belonging to the Governour, Consul and company of English merchants, Richard Chancellor being grand Pilot, and John Buckland master of the said ship. In which was laden at the aduenture of the foresaid Ambassado; and merchants at severall accounts, goods and merchandizes, viz. in wape, rane oile, salt, fures, felts, yarne and such like, to the summe of 2000. li. sterling, together with 16. Russes attendane vpon the person of the said Ambassado;. Ouer and aboue ten ocher Russia ship; four ship; per within the said Baie of S. Nicholas, in one ocher good ship to the said company also belonging called the Bona Speranza, with goods of the said Orato; and merchants to the value of 6000. li. sterling, as by the listes and letters of lading of the said severall ships (whereunto relation is to be had) particularly appeareth. Which good ships comming in good order into the seas, & traueiling the

30

31

1

11

four ship;

the same in their journey towards the coast of England, were by contrary windes and extreme tempests of weather severed the one from the other, that is to say, the said Bona Speranza with two other English ships also appertaining to the said company, the one surnamed the Philip and Mary, the other the Confidentia, were driven on the coast of Norway into Dnenton waer, where the sayd Confidentia was seene to perish on a Roche, and the other, videlicet, the Bona Speranza, with her whole company, being to the number of foure and twentie persons seemes to winter there, whereof no certaintie at this present day is knowne. The third, videlicet, the Philip and Mary, arrived in the Thames nigh London the eighteenth day of April, in the yeere of our Lord one thousand five hundred fiftie and seuen. The Edward Bonauenture traucting the Seas foure moneths, finally the tenth day of November of the aforesayd yeere of our Lorde, one thousand five hundred fiftie and sixe, arrived within the Scottish coast in a Baie named Perislego, where by outrageous tempests and extreme bozmes, the sayd ship being beaten from her ground tackle, was driven vpon the Rocks on Hoze, where the make and split in pieces, in such sort, as the grand Pilot vntill all carefullnesse for the safetie of the bodie of the sayde Ambassadour and his trayne, taking the boate of the sayd ship, trussing to attaine the Hoze, and so to saue and preserue the bodie, and seuen of the companie or attendaunts of the sayde Ambassadour, the same boate by rigorous waues of the Seas, was by darke night ouerwhelmed and drowned, wherein perished not onely the bodie of the said grand Pilot, with seuen Russies, but also diuers of the Partners of the sayd ship: the noble personage of the sayde Ambassadour with a few others (by Gods preservation and speciall fauour) onely with much difficultie saued. In which Shipwreake not onely the sayde ship was broken, but also the whole masse and bodie of the goods laden in her, was by the rude and rauensous people of the countrey therewith aduoyning, rifled, spoyled, and caried away, to the manifest losse and bitter destruction of all the lading of the sayd ship, and together with the ship, apparell, ordinaunce and furniture belonging to the company, in value of one thousand pounds, of all which was not restoyed towards the costes and charges to the summe of 500.li. sterling.

The Edward Bonauenture arrived in Scotland, in the Baie of Perislego, November 7. 1556.

Kich. Chancers letter diuocion.

As soone as by letters adressed to the sayd companie, and in London deliuered the six of December last past, it was to them certainly knowen of the losse of their Pilot, men, goods and ship, the same merchants with all celeritie and expedition, obtained not onely the Queenes most gracious and favourable letters to the Ladie Dowager, and lordes of the counsell of Scotland for the gentle comfortment and entertainment of the sayde Ambassadour, his traine and companie, with preservation and restitution of his goods, as in such miserable cases, to Christian pittie, princely honour and merre Justice appertaineth, but also adressed two Gentlemen of good learning, grauitie, and estimation, videlicet, Maister Lawrence Hulle doctor of the Ciuile lawe, and George Gilpin with money, and other requisites into the Realme of Scotland, to comforte, ayde, assist, and relieue him and his there, and also to conduct the Ambassadour into England, sending with them by poste a Calmach or Speechman for the better furniture of the seruice of the sayde Ambassadour, trusting thereby to haue the moze ample and speedie redresse of restitution: which personages vsing diligence, arrived at Edenborough (where the Queenes court was) the three and twentieth day of the sayde moneth of December, who first visiting the sayd Ambassadour, declaring the causes of their comming and Commission, shewing the letters adressed in his fauour, the order giuen them for his solace and furniture of all such things as hee would haue, together with their daily and readie seruice to attend vpon his person and affaires, repaired consequently vnto the Dowager Queene, deliuering the letters.

Wherupon, they receiued gentle answers, with hope and comfort of speedie restitution of the goods, apparell, iewels and letters: for the moze apparance whereof, the Queene sent first certaine Commissioners with a Parole of Armes to Perislego, the place of the Shipwreake, commanding by Proclamation and other Edictes, all such persons (no degree excepted) as had any part of such goods as were spoyled and taken out of from the Ship, to bring them in, and to redresse the same with such further order as her grace by aduise of her counsell thought expedient: by reason whereof, not without great laboures, paynes and charges (after long time) diuers small parcels of Cloath, and other small trifling things of no value, were by the poorer sort of the Scottes brought to the Commissioners, but the Jewels, rich apparell, presents, gold, silver, costly furrer, and such like, were conueied away, concealed and verily embeylled. Wherupon, the Queene at the request of the sayd Ambassadour, caused diuers persons to the number of 180. or moe, to be called personally before her princely presence, to answer to the said spoile, & really to exhibite and bring in all such things as were spoiled and violently taken, & caried out of the same,

to be cut

countary wines and extreme  
the said Bona Speranza with  
one surnamed the Philip and  
to way into Denton water,  
the other, videlicet, the Bona  
and thence persons surnamed  
The third, videlicet, the Phi-  
lip of Appill, in the peere of our  
aduenture trauersing the Seas  
yeere of our Loide, one thow  
in a Bate named Petislego,  
being beaten from her ground  
and split in pieces, in such sort,  
of the sayde Ambassadors and  
the Hoze, and so to save and pre-  
serve Ambassadors, the same boate  
and drowned, wherewith perished  
it also diuers of the Spaniards  
with a few others (by Gods pro-  
uidence). In which Shipwreke was  
the goods laden in her,  
adriouping, rissed, spoiled, and  
going to the company, in value of  
Shes and charges to the summe

London deliuered the six of De-  
their Pilote, men, goods and  
ned not onely the Queenes ma-  
yeter, and lordes of the counsell  
sayde Ambassadors, his traine  
as in such miserable cases, to  
be, but also addressed two Gen-  
tlemen Lawrence Hulle being  
requisited into the Realme of  
and also to conduct the Am-  
bassador Syeachimau for the  
hereby to haue the more ample  
ence, arrived at Edenborough  
the sayde moneth of December,  
their comming and Commis-  
sioners for his solace and furni-  
shing and readie seruaice to attend  
wager Queene, deliuering the

omfort of speedie restitution of  
whereof, the Queene sent first  
the place of the Shipwreke,  
suits (no degree excepted) as  
the Ship, so bying them in, and  
of her counsell thought expedient  
charges (after long time) in  
value, were by the poorer sort  
of apparell, pelfens, gold, &c.  
veterly embeylled. Where-  
of persons to the number of  
inflow to the said spoile, & really  
taken, & carried out of the same,  
wherof

whereof not onely good testimoine by writing was shewed, but also the things themselves found  
in the hands of the Scottish subjects, who by subtilty and craftie dealings, by conniuece of the  
commissioners, so used (or rather abused) themselves towards the same Doctor and his attendants,  
that no effectual restitution was made: but he fatigated with daily attendaunce and charges, the  
14. day of February next ensuing, distrusting any real and effectual remedy of the sayd goods  
and merchandises and other the premises, upon leaue obtained of the sayd Queene, departed to-  
wards England, having attending upon him the said two English gentlemen and others (lea-  
ving nevertheless in Scotland thre Englishmen to pursue the deliuerie of such things as  
were collected to haue bene sent by ship to him into England: which being in Appill next, and not  
before imbarked for London, was not at this present day here arrived) came the 18. day of Fe-  
bruary to Bartrike, within the domination and Realme of England, where he was by the Queenes  
maistries letters and commaundement, honourably receiued, used and entertained by the right ho-  
nourable lord Wharren, lord Marden of the East marches, with goodly conducting from place  
to place, as the daily iourneys done ordinarily did lie, in such order, maner and forme, as to a per-  
son of such estate appertained: he prosecuting his voiage until the 27. of February, approached  
the cite of London with thirtie twelve English miles, where hee was receiued with fourescore mer-  
chant with chains of gold and goodly apparell, as well in order of men seruants in one uniforme  
haire, as also in, and upon good horses and geldings, who conducted him to a merchants house  
four miles from London, receiued there a quantite of golde, velvet and silke, with all furniture  
thereto requisite, wherewith he made him a riding garment, repoling himselfe that night. The  
next day being Saturday and the last day of February, he was by the merchants aduenturing for  
Russia, to the number of one hundred and thirtie persons, and so many of more seruants in one li-  
nec as aboute said, conducted towards the Cite of London, where by the way hee had not onely  
the hunting of the Foxe and such like sports shewed him, but also by the Queenes maistries com-  
maundement was receiued and embraced by the right honourable Viscount Montague, sent by  
her grace for his entertainment: hee being accompanied with diuers lustie knights, squiers, gen-  
tlemen and yeomen to the number of thre hundred horses, led him to the North partes of the Ci-  
tie of London, where by foure notable merchants richly apparellled, was presented to him a right  
fair and large gelding richly trapp'd together with a footstool of Dyent crimosin velvet, em-  
broidred with gold laces, all furnished in most glorious fashion, of the present, and gift of the sayde  
merchants: wherupon, the Ambassadors at instant desire, mounted, riding on the way to-  
wards Smithfield barres, the first Wardens of the liberties of the Cite of London. The lord  
Montague accompanied with all the Aldermen in their scarlet did receive him; and so riding through  
the Cite of London in the middle betwene the sayd lord Mayor and Viscount Montague, a great  
number of merchants and notable personages riding before, and a large troupe of seruants and  
appoynted following, was conducted through the Cite of London (with great admiration and  
plaudible of the people running plentifully on all sides, and replenishing all streets in such sort  
as no man without difficultie might passe) into his lodging situate in S. and church streets, where  
was provided for him two chambers richly hang'd and decked, ouer and aboue the gallant furni-  
ture of the whole house, together with an ample and rich ruyboord of plate of all sortes, to furnish  
and serue him at all meales, and other seruices during his abode in London, which was, as is in-  
terpreted, until the thirde day of May: during which time, daily, diuers Aldermen and the great-  
est personages of the sayd company, did visite him, providing all kind of victuals for his table  
and his seruants, with all forces of Officers to attend upon him in good sort and condition, as to such  
an Ambassadors of honour doth, and ought to appertaine.

It is also to be remembered that at his first entrance into his chamber, there was presented unto  
him on the Queenes maistries behalfe, for a gift and present, and his better furniture in apparell,  
one rich piece of cloath of silke, a piece of cloath of golde, another piece of cloath of gold rassist with  
crimosin velvet, a piece of crimosin velvet in g. sine, a piece of purple velvet, a piece of Damaske  
velvet, a piece of crimosin damaske, which he most thankfully accepted. In this beautifull so-  
gling refreshing and preparing himselfe and his traine with things requisite, hee abode expecting  
the king's messengers repaire out of Flaunders into England, whose highness attending the one and  
twenty of March, the same Ambassadors the six and twentieth of March, being the Annunciat-  
ion our Ladye (the day thirtie moneth hee took his leaue from the Emperour his master) was  
most honourably brought to the King and Queenes maistries court at Westminster, where ac-  
companied first with the sayd Viscount and other notable personages, and the merchants, hee ac-  
cording to Westminster byodge, was there receiued with five lordes, conducted into a stately cham-  
ber, where by the lordes, Chancellour, Treasurer, Physicke seale, Admirall, bishop of Cle and other  
coun-

His departure  
from Scot-  
land towards  
England.

1557. Feb. 27.

His honour-  
able receiving  
into the Cite  
of London.

counsellors, hee was kissed and saluted: and consequently was brought vnto the Kings and Quenes maiesties presence, sitting vnder a stately cloth of honour, the chamber most richly decked and furnished, and most honourably presented. Where, after that hee had deliuered his letters, made his Oration, given two timber of Sables, and the report of the same made both in English and Spanish, in most louing manner embraced, was with much honour and high contentment, in sight of a great confluence of people, lordes and ladies est soones remitted by order to his former lodging, to the which, within two dayes after by assignement of the Kings and Quenes maiesties, repaired, and conferred with him secretly two graine counsellors, that is the lord bishop of Ely, and Sir William Peter Knight, chiefe Secretarie to their highness, who after diuers secret talks and conference, reported to their highness their proceedings, the prouidence, wisdom, and stately behauiour of the sayd Ambassadour, in such sort as was much to their maiesties contentations.

In les que and Articles of a rmitie concluded and confirmed vnder the great seale of England.

Finally, concluding vpon such treaties and articles of amitie, as the letters of the Kings and Quenes maiesties most graciously vnder the great seale of England, to him by the said counsellors deliuered, doth appeare.

The foure and twentieth of Aprill, being the feast of S. George, wherein was celebrated the solemnitie of the Noble order of the Garter at Westminster, the same lord Ambassadour was thither required to haue audience: and therefore conducted from the sayd lodging to the court by the right noble the lordes Talbot and Lumley to their maiesties presence (where after his Oration made, and thanks both giuen and receiued) hee most honourably tooke his leaue with commendations to the Emperour. Which being done, hee was with speciall honour ledde into the Chappell, where before the Kings and Quenes maiesties, in sight of the whole Order of the Garter, was prepared for him a stately seate, wherein, hee accompanied with the Duke of York, the lordes last aboue mentioned, and many other honourable personages, was present at the whole service, in ceremonies which were to him most acceptable: the diuine service ended, he est soones was remitted and reduced to his barge, and so repaired to his lodging, in like order and gratulation of the people vniuersally, as before.

Foure goodly ships of the merchants provided for Russia, 1557.

The time of the yeere halting the profection and departure of the Ambassadour, the merchants having prepared foure goodly and well furnished shippes laden with all kindes of merchandises apte for Russia, the same Ambassadour making provision for such things as him pleased, the same shippes in good order valed doونه the Riuer of Thames, from London to Gravesend, where the same Ambassadour with his trayne and furniture, was imbarcked towards his voyage homeward, which God prosper in all felicitie.

It is also to be remembered, that during the whole abode of the sayde Ambassadour in England, the Agences of the sayde merchants did not onely prosecute and pursue the matter of restitution in Scotland, and caused such things to be laden in an English shippe hired purposely to convey the Ambassadours goods to London, there to be deliuered to him, but also during his abode in London, did both inuite him to the Palace, and diuers worshipfull mens houses, for dining and banquetting him right friendly, shewing vnto him the most notable and commendable sightes of London, as the kings palace and house, the Churches of Westminster and Pauls, the Tower and Guild hall of London, and such like memorabile spectacles. And also the last six and twentie day of Aprill, the sayd merchants assembling themselves together in the house of the Dapers hall of London, exhibited, and gaue vnto the sayde Ambassadour, a notable supper garnished with Musike, Enterludes and bankets: in the which a cup of Wine being drunk to him in the name and lieto of the whole companie, it was signified to him that the whole companie with most liberall and friendly hearts, did franklie giue to him and his, all manner of costs and charges in victuals riding from Scotland to London, during his abode there, and well seeing of safe aboard the ship, requesting him to accept the same in good part, as a testimonie and token of their good hearts, zeale and tendernesse towards him and his countrey.

It is to be considered that of the Bona Speranza, no word nor knowledge was had at this present day, nor yet of the arrivall of the ships or goods from Scotland.

The third of May the Ambassadour departed from London to Grauesend, accompanied with diuers Aldermen and merchants, who in good gard set him aboard the noble ship, the *Prima* bound to the Fleet, where leaue was taken on both sides and partes after many embraces and diuers farewells not without expelling of teares.

Memorandum, that the first day of May the counsellors, videlicet, the bishop of Ely, and Sir William Peter on the behalfe of the Kings and Quenes maiesties repaying to the lord Ambassadour,

ambassadour, did not of great seale of England, in the Kings and Quenes maiesties behalfe, graue also giues to the lordes and ladies est soones remitted by order to his former lodging, to the which, within two dayes after by assignement of the Kings and Quenes maiesties, repaired, and conferred with him secretly two graine counsellors, that is the lord bishop of Ely, and Sir William Peter Knight, chiefe Secretarie to their highness, who after diuers secret talks and conference, reported to their highness their proceedings, the prouidence, wisdom, and stately behauiour of the sayd Ambassadour, in such sort as was much to their maiesties contentations.

Finally, concluding vpon such treaties and articles of amitie, as the letters of the Kings and Quenes maiesties most graciously vnder the great seale of England, to him by the said counsellors deliuered, doth appeare.

The foure and twentieth of Aprill, being the feast of S. George, wherein was celebrated the solemnitie of the Noble order of the Garter at Westminster, the same lord Ambassadour was thither required to haue audience: and therefore conducted from the sayd lodging to the court by the right noble the lordes Talbot and Lumley to their maiesties presence (where after his Oration made, and thanks both giuen and receiued) hee most honourably tooke his leaue with commendations to the Emperour. Which being done, hee was with speciall honour ledde into the Chappell, where before the Kings and Quenes maiesties, in sight of the whole Order of the Garter, was prepared for him a stately seate, wherein, hee accompanied with the Duke of York, the lordes last aboue mentioned, and many other honourable personages, was present at the whole service, in ceremonies which were to him most acceptable: the diuine service ended, he est soones was remitted and reduced to his barge, and so repaired to his lodging, in like order and gratulation of the people vniuersally, as before.

The time of the yeere halting the profection and departure of the Ambassadour, the merchants having prepared foure goodly and well furnished shippes laden with all kindes of merchandises apte for Russia, the same Ambassadour making provision for such things as him pleased, the same shippes in good order valed doونه the Riuer of Thames, from London to Gravesend, where the same Ambassadour with his trayne and furniture, was imbarcked towards his voyage homeward, which God prosper in all felicitie.

It is also to be remembered, that during the whole abode of the sayde Ambassadour in England, the Agences of the sayde merchants did not onely prosecute and pursue the matter of restitution in Scotland, and caused such things to be laden in an English shippe hired purposely to convey the Ambassadours goods to London, there to be deliuered to him, but also during his abode in London, did both inuite him to the Palace, and diuers worshipfull mens houses, for dining and banquetting him right friendly, shewing vnto him the most notable and commendable sightes of London, as the kings palace and house, the Churches of Westminster and Pauls, the Tower and Guild hall of London, and such like memorabile spectacles. And also the last six and twentie day of Aprill, the sayd merchants assembling themselves together in the house of the Dapers hall of London, exhibited, and gaue vnto the sayde Ambassadour, a notable supper garnished with Musike, Enterludes and bankets: in the which a cup of Wine being drunk to him in the name and lieto of the whole companie, it was signified to him that the whole companie with most liberall and friendly hearts, did franklie giue to him and his, all manner of costs and charges in victuals riding from Scotland to London, during his abode there, and well seeing of safe aboard the ship, requesting him to accept the same in good part, as a testimonie and token of their good hearts, zeale and tendernesse towards him and his countrey.

It is to be considered that of the Bona Speranza, no word nor knowledge was had at this present day, nor yet of the arrivall of the ships or goods from Scotland.

The third of May the Ambassadour departed from London to Grauesend, accompanied with diuers Aldermen and merchants, who in good gard set him aboard the noble ship, the *Prima* bound to the Fleet, where leaue was taken on both sides and partes after many embraces and diuers farewells not without expelling of teares.

Memorandum, that the first day of May the counsellors, videlicet, the bishop of Ely, and Sir William Peter on the behalfe of the Kings and Quenes maiesties repaying to the lord Ambassadour,

### Giftes sent the Emper led by the

- 1 First, five
- 2 Item, two
- 3 Item, four
- 4 Item, three
- 5 Item, six
- 6 Item, a

### Giftes sent to Maiesties of

- 1 First, two
- 2 Item, one
- 3 Item, one
- 4 Item, one
- 5 Item, a
- 6 Item, a

ambassadour did not onely desire vnto him their highnest letters of recommendations vnder the great seale of England to the Emperour, very tenderly and friendly written, but also on their maiesties behalfe, gaue, and deliuered certaine notable presents to the Emperours person, and also giftes for the sayd Ambassadours proper vse and behoofe, as by the particulars vnder written appeareth, with such further good wordes and commendations, as the moze friendly haue not bene heard: whereby it appeareth howe well affected their honours bee to haue and continue amice and traffique betweene their honours and their subiecs: which thing as the kings and Queenes maiesties haue shewed of their princely munificences and liberalities, so haue likewise the merchaunts and se lowship of the Adventurers, for as to Russia, manifested to the world their good wills, mindes and zeales bozne to this new continented voyage, as by the discourse aboue mentioned, and other the notable actes ouer long to bee recited in this present memoriall, doth and may most clearly appeare, the like wherof is not in any precedent or history to be heard.

Forasmuch as it may bee doubted how the Ship named the Edward Bonaventure, receiued shipwracke, what became of the goods, how much they were spoiled and deteined, how little redemp, what charges and expenses ensued, what personages were wounded, how the rest of the Ships either arriued or perished, or how the disposition of almighty God hath wrought his pleasure in them, how the same ambassadour hath bene after the miserable case of shipwracke in Scotland vnroutinely abused, and consequently into England receiued and conducted, there entertained, used, honoured, and finally in good safetie towards his returne and repaire furnished, and with much liberalitie and franke handling friendly dismissed, to the intent that the content of the promises may bee to the most mightie Emperour of Russia, sincerely signified in shipment of all euents and misfortunes that may chance in this voyage (which God defend) to the Ambassadours person, craine and goods, this present memoriall is written and autentically made, and by the sayde Ambassadour his seruants, whose names bee vnderwritten, and craine in presence of the Notarie, and witnesses vndernamed, recognized, and acknowledged. Given the day, month, and yeere vnderwritten, of which instrument into euery of the sayd Ships, one testimoniall is deliuered, and the first remaineth with the sayd companie in London.

Giftes sent to the King and Queenes maiesties of England by  
the Emperour of Russia, by the report of the Ambassadour, and spoiled  
by the Scots after the Shipwracke.

- 1 First, sixe timber of Sables rich in colour and haire.
- 2 Item, twentie entree Sables exceeding beautifull with teeth, eares and clawes.
- 3 Item, foure liuing Sables with chaines and collars.
- 4 Item, thirtie Lularnes large and beautifull.
- 5 Item, sixe large and great skinned very riche and rare, woyn one by the Emperour for woorthinesse.
- 6 Item, a large and faire white Ierfaucion for the wilde Swanne, Crane, Goose, and other great Fowles, together with a byrnie of siluer, the hoopes gilt, used for a lure to call the sayd Watke.

Giftes sent to the Emperour of Russia by the King and Queens  
Maiesties of England.

- 1 First, two rich pieces of cloth of Cassic.
- 2 Item, one fine piece of Scarlet.
- 3 Item, one fine Violet in graine.
- 4 Item, one fine Azur cloth.
- 5 Item, a notable paire of Bygandines with a Purrian covered with Cinnamon be-  
luct and gilt nattes.
- 6 Item, a Male and Female Lions.

Gifts

Giftes giuen to the Ambassadour at his departure, ouer and a-  
boue such as were deliuered vnto him at his first arriuall.

- 1 First, a chaine of gold of one hundred pound.
- 2 Item, a large bason and ewer, silver and gilt.
- 3 Item, a paire of portle pices gilt.
- 4 Item, a paire of flaggons gilt.

The names of all such Russies as were attendant vpon the Am-  
bassadour, at and before his departure out of England.

Isaak Fweischeucke.  
Demitre.  
Gorbolones.  
Symonde.  
Yeroffia.  
Stephen.  
Lowca.  
Andria.  
Foma.

Memorandum, the day and yeere of our Lord above mentioned, in the house of the worship-  
full John Dimmocke Citizen and Dyaper of London, situate within the famous Citie of Lon-  
don in the realme of England, the aboue named honourable Osep Gregorywich Napes, Am-  
bassadour and Dyaper above mentioned, personally constituted and present, hauing declared to  
him by the mouth of the right worshipfull master Anthonie Dullie Esquier, the effect of the  
causes and contents, of, and in this booke, at the interpretation of Robert Best his Interpreter  
sworne, recognizeth, and knowledges in presence of me the Notarie and personages underwritten,  
the contents of this booke to be true, as well for his owne person as for his seruants about him,  
who did not subscribe their names as is aboue mentioned, but onely recognizeth the same. In wit-  
nesse whereof, I John Incent Notarie Publike, at the request of the sayd master Anthonie Dul-  
lie, and other of the merchants haue to these presents underwritten, set my accustomed signe,  
with the Subscription of my name, the day and yeere aboue written, being present the right  
Worshipfull,

Andrew Iudde. }  
George Barne. } Knights. }  
William Chester. } Aldermen of London.  
Rafe Greeneaway. }  
Iohn Merthe Esquier.  
Iohn Dimmocke,  
Blase Sanders,  
Hubert Huffle, and  
Robert Best aboue mentioned.

The voiage of the foresaid M. Stephen Burrough, An. 1557. from  
Colmogro to Wardhouse, which was sent to seeke the Bona Esperanza, the Bona  
Confidentia, & the Philip & Mary, which were not heard of the yeere before.

May.

- 23 Don Sunday the 23. of May, I departed with the Searchlight from Colmo-  
gro, the latitude whereof is 64. degrees, 25. minutes, and the variation of the  
26 compasse, 5. degrees, 10. minutes from the North to the East.  
26 Wednesday we came to the Island called Pozanka, which Island is within  
four leagues of the barre Berozoua, that sheweth here at an East and by South  
spoon full fra.  
29 Saturday in the morning wee departed from Pozanka, and plied to the barre of Berzoua  
Gooba, whereupon wee came to an anker at a low water, and sounded the sayd Barre with our  
two

departure, ouer and a first arriuall.

two shelles, and founde in the best vpon the shoalest of the barre, 13. foote water by the rule. It layeth vpon this barre, in spring streames 3. foote water: and an East moone maketh a full sea vpon this barre.

Monday in the morning wee departed from the barre of Berozoua, and plyed along by the shoale in five fadome, untill I had sight of S. Nicholas roade, and then wee cast about to the Northward, and went with a hommoche, which is halfe a mile to the Eastward of Coia Recca, which hommoche and S. Nicholas abbey lye Southsouthwest, and Northnorthwest, and betwene them are 11. leagues. Coia Recca is halfe a mile to the Eastward of Colcaynos. Colcaynos and the middes of the Island called Mondeustoua ostroue, which is thwart of the barre of Berozoua lieth South, and by East, North and by West, and betwene them are 4. leagues, or as you may say from the Shoale part of the barre to Colcaynos, are 3. leagues and a halfe.

Monday at a Northeast and by East sunne, we were thwart of Colcaynos, Dogs nose lieth from Colcaynos Northnorthwest, and betwene them are 8. leagues: and Dogs nose lieth like a Turners head, if you be thwartly on both sides of it: on the low point of Dogs nose there standeth a crosse alone.

June.

From Dogs nose to fore nose, are 3. leagues, North and by West. The 2. day of June I went on shoare 2. miles to the Northward of Dogs nose, and had the latitude of that place in 65. degrees, 47. minutes. It floweth a shoare at this place, at an East moone full sea, and the shippe lay thwart to wende a flood, in the off, at a Southsouthwest moone, so that it is to be vnderstood, that when it is a full sea on the shoare, it is two points to ebbe, be- fore it be a lowe water in the off. The variation of the Compasse at this place is 4. degrees from the North to the East.

This day the Northnorthwest winde put vs backe againe with Dogs nose, where a ship may be thwart of a Shale house in 4. fadome, or 4. fadome and a halfe of water, and haue Landlange by a North and by West winde: which Shale house is halfe a mile to the Southwardes of Dogs nose.

Friday at a Southsouthwest sunne, we departed from this Shale house. It is to be noted that foure miles to the Northwardes of Dogs nose, there growe no trees on the banke by the water side: and the bankes consist of fullers earth.ouer the cliffes there growe some trees: so that Dogs nose is the better to be knowne because it is fullers earth, and the like I haue not seene in all that Country.

A head of Fore nose a league from the shoare, there are 15. fadome betwixt Fore nose and Zolacia, there are 6. leagues, I meane the Southerly part of Fore nose.

Monday I founde the barre of Zolacia, which the Russes tolde me was a good harbor, but in the best of it I found but 4. foote water.

Monday, I had the latitude in 66. degrees, and then was point Pentecost five leagues South of it.

Tuesday I went on lande at Crosse Island, and tooke the latitude, which was 66. degrees 24. minutes.

We being one league Northeast of Crosse Island, I sawe the lande on the Eastside, which I thought to be Cape good fortune, and it was then East Southeast of vs 9. leagues.

Cape grace is 7. leagues and a halfe Northeast from Crosse Island.

There are 2. Islands 5. leagues Northnorthwest from Cape grace, the Southermost of them is a litle long Island almost a mile long, and the Northmost a litle round Island, and they are both hard aboord the shoare.

Cape Race is from the Southermost Island North and by West, and betwene them are two leagues, and from these 9. halfe a league Northnorthwest, there is another point. Betwene which point and Cape Race, the Russes haue a Stanauish or harbor for their Lodges: and to the Westward of the said point, there is a shoale bay.

Three leagues and a halfe to Northwardes of Cape Race, we had the latitude on the 10. day of this month in 67. degrees 10. minutes. Riding within halfe a league of the shoare in this latitude I founde it to be a full sea at a North and by East moone. I had to here the roade, two and thwente fadome, and the tallow which is taken by is full of great blacke shels, and some stones which like two small land conioled together.

From a South sunne that we voyed, the winde being at North and by East, we went to the

endant vpon the Am-England.

ned, in the house of the worship within the famous Citie of London Gregory wick Nape, and present, hauing declared to the Duke of Cluiter, the effect of the of Robert Bell his Interpreter and personages vnderstanding, as for his seruants above named, they recognized the same. In the of the sayd master Antonie his written, see my accustomed signe, as witness, being present the right

dermen of London.

rough, An. 1557. from Bona Esperanza, the Bona ward of the yeere before.

the Searcher from Colmo- minutes, and the variation of the to the East.

zanka, which Island is within here at an East and by South

plied to the barre of Berozoua founde the sayd Barre with one

30.

Coia Recca

Colcaynos.

31.

Dogs nose.

1.

2.

The variation of the Compasse 4. degrees.

3.

4.

Fore nose.

6.

7. Point Pentecost.

9. Crosse Island.

Cape good fortune.

Cape grace.

Cape Race.

10.

to the windwards halfe the ebbe, with the shippes head to the Eastwards. And then when we had her head to the Westwards, we founde, and had 22. fadome broken shels, and gray sand; this was sent day was very milke, with frost on the shovows as the milke fell.

*Frost in June.*

11.

Friday in the morning at an East sunne, the milke brake by a litle, the winde being at North and by West a stiff gale, our shovows and ropes our head being covered with frost, and likely to be a Noyme: I thought it good to seeke an harborow, and so plied roome with the Islands which are two leagues to the Southwards of Cape Race, and within these Islands (thanks bee to God) we found harborow for vs. It lieth at these Islands two fadome water: it floweth in the harborow at this place at a Southfourthead moone full sea: and a sea boord it floweth at a South south west moone a full sea. The Russes call this Island, Tri Ostroue.

*Tri Ostrou.*

You may come in betweene the little Island and the great Island, and keepe you in the maine of the Sounde, and if you bozrowe on any side, let it bee on the greater Island, and you shall haue at a lowe water, foure fadome, and thye fadome and a halfe, and thye fadome, until the you be shot so farre in as the narrowest, which is betweene the Nozhermost point of the great Island, and the Southerne point of the maine which is right against it, and then hale to the Northwards with the crosse which standeth in the maine, and you shall haue at a lowe water 10. foute water, and faire sande. And if you be disposed to goe through the Sounde to the Southwards, keepe the Nozthwest shoare abooyde, for on the Island side after you be shotte so farre in as the crosse, it is a shoale of rockes halfe the sound ouer: which rockes doe fall vnto the Southerly part of the great Island, and rather to the Southwards. And if you be constrained to seeke a harborow for Noztherly windes, when you come out of the sea hale in with the Southerly part of the great Island, giuing the Island a faire birch, and as you shoote towarde the maine, you shall finde roome for all Noztherly windes, in foure fadome, five, sixe and seuen fadome, at a lowe water.

Also within this great Island, (if neede bee) you may haue a good place to ground a Shippe in: the great Island is almost a mile long and a quarter of a mile ouer.

16.

*Ice.*

*The variation.*

17.

This Noyme of Noztherly winde lasted until the 16. of this moneth, and then the winde came Southerly, but we could not get out for Ice. I went on shoare at the crosse, and tooke the latitude, which is 66. degrees, 58. minutes, 30. seconds: the variation of the Compasse 3. degrees and a halfe from the Nozth to the East.

18.

Thursday being faire weather, and the winde at Nozth, wee plied to the winde-wards with sailes and oares: wee Ropped the hood this day thye leagues to the Nozthwards of Cape Race, two miles from the shoare, and had twentie fadome water, faire gray and blacke sande, and broken shels. And when the stake came wee wayed and made abooyde to the shoare-wards, and had within two cables length of the shoare, eigheteen fadomes faire gray and blacke sande: a man may finde roade there for a Nozthwinde, and so to the Westwards.

Two leagues to the Southward of Corpus Christi point, you may haue Land and fange for a Nozth and by Eastwinde, and from that to the Westwardes in 3. fadome almost a mile from shoare, and faire sande, and amongst the sande litle pong small limpers, of such like as growe by on musles: and within two cables length and less of the shoare, are eigheteen fadomes, and the sounding aforesaid, but the pong limpers moze plentifull. It was a full sea where we roade, almost a mile from shoare, at a South and by West moone: two leagues to the Southward of Corpus Christi point is the uttermost lande, which lande and Cape Race lyeth South and half a point to the Westwards, and Nozth and halfe a point to the Eastwards, and betweene them are sixe leagues. Riding this day sixe leagues to the Nozthwards of Cape Race, the winde at Nozth north west, with milke and frost, at noone the sunne appeared through the miste, so that I had the latitude in 67. degrees, 29. minutes.

19.

*Corpus Christi point.*

Sunday we were thwart of Corpus Christi point, two leagues and a halfe from shoare, at noon, where we founde, and had 36. fadoms, and broken cockle shels, with byamite sande, but the broken shels very litte.

*Cape Gallant.*

22.

Tuesday in the morning wee were shotte a head of Cape gallant, which the Russes call Soanoze. And as we were shotte almost halfe a league betwixt it, and Cape comfort, the winde came up at the Nozthwest, and after to the Nozthwards, so that wee were faine to heare roome to seek a harbour, where we founde good harbour for all windes, and the least 7. fadome water betwixt S. Johns Islands, and the maine.

After that we came to an ancre, wee tooke the latitude, which was 68. degrees 1. minute, after noone, the winde at Nozth with plenty of snowe.

At a West sunne there came abooyde by certayne Lappians in a boate, to the number of thre or foure persons, and amongst them there were two women, and some of the men could speake the

Ruffe



wards. And then when we cast  
our shels, and gray sand; this pro-  
ved ill.

A little, the winde being at North  
and covered with frost, and thereby  
made room for the Islands which  
these Islands (thanks be to  
God) is savome water: it floweth in the  
sea boord it floweth at a South-  
easterly.

and, and keepe you in the maine  
of the greatest Island, and you shall  
see, and there savome, until the  
northermost point of the greatest  
Island, and then hale to the South-  
easterly at a lowe water 10. fowre  
leagues to the Southward, where  
you be shotte so farre in as the  
sea fall vnto the Southerly part  
you be constrained to seeke a harbor  
in the Southerly part of the great  
Island, you shall finde water  
at a lowe water.

best place to ground a Shippe in  
the maine, and then the winde came  
from the North, and tooke the latitude  
of the Compasse 3. degrees and a  
half.

led to the winde-wards with  
the Northward of Cape Race,  
gray and blacke sande, and by  
the shore-wards, and by  
gray and blacke sande: a man

you may have Land range for a  
league, 3. fadome almost a mile from  
the shore, of such like as growe by  
the sea-side, and are eighteene fadomes, and the  
sea is full where we roade, al-  
though the Southward of  
Cape Race is South and half  
Southward, and betwene them are  
Cape Race, the winde at North  
and the winde, so that I had the

and a halfe from shore, as  
the shels, with byantie sande, but

which the Russes call Sca-  
pe comfort, the winde came  
to beare room for the  
at 7. fadome water betwene

at 68. degrees 1. minute, and

in a boate, to the number of fowre  
of the men could speake the  
Russes

Russe tongue: I asked them where their abiding was, and they tolde mee that there was a com-  
pany of beards of them, to the number of 100. men, besides women and children, but a little from us  
in the river Iekonga.

They tolde me that they had bene to seeke meate among the rocks, saying, If wee gette no  
meate, wee eat none. I sawe them eat rocks weebes as hungerly, as a catte doeth grasse when  
she is hungrie. I sawe them also eat foules egges rawe, and the pong birds also that were in  
the egges.

I obserued certaine wordes of their language, which  
I thought good to set downe for their use, that here-  
after shall haue occasion to continue  
this voyage.

**C**owghtie coteat, what call you  
this.

Poddychecke, come hither.

Auanchythocke, get thee hence.

Anna, farewell.

Teyne, good morrowe.

Ionnie Iemaufes, I thanke you.

Passeuclie, a friend.

Olmuelle, a man.

Capella, a woman.

Alka, a sonne.

Neit, a daughter, or pong wench.

Oyie, a head.

Cycline, an eye.

Nenna, anole.

Nealna, a mouth.

Panna, teeth.

Neughtema, a tongue.

Seaman, a beard.

Pealles, an eare.

Teappat, the necke.

Voop, the hatte.

Ken, a hand.

Soarme, fingers.

Iowllie, a legge.

Peellie, the thombe, or great toe.

Satke, wollen cloth.

Lein, linnen cloth.

Payn, a shirt.

Toll, lace.

Kenke, water.

Mux, wood.

Vannace, a boate.

Arica, an oare.

Nux, a rump.

Peysu, a nap.

Hye, a night.

Peysen, the skinnie.

Manas, the spoone.

Lalle, a rarer.

Coam voika, whichee goe you.

Onapp, a sleep.

Tallye, that.

Kiende pieue, a weeke.

Iickie, a peere.

Kesse, Sommer.

Talue, Winter.

Iowksam, colde.

Parox, warme.

Abrye, raine.

Youghang, yre.

Keatikye, a stone.

Sellowpe, flurr.

Solda, golde.

Tennae, tyme.

Veskue, copper.

Rowadt, yron.

Neybx, a knife.

Axlhe, a butcher.

Leabee, bread.

Jeaugeoct, meate.

Peencka, the winde.

Iowte, a platter.

Kennie, a kettle.

Keestes, gloues.

Sapege, shoes.

Conde, a wilde Deere.

Poatfa, the labouring Deere.

Their wordes of number  
are these as followeth.

<b>O</b> ffite,	1.
Noumpte,	2.
Colme,	3.
Nellye,	4.
Vitte,	5.
Cowte,	6.
Kegdeem,	7.
Kaffis,	8.
Owghchte,	9.
Locke,	10.
Ostretumbelocke,	11.
Cowghntumbelocke,	12.
Colmenonbelocke,	13.
Nellynombelocke,	14.

Vittie nombelocke,	15.	Nelly locke,	40.
Cowtombelocke,	16.	Vittelocke,	50.
Keydemnombelocke,	17.	Cowtelocke,	60.
Kafis nombelocke,	18.	Keydemlocke,	70.
Owght nombelocke,	19.	Kafftelocke,	80.
Coffteylocke	20.	Oughchetelok,	90.
Colmelocke,	30.	Tewet,	100.

25 Friday in the morning we departed from S. Johns Island to the Westwards thereof a mile from the shoare, we founde, and had 36 fadoms, and oazle sand.

**Iuana Creos.** Iuana Creos, is from Cape gallant Westnorthwest, and halfe a point to the Northwards, and betweene them is 7 leagues. The point of the Island, which is Cape comfort, lyeth from Iuana Creos, Northwest and by North, and almost the 3. part of a point to the Westwards, and betweene them are 3 leagues.

**S. Georges Island.** The Eastermost of S. Georges Islands, of 7 Islands, lyeth from Iuana Creos Northwest, and halfe a point to the Northwards, and betweene them are 14 leagues and a halfe. The Westmost of the 7 Islands, is Cape comfort lyeth Northwest, and by North, Southeast, and by South.

**Cape Comfort.** Under the Southermost Island you shall finde good roade for all Northely winds from the Northwest to the Northeast. From the Southeast part of the 7 Islands, unto the Northwest part of them, are 3 leagues and a halfe.

**S. Peters Islands.** From the Northwest part of the Islands aforesaide, unto S. Peters Islands, are 11 leagues Northwest.

26 S. Peters Islands rise an indifferent low point, not seeming to be an Island, and as if it had a caille vpon it.

**S. Pauls Island.** S. Pauls Islands lye from S. Peters Islands Northwest, and to the Westwards, and betweene them are 6 leagues. Within these Islands there is a faire sandie bay, and there may be founde a good roade for Northely winds.

**Cape Sower beere.** Cape Sower beere lyeth from S. Pauls Islands Northwest, and by West, and betweene them are 5 leagues.

**Ridina.** Cape comfort, which is the Island of Kildina, lyeth from Cape Sower beere, 6 leagues West Northwest, and it is altogether a bay betweene them seeming many Islands in it.

**Cape Bonauenture.** From Cape Bonauenture, to Chebe Nauolocke are 10 leagues Northwest, and a litle to the Westwards. Chebe Nauolocke is a faire point, wheron standeth a certaine blacke, like an emperie butt standing a head.

**Kegor.** From Chebe Nauolocke to Kegor, is 9 leagues and a halfe Northwest, and halfe a point to the Westwards. Kegor riseth as you come from the Eastwards like 2. round homers standing together, and a faire saddle betweene them.

27 It sheweth where we roade this Sunday to the Eastwards of Kegor, at a Southeast and by East moone, a full sea: we roade in 15 fadome water within halfe a mile of the shoare: at a North west Sunne the miste came downe so thicke, that we were faine to come to an ancre within less then a mile of the point that turneth to Doms haff, where wee had 33 fadome, and the sounding like to the ~~stroke~~ of a shales head.

**Wardhouse.** 28 Sunday at afternoone, we came into the Sound of Wardhouse, although it were very wille. Then I sent a man a shoare to know some newes, and to see whether they could heare any thing of our Shippes.

**Which were the World Espranza, the Bona confidencia and the Phillip and spare. Where of the two first were lost.** 29 Tuesday I went on shoare, and dined with the Captaines deputie, who made mee great cheere: the Captaine himselfe was not as yet come fro Bergen; they looked for him every hour, and they said that he would bring newes with him.

At a Northwest, and by North sunne, we departed from Wardhouse, toward Colmogro.

30 Wednesday we came to Kegor, where we met with the wind at East Southeast, so that we were faine to goe in to a bay to the Westwards of the point Kegor, where a man may moue in 3. small shippes, that shall not drawe past 11. or 12. foote water, for all times, an East North west winde is the worst. It is a ledge of rocks, that defendeth the Northely winds fro the place where they moare. When we came into the bay we saw there a barke which was of Dronton, and there of foure Norway peaghes, belonging to Northbarn: so when I came a shoare, I met with the Dutchmen, amongst whom was the Boytrab-masters sonne of Dronton, who tolde me that the Phillip and Mary wintered at Dronton, and departed from thence for England in March: and withall he shewed me that the Confidence was lost, and that hee had bought her sailen for his shippe. When the Dutch-men carried mee to their Boorte, and made mee good cheere, where I

**101, Cronbon.** The Phillip and spare. The Bona Confidencia cast away.

- 40.
- 50.
- 60.
- 70.
- 80.
- 90.
- 100.

to the Westwards thereof a mile  
 like a point to the Northwards, and  
 Cape comfort, lying from Juana  
 to the Westwards, and between  
 from Juana Creos Northward  
 leagues and a halfe. The bay  
 North, South-east, and by South  
 for all North-east winds from the  
 Islands, unto the North-west part  
 of Peters Islands, are 11. leagues  
 to be an Island, and as if it had  
 to the Westwards, and between  
 the bay, and there may be found  
 and by West, and between them  
 Cape Sower beere, 6. leagues West  
 many Islands in it.  
 leagues North-west, and a little to the  
 West a certaine blacke, like an em-  
 like North-west, and halfe a point to  
 like 2. round homets standing to  
 of Keger, at a South-east and by  
 like a mile of the Shore: at a North-  
 line to come to an anere which had  
 had 33. fadomes, and the sounding  
 house, although it were very shallow.  
 neither they coulde heare any thing  
 mens deputie, who made mee great  
 they looked for him every hour,  
 rdhouse, toward Colmogro.  
 found at East South-east, in that bay  
 Keger, where a man may moue 20  
 for all winds, an East North-east  
 North-east winds for the place where  
 which was of Dronon, and the  
 when I came a Shore. I met still with  
 one of Dronon, who tolde me that  
 in thence for England in thre  
 at hee had bought her sailes for  
 and made mee good cheere, when I  
 like

like the Lappians chepen of the saide Dutchmen, both silver platters and dishes, spoones, gilt rings, ornaments for girdles of silver and gilt, and certaine things made to hang about the necke, with silver chaines belonging to them.

The Dutchmen bringe hither mightie strong beere, I am certaine that our English double beere would not be liked of the Kerils and Lappians, as long as that would last.

Here I saw the Dutchmen also haue rascie cloch, both blew, red, and saffron, and (as they say) horse colour. And hither they bringe also Deers cases and foxe, both blacke and redde: our English foxe cases are but counterfats vnto them.

They would not let me understand any of their prices, but as I ocherwise understood, they barter 2. load of silver for 100. of stockfish, and 2. loades is a dollet. And the Dutch men told me, that they had made a notable good yeere this present yeere 1557. They tolde mee that they should be faine to goe to Wardhouse with one loading, and lay it on land there, and so come againe and fetch another. The Boyrtowmasters sonne told me, that he would goe to Amsterdam with his loading of stockfish, who gaue me a barrel of strong beere, and brought in aboarde our shippe himselfe.

After this I went among the Russies and Kerils, who offered me fish to sell, and likewise the Lappians desired me to looke vpon their fish. I made them answere, that I had now no wares nor money to barter with them, and said that I came onely to see if I might meete with our English shippes. Then they desired me that I would come thither the next yeere: I said vnto them, if I should come the next yeere, I thinke here would not be fish ynough to serue the Dutchmen and vs also. They answered me, that if more shippes did resort thither, there would more people labour to kill and make fish: and further they said, that some of them came thither a fishing 8. weekes iourney with Deere, which Deere will trauaile more speedily then hoxes will.

As I was thus in talke with the Kerils & Lappians, the Emperour of Russia his deputie (who was there together the tribute of the Lappians) sent for me to come to his tent, who after familiar salutations made me good cheere. He demaunded of me, why none of our shippes came thither. I answered him, because we knew not the place before now, neither yet heard of any faire that was kept there. Then said he, if you will come thither, here would more people resort to kill fish, I thinke it good (said he) that you make a beginning. I tolde him, that by the grace of God the next yeere, our English shippe should come thither.

Because I saw the seruants of the king of Denmarke there also gathering the tribute, I asked Vasilie pheochrouiche the Russic deputie, whether the Denmarks would not be a let to vs, if we should come to this Keger. And he saide, no, they should not: for this lande is my kings, and therefore hee be holde to come hither.

The Kerils and the Lappians solde no fish, until the said deputie had looked vpon it, and had given them leave to sell. I asked him what wares were best for vs to bring thither, and he saide, silver, pearls, cloch, blew, red and greene, Deale, strong beere, wine, pewter, foxe cases, and golde.

The Lappians pay tribute to the Emperour of Russia, to the king of Denmarke, and to the king of Sweden. He tolde me that the Riuer Cola is little more then 20. leagues to the Southward of Keger, where we should haue great plenty of salmon, if come were any thing cheape in Russia: for then yoope men would resort thither to kill salmon.

The Dutchmen tolde me that they had made a good yeere of this, but the Kerils complained of it, because they could not sell all their fish, and that they solde, was as please the Dutchmen, and at their owne price. I asked the Kerils at what price they sold their fish to the Russies, and they said good cheape: we sell 24. silbes for 4. alaines, I thinke they solde little about 20. pence, the 25. silbes this yeere.

The Dutchmen tolde me that the best stockfish is made at Keger. I sawe at Vasilies tent 7. or 8. iavelins, and halfe a dozen of bowes bent, with their budgets of arrowes, and likewise swordes with ocher weapons: Ocherwise I sawe no weapons there.

I was also conueyed to their lodgings, which gathered tribute for the king of Denmarke, where I sawe a paire of bilowes: and I asked whether they were for the Lappians (if neede were), and they said no, but onely for their owne companie if they should chaunce to be vntuly.

The Kerils and the Lappians are not to be trusted, for they will steale as well as the Russies, if they may conveniently come by any thing.

Concerning my voyage, because the winde was scant to goe backe againe to Colmogro, I came to the Eastwards of the point Keger, and sent to land, and baked two batches of bread, in the ovens that the Kerils haue for their owne provision.

Instructions giuen to the Masters and Mariners to be obserued  
in and about this Fleete, passing this yeere 1557. toward the Bay  
of S. Nicolas in Russia, for this present Raze to be made and returne  
of the same by Gods grace to the port of London, the place  
of their right discharge, as in the Articles en-  
suing is deduced.

**F**irst, it is accorded and agreed betwene the severall proprietaries and owners,  
masters and companies of the foure ships, surnamed the Primrose, the Iohn E-  
uangelist, the Anne and the Trinitie, and the Lieutenant, Consuls, assistants and  
company of the Merchant aduencurers, that the aboue named foure shippes,  
shall in good order and conduct, safe, passe, and traualle together in one fleet,  
ginge, and conferue of societie, to be kept and indissolubly to be seuered, but not  
ted within continuall sight, so farreforth as (by winde and weather) by possibilitie shall or may  
be without any separation or departure of one from the other.

2 Item, it is agreed that the good ship named the Primrose, shall be Admirall of this fleet, and  
that Anthonie Jenkinson Gentleman, shall be capitaine thereof: and that all other the 3. ships shall  
ensue and folow her in all courses, and that no course nor waying (in harborough especially) shall  
be made without the aduice, consent and agreement of the saide Capitaine, the Spalcker, his maor,  
and two other officers of the said shippe, or of three of them at the least.

3 Item, that the said Anthonie is and shall be reputed & taken for Capitaine general of the said  
fleet together with all such orders, preeminences, priuiledges and preferments as by the order  
of seas is due and accustomed to a Capitaine during his aboade and exercise of the same.

4 It is also ordeined, that if any one or more of the said 3. shippes shall be out of sight, either before  
or behinde the Admirall, that then the rest of the shippes shall cacke or take of their sailes in such  
sort as they may meete and come together, in as good order as may be, so the intent to keepe the  
custome exactly in all points.

5 It is also constituted, that if the ships shall be seuered by miste or darke weather, in such sort as  
the one cannot haue sight of the other, then and in such case the Admirall shall make sound and noise  
by drumme, crumpe, hoone, gunne or other wise or meanes, that the ships may come as nigh toge-  
ther, as by safetie and good order they may.

6 It is also to be obserued, that euery day once the other three shippes shall sende and come a-  
boord the Admirall, and there consulte and determine of such matter and things as shall be for the  
assurance of their nauigation, and most expedition of the same.

7 Item, that notes & entries be dayly made of their nauigations put in writing & memorie, and  
that the young Partners and appentices may be taught & caused to learne and obserue the same.

8 It is accorded that the said Capitaine shall haue the principal rule and gouernement of the ap-  
pentices: And that not onely they, but also all other the sailers, shall be attendant and obedient to  
him, as of duetie and reason appertaineth.

9 Also that no beere nor brood, or other liquors be spilt upon the ballast or other place of the shippe,  
wherby any anoyance, stinke, or other vnlawfulness shall grow in the shippe to the infection or hurt  
of the persons in the same.

10 Item, that the Capitaine by discretion shall from time to time disship any artificer or English  
seruingman or appentice out of the Primrose into any of the other three shippes, and in lieu of  
him or them, take any such appentice as he shall thinke convenient, and most meete to serue the  
benefite of the companie.

11 Item, that great respect be had to the gunners and rookes roomes, that all danger and pe-  
rill of powder and fire may be eschewed and auoyded.

12 Item, that singular care & respect be had to the ports of the ship, as well in nauigation as in  
harborow, & especially in lading and unlading of the ships, that nothing be lacking or sutcharged,  
and that the bookes may oftentimes be conferred & made to agree in eschequement of such lodes, as  
may ensue.

13 Special foresight is to be had, that at the Wardhouse no treacherie, inuasion, or other perill  
of molestation be done or procured to be attempted to our ships by any kings, princes or companies,  
that do mislike this newe found trade by seas to Russia, or would let and hinder the same, wherof  
no small doubt hath bene made: which giueth occasion of more circumspection and diligence.

14 If the winde & weather will serue, it is thought good rather to go by the Wardhouse, then to  
come

iners to be obserued  
 5 7. toward the Bay  
 made and returne  
 London, the place  
 cles en-

erall proprietaries and owners,  
 named the Primrose, the John E.  
 remant, Confuls, assistants and  
 the aboue named foure shippes,  
 to traualle together in one fleet,  
 absolutely to be leuereed, but not  
 ther) by possibilitie shall of may

the Admirall of this fleet, and  
 that all other the 3. shippes shall  
 (in harborough especially) shall  
 Captaine, the Spalcker, his mee,  
 east.

of Captaine generall of the said  
 and yferments as by the order  
 to exercise of the same.  
 shall be out of sight, either before  
 take or take of their failles in such  
 may be, so the intent to keepe the

of darke weather, in such sort as  
 vntill that make sound and noise  
 the shippes may come as nigh togo

shippes shall sende and come a  
 cer and things as shall be by the  
 s put in writing & memorie, and  
 to learne and obserue the same,  
 rule and gouernement of the sp  
 shall be attendant and obedient to

at all, or other place of the shippe,  
 the shippe to the infection of but

the disship any artificer of English  
 ther three shippes, and in lieu of  
 ent, and most meete to stur the

roomes, that all danger and pe-

ship, as well in nauigation as in  
 thing be lacking of sutchargen  
 in equipement of such lodes, as

acherie, inuasion, or other penill  
 ay kings, princes or companies,  
 et and binder the same, without  
 compunction and diligence,  
 to go by the Wardhouse, then to  
 come

come in and ancre there, lest any male engine, or danger may be the rather attempted against vs,  
 our goods and shippes as about.

15. It is thought good that Richard Johnson, late seruant to M<sup>r</sup>. Chanceler, shall be sent home  
 in this next returne, to instruct the companie of the state of the Countrey, and of such questions as  
 may be demanded of him, so our better aduertisements and resolutions, in such doubts as shall a-  
 rise here: and that he shall haue the room of the Captaine in such sort, as Spalcker Ienkinson is in  
 this present rochet assigned vnto. And if Johnson can not, may not, nor will not returne and occupy  
 the said place, then any other person to be preferred thereunto, as by the discretion of our said  
 Captaine, with consent of our Agents, shall be thought meete and apt to supply the same.

16. Provided alway, that the shippes returning, be not furnished of one such able man, as  
 shall occupy the Captaineship in like order, as is, and hath bene in such case appointed, as reason  
 and good order requirerh.

17. Item that all other former orders, rules, and deuises, made and provided for the good order  
 of our shippes, wares, and goods, being not repugnant, contrarie or diuerse, to these articles, and  
 the contents of the same, shall be, and stand in full force and effect, to be in all respects obserued and  
 kept of all and euery person, and persons, whome the same doth or shall touch or concerne.

In witness of the premisse faithfully to be obserued, and kept, the owners and Spalckers of the  
 said four shippes, together with the said Captaine, to these seuentene articles, contained in two  
 sheets of paper, haue subscribed their hands. Given in London, the third of May, in the yere of  
 our Lord God, 1557.

- q Owners of the Primrose.  
 Andrewe Iudde.  
 William Chester.  
 Anthony Hickman.  
 Edward Casteline.
- q Owners of the John Euangelist.  
 Andrew Iudde.  
 William Chester.
- q Owner of the Anne.  
 John Dimocke.
- q Owner of the Trinitie.  
 R. T.

The first voyage made by Master Anthony Ienkinson, from  
 the Citie of London, toward the land of Russia, begonne the twelfth  
 day of Maye, in the yeere, 1557.



It is by the grace of God, the day and yere aboue mentioned, I departed from  
 the said Citie, and the same day at Grauesend embarked my selfe in a good  
 shippe, named the Primrose, being appointed, although vnto my selfe, chiefe cap-  
 taine of the same, and also of the other three good shippes, to say, the John E-  
 uangelist, the Anne, and the Trinitie, hauing also the conduct of the Emperour  
 of Russia, his ambassadour, named Osep Nepea Gregorewich, who passed with  
 his companie in the said Primrose. And thus our foure tall shippes being well appointed, as well  
 in men and victuals, as other necessarie furniture, the said twelfth day of the moneth of Maye,  
 we heyes our anchors, and departed from the said Grauesende, in the after noone, and plyng  
 toward the Thames, the wind being Easterly, and faire weather, the 13. day we came a ground  
 with the Primrose, vpon a sand called the Blarke talle, where we stode fast vntill the 14. day in  
 the morning, and then God be praised, she came off: and that day we plyed downe as farre as out  
 Lane Holland, and there came to an anker, the wind being Easterly, and there remained vntill  
 the 20. day: then we heyes and went out at Goldmonger gate, and from thence in at Balsey Slawe,  
 and in into Orwel wandes, where we came to an anker: but as we came out at the said Gold-  
 monger gate, the Trinitie came on ground on certaine rockes, that lye to the Northward of the said  
 gate, and was like to be bilged and lost. But by the aide of God, at the last she came off againe, be-  
 ing very leake: and the 21. day the Primrose remaining at an anker in the wandes, the other  
 three shippes bare into Orwel hauen, where I caused the said Trinitie to be grounded, searched,  
 and repaired. So we remained in the said hauen, vntill the 28. day: and then the winde being  
 westerly, the three shippes that were in the hauen, heyes and came forth, and in comynge forth, the

the John Evangelist came on ground upon a sand, called the Andros, where she remained one tide, and the next full sea she came off againe, without any great hurt, God be praised,

The 29. day in the morning, all foure ships were in the Islands, and that tide went as fast as Orfordcote, where we came to an anchor, because the wind was northerly: And about five of the clocke at night, the wind beere to the South-west, and we weped anchor, and bare cleare of the reef, and then set our course north east, and by north, untill midnight, being then cleare of Yarmouth sands. Then we winded North and by West, and North north-west, untill the first of June at noone, then it waied calme, and continued so, untill the second day at noone: then the winde came at North-west, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North North-east, and North-east, and by North, as the winde shifted, and so continued untill the third day at noone: then the winde beere Westly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way untill the fourth day, at three of the clocke in the afternoone, at which time the winde beere to the North-west againe, and blewe a fresh gale, and so continued untill the seventh day in the morning, we lying with all our shippes close by, and capping to the Northwards; and then the winde came more Northerly, we were forced to put roome to the coast of England againe, and fell our- thwarte Howe castel, but went not into the haven, & so plyed upon the coast the eight day & the ninth.

The tenth day, the winde came to the North North-west, and we were to beare roome to Flamborow head, where we came to an anchor, and there remained untill the seuenteenth day. Then the winde came fair, and we weped, and set our course North and by East, and so continued the same with a meary winde, untill the 21. at noone, at which time we tooke the Sunne, and had the latitude in 60. degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went North North-east, and North east, and by north, untill the 25. day. Then we discovered certaine Islands, called Heilick Islands, lying from us north-east, being in the latitude of 66. degrees, 40. minutes. Then we went north, and by West, because we would not come too nigh the land, and running that course 4. houres, we discovered, and had sight of Rost Islands, lying to the maine land of Finmarke. Here the Sunne continueth in sight above the horizon, almost 2. moneths together, day and night. Thus continuing our course along the coast of Norway, and Finland, the 27. day we tooke the Sunne, being as far shot as Loofoote, and had the latitude in 69. degrees. And the same day in the afternoone appeared over our heads a raine bowe, like a semicircle, with both ends upward. Note that there is betwixt the said Rost Islands, and Loofoote, a whirle poole, called Malestrand, which from halfe ebbe, untill halfe flood, maketh such a terrible noise, that it shaketh the rings in the doores of the inhabitants of the said Islands, ten miles off. Also if there commeth any Whale within the current of the same, they make a pitifull cry. Moreover, if great trees be carried into it by force of streames, & after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends & boughes of them have bene so beaten, that they are like the stalkes of hemp that is husht. Note, that all the coast of Finmarke is high mountains, and hills, being covered all the yeere with snowe. And hard about the shoare of this coast, there is 100. or 150. fadoms of water in depth. Thus proceeding and sailing forward, we fell with an Island, called Zenam, being in latitude of 70. degrees. About this Island, we saw many Whales, very monstrous, about our shippes, some by estimation of 60. foote long: and being the impending time, they roared and cried terribly. From thence we fell with an Island, called Kettelwicke. This coast from Rost unto Loofoote, lieth north & south, and from Loofoote to Zenam, north-east & south-west, and from Zenam to Kettelwicke, east north-east, & west south-west. From the said Kettelwicke we sailed east & by north 10. leagues, & fell with a land, called Inger sound, where we stither, being becalmed, & tooke great plenty of Cods. Thus plying along the coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the northermost land that we passe in our voyage to S. Nicholas, and is in the latitude of 71. degrees, & 10. minutes, and is from Inger sound East, and to the northwards 15. leagues. And being at this North Cape the 2. day of July, we had the sunne at north 4. degrees above the Horizon. The 3. day we came to Wardhouse, having such mists that we could not see the land. This Wardhouse is a Cattle standing in an Island 2. miles from the maine of Finland, subject to the king of Denmarke, & the Eastermost land that he hath. There are 2. other Islands next adjoining unto that, whereon the Cattle of Wardhouse standeth. The inhabitants of those 3. Islands live onely by fishing, & make much Stockfish, which they dry with frost: their most feeding is fish-bread, and drinke they have none, but such as is brought them from other places. They have small hope of cattell, which are also few with us. From Wardhouse we sailed south fourteenth leagues, & fell with a Cape of land called Keger, the northermost part of the land of Lappia. And betwixt Wardhouse, & the said Cape, is a great Bay, called Dommes haff, in the south part whereof is a Monastrie of Monkens, of the Russes religion, called Peechinchow. Thus proceeding forward, and sailing along the coast of the same land of Lappia, following South-east, the tenth

June.

Westish Islands in 66. deg. 40. min.  
Rost Islands.

A strange whirle poole.

Marcticke Islands.

Inger sound.

Wardhouse.

Cattell from  
with fish.

The Monastrie of  
the Monkens.

os, where she remained one tide,  
 God be praised,  
 os, and that tide went as fast as  
 the next: And about five of the  
 morn, and bare cleare of the mist,  
 being then cleare of Yarmouth  
 buick, untill the first of June  
 at noone: then the winde came  
 and caped North North-east, and  
 till the third day at noone: then  
 court, and so continued our way  
 which time the winde bered to the  
 the seventh day in the morning,  
 ros: and then the winde came  
 England againe, and fell over  
 the coast the eight day of the ninth,  
 we forced to beare rounder  
 untill the seuenteenth day,  
 North and by East, and so continu-  
 y time we tooke the Summe, and  
 the North North-east, and North  
 Islands, called Heilick Islands,  
 sixe. Then we went north and  
 west that course 4. houres, we  
 of Finmarke. Here the Summe  
 day and night. Thus continuing  
 we tooke the Summe, being as far  
 the day in the afternoon appeared  
 ward. Note that there is betwix  
 strand, which from halfe ebbe, is  
 in the doopes of the inhabitants  
 by Whale within the current of  
 into it by force of streames, & it  
 have bene fo beaten, that they are  
 of Finmarke is high mountains,  
 to the shoare of this coast, there is  
 ling forward, we fell with an Is-  
 land, we saw many Whales,  
 long: and bring the ingending  
 land, called Kettelwicke. This  
 ore to Zenam, north-east & south-  
 west. From the said Kettelwicke  
 our sound, where we lye, being  
 coast, we fell with a Cape, called  
 topage to S. Nicholas, and is in  
 East, and to the northward 15.  
 of the Summe at north 4. degrees  
 which mist that we could not see the  
 S from the maine of Finland, sub-  
 There are 2. other Islands next  
 1. The inhabitants of that 3. Is-  
 land with frost: their most feeding  
 is from other place. They doe  
 use the fatter South south-east cor-  
 ner of the land of Lappia. And be-  
 comes half, in the south part where  
 whichow. Thus proceeding  
 South-west, the fourth  
 day

day, though great mists and dar knes, we lost the companie of the other three shippes, and met not  
 with them againe, untill the 7. day, when we fell with a Cape of headland, called Succinose,  
 which is the entering into the Bay of S. Nicholas. At this Cape lieth a great Stone, to the which the  
 barks that passe thereby, were wont to make offerings of butter, meale, and other victuals, thin-  
 king that unless they did so, their barks or vessels shoulde there perish, as it hath bene often-  
 times seen: and there it is very darke & mistie. Note, that the 6. day we passed by the place where  
 Sir Hugh Willoughbie, with all his companie perished, which is called Arzina reca, that is to  
 say, the river Arzina. The land of Lappia is an high land, having Snow lying on it commonly all  
 the yere. The people of the Countrey are halfe Gentiles: they lue in the summer time neere  
 the Sea Shore, and use to take fish, of the which they make bread, and in the winter they remove up  
 into the Countrey into the woods, where they use hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Woolues,  
 Foxes, and other beastes, with whose flesh they be nourished, and with their skimes apparelled in  
 such strange fashion, that there is nothing seeme of them bare, but their eyes. They have none other  
 habitation, but onely in tents, removing from place to place, according to the season of the yere.  
 They know no arte nor facultie, but onely shooting, which they exercise daily, as well men, as  
 women, and kill such beastes as strue them for their foode. Thus proceeding along the coast, from  
 Succinose aloft, the 9. day of July, we came to Cape Grace, being in the latitude of 66. de-  
 grees, and 45. minutes, and is at the entering in of the Bay of S. Nicholas. About this land, there  
 is 20. or 30. fadoms water, and sundry grounds good to anker in. The current at this Cape  
 runneth South-west, and North-east. From this Cape we proceeded along, untill we came to  
 Croffe Island, which is seven leagues from the said Cape South-west: and from this Island, we  
 ste over to the other side of the Baye, and went south south-west, and fell with an headland, called  
 Socrnose, which is from the said Island 25. leagues. The entering of this Baye from Croffe Is-  
 land to the nearest land on the other side is seven leagues our. From Socrnose proceeding for-  
 ward the twelfth day of the said month of July, all our four shippes arrived in safetie at the roabe  
 of Saint Nicholas, in the land of Russia, where we anchored, and had sapled from London unto  
 the sayde roabe seven hundred and fiftie leagues. The Russian Ambassadour and his companie  
 with great joy gotte to shope, and our shippes here forthwith discharged themselves: and being ta-  
 ken againe, and having a faire winde, departed towarde England the first of August. The third  
 of the sayde month I with other of my companie came unto the cite of Colmogro, being an hun-  
 dred verles from the Bay of Saint Nicholas, and in the latitude of 64. degrees, 25. minutes. I  
 carried at the sayd Colmogro untill the fiftenth day: and then I departed in a litle boate by the  
 great river of Dwina, which runneth very swiftly, and the selfe same day passed by the mouth of  
 a river called Pinego, leaving it on our left hand betwene verles from Colmogro. On both sides  
 of the mouth of this river Pinego is high land, great rocks of Alabastr, great woods, and Pyne-  
 aples lying along within the ground, which by report have lyeu there since Noes flood. And  
 thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning, I came into a towne called Ycimps,  
 an hundred verles from Colmogro. All this way along they make much tarre, pitch and ashes  
 of Aspen trees. From thence I came to a place called Vltiug, an ancient cite the last day of Au-  
 gust. At this cite meete two rivers: the one called Iug, and the other Succana, both which fall in-  
 to the aforesaid river of Dwina. The river of Iug hath his spring in the land of the Tartars cal-  
 led Chereimich, toping to the countrey of Permia: and Succana hath his head from a lake not  
 farre from the cite of Vologhda. Thus departing from Vltiug, & passing by the river Succana,  
 we came to a towne called Toerna. About this place the water is very shallow, and stonie, & trou-  
 ble some for Barks and boates of that countrey, which they call Nassades, and Dolneckes, to passe  
 the way: wherein marchandise are transported from the aforesaid Colmogro to the cite of Vo-  
 loghda. These vessels called Nassades, are very long builded, hwoade made, and close above, flate  
 bottoned, and have not above foure foote water, and will carrie two hundred tunnes: they have  
 none yron appertaining to them but all of timber, and when the winde ferueth, they are made to  
 sape. Other wise they have many men, some to hale and dyane by the neckes with long small  
 ropes made fast to the fatter boates, and some set with long poles. There are many of these Barks  
 upon the river of Dwina: And the most part of them be longerth unto the cite of Vologhda: for  
 there dwell many marchants, and they occupie the sayde boates with carrying of sale from the  
 Sea Shore unto the sayde Vologhda. The twentieth of September I came unto Vologhda, which  
 is a great cite, and the river passeth through the midst of the same. The houses are builded with  
 wood of f fire trees, joyned one within another, and round without: the houses are foure square  
 without any yron or stone work, covered with birch Barkes, and wood over the same: Their  
 Churches are all of wood, two for every parish, one to be heared for Winter, and the other for  
 Sommer.

Arzina reca  
 the river where  
 Sir Hugh  
 Willoughby  
 was trozen.

The Lappia  
 and covered  
 all sauing the  
 open.

The Current  
 at Cape Grace

The entering of  
 the Bay of S.  
 Nicholas is  
 seven leagues  
 broad at the  
 least.

August.

Dwina river.

The towne of  
 Ycimps.

Vltiug.

The description  
 of their  
 Nassades.

**Summer.**

On the toppes of their houses they laye much earth, for feare of burning: for they are here plagued with fire. This Vologhda is in 59. degrees, 11. minutes, and is from Colmogro, 1000. versts.

Good counsell  
for travellers.

All the way I neuer came in house, but lodged in the wilderness, by the rivers side, and carried provision for the way. And he that will travell those waies, must carry with him an hatchet, a tinder boxe, and a kettle, to make fire, and seeke meate, when he hath it: for there is small succour in those parts, unless it be in towne.

December,

The first day of December, I departed from Vologhda, in posse in a sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscua is as followeth. From Vologhda to Commelski, 27. versts, to Olmor 25. versts, to Teloytske, 20. versts, to Vo 30. versts, to Volhansko, 30. versts, then to Yerallau, 30. versts, which standeth upon the great riuer Volga, so to Rollov, 50. versts, then to Rogarin, 30. versts, so to Perallau, 10. versts, which is a great towne, standing hard by a faire lake. From thence to Dowbnaye, 30. versts, so to Godoroke, 30. versts, so to Owchay, 30. versts, and last to the Musko, 25. versts, where I arrived the first day of December.

There are 14. posts, called Yannes, betwene Vologhda, and Musko, which are accomped 500. versts asunder.

The 10. day of December, I was sent for to the Emperours Castle, by the saide Emperour, and delivered my letters vnto the Secretarie, who talked with me of diuers matters, by the commandement of the Emperour. And after that my letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would giue me that I desired.

The 25. day, being the day of the natiuitie, I came into the Emperours presence, and kisse his hande, who sat aloft in a goodly chaire of estate, hauing on his heade a crowne most richly bekket, and a staffe of golde in his hande, all apparelled with golde, and garnished with precious stones.

There sat distant from him about two partes his brother, and next vnto him a boye of such peeres of age, who was inheritor to the Emperour of Casan, conquered by this Emperour 8. yeeres past. Then sat his nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with golde, and stone. And after I had done obeisance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling me by my name, bade me to dinner, and so I departed to my lodging, till dinner time, which was at fixe of the clocke, by candle light.

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the middell whereof was a pillar four square, very artificially made, about which were diuers tables set, and at the hypermost part of the Hall, sat the Emperour himselfe, & at his table sat his brother, his Uncles sonne, the Spersopolitane, the young Emperour of Casan, and diuers of his noble men, all of one side. There were diuers Ambassadors, & other strangers, as well Christians, as Heathens, diuersly apparelled, to the number of 600. men, which dined in the said hal, besides 2000. Tartars, men of war, which were newly come to render themselves to the Emperour, and were appointed to serue him in his warres, against the Lysslanders, but they dined in other hals. I was set at a litle table, hauing no strange with me, directly before the Emperours face. Being thus set, and placed, the Emperour sent me diuers boles of wine, and meade, & many dishes of meate from his owne hand, which were brought me by a Duke, and my table serued all in golde, and siluer, and so like wise on other tables, there were set boles of golde, set with stone, worth by estimation 400. pounds sterling one cup, besides the plate which serued the tables.

There was also a Cupboard of plate, most sumptuous, and rich, which was not used: among the which, was a peece of golde, of two partes long, wrought in the toppe with Towers, and Dragons heades, also diuers barrels of golde, and siluer, with Castles on the bunges, richly, and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout, was serued with Dukets: and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue mee drinke with his owne hande, and so I departed to my lodging.

Note, that when the Emperour drinkech, all the companie stande by, and at every time, he drinkech or tasteth of a sibe of meate, he blessing himselfe. Many other things I sawe that day, not here noted.

The 4. of Ianuarie, which was Twelstide with them, the Emperour, with his brother, and all his Nobles, all most richly apparelled with gold, pearles, precious stones, & costly furrer, with



ce of burning: for they are the  
uts, and is from Colmogro,

ness, by the rivers side, and  
must carry with him an ho  
he hath it: for there is small

in a sled, as the manner is in  
la to Commelski, 27. besides  
berkes, so to Voskanko, 30.  
reat river Volga, so to Rossow,  
which is a great towne, and  
to Godoroke, 30. besides, so  
I arrived the first day at Do

Musko, which are accompan

Castle, by the same Emperour,  
of diuers matters, by the com-  
mander, I was answered that I  
d.

erours presence, and killed his  
rade a crowne most richly be-  
and garnished with precious

next vnto him a bove of tinsel  
ed by this Emperour 8. peeces  
h golde, and stone. And after I  
ng me by my name, bade me to  
s at five of the clocke, by candle

reaf was a pillar foure square,  
the uppermost part of the Wall,  
les some, the Metropolitan,  
one side. There were diuers  
quertly apparelled, to the num-  
men of war, which were new  
to serue him in his warres, a  
table, having no strange  
plated, the Emperour sent me  
one hand, which were brought  
the table on other tables, three  
ands sterling one cup, besides

which was not used: among  
the coppe with Towers, and  
Castles on the dungs, richly  
out, was serued with Dukers:  
e, and gaue mee drinke with

lande up, and at every time,  
p other things I saw that day.

perour, with his brother, and  
his sones, & costly surtes, with

a crowne upon his head, of the Tartarian fashion, went to the Church in procession, with the Metropolitan, and diuers bishops, and priests. That day I was before the Emperour again, in Russe apparel, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chancelor answered yea. Then he bade me to dinner: then came he out of the Church, and went with the procession upon the river, being all frozen, and there standing bare headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the ice, and the Metropolitan halloved the water with great solemnitie, and seruice, and did cast of the said water upon the Emperours sone, and the Nobilitie. That done, the people with great thumping filled pots of the said water, to carry home to their houses, and diuers children were shoven in, and sicke people, and plucked out quickly againe, and diuers Tartars christened: all which the Emperour beheld. Also there were brought the Emperours best horses, to drinke at the said halloved water. All this being ended, he returned to his palace againe, and went to dinner by candle light, and sat in a wooden house, very fairely gilt. There dined in the place, aboue 300. strangers, and I sat alone as I did before, directly before the Emperour, and had my meat, bread, and drinke sent me from the Emperour.

The citie of Musko is great, the houses for the most part of wood, and some of stone, with windows of yon, which serue for summer time. There are many faire Churches of stone, but moze of wood, which are made hot in the winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire, and large castle, welled foure square of bricke, high, and thicke, situated vpon a hill, two miles about, and the river on the South-west side of it, and is hath 16. gates in the walls, and as many bulwarks. His palace is separated from the rest of the Castle, by a long wall going north and south, to the river side. In his palace are Churches, some of stone, and some of wood, with round towers, fairely gilted. In the Church doores, and within the Churches, are images of golde: the chiefe markets for all things, are within the faide Castle, and for sundry things, sundry markets, and euery science by it self. Also in the winter there is a great market without the Castle, vpon the river being frozen, and there is sold corne, earthen pots, tubs, sleds, &c. The Castle is in circuite 2900. paces.

The countie is full of marsh ground, and plaine, in woods and rivers abundant, but it bringeth forth good plenty of corne. This Emperour is of great power: for he hath conquered much, as well the Lyflanders, Poles, Lettos, and Swethens, as also of the Tartars, and Gentiles, called Samoydes, hauing thereby much enlarged his dominions. He keepeth his people in great subiection: all matters passe his iudgement, be they neuer so small. The lawe is sharpe for all offenders.

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of religion, as himselfe liueth, whome the Emperour greatly honoureth. They vse the ceremonies, and orders of the Greeke Church. They worship many images, painted on tables, and specially the image of S. Nicholas. Their Priests be married, but their wives being dead, they may not marrie the second time, and so become Spouzes, whereof there are a great number in the land.

They haue foure Lentis in the yere, and the weeke before Wholside, they call the Winter weeke, &c.

They haue many sortes of meates and drinkes, when they banquet, and delight in eating of grasse meates, and stinking fishe. Before they drinke, they vse to blowe in the cup: their greatest kindness is in drin king: they are great talkers, & liers, without any faith or trust in their words, flatters, and dissimblers. The women be there very obedient to their husbands, and are kept straight from going abroad, but at some seasons.

As my being there, I heard of men, and women, that drunke away their children, and all their goods, at the Emperours tauerne, and not being able to pay, hauing impaired himselfe, the Tauerne bringeth him out to the high way, and beates him vpon the legges: then they that pass by, knowing the cause, and hauing peraduenture compassion vpon him, giueth the moule, and so he is ransomed.

In every good towne, there is a drunken Tauerne, called a Cursemay, which the Emperour sometime leaueh out to farms, & sometimes bestoweth for a yere or two on some Duke or Gentleman, in recompence of his seruice: and for that time he is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and spoiling, and doing what pleaseth him: and then he being growen ricke, is taken by the Emperour, and sent to the warres againe, where he shall spend all that which he hath gotten by all meanes: so that the Emperour in his warres is little charged, but all the burden lieth vpon the poore people.

They vse tables made of wood and tinnes, with the tree gilded w darsafke wood, and the seats covered with cloth, sometimes of golde, and the rest Saphian leather, well sturched. They vse little dynners at their table bowes, by the sound whereof, their horses vse to runne more swiftly.

The Russe is apparelled in this manner: his upper garment is of cloth of golde, silke, or cloth, long, to come to the foot, and buttoned with great buttons of silver, or els laces of silke, set on with brooches,

byooches, the sleeves thereof very long, which he weareth on his arme, ruffed by. Under that he hath another long garment, buttoned with silke buttons, with a high collar standing up of some colour, and that garment is made straight. Then his shirt is very fine, and wrought with red silke, or some gold, with a collar of pearle. Under his shirt he hath linnen breeches, upon his legges, a paire of hose without feet, & his bootes of red or yellow leather. On his head he weareth a white Colepecke, with buttons of silver, gold, pearle, or none, and under it a blacke Foxe cap, turned by very broad.

When he rideth on horse backe to the warres, or any journey, he hath a sword of the Turkish fashion, and his bowe and arrowes of the same manner. In the colde he weareth no weapon, but one or two or three paire of knives, having the hatts of the tooth of a fish, called the Horse.

In the Winter time, the people trauell with sleds, in Colvne and Countrey, the way being hard, and smooth with snow: the waters and riuers are all frozen, and one horse with a sled, will carry a man upon it 400. miles, in three daies: but in the Summer time, the way is deepe with mire, and traueilling is very ill.

The Russe, if he be a man of any abilitie, neuer goeth out of his house in the Winter, but upon his sled, and in Summer upon his horse: and in his sled he lies upon a carpet, or a white Beares skinne: the sled is drawn with a horse well decked, with many Foxes and Woodues tailed at his necke, & is conducted by a little boy upon his backe: his seruants stand upon the tail of the sled, &c.

**The voyage, wherein Osepp Napea the Moscouite Ambassadour, returned home into his Countrey with his entertainment at his arriuall, at Colmogro: and a large description of the manners of the Countrey.**



Twelth of Maye, in the yeere of our Lorde, 1567. there departed from Grauesende, foure good shippes well appointed for Marchants, which were presently bound into the Baye of S. Nicholas in Russia, with which shippes was transported, or carried home, one Osepp Gregoriwiche Napea, who had sent Messenger from the Emperour, and Great Duke of Moscouia. The four shippes were these, whose names followe, viz.

The Primerose Admirall,

The John Euangelist Admirall,

The Anne, and the Trinitie Attendants.

The 13. of July, the foresaide foure shippes came to an anchor in the Baye of S. Nicholas, before an Abbey, called the Abbey of S. Nicholas, whereas the saide Messenger, Osepp Gregoriwiche Napea, went a shore, and as many English men as came to serue the Emperour, trained with him at the Abbey for the space of five daies, until he had gotten all his chings a shore, and laden the same in Barkes, to goe by the riuer Dwina, vnto Vologhda, which is by water 1000. verstes, and euery verste is about three quarters of an English mile.

These beets in Russia, are all for the most part of beets alone.

The 30. of July, we departed from S. Nicholas, and the 24. of the same, we came to Colmogro, where we remained eight daies: and the saide Messenger was there of all his acquaintance welcommed home, and had presents innumerable sent vnto him, but it was nothing but meate and drinke. Some sent white bread, some rye bread, and some buttered bread and pancakes, beefe, mutton, bacon, egges, butter, fishes, swannes, geese, ducks, hennes, and all manner of victuals, both fish, and flesh, in the best manner, that the rude people could deuise: for among them, these presents are highly esteemed.

The 29. of July, we departed from Colmogro, and the 14. of August we came to Vlioug, where we remained one day, and changed our barkes, or boates.

The 27. of August, we came to Vologhda, where we remained foure daies, loading the barkes, and lading our cheders and chings in small waggons, with one horse in a peere, which in their tongue are called Telegos, and with these Telegoes, they carried our stuffe from Vologhda vnto the Musko, which is 700. verstes: and we were upon the same way 24. daies: for we went no faster then the Telegoes.

The cities of Boghara.

There are three great townes betwene the Musko, and Vologhda, that is to say, Yrehsae, Rostae, & Pereslaue. Upon one side of Yrehsaue, runneth a famous riuer, which is called Volga. It runneth into the Caspian sea, and it deuiderh it selfe, before it come into the Mare Caspian, in 50. parts, or more, and nere vnto the same sea, there stands a great Citie, called Boghara, the inhabitants of the which, are called by the same name.

The people of the saide Citie, doe traffike into the Citie of Musko: their commodities are

armie, ruffed by. Under that he  
high collar standing up of some  
fine, and wrought with red silk,  
in breeches, upon his legges,  
On his head he weareth a white  
it is a blacke foye cap, turned up

he hath a sword of the Turkish  
whome he weareth no weapon, but  
a fiske, called the *Hopie*.

and Countrey, the way being  
a, and one horse with a sled, till  
er time, the way is deepe with

house in the Winter, but upon  
upon a carpet, or a white Beeres  
fores and Woodens tables at his  
stand upon the tail of the sleds,

the Moscouite Amba-  
his entertainment at  
on of the manners

the, 1567, there departed from  
ated for *Barchanes*, which were  
in Russia, with which *Shippes*  
*Gregoriwiche Napea*, who had  
eat Duke of Moscouia. The same

er in the Baye of S. Nicholas, by  
the *Westinger*, *Osepp Gregorie*  
to serve the Emperour, which  
had gotten all his things a horse,  
to *Vologhda*, which is by water  
English male.

4. of the same, we came to *Col-*  
*inger* was there of all his accom-  
into him, but it was nothing but  
some buttered bread and panakes,  
les, hennes, and all manner of victu-  
but to deuide: for among them, *Shit*

of August we came to *Vlioug*,  
remained foure daies, including the  
with one horse in a peece, which  
carried our stuffe from *Vologhda*  
same way 14. daies: for we went

*Vologhda*, that is to say, *Y crehac*,  
famous river, which is called *Vol-*  
the it come into the *Mare Caspian*,  
a great Citie, called *Boghare*, the

of Musko: their commodities are  
Spices,

hines, and the ambergreese, turbarbe with other drugs. They bring also many fures which they  
buy in Siberia comming towards the Mosko, the said people are of the sect of *Phahom*.

The 12. of September we came vnto the citie of Mosko, where we were brought by *Napea*, <sup>They arrive</sup>  
and two of the Emperours gentlemen vnto a large house, where euery one of vs had his chamber <sup>at Mosko.</sup>  
appointed.

The 14. of September we were commanded to come vnto the Emperour, and immediately af-  
ter our comming we were brought into his presence, vnto whom each of vs did his dutie accor-  
dingly, and with his right hand, his maiestie sitting in his chaire of estate, with his crowne on his  
head, and a staffe of goldsmiths worke in his left hand well garnished with rich and costly stones,  
and when we had all kised his hand and done our duties, his maiestie did declare by his interpreter  
that we were all welcome vnto him, and vnto his countrey, and thereupon tolled vs to dine with  
him: that day we gave thanks vnto his maiestie, and so departed vntill the dinner was ready.

When dinner time approached, we were brought againe into the Emperours dining chamber,  
where we were set on one side of a table that stood ouer against the Emperours table, to the ende  
that he might well behold vs all: and when we came into the foze said chamber, we found there re-  
arrested their tables following.

First at the upper end of one table were set the Emperour his maiestie, his brother, and the Em-  
perour of Cassan, which is prisoner. About two yardes lower sate the Emperour of Cassan his  
son, being a child of five yeres of age, and beneath him sate the most part of the Emperours no-  
ble men.

And at another table neere vnto the Emperours table, there was set a monke all alone, which  
was in all points as well serued as the Emperour. At another table sate another kind of people cal-  
led *Chirkalles*, which the Emperour entertained for men of warre to serue against his enemies. Of  
which people one of their countrey, I will hereafter make mention.

All the tables aforesaid were couered onely with salt and bread, and after that we had streen a  
white, the Emperour sent vnto euery one of vs a peece of bread, which were given, and deliuered  
vnto euery man seuerally by these words: The Emperour and great Duke giueth thee bread  
this day, and in like manner thye or foure times before dinner was ended, hee sent vnto euery man  
meade, which was giuen by these words. The Emperour and great Duke giueth thee to drinke.  
All the tables aforesaid were serued in vessels of pure and fine golde, as well basons and chens,  
platters, dishes and saucers, as also of great pots, with an innumerable sort of small drinking  
potes of diuers fashions, whereof a great number were set with stone. As for costly meates  
I haue many times serued better: but for change of wines, and diuers sortes of meads, it was won-  
derfull: for there was not left at any time so much voyd roume on the table, that one cuppe more  
might haue bene set, and as farre as I could perceiue, all the rest were in the like manner serued.

In the dinner time there came in the *Singers* which stood in the midst of the chamber, and their  
faces towards the Emperour, who sang there before dinner was ended thye seuerall times, whose  
songs of votes delighted our eares little or nothing.

The Emperour neuer putteth morsell of meate in his mouth, but he first blessed it himselfe, and  
in like manner as often as he drinketh, for after his manner he is very religious, and he esteemeth his  
religion precious above his noble men.

This dinner continued about the space of five houers, which being ended, and the tables taken  
up, we came into the midst of the chamber, where we did reuerence vnto the Emperours maiestie,  
and then he deliuered vnto euery one of vs with his owne handes a cup of mead, which when euery  
man had receiued and drunke a quantitie thereof, we were licenced to depart, and so ended that din-  
ner. And because the Emperour would haue vs to be merry, hee sent to our lodging the same *Cu-*  
*ning*, barrels of mead of sundry sortes, of the quantitie in all of one hoghead.

The 16. day of September the Emperour sent home vnto our lodging for euery of vs a Car-  
pet horse to ride from place to place as we had occasion, for that the streets of Mosko are very  
narrowe and mirie in the Summer.

The 18. of September there were giuen vnto master *Shandeth* doctor in Physike, and the rest  
of our men of our occupations, severall furred gounes of branches befox and golde, and some  
of red Damask, of which master Doctors gowne was furred with *Shables*, and the rest were  
furred some with white Ermine, and some with gray squirrel, and all faced and edged round  
about with blacke beauer.

The 1. of October in the morning we were commanded to come vnto the Emperours court, & whil-  
le we came thither, we were brought vnto the Emperour vnto whome we did our duties accordingly, when  
upon he tolled vs to dine with him that day, & so with thanks vnto his maiestie, we departed vntill  
dinner

Shandeth  
doctor of  
Physike.

dinner time, at which time we came and found the tables covered with bread and salt as at the first: and after that we were all set upon one side of the table, the Emperours maieitie according to his accustomed maner sent vnto euery man of vs a peece of bread by some of the Dukes which attended on his highnesse.

And whereas the 14. of September we were serued in vessels of gold, we were now serued in vessels of silver, and yet not so abundantly as was the first of gold: they brought drinke vnto the table in silver beles which contained at the least five gallons a peece, and euery man had a small silver cuppe to drinke in, and another to dip of to take his drinke out of the great boll withall: the dinner being ended, the Emperour gaue vnto euery one of vs a cup with mead, which when we had receiued, we gaue thanks and departed.

Howeuer, whensoeuer the Emperours pleasure is that any stranger shall dine with him, hee doth send for them in the morning, and when they come before him, hee with his owne mouth biddeth them to dinner, and this order he alwayes obserueth.

The 10. of October the Emperour gaue vnto *Ph. Scamoth* 70. rubbles in money, and to the rest of our men of occupations, 30. rubbles a peece.

The 3. of Nouember we dined againe with the Emperour, where we were serued as before.

The 6. of December being *S. Nicholas* day, wee dined againe at the Emperours, for that is one of the principall feasts which the *Moscowites* hold: we were serued in silver vessels, and spones in all points as before, and it was past 7. of the clocke at night before dinner was ended.

long dinners.

The Emperours maieitie vseth euery yeere in the month of December, to haue all his ordinance that is in the cite of Mosko carried into the fields which is without the suburbs of the cite, and there to haue it planted and bent vpon two houses of Wood filled with bin which, each a gainst which two houses, there were two faire white markes set vp, at which markes they discharge all their ordinance, to the ende the Emperour may see what his Gunners can doe. They haue faire ordinance of blasse of all sortes, balles, maultrons, minions, sakers, culuerings, rammes double and single, ballistikes long and large, they haue five great pieres whose shot is a yard or more, which shot a man may easilly discernie as they see: they haue also a great many of moxer peeces or pooguns, out of which pieres they shoot wild fire.

ordinance in Russia.

in pretty triumph.

The 12. of December the Emperours maieitie and all his nobilitie came into the field on horsebacke, in most goodly order, hauing very fine *Perimers* & *Turkie* horses garnished with gold & silver abundantly. The Emperours maieitie hauing on him a gorro of rich tulle, & a cap of feathers on his head, set not only with pearles, but also with a great number of rich and costly stones, his noble men were all in gorroes of cloth of gold, which was ride before him in good order by 3. & 3. and before them there went 5000. barquebuzers, which went by 5. and 5. in a ranke in very good order, euery of them carrying his gunne vpon his left shoulder, and his march in his right hand, and in this order they marched into the field where as the foze and ordinance was planted.

And before the Emperours maieitie came into the field, there was a certaine stage made of small poles which was a quarter of a mile long, and about three foye paces off from the stage of poles were certaine pieces of ice of two foote thicke, and five foote high set vp, which ranke of ice was as long as the stage of poles, and as soone as the Emperours maieitie came into the field, the barquebuzers went vpon the stage of poles where they setled themselves in order. And when the Emperours maieitie was setled where he would be, and where he might see all the ordinance discharged and shot of the barquebuzers began to shoot of at the banke of ice, as though it had been in any skermish of battel, who ceased not shooting, until they had beaten all the ice flat on the ground.

After the barquebuzers they shot of their wild fire vp into the aire, which was a goodly sight to behold. And after this, they began to discharge the small pieces of blasse, beginning with the smallest and so orderly bigger and bigger, until the last and biggest. When they had shot them all of, they began to charge them againe, and so shot them all of 3. times after the first order, beginning with the smallest, and ending with the greatest. And note that before they had ended their shooting, the 2. house a that they shot vnto, were beaten in pieces, and yet they were very strongly made of Wood and filled with earth, being at the least 30. foote thicke. This triumph being ended, the Emperour departed and rode home in the same order that he came forth into the field. The ordinance is discharged euery yeere in the month of December, according to the order before mentioned.

On Christmas day we were all bidden to dine with the Emperours maieitie, where for us, meat and drinke, we were serued as at other times before: but for goodly and rich place, we were set in the like of so much before. There dined that day in the Emperours presence, about 500. strangers, and two hundred *Russes*, and all they were serued in vessels of gold, and that as much as could stand one by another vpon the tables. Besides this there were foure *rapsoops* garnished with goodly

ered with bread and salt as at the  
Emperours maeticke according  
as by some of the Dukes which

of gold, we were not straid in  
to: they brought vnto the  
ere, and euery man had a small  
out of the great boll withall: the  
cup with mead, which when we

stranger shall dine with him, he  
m, bee with his owne mouth his

70. rubbles in money, and to the

where we were serued as before.  
me at the Emperours, for that is  
serued in silver vessels, and after  
dine dinner was ended.

December, to haue all his ope  
without the Suburbs of the ci  
Wood filled within with each: a  
up at which markes they discharge  
Gunners can doe. They haue late  
ers, culuerings, cannons, double  
s whose shot is a pare of leigh  
is a great many of moxer piers

blitic came into the field on both  
horses garnished with gold & sil  
one of rich attire, & a cap of haire  
der of rich and costly stones, he  
him in good order by 3, & 3, and  
and 5, in a ranke in very good  
his march in his right hand, and in  
ance was plainer.

re was a certaine stage made of  
scope parden off from the stage  
ee high set vp, which ranke of  
urs maeticke came into the field, &  
emistues in order. And when the  
be might see all the ordinance  
mke of ice, as though it had bene  
aten all the ice flat on the ground.

, which was a goodly sight to be  
hale, beginning with the smallest  
hen they had shot them all of, they  
der the first order, beginning with  
hey had ended their shooting, the  
ere very strongly made of Wood  
amp being ended, the Emperour  
to the field. The ordinance is the  
e order before mentioned.

perours maeticke, where for  
goodly and rich place, we saw  
perours presence about 500. str  
ble of gold, and that as much  
re soure cupboards garnish with  
goodly

goodly place both of gold and silver, Among the which there were 12 barrels of silver, containing  
about 12 gallons a piece, and at each end of euery barrell were 6. hoopcs of fine gold: this dinner  
continued about 6. houers.

Euery pce vpon the twelue day they vse to blisse or sanctifie the riuer Moska, which runneth  
through the cite of Moskouia, after this maner.

First, they make a square hole in the ice about 3. fadoms large euery way, which is trimmed a  
bout the sides and edges with white hoopcs, Then about 9. of the clocke they come out of the church  
with procession towards the riuer in this wise.

First and foremost there goe certaine yong men with Waxe tapers burning, and one carry-  
ing a great lantern: then follow certaine baimers, then the crosse, then the images of our Ladi-  
e, of S. Nicholas, and of other Saints, which images men carrie vpon their shoulders: after the  
images follow certaine pyeists to the number of 100. more: after them the Metropolitan who  
is betwene two pyeists, and after the Metropolitan came the Emperour with his crowne vpon  
his head, and after his maeticke all his noble men orderly. Thus they followe the procession vnto  
the water, & when they came vnto the hole that was made, the pyeists set themselves in order round  
about it. And at one side of the same poole there was a scaffold of hoopcs made, vpon which stood a  
faire chaire in which the Metropolitan was set, but the Emperours maeticke stood vpon the ice.

After this the pyeists began to sing, to blisse and to senie, and did their seruice, and so by that  
time that they had done, the water was holy, which being sanctified, the Metropolitan toke a li-  
tle thereof in his handes, and call it on the Emperour, likewise vpon certaine of the Dukes, and  
then they returned againe to the church with the pyeists that saie about the water: but y<sup>e</sup> pyeist that  
there was about the water when the Emperour was gone, was wonderful to behold, for there came  
about 5000. pots to be filled of that water: for that Spouse which hath no part of that water,  
thinks himselfe unhappy.

And very many went naked into the water, both men and women and children: after the p<sup>r</sup>ese  
was a litle gone, the Emperours Tenets and hoyses were brought to drinke of the same water,  
and likewise many other men brought their hoyses thither to drinke, and by that means they make  
their hoyses as holy as themselves.

All these ceremonies being ended, we went to the Emperour to dinner, where we were serued  
in vessels of silver, and in all other points as we had bene before time.

The Russes begin their Lent alwaies 8. weekes before Easter: the first weeke they eate egges,  
milk, cheere & butter, and make great cheare with pancakes and such other things, one friend vi-  
siting another, & from the same Sunday until our Shyoflunday, there are but few Russes sober,  
but they are drunke day by day, and it is accounted for no reproch or shame among them.

The next weeke being our first weeke of Lent, or our cleansing weeke, beginning our Shyof-  
lunday, they make and keepe a great fast. It is reported, and the people doe verily beleue, that the  
Metropolitan neether eatech no drinke any maner of thing for the space of seuen dayes, and they  
say that there are many religious men which do the like.

The Emperours maeticke eatech but one morsell of bread, and drinkech but one draught of  
drinke once in the day during that weeke, and all men that are of any reputation come not out of  
their houses during that time, so that the streets are almost void of company, sauing a few poore  
folkes which wander to and fro. The other six weeke they keepe as we do ours, but not one of  
them will eate either butter, cheere, egges or milke.

On Palme Sunday they haue a very solemne procession in this maner following.

First, they haue a tree of a good bignesse which is made fast vpon two trees, as though it were  
growing there, and it is banded with apples, raisins, figs and dates, and with many other frutes a-  
bundantly. In the midst of the same tree stand 7. hoyses in white vestures, which sing in the tree be-  
fore the procession: after this there followed certaine yong men with waxe tapers in their hands burn-  
ing, and a great lantern that all the light should not goe out: after them followed two with long  
baimers, and 6. with round plates set vpon long staves: the plates were of copper very full of holes  
and thimber then followed 6. carrying painted images vpon their shoulders, after the images follow  
certaine pyeists to the number of 100. more, with goodly vestures, where of 10. or 12. are of white  
waxe, set and imbrodered round about with faire and orient pearles, as great as pease, and a-  
mong them certaine Sophites and other stones. After them followed the one halfe of the Empe-  
ours noble men: then commeth the Emperours maeticke and the Metropolitan, after this maner.

First there is a horse covered with white linnen cloth down to the ground, his eares being made  
long with the same cloth like to an asses eares. Vpon this horse the Metropolitan sitteth sitting  
the a woman in his lappe lieth a faire booke, with a crucifix of Goldsmiths worke vpon the cover,

The hallow-  
ing of the riuer  
of Moska.

The Russes  
Lent.

which he holdeth fast with his left hand, and in his right hand he hath a crosse of gold, with which crosse he ceaseth not to bless the people as he rideth.

There are to the number of 30. men which spread abroad their garments before the horse, and as soone as the horse is past ouer any of them, they take them vp againe and run before, and spread them againe, so that the horse doth alway go on some of them. They which spread the garments are all pyests somes, and for their labours, the Emperour giueth vnto them new garments.

One of the Emperours noble men leadeth the horse by the head, but the Emperour himselfe goyng on foote, leadeth the horse by the ende of the reine of his bydle with one of his hands, and in the other of his handes he had a bryanch of a Palme tree: after this followed the rest of the Emperours Noble men and Gentlemen, with a great number of other people. In this order they went from one church to another within the castle, about the distaunce of two sightes shot: and so returned agayne to the Emperours Church, where they made an end of their seruice. Which being done, the Emperours maiestie and certaine of his noble men, went to the Pteropolitane his house to dimer, where of delicate fishes and good wyne there was no lacke.

The rest of this weeke vntill Easter day they keepe very solemnely, continuing in their houses for the most part, and vpon Sunday or Thursday the Emperour doth alwayes vse to receiue the Sacrament, and so doth most parte of his nobles.

Vpon good Friday they continue all the day in contemplation and prayers, and they vse euery yeere on good Friday to let loose a prisoner in the stead of Barrabas. The night folowing they go to the church where they sleepe vntil the next morning, & at Easter they haue the resurrection, and after euery of the Lentes they eate flesh, the next weeke folowing Friday, Saturday and all.

They haue an order at Easter which they alwayes obserue, and that is this: euery yeere against Easter to dye of colour red with Byzell a great number of egges, of which euery man and woman giueth one vnto the pyest of their Parish vpon Easter day in the morning. And moreover the common people vse to carrie in their hands one of these red egges, not onely vpon Easter day, but also thre or foure dayes after, and Gentlemen and Gentlewomen haue egges gilded which they carrie in like maner. They vse it as they say for a great loue, and in token of the resurrection, whereof they reioyce. For when two friends meete during the Easter holydayes, they come and take one another by the hand: the one of them saith, the Lord, or Christ is risen, the other answereth, it is so of a crueth, and then they kisse and exchange their egges both men and women, continuing in kissing 4. dayes together.

The 12. of Aprill being Tuesday in the Easter weeke, master Jenkinson and master Gray, and certaine other of vs Englishmen dined with the Emperour, where we were secured as we haue bene before time. And after dimer the Emperours maiestie gaue vnto master Jenkinson and vnto M. Gray, and so openly vnto euery one of vs a cuppe of meate, according to his accustomed maner, which when euery man had receiued and giuen thanks, M. Jenkinson stepped into the middle of the chamber before the Emperours maiestie, and gaue thanks to his highnes for his goodnesse vnto him extended, desiring his grace to licence him for to depart, and in like maner did M. Gray. His maiestie did not onely licence them to depart, but also graunted vnto M. Jenkinson his letters vnder his great seale, vnto all princes throughe whose dominions M. Jenkinson should haue occasion to pass, that he might the sooner & quietlier passe by meanes thereof. Which being graunted, M. Jenkinson and Gray lowly submitted themselves, thanking his maiestie. So the Emperour gaue vnto eicher of them a cup of meate to drinke, and willed them to depart at their pleasure in Gods peace.

The 14. of Aprill in the morning when M. Gray and I were ready to depart towards England, the Chancellours sent vnto vs, and willed vs to come to their office in the Chancerie, where at our comming they showed vs a great number of the Emperours ietwels, and rich robes, willing vs to marke and behold them well, to the ende that at our arriual into England, we might make report what we had seene there.

The chiefest was his maiesties crowne, being close vnder the top very faire wrought: in mine opinion, the workmanship of so much gold few men can amend. It was adorned and decked with rich and precious stones aboundantly, among the which one was a rubie, which stood a handfull higher then the top of the crowne vpon a small tier, it was as big as a good beane: the same crowne was lined with a faire blacke Sable, worth by report 40. rubbies.

We saw all his maiesties robes which were very richly set with stones, they showed vs many of the great stones of diuers kinds, but the most parte of the were breuen, in maner as they came out of the wycke, for they do moxe esteeme the greatnes of stones, then they do the proportion of them.

We sawe two goodly gowmes which were as beaute as a man could easily carrie, all set with pearles ouer & ouer the gardes of hodyers round about them were garnished with sapphires and other

The Emperour  
leadeth the  
Siberian  
into his  
procecion.

Kissing used in  
the Grecke  
church.

With these  
letters M. Jen-  
kinson took  
his voyage the  
same 12. of  
to Moscow.

The Emper-  
ours wardrobe.

such a crosse of gold, with which

garmentes before the host, and  
again and run before, and spyn  
up which spyn the garmentes are  
them new garmentes,

and, but the Emperour himselfe  
toke with one of his handes, and  
this followed the rest of the Em-  
perour people. In this order they  
number of two flights that: and so  
in end of their seruice. Which he  
went to the Metropolitane his  
s, went to lacke.

namely, continuing in their houses  
toe both alwayes vnto to receive the

and papers, and they vse rus-  
trabas. The night following they  
after they haue the resurrexiō, and  
Friday, Saturday and all.

that is this: euery yeere against  
s, of which euery man and wo-  
in the morning. And moreover  
egges, not onely vpon Easter day,  
women haue egges gilded which  
e, and in token of the resurrexiō  
the Easter holypayes, they come  
vnto, of Chull is risen, the other  
their egges both men and women,

Mr. Jenkinson and master Gray,  
where we were serued as we haue  
vnto master Jenkinson and vnto  
copying to his accustomed maner,  
Jenkinson stepped into the midst of the  
fignes for his goodnesse vnto him  
he maner vnto M. Gray. His man-  
er. Jenkinson his letters vnto: his  
son should haue occasion to pass,  
which being granted, M. Jenkinson  
do the Emperour gaue vnto eith-  
er pleasure in Gods peare.

redie to depart to wards England,  
office in the Chancerie, where at  
s iewels, and rich robes, willing  
ll into England, we might make

top very faire wrought: in mine  
It was adorned and becket with  
s a rubie, which stood a handfull  
ig as a good beanceth the same crown

with stones, they thewed vs many  
newen, in maner as they came out  
in they do the proportion of them.  
an could easily carrie, all the  
garnished with sapphires and other  
good

good stones abundantly. One of the same gobones was very rich, for the pearles were very large,  
round, and orient: as for the rest of his gobones and garmentes, they were of rich tissue and clooth of  
gold and all sturued with very blake shables.

When he had sufficiently perused all these things, they willed master Gray at his arrivall in  
England, to provide if he could, such iewels and rich clothes as he had serued there, and better if hee  
could, relating that the Emperour would gladly bestow his money vpon such things.  
So we tooke our leaue the same time, and departed towards Vologda immediately.

## The maners, vsages, and ceremonies of the Russes.

### Of the Emperour.

**T**he Emperours name in their tongue is Euan Vasiluich, that is as much to say, as  
John the sonne of Vasilie, and by his princely state he is called Orefara, as his prede-  
cessors haue bene before, which to interpret, is a king, that giueth not tribute to any  
man. And this word Orefara his maiesties interpreters, haue of late dayes interpreted  
to be an Emperour, so that now he is called Emperour & great Duke of all Russia, &c. Before his  
father they were neither called Emperours nor kings but ouely Ruesse Velike, that is to say, great  
Duke. And as this Emperour which now is Euan Vasiluich, doeth exceed his predecessors in  
name, that is, from a Duke to an Emperour, euen so much by report he doeth exceed them in stout-  
nes of courage and valiantnesse, and a great deale moze: for he is no moze afraid of his enemies  
which are not few, then the Dobbie of the larkes.

His enemies with whom he hath warres for the most part are these: Litto, Poland, Sweden,  
Denmarke, Lisland, the Crimmes, Nagaians, and the whole nation of the Tartarians, which are  
a frowe and a hardie people as any vnder the Sunne.

This Emperour is very great familiaritie, as well vnto all his nobles and Subiects, as also vnto  
strangers which serue him either in his warres, or in occupations: for his pleasure is that they  
shall dine oftentimes in the yeere in his presence, and besides that he is oftentimes abroad, eicher  
at one church or another, and walking with his noble men abroad. And by this meanes he is not  
onely beloued of his nobles and commons, but also had in great dread and feare through all his  
dominions, so that I thinke no prince in Christendome is moze feared of his owne then he is, nor  
yet better beloued. For if he bid any of his Dukes goe, they will runne, if he giue any cuill or an-  
gry word to any of them, the partie will not come into his maiesties presence againe of a long  
time if he woe sent for, but will saime him to be very sick, and will let the haire of his head grow  
very long, without eicher cutting or shauing, which is an euident token that hee is in the Empe-  
rours displeasure: for when they be in their prosperitie, they account it a shame to weare long haire,  
in consideration whereof, they vse to haue their heads shauen.

His maiestie heareth all complaines himselfe, and with his owne mouth giueth sentence and  
iudgement of all matters, and that with expedition: but religious matters he medleth not withall,  
but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitane.

His maiestie retaineth and well rewardeth all strangers that come to serue him, and especial-  
ly men of warre.

Hee delighteth not greatly in hauking, hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing instru-  
ments or musike, but delighteth all his whole delight vpon two things. First, to serue God, as vn-  
doubtedly he is very deuout in his religion, and the second, how to subdue and conquere his ene-  
mies.

He hath abundance of gold and siluer in his owne handes or treasure: but the most part of his  
treasure is a reuolue from a counter, nor gold from copper, they are so much combined therewithall,  
and he that is worth 2. 3. or 4. grotes, is a rich man.

### Of their Religious men.

**T**he Metropolitane is next vnto God, our Labie and S. Nicholas, accepted: for the Em-  
perours maiestie iudgeth and affirmeth him to be of higher dignitie then himselfe: for  
that saith he, he is Gods spirituall officer, and I the Emperour am his temporall officer,  
and therefore his maiestie subiecteth himselfe vnto him in many things concerning re-  
ligious matters, as in leading the Metropolitans hoste vpon Idaline Sunday, and giuing him leaue

so sit in a chaire upon the 12. day, when the river Mosko was in blessing, and his maiestie standing on the ice.

All matters of religion are reformed by the Metropolitan, he heareth the causes and giueth sentence as himselfe listeth, and is authoriz'd so to doe, whether it be to whip, hang, or burne, his will must needs be fulfilled.

They haue both monkes, friers and nunnes, with a great number of great and rich monasteries, they keepe great hospitalitie, and doe relieue much pooze people day by day. I haue bene in one of the monasteries called Troietes, which is walled about with bricke very strongly like a castle, and much ordinaunce of brasse upon the walls of the same. They told me themselves that there are seuen hundred brethren of them which belong vnto that house. The most part of the lands, townes, and villages which are within fortye miles of it, belong vnto the same. They shew'd me the church, wherein were as many images as could hang about, or vpon the walls of the church round about, & euen the rooffe of the church was painted full of images. The chiefe image was of our Lady, which was garnished with gold, rubies, sapphires and other rich stones abundantly. In the middle of the church stood 12. waue capers of two parts long, and a fashome about in height, there stands a kettle full of waue with about 100. waights, wherein there is alwayes the bricke of a candle burning, as it were a lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

They shew'd mee a coffin couered with cloch of gold which stode vpon one side within the church, in which they told me lay a holy man, who neuer eate nor drinke, and yet that he liued. And they told me (supposing that I had beleued them) that hee healeth many diseases, and giueth the blind their sight, with many other miracles, but I was hard of beliefte because I saw him wrought no miracle whilest I was there.

After this they brought me into their cellers, and made me taste of diuers kinds of drinckes, both wine and beere, mead and qualle, of sundry colours and kinds, such abundance of drinke as they haue in their cellers, I doe suppose few princes haue moze, or so much at once.

Their barrels or vessels are of an vnrmeasureable bigness and size: some of them are 3. yards long and moze, and 2. yards & moze broad in their heads: they containe 6. or 7. runnes a piece: they haue none in their cellers of their owne making that are lesse then a tunne. They haue 9. or 10. great boutes which are full of those barrels which are seldeome remoued: for they haue crunckes which come downe through the rooffe of the boutes in sundry places, through which they poture the drinke downe, hauing the calke right vnder it to receiue the same, for it should be a great trouble to bring it all downe the staires.

The hospitalitie of their monasteries.

They giue bread, meat and drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are in their abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way.

There are a great number of such monasteries in the realme, and the Emperours maiestie is both oftentimes from one to another of them, and lieth at them 3. or 4. dayes together.

The same monkes are as great merchants as any in the land of Russia, and doe or crupe buying and selling as much as any other men, and haue boates which passe too and fro in the rivers with merchandize from place to place where any other of their countrey doe traffique.

They eate no flesh during their liues as it is reported, but vpon Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday, it is lawfull for them to eate egges, butter, cheese and milke, and at all times to eate fish, and after this they lead their liues.

Idolatry of the great image of the church.

They haue no preachers nor not one in all the land to instruct the people, so that there are many of the most part of the pooze in the countrey, who if one aske them how many gods there be, they will say a great many, meaning that every image which they haue is a god: for all the countrey and the Emperours maiestie himselfe, will blesse and bowe, and knocke their heads before their images, in so much that they will Erie earnestly vnto their images to helpe them to the things which they need. All men are bound by their law to haue those images in their houses, and ouer every gate in all their townes and cities are images set vp, vnto which the people bowe and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any church or cross they do in like manner. And when they come to any house, they blesse themselves 3. or 4. times before they will salute any man in the house.

They reckon and hold it for great sinne to touch or handle any of their images within the circle of the boord where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintely, & rich men decke them out and about, with gold, silver and stones, and hang them ouer and about with cloch of gold.

The priests are married as other men are, and weare all their garments as other men doe, except their night-cappes, which is cloch of some sadde colour, being rounde, and reaching vnto the



king, and his maleitie standing  
nere the causes and giueth  
to whip, hang, or burne, his will

ber of great and rich monast  
ple day by day. I haue bene in  
rich bycke very strongly like a  
They told me themselves that  
The most part of the  
long vnto the same. They haue  
about, or vpon the walls of the  
all of images. The chief image  
and other rich stones abundan  
ong, and a fathome about in big  
wherein there is alwaies the image  
of night.

woode vpon one side within their  
anke, and yet that he liueth. And  
h many diseases, and giueth the  
the because I saw him worke

of diuers kinds of drinks, but  
h abundance of drinke as they  
each at once.

er: some of them are 3. yards long  
5. or 7. sunnes a piece: they haue  
anne. They haue 9. or 10. great  
d: for they haue trunks which  
ugh which they poure the drinke  
ould be a great trouble to bring

them, not onely while they are at  
and the Emperours maleitie is  
4. daies together.

Russia, and doe occupy lying  
le too and fro in the rivers with  
y doe traffique.

in Sunday, Tuesday,  
tter, chiefe and maie, and at all

the land, but at that abbey onely  
the people, so that there are many,  
ow many gods there be, they will  
god: for all the countrey and the  
their heads before their images in  
them to the things which they  
ir houses, and ouer euery gate in  
ple bowe and bend, and haue  
ne by any church or cross they  
deluies 3. or 4. times before they

of these images within the ad  
ainely, & rich men decke the  
about with cloth of gold.

garments as other men doe, or  
pnyng rounde, and reacheth  
the

the eares: they crovnes are Hauen, but the rest of their haye they let grow, as long as nature  
will permit, so that it hangeth beneath their eares vpon their shoulers: their beards they neuer  
shave: if his wife happen to die, it is not lawfull for him to mary againe during his life.

They minister the Communion with bread and wine, after our order, but he breaketh the bread,  
and putteth it into the cuppe vnto the wine, and commonly some are partakers with them: & they  
take the bread out againe with a spoone together with part of the wine, and so take it themselves,  
and give it to others that receiue with them after the same maner.

Their ceremonies are all as they say, according to the Greeke church vled at this present day,  
and they allow no other religion but the Greeks, and the y: owne: and will not permit any nation  
but the Greeks to be buried in their sacred burialls, or churchyards.

All their churches are full of images, vnto the which the people when they assemble, doe bow  
and kicke their heads, as I haue before said, that some will haue knobbes vpon their foxe heads  
with knocking, as great as egges.

Their seruice  
in their mo-  
ther tongue.

All their seruice is in the Russe tongue, and they and the common people haue no other papers  
but this, Ghospodi Iesus Christos esine voze ponuloi nashe. That is to say, O Lord Iesus  
Christ, haue of God haue mercy vpon vs: and this is their prayer, so that the most part of the  
learned know neither Pater noster, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten commandments, nor scarcely vnder-  
stand the one halfe of the seruice which is read in their churches.

Of their Baptisme.

**W**hen any child is borne, it is not baptised vntill the next Sunday, and if it chance that  
it be not baptised then, it must tary vntill the second Sunday after the birth, and it is  
lawfull for them to take as many Godfathers and Godmothers as they will, the more  
the better.

When they go to the Church, the midwife goeth foremost, carrying the child, and the Godfathers  
and Godmothers follow into the midst of the Church, where there is a small table ready set, and on  
it an earthen pot full of warme water, about the which the Godfathers and Godmothers, with the  
childe, sette themselves: then the clerke giueth vnto euery of them a small waxe candle burning,  
then connecth the pyell, and becometh to say certaine words, which the Godfathers and Godmo-  
thers must answer word for word, among which one is, that the child shall forsake the deuil, and  
as that name is pronounced, they must all spit at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he bles-  
seth the water which is in the pot, and doth breath ouer it: then he taketh all the candles which the  
gallies haue, and holding them all in one hand leeteth part of them droppe into the water, and then  
gathery euery one his candle againe, and when the water is sanctified, he taketh the child and hol-  
deth it in a small tubbe, and one of the Godfathers taketh the pot with warme water, and pouereth  
it all vpon the childes head.

After this he hath many more ceremonies, as anointing eares and eyes with spittle, and mak-  
ing certaine crosses with oyle vpon the backe, head, and byests of the child: then taking the child  
in his armes, carrieth it to the images of S. Nicholas, and our Lady, or, ant speaketh vnto the  
images, desiring them to take charge of the child, that he may liue, and beleuee as a Christian  
man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then comming backe from the images,  
he taketh a paye of lberres and clippeth the yooing and tender hayres of the childes head, in three  
or foure places, and then deliuereth the child, whereunto euery of the Godfathers and Godmothers  
lay a hand: then the priest chargeth them, that the child be brought vp in the faith & feare of God  
or Christ, and that it be instructed to clinege and bow to the images, and so they make an end: then  
one of the Godfathers must hang a crosse about the necke of the child, which he must alwayes  
weare, for that Russe which hath not a crosse about his necke, they esteeme as no Christian man, and  
therevpon they say that we are no Christians, because we do not weare crosses as they do.

Of their Matrimonic.

**T**heir matrimony is nothing solemnized, but rather in most pious abhominable, and as  
neere as I can learne, in this wise following.

First, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man sendeth vnto the woman a  
small chest or boxe, wherein is a whippe, needles, thred, like I haue seen, & such  
necessaries as the shall occupy when she is a wife, and perhaps sendeth therewith ball rebons, figges  
or some such thinges, giuing her to vnderstand, that if she doe offend he must be beaten with the  
whippe,

whip, & by the needles, chym, cloch, &c. that she should apply her selfe diligently to sewe, and do such things as she could best doe, and by the raisins of fruite she meaneth if she doe well, no good thing shall be withholden from her, nor be too deere for her: and the friends vnto him a shirt, handkerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect.

When they are agreed, and the day of marriage appointed, when they shall go to worde the church, the bride will in no wise consent to go out of the house, but she sitteth and striueth with them that would haue her out, and saimeth her selfe to weepe, yet in the end, two women get her out, and lead her to wards the church, her face being couered close, because of her dissimulation, that it should not be openly perceiued: for she maketh a great noyse, as though she were sobbing and weeping, vntill she come at the church, and then her face is vncouered. The man cometh after among other of his friends, and they cry with them to the church a great pot with wine of meade: then the priest coupleth them together much after our order. one promising to loue and serue the other during theyr liues together, &c. which being done they be gine to drinke, and first the woman drinke to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cuppe fall to the ground, halting immediately to tread upon it, and so doeth she, and whether of them tread first vpon it must haue the victory and be maister at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, so he is readied to set his foot out it, because he letteth it fall himselfe, then they go home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The boys in the streets cry out and make a noyse in the meane tyme, with very diuine words.

When they come home, the wife is set at the vpper end of the table, and the husband next vnto her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchance haue a minstrell or two, and two naked men, which lead her from the church, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are weary of drinking, the bride and the bridegrome get them to bed, for it is in the euening alwayes when any of them are married: and when they are going to bed, the bridegrome putteth certaine money both golde and siluer, if he haue it, into one of his bootes, and then he setteth downe in the chamber, crossing his legges, and then the bride must plucke off one of his bootes, which she will, and if she happen on the boot wherein the money is, she hath not onely the money for her labor, but is also at such choyce, as she need not euer from that day forth to pull off his bootes, but if she misse the boot wherein the money is, she doth not onely loose the money, but is also bound from that day forth to pull off his bootes continually.

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three dayes following, being accompanied with certaine of their friends, and during the same three dayes he is called a duke, and she a dutches, although they be very poore persons, and this is as much as I haue learned of their matrimony: but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the whip once a weeke, she will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the women say, that if they husbands did not beat them, they should not loue them.

They vse to marry there very young, they soune at 16 and 18 yeeres olde, and the daughters at 12 or 13 yeeres of pounger: they vse to keepe theyr wiues very closely, I meane those that be of any reputation, so that a man shall not see one of them but at a chance, when she goeth to church at Christmas or at Easter, or els going to visite some of her friends.

The most part of the women vse to ride a stride in laddies with stirrups, as men do, and some of them on sleds, which in summer is not commendable.

The husband is bound to finde the wife coulers to paint her withall, for they vse ordinarily to paint themselves: it is such a common practise among them, that it is counted for no shame: they grease their faces with such coulers, that a man may discern them hanging on theyr faces almost a flight shoe off: I can not so well liken them as to a millers wife, for they looke as though they were beaten about the face with a bag of meale, but theyr eye browes they couler as blacke as asiear.

The best property that the women haue, is that they can so we well, and imbroder with silke and golde excellently.

### Of their Buriall.

When any man or woman dyeth, they stretch him out, and put a new payre of shoes on his feet, because he hath a great iourney to goe: then do they winde him in a sheet, as we do, but they forget not to put a testimonny in his right hand, which the priest giueth him, to certifie vnto S. Nicholas that he dyed a Christian man or woman. And they put the corse alwayes in a coffin of wood, although the partie be very poore: and when they go to wards the church, the friends and kinsmen of the party departed carry in theyr hands small waue candles, and they weepe and howle, and make much lamentation.

They that be hanged into heauen, it is  
There are a great  
which is a pittifull  
yeeres, about 80 per  
has straw and  
where to dip straw  
lynes. In the summer  
ment with them at  
as to the poutrie in  
to relieve others  
more of hunger in the  
It is a comerey  
they haue opinion, to  
which he heatey com  
therin.

The



The  
leo  
cou  
and  
of

The first meade  
small reyon, and great  
The fourth meade  
The fifth meade is  
There is also a del  
Berozeites, which d  
three monthes of the  
they cannot haue it.

The voyage

Mosco i



The  
the  
ua  
wa  
ca

one leagur beyond  
Sofco fallct, and  
vnto a cattie called T  
second day of Spay,  
on one right hand,  
two most of it ruine  
we passed by a cattie  
cattie called Cassim  
Empoy of the wo  
Cassim on our left  
lagun, where we e

The women  
of Russia  
paint theyr  
faces.

They

They that be hanged or beheaded, or such like, haue no testimony with them: how they are receiued into heauen, it is a wonder, without their praye.

There are a great number of poore people among them which die daily for lacke of sustentance, which is a pittifull case to beholde: for there hath bene buried in a small time, within these two yeeres, about 80 persons young and olde, which howe they dyed onely for lacke of sustentance: for if they had had straw and water enough, they would make shift to liue: for a great many are forced in the winter to dip straw and stampe it, and to make bread thereof, or at the least they eat it in stead of bread. In the summer they make good stuff with grasse, herbs, and roots: barks of trees is good meate with them at all times. There is no people in the world, as I suppose, that liue so miserably as do the poouertie in those parts: and the most part of them that haue sufficient for themselves, and wish to relieue others that need, are so mercifull that they care not how many they see die of famine or hunger in the streets.

It is a countrey full of diseases, diuers, and euill, and the best remedy is for any of them, as they haue opinion, to go often vnto the hot houses, as in a maner euery man hath one of his owne, which he heateth commonly twice euery weeke, and all the household sweat, and wash themselves therein.

bread made of straw.

The immensitie of the Russe toward the poore.

houses of baths usual with the Russe.

### The names of certaine sortes of drinckes vsed in Russia, and commonly drunke in the

Emperours Court.



The first and principall meade is made of the iuyce of licco taken from a berry called in Russia, Malieno, which is of a maruellous sweet taste, and of a catmo sane couler, which berry I haue seene in Paris.

reported by Cho. Bulley.

The second meade is called Viskoua, because it is made of a berry so called, and is like a blacke goose berry: but it is like in couler and taste to the red wine of France.

The third meade is called Amarodina, or Smorodina, hox, of a small berry much like to the small reyon, and groweth in great plenty in Russia.

The fourth meade is called Chereunikyna, which is made of the wilde blacke cherry.

The fifth meade is made of honny and water, with other mixtures.

There is also a delicate drinke by nature from the root of the Byech tree, called in the Russe tongue Berzeuices, which drinke the noble men and others use in April, May, and June, which are the three moneths of the spring time: for after those moneths, the sappe of the tree byech, and then they cannot haue it.

### The voyage of M. Anthony Jenkinson, made from the citie of Mosco in Russia, to the citie of Boghar in Baetria, in the yere

1558: written by himselfe to the Merchants of London of the Moscouie companie.



The 23 day of April, in the yeere 1558 (hauing obtained the Emperour of Russia his letters, directed vnto sundry kings and princes, by whose dominions I should passe) I departed from Mosco by water, hauing with me two of your seruants, namely, Richard Johnson and Robert Johnson, and a Tartar Colmach, with diuers parcels of wares, as by the iumentory appeareth: and the 28 day we came to a towne called Collom, distant from the Mosco 20 leagues, & passing one league beyond the said Collom, we came vnto a riuer called Occa, into the which the riuer Mosco falleth, and loastly his name: and passing downe the said riuer Occa 8 leagues, we came vnto a castle called Terreuentisko, which we left vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the third day of May, we came vnto another castle called Perossau, distant 8 leagues, leaving it also on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where Olde Rezan was situate, being now most of it ruined and ouergrown, and distant from the said Perossau 6 leagues: the 4 day we passed by a castle called Terecouia, from Rezan 12 leagues, and the 6 day we came to another castle called Cassim, vnder the government of a Tartar prince named Vizar Zegoline, sometime Emperour of the worthy citie of Cazan, and now subiect vnto the Emperour of Russia. But leaving Cassim on our left hand, the 8 day we came vnto a saye towne called Morom, from Cassim 20 leagues, where we tooke the soune, and found the latitude 56 degrees: and proceeding forward the

11 day



situated at the fall  
of the said M...  
Nouogrod, on both  
the land of Russia  
of a captaine whith  
the number of  
munition: and  
Nysc Nouogrod,  
we left upon our  
ho was called Va-  
iagorod, is to say,  
from the Tartares,  
good success in his  
especially against  
ered the famous ri-  
our journey the 25  
we left on our right  
Mardouts, and the  
this Emperour of  
lehoue towne of ha-

ow share of sayd  
ague from the citie  
to the fore said Vol-  
astle, situated upon  
Emperour of Russia  
free stone. It hath  
it was a kingdome  
but 9 yeeres past,  
g but young is now  
ings of the said Ca-  
ough civil discop,  
at this present there  
Cazan, whom the

ence: and the same  
to be a place where  
and diuers other na-  
and standeth without  
to Mare Caspium,  
ama, which we left  
er of Volga, and is  
the said river Ca-  
tilis, and liue in the  
Volga ouer against  
Tartares, and all the  
and so following the  
Turkemen, is tal-  
habonnet, and were  
es among them, so  
and yere there was  
the like plague was  
of grece pasture, it  
had cruell warres

into diuers compo-  
ng, and was called  
erry Hurle of King  
hauling

having his flocks of people about him, with their wives, children and cattell, who having consu-  
ued the pasture in one place, remooued vnto another: and when they remooue they haue houses  
the houses set upon waggones or carts, which are drawn from place to place with camels, and therein  
they haue their children, and all they riches, which is very little, is carried about, and euery man hath  
at the least foure or five wives besides concubines. Use of money they haue none, but doe barter  
they cattell for apparell and other necessaries. They delight in no arte nor science, except the  
horses, wherein they are expert, but for the most part they be pasturing people, and haue great  
flocks of cattell, which is all they riches. They eate much flesh, and especially the horse, and they  
drinke mares milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are seditious and inclined to  
steal and murder. Come they soue noe, neither doe eate any bread, mocking the Christians for  
the same, and disabling our strength, saying we liue by eating the toppes of a weede, and drinke  
a drinke made of the same, allowing they great deuouring of flesh, and drinking of milke to be the  
increase of they strength. But now to proceed forward to my iourney,

All the countrey vpon our right hand the river Volga, from ouer against the river Cama vnto  
the towne of Astracan, is the land of Crimme, whose inhabitants be also of the law of Maho-  
met, and liue for the most part according to the fashions of the Magages, hauing continuall wars  
with the Emperour of Russia, and are valiant in the field, hauing countenance, and support from  
the great Turke.

The 16 day of June we passed by certaine fishermen houses called Petowle twentie leagues  
from the river Cama, where is great fishing for sturgeon, and so continuing our way vntill the  
22 day, and passing by another great river called Samar, which falleth out of the aforesayd coun-  
trei, and runneth through Nagay, and entereth into the sayd river of Volga. The 28 day we  
came vnto a great hill, where was in times past a castle made by the Crimmes, but now it is rui-  
ned, being the iust midway betwene the sayd Cazan and Astrachan, which is 200 leagues of  
therabout, in the latitude of 51 degrees 47 minutes. Vpon all this soyle groweth abundance of  
licorish, whose root runneth within the ground like a vine.

Ricott in  
great plenty.

Thus going forward the first day of Iulie we came to a place called Perouolog, so named be-  
cause in times past the Tartares carped their boates from Volga into the river Tanais, othe-  
wise called Don, by land, when they would robbe such as passed downe the sayd Volga to Astra-  
can, and also such as passed downe by the river Tanais, to Afophe, Cassa, or any other towne si-  
tuated vpon Mare Euxinum, into which sea Tanais falleth, who hath his springes in the coun-  
trei of Rezan, out of a plaine ground. It is at this streight of Perouolog from the one riuer to  
the other two leagues by land, and is a dangerous place for thieves and robbers, but now it is not  
so still as it hath bene, by reason of the Emperour of Russia his conquests.

Departing from Perouolog, hauing the wildernesse on both sides, we saw a great heard of  
Nagayans, pasturing, as is abovesayd, by estimation aboue a thousand camels drauing of carts  
with houses vpon them like centers, of a strange fashion, seeming to be a farre off a towne: the  
Doy was belonging to a great Hurle called Smille, the greatest prince in all Nagay, who hath  
killed and byuen away all the rest, not sparing his owne brethren and children, and hauing peace  
with this Emperour of Russia he hath what he needeth, and ruleth alone, so that now the Russes  
liue in peace with the Nagayans, who were wont to haue moxall warres together.

The 14 day of Iulie passing by an olde castle, which was Olde Astracan, and leauing it vpon  
our right hand, we arrived at New Astracan, which this Emperour of Russia conquered five  
yeeres past, in the yeere 1552. It is from the Moscovito Astracan five hundredth leagues, or  
there about. The towne of Astracan is situated in an Island vpon a hill side, hauing a castle  
within the same, walled about with earth and timber, neither saye nor strong, the towne is also  
walled about with earth: the buildings and houses (except it be the capitaines lodging, and cer-  
taine other gentlemen) most base and simple. The Island is most destitute and barren of wood  
and pasture, and the ground will beare no corne: the ayre is there most infected, by reason (as I  
suppose) of much stie, and specially sturgeon, by which onely the inhabitants liue, hauing great  
partie of flesh and bread. They hang up their fish in they streets and houses to dry for they pro-  
uision, which causeth such abundance of flies to increase there, as the like was neuer scene in any  
land, or their great plague. And at my being at the sayd Astracan, there was a great famine and  
plague among the people, and specially among the Tartares called Nagayans, who the same  
time came thither in great numbers to render themselves to the Russes their enemies, and to seeke  
succour at their hands, their countrey being destroyed, as I said before: but they were but ill recei-  
ued, or reliued, for there dyed a great number of them for hunger, which lay all the Island  
through in heapes dead, and like to beastes, unburied, very pittifull to beholde: many of them  
were

Astracan.

were also sold by the Russes, and the rest were banished from the Island. At that time it had bene an easie thing to have converted that wicked Nation to the Christian faith, if the Russes themselves had bene good Christians: but how should they shew compassion vnto other Nations, when they are not mercifull vnto their owne. At my being there I could haue bought many goodly Tartars children, if I would haue had a thousande, of their owne fathers and mothers, to say, a boy or a wench for a loose worth five pence in England, but we had more need of victualles at that time then of any such merchandize. This Astracan is the furthest houle that this Emperour of Russia hath conquered of the Tartars towards the Caspian Sea, which hee keepeth very strong, sending thither euery yere provision of men, and victualles, and timber to builde the castle.

There is a certaine trade of merchandize there vsed, but as yet so small and beggerly, that it is not woorth the making mention, and yet there come merchantes thither from diuers places. The chiefest commodities that the Russes bring thither are, robe lynes, robe therye skins, wooden vessels, bydes, and saddles, knives, and other trifles, with come, bacon, and other victualles. The Tartars bring thither diuers kindes of wares made of coeren wooll, with diuers kindes of woughe silkes: and they that come out of Persia, namely from Shamackie do bring sowing silke, which is the courtest that they vse in Ruffeland, Crasko, diuers kindes of pipe silkes for girdles, shirts of male, bows, swoords, and such like things: and some yeres come, and walnuts, but all such thinges in such small quantitie, the merchantes being so beggerly and poore that bring the same, that it is not woorth the buying, neither is there any hope of trade in all those parts woorth the following.

This foresaid Island of Astracan is in length twelue leagues, and in bredth three, and lieth East and West in the latitude of fortye seuen degrees nine minutes: we arriued there vntill the last day of August, and hauing bought and provided a boate in companie with certaine Tartars and Persians, we laded our goods, and imbarked our selues, and the same day departed I, with the said two Johnsons hauing the whole charge of the Nauigation downe the said riuer Volga, being very crooked, and full of flax toward the mouth thereof. We entered into the Caspian sea the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the said riuer, being twentie leagues from Astracan & foresaid, in the latitude of fortye five degrees twentie seuen minutes.

Volga hath seuentie mouthes or falles into the sea: and we hauing a large winde, kept the Northward spere, and the eleuenth day we sailed seuen leagues Eastnortheast, and came vnto an Island hauing an high hill therein, called Arcurgar, a good Marke in the sea. From thence East ten leagues, we fell vnto another Island called Bawhyata, much higher then the other. Within these two Islands to the Northward, is a great bay called the Blew sea. From thence we sailed East and by North foure leagues, and hauing a contrary winde, we came to an anker in a shallow water, and so ride vntill the sixteenth day, hauing a great storme at Southward, being a most contrary winde, which we ride out. Then the winde came to the North, and we weped, and set our course Southward, and that day sailed eight leagues.

Thus proceeding forwards, the seventeenth day we lost sight of land, and the same day sailed thirtie leagues, and the eighteenth day twentie leagues winding East, and fell vnto a land called Baughleata, being seuentie foure leagues from the mouth of the foresaid Volga, in the latitude of fortye five degrees fiftie foure minutes, the coast lying nearest East and by South, and West and by North. At the point of this land lyeth buried a holie Prophet, as the Tartars call him, of the Hebrews, where great deuotion is vsed of all such Spahomettes as doe passe that waye.

The nineteenth day the winde being West, and we winding Eastnortheast, we sailed some leagues, and passed by a great riuer called Yake, which hath his spring in the lande of Siberia, and runneth vnto the foresaid riuer Cama, and runneth through the land of Nagay, falling into the Mare Caspium. And by this riuer one dayes journey is a towne called Serachicke, subject to the foresaid Tartar prince called Murie Smille, which is now in friendship with the Emperour of Russia. There is no trade of merchandize vsed, for that the people haue no vsf of money, and are all men of warre, and pastures of cattell, and giuen much to theft and murder. Thus being at an anker against this riuer Yake, and all our men being on lande, sailing I, who laye some licks, and saw Tartars, wherof one was reputed a holy man, because hee came from Mecca, there came vnto vs a boate with thirtie men well armed and appointed, who hooyed vs, and beganne to enter vnto our barke, and our holy Tartar called Azy, perceiuing that, asked them what they would haue, and withall made a prayer: with that these rowers stayed, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from thei countrey, and out of living, and came to see if there

The length of  
the Island of  
Astracan.

Volga.

Baughleata.

Serachicke.

there were any Russes  
Azic most souerely an  
which lightly they w  
and so through the st  
our men being come o  
Call and Southward, th  
The 2 day we sail  
two Islands at the So  
the land reuised North  
ging out of the land of

The 22, 23, and 24  
The 25 the winde c  
two land and there abo  
ch in a great bay, but  
being much troubled w  
east 10 leagues, and se  
10 leagues the furthe  
The 27 day we cro  
point of land and being  
vntill we should haue  
a port called Mangolla  
the Caspian sea is 23  
foresaid storme, were by  
goulaue being very low  
winde helde people wh  
But yet here we sen  
will for our good vifag  
the same sea vnto a pl  
the dayes journey, Di  
things.

Wherfore the 3 day  
we were gentlly intere  
stern, we founde the  
left vs, either by sight  
double, that the wone  
could vs to hasten a tw  
pire of furs as wee  
by euery camels laden  
and foure wooden dist  
hurches, namely, 9  
And thus being reat  
Carauan of 1000, can  
the Dominion, and by  
armed, and seruants by  
Mangoslaue, where we  
had but not disappoint  
and opened our wares  
we, but for such thing  
vnto the same Prince, a  
wile through his count  
to me, and increasid  
milke: for bread and he  
for such things as hee  
but hee gaue mee his  
being glad that I was  
gone vnto him, I vnto  
destroyed.

The Soltan liued

there were any Russes or other Christians (which they call Caphars) in our barke: to whom this Azic would shortly answered, that there were none, avowing the same by great othes of their lawes, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the rowers beleued, and vpon his wordes departed, and so through the sterilitie of that Tartar, I with all my companie and goods were saued, and our men being come on boorde, and the winde faire, we departed from that place, and winding East and South-east, that day being the second of August sailed 16. leagues.

The 2. day wee passed ouer a bay of 6. leagues broad, and fell with a Cape of land, hauing two Islands at the South-east part thereof, being a good marke in the sea: and doubling that Cape the land turned North-east, and maketh another bay, into which falleth the great riuer Yem, springing out of the land of Colmacke.

The 22. 23. and 24. dayes, we were at an ancre.

The 25. the winde came faire, and we sailed that day 20. leagues, and passed by an Island of this land, and there about are many flats and sands: and to the Northward of this Island there groweth in a great bay, but wee set off from this Island, and winded South to come into deepe water, being much troubled with shoals and flats, and ranne that course 10. leagues, then East South-east 10. leagues, and fel with the maine land, being full of copped hills, and passing along the coast 20. leagues, the further we sailed, the higher was the land,

The 27. day we crossed ouer a bay, the Southshore being the higher land, and fell with a high point of land, being ouerthwart the Cape, there rose such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should haue perished: this storme continued 3. dayes. From this Cape we passed to a place called Mangoslaue. The place where wee should haue arriued at the Southermost part of the Caspian sea, is 2. leagues within a bay: but wee being sope tormented, and tossed with this high storme, were diuined vnto another land on the other side the bay, ouerthwart the said Mangoslaue being very lowe land, and a place as well for the ill commoditie of the haue, as of those wilde wilde people where neuer barke nor boate hath sope arriued, nor liked of vs.

But yet here we sent certaine of our men to talke with the gouernour and people, as well for our good usage at their handes, as also for psonion of camels to carry our goods from the same sea side to a place called Sellyzure, being from the place of our landing five and twenty dayes iourney. Our messengers returned with comfortable wordes and faire promises of all things.

Wherefore the 3. day of September 1558. we discharged our barke, and I with my companie were greatly entertained of the Prince, and of his people. But before our departure from thence, we founde them to bee very badde and brutish people, for they ceased not dayly to mangle vs, either by fighting, stealing or begging, raping the pisse of horse and camels, and victuals waste, that the want was there to see, and forced vs to buy the water that wee did drinke: which cost vs to hasten away, and to conclude with them as well for the hire of camels, as for the pisse of such as wee bought, with other psonion, according to their owne demaunde: so that for every camel's lading being but 400. waight of ours, wee agreed to giue three hides of Russia, and foure wooden dishes, and to the Prince of gouernour of the saide people one nithe and two burths, namely, 9. fewer all things, and twisse 7. fewer all things: for money they vse none.

And thus being ready, the fourteenth of September wee departed from that place, being a Carauan of 1000. camels. And hauing trauailed five dayes scuriney, wee came to another Prince's Dominion, and vpon the way there came vnto vs certaine Tartars a horsebacke, being well armed, and seruants vnto the said Prince called Timor Solcan, gouernour of the said Countrey of Mangoslaue, where we went to haue arriued and discharged our barke if the great storme aforesaid had not disappoynted. These foresaid Tartars slayed our Carauan in the name of their prince, and opened our wares, andooke such things as they thought best for their said prince without money, but for such things as theyooke from me, which was a nithe, (after much dissension) I ridde vnto the same Prince, and presented my selfe before him, requesting his fauour, and paymēt to tra- uel with his comerey, and not to be robbed nor spoiled of his people: which request he graunted me, and entertained me very gently, commanding mee to be well feasted with flesh and mares milke: for bread they vse none, nor other drinke excepte water: but money he had none to giue mee for such things as heeooke of mee, which might bee of value in Russe money, fifteen rubbles, but hee gaue mee his letter, and a horse worth seven rubbles. And so I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for hee was reported to bee a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstoode his commandement was, that I should haue bene robbed and destroyed.

This Solcan liued in the fieldes without Castle or towne, and saze at my being with him,



in a litle rounde house made of reedes covered without with felt, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Metropolitane of that wilde Countrey, cheifem of the people, as the bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe, with diuers other of his chiefe men: the Soltan with this Metropolitane demanded of me many questions, as wel touching our kingdoms, lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my coming into those parts, with my further pretence. To whom I answered concerning all things, as vnto me seemed best, which they took in good part. So by using leave I departed and overtooke our Carauan, and proceeded on our iourney, and trauielled 20. daies in the wilderness from the sea side without seeing towne or habitation, carrying provision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were diuised by necessitie to eate one of my camels and a horse for our part, as other did the like, and during the said 20. daies we found no water, but such as we drue out of olde decaye wells, bring very brackish and sale, and yet sometimes pastur'd in three daies without the same. And the 5. day of October ensuing, we came vnto a gulph of the Caspian sea againe, where wee founde the water very fresh and sweete: at this gulph the ambassadors of the king of Turckeman met vs, whoooke custome of eury 25. one, and 7. mitches for the said king and his brethren, which being received they departed, and we remained there a day or two to refresh our selues.

Note that in times past there did fall into this gulph a great riuer Oxus, which hath his spring in the mountaines of Parapontus in India, and now commeth not so farre, but falleth into another riuer called Ardocke, which runneth toward the North, and consumeth himselfe in the ground, passing vnder ground about 1000. miles, and then issueth out againe and falleth into the lake of Kirghay.

After hauing refreshed our selues at the foresaide gulph, departed thence the 4. day of October, and the 7. day arrived at a Castle called Sellizure, where the king (called Azim Can) remained with 3. other of his brethren, and the 9. day I was commaunded to come before his presence, to whom I deliuered the Emperours letters of Russia: and I also gaue him a present of a nimbe, who entertained me very well, and caused mee to eate in his presence as his brethren did, feeding me with flesh of a wilde horse, and mares milke without bread. And the next day sent for mee againe, and asked of me diuers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, as of our Countrey and lawes, to which I answered as I thought good: so that at my departure he gaue me his letters of safe conduct.

This Castle of Sellizure is situated vpon a high hill, where the king called the Can hath whole palace is built of earth very basely, and not strong: the people are but poore, and little trade of merchandise among them. The South part of this Castle is lowe lande, but very fruitful, where growe many good fruites, among which there is one called a Dynie of a great bignesse and full of moisture, which the people doe eate after meate in steade of dynike. Also there growes another fruite called a Carbusc of the bignesse of a great cucumber, yellow and sweete as sugar: also a certaine coyne called Legur, whose halke is much like a sugar cane, and as high and the graine like rice, which groweth at the topp of the cane, like a cluster of grapes; the water that serueth all that Countrey is drawen by dykes out of the riuer Oxus, vnto the great destruction of the said riuer, for which cause it falleth not into the Caspian sea as it hath done in times past, and in those time all that lande is like to be destroyed, and to become a wilderness for want of water, when the riuer of Oxus shall falte.

The 14. day of the moneth we departed from this Castle of Sellizure, and the 16. of the same we arrived at a citie called Vrgence, where we payde custome as well for our owne heads, as for our camels and horse. And hauing there solour'd one moneth, attending the time of our further trauiell, the king of that Countrey called Aly Soltan, brother to the foresaid Azim Can, returned from a towne called Corozan within the borders of Persia, which hee lately had conquered from the Persians, with whom hee and the rest of the kings of Tartaria haue continuall warres. Before this king also I was commaunded to come, to whom I likewise presented the Emperours letters of Russia, and he entertained me well, and demanded of me diuers questions, and at my departure gaue me his letters of safe conduct.

This Citie or towne of Vrgence standeth in a plaine ground, with walles of earth, by estimation 4. miles about it. The buildings within it are also of earth, but ruined and out of good order: it hath one long streete that is covered aboue, which is the place of their market. It hath bene wonne and lost 4. times within 7. yeeres by ciuill warres, by means whereof there are but fewe marchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that towne I could not sell aboue 4. carseis. The chiefe commodities there solde, are such wares as come from Boghara, and out of Persia, but in most small quantitie not worth the witting. All the land from the Caspian sea to this Citie of Vrgence,

Sellizure, or  
Sapizure.

gence, is called the  
which hee in nombe  
chered causing in his  
some portion, and on  
them, by reason that  
flames, either Chyristia  
of Sukan, hath at the  
and when there are  
come if hee be not slain  
there liueth in the wild  
my Carauans of Harat  
wicked life, vntill such  
gainre. From the Ca  
the said sea, the people  
are to another in g  
horses, and sheepe bo  
waping 60. or 80. yoe  
times kill with their

The haukes are in  
fines and soze beating  
horse with his arrowes  
heard wher: on the ca

The Tartars neuer  
or any other pleasure,  
ple haue not the vse of  
cellaries, they haue et  
they be great deuouce  
wily, especially the h  
of the Nagayans, and  
this countrey, vntill po  
iourney, except it be i  
daies iourney and mo  
uether them, and so als  
round in great compa

The 26. day of No  
the riuer Oxus: 100. m  
taine peate custome. T  
and passing about 10  
sing vnder the same al  
haue before declar'd.

The 7. of Decemb  
Suman Soltan, who  
feare of his brother th  
who willed vs to make  
Castle for custome, of  
Thus proceeding  
came vnto vs foure ho  
bowed them, and haui  
my hostmen, and no  
theeres ahynde: for  
in companie of Carau  
were to be doubted, T  
to the said Soltan of  
suspected men which  
such sort, that they com  
who lay in waite to de  
The Soltan therel  
well armed with a C



Carpetts. These  
people, as the  
the Solkan  
rooms, labors,  
reference. To whom  
good part. So  
ney, and trauciles  
carrying provisions  
of my camels  
no water, but  
sometimes passed  
into a gulph of the  
gulph the  
7. miche for  
there a day

th hath his springs  
all lech into another  
leth in the ground,  
eth into the lake of

4. day of October,  
(m Can) remained  
foze bis presence,  
presence of a niche,  
relpen did, feeding  
day sent for mee  
emperor of Russia,  
at my departur

ed the Can  
it poore, and  
ade, but very  
ynic of a great  
ynike. Also  
bello and  
rane, and as  
l grapes; the  
into the  
ch done in  
dernes for want of

the 16. of the  
ome heads, as  
time of our  
med Azym Can,  
oe lachly had  
ia haue contin  
wise presence  
diuers questions.

of earth, by  
out of good  
cket. It hath  
there are but  
e 4. carleis. The  
at of Persia, but  
in this Citie of  
gence,

gence, is called the lande of Turkeman, and is subiect to the saide Azim Can, and his brethren which be 5. in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe king called Can, but he is little esteemed sauing in his owne Dominion, and where he dwelleth: for every one will be king of his owne portion, and one brother seeketh al waies to destroy another, hauing no natural loue among them, by reason that they are begotten of diuers women, and commonly they are the children of slaves, either Chyistians or Gentiles, which the father doth keepe as concubines, and euery Can of Sukan, hath at the least 4. or 5. wiues, besides yong maydens and boyes, liuing most viciously: and when there are warres betwix these brethren, (as they are seldome without) hee that is ouercome if hee be not slaine, flieth to the field with such companie of men as will followe him, and there liueth in the wilderness rejoycing to watering places, and so robbeth and spoyleth as many Carauans of Marchantes and others as they be able to ouercome, continuing in this sort his wicked life, untill such time as hee may get power and ayde to inuade some of his brethren againe. From the Caspian sea unto the Castle of Sellzure aforesaid, and all the Countreys about the said sea, the people liue without towne or habitation in the wilde fieldes, remoouing from one place to another in great companies with their cattle, whereof they haue great store, as camels, horses, and sheepe both tame and wilde. Their sheepe are of great stature with great buttocks, weighing 60. or 80. pound in waight. There are many wilde horses, which the Tartars doe many times kill with their hantes, and that in this order.

The hantes are hired to leape vpon the beasts neckes or heads, which with chasung of themselves and soze beating of the haukes are cired: then the hunter following his game, doeth slay the horse with his arrowe or sword. In all this lande there groweth no grasse, but a certaine husk of heath wher-on the cattell feeding, become very fat.

The Tartars neuer ride without the bowe, arrowes, and sword, although it be on hauking, or at any other pleasure, and they are good archers both on horsebacke, and on foote also. These people haue not the vse of golde, siluer, or any other coppe, but when they lacke apparell or other necessaries, they haunter their cattell for the same. Bread they haue none, for they neither till nor sow, they be great deuourers of flesh, which they cut in small pieces, and eat it by handfuls most greedily, especially the horse flesh. Their chieffest drinke is mares milke sozued, as I haue said before of the Nagayans, and they wilde drinke with the same: they haue no riuers nor places of water in this countrey, untill you come to the aforesaid gulfe, distant from the place of our landing 20. dayes iourney, except it be in wells, the water whereof is salish, & yet distant the one from the other two dayes iourney and moze. They ease their meate vpon the ground, sitting with their leggs double vnder them, and so also when they pray. Arte or science they haue none, but liue most idly, sitting round in great companies in the fieldes, deuising, and talking most vainely.

The 26. day of November, wee departed from the towne of Vigence, and hauing traualled by the riuer Oxus 100. mile, we passed ouer another great riuer called Ardocke, where we paid a certayne petite custome. This riuer Ardocke is great, and very swift, falling out of the aforesaid Oxus, and pulling about 1000. mile to the Northward, it then consumeth it selfe in the ground, and passing vnder the same about 500. mile, issueth out againe, and falleth into the lake of Kitay, as I haue before declared.

The 7. of December following, wee arrived at a Castle called Kaic, subiect to a Solkan called Saramer Solkan, who ment to haue robbed all the Chyistians in the Carauan, had it not bene for feare of his brother the king of Vigence, as we were informed by one of his chieffest counsaillers, who willed vs to make him a present, which he took, and deliuered: besides we payde at the saide Castle for custome, of euery camel one red hide of Russia, besides petite gifts to his officers.

This proceeding in our iourney, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there came vnto vs foure horsemen, which we took as spies, from whome wee took their weapons and bound them, and hauing well examined them, they confessed that they had seene the tract of many horsemen, and no footing of camels, and gaue vs to vnderstande, that there were rousers and theues aboade: for there traualled fewe people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of Carauan, where there be many camels, and horsefeeding ne we without camels were to be doubted. Whereupon we consulted & determined amongst our selues, and sent a poste to the saide Solkan of Kayte, who immediately came himselfe with 300. men, and met these foure suspected men which we sent vnto him, and examined them so straightly, and threatened them in such sort, that they confessed, there was a banished Prince with 40. men 3. dayes iourney forward, who lay in waite to destroy vs, if he could, and that they themselves were of his companie.

The Solkan therefore vnderstanding that the theues were not many, appointed vs 80. men well armed with a Capetaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Solkan himselfe returned

returned backe againe, taking the 4. cheues with him. These souldiers trauailed with vs two dayes, consuming much of our victuals. And the 7. day in the morning very early, they set out before our Carauan, and hauing ranged the wilderness for the space of foure houres, they met vs coming towardes vs, as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had found the trace of horses not farre from vs, perceiuing well that wee should meete with enemies, and therefore willed vs to appoint our selues for them, and asked vs what we would giue them to combat vs further, or els they would returne. To whom we offered as we thought good, but they refused our offer, and would haue more, and so we not agreeing they departed from vs, and went backe to their Sokane, who (as wee coniectured) was puiue to the conspiracie. But they being gone, certaine Tartars of our companie called holy men, (because they had bene at Mecha) caused the whole Carauan to stay, and would make their prayers, and deuine howe wee should prosper in our iourney, and whether we should meete with any ill companie or no, to which, our table Carauan did agree, and they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them, and tooke the blade bones of the same, and first sodde them, and then burnt them, andooke of the blood of the saide sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the saide bones, and wrote certaine Characters with the saide blood, vsing many other ceremonies and wordes, and by the same deuined and sounde, that wee should meete with enemies and cheues (to our great trouble) but should ouercome them, to which I accerie, I and my companie gaue no credite, but we found it true: for within 3. houres after that the souldiers departed from vs, which was the 15. day of December in the morning, we chieftaine sent our officers horsemen which made towardes vs, and we (perceiuing them to be rourers) gathered our selues together, being 40. of vs well appointed, and able to fight, and we made our prayers together euery one after his lawe, professing to liue and die one with another, and so prepared our selues. When the cheues were nigh vnto vs, we perceiued them to be in number 37. men well armed, and appointed with bowes, arrowes and swords, and the Captaine a prince banished from his Countrey. They willed vs to yeelde our selues, or els to bee slaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shotte at vs all at once, and wee at them very hotly, and so continued our fight from morning vntill two houres within night, diuers men, horses and camels being wounded and slaine on both partes: and had it not bene for 4. handgunnes which I and my companie had and used, we had bene ouercome and destroyed: for the cheues were better armed, and were also better archers then we: But after wee had slaine diuers of their men and horses with our gunnes, they durst not appoche so nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which we accepted, and encamped our selues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Castle, walling it about with packes of wares, and layde our horses and camels within the same to save them from the shotte of arrowes: and the cheues also incamped within an arrowe shotte also of vs, but they were betwixt vs and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither we nor our camels had drinke in 2. dayes before.

This keeping good watche, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the cheues sent a messenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Captaine in their tongue, the Carauan Basha, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee: but if that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Lawe to keepe the truce, then will I sende a man to talke with thee, or els noe. Which the Prince vnderstanding as well himselfe as his companie, swore so lowde that wee mighte all heare. And then wee sent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The message was pronounced aloude in this order. Our Prince demaunded of the Carauan Basha, and of all you that be Buffarmans, (that is to say circumcised) not desiring your bloods, that you deliuer into his handes as many Caphars, that is, unbelieuers (meaning vs the Christians) as are among you with their goods, and in so doing, hee will suffer you to be part with your goods in quietnesse, and to the contrary, you shall be handled with no lesse crueltie then the Caphars, if hee ouercome you, as he doubteth not. To the which our Carauan Basha answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other strangers, but two Turkes which were of their Lawe, and although hee had, hee would rather die then deliuer them, and that wee were not afraid of his chyeatnings, and that should hee knowe when day appeared. And so passing in talke, the cheues (contrary to their othe) carried our holy man away to their Prince, crying with a lowde voyce in token of victorie, Ollo, ollo. Where with we were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs: but hee being cruelly handled and much examined, would not be deach confesse any thing which was to vs prejudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had slaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was spent, in the morning we prepared our selues to battel againe, which the cheues perceiuing, required to fall to agreement & asked much

of vs And to be byt  
like to loose, & asked  
(that is to say) 20. m  
crues, the cheues de  
lyment. And that m  
dres without water  
horses and camels, an  
againe of such like,  
wildernes of sand, an  
with the water being  
males, being forced to

In this wilderness  
red, there came certai  
from the Carauan, w  
mels and departed be  
ous againe, and the  
that he has gotten th  
covered vs, we know

So vpon the 21.  
This Boghar is situ  
with diuers gates int  
and the 3. part is fo  
by themselves. The  
so many houses, tem  
bathhouses so artifi  
long to rehearse.

water thereof is most  
cially in them that be  
betwixt the flesh and  
Surgeons being nu  
cuery say the comm  
And yet it is there fo  
is found to be ake th  
there are officers ap  
scarce if hee haue e  
people the drinke, and  
come but by the bea  
rape their handes.

There is a Specter  
he is more obeyed th  
sure, as hee did by th  
of the saide Petroppo  
was a Prince that is

This Countrey o  
sian tongue, but yet  
the saide Persians at  
warres is, for that the  
all other Tartars doe  
as they doe the Chy

The king of Bog  
maintained by the C  
the craftes men as b  
pech in great subiect  
saide Sparthans to  
ind to pay mee certai  
and copper, for golde  
pence English, and r  
said 12 d. and is mo

of the two to be yefle, the most part of our companie being loth to go to battel againe, and hauing little to looke, & safeconduct to passe, we were compelled to agree, & to giue the cheues 20. ninebe (that is to say) 20. times 9. scuerall things, and a camell to carie away the same, which being re- ceived, the cheues departed into the wilderness to their olde habitation, and we went on our way forwards. And that might come to the riuer Oxus, where wee refreshed our selues, hauing bene 3. dayes without water, and vyinke, and carried there all the next day, making merry with our slaine beasts and camels, and then departed from that place, & for feare of meeting with the said cheues againe of such like, we left the high way which went along the saide riuer, and passed through a wilderness of sand, and trauailed 4. dayes in the same before we came to water: and then came to a well the water being very blackish, and we then as before were in neede of water, and of other victuals, being forced to kill our horses and camels to eat.

In this wilderness also we had almost fallen into the hands of the cheues: for one night being at rest, there came certaine scouts, and caried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Carauan, wherewith there was a great shout and cry, and we immediatly labored our camels, and departed being about midnichte and very darke, and dyaued soze till wee came to the riuer Oxus againe, and then we feare nothing being walled with the said riuer: and whether it was for that we had gotten the water, or for that the same cheues were farre from vs when the scouts discovered vs, we knowe not, but we escaped that danger.

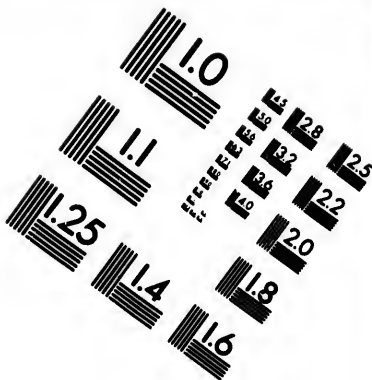
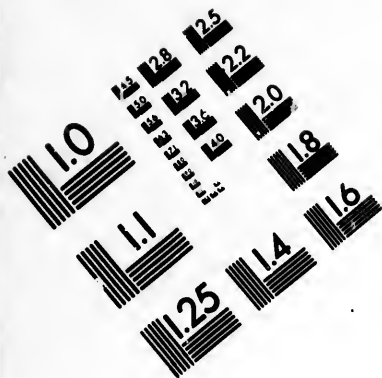
So vpon the 27. day of December wee arrived at the citie of Boghar in the lande of Bactria. This Boghar is situated in the lowest part of all the land, walled about with a high wall of earth, with diuers gates into the same: it is diuided into 3. partitions, whereof two partes are the kings, and the 3. part is for Marchants and markets, and euery science hath their dwelling and market by themselves. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part of earth, but there are also many houses, temples and monuments of stone sumptuously builded, and gilt, and specially bathouses so artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the world: the manner wherof is to long to rehearse. There is a little Riuer running through the middle of the saide Citie, but the water thereof is most unholysome, for it byedeth sometimes in men that dyinke thereof, and especially in them that be not there borne, a wombe of an ell long, which lieth commonly in the legge betwixt the flesh and the skinne, and is plucked out about the ancle with great art and cunning, the surgeons being much practised therein, and if thee byeake in plucking out, the partie dieth, and euery day he commeth out about an turbe, which is rolled by, and so worketh till thee be all out. And yet it is there forbidden to dyinke any ocher thing then water, & mare's milke, and whosoeuer is found to byeake that lawe is whipt and beaten most cruellly through the open markets, and there are officers appointed for the same, who haue authoritie to goe into any mans house, to searche if hee haue either Aquauitz, wine, or byage, and finding the same, doe byeake the vessels, spoyle the vyinke, and punish the masters of the house most cruellly, yea, and many times if they perceiue but by the byeatch of a man that he hath dyinke, without further examination hee shall not escape their hands.

There is a Metropolitane in this Boghar, who causeth this lawe to be so straggely kept, and he is moze obeyed then the king, and will depose the king, and place another at his will and pleasure, as hee did by this king that reigned at our being there, and his byedeceitfull, by the meanes of the saide Metropolitane: for hee betrayed him, and in the night slewe him in his chamber, who was a Prince that loued all Christians well.

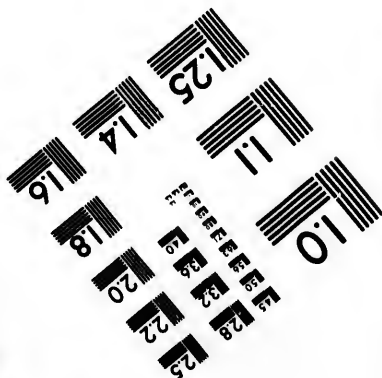
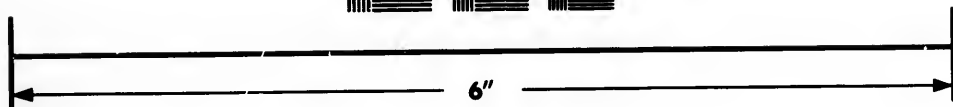
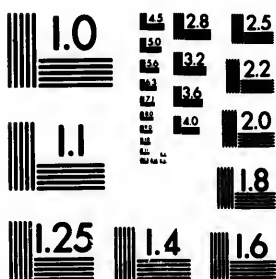
This Countrey of Boghar was sometime subiect to the Persians, and doe now speake the Persian tongue, but yet now it is a kingdome of it selfe, and hath most cruel warres continually with the saide Persians about their religion, although they be all Mahometians. One occasion of their warres is, for that the Persians will not cut the haire of their upper lippes, as the Bogharians and all other Tartars doe, which they accompt great sinne, and call them Caphars, that is, unbelieuers, as they doe the Christians.

The king of Boghar hath no great power or riches, his reuenues are but small, and he is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth parte of all things that are there sold, as wel by the craftes men as by the Marchants, to the great impouertisement of the people, whom hee keepeth in great subiection, and when he lacketh money, hee sendeth his officers to the shoppes of the saide Marchants to take their wares to pay his debtes, and will haue credite of foize, as the like hee did to pay mee certaine money that hee owed me for 19. piereces of cartep. Their money is silver and copper, for golde there is none currant they haue but one piere of silver, & that is worth 12. pence English, and the copper money are called hoodles, and 120. of them goeth to the value of the said 12. p., and is moze comon paiement then the silver, which the king causeth to rise and fall to his





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
3.6 3.2 2.8  
4.5 5.0 5.6

10  
11  
1.5 1.8 2.0

most advantage every other moueth, and sometimes twice in a moneth, not caring to oppress his people, for that hee looketh not to raigne about 2. or 3. yeeres before hee be either slain or driven away to the great destruction of the Countrey and marchants.

The 26. day of the moneth I was commanded to come before the said king to whom I presented the Emperour of Russia his letters, who interceded vs most gently, and caused vs to eate in his presence, and diuers times he sent for me, and deuided with me familiarly in his secret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperour, and the great Turke, as also of our countries, lawes, and religion, and caused vs to shote in handgunnes before him, and did himselfe practise the vse thereof. But after all this great intertainment before my departure he thewed himselfe a very Tartar: for he went to the warres obtaining me money, and saue mee not payde before his departure; And although in deed hee gaue order for the same, yet was I very ill satisfied, and forced to rebate part, and to take waeres as payment for the rest contrary to my expectation, but of a better, better payment I could not haue, and glad I was so to be payde and dispatched.

But yet I must needs praise and commend this barbarous king, who immediately after my arrivall at Boghar, having understood our trouble with the cheues, sent 100. men well armed, and gaue them great charge not to returne before they had either slain or taken the saide cheues. Who according to their commission ranged the wilbernes in such sort, that they met with the said companie of cheues, and slew part, and part fledde, and foure they took and brought unto the king, and two of them were sore wounded in our skirmish with our gunners: And after the king had sent for me to come to see them, hee caused them all 4. to be hanged at his palace gate, because they were Gentlemen to the example of others. And of such goods as were gotten againe, I had part restored me, and this good iustice I found at his handes.

There is yeerely great resort of Marchants to this Citie of Boghar, which trausile in great Carauans from the Countreys thereabout adjoining, as India, Persia, Balke, Russia, with diuers others, and in times past from Cathay, when there was passage, but these Marchants are so beggerly and pooze, and bring so little quantitie of waeres, lying two or 3. yeeres to sell the same, that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following.

The chiefe commodities that are brought thither out of these foresaide Countreys, are these following.

The Indians doe bring fine whites, which the Tartars doe roll about their heads, and all other kinds of whites, which serue for apparell made of cotton wooll and crasko, but golde, silver, precious stones, and spices they bring none. I enquired and perceived that all such trade passeth to the Ocean sea, and the vaines where all such things are gotten, are in the subiection of the Portingals. The Indians carie from Boghar againe, wrought silkes, redde hides, slates and bowles, with such like, but of carlets and other clothe, they make little accompt. I offered to barter with Marchants of those Countreys, which came from the furbest parts of India, even from the Countrey of Bengala, & the River Ganges, to giue them carlets for their commodities, but they would not barter for such commodity as cloth.

The Persians doe bring thither Craska, wollen cloth, lianen clothe, diuers kindes of wrought yde silkes, Argomacks, with such like, and doe carrie from thence redde hides with other Russe waeres, and slates which are of diuers Countreys, but cloth they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselves, and is brought unto them as I haue enquired from Aleppo in Syria, and the parts of Turkie. The Russes doe carrie unto Boghar, redde hides, beere kinnes, wollen cloth of diuers sorts, wodden vessels, byddles, saddles, with such like, and doe carrie a way from thence, diuers kindes of waeres made of cotton wooll, diuers kindes of silkes, Craska, with other things, but there is but small vterance. From the Countreys of Cathay is brought thither in time of yeare, and when the way is open, muske, rubarde, saccon, damaske, with diuers other things: at my being at Boghare, there came Carauans out of all these foresaid Countreys, except from Cathay, and the cause why there came none from thence, was the great warres that had durd 3. yeeres before my coming thither, and per durd betwixt 2. great Countreys and cities of Tartars, that are diuersly in the way betwixt the said Boghar and the said Cathay, and certaine barbarous fielde people, as well Gentiles as Mahometists bordering to the saide Cities. The cities are called Tashkent and Caskayre, and the people that warre against Taskent are called Cassaks of the late of Mahomet, and they which warre with the said countrey of Caskayre, are called Kings, Gentiles & solaters. These 2. barbarous nations are of great force living in the fieldes without house or to wne, & haue almost subdued the foresaide cities, & so stopped by the way, that it is impossible for any Carauan to passe without, so that 3. yeeres before our being there, no Carauan had gone, or used trade betwixt the Countreys of Cathay, and Boghare, & when the way is cleare, it is 9. moneths journey.

not caring to oppresse his  
 hee be either slaine or diuen

the said king to whom I present  
 ost gently, and caused vs to  
 with me familiarly in his street  
 urke, as also of our countries;  
 him, and did himselfe practise  
 departure he thewed himselfe  
 meere not paide before his de-  
 I very ill satisfied, and fore-  
 my expectation, but of a beg-  
 and dispatche.

ng, who immediatly after my  
 sent 100. men well armed,  
 fine of taken the said thewes,  
 100. that they met with the said  
 yooke and brought vnto the  
 gunners: And after the king  
 ed at his palace gate, because  
 as were gotten againe, I ha-

ghar, which traualle in great  
 sia, Balke, Russia, with diuers  
 these Merchants are so beg-  
 3. yeeres to sell the same, that  
 ng.

these Countreys are the

our their heads, and all other  
 cracko, but golde, silver, pre-  
 ceined that all such trade pa-  
 are in the subiection of the  
 s, redde hides, slaues and by-  
 mpe. I offered to barter with  
 of India, euen from the Com-  
 commodities, but they would

the, diuers kindes of wrought  
 redde hides with other Russe  
 l buy none, for that they bring  
 from Aleppo in Syria, and the  
 wepel kinnes, wollen cloth of  
 e carrie away from thence, di-  
 rasca, with other things, but  
 ighte thither in time of peare,  
 ers other thinge: at my being  
 ad dured 3. yeeres before my  
 s of Tartars, that are directly  
 e barbarous fierbe people, as  
 cities are called Talcant and  
 slaks of the late of Mahomet,  
 Kings, Gentle & Idolaters,  
 without house of colone, & haue  
 impossible for any Carauan  
 an had gone, or used trade  
 are, it is 9. moneths iourney.  
 Co

To speake of the said Countrey of Cathay, and of such newes as I haue heard thereof, I haue  
 thought it best to referre it to our meeting. I hauing made my sojourn at Boghar, in the Winter  
 time, and hauing learned by much inquisition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countreys  
 thereto adjoining, and the time of the peere being come, for all Carauans to depart, and also the  
 king being gone to the warres, and newes came, that he was fled, and I aduertised by the Metro-  
 politan himselfe, that I should depart, because the Towne was like to be besieged: I thought it  
 good and meete, to take my iourney some way, and determined to haue gone from thence into  
 Persia, and to haue seene the trade of that Countrey, although I had enioyed my selfe sufficien-  
 tly thereof, as well at Afracan, as at Boghar: and perceaued well the trades, not to be much vn-  
 like the trades of Tartaria: but when I should haue taken my iourney that way, it was let by di-  
 uers occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwixt the Sophie, and the  
 kings of Tartaria, where by the waies they were destroyed: and there was a Carauan destroyed  
 with rowers, and theewes, whiche came out of India, and Persia, by safe conduct: and about ten daies  
 iourney from Boghar, they were robbed, and a great part slaine. Also the Metropolitan of Bo-  
 ghar, who is greater then the king, tooke the Emperours letters of Russia from me, without  
 which I should haue bene taken slaue in euery place: also all such wares as I had receaued in  
 barter for cloth, and as Iooke perforce of the king, and other his Nobles, in payment of monie due  
 vnto me, were not vendible in Persia: for which causes, and diuers others, I was constrained to  
 come backe againe to Mare Caspium, the same way I went: so that the eight of March, 1559.  
 we departed out of the said Citty of Boghar, being a Carauan of 600. Camels, and if we had  
 not departed when we did, I and my companie had bene in danger to haue lost life and goods. For  
 ten daies after our departure, the king of Samarcand came with an armie, & besieged the said Citty  
 of Boghar, the king being absent, and gone to the warres against another prince, his kinsman,  
 as the like chanceth in those Countreys, once in two or thre yeeres. For it is maruell, if a king  
 raigne there about thre or foure yeeres, to the great destruction of the Countrey, and marchants.

The 15. of March, we came to the foresaid towne of Vrgence, and escaped the danger of 400. Vrgence.  
 rowers, which lay in waite for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie  
 of thewes, which we met with going south, as we perceaued by foure spies, which were taken.  
 There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambassadors, the one from the  
 king of Boghar, the other from the king of Balke, and were sent vnto the Emperour of Russia:  
 and after hauing taried at Vrgence, and the Cattle of Zellysur, eight daies for the assembling,  
 and making ready of our Carauan: the second of Apill we departed from thence, hauing foure  
 more Ambassadors in our company, sent from the king of Vrgence, and other Soltans, his bre-  
 thren, vnto the Emperour of Russia, with answers of such letters as I brought them: and the same  
 Ambassadors were also committed vnto my charge, by the said kings, and princes: to whom I  
 promised most faithfully, and swore by our lawe, that they should be well used in Rusland, and  
 suffered to depart from thence againe in safetie, according as the Emperour had written also in his  
 letters: for they somwhat doubted, because there had none gone out of Tartaria into Russia, of long  
 time before.

The 27. of Apill, we arrived at the Mare Caspium againe, where we founde our barke which  
 we came in, but neither anker, cable, cocke nor saile: neuertheless we brought hempe with vs,  
 and spunne a cable our selues, with the rest of our tacking, and made vs a saile of cloth of cotton  
 wool, and rigged our barke, as well as we could, but boate or anker we had none. In the meane  
 time, being desirous to make an anker of wood of a cart wheele, there arrived a barke, which came  
 from Afracan, with Tartars, and Russes, which had two ankers, with whom I agreede for the one;  
 and thus being in a readines, we set saile, and departed, I, and the two Johnsons being Master and  
 Purcellers our selues, hauing in our barke the said six Ambassadors, and 25. Russes, which had  
 bene slaues a long time in Tartaria, nor euer had before my coming; libertie, or meanes to gette  
 home, and these slaues serued to rowe when neede was. Thus sailing sometimes along the coast,  
 and sometimes out of sight of land, the 13. day of Maye, hauing a contrary winde, we came to an  
 anker, being thre leagues from the shoare, & there rose a foye storme, which continued 44. houres,  
 and our cable being of our owne spinning, byake, and lost our anker, and being off a lee shoare, and  
 having no boate to helpe vs, we hoised our saile, and bare roomer with the said shoare, looking for  
 present death, but as God provided for vs, we came into a creeke full of oze, and so saved our selues  
 with our barke, we liued in great discomfort for a time. For although we should haue escaped with  
 our liues the danger of the sea, yet if our barke had perished, we knewe we should haue bene, either  
 taken slaues by the people of that Countrey, who liue wildely in the fields, like beasts,  
 without house of habitation. Thus when the storme was ceased, we went out of the creeke againe:  
 and



and hauing sette the lande with our COMPASSE, and taken certaine markes of the same, during the time of the tempest, whilst we riode at our anker, wee went directly to the place where wee riode, with our barke againe, and founde our anker which wee lost: whereat the Tartars much marvelled, howe wee did it. While wee were in the creeke, wee made an anker of woodes of Cart wheeles, which wee had in our barke, which we tye we away, when wee had founde our yron anker againe. Within two daies after, there arose another great storme, at the North-east, and we lay a drie, being driuen farre into the sea, and much adoe to keepe our barke from sinking, the billow was so great: but at the last, hauing faire weather, wee tooke the Sunne, and knowing howe the lande laye from vs, wee fell with the Riuer Yake, according to our best, whereof the Tartars were very glad, fearing that wee shoulde haue bene driuen to the coast of Persia, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

The English  
Rage in the  
Caspian sea.

Note that during the time of our navigation, wee sette vpp the redde crosse of S. George in our flagges, for honour of the Christians, which I suppose was neuer seene in the Caspian sea before. We passed in this voyage diuers fortunes, notwithstanding the 28. of Maye, wee arrived in safety at Astracan, and there remained till the tenth of June following, as well to prepare vs small boates, to goe vp against the streame of Volga, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Ambassadors of Tartarie, committed vnto me, to be brought to the presence of the Emperour of Russia.

This Caspian sea (to say something of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in bredth 150. without any issue to other seas, to the East parte whereof, ioyne the great desert Countrey of the Tartars, called Turckemen: to the West, the Countreys of the Chyrcasies, the mountaines of Caucasus, and the Mare Euxinum, which is from the saide Caspian sea a hundred leagues. To the North is the riuer Volga, and the land of Nagay, and to the South part, ioyne the Countreys of Media, and Persia. This sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as salt as our great Ocean. It hath many goodly riuers falling into it, and it avoideth not it selfe, except it be vnder ground. The notable riuers that fall into it, are first the great riuer of Volga, called in the Tartar tongue Edell, which springeth out of a lake in a marish, or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of Nouogrod, in Russia, and it is from that springe, to the sea, about two thousand English miles. It hath diuers other goodly riuers falling into it, as out of Sebaria, Yaick, and Yeim: Also out of the mountaines of Caucasus, the riuers of Cyrus, and Arrah, and diuers others.

As touching the trade of Shamakye in Media, and Tebris, with other towncs in Persia, I haue enquired, and doe well vnderstande, that it is euen like to the trades of Tartaria, their little vnderance, and small profite: and I haue bene aduertised that the chiefe trade of Persia is into Syria, and so transported into the Levant seas. The fewe shippes vpon the Caspian Sea, the want of Harre and port Townes, the pouertie of the people, and the ice, maketh that trade nauight.

At Astracan, there were Merchants of Shamakye, with whome I offered to barter, and to giue them kerries for their wares, but they would not, saying, they had them as good cheape in their Countrey, as I offered them, which was five rubbles for a kerrie, that I asked: and while I was at Boghar, there were there brought thither out of Persia, cloth, and diuers commodities of our Countreies, which were solde as good cheape, as I might sell ours.

The tenth daie of June, wee departed from Astracan, towards the Musko, hauing a hundred Gunners in our companie, at the Emperours charges, for the safe conduct of the Tartar Ambassadors, and me. And the eight and twentieth daie of July following, we arrived at the Citie of Cazan, hauing bene vpon the waye from Astracan thither, five weekes, and more, without any refreshing of victuals: for in all that waye there is no habitation.

The seuenth of August following, we departed from Cazan, and transported our goods by water, as farre as the Citie of Morons, and then by land: so that the second of September, we arrived at the Citie of Musko, and the fourth day I came before the Emperours Palace, killed his hand, and presented him a white Cowes taile of Cathay, and a drumme of Tartaria, which he accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadors that were committed to my charge, with all the Russe slaves: and that day I dined in his Palaces presence, and at dinner, his Grace sent me meate by a Duke, & asked me diuers questions, touching the lands, & Countreys where I had bene. And thus I remained at the Musko about your affaires, vntill the 17. day of February, that your wares were sent to home: & then hauing licence of the Emperours Palace to depart, the 21. day I came to your house at Vologhda, and there remained vntill the breaking vp of the peere: and

His arrival at  
Spisco the 2.  
September.



ta, fed  
vestra  
Dei, a  
comm  
licitat  
se effu  
(pro q  
omni  
cipien  
lenkin  
his nor  
missu  
ciendi  
lum, v  
Imper  
villo pe  
stram  
mina h  
tis nob

markes of the same, during  
erely to the place where we  
: whereat the Tartars much  
made an anchor of woode of  
ay, when we had founde our  
at home, at the Mouth,  
eepe our barke from sinking,  
wee tooke the Sunne, and  
e bene dyiuen to the coast of

redde crosse of S. George in  
uer scene in the Caspian sea  
the 28. of Maye, wee arri-  
the following, as well to p-  
tr goods, as also for the com-  
to the presence of the Em

so hundred leagues, and in  
of, toyneth the great belm  
reys of the Chyrcales, the  
saide Caspian sea a hundred  
and to the South part, to yve  
places, and in other places as  
and it avoideth not it selfe, sp-  
the great riuer of Volga,  
a marvell, or plaine growen,  
that springe, to the sea, about  
alling into it, as out of Se-  
the riuers of Cyrus, and A-

other towncs in Persia, I  
e trades of Tartaria, that is  
the chiefe trade of Persia  
es vpon the Caspian Sea,  
and the ice, maketh that tra-

he I offered to barter, and in  
had them as good cheape in  
e, that I asked: and while I  
and diuers commodities of  
urs,

ardes the Musko, having a  
s, for the safe conduct of the  
e of July following, we ar-  
from Astracan thither, the  
I that waye there is no hat-

nd transported our goods by  
e second of September, we ar-  
emperours Gate, the kils his  
me of Tartaria, which he  
committed to my charge, and  
and at dinner, his Grace sent  
os, & Countreys where I had  
the 17. day of February, that  
urs spairt to depart the 21.  
he speaking by of the peere:

and then having scene all your goods laden into your boates, I departed with the same, and arri-  
ued without in safetie at Colmogro, the 9. of Maye, 1560. And here I cease for this time, intrea-  
ting you to beare with this my large discourse, which by reason of the varietie of matter, I could  
make no shorter, and I beseech God to prosper all your attempts.

**The latitudes of certain principall places in Rufsia,  
and other Regions.**

	Deg.	Min.
Moscow	55	10
Nouogrod the great	58	26
Nouogrod the lesse	56	33
Colmogro	64	10
Vologda	59	11
Cazan	55	33
Oweke	51	40
Astracan	46	27
At the entrance into the Caspi- an sea,	46	27
Virgençe in Tartarye 20. daies iourney from the Caspian sea.	42	18
Boghara Citie in Tartarye, 20. daies iourney from Virgençe.	39	10
Manguslaue beyond the Cas- pian sea,	45	00

**The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Emperour of Rufsia, re-  
questing licence, and safe conduct for Master Anthony Jenkinson, to  
passe through his kingdome of Rufsia, into Persia, to the  
Great Sophie.**



Lizabeta Dei gratia, Anglia, &c. Regina, Serenissimo & potentissimo  
principi, D. Ioanni Basiliwichej Imperatori totius Rufsia, Magno Duci,  
&c. Salutem, & omnium rerum prosperarum felicissimum incrementum.  
Potentissimo Princeps, res est nobis ad memorandum longe gratissima, il-  
la vestre Maiestatis, erga nos & nostros amicitia. Quæ tempore felicissimæ  
memorie Regis Edwardi Sexti, fratris nostri charissimi, Dei benignitate in-  
cepta, deinceps verò vestra non solum singulari humanitate alta atque fo-  
ta, sed incredibili etiam bonitate aucta atque cumulata, nunc autem omnibus benevolentia  
vestre officijs sic firmata est atque constabilita, vt iam minimè dubitemus, quin ea ad laudem  
Dei, ad gloriam vtriusque nostrum, ad publicam nostrorum vtrobique regnorum immensam  
commoditatem, ad priuam singulorum vtriusque subditorum optatam spem, certamque fe-  
licitatem multis sic deinceps seculis duratura. Et quanquam hæc vestra bonitas, plenissimè se-  
se effudit in omnes nostros subditos, qui sese in vllas imperij vestri partes vnquam receperunt,  
(pro qua ingentes nostras, vt par est, gratias vestre Maiestati habemus, vestrisque vicissim in  
omni opportunitatis loco libentissimè feremus,) tamen abundantia benignitatis vestre, in ac-  
cipiendo, tamque humaniter tractando nostrum fidelem & perdilectum famulum Antonium  
Jenkinson, qui has perferet literas, seorsim nobis gratissima existit. Nam præterquam quòd nul-  
lis non locis vestri Imperij & magna libertate, & summa humanitate vestre serenitatis non per-  
missu solum, sed iussu etiam frueretur, vestra bonitas tamen non in hac domestica benignè fa-  
ciendi ratione conqueuit, sed perlibenter & vltro eundem nostrum hunc perdilectum famu-  
lum, varijs exeris principibus, quo quouersus ipse iter suum instituerat, literis suis, suo magno  
Imperiali sigillo consignatis commendauit. Quod beneficium illi vbiuis gentium, & viam sine  
vilo periculo, propter publicam vestram fidem, & aduentum cum magno fauore, propter ve-  
stram commendationem, optatè quidem, & feliciter communiuit. Itaq; quemadmodum ge-  
mina hæc vestra benevolentia, cum illa generalis exhibita in vestro regno negotiantibus subdi-  
tis nostris vniuersis, tum ista seorsim præstita huic Antonio Jenkinson, perfideli nostro famulo  
nobis

nobis in mente; non solum ad gratiam perpetuamque memoriam, verum etiam ad quantum vel opportunam compensationem, firmissimè devisa est: ita, petimus à vestra Maiestatis ut vtriusque benevolentia vestre rationem & communem nostris vniuersis, & priuatam huic nostro dilecto famulo, vtrisque deinceps dignetur tueri, atque conseruare. Neque nos quidem diffidimus, quin quem fauorem vestra Maiestas antea sua sponte Antonio Jenkinson, cum quidem priuato ostendit, eundem nunc nostro regni principis, Anthonio Jenkinson iam famulatum cooptato benignè velit denuò declarare. Et propterea petimus à vestra Maiestatis, ut dignetur iterum concedere eidem nostro famulo, literas suas conuicatus, publicæ fidei, ac saluconductus, quantum tenore, autoritate, atque præsidio, sit illi, familiaribus suis, & seruis, tutum, liberumque, cum mercibus, farris, equis, & bonis suis vniuersis, inuehendis euehendisque, per vestra regna, domicilia, atque prouincias, proficisci, ire, transire, redire, abire, & istic morari, quamdiu placuerit, & inde recedere quandoquæ illi aut suis libitum fuerit. Et sicut non dubitamus, quin vestra Maiestas hæc omnia humanitatis gratia officia, pro immensa bonitate suæ naturæ benignè & largitè huic famulo nostro sit concessura, ita valde optamus, adeoque petimus, ut vestra Maiestas eodem modo eundem nostrum famulum, vnà cum omnibus suis familiaribus, ac bonis, exteris alijs principibus literis suis dignetur commendare, præsertim verò atque scorsim, Magno Sophi, Persarum Imperatori, in cuius ciuium imperia & ditiones idem noster famulus gratia potissimè experiundi peregrina commercia, proficisci vnà cum suis constituit.

Confidimus igitur hæc omnia nostra postulata pro famuli spe, pro nostra expectatione, pro vestra bonitate, pro nostrorum vtrinque subditorum commoditate, fausta illi, gratia nobis, accepta etiam vestre Maiestatis, & nostris vtrouique perquam vtilia euasura. Deus vestre Maiestatis, &c. Datum in celeberrima nostra Ciuitate Londini, Anno mundi, 5523. Domini, ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi, 1561. regnorum verò nostrorum tertio.

*The same in English.*

**E**Lizabeth by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. to the right excellent, and right mightie Prince, Lorde Iohn Vasiluiche, Emperour of all Russia, &c. greeting and most happie increase in all prosperitie. Right mightie Prince, the amitie of your Maiestie towards vs, and our Subiectes, is very pleasant to vs to be remembered, which being begonne by the goodnes of God, in the raigne of our most deere brother of happie memorie, King Edward the first, and afterwards, though your not onely singular humanitie, feede, and nourished, but also though your incredible goodnes increased, and augmented, is now so firm, and established, with all manner of tokens of your beneuolence; that now we doubt not, but that from hence forth, during many ages, the same shall endure to the praise of God, to both our glories, to the publicke great commoditie of our Realmes on either part, and to the priuate desired hope, and certaine felicitie of all our Subiectes.

And although that this your goodnes hath bene abundantly extended to all our Subiectes, that haue at any tyme repaired into any part of your Empire, for the which wee giue (as reason is) your Maiestie right hartie thanks, and will againe shewe the like vnto yours, right willingly, whensoever opportunitie shall require: yet the abundance of your benignitie both in recreauing, and also in entertayning our faithfull, and beloued seruant, Anthonie Jenkinson, the bringer of these our letters, is vnto vs for him priuately very thankfull. For besides this, that in all places of your Empire, he not onely by your Maiesties sufferance, but also by your commandement, enioyed much libertie, and great friendship, your goodnes not ceasing in this your domestickall disposition of clemencie, did right willingly, and of your some abundant grace, commend the same our welbeloued seruant, by your letters, sealed with your Imperiall seale, to sundry forren Princes, vnto whom he was minded to iourney: which your magnificence did purchase vnto him happily, and according to his desire, both passage without all perill, though your nocable credite, and also archieuing of his iourney though your commendation.

Wherefore like as these your duplicated beneuolences, both that one generally exhibited to all our Subiectes, frequenting that your Realme, and also this the other extended apart to this our right faithfull seruant, Anthonie Jenkinson, is right assuredly fastened in our remembrance, not onely for a perpetuall, and gratefull memorie, but also for a mutuall, and

verum etiam ad munus  
petimus a vestra Maestate re  
niversis, & privatam huc do  
sertare. Neque nos quidem  
Antonio Jenkinson, tum  
in, postquam iam fam  
etimus a vestra Maestate, ut  
omneatus, publicæ fidei, ac  
illi, familiaribus suis, & ser  
onis suis uniuersis, inuehendis  
proficisci, ire, transire, redi  
uandocunque illi aut suis libi  
mnia humanitatis grata offi  
mulo nostro sit concessura, ita  
o eundem nostrum famulum,  
bus literis suis dignetur com  
um Imperatori, in cuius ei  
periundi peregrina commet

pe, pro nostra expectatione,  
moderate, fausta illi, grata no  
quam vitia euasura. De  
uitate. Londini, Anno mun  
gnorum verò nostrorum ter

is Mason d'oll

the right excellent, and right  
Russia, &c. greeting, and most  
nitie of your Maestie towards  
which being beguine by the  
re memorie, King Edward the  
tie, fedde, and nourished, but  
is notue so firmes, and establi  
wee doubt not, but that from  
asse of God, to both our glo  
part, and to the private desire

extended to all our Subiects,  
to the which wee giue (as re  
twe the like unto yours, right  
hdance of your benignitie both  
o seruant, Anthonie Jenkin  
very thankfull. For besides  
Maesties sufferance, but also  
hippe, your goodnes not cea  
willingly, and of your owne  
by your letters, sealed with  
was minded to iourney: which  
to his desire, both passage with  
his iourney through your com

that one generally exhibited to  
his the other extended apart to  
is assuredly fastened in our re  
ll, but also for a mutuell, and  
meete

neces compensation: so wee desire of your Maestie, to vouchsafe from hence forth to conferre  
and continue the geminate disposition of your beneuolences, both generally to all our Sub  
iects, and also private to this our beloved seruant. And we doubt not, but that at our re  
quest, you will againe graciously betwe unto the same Anthonie, notue admitted into our ser  
uice, the like fauour as heretofore your Maestie of your meere motion, did exhibite vnto him,  
being then a private person. And therefore wee desire your Maestie etisoues to graunt to  
the same our seruant, your letters of licence, passport, and safe conduct, though the emoz, au  
thoritie, and helpe whereof, he, his seruants, together with their marchandizes, baggages,  
boxes, and goods whatsoeuer, that shall be brought in, or carried out, by or through all your  
Empire, kingdome, dominions, and prouinces, may surely, and freely iourney, goe, passe,  
repalle, depart, and there tarry so long, as it shall please him: and from thence returne, whensoeuer  
it shall seeme good to him, or his: and as wee doubt not, but that your Maestie in the goodnes  
of your nature, will graciously and abundantly grant all these good offices of humanitie, so  
wee doe hartely desire, that your Maestie will like wise vouchsafe to commend the same our  
seruant, together with all his goods, by your letters, to other foreign Princes, and specially  
to the Great Sophie, and Emperour of Persia, into whose Empire, and Iurisdictiones, the  
same our seruant purposeth with his for to iourney, chiefly for trial of forreine marchan  
dizes.

Wee therefore doe trust, that all these our demands shall tende, and haue effect, according to  
the hope of our seruant, and to our expectation, for your wealth, for the commoditie of both our  
Subiects, luckie to him, thankfull to vs, acceptable to your Maestie, and very profitable to our  
Subiects on either part. God graunt vnto your Maestie, long and happie felicitie in earth, and  
eternall in heauen. Dated in our famous Citie of London, the 25. day of the moneth of A  
prijl, in the yeere of the creation of the world, 5523. and of our Loyde God Iesus Christ, 1561,  
and of our raigne, the third.

The Queenes Maiesties letters to the Great Sophie of Persia,  
sent by Master Anthony Jenkinson.



Elizabeth Dei gratia, Angliz, Francie, & Hibernie Regina, &c. Potentis  
simo & inuicissimo Principi, Magno Sophie, Persarum, Medorum, Partho  
rum, Hyrcanorum, Carmanorum, Margianorum, populorum cis & vltra  
Tygrim fluiuium, & omnium intra Mare Caspium, & Persicum sinum nati  
onum atque Gentium Imperatori salutem, & rerum prosperarum felicissim  
um incrementum. Summi Dei benignitate factum est, vt quas gentes, non  
solum immensa terrarum spacia, & insuperabiles marium vastitates, sed & ipsi etiam celo  
rum cardines longissime distunxerunt; ipsæ tamen hierarum bonis & mentis certa cogitata,  
& humanitatis grata officia, & intelligentie mutue multa commoda facile inter se & oppor  
tune possint communicare. Itaque cum per dilectus, & fidelis noster famulus Antonius Jen  
kinson, qui has literas nostras perfert, cum bona venia, fauore, & gratia nostra hoc Angliz  
nostræ regnum excedere, & in Persiam vsque, vestrasque alias ditiones Dei benignitate pe  
netrare constituerit, hoc illius institutum per laudabile quidem grato nostro fauore proficui,  
& promouere studuimus: id quod eo nos libentius facimus, quoniam hoc eius propositum  
ex honesto studio commercij constituendi potissimum cum vestris subditis, alijsque peregrin  
is hominibus, ad vestra regna confluentibus, omnino extortum sit. Propterea nobis & scri  
bendum ad vestram Maestatem, ab eaque petendum esse duximus, vt nostro rogatu digne  
tur concedere huic famulo nostro Antonio Jenkinson, literas publicæ fidei, & salui conduc  
tus, quarum autoritate atque præsidio, licitum, liberumque sit illi, vnâ cum suis familiaribus,  
seruis, sarcinis, mercibus & bonis vsuersis, per vestra regna, donacilia, ditiones, atque  
prouincias libere, & sine impedimento proficisci, ire, transire, redire, abire, & istic mora  
ri, quamdiu placuerit, & inde recedere, quancocunque illi vel suis lubitum fuerit. Si hæc  
sancta hospitalitatis iura & dulcia communis humanitatis officia, inter nos, nostra regna, no  
strisque subditos libenter constitui, sincerè colli, & constanter conseruari queant, spera  
mus nos, Deum Optimum Maximum effecturum, vt ab hijs paruis initijs, grandiora rerum  
momenta, nobis ad magna ornamenta atque decus, nostris ad summa commoda atque v  
sua, aliquando sint occurrat: si quidem, vt non terra, non mare, non cælum, ad nos longis  
sine separandos, quàm diuina ratio communis humanitatis, & mutue beneuolentie ad nos fir  
missimè

missimè coniungendos plus virium habuisse videatur. Deus salutem omnem, & felicem in terris, & perpetuam in coelis, vestra concedat Maiestati. Datum in Anglia, in celebri civitate vrbe Londino, 25. die Mensis Aprilis, anno mundi, 5523. Domini ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi, 1561. Regnorum verò nostrorum tertio.

*7 The same in English.*

*This letter was also written in Hebrew, and Italian.*

**E**lizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. To the right mightie, and right victorious Prince, the Great Sophie, Emperour of the Persians, Medes, Parthians, Hyrcanes, Carmanarians, Margians, of the people on this side, and beyond the River of Tyrus, and of all men, and nations, betwene the Caspian Sea, and the gulph of Persia, greeting, and most happie increase in all prosperitie. By the goodness of the Almighty God, it is ordained, that those people, which not onely the huge distance of landes, and the invincible widenes of Seas, but also the very quarters of the heavens doe moste farre separate, and sette asunder, may nevertheless through good commendation by writing, both ease, and also communicate betwene them, not onely the conceaued thoughts, or deliberations, and gracefull offices of humanitie, but also many commodities of mutuall intelligence. Therefore whereas our faithfull, and right welbeloued seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, bearer of these our letters, is determined with our license, fauour, and grace, to passe out of this our Realme, and by Gods assistance to trauell euen into Persia, and other your Iurisdictiones: wee minde truely with our good fauour, to sette forward, and aduance, that his right laudable purpose: and that the more willingly, so that this his enterpryse is onely grounded upon an honest intent, to establish trade of merchandise with your Subjects, and with other strangers traffiking your Realmes. Wherefore we haue thought good, both to write to your Maestie, and also to desire the same, to vouchsafe at our request, to grant to our saide seruant, Anthonie Ienkinson, good passports, and safe conducts, by means, and authoritie whereof, it may be free, and lawfull for him, together with his familiars, seruants, cariage, marchandize, and goods whatsoever, through your Realmes, Dominions, Iurisdictiones, and Shouinces, freely, and without impeachment, to iourney, goe, passe, repasse, depart, and carry so long as he shall please, and from thence to returne, whensoever he or they shall thinke good. If these holpe duties of entertainement, and sweete offices of naturall humanitie, may be willingly concluded, sincerely embraced, and firmly obserued betwene vs, and our Realmes, and Subjects, then we vpe hope, that the Almighty God will bring it to passe, that of these small beginnings, greater moments of things shall hereafter spring, both to our furniture, and honours, and also to the great commodities, and vse of our peoples: which will be knowen, that neither the earth, the seas, nor the heavens, haue so much force to separate vs, as the godly disposition of naturall humanitie, and mutuall beneuolence haue to vntie vs strongly together. God grant vnto your Maestie, long, and happie felicitie in earth, and perpetuall in heauen. *Dated* in England, in our famous Citie of London, the 25. day of the moneth of Apill, in the yeece of the creation of the world, 5523. and of our Lord Iesus Christ, 1561. and of our Raigne the third.

**A remembrance giuen by vs the Gouvernours, Consuls, and Assistants of the companie of Marchants, trading into Russia, the eight day of May, 1561. to our trustie friende Anthonie Ienkinson, at his departure towards Russia, and so to Persia, in this our eight iourney.**



**H**ere you shall vnderstand, that we haue laden in our good shippe, called the Swallowe, one Chest, the keyes whereof wee doe here deliuer you, and also a bill, wherein are written particularly the contents in the saide Chest, and what euery thing did coste: and because, as you knowe, the saide Chest is of charge, wee desire you, to haue a speciall regarde vnto it, and when God shall sende you vnto Muscovia, and will is, that you, with the aduise of our Agents there, doe appoint some such presents for the Emperour, and his soune, either wine, clothe of golde, scarlet, or plate, as to your good discretion shall be thought

salutem omnium, & felicitem  
in Anglia, in celebri oratione  
ini ac Dei nostri Iesu Christi,

the right mightie, and right  
Persians, Medes, Parthians,  
and beyond the River of Ty-  
re, and the gulph of Persia, grace  
of the Almighty God, it is ap-  
landes, and the inuincible victo-  
e farre separate, and sette a-  
both east, and also communi-  
cations, and graefull officers of  
Therefoze whereas our faith  
of these our letters, is betwixt  
Realme, and by Gods iustice  
wee minde truly with our good  
wofe: and that the more willing-  
content, to establish trade of tra-  
ding your Realmes. Wherefore  
we desire the same, to bountifull  
n, good passports, and safe con-  
atfull for him, together with  
soever, throught your Realmes,  
impeachment, to tourney, goe,  
from thence to returne, when  
retainment, and sweete offices of  
aced, and firmly obserued so  
that the Almighty God will  
of things shall hereafter spring  
cies, and use of our peoples: his  
his, haue so much foze to shew  
all beneuolence, haue to impo-  
d happie felicitie in earth, and  
of London, the 25. day of the  
and of our Lord Iesus Christ,

urs, Consuls, and  
ing into Russia, the  
onie Lenkinlon, at  
in this our

laden in our good shippe, called  
whereof wee doe here deliuer  
n particularly the contents in  
did colle: and because, as you  
we desire you, to haue a speciall  
de you vnto Musko, our minde  
of our Agents there, doe ap-  
prou, and his soune, either with,  
to your good discretion shall be  
thought

thought meete, and when you haue deliuered vnto him the Quenes Stateletters, & our sayd  
present in the name of the company, we thinke it good that you make your humble suite vnto his  
highnesse in our name, to get his licence of safeconduyt for you and all other our seruants or Agents  
at all times hereafter, with such waeres and merchandize as you at this time, or they hereafter at  
all other times shall thinke good, to passe out of his dominions towards Tartaria, Persia, or other  
places, and also to returne vnto Mosco with such waeres and merchandizes as you shall bring of  
land from any land or countrey that is not in his dominions, and if it be thought good by you and  
our Agents there to make composition with the Emperoz of his officers for some certaine custome  
or tale vpon such goods as we shall passe that way, to the intent we might be the better fauoured, we  
referre it to your discretion, foreseeing that the opening of this matter be not preiudiciall vnto our  
former priuileges.

And for the sale of our cloth of golde, plate, pearles, sapphyres, and other ietwels, we put our trust  
and confidence in you principally to sell them for ready money, time to good debtors, or in barter for  
good waeres, so that you make our other Agents priuy how & for what price you sell any of the pre-  
mises, and also deliuer such summes of money, bills of waeres as you shall receiue, vnto our said A-  
gents thinking good, further, that if you perceiue that the plate or other ietwels, or any part thereof  
will not be solde for profit before your departure from the Mosco, that then you cause them to be  
safe packed, and set order they may be sent hither againe in our shippes the next yeere, except you  
perceiue that there may be some profit in carrying some part of them into Persia, which we would  
not to be of any great value.

We haue also laden in the said Swallow and the other two shippes, 80 sardles, containing 400  
kardles, as by the enuoyes do appeare, which sardles be packed, and appointed to be carped into Per-  
sia, where the lesse if you chance to finde good sales for them in the Mosco, we thinke it were good to  
sell part of them there, and to carry the lesse quantity with you, because we be incertaine what vent  
of sale you shall finde in Persia or other places where you shall come.

If you obtaine the Emperours licence to passe out of his dominions, and to returne, as aforesaid,  
and that you perceiue you may safely do the same, our minde is, that at such time as you thinke best  
and most convenient for that your purpose, you do appoint so many, & such of our hyred seruants or ap-  
prentices as you thinke necessary & meet for our attaynes, and may best be spared to go with you in  
your said voyage, whereof we would one to be such as you might make priuile of all your doings for  
others considerations and causes that may happen: which seruants & appentices, we will and com-  
mand, by this our remembrance, to be obedient vnto you as vnto vs, not onely to go with you, and  
to do such things as you command them in your presence, but also to go vnto such countreies or pla-  
ces as you shall appoint them vnto, either with waeres or without waeres, and there to remaine and  
continue so long as you shall thinke good, and if they or any of them will refuse to do such things as  
you do appoint them, as aforesaid, or that any of them (be he hyred seruant or appentice) do mislike  
himselfe by any manner of disobedience or disorder, and will not by gentle and saye meanes be re-  
formed, we will that you send him backe to the Mosco, with straight order that he may be sent  
from thence hither, and let vs haue knowlege of his euill behauior, to the intent that if he be a hy-  
red seruant we may pay him his wages accordyng to his seruice, and if he be an appentice we may  
debt him accordyng to his desertes.

We will also that you take with you such kardles, scarlet, & other clothes, or any other such waeres  
of ours, as you shall thinke good, and so in the name of God to take your tourney towardes Persia,  
either by the way of Astracan and Mare Caspium, or other wise, as you shall see cause: and  
when God sendeth you into Persia, our minde is, that you repayre vnto the great Sophie with the  
Quenes Stateletters, if he be not too farre from the Caspian sea for you to trauell, and that  
you make him such a present as you shall thinke meete, and if you passe by any other kinges, prin-  
ces, or gouernours, before or after you come to the presence of the Sophie, likewise to make them  
some present, as you see cause accordyng to their estate and dignitie, and withall to procure letters  
of priuilege of safeconduyt of the sayd Sophie or other princes in as large and ample maner as you  
can, by the sure establishing of further trade in merchandize by vs hereafter to be made, frequented  
and continued in those parts, not onely that we may freely sell in all places within his dominions  
such waeres as we carry thither, but also buy and bring away any maner of waeres or merchandizes  
whatsoeuer it be, that is for our purpose and commoditie within his dominions, with free passage  
also for vs at all times, to passe as often as we will with our goods and merchandize into any part  
of India or other countreies thereunto adioynning, and in like maner to returne through his domin-  
ions into Russia or els where,

And for the sale of our hartles or other wares that you shall haue with you, as our trust is that you will doe for our most profite and commoditie: euen so we referre all vnto your good discretion, as well in the sale of our sayd goodes, as to make our reuerue in such things as you shall finde there, and thinke best for our profite. But if passage can not be had into Persia by Astracan, or otherwise, the next Summer, which shall be in the yeere 1562, then our minde is that you procure to sell our hartles, and other such wares as are appointed for Persia, in the Spota, or other the Emperours dominions, if you may sell them for any reasonable price, and then to employ your selfe with such other of our seruantes, as you shall thinke meete for the search of the passage by Noua Zembla, or els you to returne for England as you thinke good. Shoulded alwayes, that if you doe perceiue or vnderstand, that passage is like to be had into Persia the Summer following, which shall be in the yeere 1563, and that you can not sell our hartles in the Emperours dominions, as aforesayd, at a reasonable price: then we will rather they may be kept till the sayd Summer in the yeere 1563, and then you to proceed forwards vpon your iourney towards Persia, as aforesayd. If passage into Persia can not be obtained the next yeere, neither yett hope of passage in the yeere 1563, neither yett in the meane time, good sale of our hartles in the Emperours dominions, then we thinke good for you to see if you can practise to carry your sayd wares by safe conduct through Polonia, or any other wayes vnto Constantinople, or els where you thinke better sale may be had, then in Russia.

The passage of  
Noua Zembla.

Thus haue we giuen you to vnderstand our meanings in this intended adventure: but that much as we do consider and know, that if we should prescribe vnto you any certaine way, or direct order what you should doe, we might so worke cleane contrary to our purpose and intent: therefore knowing your approued wisdom with your experience, and also your carefull and diligent minde in the achieving and bringing to good successe (by the helpe of almighty God) all things that you take in hand, we doe commit our whole affaires concerning the sayd adventure wholly vnto your good discretion, praying God so to prosper you, as may be first for his glory, secondly for the honour and commoditie of this realme, and next for our profite, with the increase of your good name for euer.

And yett further desiring, and also most earnestly requiring you as you tender the state of our company, that you will haue a speciall regard vnto the order of our houses & our seruantes, as well at Colmogro and Vologda, as at Mosco, and to see and consider if any misgouer be amongst our seruantes or apprentices, whereby you thinke we might hereafter be put to diuerrance or loss of any part of our goods or priuilege there, that you do not ouerly see the same reformed, but also to certifye vs thereof by your letter at large, as our trust is in you.

And for the better knowledg to be had in the prices and goodnesse of such things as we do partly suppose you shall finde in the parties of Russia, we doe here with deliuer you a quantitie of certaine bugges, whereby you may perceiue how to know the best, and also there is noted the prices of such wares and bugges as be heere most vendible: also we deliuer you heere with one pound and one ounce weight in vialle to the end, that you may thereby, and with the bill of prices of wares, know what things be worth better. As for the knowledg of silks, we need not to giue you any instructions thereof, other then you know.

Weights and  
things deliuered  
to M.  
Jenkinson.

Also if you vnderstand that any commoditie in Russia, be possible for vs to haue with you to Persia or other places, our minde is that our Agents shall either prouide it for you, or deliuer you money to make you selfe. And because the Russes say that in travelling Eastward from Colmogro thirtie or forty dayes iourney, there is the maine sea to be found, we thinke that Richard Johnson might employ his time that way by land, and to be at Mosco time enough to goe with you into Persia: for if it be true that he may trauell to the sea that way, and that he may know how many miles it is towards the East from Colmogro, it will be a great helpe for vs to finde out the straight and passage that way, if any be there to be had.

The maine sea  
which thirtie  
dayes East  
ward of Col-  
mogro.

William Gerrard. }  
Thomas Lodge. } **Gouernours.**

William Merrike.  
Blas Sanders.

A compendious and briefe declaration of the iourney of M. *Anthonie Ienkinson*, from the famous citie of London into the lande of Persia, passing in this same iourney through Russia, Moscouia, and Mare Caspium, aliàs Hircanum, sent and employed therein by the right worshipfull Societie of the Merchants Aduenturers, for the disquerie of Lands, Islands, &c. Being begunne the fourteenth day of May, Ann. 1561: and in the third yeere of the raigne of the Queenes Maiestie that now is: this present declaration being directed and written to the forefayd Societie.



**I**n imbarcking my selfe in a good Shippe of yours, named the Swallow, at Grauesend, hauing a fayre and good winde, our anker then weyed, and comming all to the protection of our God, hauing in our sailing diuersitie of windes, and thereby forced to direct and obserue sundry courses (not here rehearsed, because you haue bene thereof heeretofore amply informed) on the fourteenth day of July, the yeere aforesaid, I arrived in the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia: and the sixe and twentieth day of the same moneth, after conference then had with your Agents there, concerning your worshippes affaires, I departed from thence, passing through the countrey of Vago, and on the eight day of August then following, I came to Vologda, which is distant from Colmogro seuen hundred miles, where I remained fouete dayes, attending the arrivall of one of your boates, wherein was laden a chest of iewels with the present, by your worshippes appoynted for the Emperours Maiestie: which being arrived, and the chest receiued, I there with departed toward the citie of Moscouia, and came thither the twentieth day of the same moneth, where I immediately caused my comming to be signified vnto the Secretarie of the Imperiall Maiestie, with the Queenes highnesse letters addresed vnto the same his Maiestie, who informed the Emperour thereof. But his highnesse hauing great affaires, and being at that present ready to be married vnto a Lady of Chircassia, of the Paphonticall law, commanded that no stranger, Ambassadour, nor other, should come before him for a time, with further straight charge, that during the space of thre dayes that the same solenne feast was celebrating, the gates of the citie should be shutte, and that no person, stranger or natieue (certeine of his householders excepted) should come out of the sayd houses during the sayd triumph, the cause thereof vnto this day not being knowen.

The Queenes letters to the Emperour of Russia.

The first of September following, the Emperour made a great feast, whereunto were called all Ambassadours and strangers being of reputation, and hauing affaires: amongst whom I was one, but being willed by the Secretarie first to come, and to shew him the Queenes Maiesties letters, I refused so to doe, saying I would deliuer the same vnto the Emperours owne hands, and not otherwise: which heard, the Secretarie answered, that vntill he might first peruse the said letters, I should not come into the Emperours presence, so that I was not at the feast. Heerethefore, I was aduertised by a noble man that I was inquired for by the Emperours Maiestie, although the cause of my absence was to his Maiestie unknowen. The next day following, I caused a supplication to be made, and presented it to his highnesse owne hands, and thereby declared the cause of my comming, signified by the Queenes Maiesties letters, and the answer of his sayd Secretarie, most humbly beseeching his Grace that he would receiue and accept the same her highnesse letters, with such honoz and friendship, as his letters sent by Oscepp Napeya, were receiued by the handes of our late Soueraigne lady Queene Mary, or els that it would please his highnesse to dismisse me, saying that I would not deliuer the said letters but vnto his owne handes, for that it is so used in our countrey. Thus the matter being pondered, and the effect of my supplication well digested, I was forthwith commanded to come with the sayd letters before his Maiestie, and so deliuered the same into his owne handes, (with such presents as by you were appoynted) according to my request, which were gratefully accepted, and the same day I dined in his Graces presence, with great intertainment. Shortly after, I desired to know whether I should be licensed to passe through his highnesse dominions into the land of Persia, according to the Queenes Maiesties request: hereunto it was answered, that I should not passe thither, for that his Maiestie ment to send an armie of men that way into the land of Chircassia, wherby my iourney should

Request to passe into Persia, the roba of Moscouia.



should be both dangerous and troublesome, and that if I should perish therein, it would be much to his Graces dishonour, but he doubted other matters although they were not expected. Thus having received his answer, neither to my expectation, nor yet contentation, and there remaining a good part of the yeere, having in that time solde the most part of your hartles and other wares appointed for Persia, when the time of the yeere required to returne for England, I desired passage, and post voyles for money, which was granted: but having received my passage, ready to depart, there came vnto our house there Olip Nepeya, who perswaded me that I should not depart that day, saying that the Emperour was not truly informed, imputing great fault to the forwardnesse of the Secretary, who was not my friend before whom comming againe the next day, and finding the same Secretary and Olip Nepeya together, after many allegations and objections of things, and perceiving that I would depart, I was willed to remaine vntill the Emperours Spairthe were spoken with againe touching my passage: wherevnto I was content, and within three dayes after sending for me, he declared that the Emperours pleasure was that I should not onely passe thro ro his dominions into Persia, but also haue his Graces letters of commendations to soynne princes, with certaine his affaires committed to my charge, too long here to rehearse: whereupon I appointed my selfe for the voyage, and the 15 day of March, the yeere aforesaid, I dined againe in his Spairthes presence in company of an Ambassadour of Persia and others, and receiving a cuppe of drinke at his Spairthes hands, I tooke my leaue of his highnesse, who did not onely giue me letters, as aforesaid, but also committed matter of importance & charge vnto me, to be done when I should arrive in those countries whither I intended to go, and having all things in readinesse for the same voyage, I departed from the citie of Mosco the 27 day of April 1562, downe by the great river of Volga, in company of the said Ambassadour of Persia, with whom I had great friendship and conference all the way downe the same river vnto Astracan, where we arrived all in health the 10 day of June.

Olippe Nepeya Ambassadour from the Emperour of Russia to St. Mart.

Astracan.

And as touching the situations of the cities, townes, castles and countreyes, as well of Spahometans as also of Gentils adjoining to the same, wherby I passed from Mosco vnto Astracan, I omit in this beuial to rehearse, for that I heretofore haue declared the same most amply vnto you in my voyage to Boghar. Thus being arrived at Astracan, as is aforesaid, I repayed vnto the capitaine there, vnto whom I was commended from the Emperours Spairthe, with great charge that he not onely should ayd and succor me with all things needfull during my abode there, but also to safeconduct me with 50 gummers well appointed in two strooges of bygantines into the Caspian sea, vntill I had passed certaine dangerous places which pirates & rowers do accustome to haue, & having prepared my barke for the sea, the Ambassadour of Persia being before departed in a barke of his owne, the 15 day of July, the yeere aforesaid, I and my company tooke our voyage from the said Astracan, and the next day at a West sunne, passed the mouth of the said riuer being twentie miles distant, lying next Southeast. The 18 at a Southwest sunne, we passed by three Islands being distant nine miles from the said mouth of Volga, and Southsouthwest from thence, sailing Southsouthwest the next day, at a West by North sunne we fell with the land called Challica Ostriua, being foure round Islands together, distant from the said three Islands fortie miles. From thence sailing the said course the next day, we had sight of a land called Tuke, in the countrey of Tywmen, where pirates and rowers doe vse: for feare of whom we hailed off into the sea due East fortie miles, and fell vpon shallowes out of the sight of land, and there were like to haue perished, escaping most hardly: then the 22 day we had sight of a goodly Island called Charalet, distant from the said Challica Ostriua a hundred miles, the winde being contrary, and a stiffe gale, we were not able to seize it: but were forced to come to an anchor to the lee ward of the same six miles off in three or foure fathom water, being distant from the maine land to the Westward of vs, which was called Skafeyllor Connyke, a countrey of Spahometans, about \_\_\_\_\_ miles, and so riding at two anchors a head, having no other provision, we lost one of them, the stowme and sea being growne very large, and thereby our barke was so full of leakes, that with continuall pumping, we had much a doe to keepe her above water, although we thre w much of our goods ouerboard, with losse of our boate, and our selues thereby in great danger like to haue perished either in the sea, or els vpon the lee shoare, where we should haue fallen into the handes of those wicked indiuels, who attended our shipwacke: and surely it was very vnlike that we should haue escaped both the extremities, but onely by the power and mercy of God, for the stowme continued seuen dayes, to wit, vntill the thirtieth day of the same month: and then the winde comming vp at the West with large weather, our anchor weped, and our saile displayed, lying South, the next day sailing to the shore with a West sunne, we were nigh a lande called by the inhabitants Shyruantha, and there we came againe to an anchor, having the winde contrarie being distant from the sayd Shatalet

St. Fenkinsons voyage to Boghar.

We passed the Caspian sea.

The countrey of Tywmen.

The Island of Chatalet.

The land of Shyruantha.

th therein, it would be much to  
were not expected. Thus ha-  
vacation, and there remaining  
our hartles and other wares ap-  
for England, I desired passage  
my passage, ready to depart,  
me that I should not depart the  
great fault to the forwardnesse  
again the next day, and finding  
actions and obediencies of things,  
neill the Emperours Spairthe  
content, and within three dayes  
that I should not onely passe the  
of commendations to foreyn prin-  
to rebearse: wherupon I spe-  
aforesaid, I dined againe in his  
obeders, and receiving a cuppe of  
who did not only give me letters,  
to me, to be done when I should  
things in readinesse for the same  
62. done by the great riuer of  
I had great friendship and conser-  
ruied all in health the 10 day of

and counterpes, as well of Pa-  
les from Moico unto Afracan,  
d the same most amply unto you  
is aforesaid, I repayed into the  
ours Spairthe, with great charge  
during my abode there, but also  
es of byganticnes into the Capis-  
s & rowers do accustom to haue,  
being before departed in a bark  
company tooke our voyage from  
outh of the said riuer being twen-  
sunne, we passed by three Islands  
th south west from thence, sailing  
with the land called Chhalica O-  
preee Islands forty miles, from  
d called Tuke, in the countrey of  
he baled off into the sea due East  
there were like to haue perished,  
Island called Chatalet, distant  
ig contrary, and a stiff gale, we  
he lee ward of the same five miles  
nd to the Westward of vs, which  
out miles, and so riding  
them, the storme and sea being  
at with continuall pumping, we  
uch of our goods overboard, with  
haue perished either in the sea, or  
pes of those wicked indidels, who  
should haue escaped both the one  
we continued seven dayes, to wit,  
unning by at the West with saye  
, the next day hailing to the shore  
nes Shyruanha, and there we  
distant from the sayd Shatalet

150 miles, and there we continued twiell the third day of August, then hauing a saye winde, win-  
ding Southward, and sailing threestoye miles, the next day at a Southward sunne we arrived  
at a cite called Derbent in the king of Hyrcans dominion, where comming to land, and salu-  
ing the capaine there with a present, he made to me and my company a dinner, and there taking  
fresh water I departed.

Derbent.

This cite of Derbent is an ancient towne, hauing an olde castle therein, being situated vpon  
an hill called Castowe, builded all of freestone much after our building, the walles very high and  
thick, and was first erected by king Alexander the great, when he warred against the Persians  
and Medians, and then he made a wall of a wonderfull height and thickness, extending from  
the same cite to the Georgians, yea unto the principall cite thereof named Tewlish, which wall  
though it be now rased, or otherwist decayed, yet the foundation remaineth, and the wall was made  
of the stone that the inhabitants of that countrey then we wily conquered by the said Alexander  
should not lightly see, nor his enemies easily invade. This cite of Derbent being now vnder the  
power of the Sophy of Persia, bordereth vpon the sea, adioyning to the foresaid land of Shalfeall,  
in the latitude of forty one degrees. From thence sailing Southeast & Southsoutheast about 80  
miles, the first day of August, the yeere aforesaid, we arrived at our landing place called Shabran,  
where my barke discharged the goods layd on hoare, and there being in my tent keeping great  
watch for feare of rowers, whereof there is great plenty, being fild people, the gouernor of the sayd  
countrey named Alcan Murcy, comming vnto me, intercaptined me very gently, vnto whom giuing  
a present, he appointed for my safegard forty armed men to watch and ward me, whom he might  
haue taken from the king of Shyruan. The 12 day of the same moneth newes did come from the  
king, with order that I should repayne vnto him with all speed and for expedition, as well ransoms  
to the number of five and forty to carry my goodes, as also hopes for me and my company were in  
readinesse; so that the goods laden, and taking my iourney from thence the said twelfth day, on the  
18 of the same moneth, I came to a cite called Shamackye, in the said countrey of Hyrcan, other-  
wist called Shyruan, and there the king hath a saye place, where my lodging being appointed, the  
goods were discharged: the next day being the 19 day, I was sent for to come to the king named  
Obdolooran, who kept his court at that time in the high mountaines in tents, distant from the  
said Shamackye twentie miles, to auoid the injury of the heat: and the 20 day I came before his  
presence, who gently intercepted me, and hauing killed his handes, he bad me to dinner, and com-  
manded me to sit downe not farre from him. This king did sit in a very rich pavilion, wrought  
with silke and golde placed very pleasantly, vpon a hill side, of threene fathom long, and five fathom  
broad, hauing before him a goodly fountaine of lorde water: wherof he and his nobilitie did drinke,  
he being a prince of a meane stature, and of a steepe countenance, richly apparelled with long gar-  
ments of silke, and cloth of golde, imbodored with pearles and stone: vpon his head was a colipane  
with a sharpe end standing vpwards halfe a yard long, of rich cloth of golde, wrapped about with a  
piece of India silke of twentie yards long, wrought with golde, and on the left side of his colipane  
stood a plume of fetters, set in a crunke of golde richly inameled, and set with precious stones: his  
earerings had pendants of golde a handfull long, with two great rubies of great value, set in the  
ends thereof: all the ground within his pavilion was covered with rich carpets, and vnder him-  
selfe was spred a square carpet wrought with siluer & gold, & thereupon was laid two sitable cushi-  
ons: Thus the king with his nobilitie sitting in his pavilion with his legs a cross, and perceiving  
that it was painefull for me to sit, his highnesse caused a stoole to be brought in, and did will me to  
sit thereupon, after my fashion. Dinner time then appoyching, diuers clothes were spred vpon the  
ground, and sundry dishes serued, and set in a ranke with diuers kindes of meates, to the number of  
140 dishes, as I numbred them, which being taken away with the table clothes, and others spred,  
a banquet of fruites of sundry kindes, with other banquetting meates, to the number of 150 dishes,  
were brought in: so that two seruices occupied 290 dishes, and at the end of the said dinner & ban-  
ket, the king said vnto me, Quo the queldes, that is to say, welcome: and called for a cup of water to  
be braynen at a fountaine, and taking thereof, did deliuer me the rest, demanding how I did like the  
same, and whether there were so good in our countrey or not: vnto whom I answered in such  
sort, that he was therewith contented: then he proposed vnto me sundry questions, both touching  
religion, and also the state of our countrey, and further questioned whether the Emperour of Al-  
maine, the Emperour of Russia, or the great Turke, were of most power, with many other things  
too long here to reheale, to whom I answered as I thought most meet. Then he demanded whe-  
ther I intended to goe any further, and the cause of my comming: vnto that I answered, that I  
was sent with letters from the Queene most excellent Spairthe of England, vnto the great  
Sophy, to increas friendship and free passage, and for his safetionduot to be granted vnto

It might  
be called  
by Cappis.

Fortie one  
degrees.

Shabran.

Alcan Murcy  
the gouernor.

King Obdolo-  
oran.

The medall &  
arripe of king  
Obdolooran.

and counterpes, as well of Pa-  
les from Moico unto Afracan,  
d the same most amply unto you  
is aforesaid, I repayed into the  
ours Spairthe, with great charge  
during my abode there, but also  
es of byganticnes into the Capis-  
s & rowers do accustom to haue,  
being before departed in a bark  
company tooke our voyage from  
outh of the said riuer being twen-  
sunne, we passed by three Islands  
th south west from thence, sailing  
with the land called Chhalica O-  
preee Islands forty miles, from  
d called Tuke, in the countrey of  
he baled off into the sea due East  
there were like to haue perished,  
Island called Chatalet, distant  
ig contrary, and a stiff gale, we  
he lee ward of the same five miles  
nd to the Westward of vs, which  
out miles, and so riding  
them, the storme and sea being  
at with continuall pumping, we  
uch of our goods overboard, with  
haue perished either in the sea, or  
pes of those wicked indidels, who  
should haue escaped both the one  
we continued seven dayes, to wit,  
unning by at the West with saye  
, the next day hailing to the shore  
nes Shyruanha, and there we  
distant from the sayd Shatalet

The Querees  
letters to the  
Sophy.

English merchants to trade into his *Sogonias*, with the like also to be granted to his subjects, when they should come into our countreys, to the honour and wealth of both realmes, and communitie of both they subjects, with diuers other words, which I omit to rehearse. This said king much allowing this declaration, said that he would not onely giue me passage, but also men to safeconduct me vnto the sayd *Sophie*, lying from the foresaid cite of *Shamake* thirtie dayes iourney, by into the land of *Bersia*, at a castle called *Cashin*: so departing from the king at that time, within thre dayes after, being the foure and twentieth day of August the yeere aforesaid, he sent for me againe: vnto whom I repayned in the morning, and the king not being risen out of his bedde (for his maner is, that watching in the night, and then banquetting with his women, being a

**Cashin.** should ride an hawking with many Gentlemen of his Court: and that they should let me so much game and pastime as might be, which was done, and many cranes killed: we returned from hawking about thre of the clocke at the afternoone. The king then risen, and ready to dinner, I was invited thereunto, and approaching nigh to the entering in of his tent, and being in his sight two gentlemen incountered me with two garments of that countrey fashion, one of silke, and the other of silke and golde, sent vnto me from the king, and, after that they cauled me to put off my bypper garment, being a gowne of blacke velvet furred with *Sables*, they put the sayd two garments vpon my backe, and so conducted me vnto the king, before whom doing reuerence, and kissing his hand, he commanded me to sit not farre from him, and so I dined in his presence, he at that time being very merry, and demanding of me many questions, and amongst other, how I like the maner of they hawking. Dinner so ended, I required his high nesse safeconduct for to depart towards the *Sophie*, who dismissing me with great fauour, and appointing his Ambassadors (which returned out of *Russia*) and others, to safeconduct me, he gave me at my departure a fayre hoise with all furniture, and custome free from thence with all my goods. So I returned to *Shamake* againe, where I remayned vntill the first of October, to prouide camels, horses, and other necessaries for my sayd intended iourney.

**The description of Hyrcan.**

But now before I proceed further, I purpose to write something of this countrey of *Hyrcan*, now called *Shyrvan*, with the townes and communitie of the same. This countrey of *Hyrcan* in times past was of great renowne, hauing many cities, townes, and castles in it: and the kings thereof in time of antiquitie were of great power, able to make warres with the *Sophies* of *Bersia*: but now it is not onely otherwile (for that the cities, townes, and castles he decayed) but also the king is subject to the sayd *Sophie*, (although they haue they proper king) and be at the commandement of the sayd *Sophie*, who conquered them not many yeeres passed, for they diuerse in religion, and caused not onely all the nobilitie and gentlemen of that countrey to be put to death, but also oner and besides, rased the walles of the cities, townes, and castles of the said realme, to the intent that there should be no rebellion, & for they great terror, caused a turret of free stone and flints to be erected in the sayd cite called *Shamake*, and in a ranke of flints of the sayd turret, did set the heads of the sayd nobilitie and gentlemen, then executed: this cite is distant from the sea side, with camels seuen dayes iourney, but now to the same being much decayed, and chiefe inhabited with *Armenians*, another cite called *Arrash*, bordering vpon the *Georgians*, is the chiefe and most opulent in the trade of merchandize, and thereabouts is nourished the most abundant groweth of raw silke, and thither the *Turkes*, *Shyrans*, and other strangers doe resort and traffike. There be also diuers good and necessarie commodities to be prouided and had in this said realme: videlizer, galls, rough and smooth, cotten wooll, allome, and raw silke of the naturall groweth of that countrey. Besides, were all kinde of spices and mygges, and some other commodities, which are brought thither from out of *East India*, but in the lesse quantitie, for that they be not assured to haue vent or deterrance of the same: but the chiefe commodities he there, raw silke of all sortes, whereof there is great plenty. Not farre from the sayd cite of *Shamake*, there was an olde castle called *Gullistone*, now beaten downe by this *Sophie*, which was esteemed to be one of the strongest castles in the world, and was besieged by *Alexander the great*, long time before he could winne it. And not farre from the said castle was a sumptuous building, wherein was buried a kinges daughter, named *Amalecke Channa*, who slew her selfe with a knife, for that her father would haue forced her (he professing chastitie) to haue married with a king of *Tartary*, vpon which occasion the maidens of that countrey doe reioyce thither once every yeere to lament her death.

**The strong castles of Gullistone besieged.**

All in the said countrey there is a high hill called *Quiquiff*, vpon the toppe whereof (as it is commonly reported) did dwell a great Giant, named *Arneolte*, hauing vpon his head two great houses, and eares, and eyes like a horse, and a tayle like a colue. It is further said, that

to be granted to his subiectes, of both realmes, and to commande to be heard. This said king me passage, but also men of Sharnakpe shirke vapes departing from the king at that August the yeere aforesayd, being not being risen out of his riding with his women, being a one commandement that I that they should shew me in shes killed: we returned from risen, and ready to dinner, I cent, and being in his light ey fashion, sde downe to the from the king, and, after that beluet furred with Sables, vnto the king, before whom erre from him, and so I knowe me many questions, and a embed, I requierd his high ie with great fauour, and apes, to safeconduct me, he gave free from thence with all my vntill the sixt of October, to me.

of this countrey of Hyrcan. This countrey of Hyrcan d castles in it: and the kings with the Sophies of Pers d castles be decayed) but also upper king) and be at the comes passed, for they durdric at countrey to be put to death, castles of the said realme, to used a turret of free stone and ke of flints of the sayd turret, in this cite is distant from the g much decayed, and chidie in the Georgians, is the chid nourished the most abundant angers do resort and traffike, and had in this said realme: like of the naturall groweth and some other commodities, quantitie, for that they be not odities be there, raw fishes of ie of Sharnakpe, there was e, which was esteemed to be under the great, long time binner of sumptuous building, a, who shew her selfe with a cite) can haue warried with a doe. before thither once cur?

on the toppe whereof (as it being upon his head can be. It is further said, that this

this monster kept a passage thereby, vntill there came an holy man (termed Haucoire Harnshe) a hindman to one of the Sophies, who mounted the said hill and combatting with the said Giant, did kill not onely him in chains, but also his woman called Lamisache, with his soune named After: for which virtuous they of that countrey haue this holy man in great reputation, and the hill at this day (as it is written) fauoureth so ill, that no person may come nigh vnto it. But whether it be true or not, I referre it to further knowledg.

Now to returne to the discourse of the proceeding in my voiage towards the great Sophie, The 6. of October in the yeere aforesayd, I with my company departed from Sharnachie aforesayd, and hauing iourneyed threer foye milles, came to a towne called Yuaate, wherein the king hath a faire house, with orchards and gardens, well replenished with frutes of all sorts. By this towne passeth a great riuer called Curre, which springeth in the mountains of the Georgians, and passing through the countrey of Hircania aforesayd, falleth in to the Caspian of Hircan sea, at a place betwene two ancient towne called Shabran and Bacowe, situate within the realme of Hircane, and from thence smyth further, passing through a fruitful countrey inhabited with pasturing people, which dwell in the Summer season vpon mountaines, and in Winter they remooue into the valleys without resorting to towne of any other habitation: and when they remooue, they do iourney in Carraunnes of troopes of people and cattell, carrying all their wiues, children and baggage vpon bullocks. Now passing this wild people ten dayes iourney coming into no towne of towne the 16. day of October we arriued at a cite called Ordowill, where we were lodged in a house builded with faire stone, and erected by this Sophie's father named Ismael, onely for the fauour and lodging of strangers and other traueilers, wherein all men haue victuals and feeding for man and horse for 3. dayes, and no longer. This foyersayd late prince Ismael, lieth buried in a faire Meskie, with a sumptuous sepulchre in the same, which he caused to be made in his life time. This towne Ordowill is in the latitude of 38. degrees, an ancient cite in the prouince of Ader-ragan, wherein the princes of Persia are commonly buried, and there Alexander the great did keepe his court when he inuaded the Persians, foure daies iourney to the Westward is the Citie Tauris, in old time called Tauris, the greatest cite in Persia, but not of such trade of merchandize as it hath bene, or as others be at this time, by meane of the great inuasion of the Turke, who hath conquered from the Sophie almost to the sayd Citie of Tauris, which the sayd Turke once liued, and thereby caused the Sophie to forsake the same, and to keepe his court ten dayes iourney from thence, at the sayd Citie of Casbin.

The 21. day wee departed from Ordowill aforesayd, travelling for the most part ouer mountaines all in the night season, and resting in the day being destitute of moob, and therefore were forced to vsit for fewell the dung of horses and camels, which we bought deare of the pasturing people. Thus passing ten dayes iourney the yeere aforesayd, the second day of Nouember we arriued at the foyersayd Citie of Casbin, where the sayd Sophie keepeth his court, and were appointed to a lodging not farre from the kings pallace, and within two dayes after the Sophie commaunded a prince called Shallie Murzey sonne to Obdowcan king of Shiruan aforesayd, to send for me to his house, who asked me in the name of the sayd Sophie how I did, and whether I were in health, and after did welcome me, and invited me to dinner, whereat I had great entertainment, and so from thence I returned to my lodging. The next day after I sent my interpreter vnto the Sophies Secretarie, declaring that I had letters directed from our most gracious Soueraigne laudie the Queenes most excellent maiestie of the Realme of England, vnto the sayd Sophie, and that the cause of my comming was expressed in the same letters, desiring that at convenient time I might come into his maiesties presence, who aduertising the Sophie thereof, shortly after answered mee that there were great affaires in hand: Which being finished, I should come before his presence, willing mee in the meane time to make ready my presence if I had any to desire.

At this time the great Turkes Ambassadors arriued foure dayes before my comming, who was firste thither to conclude a perpetuall peace betwixt the same great Turke and the Sophie, and brought with him a present in gold and faire horses, with rich furnitures and other giftes esteemed to be worth foure thousand pound. And thereupon a peace was concluded with foyfull feates, triumphs and solemnities, corroborated with strong othes, by their lawe of Alkaron, for either to obserue the same, and to liue alwayes after as twaine brethren, ayding the one the other against all princes that should warre against them, or epter of them. And vpon this conclusion the Sophie caused the great Turkes sonne named Baizer Soltan, a valiant prince, (who being new from his father vnto the Sophie, had remayned in his court the space of foure yeeres) to be put to death. In which time the sayd Turkes sonne had caused manyall warres betwixt the sayd princes,

The towne of Yuaate.

The cite of Ordowill.

The cite of Tauris.

Antb. Fenkinson arriued at the Sophies court. 2. Nouember, 1562.

The Turkes Ambassadors to the Sophie.

princes, and much prevailed therein: The Turke demanded therefore his soune to bee sent vnto him, and the Sophie refused thereunto to consent. But now being slaine according to the Turkes will, the Sophie sent him his head for a present, not a little belieued, and acceptable to the vnnaturall father. Discouraging at my first arrivall with the king of Shirvan of sundry matters, and being incertained as hath bene before declared, the sayd king named Obdolocon, demanding whether that wee of England had friendship with the Turkes or not, I answered that we never had friendship with them, and that therefore they would not suffer vs to passe through their countrie into the Sophie his dominions, and that there is a nation named the Venetians, not farre distant from vs, which are in great league with the sayd Turkes, who trade into his dominions with our commodities, chiefly to batter the same for rawe silkes, which (as wee understand) come from thence: and that if it would please the sayde Sophie and other princes of that countrey, to suffer our merchants to trade into those dominions, and to give vs passport and safe conduct for the same, as the sayde Turkes hath granted to the sayde Venetians, I doubted not but that it should growe to such a trade to the profite of them as never before had bene the like, and that they should bee both furnished with our commodities, and also haue utterance of theirs, although there neuer came Turke into their land, persuading with many other wordes for a trade to be had. This king vnderstanding the matter liked it maruailously, saying, that he would write vnto the Sophie concerning the same: as he did in very deede, assuring me that the Sophie would graunt my request, & that at my returne vnto him he would giue me letters of safe conduct, and priuiledges. The Turkes Ambassadour was not then come into the land, neither any peace hoped to be concluded, but great preparation was made for warre which was like much to haue furthered my purpose, but it chaunced otherwisse. For the Turkes Ambassadour being arrived, and the peace concluded, the Turkish merchants there at that time present, declared to the same Ambassadour, that my comming thither (naming mee by the name of Franke) would in great part destroy their trade, and that it should bee good for him to perswade the Sophie not to fauour me, as his highnesse ment to obserue the league and friendship with the great Turke his master, which request of the Turkish merchants, the same Ambassadour earnestly persecuted, and being afterwards dismissed with great honour hee departed out of the Realme with the Turkes some head as aforesayd, and other presents.

The Turkes  
merchants  
withland of  
Jenkinson.

Shaw the  
mas the Sophie  
his name.

The 20. day of Nouember aforesayd, I was sent for to come before the sayd Sophie, otherwise called Shaw Thamas, and about thre of the clocke at after noone I came to the court, and in lighting from my horse at the court gate before my feete touched the ground, a paire of the Sophies owne shoes termed in the Persian tongue (Basmackes) such as hee himselfe weareth when hee ariseth in the night to pray (as his maner is) were put vpon my feete, for without the same shoes I might not be suffered to tread vpon his holy ground, being a Christian, and called amongst them Gower, that is, vnbelleuer, and vnclaine: esteeming all to bee infidels and Pagans which doe not beleue as they doe, in their false filthy prophets, Mahomet and Murezzalie. At the sayde court gate the things that I brought to present his maiestie with, were deuoid by sundry parcels to sundry seruitors of the court, to cary before me, for none of my companie or seruants might be suffered to enter into the court with me, my interpreter onely excepted. Thus comming before his maiestie with such reverence as I thought meete to be vsed, I deliuered the Queenes maiesties letters with my present, which he accepting, demanded of me of what countrey of Franke I was, and what affaires I had there to do: vnto whom I answered that I was of the famous Citie of London within the noble realme of England, and that I was sent thither from the most excellent and gracious soueraigne Ladie Elizabeth, Queene of the sayd Realme for to treat of friendship, and free passage of our merchants and people, to repaire and traffique within his dominions, for to bring in our commodities, and to carrie away thence to the honour of both princes, the mutuall commoditie of both realmes, and wealth of the subiects, with other wordes here omitted. He then demanded me in what language the letters were written, I answered, in the Latine, Italian and Hebrew: well sayd he, we haue none within our realme that vnderstand those tongues. Whereunto I answered that such a famous and woorthie Prince (as hee was) wanted not people of all nations within his large dominions to interpret the same. Then he questioned with me of the state of our countreies, and of the power of the Emperour of Almanie, King Philip, and the great Turke, and which of them was of most power: whom I answered to his contentation, not disparaging the great Turke, their late concluded friendship considered. Then hee reasoned with me much of religion, demanding whether I were a Gower, that is to say, an vnbelleuer or a Muselman, that is, of Mahomets faith. Vnto whom I answered, that I was neither vnbelleuer nor Mahometan, but a Christian. What is that sayd hee vnto the king of Georgians

The Sophies  
questions.

sonne,

... his sonne to bee sent  
 being slaine according to the  
 desire, and acceptable to  
 of Shirvan of sundry man-  
 named Obdolocan, do  
 Turkes or not, I answered  
 not suffer vs to passe through  
 nation named the Venetians,  
 Turkes, who trade into his do-  
 mines, which (as wee under-  
 stand) the Sophie and other princes of that  
 and to give vs passport and  
 the sayde Venetians, I doubt  
 as never before had bene the  
 us, and also haue utterance of  
 with many other wofull  
 miraculously, saying, that hee  
 would, assuring me that hee  
 would give me letters of safe  
 come into the land, neither  
 warre which was like much  
 Turkes Amballadour being  
 at time present, declared to the  
 name of Frankes) would in  
 persuade the Sophie not to  
 with the great Turke his  
 about earnestly preferred,  
 the Realme with the Turkes

... the sayd Sophie, other  
 I came to the court, and in  
 the ground, a paire of the So-  
 phie hee himselfe weareth when  
 etc. for without the same shoes  
 tian, and called amongst them  
 idels and Pagans which doe  
 Murtezallie. At the sayde  
 ere desired by sundry parcels  
 manie of seruants might be  
 ed. Thus coming before  
 deliuered the Queenes mai-  
 e of what countrey of Frankes  
 ed that I was of the famous  
 was sent thither from the most  
 sayd Realme for to create of  
 e and traffique within his do-  
 mine to the honour of both prin-  
 cers, with other words here  
 written, I answered, in the  
 realme that understande shoulde  
 Prince (as hee was) wanted  
 the same. Then hee questioned  
 our of Ainaie, King Philip,  
 n I answered to his comen-  
 y considered. Then hee read  
 ver, that is to say, an unbelie-  
 were, that I was neither bu-  
 into the king of Georgians  
 sonne,

sonne, who being a Christian was fled unto the sayd Sophie, and hee answered that a Christian  
 was he that beleuech in Iesus Christus, affirming him to bee the sonne of God, and the greatest  
 prophet: Doest thou beleue so sayd the Sophie unto me? Hee that I doe sayd I: Whou un-  
 beleuech sayd he, we haue no neede to haue friendship with the unbelueers, and so willed mee to  
 depart. I being glad thereof did reuerence and went my way, being accompanied with many of  
 his gentlemen and others, and after mee followed a man with a Blauet of sand, sifting all the  
 way that I had gone within the said passage, euen from the sayd Sophies sight unto the court  
 gate.

Thus I repaired againe unto my lodging, and the sayd night Shally Murzge some to the  
 king of Hircanes aforesayd, who fauoured mee very much for that I was commended unto him  
 from his father, willed me not to doubt of any thing, putting me in hope that I should haue good  
 successe with the Sophie, and good intertainment.

The curtesie of  
 Shally Mur-  
 zep.

Thus I continued for a time, daily resorting unto me diuers gentlemen sent by the Sophie  
 to conferre with me, especially touching the affaires of the Emperour of Russia, and to know by  
 what way I intended to returne into my countrey, either by the way that I came, or by the way  
 of Ormus, and so with the Portugals shipped. Unto whom I answered, that I durst not returne  
 by the way of Ormus, the Portugals and wee not being friends, fully perceiving their mea-  
 ning: for I was advertised that the sayde Sophie meant to haue warres with the Portugals,  
 and would haue charged me that I had bene come for a spie to passe through his dominions unto  
 the said Portugals, thinking them and vs to be all one people, and calling all by the name of  
 Frankes, but by the prouidence of God this was prevented.

Warres in-  
 tended against  
 the Portugals.

After this the sayd Sophie conferred with his nobilitie and counsell concerning me, who per-  
 suaded, that he should not entertaine me well, neither dismisle mee with letters or gifts, conside-  
 ring that I was a Frank, and of that nation that was enemye to the great Turke his brother,  
 persuading that if hee did otherwise, and that the newes thereof should come to the knowledge  
 of the Turke, it should be a meane to breake their new league and friendship lately concluded: dis-  
 suading further because hee had no neede, neither that it was requisite for him to haue friendship  
 with unbelueers, whose countreys lay farre from him, and that it was best for him to send mee  
 with my letters unto the sayde great Turke for a present, which he was fully determined to haue  
 done at some meete time, meaning to send his Amballadour unto the sayd great Turke very shortly  
 after.

But the king of Hircanes some aforesayd, understanding this deliberation, sent a man in Post  
 unto his father, for to declare and impart the purpose unto him, who as a gracious prince, consi-  
 dering that I had passed through his dominions, and that I had iourneyed for a good intent, did  
 write to the Sophie all that which hee understood of his sayd determination, and that it should not  
 stand with his maiesties honour to doe me any harme or displeasure, but rather to giue mee good  
 entertainment, seeing I was come into his land of my free will, and not by constraint, and that  
 if hee used me euill, there would few straungers resort into his countrey, which would be great-  
 ly unto his hinderance, with many other persuasions: which after that the sayd Sophie had well  
 and thoughtly pondered and digested (much esteeming the same king of Hircane, being one of  
 the valiantest princes vnder him and his nigh kinseman) changed his determined purpose, and  
 the 20. day of March, 1562. he sent to me a rich garment of cloth of gold, and so dismissed me with-  
 out any harme.

The king of  
 Hircanes tes-  
 tified letters  
 in sp. Irish  
 sons behalf.

During the time that I sojournd at the sayd citie of Casbin, diuers merchaints out of In-  
 dia came thither unto mee, with whom I conferred for a trade of spices: whereunto they answered  
 that they would bring of all foyses so much as wee would haue, if they were sure of vent, where-  
 of I did promise to assure them, so that I doubt not but that great abundance thereof may from  
 time to time be there prouided and had.

Conference  
 with Indian  
 merchants.

The same twentieth day of March I returned from the sayd citie of Casbin where I remay-  
 ned all the Winter, hauing sent away all my cammels before, and the thirtieth day I came to  
 the sayde Citie of Ordowill, and the sixteenth of Aprill unto Zauant aforesayde, where king Ob-  
 dolowcan was at that present, who immediately sent for mee, and demanding of mee many  
 questions, declared that if it had not bene for him, I had bene utterly cast away, and sent to the  
 great Turke for a present by the Sophie, though the euill persuasion of his wicked coun-  
 sell, and that the Zicities and holp men were the chiefe and principall procurers and mo-  
 uers thereof: but the Sophie himselfe meant mee much good at the first, and thought to  
 haue giuen me good entertainment, and so had done, had not the peare and league returned to  
 haue

Sp. Fenkin-  
 sons returne.

Priviledges  
obtained of  
Shahworan,  
which are  
hereafter as  
followeth.

An Armenian  
sent to Mather  
Ienkinson fro  
the king of  
Georgia.

Teneruke  
king of Chir-  
cass.

have bene concluded betwene them and the great Turke, Neuertheless, sayd he, the Sophie hath written unto me to entertaine you well, and you are welcome into my countrey, and so hee treated mee very gently, in whose court I remayned seven dayes, and obtained of him letters of safe conductes and priviledges in your names to be free from paying custome, which I deliuered unto your seruants Thomas Alcocke and George Wain, at their departure to wards Persia for your affaires: and his highnesse did giue mee two garments of silke, and so dismissed me with great fauour, sending with me his Ambassadour againe unto the Emperour of Russia, and committed the chiefest secrete of his affaires unto mee, to declare the same unto the Emperours maiestie at my returne: and thus departing the tenth day of Aprill, I came to the Citie of Shamachie, and there remayning certaine dayes for prouision of cammels downe to the Sea side, I sent from thence before, men to repayre my barke, and to make her in a readinesse, And during my abode in Shamachie, there came unto me an Armenian sent from the king of Georgia, who declared the lamentable estate of the same king, that being enclosed betwixt those two cruell tyrans and mighty princes, the sayd great Turke and the Sophie, he had continuall warres with them, requiring for the loue of Christ and as I was a Christian, that I would send him comfort by the sayd Armenian, and aduise how hee might send his Ambassadour to the sayd Emperour of Russia, and whether I thought that hee would support him or no: and with many other wordes required mee to declare his necessitie unto the same Emperour at my returne: adding further that the sayd king would haue written unto mee his minde, but that he doubted the safe passage of his messenger, Unto whom I did like wise answer by worde of mouth, not onely persuading him to send his Ambassadour to Russia, not doubting but that hee should finde him most honourable and inclined to helpe him, but also I directed him his way how the sayd king might send by the countrey of Chircassi, through the fauour of Teneruke king of the sayd countrey, whose daughter the sayd king had lately married. And thus dismissing the sayd Armenian, within two dayes after I sent Edward Clearke your seruant unto the Citie of Arrash, where the most hope of silkes is to be had, giuing him Commission to haue passed further into the sayd countrey of Georgia, and there to haue repaired unto the sayd king. And after my commendations promised, and my minde declared to haue pursued for safeconduct of the same prince for our merchants to trade into his dominions, and that obtained to haue returned againe with speede. The same your seruant journeying to the sayd Citie of Arrash, and there finding certaine merchants Armenians, which promised to goe to the sayd Citie of Georgia, comming to the borders thereof, was perceiued by a Captaine there, that he was a Christian, and thereupon demanded whether he went, and vnderstanding that hee could not passe further without great suspicion, answered that hee came thither to buy silkes, and shewed the king of Hircaenes letters which hee had with him, and so returned backe againe, and the 15. of Aprill came to Shamachie: from whence I departed the sixtene of the same moneth, and the one and twentieth thereof comming to the Sea side, and finding my barke in a readinesse, I caused your goods to be laden, and there attended a faire wind.

But before I proceede any further to speake of my returne, I intend with your fauours somewhat to treat of the countrey of Persia, of the great Sophie, and of his countrey, lawes and religion.

The description  
of Persia.

The chiefest  
cities of Persia.

This land of Persia is great and ample, deuised into many kingdomes and prouinces, as Gilan, Corasan, Shiruan, and many others hauing diuers Cities, Townes and Castles in the same. Every prouince hath his seuerall king, or Sultane, all in obedience to the great Sophie. The names of the chiefest Cities be these: Teueris, Casbin, Keshan, Yesse, Meskit, Heirin, Ordowill, Shamachie, Arrash with many others. The countrey for the most part toward the Sea side plaine and full of pasture, but into the land, high, full of mountaines, and sharpe. To the South it bordereth vpon Arabia and the East Ocean. To the North vpon the Caspian sea and the lands of Tartaria. To the East vpon the prouinces of India, and to the West vpon the confines of Chaldaea, Syria, and other the Turkes landes. All within these dominions be of the Sophies, named Shaw Thomas, some to Imael Sophie. This Sophie that now reigneth, is nothing valiant, although his power be great, and his people martiall: and though his pusillanimitie the Turke hath much inuaded his countreies, euen nigh unto the Citie of Teueris, wherein he was wont to keepe his chiefest court. And now hauing forsaken the same, is chiefly resident at Casbin as before, and alwayes as the sayd Turke pursueth him, hee not being able to withstand the Turke in the field, trusting rather to the mountaines for his safegard, then to his forces and castles, hee hath caused the same to be rased within his dominions, and his ordinance to be molten, to the intent that his enemies pursuing him, they should not strengthen themselves with the same.

This

lelle, sayd he, the Sophie  
to my countrey, and so hee  
and obtained of him letters  
of custome, which I deliv-  
de parture to wards Persia  
ke, and so dismissed me with  
perour of Russia, and com-  
to the Emperours mai-  
e to the Citie of Shamachie,  
to the Sea side, I sent from  
elle. And during my abode  
of Georgia, who declared  
hose two cruell tyrants and  
uall warres with them, re-  
d send him comfort by the  
he sayd Emperour of Rus-  
with many other wordes to  
turne: adding further that  
waded the safe passage of his  
not onely perswading him  
finde him most honourable  
sayd king might send by the  
sayd countrey, whose digni-  
mentian, within two dayes  
ish, where the most hope of  
into the sayd countrey of Ge-  
commendations promised,  
since for our merchants to  
me with speede. The same  
ing certaine merchants Ar-  
ving to the borders thereof,  
reupon demanded whether  
great suspicion, answered  
letters which hee had with  
shamachie: from whence I  
ereof comming to the Sea  
laden, and there attended a  
nd with your favours some  
his countrey, lawes and re-  
omes and prouinces, as Gil-  
ownes and Castles in the  
ience to the great Sophie,  
Yesse, Meskit, Heinn, Or-  
e most part toward the Sea  
s, and sharpe. To the South  
e Caspian sea and the lands  
d upon the confines of Chal-  
s be of the Sophies, named  
gness is nothing valiant, al-  
is pusillanimitie the Turke  
, wherein he was wont to  
sment at Casbin stovesley,  
withstand the Turke in the  
foyses and castles, hee hath  
to bee molten, so the intent  
with the same.

This

This prince is of the age of fiftie yeeres, and of a reasonable nature, having five children. His  
first sonne he keepeth captive in prison; for that hee feareth him for his valiantnesse and activitie:  
he professeth a kind of holypnesse, and saith that he is descended of the blood of Mahomet and Mur-  
tezallie: and although these Persians bee Spahometians, as the Turkes and Tartares bee, yet  
honour they this false fained Murtezallie, saying that he was the chiefe disciple that Spahomet  
had, cutting and chiding daily three other disciples that Spahomet had called Ouear, Vifran, and  
Abebecke, and that they did slay the sayd Murtezallie; for which cause and other differences  
of holy men and lawes, they haue had and haue with the Turkes and Tartares moztall warres.  
To interat of their religion at large, being more or lesse, Spahometes lawe and the Alharon, I  
shall not need at this present. These persons are comely and of good complexion, moude and of  
good courage, esteeming themselves to bee best of all Nations, both for their religion and holines,  
which is most erroneous, and also for all other their fashions. They be martiall delighting in faire  
horses and good harness, loone angrie, craftie and hard people. Thus much I haue thought  
good to treat of this nation, and now I returne to discourse the proceeding of the rest of my  
voyage.

The difference of religion.

My Barke being ready at the Caspian Sea side as aforesayd, having a faire winde, and com-  
mitting our selues unto God the 30. day of May, one thousand five hundred fiftie three, wee arri-  
ued at Astracan, having passed no lesse dangers vpon the Sea in our returne, then we sustained in  
our going forth, and remaining at the sayd Astracan, untill the tenth day of June, one hundred  
gunners being there admitted vnto me for my safegard vpon the river Volga, the fiftenth of Iulie  
I arrived at the Citie of Cazan, where the captaine entertained me well, and so dismissing mee,  
I was conducted from place to place vnto the citie of Mosko, where I arrived the 20. day of Au-  
gust 1563, in haste, thanks be to God, with all such goods, merchandises, and iewels, as I  
had procured as well for the Emperours stocke and accoutre, as also of yours, all which goods I  
was commaunded to bring vnto the Emperours treasure before it was opened, which I did,  
and deliuered those parcels of wares which were for his maiesties account, videlicet, pteious stones,  
and wrought silkes of sundry colours and soyes, much to his highnes contentation, and the rest  
due belonging to you, viz. Craskoe, and raw silkes, with other merchandises (as by account ap-  
peareth) were brought vnto your house, whereof part thereof remained, and the rest was laden in  
your ships lately returned.

The 30. of May 1563.

Shortly after my comming to the Mosko, I came before the Emperours maiestie, and pre-  
sented vnto him the apparell giuen vnto me by the Sophie, whose highnesse conferred with mee  
touching the princes affaires which he had committed to my charge, and my proceedings therein  
it pleased him so to accept, that they were much to his contentation, saying vnto me, I haue  
received your good seruice, for the which I doe thanke you, and will recompence you for the same,  
wishing that I would trauell againe in such his other affaires, wherein he was minded to employ  
me: to whom I answered, that it was to my heartie reioycing that my seruice was so acceptable  
vnto his highnesse, acknowledging all that I had done, to bee but of dutie, humble beseeching  
his grace to continue his goodnesse vnto your worshipps, and euen at that instant I humbly reque-  
sted his maiestie to boughlase to graunt vnto you a new priuiledge more ample then the first,  
which immediately was graunted, and so I departed. And afterwards hauing penned a briefe  
note how I meant to haue the same priuiledges made, I repaired hasty to the Secretarie for  
the perfecting of the same, & obtained it vnder his maiesties broad seale, which at my departure from  
thence, I deliuered vnto the custodie of Thomas Glouer your Agent there. The copie whereof,  
and also of the other priuiledges graunted and giuen by the king of Hircan, I haue already deli-  
uered vnto you. So iourning all that Winter at Mosko, and in the meane time hauing bargain-  
ed with the Emperours maiestie, I sent away your seruant Edward Cleake thither ouerland  
with some, and also made preparation for sending againe into Persia in meere time of the yeere.  
And committing the charge thereof vnto your seruants Thomas Astocke, George Wyenne, and  
Richard Cheinie, the 28. of June last, I departed in post from the sayd Mosko, and comming to  
Colmogro and so do home to the Sea side; I found your ships laden and ready to depart, where I  
embarked my selfe in your good ship called the Swallow, the 9. of Iuly, one thousand five hun-  
dred fiftie foure, and hauing passed the Seas with great and extreme dangers of loss of steepe,  
goods and life, the 28. day of September last (God be praised) were arrived here at London in  
safety.

New priuiledges obtained hereafter following.

28. Sept. 1564

This knowing that the contagious and balefull souldier, which aduentured both fame, mem-  
ber and life, to serue faithfully his soueraigne, esteemeth not the perils any dangers passed: (the  
victory once obtained) neither for his guerdon desireth any thing more, then that his seruice be  
well



well taken of him for whom he enterprised it: So I perswading your favourable beneuolence to me extended in accepting my travels in good part to your contentations, doe thinke my selfe thereby with great paine recompensed: desiring almightie God so to prosper your adventures, from time to time hereafter to be made for reaping the frutes of my travels (at your great charges, and to my no small dangers) that ye may plentifully gather in and enioy the same to the illustration of the Queenes most excellent maiestie, the honour and commoditie of this her highnesse realme, and to the ample benefit and abundant enriching of you and your succession, & posteritie for ever.

A copie of the priuiledges giuen by Obdolowcan king of Hircania to the companie of English merchants Adventurers for Russia,

Persia, and Mare Caspium, with all the landes and countries adjoining to the same, obtained by M. Anthonie Ienkinson at his being there about the affaires of the sayd company, April 14. Anno 1563.

**W**hereas Obdolowcan by the mightie power of God maker of heauen and of earth, appointed and now raignting king of Shiruan and Hircan, of our merre motion and great goodnes, at the earnest sute and request of our fauored and welbeloued Anthonie Ienkinson Ambassadour, haue giuen and granted vnto the right worshipfull Sir William Garter, Sir William Chelster, Sir Thomas Lodge, Sir Richard Mallarie, and Sir Richard Chamberlaine, with all their companie of merchants Adventurers of the Citie of London in England, free libertie, safe conduct, and licence to come or send their factors in trade of merchandise into our countries, and to buy and sell with our merchants and others, either for ready money or barter, and to tarie and abide in our countrey, so long as they will, and to goe away when they list, without impediment, let, or hinderance, either of bodie or goods.

And further our commandement and pleasure is, that the said English merchants with their company, shal pay no manner of custome for wares, which they or their factors shal buy or sel within our dominions. And if at any time our custumers or other officers, or any of them, do disturbe, misde, force or constrain the said English merchants or any of them, or their factors, to pay any manner of custome or dutie for any wares they bring in or carie out of our dominions contrary to this our commandement, and the same be knowne vnto vs, then wee will that the said custumers and officers shal loose and be put out of their said offices, with our further displeasure, and the sayd English merchants to haue restored all such money and wares as our custumers haue taken of them for our said custome. And whensoever the said English merchants or their factors shal bring any manner of wares meet for our treasure, then our treasurer shal take the sayd wares into our treasure, and shal giue vnto the said English merchants, either ready money or rays stikes, to the value of their said wares. And wheresoeuer this our letter of priuiledges shall be seene and read within our dominion, wee straightly will and command that it take effect, and be obeyed in all points. Dated at our place of Iauat, the day and yeere aboue written, and sealed with our princely seale, and signed by our secretarie in the 12. yeere of our raigne.

The second voyage into Persia made by Thomas Alcocke which

was slayne there, and by Richard Cheinie seruant to the worshipfull companie of Moscovic merchants in An. 1563, written by the said Richard Cheinie.

**I**t may please your worshipps to vnderstand, that in the yeere 1563. I was appointed by Sir Anthonie Ienkinson, and Sir Thomas Glouer your Agent in Russia, to go for vs. In our worshipps affaires, one Thomas Alcocke hauing the charge of the voyage committed to him, and I one of your worshipps seruants being ioined with him in your business, hauing with vs, as they sayd, fiftene rubbles. And if it shall please you I cannot tel certainly what summe of money we had then of the Emperours: for I receiued none, nor disburst any of it in wares for the voyage. Also, God I take to record, I could not tell what stocke your worshipps had there, for the bookes were kept so yuuillie, that a man could neuer see them. The 10. of May, anno 1563, we departed from a towne called Yeraslaua vpon our voyage to wards Persia. The 24. of July we arrived at Astracan: and the second of August we departed from Astracan, and the 4. of the same moneth we came to the Caspian Sea, and the 11. day of the said moneth we arrived at our port in Media: and the 21. of the said August we arrived at Shammakie, where as the king Obdolowcan lay in the field, wile here well entertained of heathen people, for the third day after

It rubbles in a  
mauche Eng  
gully.

24. of July

1102

our favourable beneuolence in  
things, doe thinke my selfe  
passe your aduencures, from  
his (at your great charges, and  
joy the same to the illustrating  
of this her bigynne realme,  
succession, & posteritie for euer.

Thomas Alcocke king of Hir.

aduenturers for Russia,  
countries adioy-  
nkinton at his  
com-

heauen and of earth, appointed  
meere motion and great good  
beloued Anthonie Ienkinson  
of Wythfull Sir William Garret,  
of Richard Chamberlaine,  
London in England, seeke libe-  
merchandise into our countrey,  
money or barter, and to take  
when they list, without impede

withly merchants with their  
factories shal buy or sel within  
any of the, do disturbance, misse,  
or factories, to pay any manner of  
contrary to this our com-  
the said customers and officers  
the said Englysh  
have taken of them for our  
factories shall bring any manner  
wares into our treasure, and  
to sitkes, to the value of their  
seene and read within our be-  
obeyed in all points. Dated  
with our princely seale, and in

Thomas Alcocke which

shipfull companie of  
Richard Cheinie.

re 1563. I was appointed by  
gent in Russia, to go for  
the charge of the voyage  
joined with him in your busi-  
you I cannot tel certainly  
d none, nor disburde any of  
I what stocke your worshipps  
see them. The 10. of May,  
oyage towards Persia. The  
parted from Astracan, and the  
he said moneth we arrived at  
nunkie, where as the king  
people, for the thirde day after

our arrivall at Shammakie wee were called befoze the king: wee gaue him a present, and hee en-  
taines vs very well.

At our comming to the Court we were commaunded to come befoze the king, who sate in his  
tent upon the ground with his legs a crosse, and all his dukes round about his tent, the ground be-  
ing covered with carpets: wee were commaunded to sit downe, the king appointing euery man  
his place to sit. And the king commaunded the Emperour of Russelands Sparchants to rise vp,  
and to giue vs the upper hande. The 20. of October Thomas Alcocke departed from Sham-  
makie towards Casbin, leaving me at Shammakie to recouer such debts as the dukes of Sham-  
makie ought for wares which they tooke of him at his going to Casbin. In the time I lay there,  
I could recouer but little. And at Thomas Alcockes comming from Casbin, who arrived at a  
towne called Leuauata, whereas the king Obdolocan lay, a day and a halfe's iourney from the  
towne whereas I lay, I hearing of his arriuing there, departed from Sammakie, finding him  
there in safetie with all such goods as hee had with him. During his abode there for seuen dayes  
hee made suite to the king for such money as the dukes ought him. But the king was displeas'd  
for that the Emperour of Russelands Sparchant had slaine a Boslerman at his going to Casbin.  
Thomas Alcocke seeing the king would giue vs no fauour, and also hearing from Shammakie,  
that the Russies sent their goods to the sea side, for that they feared that the king of Persia should  
haue knowledge of the death of the Boslerman, willed mee to depart to Shammakie with all such  
goods as hee had brought with him from Casbin, I leaving him at the Court.

Casbin.

Ermacta.

A Boslerman  
is a Keregabo.

The thirde day after mine arrivall at Shamnakie, I had newes that Thomas Alcocke was  
slaine comming on his way towards me. Then the king Obdolocan vnderstanding of his death,  
demanded whether he had cure a brother. Some said it was, some saide it was not his brother.  
When this fell out, your worshipps had no other seruant there but mee among those heathen peo-  
ple, who hauing such a summe of goods lying vnder my handes, and seeing how the Russies sent  
their goods with as much hast as they might to the sea side, and hauing but foure men to sende  
our wares to the sea side, I used such diligence, that within two dayes after Thomas Alcocke  
was slaine, I sent in company with the Russies goods, all your worshipps goods with a Spariner,  
William Augult, and a Swechen, for that they might the safer arriue at the seaside, being safely  
layed in. All which goods afterwards arriued in Russeland in good condition. M. Glouer ha-  
uing the receipt of all things which I sent then out of those parties into Russeland, Concern-  
ing my selfe, I remained after I had sent the goods into Russeland sixe weekes in Shamma-  
kie, for the recouerie of such debts as were owing, and at last with much trouble recouered to the  
summe of fiftene hundred rubles or there about, which M. Glouer receiued of mee at my com-  
ing to Mofco, and all such goods as I thought with mee out of Kefelbath, as by a note of my  
hande that hee hath shall appeare. Also hee hauing the receipt of all such goods as I sent into  
Russeland by these two aboue named, hee then had that voyage in better of his owne better then  
an hundred rubles, one Richard Iohnson thwente rubles, one Thomas Petre fiftie rubles, one  
Euan Chermison a Tartar seuentie rubles. All these had their returne, M. Glouer allowed him-  
selfe God knoweth howe, I then being in Persia in your worshipps affaires.

Thomas Al-  
cocke slaine in  
the way be-  
tweene Rus-  
sela and  
Shamnakie.

Kefelbath is  
Kefelbath.

And whereas he saith, the Emperour had but for his part a dubble, as farre as I can see, know-  
ing what the wares cost in those parties, hee had treble. If they gaue him so much wares, all  
charges turned to your worshipps, as well of the Emperours as of their owne returnes. I haue  
somen the seede, and other men haue gathered the harvest: I haue trauailed both by land and by  
water, full many a time with a sorrowfull heart, as well for the safegarde of their goods as yours,  
how to frame all things to the best, and they haue reaped the fruites of my trauaile. But cur my  
power was to God, to deliuer mee out of those miseries which I suffered for your seruice among  
those heathen people. Therefore knowing my dutie which I haue done, as a true seruant ought  
to doe, I beseech your worshipps, (although I haue but small recompence for my seruice, yet let  
me haue no wrong, and God will prosper you the better.

Also, to inquire your worshipps of your Persian voyage what I haue: it is a voyage to be fol-  
lowed. The king of Gillan, where, as yet, you haue had no traffique, lieth al by marchandise: and it  
is nere Casbin, and not past six weekes trauaile from Ormus, whereas all the spices be brought  
and here. (I meane at Gillan) a trade may bee established: But your worshipps must sende such  
men as are notorious liars, not drunkards. For if such men goe, it will be to your dishonour  
and great hinderance, as appeared by experience the yeere 1565, when as Richard Iohnson went  
to Persia, whose iourney had bene better stayed then set forward. For whereas before we had the  
name among those heathen people to be such marchants as they thought none like in al respects,  
but notorious lying there hath made vs to be compted worse then the Russies.

William in  
Persia.

Again, if such men crauaile in your affaires in such a voyage, you shall neuer knowe what gaine is to be gotten. For how can such men employ themselves to seeke the trade, that are inclined to such vices? or how can God prosper them in your affaires. But when a trade is established by wise and discrete men, then will it be for your worshipps to crauaile there, and not before: for a voyage or market made euill at the first, is the occasion that your worshipps shall neuer vnderstand what gaines is to be gotten thereby hereafter.

The thirde voyage into Persia, begun in the yeere 1565.  
by *Richard Iohnson, Alexander Kitchin, and*  
Arthur Edwards.

A letter of *Arthur Edwards* to *M. Thomas Nicols*, secretarie to the worshipfull companie trading into Russia and other the North parts, concerning the preparation of their voyage into Persia.

Ierasslaue a towne vpon the Riuer of Volga.

Richard Iohnson chief of the third voyage into Persia.

30 barke of 30 tunnes made at Ierasslaue 1564. to passe the Caspian sea.



After Nicols, my bounden duetie remember, with desire of God for the preferuation of you and yours: you shall vnderstande that the second of March I was sent by M. Thomas Glouer (your Agent) vnto Ierasslaue, appointed to receiue such goods as should come frō Vologhda, as also such kinde of wares as should be bought and sent from Mosco by your Agent, & M. Edward Clarke, thought meete for your voyage of Persia. And further, I was to prouide for biscuit, beere, beefe, and other victuals, and things otherwayes needefull according to aduise. Thus I remained here vntill the comming of your Agent, which was the 12. of May, who taried here three dayes, to see vs set forthwards on our voyage, and then hee departed towards Colmogro, hauing appointed (as chiefe for your voyage of Persia) Richard Iohnson. For my part I am willing, as also haue bene and shall be content, to submit my selfe vnder him, whome the Agent shall appoint, although hee were such a one as you should thinke in some respects vnmeet. Three two packes of carsets are all of that kinde of cloth that wee shall haue with vs. The other 18. packes that should haue gone, were solde in Mosco. What other goods are shipped for our voyage, you shall vnderstand by your Agents letters. Whereas Edward Clarke (being an honest man) was appointed Agent for Persia, as one for those parts more fit then any I doe knowe here, God hath taken him vnto his mercie, who departed this present life the 16. of March last past. I wish of God for my part he had liued: for my desire was in his companie to haue crauailed into Persia. Your barke or craet made here for the riuer of Volga and the Caspian sea is very litle, of the burthen of 30. tunnes at the most. It is handsonly made after the English fashion: but I thinke it to litle for your goods and provision of victuals. If the worshipfull companie would sende hither a Shiptwright, being skilfull to make one of the burthen of 60. tunnes or more, weighing but 6. foote water at the most when it is laden, I thinke it should bee profitable. For if your owne goods would not lade the same, here be Marchants that would bee glad and faine to giue great freight to lade their goods with vs; whereby your charges would be much lessened: And so it may happen, the wages of your men hired here may be saved, and your seruants and goods in farre greater assurance: for their boates here are dangerous to saile with and to passe the Caspian sea. There be Carpenters here that will doe well nough hauing one to instruct them. Your wares bought here, and orders taken for those that goe for your voyage of Persia, are yet to knowen vnto mee; wherefore I can not (as I would at this present) write to you thereof. For (as you doe knowe) it was the Counters minde I should be acquainted with your affaires then these. How best I doubt not but I shall be informed of them that are appointed, and all things shall be bought when they shall see time and haue more leasure.

Thus (in hast as appeareth) I commit you and yours into the hands of Almighty God: who preserve you in perfect health with increase of worship.

From Ierasslaue the 15. of May 1565.

By yours to commaunde here or els  
where during life,

Arthur Edwards.

An other

... you shall neuer knowe what  
to seeke the trade that are in  
But when a trade is established  
there, and not before: for a  
voyages shall neuer undertake

the yeere 1565.  
in, and

Nicols, secretarie to  
other the North  
voyage

with desire of God for the preser-  
vation of the second of March I was  
at sea, appointed to receive  
such kinde of wares as should  
M. Edward Clarke, thought  
it was to provide for biscuit, beer,  
and to advise. Thus I remaine  
of my part, who tarried here three  
dayes towards Colmogro, having  
in. For my part I am willing,  
in, whome the Agent shall ap-  
point respects in me. Thirtie  
dayes with vs. The other 18,  
goods are shipped for our voy-  
ward Clarke (being an honest  
man) then any I doe knowe here,  
the 16. of March last past. I  
company to have traualled into  
the Caspian sea is very little, af-  
ter the English fashion: but I  
worshipfull companie would  
of 60. tunnes of more, which  
would be profitable. For if your  
voyd be glad and faine to give  
it would be much lessened: And  
and your seruants and goods  
to saile with and to passe the Cal-  
cutta, having one to instruct them.

... hands of Almighty God; who  
... here or els  
... life,  
Arthur Edwards,

Another

An other letter of the said M. Arthur Edwards, written the  
26. of April 1566. in Shamackie in Media to the right worshipfull

... for Thomas Lodge knight and Alderman: And in his absence to M. Tho-  
... man Nicols, Secretarie to the right worshipfull companie tra-  
... ding into Russia, Persia, and othes the North and East  
... parts, touching the successe of Richard Johnson  
... in the thirde voyage into Persia.



Worshipfull Sir, my bounden duetie rememberd, with heartie prayer unto God  
for the preservation of you and yours in perfect health with increase of wor-  
ship. It may please you that my last letter I sent you was from Afracan the  
26. of July 1565. From whence Richard Johnson, my selfe; and Alexander  
Kitchin, departed as the 30. of the same. And by meanes of contrary winde, it  
was the 23. of August before wee came to our be desired porte named Nazaoe.  
There after wee had gotten your goods on lande, with much labour and strength of men, as also  
wonderles deuised and made, wee haled your barke over a barre of beauly of pebble stones into a  
small Riuer, sending your whippes apparell with other things to an house hired in a village there-  
by. And as soon as wee might get camels, being the sixt of September wee departed thence, and  
came to this towne of Shamackie the 13. of the same: and the 17. day following wee presented  
unto Abdollocan the King of this Countrey one timber of sables, one tunne of best of flues  
russes parill gilt, three moyles teeth, 4. ashlines of Charlet, three pieces of carlets, with 40.  
rade fores.

We received our presents with giuing vs thanks for our good wills, demanding if M. Jenkin-  
son were in good health, and whether he would returne into these parts againe. Wee willed vs also  
to himselfe to sit downe before him the distance of a quoyes call from his tent, where hee sat  
with diuers of his counsaile and nobilitie, sending vs from his table such meate as was before  
him: And after certaine talke had with vs, hee saide if hee might perceiue or knowe any manner of  
person to doe vs any wrong, hee would punish them in example of others, whereby wee should  
live in quietnesse, and haue no cause to complaine, giuing vs a litle house for the time, untill a bet-  
ter might be provided in such place as wee should thinke most meete, neuer willing vs to rise or  
depart, untill such time as wee of our selues thought it convenient. At the taking of our leaue,  
he willed vs to put our whole mindes and requestes in writing, that hee might further vnderstand  
our desires. But while we were about to doe so, God tooke this good king our friende out of this  
prentise life the 2. of October past. The want of him hath bene the cause that as yet wee cannot  
reueue certaine debts. Howbeit, we doubt not but wee shall recouer all such summes of moneie,  
as are owing vs for this voyage. As for Thomas Alcocks debts they are past hope of recouerie,  
which had not bene lost if the king had liued. Wee trust in the place of him, God will sende as  
friendly a king towards vs: who by report (and as wee be credibly informed,) shall be his Sonne  
named the Murlay: who since the death of his father, at our being with him, promised to be we  
more friendship then ever we found: God graunt the same.

Great troubles haue chaunced in these parts. Of those which were of the olde kings com-  
mission bare any rule about him in these quarters, some are in prison, some are pinched by the  
purse, and other sent for into the Shaugh. These troubles haue partly bene the let that wares  
were not sold, as they might to more profit. Your Agent Richard Johnson bought foure hop-  
pers, minding to haue sent to Casbin, Alexander Kitchin, whome God tooke to his mercie the 23.  
of October last: and before him departed Richard Daus one of your Partners; whose soules I  
trust the Lord hath receiued to his mercie. Wee are now destitute of others to supply their roomes.  
Foure Partners were set to saile your barke, whereof at this present wee haue  
but one, whose name is William Smith, an honest yong man, and one that doeth good seruaice  
here. For want and lacke of Partners that should knowe their labours, wee all were like to be  
cast away in a storme. For all the head side of our barke laye in the water, and wee had much a  
doe to recouer it: but God of his mercie deliuered vs. Partners here, may doe you good seruice  
all the winter otherwayes: and Merchants here will be the gladder to stoppe their goods in vs  
giuing good fraighte. One Merchant at this present is content to pay twentie robes for twen-  
tie camels lading fraighte to Afracan. Such barkes as must passe these seas, may not drudge  
aboute the foot of water, because that in many places are very shallowe waters. Wee minde  
hereafter to make the Russian boates more strong, and they shall serue our turnes very well.

M 2

And

They departed  
from Afracan the  
23. of July 1565.

September.

Presents to  
the King of  
Abdollocan.

A house giuen  
our men in  
Shamackie by  
the King.

The death of  
Abdollocan  
the 2. of Octo-  
ber 1565.

Depart the  
new King of  
Persia.

The death of  
Alexander  
Kitchin the 23.  
of October  
1565.

The Caspian  
sea very shallow  
in divers places.

And whereas some iustices past took care, and could not have their desire in the granting of the Shaughes letters by privilege, knowe, I trust (with Gods helpe) they may be obtained; which being had, will bee beneficiall to the Company, and great quietnesse to those that shall remaine here, although heretofore things haue chaunged ill, as the like in other Countreies hath bene. But I doubt not, this privilege once gotten and obtained, wee shall liue in quietnesse and rest, and shall shortly growe into a great trade for silkes both rawe and wrought, with all kinde of spices and drugs, and other commodities here, as to master Antonie Jenkinson is well knowne; Who (I doubt not) hath long agoe thoughtly aduertised the Company thereof.

The unthring of Thomas Rocks.

The truth of the slaughter of Thomas Alocks your seruant is not certainly knowne. Some thinke it was by the meane of a noble man, with whom your saide seruant was earnest in demanding of your debts; upon whose wordes he was so offended, that he procured his death. But other doe thinke verily, that in riding from the Court without companie, fallie knowne laye in wait, thinking hee had much about him, and so slawe him. I doubt not though this misfortune hath chaunced, that things shall come well to passe, and that we shall be better beloued when wee shall become knowne.

And the noble man that favoured our nation.

Honest Merchants are glad of our being here, and seeke to growe in acquaintance with vs being glad to further vs in that they may, as haue spoken in our fauours to the chiefest of this Countrey: one being a noble man, with whom your Agent and I are entred into friendship, who is at this time in great fauour with the Shaugh. Hee hath here and in other places of these parts, let a good stay in things since the kings death: he is well knowne to M. Jenkinson, his name is Cozaimoone. Also another Duke named Ameddin-becke is our great friende; and his silder is the Shaughes wife. These two haue promised your Agent by their lawe, not onely to procure to get the Shaughes privilege, but also that I shall haue the debts payde mee of those that went from hence to Casbin, if we would send one with them. In consideration whereof, I was upon your warning (for want of a better) appointed by your Agent M. Richard Iohnson, all excuses laye apart, presently to put my selfe in readinesse, and to depart in company with these noblemen: with charge, when God should send me to Casbin, to vse my discretion with their advise, for the recovering of your debts and privilege. I shall haue with mee one interpreter and two bought seruants: one of which partly vnderstandeth this tongue, and may be put in trust whatsoever should become of me. I haue receiued 6 tumens in ready money: 200. Shaughes is a tumen, reckoning euery Shaugh for 6 pence Russe. I haue further receiued two timbers of sables, one to be solde, the other to bee giuen to Thomas the Shaugh; and haue order further to giue as I shall see good to those that shall further my suite, and as occasion serueth. And for as much as I am commaunded to goe, I shall willingly doe my best, putting my trust in God that hee will sende mee well to speede in this iourney.

A noble man that favoured our nation.

The value of a tumen.

For all kinde of wares bought or solde, you shall thoughtly be aduertised by your Agent Richard Iohnson, whose reckonings or accompts at no hande I might see or be priuite unto. Your earlets were good and well solden, they are and will be solde from 150. Shaughs to 160. the piece. Two hundredeth pieces were solde vnder, that needed not: one 100. pieces at 146. and 147. the piece: but more would haue bene giuen, if circumspection had bene vsed. They were solde to those noblemen aforesaid, when as yet it was not knowne that I should haue gone with them. They may stande vs much in steade, as they haue promised vs their good wils in that they may doe. Here is at this time bought for England, 11. packes of rawe silke, 27. and 26. batmans being in euery packe: The batman being 7 li. which may be 6. li. and a halfe of English waight: being bought here for 66. to 70. Shaughes the batman. It is fine and good: like course at this time was to be had. And where course silke might be had being at Grousin, we could not send thither: for that time was neglected at the first. When wee shall haue iudgers here to remaine in Sommer, we may bye it at the first hand of the Countrey people that bring it to sell hither, and to other places. I would to God the company coulde finde the meanes to haue a vent to make sales for the one halfe that wee may bye here. The Company may haue for 30. or 40. thousande pounds yearly. And as appeareth by your Agents wordes being at Varas, hee and others saue thereto great abundance, that by report of diuers, you may bestowe (if it were not for the Turkes) for a two hundred thousande pounds: besides silke of all colours dyed in graine, bounde by in pound waights, I thinke 15. of our ounces to their pound waight, and here solde for 23. Shaughes, at 6d. the Shaugh may be 11. s. 6. pence.

What a batman is.

What a great man is for silke.

What 7 dayes fasting from silke is.

From Afracan in 7. or 8. dayes, wee may saile with our barke to a place named Gilan: the which place in time to come, (I thinke) shall serue our purpose best to goe unto. Allam is there good

care, and could not have their  
one, I trust (with Gods blesse)  
the companies, and great quire  
have chaunged all, as the like  
once gotten and obtained, we  
at trade for silkes both rube and  
ies here, as to maister Antonie  
thoroughly advertised the Com

is not certainly knowne. Some  
saide servant was earne in de  
that he procured his deach. But  
companye, false knowars laye in  
dubt not though this misfortune  
all be better beloved when we

we in acquaintance with us  
ours to the chiefest of this Com  
entered into friendship, who is at  
other places of these parts. At a  
Lenkinson, his name is Coza-  
ent fricude; And his siller is the  
awe, not onely to procure to gre  
side mee of those that went from  
tion whereof, I was upon sory  
ward Iohnson, all excuse laye  
any with these noblemen: with  
with their abuse, for the recou-  
interpetour and two bought ser-  
ve put in trust whatsoeuer shoul  
shaughes is a turren reckoning  
ers of tables, one to be solde, he  
get to give as I shall see good to  
for as much as I am comman-  
d that hee will sende mee well to

we advertised by your Agent Ri-  
ghte see of be pynnt unto. Your  
150. shaughes to 160. the pierce,  
20. pierces at 146, and 147. the  
bene vied. They were solde to  
shoud have gone with them.

their good wils in that they may  
be silke, 25, and 26. batmans be  
, and a halfe of English waighe  
and good: little course at this time  
dusin, we could not send thither:  
dgers here to remaine in shom  
bying it to sel hither, and to other  
to haue a deuit to make sales for  
for 30. or 40. thousande pounds  
was, hee and others sawe there  
it were not for the Turkes) for  
in graine, bounde by in pound  
re solde for 23. shaughes, at 6d.

strike to a place named Gilan: the  
best to goe into. Allam is there  
good

good cheape, being brought from thence hither to Shamakie, and solde here for 2. bills cheere bat-  
mans, which may be 5. pence in our money and so I have bought to be sent home 223. batmans  
for example. And at Gilan there is rube silke enough for the companies stocke. I beleue, if any  
great store of wares be sent from you, that must be the place: and fro thence a man may traualle in  
4. dayes to Casbin, and there make quicke and better sales, at which place your commodities are  
to be solde. For there be the chiefe and best marchants, and diuers other cities round about, to wit,  
Teueris, Ardaoule, and Cayshan, being the heart of the Countrey, where there is moze ciuillitie  
and marchants are better vied. Concerning this point I haue inquired of diuers marchants both  
Russes and others that haue bene in those partes, and found them all agreeing in one tale, and per-  
taine the same to be true, and that all kinde of wares come from thence into these parts. And from  
Casbin to Ormus is about 30. dayes traualing with camels. I haue writen the prices of wares  
in my letter to the gouernour both for spices and some drugs, which I doe know.

From 4. dayes  
journey from  
Casbin.

From Casbin  
to Ormus a  
man may tra-  
uall with ca-  
mels.

All you shall vnderstand here is plenty of yew for bowstaues. I caused three horse loades to  
be bought vs for to knowe the truely: but they were cut out of season this month of Aprill the  
sappe being in them. Three monthes I neuer left speaking to the Countrey men to bring some,  
Your Agent will send some home for example.

This day being the 26. of Aprill I departed towards Casbin: God giue mee a good houre and  
well to speede, with a merrie heart in returning againe, as my hope is I shall. I haue writen my  
minde to M. Glouer your Agent what Russian wares I thinke best to be bought for this Coun-  
treys: and to sende some one thither that hath the Russe tongue: for we haue neede. And the compa-  
ny shall doe well hereafter in taking of seruants to be sent hither, to see that they be such as haue  
discretion and be something broken in the world, and scene in the trade of Marchantise: and one,  
(if they can get some such) as can speake the Portugall tongue, may doe them as good service, as  
those that shall be here two yeeres before him: for then wee may bye a slaue that can speake this  
language and the Portugall tongue also, which shall then interprete vnto vs in all your secret do-  
ings, not making the Russes wile: for they are soie that we doe trade into these parts. For wee  
are better beloved then they are: because they are giuen to be drunkards they are much hated of  
these people. It is to be wished that none should serue your worships in these parts that be giuen  
to that kinde of vice: And that your chiefe Agent and Factor should be able to rule and gouerne  
himselfe, that no dishonestie should be imputed to him and vs. By his euill vsage hee payd here  
24. nobles, being in this Countrey 4. turrens for a boy that hee was charged to haue conuayde a-  
way from a Teficke one of this countrey men, who willed him to sweare that he knew not where  
the boy was become, and he should not pay it. If he were honest he might doe your worships good  
seruice because of his Russian tongue.

The secret be-  
ings of the  
Spicuous  
companye.






Your London rees are not to be sent hither: for they will not giue about 18. shaughes their ar-  
dour. Here be rees of moze orient colour being Venice die. The people are giuen much to weare  
cloth: the common people specially were carsets: and the Marchants of moze wealth weare  
broad cloth. You shall doe well to sende sixe or seue broad clothes, some blackes, pukes, or other  
sawde colours, that may be affawded at 20. shaughes the alshine and not aboute. It is here reported  
that King Philip hath giuen the Turkes a great ouerthrowe at Malta, and taken 70. or 80. of his  
chiefe Captaintes.

Orient rees  
of Venice die.

This writing I had more time to write, I pray you to beare with this my scribled letter, and  
after you haue red it that M. Nicols may haue a sight thereof.

By your seruant to command,  
Arthur Edwards.

Commodities to be caried out of England into Persia,  
with their prices there.

1.  Arsets are solde there for 180. shaughes. So that a carley is solde  
there in Persia for 4. li. 10. s. For every shaugh is 6. d. English. And  
every bill is 2. d. halfe pence English, and in Russe money 3. d.
2.  Caine is solde in Persia for 14. and 18. shaughes the batman. The  
batman containg as I haue mentioned before.
3.  Biall is at 10. and 12. shaughes the batman.
4.  Redde cloth fine at 25. and 30. shaughes the yard.
5.  Copper at 20. and 25. shaughes the batman.

as though is  
6. d. English.

Commodities to be brought out of Persia  
for England.

1. **R**ue like at 60. hauges the batman.
2. **P**eper at 32. hauges the batman.
3. **S**inger at 18. and 20. hauges the batman.
4. **K**innegs at 30. hauges the batman.
5. **D**ymstone at 4. hauges the great batman. The great batman is 12. li. Englis.
6. **A**llam at 2. bitts and a halfe the batman, and lesse.
7. **R**ice at halfe a bitt the batman.
8. **G**alles at halfe a bitt the batman.
9. **C**loues at 40. hauges the batman.
10. **P**ew for botwe staves, at

A letter of M. Arthur Edwards, written the 8. of August 1566.  
from the towne of Shamakie in Media, to the right worshipfull the

Gouernours, Consuls, assistants, and generalitie of the companie of  
Russia, &c. Shewing his accessse vnto the Emperour of Per-  
sia, his conference with him, his obtaining of a pri-  
uiledge: with diuers other good  
obseruations.

**R**

ight worshipfull (sirs) my bounden duetie remembered, with most humble com-  
mendations and like request to God for the preservation of your good healthes  
with the rest of the companie, &c. It may please you to understand, that the last  
letter which I sent you from hence was of the 26. of Aprill of this present yere  
by Richard Iohnson at my departure towards Casbin: to which Citie I came  
the 25. of May following, not lacking any day, houre, nor moment, to procure  
and make friends for the speedie bringing me before the presence of the Shaugh, being the 29. day  
of the same moneth brought before him, with whose Paeticke I was in talke (as I thinke) two  
houres. He willed me to come neerer him, demanding what were my requests: and ha-  
ving heard them, he promised me his gracious letters. Afterwards he called me twice againe to  
come neerer him, and talked with me of our Queenes Paeticke and Countrey, and what com-  
modities we had, and what other commodities we desired: And then of other Countreies adioyning to  
vs and their commodities, as also of K. Philip, what overthrow he gaue the Turkes at the siege of  
Malca, And how long we had traded into Russeland and Moscowa, and in what space wee might  
saile out of England into Russeland, & how many weekes traualle it is from Colmogro to Astrac-  
can: And then came to discourse of Russeland, and what townes the Emperour had worne, decla-  
ring vnto me himselfe most of our commodities. In the end he willed that your worshipps should  
send him, of all sorts of clothes, but of one especially, which mayden's doe make (as he said) He na-  
med it Karengi, I thinke it is Westerne dolens dyed into scarlets. Time will not permit mee to  
write at large the conference which I had with his Paeticke. It was strange to his people (know-  
ing our religion) to see me so long in talke with him, willing his Secretarie before mee to write  
what he was desirous of: to wit of London clothes, thert of foure of all sorts for example being wel  
hozne and best. Clolets in graine and fine rebs be most woyme: but other good colours will a-  
way, when they shall see them. I wore a garment of London russet, being much esteemed. You  
shall doe well to send such sorts as be liuely to the sight, and some blackes for womens garments,  
with some Orange colours and tawneys. Here is much broad cloth woyme. They talke much of  
London clothes: and they that knowe the wearing are desirous of them before the cloth of the wo-  
mens making: for they finde it nothing durable. For when it commeth to weare on the threde, it  
renteth like paper. Here is much Venice cloth woyme, being crumpled a yard and a halfe broad,  
and so lde here from 24. to 30. hauges their arshine, being longer by two inches then the Russe  
arshine is. I wish also that you send some good chamlets & veluets dyed in graine, with purple co-  
lours & fine rebs: because these are most woyme. Also some blackes with other colours: some cloth  
of gold, silke & bocky, some veluets wrought with gold, with tattens and damaskes, most purple,  
and rebs of all sorts. You may not forget to send some Westerne carlets, to wit, dolens, which be  
chicked well, and close thute in the weauing, being dyed into fine rebs, and some scarlets: for I  
thinke

His arrival at  
Casbin the 25.  
of May.

Conference  
and demands  
of the Shaugh.

All sorts of  
cloths to be sent  
especially West-  
erne dolens  
dyed into scar-  
let.

London clothes  
much talked of  
in Persia.

Such Venice  
cloth woyme in  
Persia.

of Persia

batman is 12. li. English.

8. of August 1566.

the worshipfull the  
the companie of  
erour of Per-  
of a pri-

mbred, with most humble con-  
viation of your good heathes  
you to understand, that the last  
of Appill of this yere past  
Casbin: to which Title I came  
houre, nor moment, to present  
of the Shaugh, being the 29. day  
was in talke (as I thinke) two  
that were my requests: and he  
es he called me thise againe to  
o Countrey, and what commo-  
other Countreys adjoining to  
raue the Turkes at the siege of  
, and in what space wee might  
it is from Colmogro to Altra-  
Empireour had woman, decla-  
illed that your worshipps should  
es doe make (as he said): He  
Time will not permit mee to  
s strange to his people (know-  
Secretarie before mee to write  
all soyes for example being wel  
but other good colours will  
et, heing much esteemed. But  
lacks for womens garments,  
h woman. They talke much of  
them before the cloth of the wo-  
meth to weare on the theede, it  
plished, a part and a halfe bodie,  
by two intches then the Russe  
died in graine, with purple co-  
with other colours: some cloth  
ns and damaskes, most purple,  
rsets, to wit, dozens, which bee  
reds, and some skarlets: for I  
thinke

thinke there is no such cloth for their cappes.

Your Worshipps shall understand, that after my first departure from the presence of the Prince, I neglected no time in daily attendance on them, who had my privilege in writing, that I might have it in readiness, at such time as I should againe be called before the presence of the Shaugh, which was the 29. of June last. I was in apparell that he gave unto me, with other garments to mine Interpreter, and one of your seruants. And then I receaued your letters, of privilege, according to my desire, sealed and armed with the Shaughes owne hand. Praised be God, who hath brought with me, and for me, in all my doings.

The 29. of June, is one of their chiefe festiual daies, so that all his Nobilitie was there present, with two Ambassadors in companie with his Patricie, who said unto me, that if my letters were not to my misde, in time to come they should be mended. Whereupon I made my reuerence, and gave his Highnes most humble & hartie thanks, saying, that with as much speede as might be, our Queenes Patricie should understand of his goodnes towards her Merchants, which I thought would write their letters of request unto his Highnes, in such forme & order, as by them should be thought meete and requisite for their good assurance, in the trade of marchandizes: who required with these wordes: when we shall see their reasonable requests, we will shewe them our farther good will, and so I departed.

Since the receauing of the Shaughes letters, I haue eaten in companie of good Dukes, and others, who before would not come neere me. And euery day some would come to my shoppe, and eate and drinke with me, out of mine owne dish. Likewise in rising from Casbin hither, on the way when I late downe to dinner, they would come and eate with me vnbidden, when I wished them further off: for I spared them that, which gladly I would haue eaten my selfe. I doubt not but we shall liue here from henceforth in quietnes: for now in all places where I come, I am friendly vsed with the best.

I was asked by the Shaugh, if you were able to bring him yeerely one hundred thousand peeces of herles, and clothes. And I answered him, saying, your Worshipps were able to furnish his countrey with two hundred thousand. Whereat his Highnes reioyced: for the Turkes Ambassadors the last yere, as diuersly haue tolde mee, did put the Shaugh in despair, saying, that the Turke would not permit any cloth to be brought into his Countrey.

There is a Title in Turkie, named Aleppo, wherein continually are many Venetians dwelling, besides other that come yeerely, & there buy woolls, gals, sallow, sadron, skimes, cotton woodd, and other wares, and great store of spices. Also the Armenians yeerely receaue at the Venetians hams, herles in barrell for rawe herles, giuing sometimes 60. peeces of herles for 70. batmans of like of this Countrey, and 40. peeces for Grouse like. And herles tolde commonly for ready monie in Aleppo, at 11. and 12. buckets the pece, (the bucket being here woorth 12. shillings) may cost the first penny 132. and 144. Shaughes a herle. By report it is one months trauell from this towne of Shamaky to Aleppo, and from thence to Tripolis. The daies journey, and from Tripolis to Venice, by water, a monethes of five weekes sailing. As I learne, from hence to Venice, may easily be trauelled in lesse then three monethes. Therefore I with your Worshipps to procure some trustie and assured friend there, to whome from hence letters may be sent. For I can haue them here to put in suites to deliuer my letters, and to bring answere. If I had any other here with mee, I would nothing haue doubted to haue brought you the Shaughes letters that way.

The Armenians and other, are desirous to barter with vs, giuing like for herles, and also will serue vs of all kinde of spices, we giuing them sufficient warning to fetch it in the Indias, and will deliuer it vs in Shamaky, at these prices.

Pepper this to tones batman for 18, Shaughes: euery Shaugh is sixe pence.

Spices large for 40, Shaughes, and 45. the batman.

Cloues for 40, Shaughes the batman.

Nutmegs for 16, and 18, Shaughes the batman.

Stomomon for 40, Shaughes the batman.

I doubt not but there will be profite and good done in spices, with byrgges, and other like, in time.

From Casbin to Ormus, is sixe weekes trauell, and from hence to Casbin is 16. daies with camels laden: but if one trauell with a good Oxle vnladen, it may be gone in tenen or eight daies. And I thinke to Ormus, and other places, may be trauelled in like order and proportion, with camels vnladen. But here in all places as men trauell, they must carry their owne provision on horses, which they are to buy: and thus they trauell but a footepath.

The

The ground ad-  
mission to the  
Shaughes  
presence, the  
29. of June,  
1566, at which  
time he recea-  
ued the prin-  
tidge.  
The Shaughes  
promise to me  
to create the prin-  
tidge.

Aleppo a City  
of great trade.

Armenians  
barter with  
the Venetians

The distance  
from Shamaky  
to Aleppo.

Armenians &  
other, desirous  
to barter like  
and spices for  
herles.



The Shaugh  
desirous to  
bargaine for  
our commodi-  
ties.

The Shaugh himselfe is desirous to bargain with you, who will give monie, silke, and other wares as we will, and take our wares as we may afford them, willing me himselfe to bring such wares as we might gaine by him. The Armenians by report, and as I perceave, bring from Aleppo yearly four, five, and six thousand peeces of kertes and clothes, besides those which other men bringe. If your Majesties might procure and sende vent of sales for rawe silke, and silke woe in graine, besides other silkes wrought and made here, by which profit may be made, then you might sende a great substance of wares hither. But I feare you shall be hindered by the Venetians, if they may: for I knowe it will grieue them, that you doe trade into these partes: for in those time it shall cleave alter their trade, and hinder the sales of their clothes in Aleppo, and other places adjoining. You shall understand that 60. batmans of silke is a Pules lading: and as it is reported, one billage of the Armenians, yearly carrieth 400. and 500. Pules lading of silke to Aleppo, and bringeth thence 800. of a thousand Pules laden with kertes, and Venice clothes, And 18. peeces of kertes, are a Pules lading. But I wish you not to sende about 2000. peeces of kertes, although I have bene willed to write for more. If I might have had any understanding what your Majesties had written for in your letters sent this yere, I should in this my letter have bene better able to have answered you. They which be now in Astracan, might have written some thing unto me hither, if it had pleased them, or else have sent me such letters of mine, as I hope some of my friends have written to me: for here are arrived 8. weekes past, two boates with wares, and Russes, by whome they might have written, had it bene but 3. or 4. lines. They promised the Russes to write, but promise was not kept. I would be soye that any boate should depart out of these parts, and not write unto them, saying how all things stande. I heare they have bought a boate, which cost 40. robbles, and shipped certaine wares to come hither. God send them in safetie. I doe say their coming, or els I had thought to have come to Astracan in those boates which departed hence lately.

2000. peeces  
of kertes to be  
sent into Azer-  
ba.

We departed  
from Casbin  
the 15. of July.

The fifteenth of July last, I departed from Casbin, and came to this Towne the 29. of the same. And the fourth of August, I founde meanes to arrest the fastest knave in this Countrey, to wit, the Customers, for 22. tumens, and 100. shaughes, (200. shaughes is a tumen.) I have caused him to put in sureties for his sooth coming at all times: what end I shall have with him God knoweth: the debt will be recovered, but not yet: for he must pay the Shaugh 1000. robbles. These partes as yet are in no stay, for lacke of a Governour of head or rule, which I thinke shall be the Murley. Within 5. or 6. daies, we shal know, for it is time, because men are in feare to travell for being robbed. If there were a prince placed, I should soone get in your debts, for they dare not disobey the Shaughes letters, or priviledge: wherein he hath not onely written that our debts shal be paid, but also that we shall be taken hereto, so as we need not to doubt, God willing, in time to come, to be here as well bled as we are in Russeland. The bills of debts that Richard Johnson left with me, had neither the parties name, nor summe of money in two of them, and in other bills, but his owne name. If I had used discretion, in causing to be written in our priviledge, that such debts as are owing, should be paid any of vs in the absence of the other, some men would not have paid one penny, but onely to Richard Johnson, who hath written but his owne name onely in the bills. I receaved in Casbin of Forackan, in part of 29. tumens, 300. shaughes in money: the rest he will deliuer me here in silke, and this is all that I have receaved to this day. And as for Hawrambecks twelve tumens, I make accompt, that if I could ride to speake with him, I should be paid in money and wares. Touching Ackones money, by meanes of Duke Amedenbecke, who first owed the debt, because they meant not to pay a penny, he did rather seeke to hinder my suite, then to farther mee: but I founde out a present remedie: for God sent me friends that were always about the Shaugh, and daily put on his appaerell, who opened all my sute, and brought me to the presence of the Shaugh, before that Cosomomet sawe the Shaughes eyes. But Cosomomet in the ende was my friende: for he was sent for, and declared unto the Shaugh, what good Merchants we were, being true in all our doings, and howe we were in great favour with the Emperour of Russia, and what good commodities we might bring into his Countrey, with other talke. And daily he was sent for to the Shaugh, about the affaires in those partes: for no man was able to advise the Shaugh of the state and affaires of those Countreies, so much as he was. He owed your Majesties seven tumens, and 48. shaughes, which was not all this time to be gotten at his hands: for he was at great charges in riding to Casbin, and giving great gifts since his coming, which he twice declared unto mee. I feeling his grieffe, became compassion, to ease his paine, and forgave him his debt above saide, in recompence of tenne peeces of kertes, that were promised him by Richard Johnson, and mee, to give him at the coming of our goods, in consideration that he shoulde with speede doe what laye in him, to dispatche mee home.

Richard Johnson  
was great  
negligent.

Cosomomet  
was Arthur  
Edwards  
friend to the  
Shaugh.

will giue monie, silke, and other  
 killing me him selfe to bring such  
 as I perceiue, bring from A-  
 loches, besides those which other  
 for rawe silke, and silke woe  
 pposite may be made, then you  
 shall be hindered by the Vene-  
 into these partes: for in those  
 loches in Aleppo, and other pla-  
 & Pules lading: and as it is re-  
 and 500. Pules lading of silke  
 with kertes, and Venice clothes,  
 not to sende about 2000. peeces  
 might haue had any vnderstan-  
 yere, I should in this my let-  
 to in Afracan, might haue writ-  
 sent me such letters of mine, as  
 ued 8. weekes past, two boates  
 it bene but 3. or 4. lines. They  
 be soze that any boate should be  
 things stande, I heare they haue  
 to come hithe, God send them  
 to Afracan in those boates

re to this Towne the 29. of the  
 the fastest knaue in this Coun-  
 o. (haughes is a tunen.) I haue  
 what end I shall haue with him  
 pay the Shaugh 1000. roubles,  
 to rule, which I thinke shall be  
 cause men are in feare to trauell  
 in your debtes, for they dare not  
 onely writzen that our debtes shal  
 to doubt, God willing, in time to  
 debtes that Richard Iohnson left  
 wo of them, and in other bills, but  
 tten in our priuiledge, that such  
 other, some men would not haue  
 but his owne name onely in the  
 o. haughes in money: the rest  
 to this day. And as for Haw-  
 to speake with him, I should be  
 of Duke Amenedebecke, who  
 rather seeke to hinder my sute,  
 and sent me friends that were al-  
 ended all my sute, and brought me  
 Shaughes eyes. But Colomo-  
 into the Shaugh, what good  
 ee were in great fauour with the  
 into his Countrey, with other  
 in those partes: for no man was  
 ies, so much as he was. He owed  
 e all this time to be gotten at his  
 aining great quites since his com-  
 , became Prisoner, to ease his  
 of some peeces of kertes, that  
 in at the comming of our goods,  
 in him, to dispatche mee  
 may:

for I perceiued he procured other that did helpe me in my sute, to delay me of all time he had  
 his purpose. I neuer was in quiet, till I had the Princes priuiledge, & had got me out of Casbin:  
 for victuals, and all other things are very deere there, because they are brought thither from far off.  
 As for all other small debtes (which may be about 7. tunens) when our Marchantes are come hithe,  
 ther, we shal seeke to get them in as we may. I wish your Worships to send some bollion to be coi-  
 ned here, it will please the princ there, & be profitable to you. Silke is better cheape by 2. and 3.  
 haughes the batman, then it was the last yere. You shal vnderstand that I haue writzen 2. letters  
 of all my proceedings; which I sent from Casbin long since, to wit, the 24. and 29. of June last, by  
 one of your seruants to Gilan, there to take ship and to goe to Afracan, and to deliuer the same vnto  
 your factors, which might haue bene to their quietnes and mine long ago. But I am right so-  
 rie to heare since my comming thither, that he hath plaied the loitering marchant in Gilan, not com-  
 ing in those boates that went first, but caried for the last boates. But I will reach him, to the exam-  
 ple of other, how he shal make haste hereafter in such affaires. The kertes which you sent last, be-  
 ing bought of Spatter Quarles, were good and full lengths, and well sorted: The Princes Am-  
 ballador of Gilan was in Casbin, at my being there. I hope in God, if I remaine here, and may go  
 to Gilan to obtaine for your Worships the like priuiledge at the kings hand there also. For I  
 haue something moued the matter, being put in such comfort, that I doubt not the getting thereof  
 with small charges: which I had done at this time, if I had had other here with me to put in trust:  
 for from Casbin to Gilan, is but 5. daies riding, which Countrey may be profitable to your Wor-  
 ships. There is in that Prouince, good hope of silke, better cheape, and better in goodnes, then this  
 Countrey silke is. A litle great toze of Alam, being there sold this to wnes batman, for one bit and  
 a halfe, I haue made reckoning, al charges bozne from hence to Colmogro, & from thence straight  
 into England, at theee poundes the tunne, all charges accompted, will not stand you in aboute 18.  
 and 20. shillings the hundreth. You may haue yereley by reposit, two or three hundreth tunnes la-  
 ding. Other commodities there for England, I heare not of, as for gals here to be bought, there is  
 no profit to be done by them. They be brought from Aleppo, & sold here not vnder 3. or 4. haughes  
 their batman, being fixe poundes English weight. Graine that you dye scarlet withall, is worth the  
 batman ready money, 200. haughes, reckoning the Shaugh for 6. pence Russe, it may be 6. roubles  
 their batman. Your Worships may send some portion of money, if you may buy, as I thinke you  
 may, for 12. and 13. shillings a pound the herrits, so you shall gaine both in the price, and waight.  
 If one Englishman more had bene here with me, to whome I might haue deliuered our bills of  
 debtes and other things, whatsoeuer should haue chanced of me, I would then haue become seruant  
 to mine Interpreter, and so haue gone to Ormus, and Aleppo, which both toyne in the borders of  
 this Countrey, being the chiefe Spatter Townes, wherunto from all places Marchants resort.  
 And this would I haue spent 4. or 5. moneths in trauellling for farther knowledge of things, for  
 to haue certified your Worships of. I hope in God to vse things in such order, that yereley you shall  
 haue returne of your goods from hence, as you haue footch of Russe land, and in those shippes. For  
 if we may, as I doubt not with diligence, provide to make sales in time, and with speede receaue  
 silke at the Shaughes hand, and other mens, that it may be sent from hence to be in Afracan at the  
 beginning of April, from whence it may be sent to Colmogro in three moneths and lesse, & there  
 to be ready with the rest of your goods, by the ende of June, for your shippes to receaue, that will  
 be time enough. This I doubt not to bring to passe within a yere or two, when we are thoroughly  
 settled in these partes, and better known. Howeauer, you shall vnderstand, that at my last being in  
 the presence of the Shaugh, it was saide to me, that Spatter Anthonie Ienkinson did proffer to take  
 all the rawe silke in those parties, deliueting cloth, and other commodities for the same. I assure  
 you, there is in those partes to be had three or foure thousand hoyses lading, euery hoise loade being  
 50. or 60. batmans, besides silke of Grosse. Great aboundance of silke at times is sent out of these  
 partes, to wit, 4. or 5. hundreth hoise loades at a time, by the Turkes, who bring great toze of silke  
 to be copied, to wit, Dollars at ten haughes the peere. The Hungarie Duckert is at 12. haughes.  
 And hauing monie in readines at the time of the peere, they buy silke the better cheape, when the  
 Countrey men bring it first to be sold. If your Worships may bargain with the Venecians, to  
 take silke at your hands, or other wise deale with them, I do not mistrust but to haue at Shaughes  
 hand, fixe batmans of silke for two peeces and a halfe of kertes. Your good aduise herein, and in o-  
 ther matters, I trust you will write with convenient speede. Spatter Anthonie Ienkinson hath de-  
 serued great commendation at all your Worships hands: for the good report of his well and wise  
 dealing in those partes, was oftentimes a comfort to me to heare thereof, and some good helpe to me  
 in my proceedings. To this day I neuer heard from any of our Marchants, God grant main  
 health to see your Worships: for I haue had a carefull trauell, with many a sorrowfull day, and  
 vniquiet

Victruals and all things deere at Casbin.

The Ambassa- dor of the prince of Gilan

Gilan but due daies riding from Casbin.

Cals.

Graine.

Ormus. Aleppo.

Spatter Anthonie Ienkinson offer to the Venecian.

Spatter Anthonie Ienkinson com- mended.

quieter sleepes. Neither had I the companie of one English person, to whom sometimes I might have eased my penitenc heart, as God well knoweth, who hath deliuered me from mine enemies. Thus almightie God grant you in health and wealth, long to liue.

Your humble seruant at commandement during life,  
Arthur Edwards.

Another letter of Arthur Edwards, written in Astracan, the  
16. of Iune, 1567. at his returne in his first voyage out of Persia,  
to the right Worshipfull companie, trading into Russia, Persia, and o-  
ther the North and Northeast partes.



The same  
letters to the  
Discoverie  
company.

It may please your Wysships, that herein I haue wrytten not onely certayne articles of your priuiledge, but also the Governours names, with the Consuls, Ambassadors, and generallicke: Also such commodities as the Prince or Emperour of the Countrey hath wrytten in one of his letters, directed to your Wysships, to be sent him, with other notes, which I thought good to be remembred, as may appeare hereafter following. Your priuiledge is wrytten, granted, and giuen in the names of the syre persons following, to wit, Sir William Garrard, Sir William Chester, gouernour, Sir Thomas Lodge, Master Anthony Jenkinson, Master Thomas Nichols, and Arthur Edwards.

1. First it is granted, that you shall pay no manner of customes, or colles, any kind of wares, now, nor in time comming, unto his heires after him. And that all English Marchants, such as you shall appoint, now, and hereafter, shall and may passe and repasse into all places of his dominions, and other Countreies adioyning, in the trade of marchandize, to buy and sell all manner of commodities, with all maner of persons.

2. Item that in all places where any of our Marchants shall haue their resort, or abiding, his chiefe Governours, Rulers, and Iustices shall take heede vnto vs, being our aide and defence against all euill persons, punishing those that shall doe vs any wrong.

3. Item that for all such debts as shall be owing by any manner of person, iustice shall be done on the partie, and we paid at the day.

4. Item that no manner of person, of whatsoeuer estate or degree they be of, shall be so hardie as to take any kind of wares, or any goods, without any leaue and good will.

5. Item if by chance medley any of our Marchants or seruants, as God forbid, should kill any of his subiects, that no part of your goods shall be touched or medled withall, neither any partie be the offendour, and true iustice to be ministered, and being any of vs, not to suffer without the Princes knowledge, and aduise.

6. Item that all such debts as are now owing, or hereafter shall be, are to be payde vnto any of vs, in the absence of the other, be the partie dead, or alive.

7. Item that no person returne any kinde of wares backe againe, being once bought or sold.

8. Item that when God shall send your goods to shoare, presently his people shall helpe vs a land with them.

These articles before wrytten, I trust in God, will content your mindes, vntill your farther letters be hitherto wrytten vnto the Prince: who I am assured will grant your farther reasonable requests, which his Maiestie hath promised. For I moued the question, declaring vnto him, that I thought your Wysships would write your letters of requests, to craue his farther good will, as should be thought meete for your better assurance in the trade of marchandize: you will hardly be leaue what long and gracious talke he had with me, which I assure you continued two hours, which was strange vnto the people, and other Marchant strangers. For betwixt euery question that his Maiestie moued, when I had answered him, he would talke with his Nobles, and other his seruants, hauing some knowledge of our Westerne partes and commodities, and then againe would demand other questions. He caused his Secretarie to write the articles before named, in all of his foure letters giuen me (whereof two as I required, are in the Turkish tongue to be sent you.) On the backe side of one, he hath wrytten what wares his Maiestie would haue you to sende him. He held me one houre within night, before I departed from him.

These be the names of the wares or commodities which on the  
backe

to whom sometimes I might  
liued me from mine enemies.

ndement during life,

en in Astracan, the  
oyage out of Persia,

ussia, Persia, and o-

have written not onely certaine  
ours names, with the Countes  
odities as the Prince of Empe-  
letters, directed to your Ma-  
thoughe good to be rememberd,  
uiledge is written, granted, and  
iam Garrard, sir William Che-  
pater Thomas Nichols, and

es, or colles, any kind of waies,  
ll English Parchants, such as  
asse into all places of his domi-  
ite, to buy and sell all manner of

have their resort, or abiding, his  
s, being our aide and defende  
ng.

anner of person, iustice shall be

ree they be of, shall be so harie  
good will,

nts, as God forbid, should kill  
edied withall, neither any partie  
of vs, nor to suffer without the

shall be, are to be y-ide into any

again, being once bought or

scemly his people shall helpe vs

reundes, butill your farther let-

grant your farther reasonable

sion, declaring unto him, that I

raue his farther good will, as

arcanidize: you will hardly be

re you continued two houres,

ke with his Nobles, and other

o commodities, and then againe

the article's before named, in al

the Turkish tongue to be put

in.

odities which on the

backe

backside of one of his letters, the Shaugh hath written to you to be  
sent him.

First some clothe of golde, with cloth of tpslue, and cloth of bocky, as Beluets wrought with  
golde.

Item good beluets, to wit, cremosins, purples, reds, greens, and blackes. These colours his  
partic requirer: for they are most woyme. And though there be some of these waers made in his  
Cite of Callhan, yet nothing like in goodnes, to those that you may procure for him. Small pro-  
fit I thinke will be in these waers: yet for diuers considerations, as also to satisfie the Princes  
minde, I wish you to send some, and those that be especiall good.

Item good damasks and satins, of all forces, with an hundred peeces of good chamlets, which  
are worth here 80. Shaughes the pece, at five pence the Shaugh, and those likes to be of those co-  
lours aboute written, to wit, cremosins, purples, reds, greens, blackes, with some light waterbe  
colours.

Item three or foure complete barnells that will abide the shot of a handgumme, with tenne or  
twelue targets of Steele, being good.

Item ten or twelue good hirtes of male, being very good, or else none, that may abide the shot  
of an arrowe, and two buffe ierkins.

Item ten or twelue peeces of Wiltene kerries, being thickers well and close knit in the wea-  
uing, and dyed into scarlets, and fine reds. I thinke there will be no such cloth for Noblemens capes.  
The Prince named them "karangies, saying, that maidens did make them, and is desirous of  
them.

By the way  
Marangies, I  
thinke they  
meane kerries.

Item five peeces of fine Holland cloth for the Prince, with some other for Noblemen, of a lower  
price.

Item twentie handgumms being good, some of them with fire lockes, and also five good bags,  
with lockes to trauell withall.

Item 100. bylles for garments, (none made of swines haire,) for gaites, and other wise to be  
solde.

Item five stone bowes that shoote lead pellets.

Item a mill to grinde coyne in the field as they goe, finely deuised: for Cozomomet willed me  
to write for one to be sent, to giue the Prince.

Item the Prince requirerh of all forces and colours of London clothes, I wish you to sende no  
less then 40. or 50. for I knowe they will be solde to profite, especially such cloth as may be af-  
fayred for: 20. Shaughes the arshine, which is longer by two of mine ynches then Russia arshine is.  
Let there be fine scarlets, violets in graine, fine reds, blackes, bytowne blewes, foure or five of eue-  
ry sort, for the Prince, and other Loydes: the rest of other colours lively to the sight, as London  
vulles, catonies, Lion colours, good lincly greens, with other, as you shall thinke good: for the  
Prince desirerh to see of all forces, which will be an occasion, that the Venetians and Turkes shall  
be in lesse estimation then they are: for they themselves doe feare, and secretly say the same. And  
truly the Princes subiects intend to enter into trade with vs for spices, and other commodities,  
that they were wont to sell unto the Venetians, and Turkes.

Thus I commite you all to God, who send you health, with increase of Wealth. Written  
in Astracan, the 16. of June, 1567.

By your seruante during life to command  
Arthur Edwards.

### Distances of certaine places in Russia.

The way from S. Nicholas Bay to		berstes
Mosko.		
	berstes.	
To Yerslaue		180
To Rostoue		60
To Pcraslaue		60
To Mosko		120
		} 440
		By land East and West
To Colmogro	100	
To Vsting	500	
To Tokma	250	
To Vologhda	250	
All by the river of Dwina	} 1100	

The way from Mosco to Smolensko.  
To

To Moramis 300  
 To Smolensko 200  
 The way from Mosco to Nouogorode.

To Ottuer ist 180  
 To Torzhoke 60  
 To Wisnouolloko 60  
 To Nouogorode 150

Southwest and Northeast } 450

The way from Nouogorode to Naruc.

To Teseua 50  
 To the Friers 60  
 To Yria Niagorod 40  
 To Naruc 15

Southwest and Northeast } 165

From Nouogorod to Vobsky, is 180. verstes by East.

The way from Vobsky to Ric in Liefeland.

To Newe house 50  
 To Gouen on the bayers }  
 To Wenden } verstes  
 To Trecado } All is 200.  
 To Newflot }  
 To Ric }

The way from Mosco to Astracan.

To Costrom  
 To Nisnouogorod  
 To Cazan

To Astracan in all is } verstes.  
 2800

The way from Vologhda to Naruc.

To Belozercro 140  
 To Batag 80  
 To Witergen 40  
 To Ladiskie 60  
 To Onego lake 180  
 To Oher 90  
 To Naruc 180

Southwest Northeast } verstes  
 770

The way and distances from S. Nicholas, to the Caspian sea.

If you goe straight from S. Nicholas, to the Caspian sea, you must goe to Vologhda by water, as by the easiest passage, and that is accomplished passing day & night, in 14. daies, & 14. nights, in boates cut out of a tree: (the boates are called Struogs) 1100. verstes it is.

By horse and sleds in eight daies you may passe it in Winter. In Summer the way is dangerous, by meanes of marshes and bogs, and not safe by then to be pased. Then from Vologhda to Yerallaue, 180. verstes ouer land. This Yerallaue standeth vpon the riuer of Volga, 180. verstes I say distant from Vologhda.

To the Caspian sea are 2700. verstes from Yerallaue.

So from S. Nicholas to the Caspian sea, are } lii. 9. viii. C. lxxx. verstes.

The journey from S. Nicholas to Yerallaue is accomplished in foureteen daies by water, and two daies by land. } xvi. daies.

From thence to Astracan men trauell by water in 30. daies and 30. nights.

So betwene S. Nicholas and the Caspian sea, are } 46. daies journey.

To goe with a small boate within the land from S. Nicholas to Wardhouse.

To Newnox riuer.  
 To Oufca Gouba  
 To Lobhanga  
 To Oust Nauclockie  
 To Orlouanos  
 To Solufca Monasterie.  
 To Candeloxe  
 To Oust Colla  
 To Zhemaker  
 To Poganna Voulackie  
 To Chibe Naulocke  
 To Kegor

To Wardhouse in all 800. verstes Northwest and Southeast.

The way from Colmogro to Mizemake Sloboda, where the Samoeds keepe their Marte.

To Vst Pinnago  
 To Palango  
 To Leunona  
 To Vefcom  
 To Soyaua  
 To Coula  
 To Nendega  
 To Lampas  
 To Sloboda } All is 230. verstes.

The way to Vromo from Mezemske Sloboda, where the Iosh hides are gouten.

To Lampas  
 To Pogorel  
 To Zapolle  
 To Vromo } All is 115. verstes, Northwest and Southwest.

There pass  
 of the river, in  
 The sale li  
 toward the C  
 poote, viz. 40  
 The Sam  
 riuer the spar  
 months, viz.  
 The riuer  
 The riuer  
 The riuer  
 Dvina from  
 The Mene a  
 Betwene  
 length is fo  
 The temp  
 of the sale is  
 Of this ben  
 king of cab  
 The Rusli  
 And one cab  
 can haue, wh  
 Solnoua, a  
 of the barke  
 The Samo  
 The wood of  
 Role Island  
 made: This  
 The snow  
 ground is ma  
 Then after  
 Island each fir

Certain  
 Boghs

The first no  
 of Bogar  
 the

From Bogha  
 from Casnar

By

From Astra  
 from Tur  
 common bur  
 from Vrgen

boats within  
Nicholas  
wife.

There passe downe Volga every Sommer, 500. boates great & small, from all the upper parts of the river, wherof some be of 500. tunne. They goe for minerall salt and for Scurgion.

The salt lieth in rocks (and is whitish red, and in fine sand) as it were 30. miles from Astracan toward the Caspian Sea. They dig it themselves and pay nothing for it, but to the prince a penny a pood, viz. 40. pound weight.

The Scurgion which they call Ocetera, is taken fiftie miles on this side Astracan. Along the river the space of 20. miles, they make their booties in plaine grounds, and fish for the space of threemonths, viz. from the end of May till the end of August, and having salt they use to salt them.

Fishing for Scurgion for 3. months.

The river there is 5. or 6. miles broad, but with some Islands.

The river below Yerasslaue where it is most narrow, is a mile broad from side to side.

The river runneth upon red clay, all woods of birch and oke on the river sides, save about the banks of the fishing places.

Dwina from St. Nicholas to Vsting, runneth all on chaffe and sand: the fish are sweet and fat. The Mene a fish with a great head a foote long, breedeth about Vologda, and is fat and delicate.

Betweene Vobska and Nouogrode, the space of 180. miles, groweth flax: the whole soile in length is so imployed, and as much in breadth: this is upon a flat soile.

The hempe groweth about Smolensko upon the Polish border, 300. miles in compass: much of the soile is so imployed.

Of this hempe, they bring in Winter to Vologda and Colmogro, and use it in making of cables about 100. men.

The Russians doe spinne and barrell it, and the English take it in threed and lay the cable. And one cable of thole is worth two of Danzicke, because the Danzickers put in old cable and rotten stuffe, which in fowle weather is found of no strength.

The English men in making of cables use 100. men in Russia. Solnoua tree, excellent for the cure of the soile.

Solnoua, a tree that cureth the twolfe with the shavings of the wood, groweth in these parts, and of the barkes they make ropes as big as a mans arme for their boates.

The Samoeds lacking linnen, make handkerchiefs and towels of the berry wood of this tree. The wood of this tree is as beaue as hollie, and the shavings tough.

Rose Island in St. Nicholas bay, is full of Roses damaske and red, of violets and wilde Rose-marte: This Island is nere 7. or 8. miles about, and good pasture, and hath the name of the roses.

The snow here about the middle of May is cleared, having bene two moneths in treading, then the ground is made drie within 14. dayes after, and then the grasse is knee high within a moneth. Then after September the frost cometh in, the snow is a yard deepe upon plaine ground. The Island hath fure and birch, and a faire fresh spring nere the house built there by the English.

gro to Mizeuske  
Samoeds keepe  
it.

All is 230. berbes,

from Mezemske  
the loth hides  
ten.

All is 115. berbes,  
Horsehead and  
Southwest.

Caspian sea.

Vologhda by water,  
4. daies, & 14. nightes,  
it is.  
Nere the way is vantage  
Then from Vologhda  
riuer of Volga, 180.

tes.

tes.  
ney.

Chr

Certaine notes gathered by Richard Iohnson (which was at Boghar with Maltre Anthony Ienkinson) of the reports of Russes and other strangers, of the wayes from Russia to Cathaya, and of diuers and straunge people.

The first note giuen by one named Sarnichoke a Tartarian subiect to the Prince of Bogarskie, which are also Tartars bordering vpon Kizilbashi or Persia, declaring the way from Astracan, being the furthest part of Russia, to Cathaya as followeth.

- From Astracan to Serachicke by land, traouelling at leisure as merchants use with horses, is 10. dayes iourney.
- From Serachicke to a towne named \*Vrgenshe, 15. dayes.
- From Vrgenshe to Bogarskie, 15. dayes.
- From Bogarskie to Casnar, 30. dayes.
- From Casnar to Cathaya, 30. dayes iourney.

St. Petersburg.

By the same partie a note of another way more sure to trauell, as he reporteth.

- From Astracan to Turckemen by the Caspian sea, 10. dayes with barkes.
- From Turckemen by land specially with camels, bearing the weight of 15. poodes for their common burthens, is 10. dayes to Vrgenshe.
- From Vrgenshe to Bogarskie, 15. dayes.

St. P.

Note.

Note. At this citie of Boghar is the maner of meeting place betwene the Turkes and nations of those partes and the Cathaians.

Also the toll there is the 40. part to be paid for merchandizes or goods.

From thence to Cashar or Caskar is one moneths iourney, and from Cashar or Caskar (being the frontier of the great Cau. having many towne and fortes by the way) is also a moneths trauell for merchants by land to Cathay.

Further as he hath heard (not hauing bene in those partes himselfe) Ships may saile from the dominions of Cathaia into India. But of other waies, or how the Seas lie by any coast he knoweth not.

The instruction of another Tartarian Merchant dwelling in the citie of Boghar, as he hath learned by other his countrymen which haue bene there.

**Of Serachocke.** First from Astracan by sea to \*Serachocke, is 15. dayes (affirming also that a man may trauele the other way before written by Turckment.)

From Serachocke to Vrgenshe is 15. dayes.

From Vrgenshe to Boghar also 15. dayes.

Note. These last 30. daies iourney is without habitation of houses, therefore travellers lodge in their owne tents, carrying with them to eat their severall provisions: and for drinke there be many wells of faire water at equal baiting places not farre distant daily to be had.

**Of Taskent.** From Boghar to \*Taskent easie traueilling with goods, is 14. dayes by land.

From Taskent to Occient 7. dayes.

From Occient to Caskar 20. daies. This Caskar is the head towne or citie of another prince, lying betwene Boghar and Cathaia, called Reshican.

From Caskar to Sowchick, 30. daies iourney, whith Sowchick is the first border of Cathay.

From Sowchick to Camchick 5. dayes iourney, & from Camchick to Cathay is two moneths iourney, all the way being inhabited temperate and well replished with innumerable fruits, and the chiefe citie in that whole land is called \*Cambuloo, which is yet 10. daies iourney from Cathay.

**Of Cambalu.**

Beyond this land of Cathay which they passe to be chiefe and vnspenakably rich, is the country named in the Tartarian tongue Cara-calmack inhabited with blacke people: but in Cathay the most part thereof stretching to the sunne rising, are people white and of faire complexion. Their religion also as the Tartares report, is christian, or after the maner of christians, and their language peculiar, differing from the Tartarian tongue.

There are no great and furious Beares in traueilling through the waies aforesaid, but indolent white and blacke. And because that woods are not of such quantitie there, as in these partes of Russia, but in maner rather skant then plentifull, as is reported, the Beares beed not that way, but some other beasts, (as namely one in Russe called Barle) are in those coasts. This Barle appereth by a skinne of one scene here to sell, to be neere so great as a big lion spotted very faire, and therefore we here take it to be a Leopard or Tiger.

Note, 20. dayes iourney from Cathay is a countrey named Angrim, where lieth the best that beareth the best muske, & the principall thereof is cut out of the knee of the moe. The people are tall, & for that the men are not bearded nor differ in complexion fro women. They haue certain tokens of iron, that is to say: the men weare the sunne round like a boile by their shoulders, and women on their private partes. Their feeding is rawe flesh in the same land, and in another called \*Tiray, the Duke there is called Can, they worship the fire, and it is 34. daies iourney from great Cathay, and in the way lieth the beautifull people, eating with knives of gold, and are called Comorom, and the land of small people is neerer the Mosko then Cathay.

**Of the people  
speaking  
beroz.**

**Of the  
Mitar.**

**Of small people.**

The instructions of one of Permia, who reporteth he had bene at Cathay the way before written, and also another way neere the sea coast, as followeth, which note was sent out of Russia from Giles Holmes.

**Of Pechora but  
six dayes iour-  
ney by land of  
water fro Ob.**

First from the prouince of Dwina is knowen the way to Pechora, and from Pechora traueilling with olens or barts, is six dayes iourney by land, and in the Sommer as much by water to the riuer of Ob.

The Ob is a riuer full of flats, the mouth of it is 70. Russe miles ouer. And from thence three dayes iourney on the right hand is a place called Chorno-lesle, to say in English, Blacke woods,

and

the Turkes and nations

Cashar or Caskar (being  
yp) is also a months tra

hips may sail from the do  
is lie by any coast he know

dwelling in the  
which haue bene there.

also that a man may traue

therefoze traueillers lodge  
: and for winesse there be  
to be had.  
by land.

of cite of another pines,

the first border of Cathay.

to Cathay is two month  
with innumerable fruits, and  
betw 10. daies journey from

richly rich, is the country  
people: but in Cathay the  
is faire complexion. Their  
militians, and their language

waies aforesaid, but twines  
e, as in these partes of Rus  
res beed not that way, but  
waits. This Barle appereth  
noted very faire, and then

m, where lieth the best  
of the mal. The people are  
women. They haue certaine  
sle by their shoulders, and  
land, and in another called  
s of gold, and are called Co-  
hay.

rteth he had bene  
re the sea coast, as fo-  
es Holmes,

a, and from Pechora traue  
Sommer as much by water

ouer. And from thence there  
in English, Blacke woods,  
and

and from thence nere hand is a people called Pechey-cony, weating their haire by his descripti  
on after the Trish fashion.

From Pechey-cony to Ioult Calmachey 3. dayes journey, and from thence to Chorno Cal-  
lachay 3. dayes tending to the Southeast.

These two people are of the Tartarian faith, and tributaries to the great Can.

Here follow certaine countreys of the Samoeds which dwell

yp on the river Ob, and vpon the sea coasts beyond the same, taken out of the  
Russe tongue word by word, and trauelled by a Russe borne in Colmo-  
gro, whose name was Pheother Towtigin, who, by report,  
was slaine in his second voyage in one of the  
fayd countreys.

**V**pon the East part beyond the countrey of Vgori, the riuer Ob is the most Westermost  
part thereof. vpon the sea coast dwell Samoeds, and their countrey is called Molgom-  
zey, whose meat is flesh of olens or bares, and fish, and doe eat one another sometimes  
among themselves. And if any merchantes come vnto them, then they kill one of their  
children for their lakes to feast them withall. And if a merchant chance to die with them, they burie  
him not, but eat him, and so doe they eat them of their owne countrey likewise. They be euill of  
sight, and haue small noses, but they be swift and shooe very well, and they trauaile on barts and on  
waggies, and their apparell is Sables and Partes skines. They haue no merchandise but sables  
only.

Travelling on  
barts or waggies.

2 Item, on the same coast or quarter beyond those people, and by the sea side also doeth dwell  
another kind of Samoeds in like maner, hauing another language. One month in the yeere they  
liue in the sea, and do not come or dwell on the drie land for that month.

3 Item beyond these people, on the sea coast, there is another kind of Samoeds, their meate is  
flesh and fish, and their merchandise are Sables, white and blacke Foxes (which the Russes call  
Picles) and barts skins and fatones skins.

The relation of Chaggi Memet a Persian Merchant, to Baptista

Ramusius and other notable citizens of Venice, touching the way from Tauris the  
chiefe citie of Persia, to Campion a citie of Cathay ouer land: in which  
voiage he himselfe had passed before with the Carauans.

From Tauris to Soltania.	6	} dayes journey.
From Soltania to Casbin.	4	
From Casbin to Veremi.	6	
From Veremi to Eri.	15	
From Eri to Boghara.	20	
From Boghara to Samarchand.	5	
From Samarchand to Caskar.	25	
From Caskar to Acfu.	20	
From Acfu to Cuchi.	20	
From Cuchi to Chialis.	10	
From Chialis to Turfon.	10	
From Turfon to Camul.	13	
From Camul to Succuir.	15	
From Succuir to Gaura.	5	
From Gaura to Campion.	6	

Which Campion is a citie of the Empire of Cathay in the prouince of Tangur, from whence  
the greatest quantitie of Rubarbe commeth.



The way discovered by water by vs Thomas Sowtham, and  
John Sparke, from the towne of Colmogro, vnto the citie of Nouogrode in  
Ruffia, conceining many particulars of the way, and distance of  
miles, as hereafter foloweth. Anno 1566.



We departed from Colmogro about 10. of the clocke afore noone in a Lobia of Barke,  
which we hired to lying vs along the coast to a place called Soroka, & in the said barke  
we hired 6. mariners, and a boy to conduct vs to the place before rehearsed.

The Lobia of barke was of the burden of 25. runnes of there about, wherewith wee  
bald toome the river of Dwina, the wind being then calme, vnto a monasterie called S. Michael  
where we were constrained to anker because of a contrary wind which there met vs.

At this towne  
of Soroka  
of an English  
wilde.

From Colmogro to this monasterie are 50. berths of miles of Ruffia, at which place we tarie  
till the 21. day in the morning, and then hauing the wind somewhat faire, we set saile and departed  
thence.

21 We departed from the monasterie of S. Michael, hauing the wind some what faire, and arri-  
ued at Kofe Island, our and against the monasterie of S. Nicholas, the 22. day at 2. of the clocke  
in the morning, which is 35. miles distant from the monasterie of S. Michael. By reason of con-  
trary wind and tide we were constrained to tarie there all that day.

23 We departed from the monasterie of S. Nicholas at 7. of the clocke in the evening, and came  
to an anker at the beacons, and continued there vntill halfe an hower past 10. of the clocke, and then  
set from thence, the wind being South: our course was West till 5. of the clocke in the morning,  
when as we came to an anker against Newnox towne, where we continued vntill the 25. day.

At this towne  
of Newnox  
Michael Chan-  
rier in his  
first voyage,  
with his com-  
pany a ship  
board were  
retained.

The said towne of Newnox is from the monasterie of S. Nicholas 35. miles.

We departed from Newnox haue at one of the clocke in the after noone, the wind at South  
and South east, and our course North west and by West.

The point of Tolficke which is the headland before the entrance of Newnox hauen, and the  
headland of Seufenskie, lie next South east and by South, North west and by North. We came  
to an anker there this day at 4. of the clock in the afternoone, being from Newnox hauen 15. miles,  
where we continued in harbour till the 27. day of the month by reason of contrary winds.

27 We departed from Seufenskie in the morning at 5. of the clocke, the wind next at East and  
by North, and our course North west and by West.

The said land of Seufenskie and the headland going into Owna riuer, lieth East & by South  
west, and by North, and betwene them is 25. miles.

This day at Sunne set we came to an Island called Sogisney passing betwixt it and the maine,  
with the wind at South and by East, our course was West and by South, being 85. miles from  
Owna riuer.

Being past the said Island 10. miles, the wind came contrary, whereupon we returned to the  
Island of Sogisney, where we remained vntill the 29. day.

29 The 29. day we departed from Sogisney aforesaid at 5. of the clocke in the afternoone, the  
wind at East north east, and our course was South west & by west, passing by an Island called An-  
ger, being 30. miles from Sogisney, and keeping on our course, wee came by the headland of an  
Island called Abdon, being from the Island of Anger 15. miles, where we found many rocks:  
and if the great prouidence of God had not preserved vs, wee had there perished, being fallen a  
mongst them in the night time, and our pilot none of the perfectest, which was contrary to his pe-  
fession as we found it.

But whosoever will trauell that way, must eicher keepe hard aboard the shore, for that there is  
a chanell which goeth along the coast within the rocks, or els giue the headland a berth of 6. miles  
at the least, and so goe a seaboard all: for there are ledges of rocks that lie fure miles from the  
headland.

We gaue the headland a berth of 3. miles, notwithstanding there lay two rocks two miles to  
the boord of vs, so that we were inclosed with them, and late vpon the highest of them: but it pleased  
God to make it calme, and giue vs the day also, or els we had miscaried.

30 We departed from the headland of the Island of Abdon, at 4. of the clocke in the morning,  
directing our course West, and at 10. of the clocke before noone, wee arrived at a monasterie  
named Soloffekay, which is 15. miles from Abdon.

At this monasterie we continued vntill the 31. day of this month. Wee had here deliuered vs  
by the chiefe monkes of the monasterie, their lesler and house hold, and a seruauant of theirs to con-  
duct vs safely through the dangerous riuer of Owiga.

The

as Sowtham, and  
ic of Nouogrode in  
nd distance of  
66.

ne noone in a Lodia of Barke,  
to Soroka, & in the said barke  
before he parted,  
there about, wherewith were  
monasterie called St. Spichal  
ch there met vs.

ustia, at which place we taried  
satre, we set saile and departed  
towards some what satre, and  
the 22. day at 2. of the clocke  
Spichal. By reason of con-

locke in the evening, and came  
past 10. of the clocke, and then  
5. of the clocke in the morning,  
continued until the 25. day,  
as 35. miles.

fter noone, the wind at South  
ce of Newnox haven, and the  
west and by North. We came  
om Newnox haven 15. miles,  
of contrary winds,  
the wind next at East and

riuer, lech East & by South  
ing betwixt it and the maine,  
South, being 85. miles from  
hereupon we returned to the

clocke in the afternoone, the  
ing by an Island called An-  
came by the headland of us  
where we found many rocks:  
were perilsous, being fallen a  
which was contrary to his pro-

oyd the shoar, for that there is  
the headland a birch of 6. miles  
that lie fixe miles from the  
re lay two rocks two miles to  
biggest of them; but it pleased  
us.

of the clocke in the morning,  
e arrived at a monasterie na-  
Wee had here delivered vs  
d a seruant of theirs to com-

The

The people of all those places are wilde, and speake another kind of language, and are for the  
most part all tenants to the monasterie. The effect of the letter was, that they should be ready to  
help and assist vs in all dangerous places, and carie our boats and goods ouer land in places need-  
full. In this way they do, as hereafter shall appere.

Note that at our being at the monasterie, there was no Abbot for the place as then chosen; for  
13. dayes before our arrival there, the Abbot was sent for by the Emperour, and made Epitropo-  
kimon of the reuaine, and he took vs. The number of monkes belonging to the monasterie are at the  
least 200.

1 We departed from the monasterie of Soloffekay, as is aforesayd, to a satre stone house of  
Sorka, which is 5. miles from the monasterie, lying from it South and by West.  
2 We departed from the stone house at 3. of the clocke in the morning: our route was West  
by 40. South, and then passing betwixt diuers and sundry rocks, with many small Islands round  
about vs in the space of 20. miles, keeping most continually by the said course still, we then shaped  
our course west and west by North, but we alwaies kept the Southwell, and need not  
at all to turne South, until we came within two miles of the entrance of the riuer Owiga, where  
we were to beare in; West and by South.

3 From the riuer Owiga, to the Islands and rocks before mentioned, are 20. miles.  
4 We arrived about 4. of the clocke in the after noone within the riuer of Owiga, at a place na-  
med Soroka, at which place we forsooke our barke of Lodia, and continued there in making pro-  
uision for small boates to carie vs by the riuer until the 3. day of the same.

5 We departed from Soroka at two of the clocke in the afternoon, with 3. boates and 12. men  
to row, and set the foresaid boates by the riuer of Owiga, which we hired.  
6 We went this day 7. miles to a place called Ostroue, where we lay all night, but in the way 4.  
miles from Soroka at a place where the water falleth from the rocks, as if it came steepe doime  
from a mountaine, we were constrained to take out our goods and wares out of the said boates, and  
carie the to be caried a mile ouer land, & afterwards also had our boates in like sort caried of wad  
ouer land by force of men which there dwelled, being tenants to the monasterie aforesaid.

7 And when our boates were come to the place where our wares were laden, we launched our  
boates and laden our wares againe, and went to the place before named, where we continued and  
remained that night.

8 We departed from Ostroue in the morning before Sunne rising, rowing and sitting by the  
riuer 5. miles, where we came to a place, whereas we were againe constrained to take out our  
wares and to carie them and our boates three miles ouer land, so that with rowing, handling,  
and sitting we went this day 7. mile more to a place called Sloboday, where we lay all night.  
9 We departed from Sloboday in the morning at Sunne rising, and at 6. of the clocke in the  
afternoone we came to a villiage called Paranda, which is from Sloboday, 30. miles; where we  
remained all that night.

10 We departed from Paranda at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and all that day what with row-  
ing and handling our boates, we went but 11. miles, for we were unladed our wares, and by our  
boats ouerland, in one place a mile & an halfe, in an other place as it were the eight part of a mile,  
and so we came to a place called Voyets, where we taried all that night.

11 We departed from Voyets at 4. of the clocke in the morning, and so came to an Ozora lake  
called after the name of the riuer, and unto a place called Quequenich, we rowed all this day, and  
came thither by one of the clocke in the afternoone, which is 25. miles from Voyets, and there we  
remained all night to hire men and boates to carie vs forward on our journey.

12 We departed backe from vs the seruant which we had at the monasterie, being sent by the  
monkes to goe thus farre with vs. And after that he had hired the boates and taken the mens names  
that should conduct vs, and giuen them charge to deliuer vs with all things in satre, at a place be-  
ing a litle towne called Pouensa, then hee departed from vs without taking any reward for his  
paines, for he was charged and commanded by the monkes.  
13 We departed from Quequenich at Sunne rising, and all that day rowed vpon the lake a-  
mongst many Islands. The inhabitants doe there report that there are as many Islands in their  
lake, as there are daies in the yeere. In the euening we came to a villiage named Tellekina,  
which is 60. miles from Quequenich.

14 We departed from Tellekina in the morning at 5. of the clocke, and so entring into a riuer, we  
went that day 13. miles. In one place we caried our boates and goods ouer land 3. miles. At eu-  
ning we came to a place called Oreiche na maelay, where we lay all night.  
15 We departed thence at 5. of the clocke in the morning, & so rowing, came to a place where

August.

The riuer  
Owiga.

The fall of a  
riuer.

The lake very  
full of Islands.

river ended, being 20. miles distant from the place where we lay all night, at which place we first looke our boates and unladed our wares, and sent a man to the towne of Pouensa, which was seven mile off for hopes to carie vs and our wares to the said place. The boates came, and we laded our goods, and at 6. of the clocke in the afternoone wee arrived at the towne of Pouensa, with all things in safete.

**The famous lake of Onega.**

This towne of Pouensa standeth within one mile of the famous lake of Onega, which is 329. miles long, and in some places 70. miles ouer. But where it is narrowest, it is 25. miles ouer, being fed with many goodly riuers which fall into it. Vard aboue the stope within 6. miles you shall haue 49. and 45. fathoms of depth.

Here it is to be noted that from this place of Pouensa vnto the billage of Soroka, vnto such dangerous riuers which we came through, at no time of the yeere can any man carrie or transport any goods that come from Nouogrode, or the Narue, and such other places: for in the Summer it is impossible to carie vnto any wares by reason of the great falls of water that doe descend from the rocks. In the winter by reason of the great force and fall of waters which make so terrible raides that in those places it neuer freezeeth, but all such wares as come from Nouogrode to Pouensa, are transported by land to a place called Some in the winter which Some standeth on the sea side, as doth Soroka. The ready way from Pouensa by land to this place of Some, with the distance of miles I will shew hereafter.

12 We departed from Pouensa at 9. of the clocke in the morning, with 2. small boates which we hired to carie vs to a place called Toluo vpon the lake of Onega, being 50. miles from Pouensa, where we arrived the 13. day in the morning, where we bought a boate that caried vs and all our wares from thence to the citie of Nouogrode.

14 We departed from Toluo at 3. of the clocke in the afternoone, and at the evening arrived at a certaine Island named Salafalma, vpon the said lake 7. miles from Toluo, and by reason of contrary windes we there taried vntill the 16. day of this moneth.

16 We departed from Salafalma, at 8. of the clocke in the morning, and came to an Island the 17. day in the morning, named Vorronia, where we continued by reason of contrary windes, vntill the 21. day of the said moneth, and it is 60. miles from Salafalma.

**S. Clements his monastery**

21 We departed from Vorronia Island two howers before day, and arrived at S. Clements monastery, at 2. of the clocke in the after noone, being from Vorronia 48. miles.

22 We departed from S. Clements monastery at the break of the day, hauing a faire wind all a long the lake: we sailed without striking off shoare vntill 2. howers within night, and then entred into a riuer called Swire, at a monastery called Vosnessino Christo, 5. miles from the entrance of the riuer, where we taried all night. It is from S. Clements monastery 160. miles: the streame of that riuer went with vs.

23 We departed from Vosnessino Christo before sunne rising, and baled down the riuer sometime sailing, and sometime rowing, so that this day wee went 90. miles and lay at night at a place called Vassian.

**S. Bernards.**

24 We departed from Vassian at the break of the day, & came to a place called Selucaxe, where we lay all night, and is 10. miles from Vassian.

**The riuer of Volbukkie, the lake of Nabothair.**

25 We departed from Selucaxe at 4. of the clocke in the morning, and entred vpon the Lake of Ladiskaie, the wind being calme all that day sailing 3. howers, and then it was with vs, so that we sailed and rowed that day 10. miles, along vpon the said lake, and entred into the riuer of Volbukkie, which riuer hath his beginning 20. miles aboue Nouogrode, and runneth through the midst of the citie, and so falleth into this lake, which is farre longer then the lake of Onega but it is not so broad. This lake falleth into the sea that cometh from the Sound: where any vessell or boat, by using a good pilot, may go through the Sound into England.

As soone as we were entred into the riuer, we came to a monastery called S. Nicholas Medued, where we lay all that night.

**The monastery of Gosnopol.**

26 We departed from S. Nicholas Medued, at 5. of the clocke in the morning, rowing and hauing our boates all day, and came at night to another monastery called Gosnopolie, which is 30. miles from S. Nicholas Medued, where we lay all that night.

27 We departed from Gosnopolie at 6. of the clocke in the morning, and at evening came to a place called Moillaue, where we lay all night, being 46. miles from the monastery of Gosnopolie.

28 We departed from Moillaue, and the said day at night came to a place called Gruffina, 35. miles from Moillaue where we lodged.

29 We departed from Gruffina in the morning, & the same day at evening came to a place called Petroe Suetos, where we lay all night, being 40. miles from Gruffina.

night, at which place the  
of Pouensa, which was  
the horse came, and the  
to come of Pouensa, with  
lake of Ozera of Onega,  
where it is narrowest, it is  
to aboard the shore within 6

illage of Soroka betwixt that  
can or may any man carrie  
and such other places: for in  
of the great falls of water that  
the great force and fall of wa-  
e, but all such wares as come  
Some in the winter which  
Pouensa by land to this place

with 2. small boates which be  
ing 50. miles from Pouensa,  
are that caried by and all are  
and at the evening arrived at  
Toluco, and by reason of con-

ing, and came to an Island the  
reason of contrary windes, we  
and arrived at S. Clements  
48. miles.

the day, having a faire wind all  
within night, and then entered  
5. miles from the entrance of  
erie 160. miles: the stream

and baled down the river some  
miles and lay at night at a place  
place called Selucaxe, where

and entered upon the Lake of  
then it was much vs. so that we  
ed into the river of Volhus  
and runneth through the middle  
lake of Onega but it is not to  
where any vessel of boat, ha

erie called S. Nicholas Me-  
in the morning, rowing and  
called Gosnopolie, which is  
ing, and at evening came to a  
the monasterie of Gosnopolie.  
a place called Gruffina, 35.

the evening came to a place cal-  
liffina.

30 We departed from Petroe Suetoe in the morning, & at two of the clocke in the afternoon we  
arrived at the cite of Nouogrod, being twencie miles from Petroe Suetoe. Here we found <sup>The cite of</sup> ~~William~~ <sup>Nouogrod.</sup>  
Rouille Agre to the company, who was there stayed with all his company, and was not li-  
censed to depart thence for the Mosco, by reason that the plague was in the cite of Nouogrod.  
Unto him we delivered all the wares that we brought from Colmogro, for by the way we sold not  
a penny worth, the people of the countrey every where be so miserable.

The right way to bring and transport wares from Nouogrod to Rose Island into S. Nicho-  
las bay, where our shippes peereley lade, with the distance of miles from place to place, is as fol-  
loweth:

- 20 Miles from Nouogrod to Petroe Suetoe.
- 40 Miles from thence to Gruffina.
- 35 Miles from thence to Mo illaue.
- 46 Miles from thence to the monasterie Gosnopolie.
- 15 Miles from thence to Lade ga towne.
- 15 Miles from thence to Selunax our the lake of Lade ga, albeit there be many villages all  
along the lake.
- 180 Miles from Lade ga towne up the river of Swire, unto the monasterie of Vosnessino  
Christo, albeit there are many villages upon the river: for within every five of five miles  
you shall have villages of small townes.
- 160 Miles from Vosnessino Christo to S. Clements monasterie, albeit there be many villa-  
ges all along the lake of Onega.
- 48 Miles from thence to Voronia.
- 67 Miles from thence to Toluco towne: & there are divers villages all along the lake where  
the carpers may lie, and have meat for man and horse.
- 50 Miles from thence to Pouensa, where Onega lake endeth.

The way from Pouensa to Some towne is this:

- 30 Miles from Pouensa to Mastellina.
- 10 Miles from thence to Tellekina.
- 30 Miles from thence to Toluich.
- 35 Miles from thence to Carraich.
- 20 Miles from thence to Varnich.
- 10 Miles from thence to Ostrouo.
- 15 Miles from thence to Lapina.
- 20 Miles from thence to Some it selfe.

Note that from the cite of Nouogrod unto the towne of Some is 936 miles, & from the towne  
of Some unto the monasterie of S. Nicholas of Rose Island, over and against where our shippes do  
lie is full as many miles as is Soroka village from S. Nicholas, as the Russles do account it, as  
also we do judge it, namely 325 miles. So that from Nouogrod to S. Nicholas road, is by our  
account 1261 miles of verity.

Furthermore it is to be noted that all such wares as shall be bought at Nouogrod, and sent to  
Some towne, must be sent by sled way in the winter: for if any ware should be sent from Nouo-  
god by water in the spring of the peere, after the pee is gone, then must the sayd wares remaine at  
Pouensa towne all that summer, by reason that in the summer there is no way to go from Pouensa  
unto Some towne.

At Pouensa there are many warehouses to be hyed, so that if there were as much goods as ten  
ships could carie away, you might have warehouses to put it in: but if there should remaine much  
ware all the summer, to be caried in the winter to Some towne, then horses are not easily to be got-  
ten at that place to carie it thither: so that your wares once bought at Nouogrod, you must have  
carpers there to carie it to the towne of Some by sledges, whereof you may there have 2000 if you  
will, by the report of the Russles.

For from Nouogrod peereley there go many sledges in the winter to fetch salt from Some, with  
carpers and empty sledges there to buy it, and to bring it to Nouogrod to sell it in the market of  
otherwile.

From Nouogrod unto Some towne you may have a pood of wares caried for eight pence of  
nine pence: but in any wise your wares must be sent from Nouogrod by the first of January, so  
that the wares may be at Some by Candlemas, or soon after: for if your wares should carie by  
the

The cite of  
Nouogrod.

Cramell by  
sles.

2000 sleds be-  
longing to one  
towne.

In good cannot  
for reasonable  
reasons.

the way until the 15 of February when the sunne is of some power, then is it dangerous: for the heat of the sunne in the day causeth the deepe lakes of Ladega, and specially of Onega to cleare, and if there should come then a sudden storme, as often times in that time of the yere doth, then doe these lakes open and breake, whereby many men are lost, and huch men and horse drowned, although these riuers doe remaine frozen a long time after.

In the towne of Some also there are many warehouses, whereby the can not be destitute by the repository of our wares, as also as many barks as you will to transport your wares from thence to S. Nicholas road, and that for three pence a good carpage: so that from the citie of Nouogrod unto S. Nicholas road you may haue wares carped for two altines. The good commodity is as altines the tuncne.

Monograph  
written 180  
miles of the  
Arctic.

It should alwaies, that you buy your wares there your selfe, and send it thence: for there is no hope that the natives will bring their wares from Nouogrod to Some, in hope to sell unto us, considering the great trade that they haue at the Narue, which is within 180 miles off them.

Written by Thomas Sowtham  
a seruant to the company.

### An Act for the corporation of Merchants aduenturers for the discovering of new trades, made in the eight yere of Queene

Elizabeth. Anno 1566.



Veras diuers very good subiects of this realme of England in the latter end of the reigne of the late right high and mighty prince our soueraigne Lord king Edward the first, at the gracious in encouragement, & right good liking of the said king, & by his specialties liberal example, did at their adventure, and to their exceeding great charges, for the glory of God, the honor and increase of the revenues of the crowne, and the common wellicke of the whole realme of England, set forth three shippes for the discovery by sea, of isles, lands, territories, dominions, and seignories unknowne, and by the subiects of the said late king, not commonly by seas frequented: and after that almighty God had called to his mercy the said king, who dyed before the finishing, and sealing of his most ample and gracious letters of priuileges promised to the said subiects, as well in consideration of the said enterprise, as for diuers other respects, it pleased our late soueraigne Queene Mary, at the humble suites of the same subiects, to grant by her letters patentes vnder the great seale of England, bearing date at Westminster the 26 day of February, in the second yere of her raigne, for the considerations mentioned in the said letters patentes, to the said subiects being specially named in the said letters patentes, and to their successors, that they by the name of Merchants aduenturers of England, for the discovery of lands, territories, isles, dominions, and seignories unknowne, and not before they late adventure or enterprise, by seas or nauigations commonly frequented, should be from thenceforth one body, and perpetuall fellowshippe and communitie of themselves, both in deed and in name, and that the same fellowshippe and communitie from thenceforth should and might haue one or two gouernours, foure consuls, and foure and twentie assistants, of the said fellowshippe and communitie of Merchants aduenturers, and that they by the name of the Gouernour, Consuls, Assistants, Fellowshippe, and Communitie of Merchants aduenturers, for the discovery of lands, territories, isles, dominions, and seignories unknowne, by the seas and nauigations, and not before their sayd late adventure or enterprise, by seas frequented, should or might be able in the law to implead and to be impleaded, to answer and to be answered, to defend and to be defended, before whatsoeuer iudge or iustice temporall or spirituall, or other persons whatsoever, in whatsoeuer court or courts, and in all actions, reall, personall, and mixt, and in euery of them, and in all plaints of Nouel deseison, and also in all plaines, suites, quarrels, affayres, businesse, and demands whatsoever they be, touching and concerning the said fellowshippe and communitie, and the affayres and businesse of the same, onely in as ample maner and forme, as any other corporation of this realme might doe, giuing also, and granting unto them by the sayd letters patentes, diuers authorities, powers, iurisdictiones, preheminences, franchises, liberties, and priuileges, as by the same letters patentes more at large will appeare. And among other things mentioned in the said letters patentes, whereas one of the three shippes, by the said fellowshippe before that time set forth for the voyage of discovery aforesayd, named the Edward Bonauenture, had arrived within the Emperre and dominion of the high and mighty prince Lord John Vasiluich, Emperour of all Russia, Vologda, Marskye, great Duke of Musky, &c. who received the

captaine

ere, then is it dangerous: for the  
nd specially of Omega to cleare,  
time of the peere doth, then  
men and hoyle drowned, although  
of the can not be detaine for the  
spoyr your wares from thence to  
har from the cite of Nouogrod  
es. The good comutch wra 23  
nd send it thence: for there is no  
o Some, in hope to sell vnto vs,  
with 180 miles off them,

Thomas Sowtham  
to the company,

aduenturers for the  
ere of Queene

ne of England in the latter end of  
nce our soueraigne King King  
the good liking of the said king,  
adventure, and to their exceeding  
nd increase of the reuenues of the  
aine of England, for sooth three  
ions, and seigniories vnknowen,  
requented: and after that almighty  
nd sealing, and sealing of his most  
dictors, as well in consideration of  
soueraigne Queene Mary, at the  
nder the great scale of England,  
second peere of her raigne, for the  
subjects being specially named in  
name of Merchants aduenturers  
ions, and seigniories vnknowen,  
uigations commonly frequented,  
e and communitie of themselves,  
mittialtie from thenceforth should  
and twente assistants, of the said  
hat they by the name of the Count  
Merchants aduenturers, for the  
vnknowen, by the seas and nauy  
seas frequented, should o might  
to be answered, to defend and  
ual, or other persons whatsoever,  
ll, and mist, and in euery of them,  
tes, quarrels, assayes, tumults,  
said fellowship and communitie  
manner and forme, as any other  
vnto them by the sayd letters pa  
franchises, liberties, and priu  
And among other things mentio  
by the said fellowship before  
the Edward Bonauenture, had  
the prince Lord John Vasiluich,  
of Musky, &c. who receiued the  
captaine

company, and merchanes of the sayd shippe very graciously, granting vnto them free tie to traffike  
with his subjects in all kinde of merchandise, with diuers other gracious priuileges and libertie:  
therefore the said late Queene by the same letters patentes, for her, her heyres & successours, did grante  
that all the maine landes, illes, portes, hauens, creekes and riuers of the said mightie Emperour of all  
Russia, and great citie of Mosco, &c. and all and singular other landes, dominions, territories, illes,  
portes, hauens, creekes, riuers, armes of the seas, of all and euery other Emperour, king, prince, ru  
ler, or gouernour whatsoever he or they be, before the said late aduencure or enterpryse not knowen,  
or by the aforesaid merchantes and subjects of the said king and queene, by the seas not commonly  
frequented, nor any part or parcell thereof, and lying Northwards, Northeastwards, or Northwest  
wards, as in the said letters patentes is mentioened, should not be visited, frequented nor haunterd by  
any the subjects of the said late Queene, other then of the said company and fellowship, and they  
successours, without expresse licence, agreement, and consente of the Gouernour, Consuls, and Mil  
litanes of the said fellowship, and communitie, or the more part of them, in maner and forme, as is  
expresse in the said letters patentes, vpon paine of forfeiture and losse of well of the ship and shippes,  
with the appurtenances, as also of the goods, merchandises, and thinges whatsoeuer they be of those  
the subjects of the said late Queene not being of the said fellowship and communitie, which shoul  
accept or presume to saile to any of those places, which then were, or after should happen to be  
found and traffiked vnto, the one halfe of the same forfeiture to be to the vse of the said late queene,  
her heyres and successours, and the other halfe to be to the vse of the said fellowship and communitie,  
as by the same letters patentes more plainly will appeare.

Since the making of which letters patentes, the said fellowship haue, to the present exceeding great  
costes, losses and expences, not onely by theyr trading into the said dominions of the said mightie  
prince of Russia, &c. found out conuenient way to saile into the said dominions: but also passing thro  
ugh the same, and ouer the Caspian sea, haue discovered very commodious trades into Armenia,  
Media, Hyrcania, Persia, and other dominions in Asia maior, hoping by Gods grace to discover  
also the comerty of Cathaia, and other regions very conuenient to be traded into by merchantes of  
this realme, for the great benefite and commodities of the same.

And so much as diuers subjects of this realme, vnderstanding the premises, and perceiving  
that now after the charge and traueil aforesaid, diuers wares and merchandises are brought by the  
said fellowship into this realme, out of the dominions already discovered, which be within this  
realme of good estimation, minding for their peculiar gaine, verely to decay the trade of the said  
fellowship, haue contrary to the tenor of the same letters patentes in great disorder traded into the  
dominions of the sayd mightie prince of Russia, &c. to the great detrimment of this common wealthe:  
And for that the name by which the said fellowship is incorporated by the letters patentes afores  
said, is long, and consisteth of very many wordes: Therefore be it enacted by the queenes most excel  
lent Maiestie, the lords spirituall and temporall, and the commons in this present parlement assem  
bled, and by authority of the same, that the said fellowship, company, society and corporation made or  
creased by the said letters patentes, shall at all time & times from henceforth be incorporated, named  
and called onely by the name of the fellowship of English merchants, for discovery of new trades,  
and by the same name for ever, shall and may continue a perpetuall body incorporate in deed and  
name, and onely by the same name from henceforth, shall implead, and be impleaded, answer and  
be answered, defend and be defended, sue and be sued, in whatsoever courts and places, and shall  
and may by the same name be unable to purchase, haue, holde, possesse, receiue, and enjoy whatsoe  
uer manors, lands, tenements, rents, reuerfions, seruices, and hereditaments not exceeding a hon  
dred marks peece, not being holden of the Queenes maiestie, her heyres, or successours by knights  
seruit in Capite, and all goods, merchandises, charters, and other thinges whatsoever, and shall  
and may by the same name make and do all thinges as any other corporation may do, and also shall  
haue and enjoy all and singular the libertie, priuileges, iurisdictions, franchises, prebendances,  
powers, authorities, and thinges, and may doe and execute all other matters and thinges in the sayd  
letters patentes mentioened, or in any wise contained. And that no part nor parcell of the sayne  
landes, illes, portes, hauens, roades, creekes, riuers, armes of the seas of any Emperour, king,  
prince, ruler or gouernour whatsoever he or they be, before the said first enterpryse made by the me  
ritouches of the sayd corporation, not knowen by the merchantes and subjects of this realme, or by  
them not commonly by seas frequented, and lying from the cite of London Northwards, Northwest  
wards or Northeastwards, nor any part or parcell of the maine landes, dominions, illes, portes,  
roades, hauens, creekes, armes of the seas, that nota be subiect to the said high and mightie prince  
Lord John Vasiluich, his heyres or successours, or to the Emperour, chiefe gouernour or ruler of  
the said countrey of Russia for the time being, his heyres or successours, nor the countreies of Armenia  
maior

This is ment  
by Albertum  
and the  
other.

English mer  
chantes for dis  
covery of new  
trades.

maior or minor, Media, Hyrcania, Perha, or the Caspian sea, nor any part of them shall be laden or trafficked unto, visited, frequented, or haunted by any person, being or that shall be a subject or denizen of this realme, by themselves, theyr factors or factors, or any other to the use or commodity, by any wayes or meanes, directly or indirectly, other then by the order, agreement, consente, or ratification of the gouernour, consuls, and assistants of the said fellowship and commonaltie, or the mayor part of them, and their successors for the time being: upon paine that every person and persons offending in this behalf, shall forfeit and loose, Ipso facto, every such shyppe and shippes, with the appurtenances, and all such goodes, merchandizes, and thinges whatsoeuer, as by any such person or persons shall be by any wayes or meanes, directly or indirectly, provided, carped, conduced, brought, or exchanged, in, at, to, through or from any of the places prohibited, as is aforesaid, contrary to the true intent of this statute: the one moiety of all which forfeitures to be to our said soueraigne lady the Queenees Spaietie, her heyses and successors, and the other moiety thereof to the said fellowship of English merchants for discouery of new trades, and theyr successors, to be seized and taken whereloer they may be found, by any person or persons, to the use of our said soueraigne lady, her heyses and successors, and of the said fellowship of English merchants for discouery of new trades, and of theyr successors, or the same or the value thereof to be demanded or sued for by the Queenees highnesse, her heyses and successors, or by the said fellowship of English merchants for discouery of new trades, or their successors, or their attornies or attornies, or by any person or persons being of the same fellowship of English merchants for discouery of new trades, or theyr successors in any court of record, or in any other court or courts within this realme, or els were, by action of debt, action of detinue, bill, plaint, information, or otherwise: in which case no essoine, protection, wager of law, nor intimaunt shall be allowed, for, or on the behalfe of the partie or parties defendant.

Provided alwayes, that whereas diuers subjects of this realme being not of the fellowship aforesaid, haue heretofore made aduentures to and from some of the places prohibited by the said letters patentes, that the said subjects, theyr heyses, executors, administrators and assignes, or any of them shall not be impeached, impleaded, troubled, sued, nor molested for the same in their goods or persons in any manner of wise, either by our said soueraigne lady, her heyses or successors, or the said fellowship, or theyr successors.

Provided also, that it shall be lawfull for any subject of this realme, hauing presently any shyping, goods, wares, or ready money, remaining at or in any place, of or within the dominion of the said mighty prince of Russia, or in any other of the places prohibited to be visited or trafficked unto by this statute or the said letters patentes, to fetch, bring, and convey the same, or cause the same to be brought or conveyed from thence by sea or otherwise, before the feast of S. John Baptist, which shall be in the yeere of our Lord God 1568, any thing contained in this statute, or in the said letters patentes to the contrary notwithstanding.

Provided also, that it shall be lawfull for any of the subjects of this realme, to saile to the port, towne, city, or castle of Wardhouse, or to any of the coastes, townes, hauens, creekes, rivers, islands, and land of Norway for trade of fishing, or any other trade there used by the subjects of this realme, any thing in this statute to the contrary notwithstanding.

And for the better maintenance of the nauie and mariners of this realme, be it provided and enacted, that it shall not be lawfull to the said fellowship and company, nor to any of them to carrie and transport, or cause to be carped and transported any commodity of this realme to the said new trade, but onely in English shippes, and to be sailed for the most part with English mariners, nor also to bring into this realme nor into Flaunders from their said new trade, any merchandizes, or the commodities but in English shippes, and sailed for the most part by the English mariners, on paine to forfeit for every such offence two hundred poundes, wherof the one moiety shall be to the Queenees maiestie, her heyses and successors, the other moiety to the head officers of any port towne, hauing any haven, or harborough decayed, by what name soeuer they be incorporate, to the reparation of such harborough, that will sue for the same in any court of record, by action, bill, plaint or information, wherein no essoine, protection, or wager of law for the defendant shall be admitted or allowed.

Provided also, and be it enacted, that no manner of person or persons shall from henceforth carrie or transport, or cause to be carped or transported out of this realme of England, any manner of clothes or hartles into any of the partes where the sayde fellowship and society is privileged to trade by this act, before the same clothes and hartles shall be all dyessed, and for the most part dyed within this realme, upon payne of forfeiture for every such cloth and hartle, otherwise carped and transported, five poundes: the one halfe thereof to the Queenees Spaietie, her heyses and successors,

any part of them shall be sayled  
ing of that shall be a subiect of de  
der to the use of commonwealthe  
ber, agreement, consent, of carrie  
type and communitie, of the more  
at every person and persons of his  
shippe and shippes, with the ap  
foer, as by any such person or  
uide, carped, conducted, brought  
bied, as is aforesaid, contrary in  
es to be to our said soueraigne la  
moity thereof to the said fellow  
successors, to be seized and taken  
use of our said soueraigne lady,  
merchandise for discovery of new  
to be demanded or sued for by the  
lowshippe of English merchants  
of attainies, or by any person of  
discovery of new trades, or they  
within this realme, or els were by  
peruile : in which sute no effe  
on the behalfe of the partie or par

time being not of the fellowshipp  
of the places prohibited by the sayd  
ministratoys and assignes, or any  
advised for the same in their goods  
by, her heires or successors, or the

realme, hauing presently any shi  
e, of or within the dominion of the  
ed to be visited or trafficked vnto by  
the same, or cause the same to be  
feate of S. John Baptist, which  
in this statute, or in the said letters

of this realme, to saile to the port,  
colonies, hauens, creekes, riuers,  
e there used by the subiects of this

this realme, be it provided and in  
pany, nor to any of them to carrie  
modity of this realme to the p  
are with English mariners, nor ad  
to trade, any merchandizes, or  
part by the English mariners, or  
nerof the one moity shall be to the  
e head officers of any port towne,  
they be incorporate, to the repair  
recor'd, by action, bill, plaint or in  
defendant shall be admitted of

persons shall from henceforth car  
realme of England, and in times  
lowshippe and society is p  
all be all willed, and for the mo  
such riotous and karkie, otherwise  
Queenees Maiestie, her heires and  
successors,

successors, the other halfe to the Maister and Wardens of the clothworkers in the city of London  
for the time being, by what name soeuer they be incorporate, that will sue for the same.

Provided also, that whensoever the sayd society or company shall willingly withdraw, and dis  
continue wholly by the space of three yeeres in time of peace, the discharging of their merchandizes  
at the road of S. Nicholas bay in Russia, and doe not discharge they sayd merchandizes at some o  
ther port or roade lying on that North coast of Russia, or other territory, nor be subiect to the sayd  
mighty prince of Russia, &c. hether to by the subiects of this realme nor commonly frequented, that  
then during the time of any such discontinuance and withdrawing, as is aforesaid, it shall be lawfull  
to all the subiects of this realme to trade to the Narue onely in English bottoms, any thing in this  
Act to the contrary notwithstanding.

Provided also, that every of the Queenees Maiesties subiectes inhabiting within the citie of  
Dorke, the towncs of Newcassel vpon Tyne, Hull, and of Boston, hauing continually traded the  
course of merchandize by the space of ten yeeres, and which before the 25 of December, that shall be  
in Ann. Dom: 1567, shall contribute, to yne, and put in stocke, to, with, and amongst the said compa  
ny, such summe and summes of money, as any of the said company, which hath chaungely continued  
and contributed to the said new trade, from the yeere 1552, hath done, & before the said 25 of De  
cember 1567 shall do for the furniture of one ordinary, full and intyre portion, or thare, and do in all  
things behane himselfe as others of the said society be bound to doe, and hereafter shall be bound to  
do by the priuileges, ordinaunces & statutes of the sayd company, shall from the same 25 day of De  
cember 1567, be, and be accounted free, and as one of the sayd society and company, and subiect  
to the priuileges, ordinaunces and statutes of the said company, reasonably made and to be made,  
any thing in this present Act to the contrary notwithstanding.

A very briefe remembrance of a voyage made by M. Anthony  
Ienkinson, from London to Moscouia, sent from the Queenees  
Maiestie to the Emperour, in the yeere 1566.

**T**he fourth day of May in the yeere aforesaid, I embarked my selfe at Grauesend in the  
good ship called the Harry of London, and hauing had a prosperous voyage arrived at  
the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia the tenth day of July following, and immediately I  
sent in post to the Emperour to aduertise of my coming, and trauelling then thowto the  
country, I with my company came to the Mosco where the Emperour kept his court, the 23 of Au  
gust, and forthwith gaue the Secreatarie to vnderstand of my arriual, who aduertised the Empe  
rours Maiey of it, and the first day of September, being a solemne feast among the Russes, I came  
before the Emperours Maiey, sitting in his seat of honour, and hauing kissed his hand, & done the  
Queenees Maiesties commendations, & deliuered her Graces letters & present, he bad me to dinner,  
which I accepted, and had much honoz done vnto me both then & all the time of my abode in Russia.

The Priuileges granted by the Emperour of Russia to the  
English merchants of that company: obtained the 22 of Sep  
tember Ann. 1567, by M. Anthony Ienkinson.

**I**n the onely strenghtener of all things, and God without beginning, which was  
before the world, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy ghost, our onely God in  
Trinitie, and maker of all things, whom we worship in all things, and in all pla  
ces, the doer and fulfiller of all things, which is the perfect knowledge giuer of  
the true God, our Lord Iesus Christ, with the comforter the Holy Spirit, & thou  
which art the strenghtener of our faith, keepe vs together, and giue vs healty to  
preserve our kingdome, thou giuer of all good fruites, and helper of all Christian beleeuers.

We great loy by the grace of God, and great duke Iohn Vasiluwich, of all Russia, Volodimir,  
Mosco, Nouogrod, Cassan, Altracan, Plasco, Smollensko, Twire, Vgorie, Vatecaid, Bulgar,  
Sybir and others, Emperour, and great duke of Nouogrod of the lower land, of Chirnygo, Kaslan,  
Pollorskie, Rostoue, Yereslaue, Bellozer, Vdar, Obdar, Condine, and lord of many other lands,  
and of all the North parts, commander and lord of Liffe land,

Whereas our sister Queene Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and  
Ireland, hath writen to vs her letters, that we would grant her merchants, William Gerrard,  
William Chester, Rowland Heyward, Lawrence Hulle, Iohn Parth, Anthony Ienkinson,  
William



William Rowlie, and their company of England, to come in shippes into this kingdome, and those merchants, William Garrard and his company, haue required of vs that we would grant and licence them to come into our countrey of Dwina, with all kinde of wares at will, to our citie of Mosco, and to all our castles in our kingdome, we for our sisters sake Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France and Ireland, haue licensed her merchants, William Garrard and his company to passe in shippes to our kingdome of Colmogro, and to the land of Dwina, and in all other our inheritances in the North parts, with all kinde of wares to our citie of Mosco, and in all castles and townes in our kingdome. And sir William Garrard and his company desired of vs, that we would grant them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, and into our inheritance of Nouogrod the great, and to our inheritance of Liffe land to Narue and Dorpe, and to other our castles and townes of Liffe land, with all kinde of wares, and the trade to be without custome, which request we haue granted to sir William Garrard and his company, and haue given them licence to passe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, and Nouogrod the great, and into our inheritance of Liffe land, Narue and Dorpe, and other places of our inheritance in Liffe land with all kinde of wares, to buy, barter and sell at will, without custome: and what wares soeuer they bring out of England, or out of any other countrey, needfull or necessary, that they shall bring all those wares needfull or necessary to our treasury, & those wares there to be opened, and then to take out of the same, such wares as shall be needfull for our treasury, and the rest being deliuered a gain, to sell and barter at their pleasure, and to sell none of the fine wares before they be seene by our chancelers, except toying clothes, and other wares not meete for our treasury: and when our chanceler will send our treasure out of our treasury with them, they shall take it with them, and so sell and barter it for wares merite for our treasury, and bring it to our treasury, and they to take no other mens wares to barter or sell with them, nor yet our people to buy or sell for them their wares: and if those English merchants do desire to passe out of our kingdome of Astracan to Boghar, Shamakie, Chaday, or into any other countreyes, or els to goe into their owne countrey, then they to take their treasure with them, and to barter and sell it for wares needfull for our treasury, and to bring it and deliuer it to our chanceler, and when they come backe againe to our inheritance of Cassan and Astracan, or to any other of our castles and townes, that then our capitaine of Cassan and Astracan, and all other our people of charge shall not holde them, but with speed let them passe without taking custome of them, or their wares, and without opening or looking upon them in any wise: and when they haue not our treasure with them, that then like wise no custome shall be taken of them nor their wares to be seene of any man.

And likewise we haue granted them to buy and sell in all our kingdomes and castles, with all kinde of wares: and we haue also licensed them, that when those English merchants do desire to buy and sell with our merchants wholly together, that they shall haue libertie to do so wholly together: and they that do desire to sell their owne wares by retails in their owne house, that then they sell it in their owne house by retails to our people, & other strangers, as they can agree and weighes and arthenids to be kept in their house with our seale, and they themselves to barter and sell their owne wares: and no Russe merchant in Mosco, or any other place in our kingdome, not to sell for them any wares, nor to buy or barter any wares for them, nor couler any strangers goods. And whereas those merchants of England, sir William Garrard and his company, do desire to sell their wares at Colmogro, Dwina, Vologda, Yerasslaue, Costrum, and in Nouogrod the lower, Cassan, Astracan, great Nouogrod, Plasko, Narue, Dorpe, and in other our townes and castles, they shall haue their will to sell it: and of their wares of England and Russe land no custome shall be taken, neither they nor their wares shall be stayed in any place: and when they depart out of Mosco, to aduertise our chancelor thereof, and not to giue any note or inventory of any kinde of their wares they carry away: and when the English merchants, sir William Garrard and his company, doe come vpon the sea, and by misfortune haue their shippes cast away vpon those coastes of the North parts, then we will their goodes to be sought out with trust, and to be deliuered to sir William Garrard and his company, wherby as then shall be found in our countrey: and if that sir William Garrardes company be not in the Mosco nor in our countrey, then we will and command that those goodes of theirs shall be layd by in a place of safegard until such time as the sayd sir William Garrard or his company come to den and the same: and then at their coming we will that it shall be deliuered. And whereas heretofore we haue given sir William Garrard and his company in this our kingdome of Mosco, the new castle by the church of S. Maxim, behinde the market, they shall there still holde their house as heretofore we haue given them paying no custome for the same: and we also doe licence them to keepe one Russe poxer or two, or els of their owne countrey, and those poxers shall dwell with them, and not sell for them

shippes into this kingdome, and those  
of us that we would grant and li  
of wares at will, to our cite of Mos  
ake Elisabeth, by the grace of God,  
rurchances, William Garret and  
, and to the land of Dwina, and in  
wares to our cite of Mosco, and in  
ruffes and his company desired of us,  
Cassan and Astracan, and into our  
Liffe land to Naruc and Dorpe, and  
wares, and the trade to be without  
d and his company, and haue giuen  
, and Nouogrod the great, and in  
aces of our inheritance in Liffe land  
at custome: and what wares sorture  
all of necessary, that they shall bring  
wares there to be opened, and then in  
sury, and the rest being deliuered a  
fine wares before they be seene by  
ere for our treasure: and when our  
, they shall take it with them, and  
it to our treasure, and they to take  
people to buy or sell for them, they  
our kingdome of Astracan to Bog  
gor into their owne countrey, they  
wares necessarie for our treasure,  
ues backe againe to our inheritance  
es, that then our captaine of Cas  
olde them, but with speed let them  
out openeing of looking upon them  
at them like wile no custome shall be

kingdomes and castles, withall  
English merchants doe desire to  
haue libertie so to do wholly toge  
n their owne house, that then they  
ers, as they can agree and weigh  
themselues to barter and sell they  
ce in our kingdome, nor to sell for  
cotuler any strangers goods. And  
his company, do desire to sell their  
n, and in Nouogrod the lower,  
d in other our townes and castles,  
d and Russe land no custome shall  
and when they depart out of Mos  
mentory of any kinde of they  
William Garret and his compa  
es cast away upon those coastes of  
th trust, and to be deliuered to us  
nd in our countrey: and if that be  
countrey, then we will and con  
regard breill such time as the say  
: and then at our comming wee  
aue giuen fir William Garret  
Me by the church of S. Maxin,  
erret ofore wee haue giuen them  
em to keepe one Russe portor of  
well with them, and not sell for  
them

them, nor barter, nor buy for them: And also I haue graunted them to buy a house at Vologda, and at Colmogro, in any other place, where they can choole for themselves any good harbour, and there they to set up those houses in those places at their owne charges: and in Vologda of the other houses to keepe two or three porters of their owne, or els two or three Russes, and the it wares to be layed by in those houses, and to sel their owne wares at will: and the porters without them to sell none of their wares, neither yet to buy any for them, And our officers of Colmogro, and Dwina, and of other our castles and townes shall not looke ouer their wares, nor take any custome thereof: neither shall those English Marchants fir William Garret, and his company be laded by any of them. And when the English Marchants shall sende from our kingdome their owne people into their owne Countrey by lande ouer other kingdomes whatsoeuer they be, they may without wares send their owne people at their pleasure. And when any matter of lawe doeth fall out in their trade of Marchandise, then they shall be iudged by our Chancellours, and lawe shall be done with equitie betwixt our people and them, And when they cannot be iudged by law, they then shall be tried by lots, and whose lot is first taken out, he shall haue the right: And if it happen any of those Marchants to haue any matter of lawe in any other part of our Dominions for cause of Marchants, then our Captaines, Iudges and chiefe officers, shall heare the matter, and administer Justice with equitie and trueeth, and where lawe can take no place to be tried by lots, and his lot that is first taken out to haue the right, and for their matters of lawe no custome to be payde.

Furthermoze, wee for our sisters sake Elizabeth haue graunted, that none beside fir William Garret and his Companie, out of what kingdome soeuer it be, England or other, shall not come in trade of Marchandise nor otherwise to Colmogro, nor to the Riuer Ob nor within Wardhouse, nor to Petzora, nor Cola, nor Mezen, nor to the Abbey Petchingam, nor to the 3 lande of Sallawye, nor to any mouth of the riuer of Dwina, nor to any part of the North Countrey of our cast: and if any Marchant, out of what Countrey soeuer it be, doe come with shippe or shippes, bulles, or any other kinde of vessell to any of our harbors, within all our North parts, wee will, that then the people, and goods, shippe or shippes, halbe confiscate, and forfeited to vs the Emperour and great Duke.

Giuen in our kingdome and house of Mosco, the yeere from the beginning of the world 7000, the xxviii of Brezene, in the moneth of September, and in the 34. yeere of our raigne, and in our conquest of Cassan 16, and in our conquest of Astracan 15.

Perused and allowed by vs:

- Anthonic Jenkinson.
- William Rowlyc.
- Thomas Hawtryc.
- Thomas Sowtham.
- Rafe Rutter, translatour hereof out of the Russe tongue.

The Ambassage of the right worshipfull M. Thomas

Randolfe Esquire, to the Emperour of Russia, in the yeere

1568. Briefly written by himselfe.



The 22. day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1568, I went aboarde the Harry, lying in the roade at Harwich with my companie, being to the number of 40. persons of thers about: of which the one halfe were Gentlemen, desirous to see the world.

Within one dayes sayling, we were out of the sight of all lande, and following our course directly North, till wee came to the North Cape, wee sailed for the space of 12. dayes with a prosperous winde, without tempest or outrage of sea: Having compassed the North Cape, we directed our course flatter South-east, hauing vpon our right hande Norway, Wardhouse, Laplande, all out of sight till wee came to Cape Gallant: And so sayling betweene two Bayes, the two and thirtieth day after our departure from Harwich, wee cast ancre at S. Nicholas roade. In all the time of our voyage, more then the great number of Whales ingendering together, which wee might plainly beholde, and the

In this voyage were Thomas Banter, and Gourey Ducket, for their voyage into Persia.

Sperma Ceta, which we might see swimming vpon the sea, there was no great thing to be wondered at. Sometimes we had calmes, wherein our Spariners fished, and tooke good scope of diuers sorts. At S. Nicholas wee landed the 23. of July, where there standeth an abbey of Spunkes (to the number of 20.) built all of wood: the apparel of the Spunkes is superstitious, in blacke hoodes as ours haue bene. Their Church is faire, but full of painted images, tapers, and candles. Their owne houses are lowe, and small roomes. They lie apart, they eat together, and are much giuen to drunke meate, vnlearned, wiche they can, preach they doe neuer, ceremonious in their Church, and long in their prayers.

The abbey of  
S. Nicholas  
of 20. Spunkes.

At my first arrivall I was presented from their Prince with two great rye loaves, fish both salt and fresh of diuers sorts, both sea fish and fresh water, one sheepe alive, blacke with a white face, so be the more grateful vnto me, and so wiche many tolemne words inviting me to see their house, they tooke their leaue.

The English  
house at S.  
Nicholas.

To vne of habitation at S. Nicholas there is none more then about 4. houses neere the abbey, and another built by the English Companie for their owne vse.

This part of the Countrey is most part wood, sauing here and there pasture & arable ground, many riuers and diuers Islands uninhabited, as the most part of the Countrey is, for the coldest in winter.

The riuer of  
Dwina.

S. Nicholas standeth Northeast: the eleuation of the pole 64. degrees. The riuer that runneth thier into the sea is called Dwina, very large but shallow. This riuer taketh his beginning about 700. miles within the countrey, and vpon this riuer standeth Colmogro, & many prettie villages, well situated for pasture, arable land, wood, and water. The riuer pleasant betwene high hills of either side inwardly inhabited, and in a maner a wilbernes of high firre trees and other wood,

Colmogro.

At Colmogro being 100. verses, which we accompt for 3. quarters of a mile euery verse, we taried 3. weekes, not being suffered to depart befoze the Emperour had woze of our coming: who sent to mee vs a Gentleman of his house to conuey vs, and to see vs furnished of victuals, and all things needefull vpon his owne charge.

The allowance of meate and drinke was for euery day 2. rubbles, besides the charge of boares by water, and 4. scope post horses by lande, with about 100. cartes, to carrie my wines, and other cartiage.

Colmogro is a great towne builded all of wood, not walled, but scattered house to house. The people are rude in maners, & in apparell homely, sauing vpon their festiual, and marriage dayes.

The people of this towne finding comoditie by the English mens traffique with them are much at their commandment, giuen much to drunkenness and all other kinde of abominable vices.

An English  
house with  
lande at Col-  
mogro.

In this towne the Englishmen haue laudes of their owne giuen them by the Emperour, and faire houses with offices for their commoditie very many.

Of other townes until I come to Vologda, I write not, because they are much like to this, and the inhabitants not differing from them.

I was 5. whole weekes vpon the riuer of Dwina till I came to Vologda, being draynen with men against the streame, for other passage there is none.

Vologda standeth vpon the riuer of Vologda, which commeth into Dwina. The towne is great and long, built all of wood, as all their townes are.

In this towne the Emperour hath built a castle inuironed with a wall of stone, and bricke, the walles faire, and high rounde about. Here (as in all other their townes) are many Churches, some built of bricke, the rest of wood, many Spunkes and Runnes in it: A towne also of great traffique, and many rich Sparchants there dwelling.

From hence we passed by land towards Mosco in poste, being 500. verses great, which are equal with our miles. In their townes we baited of lay being post townes.

The description  
of the  
land of Spunkes.

The Countrey is very faire, plaine & pleasant, well inhabited, coine, pasture, meadowes, prough, riuers, and woods, faire and goodly.

At Yeraslaue, wee passed the riuer of Volga, more then a mile ouer. This riuer taketh his beginning at Beada Ozera, & descendeth into Mare Caspium, portable the way of very great bellies with flat bottomes, which farre passe any that our Countrey beeth.

To passe by this riuer into Mare Caspium, the English Companie caused a barke to be built of 27. tunne, which there was neuer seene befoze: This barke built, and readie rigged to the sea with her whole furniture, cost not the companie about one hundred markes there.

His arrivall at  
Mosco.

To Mosco wee came about the ende of September, receiued by no man, not so much as our owne Countrey men suffered to mee vs, which bred suspicion in mee, of some other course intended, then we had hitherto found.

there was no great thing to be  
fish, and tooke good hope of diuers  
re standeth an abbey of monks (so  
res is superstitious, in blacke boons  
images, tapers, and candles. Their  
eate together, and are much giuen  
ruer, ceremonious in their Church,

two great rye loaves, fish both lake  
ye aliter, blacke with a white face, so  
inuiting me to see their house, they

en about 4. houses neere the abbey,

and there pasture & arable ground,  
of the Countrey is, for the coldest

4. degrees. The riuer that runneth  
riuer taketh his beginning about  
olmogro, & many prettie villages,  
riuer pleasant betwene high hills of  
high firs trees, and ether wood,  
quarters of a mile every best, we  
our had woode of our comming:  
and to see vs furnished of victuals,

bles, besides the charge of horses  
rtes, to carrie my wines, and ether

but scattered house frō house. The  
theat festiuall, and marriage dapes.  
mens crasque with them are much  
her kinde of abominable vices,  
giuen them by the Emperour, and

ause they are much like to this, and

to Vologda, being dyuven with

metly into Dwina. The towne is

with a wall of stone, and hick the  
their townes ) are many Churches,  
annes in it: A towne also of great

ing 500. vertles great, which are  
post townes.

oyne, pasture, meadowes plough,

le ouer. This riuer taketh his be  
table chow of very great belis  
th.

panie caused a barketo be built of  
and readie rigged to the sea with  
marks there.

ued by no man, nor so much as our  
in mice, of some other course in

the

we were brought to a house built of purpose by the Emperour for Embassadors, fatte, and  
large, after the fashion of that Countrey.

Two gentlemen were appointed to attend vpon me, the one to see vs furnished of vi  
that we lacked nothing of the Emperours allowance: the other to see that we should re out of  
the house, nor suffer any man to come vnto vs, in which they left nothing vndone that  
their charge. But specially he that looked to our persons, so straightly handled vs, that we had no  
small cause to doubt that some euill had bene intended vnto vs. No supplication, suite, or request,  
could take place for our libertie, nor yet to come to his presence.

During passed ouer 17. weekes in this sort, the Emperour sendeth word that we should be re  
ue against tuesday the 20. of February, at 8. a clocke in the morning.

The houre being come that I should go to the Court, the two Gentlemen, Pristaues (as they  
call them) came vnto me apparelled more princely, then before I had euer seene them. They presse  
vs to depart, and mounted vpon their owne owne horses, and the Embassadour vpon such a one as  
he had boyrowed, his men marching on foote, to their great griefe.

The Embassadour (being my selfe) was conueyed into an office where one of the Chancelloz  
woth ble to sit, being there accompanied with the 2. foresaid Gentlemen: I tarried 2. long houres  
before I was sent for to the Emperour. In the ende message being brought that the Emperour  
was set, I was conueyed by my gentlemen by a paire of staires through a large roome, where fate  
by my estimation 300. persons, all in riche attire, taken out of the Emperours wardrobe for that  
day, vpon three ranks of benches, set round about the place, rather to present a Gaieitie then that  
they were either of qualitie or honour.

At the first entrie into the Chamber, I with my cappe gaue them the reuerence, such as I  
knewe their stately sitting, graue countenance, and sumptuous apparel required, and seeing that  
it was not answered againe of any of them, I couered my head, and so passing to a chamber where  
the Emperour was, there receiued mee at the doore from my 2. Gentlemen of gouernours, two of  
the Emperours Counsellers, and the two me to the Emperour, and brought me to the middle of the  
chamber, where I was willed to stand still, and to say that which I had to say. I by my Inter  
preter opened my message as I receiued it from the Queene my Wittnell, from whom I came, at  
whom name the Emperour stood up, & demanded diuers questions of her health and state: where  
unto and were being made, he gaue me his hand in token of my welcome, & caused me to sit downe,  
and further asked me diuers questions.

This done, I deliuered her Gaieities present, which was a notable great Cuppe of silver cu  
riously wrought, with verses grauen in it, expressing the histories workmanly set out in the same.

All being said and done, (as appeared) to his contentment, he licensed mee and my whole com  
pany to depart, who were all in his presence, and were saluted by him with a nodde of his head, and  
said vnto me: I dine not this day openly for great affaires I haue, but I will send thee my dinner,  
and give leave to thee, and thine, to goe at libertie, and augment our allowance to thee, in token of  
our loue and fauour to our sister the Queene of England.

I with reuerence tooke my leave, being conueyed by 2. other of greater calling, then those that  
brought me to the Emperours sight: who deliuered me to the two first Gentlemen, who conducted  
me to the office where I first was, where came vnto mee one called the long Duke, with whom  
I conferred a while, and so returned to my lodging.

Within one houre after, in comes to my lodging a duke richly apparelled, accompanied with  
50. persons, eche of them carrying a silver dish with meate, & couered with silver. The duke first  
deliuered 20. loaves of bread of the Emperours owne eating, hauing talked the same, & deliuereth  
euery dish into my hands, and tasted of euery kinde of vyne that he brought.

This being done, the duke and his companie sate downe with me, and spoke part of the Empe  
rours meate, and filled themselves well of all soyes, and went not away from me vnto bed.

Within few nightes after the Emperour had willed to speake secretly with mee, and sent for me in  
the night by the long duke: The place was farre off, and the night cold, and I hauing changed  
my apparell into such as the Russes doe weare, found great inconmoditie thereby.

Hauing talked with him about 3. houres, towards the morning I was dismissed, and so came  
home to my lodging, where I remained about 6. weekes after, before I heard againe from the  
Emperour, who went the next day to Sloouda, the house of his solace. After the ende of which 6.  
weekes, which was about the beginning of Aprill, the Emperour returned frō Sloouda to gelatid,  
and sent for me againe to make repaire vnto him. And being come, I dealt effectually w him in the  
behalf of our English Merch. us, & found him so graciously incliued towards them, I obtained  
at his hands my whole demands for large priuileges in general, together w al the rest my parti  
cular requests.

Speciall hou  
of Empero, bus  
Embassa  
bours.

2. Pristaues.

This admittion  
to the Empe  
rours presence.

The Queenes  
present.

The Empe  
rours speech to  
the Embassa  
dour.

A second con  
ference with  
the Emperour.

And then hee commended to my conduct into England, a noble man of his, called Andrew Sauiin: The Embassadour, for the better confirmation of his priuiledges graunted, and other negotiations with her Maestie. And thus being dispatched with full contentment, the saide Embassadour and hee selfe departed, and imbarked at S. Nicholas about the ende of July, and arrived safely at London in the moneth of September following.

**A Copie of the priuiledges graunted by the right high and mightie Prince, the Emperour of Russia, &c: vnto the right wor-**

shipful fellowship of English Marchants, for the discouerie of new trades:

And hither sent by Thomas Randolfe Esquire, her Maiesties Embassadour to the saide Emperour, And by Andrew Sauiin his Embassadour in the yeere of our Lord

God 1569.



**O**ur God euerlasting, and without, and before the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, the blessed Trinitie, our onely God, maker, and preseruer of all things, and replenisher of all things euery where, who by thy goodnesse dost cause all men to loue the giuer of wisdom our onely Mediatour, and leader of vs all vnto blessed knowledge by the onely Sonne his word our Lorde Iesus Christ holy and euerlasting Spirit; And now in these our dayes crauest vs to keepe Christianitie, and sufferest vs to enioy our kingdome to the happie commoditye of our land, and wealth of our people in despite of our enemies, and to our fame, with our friends.

The Iohn Vasiluich by the grace of God, great Lord Emperour and great duke of all Russia, Volodemaria, Molcouia, Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, Tuerkie, Vgtrakie, Perouskie, Votskie, Bulgaria, and many others; Lord and great duke of the low Countreies of Nouogrod, Chennigoskie, Râfanskie, Polotiskie, Rastow, Yeraslaue, Bellofoso, Owderskie, Conduskie, and all Siberland, Great commaunder of all the North parties, Lord of Leisland, and many other Northward, Southward and Westward.

Whereas our sister Elizabeth by the grace of God Queene of England, Fraunce, and Ireland, defender of the faith, hath written vnto vs her letters for her marchants, who hath made suite that we should graunt our goodyes to the Marchants which are of our Countreie, and give them free leaue to come to traffique in our kingdome to Colmogorode, and to the Countreies of Dwina; and to our great Citie of Molcouia, and to all the citiees in our Dominion, and through our Countrey to Bowhair, to Persia, Casbine, and Chardaye, and to all other Countreies;

The Iohn Vasiluich Emperour and great duke of all Russia; by our sister Elizabeths like, Queene of England haue giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, the Governours, Consuls, assistants and fellowship, Sir Wil. Garrard knight, Rowland Hayward Alderman, Ioh. Thammworth Esquire, Iohn Riuers Alderman, Henry Beacher Alderman, Consuls, Sir Wil. Chester knight, Edward Iackman Alderman, Lionel Duckett Alderman, Edward Gilbert, Laurence Hule, Francis Walsingham, Clement Throgmorton; Iohn Quarles, Nicholas Wheeler, Thomas Banister, Iohn Harrison, Francis Buricham, Anthony Ganage, Ioh. Somers, Richard Wilkinson, Ioh. Sparke, Richard Barne, Robert Woolman, Thomas Browne, Thomas Smith, Thomas Allen, Thomas More, William Bully, Richard Yong, Thomas Arkinson, assistants, Iohn Merth Esquire, Ieffrey Duckett, Francis Robinson, Matthew Field, and all the rest of their Countreie and fellowship, and to their successours and deputies, to come with ships, and other vessels into our Countrey, at Colmogorode, Dwina, and to all the North parts now being ouer, or that hereafter shall at any time be in our possession, by sea, river, or land, euen to our great Citie of Molcouia, in all the townees of our Countreie, to Cazan and Astracan, to Nouogorode the great, to Plasko and Leisland, Vriagorod, to Narue, and all other townees of Leisland; and to passe through our land to Bowhair, Persia, Casbin, Chardaye, and other Countreies; And whersoever they come there to be and abide freely, and to barter and vendre freely all wares of sale, without charge of all people, and Marchants strangers whatsoeuer.

And it so be they bring any fine wares out of England, or any other Countrey from Bowhair, Persia, Casbine, or from any other place, and shall their wares that come by the way of Narue, or any other part into our Dominion, to bring the same wares into our Countrey, or our Treasurers to buy the same wares, and to take into our Treasure of the same (such as shall be needfull

man of his, called Andrew Sa-  
vages granted, and other nego-  
ciation, the said Embassa-  
ge ended of July, and arrived safe

the right high and

unto the right wor-

shipprie of new trades:

er Maicsties Em-

andrew Sauin

ord

the beginning, the Father, the  
our onely God, maker, and pre-  
suer every where, who by thy good-  
ness and onely Mediatour, and  
onely Sonne his word our Lorde  
Iesus now in these our dayes teachest  
us to the happy commoditye of our  
life, with our friends,

our and great duke of si Russia,  
Vladimir, Permiskie, Vo-  
lhogorode, Chen  
Ovderskie, Conduskie, and all  
the Land; and many other King-  
domes, and Countreies

of England, France, Ireland,  
Spain, who hath made state the  
of the Countrey of Dwina, and  
all other, and through our Countrey  
Countreies.

1. And our sister Elizabeths sake,  
and Countreies, the Governours, Con-  
suls, and other, Sir Wil. Chester-  
man, Edward Gilbert, Laurence  
Armes, Nicholas Wheeler, Tho-  
mas Browne, Thomas Smith, Tho-  
mas Arkinson, assistants, John  
Field, and all the rest of their Com-  
pany, and other vessels,  
which pertaine unto being ours, of that  
Countrey, and wheresoever they  
shall sell all wares of sale, without

any other Countrey from Bow-  
ditch, that come by the way of  
our Countrey, and our Treasurie,  
the same wares as shall be needfull

for vs. And all such wares as we shall not need, our Chancellour to redeliver the same, And after the  
view of our Chancellours, to barter it freely to whom they will, not selling any of their wares  
needfull for vs, before our Chancellour have seene the same. And all other goods and heavy wares  
that shall be needfull to our use, not being brought to Mosco to declare and sell our Chancellour  
of the same wares: And to give a note thereof by name, and how much they leave there, not brought  
to Mosco: and then if we neede not the said wares, the English Marchants, their servants & Fac-  
tors, to convey their wares the nearest way to Visiuge the great, and so to Colmogorod, or else-  
where at their pleasure, there to barter and sell the same. But those wares that shall be needfull for  
our Treasurie, they shall not hide from vs in any case.

And when our Chancellours shall send our adventure, with the said Marchants of their Fac-  
tors they to take our adventures with them, and to sell, & to barter for such wares as shall be meete  
for our Treasurie, and to returne it into our Treasurie.

And when wee shall sende any adventure into England then our Chancellour to give them a  
verges warning, that their ships may be provided thereafter, that by taking in of our wares, they  
leave not their owne behinde them.

And to take our adventure yearly when they goe into Persia.

Neither shall any English marchants receive of colour any of our peoples goods, nor barter nor sell  
it in any wise like wise our people not to barter for the said English marchants or occupy for them.

2. And when they shall come into our Empire of Casan and Astracan, and other places of our  
Dominions, then our Captaines of Casan and Astracan, and our authorized people, quietly to let  
them passe, not taking any toll of custome of their wares, nor once to make search thereof.

And when we shall send no adventure with them, yet to suffer them freely to passe, not bleding  
their wares, nor taking any kinde of custome. And whatsoeuer English marchant will bargain  
with our Marchants of Factors wares for wares to barter the same at their pleasure.

And whatsoeuer their Marchant or Factor will sell their wares at their house at Mosco, which  
house I graunte them at S. Maxims at the Mosco, they to sell for wares to our people, either strangers  
as they may best deter it, keeping within their house, arshives, measures, & waightes under seales.

4. We have graunted them the said house at S. Maxims in the halfe street, and without standing  
rent, as heretofore we did graunt it the said English Marchants, sir Wil. Garrard, and the Com-  
pany, maintaining in the said house one housekeeper a Russe, and two Russe servants, or some of  
their owne countrey men, and none other Russe besides they aforesaid. And the said housekeep-  
ers that shall live at their house with the English marchants, neither to bye nor sell any wares for  
them, but that the said marchants themselves or their factors, shall bye, sell, and barter their owne  
wares; and our Moscouie marchants not to take the said Englishmens wares to sell them in our  
townes; nor to bye any wares for them, neither the English marchant to colour any Russe wares  
at any towne.

5. And whatsoeuer English marchant will sell his wares at Colmogorod, Dwyna, Vologda,  
Yersalaue, Castran, Nouogrode, the lower Casan, Astracan, Nouogrode the great, Vapaska, the  
Narue, Vriagorod, or at any other townes, they to sell their wares there at their pleasure, And of al  
wares as well of other countreies as of Russia, no officer or other to take any custome, neither in any  
place to stay them in any wise, neither take any kinde of toll of them for their wares what-  
soeuer.

6. And whatsoeuer marchant shall bargain or bye any wares of English marchants: The said  
Russe not to returne those wares vpon the marchants handes againe, but to give ready money for  
the said wares, or otherwise they to craue the Justice to give right, and to execute the lawe vpon the  
same with all expedition. And when the English marchants or factors shall crauaile from Mos-  
couie after the dispatche of their wares and business, then to shewe themselves vnto our Chancel-  
lours, whatsoeuer wares of theirs shall goe from Mosco, they not to shewe the same wares to any  
our officers, nor pay no custome nor toll in any place.

7. If it so happen the English marchants have any wacke, and the shippes be brought to any  
port of our Dominions, we to command the said goods to be enquired and sought out, and to be  
given to the English marchants, being here abiding at that time in our Countrey, the factors, ser-  
vants, or deputies, of the Countrey aforesaid, to whom we have graunted this our gracious letter.

And if there happen none of the English marchants, factors, servants, or deputies to be in our  
Countreies at such time, then we will all the said goods to be sought out and bestowed in some con-  
uenient place, and when any of the Countrey aforesaid, by writing these our letters, shall come  
for their goods, we to command their goods to be redelivered vnto them.

8. Likewise wee have graunted leave to the English marchants, their Governours, Consuls,

and assistants, namely, sir William Garrard knight, Rowland Hayward, and the Companie to builde houses at Vollogda, Colmogro, and the sea-side, at Luangorode, at Cherell, and in all other parts of our Dominions, as shall bee needefull for their trade. And they to keepe at the said houses, one housekeeper, a Russe, and two of thye men to keepe their wares at the said houses, make sale thereof to whome they will, they, their Factors or deputies: the said housekeeper not to buy or sell for them.

9 Also wee haue giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, their house which they haue by our goodnesse at S. Maximes in the Zenopskie, and other their houses in the towne of Zenopskie, made for the better assurance of their goods, and all such as they shall see by hereafter haile of the Oprissini, and will make them knowen to all them of Oprissini.

¶ 10. chosen  
liber.

10 And whereas by our goodnesse we haue graunted them a Ropehouse at Vollogda, being farre from the English Marchants house, nowe we haue giuen them to builde a house for that use by the said English house, and haue giuen and graunted them (of our goodnesse) ground, one hundred and fouretwoe sabome long, and fiftie sabomes in breadth, according to their owne request.

11 Also, we haue of our goodnesse giuen and graunted to the English Marchants, leave to buy them a house at Witchida, and there to search out mines of yron. And where they shall happily finde it, there to set by houses for the making of the same yron: and to make the same, of our goodnesse haue graunted them woods, five or sixe miles compasse about the said houses, to the making of the saide yron, and not to exceede these bounds and limits: And where they shall cut the saide wood, not to set by any village of same there, lyinge the artificers for making of their yron, out of their owne Countrey, and to learne our people that arte, and so freely occupying the saide yron in these our Dominions, transporting also of the same home into England, allowing for every pound one dingo, or M. pennie.

12 And if any of the said yron shall be needfull for our workes, then we to take of the saide yron to our worke, upon agreement of price, paying monye out of our Treasurie for the same: And when the said English Marchants or Factors shall send their owne people out of our Realme into their Countrey, ouer land though any Countrey whatsoeuer, freely to send the same with our woads.

13 Also, we of our goodnesse haue graunted, that if any man mislike the saide English, the Factors or seruants, or the saide English Marchants, their Factors or seruants about any other at Molsouie, or any other our townes whatsoeuer within our Dominions in trade of Marchandise or otherwise, then they to haue by right iustice in all such matters of our counsaile the Oprissine without all let or delay: But if our Justice may not agree the parties, then lots to be made, and to whose lotte it shall fall, to him the right to bee giuen, and that onely our counsaile at Molsouie, and none of our Captaines, or authorized people, or officers in any other our townes, giue iudgment upon the said English Marchants for any thing.

14 Also, if any stranger shall haue matter of controuersie with any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, abiding within these our Realmes, or contrarywise any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, against any other stranger, in all those causes our Counsaile of the Oprissine, to giue them Justice, and to make an agreement & ende betweene the parties, without all delaye; And none to deale therein, saue our Counsaile of the Oprissine: 15 And if any man haue action against any English Marchant being absent, that then in his absence it shall be lawful for any other Englishman at his assignation to answer his cause.

16 If any Englishman happen to be wounded or beaten to death, or any Russe or stranger slaine or beaten, 17 Or any stolen goods to be found in the saide English houses, then our Counsellors to cause the guiltie persons to be sought out, and to doe right and Justice in the cause, and the partie that is guiltie, if he deserue punishment, to be corrected accordingly after his offence, That the said English Marchants, factors and seruants, sustaine thereby no hindrance or damage.

18 And whatsoeuer English Marchant, Factor, seruant, or deputy, shall be guiltie of any fault, deseruing our displeasure, then our Counsellors to cause the guiltie partie to goe vnder surties, and their goods to be sealed and kept, vntill our pleasure bee further knowen, and our Counsaile to examine their offence, and so to repose it vnto vs, that wee may command what shall be done therein, and none other to be credited or haue their goods sealed, which are not guiltie of those offences, nor to stay or apprehend them in any of our Dominions for the same.

19 If any English Marchant, Factor or seruant shall offend, it shall be lawful for their Agent to doe iustice upon the said partie, or to send him home into England at his pleasure.

20 If any English Marchant, Factor or seruant, haue lent or hereafter shall lende money to any of our people, or credite them with wares, and so depart into any forreigne Countrey, or die before the debt bee due to be paid, then our people and Marchants to paye the same debt,

ward, and the Companie in  
 angorode, at Cherell, and in all  
 trade. And they to keepe at the  
 their wares at the said houses,  
 equities: the said housekeeper not

nts, their house which they haue  
 e houses in the towne of Zenop-  
 they shall set by hereafter shall be  
 sfini.

house at Vologda, being farre  
 builde a house for that use by the  
 goodnesse) ground, one hundred  
 to their owne request.

English Merchants, leaue to buy  
 and where they shall happily finde  
 make the same, of our goodnesse  
 said houses, to the making of the  
 ere they shall cut the saide wood,  
 s for making of their yon, out of  
 ceely occupying the saide yon in

England, allowing for every

en we to take of the saide yon to  
 treasure for the same; And when  
 ple out of our Realme into their  
 send the same with our wares,

the saide English, the fact-  
 of seruants abuse any other  
 dominions in trade of Merchandise  
 of our counsaile the Oprisnie  
 ties, then loes to be made, and to  
 ply our counsaile at Molcouie,  
 y other our towne, give iudge

English Merchant, Factor of  
 English Merchant, Factor of  
 saile of the Oprisnie, to give  
 ties, without all delaye; And  
 and if any man haue action  
 ce it shall be lawfull for any other

h, or any Russe, or stranger staine  
 houses, then our Counsellors  
 iudice in the cause, and the party  
 ply after his offence, That the  
 hindrance or damage,  
 partie shall be guiltie of any fault,  
 ie partie to goe vnder suerties,  
 ber knowen, and our Counsaile  
 y command what shall be done  
 which are not guiltie of that of  
 the same.

the lawfull for their Agent to  
 at his pleasure.

hereafter shall lende money to  
 any foreygn Country, of  
 merchants to paye the saide debt,

to

to

to

to whome soeuer shall be appointed to the said roome or charge, and the said English Merchant,  
 factor, or seruant, to bring his bill of debt to our Counsell, to shewe them what is due, and what  
 money is owing them for any wares; and thus to doe truly, not adding any whyle to the debt, and  
 our Counsell to command the debt to be discharged vnto the English Merchant, factor, or seruant,  
 without delaye.

21 And whatsoeuer English Merchant shall be arrested for debt, then our Counsell to com-  
 mand the partie vnder arrest to be deliuered to the Agent; and if he haue no suertie, to bind the A-  
 gent with him, for the better force of the bond.

And if any Englishman be endebed, we will the Creditor not to call him in prison, or to deli-  
 uer him to the Sergeant, lest the officer lose him, but to take ware in payme of the debt.

22 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the English Merchants to send our Commission to all  
 our Townes, Captaines, and authorised men, to defende and gard the saide Merchants from all  
 cheues, robbers, and euill disposed persons.

23 If in comming or going to and fro our dominions, the Merchants, the factors, or seruants be  
 spoiled on the sea, our Counsell shall send our letters, and will them to be sought out, and where  
 they shall finde the goods, cause it to be restoyed againe, and the offender to be punished, according to  
 our commandement.

24 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the saide Merchants to take by Hookers, Warkers,  
 Wapers, and such like labourers, as shall be needefull for them, paying for their hire as the labo-  
 rers and they shall agree.

25 We likewise of our goodnes, haue licensed the English Merchants in our Townes of Mos-  
 ko, Nouogorode the great, and Pasko, that the Coiners of the said Townes shall melt Dollers,  
 and coine money for them, without custome, allowing for coales, and other necessaries, with the  
 workmanship.

26 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted to the said English Merchants, to take posse hoyle at  
 needefull times, leauing with our officers a noce how many they take, and not els, in no case hin-  
 dering or diminishing our treasure.

27 Also for our sister Queene Elizabeths sake, we of our goodnes haue granted to the merchants  
 within written, this our letter, and to their successors, that no Englishman, nor any other stranger,  
 come without the Queenes leaue to Colnogorode, the riuer of Vob, Vasiagy, Pechora, Cow-  
 laye, Mefeyne, Pechme coue, Zeluetskyes Island, the riuer of Shame, nor to no other haueu of  
 Dwina, nor to any part of the north side of Dwina, by hether ward of Wardhouse, to any haueu,  
 with shippe, Bulle, or any other vessel, nor to occupie in any kind of waies, but onely the said En-  
 glish companie, and their successors, to whome we of our goodnes haue granted this priuiledge,

28 Also that no English Merchant, without the Queenes leaue, shall come with any wares, to  
 the Narue, or Vriogorode.

29 And whatsoeuer English Merchant, stranger, or other, of whatsoeuer Countrey he be, shall  
 come with any shippe, Bulle, or any other vessel, to any of the said haueus of the north side, to any  
 part of Dwina, by North the Narue, or Vriogorode, without the Queenes leaue or knowledg,  
 not being of the companie aboue written, wee to apprehende and take the same vessel from those  
 strangers and Merchants, the one halfe to vs the Emperour, and great Duke, and the other halfe  
 to the companie of English Merchants.

30 Also of our goodnes, we haue granted the said companie of English merchants, that no Eng-  
 lish merchants or strangers shall passe through our dominions, to Boghare, Peria, Casbin,  
 Chardaye, or other Countreies, saue onely the companie of English merchants, and our owne  
 messengers.

31 Also whatsoeuer Englishman, comming out of England, or any other Countrey, into our do-  
 minions, without the Queenes leaue, and knowledg, not being of the said companie, written  
 within those our letters, mind, and purpose, to abide in our Realme, contrary to the Queenes will  
 and pleasure, or any way abuse himselfe, the Agent shall freely send him home, to the Queene his  
 Soueraigne: which if the Agent of himselfe be unable to do, let him pray for aide of the Captaines  
 and officers of our Townes there being, and so send him to prison, and will the saide Captaines  
 not to hinder the said Agent from sending home such euill persons into England.

32 And if any man within our Countrey, runne away to any other towne, or place, the English  
 merchants, and factors, to haue free libertie to apprehende him, and take their goods from him a-  
 gaine.

33 And as for our priuiledge, given to Thomas Glouer, Ralfe Rutter, Christopher Bennet, John  
 Chappell, and their adherents, we haue commanded the same priuiledges to be taken from them.



34 Also we of our goodnes haue granced the said company of English merchants, their successors seruants and deputies, that doe or shall remaine at Musko, or else where within our dominions freely to keepe their owne lawe: and in any wise none of ours to force them to our lawe of faith against their will.

Moreover, besides and with the companie of English merchants, we permit all strangers, to trade to our towne of Narue, Vtiogorode, and other our townes of Letland, as they haue done by force time, from the beginning of the world 7077. in the moneth of June 20. in iudicium, 12. The yeere of our Lordship & reigne 35, and of our Empire of Rusland 23, Calan 17, Astracan 15.

### Other speciall graunts by his Maiesties priuate letters at the suite of Master Randolph Embassadour.

**R**eleasement out of prison of Fitzherbert, that was accused for writing of letters against the Emperour.

Liberty giuen to Thomas Greene that was accused, & troubled vpon suspition of his dealing, with the Embassadour, and licence giuen to him to traffique as he was accustomed.

Andrew Acherton and his sureties released at the Narue and his seruauant at the Mosko, that were in trouble for sending the merchants letters into England.

A letter graunted to Thomas Southam to the Countaile for iustice against them that stole the pearles.

His Maiesties fauour promised to the Artificers, and liuings to be appointed them as they can best deserue.

A letter to the merchants that went into Persia, to passe freely without impeachment in his dominions, as also letters of fauour to the great Shawe of Persia.

A graunt vnto the companie that at what time soeuer, they send to the discouery of Cathaya, they shalbe licensed to repaire vnto this countrey and haue such conducts and guides, Parriners, vessels, Pen, and victuals as they shall stand in neede of.

It is also promised by Kneez Alfanas, and Peter Gregoriowich in the Emperours name, that if Benet Buder or any Englishman complaine, before, hinder in way of traffique, or otherwise goe about to discredit the worshipfull companie, and their doings, that therein they shall not bee harde, and the doers to bee punished, as in such cases they shalbee iudged to haue deserved.

Certaine persons graunted to be sent home into England that serued the company, and were practisers against them in that countrey.

### A Commission giuen by vs Th. Randolph, Embassadour for the Queenes Maiestie in Russia, and Th. Bannister, &c. Vnto Ianes Bassendine,

James Woodcocke and Rich. Browne, the which Bassendine, Woodcocke, and Browne we appoint ioyntly together, and ayders, the one of them to the other, in a voyage of discouery to be made (by the grace of God) by them, for searching of the sea, and border of the coast, from the riuer Pechora, to the East wardes, as hereafter followeth Ann. 1588. The first of August.



**M**ynis, when your barke with all furniture is ready, you shall at the beginning of the yeere (as soone as you possible may) make your repaire to the Easterne part of the riuer Pechora, where is an Island called Dolgoieue, and from thence you shall passe to the Eastwardes alongest by the Sea coast of Hugorie: or the mayne lande of Pechora, and sayling alongst by the same coast, you shall passe within seuen leagues of the Island Vaigattes which is in the straight, almost halfe way from the coast of Hugorie, vnto the coast of Noua Zembla, which Island Vaigattes and Noua Zembla; you shall finde noted in your plat, therfore you shall not neede to discouer it: but proceede on alongest the coast of Hugorie, towards the riuer Obba.

There is a Bay betweene the saide Vaigattes, & the riuer Obba, that doth byte to the Southwardes, into the lande of Hugorie, in which Bay are two small riuers, the one called Cara Reca, the other Narmye, as in the paper of notes which are giuen to you here with, may appeare in the

English merchanes, their lives where within our dominions to force them to our lawe of

we permit all strangers, to Liffand, as they have done before June 20. in dictio. 12. The 3. Calan 17. Astracan 15.

ate letters at the  
dour.

writing of letters against the  
upon suspition of his dealing,  
was accustomed.

his seruiant at the Mosko, that

lice against them that stole the

be appointed them as they can

without impeachment in his

to the discovery of Cataya, they  
and guides, Parriners, bei

in the Emperours name, the  
way of traffique, or otherwise  
s, that therein they shall not  
shall bee iudged to haue deuo

serued the company, and here

Embassadour for the  
Vnto Iames Bassendine,

Woodcocke, and Browne we  
other, in a voyage of disco-  
ming of the sea, and bor-  
rdes, as hereafter fol-  
lft.

is ready, you shall at the begin-  
make your repaire to the Is-  
land called Dolgoiue, and  
alongest by the Sea coast of  
and sailing alongst by the same  
the Island Vaigates which is in  
the coast of Noua Zembla, which  
your plat, therefore you shall me-  
lugorie, towards the west

da, that doth byte to the South  
waters, the one called Cara Re-  
you here with, may appeare in  
the

the which Baye you shall not neede to spende any time for searching of it, but to direct your course to the river Ob, (if otherwise you be not constrained to keepe alongst the shoare,) and when you come to the River Ob, you shall not enter into it, but passe ouer, vnto the Easterne parts of the mouth of the said river.

And when you are at the Easterne part of the mouth of Obba Rea, you shall from thence passe to the Eastwards, alongst by the border of the said coast, describing the same in such perfect order, as you can best doe it. You shall not leaue the saide coaste or border of the land, but passe alongst by it, at least in sight of the same, vntill you haue sailed by it so farre to the Eastwards, and the time of the yeere so farre spent, that you doe thinke it time for you to returne with your barke to Alu-ter, which trauell may well be thyece or 400. leagues to the Eastwards of the Ob, if the sea doe reach so farre, as our hope is it doth: but and if you finde not the said coast and sea to trende so farre to the Eastwards, yet you shall not leaue the coast at any time, but proceede alongst by it, as it doth lie, leauing no part of it vnsearched, or seene, vnlesse it be some baye, or riuer, that you doe certainly know by the report of the people, that you shall finde in those borders, or else some certaine tokens, whereby you of your selues may iudge it to be so. For our hope is, that the said border of the land, and sea, both in thox space after you passe the Ob, incline East, and so to the Southwardes. And therefore we would haue no part of the land of your starreboord shoer, as you proceede in your discouerie, to be left vnbordered.

But and if the said border of land doe not incline so to the Eastwards, as we presuppose it, but that it doe prooue to incline, and trende to the Northwardes, and so to yone wch Noua Zembla, making the sea from Vaigats to the Eastwards but a baye: yet we will that you doe keepe alongst by the said coast, and so bring vs certaine report of that forme and manner of the same baye.

And if it doe so prooue to be a baye, and that you haue passed rounde about the same, and so by the trending of the land come backe vnto that part of Noua Zembla, that is against Vaigats, where as you may from that see the said Island Vaigats, if the time of the yeere will permit you, you shall from thence passe alongst by the said border of coast of Noua Zembla, to the Westwards, and so to search whether that part of Noua Zembla doe to yne with the land, that Sir Hugh Willoughbie discovered in anno 53. and is in 72. degrees, and from that part of Noua Zembla, 120. leagues to the Westwards, as your plat doth shewe it vnto you: and if you doe finde that land to yone with Noua Zembla, when you come to it, you shall proceede further along the same coast, if the time of the yeere will permit it, and thus you doe thinke there will be sufficient time for you to returne backe with your barke to winter, either at Pechora, or vnto Russia, at your discretion: for we referre the same to your good iudgements, trusting that you will lose no time, that may further further knowledge in this voyage.

And you, if it was the 20. of August, 56. ere the Serche spirit began to returne backe from her discouerie, to winter in Russia, and then she came from the Island Vaigats, being forthwith driven from thence, with an Easterly winde, and pee, and so she came into the river Dwina, and arriued at Colmogro, the 11. of September, 56. If the pee had not bene so much that yeere, as it was, in the Streights, on both sides of the Island Vaigats, they in the said pinnell, would that yeere haue discovered the partes that you are now to seeke: which thing (if it had pleased God) might haue bene done then: but God hath reserved it for some other. Which discouerie, if it may be made by you, it shall not onely proue profitable vnto you, but it will also purchase perpetuall fame and renowne, both to you, and our Countrey. And thus not doubting of your willing desire, and forwardnes to wards the same, we pray God to bless you, with a luckie beginning, fortunate success, and happily to ende the same. Amen.

Necessarie notes to be obserued, and followed in your discouerie, as hereafter followeth.

**W**hen your barke with all furniture, and necessaries, shall be fit ready by you to depart to the sea (if it be that you take your barke at S. Nicholas, or any part of Dwina Rea) you shall from thence, vnto the mouth of the river Pechora, (as your commission doth leade you) and as you passe by the coast all alongst, notwithstanding the plat that sheweth you the description of the said coast, from Dwina vnto Vaigats, yet you shall seeke by all the meanes that you can, to obtaine the same plat, vnto as many obseruations, as you possibly can doe: and these obseruations shall be as followeth.

1. First, that you doe obserue the latitude as often, and in as many places, as you may possibly

by doe it, noting diligently the place where you doe so obserue the same.

2 Also that you doe diligently set with your compass, how  $\beta$  land doth lie from point to point, all along as you goe, and to vse your iudgements howe farre there may bee betwene eche of them.

3 Item, that you doe alwayes vse to drawe the proportion and byting of the land, as well the lying out of the portnes, and head landes, vnto the which you shall giue some apt names (at your discretion) as also the forme of the Bayes, and to make some marke in drawing the forme, and number of the same, where the high cliffes are, and where lowe lande is, whether sandie hills, or what soeuer: omitte not to note any thing, that may be sensible, and apparant to you, which may serue to any purpose.

4 In passing along by any coast, that you keepe your lead going often times, and sound at the least once every glasse, and oftener if you thinke good as occasion doeth serue, and note diligently the depth with the manner of the ground, and at euery time, howe farre the same sounding may be from the next voye to it: and howe the next voye or head land doth beare from you. And in the sea after you set off from your voye, you shall orderly at the end of euery foure glasse sound, and if you finde ground, note the depth and what ground, but if you can finde no ground, you shall also note in what depth you could finde no ground.

5 Also that you doe diligently obserue the flowing, & ebbing in euery place, and how the tides do set, which way the flood doth come, and how much water it doth high in euery place, and what voye the same tide hath to drawe a ship in an houre, as neere as you can iudge it.

6 Also that you doe seeke to obserue with the Instrument, which I deliuer you herewith, according as I taught you at Rose Island, the true platfoymes, and distaunces, in as many places as conveniently you may, so it serueth very aptly your purpose.

7 Also that you take with you paper and ynke, and keepe a continuall iournall, or remembrance day by day, of all such things as shall fall out worth the knowledge, not forgetting, or omitting to write it, and note it, that it may be shewed and read at your returne.

8 These oyers if you shall diligently obserue, it will bee easie for you to make a plaine, and perfect description of your discovery, and so shall your notes bee sufficient to enforme that which is looked for at your handes. But withall you may not forgette, to note as manie things as you can learne and vnderstande by the reporte of auncient people whatsoeuer they be, so that it appertaine any way to our desires. And thus the Lord God prosper your voyage. Amen.

*Certaine letters in verse, written by Master George Turberuile out of Muscouia, which went as Secretarie thither with Master Tho. Randolph, her Maiesties Embassadour to the Emperour 1568, to certaine friends of his in London, describing the manners of the Countrey, and people.*

*To his especiall friend Master Edward Dancie.*

**M**Y Dancie deere, when I recount within my breast,  
 My London friends, and wonder-makes, and thee above the rest,  
 I feele a thousand fits of deepe and deadly woe,  
 To thinke that I from land to sea, from blisse to bale wd goe,  
 I left my native soyle, full like a rechelesse man,  
 And wasquainted of the doot, among the Russies ran:  
 A people palling rude, to biers vile inclinde,  
 Folke fitt to be of Bacchus trayne, so quaffing in their kinde,  
 Drinke in their whole selling, the pot is all their pride,  
 The sobrest head doeth once a day stand neyfull of a guide.  
 If he to banquet bid his friends, he will not thinke  
 On them at dinner to bestowe a dozen kinde of drinke:  
 Such licour as they haue, and as the countrey giues,  
 But churly two, one callon Kuas, whereby the Mousike liues,  
 Small ware and water like, but somewhat taste in taste,  
 The rest is Meade of home made, whereby their lipps they batte,  
 And if he goe into his neighbour as a guest,

be same.  
and doth lie from point to point,  
there may bee betwene eche of

bytyng of the land, as well the  
ill giue some apt names (at your  
in bytyng the forme, and by  
de is, whether sandie hilles, or  
and apparant to you, which may

ing often times, and sound, as the  
doeth serue, and noce diligently  
we larte the same sounding may  
woch beare from you. And in the  
f every foure glasses found, and if  
n finde no ground, you shall also

in every place, and how the tides  
high in every place, and where  
I can iudge it.

which I deliuer you herewith, accom-  
plices, in as many places as con-

contin uall iournall, or remem-  
berholde, not forgetting, or omitt-  
ing your returne.

the easie for you to make a platte,  
notes bee sufficient to answer  
I may not forgette, to note as  
reporde of anie people wharso-  
euer the Lord God prosper your voy-

George Turberuile out  
by Master Tho. Randolph,  
certaine friends of his in Lon-  
don, and people.

by Dancie.

above the rest:

to goe.

by the kinde.

uide.

her.

e lines.

es they batt.

He cares for liue or deate, if so his vynter be of the best.  
No wonder though they vse such vile and heauy trade,  
With with the hachet and the hand, their chiefe god be made.  
Their Idoles haue their heartes, on God they neuer call,  
Unless it be (Nichola Bough) that hangs against the wall,  
The house that hath no god, or paynted saint within,  
Is not to be reioyced too, that rooffe is full of sinne,  
Besides their priuate gods, in open places stand  
Their crosses vnto which they crooche, and blesse themselves with hand,  
Deuoutly do lome they durke, with sojehood to the ground,  
Was neuer more decreit in ragges, and greasse garments found,  
Almost the meanest man in all the countrie rides,  
The woman eke against our vsle, her crooting boye bestride,  
In sundry colours they both men, and women goe,  
In buskins all, that money haue on buskins to bestowe,  
Eche woman hanging back a ring within her eare,  
Which all of auncient vsle, and some of very pybe doe weare,  
Their gate is very braue, their countenance wise and sadde,  
And yet they follow fleshy lustes, their trade of liuing badde,  
It is no shame at all accounted to defile  
Anothers bedde, they make no care, their soules to coule,  
Is not the meanest man in all the land but hee,  
To buy her paynted colours doth allow his wife a fee,  
Wherewith she deckes her selfe, and dyes her rauenie skine,  
She pranks and paines her smoakie face, both browe, lippe, cheeke, and chime,  
Yea those that honest are, if any such there bee  
Within the lande, doe vse the like: a man may plainly see  
Upon some womens cheekes the paynting how it lyes,  
In plaister laye for that too thicke, her face the harlot bies:  
But such as skillfull are, and cunning Dames indeede,  
By daily practise doe it well, yea sure they doe excede,  
They lay their colours so, as he that is full wise,  
May easily be deceiued therein, if he doe trust his eyes,  
I not a little muse, what madnes makes them paine  
Their faces, woying how they keepe the stoore by meere constrain.  
For selborne when, unless on Church or marriage day  
A man shall see the Dames aboade, that are of best aray,  
The Ruffie meanes to reape the profit of her pride,  
And so he metes her to be sure, she lye by no mans side,  
Thus much friend Dancie, I did meane to write to thee,  
To let thee weete in Russia land, what men and women bee.  
Hereafter I perhaps of other things will write  
To thee, and other of my friends, which I shall see with sight:  
And other stuffe besides, which true reposit shall tell,  
I praye while I ende my louing lines, and bid thee now farewell,

### To Spencer.

If I should now forget, or not remember thee,  
Thou Spencer mightest a soule rebuke, and shame impute to mee,  
For I to open the world did loue thee passing well,  
And thou wert he at parture, whom I loathde to bid farewell,  
And as I went thy friend, so I continue still,  
No better prooffe thou canst then this desire of true good will,  
I doe remember well when needes I should away,  
And that the Post would be licence vs, no longer time to stay:  
Thou wrought me by the fill, and holding fast my hand,  
Durst craue of me to send thee netes, and how I liked the land,

It is a sandie soile, no very fruitfull waie,  
 Hope waile and woodde growes there are, then clothes fit for graine,  
 Yet graine there growing is, which they wintely take,  
 And cut or eare the corne be ripe, they mowe it on a flake.  
 And laying sheafe by sheafe, their barnes fit they buy,  
 They make the greater haste, for feare the frost the corne destroy.  
 For in the winter time, so glacie is the ground,  
 As neither grasse, nor other graine, in pastures may be found.  
 In coons the cattell then, the sheepe, the colt, the cowe,  
 Fall by his bed, the spowlike then, a lodging doth allowe,  
 Whom he with fodder feeds, and holds as deere as life:  
 And thus they weare the winter both the spowlike, and his wife.  
 Seuen months the winter dures, the glacie it is so great,  
 As it is spayd to be turne, his ground to sowe his wheate.  
 The bodie eke that die, vnburied lie they then,  
 Laid up in coffins made of fice, as well the poorest men,  
 As those of greater state: the cause is lightly found,  
 For that in winter time, they can not come to breake the ground.  
 And wood so plenteous is, quize throughout all the land  
 As rich, and poore, at time of death assur'd of coffins stand,  
 Perhaps thou muste murch, how this may stand with reason,  
 That bodie dead can vncorrupt abide so long a season.  
 Take this for certaine troche, as soone as heate is gone,  
 The force of colde the bodie binds as hard as any stone,  
 Without offence at all to any living thing:  
 And so they lye in perfect state, till next returne of springe.  
 Their beastes be like to ours, as farr as I can see  
 For shape, and thewe, but somewhat lesse of bulke, and bone they be:  
 Of watrish taste, the flesh not firme, like English beefe,  
 And yet it serues them very well, and is a good releeve:  
 Their sheepe are very small, sharpe singled, handfull long,  
 Great store of fowle on sea and land, the moorish reedes amonge.  
 The greatnes of the store, doth make the prices lesse,  
 Besides in all the land they knowe, not how good meate to beeste.  
 They vse neither broach nor spit, but when the fowle they beate,  
 They put their virtuales in a pan, and so they bake their meate.  
 No pepper to be had, no dices but of wood,  
 No vse of trenchers, cups cut out of byrche are very good,  
 They vse but wooden spoones, which hanging in a case,  
 Each spowlike at his girdle ties, and thinks it no disgrace,  
 With whicles two or three, the better man the more,  
 The cheefest Russies in the land, with spoone and knives doe goe.  
 Their bodie are not huge of building, but they say,  
 They plant them in the loftiest ground, to shift the snowe away.  
 Which in the winter time, eache where full thicke they lie,  
 Which makes them haue the more desire, to fet their houses high,  
 No stone worke is in vse, their roofes of eakens be,  
 One linked in another fall, their walls are all of tree,  
 Of masts both long, and large, with molle put in betweene,  
 To keepe the force of weather out, if neuer earth haue seene  
 A gross deuile so good, and on the rooffe they lay  
 The burthen barkes, to rid the raine, and sudden stormes away.  
 In every roome a stone, to serue the winter turne,  
 Of wood they haue sufficient store, as much as they can burne,  
 They haue no English glasse, of slices of a rocke  
 Right fluda, they their windowes make, that English glasse doth make.  
 They cut it very thine, and sowe it with a chepe  
 In yecle order like to panes, to serue their present neede.

No other glasse good faith, doth giue a better light:  
 And sure the rocke is nothing rich, the coit is very slight.  
 The chiefest place is that, where hangs the god by it,  
 The owner of the house himselfe doth neuer sit,  
 Unless his better come, to whom he peelds the seat,  
 The stranger bending to the god, the ground with hys must beat.  
 And in that very place which they most sacred deeme,  
 The stranger lyes: a token that his guest he doth esteeme.  
 Where he is wont to haue a beares skinn for his bed,  
 And must in stead of pillow, clap his saddle to his head.  
 In Russia other stit there is not to be had,  
 For where the bedding is not good, the boallsters are but bad,  
 I nused very much, what made them so to lie,  
 Which in thez countrey do wne is rise, and feathers out of criē:  
 Unless it be because the countrey is so hard,  
 They feare by nicenesse of a bed theyz bodies would be mar'd.  
 I wisse thez oft witch his, same that I stood in feare  
 Thou wouldst haue loathed to haue layd thy limmes vpon a beare,  
 As I and Beassys wd, that was my mate in bed:  
 And yet (we thanke the God of heauen) we both right well haue sped,  
 Loe thus I make an end: none other newes to thee,  
 But that the countrey is too colde, the people beastly bee.  
 I wite not all I know, I touch but heere and there,  
 For if I should, my pen would pinch, and eke offend I feare,  
 Who so shall read this verse, coniecture of the rest,  
 And thinke by reason of our trade, that I do thinke the best,  
 But if no traffike were, then could I boldly pen  
 The hardnesse of the soile, and eke the manners of the men,  
 They say the Lions paw giues iudgement of the beast:  
 And so may you deeme of the great, by reading of the least.

## To Parker.

**M**y Parker, paper, pen, and inke were made to write,  
 And idle heads, that little do, haue leisure to indite:  
 Wherefoze, respecting these, and thine assured loue,  
 If I would write no newes to thee, thou mightst my pen repproue.  
 And thence forwne thus hath thou'd my shippe on thoz,  
 And made me seeke another realme vntoene of me before:  
 The manners of the men I purpose to de clare,  
 And other priuate pointes besides, which strange and greazou are.  
 The Ruffie men are round of bodies, fullly fatte,  
 The greater part with bellies bigge that ouerhang the wakte,  
 Flat headen for the most, with faces nothing faire,  
 But by tone, by reason of the shoue, and closenesse of the aire:  
 It is theyz common vse to haue of els to sheare  
 Theyz heads, for none in all the land long lolling locks doth weare,  
 Unless perhaps he haue his soueraigne pynce displeas'd,  
 For then he neuer cuts his hatre, but will he be appeas'd.  
 A certaine signe to know who in displeasur be,  
 For euery man that bitwos his head, will say, Loe this is he.  
 And during all the time he lets his locks to grow,  
 Dares no man for his life to him a face of friendship shoue.  
 Theyz garments be not gay, nor handsome to the eye,  
 A cap aloft theyz heads they haue, that standeth very hye,  
 Which colpacke they do terme, They weare no ruffes at all:  
 The best haue collers set with pearle, which they Rubasca call.  
 Theyz shirts in Russia long, they woike them downe before,

And on the sleeves with coulered silks, two inches good and more.  
 A lofe they spirits they weare, a garment iacket wile  
 Right on oriadka, and about his burke waste he eyes  
 His pouches, which in stead of better heeres bee:  
 Of linnen cloth that garment is, no coypiere is to see.  
 A paye of yamen stockes to keepe the colde a way,  
 Within his boots the Ruffie weares, the heeles they underlay  
 With clouting clamps of Steele sharpe pointed at the toes,  
 And ouer all a suba furd, and thus the Ruffies goes.  
 Well burned is the sube, accordyng to his state,  
 Some silke, of siluer other some, but those of poozeff rate  
 Do weare no subes at all, but gresser gounes to sight,  
 That reacheth downe beneath the calfe, and that Armacha sight:  
 These are the Ruffies robes, The richest vse to ride  
 From place to place, his seruant runnes, and followes by his side.  
 The callacke beares his felt, to force a way the raine:  
 Their bydles are not very hiane, their saddles are but plaine.  
 No bits but snaffles all, of birch their saddles bee,  
 Much fashioned like the Scotch seats, broad flacks to keepe the knee  
 From sweating of the horse, the pannels larger farre  
 And broader be then ours, they vse short stirrups for the warre:  
 For when the Ruffie is pursued by cruell foe,  
 He rides away, and suddenly betakes him to his hoe,  
 And bends me but about in saule as he sits,  
 And therewithall amidst his race, his following foe he hits.  
 They bowes are very short, like Turkie bowes outright,  
 Of sinowes made with birchen barke, in running maner dight.  
 Small arrowes, cruell heads, that fell and forke'd bee,  
 Which being shot from our those bowes, a cruell way will see.  
 They seldome vse to shoo their horse, unless they vse to ride.  
 In post upon the frozen fluds, then cause they shall not slide,  
 He sets a slender calke, and so he rides his way.  
 The horses of the countrey go good foure score verils a day,  
 And all without the spurre, once picke them and they skippe,  
 But go not forward on their way, the Ruffie hath his whyppe  
 To rappe him on the ribbes, for though all bootes bee,  
 Yet shall you not a paye of spurres in all the countrey see.  
 The common game is chesse, almost the simplest will  
 Both giue a checke and eke a mate, by practise comes they skill.  
 Againe the dice as fall, the poozeff rogges of al  
 Will sit them downe in open field, and there to gaming fall.  
 Their dice are very small, in fashion like to thole  
 Which we do vse, he takes them up, and ouer thumbe he thowes  
 Not shaking them a whit, they call suspicioulike,  
 And yet I deeme them bold of art that dining most applie.  
 At play when siluer lacke goes saddle, horse and all,  
 And ech thing els worth siluer waltes, although the price be small,  
 Because thou louest to play friend Parker other while,  
 I with thee there the weary day, with dining to be guile,  
 But thou weart better fare at home, I will it well,  
 And wouldest be loath, among such lawes so long a time dwell.  
 Then iudge of vs thy friends, what kinde of life we had,  
 That nere the frozen pole to waste our weary dayes were glad,  
 In such a sauage soile, where lawes do beare no way,  
 But all is at the king his will, to saue or els to slay,  
 And that sans cause God woe, if so his minde be such,  
 But what meane I with kings to deale, we ought no saines to touch,  
 Concrue the rest your selfe, and deeme what times they lead,

Where lust is law, and subjects liue continually in dread,  
 And where the best estates haue none assurance good  
 Of lands, of liues, nor nothing failes vnto the next of blood,  
 But all of custome doeth vnto the prince redoune,  
 And all the whole reuenuer comes vnto the king his crowne.  
 Good saith I see thee muse at what I tell thee now,  
 But true it is, no choice, but all at princes pleasure bow.  
 So Tarquine ruled Rome as thou rememberest well,  
 And what his fortune was at last, I know thy selfe canst tell.  
 Where will in common weale doeth beare the onely sway,  
 And lust is law, the prince and realme must needs in time decay,  
 The strangeness of the place is such for sundry things I see,  
 As if I would I can not write ech private point to thee.  
 The colbe is rare, the people rude, the prince so full of pride,  
 The realme is boyed with moonks and nunes, and priests on euery side:  
 The maners are so Tuckie like, the men so full of guile,  
 The women wanton, temples stufte with toles that be vile  
 The seats that sacred ought to be, the customes are so quaint,  
 As if I would describe the whole, I teare my penne would faint.  
 In summe, I say I neuer saw a prince that so did eaigne,  
 Nor people so beset with satins, yet all but vile and vaine,  
 While Irish are as cruell as the Russies in thepp kinde,  
 Hard choice which is the best of both ech bloody, rude and blinde,  
 If thou be wise, as wise thou art, and wilt be rude by me,  
 Live still at home, and rouet not those barbarous coasts to see,  
 No good befall a man that seeks, and findes no better place,  
 No cruell customes to be leard, where God bestowes no grace,  
 And truelie ill they do deserue to be helou'd of God,  
 That neither loue nor stand in a we of his alured rod:  
 Which though be long, yet plagues at last the vile and headly foie  
 Of sinfull twighes, that all in vice po place they chieftest spoie,  
 When friend Parker, if thou list, so knowe the Russies well,  
 Co Sigmundus booke repays, who all the truth can tell:  
 For he long earle in message went vnto that savage king,  
 Sent by the Pole, and true report in ech respect did bring.  
 To him I recommend my selfe, to ease my penne of paine;  
 And now at last do wish thee well, and bid fare well againe.

The fourth voyage into Persia, made my M. Arthur Edwards

Agent, Iohn Sparke, Laurence Chapman, Christopher Faucet, and

Richard Pingle, in the yeere 1568, declared in this letter written from Casbin in Persia, by the foresayd Laurence Chapman to a shipfull merchant of the companie of Russia in London.

Anno Domini 1569. Aprill 28.



Whyspfull sir, my dutie alwayes rememberd, and your prosperous health, and good successe in all your affaires wished, to the glory of God, and your owne hearts desire, &c. May it please you to vnderstand that your Agent M. Arthur Edwards & we departed from Yeraslaue in July 1568, & the 14 of August arrived at our poxe called Bilbill, with your shipp the Grace of God, & the goods in her in good safete, God be thanked for it, finding there neither y people to tra-  
 hys to ayd vs for the bringing of her in, & unloading of the goods, nor yet so obedient to the Shaughs ptiualge, as the worshipfull company haue bene in toymen. Our goods brought vpon land, we were compelled to open and sell as they would set the price, or otherwise it would haue bene worse for vs. Being so satisfied to thepp contentment, we were speedily ayded with camels by the prince Erasbecke Sultan his appointment, to carry our goods to Shamakle, to which place we attay-  
 ned the first of September, finding it so thowghly furnished with all maner of commodities by oc-  
 casion of our late coming, and by such as came before vs, that no man would aske to buy any one  
 piece

These arrived at Bilbill the 14 of August 1568.

Prince Erasbecke.

When



piece of karkis of vs, and lping then the space of one whole moneth before your Agent Aretur Edwardes would disperse vs abroad with the goods, such as came out of Russia afterwards, but thoughte they goods to that and other places, and spoiled those sales we might haue made, being sent abroad in time convenient, being no little hinderance to the worshipfull, as also great grieue unto vs to see. To conclude, though our daily calling upon him, he bent himselfe for Casbin, to king with him the greatest summe of the goodes, and two of the worshipfull seruants, to witte, John Spacke and my selfe, to helpe and procure the better sale for the same: and leaving at Shamakie Christopher Fauret and Richard Pingle with thye hundred and fiftie pieces of karkis in theyr hands, supposed to be solde there or in Arrash before he should be able to make his returne from Casbin, which so farre toye as I can vnderstand, lie for the greatest part vsolde. And being upon our way, at a certayne towne called Ardowill, we chanced to barter nine pieces of karkis with those merchants for fourescope and foure batemans of cynamom, selling the karkis at one hundred and fiftie shaghs the piece.

Christopher  
Fauret and  
Richard  
Pingle.

And being at that present not farre from Teueris, called the principall place in this countrey for ventering of cloth or karkis, by much increas I perswaded your Agent to send thither to your what might be done, and receiving from him foure and fiftie pieces of karkis, as also his commission for sale of the same, I proceeded on that voyage my selfe, and one Colmach in company with me, finding in that place great store of boade cloth and karkis, thoughte thither, some part by the Turkes, who be resident there, some by the Armenians, who fetch them at Aleppo, and some by the towellmen, who traueill unto Venice, and there buy them, so that no man offered me one penie more then a hundred and fortie shaghs for a karkie: and hauing speciall commission and charge from your Agent not to stay there aboute the space of seven dayes after my arrivall there, but to repaie to Casbin with all speed, and furthermore, hauing regard to keepe by the price of the worshipfull commodities, according to theyr desire, I found meanes to barter them away for spices, such as were there to be had, neither in goodnesse nor yet in price to my content: nevertheless, considering the colde sales which were there, as well for your karkis, as also the botwines, that Ormuz way was shut up by occasion that the Indians do warre against them, which is true in deed: and againe the desire that the worshipfull hath to haue such commodities bought, I thoughte it necessarie to buy them, the prices and weight wherof appeareth at large by my account sent to the worshipfull, and is, as I thinke, the whole summe of spices bought at this time.

War against  
the Portugals  
gale at Or-  
muz.

The gouernour  
of Grozyne his  
warehouse.

It chanced me in that place to meet with the gouernours merchant of Grozyne, who was not a little desirous to bargaen with me for a hundred pieces of karkis for his maister called Lewontie, and offering me so good handes for the payment of the money or like to the merchants contentment by on the deliuerie of them, as in any place within all this countrey is to be had: and offering me besides his own letter in the behalfe of his maister, that no custome should be demanded for the same, and the obtaining also at his maisters hand as large a priuledge for the worshipfull to trauell into all parts of his dominion, as the Shaghs had giuen them, and bearing good repute made of him by the Armenians also, and that he was a Christian, I was much more the willing to bargaen with him, and solde him a hundred pieces for a hundred and threescore shaghs a piece, to be paid to the merchant in Grozyne either in money or like to his contentment, within thre dayes after the deliuerie of the karkis there, hauing a band of him made by the Spetroopolitanes owne hand, for the performance of the same, which is as sure as any heere is to be deuised: and upon the same I sent my Colmach from me backe to Shamakie, with such goodes as I bought at Teueris, and to the end he might cause the worshipfull seruants there to see this bargaen accomplished. At whose end uall there, as I do perceiue, the captaine would not accomplish his bargaen to take them, but saye he hath no need of them: such is the constancie of all men in this countrey, with whomsoever you shall bargaen. If the wares be bought, and they doe mislike it afterwards, they will bring it to gaine, and compell you to deliuer the money for it againe, regarding the Shaghs letters, which manifesteth the contrary, as a straw in the wind: by meanes wherof, the worshipfull may know to whether all be true that hath bene written of this countrey people or not.

The general  
inconstancy in  
the merchants  
and dealers of  
these parts.

I am informed by all the brokers in Teueris, that the way once open to Ormuz, from whence cometh no such store of spices as the worshipfull doth looke for, that heere will be put a way in Teueris, some for money, and other some for barter, to the number of thre hundred or foure hundred pieces of karkis, being in coulers and goodnesse to the example here sent you, the rest of the karkis to make them up a thousand, and boade clothes to the summe of a hundred, be as many as will be put away peerey in this countrey, so farre as yet I can perceiue.

The trade be-  
tweene the Venetians  
and the Armenians  
and howe easie  
it is to be broken.

To breake the trade betwixt the Venetians and the whole company of the Armenians, it is not possible, vnlesse the worshipfull will finde some meanes to receiue them peerey to the number of

before your Agent Arthur Chou-  
out of Russia afterwards, but  
les we might haue made, being  
two shipfull, as also great grie-  
be bene himselfe for Casbin, to  
two shipfull seruantes, to witte,  
of the same: and leauing at Sha-  
byed and fittie pieces of hartes  
ould be able to make his returne  
greatest part vsolde. And he-  
to to barter nine pieces of hartes  
nom, selling the hartes at one

chappell place in this country for  
gent to send thither to your what  
hartes, as also his commission for  
Colmach in company with me,  
pughe thither, some part by the  
th them at Aleppo, and some by  
so that no man offered me one  
gauting speciall commission and  
ten dayes after my arrivall there,  
regard to keepe by the price of  
meanes to barter them away for  
in price to my content: neuerthe-  
er hartes, as also the boerwes,  
re against them, which is true in  
commodities bought, I thought  
at large by my account sent to  
ght at this time.

one of Grozyne, who was not a  
his maister called Leonide, and  
the merchantes contentment up-  
is to be had: and offering me  
ould be demanded for the same,  
of the two shipfull to trauell to  
bearing good report made of him  
more the willing to barger with  
atugs a piece, so he paid to the  
with in three dayes after the de-  
ropolitanes of one hand, for the  
dised: and upon the same I sent  
I bought at Teueris, and to the  
n accomplished. At whose and  
barger to take them, but sayd  
country, with whomsoever you  
ertwardes, they will hysk it  
arding the Shabwogs letters,  
s whereof, the woysipfull may  
people of nor.

open to Ormuz, from thence  
that here will be put a way in  
of three hundred or foure hundred  
re sent you, the rest of the hartes  
pouyed, be as many as will be

any of the Armenians, it is not  
them pearly to the number of

100 catters of mules lading, and deliuer them for the same one third part money, the rest cloth and  
hartes fitted in coulers meet for the country: the examples, as abouesaid, are sent into you.

As Amadia five dayes journey from Teueris, grow abundance of gales, which are brought  
by pearly by the Venetians, and be solde there for two bisbes the Teueris bateman, which as  
your Agent here sayth, maketh five pound English weight, but I doubt it will not so be procured,  
nevertheless it is supposed much good will be done by buying of them: which might at this pre-  
sent haue partie bene pproved, if so be that some could doe but halfe that which hath bene  
written.

Touching byugges, I finde many as well at Teueris, as also in Casbin, but the goodnest no-  
thing like to such as be brought into England out of other places: and the price is so high, that  
small gaine will be had in buying of them: albeit, if I had bene furnished with money, as I  
might haue bene, if some would, I would haue bought some, to the end the goodnest of them  
might haue bene scene in England. At my coming to Casbin, I found no manner of sales of a-  
ny commoditie made, but all lying there whole, and newes giuen out (as your Agent saith) that  
the Shabwog would buy all such commodities as he had, and giue him like the spices for the same:  
but by report the Shabwog neuer took cloth into his treasure all the dayes of his life, and will not  
now beginne: his whole trade is in raw silke, which he selleth alwayes for money to the Armeni-  
ans and Turkes, and such other as use to buy it: thus hoping of that which is not like to be had, he  
hath giuen out the time, not sending to any other places: by meanes whereof the woysipfull  
goodes be vsolde to this day to the great hinderance, which I for my part am not a little sorry  
to see.

Babylon is from hence fiftene dayes journey, whereas by true report, be great store of dates,  
and solde for a biske the bateman, the commoditie fit for England: and the place so nere unto us,  
might easily haue bene knowne, if he, whose needs and sayings differ much, had bene willing to  
the same. Calhan also is but seven dayes journey from hence, and a place by report, where most  
store of spices be at all times to be had, ouer and aboue any place in this country: it could not be  
gained by him to be scene and pproved at this time: if this be losse to the woysipfull, referre it to the  
want of one which can do that which he speaketh in words.

To trauell in this country, is not onely miserable and vncomfortable, for lacke of townes and  
villages to harbour in when night commeth, and to refresh men with wholesome victualles in  
time of need, but also such scarcitie of water, that sometime in three dayes journey together is not  
to be found any waye fit for man or beast to drinke, besides the great danger we stand in for ro-  
bing by these in fiuels, who do account it remission of sinnes, to wash theyr hands in the blood of one  
of vs. Better it is theer to continue a begger in England during life, then to  
remaine a rich merchant tenen yeeres in this country, as some shall well finde at theyr coming  
hither.

By commandment of the Agent also, I went to Gillan, as well to see what harbor was there  
for your shippe, as also to vnderstand what commoditie is there best solde, and for what quantitie.  
I found the way from hence so dangerous and troublesome, that with my penne I am not able to  
not: it into you: no man trauelleth from hence thither, but such poore people as need constraineth  
to say Rice, for theyr reliefe to liue vpon, and they lay not aboue twentie batemans vpon a catter,  
and it peth no lower then the skirts of the saddle, and he escapeth very hardly that commeth there  
with the same.

The towne of Layghone, which was the chiefest place in all that land, haue I serue, and Lan-  
groe and Rosare also, which be now lately ouerrunne by the Shabwog and his power, and be so  
spoiled, and the people so robbed, that not one of them is able to buy one hartie. The rest com-  
modities there to be bought, is rawe silke, and is solde in the Summer time for eight and thirtie  
batwogs the Layghone bateman, which is little aboue fortie pound weight, and for ready money:  
also there is to be had what store of Allome you will, and solde there for one biske the Teueris  
bateman.

In these partes be many Turkie merchants resident, which giue an outward shew, as though  
they were glad of our coming hither, but secretly they be our mortall enemies, searching by all  
meanes to hinder our sales, because we should the sooner giue ouer our trade thither, while in  
possest of time I hope will grow to better perfection. They wish vs to go to Hallape with the  
rest of our commodities vsolde, where they say we shall haue good entertainment in spite of  
the great number of Venetians which be there resident, and the custome but two in the hundred,  
and our harties to be solde presently, had we neuer so many, for twelue duckets, which makes of  
this money one hundred five and fiftie shabwogs: but by such as know the place, market & custome,

Babylon is  
dayes journey  
from Calbut.

His voyage to  
Gilan.

The matter of  
the Turkish  
merchants.

it is reported to vs credibly to the contrary, and that such hartles as ours be are not solde for above eight buckets there: the custome thirtie in the hundred, & moze, that no place in the world is so well furnished with good cloth, and hartles, & of so haue couler, as that place is, supposing it to be craftily purposed of them, to bring vs into trouble, which God defend vs from.

The prices of  
Spices.

The prices of Spices be these, at this present imbaned by reason the way is shut to Dmyer, which when God shall send open, I purpose (God willing) to see, and at my returns to aduertise the most happy what benefite is there to be had in all points, so neere as I can learne: Pepper 25 hatwights the Teueris bateman: Cloves 50 hatwights. Long pepper 25 hatwights. Saces large 50 hatwights. Ginger 24 hatwights, ready money all, or els looke not vpon them. And the best sort of rawe silde is solde for 60 hatwights the Teueris bateman. Thus for want of further matter to enlarge, I end in this time, beseeching God to preserve you in continual health.

By your obedient seruant  
Laurence Chapman.

### Notes concerning this fourth voyage into Persia, begunne in the moneth of Iulie 1568, gathered by M. Richard Wlles

from the mouth of M. Arthur Edwards which was  
Agent in the same.



When he came first to the Sophies presence, at his court in Casbin, by bringing his interpreter with him, and standing far off, the Sophie (sitting in a seat royall with a great number of his noble men about him) had him come neere, and that thit, when he came so neere him that he might haue touched him with his hand. Then the first demand that he asked him, was from what countrey he came: he answered, that he came from England. Then asked he of his noble men, who knew any such countrey? But when Edwards saw that none of them had any intelligence of that name, he named it Ingiltterra, as the Italians call England. Then one of the noble men said London, meaning thereby London, which name is better knownen in farre countries out of Christenhome, then is the name of England. When Edwards heard him name London, he said that that was the name of the chiefe citie of England, as was Teueris of the chiefe citie of Persia. He asked him many thinges moze, as of the realme of England, maruelling that it should be an Island, of so great riches and power, as Edwards declared vnto him, of the riches & abundance of our merchandize, as he further understood by our traffike in Moscouia, and other countries. He demanded also many thinges of the Queenes Maiestie, and of the customes and lawes of the realme: saying oftentimes in his owne language, Bara colla (that is to say) Well said. He asked also many thinges of King Philip, & of his wars against the Turke at Malta. Then he demanded of him what was the chiefe cause of his relox into his realme. And being certified that it was for the trade of merchandize, he asked what kinde of merchandize he could bring thither. Such (said he) as the Venetian merchants do, which dwelling in our country in the citie of London, send to Venice, & from thence into Turkie by Halepo and Tripoli in Syria, from whence, as by the second and third hands, with great charges of many customes and other thinges thereunto pertaining, they are at the length brought into your countrey and citie of Persia. What merchandize are those? sayd the Sophie. Edwards answered, that they were great abundance of fine hartles, of broad clothes, of all soyes and costlers, as scarlets, violets, and other of the finest cloth of all the world. Also that the Venetians brought out of England, not onely such clothes ready made, but furthermore great plenty of fine wooll to mingle with theyr woolls, of which they could not otherwise make fine cloth: affirming that there went out of England yearly that wayes, above two hundred thousand hartles, and as many broad clothes, beside fine wooll and other merchandize, beside also the great abundance of like clothes, the which were carryed into Spaine, Barbarie, & diuers other countries. The Sophie then asked him by what meanes such merchandize might be brought into Persia. Right well he (said he) by the way of Moscouia, with moze safetie and in much shorter time then the Venetians can bring them: first from England to Venice, and from thence into Persia, by the way of Turkie. And therefore if it shall please your Maiestie to grant vs free passage into all your dominions, with such priuileges as may appertaine to the safe gard of our liues, goods, and merchandize, we will furnish your countries with all such merchandize, and other commodities, in shorter time, and better cheape then you may haue the same at the Turks hands. This talke and much moze was betwene the Sophie and Edwards for the space of two houres, all which thinges liked him so well, that shortly after he granted to the saide Arthur Edwards other priuileges, for the trade of merchandize into Persia,

Londra.  
London.

The Venetian  
aria traffike  
in England.

ours be are not solde for above  
no place in the world is so well  
place is, supposing it to be traf-  
from.

the way is shut to Cyprus, which  
my returne to advertise the way  
an learne: Pepper 25 shillings  
gins. Spaces large 50 shillings.  
And the best sort of raw silk is  
her matter to enlarge, I and my

our obedient servant  
Lawrence Chapman.

Persia, begunne in  
Richard Willes  
which was

ture in Casbin, bying his in-  
chie (sitting in a seat royall with  
them come nere, and that they  
ched him with his hand. Then  
at countrey he came: he answered  
of his noble men, who knew  
any intelligence of the name,  
of the noble men said London,  
countries out of Christendome,  
ondro, he said that that was the  
tie of Persia. He asked him ma-  
ould be an Island, of so great  
abundance of our merchandize,  
berries. He demanded also many  
the realme: saying oftentimes  
shed also many things of king-  
ded of him what was the chief  
of the trade of merchandize, he  
said he) as the Venetian mer-  
to Venice, & from thence into  
nd and third hands, with great  
they are at the length brought  
e 3 sayd the Sophie. Edwards  
othes, of all sorts and colours,  
that the Venetians brought  
great plenty of fine wooll to  
me cloth: affirming that there  
no harkles, and as many how  
abundance of like clothes, the  
The Sophie then asked him  
the well he (said he) by the way  
enetians can bying them: first  
Turkie. And therefore if it  
ions, with such priviledges as  
we will furnish your coun-  
re, and better cheape then you  
was betweene the Sophie and  
so well, that shortly after he  
e of merchandize into Persia,  
all

all written in A pure and gold letters, and delivered unto the lord keeper of the Shoppie his great  
seale. The lord keeper was named Coche Calisay, who sayd that when the Shaugh (that is the  
king of persia) did like to seale any letters, that last priviledge should be sealed and delivered to Law-  
rence Chapman. In this priviledge is our principall article for servants of merchants: That if  
the Agent to perceiue that upon their nauyable doings, they would become Busioy men, that then  
the Agent wheresoever he shall find any such servant or seruants, to take them and put them in  
prison, and no person to keepe them or maintaine them. This article was granted in respect of a  
rubbish among the Persians, being Spahumetans, whose maner is friendly to receive and wel en-  
ertaine both with gifts and living, all such Christians, as forsaking their religion, will become of  
the religion of the Persians. In somuch that before this priviledge was granted, there was great  
occasion of nauyghtie servants to deceiue and rob their masters, that under the colour of professing  
that religion, they might live among them in such safetie, that you might haue no lawe agaynst  
them, either to punish them or to recover your goods at their hands, or elsewhere. For before the  
Shophie (whom they say to be a marvelous wise and gracious prince) seemed to fauour out nati-  
on, and to graunt them such priviledges, the people abused them very much, and so hated them, that  
they would not touch them, but reuiled them, calling them Cafars and Gawars, which is, infidels  
or infidellers. But after they saw how greatly the prince fauoured them, they had them after-  
ward in great reuerence, and would kill their hands, and vse them very friendly. For before they  
took it for no wrong to rob them, betray them, beare false witness against them, and such mer-  
chandizes as they had bought or sold, make them take it againe, and change it as often as them-  
selves. And if any stranger by chance had killed one of them, they would haue the life of two for  
one, and for the debts of any stranger, would take the goods of any other of the same nation, with  
many other such like abuses, in maner vnknowen to the prince, before the complaints of our men  
made unto him for reformation of such abuses: which were the cause that no merchant strangers  
of contrary religion, durst come into his dominions with their commodities, which might be great  
to the profit of him and his subiects.

The Articles of the second priuiledge deliuered to Lawrence  
Chapman, which are to be annexed vnto the former priuiledge.

- 10 Item that the merchants haue free libertie, as in their first priuiledge, to goe vnto Gillan,  
and all other places of his dominions, now or hereafter when occasion shall be giuen.
- 11 Item, if by misfortune any of their ships should byake, or fall vpon any part of his dominions  
on the sea coast, his subiects to helpe with all speed to saue the goods and to be deliuered to any  
of the said merchants that liueth: or otherwise to bee kept in safetie vntill any of them come to  
demand them.
- 12 Item, if any of the said merchants depart this life in any citie or to wone, or on the high way,  
his gouernours there to see their goods safely kept, and to bee deliuered to any other of them that  
shall demaund them.
- 13 Item, the said merchants to take such camell men as they themselues will, being countrey  
people, and that no Killisell Bath doe let or hinder them. And the said owners of the camels to bee  
bound to and weere them such goods as they shall receive at their hands, and the camell men to stand  
to the losse of their camels or horses.
- 14 Item more, that the said carriers do demaund no more of them, then their agreement was  
to pay them.
- 15 Item more, if they be at a price with any carriers, & haue giuen earnest, the Camel men to  
see they keepe their promise.
- 16 Item, if any of the said merchants be in feare to trauell, to giue them one or more to goe with  
them, and see them in safetie with their goods to the place they will goe vnto.
- 17 Item, in all places, so far, in all cities, townes or villages on the high way, his subiects to  
giue them house roome, and victuals for their money.
- 18 Item, the said merchants may in any place where they shall thinke best, build or buy any  
house or houses to their owne vse. And no person to molest or trouble them, and to stand in any  
Carauan where they will, or shall thinke good.

The commodities which the merchants may haue by this trade into Persia, are thought to be  
great, and may in time perhaps be greater then the Portugals trade into the East Indies, for  
much as by the way of Persia into England, the reuerne may be made euery yeere once: where  
as

as the Portugals make the retourne from Calcut but once in two yeeres, by a long and dangerous voyage all by sea: for whereas the cite and Island of Ormus, lying in the gulfes of Persia, is the most famous marke towne of all East India, whither all the merchandises of India are brought, the same may in shorter time and more safely, be brought by land and rivers through Persia, even unto the Caspian sea, and from thence by the countreys of Bullia or Spontroua by rivers, even unto the cite of Yeraslaue, and from thence by land a hundred and foure score miles to Vologa, and from thence againe all by water, even unto England.

The merchandises which be had out of Persia for the retourne of wares, are like of all sorts and colours, both rawe and wrought. Also all manner of spices and drugs, pearles and precious stones, like wise carpets of diuers sorts, with diuers other rich merchandises. It was told me of them that came last from Persia, that there is more like brought into some one cite of Persia, then is of cloth brought into the cite of London. Also that one village of Armenia named Gilgar, doth carie yearly five hundred, and sometime a thousand mules laden with like to Halepo in Soris of Turkie, being foure daies iourney frō Tripoli, where the Venetians haue their continual abiding, and send from thence like which they retourne for English habites and other clothes into all partes of Christendome.

### The maner how the Christians become Bufor men, and forsake their religion.

I haue noted here before that if any Christian will become a Bufor man, that is, one that hath forsaken his faith, and be a Mahumetan of their religion, they giue him many gifts, and sometime also a living. The maner is, that when the deuill is entred into his heart to forsake his faith, he resorteth to the Soltan or gouernour of the towne, to whom hee maketh protestation of his vniuersal purpose. The gouernour appointeth him a boye, and one to ride before him on another boye, bearing a sword in his hand, and the Bufor man bearing an arrow in his hand, and riding in the cite, cursing his father and mother: and if ever after he retourne to his owne religion, hee is guilty of death, as is signified by the sword borne before him. A yong man, a seruant of one of our merchants, because he would not abide the correction of his master for his faultes, was minded to forsake his faith. But (as God would) he fell suddenly sicke and died, before he gaue himselfe to the deuill. If he had become a Bufor man, he had greatly troubled the merchants, for if he would then haue sayd that halfe their goods had bene his, they would haue giuen credit vnto him. For the auoiding of which inconuenience, it was granted in the priuileges that no Bufor man, &c. as there appeareth.

In Persia in diuers places, open and hinde beare the tents and household stuffe of the poore men of the countrey, which haue neither camels nor horses.

### Of the tree which beareth Bombasine cotton, or Gossampine.

In Persia is great abundance of Bombasine cotton, & very fine, this groweth on a certaine little tree or byer, not past the height of a mans waiste or little more: the tree hath a slender stalk like vnto a byler, or to a carnation gilliflowre, with very many banches, bearing on euery banch a fruit or rather a rod, growing in round forme, containing in it the cotton: when this bud or rod commeth to the bignesse of a wallnut, it openeth and sheweth forth the cotton, which groweth still in bignesse vntill it be like a fleece of wooll as big as a mans fist, and be gettineth to be loose, and then they get it as it were the ripe fruit. The seeds of these trees are as big as peason, and are blacke, and some what flat, and not round: they sow them in plowed ground, where they grow in the fields in great abundance in many countreies in Persia, and diuers other regions.

### The writing of the Persians.

Arthur Edwards shewed me a letter of the Sophie, writen in their letters backward, subscribed with the hands both of the Sophie and his Secretarie. The Sophies subscription, was only one word (his name I suppose was Shaugh) writen in golden letters vpon red paper. The whole letter was also writen on the same piece of red paper, being long and narrow, about the length of a foote, and not past three inches broad. The priuate signet of the Sophie, was a round printed marke about the bignes of a riall, onely printed vpon the same paper without any waie or other scale, the letters seeme so misshapen and disorderd, that a man would thinke it were some what scribbled in maner at adventures. Yet they say that almost euery letter, which his prickke or circumscriber, signifieth a whole word, in so much that in a piece of paper as big as a mans hand, their writing doth containe as much as doth ours almost in a sheete of paper.

peeres, by a long and dang-  
 erous voyage in the gulf of Persia, in  
 the merchant-ships of India are  
 by land and rivers through Per-  
 sian Russia to Spokouia by rivers,  
 is about fourscore miles to Vo-

wares, are like of all boxes and  
 pearls and precious stones,  
 of silver. It was told me of them  
 the one citie of Persia, then is of  
 Persia named Gilgar, doch carie  
 to Halepo, in Soris of Turkie,  
 their continual abiding, and send  
 other clothes into all partes of

### of the Bufor men,

For man, that is, one that hath for-  
 gotten his many grifes, and sometime  
 hath a heart to forsake his faith, he re-  
 ceiveth protection of his worldly  
 friends, and is forced to forsake his  
 faith, and to forsake his  
 conscience, and to forsake his  
 religion, he is guilty of  
 the death of one of our merchants,  
 whose vessel, was minded to forsake his  
 faith, he gave himselfe to the devill. If  
 he should forsake his faith, he should  
 be damned. For the avoiding of  
 this sin, he should be as there appeareth,  
 the household stuffe of the poore man of

### of the Gossampine.

This groweth on a certaine little  
 tree hath a slender stalk like wood  
 growing on every branch a fruit of red  
 when this bud of god cometh to  
 which groweth still in bignesse  
 to be loose, and then they fall  
 season, and are blacke, and some-  
 times they grow in the fields in great

ns.

In their letters backward, which  
 The Sophies subscription, was  
 written in letters upon red paper. The  
 long and narrow, about 3 length  
 the Sophie, was a round printed  
 paper without any ware of other  
 and think it were somewhat scrup-  
 ous with his picture of circumference, by  
 a mans hand, their writing was

The

The first voyage into Persia made by M. Thomas Banister, and  
 M. Jeffrey Ducket Agents for the Molcouie companie, begun from England in  
 the yeere 1568. and continuing to the yeere 1574. following. Written  
 by P. I. from the mouth of M. Lionell Plumtree.



Upon the 3. day of July 1568. they embarked themselves at Yerallaue, being ac-  
 companied with Lionell Plumtree, and some 12. Englishmen more, in a Barke  
 called the Thomas Banister, of the burthen of 70. tunnes, taking also along  
 with them of Russias to the number of 40. for their use and imployment. It fell  
 out in the way, before they came to Astracan by 40. miles, that the Nagaian  
 Tartars, being a kind of the worst and cruell people, made an assault upon them with  
 3. boates of theirs, each of them being armed, some with swords, some with speares, and some  
 others with bowes and arrowes, and the whole number of them they discovered to bee about 300.  
 men. They for their partes, although they could have wished a quiet voyage and iourney without  
 violence, yet not willing to be spoiled with such Barbarians as they were, began to de-  
 fend themselves against their assault, by meanes whereof a very terrible and fierce fight followed  
 and continued hore & sharpe for two howers, wherein our men so well plaid their parts with their cal-  
 livers, that they forced the Tartars to flee with the losse of 120. of them, as they were afterwards  
 confirmed by a Russe prisoner, which escaped from the Nagaian, and came to them to Astracan, at  
 which tyme they arrived the 20. of August.

In this tyme of Astracan they were somewhat hindered of their iourney, and wasted the space of  
 6. weekes by reason of a great armie of 70000. Turkes and Tartars which came thither upon  
 the indignation of the great Turke, hoping either to have surprised it suddenly, or by continuance of  
 siege to win the same. But in the end by reason that the Winter approached, as also, because they  
 had received newes of a great expedition, which the Emperour of Russia was in providing for  
 the defence of the sayde place, they were constrained to raise their siege, and to leaue the towne as they  
 found it.

Upon their departure our men had opportunity to proceed on their voyage, and being the oc-  
 casion, they left Astracan, and came to Bilbill towards the ende of October: from whence they  
 went to Shauran, where (as they lodged in their tents) they were greatly molested with strange  
 troops of Golcaues of soyes, which were so busie with them that they took the meate and victu-  
 als out of their lodgings, and deuoured to the bare bones in one night a mightie wild Boze that  
 was sent unto them for a present from the gouernour of the countrey.

Having staid here some thre or foure dayes in providing of carriages and other necessaries for  
 their iourney, they departed thence and came to Shamachie, which is foure dayes iourney from the  
 sayde Shauran. In this towne of Skamachie their whole companie spent out the Winter,  
 and from thence in Aprill following, they took their iourney towards Ardowill a place of great  
 account and much esteeme, by reason of the sepulchres of the Emperours of Persia, which for the  
 most part lie there buried, and so is growen to be a place of their superstitious deuotion. In this  
 towne of Ardowill they solourned the space of 5. or 6. moneths, finding some traffique and sales,  
 but to no purpose, the towne being more inhabited and frequented with gentlemen and noblemen  
 then merchants.

The difference of religion bred great hostiles in this towne whyles they remained there: for the  
 brother sought the destruction of the brother, and the next kinemen rose by one against an-  
 other, insomuch that one of their companie Lionell Plumtree hath scene in one day sometimes 14.  
 slain in a garboile. And he being further desirous to see their manner of fight, or rather somewhat  
 more curious to behold, then mistrustfull of their blowes, was like to have buyne a share in their  
 bloody tragodie, being twice wounded with their hot and arrowes, although not to the death.

At this tyme the Shaw Thomas sent a messenger for our men to come to his presence at Cas-  
 bin, to whom Thomas Banister failed not to goe, although master Ducket lay very sicke at  
 Ardowill, and in such case that they almost despaired of his recouerie. Wee being come to the  
 Shaw, was receiued and entertained of him with great fauour and speciall countenance, and  
 had the most part of all his requests granted him, this one he excepted, that whereas he entreated  
 a privilege of suffrance to transport and carie through his dominions certaine hostles into India,  
 the Shaw though seemed loth to yeeld therunto, and yet did not altogether denie it, but referred it to  
 some further time. As for the point of traffique, hee could not make that motion of request that was  
 not so soon granted as it was preferred: and the Shaw though himselfe boughte there of him many  
 herles, and made him as good payment as any man could wishe, and oftentimes would send him  
 money

money for the wares before the wares were delivered, that he might bee the suret of this honorable intended dealing.

One thing somewhat strange I thought good in this place to remember, that whereas hee purposed to send a great summe of money to Mecca in Arabia, for an offering to Sphomet their prophet, hee would not send any money or coine of his owne, but sent to the English merchants to exchange his coyne for theirs, according to the value of it, perceiving this reason for the same, that the money of the merchants was gotten by good meanes, and with good consciences, and was therefore woorthie to bee made an oblation to their holy prophet, but his owne money was rather gotten by fraud, oppression, and dishonest meanes, and therefore was not fit to serve for so honorable a use.

After sixe moneths spent in Casbin, the sayd Thomas Banister repared towards the great citie of Tauris, where being arrived, hee found master Duckett well recovered of his sickness, whom he had left ill at Ardowill.

At this Citie the foresayd master Duckett made sales of the English commodities, remaining there to that purpose the space of two yeeres and a halfe. And besides other kindes of merchandises of that countrey, he bought great store of galls which grow in great abundance at a place within one dayes iourney of the aforesaid Tauris.

After this Thomas Banister departed from Tauris, and went to Shamachie, to give order for the transporting of those commodities which were bought for England. And having dispatched them a way, hee went thence to Arrath, a towne foure dayes iourney with camels from Shamachie, for the buying of rawe silke. But there by reason of the unwholesomnesse of the ayre, and corruption of the waters in the hote time of the yeere, hee with Lawrence Chapman and some other English men unhappily died: which being known of master Duckett, hee immediately came from Tauris to Arrath, to take possession of the goods, for otherwise by the custome of the countrey, if there had bene no merchant or other friend of his to enter upon that which hee left, all had fallen into the Sbahaghs hands, which goods notwithstanding could not be recovered from the officers which had sealed and sealed up the same, untill master Duckett had bene in person with the Sbahagh, and had procured his order for the deliverie thereof.

The death of  
sp. Banister.

Lionell Plumtree in the meane time that master Duckett was at Casbin in suite for goodes upon the perswasion of certayne Bogbarians, made proposition for a iourney to Cathaya, with carriages and commodities, and having all things ready, departed secretly with a Caravan: but being gone forwarde on his way sixe dayes iourney, some little boyemen by the procurement of Duntrey Greenfell (who afterwards being at Ormuz in the East Indies, was there cruelly burnt in the Inquisition by the Portugals) were sent after him in poste from Soltan Erastbecke, the Sbahaghs Lieutenant, to fetch him backe agayne, not suffering him to passe on so perillous and dangerous a iourney for feare of divers inconveniences that might follow.

After this master Duckett returned from Casbin to Shamachie agayne, and immediately made preparation for a iourney to Cashan, being about foure dayes iourney from Shamachie, and carried with him 4. mules laden with money.

In the way of his travell hee passed through Perspolis, sometime the royall state of the Emperours of Persia, but now altogether ruined and desaced, whereof remaine to be seene at this day two gates onely that are distant one from the other the space of 12. miles, and some few pinnacles in the mountaines and conveniences for fresh water.

The foresayd Cashan is a towne that consisteth all together of merchandise, and the best trade of all the lande is there, being greatly frequented by the merchants of India.

Here our men bought great store of all maner of wroughthe Silkes, and some Spices, and good store of Turkie stones.

The towne is much to bee commended for the civill and good government that is there used. An idle person is not suffered to live amongst them.

The childe that is but sixe yeeres olde, is set to some labour. No ill rule, disorder or riot by gaming or otherwise, is there permitted. Playing at Dice or Cardes is by the lawe punished with death.

At this Cashan they remained about the space of tenne weekes, and then came downe to gaine to Shamachie, and after some time spent in divers places of the countrey for buying of rawe silke

thee bee the surety of this voyage

to remember, that whereas hee  
in an offering to Spahomet their  
sent to the English merchants  
ving this reason for the same,  
and with good confidences, and  
hee, but his owne money was  
was not fit to serve for so

ter repaired towards the great  
well recovered of his sickness,

e English commodities, remain  
and besides other kindes of mer  
into in great abundance at a place

to Shamachie, to give order for  
land. And having dispatched  
journey with camels from Sha  
in whole someness of the way,  
which Lawrence Chapman and  
of master Ducket, hee immedi  
for otherwise by the custome of  
is to enter upon that which hee  
standing could not bee second  
till master Ducket had bene in  
erie thereof.

et was at Casbin in sure for  
position for a journey to Ca  
wie, departed secretly with a Co  
some little horsemen by the way  
ermuz in the East Indies, was  
ere sent after him in poste from  
in Jache agayne, not suffering  
re of divers inconveniences that

chie agayne, and immediately  
pes journey from Shamachie,

metime the royall state of the  
whereof remaine to be sent at  
pace of 12. miles, and some few

gether of merchandize, and  
mented by the merchants of

Wikes, and some Spices, and  
d government that is there by

. No ill rule, disorder or mis  
Cardes is by the late present

ches, and then came downe  
of the comerce for buying of the  
like

like and other commodities, they came at last to Shauran againe, where their ship was in har  
bour, and then they shipped all their goods and embarked themselves also, setting saile the eight  
day of May, in the yeere 1573. intending to fetch Astracan. By reason of the barriere of the  
mountes and dangerous flats of the Caspian sea, they beat it up and downe some 20. dayes. And  
the 28. day riding at anker upon the flats, certaine Russe Callaks, which are outlawes of bani  
shen men, having intelligence of their being there, and of the great wealth that they had with them,  
came to them with their boates under the colour of friendship, and cured their ship, but immedi  
ately theyooke their hatchers and slew divers of the Russes that were of the ship upon the hatchers:  
Whereupon master Ducket, Lionell Plumtree, William Smith, the master, a man of singular  
valoure, and Amos Riall being under the Sparkerke, did so well behaue themselves, that they  
slaw the hatchers, and slew 14. of the Callaks gunners, and hurt and wounded about 30. more,  
being of them all in number 150. at the least, armed with calivers and other weapons fit for so wil  
lamous a purpose.

¶ Ducket notwithstanding and the rest aforesayd, received divers wounds from the enemy,  
and were so hurt, and withall so oppressed with the multitude and force of them, that they were at  
last constrained to make an agreement with the Callaks by rendering the ship into their hands, ha  
ving received first their othes sworn by their crucifixes, not to doe any further harme to their per  
sons.

Thus the shippe being taken, and all the English grievously hurt, the Callaks immediately  
discharged the ship of them, putting them all into the ship boate with two or three Persian targets  
full of horse flesh and swines fleshe, without further victuals or reliefe: they being in that case,  
made the best hast they could to get to Astracan: and being come to the towne, master Ducket  
made great sute to the captaine, to haue men and boates set out for the recovering and recovering  
of the ship if it were possible, who immediately sent one his sonne with forty boates and five hun  
dred men to pursue the Pirats, and by good hap came to the place where they rid at anker with  
the ship, but by reason of their foolishnesse in striking up their drummes before they were come  
nere them, the Callaks discovering the boates, cut their cables, and put out to sea, whereupon  
the boates not being able to follow them, returned againe to Astracan. After which, three score  
boates more were sent out to pursue them agayne the second time: and that second armie came to  
a place where they found many of those Callaks, and slew them and found out the places where  
they had hid certaine parcels of their goods in the earth in the chertles of the ship: all which they re  
covered againe for the English merchants, to the valew of 5000. li. of 30. or 40. thousand pound,  
but all the rest the Callaks in their ship had caried away.

¶ In the same place they found ether, divers of the Callaks which the English men had slaine,  
buried in the earth, and waie for forty or fiftye yardes of Sattin, and Cassiaes, and some in  
Turkie carpets cut and spoiled by those vilanous Pirats, of whom afterwards as many as  
could be taken by the Persians, who entirely loued the English merchants, were put to most cruel  
torments in all places according to their desertes.

But our men being thus spoiled of their goods, and wounded in their bodies, remained about  
two moneths at Astracan, for their better recouerie: and hauing gotten some reasonable strength,  
they then repaired boates, and went by the riuer Volga to Cazan, with such goods as they had  
recovered from the Callaks. From Cazan they went towards Yeraslaue, but in the way the ice  
intercepted them about the beginning of October, where suddenly in the night they were taken  
with a cruell and vehement frost, and therewithall the waters so congeled, that their boates were  
crushed and cut in sunder with the ice, whereby they sustained both a further danger of life and  
loss of goods: but as much as they could preserve with much adoe, they conveyed over land in  
sleds to Volodga, and from thence sent much of it to S. Nicholas, to bee laden in the shippes for  
England.

But master Ducket, Lionell Plumtree, and Amos Riall went with some parcels to the Mos  
ko, and there sold certaine quantities of it to the Emperour, who pitying the mightie losse that  
they had sustained by his owne rebellious people and subjects, bought himselfe as much as hee  
liked, and paid present money for the same. So that Winter being spent out in Mosko, and  
such wares provided by them as serued for England, they departed to S. Nicholas, and there  
embarked in the moneth of August: and hauing endured a very terrible passage in nine weekes  
and three dayes, with some hardnesse of victuals, contrary and furious winde, and other sea ac  
cidents, they arrived at London in the moneth of October one thousand five hundred twentie and  
four, and so made an ende of an unfortunate voyage, which if it had pleased God to prosper, that  
all things had come home as safely as they were carefully provided, and painfully laboured for.



it had procured the richest voyage and most profitable returne of commodities, that had ever bene undertaken by English merchants, who notwithstanding all misfortunes, lost nothing of their principall adventure, but onely the interest and gaine that might have risen by the use of their stocke in the meane time.

Further observations concerning the state of Persia, taken in the foresayd first voyage into those partes, and written by M. Jeffrey Duckes, one of the Agents employed in the same.



Shamachie is the fairest towne in all Media, and the chiefest commodity of that countrey is rawe silke, and the greatest plenty thereof is at a towne three dayes journey from Shamachie called Arash: and within three dayes journey of Arash, is a countrey named Groisine, whose inhabitants are Christians, and are thought to be they which are otherwise called Georgians: there is also much silke to be sold. The chiefest towne of that countrey is called Zegham, from whence is caried yearly into Persia, an incredible quantitie of Wasell nuts, all of one sort and goodnesse, and as good and thime shaled as are our Flibbers, Of these are caried yearly the quantitie of 4000. Camels laden.

Of the name of the Sophie of Persia, and why he is called the Shawgh, and of other customes.



The king of Persia (whom here we call the great Sophi) is not there so called, but so called the Shawgh. If were there dungcrous to call him by the name of Sophi, because that Sophi in the Persian tongue, is a begger, and it were as much as to call him, The great begger. He lieth at a towne called Casbin, which is situate in a goodly fertile valley of three or foure dayes journey in length. The towne is but cull builded, and for the most part all of birke, not hardened with fire, but onely dyed at the Sunne, as is the most part of the building of all Persia. The king hath not come out of the compasse of his owne house, in three and thirtie or foure and thirtie yeeres, whereof the cause is not knowne, but as they say, it is vpon a superstition of certaine prophesies to which they are greatly addicted: he is now about fourefcore yeeres of age, and very lustie. And to keepe him the more lustie, hee hath foure wiues atwayes, and about three hundred concubines, and once in the yeere he hath all the faire maidens and wiues that may be found a great way about, brought vnto him, whom he diligently peruseth, seeing them in all partes, taking such as he liketh, and putting away some of them which hee hath kept before, and with them that he putteth away, he gratifieth some such as hath done him the best service. And if he chance to take any mans wife, her husband is very glad thereof, and in recompence of her, oftentimes he giueth the husband one of his olde stoxe, whom he thankfully receiveth.

How strans  
gets acc vied.

If any stranger being a Christian shall come before him, he must put on a new paire of shoes made in that countrey, and from the place where he entereth, there is digged as it were, a carrie all the way, untill he come to the place where he shall talke with the king, who standeth at wayes & boue in a gallerie, when he talketh with any strangers: and when the stranger is departed, then is the carrie cast downe, and the ground made euen againe.

Of the religion of the Persians.



Their religion is all one with the Turkes, sauing that they differ who was the right successor of Mahomet. The Turkes say that it was one Homer and his sonne Viman. But the Persians say that it was one Mortus Ali, which they would procure in this manner. They say there was a counsell called to decide the matter who should be the successor: and after they had called vpon Mahomet to reueale vnto them his will and pleasure therein, there came among them a liele lizard, who declared that it was Mahomet's pleasure that Mortus Ali should be his successor. This Mortus Ali was a ballant man, and slew Homer the Turkes prophet. He had a sword that he fought withall, with the which he conquered all his enemies, and killed as many as he stroke. When Mortus Ali died, there came a holy prophet, who gaue them warning that shortly there would come a white Camell, vpon the which hee charged them to lay the body of sword of Mortus Ali, and to suffer the Camell to carie it whither he would. Cf

It goodly and  
well growndeth  
religion.

immobilitie, that had ever bene vnder  
 the sea side, and the camell going a good way into the sea, was with the swoy and booy of  
 Morus Ali taken vp into heauen, for whose returne they haue long looked in Persia. And  
 for this cause, the king alwayes keepeth a hoyle ready sailed for him, and also of late kept for  
 him one of his owne daughters to be his wife, but she died in the yere of our Lorde 1573. And  
 for furthermore, that if hee come not hoyle, they shalbe of our belife: much like the Jewes, loo-  
 king for their Messias, as to come and reigne among them, like a woody king for euer, and de-  
 liuer them from the captiuitie which they are now in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gen-  
 tiles.

of Persia, taken in

by M. Jeffrey Duc-  
 the same.

and the chiefest commodities of that  
 thereof is as a towne three dayes  
 within three dayes journey of A-  
 habitants are Christians, and are  
 Georgians: there is also much  
 countrey is called Zegham, from  
 Hasell nuts, all of one sox and  
 these are carried perrely the quan-

why he is called  
 es.

the Sophi) is not there so called,  
 ingorous to call him by the name  
 tongue, is a begger, and it were  
 likely as a towne called Casbin,  
 of three or foure dayes journey in  
 for the most part all of byrke, not  
 part of the building of all Persia,  
 in three and thirtie or foure and  
 it is vpon a superstition of re-  
 about foure or fyve yeres of age, and  
 ues alwayes, and about these yem-  
 mens and wises that may be found  
 tech, feeling them in all partes, to  
 had kept before, and with them  
 the best service. And if he chaunge  
 a recompence of her, oftentimes  
 receiueth.

must put on a new paire of shoes  
 ere is digged as it were, a ransle  
 the king, who standeth alwayes  
 when the stranger is departed, then

ans.

they differ who was the right  
 the Homer and his sonne Viman,  
 which they would proue in this  
 de the matter who should bee the  
 into them his will and pleasure  
 it was Spaurmets pleasure that  
 allant man, and first Homer the  
 which he conquered all his ene-  
 there came a holy prophet, who  
 well, vpon the which hee changed  
 mel to carie it whither he would.  
 Cy

The which being perfourmed, the said white camell caried the swoy and booy of Morus Ali into  
 the sea side, and the camell going a good way into the sea, was with the swoy and booy of  
 Morus Ali taken vp into heauen, for whose returne they haue long looked in Persia. And  
 for this cause, the king alwayes keepeth a hoyle ready sailed for him, and also of late kept for  
 him one of his owne daughters to be his wife, but she died in the yere of our Lorde 1573. And  
 for furthermore, that if hee come not hoyle, they shalbe of our belife: much like the Jewes, loo-  
 king for their Messias, as to come and reigne among them, like a woody king for euer, and de-  
 liuer them from the captiuitie which they are now in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gen-  
 tiles.

The Shaugh, or king of Persia, is nothing in strength and power comparable vnto the Turke:  
 for although he hath a great Dominion, yet is it nothing to be compared with the Turke: nei-  
 ther hath hee any great Ordnance of gunnes, or harquebusses. Notwithstanding, his chiefest  
 some Ismael, about twentie and six yeres past, fought a great battaile with the Turke, and  
 slew of his armie about an hundred thousand men, who after his returne, was by his father cast  
 into prison, and there continueth vntill this day: for his father the Shaugh, had him in suspicion that  
 he would haue put him downe, and haue taken the regiment vnto himselfe.

Their opinion of Christ is, that hee was an holy man, and a great Propheet, but not like vnto  
 Mahumer: saying, that Mahumer was the last propheet, by whome all things were finished, and  
 was therefore the greatest. To proue that Christ was not Gods soune, they say that God had  
 neuer wife, and therefore could haue no sonne or children. They goe on pilgrimage from the fur-  
 thest part of Persia, vnto Mecha in Arabia, and by the way they visite also the Sepulchre of Christ  
 at Ierusalem, which they now call Couche Kalye.

The most part of spices which cometh into Persia, is brought from the Islande of Ormus,  
 situate in the gulfes of Persia, called Sinus Persicus, betwene the maine lande of Persia and Ara-  
 bia, &c. The Portugals touche at Ormus both in their voyage to East India, and homewarde a-  
 gaine, and from thence bring all such spices as are occupied in Persia and the regions there a-  
 bout: for of pepper they bring very small quantitie, and that at a very deare price.

The Turkes oftentimes bring pepper from Mecha in Arabia, which they sell as good cheape  
 as that which is brought from Ormus. Silkes are brought from no place, but are wrought all  
 in their owne countrey. Ormus is within two miles of the maine lande of Persia, and the Por-  
 tugalles fetche their fresh water there, for the which they pay tribute to the Shaugh or king of  
 Persia.

Within Persia, they haue neither golde nor siluer mines, yet haue they copied money, both of  
 golde and siluer, and also other small monies of copper. There is brought into Persia an incredi-  
 ble summe of Dutch dolers, which for the most part are there employed in rawe silke.

They haue fewe bookes, and lesse learning, and are for the most part very busy in all kinde of  
 good sciences, sauing in some kind of silke workes, and in such things as pertaine to the furniture  
 of houses, in the which they are passing good.

Their lawes are, as is their religion, wicked and detestable. And if any man offend the prince,  
 he punisheth it extremely, not onely in the person that offendeth, but also in his children, and in  
 as many as are of his kinne. Theft and murder are often punished, yet none otherwise then plea-  
 sed him that is ruler in the place where the offence is committed, and as the partie offending is a-  
 ble to make friends, or with money to redeeme his offence.

There is oftentimes great mutinie among the people in great townes, which of Morus Ali  
 somes was greatest: In somuch that sometimes in the towne two or three thousande people are  
 together by the eares for the same, as I haue seene in the towne of Shamaky and Ardouill, and  
 also in the great cite of Teueris, where I haue seene a man coming from fighting, in a bza-  
 sic bringing in his hande foure or five mens heads, carrying them by the haire of the head: for al-  
 though they haue their heads most commonly twisse a werke, yet leaue they a tuft of haire vpon  
 the crowne, about two foote long. I haue enquired why they leaue that tuft of haire vpon  
 their heads. They answer, that thereby they may easly be caried vp into heauen, when they  
 are dead.

For their religion, they haue certaine priests, who are appalled like vnto other men. They  
 keepe euery morning and afternoone, to goe vp to the tops of their Churches, and tell there a great  
 tale of Mahumer & Morus Ali: and other preaching haue they none. Their Lent is after Christ-  
 mas, not in abstinence from flesh onely, but from all meates and drinckes, vntill the day be off the  
 flie: but then they eate sometimes the whole night. And although it be against their religion to  
 vnto hee, yet at night they will take great exesse thereof, and be drunken.

Dq

Their

Their opinion  
 of Christ.

Their money.

Their bookes  
 and learning.

Such was the  
 lawe of the  
 Sacerdotians,  
 for treason.

Distention for  
 religion.

Their priests,  
 and yeaching.  
 Their Lent.

Their lent beginneth at the newe spoone, and they doe not enter into it untill they haue seene the same: Neither yet doeth their lent end, until they haue seene the next newe spoone, although the same (through close weather) should not be seene in long time.

Their castles and holy men.

They haue among them certaine holy men, whome they call Setes, counted holy for that they or any of their successors haue bene on pilgrimage at Mecha in Arabia, for whosoeuer goeth thither on pilgrimage to visite the sepulchre of Mahomet, both hee and all his posteritie, are euer after called Setes, and counted for holy men, and haue no lesse opinion of themselves. And if a man contrary one of these, hee will say that hee is a Schaine, and therefore oughte to be beleueed and that hee cannot lie, although he lye neuer so shamefully. Thus a man may be to holy, and no pride is greater then spirituall pride, of a manne pufft vp with his owne opinion of holinesse. These Setes doe vse to haue their beards all ouer, cutting on the sides a litle about the temples, the which they leaue vnshauen, and vse to braide the same as women doe their haire, and to weare it as long as it will growe.

Their prayer and worshiping of God and Mahomet.

Euery morning they vse to worship God, Mahomet, and Mortus Ali, and in praying turne themselves toward the South, because Mecha lieth that way from them. When they be in trauaile on the way, many of them will (as soone as the Sunne riseth) lighte from their boxes, turning themselves to the South, and will laye their goones before them, with their swoyes and bracelets, and so standing vpright, worship to the South: And many times in their prayers kneele downe and kisse their beades, or some what els that lieth before them.

Washing and outward cleanliness.

The men of women doe neuer go to make water, but they vse to take with them a pottle with a spoute, and after they haue made water, they shal some water upon their priuie partes, and thus doe the women as well as the men: and this is a matter of great religion among them, and in making of water, the men doe colye downe as well as the women.

Their swearing.

When they earnestly affirme a matter, they will sweare by God, Mahomet, or Mortus Ali, and sometimes by al at ones: as thus in their owne language, saying, Olla Mahomet Ali. But if hee sweare by the Shaughes head, in saying Shaugham basshe, you may then beleuee him if you wil.

The kings magnificence.

The Shaugh keepeth a great magnificence in his court: and although sometimes in a moeth or sixe weekes, none of his nobilitie or counsaile can see him, yet goe they dayly to the court, and tarry there a certaine time, until they haue knowen his pleasure whether he will commaund them any thing or not. He is watched euery night by a thousand of his men, which are called his Curthes, who are they that hee useth to sende into the Countreys about his greatestt affairs. When he sendeth any of them (if it be to the greatestt of any of his nobilitie) he will obeye them, although the messenger should beate any of them to death.

Wharants.

The Shaugh occupieth himselfe alwayes two dayes in the weeke in his Bathstoue, and when hee is disposed to goe thither, hee taketh with him sixe or sixe of his concubines, more or lesse, and one day they consume in washing, rubbing, and bathing him, and the other day in paring his nailes, and other matters. The greatestt part of his life, hee spendeth amongst his wiues and concubines. Hee hath nowie reigned about sixtie and foure yeeres, and is therefore counted a very holy man, as they euer esteeme their kings, if they haue reigned sixtie yeeres or more: for they measure the fauour of God by a mans prosperitie, or his displeasure by a mans misfortune or aduersitie. The great Turke hath this Shaugh in great reuerence, because hee hath reigned king so long time.

The succession of the kings house.

I haue saide before that hee hath foure wiues, and as many concubines as him listeth: and if he chaunce to haue any children by any of his concubines, and hee minde that any of those children shall inherite after him, then when one of his wiues dieth, the concubine whome hee so fauoureth, hee maketh one of his wiues, and the child whome hee so loueth best, hee ordaineth to be king after him.

Circumcision.

What I heard of the maner of their marriages, for offending of honest consciences and chaste eares, I may not commit to writing: their fasting I haue declared before. They vse circumcision vnto children of stuen yeeres of age, as doe the Turkes.

Their houses and maner of sitting.

Their houses (as I haue said) are for the most part made of bricke, not burned but only dyed in the Sunne: In their houses they haue but litle furniture of household stuffe, excepte it be their carpets, and some copper worke: for all their kettles and dishes wherein they eate, are of copper. They eate on the ground, sitting on carpets cross legged as doe tailors. There is no man so simple but hee sitteth on a carpet better of worke, and the whole house of roome wherein hee sitteth, is wholly couered with carpets. Their houses are all with flat toofes, couered with earth: and in the sommer time, they lie vpon them all night.

They haue many bond seruantes both men and women. Bond men and bond women, is one

nto it untill they haue seene the  
next newe Spoone, although the

eres, counted holy for that they  
in Arabia, for whosoever goeth  
and all his posteritie, are con-  
pition of themselves. And if a  
therefore ought to be belerue  
a man may be to holy, and in  
his owne opinion of holinesse,  
as a little about the temples,  
in doe their haire, and to wear

us Ali, and in praying tunc  
in them. When they be in cr  
) light from their houses, and  
e them, with their swordes and  
times in their papers kuerie  
to take with them a potte full  
on their priue partes, and thus  
igion among them, and in ma-

Mahumet, of Mortus Ali, and  
Dilla Mahumet Ali. But if bre  
p then belerue him if you wil,  
although sometimes in a mo-  
pet goe the p daply to the court,  
re whether he will commaund  
of his men, which are called  
is about his greatestt affairs,  
obilitie) he will obey them, as

re in his Backstoue, and when  
concubines, more or lesse, and  
the other day in pating his  
y amongst his wiues and con-  
and is therefore counted a very  
littie peeres or moze; for they  
lure by a mans misfortune of  
because hee hath reigned king

tribunes as him listeth: and if  
minded that any of those chil-  
concupine whome hee so lo-  
aeth best, hee obtaineth to be

honest consciences and cheate  
before. They vse circumcission

not burned but only dyed in  
ld stuffe, except it be their ear-  
in they eat, are of copper.  
There is no man so sum-  
uome wherein hee stretch  
uouered with earth; and in the

men and bondwomen, is one  
of

of the best kinde of Marchandise that any man may bring. When they buy any mapdes of pong  
women, they vse to seele them in all partes, as with vs men doe horses: when one hath bought  
a young woman, if he like her, he will keepe her for his owne vse as long as him listeth, and then  
selleth her to an other, who doeth the like with her. So that one woman is sometimes solde in the  
space of foure or fise peeres, twelue, or twentie times. If a man keepe a bonde woman for his  
owne vse, and if hee finde her to be false to him, and giue her bodie to any other, hee may kill her  
if hee will.

When a marchant or traualler commeth to any towne where he entendeth to carpy any time, he  
hireth a woman, or sometimes 2. or 3. during his abode there. And when hee commeth to an other  
towne, he doeth the like in the same also: for there they vse to put out their women to hire, as we  
see here backney horses.

There is a very great river which runneth through the plains of Iauac, which falleth into the  
Caspian sea, by a towne called Backo, nere vnto which towne is a strange thing to behold. For  
there issueth out of the ground a maruelous quantitie of Oyle, which Oyle they fetch from the ve-  
rnest bounds of all Persia: it serueth all the Countrey to burne in their houses.

This oyle is blacke, and is called Nefie: they vse to carpy it throughout all the Countrey vpon  
kine of asses, of which you shall oftentimes meete, with foure or fise hundred in a companie. There  
is also by the said towne of Backo, an other kinde of oyle which is white and very precious: and is  
supposed to be the same that here is called Petroleum. There is also not farre from Shamaky, a  
thing like vnto tarre, and issueth out of the ground, whereof wee haue made the prooffe, that in our  
ships it serueth well in the stead of tarre.

In Persia are kinde of two soyes, the one like vnto ours in these partes, the other are maruei-  
lous euill fauoured, with great bones, and very leane, and but little haire vpon them: their milke  
is not so sweete: they are like vnto them which are spoken of in the Scripture, which in the  
dream of Pharao signified the seuen deare peeres: for a leaner or moze euill fauoured beaust, can  
no man see.

In the Countrey of Shiruan (sometime called Media) if you chauce to lye in the fields nere  
vnto any village, as the twilighte becometh, you shall haue about you two or thye hundred soyes,  
which make a maruelous sounde of howling: and if you looke not well to your victuals, it  
shall scape them hardly but they will haue part with you.

The Caspian sea, doeth neither ebbe nor flowe, except sometimes by rage of winde it swelleth  
by very high: the water is very salt. Doubtless, the quantitie of water that falleth out of the great  
river of Volga, maketh the water fresh at the least twentie leagues into the sea. The Caspian sea  
is maruelous full of fish, but no kinde of monstrous fish, as farre as I could vnderstand, yett hath it  
fandis soyes of fishes which are not in these partes of the world.

The mutton there is good, and the sheepe great, hauing very great rumps with much fat vpon  
them.  
Rise and mutton is their chiefe victuall.

Bondmen and  
bond women.

Women  
bought and  
sold, and let to  
hire.

Abundance of  
Oyle issuing  
out of the  
ground.

Oleum Petro-  
leum.

Two soyes of  
haire.

Soyes in  
great plenty.

The Copie of a letter sent to the Emperour of Mos-  
couie, by Christopher Hodsdon, and William  
Burrough, Anno 1570.



Da mightie Emperour, &c. Whereas sir William Garrard and his fellow-  
ship, the Companie of English Marchants this last winter sent hither to the  
Narue, 3. ships laden with marchandise, which was left here, & with it Christo-  
pher Hodsdon one of the saide fellowship and their chiefe doer in this place, who  
when hee came first hither, and untill such time as hee had dispatched those  
shippes from hence, was in hope of goods to lade twelue or thirtene sailes of  
good shippes, against this shipping, wherefore hee wrote vnto the saide sir William Garrard and  
his companie to sende hither this spring the saide number of thirtene shippes. And because that  
in their comming hither wee founde the Freedbooters on the sea, and supposing this peere that  
they would be very strong, hee therefore gaue the saide sir William and his Companie aduise,  
to furnish the saide number of shippes so strongly, as they shoulde bee able to withstande the  
force of the Freedbooters: Whereupon they haue according to his aduise sent this peere thirtene  
good shippes together well furnished with men and munition, and all other necessaries for the  
warre, of which 13. shippes William Burrough one of the saide fellowship is Captaine generall,  
vnto

Five Shippes  
of Freeboot-  
ers taken.

unto whome there was given in charge, that if hee mette with any the Danske Freebooters, whatsoeuer robbers and theues, that are enemies to your highnesse, hee should doe his best to apprehende and take them: It so happned that the tenth day of this moneth the saide William with his fleette, mette with five Shippes of the Freebooters nere unto an Islande called Tuttee, which is about 50. versts from Naruc, unto which Freebooters he with his fleette gaue chase, and tooke of them the Admirall, wherein were left but 3. men, the rest were fledde to shoure in their boates amongst the woods upon Tuttee, on which Shippe hee set fire and burnt her. Hee also tooke foure moze of those Shippes which are nowe here, and one Shippe escaped him: out of which foure Shippes some of the men fled in their boates and so escaped, others were slaine in fight, and some of them when they sawe they coulde not escape, cast themselves willingly into the Sea, and were drowned. So that in these 5. Shippes were left but 83. men.

The saide William Borough when hee came hither to Naruc, finding here Christopher Hodsdon aforesaid, both the saide Christopher and William, together in the name of sir William Garrard, and the rest of their whole Companie and fellowship, did present unto your highnesse of those Freebooters taken by our Shippes 82. men, which wee deliuered here unto Kneze Voivoda, the 13. of this moneth. One man of those Freebooters we haue kept by vs, whose name is Haunce Snarke a Capitaine. And the cause why we haue done it is this: Altho we should haue deliuered him with the rest of his felowes unto the Viouodas officers, there were of our Englishmen those then 50. which fell on their knees unto vs, requesting that hee might be referred in the Shippe, and carried backe into England: and the cause why they so earnestly intreated for him, is that some of those our Englishmen had bene taken with Freebooters, and by his meanes had their liues saued, with great fauour besides, which they found at his hands. Wherefore if it please your highnesse to permit it, we will carry him home with vs into England, where in we request your Maiesties fauour: notwithstanding what you command of him shall be obserued.

Wee haue also sent our seruant to your highnesse with such bestellings and writings, as wee found in those Shippes: whereby your Maiestie may see by whome, and in what order they were set out, and what they pretended, which writings wee haue commended unto Kneze Yourie your Maiesties Viouoda at Plasco, by our seruant. And haue requested his furtherance for the safe deliuerie of them to your Maiesties handes: which writings when you haue perused, wee desire that they may be returned unto vs by this our seruant, as speedily as may be: for these Shippes which we now haue here, will be soone dispatched from hence, for that wee haue not goods to lade above the halfe of them. And the cause is, we haue this winter (by your Maiesties order) bene kept from crasquing, to the companies great losse. But hoping your Maiestie will hereafter haue consideration thereof, and that we may haue free libertie to traffique in all parts of your Maiesties Countre, according to the priuilege giuen vnto vs, wee pray for your Maiesties health, with prosperous successe to the pleasure of God. From Naruc the 15. of July, Anno 1570.

Your Maiesties most humble  
and obedient,

{ Christopher Hodsdon,  
William Borough,

A note of the proceeding of M. Anthonie Ienkinson, Ambassador from the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, to the Emperour of Russia, from the time of his arriuall there, being the 26. of July 1571. vntill his departure from thence the 23. of July, 1572.



He said 26. day I arriued with the two good Shippes called the Swallow and the Harry in latitude at the bay of S. Nicholas in Russia aforesaid, and landed at Rose Island, from whence immediatly I sent away my Interpreter Daniel Siluester in poste towards the Court, being then at the Mosco, whereby his Maiestie might as well be aduertised of my arriuall in his Dominions, as it do to knowe his highnesse pleasure for my further access. And remaining at the saide Island two or three dayes, to haue conference with your Agent about your affaires, I did well perceiue by the wordes of the saide Agent, and others your seruants, that I was entred

the Danske Freerbooters, and  
hee should doe his best to ap-  
prouneth the saide William  
to an Islande called Tuxee,  
with his fleete gaue chase, and  
there fledde to shoare in their  
and burnt her. Hee also took  
him : out of which foure  
he slaine in fight, and some  
dredged into the Sea, and were

And here Christopher  
in the name of Sir Wil-  
did present vnto your high-  
delivered here vnto Kneze  
was kept by vs, whose name  
was this : When we should haue  
there were of our English  
hee might be restored in the  
necessity intreated for him, in  
cess, and by his means had  
lands. Wherefore if it please  
land, wherein we request  
shall be obserued,

illings and writings, as we  
and in what order they were  
ed vnto Kneze Youriue your  
s furtherance for the safe do-  
wee perused, we desire that  
be : for these shippes which  
wee not goods to lade about  
s (which order) bene kept from  
will hereafter haue confide-  
ce of your Maiesties Com-  
mandmentes health, with yours  
anno 1570.

most humble  
dient,  
Christopher Hodson,  
William Borough,

William Borough, Am-  
bassador, to the Em-  
perour, being the  
presence

was called the Swallow and  
his aforesaid, and landed at  
my my Interpreter Daniel  
at the Mosco, whereby his  
will in his Dominions, as  
recede. And remaining  
gent about your affaires, I  
remains, that I was encre-  
into

into great perill and danger of my life, for they reposed to mee that they heard saide at the Mos-  
co, that the Princes displeasure was such against mee, that if ever I came into his Countrey a-  
gain I should loose my head, with other wordes of discouragement : Whereas, I was not a li-  
tle distressed, not knowing whether it were best for mee to proceede forwards, or to returne home  
againe with the shippes for the safegard of my life. But calling to minde mine innocencie  
and good meaning, and knowing my selfe not to haue offended his Maiestie any manner of wayes  
either in word or deed, or by making former promises not performed, heretofore by mine ene-  
mies falsely furnished, and being desirous to come to the triall thereof, whereby I might iustifie my  
owne dealings, and to repossesse my said enemies as well here as there, who haue not ceased of  
late by vnerue reports to impure the cause of the saide Emperours displeasure towards you to  
proceede of my dealings, and promises made to him at my last being with him (although by his  
letters to the Queenes Maiestie, and by his owne wordes to mee the contrary doeth appeare) I  
determined with my selfe rather to put my life into his handes, and by the prouidence of God  
to prosecute the charge committed vnto mee, then to returne home in shame, discouraged with  
the wordes of such, who had rather that I had carried as home, then to bee sent ouer with such cre-  
dit, whereby I might sit out their euill doings, the onely cause of your losse.

Wherefore, leauing the saide shippes the nine and twentieth day of the moneth, I departed  
from the sea-side, and the first of August arrived at Colmogro, where I remayned attending the  
returne of my saide messenger with order from his Maiestie.

But all the Countrey being sore disordred by the hande of God with the plague, passage in euery  
place was shutte vp, that none might passe in paine of death : My messenger being eight hun-  
dred miles vpon his way, was stayed, and kept at a towne called Shasko, and might not bee  
suffered to goe any further, neither yet to returne backe againe, or sende vnto mee : by means  
whereof in the space of foure moneths, I could neither heare nor knowe what was become of him,  
in which time my saide messenger founde meanes to aduertise the Governour of the Citie of Vo-  
logda, as well of his stay, as of the cause of his comming thither, who sent him wordes that it was  
not possible to passe any neerer the Prince without further order from his Maiestie, who was  
gone to the warres against the Sweithens, and that hee would aduertise his highnesse so soone as  
he might conueniently : And so my saide messenger was forced to remaine there still without an-  
swere. During which time of his stay through the great dearth, as aforesaid, I founde meanes  
to sende another messenger, with a guide by an vnknewen way through wilderness, a thousande  
miles about, thinking that way hee should passe without let : but it proued contrary, for likewise  
hee being passed a great part of his journey, fell into the handes of a watche, and escaped betw  
hardly, that hee and his guide with their hoxses had not bene burnt, according to the iaine proui-  
des for such as would seeke to passe by indirect wayes, and many haue felt the smart thereof,  
which had not wherewith to buy out the paine : neither coulde that messenger returne backe vnto  
to mee.

And thus was I kept without answer or order from his Maiestie, and remained at the saide  
Colmogro, vntill the 18. of Januarie following, neither hauing a Gentleman to safe gard me, nor  
allowing appointed me, nor allowance of victuals according to the Countrey fashion for Ambassa-  
dours, which argued his grievous displeasure towards our nation. And the people of the Coun-  
trei perceiving the same, fled towards mee and my companie some discourtesies : but about the  
28. day aforesaid the plague ceased, and the passages being opened, there came order from his Ma-  
iestie that I should haue polle hoxses, and be suffered to depart from Colmogro to goe to a Citie  
called Peraissaue neerer to the Court, his Maiestie being newly returned fro the said warres. And  
I arrived at the said Peraissaue the 3. of February, where I remained vnder the charge of a gen-  
tleman, hauing then a house appointed me, & allowance of victuals, but so straitly kept, that none  
of our nation or other might come or send vnto me, nor I to them. And the 14. of March follow-  
ing, I was sent for to the Court, and being within 3. miles of the same, a polle was sent to the  
Gentleman which had charge of mee to returne backe againe with mee to the said Peraissaue, and  
to remaine there vntill his Maiesties further pleasure. wherewith I was much dismayed, and  
marvelled what that sudden change meant, and the rather, because it was a troublesome time, and  
his Maiestie much disquieted through the ill success of his affaires, (as I did vnderstand.) And  
the twentieth of the same, I was sent for againe to the Court, and the 23. I came before his Ma-  
iestie, who caused mee to kille his hande, and gaue gracious audience vnto my Oracion, graciously  
receiving and accepting the Queenes Maiesties private letters, and hee present, in the  
presence of all his nobilitie. After I had finished my Oracion to long here to rehearse, and deli-  
uered her highnesse letters, and present (as aforesaid) the Emperour sitting in royal estate stood by  
and

and said, How doth Queene Elizabeth my sister, is she in health? to whom I answered, God hath blessed her Maiestie with health, and peace, and doeth wish the like vnto thee Lord, her louing brother. Then his Maiestie sitting downe againe, commaunded all his nobilitie and others to depart, and auoyde the chamber, sauing the chiefe Secretarie, and one other of the Counsell, and willing me to approach neere vnto him with my Interpreter, said vnto me these wordes.

Anthonie, the last time thou wast with vs heere, wee did commit vnto thee our truste and secret: Hellage, to bee declared vnto the Queene's Maiestie herselfe thy Mistresse at thy coming home, and did expect thy coming vnto vs againe at the time we appointed, with a full answer of the same from her highnesse. And in the meane time there came vnto vs at severall times thre messengers, the one called Manly, the other George Middleton, and Edward Goodman, by the way of the Narue about the Marchants affaires: to whome we sent our messengers to knowe whether thou Anthonie, were returned home in safetie, and when thou shouldst returne vnto vs againe: but those messengers coulde tell vs nothing, and did misraill, and abuse with euill wordes, both our messenger and thee, wherewith wee were much offended. And understanding that the saide Goodman had letters about him, wee caused him to be searched, with whome were found many letters, wherein was written much against our Princely estate, and that in our Empire were many vnlawfull things done, whereto wee were much grieued, and would suffer none of those rude messengers to haue access vnto vs: and shortly after wee were informed that one Thomas Randolfe was come into our Dominions by the way of Dwina, Ambassadors from the Queene, and wee sent a Gentleman to meeete and conduct him to our Citie of Mosco, at which time wee looked that thou shouldst haue returned vnto vs againe. And the saide Thomas being arriv'd at our saide Citie, wee sent vnto him diuers times, that hee should come and conferre with our Counsell, whereby wee might vnderstande the cause of his coming, looking for answere of those our princely affaires committed vnto thee. But hee refused to come to our saide Counsell: wherefore, and for that our saide Citie was visited with plague, the saide Thomas was the longer kept from our presence. Which being ceased, shortly wee gaue him access and audience, but all his talke with vs, was about Marchants affaires, and nothing touching ours. Wee knowe that Marchants matters are to bee heard, for that they are the staye of our Princely treasures: But first Princely affaires are to bee established, and then Marchants. After this the saide Thomas Randolfe was with vs at our Citie of Vologda, and wee dealt with him about our Princely affaires, whereby amitie betwixt the Queene's Maiestie and vs, might be established for euer, and matters were agreed and concluded betwixt your Ambassadors and vs, and thereupon wee sent our Ambassadors into England with him to ende the same, but our Ambassadors returned vnto vs againe, without finishing our said affaires, contrary to our expectation, and the agreement betwixt vs, and your said Ambassadors.

Thus when his Maiestie had made a long discourse, I humbly beseeched his highnesse to heare me gratioously, and to giue me leaue to speake without offence, and to beleue those wordes to be true which I should speake. Which he graunted, and these were my wordes.

Most noble and famous Prince, the message which thy highnesse did sende by mee vnto the Queene her most excellent Maiestie touching thy Princely and secret affaires, immediatly and so soone as I came home, I did declare both secretly and truly vnto the Queene's Maiestie herselfe, word for word, as thou Loyde diddest commaunde mee. Which her highnesse did willingly heare and accept, and being mindefull thereof, and willing to answer the same, the next shipping after her Maiestie did sende vnto thee Loyde, her highnesse Ambassadors Thomas Randolfe, whose approued wisdom and fidelitie was vnto her Maiestie well knowne, and therefore thought mee to bee sent to so worthy a Prince, who had Commission not onely to create with thy Maiestie of Marchants affaires, but also of those thy Princely and secret affaires committed vnto mee. And the cause (most gracious Prince) that I was not here againe, was, for that I was employed in seruice vpon the Seas against the Queene's Maiesties enemies, and was not returned home at such time as Master Thomas Randolfe departed with the Shippes, to come into thy Maiesties Countrey, otherwise I had bene sent. And whereas thy Maiestie seereth, that Thomas Randolfe would not create with thy Counsell of the matters of his Legation, hee did (Loyde) therein according to his Commission: which was: First to deale with thy Maiestie thy selfe, which order is commonly used among all Princes, when they sende their Ambassadors about matters of great waight. And whereas the saide Thomas is charged that hee agreed and concluded vpon matters at the same time, and promised the same should bee performed by the Queene her Maiestie: Whereupon (Loyde) thou diddest send thy Ambassadors with him into Englaunde, for answere thereof: It may please thy Ma-

He to vnder  
the highnes  
and agree, con  
is should plea  
highnes An  
that either the  
one meaning  
well vnderst  
mendations,  
siene standy  
as the like w  
swere in all c  
it (seemeth) to  
highnes lett  
that thy I mi  
house bene fac  
him vnto the  
hed in thy P  
some Ambad  
to vnderstand  
merchants cre  
to the Loyde  
ly affaires, as  
partie of merch  
ing to the the  
cede rather v  
whether perso  
their countrie  
highnesse dis  
time of their c  
things haue b  
neere for thy  
Princes of the  
brought, and v  
fer to be cran  
the sayd Sir  
by shipwack  
ships did vnto  
they fought v  
and as many  
doth not forgo  
excellent Mar  
Garret with h  
with thy acri  
dominions, as  
thy officers in  
banding. An  
where suggest  
time betwixt  
nation, as Ra  
some differenc  
riously, and  
things, and a  
be of no credit  
highnesse req  
betwixt vnto  
ship with such  
now thy good

an answer, God with  
 Loys, her loving bro-  
 and others to depart,  
 Counsell, and holding  
 us.  
 thee our trustie and fa-  
 stresse at thy coming  
 o, with a full and were  
 us at severall times  
 and Edward Good-  
 sent our messengers to  
 thou shouldst reme-  
 ll, and abuse with euil  
 . And understanding  
 ed, with whom were  
 , and that in our Em-  
 and would suffer none  
 re informed that one  
 a, Ambassadour from  
 r Citie of Mosco, at  
 and the saide Thomas  
 should come and con-  
 s comming, looking  
 refused to come to our  
 lague, the saide Tho-  
 with wee gaue him ar-  
 tres, and nothing to  
 at they are the slave of  
 then Parcbants,  
 ia, and were dealt with  
 Paictie and us, might  
 our Ambassadour and  
 nde the same, but our  
 ontrary to our expecta-  
 eched his highnesse to  
 believe those words to  
 be.  
 sende by mee unto the  
 tres, immediately and  
 Queenes Paictie her  
 ghnesse did willingly  
 re the same, the next  
 ambassadour Thomas  
 tie well known, and  
 amission not onely to  
 princely and secret ab-  
 at I was not free a-  
 the Queenes Paicties  
 andolfe departed with  
 sent. And where  
 Counsell of the ma-  
 on: which was: first  
 g all Princes, when  
 whereas the saide Tho-  
 me, and promised  
 (Loyd) thou didst  
 may please thy Paic-  
 tie

to understand, that as the said Thomas Randolfe doth confesse, that in verbe he had talke with  
 thy Highnes, and counsell divers times about princely affaires; even to the denieth that euer he  
 do agree, conclude, or make any promise in any condition or order, as is alleged oherwise then  
 it should please the Queene her Paictie to take of, at his returne home, which he did iustifie to thy  
 Highnes Ambassadoz his face in England. Wherefore most mightie Prince, it doth wel appear, and  
 the either thy Ambassadoz did vntrely enforce thy Paictie, or els thy princely minde, and the  
 true meaning of the Queenes Highnes thy Ambassadoz, for want of a good Interpreter, was not  
 well understood: and how thankefully the Queene her Paictie did receive thy Highnes com-  
 mendations, and letters sent by thy Paicties Ambassadoz, and how graciously he gaue him au-  
 dience sundry times, vntill him with such honour in al points for thy sake Loys, her loving brother,  
 as the like was neuer shewed to any Ambassadoz in our Realme, and how honorably with full au-  
 thore in all things, her Paictie dismissed him, when he had finished all thy princely affaires (as  
 it seeme) to his owne contentation, it may well appear by a true certificate lately sent with her  
 Highnes letter unto thee Loys, by her Messenger Robert Beaf, and her Paictie did suppose that  
 that thy Ambassadoz would haue made report accordingly, and that by him thy Highnes would  
 haue bene satisfied in all things: oherwise he would haue sent her Paicties Ambassadoz with  
 him unto thee Loys againe. But now her Highnes perceiving that thy Paictie is not fully satis-  
 fied in thy princely affaires, neither by Thomas Randolfe, her Highnes Ambassadoz, nor by thine  
 owne Ambassadoz Andrea Saayne, nor yet by her Paicties letter, sent by the said Andrea: and al-  
 so understanding thy great griefe and displeasure towards sir William Garret, and his company,  
 merchants traffiking in thy Paicties dominions, hath thought good to send me at this present un-  
 to thee Loys Emperour, and great Duke, as well with her Highnes full mind, touching thy princely  
 affaires, as also to knowe the iust cause of thy Paicties said displeasure towards the said com-  
 pany of merchants: and hath commanded me to answeere to all things in their behalfe, and accor-  
 ding to their true meanings. For her Highnes doth suppose thy Paicties indignation, to pro-  
 ceede rather vpon the euill, and vntreue reports of thy late Ambassadoz in England, and of such  
 wicked persons of our nation resident here in thy Highnes dominions, rebels to her Paictie, and  
 their countrie, then of any iust defects of the saide merchants, who neuer willingly deserved thy  
 Highnes displeasure, but rather fauour in all their doings and meanings. And since the first  
 time of their traffiking in thy Paicties dominions, which is no more thane seuerall yeeres, the said mer-  
 chants haue bene, and are at waies readie and willing truly to serue thy highnesse of all things  
 meete for thy treasure, in time of peace and of warre in despite of all thy enemies: although the  
 Princes of the East seas were agreed to stoppe the sounde, and the way to the Narue, and haue  
 bought, and do bring from time to time such commodities to thee Loys, as her Paictie doth not suf-  
 fer to be transported forth of her Realme to no other Prince of the world. And what great losse  
 the saide Sir William Garret, with his company hath sustained of late yeeres in this trade, as well  
 by shipwacke, as by false seruantes it is manifestly knowen: and what seruaice the saide companies  
 they did unto thy Paictie against thy enemies, two yeeres past in going to the Narue, when  
 they fought with the king of Poles shippes Freebooters, and burnt the same and slew the people,  
 and as many as were taken alive deliuered unto thy Captaine at the Narue, I trust thy Highnes  
 doth not forget. Wherefore most mightie Prince, the premises considered, the Queene her most  
 excellent Paictie thy loving Sister, doeth request thy Highnes to restore the saide Sir William  
 Garret with his company into thy princely fauour againe, with their priuiledges for free traffike  
 with thy accustomed goodnes and iustice, to be ministered vnto them throughout all thy Paicties  
 dominions, as aforesayd: and that the same may be signified by thy princely letters, directed to  
 thy officers in all places, any thy highnesse commandement or restraint to the contrary notwithstanding.  
 And further that it will please thy Paictie, not to giue credite to false reportes, and  
 vntreue suggestions of such as are enemies, and such as neither would haue mutuall amity to con-  
 tinue betwixt your Paicties, nor yet entercoure betwixt your countries. And such rebels of our  
 nation, as Ralfe Rutter, and others which lye lurking heere in thy Highnes dominions, seeking to  
 sowe dissensions betwixt your Paicties by false surmises, spending away their masters goodes  
 dishonestly, and will not come home to giue by their accounts, aduancing themselves to bee mer-  
 chants, and able to serue thy Highnes of all things fitte for thy treasure. whereas in verbe they  
 be of no credite, nor able of themselves to doe thy Paictie any seruice at all: the Queenes  
 Highnesse request is, that it would please thy Paictie to commaunde that such persons may bee  
 deliuered vnto me to be carried home, leaue by their remaining here, and hauing practises & friend-  
 ship with such as be not thy highnesse friends, their euill doing might be a cause hereafter to with-  
 draw thy goodnes from Sir William Garret and his companie, who haue true meaning in all  
 their



their doings, and are ready to serue thy Highnes at all times, vnto many other wordes to the aduancement of your crookes, and the disgracing of your enemies, and so I ended for this time.

Then said his Highnes, we haue heard you, and will consider of all things further, when we haue read the Queene our sisters letters: to whom I answered, that I supposed his Highnes should by those letters vnderstand her Highnes full mind to his contentation, and what wanted in writing. I had credite to accomplish in word. Wherewith his Highnes seemed to be well pleased, and commanded me to sit downe. And after pausing a while, his Highnes said these wordes vnto me, It is now a time which we spend in fasting, and praying, being the weeke before Easter, and for that we will shortly depart from hence, towards our borders of Nouogrode, we can not giue you answer, nor your dispatch here, but you shall goe from hence, and tary vs vpon the way, where we will shortly come, and then you shall knowe our pleasure, and haue your dispatch. And so I was dismissed to my lodging, and the same day I had a dinner ready vnto me from his Highnes, with great store of wines, of diuers sortes, and the next day following, being the foure and thirtieth of Marche aforesaide, the chiefe Secretarie to his Highnes, came vnto mee a Gentleman, to signifie vnto mee, that the Emperours Highnes pleasure was, I should immediately depart towards a Citie, called Orwer, three hundred miles, from the aforesaid Sloboda, and there to tary his Highnes comming vnto a place called Scarys, thre score miles from the said Orwer.

Then I sent my Interpreter to the chiefe Secretarie, requesting him to further, and bring his fauour vnto our said merchans in their sutes, which they should haue occasion to moue in my absence: who sent me word againe, that they should be well assured of his friendship, & furtherance in all their sutes. And shortly after post hoyses were sent me, with a Gentleman to conduct me. And so departing from the said Sloboda, I arrived at the said Orwer, the 28. of Marche aforesaide, where I remained till the eight of May following. Then I was sent for, to come vnto his Highnes, to the said Scarys, where I arrived the tenth of the same, and the twelfth of the same, I was appoynted to come to the chiefe Secretarie, who at our meeting sayde vnto mee these wordes.

Our Lord Emperour, and great Duke, hath not onely perused the Queene her Highnes letters sent by you, and thereby doth perceaue her mind, as well touching their princely affaires, as also her earnest request in the merchans behalfe, but also hath well pondered your wordes. And therefore his Highnes pleasure is, that you let me vnderstand, what sutes you haue to moue in the merchans behalfe, or otherwise, for that to morrowe, you shall haue access againe vnto his Highnes, and shall haue full answer in all things, with your dispatch away.

Then after long conference had with him of diuers matters, I gaue him in writing certaine briefe articles of requests, which I had drawn out ready, as followeth.

1. First the Queenes Highnes request is, that it would please the Emperours Highnes to let me knowe the iust cause of his great displeasure fallen vpon Sir William Garret, & his companie, who neuer deserued the same, to their knowlege.
2. Also that it would please his Highnes, not to giue credite vnto false and untrue reports, by such as seeke to sowe dissention, and breake friendship, betwixt the Queenes Highnes, and his Highnes.
3. Also that it would please his Highnes to receaue the said Sir William Garret, with his companie, into his fauour againe, and to restore them to their former priuiledges, and libertie, for free traffike in, and through, and out of all his Highnes dominions, in as ample manner as aforesaid, according to his princely letters of priuiledge, and accustomed goodnes.
4. Also it would please his Highnes to grant, that the said companie of merchans may haue iustice of all his subjects, as well for money owing vnto them, as other their griefes and iniuries, throughout all his dominions suffered since the time of his displeasure, during which time, the merchans were forced by seuerer iustice to answer in all mens demands, but the same could not be heard.
5. Also that his Highnes would vnderstand, what much wronges are done to the said merchans, by diuers of his Nobilitie, whereof part are in durance, and some executed, and the said merchans knowe not how to be paid, and answered the same, except his Highnes picke their case, and command some order to be taken therein.
6. Also it would please his Highnes to command that the said merchans may be paid all such summe, or summes of money as are owing, and due vnto them by his Highnes, for wares, as well English, as Shamakye, taken into his Highnes treasure by his officers in sundry places, the long forbearing whereof hath bene, and is great hinderance to the said companie of merchans.

many other words to the  
, and so I ended by that

things further, when her  
I supposed his Spaitie  
tion, and what wautes  
seemed to be well plea  
Spaitie said these wopes  
ing the weeke before Ca  
s of Nouogrode, we can  
ence, and tarp vs upon the  
ature, and haue your dis  
d a dinner ready byt sent  
and the next day following,  
rearie to his Spaitie, frze  
Spaities pleasure was, I  
to miles, from the stop lab  
ryts, thyee scoye miles from

m to further, and thyeing his  
occasion to moue in my ab  
friendship, & furtherance  
serman to couduer me. Am  
28. of Marche aforesaid,  
fo, to come vnto his Spai  
the twelfth of the same, I  
king sayde vnto me these

Queene her Dignies lo  
their princely affaires, as  
undered your wopes. And  
Iunes you haue to moue in  
ue accesse againe vnto his  
a way.

me him in writing certaine  
p.

the Emperours Dignies  
William Garret, & his com  
o false and vntue reportes  
e Queenes Dignies, and

William Garret, with his com  
ges, and liberties, for free  
imple manner as aforesayd,  
is.

nie of merchants may haue  
their grieues and iniuries,  
during which time, the mer  
che they could not be heard  
ing to the said merchants,  
ed, and the said merchants  
picie their case, and com

merchants may be paid all  
his Spaitie, for wares, as  
officers in sundry places,  
and compaie of merchants,  
7 Also

7 Also it would please his Spaitie to vnderstand, that at this present time there are in Persia of English merchants, Thomas Banister, and Geofrye Ducker, with their companie, and goods, ready to come into his Spaities Countrey of Astracan, and would haue come the last yere, but that the ship, with our merchants, and mariners, appointed to goe for them, were staid at Astracan by his Dignies Captaine there, to the great hinderance of the said merchants. Wherefore it may now please his Spaitie, to direct his princely letters vnto his Capitaines, and rulers, both at Astracan, and Cazan, not onely to suffer our people, as well merchants, as mariners, quietly, and freely to passe and repaile with their shippes, barkes, or other vessels downe the riuer Volga, and ouer the Mare Caspium, to fetch the said English merchants, with their companie, and goods, out of the said Persia, into his Spaities dominions, but also that it would please his Dignies strigely to command, that when the said Thomas Banneller, and Geofrye Ducker, with their charge, shall arrive at the saide Astracan, his Spaities Captaine there, and in all other places, bypon the riuer Volga, shall so aide and assist the said merchants, as they may be safely conducted out of the danger of the Turmines, and others their enemies.

8 Also it may please his Dignies to vnderstand, that lately our merchants comming from Shamakey, haue bene ill vsed by his Spaities Customers, both at Astracan, and Cazan, at both which places they were forced to pay custome for their wares, although they solde no part thereof, but brought the same into his Dignies treasure at Sloboda: and the said Customers did not onely exact, and take much more custome then was due by his Spaities lawes, but also for want of present monie,ooke wares much exceeding their exacted custome, and doe keepe the same as a pawning. It may therefore please his Dignies to direct his princely letters to the said Customers, to signify vnto them his great goodnes againe redoyed vnto the saide English merchants, as also to command and them to send the said merchants their said goods so detained, vnto the Musko, they paying such custome for the same, as shall be by his Spaitie appointed.

9 Also that it would please his Dignies to grant, that sir William Garret, with his companie, may establish their trade for merchandise at Colmogro in Dwina, and that such wares as shall be brought out of our Countrey for his treasure might be looked vpon, and receaued by his officers there: and that his Spaities people traffiking with our merchants, may bring downe their commodities to the said Colmogro, by meanes whereof the saide English merchants auoiding great troubles, and charges, in transporting their goods so farre, and into so many places of his dominions, may sell the same better cheape, to the benefite of his Spaities subiects.

10 Also if it seemed good to his Dignies, that the whole trade likewise from Persia, Boghar, and all other those Countreies beyond the Mare Caspium, might be established at Astracan, the ancient marke towne in times past, which would be both for the great honour, and profite of his Spaitie, and subiects, as I am well able to proue, if it shall please his Dignies to appoint any of his counsell to talke with me therein.

11 Also so farre as it pleased his Spaitie immediately after the burning of the Musko, to command that the said English merchants should giue in a noce into his treasure, for their losses sustained by the said fire, which was done by William Rowlye, then chiefe Agent for sir William Garret, and his company, and the particulars in the same noce contained with the said fire, wd amount to the summe of 10000. roubles, and aboute: It may please his Dignies of his accustomed goodnes, and great clemencie, to consider of the same, and to giue the saide companie so much as shall seeme good vnto his Spaitie, to wards their said losses.

12 Also that it will please his Dignies, to vnderstand that the Queenes most excellent Spaitie, at the earnest suites and request of Andrea Sauyne his Spaities Ambassadoy, did not onely pardon and forgiue Thomas Glouer, his great and grievous offences towards her Dignies committed, onely for his Spaities sake, but also commanded sir William Garret, with his companie, to deale fauorably with the said Glouer, in his accomps, so that he was undered greatly, and being their seruant, detained their goods in his hands a long time: whereupon the said sir William Garret, with his companie, counted with the saide Glouer, and ended all things, euen to his sad contentation, and was found to be debter to the said companie, 4000. roubles, and aboute, and bound him selfe both by his solemn othe, and his hand writing, to pay the same immediately after his returne into Russia, with the said Andrea Sauyne, vnto Nicholas Proctor, chiefe Agent there, for the said companie of merchants. But although it is now two yeeres past, since the saide agreement, and that the said Nicholas hath diuers, and sundry times requested the said monie of the said Thomas, yet will he not pay the same debt, but maketh delay from time to time, alleging that his Spaitie oweth him a great summe of money, without the payment whereof, he can not be able to pay the said merchants his due debt long forborne, to their great hinderance. In considera-

tion of the premises, It may please his Highnes, to giue order that the said Glouer may be paid, and that he may discharge his debt to the saide company of merchants, and the rather for that he found such merite and fauour in England, ouerly for his *Paicties* sake.

13 Also forasmuch as Ralfe Kutter, a rebell to the *Queenes Paictie*, and an enemy to his Countrey, and to Sir William Garret, and his company, hath of long time remained here, luring of the spoiles and goods of the said merchants, which he wrongfully detaine in his hands, rascally spending the same, during the time that he was their seruant, and would not come home when he was sent for, and also for that the *Queenes Paictie* doth vnderstand, that the said Ralfe, with other his adherents, doe seeke by all false meanes, to sowe dissention, and byrake amitie betwix their *Paicties*, and to overthrowe the trade of the said merchants: her Highnes request is, that the said Ralfe, with his complices, may be deliuered vnto me, to be carried home, and none other of her *Paicties* subiects, not being of the societie of the said Sir William Garret, and his company, to be suffered to traffike within his Highnes dominions, but to be deliuered to their Agent to be sent home: for that the said merchants with great charges and losses, both by shipwacke, and riotous seruantes, did first finde out this trade, and haue continued the same, these 19. yeres, so thet the great hinderance.

14 Also whereas diuers *Shakers*, and artificers of our nation, are here in his *Paicties* seruice, and doe finde themselves grieued that they can not haue licence to depart home into their native Countrey, at their will and pleasure: the *Queenes Paicties* request is, according to her Highnes writing in that behalfe, that not onely it will please his *Paictie* to permit, and suffer such artificers, here resident in the seruice of his Highnes, to haue free libertie to depart, and goe home with mee, if they request the same, but also all other the like, which shall come hereafter to serue his *Paictie*, to haue free libertie to depart likewise, without any let or stay.

15 Also it may please his *Paictie* to vnderstand, that during the time of my long being at Colmogro, attending his Highnes pleasure, for my further access, I with my company, haue not onely bene ill used, and increased there, and likewise the merchants there, by one Bessone Myseruoye, his *Paicties* chiefe officer, who hath dishonored me, and smitten my people, and vnder the said merchants much money, and will not pay them: but also the saide Bessone hath spoken wordes of dishonor against the *Queenes Paictie*. Wherefore it may please his Highnes to send do home with me to Colmogro, a Gentleman, as well chesly to serch forth his cuill behauiour towards her *Paictie*, as towards me her Highnes Ambassador, and to punish him accordingly: and also that it would please his *Paictie* to sende do home his letter of iustice, by veruey whereof, the said Bessone may be forced to pay all such money as he owerth to the saide merchants, without delay.

16 Also that it would please his Highnes to vnderstand, that Sir William Garret, with his company, vnderstanding of the great dearth in his *Paicties* dominions, by licence of his *Queenes Paictie*, (not oherwise permitted) hath sent certaine ships laden with coine into his Highnes Countrey of Dwyna, rather for the reliefe of his *Paicties* subiects, then for any gaine: yet the good will of the said merchants lightly regarded, they were forbidden to sell the said coine, so their great discouragement hereafter to send any more. Wherefore it may please his Highnes, to reuer the good will of the said merchants, as well in sending the said coine, as in all other things, ready to serue his *Paictie*, and to direct his letters to his officers of Dwyna, to suffer the saide merchants, with their company, to sell the said coine by measure great, or small, at their pleasure, without paying custome.

These articles being deliuered to the chiefe Secretarie, as aforesaide, and our talke ended for that time, I departed to my lodging, accompanied with certaine Gentlemen. The next day, being the 13. of May aforesaid, I had warning early in the morning, to prepare my selfe to be at the Court, betwix the howses of 10. and 11. of the clocke, where I should haue access vnto the presence of the Prince, as well to recreate and viewe of all things, as to be dismissed to goe home. At which howses I was sent for to the Court, and brought into the Chamber of presence, where his *Paictie* did sit appareled most sumptuously, with a rich Crowne vpon his head, garnished with many precious stones, his rict face sitting by him, and many of his Nobilitie about him: and after my dutie done, his Highnes commanded me to approach very neere vnto him, and saide vnto me these wordes.

Anthony, the *Queene* our louing sister her letters wee haue caused to be translated, and doe well vnderstande the same, and of all things as well therein contained, as by wordes of mouth by you to vs declared, wee haue well considered, and doe perceiue that our secret message vnto you committed, was done truly according to our minde (although wee were

aduertise

the said Glouer may be paid, and the rather for that he is.

hostile, and an enemy to his country, and remained here, being detained in his hands, now, and would not come home, nor understand, that the said Ralf, in intention, and byake amitie betwixt us: her Highnes request is, that he be carried home, and none of William Garret, and his company be deliuered to their Agre, nor losses, doeth by shipwracke, the same, these 19. yerres so

was here in his Maiesties seruice, to depart home into their native request is, according to her Maiestie to permit, and suffer the libertie to depart, and goe, which shall come hereabout, without any let or stay.

the time of my long being at sea, with my company, have had many changes there, by one Bessons smitten my people, and owing to the said Bessone hath spoken it may please his Highnes to search forth his full behauiour, and to punish him according to the letter of iustice, by vertue of the said letter of iustice, and to the said merchants,

William Garret, with his company, by licence of the Queenes, which come into his Highnes, then for any gaine: yet the same to sell the said coyne, so that they please his Highnes, to receive, as in all other things, Dwyne, to suffer the same, as of small, at their pleasure,

made, and our talke ended by the said Ralf. The next day, being the 10. of May, I prepared my selfe to be at the said house, as well as the said Ralf, to be dismissed to goe home. At the chamber of presence, where his Highnes was seated, garnished with his Maiesties about him: and there vnto him, and saide vnto

me to be translated, and be translated, as by word of mouth, because that our secret conference (although we were

adverted to the contrary) and now we are by you fully satisfied. And when we did send our Ambassadors into England, about those our great, and weightie affaires, to conclude the same with the Queen our sister, our Ambassadors could enoe nothing for want of such assurance as was required in princely affaires, according to the manner of all Countreies, but was dismissed vnto us againe, with letters of small effect, touching the same, and no Ambassadors sent with him from the Queen: which caused vs to thinke, that our princely affaires were set aside, and little regarded, wherevnto we were at that time much grieued: for the which cause, and for the which behauiour of your merchants, resident in our dominions (who haue diuers wayes transgressed and broken our lawes, liuing wilfully in all their doings) we did lay our heauie displeasure vpon them, and did take away from them their priuiledge, commanding that the same throughout all our dominions, should be void, and of none effect: and thereupon did write to the Queen our sister, touching our grieues.

And now to her Highnes hath sent vnto us againe, you her Ambassadors, with her louing letters, and full minde, which we doe thankfully receive, and are thereby fully satisfied. And for that our princely, and secret affaires were not finished to our contentation at our time appointed, according to our expectation, we doe now leaue of all those matters, and set them aside for the time, because our minde is now otherwise changed, but hereafter when occasion shall moue vs to the like, we will then talke of those matters againe. And for that it hath pleased the Queen, our louing sister, to sende vnto us at this present, and doeth desire to continue in friendshippe with vs for euer (which wee doe gratefully accept, and willingly agree to the same) we of our goodnes for her Highnes sake, will not onely from henceforth put away, and forget all our displeasure towards the same Sir William Garret, and his company (as though they had neuer offended vs) but also will restore them to their priuiledges, & liberties, in, and throughout all our dominions, and will signifye the same by our letters, in all towncs and cities, where the said merchants doe traffike, and we will shewe them fauour as afoze time, if they deserue not the contrary. And if the Queen our sister had not sent thee Anthony vnto us, at this present, thou knowest what we should haue done to the said merchants, or whether we would haue called backe our indignation.

Then I humbly beseeched his Maiestie, to let me know the particular offences committed by the said merchants, and the offenders names, to the intent I might make report thereof, vnto the Queenes Maiestie, my mistres, accordingly, that the said offenders might receive full punishments for their defaults: but he said, I should not know them, because he had cleerely remitted all offences: and further, that it was not princely to forgive, and after to accuse the parties, whereby her Maiesties displeasure might fall vpon them at home. Notwithstanding I did after vnderstand some part thereof, by other means.

Then his Maiestie proceeding in this, saide: As touching the articles of request, concerning the merchants affaires, which you did yesterday deliuer vnto our Secretarie, we haue not onely read the same our selfe, but also haue appointed our said Secretarie to declare vnto you our minde, and answer to the same. And for that we are now vpon our Iourney towards our borders, and will depart from hence shortly, we will dismiss you to the Queen our louing sister, your mistres, with our letters, and full minde by word of mouth, touching all your requests, & will send a Gentleman one of our household with you, to safeconduce you to your ships: and of our goodnes will giue you victuals, boates, men, and post horses, so many as you shall neede. And therewith his Maiestie standing by, and putting off his cappe, said vnto me these wordes. Doe our hartie commendations vnto our louing sister, Queenes Elizabeth, vnto whome we wish long life, with happy success: and therewith his Highnes extended his hand to me to kisse, and commanded his sonne, standing by him, to send the like commendations, which he did, whose hand likewise I kissed. And then his Maiestie caused me to sit downe, and commanded mine, and diuides of diuers letters to be brought, whereof he gaue me to vnto me to vnto me, with his owne hand, and so after I departed.

Then the next day, being the 14. of May afozesaid, I was sent for to come to the cheefe Secretarie, and one other of the Counsell with him, who at our meeting said vnto me these wordes: We are appointed by the Emperour his Maiestie, to giue you answer from his Highnes, touching your requests deliuered in writing, which his Maiestie himselfe hath perused, and answered as followeth.

The first request it is answered, that all his Maiesties grieues and displeasure (not put away from the merchants) did grow, because the Queenes Maiestie did not accomplish and enoe with his Ambassadors, his secret and weightie affaires, according to his expectation, and the promise made by Thomas Randolph, at his being here: and also of the ill behauiour of your merchants

- chans resident here in our Countrey, as his Maieitie did himselfe yesterday declare unto you.
- 2 To the second, his Maieitie willetch you to understand, that he hath nor, nor will not hereafter be moued to breake friendship with the Queenes Maieitie, without good, and iust cause.
- 3 To the third, you are answered by the Emperours Maieitie himselfe, that his great goodness and fauour againe vnto the merchants, shall be reioyced, and the same to be knowne by his gracious letters of pmissiōe, now againe granted.
- 4 To the fourth, his Maieitie hath commanded, that your merchants here resident shall abide, and put in writing vnto me his Maieities Secretarie, all their grieues, and complaints, as well for debts, as other iniuries offered them since the time of his Highnes displeasure, and they shall haue iustice truly ministred throughout all his Maieities dominions without delay.
- 5 To the fifth, his Maieitie doth not knowe of any debts due vnto the merchants, by any of his Noblemen, as is alleaged; and whether it be true or no, he knoweth not, the truth whereof must be tried out, and thereupon answer to be giuen; and hereafter his Maieitie would not haue the merchants to trust his people with too much.
- 6 To the sixth, it is answered, that his Maieitie hath commanded search to be made, what money is owing to the merchants, for wares receaued into his treasure, as in the article; (the rest of the bookes of accompt being burnt in the Musko) and such as is due, and founde merite to be payde, shall be payde forthwith to the merchants, their factors, or seruantes, which shall come for the same. And for payment of the rest, his Maieities further pleasure shall be signified hereafter.
- 7 To the seventh, his Maieities answer is, that letters shall be written forthwith to his Captaines of Afracan, and Cazan, and other his officers, vpon the riuer Volga, to welcome it appertaineth, not onely to suffer your people, both merchants, and mariners, to passe with their ships, or barques, from Afracan, ouer the Mare Caspium, to streche Thomas Bannister, and George Ducker, with their companie, and goods, out of Persia, but also when they shall arriue within his Maieities dominions, to ayde, and assist them, and see them safely conducted by the riuer Volga, from danger of enemies.
- 7 To the eighth, his Maieitie hath commanded letters to be written to the Customers, both of Afracan, and Cazan, to make restitution to the English merchants of their goods so detained by them for custome, and to take custome for the same, according to his Maieities letters of pmissiōe.
- 9 To the ninth and tenth articles, his Maieitie will consider of those matters, and hereafter will signifye his princely pleasure therein.
- 11 To the eleuenth, as touching an inuencoye giuen into the treasure, what goods the merchants had burnt in the Musko, in their houses there, his Maieities pleasure was, to vnderstande the same, to the intent he might knowe the losses of all Strangers at that present, but not to make restitution, for that it was Gods doing, and not the Emperours.
- 12 To the twelfth, concerning Thomas Glouer, his Maieitie was informed by his Ambassadors, of the Queenes great merrie and clemencie towards the said Thomas, for his sake, which his Highnes receaued in good part, but what agreement or dealings was betwixt the said Sir William Garret, and his companie, and the said Glouer, or what he doth owe vnto the saide merchants, his Maieitie doth not knowe. And as for the money which the saide Thomas sayeth is owing vnto him by the Emperour, his Maieities pleasure is, that so much as shall be found due, and growing vpon wares deliuered vnto the treasure, ouer the time of his Maieities displeasure, shall be paid forthwith to the saide Thomas, and the rest is referred vnto his Maieitie, and taken for a fine, as appertaining to Rutter, and Bennet, accompted traytors vnto his Highnes, during the time of his displeasure.
- 13 To the thirteenth article, concerning Rutter to be deliuered vnto you, so be carried home, as afore was, that as his Maieitie will not detain any English man in his Countrey, that is willing to goe home, according to the Queenes request: euen so will he not force any to depart, that is willing to tary with him. Yet his Highnes, so farre as the Queenes Maieities request is concerned at this present, to sende the saide Ralf Rutter home with you, and hath commanded that a letter shall be written vnto his cheefe officer at the Musko, to sende the said Rutter away with speed, that he maye see with you at Vologhda, by the line of Spaye, without faile: and touching the rest of your request in the said article, his Maieities pleasure shall be signified in the letters of pmissiōe, granted to the saide merchants.
- 14 To the foureteenth, touching artificers, his Maieitie will accomplish all the Queenes Highnes request in that behalfe, and now at this present doth licence such and so many to depart, to their native Countrey, as are willing to goe.

15 To the 15  
and will sende  
decent words ag  
chans for his o  
imprisoned and  
procure high de  
his officers beh  
nor the like v  
others for their  
Siluester by his  
ship betwixt che  
16 To the 1  
the merchants; h  
giue you a letter  
chans to sell the  
Thus I recei  
comfess, so the 1  
his letter also sen  
letters of pmissi  
I might caue the  
his maieitie to c  
Concerning the  
them with you, s  
written of one re  
maieities pleasu  
to wards Howg  
show you with sp  
here because we  
wherefore the del  
let him repaire v  
his maieitie to be  
Due for as mu  
had earnestly w  
struants, one m  
not faile to come  
should commen  
the said secre  
erie of money, a  
in any wise that  
my leue with s  
gentleman who  
also for me all the  
the said R  
shall presently de  
ced from the sayd  
my iourney, I a  
depes as well exp  
ming of Rutter,  
sent vnto me wit  
for the same. R  
knowe the suuere  
Due I could not  
write, because by  
sent a messenger  
couer then lay  
sent vnto me acc  
the said letters of  
will returne to me

declare unto you,  
nor will not be  
and iust cause.

that his great  
be known by his

re receive shall  
and complaints,  
pleasure, and they  
without delay.

merchants, by any of  
the truth whereof  
maistie would not be

to be made, what  
the articles (the most  
founde merchautes  
s, which shall come  
shall be signified here

en forthwith to his  
olga, to whom it ap-  
passe with their ships,  
minister, and George  
shall arrive within his  
up the river Volga.

the Customers, both of  
goods so detained by  
letters of privilege,  
the matters, and herein

what goods the mer-  
was, to understande  
sent, but not to make

med by his Ambassa-  
of his sake, which his  
the said Sir Wil-  
the saide merchants,  
saye is owing unto  
and due, and growing  
pleasure, shall be paid  
and taken for a fine, as  
during the time of his

to be carried home the  
Countrie, that is with-  
ce any to depart, the  
his request, as com-  
commanded that a let-  
ter away with speed,  
and touching the rest of  
letters of privilege,

with all the Queens  
and so many to depart.

15 To the 15 touching Besson Mesleruicy, the Emperours maistie is much offended with him,  
and will send downe a gentleman with you to inquire of his ill behavioy, as wel for speaking of un-  
derstande against the Quenes maistie as you have alleaged, as also against you, and the mer-  
chants for his outrages mentioned in the article, and the said Besson being founde guiltie, to bee  
imprisoned and punished by severer iustice accordingly, and after to put in sureties to answer the  
Emperours high displeasure, or els to be brought up like a prisoner by the said gentleman, to answer  
his offences before his maistie. And his highnes doth request that the Quenes highnesse would  
use the like upon Middleton and Manlie her messengers true higher two yeres past, and of all  
others for their ill behavioy towards his maistie, as may appere by the letters sent by Daniel  
Silvester by his highnesse, least by the bad demeanour of such two persons, the amitie and friend-  
ship betwixt their maisties might be diminished.

16 To the 16 and last article touching the coyne brought into the Emperours dominions by  
the merchants, his maistie doth greatly commend them for so well doing, and hath commanded to  
give you a letter forthwith in their behalfe, directed to his officers of Dwina, to suffer the said mer-  
chants to sell their coyne, by measure great or small at their pleasure without custome.

Thus I received a full answer from his maistie by his chiefe Secretarie and our other of his  
counsel to the 16 articles aforesaid rehearsed, by me expressed in writing touching your affaires, with  
his letter also sent by me to the Quenes maistie. Which being done, I requested that the new  
letters of privilege granted by his highnes unto you, might be forthwith dispatched to the intent  
I might carie the same with me. Also I requested that such money due to you, which it had pleased  
his maistie to command to be paid, might be delivered to me in your behalfe.

Touching the letters of privilege, the Secretarie answered me, it is not possible you can have  
them with you, for they must be first written and then sent unto the Emperour, and then they to be  
written of one tenour according to your request, which cannot be done with such speed, for that his  
maisties pleasure is, you shall depart this night before him, who remouerth himselfe to morrow  
towards Roudgrod: but without faile the said letters shall be dispatched upon the way, and sent  
unto you with speed to Colmogor. And as touching the money which you require, it cannot be paid  
here because we have not the bookes of accounts: for want whereof wee know not what to paie,  
wherefore the best is that you send one of the merchautes after the Emperour to Roudgrod, and  
let him repaire unto me there, and without faile I will pay all such money as shall be appointed by  
his maistie to be paid, after the bookes seene.

But so much as there was a me of your seruantes with mee at that present (although I  
had earnestly written unto your Agent Nicholas Proctor by Richard Single one of your owne  
servantes, one moneth before my comming to Starites, where I had my dispatch, that he should  
not faile to come himselfe, or send one of your seruants to me hither, to follow all such suites as I  
should commence in your behalfs, which he neglected to doe to your great hurtance) I re-  
quested the said Secretarie that I might leave Daniel my interpreter with him, as well for the re-  
ceipt of money, as for the speedie dispatch of the letters of privilege, but it would not be granted  
in any wise that I should leave any of mine owne companie behind me, and thereupon I did take  
my leave with full dispatch, and departed to my lodging, and forthwith there came unto me a  
gentleman who had charge as well to conduct me, and provide boates, men, horse and victu-  
als for me all the way to the Sea Doe, being a thousand and three hundred miles, as also to doe ius-  
tice of the said Besson, as aforesaid. And he sayd unto me, the Emperours pleasure is, that you  
shall presently depart from hence, and I am appointed to goe with you. And that night I depart-  
ed from the said Starites, being the fourteenth of May aforesaid. And passing a great part of  
my journey, I arrived at the citie of Bologna the last of the said May, where I remained due  
space as well expecting a messenger to bring unto mee the new letters of privilege, as the com-  
ming of Ruzer, whom the Emperours maistie himselfe commanded before my face, should be  
sent unto me without faile, and I did see the letters written to the chiefe officers at the Poska  
for the same. Ruzer beinge the said Ruzer did not come, neither could I heare of him after, nor  
know the hidden cause of his stay contrary to the princes owne worde and meaning, as I suppose.  
But I could not helpe the matter beinge farre from the prince, neither could I tell how to have re-  
prie, because by absence I could not complaine. Notwithstanding, I used all my industrie, and  
sent a messenger John Roizen one of your seruantes from Bologna to Roudgrod, where the  
countrey lay expressly with letters, as well to advertise his maistie that the said Ruzer was not  
sent unto me according to his highnesse commandement and order, as also about the dispatch of  
the said letters of privilege and receipt of your money, with straight charge that he should in any  
wise returne unto me againe before the departing of the ships.

Rt.

And

And the first day of June I departed from the said Vologda by water towards Colmogro, where I arrived the 21. of June aforesaid, and remained there until the 23. of July, looking for the said John Hojton to have returned unto me in all that time, which had respice fully inough in that spare both to goe to the court to dispatch his businesse, and to have returned againe unto me, but he came not, so it was otherwise determined before his going, as I did after understand, & can make at large by word of mouth declare unto your worshipps, the occasion thereof.

Acuerbelesse, I am well assured before this time your Agent hath receiued into his hands the sayd letters of priuiledges, and shall haue dispatch with expedition in all things touching your affaires, according to his maiesties graunt by me obtained, and as hee hath written to the Queenes maiestie at this present, wishing that as now by my going the Emperour hath withdrawn his grieuous displeasure from you, and reioyced you againe into his fauour, so your Agent and others your seruants there resident may behaue, and endeuour themselves to keepe & augment the same, whose euill doings haue bene the one by occasion of his indignation now remitted.

The names of such countries as I Anthonie Jenkinson haue tra-  
uelled vnto from the second of October, 1546. at which time I made my first  
voiage out of England, vntill the yeere of our Lord, 1572.  
when I returned last out of Russia.



**F**irst, I passed into Flanders, and trauelled throug all the base countries, and from thence throug Germanie, passing ouer the Alpes I trauelled into Italy, and from thence made my iourney throug Piemont into France, througout all which realme I haue througely iourneied.

I haue also trauelled throug the kingdoms of Spaine and Portugal, I haue sailed throug the Levant seas eury way, and haue bene in all the cheefe Islands within the same sea, as Rhodes, Malta, Sicilia, Cypres, Candie, and diuers others. I haue bene in many partes of Grecia, Roza, Achais, and where the olde cite of Corinth stood.

I haue trauelled throug a great part of Turkie, Syria, and diuers other countreys in Asia minor.

I haue passed ouer the mountaines of Libanus to Damasco, and trauelled throug Samaria, Galile, Iudistine and Palestine, vnto Jerusalem, and so throug all the holy land.

I haue bene in diuers places of Africa, as Algiers, Cola, Boua, Tripolis, the Collet within the gulfe of Tunis.

I haue sailed farre Northward within the Mare glaciale, where wee haue had continuall day, and sight of the Sunne ten weekes together, and that nauigation was in Norway, Lapland, and Magotia, and other very strange places.

I haue trauelled throug all the ample dominions of the Emperour of Russia and Moscou, which extende from the North sea, and the confines of Norway, and Lapland, euen to the Mare Caspium.

I haue bene in diuers countries neere about the Caspian sea, Geutles, and Mahometans, as Casan, Cremia, Rezan, Cheremisi, Mordouiti, Vachin, Nagaia, with diuers others of strange customes and religions.

I haue sailed ouer the Caspian sea, and discovered all the regions thereabout adiacent, as Chircassi, Comul, Shafcall, Shiruan, with many others.

I haue trauelled 40. daies a iourney beyond the said sea, towards the Orientall India, and Cebais, throug diuers deserts and wilberneses, and passed throug 5. kingdome of the Tartars, and all the land of Turkeman and Zagatap, and so to the great cite of Boghar in Bactria, not with out great perils and dangers sundry times.

After all this, in An. 1562, I passed againe ouer the Caspian sea another way, and landed in Armenia, at a cite called Derbent, built by Alexander the great, and from thence trauelled throug Media, Parchia, Hircania, into Persia to the court of the great Sophie called Shaw Tamasso, vnto whom I deliuered letters from the Queenes maiestie, and remained in his court 8. moneths, and returning home ward, passed throug diuers other countreys. Finally I made two voyages more after that out of England into Russia, the one in the yeere 1566, and the other in the yeere 1571. And thus being wearie and growing old, I am content to take my rest in mine owne house, chiefly comforting my selfe, in that my seruice hath bene honourably accepted and rewarded of her maiestie and the rest by whom I haue bene employed.

er towards Colmogro, where  
3. of Iulie, looking for the said  
and respice fully inough in the  
returned againe unto me, but he  
id after vnderland, & can make  
thereof.

th received into his hands the  
in all things touching your af-  
ee hath written to the Queene  
emperour hath withdrawn his  
our, to your Agent and others  
to keepe & augment the same,  
in now remitted.

Jenkinson haue tra-

h time I made my first  
Lord, 1572.

ough all the base countreies, and  
e Ayles I traueled into Italy,  
amont into France, throught

s of Spaine and Portugall, I  
and haue bene in all the chiefe  
Candie, and diuers others.

where the olde cite of Coyne

diuers other countreys in Afa

nd trauelled throught Samaria,  
all the holy land.

, Tripolis, the Collet within

re wee haue had continuall day,  
was in Norway, Lapland, Sa-

erour of Russia and Moscoul,  
and Lapland, euen to the Mare

seattles, and Mahometans, as  
with diuers others of strange cu-

stres about adiacent, as Chir-

s the Orientall India, and Ca-

5. kingdomes of the Tartars,  
of Boghar in Bactria, nor with

another way, and landed in Ar-

from thence traueled throught  
hie called Shaw Tamasso, unto

ed in his court 8. moneths, and  
ally I made two voyages more

nd the other in the yere 1571.  
rell in mine o tyme house, chiefl-

cepted and rewarded of herma-

The

The request of an honest merchant to a friend of his, to be aduised  
and directed in the course of killing the Whale, as followeth. Anno 1575.

I pray you pleasure me in getting me perfect information of the  
matter hereunder specified.

**W**hat the provision and furniture for a ship of 200. tunnes, to catch the whale fish in  
Russia, passing from England.

How many men to furnish the ship.  
How many fisher men skillfull to catch the Whale, & how many other officers,  
and Coopers.

How many boats, and what fashion, and how many men in each boate.  
What wages of such skillfull men and other officers, as we shall need, out of Bil kay.  
How many harping irons, speares, copes, axes, hatchets, knives, and other implements for the  
killing, and what soze and greatnesse of them.

How many hearthes, the greatnesse and maner of them, and of what metall, and whether they bee  
set on cruets or on furnaces for boiling of the crame oyle, and others.

What quantity of caske, and what soze of caske, and what number of boopes and twiggess, and  
how much thereof to be staued for the crant.

What quantity of victuals, & what kind of victuals for the men in all þ ship for 4. moneths time.  
If of the common mariners and officers to gouerne the ship, we shall not need any out of Bil  
kay, but onely men skillfull in the catching of the Whale, and ordering of the oyle, and one Cooper  
skillfull to set vp the staued caske.

Also what other matters are requisite to bee knowen, and done for the said voyage to catch the  
Whale, not here noted nor remembred.

These requests were thus answered, which may serue as dire-  
ctions for all such as shall intend the same voyage, or the like for the Whale.

A proportion for the setting forth of a ship of 200. tunne,  
for the killing of the Whale.

**I**tere shall be 55. men who departing for Wardhouse in the moneth of  
April, must be furnished with 4. hundreth and a half of bread for every man,  
250. hogsbeds to put the bread in.  
150. hogsbeds of Cibar.

- 6. hundreth of oyle.
- 8. hundreth of bacon.
- 6. hogsbeds of biske.
- 10. quarters of salt.
- 150. pound of candle s.
- 8. quarters of beanes and peast.
- Shalt fish and herring, a quantite convenient.
- 4. tunnes of wines.
- Halfe a quarter of mustard seed, and a querne.
- A grindstone.
- 800. emptie shaken hogsbeds.
- 350. bundles of boopes, and 6. quintalines.
- 800. paire of beds for the hogsbeds.
- 10. Ckacha s called ropes for harping irons.
- 10. pieces of Arpoxeras.
- 3. pieces of Saibens for the Jauelings small.
- 2. sackes to curne the Whales.
- A halter of 27. fadome long to curne the Whales.
- 15. great Jauelings.
- 18. small Jauelings.
- 50. harping irons.
- 6. machicos to cut the Whale with ball.
- 2. dozen of machicos to mance the Whale.
- 2. great hookes to curne the Whale.

R. 2.

3. paire



- 3. paire of Canboates.
  - 6. bootes for Raues.
  - 3. dozen of knives for the harping irons.
  - 6. pulleys to turne the Whale with.
  - 10. great baskets.
  - 10. lampes of iron to carrie light.
  - 5. ketrels of 150 li. the piece, and 6. ladles.
  - 1000. of needles for the pinnaces.
  - 500. of needles of Carabie for the houses, and the wharfe,
  - 18. axes and hatchets to cleave wood.
  - 12. pieces of linen, and 6. dozen of hookes.
  - 2. beetles of Rosemarie.
  - 4. dozen of coores for the pinnaces.
  - 6. lanternes.
  - 500. of Tella.
- Item, gunpowder and matches for harquebushes as shall be needfull.
- Item, there must be caried from hence 5. pinnaces, five men to strike with harping irons, two cutters of Whale, 5. coopers, and a purser of stew.

### A note of certaine other necessarie things belonging to the

Whalefishing, received of master W. Burrough.

- A sufficient number of pulleys for tackle for the Whale.
- A dozen of great baskets.
- 4. furnaces to smelt the Whale in.
- 6. ladles of copper.
- 9 thousand of needles to mend the pinnaces.
- 500. great needles of spades to make their house.
- 3. paire of bootes great and strong, for them that shall cut the Whale.
- 2. calve skins to make apparell of barbecans.

### The deposition of M. William Burrough to certaine Interro-

gatories ministred vnto him concerning the Narue, Kegor, &c. to what king or prince they doe appertaine and are subiect, made the 23. of Iune, 1576.

### *These articles seeme to haue bene ministred vpon the quarell betwene*

Alderman Bond the elder, and the Moscouie companie, for his trade to the Narue without their consent.

*The first Interrogatorie.*

**T**ell, whether the villages of towne vulgarly called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam and Cola, and the partes of the same to wane, as well as the time of the grant of the letters of priuilege by the Emperour to our merchants, as also in the yeres of our Lord, 1566, 1567, 1568, 1569, 1570, 1571, 1572, 1573, 1574, and 1575, respectiue were (as presently they be) of the iurisdiction, and subiect to the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia: and whether the sayd Emperour of Russia by all the time aforesaid, was chief lord and gouernour respectiue of the sayd places, and so vulgarly known, had and reputed: and whether the said towne and places, and either of them be situated towards the North and North-east of Northweest, and betwene the North and the East point: and be the same places whereunto by force of the sayd priuilege, it is forbidden to any other subiect to haue traffique, sailing to the societie aforesaid.

*The second Interrogatorie.*

To this Interrogatorie the deponent saith, that it is true that the villages, towne and places vulgarly called the Narue, Kegor, Pechingam and Cola, and the partes thereof, at the time of the grant of the said priuilege (as he aforesaid) were reputed respectiue to be vnder the iurisdiction, and subiect to the Emperour of Russia, and so from the time of the sayd grants, vnto the yeres, 1566, and that in the yeres of our Lord, 1566, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, and 1575, respectiue they were (as presently they be) of the iurisdiction, and subiect vnto the mightie prince the Emperour of Russia, and the same Emperour of Russia by all the time aforesaid, was chief gouernour respectiue of the said places, and so vulgarly known, had and reputed. And that all the said places are situated from London Northwards, betwene the East and the North, and within

within the grant of the letters patents, and priviledges of the said companie of merchant for the traffique of new trades, and the same places inbretains by force of the said letters patents, it is for known to any other subject to have traffique saving to the societie aforesayd.

Notwithstanding the Deponent saith, that hee hath heard it credibly reported by divers, that the king of Denmarke of late yeres, or every yere once, hath had one of his subjects or more by himselfe, or with his guide a Lappian, that hath at the places, Cola, Kego, and divers other places in Lappia, taken of the Lappies certaine tribute or head pence, which the said Lappies have willingly given to him in favour of the said prince, and to live quietly by his subjects, the people of Finmarke which border upon their countrey, whereof Wardhouse is the strongest hold, & bordereth neere unto them. He hath also heard that in the time of peace betwene the said Emperour of Russia, and the kings of Sweden, there was yearly for the king of Sweden one or more that came into Lappia unto divers places, in manner as the king of Denmarke servaunt useth to doe, and did demand of them some tribute or dutie which they willingly paid: but since the late wars betwene the said Emperour and king of Sweden, he hath not heard of any thing that hath bin paid by them to the king of Sweden: such is the simplicity of this people the Lappies, that they would rather give tribute to all those that border upon their countrey, then by denying it have their ill wills.

But the truth is, as this Deponent saith, that the said mightie prince the Emperour of Russia, is the chiefe lord and governour of the said countrey of Lappia, his lawes and orders are observed by them, he takes toll and custome &c. of them. They are infidels, but if any of them become christians, it is after the Russi law. If there happen any controuersie betwene those people, such as cannot be ended amongst themselves, or by the Emperours deputies in that countrey, they repair to the spotte as their highest court, & there haue it ended. Betwene the place specified Kego, & the confines of Finmarke aforesaid in Lappia, is the monastrie Werchingam, which are monkes, and the chiefe lord, the chiefe of that abbey is atwaies appointed by the clergy in spollo.

Werchingam abbey.

Also in the yere of our Lord, 1557. the said Deponent was at the place Kego, in the month of June, the 29. day being S. Peters day, at which time was a great assembly of people, at a part there, the Russes, Kerles and Lappians, on the one side subjects to the said mightie prince & Emperour of Russia, and the Swedegians or Kozles and people of Finmarke, subjects to the king of Denmarke on the other part, they did barter and exchange fish for other commodities. The deputy for the Russie had the chiefe government of the said part, and took toll of those people that were subject to his master, and the captain of Wardhouse, had then the government of the people subject to his master the king of Denmarke. He saith also, that betwene the abbey Werchingam, and the abbey of S. Nicholas in Russia, upon the border of the said coast of Lappia, he hath bene upon the shoar at divers places, where fresh rivers fall into the Sea, where are commonly taken fresh Salmon, all which places he doth know for certaine, that they were farmed out to the subjects of the said Emperour, and he the said Emperour receiued yearly the rent for them. And further he saith, that it hath bene further credibly reported unto him, that there is not any such river or creeke of fresh water which falleth out of the said countrey of Lappia into the sea, betwene the said abbey Werchingam, and the baie of S. Nicholas, but they are all and eury of them farmed out, and the Emperour receiued the rent for them.

Item, whether as well before, as also within the memory of men, till the time of the grant of the said letters patents any of the English merchants (saving the merchants of the said societie) subjects of this realme of England, haue commonly exercised or frequented busines or trade in the said villages or townes called the Narue, Kego, Werchingam, & Cola, or in any of them, or in any port or territories of the said Emperour of Russia.

The said Interrogatois.

To this Interrogatois the Deponent answereth, that the subjects of this Realme before the grant of the said letters patents did not continually exercise, neither frequent or trade to any of the said places called the Narue, Kego, Werchingam or Cola, or to any of them.

The deponents answer.

Certaine reasons to disswade the vse of a trade to the Narue aforesayd, by way through Sweden.

The merchandise of the Narue are grosse wares, viz. flaxe, yempe, ware, salt to & hides. The traffique at that place standeth upon the agreement and liking of the Emperour of Russia, with the king of Sweden: for all these merchandises that are brought thither come from Westroth, Nouogrode, and other parts of the Emperours dominions.

For transporting those merchandises from Narue to Stockholm, or what other place shall be thought convenient in Sweden, it must be in vessels of those countries, which will be of small force to us.

share,

shall be needfull, five men to strike with harping order of two.

belonging to the rough. whale.

cut the whale.

certaine Interrogator, &c. to what king or, 23. of June, 1576.

the quarrell betwene anie, for his trade

the Narue, Kego, Pechin as well as the time of the grant merchants, as also in the yeres 1571, 1572, 1573, 1574, and the jurisdiction, and subject to whether the said Emperour of respectively of the said places, ones and places, and either of and betwene the King and the said priviledge, it is forbidden

the villages, townes and places power thereof, as the time of the to be under the jurisdiction, the sayde grounds, into the yeres, 1572, 73, 74, and 1575. to subject unto the mightie prince the time aforesaid, was chief how and reported. And that all the Call and the King, and within

Freebooters, or any other that shall make quarrell, or offer violence against them.

When the goods are brought into Sweden, they must be discharged, and new laden into smaller vessels, or carry the same by river or lake a part of the way, and againe to be unladen and transported by Land to Newles.

So as the ordinary charges for transporting of goods from Narue to Newles by way as aforesaid, besides the spoile by so often lading and unlading, carriage by land, and the dangers of the seas, pirates, &c. will be such as when it shall be so brought to Newles, it will be as deare to the merchants in that place as it shall be woxly to be sold in London, wherefore the trade that wayes can not be profitable to our nation.

NOTE.

Moreover, when the goods shall be in Newles, it may bee thought doubtful to bring it thence quietly without desiring of forcible resistance of the king of Denmarke, so far as much as he maketh quarrell, and alleageth damage unto him in his tolles of the Sound by our trade to S. Nicholas, how much more will he now doe by this way, and with how much greater advantage may he performe it? The danger that may grow in our trade to Russia by way of S. Nicholas, through the displeasure that the Emperour may conceive by our trade with the Sweden to Narue, is also to be considered.

### A remembrance of aduise giuen to the merchants, touching

a voyage for Cola about sayd. 1578.

**W**here as you require my counsell after what order the voyage for Cola is to be set forth, I answer that I know no better way then hath bene heretofore used, which is after this manner. First of all we haue hired the ship by the great, giuing so much for the wearing of the tackle and the hull of the ship, as the ship may be in biggness: as if she be about the burden of 100. tunnes, we pay 80. pound, and so after that rate: and therunto we doe hire all the ship our selues, and do ship all our men our selues, shipping no more men, nor giuing them more wages then we should doe if they went of a merchants voyage, for it hath bene a great helpe to our voyage hitherto, to haue our men to fish with one boate, & cooking vs no more charges then it should do, if our men should lie & doe nothing saving the charges of salt, & of fire, which is treble paid for againe. For this last yeere past our men killed with one boate betwixt 9. and 10. thousand fish, which yielded to vs in money with the oile that came of it, about 15. or 16. thoyse pounds, which is a great helpe to a voyage. And besides all this our ship did take in so much oile and other commodities as we bestowed 100. whole clothes in. But because, as I do suppose, it is not the vse of London to take ships to freight after that order before prescribed, neither I thinke that the mariners will take such paines as our men will: Therefore my counsell is, if you thinke good, to freight some ship of Hull or Newcastle, for I am surer that you may haue them better cheape to freight, then here at London. Besides all this, one may haue such men as will take paines for these merchantes. And furthermore when it shall please God that the ship shall returne to come to discharge at Hull, which will be the most for your profit for the sales of all such like commodities as comes from that place, as for fish, oile, & Salmon chiefly, he will seeke a better market for the sales then at Hull, he must seeke it out of England, for the like is not in England. This is the best way that I can devise, and most for your profit, and if you will, I will also set you downe all the commodities that are necessary for such a voyage, and which way also that the Hollanders may within two or three yeeres be forced to leaue of the trade of Cola which may easilie be done. For if my abilitie were to my will, I would vse the matter so that they should either leaue of the trade, or els carry light ships with them home againe.

Will the best market of England for sale of fish.

### Aduertisements and reports of the 6. voyage into the partes of Persia

and Media, for the company of English merchants for the discoverie of new trades, in the yeeres 1579. 1580. and 1581. gathered out of sundry letters written by Christopher Burrough servant to the said company, & sent to his unckle M. William Burrough.

**T**hese it is to be understood, that the ships for the voyage to S. Nicholas in Russia, in which the factors & merchandise for the Persian voyage were transported, departed from Gravesend the 19. of June, 1579. which arrived at S. Nicholas in Russia the 22. of July, where the factors and merchantes landed, and the merchandize were discharged and laden into dolbnykes, that is, barkes of the countrey, to be carried from thence by river unto Volgda. And the five and twentieth day of the sayde Iulie, the Dolbnykes departed from Kolt Island by Saint Nicholas by the River Dwina, Peremene, that is to say, poste by continuall sapling, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of men, which came to Colmogro, the

gaind them.  
erger, and new laden into small  
gaine to bee unladen and trans

ue to Newles by way as alway  
land, and the dangers of the  
it will be as weare to the men  
before the trade that wayes can

ight doubtful to bring it thence  
lacke, forasmuch as he maketh  
by our trade to S. Nicholas,  
greater advantage may be seen  
of S. Nicholas, though the  
Sweden to Naruc, is also in

rchants, touching

age for Cola is to be set forth,  
ereof use, which is after  
e, giving so much for the wea-  
e in biggest: as if she be above  
and thereunto we doe victual  
noze mē, not giuing them more  
hath bene a great helpe to our  
no more charges then it should  
of fine s, which is creble paid for  
er 9, and 10 thousand sds, which  
scope pounds, which is a great  
oile and other commodities as  
le, it is not the use of London to  
inke that the mariners will take  
the good, to freight some ship of  
cheape to freight, then here at  
nes for their merchants. And  
ome to discharge at Hull, which  
odie as come from that place,  
the sales then at Hull, be much  
best way that I can devise, and  
he commodities that are neces-  
p within two or three yeeres be  
mp abilitie were to my will, I  
his carp lighte ships with them

into the partes of Per-

the discourie of new trades,  
dry letters written by Christo-  
ynkle M. William Burrough.  
S. Nicholas in Russia, in which  
sponsored, departed fro Straul  
hols in Russia the 22. of July,  
andize were discharged and la-  
thence up by river into Vo-  
oshenikes departed from Koz  
the is to say, poste by conti-  
n, which came to Colmogro,  
the

the 17 day, and departed thence the 29 day of Julie by the sayd riuer Dwina, and came to Vityoug  
(which is at the head of the riuer Dwina, and mouth of Sughano) the 9 of August, where they  
stayed but a small time, providing some victualles, and stitting certaine of theyr callacks of barke-  
men, and so departed thence the same day by the riuer Sughano, and came to Toima, (which is  
counted some what more then halfe the way from Vityoug) the 15 day, where they stitted some of  
theyr callacks, and departed thence the same day, and came to the ritie Vologda the 19 of August,  
where they landed theyr goods, and stayed at that place till the 30 of the same. Having provided  
at Vologda, Telegas, our wagons, whereupon they laded theyr goods, they departed thence with  
the same by land towards Yerallaue the sayd 30 of August, at eight of the clocke in the morning,  
and came to the East side of the riuer Volga ouer against Yerallaue, with 25 Telgas laden with  
the sayd goods the seuenth of September at five of the clocke afternoone. Then the three stroogs  
of barks provided to transport the said goods to Astracan (where they should meet the shippe that  
should carrie the same from thence into Persia) came ouer from Yerallaue unto the same side of the  
riuer Volga, and there took in the said goods. And having prepared the said barks ready with all  
necessarie furniture they departed with them from Yerallaue towin the riuer Volga, on the 14  
day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arrived at Niznouogrod, the 17  
day at thye of the clocke afternoone, where they shewed the Emperours letters to passe free with-  
out paying any custome, and carryed there about thyeer houres to provide necessaries, and then de-  
parting, arrived at Cazan (which is nere the same towne) on the 22 of September at five of the clocke  
afternoone, where (though contrary windes, and for providing new callacks in the places of some  
that there went from them) they remayned till the 26 day, at what time they departed thence a-  
bout two of the clocke after noone, and arrived at Tetushagorod, which is on the Crim side of  
Volga, and in latitude 55 degrees 22 minutes the 28 day at ten in the forenoone, where they auke-  
ret, and remayned about thyeer houres, and departing thence came to Oueak, which is on the Crims  
side (on the Westerne side of Volga) the first of October about five of the clocke in the morning.  
This place is accounted halfe the way betweene Cazan, and Astracan: and here there groweth  
great store of Licopas: the soile is very fruitfull: they found there apple trees, and cherrie trees.  
The latitude of Oueake is 51 degrees 30 minutes. At this place had bene a very saype stone ca-  
stle called by the name Oueake, & adioyning to the same was a towne called by Russes, Sodom:  
this towne & part of the castle (by report of the Russes) was swallowed into the earth by the iudice  
of God, for the wickednesse of the people that inhabited the same. There remayned at this day to  
be seene a part of the ruines of the castle, and certain tombs, wherein as it seemeth haue bene laid  
noble personages: for vpon a tombe stone might be perceiued the forme of a horse and a man sit-  
ting on it with a bowe in his hand, and arrowes girt to his side: there was a piece of a scutcheon al-  
so vpon one of the houses, which had characters grauen on it, where of some part had bene consu-  
med with the weather, and the rest left vnperfect: but by the forme of them that remayned, we ind-  
ged them to be characters of Armenia: and other characters were grauen also vpon another tombe  
stone. Now they departed from Oueake the said first of October, at five of the clocke after noone,  
and came to Perauoloke, the 10 day about eleuen or twelue of the clocke at night, making no a-  
bode at that place, but passed alongst by it. This word Perauoloke in the Russ tongue, doth sig-  
nifie a narrow straighte of necke of land, betweene two waters, and it is so called by them, because  
from the riuer Volga, at that place to the riuer Don, or Tanais, is counted thirtie versts, or as much  
as a man may well trauell on foot in one day. And seven versts beneath, vpon an Island called  
Tlaminia, the Emperour of Russia hath sitte gummers all the summer time to keepe watch, called  
by the Tartar name Carawool. Betweene this place and Astracan are five other Carawools of  
verthes.

Yerallaue.

Great store of Licopas.

- 1 The first is named Kamenie Carawool, and is distant from Perauoloke 120 versts.
- 2 The second named Scupino Carawool, distant from the first 50 versts.
- 3 The third called Polooy Carawool, is 120 versts distant from the second.
- 4 The fourth named Keezeyur Carawool, is 50 versts distant from the third.
- 5 The fifth named Ichkeebre, is 30 versts distant from the fourth, and from Ichkeebre to Astra-  
can is 30 versts.

The 16 of October they arrived at Astracan with the three stroogs in safetie about nine of  
the clocke in the morning, where they found the shippe provided for the Persia voyage in good order  
and readinesse. The 17 day the foure principall factors of the company, Arthur Edwards, Willi-  
am Turnbull, Barthew Talboys, and Peter Garrard, were invited to dine with the chiefe diake of  
secretarie of Astracan (Vasilie Pheodooruch Shelepin) who declared that unto them the trou-  
bles that were in Media and Persia: and how the Turke with helpe of the Crims had conquered,  
and

Peter Gar-  
ard.

and did possess the greater part of Media: also he laid before them that winter was at hand, and if they should put out with the shippe to the sea, they should be constrained to take what hazards might happen them by wintering in the parts of Media, or else where, soe backe againe to that place there was no hope for them to arrive: whereupon the said factors determined to stay there all winter to learne further of the state of those countreies.

Ice at Astracan  
can last foure  
moneths.

The 19 of November the winde being North-east, there was a great frost, and much ice in the river: the next day being the 30 of November the ice stood in the river, and so continued untill Easter day.

Anno 1580.

The 22 of December departed this life John Hoore the gunner of the shippe. Thursday the seventh of Januarie betwene eight & nine of the clocke at night there appeared a cross proceeding from the moone, with two gallees at the South and North end thereof.

The six of Januarie being Twelve day (which they call Chrestenia) the Russes of Astracan brake a hole in the ice upon the river Volga, and hallowed the waere with great solemnity according to the manner of theyr countrey, at which time all the souldiours of the towne shot off theyr small pieces upon the ice, and likewise to gratifie the captaine of the castle being a duke, whose name is Pheodore Michalouich Troicouria, who stood hard by the shippe, beholding them as they were on the river, was shot off all the ordnance of our shippe being fiftene pieces, viz. two faulcons, two faulconers, foure fowlers, foure fowlers chambers, and three other small pieces made for the strooges to shoot hailestones, and afterwarde the great ordnance of the castle was shot off.

On the 31 of Januarie there happened a great eclipse of the moone, which began about twelve of the clocke at night, and continued before she was cleare an houre and a halfe by estimation, which ended the first of February about halfe an houre past one in the morning: she was wholly darkened by the space of halfe an houre.

The 26 of February the towne of Nagay Tartars, called the Yourt, which is within three quarters of a mile of the castle of Astracan, by casualtie was set on fire about ten of the clocke at night, & continued burning till midnight, whereby one halfe of it was burnt, and much cattell destroyed. The Nagayes that inhabit that towne, are the Emperour of Russia his vassals: It is supposed there are of them inhabiting that place, of men, women, and children, the number of seven thousand. That night the Allarum was made in the castle and towne of Astracan. The captaine thereof had all his souldiours in very good order, and readinesse, being of them in number two thousand gunners, and castaks, that is to say, a thousand gunners, which are accounted more souldiours, and are not put to any other service then the vse of theyr pieces, watch, &c. as souldiours which at waies keepe the castle, and the castaks also using theyr pieces, do keepe the towne, and are commonly set to all kinde of labors.

Astracan situate  
upon all  
Islands.

The seventh of March 1580, the Nagayes and Crims came before Astracan to the number of one thousand foure hundred yoslemens, which incamped round about, but the neerer of them were two Russes vnto and a halfe off from the castle and towne: some of them lay on the Crims side of Volga, and some on the Nagay side, but none of them came upon the Island that Astracan standeth on. It was sayd that two of the prince of the Crims his souldiers were amongst them. They sent a messenger on the eight day to the captaine of Astracan, to signifie that they would come and visite him: who answered, he was ready to receiue them: and taking a great shotte of bullet in his hand, willed the messenger to tell them that they should not want of that gearre, so long as it would last. The ninth day newes was brought that the Crims determined to assault the towne or castle, and were making of sagoes of reede, to bring with them for that purpose. The tenth day two Russes that were captiues, and two of the Tartars bondmen came away from the Nagayes, and came into Astracan. The same day word was brought to the duke of two Nagayes, which were serued at Gostine house, supposed to be spies, but were gone againe from thence before they were suspected. This Gostine house is a place a litle without the towne where the Eskiks (or Persian merchants) do usually remaine with theyr merchandize. The 11 day the sayd Nagayes, and one more with them, came againe to that house early in the morning, where they were taken by the Russes, and brought to the captaine of the castle, and being examined, confessed that theyr coming was onely to seeke two of the bondmen that were come from them: whereupon theyr bondmen were deliuered to them: which caused the sayd captaine commonly to newch if they be not Russes, and they were set at liberty. The 13 day they brake up theyr camps, and marched to the North wards into the countrey of Nagay.

The variation  
of the compass  
at Astracan  
was 13 deg.  
40 minutes.

The 17 of April the variation of the compass observed in Astracan was 13 deg. 40 min. from North to West. This spring there came newes to Astracan that the queene of Persia (the King being blinde)



in the morning they sailed thre & sicke leagues, then had they sicke shallow water: from thence they sailed vntill noone South and by West seuen leagues and a halfe, the latitude then obserued 43 degrees 17 minutes, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground: from that vntill eight of the clocke at night, they sailed South by East five leagues and a halfe, then had they thre and foyre fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the 23 foure a clocke in the morning, they sailed Southsouthwest thre leagues and a halfe: then could they get no ground in two and sicke fathoms deepe. From thence vntill noone they sailed South nine leagues, then the latitude obserued was 42 degrees 24 minutes. From thence till the 24 day at noone they sailed South by West seuentene leagues and a halfe, then the latitude obserued was 41 degrees 32 minutes. From noone till seuen of the clocke at night, they sailed Southsouthwest foure leagues, then had they perfect sight of high land of hills, which were almost couered with snowe, and the mids of them were West from the shippe, being then about twelue leagues from the nearest land: they sounded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they sailed Southwest vntill midnight: about thre leagues from thence till the 25 day foure of the clocke in the morning, they sailed West thre leagues, being then little winde, and nere the land, they took in theyr sailes, and lay hulling: at noone the latitude obserued, was 40 degrees 54 minutes: they sounded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At foure of the clocke in the afternoon, the winde Northwest, they set theyr sailes, and from thence till the 26 day at noone they sailed East south east foure leagues. From thence they sailed till eight of the clocke at night Southwest thre leagues, the winde then at North. From thence they sailed west till the 27 day two of the clocke in the morning, Westsouthwest eight leagues, the winde blowing at North very much. From the said two till foure of the clocke they sailed South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the land playne, which was not past thre leagues from them, being very high ragged land. There were certaine rocks that lay farre off into the sea, about five leagues from the same land, (which are called Barnake Tash) they sailed betwene those rocks and the land, and about five of the clocke they passed by the poxe Bilbill, where they should haue put in but could not land bearing longt the shore about two of the clocke afternoone, they came to Bildigh in the countrey of Media of Sheruan, against which place they ankered in nine foot water. Presently after they were at anker, there came aboard of them a boat, where in were seuen of eight persons, two Turkes, the rest Persians, the Turkes vassals, which had them welcome, and seemed to be glad of theyr arrival, who to be the factors that the Turke had conquered all Media, of the countrey Sheruan, and how that the Turkes Basha remained in Derbent with a garrison of Turkes, and that Shamackie was wholly spoiled, and had few or no inhabitants left in it. The factors then being desirous to come to the speech of the Basha, sent one of the Tulliks (or merchants that went ouer with them from Astracan, passengers) and one of the companies seruants Robert Golding, with those souldiours, to the capitaine of Backow, which place standeth hard by the sea, to certifie him of their arrival, and what commodities they had brought, and to desire friendship to haue quiet and safe traffike for the same. Backow is from Bildih, the place where they roade, about a dayes iourney, one foote easly to be trauelled, which may be sixe leagues the next way ouer land: it is a walled towne, and strongly fortified. When the sayd messenger came to the capitaine of Backowe, the said capitaine gaue him very friendly entertainment, and after he vnderstood what they were there were come in the shippe, and what they had brought, he seemed to reioyce much therent: who gaue the sayd Golding licence to depart backe the next day, bring the eight and twentieth day: and promised that he would himselfe come to the shippe the next day following: with which answer the sayd Golding returned and came to the shippe the sayd eight and twentieth day about nine of the clocke at night. The nine and twentieth day in the morning the factours caused a tent to be set by at shore nere the shippe, against the coming of the sayd capitaine: who came thither about thre of the clocke after noone, and brought about thirtie souldiours, that attended on him, in shirts of male, and some of them had garmets of illur, others of steel, and very saye. The factours met him at the tent, and after very friendly salutations passed betwene them, they gaue him by a present a garment of cloch of velvet, and another of scarlet, who accepted the same gratefully: after they had talked together by theyr interpreters, as well of the state of the voyage and cause of theyr coming thither, as also learned of the sayd capitaine the state of that countrey, the factours made request vnto him, that he would helpe them to the speech of the Basha, who answered that theyr demaund was reasonable, and that hee would willingly shew them therein what pleasure he could, and sayd because the way to Derbent, where the Basha remained, was dangerous, he would send thither, and certifie him of theyr arrival, and what commodities they had brought, and such commodities as they would desire to exchange or barter the same

42 degrees  
25 minutes.41 degrees  
32 minutes.

26 day.

27 day post.

the factious water: from thence  
 half, the latitude then observed  
 and shallow ground: from the  
 leagues and a half, then had  
 the 23 foure a clocke in the mo-  
 rning could they get no ground in  
 South nine leagues, then the  
 the 24 day at noone they sailed  
 observed was 41 degrees 30  
 South four well foure leagues,  
 off covered with snow, and the  
 leagues from the next land:  
 from thence they sailed South  
 day foure of the clocke in the mo-  
 rning neere the land, they took in  
 40 degrees 54 minutes: the  
 of the clocke in the afternoon,  
 a 6 day at noone they sailed East  
 clocke at night Southwell thre  
 the 27 day two of the clocke in  
 the North way much. From the  
 the being day light, they  
 being very high ragged land,  
 the leagues from the same land,  
 and the land, and about five of  
 the but could not: and be-  
 came to Bildigh in the country of  
 water. Presently after they were  
 of eight persons, two Turks, the  
 seemed to be glad of their arri-  
 via, of the countrey Sheruan, and  
 of Turks, and that Shamackie  
 the factours then being desirous  
 thence that went over with them  
 Robert Golding, with those four  
 he sea, to certifie him of their ar-  
 rived: to haue quiet and safe  
 they road, about a dayes journey,  
 the way ouer land: it is a walled  
 to the captaine of Backowe, the  
 understood what they were that  
 reioyce much therat: who gaue  
 light and twentieth day: and pro-  
 ceeding: with which answer the  
 the twentieth day about nine of the  
 factours caused a tow to be set  
 up: who came thither about  
 six, that attended on him, in shir-  
 t, and very saye. The factours  
 betwene them, they gaue him  
 he accepted the same gratefull:  
 the state of the voyage and cause  
 the state of that countrey, the  
 speech of the Bashā, who an-  
 swered willingly to them therein  
 in, where the Bashā remained  
 arrivall, and what commodities  
 he to exchange of barter the same  
 for

by he would procure the said Bashā to provide for them: and therefore willed the factours to con-  
 sult together, and certifie him what they most desired, and what quantitie they would haue pro-  
 vided: so whilst the factours were consulting together thereupon, the captaine talked with a Turke  
 merchant that came over in the ship with them from Altracan, which Turke among other matters  
 in talke, certified the captaine, that the night before the factours and their company were determined  
 to haue returned backe againe to Altracan, and that they were about to way their anchors, which  
 in deed was true, but the maister of the barke, Thomas Hudson of Limehouse, persuaded them  
 that the wind was not good for them to depart, &c. When the factours came againe to talke with  
 the captaine, they desired to go to the Bashā, and that he would safely conduct them thither: he  
 granted their requests willingly, desiring them to goe with him to a village hard by, and there to  
 abide with him that night, and the next day they should go to Backow, and from thence proceed on  
 their journey to Derbent. They were unwilling to go that night with him, because the promise  
 for the way was not in readinesse, but requested that they might stay till the morning. There-  
 upon the captaine said it was reported unto him, that they meant the night before to haue gone a-  
 way: and if it should so happen, he were in great danger of loosing his head: for which cause he re-  
 quired to haue some one for a pledge: wherefore M. Garrard one of the factours offered himselfe  
 to go, who because he could not speake the Russe tongue, took with him Christopher Burrough,  
 and a Russe interpreter: that night they rood from the sea side, to a village about ten miles off,  
 where at supper time the captaine had much talke with M. Garrard of our countrey, demanding  
 where about it did lie, what countries were neere vnto it, and with whom he had traffike, for by  
 the Russe name of our countrey he could not conjecture who we should be: but when by the signifi-  
 on he perceived we were Englishmen, he demanded if our prince were a mapten Queene: which  
 when he was certified of, then (quoth he) your land is called Englererra, is it not? and were was  
 made it was so: whereof he was very glad when he knew the certaintie. He made very much of  
 them, placing M. Garrard next to himselfe, and Christopher Burrough, with the Russe interpre-  
 tour for the Turke tongue hard by. There was a Sittan merchant with him at that present, of  
 whom he seemed to make great account: him he placed next to himselfe on the other side, and his  
 gentlemen sat round about him talking together. They sitting is upon the benches, of crosse  
 legged.

Thom. Hud-  
 son of Lime-  
 house maister  
 of the English  
 barke.

M. Christoph.  
 Burrough.

Supper being brought in, he requested them to eat. After they potage (which was made of  
 rice) was done, and likewise they boyled meat, there came in platters of rice sodden thicke, and  
 very mingled withall: after all which, came a Sheepe roasted whole, which was brought in a trap,  
 and set before the captaine: he called one of his seruitours, who cut it in pieces, and laying thereof  
 upon diuers platters, set the same before the captaine: then the captaine gaue to M. Garrard and  
 his company anoother platter, and to his gentlemen anoother, and to them which could not well reach  
 he call meat from the platters which were before him. Diuers questions he had with M. Garrard  
 and Christopher Burrough at supper time, about their diet, inquiring whether they eat fish: they  
 voluntarily, or by order. They drinke in those partes is nothing but water. After supper (walk-  
 ing in the garden) the captaine demanded of M. Garrard, whether the vice was in England to  
 lie in the house or in the garden, and which he had best liking of: he answered, where it pleased the  
 him, but they vice was to lye in houses: thereupon the captaine caused beds to be sent into the  
 house for them, and caused his kinsman to attend on them in the night, if they chanced to want any  
 thing: he himselfe with his gentlemen and souldiours lying in the garden.

In the morning very early he sent horse for the rest of the company which should go to Derbent,  
 sending by them that went thence sheepe for the shippe. In that village there was a Stroue, into  
 which the captaine went in the morning, requesting M. Garrard to go also to the same to wash  
 himselfe, which he did. Shortly after they comming out of the Stroue, whilst they were at  
 breakfast, M. Turbull, M. Tapboyes, and Thomas Hudson the M. of the shippe, came thither,  
 and when they had all broken the yf falls, they went to Backow: but Christopher Burrough re-  
 turned to the ship, for that he had hurt his leg, and could not well endure that trauell. And from Bac-  
 kow they proceeded towards Derbent, as it was by the captaine promised, being accompanied on  
 their way for their safe conduct, with a gentleman, and certaine souldiours, which had the captaine  
 of Backow his letters to the Bashā of Derbent, very friendly written in their behalfe. In the  
 journey to Derbent they forsooke the ordinary wayes, being very dangerous, and traueled thro-  
 row woodes till they came almost to the towne of Derbent: and then the gentleman rood before  
 with the captaine's letters to the Bashā, to certifie him of the English merchants comming, who  
 receiving the letters, and understanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and sent forth to  
 receive them, certaine souldiours gunners, who met them about two miles out of the towne, salu-



cing them with great reverence, and afterwards rood before them: then againe met them other  
 souldiours, somewhat nearer the castle, which likewise having done the sayd salutations rood before  
 them, and then came forth noble men, capitaines, and gentlemen, to receive them into the castle  
 and to wine. As they entered the castle there was a shot of twentie peeces of great ordnance, and the  
 Basia sent *Sp. Turnbull* a very saye boyle with furniture to mount on, esteemed to be worth an  
 hundred markes, and so they were conveyed to his presence: who after he had talked with them,  
 sent for a coate of cloeth of golde, and caused it to be put on *Sp. Turnbulls* backe, and then willed  
 them all to depart, and take the sayd east, for that they were wearie of the sayd journey, and on the mor-  
 row he would talke further with them. The next day when the factours came againe to the presence  
 of the Basia, according to his appointment, they requested him that he would graunt them his privi-  
 lege, whereby they might traffike safely in any part and place of his countrey, offering him, that  
 if it pleased his Highnes to have any of the commodities that they had bought, and to write his  
 minde therof to the capitaine of Backow, it should be deliuered him accordingly. The Basiaes an-  
 swere was, that he would willingly giue them his privilege: yet for that he regarded the sayd factours,  
 having come so farre, and knowing the state of his countrey to be troublesome, he would haue them  
 to bring the sayd commodities thither, & there to make sale of it, promising he would provide such com-  
 modities as they needed, and that he would be a defence vnto them, so that they should not be in-  
 iured by any: wherupon the factours sent *Thomas Hudson* backe for the ship to bring her to Derbent,  
 and the Basia sent a gentleman with him to the capitaine of Backow, to certifie him what was de-  
 termined, which message being done, the capitaine of Backow, and the Basiaes messenger, accom-  
 panied with a dozen souldiours, went from Backow with *Thomas Hudson*, and came to the ship  
 at *Bildih* the 11 day of June. After the capitaine and his men had bene aboard and scene the ship,  
 they all departed presently, but the gentleman, messenger from the Basia, with three other *Turks*,  
 remained aboard, and continued in the shippe till she came to Derbent: the latitude of *Bildih* by  
 the observations is 40 degrees 25 minutes: the variation of the compasse 10 degrees 40 minutes  
 from North to West. After the returne of *Thomas Hudson* backe to *Bildih*, they were constri-  
 ned to remayne there with the shippe through contrary windes vntill the 16 day of June foure  
 of the clocke in the morning, at which time they weped anchor, set saile and departed thence towards  
 Derbent, and arrived at anchor againe Derbent East and by South from the sayd castle in foure  
 fathome and a halfe water, the 22 day of June at ten of the clocke in the morning: then they took  
 up the ordnance, which before they had stowed in holde for easing the shippe in her rowling. In  
 the afternoon the Basia came downe to the water side against the shippe, and hauing the said ord-  
 nance placed, and charged, it was all shotte off to gratifie him: and presently after his departure  
 backe, he permitted the factours to come aboard the shippe. The 29 day the sayd goods were unladen  
 and carryed to the Basiaes garden, where he made choyce of such things as he liked, taking for eu-  
 ery five and twentie karkies, or tobaccoer, one, or after the rate of foure for the hundred.  
 The factours after his choyce made, determined to send a part of the rest of the goods to Backow,  
 for the speedier making sale thereof, for which cause they obtained the Basiaes letter to the cap-  
 itaine of Backow, written very fauourably in the sayd beoofe: and thereupon was laden and sent in  
 a small boat of that countrey in merchandize, to the value (very neere) of one thousand pound ster-  
 ling: videlicet, one hundred peeces of karkies, seuen hundred clothes, two barrells of corbenels, two  
 barrells of tyme, foure barrells of shaffe. There went with the same of the companys seruantes  
*William Winkle*, *Robert Golwing*, and *Richard Relfe*, with two Russies, wherof one was an  
 interpreter, besides foure barkmen. They departed from Derbent with the sayd barke the 19  
 of Iulij, and arrived at *Bildih* the 25 day: their passage and carriage of their goods to Backow  
 was chargeable, although they saies when they came thither were small: they had great friends  
 shew them of the capitaine of Backow, as well for the Basiaes letter, as also for the factours  
 saies, who had dealt friendly with him, as before is declared. *Robert Golwing* desirous to know  
 what might be done at *Shamakie*, which is a vairs iourney from Backow, went thither from  
 whence returning, he was set on by cheques, and was shot into the knee with an arrow, who had be-  
 rie hardly escaped with his life and gootes, but that by good hap he killed one of the cheques bolles  
 with his caluice, and shot a Turke through both cheeks with a bag. On the first day of August the fac-  
 tours being aduertised at Derbent that their ship was rotten and weak, that it was doubtfull she  
 would not carry them backe to Astracan, did thereupon agree and bargain at that place with an Ar-  
 menian, whose name was *Jacob*, for a barke called a *Bulle*, being of burden about 25 tunnes,  
 which came thence from Astracan, and was at that instant riding at an Island called *Zere* about  
 three or foure leagues beyond of the Castwardes of *Bildih*, which barke for the sayd factours,  
 they went to haue with them in their returne to Astracan, and thereupon wrote vnto *Wincoll* and

The latitude  
 of *Bildih* 40  
 deg. 25 min.  
 The variation  
 of the compas  
 10 deg. 40 min.

See *Journals*.

in a then againe met them other  
 the they saluacions road before  
 to receiue them into the castle  
 of great opinionance, and the  
 one on, effemed to be woyed an  
 after he had talked with them,  
 tribulles barkes, and then tolde  
 of theyr iourney, and on the map  
 as came againe to the presence  
 he would graunt them his spee  
 his countrey, offering him, that  
 he had bought, and to write his  
 accordingly. The Bashas au  
 that he regarded theyr safete,  
 pubertisme, he would haue them  
 he would prouide such com  
 so that they should not be in  
 the way to bring her to Derbent,  
 to certifie him what was de  
 the Bashas messenger, accom  
 Hudson, and came to the ship  
 deene aboard and scue the ship  
 the Bashas, with three other Turke,  
 the latitude of Bildih by de  
 compasse 20 degrees 40 minuts  
 e to Bildih, they were contrap  
 till the 16 day of June foure of  
 and departed thence towards  
 ch from the sayd castle in foure  
 in the morning: then they tooke  
 the shippe in her rowling. In  
 shippe, and hauing the sayd op  
 presently after his departure  
 day they were vnderdane  
 things as he liked, taking for  
 the rate of foure for the hundre,  
 the rest of the goods to Backow,  
 of the Bashas letter to the cap  
 thereupon was laden and sent  
 of one thousand pound ster  
 two barrels of cochenele, two  
 of the companys seruantes  
 Russies, whereof one was an  
 gent with the sayd barkes the 19  
 age of their goods to Backow  
 small: they had great friends  
 letter, as also for the factours  
 were holding defous to under  
 in Backow, went thither from  
 nce with an arrow, who had be  
 killed one of the Russes hostes  
 in the first day of August the fa  
 ke, that it was doubtfull the  
 regen at that place with an ar  
 of burden about 25 tunnes,  
 at an Island called Zere, about  
 barkes for theyr moze safety,  
 upon wrote vnto Wincolle and  
 the

the rest at Backow, that they should receiue the same Bulle, and lade in her their goods at Bildigh to be returned to Derbent, and to discharge their first boate, which was obserued by them accordingly. When all their goods were laden aboard the saide Bulle at Bildigh, and being ready to haue departed thence for Derbent, there arose a great storme with the winde out of the sea, by force whereof the cables and hallders were broken, and their vessel put a shoare, and broken to pieces against the rockes: many of them that were in her saued their liues, and part of the goods. But there was a Carobia of cheste, wherein were beffers, and golde, which they had receiued for the commodities of the companie, which they solde at Backow, which at the taking out of the Bulle, fell by the barkes side into the water amongst the rockes, and so was lost. The packages of cloth which they could not well take out of the Bulle were also lost, other things that were more payable they saued.

The 18. of August, the Factozs receiued from the Bashas 500. Batmans of rawe silke, part of the bargain made with him, who had them come the next day for the rest of the bargain.

The 1. day the Factozs went to the Bashas according to his appointment, but that day they could not speake with him, but it was deliuered them as from him, that they should looke and consider whether any thing were due vnto him or noe, which grieved the Factozs, and thereupon M. Tuncbulan answered, that their heads and all that they had were at the Bashas pleasure: But then it was answered there was no such matter in it: but that they should call by their reckonings, to see how it stood betwene them. The 20. day they cast by their reckonings, The 21. they went to haue spoken with the Bashas, but were denied audience.

The 22. day they heard newes by a Bulle that came from Astracan, that Arthur Edwards Arthur Edwards was the first at Astracan. (whome the Factozs left at Astracan with the manie of the goods) was dead, who departed this life the of

The 23. day the Factozs receiued more from the Bashas 500. Batmans of silke. The 4. of September newes was brought to Derbent, that Golding comming from Shamakie, was set on by the Russes (Turkes) and had hurt one of them.

The 5. Tobias Ashins the gunners boy died of the flure, who was buried the 6. day 3. miles to the Southward of the Castle of Derbent, where the Armenian Christians do usually burie their dead. About the 20. of September newes came to Derbent, that the Bulle which they had bought of Jacob the Armenian as before, was call away at Bildih, but they receiued no certain newes in writing from any of our people.

The 26. of September was laden aboard the shippe 40. bales of silke. From the 26. till the 2. of October, they tooke into the shippe, byead, water, and other necessary provision for their sea stome: the 2. day of October, the Factozs were commanded by the Subdaine to auoyd their house, and get them with their provision out of the towne: Whereupon they were constrained to remove and carry their things to the sea side against the ship, and remained there all the night. The cause of this sudden auoyding them out of the towne (as afterwards they perceiued) was for that the Bashas had receiued newes of a shippie with treasure that the Turke had sent, which was then nere at hand comming towards him.

The 3. day of October all things were brought from the shore aboard the ship and that day the Factozs went to the Bashas to take their leaue of him, vnto whom they recommended those the Companys seruantes, or which they had sent to Backow, making accompt to leaue them behinde in the Countrey: who caused their names to be written, and promised they should want nothing, nor be iniured of any. After this leaue taken, the Factozs went aboard purposing presently to haue set sail and departed towards Astracan, the winde seruing well for that purpose at South South-east: And as they were ready to set sail, there came against the shippe a man, who would: whereupon the boate was sent a shoare to him, who was an Armenian sent from William Wincolle, with his writing tables, whereon the saide Wincolle had written briefly, the misshap of the loss of the Bulle, and that they were comming from Bildih towards Derbent, they, and such things as they saued with a small boate, forced to put a shoare in a place by the sea side called the Armenian village: Whereupon the Factozs caused the shippe to stay hoping that with the Southly winde that then blew, they would come from the place they were at to the shippe, but if they could not come with that winde, they meant to saile with the shippe, with the next winde that would serue them, against the place where they were, & take them in if they could: which stay and loss of those Southly winde, was a cause of great troubles, that they afterwards sustained through pecc, &c. entering the Volga as shalbe declared.

The 4. day the winde South South-east, the shippe rode still: This day Christopher Purrow was sent to hope to Derbent to prouide some necessaries for the voyage, & with him. Tiske

of two, which shoulde goe in the shippe passengers to Astracan. And being on shoare he sawe there the coming in of the Turkes treasure, being accompanied with 200. souldiers, and 100. pioneers, besides Captaines and Gentlemen: the Basha with his Captaines and souldiers very gallantly apparellled and furnished, went out from Derbent about thre or foure miles to meete the saide treasure, and receiued the same with great ioye and triumphe. Treasurr was the chief thing they needed, for not long before, the souldiers were ready to breake into the Court against the Basha for their pay: there was a great mutenie amongst them, because hee had long differed, and not payed them their due. The treasure came in 7. wagons, and with it were brought 10. pieces of brafse.

The Turke  
his treasure  
sent to Der-  
bent.

In the parts of Media where they were, there was no commoditie to bee bought of any value, but rawe silke, neither was that to bee had but at the Bashes handes: who thought after their coming thither eyed the Countrey for that commoditie. His dealing with our Parthians as it was not with equitie in all poyntes according to his bargaine, so it was not extreme ill. Of the commodities they carried hee tooke the chiefest part, for which hee gaue but a small price in respect of the value it was there worth, and because he had provided such quantitie of commoditie for them, which otherwise they coulde not haue had, the Countrey being so troublesome, and trauaile by land so dangerous, he vsed them at his pleasure.

The newes that was reported vnto them at Astracan touching the warres betwene the Turkes and Persians differed little from the truth: For the Turkes armie with ayde of the Ciims, (being in number by the information of 2. Spaniards that serued in those warres, about 20000.) inuaded & conquered the Countrey of Media in Anno 1577. When the great Turke vnderstood of the conquest, he appointed Osman Basha (the said Basha, and now Captaine of Derbent) gouernour of the whole Countrey, who settled himselfe in Shamakie the chiefest Citie of Media, and principall place of traffique, vnto whome was sent from the great Turke, in signification of the gratefull acceptation of his seruice and the great conquest, a sword of great value.

Osman  
Basha.

After the saide Basha had brought the Countrey in order to his liking, and placed garnisons where hee thought conuenient, the armie was dissolved and sent backe: When the Persians vnderstood that the Turkes armie was dissolved and returned, they gathered a power together, and with the Queene of their Countrey as chiefe, they entered the Countrey of Media, and ouerran the same with fire and sword, destroying whatsoeuer they founde, as well people, cattell, as whatsoeuer els, that might be commodious to the Turkes. And after they had so ouerrunne the Countrey, they came to Shamakie, where the saide Basha Lieutenant generall of the great Turke was settled, and besleged it: whereupon the Basha seeing hee coulde not long indure to withstand them, fledde thence to Derbent where he now remaineth.

Derbent built  
by Alexander  
the great.

Derbent is a strong Castle which was built by Alexander the great, the situation whereof is such, that the Persians being without Ordnance, are not able to winne it, but by famine. When the Turkes were fled from Shamakie, the Persians entered the same and spoiled it, leauing therein neither liuing creature nor any commoditie, and so returned backe into Persia, and settled themselves about Teueris, where there grewe some question among them for the kingdome. Afterwards the Persians hauing intelligence of an armie from the Turke coming into Media, gathered themselves together in a great armie and encountering the saide Turkes, set vpon them on the sudden, and vanquished them, putting them all to the sword. This curethoure of the Turkes grieued the Basha of Derbent, and made him to haue the more care for his owne safetie. Moreover, it was was brought vnto him that the Kisel Bashes, (that is to say the nobles & Gentlemen of Persia) were minded to set vpon him, and that neere vnto Backow there lay an armie ready to beslege it. Whereupon the Basha oftentimes would ride about the Castle of Derbent viewing the same, and the spyings that did come to it, and where he saw any cause of reformation it was amended.

The latitude  
of Derbent 41.  
deg. 32. min.

The Latitude of Derbent (by diuers obseruations exactly there made) is 41. deg. 32. The variation of the COMPASSE at that place about 11. degrees from North to West. From Derbent to Bildih by land, 46. leagues. From Derbent to Shamakie by land 45. leagues. From Shamakie to Backow about 10. leagues, which may be 30. miles. From Backow to Bildih 5. or six leagues by land, but by water about 12. leagues. From the Castle Derbent Eastwards there reache 2. stone walles to the bojder of the Caspian sea, which is distant one English mile. These walles are 9. foote thicke, and 28. or 30. foote high, and the space betwene them is 160. geometrical paces, that is 800. foote. There are yet to be perceived of the ruine of those walles, which do now extend into the sea about halfe a mile: Also from the Castle Westward into the land, they did perceiue the ruines of a stone wall to extend, which wall as it is reported, did passe from thence

nd being on boare he saue there  
with 200. souldiers, and 100.  
Captaines and souldiers bey  
out three of fouer miles to nor  
the. Treasur was the chief  
to speake into the Court againt  
her, because her had long suffered  
s, and with it were brought 10.

modity to bee bought of any  
bandes: who shortly after their  
healing with our Partrians as  
so it was not extreme ill. Of  
which he gaue but a small piece  
of such quantitie of commodity  
being so troublesome, and tra-

ving the warres betwene the  
Turkes armie with ayde of the  
setued in those warres, about  
1577. When the great Turke  
Alfa, and now Capitaine of Der-  
in Shamakie the chiefe Citie of  
from the great Turke, in signifi-  
qued, a Noode of great value.  
his liking, and placed garri-  
backe: When the Persians  
gathered a power together, and  
entrep of Media, and ouerran-  
as well people, carell as what  
they had so ouerrunne the Coun-  
generall of the great Turke was  
e not long indure to withstand

the great, the situation whereof is  
winne it but by famine. When  
me and spoyled it, leauing there  
ke into Persia, and fetled them  
them for the kingdome. After-  
warke comming into Media, ga-  
saide Turkes, see vpon them an  
This overthrowe of the Turkes  
for his owne safete.  
that is to say the nobles of Or-  
onto Backow there lay an armie  
side about the Castle of Derbent  
saw any cause of reformation it

made) is 41. deg. 52. The way  
th to Alra. From Derbent  
nd 45. leagues. From Shama-  
om Backow to Beldi 50. the  
stle Derbent Callwards there  
stant one English mile. The  
betwene them is 160. geome-  
the ruine of those walles, which  
e Westward into the land, they  
s reported, did passe from thence

to Pontus Euxinus, and was built by Alexander the great when the Castle Derbent was made.  
The 5. of October about noone the winde North Northwest they wayed ancre, and set saile  
from Derbent, being longest the road to the Southward to seeke their men, but as they had sai-  
led about foure leagues the winde scanted Easterly, so that they were forced to ancre in thre sa-  
fhome water.

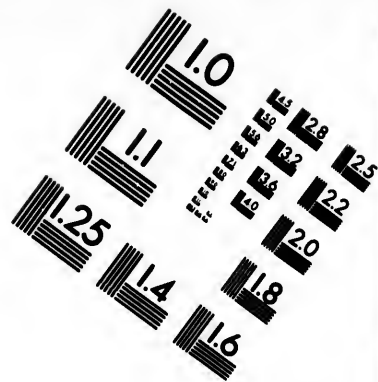
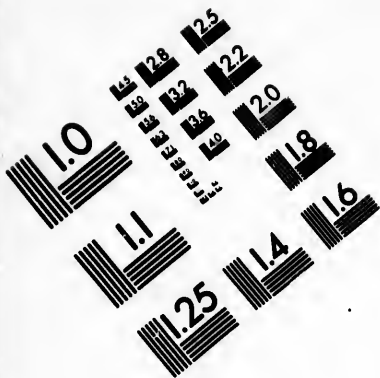
The 6. day they wayed ancre, and bare further off into the sea, where they ancred in 7. fathome  
water, the shippe being very like and so rotten abate the maine mast, that a man with his nailes  
might strape through her side.

The 7. day about 7. of the clocke in the morning, they set saile, the winde Southwest. They  
considered the time of the yeere was farre spent, the ship weake, like and rotten, and therefore de-  
termining not to tarie any longer for Wincoll and his fellows but to leaue them bebinde, bene  
themselves directly towarde Astracan: and sayling North Northwest untill midnighe about 16.  
leagues, the winde then came to the North Northwest, and blew much a very storme, which cau-  
sed them to take in all their sailes, sauing the fore crosse, with which they were forced to ancre be-  
fore the sea, South by west, and South Southwest. And on the 8. day about 2. of the clocke in the  
morning their great boate sunke at the ships sterne, which they were forced to cut from the shippe  
to their great griefe and discomfort: for in her they hoped to saue their liues if the shippe shoulde  
have miscaried. About 10. of the clocke before noone they had sight of the lande about 5. leagues  
to the South of Derbent, and bare longst the coast to the Southward into Nezaouo, where  
they came at ancre in 3. fathoms and blacke oze, good ancre holde, whereof they were glad as al-  
so that the winde was shifted to the Northwest, and but a meane gale. Wincoll and the rest of  
his fellows being in the Armenian billage, which is about 18. versts to the Westward of Neza-  
uoo, the place where against they rode at ancre, saw the ship as she passed by that place, and sent a  
man in the night following alongst the coast after her, who came against the ship where she rode,  
and with a firebrand in the top of a tree, made signes, which was perceived by them in the shippe,  
whereupon they hopped out their skiffe, and sent her a shoare to learne what was ment by the signes  
which returned a letter from Wincoll, wherein he wrote that they were with such goods as the  
had at the Armenian billage, and prayed that there they might be with the same goods be taken into  
the shippe. The 9. day it was litle winde, they wayed and bare a litle further off into the sea to-  
ward the said billage, and ancred. The 10. day they sent their skiffe to the Armenian billage to  
fetch those men and the goods they had, with order that if the winde serued, that they could not re-  
turne to fetch the shippe, they of the shippe promised to come for them, against the said billage,  
this day it was calme.

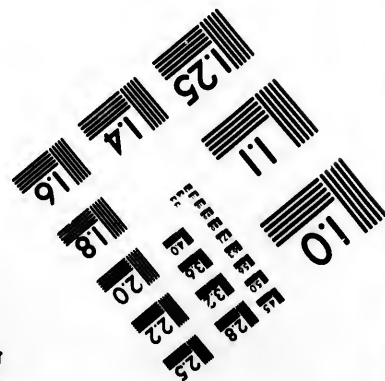
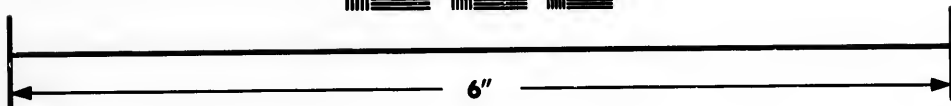
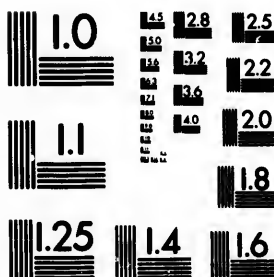
The 11. day the winde Northwest they rode still. The 12. day the winde Southeast they  
wayed ancre, and bare against and nere to the Armenian billage where they ancred, and then  
the skiffe came aboard and tolde them that our people at shoare, were like to be spoyled of the Tar-  
cars, where it not that the gunners defended them: then was the skiffe sent backe againe to charge  
them at any hand they should haue aboard the shippe whatsoeuer it cost them. Whereupon,  
all the companie came aboard the same day sauing Richard Relfe, and two Russes, but as soone  
as the skiffe was returned aboard the shippe, the winde blew at Southeast, and the Sea was  
growen: so as they were forced to take in their skiffe into the ship and rode still till the 13. day,  
and then being faire weather, early in the morning the skiffe was hopped out of the shippe, and  
sent to shoare to fetch the said Relfe and the two Russes, which were ready at the shoare side, and  
with them two Spaniards that were taken captiues at the Goletra in Barbarie, which fetued the  
Turke as souldiers. Those Spaniards (of Christian charitie) they brought also aboard the shippe  
to redeme them from their captiuitie, which were brought ouer into England, and set free and at  
liberte here in London, in September 1582. The winde this day at North Northwest, faire wea-  
ther. The 14. day they sent the skiffe to shoare, and filled fresh water. The 15. day they rode  
still being litle winde and fogge. The 16. day the winde East Southeast, they wayed ancre  
and set saile bearing Northward towards Astracan, and the same night they ancred in 10. fa-  
thoms water, about 5. miles from the shoare of the Shalkales rounteys, which place is 8. leagues  
North Northwest from Derbent. The 17. day the winde at North West Stormie, they rode still all  
the day & night. The 18. the winde all South east about one of the clocke afternoone, they wayed  
ancre & sailed thence til 4. of the clocke North Northeast 6. leagues, then might they see the land  
Northwest about 10. leagues from the wind South east if it were they sailed at midnighe North  
Northwest 12. leagues, if it were til 19. day 7. a clocke in the morning they sailed North North east  
8. leagues, the wind then East Southeast, a faire gale, they soulders and had 17. fathoms, and sand,  
being (as the Spaniards) about the head of Shely, from thence til 22. of the clocke at noone they  
sailed

Two Spaniards redeemed by our Englishmen.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

LE 28  
LE 25  
LE 22  
LE 20  
LE 18

6

LE 28  
LE 25  
LE 22  
LE 20  
LE 18

sailed North 5. leagues, the winde then at East a faire gale, they sounded and had 5. fadoms. From thence till 8. of the clocke at night, they sailed North 7. leagues: the winde then at North-east with small raine, they tooke in their sailes and ancred in 3. fadoms water: and lost oze, where they rode still all night, and the 20. day and night the winde North-east, as before with small raine.

The 21. day the winde North-west, they like wise rode still. The 22. day about 3. of the clocke in the afternoone, they wayed ancre the winde West North-west, and sailed from thence till 5. of the clocke at night North 4. leagues, then they ancred in 2. fadoms and a halfe lost oze, the winde at West a small breath.

The 23. day about 7. of the clocke in the morning, they wayed ancre and set saile being little winde Easterly, and sailed till 2. of the clocke after noone North-west in with the shoare about 5. leagues, and then ancred in 6. foor water, hauing perfect sight of the lowe lande (sande hilles) being about three miles from the nearest land. This place of the land that they were against, they perceiued to be the Westward of the foure Islands (called in the Russe tongue Chetera Boogori) and they founde it after wards by due prooffe, to be about 50. versts, or thirtie English miles to the South-west, or South-west by South, from the said Chetera Boogori.

The 24. day the winde at East, and by South, a sea winde called Gillauar, caused them to ride still. The 25. day they thought good to sende in their skiffe Robert Golding, and certaine Russes, to towe him longest Northwards by the shoare, to seeke the foure Islands, and so to passe into the Vchooge, and there to land the saide Rob. Golding to proceede to Astracan, to deliuer Amos Riall a letter, wherein he was required to prouide Pauozes to meete the Shippe at the saide Islands, and the skiffe with the Russes were appointed to returne from the Vchooge with victuals to the Shippe, which skiffe departed from the Shippe about nine of the clocke in the forenoone. The 26. 27. 28. and 29. dayes, the windes Easterly, and North-east they roode still with their Shippe. The 30. day the winde Southeast, they wayed and set saile to the North-eastward: but the Shippe fell so on the side to the shoreward, that they were forced stronoones to take in their sailes and ancre againe from whence they neuer remooued her. That day they shared their bread: but in their want God sent them two courtes of partridges, that came from the shoare, and lighted in and about their Shippes, wherby they were comforted, and one that lay sicke, of whose life was small hope, recovered his health.

So strange accident of provision for their health.

November.

The 4. of November the skiffe returned to the Shippe with some victuals, and certified that the 4. Islands were about 60. versts from them to the North-eastward. When Robert Golding came to Astracan, and deliuered there the Factors letters to Amos Riial, the duke, Captain of that place, was done to timberland of the Shippes arrival, and of the state they were in, and their request for Pauozes, who was very glad to heare of their safe returne, and appointed to be sent with all these 2. Pauozes, and a Strooge, with gunners to garde and to defende them. With the which Strooge and Pauozes, Amos Riial went downe to the Chetera Boogori, or 4. Islands aforesaid, where he stayed with those barks, according to the Factors appointment. The 5. day they purposed to send from the Shippe their skiffe with the carpenter, and 4. Russes, to towe him to the 4. Bowgeries, to request Amos Riial to come from thence with the Pauozes to the Ship with all possible speed. The skiffe with those men departed from the Ship in the morning, and within one houre they met with a small boat with Russes, rowing towards the Ship which came from the Ouchooge with a wilde swine and other victuals to sell: with the same boate the skiffe returned backe to the Ship as cert the Russes had received and were satisfied for the victuals they brought: the same day they returned with their boate backe toward the Ouchooge, and with them in the same boate was sent the carpenter of the Ship to the Chetera Boogori, which were in their way, to declare unto Amos Riial the message before appointed him. From the 5. until the 9. day the Ship rode still with contrary winds Easterly. The same 9. day came to the Ship certaine Russes in a small boate, which brought with them some victuals sent by Amos Riial, and declared, that hee with the Pauozes and Strooge, had remained at the Chetera Boogori 5. dayes expecting the comming thither of the Ship. The 10. day being doubtfull of the Pauozes comming, they sent Thomas Hudson master of the Ship in the skiffe (and with her went the aforesaid skiffe boate) towards the Chetera Boogori to the Pauozes, to bring word whether they would come to the Ship or not, the winde then at North-east with fogge. The 11. day the winde North-eastly with fogge, the Ship rode still. The 12. day Amos Riial, Christopher Fawcett, and a new gunner came to the Ship, and with them the Sp. Thomas Hudson returned (but the Strooge with the gunners remained at the Chetera Boogori) and from thence (when it began to freeze,) returned to Astracan. Amos Riial declared that he sent the carpenter backe from the Chetera Boogori in a small boate on the 10. day, and married that he

was not come to the Ship, and out in her but the chooge and much speede taken in, they rode.

The 13. day to prouide the foure Islands, passed past to all handled there with the Russes, which the next, and the next day for the safely winter, if they did it: being about 10. as they could find them: fourte houre the dangers to and sea did by ble to behold, so it would be them from ma

Which they they took out on the ice, and they agreed to take up their they made themselves to keepe them: which they carried the clocke in could singe, and Chetera Babbas (there remained)

The goods was about 20. And the next day (in fourte) about thirtie in the next morning were with the Hudson: they were entered way that had cooke, and for the Crasnoyarsk.

There they happened to find (in a small boate) they came to the ice, and that of

In the mo



and had 5. faboms.  
winde then at North  
er and lost oze, where  
as before with small  
about 3. of the clocke  
from thence till five of  
the lost oze, the winde

nd for saile being little  
y the shoare about five  
hande (sande hills) be-  
they were againe, they  
the tongue Chetera  
As, of thirtie English  
pgori,

illauar, caused them  
ert Golding, and cer-  
ure Islands, and to  
ede to Astracan, to  
meete the Shippe at the  
an the Vchooge with  
the clocke in the fore-  
if they roode still with  
the North-east ward:  
cloones to take in their  
they shared their beak:  
the shoare, and lighted  
cke, of whose life was

and certified that the  
then Robert Golding  
duke, Capaine of the  
in, and their request for  
be sent with all speed  
th the which Surooge  
ys aforesaid, where he  
day they purposed to  
him to the 4. Bowgo-

with all possible speed,  
in one houre they met  
the Ouchooge with a  
en backe to the ship at  
the same day they re-  
same boate was sent  
to declare unto Amos  
they roode still with  
in, and their request for  
with the Pauosies and  
oming thither of the  
omas Hudson maketh  
the Chetera Boogori

winde then at North  
de still. The 13. day  
with them the sp. Tho-  
hetera Boogori) and  
taken that the first  
and married that he  
was

was not come to the shippe (but in the fogge the day before as afterwards they learned) missed the  
shippe, and overtook her, and afterwards returning backe, hee found the ship at ancre, and nothing  
in her but the Russes that were left to keepe her, and then hee departed thence, and went to the V-  
chooge and there stayed. Presently upon the comming of the Pauosies to the shippe, they used as  
much speed as might be, to get the goods out of the shippe into them, and after the goods were  
laden in, theyooke in also of the shippes Ordnance, furniture and provision, as much as they  
coude.

The 13. day in the morning Amos Riall was sent away in a small boate towards Astracan, to  
to provide victuals and carriages to relieve and helpe them, who coude passe no further then the  
four Islands, but was there overtaken with yce, and forced to leaue his boate, and from thence  
passed posts to Astracan, finding at the Vchooge the Carpenter returned from his ill journey, be-  
ing ill handled with the extremite of the colde. The same day they departed also in those light-  
ers with the goods towards the Chetera Bougori, leauiing the shippe at ancre, and in her two  
Russes, which with thre moze that went in the Pauosies, to provide victuals for themselves and  
the rest, and there with promised to returne backe to the shippe with all speede, had offered to bu-  
derrake for twentie rubbles in money to carry the shippe into some harborow, where shee might  
safely winter, of els to keepe her wher shee rode all winter, which was promised to be giuen them  
if they did it: and the same day when with those lighters they had gotten sight of the 4. Islands  
being about eight versts South-west from them, the winde then at North-east, did freeze the sea  
so, as they could not rowe, guide, stirre or remouue the saide lighters, but as the winde and yce did  
force them; And so they continued vniuing with the yce, Southeast into the sea by the space of  
fourtie houres, and then being the sixtene day the yce floode. Whiles they moue with the yce  
the dangers which they incurred were great: for oftentimes when the yce with the force of winde  
and sea did byeake, pierces of it were colled and broken one vpon another with great force, terri-  
ble to behold, and the same happened at sometimes so neere unto the lighters, that they expect-  
ed it would haue overwhelped them to their utter destruction: but God who hath preferred  
them from many perils before, did also saue and deliuer them then.

See the 13. of  
November ill  
the mouth of  
the river of  
Boiga.

The 16 day.

Within thre or foure dayes after the first standing of the yce when it was firme and strong,  
theyooke out all their goods, being fourtie and eight bales or packages of rawe silke, &c. layde it  
on the yce, and covered the same with such provisions as they had. Then for want of victuals, &c.  
they agreed to leaue all the good there vpon the yce, and to goe to the shoare: and thereupon  
broke by their chests and Corobias, wherewith, and with such other things as they coude gette,  
they made sleds for euery of them to vtiue vpon the yce, whereon they layde their clothes  
to keepe them warme, and such victuals as they had, and such other things as they might con-  
ueniently carry, and so they departed from the saide goods and Pauosies very early about one of  
the clocke in the morning, and traauelling on the yce, directed their way North, as neere as they  
could inoge, and the same day about two of the clocke in the after noone, they had sight of the Che-  
tera Babbas (fourte hillocks of Islands so called:) unto the same they directed themselves, and  
there remained that night.

Chetera Bab-  
bas.

The goods and Pauosies which they left on the yce, they iudged to be from those Chetera Ba-  
bas about 20. versts.

And the next morning departed thence Eastwardes, and came to the Chetera Bougo-  
nies (of foure Islands before spoken of) before noone, (the distance betwene those places is a-  
bout sixtene versts) where they remained all that night, departing thence towards Astracan:  
the next morning very early they lost their way through the persuasion of the Russes which  
were with them, taking to much towards the left hande, (contrary to the opinion of Master  
Hudson:) Whereby wandering vpon the yce foure or five dayes, not knowing whether  
they were entered into the Crimme Tartars lande or not; at length it fortunated they mette with a  
bay that had bene traualled, which croste backwardes towards the Sea, that way they  
went, and following the same, within two dayes traualle it brought them to a place called  
the Crasnoyare, (that is to say in the English tongue) reddecliffe, which diuers of the companie  
knewe.

There they remained that night hauing nothing to eat but one loafe of bread which they  
happened to finde with the two Russes that were left in the shippe to keepe her all the winter (as  
is aforesaid) whome they chaimed to meete going towards Astracan, about five miles before  
they came to the saide Crasnoyare, who certified them that the shippe was cut in pierces with the  
yce, and that they had hard scapung with their liues.

In the morning they departed early from Crasnoyare towards the Ouchooge, and  
about

about 9. of the clocke before noone, being within 10. versts of the Vchooge, they mett Amos Riall, with the Carpenter, which he founde at Ouchooge, and a gunner newly come out of Eng-lande, and also sixtie and five hostes with so many Cassacks to guide them, and 50. gunners for garde, which brought provision of victuals, &c. And were sent by the Duke to fetch the goods to Astracan. The meeting of that company was much joy unto them.

The Factors sent backe with Amos Riall and the saide companie to fetch the goods, Thomas Hudson, the master, Tobias Paris his mate, and so they the saide Factors, and their companie marched on to the Vchooge, where they refreshed themselves that day, and the night following. And from thence proceeded on towards Astracan, where they arrived the last day of November. These that went for the goods after their departure from the Factors trauniled the same day untill they came within 10. versts of the Chetera Babas, where they rested that night. The next morning by the break of the day they departed thence, and before noone were at the Chetera Babas, where they stayed all night; But presently departed thence Thomas Hudson, with the Carpenter and gunner to seeke where the goods lay: who founde the same, and the next day they returned backe to their companie, at the Chetera Babas, and declared unto them in what sort they had found the said goods,

The 3. day early in the morning they departed all from the 4. Babas towards the saide goods, and the same day did lade all the goods they could finde upon the said sleds, and with al convenient speede returned backe towards Astracan. And when they came to the Chetera Bougori, where they rested the night, in the morning very early before the break of day, they were assaulted by a great companie of the Nagays Tartars horsemen, which came shouting and halloving with a great noise, but our people were so inuironed with the sleds, that they durst not enter upon them, but ranne by, and shotte their arrowes amongst them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a Russe, and so departed presently. Yet when it was day, they thewed themselves a good distance off from our men, being a very great troupe of them, but did not assault them any more. The same day our men with those carriages, departed from thence towards Astracan, where they arrived in safetie the 4. of December, about 3. of the clocke in the after noone: where our people greatly reioyced of their great good happe to haue escaped so many hard euents, trouble and miseries, as they did in that voyage, and had great cause therefore to praise the Almighty, who had so mercifully preferred and deliuered them. They remained the winter at Astracan, where they found great fauour and friendship of the Duke, Captaine and other chiefe officers of that place: But that winter there happened no great matter worth the noting.

In the spring of the yeere 1581. about the mids of March the yce was broken vp, and cleare gone before Astracan, and the ninth of April hauing all the goods that were returned from the parts of Media laden into a Strooge, the Factors, William Turnebull, Marthe we Taileboyes, Giles Crowe, Christopher Burrough, Michael Lane, Laurence Prouse gunner, Randolfe Foxe, Th. Hudson, Tobias Paris, Morgan Hubblethorne the diet, Ric. the furgeat, Rob. Golding, John Smith, Edward Reding carpenter, and William Perrin gunner, hauing also 40. Russes, whereof 36. were Cassacks to rowe, the rest Marchants passengers, departed from Astracan with the said Strooge and goods by the Volga towards Yerslaue. They left behinde them at Astracan, with the English goods & Marchandise there remayning, Amos Riall, W. Wincol, and Richard Relfe, and appointed them to sell & barter the same, or so much thereof as they could to the Tifisks, if there came any thither that spring, and to others as they might, & the rest with such as they should take in exchange to returne vp to Yerslaue that summer, when the Emperours carriage should passe vp to the Volga. The 21. day they came with their Strooge to the Perauloke, but made no stay at that place: for they had bene much troubled with yce in their coming from Astracan. The 2. of May about noone they came to Oucke, and from thence proceeding by the riuer, on the 17. day William Turnebull departed from the Strooge in a small boate, and went before towards Teculsha to provide victuals, and sende downe to the Strooge from which place they were then about 230. versts. The 23. day they mette a boate with victuals, which William Turnebull sent from Teculsha, and the same day they arrived with their Strooge at Teculsha, where they stayed all night, and the next morning betimes departed thence, by 7. Turnebull was gone in the small boate before to Kazan, to provide necessaries from thence, and to make way for their dispatch. The 26. day they arrived with their Strooge at Kazan, where they remayned till the fourth of June: the Factors sent Giles Crowe from Kazan to the Mosco, with their letters the 30. of May. The fourth day of June they departed from Kazan with their Strooge, and arrived at Yerslaue the 22. day about 5. of the clocke in the morning.

The 23. day they provided Telegos, to carry the goods to Vologda: The 24. day hauing

December.

Their returne  
to Astracan.

May.

the goods lade  
there but yet

The 29. d

29. William

Colmogro:

the same from

16. of July, a

almost laden

The 25. d

The 26. da

went William

of the Persia

an Bigat, and

The 17. of

Nichols, and

sin, whereof

ther, and were

rembered from

brought newe

The 25. of

choyced before

Obseru  
uers p

Michael Arch

The English h

in Colmogro.

Recola.

Yeegrin.

Towlma

Vologhda.

Vologhda.

Yerslaue.

Swyskagoro

Oulona Mon

Tetuskagoro

Oucke,

Astracan.

Astracan.

...they mette Amos  
...come out of Eng-  
...and 50. gunners for  
...to fetch the goods to

...the goods, Tho-  
...and their companie  
...the night following  
...day of November.  
...the same day we  
...at night. The next  
...as the Chetera Ba-  
...as Hudson, with the  
...and the next day they  
...em in what sort they

...ards the saide goods,  
...with al convenient  
...era Bougori, where  
...ey were assaulted by  
...nd halloving with a  
...oe enter vpon them,  
...in the head, who was  
...dues a good distance  
...ny moze. The same  
...here they arrived in  
...ut people greatly re-  
...able and miseries, as  
...who had so mercifull  
...ere they found great  
...lace: But that with

...oken by, and cleare  
...e returned from the  
...the we Taileboyes,  
...ner, Randolph Foxe,  
...Rob. Golding, John  
...40. Russes, where of  
...Astracan with the said  
...m at Astracan, with  
...and Richard Relke,  
...to the Tifisks, if there  
...as they should take  
...arriage should passe  
...ke, but made no stay  
...n Astracan. The 3.  
...rrier, on the 17. day  
...to towards Tetusha  
...ere then about 230.  
...ebull sent from Te-  
...ney stayed all night,  
...u the small boat be-  
...offspatch. The 26.  
...fourth of June the  
...230. of May. The  
...ed at Yerslaue the

The 24. day having  
the

the goods laden vpon Telegos, they departed with the same towards Vologhda, and remained there five weekes from Yerslaue.

The 29. day, they came to Vologhda, with all their goods in safetie, and good order. The same day William Turnebull, and Peter Garrard, departed from Vologhda, post by water towards Colmogro: the third of July, hauing their goods laden in a small Doshenike, they departed with the same from Vologhda, towards Rosse Island, by S. Nicholas, where they arrived in safetie the 16. of July, and founde there the Agents of Russia, and in the Rowe the ships sent out of England, almost laden ready to depart.

The 25. day departed for England (one of the rowe of S. Nicholas) the shippe Elizabeth. The 26. day departed thence the Thomas Allen, and Marie Susan, and in the Thomas Allen went William Turnbull, Matthew Tailboys, Thomas Hudson, and others. The goods returned of the Persia voyage, were laden into the shippe, William, and Iohn, whereof was Master William Bigat, and in her with the same goods, came Peter Garrard, and Tobias Parris.

The 11. of August, the same shippe being laden, and dispatched, departed from the rowe of S. Nicholas, and with her in companie another of the companie's freighted ships, called the Tomasin, whereof was Master Christopher Hal. In their returne home wards, they had some soule weather, and were separated at the sea, the William, and Iohn, put into Newcastle, the 24. of September: from whence the said Peter Garrard, and Tobias Parris, came to London by lande, and brought newes of the arrival of the shippe.

The 25. of September, both the said shippe arrived at the port of London in safetie, and anchored before Limehoufe, and Wapping, where they were discharged. 1581.

**Observations of the latitudes and Meridian altitudes of diuers places in Russia, from the North to the South. Anno 1581.**

Michael Archangel.	{ Meridian altitude obserued at Michael the Archangel, 42. degrees, 30. minutes.	
	{ The true latitude, 64. degrees, 54. minutes.	
The English house in Colmogro.	{ The English house in Colmogro, in latitude, 64. d. 25. m.	
	{ The meridian altitude there obserued the 29. of July, 42. d. 15. m.	
Recola.	{ Meridian altitude the 30. of July, 41. d. 46. m.	{ 64. d. 20. m.
	{ Declination Northwesterly, 16. d. 6. m.	
Yecgris.	{ Meridian, 4. of August, 41. d. 50. m.	{ 62. d. 59. m.
	{ Declination Northwesterly, 14. d. 49. m.	
Towlma.	{ Meridian altitude, the 15. of August, 40. d. 45. m.	{ 60. d. 17. m.
	{ Declination Northwesterly, 11. d. 2. m.	
Vologhda.	{ Meridian altitude, the 20. of August, 40. d.	{ 59. d. 17. m.
	{ Declination Northwesterly, 9. d. 17. m.	
Vologhda.	{ Meridian altitude, 21. of August, 39. d. 36. m.	{ 59. d. 20. m.
	{ Declination, 8. d. 56. m.	
Yerslaue.	{ Latitude by gess, 57. d. 50. m.	
Swyaskagorod.	{ Meridian altitude, 21. September, 31. d.	{ 56. d. 4. m.
	{ Declination, 2. d. 56. m.	
Ouslona Monasterie.	{ Meridian altitude, 23. September, 30. d. 26. m.	{ 55. d. 51. m.
	{ Declination, 3. d. 43. m.	
Tetuskagorod.	{ Meridian altitude, 28. September, 28. d. 28. m.	{ 55. d. 22. m.
	{ Declination, 5. d. 35. m.	
Ouceke.	{ Meridian altitude, 5. October, 30. d. 12. m.	{ 51. d. 30. m.
	{ Declination, 8. d. 18. m.	
Astracan.	{ Astracan Meridian altitude, 22. October, 29. d. 36. m.	{ 46. d. 10. m.
	{ Declination, 14. d. 16. m.	
Astracan.	{ Meridian altitude, 1. of November, 26. d. 35. m.	{ 46. d. 9. m.
	{ Declination, 17. d. 16. m.	

Certaine

Certaine directions giuen by Master Richard Hakluyt of the  
middle Temple, to Master Morgan Hubblethorne, Dyer sent in  
to Persia, 1579.

**I** That England hath the best wooll, and cloth of the world, and for that the clothes of the Realme haue no good vent, if good dying be not added: therefore it is much to be wished, that the dying of fojren Countreies were seene, so the ende that the art of dying may be brought into the Realme in greatest excellencie: for thereof will followe honour to the Realme, and great and ample vent of our clothes: and of the vent of clothes, will followe the setting of our poore on worke, in all degrees of labour in clothing and dying: for which cause most principally, you are sent ouer, at the charge of the Citie: and therefore for the satisfiing of the Lordes, and of the expectation of the Merchants, and of your companie, it behooues you to haue care to returne home with more knowledge, then you carried out.

2 The great dearth of clothes is a great let in the ample vent of clothes, and the price of a cloth, for a fifth, sixth, and seuench part tisech by the colour and dying: and therefore to deuise to dye as good colours with the one halfe of the present price, were to the great commoditie of the Realme, by sauing of great treasure in time to come. And therefore you must haue great care to haue knowledge of the materials of all the Countreies, that you shall passe through, that may be used in dying, be they hearbes, weedes, barkes, gummes, earths, or what els soeuer.

3 In Persia you shall finde carpets of course thymmed wooll, the best of the worlde, and excellently coloured: those Citie and Townes, you must repaire to, and you must best meanes to learne all the order of the dying of those thymmes, which are so died, as neither rain, nor yet vinegar, can staine: and if you may attaine to that cunning, you shall not neede to feare dying of cloth. For if the colour holde in paine, and thymme, it will holde much better in cloth.

4 For that in Persia, they haue great colouring of silkes, it behooues you to learne that also, for that clothe dying, and silke dying, haue a certaine affinitie, and your Merchants minde to dying much rare silke into the Realme, and therefore it is more requisite you learne the same.

5 In Persia, there are that fine linnen clothe: it is not amisse you learne it, if you can: it hath bene an olde trade in England, whereof some excellent clothes yet remaine: but the art is now lost, and not to be found in the Realme.

6 They haue a cunning in Persia, to make in Bulkins of Spanish leather, flowers of many kindes in most liuely colours, and these the Courtiers doe weare there, to learne which arte were no harme.

7 If any Dier of China, or of the East partes of the world, be to be found in Persia, acquaint your selfe with him, and learne what you may of him.

8 You shall finde Anyle there, if you can procure the herbe, that it is made of either by seede, or by plant, to carry into England, you may doe well to endeavour to enrich your Countrey with the same: but withall learne you the making of the Anyle, and if you can get the hearbe, you may sende the same dye into England, for possibly it groweth here already.

9 Returne home with you all the materials and substances, that they dye with all in Russia, and also in Persia, that your companie may see all.

10 In some litle pot in your lodging, I wisly you to make daily trials in your arte, as you shall from time to time learne ought among them.

11 Set downe in writing, whatsoeuer you shall learne from day to day, least you should forget, or least God should call you to his mercie, and by each returne, I wisly you sende in writing whatsoeuer you haue learned, or at the least keepe the same safe in your coffe, that come death, or life, your Countrey may enioy the thing that you goe for, and not lose the charge, and trauell bestowed in this case.

12 Learne you there to fixe, and make sure the colour to be giuen by logge wood: so shall we not neede to buy sode so deere, to the enriching of our enemies.

13 Enquire of the price of Leekar, and of all other things belonging to dying.

14 In any wise set downe in writing a true note, from whence euery of them doe come, and where, and in what Countrey each of them doth growe, I meane where the naturall place of each of them is, as how neere to such a Citie, or to such a Sea, or to such a poxable Riuer, in Russia, Persia, or els where.



merchants, for  
the first partie  
thete ruler of  
abouts on the  
Captaine, Sp  
10. tunnes, or  
gainst Limech  
bired the said  
And likewise  
men and a boy  
passage by sea  
ries of domini  
Cambalu, and

The which  
Vaigats Call  
an borough,  
and them an  
not be in all p  
Asia, doth not  
betweene the  
two barkes, to  
deere friendes  
of the same bo  
loue and care,  
doe: so as it r  
pointed for yo  
your selues to  
be.

Doe you o  
better.

We would  
what meanes  
meeting, we t  
whome we t  
better, or epe  
haue some in  
semblis and  
on, we would  
each barke on  
the maine to  
in your good  
more late sig

kluyt of the  
sent in

nd for that the clothes  
therefore it is much  
the quide that the arte  
ie: for thereof will fol  
of the vent of clothes,  
aching and dying: for  
and therefore for the  
of your companie, it  
ou carried out.

es, and the price of  
therefore to deuise to  
at commoditie of the  
ult haue great care to  
hough, that may be  
ocuer.

of the worlde, and  
you must vse meanes  
neither raine, wine,  
ill noe. needs to feare  
olde much better in

es you to learne that  
nd your Merchants  
re requisite you learne

rne it, if you can: it  
nature: but the arte is

er, flowers of many  
arne which arte were

d in Persia, acquaint

de of either by leade,  
our Countrey with  
get the heards, you

pe with all in Russia,

our arte, as you shall

least you should for  
you sende in writing

that come death, or  
arge, and trauell be

re wood: so shall we

mping.

hem doe come, and  
naturall place of each  
le Riuer, in Russia,

15 If before your returne you could procure a singular good workman, in the arte of Turkish carpet making, you should bring the arte into this Realme, and also thereby increase worke to your companie.

Commisision giuen by Sir Rowland Hayward, Knight, and  
George Barne, Aldermen and Governours of the company of English  
Merchants, for discouerie of newe trades, ynto Arthur Pet, and Charles lack-  
man, for a voyage by them to be made, for discouerie of Cathay,  
1580. in forme following.



In the name of God Almighty, and euerlasting, Amen. This writing for com-  
mission Tripartite, made the twentieth day of May, Anno Domini, 1580. and  
in the two and twentieth yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Ladie Eliza-  
beth, by the grace of God, Queene of England, France, and Ireland, defender  
of the faith, &c. Betweene Sir Rowland Hayward, Knight, & George Barne,  
Aldermen of the Citie of London, and Governours of the companie of English  
merchants, for discouerie of newe trades, for the behoofe, and in the name of the said companie, on  
the first partie, and Arthur Pet of Ratclife, in the Countie of Spideler, Captaine, Master, and  
chiefe ruler of the good barke, called the George of London, of the burthen of 40. tunnes, of there-  
abouts, on the second partie, and Charles lackman of Popler, in the saide Countie of Spideler,  
Captaine, Master, and Ruler of the good barke, called the William of London, of the burthen of  
20. tunnes, of thereabouts, (which barkes are nowe riding at anker in the riuer of Thames a-  
gainst Limehouse) on the third partie: witnesseth, that the said Governours, and companie, haue  
hired the said Arthur Pet, to serue in the said barke, called the George, with nine men and a boye:  
And likewise the said Charles lackman, to serue in the said barke, called the William, with five  
men and a boye, for a voyage by them to be made by Gods grace, for search and discoueries of a  
passage by sea from hence by Borowghs streights, and the Island Vaigats, Eastwards, to the coun-  
tries of dominion of the mighty Prince, the Emperour of Cathay, and in the same vnto the cities  
Cambalu, and Quinsay, or to either of them.

The which passage (vpon authoritie of writers, and great reason) is conceaied to be from the  
Vaigats Eastwards, according to the description in plas of spirall lines, made by master Willi-  
am Borowgh, whereof either of the said Arthur Pet, and Charles lackman, haue one deliuered  
vnto them and also one other falling carde, and a blanke plat for either of them. But if it should  
not be in all points, according to that description, yet we hope, that the continent of firme land of  
Asia, doth not stretch it selfe so farre Northwards, but that there may be found a sea passable by it,  
betweene the latitude of 70. and 80. degrees. And therefore we haue appointed you with these  
two barkes, so make triall of the same: wishing you both to toyne in friendship together, as most  
deere friends, and brothers, to all purposes and effects, to the furtherance and orderly performing  
of the same voyage. And likewise order your companies, that they of the one barke may haue such  
love and care, to helpe and succour them of the other, as most deere friends and brothers woulde  
doe: so as it may appeare, that though they be two barkes, and two companies, (which is so ap-  
pointed for your greater comfort and assurance) yet that you are wholly of one minde, and bene-  
fit your selues to the betterment of your potatoes, to performe the thing that you are both employed  
to.

Doe you obserue good order in your daily seruice, and pray vnto God, so shall you prosper the  
better.

We woulde haue you to meete often together, to talke, conferre, consult, and agree howe, and by  
what meanes you may best performe this purposed voyage, according to our intents. And at such  
meeting, we thinke it requisite, that you call vnto you your mates, and also Nicholas Chanceler,  
(whome we doe appoint as merchant, to keepe account of the merchandize you shall buy, or sell,  
batter, or exchange) with euery, that whatsoever God should dispose of either of you, yet they may  
haue some instructions, and knowe to be dealt in your place, or places. And of all your as-  
semblies and consultations together, and the substance of matter you shall at euery time agree vpon,  
we woulde haue you to note them in the paper booke that we giue you for that purpose, vnto  
each barke one. We doe appoint Arthur Pet in the George, as Rowdall, to weare the flagge in  
the maine top, and Charles lackman in the William, as West a vntill, if of good orders to be taken  
for your good and orderly keeping of companie together, with vs with may be such, as you should  
never lose sight the one of the other, except by both your consent, so discouer about an Island, or in  
some

some tiner, when and where you may certainly appoint to meete together againe, we referre the same to your good discretions.

And nowe for your good direction in this voyage, we would have you with the next good wind and weather, that God shall send thereunto meete and convenient, after the 22. day of this present month of May, saile from this riuer of Thames, to the coast of Finmarck, to the North Cape, thence, to the Wardhouse, and from thence direct your course to haue sight of Willoughbies land, and from it passe along it to the Noua Zemla, keeping the same lands alwaies in your sight on your starboordside (if conveniently you may) to the ende you may discouer, whether the same Willoughbies land be continent and firme land, with Noua Zemla, or not: notwithstanding we would not haue you to entangle your selues in any Baye, or otherwise, so as it might hinder your speedie proceeding to the Island Vaigats.

And when you come to Vaigats, we would haue you to get sight of the maine land of Samocda, which is ouer against the South part of the same Island, and from thence with Gods permission, to passe Eastwards along it the same coast, keeping it alwaies in your sight (if conveniently you may) vntill you come to the mouth of the riuer Ob, and when you come vnto it, passe ouer the saide riuers mouth into the bozder of land, on the East side of the same (without any staye to be made for searching inwardly in the same riuer) and being in sight of the same Easterly land, doe you in Gods name proceede along it by it, from thence Eastwards, keeping the same alwaies on your starboordside in sight, if you may, and followe the tracte of it, whether it incline Southerly or Northerly (as at times it may doe both) vntill you come to the Countrey of Cathay, or the dominion of that mightie Emperour.

And if God prosper your voyage, with such good successe, that you may attaine to the same, doe you seeke by all means you can, to arrive to the Cities Cambala, and Quinsay, or to the one of them, But if it happen that you can not conveniently come to either of those places, or shall be driue to remaine & winter in some other port or place of his dominion, doe you seeke by all means possible to winne fauour and liking of the people, by gifts and friendly demeanes towards them, and not to offer violence, or doe wrong to any people of nation whatsoever, but therein to bee innocent as dooues, yet wilde as serpents, to avoide mischief, and defend you from hurt. And when you shall haue gotten friendship through your discrette ordering of your selues, towards the people, doe you learne of them what you can of their Prince, and he the we them one of the Queenes Spaightes letters, which the Sencerth writt you (by either of you one, made of one substance and effect, for eck of you particularly) written in Latine, whereunto her Spaighte hath subscribed, and caused her signet seale to be set, the effect of the same letters you haue also written in English, for your otome vnderstanding thereof.

The same her Spaightes letters, you shall procure to deliuer vnto the same mightie Prince, or Gouernour, with some present to be giuen such as you shall thinke meete, and convenient, vnto your selues in all pointes according to the effect of the same letters, and procure againe from the same Prince, his letters accordingly.

And if God so prosper your voyage, that you may this summer passe the Streights, and come passe about the Northernmost land of Asia, vnto the Countrey of Cathay, or dominion of that mightie Prince, and wintering in it, may obtaine from him his letters of privilege against the next yeeres spring, you may then after your first setting foorth, search and discouer some what further then you had discouered before your wintering, so farre as you shall thinke convenient, with regard had, and alwaies prouided, that you may returne home hither, to giue vs aduise of your proceedings the same summer, or before the tharpenes or extremitie of winter ouertake you.

And if it happen you cannot this summer attaine to the bozder of Cathay, and yet finde the land beyond the Ob, to stretch it selfe Easterly, with the sea adjoining, vnto it nauigable, doe you then proceede on your discouerie (as before said) along it the same continent, so farre as you can this summer, hauing care in the trauel to find out some convenient harbor, port, and place, where you may winter, and when you thinke it convenient, put your selfe to wintering, where if you happen to finde people, you shall deale with them, as we haue before aduised you to doe with the people of Cathay, &c. And if you can learne that they haue a Prince, or chiefe Gouernour, doe you procure to deliuer vnto the same Prince or Gouernour, one of the Queenes Spaightes letters, as before said, and seeke to obtaine againe his letters accordingly, if you sh happen to winter and obtaine letters of privilege, finding the countrey and people, with the commodities to be such, that by bringe thither with the people, & for the commodities, it may be beneficiall vnto vs (as we hope you may) the same will be some good liking vnto vs: notwithstanding we would haue you the next summer (by the gracie of God) at your first setting out of your wintering harbor, proceede along it

that tracte of chiefly desire to you may vnto you may thereof we doubt not, of her Spaightes peere of our L. adventures in may doe, Amc

But if it hap 20. degrees, or in no hope may the tracte of the the way a conc Asia, his sum with then that as you can, an gomzes, &c. de of chiefe Gouern thereof an (wer chandise and co them to haue, &

If you so ha to farre as con wide of by a de may come to ch a, and thereby

But if you f with your back from that part c of that coast E endly you may, to discouer and Zembla, or not. us Zembla vnto you may most c the tract of it, ( regard that in cou

And for your you to the intr the first part of to the second pa ple thereof is a kaled and sub so

And to the o ne grace therer every part and am by these y grace thererunt

And in wint heth aboute wint cell, and safe r

gain, we referre the  
the next good wind  
a. day of this present  
to the North Cape  
of Willoughbies  
alwaies in your sight  
whether the same  
not withstanding wee  
it might hinder your

aine land of Samoee  
with Gods permis  
sion (if conveniently  
unto it, passe over the  
without any staye to be  
the Easterly land, doe  
the same alwaies on  
incline Southerly of  
Cathay, of the domi

attaine to the same,  
Quinsay, or to the  
those places, or shall  
you seeke by all means  
eanes towards them,  
at therein to bee inno  
hurr. And when you  
to towards the people,  
the Queenes Ma  
substance and effect,  
subscribed, and caused  
in English, for your

mightie Prince, or  
and convenient, using  
cure againe from the  
streights, and com  
munion of that might  
age against the w  
is somewhat further  
convenient, with  
is advice of your pr  
certake you.

c. and yet finde the  
navigable, doe you  
so farre as you can  
and place, where you  
where if you happen  
doe with the people of  
it doe you procure to  
atters as before said,  
and obtaine letters  
h. that by using trade  
we hope you may  
you the next summer  
h. proceede alongst  
that

that tracte of land to Cathay if you see likelihood to passe it (for that is the Countrey that wee chiefly desire to discover) and seeing you are fully victualled for two yeeres and bywards, which you may very well make to serve you for two yeeres and a halfe, though you finde no other helpe, you may therefore be the bolder to adventure in proceeding upon your discoverie: which if you do, we doubt not, but you shall achieve the Countrey of Cathay, and deliver to the Prince there, one of her Majesties letters, bying from thence the same Princes letters answerable: & so in the yeere of our Lord, 1582. returne home with good newes, and glad tidings, not onely unto vs the adventurers in this voyage, but also to our whole Countrey, and nation, which God grant you may doe, Amen.

But if it happen that the land of Asia from beyond the river Ob, extend it selfe Northwards to 80. degrees, or neerer the pole, whereby you finde it to leade you into that extremitie, that small, and hope may be looked for, to faile that waies to Cathay, doe you not withstanding followe the tracte of the same land, as farre as you can discover this summer, having care to finde out by the way a convenient place for you to winter in, the which (if you may discover the same lande of Asia this summer to extend it selfe to 80. degrees of latitude, and bywards, or to 85. degrees) we wish then that the same your wintering place may be in the river of Ob, or as neere the same river as you can, and finding in such wintering place people, be they Samoeds, Yovgorians, or Mologozes, &c. do you gently entreat with them as aforesaid, & if you can learne by them have a prince of chief Government amongst them, doe you deliver him one of her Majesties letters, and procure thereof an answer accordingly: doe you procure to barter and exchange with the people, of the merchandise and commodities that you shall carie with you, for such commodities as you shall finde them to have, &c.

If you so happen to winter, we would have you the next summer, to discover into the river Ob, so farre as conveniently you may: And if you shall finde the same river (which is reported to be wide or broad) to be also navigable and pleasant for you, to travell farre into, happely you may come to the Cite Siberia, or to some other towne or place, habited upon or neere the border of it, and thereby have liking to winter out the second winter: use you therein your discretions.

But if you finde the said river Ob, to be sholde, or not such as you may conveniently travell in with your barkes, doe you then the next summer returne backe through Boroughs streights: And from that part of Nova Zembla, adjoining to the same streights, doe you come alongst the tracke of that coast Westwards, keeping it on the Starboord side, and the same alwaies in sight, if conveniently you may, untill you come to Willoughbies land, if outwards bound, you shall not happen to discover and crye whether the said Willoughbies lande to yne continent with the same Nova Zembla, or not. But if you shall then yprove them to be one firme and continent, you may from Nova Zembla direct your course unto the said Willoughbies land, as you shall thinke good, and as you may most conveniently: and from Willoughbies land, you shall proceede Westwards alongst the tract of it, (though it incline Northerly) even so farre as you may or can travell, having regard that in convenient time you may returne home hither to London for wintering.

And for your orderly passing in this voyage, and making observations in the same, we referre you to the instructions given by Master William Borough, whereof one copie is annexed unto the first part of this indenture, under our seale, for you Arthur Pet, another copie of it is annexed to the second part of this indenture, under our seale also, for you Charles Lackman, and a third copie thereof is annexed unto the third part of this indenture, remaining with vs the said companie, sealed and subscribed by the said Arthur Pet, and Charles Lackman.

And to the observing of all things contained in this commission, (so neere as God will permit us grace thereunto) If the said Arthur Pet, doe covenant by these presents, to performe them, and every part and parcell thereof. And If the said Charles Lackman, doe for my part likewise covenant by these presents to performe the same, and every part thereof, so neere as God will giue me grace thereunto.

And in witness thereof, these indentures were sealed and delivered accordingly, the day and yeere last above written. Thus the Lord God Almighty send you a prosperous voyage, with happie success, and safe returne, Amen.

### Instructions

Instructions  
of the English nation  
for the discovery  
of the North East  
passage to Cathay  
and the East Indies  
by the North Pole  
in the yeere of our  
Lord 1582.

Instructions and notes very necessaric and needfull to be obserued, in the purposed voyage for discoverie of *Cathay Eastwards,*  
by Arthur Pet, and Charles Lackman.



When you come to Orfordnesse, (if the winde doe serue you to goe a seaboord the lands) doe you set off from thence, and note the time diligently of your being against the said Nesse, turning then your glasse, whereby you intend to keepe your continuall watch, and appointe such course as you shall thinke good, according as the wind serueth you: and from that time forwarde continually (if your ship be safe, vnder saile, a hull or trie) do you at the ende of euery 4. glasse at the least (except calme) sounde with your dip in lead, and note diligently what depth you finde, and also the ground. But if it happen by sturmes of the shippes way, or other wise, that you can not get ground, yet note what depth you do proue, and could finde no ground (this note is to be obserued all your voyage, as well outwards as homewards.) But when you come vpon any coast, or doe finde any holde banke in the sea, you are then to vie your leade oftener, as you shall thinke it requisite, noting diligently the order of your depth, and the deeping and sholding. And so likewise doe you note the depths into harboronghs, riuers, &c.

How to note  
bottoms in his  
Toimall of the  
voyage, his  
wand recko-  
ning, and other  
obseruations.

And in keeping your dead reckoning, it is very necessaric that you doe note at the ende of euery 4. glasse, what way the shippe hath made (by your best proofes to be used) and howe her way hath bene throughe the water, considering withall for the sagge of the sea, so leeward, accordingly as you shall finde it growen: and also to note the depth, and what thinges woorth the noting, happened in that time, with also the winde vpon what point you finde it then, and of what force, or strength it is, and what failes you beare.

But if you should omit to note those things at the ende of euery 4. glasse, I would not haue you to let it slippe any longer time, then to note it diligently at the ende of euery watch, or 8. glasse at the farthest.

Doe you diligently obserue the latitude as often, and in as many places as you may possible, and also the variation of the compass (especially when you may be at shoare vpon any land) noting the same obseruations truely, and the place and places where, and the time and times when you doe the same.

When you come to haue sight of any coast or land whatsoever, doe you presently set the same with your sailing compass, how it beares off you, noting your iudgement howe farre you thinke it from you, drawing also the forme of it in your booke, howe it appeares vnto you, noting diligently betwix the highest, or useablest part thereof beareth off you, and the extreames also in sight of the same land at both endes, distinguishing them by letters, A. B. C. &c. Afterwards when you haue sailed 1. 2. 3. or 4. glasse (at the most) noting diligently what way you barke hath made, and vpon what point of the compass doe you againe set that first land seene, or the partes thereof, that you first obserued, if you can well perceauce or discern them, and like wise such other notable pointes or signes, vpon the land that you may then see, and could not perceauce at the first time, distinguishing it also by letters from the other, and drawing in your booke the shape of the same land, as it appeareth vnto you, and so the third time, &c.

For noting the  
shape and  
birth of the  
land at first  
discoverie, &c.

And also in passing alongst by any and euery coast, doe you drawe the manner of biting in of euery Bay, and entrance of euery harborongh or riuers mouth, with the lying out of euery point, or headland, (vnto the which you may giue apt names at your pleasure) and make some mark in drawing the forme and boorder of the same, where the high cliffs are, and where lowe land is, whether sande, hills, or woods, or whatsoever, not omitting to note any thing that may be sensible and apparant to you, which may serue to any good purpose. If you carefully with great heed and diligence, note the obseruations in your booke, as aforesaid, and afterwards make demonstration thereof in your plat, you shall thereby perceauce howe farre the land you first sawe, or the partes thereof obserued, was then from you, and consequently of all the rest: and also howe farre the one part was from the other, and vpon what course or point of the compass the one lieth from the other.

And when you come vpon any coast where you find floods and ebbs, doe you diligently note the time of the highest and lowest water in euery place, and the flake or still water of full sea, & lowe water, and also which way the flood doth runne, howe the tides doe set, howe much water it bringeth, and what force the tide hath to drawe a shippe in one howse, or in the whole rive, as nere as you can iudge it, and what difference in time you finde betwix the running of the floode, and the ebbe. And if you finde vpon any coast the currant to runne alwaies one way, doe you also note the same

For obseruing  
of tides and  
currants.

duety how it  
them, as o  
for the latitude  
stances, obser  
then conuenie  
by perfectly  
of your discou  
you may not fo  
the soile, or fre  
tire and dispos  
best of the  
people as you  
winne thepp  
though you  
meanes possib  
that you keepe  
Thus I be  
sincerely, and be  
cees with you

Certain



70 degrees, in  
of 1800 Engl  
10 English m  
the and chire  
and prosper  
When you  
two, three, fo  
right hand ru  
the mouth of e  
named citie  
300 or 400 m  
had riuers mo  
all Asia, passin  
in view on po  
bring the chie  
known.

And in or  
captied the wh  
table fresh riu  
land, &c. and  
Cathay or Cl  
portunity to  
types of Cath  
Instructio



ll to be ob-  
astwards,

to goe a seaboard the  
nely of your being a-  
ny (intend to keepe  
I thinke good, accor-  
continually (if your  
uery 4. glasses at the  
pech you finde, and al-  
that you can not ge-  
oe is to be obserued  
on any coast, of the  
I shall thinke it requi-  
And to likewise be

e at the ende of eve-  
y) and howe her way  
eewards, according  
wooth the noting,  
n, and of what force,

s, I would not haue  
ery watch, of 8. glaf

as you may possi-  
upon any land) no-  
time and times when

one senty set the same  
dwe farre you thinke  
to you, noting diffe-  
reances also in sight of  
terwards when you  
ou barke hath made,  
by the partes thereof,  
se such other notable  
e at the first time, di-  
the shape of the same

ner of biting in of e-  
g out of euery point,  
make some make in  
where lowe landes is,  
that may be sensible  
y with great heede  
wards make demon-  
you first sawe, or  
erest: and also how  
e compass the one

u diligently note the  
er of full sea, & some  
much water it beeth,  
as neere as you can  
oode, and the ebbe,  
u also note the same  
duely,

uely how it seerch in euery place, and obserue what force it hath to driue a Shippe in one houre, &c.  
Item, as often, and when as you may conueniently come vpon any land, to make obseruation  
fo; the latitude and variation, &c. do you also (if you may) with your instrument, fo; trying of di-  
stances, obserue the platforme of the place, and of as many things (worth the noting) as you may  
then conueniently see from time to time. These orders if you diligently obserue, you may there-  
by perfectly set downe in the plats, that I haue giuen you your whole trauell and description  
of your discouery, which is a thing that will be chiefly expected at your hands. But withall  
you may not forget to note as much as you can learne, vnderstande of yourreine, of the manner of  
the soyle, of fruitfulness of euery place and countrey you shall come in, and of the manner, shape, ac-  
cure and disposition of the people, and of the commodities they haue, and what they most couet and  
desire of the commodities you carrie with you. It behoueth you to giue trifling things vnto such  
people as you shall happen to see, and to offer them all curtelie and friendshiply you may or can, to  
winne theyr loue and fauour towards you, not doing or offering them any wrong or hurt. And  
though you should be offered wrong at theyr hands, yet not to reuenge the same lightly, but by all  
meanes possible seeke to winne them, yet alwayes dealing wisely and with such circumspection  
that you keepe your selues out of theyr dangers.

To take the  
platforme of  
places without  
compass of  
view upon  
land.

Thus I beseech God almighty to bless you, and prosper your voyage with good and happie  
success, and send you safely to returne home againe, to the great ioy and reioycing of the aduen-  
turers with you, and of all your friends, and our whole countrey. Amen.

By M. W. Burrough.

Certaine briefe aduises, giuen by Master Dee, to Arthur Pet,  
and Charles Jackman, to be obserued in their Northeasterne  
discouerie, Anno 1580.



**I**f we reckon from Wardhouse to Colgoique Island 400 miles for almost 20  
degrees difference onely of longitude very neere East & West, and about the lati-  
tude of 70 degrees and two third parts; From Colgoique to Vaigats 200  
miles for 10 degrees difference, only in longitude, at 70 degrees of latitude also:  
Frō Vaigats to the Promontorie Tabin 60 degrees difference of longitude (the  
whole course, of thortest distance being East and West) in the latitude likewise of  
70 degrees, maketh 1200 miles: then is summa totalis frō Wardhouse to Tabin 600 leagues,  
or 1800 English miles. Therefore allowing in a discouery voyage for one day with another but  
50 English miles, it is euident that from Wardhouse to Tabin the course may be finished easily in  
sixe and thirey dayes: but by Gods helpe it may be finished in much shorter time, both by helpe of  
wind prosperous, and light continuall fo; the time requisite therunto.

When you are past Tabin, or come to the longitude of 142 degrees, as your chart sheweth, or  
two, three, foure, or five degrees further Easterly, it is probable you shall finde the land on your  
right hand runne much Southerly and Eastward, in which course you are like either to fall into  
the mouth of the famous riuer Oechardes, or some other, which yet I coniecture to passe by the re-  
nowned cite of Cambalu, and the mouth to be in latitude about 50 or 52 degrees, and within  
300 or 400 miles of Cambalu it selfe, being in the latitude about 45 degrees Southerly of the  
said riuers mouth, or els that you shall trend about the very Southerne and most Easterly part of  
all Asia, passing by the province Ania, and then in the latitude of 46 degrees, keeping still the land  
in view on your right hand (as neere as you may with safety) you may enter into Quinsay haue  
being the chiefe city in the Kingdom of China, as I terme it fo; distinction sake, from the other better  
knowne.

Mr. Dee gave  
them a chart  
of his owne  
making, which  
heere be refered  
them vnto.

And in or about either or both of these two last named places, you may to great good purpose be de-  
camped the whole winter, after your arrivall in those quarters, as sometime by sea, sometime in no-  
table fresh rivers, sometime in discreet view and noting downe the situation of the cities with  
land, &c. and euer allaying to come by some shars or mappe of the countrey, made and printed in  
Cathay or China, and by some of theyr bookes like wise fo; language, &c. You may also haue op-  
portunity to saile ouer to Iapan Island, where you shall finde Christian men, Jesuits of many col-  
lores of Christy dome some, and perhaps some Englishmen, at whose hands you may haue great  
instruction and aduise fo; your affaires in hand.

Notes

Notes in writing, besides more priuie by mouth, that were giuen by *M. Richard Hakluyt*, of *Edon* in the countie of *Hereford*, *Esquire*, Anno 1580: To *M. Arthur Pet*, and to *M. Charles Iackman*, sent by the merchants of the *Moscouie* companie for the discoverie of the North-east straight, not altogether vnfit for some other enterprises of discoverie, heerafter to be taken in hand.

### What respect of Islands is to be had, and why.

**V**er as the *Portingalles* haue in theyr course to theyr *Indies* in the *Southeast*, certaine ports and fortifications to thrust into by the way, to diuers great purposes: so you are to see what Islands, and what ports you had need to haue by the way in your course to the *North-east*. For which cause I wish you to enter into consideration of the matter, & to note all the Islands, and to set them downe in plat, to two ends: that is to say, That we may deuise to take the benefit by them, And also foresee how by them the *Sauages* or ciuill *Princes* may in any soe annoy vs in our purposed trade that way.

And for that the people to the which we purpose in this voyage to go, be no *Christians*, it were good that the masse of our commodities were alwayes in our owne disposition, and not at the will of others. Therefore it were good that we did seeke out some small Island in the *Seribian* sea, where we might plant, soyle, and staple safely, from whence (as time should serue) we might send those heathen nations with our commodities without cloying them, or without venturing our whole masse in the bowels of theyr countrey.

And to which Island (if used were, & if we should thinke so good) we might allure the *North-east* nauie, the nauie of *Cambalu* to resoye with theyr commodities to vs there planted, & stapling there.

And if such an Island might be found so standing as might shorten our course, and so standing, as that the nauie of *Cambalu*, or other those parties might conveniently saile vnto without theyr like in respect of distance, then would it fall out well. For so, besides lesse danger, and more safety, our ships might there vnlade and lade againe, and returne the selfe same summer to the ports of *England* or of *Rowway*.

And if such an Island may be for the stapling of our commodities to the which they of *Cambalu* would not saile, yet we might, hauing shippes there, imploy them in passing betwene *Cambalu* and that stapling place.

### Respect of hauens and harborowes.

**A**nd if no such Islands may be found in the *Seribian* sea toward the firme of *Asia*, then are you to search out the ports that be about *Noua Zembla*, all along the tract of that land, to the end you may winter there the first yeere, if you be let by contrarie winde, and to the end that if we may in short time come vnto *Cambalu*, and vnlade and set saile againe for returne without venturing, there at *Cambalu*, that you may on your way come as farre in returne as a port about *Noua Zembla*: that the summer following, you may the sooner be in *England* for the more speedy vent of your *East* commodities, and for the speedier discharge of your mariners: if you can not go forward and backe in one selfe same summer.

And touching the tract of the land of *Noua Zembla*, toward the *East* out of the circle *Arctike* in the more temperate zone, you are to haue regard for if you finde the soile planted with people: it is like that in time an ample vent of our warme wollen clothes may be found. And if there be no people at all there to be found, then you shall speciallie note what plenty of whales, and of other fish is to be found there, to the end we may turne our new found land fishing or Island fishing to our whaling that way, for the ayd and comfort of our new trades to the *North-east* to the coasts of *Asia*.

### Respect of fish and certaine other things.

**A**nd if the apple may be found vpon that tract temperate, and the soile peeling wood, water, land and grasse, and the seas fish, then we may plant on that maine the officials of our people, as the *Portingalles* do in *Byasill*, & so they may in our fishing in our passage, and diuers waies vend commodities to *England* by harbouring and victualling vs.

And

And it may be  
name, as plenty

The Ma

To note the  
quallie, or  
heads they haue

And whether  
and come to ma

To note the  
If a

A great reg  
be noted as a th  
possesse the same  
haue the crabs  
were sold, or fo  
king of Denm  
palle that way  
were, the leng  
purposes: and  
the *Princes* pr  
such thing sou

Which

If you finde  
When are you  
If they be y  
be made to intr  
If you enter  
what kinde of c  
booy, clapbooy  
be brought peri

You must h  
because an

To

Bring hom  
Although  
All the fru  
them,  
And bring  
shall finde the  
All the see  
another part o  
that the same n  
If you are i  
haue the perfe  
To bring cl  
deuiled in Cu

Which

If you finde  
When are you  
If they be y  
be made to intr  
If you enter  
what kinde of c  
booy, clapbooy  
be brought peri

You must h  
because an

To

Bring hom  
Although  
All the fru  
them,  
And bring  
shall finde the  
All the see  
another part o  
that the same n  
If you are i  
haue the perfe  
To bring cl  
deuiled in Cu

You must h  
because an

To

Bring hom  
Although  
All the fru  
them,  
And bring  
shall finde the  
All the see  
another part o  
that the same n  
If you are i  
haue the perfe  
To bring cl  
deuiled in Cu

You must h  
because an

To

Bring hom  
Although  
All the fru  
them,  
And bring  
shall finde the  
All the see  
another part o  
that the same n  
If you are i  
haue the perfe  
To bring cl  
deuiled in Cu

You must h  
because an

To

Bring hom  
Although  
All the fru  
them,  
And bring  
shall finde the  
All the see  
another part o  
that the same n  
If you are i  
haue the perfe  
To bring cl  
deuiled in Cu

You must h  
because an

And it may be, that the Inland they may redily wash, peck, care, dempe, and all things for the name, as plentifully as *Cilicia* doth.

**The Islands to be noted with their commodities and wants.**

To note the Islands, whether they be hie land or low land, mountaine, or flat, grauelly, clay, or silty, or of what soyle, woody or not woody, with springs and rivers of noy, and what wilde beasts they haue in the same.

And whether there seeme to be in the same apt matter to build withall, as stone free or rough, and stone to make lime withall, and wood or coale to burne the same withall.

To note the goodnesse of the badnesse of the hauens and harbours in the Islands.

**If a straight be found what is to be done, and what great importance it may be of.**

And if there be a straight in the passage into the *Southern* seas, the same is specially and with great regard to be noted, especially if the same straight be narrow and to be kept. I say it is to be noted as a thing that much importeth for what prince for us shall be Lord of the same, & shall possesse the same, as the king of *Denmarke* doth possesse the straight of *Denmarke*, he onely shall haue the trade out of these regions into the *Southern* parts of the world for himselfe, and for his posterity, or for his subjects onely, or to enjoy wonderfull benefit of the toll of the same, like as the king of *Denmarke* doth enjoy of his straights, by suffering the merchantes of other princes to passe that way. If any such straight be found, the eleuation, the high or lowe land, the hauens wide, the length of the straights, and all other such circumstances are to be set downe for many purposes: and all the mariners in the voyage are to be sworne to keepe close all such things, that other princes perceiue by not of the same, after our returne vpon the disclosing of the mariners, if any such thing should hap.

**Which way the Saunge may be made able to purchase our cloth and other their wants.**

If you finde any Island or maine land populous, and that the same people hath neede of cloth, when are you to deuise what commodities they haue to purchase the same withall.

If they be poore, then are you to consider of the soyle, and how by any possibilitie the same may be made to enrich them, that hereafter they may haue something to purchase the cloth withall.

If you enter into any maine by portable riuer, and shall finde any great woods, you are to note what kinde of timber they be of: that we may know whether they are for pitch, tarre, masts, deale-wood, clapwood, or for building of ships or houses, for so if the people haue no vse of them they may be bought perhaps to vse.

**Not to venture the losse of any one man.**

You must haue great care to preserve your people, since your number is so small, and not to venture any one man in any wise.

**To bring home besides merchandize certaine trifles.**

Bring home with you (if you may) from *Cambalu*, or other ciuil place, one or other yong man, although you leaue one for him.

All the fruites of the countreies, if they will not of themselves dure, drye them, and so preserve them.

And bring with you the curuels of peares and apples, and the stones of such stone fruits as you shall finde there.

Also the seedes of all strange herbs and shrowes, for such seedes of fruites and herbs comming from another part of the world, and so farre off, will delight the fauour of many, for the strangenesse & for that the same may grow and continue the delight long time.

If you arrive at *Cambalu* or *Quinsay*, to bring thence the mappe of that countrey, for so shall you haue the perfect description which is to great purpose.

To bring thence some old printed booke, to see whether they haue had print there, before it was deuised in *Europe*, as some write.

## To note their force by sea and by land

If you arrive in Cambait or Quinsay, to take a speciall view of their stauie, and to note the force, greatnesse, maner of building of them, the sitings, the castles, the anchors, the furniture of them, with ordnance, armor, and munition.

Also, to note the force of the walls and bulwarks of the cities, their ordnance, and whether they haue any caluaries, and what powder and shot.

To note what armor they haue.

What swords.

What pikes, halberds, and bills.

What boxes of force, and what light boxes they haue.

And to throughout, to note the force of the countrey both by sea and by land.

## Things to be marked to make coniectures by.

To take speciall note of the buildings, and of the ornaments of the houses within.  
Take a speciall note of the apparell and furniture, and of the substance that the same is made of, of which a merchant may make a gess, as well of their commoditie, as also of the nature,  
To note the shops and warehouses, and what commodities they abound, the price also.

To see the humbles, and to view all such things as are brought into the markets, so that you shall soone see the commodities, and the maner of the people of the inland, and so give a gess of many things.

To note the fields of graine, and their trees of fruit, and how they abound or not abound in one and other, and what plenty or scarcitie of fish they haue.

## Things to be carried with you, whereof more or lesse is to be carried for a shew of our commodities to be made.

Articles of all orient coulers, specially of stamell, byndecloes of orient coulers also.  
Frisagoes, moles, Byldow frizes, Spanish blankets, bayes of all coulers, specially with stamell, woosteds, carels, sayes, woadmols, flannels, caly, &c.

Felts of diuers coulers.

Taffeta hats.

Deepe cappes for mariners coulered in stamell, whereof if ample vent may be found, it would turne to an infinite commoditie of the common poore people by knitting.

Quilted cappes of Levant taffeta of diuers coulers for the night.

Knit stocks of silke of orient coulers.

Knit stocks of Jersey perne of orient coulers, whereof if ample vent might followe the poore multitude should be set in worke.

Stocks of kersie of diuers coulers for men and for women.

Garters of silke of seuerall kindes, and of coulers diuers.

Circles of Busse, and all other leather, with gilt and bugitt buckles, specially waste gittles, waste girdles of veluet.

Gloves of all sorts, knit, any of leather.

Gloves perfumed.

Points of all sorts of silke, threed, and leather, of all maner of coulers.

Shooes of Spanish leather, of diuers coulers, of diuers lengths, cut and burut.

Shooes of other leather.

Veluet shooes and pantophles.

These shooes and pantophles to be sent this time, rather for a shew then for any other cause.

Hurles knit, and of leather.

Knit cappes knit, and other.

A garnish of powder for a shew of a vens of that English commoditie, bottles, flagons, spoons, &c. of that metall.

Glasses of English making.

Venice glasses.

Looking glasses for women, great and saye.

Small Dial  
Spectacles  
Others of  
Doye glasses  
Combes of  
Combes of  
Combes of  
Linnen of  
Handkerchiefs  
Glazen eyes  
Kniues in  
Revels grea  
Butrons grea  
of double silke, an  
Boxes with  
that the people be  
government set  
All the seuerall  
gouernours at  
Imagine.  
Locks and key  
of sil vent may be  
gard. For in  
to our people best  
the Hospitals of

Fo

If the stee  
aboard, if you  
Harmelade.  
Suckst.  
Figgas barre  
Resens of the  
Centers of  
dilolue.  
Punes dam  
Dyed peares  
Walnuts.  
Almonds.  
Smalnuts.  
Olives to ma  
The apple  
Hulloke.  
Satie.  
Vials of goo  
they comming a  
Sugar, to be  
The stee of  
the same doe ma  
fretheth the spirit

Cynomon wa  
Imperiall wa

With these a  
with the  
made by way

Small

Lond

Small viols a few for prooffe, although here they will not hold the order they do heere.

Spectacles of the common sort.

Others of Crisall trimmed with silver, and otherwise.

Polye glasses.

Combes of Ivory.

Combes of Bone.

Combes of Horne.

Linnen of diuers sorts.

Handkerchiffes with silke of severall coulers wrought.

Glazen eyes to ride with against dust.

Knives in sheathes, both single and double, of good edge.

Needles great and small of every kinde.

Buttons greater and smaller, with moulds of leather and not of wood, and such as be durable of double silke, and that of flambie coulers.

Boxes with weights of golde, and of every kinde of the coine of golde, good and badde, to shew that the people heere use weighte & measure, which is a certeine shew of wise dome, and of a certaine government sated heere.

All the severall silver coines of our English monyes, to be carried with you to be shewed to the governours at Cambalu, which is a thing that shall in silence speake to wise men moze, than you imagine.

Locks and keyes, hinges, bolts, halpes, &c. great and small of excellent workmanship, where-as it may be, heereafter, we shall let our subiectes in worke, which you must have in great regard. For in finding ample vent of any thing that is wrought in this realme, is moze worth to our people besides the gaine of the merchant, ther: Chyrlsburch, Wydewell, the Sauoy, and all the Hospitals of England.

For banketing on shipboord persons of credit.

First the sweetest perfumes to set vnder hatches to make the place sweet against they comming aboard, if you arrive at Cambalu, Quinsy, or in any such great cite and not among Sauvages, Sparmelade.

Sucket.

Figges barreled.

Reifens of the sunne.

Comfets of diuers kindes, made of purpose by him that is most excellent, that shall not be blue.

Punces damaske.

Dyed peares.

Walnuts.

Almonds.

Smallnuts.

Oliues to make them taste they wine.

The apple John that dureth two yeeres to make shew of our fruits.

Dulloche.

Sacke.

Viols of good sweet waters, and casting bottles of glasses to be sprinkled the galls withall after they comming aboard.

Suger, to use with they wine, if they will.

The sweet oyle of Sante, and excellent French blueger, and a fine kinde of Balsam siped in the same doe make a banketing vish, and a little Suger cast in it cooleth and comforteth, and refresheth the spirits of man.

Cymomon water } is to be had with you to make a shew of by taste, and also to comfort your  
Imperiall water } sicke in the voyage.

With these and such like, you may banket where you arrive the greater and best persons.

Or with the gift of these Sparmelades in small hores, or small viols of sweet waters you may make by way of gift, or you may make a merchandize of them.

## The mappe of England and of London.

Take with you the mappe of England set out in saye coulers, one of the biggest foze I meane, to make shew of your countrey from whence you come.

And also the large mappe of London, to make shew of your citie. And let the river be braine full of shippes of all sorts, to make the more shew of your great trade and traffike in trade of merchandise.

## Ortelius booke of mappes.

If you take Ortelius booke of mappes with you, to marke all these regions, it were not amisse, and if need were, to present the same to the great Cam, for it would be to a purpose of marvellous account.

## The booke of the attire of all nations.

Such a booke carried with you and bestowed in gift, would be much esteemed, as I perswade my selfe.

## Bookes.

If any man will lend you the new Herball, and such bookes as make shew of herbes, plantes, trees, fishes, fowles and beastes of these regions, it may much delight the great Cam, and the nobilitie, and altho they merchants to have the view of them: for all things in these parties so much differing from the things of those regions, since they may not be here to see them, by meane of the distance, yet to see those things in a shadow, by this meane will delight them.

## The booke of Rates.

Take with you the booke of Rates, to the end you may strike all those commodities there specified, that you shall chance to finde in Cambalu, in Quinsy, or in any part of the East, where you shall chance to be.

## Parchment.

Rowles of Parchment, for that we may vent much without hurt to the Realme, and it lyes in small roome.

## Glew.

To carrie Glew, for that we have plentie, and want vent.

## Red Oker for Painters.

To seeke vent because we have great mines of it, and have no vent.

## Sope of both kindes.

To trie what vent it may have, for that we make of both kindes, and may perhaps make more.

## Saffron.

To trie what vent you may have of Saffron, because this Realme yeelds the best of the world, and for the tillage and ocher labours, may set the poore greatlie in worke to their relief.

## Aquauitza.

By new devices wonderfull quantities may be made here, and therefore to seeke the vent.

## Blacke Conie skinnes.

To trie the vent at Cambalu, for that it lyes to wards the South, and for that we abound with the commoditie, and may spare it.

Threed of all colours.

To vent thereof may set our people in worke.

Copper Spurres, and Hawkes bels.

To see the vent, for it may set our people in worke.

A note and a Caueat for the Merchant.

That before you offer your commodities to sale, you indeuour to learne what commodities the countrey there hath. For if you bring thither be luer, cassia, spice, or any such commoditye that you your selfe desire to lade your selfe home with, you must not sell yours deare, least hereafter you purchase theirs not so cheape as you would.

Seedes for sale.

Care with you for that purpose, all sortes of garden seedes, as well of sweete strawing herbes and of flowers, as also of pot herbes, and all sortes for rootes, &c.

Lead of the first melting.

Lead of the second melting of the slags.

To make triall of the vent of Lead of all kindes.

English iron, and wicr of iron and copper.

To trie the sale of the same.

Brimstone.

To trie the vent of the same, because we abound with it made in the Realme.

Anthimonic a minerall.

To see whether they haue any amplerse there for it, for that we may lade whole nauies of it, and haue no use of it, vntlesse it be for some small portion in founding of bels, or a litle that the Alchemists use: of this you may haue two sortes at the Apothecaries.

Tinder boxes with Steele, Flint and matches, and Tinder, the

matches to be made of Iunepet, to auoid the offence of Brimstone.

To trie and make the better sale of Brimstone by the wing the bit. Candles of Glare to light.

A painted Bellowes.

For that perhaps they haue not the use of them.

A pot of cast iron.

To trie the sale, for that it is a naturall commoditye of this Realme.

All maner of edge tooles.

To be sold there of to the lest ciuill people by the way where you shall comy.

What I would haue you there to remember.

To note specially what excellent dyng they vse in these regions; and therefore to note their garments and ornaments of houles: and to see their die houles and the materials and simples that they vse about the same, and to tryng musters and shewes of the colours and of the materials, for that it may serue this clothing bealme to great purpose.

To take with you for your owne vse.

All maner of engines to take fish and foule.

To take with you those things that be in perfection  
of goodnesse.

For as the goodnesse now at the first may make your commodities in crebide in time to come: So false and sophisticate commodities shall braue you and all your commodities into contempt and ill opinion.

The discouerie made by M. Arthur Pet, and M. Charles lackman,  
of the Northeast parts, beyond the Island of Vaigars, with two Barkes: the one  
called the George, the other the William, in the yeere 1580.

Written by Hugh Smith

day.



pon Sunday the 30. of May, we departed from Hartwich in the afternoon, the wind being at South, and to the Eastward. The ebbe being spent we could not double the poole, and therefore were constrained to put in againe vntill the next day in the morning, being the last of May: which day wee waited our anchors about 3. a clocke in the morning, the wind being West Southwest. The same day we passed by Rhydelle at an East Sunne, and Seantford at a West Sunne, and Dartmouth at a West north west sunne, and so to Winterton where we did anchor all night: it was then calme, and the flood was come.

June.

The next day being the first of June, we set saile at 3. a clocke in the morning, and set our course North, the wind at the South west, and at South west by west.

The 2. day of June by my dead reckoning I was 40. leagues from Winterton due North.

The 3. day the wind was at the East South west, and at 12. a clocke by my reckoning I was 70. leagues North from Winterton. The same day I did observe the sunne, where I found the pole to be eleuated above the Horizon 38. deg. 5. minutes. This day in the afternoon at 6. of the clocke the wind came to the South and by West with a very good gale.

The 4. day about 6. of the clocke in the morning, the wind came to the Southeast with raine and foule weather; and after to the East South east, the same night it brake vpon very faire weather.

The 5. day in the morning at 4. or 5. of the clocke, the wind came into the West north west, and to the North west: the same day I did find the pole to be eleuated 38. deg. 23. minutes. This day about 3. in the afternoon, the wind with a light and gentle gale came to the South, and so did continue till the next day in the morning.

The 6. day about 5. in the morning, the wind came to the Southeast, and to the East South east, with a very cruell storme all the same day. And about 3. in the afternoon, we lost the company of the William, in the night the weather came very faire.

The 7. day was faire, the wind being at South by East. This day I did find the pole to be eleuated 60. deg. 58. minutes: this day also it was very calme.

The 8. day at 10. of the clocke, the wind came to the South west for the space of 2. howers, & then grew calme for 3. howers. Then the winde came to the North, and to North north east, and so did continue vntill the next day.

The 9. day the wind being at the North North east, we made East and by North.

The 10. day about one of the clocke in the afternoon, we put into Norway to a place where one of the headlands of the sound is called *Bord*: the other headland is called *Harle*. There is also an Island called *Kene*. Here I did find the pole to be eleuated 62. deg. it doeth flowe there South, and it heeth 7. or 8. fathoms not above 1000. fathoms to the North.

The 11. day in the morning the wind came to the South & to the Southeast: the same day at 6. in the afternoon we set saile, & were along the coast, it was very foule weather with raine & fog.

Kene an Island  
of Norway.

24177

The

The 12. day

wee, and so

The 13. day

was at West

The 14. day

The 15. day

in the after no

The 16. day

The 17. day

We ranne alo

This day it

in the space of

The 18. day

and then we

36. minutes.

The 19. day

had along the

The 20. day

along the coast

The 21. day

West South west

The 22. day

day at 6. in the

bearr nelle, and

Southeast, and

The 23. day

cause of our con

text, and to sent

came into War

The 24. the

cause he was

did hale a floe

The 25. day

The 26. day

being matter, to

The 27. day

The 28. day

one hower, and

The 29. abo

same day.

The first of

the clocke we

The second

to the Northeast

to the East

to the North

west, where

the thought he

meane time we

would meet by

being at South

The 3. day

The same night

leagues from t

The 4. day

38. minutes.

along South



The 12. day about 8. in the morning the wind came to the South west, and to the West south west, and so did continue the same night.

The 13. day I did find the pole to be elevated, 64. degrees, 3. minutes. The same day the wind was at West south west.

The 14. day the wind came to the South west about 12. of the clocke with raine and fogge.

The 15. day the wind South west, and this day I found the pole eleviars, 66. deg. 50. minutes, in the after noone we had very much raine, and soyle weather.

The 16. day we did fall to the South.

The 17. day the wind came to the South, and to the South South east with raine and fogge. We ranne along the coast North north east, and by North.

This day in the afternoone the wind came North with very much wind, and we did lie a heau for the space of 8. howers.

The 18. day about 5. in the morning the wind came to the West and by North, and to the West and then we set saile, and set our course North east. This day we did find the pole elevated, 69. deg. 36. minutes.

The 19. day the wind at West, and West and by North, faire weather with some showers, wee had along the coast North east, and North east and by East, and East north east.

The 20. day we had very faire weather, the wind at South, and South by East, so that we had along the coast East & by North, the weather was very close, so that we could not observe y sunne.

The 21. day was very calme till about 11. of the clocke, at which time the wind came West and West south west, with some raine, the same night was faire.

The 22. day the wind being at West, we did hal the coast East north east, and East. The same day at 6. in the morning, we did double the north Cape. About 3. in the afternoone we past Skires beare nesse, and had along the coast East, and East south east, and all the same night wee halld Southeast, and Southeast by East.

The north Cape double.

The 23. day about 3. in the morning we came to Wardhouse, the wind at the North west. The ende of our comming in, was to seeke the William, whose companie we lost the 6. day of this moneth, and to send letters into England. About one of the clocke in the afternoone the William also came into Wardhouse to us in good safetie, and all her company in good health.

wardhouse.

The 24. the wind came to the East north east. This day the William was hald a ground, because she was some what leake, and to mend her steeage. This night about 12. of the clocke, shee did hale a floce againe.

The 25. day the wind was at East north east.

The 26. day the Tobie of Dartuch departed from Wardhouse for London, Thomas Greene being master, to whom we delivred our letters.

The 27. day the wind was at South south east, and the 28. also.

The 29. day about 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to the West north west for the space of one hower, and presently to the East againe, and so was variable all the same night.

The 30. about five in the morning, the wind came to East south east, and continued so all the same day.

The first of July about 5. in the afternoone, the wind was at North north west: and about 7. of the clocke we set saile from Wardhouse East and by South.

The second day about 5. in the morning, the wind was East, and East south east, and we did lie in the shottwards. And about 10. in the morning, the wind came to South south east, and we laid to the Eastward: sometime we lay East by South, sometime East south east, and sometimes East by North. About 5. in the afternoone we bare with the William, who was willing to goe with Keger, because we thought her to be out of trie, and sailed very ill, where we might mend her steeage: whereupon master Pet not willing to goe into harboough, said to master lackman, that if he thought himselfe not able to keepe the sea, he should doe as he thought best, and that he in the mean time would bear. with Willoughbies land, for that it was a parcell of our direction, and would meet him at Veroue Ostroue, or Vaigats, and so we set our course East north east, the wind being at Southeast.

Willoughbies land.

The 3. day the wind at Southeast we found the pole to be elevated 70. degrees, 46. minutes. The same night at 12. of the clocke we founden, but had no ground, in 120. sadomes, being fittie leagues from the one due by our reckoning East north east from Keger.

56. leagues from Keger.

The 4. day all the morning was calme. This day we found the pole to be elevated, 71. degrees 38. minutes. This day at 9. in the afternoone the wind at North east with a gentle gale, wee had along Southeast by East.

The

to note their gar-  
dimples that they  
materials, for that it

tion

in time to come:  
ies into contempt

es Lackman,

s: the one.

the afternoone, the  
pent we could not  
ine untill the next  
ed our ankers a  
4. The same day  
West Sume, and  
er all night it was

, and set our course

ton due North,  
reckoning I was  
where I found the  
ernoone at 6. of the

theast with raine  
y faire weather.

West north west, and  
minutes. This day  
day, and so did con-

the East south east,  
The companie of

to the pole to be ele-

2. howers, & then  
theast, and so did

th,  
a place where one  
te. There is also  
owr there South,

: the same day at  
e with rain & fog.  
The

The 5. day the wind at North west, we had East and East by South: this day we saw land, but we could not make it, the wind being Northerly, so that we could not come neerer to it.

The 6. day about 2. in the afternoon, the wind at North north west, we had East southeast with a faire and gentle gale: this day we met with ice. About 6. in the afternoon it became calmer: we with saile and oares laid it to the North east part, hoping that we might clear us of it: for that way we did see the head part of it, as we thought. Which done, about 12. of the clocke at night we did thinke it to be ice of the baie of S. Nicholas, but it was not as we found after wards.

In sight of perfect land.

The 7. day we met with more ice, at the East part of the other it's 2. we had a long a weather the ice to finde some ende thereof by East north east. This day there appeared more land North from us being perfect land: the ice was betwene us and it, so that we could not come neerer to it.

The same morning at five of the clocke, we put into the ice to find some way through it, we continued in it all the same day and all the night, following the wind by the North North west. We were constrained to goe many pointes of our compasse, but we went most an Easterlie course.

The eight day the wind at North north west, we continued our course; and at five in the morning we sounded, and had 90. fadoms red oafe. This day at 4. in the afternoon we sounded againe, & had 84. fadomes oafe, as before. At five in the afternoon we cleared our selves of the ice, and had along Southeast by South: we sounded againe at 10. a clocke at night, and had 43. fadomes sandie oafe.

The 9. day at two in the morning, we sounded againe, and had 45. fadomes, then there appeared a shalow of land to us East North east, and so we ranne with it the space of two howers, and then perceiuing that it was but fogge, we had along Southeast.

This day at 2. in the afternoon we sounded and had 50. fadomes blacke oafe. Our latitude was 70. degrees 3. minutes. At ten a clocke at night we sounded againe, and had fiftie fadomes blacke oafe.

The tenth day the wind being at North north west, we halled East and by North, which course we set, because at ten of the clocke afore noone we did see land, and then we sounded having 35. fadomes blacke oafe. All this day there was a great fogge, so that we durst not beare with the land to make it; and so we kept an outwardly course. This day at 6. in the afternoon we espied land, where with we halled, and then it grew calmer: we sounded and had 120. fadomes blacke oafe: and then we sent our boat a land to sound and prooue the land. The same night we came with our ship within an Island, where we rode all the same night: The same night we went into a baie to ride neere the land for wood and water.

An Island.

The 11. day the wind came to the East southeast: this day about a league from us to the East wards, we saw a very faire sound or riuer that pass very faire into the countrey with 2. or 3. branches with an Island in the midst.

The maine land.

The 12. of July the wind was East South east. This day about 12. a clocke in the morning, there came a great white beare downe to the water side, andooke the water of his owne accord, we chased him with our boate, but for all that we could doe, he got to land and escaped from us; where we named the baie Bearebaie. This day at 7. in the afternoon we set saile, for we had good hope that the wind would come Westery, and with saile and oares we gate the sea. All the night it was calme with fogge.

Beare baie.

The 13. day in the morning the wind was very variable with fogge, and as it cleared by we met with great store of ice, which at the first shewed like land. This ice did us much trouble, and the more because of the fogge which continued in this ice vncill the 14. day, 12. of the clocke.

The 14. day in the morning we were imbaried with ice, that we were constrained to come out as we went in, which was by great good fortune, or rather by the goodnesse of God, oherwise it had bene impossible, and at 12. of the clocke we were cleare of it, the wind being at South and South by West. The same day we found the pole to be eleuated, 70. degrees, 26. minutes: we lay along the coast North west, thincking it to be an Island, but finding no end in rowling so long, we supposed it to be the maine of Noua Zembla. About 2. in the afternoon we laid it to the Southward to double the ice, which we could not doe vpon that boord, so that wee call about againe and lay West along vnder the ice. About 7. in the afternoon we got about the greatest part thereof. About 11. a clocke at night we brought the ice Southeast of us, and thus we were rid of this trouble at this time.

The supposed name of Noua Zembla.

The 15. day about 3. in the morning, the wind was at South south west: we cast about and lay to the Eastwards, the wind did West, so that we lay South south west with a stawne speer,

and

and so theran all  
grey land. This  
day.

The 16. day  
downe red land, at  
day at 10. of the  
which way to get  
Northward. At  
bout 6. in the aft-  
had 30. fadoms by  
this night at 12.

The 17. day a  
South and South  
the afternoon, at  
East north east,  
Pechora.

The 18. day a  
Islands. There  
were to the head  
minutes. This day  
east, we had East  
then being calme.

The 19. day a  
same day at 8. 7.  
North and South  
some, sometime:  
boat away to sound  
for the boate to  
way but to goe  
saile.

The 20. day a

The 21. day a  
we had 8. and 9.

The 22. day a  
found it to lie North  
with great fogge  
of wood and water  
by, and a man buy  
the date of our Le-  
ture if the Willia-  
ment. At eight in  
nd one of the baie  
land.

The 23. day a  
great number of  
great overfalls, a  
we were. At eight  
fogge, and very  
Islands to harbor  
it there so to do  
very calme vpon  
and then we took  
to steere a stow-  
nd crew. This day  
land and it, being  
land, that we con-  
dence had about  
hour, and within

and to the ran all the same day. About 8, in the after noone we sounde, and had 23. fadoms small grey sand. This night at twelue of the clocke we sounde againe, and had 29. fadoms sand, as above.

The 16. day into 3, in the morning we hald along East Southeast, where we found 18. fadoms red sand, then we hald along Northeast. In these soundings wee had many ouersals. This day at 10. of the clocke wee met with moye ice, which was very great, so that wee could not tell which way to get cleare of it. Then the wind came to the South Southeast, so that we lay to the Northwards. We thought that way to cleare our selues of it, but that way we had more ice. About 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to the East. Then wee lay to the Southwards that wee had 30. fadoms blarke oafe. This day we found the pole to be eleuater, 69. deg. 40. minutes, and this night at 12. of the clocke, we had 41. fadoms red sand.

*Many ouersals.*

The 17. day at 3, in the morning, we had 12. fadoms. At 9. we had 8. and 7. all this day we ran South and South by West, at the depth aforesaid, red sand, being but shallow water. At eight in the afternoone, the wind with a shower and thunder came to the South west, and then wee ranne East north east. At 12. at night it came to the South and by East, and all this was in the baie of Pechora.

*The baie of Pechora.*

The 18. day at 7, in the morning we bare with the head land of the baie, where we found two Islands. There are also ouersals of water of tides. We went betweene the maine and the Island, next to the head, where we had about 2. fadoms and a halfe. We found the pole eleuater, 69. deg. 13. minutes. This day we had sight of Vaigats: the land of the maine of Pechora did trend South east, we had East Southeast, and had 10. fadoms oafe all the same day vntill 4. in the afternoone, then being calme, we ankered in 10. fadoms all the same night.

The 19. day at two in the morning, we set saile, and ranne South and South southwest all the same day at 8. 7. and 6. fadoms, this was off the South part of Vaigats: this part of the land lieth North and South. This day at 4. in the afternoone we found shallow water, sometime foure fadoms, sometime 3. and 2. and a halfe, and one fadome and a halfe, there wee ankered and sent our boat away to sound, and all to leeward we had 4. fote and 3. fote, and 2. fote, there was noe water for the boate betweene Vaigats and the other side: finding no moye water, there was no other way but to goe backe, as we came in, hauing the winde North west, so at twelue at night we set saile.

The 20. day we plied to the Northwards, and got deepe water againe 6. and 7. fadoms.

The 21. day the wind by the North west, we hald along the coast North and North north west, we had 8. and 9. and 10. fadoms.

The 22. day the winde came to the Southwest, wee bare along the coast of Vaigats, as wee found it to lie North and by West, and North north west, and North. The wind blew very much with great fogge, we lacking water and wood bare within an Island where we found great store of wood and water, there were 3. or 4. goodly soundes. Under two points there was a crosse set by, and a man buried at the foote of it. Upon the said crosse master Pet did graue his name with the date of our Loyde, and likewise vpon a stone at the foote of the crosse, and so did I also, so the end that if the William did chauce to come thither, they might haue knowledg that wee had bene there. At eight in the afternoone the winde came to the North north west, wee set saile and turned out of the baie. The same night the winde came to the West, so that we lay North along the land.

*An Island bearing store of wood & water.*

The 23. day at five in the morning, the wind came to the Southwest, a sea booyd wee sawe a great number of Islands, to the number of sixe: a sea booyd of these Islands, there are many great ouersals, as great streames of tides: wee had Northeast and East northeast as the lande trends. At eight aforesaid the winde came to the Southeast with very much wind, raine and fogge, and very great store of ice a sea booyd: so we lay to the Southwest to attaine to one of the Islands to harbour vs if the weather did so extremely continue, and to take in our boate, thinking it were so to doe, and not to be her in such weather. About twelue of the clocke it became very calme vpon the sudden, and came by to the West North west, and North west by West, so then we cooke in our boate, and this done, there came downe so much wind, as we were not able to steere away it, with coyle and boines of each, we hald South with the land, for so the land did trend. This day all the afternoone we sailed vnder a great land of ice, we sailed betweene the land and it, being not able to crosse it. About twelue at night wee found the ice to stretch into the land, so that we could noe get cleare to the Eastward, so wee laid it to the shore, and there we found it cleare hard aboord the shore, and we found also a very faire Island which makes a very good harbour, and within are 12. fadoms.

*6. faire Islands.*

*This*

An Island to the East of Vaigats, 4. or 5. leagues.

This Island is to the Eastward of Vaigats, 4. or 5. leagues. This land of the maine doeth trend South-east, and South-east by East. It is a very faire coast, and even and plaine, and not full of mountains nor rockes: you haue but shallow water of 6. or 7. fadomes, about a league from the shore, all this morning we halled East South-east. This day we found the pole to be elevated 69 degrees, 14. minutes. About 12. a clocke wee were constrained to put into the ice to take some way to get to the Northwards of it, hoping to haue some cleare passage that way, but there was nothing but whole ice. About nine in the afternoon we had sight of the *William*, and when we sawe her, there was a great land of ice betweene her and vs, so that we could not come one to the other, but as we came neere to her, we sounded our trumpet and shot off two muskets, and she put out her flag upon her foretopmasse in token that she did see vs: all this time wee did shorten our sailes, and went with our fore saile and mainetop saile, seeking the best way through the broken ice, the making away the best that she could to follow vs, we put out our flagge to answer her againe with the like: thus wee continued all the afternoon till about 12. a clocke at night, and then wee moved our ship to a piece of ice to tary for the *William*.

The *William* and *Orange* were againe.

The 25. day about five in the morning, the *William* came to vs, being both glad of our meeting. The *William* had her sterne post broken, that the rudder did hang cleane besides the sterne, so that she could in no wise poore her helme, with all hands she did lighten her sterne, and trimme her head, and whē we had brought her forward all that we could, we brought a cable under her sterne, and with our capstaine did winde by her sterne, and so we made it as well as the place would give vs leaue, and in the ende we brought her to keere againe. We acknowledge this our meeting to be a great benefite of God for our mutuall comfort, and so gaue his maiestie thanks for it. All the night after weooke our rest being made fast vpon a piece of ice: the wind was at West North-west, but wee were so inclosed with ice that wee could not tell which way to passe. *William* had we haue had at will, but ice and fogge too much against our wills, if it had pleased the Lorde Gods chertise.

The 26. day the wind was at West North-west: we set saile to the Northwards, to seeke if we could finde any way cleare to passe to the Eastward, but the further wee went that way, the more and thicker was the ice, so that wee could goe no further. So about foure in the afternoon we were constrained to more vpon another piece of ice. I thinke we sailed in all a league this day, here we had 15. fadomes oafe, and this oafe is all the chanell ouer. All the same day after foure of the clocke, and all the night we taried there, being without all good hope, but rather in despaire. This day master *Juggman* did see land East North-east from vs, as hee did thinke, whether it were land or no, I cannot tell well, but it was very like land, but the fogges had many times hid it.

The 27. day the wind was at North-west.

The 27. day the wind was at North-west. This day at nine in the morning wee set saile to seeke the shore. Further into the ice we could not goe, and at seuen in the afternoon wee moved to a piece of ice, and the *William* with vs, here we had 14. fadomes oafe. At 3. in the afternoon we warpe from one ice to another. At 9. in the afternoon we moved againe to a piece of ice until the next day. All this night it did blow with much wind, being at West North-west, and at North-west and by West.

The current runneth with the wind.

The 28. day the wind came to the South-west, and South South-west: this day was a very faire day. At one in the afternoon master *Pet*, and master *Lackman* did confere together what they did agree to seeke to the land againe, and so to Vaigats, and there to confere further. At 3. in the afternoon we did warpe from one piece of ice to another, to get from thence if it were possible: here we were pieces of ice so great, that we could not see beyond them out of the toppes. Thus we warped until 9. in the afternoon, and then wee moved both our ships to a great and high piece of ice, until the next morning.

The nine and thientie day the wind came to the South-west, here set saile at five in the morning to seeke the shore, if it were possible, wee made many turns among the ice to find some way to the land, but the wind doeth the contrary way. This day by mistake we a piece of ice broke of our greene ship at two close noons, yet for all this wee turned to doe our best. The *William* being inclosed with ice, and perceiving that she did little good, ranke to all her sailes, and made her selfe fast to a piece of ice, and about foure in the afternoon she set saile to follow vs. *William* was so fast that she had taken some hurt, but she was well. At seuen aforesaid noone we took up all our sailes to tary for the *William*, and made our ship fast to a piece of ice: the *William* before she came to us tooke in all her sailes, and moved to another piece of ice, and thus we continued until the next morning.

The 30. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 31. day the wind was in the morning, we perceived that we were at the point of the ice, all this was done. Thus we were in the afternoon, we were at the point of the ice, we were at the point of the ice, we were at the point of the ice.

The first day we were at the point of the ice, about twelve leagues.

The 2. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The three day we were at the point of the ice, we were at the point of the ice, we were at the point of the ice.

The 4. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 5. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 6. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 7. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 8. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 9. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 10. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 11. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 12. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 13. day the wind was well with us, we sought our way to the Northward, and at 11. o'clock we came to a piece of ice, which cometh that we could doe.

The 30. day the wind was at South-east, and by South, and at 9. in the morning we set sail, and  
 lower would have done if William had bene by vs, but we did carrie for her to know whether all  
 was well with her: But as soone as we made sail, she did the like. All this day wee did our best  
 to make our way as the pee would give: vs some, sometime we lay South, sometime West, and  
 sometime East, and thus we continued unill eight at night, and then being calme, wee made our  
 shippes fall to a piece of pee, and went to supper. In the meane time the wind with a faire gentle  
 gale, came by the East, and East and by South, but there came downe a showre of raine  
 with it, which continued the space of one houre: Which being done, it became calme againe, so  
 that we could doe no good all that night, but to oke our rest unill the next day.

The 31. the wind being at South-west, wee set sail to turne to windward at thre a clocke  
 in the morning. In this turning wee did little good, for the current would not give vs leaue,  
 for as the wind is, so is the current. Wee did our best unill teane of the clocke, and then  
 perceiving that wee did no good, and being inclosed with pee, wee made our shippes fall to a piece  
 of pee. All this day the William lay still, and did as much good as we, that did labour all the fore-  
 none. Thus wee took our rest all the same day.

In the afternoon wee set sail the wind being at South and by East, wee lay to the West  
 ward, as South-west, and South-west, and by South, and sometime to the Westward as wee  
 might. Thus we continued unill nine at night, and then we could goe no further, for pee;  
 with the William were constrained to make our shippes fall to a piece of pee all the same night.  
 This day wee founde the pole elevated 29. degrees 20. minutes, and here wee had 17. fa-  
 thoms oze.

The first day of August was very calme in the morning, the wind being at West North-west. August.  
 About twelue the wind came to the West, and continued so all the same night with great  
 fogge.

The 2. day the wind was at South-west all day, with raine and fogge. All this day we were  
 inclosed with pee, so that we were forced to lie still. Here wee had 21. fathoms oze. At five in  
 the afternoon the wind was at West with very much soule weather, and so continued all the  
 same night.

The third day the wind was at West, and West by North, and West North-west, this day we  
 lay still inclosed with pee, the weather being darke with fogge: thus abiding the Lords leisure, we  
 continued w<sup>th</sup> patience, And sounding we found 21. fathoms.

The 4. day wee lay still inclosed with pee, the wind being at West North-west: this pee did  
 very day increase vpon vs, yet putting our trust in God, wee hoped to be deliuered out of it in  
 good time.

The fifth day all the morning, it rained with very much wind, being at South South-east  
 about 3. in the afternoon wee set sail, and presently it became calme for the space of one houre,  
 then the wind came to the North North-east, and here we had 33. fathoms: thus we made way a-  
 mong the pee South-west, and South-south-west, West, as we might finde our way for the space  
 of 3. houre when we met with a whole land of pee, so that we could goe no further: here we moa-  
 ned our ship to carrie for a further opening. Here wee found 45. fathoms oze, and all the night was  
 very darke with fogge.

The 6. day having no opening of the pee, wee lay still the wind being at West and West by  
 South: here we had 62. fathoms oze: all the same night the wind was at the West North-west.  
 The 7. day the wind was at West, and West and by North all day. And all this day we lay  
 still being inclosed with pee, that we could not stirre, labouring onely to defend the pee as it came  
 vpon vs: here we had 68. fathoms oze.

The 8. day was very faire & calme but foggie. This day towards night there was little wind  
 by the South South-west: then the pee began a little to open, and here we had 70. fathoms oze, all  
 the night was foggie.

The 9. day the wind was at North-west, and by West, all the afternoon we lay still because  
 of the pee, which did still inclose vs. This day wee founde the pole eleward 70. degrees 4. mi-  
 nutes, we had 63. fathoms oze: this night was a very faire night, but it frested: in the morning  
 we had much a doe to goe through the same: and wee were in doubt that if it should haue frested so  
 much the night following, we should hardly haue passed out of it. This night there was one starre  
 that appeared to vs.

70. degr. 4. min.

The appear-  
 ring of the  
 starres, signe  
 of winter.

The 10. day the wind was at East North-east with a very small gale. After with sail and  
 some waye was, though the pee 4 about five in the morning we set sail: sometime we lay  
 South-west, and sometime South, and sometime West, as wee might best finde the way.  
 About

About 3. in the afternoon the gale began to fresh; about 6. in the afternoon the winde was at North-east with fogge. Here we had 88. fathoms: we have faile all the same night, and it snowed very much.

The 11. day we were much troubled with yce, and by great force wee made our way through it, which wee thought a thing impossible, but extreme doerth cause men to doe much, and in the weaknesse of man Gods strength most appeareth. This day we had 95. fathoms. At three in the afternoon the winde came to the South-west, wee were forced to make our shippe fall to a piece of yce; for wee were inclosed with it, and carried the Logges leasure. This night we had 97. fathoms.

The 12. day the winde was at the South-east not very much but in a manner calme: at 11. of the clocke the winde came to the West South-west: all the day was very darke with snowe and fogge. At 6. in the afternoon we set sail the winde being at the North-northeast: all this night we bare away South-west, and South-south-west, as well and as neere as the yce would give us leaue: all this night we found the yce somewhat favourable to us, more then it was before, where upon we stood in good hope to get out of it.

The 13. day at 7. in the morning the winde was at the North-east, and North-east and by East: all this day we were much troubled with the yce, for with a blowe against a piece of yce, we brake the booke of our ancre, and many other great blowes we had against the yce, that it was manifest that the shippe was able to abide them: the side of our boate was broken with our shippe which did recule backe, the boate being betwixt a great piece of yce, and the shippe, and it perished the head of our rudder. This day was a very harde day with vs: at night we founde much broken yce, and all this night it blew very much winde, so that wee laye in drift with the yce, and our drift was South, for the winde was at North at this night, and we had great hope of snowe.

The 14. day in the morning wee made our shippe fall to a piece of yce, and let her vyne with it. In the meane time wee mended our boate and our keeage: all this day the winde continued North-easterly, and here wee had thescope and two fathoms. Thus we lay a drift all the same night.

The 15. day we set sail at 6. in the morning, the winde being at North-east. At 9. aforesnoone we entred into a cleare sea without yce, whereof wee were most glad, and not without great cause, and gaue God the praise. We had 19. fathoms water, and ranne in South-west all the morning until we came to 24. fathoms, and thence we halled West, till we came to 10. fathoms, and then we went North-west, for so the winde doerth trende: At 12. of the clocke we had sight of the lande, which wee might haue had sooner, but it was darke and foggie all the same day: when we had sight of the lande, wee were not passing three leagues from it. This day we had the pole eleuated 69. degrees 49. minutes. All day we ranne along the coast in 10. and 9. fathoms, peered lande. It is a very goodly coast and a bolde, and faire foundings off it, without lands or rocks.

The 16. day the winde was at East: this day wee were troubled againe with yce, but we made great shift with it: for we gotte betwixt the shoare and it. This day at the hie of the clocke wee were thwart of the South-east part of Vaigats, all along which part there was a great hope of yce, so that wee stood in doubt of passage, yet by much aboue wee got betwixt the shoare and it: about 6. in the afternoon was founde a great white beare upon a piece of yce: all this day in the afternoon it was darke with fogge. And all night we halled North and North by West, and sometime North and by East, for so doerth the land trend.

The 17. day in the morning we halled West, for so doerth the lande lye. The winde was at South-east, and it was very darke with fogge, and in raining along the shoare we set a ground, but God bee praised without hurt, for wee came presently off againe: The William came to an ancre to stay for vs, and sent some of their men to helpe vs, but before they came wee were departed, and as wee came to the William hee did loose our boates, and made saile, we went within some of the Islands, and halled West South-west.

A boate two of the clocke in the afternoon, we set our course South-west and by South: so we ranne South-west until twelue at night, that the winde came to the North North-east, and then we halled West.

The 18. day at 6. in the morning we had 16. fathoms redde sand: at 9. in the morning 17. fathoms, at 10. 14. fathoms, and we halled West North-west. At 12. a clocke the winde came to the East, and East by South, we halled West and by North all the same day: and night. At 6. in the afternoon we had 17. fathoms red sand.

69. deg. 49. min.

They are thwart as points West East.

Sands.

The Islands.

The 19. day at 12. of the 3. in the afternoon

The 20. day 30. fathoms blacke snow great at land ground, and so the night it was cald lye all Colgoyer it is meth North

The 21. day our shippe as manner by the helpe of it caused it to be late to set the thoms all within here more to the upon the laye it and 12. and 14. fathoms were a ground which we yce

The 22. day morning we saw the last the sight of thoms blacke of had thence and the same night follow

The 23. day being at East the shippe was by North and cald words, so that we East and we lay up till we came to 19. fathoms, the same night.

The 24. day at fathoms, then we the winde at North

The 25. at 4. a fathoms very much

The 26. day at West, and North

The 28. day at the South-west

The 29. day at 5. in the and the same night

The 30. day at boate on head we South-east, and a

The 31. day at we halled West

The 1. day of the same West South

The second day

one the winde was at  
the night, and it blowe

made our way through  
the doe much, and in the  
fathoms. At this time  
the our shippe fell to a  
This night wee had

inner calme: at 11. of  
the winde with in the  
cheast: all this night  
the pre would give us  
it was before, when

Northeast and by East  
piece of pee, we had  
that it was maner  
when with our shippe  
the shippe, and it pe  
at night wee founde  
wee laye in with with  
we had great store

and let her vyne with  
the winde com  
by a drift all the same

at 9. ayenone  
not without great  
Southwest all the  
came to 10. fathoms,  
the wee had sight of  
all the same way for  
This day wee had

cast in 10. and 9. fa  
windings off it, without  
the with pee, but wee  
five line of the clocke  
here was a great store  
the shoare and in  
e: all this day in the  
North by West, and

The winde was at  
wee fell a ground,  
William came to an  
came wee were with  
side faile, wee went

by South: so we  
North, and then we

the morning 13. the  
winde came to the  
night. At 6. in the

the

The 19. day the winde was at East Northeast: at 6. in the morning wee had 19. fathoms red  
land: at 12. of the clocke the winde blew North and North by East, we had 17. fathoms water: at  
3. in the afternoon 15.

The 20. day the winde was at Northeast, and North Northeast: at 7. in the morning wee had  
30. fathoms blacke eye: at the line of the clocke wee were upon the suddaine in shoale water, a  
mong great sands, and could finde no way out. By sounding and seeking about, wee came a  
ground, and so did the William, but we had no hurt, for the winde was off the shoare, and the same  
night it was calme: all night wee did our best, but we could not have her a fote. These shoales do  
lye off Colgoyue: it is very flat a great way off, and it doeth not high about 2. or 3. fote water,  
it bloweth Northeast, and South west.

Shoales off  
Colgoyue.

The 21. day the winde was at South west, and being very faire weather wee did lighten  
our shipps as much as was possible for us to doe, by reason of the place. The same high wa  
ter by the helpe of God wee got both a fote, and the winde being at the South west did helpe us,  
so it caused it to flowe the more water.

This day wee found the pole to be elevated 68. degrees 40. min. In the afternoon wee boath  
the safe to seeke way to gett out of these sands, our boate a head sounding, having 6. 7. and 8. fa  
thoms all within the sand which was without us. Wee bare to the Southward, and the William  
bore more to the Eastward, and night being at hande the winde came to the Southeast, where  
upon wee laye it to the Southward, lying North west, and South & by West, and ranne to 19.  
and 13. and 14. fathoms, & presently we had but 6. fathoms, which was off the sands head, which  
wee were a ground upon the day before. Then wee cast about to the Eastward for brece water,  
which wee presently had, as 10. 15. and 20. and so to 27. fathoms.

The 22. day at 8. in the morning, wee cast about to the Southward, and this day in the mor  
ning we saw the William under our lee as farre as wee could see her, and with a great fogge we  
lost the sight of her, and since wee have not seene her. Thus wee ranne till we came to thirtie fa  
thoms blacke eye, which wee had at the line of the clocke, and at thre in the afternoon wee  
had twentie and thre fathoms, and then wee ranne West North west, and West by North all the  
same night following.

They lost the  
William here,  
where the sea  
is hid.

The 23. day we had at 6. in the morning 27. fathoms, at 8. a clocke 28. fathoms: at 9. the winde  
being at East South east, wee halled West North west: this day wee had sight of the lande of  
Hugon. At the line of the clocke we had 32. fathoms sande. This day wee ranne West and  
by North, and came to five fathoms off the bay of Morzouets. Then wee laye it to the North  
west, so that wee lay North Northeast off. The winde after came to the North, and North by  
East, and wee lay East, and East by North, then wee laye it to the Westward againe: and thus we  
lay all we came to 40. fathoms, and then we went North west till we came to 14. fathoms, and so  
to 16. fathoms. Then wee cast about to the Eastward and lay East, and East by North all the  
same night.

The land of  
Hugon.

The bay of  
Morzouets.

The 24. day at 8. in the morning we had 32. fathoms. Wee ranne North west till we came to 11.  
fathoms, then wee lay to the Northward till 12. at night, and then wee came to 40. fathoms, then  
the winde at North east wee lay to the Westward, and halled North west along.

The 25. at 4. in the morning wee had 37. fathoms, wee ranne North west, the winde at North  
Northeast very much.

The 26. day we ran with the same winde, and found the pole to be elevated 70. deg. 40. min.

The 27. at 7. in the morning wee saw land, which wee made to be Keger, then wee halled North  
west and North by West to double the North Cape.

The 28. day at 3. in the morning wee ran North west, and so all day. At night the winde came to  
the South west, and wee ran North west all that night.

The 29. day wee put into a sound called Fane, and the towne is called Hungon: wee came to an  
ancher at 5. in the afternoon, at 25. fathoms very faire sand. This sound is very large and good,  
and the same night wee got water aboard.

The towne of  
Hungon.

The 30. day in the morning the winde at Northeast, and but little wee see faile, and with our  
boate on head wee got the sea about 12. of the clocke: the winde with a faire gale came to the East  
South east, and all this day and night wee ran West North west.

The 31. day at 12. of the clocke wee doubled the North Cape, the winde being at East South  
west, wee halled West all the same way, and at night wee ran West South west.

They double  
the North  
Cape in their  
returne.

The 1. day of September the winde was at Northeast with very much fogge: all this day wee  
ranne West South west, at 2. in the afternoon the winde came North  
West.

The second day at 3. in the morning wee doubled Fowlnefle, the winde was this day variable

at all parts of the Compass. In the afternoon we made but little way: at 6. a clocke the winde came to the South-west, and we went South-west. At 9. in the night there came downe some winde by the West South-west, that we were faine to lay it a hull, we hald it to Northward by the space of 2. hours, and then we layd her heauy with Southward, and at the break of day we saw land, which is very high, and is called by the men of the Countrey Fowlnesse. It is within full of small Islands, and without full of rocks very farre out, and within the rocks you haue faire sand at 20. fathoms.

The 3. day in the morning we bare with the southe aforesaid: Within it is but shoale water, 4. 5. and 7. fathoms, sandie grounds, the land is very high, and the Church that is seene is called He-like Kirke. It doeth high here not about 8. or 9. foute.

The 4. day was reasonable weather, the winde at South south-west.

The 5. 6. and 7. dayes very foule weather, with great and vehement blasts of rafine, and hepply was the shippe that was then in harbour.

The 8. day the winde was at West by North, and reasonable weather.

The 9. day at 12. of the clocke we set saile, and at 3. in the afternoon we cleared our selves of the land, and then we hald West South-west, with a good stiff gale all day and night. We found the pole eleuated 69. degrees 20. minutes.

The 11. day the winde was at North-east all the forenoone, the afternoon was calme, and all the night, and we found the pole eleuated 68. deg. 16. min.

The 12. day at 3. in the afternoon, we put into a sounde by Lowfoote, where it doeth flow South-west, and by South, and doeth high 7. or 8. foute water.

The 13. day much winde at West: wee had a ledge of rocks in the winde of vs, but the roae was reasonable good for all Southerly and Westery winde. Wee had the maine land in the winde of vs: this day was stormie with rafine.

The 14. day the winde was South, and South-west reasonable weather.

The 15. day was winde and rafine at West South-west.

The 16. day very foule weather, with rafine and fogge.

The 17. day at 3. of the clocke we were cleare of the lande, and wee halled South-west all the same night.

The 18. day we kept the same course, and found the pole eleuated, 66. deg. 30. min.

The 19. day the pole was eleuated to vs 64. deg. 30. min. Wee hald this day South by East, and so like wile all night.

The 20. day at 4. in the morning the winde was at East, at 6. after we had sight of land: this day the pole was eleuated to vs 63. deg. 30. min. the night was calme, and the winde variable upon all points of the Compass.

The 21. day the winde was at the South-east all the forenoone: all the after noone at the South south-west, and all the same night variable with rafine.

The 22. day the winde was at the South, all the after noone was calme, and so was all the night.

The 23. day at 4. of the clocke in p. afternoon we put into Norway, into a sounde called Rome-fall, where it floweth South South-east, and doeth high 8. foute water: this place is full of lowe Islands, and many good soundes without the high mountaine land. Here is great store of wood growing, as firs, birche, oke, and haseil: all this night the winde was at the South, very much winde, with rafine and fogge.

The 24. day was like unto it.

The 25. 26. and 27. we had very much winde with great and stormie blasts.

The 28. day in the morning the winde being at East North-east we set saile at 8. of the clocke, and halled out of the bay West South-west, and South-west, hauing a goodly gale until due of the clocke, and then the winde came to the South-east, and to the South with rafine, and fogge, and very much winde: at 6. of the clocke wee came into a very good roe, where wee did ride all the same night in good safetie.

The 29. day wee put into a good sounde, the winde by the South-west: at three in the afternoon there came downe very much winde by the South, and all night, with vehement blasts, and rafine.

The 30. day all day the winde was at West South-west. And in this sounde the pole is eleuated 63. deg. 10. min.

The first day of October the winde was at South with very much winde, & vehement blasts.

The 7. day wee set saile: for from the first of this moneth until this 7. day, wee had very foule weather

Fowlnesse.

Lowfoote.

The sounde of Romefall.

October.

weather, but spee  
very soone, and  
in after the break  
but God be thanke

The 7. day at  
when as the win  
found againe: a  
though our best  
and haile our sh  
(by the helpe of  
being for a win  
the 24. day, whic  
set saile. This  
South south-east  
found, where we  
leagues to the fo  
South-west.

The 12. day of  
the sounde where  
the sounde, we fo  
our ship between  
saile, & went to  
and South South-  
The next day

as farre out as  
moored our ship  
malls, and we di  
pole is eleuated

Thus we lay  
the morning, and

The 3. day at  
course. The 4. d  
we were able to

The 5. day w  
of our leake.

The 6. day ch  
The 8. day v

The 9. day w  
The 10. day

The 11. day  
burge: the san  
to the South an  
were constraine  
leake, which we  
South-east until

The 22. day  
ber, but the win  
led a sea bouy  
them. The n

The 24. day

The 25. day  
berie hope. Th

The 26. da

Ende, 380.



weather, but specially the fourth day when the winde was so great, that our cables brake with the very storme, and I do not thinke that it is possible that any more winde then that was should blowe: for after the breaking of our cable, we did vntue a league before our ancre's would take any hold: but God be thanked the storme began to slacke, otherwise we had bene in ill case.

The 7. day at night we came to an ancre vntill the next day, which was the 8. day of the moneth, when as the winde grew great againe, with raine, whereupon wee set saile and returned into the sound againe: and at our first comming to an ancre, presently there blew so much winde, that although our best ancre was out, yet the extremitie of the storme drove vs vpon a ledge of rocks, and so byruile our ship in such sort, that we were constrained to lighten her to saue her, & by this meanes (by the helpe of God) we got off our ship and stopped our leakes, and moored her in good safetie abiding for a winde. We rid from this day by reason of contrary winds, with fogge and raine vntill the 24. day, which day in the morning the winde came to the North-east, and at 8. of the clocke wee set saile. This sound is called Moore sound, where it higheth about 5. foute water, and floweth South-south-east. The next day being the 25. day wee put into a sounde which is called Vlear sound, where was a shippe of the king of Denmarke put into another sound there by, being two leagues to the southwards of vs, that came out of Island: the winde was contrary for vs at South-south-west.

The 12. day of November we set saile the winde being at the East South-east, and past through the sound where the kings ship did lie: which sound is called Slouresound. But as wee did open the sound, we found the winde at the South-west, so that we could doe no good, so that we moored our ship betweene 2. Islands vntill the 18. day, and then the weather being faire and calme, wee set saile, & went to sea hoping to finde a faire wind, but in the sea we found the wind at the south-west, and South-south-west, so that we were constrained to returne into the same sound.

The next day being the 19. the kings ship came out also, because the law vs put to sea, and came as farre out as we, and moored where we did moore afoze: And at our returne backe againe, wee moored our ship in an other sound called Scorpe sound, because the kings ship was without victuals, and we did not greatly desire her companie, although they desired ours. In this sound the pole is elevated 62. degr. 47. min.

Thus we lay still for a winde vntill the 1. of December, which day we set saile at 6. a clocke in the morning, and at 4. in the afternoone we layde it to the inwards.

The 3. day at three in the morning, there arose so much winde, that we could beare but our fore-camp. The 4. day was calme weather, so was the 5. but wee were leake, and it was as much as we were able to doe, to free our ship, the leake was so great, and yet we pumped euery halfe glasse.

The 5. day we brought a Bonnet vnder her forefoote basted with Decam, which did stop much of our leake.

The 6. day the winde was at South-east, the 7. day at South-south-east.

The 8. day was calme with litle winde North-erly.

The 9. day we had sighte of the coast of Scotland which was Bowfamnesse.

The 10. day we were open off the Frich,

The 11. day at 4. in the morning we were thwart of Barwike: at 6. wee were thwart of Barn-burgh: the same day at 10. at night we were shot as farre as Hollyfoote. Then the winde came to the South and South-east, so that we laye still vntill the next day in the morning, and then we were constrained to put vnto Timmouth. The same day at night we halled a ground to stoppe a leake, which we found to be in the skarre afoze. The winde continued by the South-east & South-south-east vntill the 20. day, and then we set saile about 12. at night, bearing along the coast.

The 22. day by reason of a South-east winde, we thought we should haue bene put into Hum-ber, but the wind came to the West, so that we halled South-east: and at 3. in the afternoone we halled a sea bouyn the sands, and had shoale water off Lymery and Owry, and were in 4. fathoms off them. The next day we had as we might to leake O:fordnesse.

The 24. day we came thwart of the Nase, about 8. in the morning.

The 25. day being the Natuikie of Christ, we came to an ancre betweene Din hauen, and Cal-berie hope. The same day we turned as high as Postber.

The 26. day we turned as high as Radiffe, and praised God for our safe returne. And thus I ende, 1580.

The 2. journal of M. Arthur Pet and M. Charles Lackman in  
their discoverie Northeastward in the yeere 1580. Written

ten by Nicholas Chancellor, which was in the aforesaid discoverie: with two barkes, the one called the William, the other the George.

The journal  
beginneth  
from Ward-  
house.



Do you know  
of the high  
Island.

Friday the 1. of July about 5. in the afternoon, the winde came to the North Northwest. About 7. a clocke in the afternoon we set saile from Wardhouse; our course was East and by South. And as we were wayting our ancrees preparing to depart, Nicholas Chancellor was sent by M. Pet aboard the William to M. Charles Lackman, to deliuer him a note in writing as followeth.

M. Lackman, M. Pet determineth to direct his course East and by South, if the winde will serue thereto: and if wee should chauce to loose companie, you shall heare of us at Vorousko Ostrou not farre off Vaygats: it is an high piked Island. If there be any Ruffes there you shall receiue a letter of them: if there bee none, then you shall finde a letter by you the highest part of the Southeast side thereof vnder a warle of heape of stones. The Lope velle is in these our affaires. At the roade of Wardhouse the last of June 1580. The Island of Vorousko standeth North Northeast of the Southwest part of Vaigats, and is foure or fise leagues distant from Vaigats.

The 2. day about 5. in the morning the winde came to the East, and East southeast, & we bare to the Shorewards, and about ten a clocke the winde came to Southsoutheast, & we bare to the Eastwards, sometime we lay East and by South, sometime East and East & by North. About 5. in the afternoon we bare with the William, she was willing to go with Keger. The cause was (as we did thinke) that she was out of her trimme, and sailed very ill, & therefore would mend her strage. Whereupon M. Pet, not willing himselfe to go into Keger, said to M. Lackman that he would goe East & by north to discover Willoughbies land, for that it was a parcel of our direction, & so would meete with him at Vorousko of Vaigats. And so we departed & set our course East Northeast, the winde being at Southeast. The 3. day we had the wind at Southeast. This day we found the pole eleuated 70. degrees, 46. min. The winde changed to South & by East. At 12. a clocke at night we founded and had no ground at 120. fathoms, we being 50. leagues frō Keger by our reckoning.

So called bes  
cause in his  
journal which  
was found in  
his ship after  
his death, was  
found mention  
that he had  
serue such a  
coast.

The 4. day all the morning was very calme. This day we found the pole to be eleuated 71. degrees, 31. min. At nine in the evening the winde came to the Northeast with a gentle gale: we haled along Southeast and by East.

The North  
land discoverie  
red.

The 5. day the wind Northnortheast, we haled East and East and by South. This day we did see land, but we could not make it perfit, the winde being so Northerly that we could not come neere to it. The 6. day about 2. in the afternoon the winde North Northwest, we haled East southeast with a faire gentle gale. This day we met with yce. About 6. in the afternoon it became calme, and we with saile and oares layed it to the Northeast, hoping that way to cleare our selues of the yce, and about 12. at night we gate cleare of it. We supposed it had bene yce of S. Nicholas bay, but it was not as we afterward found it.

Part of the  
North land  
againe disco-  
uered.

The 7. day we met with moze yce being the Easter part of the inner yce: we haled along the weather part thereof to finde ende of it East northeast. This day we saw land North from vs, being very desirous to haue had moze knowledge thereof, but extremitie of yce kept vs backe there frō contrary to our desire. We were enforced by the said yce, which we found to lye a long the said land to go through it with much trauaile, wherein we continued all the day and night following.

The 8. day the wind being at Northwest, we were troubled all the day with the aforesaid yce. At 5. in the morning we founded, & had 90. fathoms red eye: at 4. in the afternoon we founded againe and had as before. At 6. in the afternoon we gate cleare off the yce, with going South southeast, and Southeast, whereof we were very glad. Wee had sailed in the said yce 40. or 50. leagues as we esteeme it: for we had a fine winde, and bare all our sailes. Wee haled along Southeast and founded at 10. at night, and had 45. fathoms landie eye.

The 9. at 2. in the morning we founded and had 45. fathoms. There appeared to us a shadowe of land East Northeast, and so we ranne with it for the space of 2. houres, and then perceiuing that it was but a fogge we haled along Southeast. At 2. in the afternoon we founded and had 50. fathoms blacke eye. The same day our latitude was 70. degrees 3. min. At nine a clocke at night we founded againe, and had 50. fathoms blacke eye.

The 10. the wind at Northnorthwest, we haled East & by North. We did set this course for that

ten of the clocke  
but afterward  
fathoms blacke  
land, to make it  
the afternoon,  
was very calme  
to sound and  
the same night.

The 11. day

The 12. day  
Bore, so the win-  
but for all that  
furnished with  
and with sailes  
fathoms is Noua

The 13. in the  
with great store  
much the more for

The 14. day

strained to goe  
otherwise it had  
ye, and could not  
with it pleased  
by 12. of the clocke  
we founde the po

By the trying of  
led it to the Sou-  
gaine, and laye  
greatest part of  
we cleere of the

The 15. day, a  
to the Eastwards  
with a flattond  
23. fathoms sma-  
lpe.

Saturday the  
18. fathoms red  
sals, & at 10. of the  
way to cleare our  
Northwards: w  
in the afternoon  
fathoms blacke o  
night, we founde

Sunday the  
8. and 7. fathom  
sals, we had red  
with a shower an  
was in the Baye

Sunday the 1  
chore, where the  
Southeast. The  
rolles: it lieth of  
Southeast, and is  
from vs. The  
East and West,  
hale water betw  
calme: whereup  
with Vaigats, for

Lackman in

Writ.  
lis-

we came to the North  
from Wardhouse  
Pet about the Wil-  
ing as followeth,  
and by South, if  
ou shall heare of us  
there be any Ruses  
de a letter vpon the  
The Lord blesse vs  
Island of Vorousko  
due leagues distant

the East, & we bare to  
ere bare to the East-  
eth. About 5, in the  
cause was (as we  
incid her strage,  
that he would goe  
irection, & so would  
East North-east, the  
we found the poie  
clocke at night we  
yp our reckoning,  
be eleuated 71. de-  
a gentle gale: wee

This day we did see  
into nor come nere  
aled East southeast  
ie it became calme,  
re our selues of the  
of S. Nicholas bay,

ee haled along the  
North from vs, be-  
epte vs backe thre  
pe a long the said  
night following,  
the aforesaid yce,  
we solued againe  
South southeast,  
of 50. leagues as  
ng South-east and

ed to vs a shadowe  
en perceiving that  
ed and had 50. fa-  
e a clocke at night

This course for that  
at

ten of the clocke at afternoone, we had sight of land, which we thought to haue bene Morzouets: but afterward we found it to be Colgoeyue by the soundings: and then we sounded, and had 53. fathoms blacke oaze. Presently there fell a great fogge, wherefore we durst not beare with the land, to make it: and so we kepe an outwardly course, which braue vs to Noua Zembla. At five in the afternoon, we had sight of the land againe, and bare with it: after ward the wind dulled, and was very calme: we sounded and had 120. fathoms blacke oaze: we sent also our boate on land, to sound and proue the land, and we came with our shyppe within an Island, where wee roade all the same night.

The 11. day in the morning, we went into a Baye to ride, to prouide vs wood and water. The 12. day, the wind at Southeast, about 11. of the clocke, there came downe a great white Bear, to the water side, andooke the water of his owne accord. We chased him with our boate, but for all that we could doe, he gate to land, and scraped from vs. At 7. in the afternoon, we being furnished with wood and water, did set sail, for that we hoped the wind would come Westerly, and with failes and oares we gate to the sea: at the night it was calme with fogge. This land is insaid is Noua Zembla.

The 13. in the morning, the wind was very variable with fogge, and as it cleered by, we met with great store of yce, which shewed to vs at the first like land. It did put vs to great trouble, and much the more for the fogge: we continued in it all the day, and all the night following.

The 14. day in the morning, we were inclosed with the aforesaid yce, so that wee were constrained to goe out the same way that we came in: which fortun'd to vs by the prouidence of God, otherwise it had bene impossible. For when we were almost inclosed with mighty great landes of yce, and could not perrecaue any way out, being partly in despair of getting out, but there to perit: it pleased God to turne the wind, which made way through the yce, and caried vs cleere of it: by 12. of the clocke at noone, the wind came to the South, and South and by West. This day we founde the pole eleuated 70. degrees, 26. minutes. We laide it along the coaste North-west. By the lying of it wee found it to be Noua Zembla. About 2. of the clocke in the afternoon, wee laid it to the Southward, to double the yce, but we could not vpon that boyd: so we cast about againe, and laye West along vnder the yce. About seuen in the afternoon, wee gate about the greatest part of the said yce, and at 11. at night, we brought the yce South-east of vs, and so weere we cleere of the trouble of it.

The 15. day, about thre in the morning, the wind South South-west, we cast about, and lay to the Eastwards: as we lay to Southeast, the wind did wester, so that we lay South Southeast, with a ston'd heare, and so we ranne all the day. About eight in the evening, we sounde, and had 23. fathoms small sand. At one at night we sounde againe, and had 29. fathoms sande, as before.

Saturday the 16. at thre in the morning, we haled along East Southeast, where we founde 18. fathoms red sand: then we haled along North-east. In these soundings wee had many ouer falls, & at 10. of the clocke before noone, yce which was very great, so that we could not tel which way to cleere our selues thereof. The wind came to the South Southeast, so that we laye to the Northwards: we thought that way to cleere our selues of it, but we met with more yce. About 6. in the afternoon, the wind came East, then we lay to the Southwards: we sounde and had 30. fathoms blacke oaze. This day we found the pole eleuated 69. degrees, 40. minutes. At 12. at night, we sounde, and had 42. fathoms red sand.

Sunday the 17. at thre in the morning, we had 12. fathoms, and at 9. in the morning, we had 8. and 7. fathoms. All this day we ranne South and South, and by West. At this depth aforesaid, we had red sand. All this way we had but sholled water. At 8. in the afternoon, the winde with a howler and thunder, came to the South-west, and then we ranne East Southeast. All this was in the Baye of Pechora.

Sunday the 18. at 7. in the morning, we had sight of the head land of the North-east side of Pechora, where we found 2. Islands, the West side of them lieth North North-west, and South Southeast. There is a long point of lande on the Easter side, whereupon standeth an heape of rocks: it lieth off the West side South-west, and North-east, and of the Easter side it fallerth South Southeast, and is a great Baye, wherein we sawe no land, sauing Vaigats, which lay North-east from vs. The North-east point of the said headland, and the Souther point of the Island, lie due East and West, and is not past a mile distant from the other. And there are two fathoms and an halfe water betweene them. And when we had gotten past the said Islands, within Vaigats it was calme: whereupon we ankered in 8. or 9. fathoms water. The Masters mind was much to goe with Vaigats, for that we sawe no land to the Southwards, and had bene much troubled with yce, and

Colgoeyue Island.

Noua Zembla.

Our men are rruet at Noua Zembla.

A great white Bear.

Wood and water taken vpon Noua Zembla.

Ice.

The Bay of Pechora.

Vaigats Island.

And.

*They arrive at Vaigats.*

on Noua Zembla side.

The 19. day at two in the morning, we set saile, and came South, and South south-west all the same day, in 8. 7. 6. fathoms. This was the South part of Vaigats. This part of the land is eith South and North. At 4. in the afternoon, we found shoale water, sometime 4. fathoms, sometime 3. and 2. and one and a halfe, and then ankered, and sent our boate away to sound, and all to lee wards, we had but 4. and 3. foute: there was not water enough for our boate, betwene Vaigats, and the other side: and finding no more water, there was no other way for vs, but to goe backe againe as we came in. And hauing the wind at north-west, at 12. of the clocke at night, we set saile, and turned out. The South side of Vaigats hath two Islands, which are very shoale. The South side of Vaigats is a very faire and a Greene land.

*The South side of Vaigats a faire land.*

The 20. day, we plyed to the Northwards, and got deeper water, at 6. and 7. fathoms.

The 21. day, the wind north-west, we turned about the coast north, and north north-west, and had 8. 9. and 10. fathoms.

Friday the 22. at a South sunne, we ankered in a Baye of the West side of Vaigats, betwene two Islands, and there furnished our selues with wood and water, supposing it had bene Vorskoo Ostroue, and here sent for our consoyer, according to appoitment, where wee found a goodly harbour, with Russes crosses at eche side, and many Islands scant to be numbred, with faire bates, to the northwards: and at a north-west sunne we waied, and turned out, and by a north north-east sunne we doubled the Westmost land, and found the land to trend much to the Eastward, where we found many faire Islands, and many ouer falls in the offing (or putting off.) Note, that wee went within none of the Islands.

*Note.*

Saturday the 23. we had the wind at south-west, with thicke weather, which after wee cleered by to the south-east very much wind and thicke: wherupon we cast about to the Westwards, meaning to seale the land, but we could not, for that it was much wind, and a growen Sea. So we were put off againe, till we were among the yce, which forced vs to cast about againe, and afterward we had the wind larged to the West South-west, and we had faire weather, and small water: then we scoured our boate, which we to wed 5. baies before. Then it increased presently a great and extreme gale of wind to the north-west: so we tooke in our maine saile, and went with our foresaile, and about a north north-west sunne, I suppose we were thwart the south-east end of Vaigats, hauing a great land of yce to the sea boord of vs, which also afterward did growe on head of vs, and so troubled vs, that it caused vs to piye to the shoare, where we thought we sawe an Island, which chanced to be a faire Island, lying halfe a mile from the shoare, and a mile in length, and halfe a mile ouer. To the north-west of it lieth a point a mile off, and betwene them a Baye, and to the south-east, thre leagues or netherly as it were a faire Cape like to beache the maine, isauen and trendeth Southeast and North-west. There goeth a good riuie betwene the Island and the maine.

*A faire Cape. A good riuie.*

Sunday the 24. we had the elevation of the pole at 69. degrees, 4. minutes. At a West and by South sunne, we passed by a great arme, or a baye, which had two head lands: and being ouer against it, foure leagues from the shoare, wee sounded, and had 10. fathoms, and oxie sande: at a north-west and by north sunne, we had sight of the William. All this day we bare along the shoare, being continually among the yce: and at a north and by West sunne, we bare north and by East, to the sea wards, seeking to be cleere of the yce. After that, we had sight of the William, we bare off to the sea wards, meaning to cleere our selues of the yce: and for that the yce grew thicker, wee tooke in our sailes, at a north-east sunne.

*A great Baye with two head lands.*

Monday the 25. we ankered with our grapnell vpon a peece of yce, to tary for the William, to speake with her, fearing that we should be inclosed, and not able to come together, to speake one with another. We are as yett extreme, from the south-east part of the aforesaid Cape, which we esteeme like beache, to the south-east part of the riuier of Baye, which wee passed the 24. daye, 25. leagues, and from the maine 6. or 7. leagues, where we continued all the day and night, to mend the Williams false sterne posse, which was broken with the yce, the foure and twentieth day.

Tuesday the 26. we continued at the aforesaid yce, till a South-west and by South sunne, and went north and by East, to seeke to cleere vs of the yce, being enuironed there with the wind being West north-west, and sailed 4. miles, and then had no way: so we came to anker at a peece of yce, at a West and by South sunne.

Wednesday the 27. we put off from the yce, where wee roade at a South-east and by East sunne, and sailed thre or foure bowes to the Southwards towards the lande, and then roade at an Island againe, till we had dined, and after wee sailed along the yce, to the landward, till a North-west Sunne,

same, and then they had there all the

They returned together hardy to the returne of this our ship, their deterrment was the generall Nicholas Chanc summerable quantity of the last gathered vpon the other we finde that will be it to water furthermost land, the last voyage, get the maine Deuily considered, get some cleere, to

Thursday the name full deterrment one peece of yce to yce to yce, till nine Friday the 29. shore, if we might in the afternoon, we had little good, so we continued till 7. in the afternoon, am: the perremit better from vs.

Saturday the saile, and would so they were, because they we continued went South, some

ing caline, we mended South, whereto the current: neuer got nothing, and a ham woode still, a by South, and for to farther to the of the pole was 6

The first day

Friday the 2. the we had the coasts not and continued at

The third day we had the coasts not and continued at

outh southweſt all  
4. ſachons, ſome  
to ſound, and all to  
ate, betwene Vai-  
s for vs, but to goe  
locke at night, wee  
re very ſhore. The

7. ſachons,  
y northweſt, and had  
V Vaigars, betwene  
it had bene Vorou-  
wee found a goodly  
with faire baies,  
by a north northweſt  
the Caſtward, where  
Note, that wee

which after ward cleve  
to the Weſt ward,  
groven Sea, So  
dout againe, and af-  
thered, and ſmall too-  
creaſed preſently a  
title, and went with  
the ſoutheaſt ende of  
did grove on bea  
the ſoutheaſt ende of  
nd a mile in length,  
ocene them a Baye,  
the maine, is to  
eene the Iſland and

s. At a Weſt end by  
: and being over  
and oazie ſande: at a  
re along the ſhoare,  
y north and by Caſt,  
William, we bare off  
grewe thicke, wee

for the William, to  
ether, to ſpeake one  
Cape, which we e-  
d the 24. daie, 25.  
and night, to mend  
pure and cwentid

South ſume, and  
with, the wind being  
er at a peece of yce,

and by Caſt ſound,  
then roade at an I-  
ed, till a Northweſt  
ſume,

ſume, and then the fogge came upon vs, whereby we could goe no further that night: ſo we an-  
kered there all that night. It did ſnowe all that night, and blew much wind at Weſt Northweſt.

*Fogge-  
ſnowe.*

This evening, Maſter Iackman, and George Sparrowe, came aboard the George, to conferre  
together with vs, where they determined concerning our matters in hande, for the proceeding of  
the George  
the ſhipe  
returne of this our voyage: where Maſter Pet, and Maſter Iackman both, were very willing in  
their determination, to doe for the beſt advantage, and profit of the company. This to conclude  
was the generall voice of Maſter Pet, Maſter Iackman, Hugh Smith, George Sparrowe, and me-  
Nicholas Chanceler. Firſt we laid beſoye our eyes, the cauſe of our let preſent, which was the in-  
numerable quantitie of yce, with the hugeues thereof: and not onely that, but alſo the unlike diſ-  
poſing of the ſaid yce, the ſummer being ſo farre ſpent, & further the ſnowe falling with the froſt  
gathered upon the ſame, is an augmenter unto the yce, and no diminither unto the ſame. And fur-  
ther we finde that no current runneth here, to be a diſperſer of the ſaid yce, and no ſea goeth here to  
with draw it to water. We have had in the meane time very faire windes, ſufficient to have paſſed the  
harthermoſt land, extending North, according to the eſtimate of thoſe that gave vs inſtructions of  
this ſaid voyage. This alſo we finde by prooff of traull, that the farther we runne of to the ſea, to  
get the maine Ocean, the theicker we finde the yce, and ſmall hope of a cleere ſea. All theſe things  
well conſidered, our determination is, to ſeeke by all meanes to get to the ſhoare, hoping there to  
get ſome cleere, to get to Vaigars, and there to conferre further, as time and place ſhall give occa-  
ſion.

*They reſolve  
to returne.*

Thursday the 28. at noone, all we aforeſaid, meeting together aboard the George, agreed and  
made ſull determination of the premises aforeſaid: and at 3. in the afternoone, we warped from  
one peece of yce to another, to get from them, if it were poſſible: wee continued in warping from  
yce to yce, till nine at night, then we moied both our barkes to a great peece of yce, all that night.

Friday the 29. the wind at Southweſt, at ſixe in the morning, wee ſet ſaile to ſlpe into the  
ſhoare, if we might poſſible attaine thereto: we made many a turne, but to ſmall purpoſe. At two  
in the afternoone, by miſfortune, hitting a great peece of yce, we brake off our grepe before: yet ne-  
vertheleſſe we did our endeavour in turning. The William encomped with yce, and peſtered, do-  
ing little good, tooke in al her ſailes, and made ſaile to a peece of yce: but with the percreaming that  
we continued till turning by and done, about 4. in the afternoone did ſet ſaile to followe vs. At  
7. in the afternoone, we tooke in our ſailes, and made ſaile to a peece of yce, to tarry for the Willi-  
am: the percreaming that he ſtooke ſaile, did the like, and made ſaile to a peece of yce, a league and  
better from vs.

Saturday the 30. the wind being at Southeaſt, and by South, at a Southeaſt ſtume, we ſet  
ſaile, and would ſooner have done, but that we tarried for the William, to have knowen in what ſtate  
they were, becauſe they came not to vs over night: but they moied not, till they ſawe vs begin  
that we continued all the day, ſeeking our beſt way, as the yce would permit vs: ſometime we  
went South, ſometime Caſt, ſometime Weſt, continuing thus till eight at night, the wind war-  
ping ſaile, we moied to a peece of yce, and there ſtaied till the next day.

*Current.*

The 31. at thye in the morning, we ſet ſaile, the wind being Southweſt, to turne to withde-  
wards, wherein we did little good: for the current was againſt vs: for as the wind is, ſo ſetteth  
the current: nevertheleſſe we did our beſt, unill 10. of the clocke, and then percreaming that wee  
got nothing, and alſo being incloſed with yce, we made ſaile to a peece of yce. All this day the Wil-  
ham ſtoode ſtill, and did as much good as we that about on all the forenoone. The wind comming  
to the South and by Caſt, in the afternoone we ſet ſaile, and lay Southweſt, and Southweſt and  
by South, and ſometime to the Weſt ward, as we might, till nine at night, and then could paſſe  
no farther for the yce: ſo we and the William made ſaile to a peece of yce. This day the elevation  
of the pole was 69. degrees, 20. minutes. We had 87. ſachons water, and oazie.

August.

The firſt day, the wind being ſouthweſt, about 12. the wind came to the Weſt, with a great  
fogge.

The 2. the wind at Southweſt, with raine and fogge all day, wee were incloſed to with yce,  
that we could not ſtirre. In the afternoone the wind came to the Weſt, with much ſoule weather,  
and continued all night.

The third day, the wind at Weſt, and Weſt and by North, and Weſt Northweſt, all the day  
with fogge: we continued all day and all night incloſed in the yce, thus adding the Lord  
ſupper, beſeeching him to ſtrengthen vs with patience and faith in him. Here we had 21. ſachons.  
The

The 4. day, we continued inclosed with yce, which increased more and more upon vs.

The 5. day, all the morning raine, with much wind, at South and South south east, and South east. The said wind a little separating the yce, made vs some way: at a South west stume we set sail, and suddenly it became calme for the space of an houre: then the winde came to the North north east: we made way through the yce, as we could finde passage betwene them for the space of three houre: then we met with an whole land of yce, that wee could passe no further for it: so we made our ships fast to it, and roade by it all the night, which was very darke with fogge.

The 6. we lay still all the day and night, inclosed with yce.

The 7. we continued still so inclosed with yce, that wee could not stirre, but defend the yce from the ships side, as it came grating upon vs.

The 8. day, very faire and calme, but a fogge towards night: the winde came to the South southeast a pretty gale, which did a little cause the yce to open: all the night was fogge. Here we had 70. fathoms water.

The 9. the wind North west and by West, and all the afternoone West south west: wee laye still, for that we were still inclosed with yce: the elevation of the pole was 70. degrees, 4. minutes. Wee founde and had 68. fathoms oaze. It did freeze so hard in the night, that in the morning wee had much adoe to passe through it. If we had continued there, and it had frozen the next night, wee should hardly have gotten out of it.

The 10. day, about 5. in the morning, wee set sail, the winde at East north east, a very small gale, with our boate a head to wing vs, and breaking the yce with their oares, which had frozen the night before. Sometime we lay South west, sometime West, as we might best finde way. About 6. in the afternoone, the wind came to North east with fogge, yet we bare sail all the night. Here we founde, and had 88. fathoms. There fell much snow in the night.

The 11. day, we were much troubled with yce, so that wee were constrained to beare sorely through it, in such sort, that it may be thought impossible, for such small barkes to passe it, but by temeritie cansteth men to doe much. About noone we founde, and had 95. fathoms. At three in the afternoone, the wind came to the South west, and we being inclosed with much yce, were constrained to take in all our sailes, and to ride by a peece of yce. The 12. in the morning, the wind southeast, in manner calme. At 2. in the afternoone, the wind at South south west: all the day darke with fogge and snow. At 6. in the afternoone, the winde being north east, we set sail, and went all night South west, and South south west, as neere as the yce would giue vs leaue: wee found the yce more favourable to vs then we did before, hoping to get cleere of it.

The 13. the wind at north east, & north east and by east. At 7. in the morning wee had an anker stroke, being upon the bowe of our ship, with a blow which we had against a peece of yce. All this day we were very much troubled with yce, & had so many great blowes against them, that it was marvell that the ship was able to abide them: also the ship giuing backe, bare the boate to a peece of yce, & brake her side, the boate being chwart her sterne, & with the same blowe perished the head of our rudder. This was a very hard day with vs. At night we came among much broken yce, and the wind did blowe very much at north, which caused the yce to diste: wee draue with it, for our drift was South. All the night it did snowe very much. The 14. day, in the morning, we made our ship fast to a peece of yce, & did diste with it, the wind being north by. In the meane time we mended our boate, and the head of our rudder, so we continued all the day and night in drift.

The 15. day, the wind at north east, we set sail at 6. in the morning, bearing through the yce, at 9. at night, we entred into a cleere sea, at which sight our hearts did greatly reioyce, as the boat which was escaped out of the cage, wherein she was kept long as prisoner. At this time we founde, & had 19. fathoms. We ran in South west at 11. in the morning, at 1. in the afternoon, wee had 10. fathoms: then we came to 10. fathoms: then we were north west, for so the land tenderly. At noone we had sight of the land, being within three leagues of it: we might have seen it sooner, if the fogge had not bene. This day we had the pole eleuate 69. degrees, 19. minutes: we kept along the coast in 10. & 9. fathoms. The shore along is even & faire sounding, & it without sholdes of sands 70. fathoms.

The 16. day, the wind East, we were troubled againe with yce, but we made great drift with it: for we gate betwene the boate and it. At noone we were chwart the south part of Vaigat, where wee founde gre at those of yce all along it, which made vs doubt of passage through it: yet with much trouble wee gate betwene the boate and it. All the afternoone was a fogge. At 6. of the clocke, we found a great white Beare upon a peece of yce. At the night wee had North, and north and by East, and sometimes East, for so doeth the land creepe. The 17. day, the winde South east in the morning, wee sailed along West, for so the land doeth runne, it being darke with fogge, and we running too neere the shore, our shippe was on ground: but, God be praised,

Frost.

Snowe.

Snowe.

A North North west.

No cleere sea.

A white beare.

we gate no way  
and seeing  
her desired for  
the William,  
there some of  
" came not to  
noone, we set  
the wind came

The 18. day,  
the wind came  
the William  
the 19. day,  
the wind came  
fathoms.

The 20. day,  
we were upon  
cunning by & do  
the William  
ankers, ropes, a  
we had, and laid  
we get her on the

The 21. day,  
the wind came  
eleuate 68. de  
cleere our selues  
best water: in  
hous, and the V  
call we lay found  
came to the fact  
we had about  
fathoms.

The 22. in the  
the sight of the V  
light of her, and  
we had West m

The 23. day,  
at Vgor, and at  
running this cou  
north east off: the  
with the Westward  
by north all the

The 24. day,  
the northwards,  
east and we lay in

The 25. day,  
west at 4. in the

The 26. day,  
pole eleuate 70.

The 27. day,  
being East, we  
Cape.

The 28. at the  
the night follow  
The 29. at 5. in  
downe by it is cal  
fresh water, which  
The 30. day in

... upon vs.  
... south, and south  
... north (name we let  
... came to the ship  
... them for the space  
... no further: so  
... the wind fogge.

... defend the yre from  
... came to the South  
... was fogge. Here we

... South-west: wee laye  
... 0. degrees, 4. minutes  
... in the morning wee  
... the next night, wee

... North-east, a very small  
... which had frozen the  
... west side way. About  
... all the night. Here

... ned to beare so greatly  
... as to passe it, but ex  
... thoms. At three in the  
... ch yre, weere contrair  
... yning, the wind south  
... : all the day wee  
... head, we let saile, and  
... to give vs leaue: wee  
... of it.

... ng weake an mber  
... yere of yre. All this  
... inst them, that it was  
... the boate to a yere  
... ow perished the head  
... much broken yre, and  
... yraue with it, for our  
... e morning, we made  
... in the meane time we  
... night in yre.

... ing through the yre, &  
... yre to yre, as the bird  
... his time wee founde,  
... points: wee haled  
... endeth. At noone wee  
... sooner, if the fogge  
... pt along the coast in  
... of sands of rocks.

... made great shift, with  
... uth part of Vaigars,  
... sage though it: yre  
... was a fogge. At 6. of  
... we haled North, and  
... e 27. day, the yre  
... npe, it being dark  
... but, God be praesed,  
... we

we gate no hurt: for it being flood, we came off againe presently. The William being on head of us, and seeing vs strike our sailes, did anchor by Vorousko Ostroue to stay for vs, and sent some of her men to helpe vs, but we were under saile before they came nere vs: and when we came to the William, weooke in our boate, and so we the William: then we made saile, and went betwene some of the Islands: we haled West south-west, so we pass'd Vaigars, and the spasters came not together to conferre, as they had appointed the 28. day of July. About two in the afternoon, we set our course south-west, and by south, and south-west, and ran so, till 12. at night, then the wind came to north north-east, and we haled West.

The 18. day, at five in the morning, wee founde, and had 16. fathoms red sande. At nine wee founde, and had 14. and 10. fathoms: we haled West north-west. At 12. the wind came to the Eastward East and by South: we haled West and by North all the day and night following. At five in the evening, wee founde, and had 17. fathoms sand.

The 19. day, the wind at East north-east, at five in the morning, wee founde, and had 19. fathoms red sand, the wind north and by East. At three in the afternoon wee founde, and had 15. fathoms.

The 20. day, at 7. in the morning, wee founde, and had three fathoms blacke oaze. About noone we were upon the sudden in shoale water among sandes, which the skwart of Colgoyue: and running by & do bene, seeking to gett cleere of them, continually sounding, we came on ground, and the William also which was a league from vs. In the night, it being calme, wee laid all our cables, anchors, ropes, and such like, upon the sand in the water, and made a raft, with such provision as we had, and laid thereon such things as lay uppermost in our shippe that it would beare, but could not gett her on shore that night.

The 21. day, at an high water, we gate off, and the William also, the wind being at south-west, raised the water to be the higher, which was a great helpe to vs. This day wee found the pole to be elevated 68. degrees 40. minutes. In the afternoon the William and wee did set saile, seeking to cleere our selues of the said holmes, both our boates being on head of vs, sounding to seeke for the deeper water: wee gat then 6. 7. and 8. fathoms, the winds being without but wee bare to the southward, and the William bare more to the Eastward. The night being at hand, and the wind south-east, we lay south-west, and south and by West, and came to 10. and 12. fathoms, and suddenly wee came to five fathoms, which was the head of the land, whereupon we were before on ground: then wee set cast about to the eastward, for deeper water, and gate in short time 16. and 20. and 23. fathoms.

The 22. in the morning, we cast about, and went south-west and by south. This morning wee had sight of the William, under our lee, as farre as we could see her, and in a great fogge wee lost sight of her, and since we haue not seen her. Thus we continue still there in the afternoon, then we haled West north-west, and West and by north, all the night following.

The 23. day, at five in the morning, wee had 27. fathoms: afterwards wee had sight of the coast of Vgon, and at 7. in the afternoon, the wind came to the East, and wee laye West and by north: running this course, wee came to three fathoms, about the Bay of Morzouetz, then wee lay north north-east off: then the wind came north, and wee lay East, and East and by north, and sometimes to the Westward againe, untill wee came to 40. fathoms. Afterwards wee lay East and East and by north, all the same night.

The 24. day, we continued our course north-west, till wee came to 11. fathoms, then wee laye to the northward, untill midnight, and then wee came to 40. fathoms, then the wind came to the north-east, and wee lay north-west along.

The 25. day, the wind being north north-east a very blisse gale, wee continued our course north-west, till 4. in the morning wee founde, and had 36. fathoms.

The 26. day, the wind at north-east, we continued our course north-west. This day wee founde the pole elevated 70. degrees 40. minutes.

The 27. day, at 7. in the morning, wee had sight of land, which wee made to be Keger, the same being East, we haled north and by West, and North north-west, and North, to double the North Cape.

The 28. at three in the morning, wee set our course north-west, and ranne so all the day, and all the night following. The same night the wind came to the South-west.

The 29. at 5. in the afternoon, the wind being at West, wee did put into a certaine sound, the wind by it is called Vngon, and anchored in 25. fathoms water. The same night wee gate in shallow water, which wee had nere of.

The 30. day in the morning, the wind came to the North-east little wind: wee set saile, and went our

"This was  
Arthur's  
Island."

51. deg. 40. mi.

Were they lost  
sight of the  
William,  
to beere the yre as  
cast away.

Vngon.  
The bay of  
Morzouetz.

70. deg. 40. mi.

is called  
Vngon.



our boate on head, we gate to the sea. In the afternoon the wind came to the East, and we came West north west.

The North Cape doubled.

The 31. day, the wind at East south east, at noon, we doubled the North Cape, and had a long West all the day following, and at night we went West south west.

September.

The first day, the wind at North east, with thicke fogge, we continued our course West south west.

The second day, at three in the morning, we doubled Fowlnes. All this day the wind being variable, we did little good. In the evening the wind came to South west, and we bare West north west, and north west. And betwene nine and ten of the clocke in the night, the winde came to the West, a very stiff gale, thac we were faine to lay it on hull to the north wards, for the space of two houres. After we laid her head to the southwards, and at break of day, we had sight of South Fowlnes.

The third day, in the morning, we bare with the foresaid land, and harbored our selues among the lowe Islands in 4. or 5. fathoms water.

The fourth day, the wind at South south west, reasonable weather.

The 5. 6. and 7. daies very soule weather, with vehement blastes, and such raine, that we thought our selues blest to be in harbour.

The eight day reasonable weather, the wind being West and by North.

The ninth day, the wind at East, at twelve of the clocke, we set saile, and by three in the afternoon we cleared our selues of the land, and went West South west, and so continued all the night.

The tenth day, the wind at East north east, a faire gale, we continued our course aforesaid. This day we found the pole elevated 69. degrees, 20. minuts.

The 11. day, the wind north east in the afternoon, and all the night calme. This day we found the pole elevated 68. degrees, 16. minuts.

The 12. day, the wind South south west, and in the afternoon South, and to the Eastwards. At three in the afternoon, we did put into an harbour to the southwards of Lawestaste, where we rode, having a ledge of rockes to windward of us, and continued there till the 17. day, having the weather for the most part very tempestuous, with great thunders, the winde continuing all the time betwene the South and the West.

The 17. day at noon, the winde came to the North east, and at two in the afternoon, we set saile, and bare along south west, all the same night.

The 18. day, we went south south west, the wind being north north east. This day the pole was elevated 66. degrees, 30. minuts.

The 19. day, the wind at East north east. This day the pole was elevated 64. degrees, 50. minuts. At 6. in the afternoon, the wind came to the East south east, we went South and by East all the same night.

The 20. day, in the morning, the wind came to the East. We founde the pole elevated 63. degrees, 30. minuts, all the night was calme.

The 21. day, all the forenoon, the wind at south east, and in the afternoon it came to the south south west, and all the night variable with wind.

The 22. in the morning, the wind South, all the afternoon and night following, calme.

Kamsdall.

The 23. day, the wind South, at four in the afternoon, we put into a sound called Kamsdall, where we found many lowe Islands, and good sounds, without the high land. That was the first place that we sawe any wood growe on upon this coast. We continued in the said harbour, till the 28. day, the weather being very stormie and raine.

Where wood was first on the coast.

The 28. in the morning, we set saile, the wind being East north east, and bared along south west. In the afternoon the wind came to the South, then we cast about, and by five of the clocke got to harbour, and rode under an Island all night.

The 29. day, we shifted from the aforesaid Island, into a better place, betwene two Islands, where we rode more quietly.

Thus by reason of contrary windes, we were forced to stay longer upon the coast of Norway, then we wished, so that it was the 25. day of December, before we could get home into the mouth of the Thames.

dimidium itine  
contiuu ingere  
hinc medium  
existimo, in inti  
liber merces ex  
gliam deportar  
nabar ab Impe  
vero cum illius  
montorium qu  
cominodissimu  
portunitate, mi  
degari possiet.  
Plinio tantum,  
beco. Polum eti  
bus didici: circ  
oenem existimo  
cidentem tentat  
propius acceder  
quo ex omni pa  
netis virtute im  
prou quis vel or  
tis, & Mundi du  
hanc Magnetis  
In hac re si non  
uenire & castiga  
negotio, a gelu p  
contingat, hoc e  
fluminibus que  
renissimz Regi  
gratam, imo gra  
chardi fluminun  
ria Germanica e  
liarijs Germani  
Valde optare  
portu, quem ves  
mare in hoc dist  
pro ratione est  
& iterum sex in  
parum viles hin  
adfinum Merosi  
ex quadam Tab  
Galli description  
oblata: Non dub  
ea quam proxim  
medium sui exte  
deprauatae latitu  
Bulcoducensis it  
erip: ab alio mu  
ab amico repetij  
de plano Carpin



*A letter of Gerardus Mercator, written to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford, touching the intended discoverie of the Northeatt passage. Anno 1580.*

**L**icet a tua (vir humanissime) 19. Junij demum mihi reddita fuerunt: vehementer dolui visis illis tantam, non modo temporis, sed multo magis tempestuæ instructionis iacturam factam esse. Optassem, Arthurum Per de quibusdam non leuibus ante suum discesum præmonitum fuisse. Expeditissima sane per Orientem in Cathaium est nauigatio: & sæpe miratus sum, eam feliciter inchoaram, desertam fuisse, velis in Occidentem translatis, postquam plus quam dimidium itineris vestri iam notum haberent. Nam post Insulam Vaigats, & Noua Zembla continuò ingens sequitur sinus, quem ab ortu Tabin immane promontorium complectitur. In hunc medietate maxima illabuntur flumina, quæ vniuersam Regionem Sericam perluentia, utque existimo, in intima continentis vsq; magnis nauigijs peruia, facillimam rationem exhibent qualibet merces ex Cataio, Mangi, Mien, cæterisque circumfusis regnis contrahendi, atque in Angliam deportandi. Cæterum cum non temere eam nauigationem intermissam crederem, opinabar ab Imperatore Rusorum & Moscouiæ obstaculum aliquod interiectum fuisse: quod si verò cum illius gratia vterior illac nauigatio detur, suaderet profecto non primum Tabin promontorium querere, atque explorare, sed sinum hunc atque flumina, in ijsq; portum aliquem commodissimum, stationemq; Anglicis Mercatoribus deligere, ex quo deinceps maiore opportunitate, minoribusq; periculis Tabin promontorium, & totius Cathai circumnauigatio indagari posset. Esse autem ingens in Septentrionem excurrens promontorium Tabin, non ex Plinio tantum, verum & alijs scriptoribus, & tabulis aliquot (sicet rudius depictis) certum habeo. Polum etiam Magnetis haud longè ultra Tabin situm esse, certis Magnetis obseruationibus didici: circa quem & Tabin plurimos esse scopulos, difficilimamq; periculofam nauigationem existimo: difficiliorum tamen ad Cathaium accessum fore opinor, ea qua nunc via in Occidentem tentatur. Propinquior enim fiet hæc nauigatio polo Magnetis, quam si altera, ad quem propius accedere non puto tutum esse. Quia verò Magnes alium quam Mundi polum habet, quo ex omni parte respicit: quòd propius ad eum acceditur, eò directorium illud Nauticū magnetis virtute imbutum, magis à Septentrione deuiat, nunc in Occidentem, nunc in Orientem, prout quis vel orientior, vel occidentalior est illo Meridiano, qui per vtrumq; polum Magnetis, & Mundi ducitur. Mirabilis est hæc varietas, & quæ nauigantē plurimum fallere potest, nisi hæc Magnetis in constantiam nōrit, & ad poli eleuationem per instrumenta subinde respiciat. In hac re si non sit instructus D. Arthurus, aut ea sit dexteritate, ut deprehensio errore eum inuenire & castigare possit, timeo ne deuias faciat ambages, tempus illum fallat, & semper acto negotio, à gelu præoccupetur: Aiunt enim sinum illum fortius quotannis congelari. Quod si contingat, hoc quod consultus mihi visum fuit, proximum illi erit refugium, ut in eo sinu, ijsq; fluminibus quæ dixi, portum quærat, & per Legatum aliquem, cum magno Cham, nomine serenissimæ Reginz noticiam, amicitiamque contrahat, quam opinor Maximo orbis Imperatori gratam, imo gratissimam fore propter remotissima cōmercia. Opinor ab ostijs Bautis & Oechardi fluminum maximorum, vsq; ad Cambalu Regiam summā Chami, non ultra 300. miliaria Germanica esse, & iter sumendum per Ezinam urbem regni Tangut, quæ 100. tantum miliarijs Germanicis ab ostijs distare videtur, & paret Magno Cham.

Valde optarem cognoscere, quam altè communiter exurgat æstus maris in eo Moscouiæ portu, quem vestri pro statione habent, & in alijs versus orientem locis vsq; ad Tabin. Item, an mare in hoc districtu semper in vnam partem, videlicet Orientem, aut Occidentem fluat, an verò pro ratione æstus fluat, & refuat, in medio inquam canali, hoc est, an ibi sex horis in occasum, & iterum sex in ortum fluat, an verò semper in eandem partem: aliæ enim speculationes non parum viles hinc dependent. Idem optarem à D. Frobiscero in occidentem obseruari. Quod ad sinum Merosro, & Canadam, ac Nouam Franciam attinet, ea in meis tabulis desumpta sunt ex quadam Tabula marina, quæ à quodam sacerdote ex earum ditiorum Naucleri peritissimi Galli descriptione excerpta fuit, & illusterrimo Principi Georgio ab Austria episcopo Leodiensi oblata: Non dubito, quin quantum ad littorium situm attinet, & poli eleuationem, ad veritatem ea quam proximè accedant. Habebat enim ea tabula præter scalam graduum latitudinis per medium sui extensam, aliam præterea particularem Nouæ Franciæ littoribus adiunctam, qua deparatæ latitudines, occasione erroris Magnetis ibi commissæ, castigatæ erunt. Iacobi Cnoyen, Bulcoducensis itinerariū per omnem Asiam, Affricā, & Septentrionem, olim mihi Amicus Antuerpij ab alio mutuo acceptum cōmunicauit, eo vsus sum, & reddidi: post multos annos eūdem ab amico repetij, & reminisci ille non potuit à quo accepisset. Guilielmi Tripolitani & Ioanis de plano Carpini scripta non vidi, tantum excerpta ex illis quædam in alijs scriptis libris inueni.

*Postulata Mercatoris, de quibus certior fieri cupit.*

Abelfedz Epitome gaudeo verti, vtinam citò habeamus.

Hæc (mi Domine) tuis respondenda putavi: si quid est aliud quod à me desideres, libentissimè tibi comunicabo: hoc vicissim amanter à tua humanitate petens, ut quæ ex virtuosè navigationis cursu observata nancisci poteris, mihi communces, penes me pro tuo arbitrio manebunt omnia, & quæcumq; inde collegero, fideliter ad te perferbam, si fortè ad pulcherrimum, vtilissimumq; orbi Christiano hoc navigationis institutum aliquid opis & consilij adferre possint. Bene vale, vir doctissime. Duisburgi in Cluivia, 28. Julij, 1580.

Redeunte Arthuro, quæso discas ab illo quæ optavi, & num alicubi in suo itinere, dulce mare, aut parum salsum inuenerit: suspicor enim mare inter Noua Zembla, & Tabin dulce esse.

T. H. paratissimus quantus quantulum, *Gerardus Mercator.*

*¶ The same in English.*

**S**ir, I receiued your letters the 19. of June: it grieued me much that vpon the sight of them the Scime being spent, I could not giue any conuenient instructions: I wish Arthure had bene informed before his departure of some speciall pointes. The voyage to Cathaio by the East, is doubtlesse very easie and short, and I haue oftentimes marvelled, that being so happily begun, it hath bene left off, and the course changed into the West, after that more then halfe of your voyage was discovered. For beyond the Island of Vaigats, and Noua Zembla, there falloweth presently a great baie, which on the left side is inclosed with the mightie promontorie Tabin. Into the middes hereof there fall great riuers, which passing through the whole countrey of Serica, and being as I thinke navigable with great vessels into the heart of the continent, may be an easie meanes whereby to traffique for all maner of merchandize, and transpoyt them out of Cathaio Mangi, Mien, and other kingdomes thereabouts into England: But considering with my selfe that that navigation was not intermitted, but vpon great occasion, I thought that the Emperour of Russia and Polcouie had hindered the proceeding thereof. If so be that with his grace and fauour a further navigation may be made, I would counsell them certainly not first to seeke out the promontorie Tabin, but to search this baie and riuers aforesayd, and in them to picke and choise out some conuenient port and harborough for the English merchamts, from whence afterward with more opportunitie and lesse perill the promontorie Tabin, and all the coast of Cathaio may be discovered. And that there is such a huge promontorie called Tabin, I am certainly persuaded not onely out of Plinie, but also other writers, and some Maps (though somewhat rudely drawn): and that the pole of the Loadstone is not farre beyond Tabin, I haue learned by the certayn obseruations of the Loadstone: about which pole and Tabin, I thinke there are very many rocks, and very hard and dangerous sailing: and yet a more hard and difficult passage I thinke it to bee this way which is now attempted by the West, for it is neerer to the pole of the Loadstone, to the which I thinke it not safe to approach. And because the Loadstone hath another pole then that of the world, to the which from all partes it hath a respect, the neerer you come vnto it, the more the neede of the compasse doeth varie from the North, sometimes to the West, and sometimes to the East, according as a man is to the Eastward or to the Westward of that Germanian, that passeth by both the poles of the Magnes and the World.

This is a strange alteration and very apt to deceiue the Sailer, vntlesse hee knowe the inconuancie and variation of the compasse, and take the eleuation of the pole sometimes with his instruments. If master Arthure be not well provided in this behalfe, or of such dexteritie, that perceiuing the error he be not able to correct the same, I feare least in wandering vp and downe he loseth his time, and be overtaken with the ice in the midst of the enterpryse. For that gulfe, as they say, is frozen euery yeere very hard, which if it be so, the best counsell I could giue for their best safetie, were to seeke some harborough in that baie, and those riuers whereof I haue spoken, and by some Ambassador to make friendship and acquaintance with the great Cham, in name of the Queenes maiestie, which I beleue will be grateful to the mightiest Emperour in the world, yea most excellent for the length of the traffique, and great distance of the places. I thinke from the mouths of the mightie riuers Baucifus & Oecharus to Cambaluz the chiefe seat of the prince, the Cham, there are not past 300. Germane miles, and to passe by Zuzina a citie of the kingdom of Tangur, which seemeth to be but 100. German miles fro the mouthes of y<sup>e</sup> said riuers, & is subiect to great Cham.

I would gladly knowe how high the sea doeth flowe commonly in the portes of Hosiouia where your men do harborough, and in other Easterly places vnto Tabin. And also whether the sea in this straight do flowe alwaies one way to the East or to the West, or whether it doe ebbe and flowe according

The best course to be taken in this coniecture.

Orders for

ving to the man  
points into the  
one of his partic  
galle of Merofro  
a certaine sea car  
shall in those p  
the treating of t  
creeth: for the  
another particula  
committed by re  
age of Iacobus C  
in time past by a  
my peeres I requ  
The writings of  
found certaine p  
is translated, I w  
Thus much sh  
would require of  
your certelle, th  
would impart the  
sue, and what so  
they may yeeld a  
theaded our chyl  
Chiua, 28. of Jul  
It Arthure his  
where in his boat  
Zembla and Tab

Instructions

couerie of new  
Freeman, I  
barke t  
gra

**B**

on, as also for you  
among you an A  
hould in the sum  
2 Because the  
offend the enemie  
maine top.

3 The Thom  
the ancientest ma  
to be Uicereintrai

4 And for cha  
age, we doe appo  
suit and agree by

desideres, libentis-  
quæ ex virtutibus  
ne pro tuo arbitrio  
i forte ad pulcher-  
piss & consilijs ad-

itineræ, dulce ma-  
abin dulce esse,  
antus quan-  
ardus Mercator.

the sight of them the  
Arthur had bene  
aid by the East, is  
to happily begun, &  
the of your voyage  
followeth presently  
ie Tabin. Into the  
rey of Serica, and  
t, may bee an easie  
m out of Cathaio  
ing with my selfe  
that the Emperour  
his grace and fa-  
first to seeke out the  
to picke and choole  
in whence afterward  
of Cathaio may  
n certainly perswa-  
b some what rudely  
have learned by the  
like there are very  
difficile passage I  
er to the pole of the  
the distance hath another  
neerer you come  
nes to the West, and  
ward of that Peri-

ee kno to the incon-  
nes with his instru-  
teritie, that perils  
p and do wne be lost  
gulfes, as they say, is  
for their best safetie,  
spoken, and by some  
one of the Quenes  
ords, yea most excel-  
in the mouths of the  
ace, the Cham, where  
of Tangut, which  
ert to great Cham.  
e of Adoula where  
berber the sea in this  
the and shoue accor-  
ding

ving to the manner of the tides in the middle of the channell, that is to say, whether it flow there first  
westward into the West, and as may be seen againe to the East, for hereupon depend ocher speculati-  
ons of importance: I would wish you to observe the same Westward. Concerning the  
gulfe of Merosiro and Canada, and new France which are in my mapes, they were taken out of  
a certaine sea card drawn by a certaine yveit out of the description of a Frenchman, a Pilot very  
skillfull in those partes, and presented to the worthy prince George of Austria, bishop of Liege: for  
the drawing of the coast, and the elevation of the pole, I doubt not but they are very neere the  
trouth: for the Chartre had, beside a scale of degrees of latitude passing through the middle of it,  
another particularly annexed to the coast of New France, where with the error of the latitudes  
committed by reason of the variation of the compasse might be corrected. The historie of the voy-  
age of Iacobus Cnoyen Buscoducensis throughout all Asia, Africa, and the North, was lent me  
in time past by a friend of mine at Antwoerpe. After I had used it, I restored it againe: after ma-  
ny yeeres I required it againe of my friend, but hee had forgotten of whom hee had borrowed it.  
The writings of Guiliemus Tripolitanus, and Ioannes de Plano Carpini, I neuer sawe: howe-  
ever I found certaine pieces of them in ocher written hand bookes. I am glad the Epitomie of Abelada  
is translated, I would we might have it shortly.

Thus much Sir I thought good to answer your letters: if there be any thing els that you  
would require of me, I will most willingly communicate it with you, craving this like wise of  
your curtesie, that whatsoeuer observations of both these voiajes shall come to your hands, you  
would impart them to me, they shall all remaine with mee according to your discretion and plea-  
sure, and whatsoeuer I gather of them, I will faithfully signifie unto you by letters, if happily  
they may yeeld any helpe or light unto this most excellent enterpryse of navigation, and most pro-  
fitable to our christian common wealth. Fare you well most learned friend. At Duisburge in  
China, 28. of Iulie, the yeere, 1580.

At Arthur his returne I pray you learne of him the things I have requested, and whether any  
where in his voyage, he found the sea fresh, or not very salt: for I suppose the Sea betwene Noua  
Zembla and Tabin to be fresh,

Yours to my power to be com-  
manded, Gerardus Mercator.

The first of Iune, 1582. London.

### Instructions made by the companie of English merchants for dis-

couerie of new trades, vnto Richard Gibs, William Biggat, Iohn Backhouse, William  
Freeman, Iohn Hall, and James Woodcocke, &c. masters of the 9. ships, and one  
barke that wee haue freighted for a voiage with them to be made (by the  
grace of God) from hence to S. Nicholas in Russia, and backe a-  
gaine: which ships being now in the riuer of Thames, are presently rea-  
dy to depart vpon the sayd voyage, with the next apt winde that may blow  
thereunto, and with this Fleete afterwards was layned  
M. Christopher Carille with the Tyger.

**A**s much as the number of ships which we purpose to send in this Fleete to-  
gether for S. Nicholas in Russia, is greater then at any time heretofore wee haue  
sent thither, as also for that some speeches are giuen out that you shall bee met  
withall by such as with force and violence will assault you as enemies, to the ende  
that good order may be established among you for keeping together in companie,  
and vniuing your forces, as well for the better direction to be had in your navigati-  
on, as also for your more safetie and strength against the enemye, we haue thought good to appoint  
among you an Admirall and viceadmirall, and that all of you and euery one particularly shall bee  
bound in the summe of one hundred pounds to keepe company together.

1 Because the Salomon is the biggest ship, best appointed, and of greatest force to defend or  
offend the enemye, we doe therefore appoint that ship Admirall, which shall weare the flag in the  
maine top.

2 The Thomas Allen being a good ship and well appointed, and for that the master of her is  
the ancientest master of the Fleete that hath taken charge that way, we doe appoint the same ship  
to be Viceadmirall, and to weare the flag in the fore top.

3 And for that the master of the Providence is of great experience, and knowledg in that voy-  
age, we doe appoint that he with the master of the Admirall and Viceadmirall shall conferre, con-  
sult and agree vpon the courses and directions that shall be used in this voyage, and it shall be law-  
full

full vnto the matter of the Admirall, with the consent of *Mr. Gibbs*, and *Mr. Biggart*, or one of them to make his courses and directions from time to time during the whole voyage, and all the fleete are to follow and obserue the same without straying or breaking of company at any time vpon the penallie before specified.

5 The appointing of the Ships for Admirall and Viceadmirall, and those men to consult and agree vpon the courses and directions of the voyage, as aforesaid, hath bene done by the consents and with the liking of you all, and therefore he doubte not but that you will all carefully and willingly obserue the premissses.

6 Item, we haue thought good to put you in mind, that at such times as you may conveniently from time to time, you doe assemble and meete together, to consider, consult, and determine vpon such articles as you shall thinke necessarie to be propounded touching your best safetie and defence against all forces that may bee offered you in this voyage, as well outwarde bound, and while you shall remaine in the roade and baie of *S. Nicholas*, as also homewardes bound, and that which you shall agree vpon, or that which most of you shall consent vnto, cause it to be set downe in writing for record, which may serue for an acte amongst your selues to binde you all to obserue the same.

7 We haue appointed *James Woodcocke* in the small barke to attend vpon you, and to receive his directions from you. You are to remember well what conference and talke hath bene had with you here before your going touching the sayd barke, to what purposes she may best serue, and the maner how to employ her, and thereupon to giue your order and direction vnto him, as the time and place shall require.

8 Item, if you shall vnderstand as you are outwarde bound, that the enemy is gone before you to *S. Nicholas*, remember what abuse hath bene giuen you for your stay at *Berozoua Vlia*, till you haue by spies viewed and vnderstood the forces, and the maner of their abode at that place.

9 And if in the Sea either outwarde or homewardes, or in the time of your abode at anker at *Saint Nicholas*, you shall bee assaulted by force of any, as enemy whatsoeuer, you are to defend your selues with such forces as you may or can: trust not too farre, neither giue place to inueniencence.

10 You will not forget what conference wee had touching your passing outwarde bound by *Wardhouse*, to view & vnderstand what you can at that place, & to shew your selues, to see if there be any there that haue a mind to speake with you, for that we thinke it better then and thereabout, then afterwarde or els where.

11 While you shall remaine in the roade at *S. Nicholas*, bee circumspect and careful to haue your ships in readinesse, and in good order alwayes, and vpon all suddens. The greatest danger vnto you in that place, will be while you shall lift your ships: therefore you are to consider of it, but the fittest time for you to doe the same, will bee when the winde is Southerlie off the shore, or calme, and at such time you may the better doe it without daunger. You must take such order amongst you, that your companies may bee alwayes willing and readie to helpe one the other, and appoint among your selues such ships to lift first, and such after, in such force and fourme as you shall thinke best and most conuenient. And while they shall bee in discharging, lading, and lading, let the rest of your companies which haue not then to doe in lading or discharging, helpe those shippes that shall haue labour to doe, as well for carrying the Barkes from ships to the shore, or from shore to the shippe with your boates, as also for any other helpe that they shall haue neede of.

12 Remember what hath bene said vnto you touching the mooring of your ships, &c. for bling an vantage against the enemy, if you shall be assaulted in that place.

13 See that you serue God, abolish swearing and gaming, bee carefull of fire and candles, &c.

14 You are to consult and agree among your selues vpon signes, tokens, and good orders for the better keeping of companie together, and also the maner how and by what means, rescue, aide, or helpe may be giuen by one to the other in fight, if you happen to come to it.

Thus we pray God to send you a prosperous voyage and safe returne.



short of Dwin  
alwayes to be  
thought do w  
change of that  
Others put t

How seeing  
cholas may be  
taken and com  
commodities t  
moditie.

But it may  
bee able to ser  
mained a mou  
as you woul

of answere  
to goe as afo  
that should dep  
time to be con  
south of Aug  
time: by this o

1 You may  
be dispersed in

2 The grea

3 Our late  
such letters as

4 Their re  
may bring such  
and which ma

How seeing  
and any charge

A copie  
rizi  
Ann



Nouogrodiz  
Belozeri, Lif  
partium Sep  
Feder Ander

The opinion of master William Burrough sent to a friend, requiring his iudgement for the fittest time of the departure of our ships towards S. Nicholas in Russia.



Whereas you request mee to perswade the companie not to send their shippes from hence before the line of May, I doe not thinke the same so good a course for them to obserue: for you know that the sooner wee send them hence, the sooner we may looke for their returne. If we send them in the beginning of May, then may they be at S. Nicholas by the line of the same moneth: and by that time the greatest part of your lading of necessitie must be come down, especially the flax: but if it should fall out so lateward a breaking up of the river of Dwina, that by the end of May the goods cannot be brought to S. Nicholas, yet this is alwayes to be accounted for certaine, that before our shippes can come thither, the goods may be brought down to that place: and if through ice the shippes be kept backe any time, the losse and charge of that time toucheth not the companie at all, but the owners of the ships, and yet will the owners put that in aduenture, rather then tarry longer time before their going hence.

Now seeing by sending our ships hence in the beginning of May, their arrivall at S. Nicholas may be at the ende of the same moneth, and remaining thirtie dayes there, they may be laden and come thence by the last of June, and returne home hither by the 10. of August with commodities to serue the market then, it cannot be denied but we should reape thereby great commodity.

But it may be objected, that if all our ships be sent then to returne as aforesaid, you shall not be able to send vs in so much cordage, Waxe and Oyle, as oherwise you should doe if they remained a moneth longer, neither could you by that time perfect your accounts to be sent in them as you would doe.

For answer thereto this is my meaning, though I wish the greatest part of our shipping to goe as aforesaid, yet would I haue one good ship or two at the most well furnished in all points that should depart alwayes from hence, betweene the beginning and the 10. day of June: and the same to be conditioned withall to remaine at S. Nicholas from the first arrivall there until the middle of August, or to be dispatched thence sooner, at the will and liking of our factors for the same: by this order these commodities following may ensue.

- 1 You may haue our commodities there timely to send by the river before it waxe shallow, to be dispersed in the countrey at your pleasure.
  - 2 The greatest part of our goods may be returned hither timely to serue the first markets.
  - 3 Our late ships remaining so long here, may serue to good purpose, for returning answers of such letters as may be sent our land, and received here before their departure.
  - 4 Their remaining so late with you shall satisfie your desire for perfecting your accounts, and may bring such cordage, Waxe, Oyle, and other commodities, as you can provide before that time: and this may serue vs in stead of bring home our goods that may be sent vs from Persia.
- Now seeing it may be so many wayes commodious to the company to obserue this order, without any charge unto them, I wish that you put to your helping hand to further the same.

A copie of the Commission giuen to Sir Ierome Bowes, authorizing him her Maiesties Ambassadour with the great Duke of Russia, Anno 1583.



ELIZABETHA Dei gratia, Angliae, Franciae, & Hyberniae Regina, fidei defensoratrix, &c. Vniuersis & singulis presentes literas visuris, & inspecturis, salutem. Cum Serenissimus Princeps, Ioannes Basilius, Rex, & magnus Dux Russiae, Volodomerz, Moscouiae, & Nouogrodiz, Rex Cassani, & Afracani, Dominus Plescoz, & magnus Dux Smplenscoz, Tueri, Vgori, Permiz, Valez, Bolharz, & aliarum ditionum: Dominus & magnus Dux Nouogrodiz in inferiori regione Chernigz, Razanz, Polotscoz, Ratfaulz, Yeraslaue, Belozeri, Liflandiz, Oudori, & Condensz, & gubernator in tota prouincia Seberiz, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, frater, & Amicus charissimus, Nobilem virum, Feder Anderwich Spifemski, nuper ad nos ablegauerit, ad certa quaedam negotia nobis

Phoedore Andrich Spifemski Ambassadour to the Queen.

cum agenda, quæ honorem vtrunque nostrum quam proximè attingunt, quæ que rectè definiti concludique nequeunt, nisi Ambassiatores aliquem & oratorem ad præfatum serenissimum principem amandauerimus: Hinc est, quod nos de fidelitate, industria, prouida circumspectione, & satis magno rerù vñu, prædilecti nobis famuli nostri, Hieronimi Bowes Militis, ex nobilibus domesticis nostris vnius, plurimum confidentes, præfatum Hieronimum Bowes Militem, nostrum verum, & indubitatum Ambassiatores, Oratores, & Commissarium specialem facimus, & constituimus per præfentes. Dantes, & concedentes eidem Hieronimo Bowes Militi oratori nostro tenore præsentium, autoritatem, & mandatù, tam generale, quam speciale, ita quod specialitas non derogat generalitati, nec è contrà generalitas specialitati, nomine nostro, & pro nobis, cum præfato serenissimo principe, eiusque consiliarijs, & deputatis quibuscunq; de præfatis negotijs & eorum singulis tractandi, conferendi, concludèdi appunctuandiq; prout præfato Oratori nostro æquum, & ex honore nostro videbitur: Nec non de, & super huiusmodi tractatis, conclusis, appunctuatisq; cæterisq; omnibus & singulis, præmissa quouimodo concernentibus, literas, & instrumenta valida & efficacia, nomine nostro, & pro nobis tradendi, literasq; & instrumenta consimilis vigoris & effectus, ex altera parte petendi, & confici, & sigillari debite procurandi, & recipiendi, & generaliter omnia, & singula, præmissa qualitercunq; concernentia, faciendi, exercendi, & expediendi, in, & eodem modo, sicut nos ipsi faceremus, & facere possemus, si essemus præfentes, etiamsi talia sint, quæ de se mandatum exigant magis speciale: promittentes bona fide, & in verbo Regio, omnia & singula, quæ per præfatum Ambassiatores, & oratorem nostrum appunctuata, promissa, conuenta, concordata, & conclusa fuerint in hac parte, nos rata & grata, & firma habituras & obseruaturas, & super inde literas nostras patentes confirmatorias, & approbatorias in forma valida, & autentica, prout opus fuerit, daturas. In cuius rei testimonium, his præsentibus manu nostra signatis, magnum sigillum nostrum regni nostri Angliæ apponi fecimus. Datæ e Regia nostra Grenwici, quinto die mensis Iunij, Anno Dom. 1583. Regni verò nostri viceffimo quinto.

*The same in English.*

**ELIZABETH** by the grace of God, *Queen of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to all and singular, to whom these presents shall come* to be serene and red. greeting. *Whereas the most excellent prince John Basiluwich king, and great duke of all Russia, Volodome, Moscoulie, and Nouogrode, king of Casan and Astracan, lord of Plesco, and great duke of Smolensco, of Tuer, Vgor, and Permia, Valca, Bolhar and others, lord great duke of Nouogrode in the lotts countrey of Cheriega, Rasar, Polotsco, Rostaue, Yeralauc, Belozet, Lifland, Oudor, Ohdor and Condene, and gouernour of all the land of Seberia, and of the North parts and others, our most deare brother and friend did of late send vnto vs one Feder Anderwich Spenskiy, a noble man of his to deale with vs in certaine speciall businells, respecting very neerely the honour of either of vs, and being such as without the speedyng of some Ambassadour of ours to the foresaid most excellent prince, cannot be sufficiently determined and concluded: For this cause wee hauing great confidence in the fidelitie, industrie, prouident circumspection and conuenient experience of our welbeloued seruante Jerome Bowes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our household, do by these presents make and constitute the foresaid Jerome Bowes knight, our true and indoubted Ambassadour, Orator and speciall commissiower, giuing and granting to the same Jerome Bowes knight, our Orator, by the vertue of these presents authoritie and commandement, as well generall as speciall, so that the speciall shall not prejudice the generall, nor by the other doe the generall the speciall, to treat, conferre, conclude, and appoint in our name, and for vs with the foresaid most excellent prince and his counsellors and deputies whatsoeuer, concerning the foresaid businells, and each of them, according as it shall seeme good, and for our honour to our foresaid Orator, as also of and by/on such things increased, concluded and appointed; as in all and singular other things, any manner of way concerning the premises, to desister in our name and for vs, sufficient and effectuall letters and instruments, and to require letters and instruments of the like validitie and effect of the other part, and to procure them lawfully to be made and sealed, and then to receiue them, and generally to doe, execute, and dispatch all and singular other things concerning the premises, in, and after the same manner; as we our selves would and might do if we were present, although they bee such things as may seeme of themselves to require a more speciall commandement: providing in good faith & in the word of a prince, that we will hold & obserue all, and singular the things which by our Ambassadour aforesaid shall be appointed, promised, agreed, accorded*

and concluded in  
will give our  
In witness where  
of the presents, an  
Given at our  
and of our reign

A letter

Serenissimo  
Duci totius  
D



dence, & Gub  
fratri & amico si

Serenissime p  
gatus, intellexim  
structum, ad S.

quod est honest  
And cum id hab  
culos Hieronim

quem in præsen  
quod ad Seren  
mimus. In qu

tisquam dubitan  
habet à nobis in  
cum nobis mult

simus, rogamus  
phinarum virt

nequam ablo  
iffemus. In qu

in præfatum la  
seruet, & incoll

1583, regni v  
1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

1583, regni v

and concluded in this behalfe, as lawfull, gracefull, and firme, and thereupon as need shall require, will give our letters patents, confirmatorie and approbatorie, in forme effectuall and auctenticall. In witness whereof, we have caused our great seale of our kingdome of England to be put to these presents, and signed them with our owne hand.

Given at our pallace of Greenewich the fourth day of June, in the yeere of our Lord, 1583, and of our reigne the five and twentieth.

A letter sent from her highnesse to the sayd great Duke of Russia, by Sir Hierome Bowes aforesayd, her Maiesties Ambassadour.

Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Basilio, Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Russia, Volodamera, &c. Regi Cassani, &c. Domino Plefcoa, &c. Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodia, &c. & Gubernatori in tota Prouincia Seberia, &c. Fratri, & amico nostro charissimo.



LIZABETHA, Dei gratia Angliz, Franciz, & Hiberniz Regina, fidei defensor, &c. Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Ioanni Basilio, eadem Dei gratia Regi & magno Duci totius Russia, Volodamera, Moscouiz & Nouogrodiz, Regi Cassani & Astracani, Domino Plefcoa, & magno Duci Smolenscoz, Tueri, Vgori, Permiz, Valca, Bolharz, & aliarum ditionum, Domino & magno Duci Nouogrodiz in inferiori regione Chernigaz, Razanz, Polotscoz, Rattouz, Irollauz, Belozeri, Liflandiz, Oudori, & Condencaz, & Gubernatori in tota prouincia Seberiz, & partium Septentrionalium, & aliarum, fratri & amico suo charissimo, Salutem.

Serenissime princeps, frater & amice charissime, ex ijs quz nobiscum egit, S. V. illustris legatus, intelleximus, quam grate vobis faceremus satis, si legatum aliquem cum mandatis instructum, ad S. V. ablegaremus. In quo cered quidem instituto aded nobis ex animo placuit, quod est honeste postulatunt, vt non nisi prestata re, possemus nobis quoquo modo satisfacere. Atq; cum id haberemus apud nos decretum, nobis non incommodè incurrit in mentem & oculos Hieronimus Bowes miles, ex nobilibus nostris Domesticis, plurimum nobis dilectus, quem in præsentiarium ad S. V. ablegamus, cuius prudentiaz & fidei, totum hoc quicquid est, quod ad Serenitatù multo nostrarù dignitatem ornandam pertinere posse arbitramur, commissimus. In quo munere perfungendo, quin omnem curam & diligentiam sit collarurus, ne utriquam dubitamus: à S. autè V. rogamus, velit ei eam fidem habere in ijs persequeudis quz habet nobis in mandatis, quam nobis habendam putaret, si essent presentes. Pratered, cum nobis multum charus sit Robertus Iacobus medicus, quem superiori anno, ad S. V. missimus, rogamus vt eum eo loco S. V. habeat, quo virum probatissimum, & singulari quadam plurimarum virtutum laude ornatum habendum esse, boni principes censent. Quem à nobis ne utriquam ablegauissemus, nisi amicitiaz nostraz, & studio gratificandi S. V. plurimum tribuissemus. In qua diuini voluntate manemus erga S. V. non nisi optime de bonis vestris meritis in præfatum Iacobum nobis pollicemur. Et Deum Opt. Max. precamur, vt S. V. saluam conseruet, & incollumem. Date à Regia nostra Grenouici: 19 die mensis Iunij, Anno Domini 1583, regni verò nostri viceffimo quinto.

1582.

S. vestra bona soror.

The same in English.

Elizabeth by the grace of God, Queen of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to the most excellent Prince and Lord, John Basilwich, by the same grace of God, King and great Duke of all Russia, Volodamera, Moscouie, and Nouogrod; King of Cassan and Astracan, Lord of Plefcoa, and great Duke of Smolenscoz, of Tuer, Vgor, and Permiz, Valca, Bolhar, and of the Town and great Duke of Nouogrod in the lower countrey of Cherniga, Razan, Polotsk, Rottauz, Irollauz, Belozer, Lifland, Oudor, Oudor, and Condenca, and Gouernour of all the lande of Seberia, and of the Royall partes and others, her beereff Lother and friend, Salutations.

Spott

Most excellent Prince, most deare brother and friend, by those things which the worthy ambassadoz of your excellencie declared vnto vs, we haue vnderstood how kindly it would be taken, if we should send to your excellency an ambassadoz from vs, with commandement and instructions. In which matter your honourable request hath so much pleased vs, that we could not any manner of way sacrifice our selues, except we performed the same. And hauing purposed with our selfe so to doe, we thought of, and rememberd Jerome Botwes knight, a gentleman of qualitie of our household, a man very much beloued of vs, whome at this present we send vnto your Maiestie, and to whose wisdom and faithfullnesse we haue committed all, whatsoeuer we take to appertaine to the aduancement of both our honours indifferently. In the discharge of which seruice, we doubt not but that all care and diligence shall be used on his part, so that we increat your Maiestie to giue him credence in the persecuting of those things which he hath from vs in commandement, no lesse then to our selfe if we were present. And whereas Robert Jacob, doctor of physicke, is a man very deare vnto vs, whome the last yeere we sent vnto your excellency, we desire that he may haue the fauor and estimation with you, which good princes thinke a most honest and vertuous man worthy of: for had we not carryed great respect to our mutuall friendship, and in due way to gratifie your Maiestie, we should in no case haue parted with him. And seeing we continue still the same good will towards your excellency, we do euen promise to our selfe your honorable kindness towards him: and we pray the almighty God to preserve your Maiestie in good safetie and health. Given at our palace of Greenwich, the 19 day of Iune, in the yeere of our Lord 1583, and of our reigne, the five and thirtieth.

Doctor Jacob

Your Maiesties good sister.

The maner of the preferring of suites in Russia, by the  
example of our *English merchants bill, exhibited*  
to the Emperour.



The Emperours house of recreation.

ohn Basilwich, Lord, King, and great Duke of all Russia, the English merchants, William, sonne of Thomas, with his company sue vnto.

Lord, in the 7082 yeere of the world's creation, the Spaietie treasurer, named Gregorie Meekelich Borozden, took of vs for thy hse 12 poods of loose sugar, waighted at 8 robes the pooh, which sugar was sent to the Sloboda. After, the said Gregorie treasurer, took of vs for thy Spaietie 200 reams of paper, waighted at 20 almines the reame, for all which the money hath not bene payd which amounteth to 216 robes.

And in the 84 yeere the diake Stephan Lighachdo, took of vs for thy Spaietie copper plates, for the summe of 1032 robes and one fourth part vnpayd for.

Also in the said 84 yeere the Spaietie diakes called Iuan Blafghoy, and Iuan Sobakin, took of vs for thy hse, sundry commodities, and haue not payd 630 robes, the rest of the money but for the sayd goods.

In the 85 yeere the Spaietie treasurer Peter Gholouen took of vs for thy Spaietie, cloth of sundry sorts, and hath not payd of the money due therefore 538 robes.

In the 88 yeere, the diakes Andrea Shalkan, and Istomay Yeuskoy, took of vs lead for thy Spaietie, to the value of 267 robes and a halfe not payd.

And in the same yeere the Spaietie diake Boores Gregoriowich, had for thy hse 15 broad clothes of diuers sorts, waighted at 110 robes, wherof 90 robes are vnpayd.

Also in the said 88 yeere, the diake Andrea Shalkan, took from vs 1000 robes for thee (Lord) in ready money, yet we know not whether by thy Spaietie appointment.

And also in the 89 yeere (Lord) the diake Andrea Shalkan, took from vs for thy Spaietie 500 robes, we know not whether by thy Spaietie order or no, because that thy authorized people doe yearly take away from vs, neither do they giue vs righte in any cause.

All the money (Lord) which is not payd vs out of thy Spaietie treasurer for our commodities, with the money taken from vs by Andrea Shalkan, is 4273 robes 25 almines.

Right noble king and Lord, shew thy mercy, and cause the money to be payd vs which is owing for our goods, as also that which hath bene taken from vs: extend thy fauor, King and Lord.

Sir for

A briefe  
Maej

and in  
spac



our Lord

house

call

the best

all

the best

to

to his

maie

tye both

the

Spaietie

Eight

met

the

the

quantity

at

the

pinch

of

After

he

has

instructions

a

same

home

to

ing

attende

g

gentlemen

at

the

of

the

of

the

of

the

of

the

of

the

of

the



ch the wayth ambaf  
would be taken, if we  
and instructions. In  
do not any manner of  
with our selfe to  
qualite of our goods  
our Spacie, and to  
to appertaine to the  
service, we doubt not  
our Spacie to give  
commandement, no lesse  
physike, is a man very  
that he may haue that  
vertuous man woo-  
indewo; to graue  
continue still the same  
noyable kindenes to  
and safete and health,  
Lord 1583, and of

after.  
a, by the  
ed

issa, the English mer  
e unto.  
Spacie's treasurer, na  
be 12 poods of flaxe  
the Sloboda. Spox,  
200 reames of paper,  
to which amounteth to

Spacie's copper plates,

Iuan Sobakin, toke  
of the money due for

thy Spacie's, cloth of

boke of vs lead for thy  
p'st 15 bynd clothes

robes for thee (Lord)

for thy Spacie's 500  
authorized people be

for our commodie of  
s alings,

ed by wharshobang  
King and Lord.

The

A briefe discourse of the voyage of Sir Jerome Bowes knight, her  
Majesties ambassador to the Emperour of Muscouia in the yeere 1582.

and printed this second time, according to the true copie I receiued of a  
gentleman that went in the same voyage, for the correction  
of the errors in the former impression.



**T**he Emperour of Russia that then liued by name Iuan Vassilli wch, having  
deliberately considered how necessary it were for the strengthening of his e-  
state, that a suite of merchants and merchants should be againe  
sent betwene his said territories of Christian, with such further  
immunities and privileges for the trade and benefit of both their dominions,  
as his subjects of the same, as upon mutual trade of persons interposed an  
both sides, might be attended with a few good and his realm, in the yeere  
of our Lord 1582, he his ambassador for this purpose, in another office of gentleman of his  
house he called Pheodor Andreuich Phisemskie, accompanied with one of his secretaries, for  
his better assistance in this expedition, and besides, in any other occasions, wher his part were to  
be performed by words of mouth, sent the same in a letter in the Emperours signature,  
directed to her Spacie: he had in special charge to collect her opinion, as he went with him  
to his matter an ambassador, from her, to treat and contract of such affaires of importance as con-  
cerned both the realmes, which was the principall end of his simple journey hither: All here upon  
her Spacie very graciously inclining to the Emperours motion and accept humble suite of the  
English merchants, in which these countries, being earlie with the same princely respects, so facil-  
ly he consented in this behalfe, made choice of Sir Jerome Bowes a gentleman of her court, or-  
dinarily attending upon her Spacie's person, whom in his opinion, he especially preferred her  
graciously for his skill and industry in the trade of his negotiating, according to the  
After he had received his commission, with several letters to the Emperour, with all other  
injunctions appertaining to his charge, and that the said Ruse ambassador was directed to re-  
sume home to his Ruse, being accompanied with others and returned, the English ambassador, be-  
ing intended upon such his business at the least, very honourably furnished, wherof many were  
gentlemen, and the Sp. Dutchers, Cole a learned preacher, to the his leave of her Spacie at the  
court of Christchurch the point of June, and to visit the other ambassador, with the princell com-  
mission, embarked themselves at Newcastle the xxij. of the same; and after a stormy voyage at the  
sea, they arrived both in safety, in the town of D. Nicholas the xxiij. of July next following.

The Ruse ambassador lodged himselfe at the abbey of St. Nicholas: and the English ambaf-  
ador was lodged and well entertained by the English merchants, as they loue at St. Nicholas,  
standing in the Strand called Ruse Mans, (where the Ruse ambassador lodged himselfe)  
The Ruse ambassador having spent his time one whole day, took his leave of the English  
ambassador, and departed to the Ruse  
The English ambassador stode at St. Nicholas four or five days; when having made  
provision of horses, &c. he went to ward upon his journey towards Musco,  
in a carriage called Colmagro, wherof there were twelve horses drawn from St. Nicholas.

It must here be remembered that before the English ambassadors going into Russia, there were  
many dangers, but especially certaine Dutch merchants, who had undertaken themselves to create  
trouble in those countries. For which anking a privilege of the sole trade thither, was long before gra-  
nted to the English merchants, these Dutchmen had already to hand the matter, as they had by  
their great means obtained the consent of the Emperour to be supplied  
thence; namely, Mikita Romanowich, Bodan Belskoy, and Andrew Shalkan the chamberlay: the  
latter two gifts that they bestowed upon them all, they took for much money of theirs as inter-  
est at 100. upon the hundred, as they payed in foote one of them five thousand rials, yea for  
the use of his money, and the English merchants at that time had not one friend in Ruse.

The ambassador, having now spent five weeks at St. Nicholas, and Colmagro, there came  
to him then a gentleman sent from the Emperour to instruct him, and at last in charge to conduct  
him by the rivers towards Musco, and to be liued his provision of all kinde of victuals necessary.

This gentleman being a follower of Shalkan the chamberlay, was by him (as it seemed) sollicit  
that that friend of his purpose, as afterwards appeared by the route he took, to offer discourtesies,  
and occasions of dislike to the ambassador: for you must understand, that the chamberlay and the o-  
ther two great counsellors (spoken of as friends to the Dutchmen) had a purpose to oppose them-  
selves directly against her Spacie's ambassage, especially in that point, for the barring of all  
strangers from trading into the Emperours country.

This gentleman conducted the English ambassage a thousand miles up the rivers of Dwina and Soughana, to a cite called Vologda, where he received him another gentleman sent from the Emperour, a man of better countenance then the other, who presented the ambassage from the Emperour with two fair geldings well furnished after the Russian manner.

At a cite called Verallau upon the river Volga there met the ambassage a duke well accompanied, sent from the Emperour, who presented him from the Emperour a coach and ten geldings for the more easie conveying of him to Musco, from whence this cite was distant five hundred miles.

Two miles on this side Musco there met the ambassage four gentlemen of good account, accompanied with two hundred boyles; who after a little salutation, not familiar, without embracing, told him that they had to say to him from the Emperour, and would have had him light on foot to have heard the not so pleasant speeches which he should have had; which the ambassage (soone refused to doe, and so they stood long upon matters touching which light he cannot; which circumstances agreed upon, there was yet great niceness) whose foot should not be first on ground.

Their message being delivered, and after having embraced each other, they conducted the said ambassage to his lodging at Musco, a house full of pursuants for him, whom selves being placed in the next house to it, and appeared to furnish him of all provisions, and to be used by him upon all other occasions.

The ambassage having borne some doubts to Musco, and having in all this time been very honourably used from the Emperour (for such was his will) though some of his chiefest counsellors (as is said) had another purpose, and did often times cunningly put it in his head: He was sent for to Court, and was accompanied thither with about forty gentlemen, honourably mounted, & sumptuously arrayed, in his passage from his lodging to the court, were set in a ward full of five thousand foot, that were of the Emperours guards.

After this manner, there met him four noble men appointed in cloth of golde, and rich furbes, they say, and who were of high birth and name, who conducted him to the court of the Emperour; till he was met by four others of greater degree then they, who guided him yet further to the court, in which passage there stood along the walls, and late by the sides and corners in rows, seven or eight hundred persons, said to be noblemen and gentlemen, all apparelled in garments of rich purple and cloth of golde.

These four noblemen accompanied him to the Emperours chamber door, where met him the Emperours grand officer in their best gowns; and with him all the great officers of the Emperours chamber, who all conducted him to the place where the Emperour sat in his state, having three cushions standing by him, viz. of Muscovia, Casan, and Astracan, & also by him four young noble men of about twenty yeeres of age; all richly dressed, costly apparelled in habits, holding upon their shoulders each of them a brode are, much like to a Galliardes are of Ireland, then and here they shake the are as though it were not fast halfe a yard long; and there face about the chamber upon benches and other low seats, about a hundred noblemen richly apparelled in cloth of golde.

The ambassage being thus brought to the Emperour in his chamber, after some compliments and inquisition of her good health, he called him to great banquet in a place provided for that purpose, nigh ten past twelve from him, from whence he would have had him to have sent him her speciall letters and presents, which the ambassage thinking not reasonable, strep forward to ward on the Emperours which passage the chamberlaine do direct him, and would have taken his letters; to whom the ambassage said, that her Majesty had directed no letters to him, and so went on, and delivered them himselfe to the Emperours own hands.

And after having thus delivered her speciall letters, and what he had to say at that time, he was conducted to the Countess chamber, where being had conference with the council of matters of his ambassage, he was soon after sent for againe to the Emperour, where he dined in his presence at a double; were two to him, and all his company at another board by, where also dined at other tables in the same place all the chief noblemen that were about the court, to the number of an hundred. And in the time of this dinner, the Emperour by many favours to the ambassage, & about the midst of dinner (standing by) drank a great carouse to the health of the Emperour in a good glass, and sent him a great bowl full of Muscovia wine and sugar to please him.

The ambassage after this, was often called to court, where he had conference both with the Emperour and his counsellors, of the matters in question, touching her ambassage, which dinner times raised many papers, and in the end after sundry meetings, the Emperour finding himselfe necessitated to his liking, for that the ambassage had not power by his commission to settle in matter, saying that he thought fit as a man whose will was seldomly wronged to be satisfied, to look

his passion, and of England as he  
The ambassa  
seuer it might  
the honour and  
humor; and with  
like courage and  
great a pnce as  
able to defend h  
either he had, o  
French king, an  
in the end of  
Germany & so  
his father by  
The ambassa  
not the use an  
he might doe his  
business (not) w  
Emperour in gr  
large required, fo  
All this not w  
Emperours choll  
meditations in th  
gave his ambassa  
The ambassa  
being thus (as I  
to know) that he  
to tell him, that  
he had, he shou  
in question: and  
that the Emperour  
by the Emperour  
was able, to send  
his departure, w  
he had the Em  
which done him  
And so the day  
in credit with him  
graced, and has  
been wronged.  
The long after  
parture, a ne  
shouly after sent  
his will to great  
words is not by a  
The  
scroule  
of the  
new diet  
was this;  
The  
Seu  
Dne  
Dne  
Seu  
Seu  
Seu

his passion, and with a shame, such an open countenance to be him, that he did not reckon the Queene of England to be his helgh: for there are (quoth he) that are her betters.

The ambassadoe greatly mistliking these speeches, a being very unwillling (how dangerous soever it might prove to his owne person) to give way to the Emperour, in derogate ought from the honour and greatness of her Majesty; and finding also that to submit himselfe to the angry humour and disposition of the Emperour, was not the meanes to bring quiet at his hands, with like courage and countenance to answer his, tolde him that the Queene his mistresse, was as great a pynce as any was in Challenborne, equall to him that thought himselfe the greatest, well able to defend her selfe against his malice who hee would, and wanted not meanes to offend any that either he had, or should have cause to be enemy unto, (quoth he) How sayest thou to the french king, and the king of Spaine? Harry (quoth the ambassadoe) I holde the Queene my mistresse, and the great lady of christian world. Then what sayest thou (quoth he) to the Emperour of Germany? Harry tolde the greatness of the Queene his mistresse (quoth the ambassadoe) as the King her father had (that long since) the Emperour in his pay, in his warres against France. Harry tolde that a mistresse mistlike the Emperour yet so much more, as that he would be the ambassadoe, that were he not an ambassadoe, he would chuse to be him out of the doores. Whereunto he answered that he might doe his will, for he was now fast within his countrey; but he had a mistresse who (he tolde not) would be revenged of any injury that should be done unto him. Whereupon the Emperour in great rancour had him gett home. And he with no more reverence then surely required, saluted the Emperour, and went his way.

All this notwithstanding, the ambassadoe was not much sooner out of the chamber, and the Emperour's choller soon was cooled, but he delivered to his countrell that stood about him many commendations in the favour of the ambassadoe, for that he would not indure one ill word to be spoken against his mistresse, and that hee himselfe would be ready to have such a revenged.

The ambassadoe had not bene much more then one houre in his lodging; but the Emperour being angry (as it seemeth) by the extraordinary behavioe of the ambassadoe, (for he wanted not wit to know) that he had found what was the Emperour's case, sent his principall Secretary unto him, to tell him, that not withstanding what had past, yet for the great love that he bare to the Queene his mistresse, he should be ready to be called againe to Court; and have a resolution of all the matters in question; and this Secretary was now further contented to depart, and tolde to the ambassadoe that the Emperour would not refuse to send a great noble man with him, in ambassage to the Queene his mistresse, whom sure he yet at any time sent out of his countrey; and that he determined to send to the Queene a present worth three thousand pounds, and to give him himselfe at his departure, with a gift that should be worth a thousand pounds; and tolde him also that the King the Emperour would send a great noble man with him, to conferre with him of certaine matters done him by Shalloe the chanceller, and his ministres.

And so the day following he sent Bodan Belskoy the chiefe countreller he had, as a man most in credit with him; this man examined all matters wherewith the ambassadoe had found himselfe grieved, and supplied him with what he wanted, and righted him in all things wherewith he had bene wronged.

The long after the returns of this noble man, the Emperour caused to be set downe in his countrey a new and much larger allowance of diet for the ambassadoe then he had had before, and shortly after sent the same to the ambassadoe by his principall Secretary Sauio Frolo. This was the first that the ambassadoe when others sought to have it lessened; but the Emperour would not be any way moved.

The scroule of the new diet was this:

- One bushell of fine meale for three days.
- One bushell of wheat or wheat for a day and a halfe.
- Two fine geese for one day.
- Two new hanes for the day.
- Seven sheepe for a day.
- One ope for three dayes.
- One hie of pike for a day.
- Seventie egges for a day.
- Seven pound of butter.
- Seventy peny white loaves of the day.
- Two new peny loaves of bread.
- One becher of gallon of vinegar.
- Two heathers of salt caribys.
- One pecke of onions.
- Ten pound of salt.
- One aleine, or five peny worth of waxe candell.
- Two almes of tallowe candle.
- One fourth part of a becher of cherie mead.
- As much of Mallynoud mead.
- Half a pecker of burnt beere.

One beater of goldenne called Obami.  
 One beater of pepper.  
 One beater of nutmeg.  
 One beater of cloves.  
 One beater of mace.  
 One beater of mace.  
 One beater of mace.  
 One beater of mace.

One beater of nutmeg.  
 One beater of nutmeg.  
 One beater of nutmeg.  
 One beater of nutmeg.

How to be begun in such a manner his majesty is authorized to send her Majesty's ambassador as he sees fit to the Emperor, increasing him that his majesty, and her Majesty's English physician, may see to the point of the religion in the Emperor's which the ambassador is to be done accordingly, and send them to the Emperor's court to work in the same, as he shall see them (with much good allowance) to be published here before in any of his council, and many others of his nobility, and to require the Emperor's ambassador to send him such a one as he requires, himselfe would then go into England, and carry his creature with him, and marry one of them there.

Here you must understand that the year before this embassage, he had sent to her Majesty by his ambassador to have had the lady Mary Hastings in marriage, which he did by means of her inability of body, by occasion of much sickness, and therefore was not great liking either of her selfe or friends, and both, took no place.

The ambassador was now to have gotten into the Emperor's favor, and his affection to give to England, as these great controllers that were the ambassadors great enemies before, were now desirous of some publique conference at his hands for other advantage to the Emperor, so that they now say more to respect themselves than the Emperor, and he for as long before this, the Emperor for abusing the ambassador had (as he is his former name) beaten Shalhan the chancellor very grievously, and had sent him word, that he would not have any of his race since.

How to please the ambassador was then thought, and the Emperor's favor was to be implied himselfe in all he might, not only for the space by dispatch of the negotiation he had in hand, but he was also by all the good reasons he might, further to bestow his country and revenues, and so not long after, because at the Emperor's hands, not only all these things he had in commendation in treat for by his instructions, but also some other of good and great importance, for the benefit of the merchants.

Private futes obtained of the Emperor by the ambassador.

Case for Richard Francis an Englishman and his company to the Emperor, his wife and children to the home (now England), and to bring with them all such goods as he had gotten there.

He obtained like leave for Richard Blount an Englishman one of the Emperor's surgeons.

He also got leave for Jane Ricards the widow of Doctor Bompsich a Dutch man, and physician to the Emperor, who for treason practised with the king of Pole against the said Emperor, was rolled to death at the step of Mexico, in the year 1537.

These following he obtained for the behoofe of the merchants,

He got leave for the merchants, to receive recompense for certain goods taken from them by factors by robbery upon the Volga.

He obtained like leave, the repayments of five hundred marks, which was paid for ten years before his going into Russia (such the Emperor's receipt) for a rent of a house that they had at Vollogda.

He also got granted for them, the repayments of fifteen hundred marks, which had been repaid of them the three last years before his coming thither.

Sir Fero  
 The year  
 much a be  
 all the ch  
 better, w  
 destruction  
 the shone  
 the an  
 that of De  
 here, or the  
 all the p  
 Daily men  
 points per  
 all the b  
 matter, not  
 containing  
 there was  
 the same  
 with the  
 of himselfe,  
 shall the  
 of himselfe  
 here, so the  
 would thin  
 as a great  
 was assigne  
 that great  
 was in  
 the Emper  
 government,  
 called agai  
 need himse  
 have his dis  
 in a man  
 and a booc  
 Emperor to  
 have his lat  
 made by the  
 of they, we  
 liced him, as  
 he had not  
 Emperor, w  
 lude to carry  
 the Emperor  
 Emperor in  
 when a way  
 purpose) that  
 there was a  
 do, brother to  
 the ambass  
 self, but his  
 often into  
 a present of  
 there was kin  
 and brother  
 saw; not frie  
 him word the  
 biggates too

He got also for them, other for the repayment of an olde and desperate debt of three thousand  
marks, a debt so desperate, as haue peeres left out of their accounts, and by the opinion of them  
all, notwithstanding he be worth nothing, for too much offending the Emperour, by impeaching his other  
business, which was thought as least aspertwise sufficient, and was therefore left out of his in-  
struction, and hee spent it, as hee pleased, in his owne seruice, and in the service of his friends.

He obtained that all strangers shoulde not be admitted any more into Russia, and that the pas-  
sage shoulde be to all the Emperours shoppen goods and commodities, from the Ward house to the  
state of the Emperour, as hee pleased, and to the English nation.

Lady of a great value he had so no the most precious, without motion either of himselfe  
here, or they against there, or any other for them, hee obtained of the Emperour, the abatement of  
all such customs which they had long before paid, and agreed still to continue, which customs, the  
Dutch men and other great being remoued, as now it was agreed, amounted to two thousand  
pounds yearly.

All these were granted some alittle while before his coming from Musco, the olde pynleige  
which he had taken, signed and sealed, and was to be deliuered to the ambassador at his next  
coming to court, before he had, the Emperour fell sick of a fever, and so died.

After his death, the case was wonderfully altered with the ambassador; for whereas both in  
his owne country, and in all mens opinion els, he was in great respect to haue gotten a great  
share with the Emperour, when hee was to be sent to her Majesty, and the particular liking he had  
of himselfe, he was sell into the hands of his great enemies, Mikha Romanauich and Andre  
Shalkan the chanceller, who after the death of the Emperour, took the speciall government by  
appointment, and so presently caused the ambassador to be shut up a close prisoner in his owne  
house, for the space of nine weeks, and was so straitly guarded, and hard used by those that  
were about him, as hee daily suspected some further mischief to haue followed: for in this time there  
grew a great typhus in Musco of high feuer, which cost many perils, to which, considering that his en-  
emies were, somewhat amazed the ambassador, but yet afterwards the matter fell out against  
the great counsellor Rodan Belkoy, whom it was before to be a speciall man in the olde Empe-  
rours favour, who was so notwithstanding so outrageously assaulted, as that he was forced to flee  
the Emperours chamber for his lastette, and was afterwards sent away to Casan, a place he had in  
government, three hundred miles from Musco, where hee hath remained ever since, and neuer as  
yet called againe to court, at which time the ambassador expected some such like measure, and pre-  
pared himselfe as well as hee could, for his defence: yet happily after this, was sent for to court, to  
haue his dispatch, and to take his leave of the Emperour, which being conducted (not after the  
honourable manner) and brought to the counsell chamber, came to him onely Shalkan the chanceller  
and a brother of his, who told him more adoe, tolde him for the summe of his dispatch, that this  
Emperour would not treat of further amitie with the Queene his mistress, then such as was be-  
twixt his late father and hee, before his departing thither: and would not heare any reply to be  
made by the ambassador, but presently caused both himselfe and all his company to be disarmed  
of their weapons, and go to wards the Emperour. In which passing there were such outrages offer-  
red him, as had he not used more patience, then his disposition afforded him, on the occasion requi-  
red he had not in likelihood escaped with life, but yet at length was brought to the presence of the  
Emperour, who said nothing to him, but what the chanceller had already done, but offered him a  
letter to carry to her Majesty, which the ambassador (for that he knew it contained nothing that  
shoulde concerne his ambassage) refused till he saw his daughter grow too great: neither would the  
Emperour suffer the ambassador to reply ought, nor well hee could, by the way hee had notice of purpose  
taken a way his unequity, being yet unwilling (as it seemed, and suspecting the ambassadors  
purpose) that the Emperour and others shoulde know how dishonourably hee had bene handled: for  
there was at that time, in that presence a noble young gentleman, and Dennis Phedaruich Gordino,  
brother to the Emperour that now is, who yet after the death of the Emperour did also pay  
the ambassador most honourably, and would very willingly haue done him much more kind-  
ness, but his authority was not yet, till the coronation of the Emperour: but notwithstanding that  
after this hee was long before his departure, and accompanied by many hono-  
rable gentlemen with a  
presence of two faire pieces of cloth of golde, and a cypher of very good sables: and desired that as  
there was kinneship and brotherhood betwixt the Emperour and her Majesty, so there might be love  
and brotherhood betwixt him and the ambassador. And being from this man, there was not so many  
said, nor friendship left for the ambassador in Muscouia, for the chanceller Shalkan had no more  
faith, nor that the English Emperour was dead: he had now nothing offered him but dangers and  
disgraces too many, and a hasty dispatch from the Musco, that hee might not tarry the coronation

of the new Emperour: offences many in his preparation for his long journey, overly one meane gentleman appointed to accompany him to the sea side, expecting daily in his passage some sudden treuagen to be done vpon him: for so he understood it was thynked before his coming from the Mosco, and therefore with great caution provided by all the meanes he might, by himselfe and seruants for his defence (for now was his danger knowne such, as the King of Muscovie had alowgether leaue him, although he commanded them in her Spawles name to accompany him) that if any such thing should happen to be offered him, as many of them as he could that should offer to execute it, should die with him for company, which being perceived (was thought) did make his passage the safer: So afterwards being vpon a voyage many adventures by the way, at length he recovered *S. Nicholas*, where remembering his vow, as well as both of the olde Emperour; and his ill vylage since then at the Mosco, his being there to take a hard longer for the summer of his vylage, contenting nothing of that he came for, and the poore and vylage of the present time (in the name of the Emperour) in respect of that that was meant him by the olde Emperour, knowing all these to be done in vylage of her Spawles: and himselfe, determined not to be the charge of some part of them in such sort as he could, and so providing as he might to prevent his danger, in getting to his shippe, furnishing and placing his men so as were any assault that should be offered him, after he had hidden face well in the vncourteous gentlemen that brought him thither, by the order of some of the boldest and discreetest men he had, he sent to be deliuered him, or left at his lodging, his matters weak letter, and himselfe present, and so afterwards happily (though hardly) recovered his shippe in safetie, although presently afterwards there was great buelie to lie after him, so for to vertine the same againe, but failed of theyr purpose. So came the ambassadour from *S. Nicholas* the twelth day of August, and arriued at Grauesend the twelth of September following, and attended her Spawles at the court at Orelands, where, after having left her Spawles hands, and deliuered some part of the successe of his ambassage, he presented her an Elk of Loffie, the Best beere of the country, and also a hare of Raine beere, Bucke & Doe, both bearing very huge homes: then in her Spawles presence drew a shew of a man vpon it, after the manner of the Samnians, a people that inhabit in the Northward from Russia, and were that yere come ouer the sea in the winter season vpon the ice, in their sleds, vpon men with these come into Russia, where the ambassadour brought of them summe, whereof he brought nine into Kent.

**A letter of M. Henrie Lane to the worshipfull M. William Sanderfon,** containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the Northeast discoverye for the space of three and thirtie yeeres.



After Sanderfon, as you lately requested mee, so haue I sought, and though I cannot finde things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine olde letters to content one that meant to pleasure many, I haue briefly and as truly as I may, drawn out a following: The which being may be pleased at your leisure, or as pleaseth him, shall take the paines.

If it be honourable attempte to discover by sea Northward and North-west named for Cathay, being chiefly procured by knowledge from King Edward the sixt, and other his nobilitie, by and at the cost and sute of *S. Sebastian Cabota*, then come for his discoveries with *Sir Andrew Iudde*, *Sir George Barnes*, *Sir William Garret*, *S. Anthonic Hulle*, and a compaigne of merchants, was in the last yere of his Spawles reigne 1553. The general charge thereof was committed to one *Sir Hugh Willoughbie knight*, a goodly Gentleman accompanied with sufficient number of Pilots, Spawles, Merchants and Mariners, hauing three shippes well furnished to wit, *The Bona Sperança*, *The Edward Bonadventure*, and *The Confidentia*. *The Edward Bonadventure*, *Richard Chancellor* being Pilot, and *Steuens Burrough Spawler*, hauing discovered *Ward house* vpon the coast of Finmarke, by storme of fogge departed from the rest, to vnder the bay of *S. Nicholas* now the chiefe port for Russia, there wintered in safetie, and had apd of people at a vylage called *Newnox*.

The other two shippes attempting further Northwards (as appeared by pamphlets founde after written by *Sir Hugh Willoughbie*) was in September encountered with such extreme colde, that they were backe to seeke a wintering place: and missing the saide baye fell vpon a best coast in *Lappia*, entering into a River immediately frozen by, since discovered, named *Arzina*,

Anno 1553. ap. William Burrough was then pilot and with his brother in this first voyage.

Reca, distant they never... Anno 1554 as heretofore... Anno 1557... Anno 1558... Anno 1559... Anno 1560... Anno 1561... Anno 1562... Anno 1563... Anno 1564... Anno 1565... Anno 1566... Anno 1567... Anno 1568... Anno 1569... Anno 1570... Anno 1571... Anno 1572... Anno 1573... Anno 1574... Anno 1575... Anno 1576... Anno 1577... Anno 1578... Anno 1579... Anno 1580... Anno 1581... Anno 1582... Anno 1583... Anno 1584... Anno 1585... Anno 1586... Anno 1587... Anno 1588... Anno 1589... Anno 1590... Anno 1591... Anno 1592... Anno 1593... Anno 1594... Anno 1595... Anno 1596... Anno 1597... Anno 1598... Anno 1599... Anno 1600... Anno 1601... Anno 1602... Anno 1603... Anno 1604... Anno 1605... Anno 1606... Anno 1607... Anno 1608... Anno 1609... Anno 1610... Anno 1611... Anno 1612... Anno 1613... Anno 1614... Anno 1615... Anno 1616... Anno 1617... Anno 1618... Anno 1619... Anno 1620... Anno 1621... Anno 1622... Anno 1623... Anno 1624... Anno 1625... Anno 1626... Anno 1627... Anno 1628... Anno 1629... Anno 1630... Anno 1631... Anno 1632... Anno 1633... Anno 1634... Anno 1635... Anno 1636... Anno 1637... Anno 1638... Anno 1639... Anno 1640... Anno 1641... Anno 1642... Anno 1643... Anno 1644... Anno 1645... Anno 1646... Anno 1647... Anno 1648... Anno 1649... Anno 1650... Anno 1651... Anno 1652... Anno 1653... Anno 1654... Anno 1655... Anno 1656... Anno 1657... Anno 1658... Anno 1659... Anno 1660... Anno 1661... Anno 1662... Anno 1663... Anno 1664... Anno 1665... Anno 1666... Anno 1667... Anno 1668... Anno 1669... Anno 1670... Anno 1671... Anno 1672... Anno 1673... Anno 1674... Anno 1675... Anno 1676... Anno 1677... Anno 1678... Anno 1679... Anno 1680... Anno 1681... Anno 1682... Anno 1683... Anno 1684... Anno 1685... Anno 1686... Anno 1687... Anno 1688... Anno 1689... Anno 1690... Anno 1691... Anno 1692... Anno 1693... Anno 1694... Anno 1695... Anno 1696... Anno 1697... Anno 1698... Anno 1699... Anno 1700... Anno 1701... Anno 1702... Anno 1703... Anno 1704... Anno 1705... Anno 1706... Anno 1707... Anno 1708... Anno 1709... Anno 1710... Anno 1711... Anno 1712... Anno 1713... Anno 1714... Anno 1715... Anno 1716... Anno 1717... Anno 1718... Anno 1719... Anno 1720... Anno 1721... Anno 1722... Anno 1723... Anno 1724... Anno 1725... Anno 1726... Anno 1727... Anno 1728... Anno 1729... Anno 1730... Anno 1731... Anno 1732... Anno 1733... Anno 1734... Anno 1735... Anno 1736... Anno 1737... Anno 1738... Anno 1739... Anno 1740... Anno 1741... Anno 1742... Anno 1743... Anno 1744... Anno 1745... Anno 1746... Anno 1747... Anno 1748... Anno 1749... Anno 1750... Anno 1751... Anno 1752... Anno 1753... Anno 1754... Anno 1755... Anno 1756... Anno 1757... Anno 1758... Anno 1759... Anno 1760... Anno 1761... Anno 1762... Anno 1763... Anno 1764... Anno 1765... Anno 1766... Anno 1767... Anno 1768... Anno 1769... Anno 1770... Anno 1771... Anno 1772... Anno 1773... Anno 1774... Anno 1775... Anno 1776... Anno 1777... Anno 1778... Anno 1779... Anno 1780... Anno 1781... Anno 1782... Anno 1783... Anno 1784... Anno 1785... Anno 1786... Anno 1787... Anno 1788... Anno 1789... Anno 1790... Anno 1791... Anno 1792... Anno 1793... Anno 1794... Anno 1795... Anno 1796... Anno 1797... Anno 1798... Anno 1799... Anno 1800... Anno 1801... Anno 1802... Anno 1803... Anno 1804... Anno 1805... Anno 1806... Anno 1807... Anno 1808... Anno 1809... Anno 1810... Anno 1811... Anno 1812... Anno 1813... Anno 1814... Anno 1815... Anno 1816... Anno 1817... Anno 1818... Anno 1819... Anno 1820... Anno 1821... Anno 1822... Anno 1823... Anno 1824... Anno 1825... Anno 1826... Anno 1827... Anno 1828... Anno 1829... Anno 1830... Anno 1831... Anno 1832... Anno 1833... Anno 1834... Anno 1835... Anno 1836... Anno 1837... Anno 1838... Anno 1839... Anno 1840... Anno 1841... Anno 1842... Anno 1843... Anno 1844... Anno 1845... Anno 1846... Anno 1847... Anno 1848... Anno 1849... Anno 1850... Anno 1851... Anno 1852... Anno 1853... Anno 1854... Anno 1855... Anno 1856... Anno 1857... Anno 1858... Anno 1859... Anno 1860... Anno 1861... Anno 1862... Anno 1863... Anno 1864... Anno 1865... Anno 1866... Anno 1867... Anno 1868... Anno 1869... Anno 1870... Anno 1871... Anno 1872... Anno 1873... Anno 1874... Anno 1875... Anno 1876... Anno 1877... Anno 1878... Anno 1879... Anno 1880... Anno 1881... Anno 1882... Anno 1883... Anno 1884... Anno 1885... Anno 1886... Anno 1887... Anno 1888... Anno 1889... Anno 1890... Anno 1891... Anno 1892... Anno 1893... Anno 1894... Anno 1895... Anno 1896... Anno 1897... Anno 1898... Anno 1899... Anno 1900... Anno 1901... Anno 1902... Anno 1903... Anno 1904... Anno 1905... Anno 1906... Anno 1907... Anno 1908... Anno 1909... Anno 1910... Anno 1911... Anno 1912... Anno 1913... Anno 1914... Anno 1915... Anno 1916... Anno 1917... Anno 1918... Anno 1919... Anno 1920... Anno 1921... Anno 1922... Anno 1923... Anno 1924... Anno 1925... Anno 1926... Anno 1927... Anno 1928... Anno 1929... Anno 1930... Anno 1931... Anno 1932... Anno 1933... Anno 1934... Anno 1935... Anno 1936... Anno 1937... Anno 1938... Anno 1939... Anno 1940... Anno 1941... Anno 1942... Anno 1943... Anno 1944... Anno 1945... Anno 1946... Anno 1947... Anno 1948... Anno 1949... Anno 1950... Anno 1951... Anno 1952... Anno 1953... Anno 1954... Anno 1955... Anno 1956... Anno 1957... Anno 1958... Anno 1959... Anno 1960... Anno 1961... Anno 1962... Anno 1963... Anno 1964... Anno 1965... Anno 1966... Anno 1967... Anno 1968... Anno 1969... Anno 1970... Anno 1971... Anno 1972... Anno 1973... Anno 1974... Anno 1975... Anno 1976... Anno 1977... Anno 1978... Anno 1979... Anno 1980... Anno 1981... Anno 1982... Anno 1983... Anno 1984... Anno 1985... Anno 1986... Anno 1987... Anno 1988... Anno 1989... Anno 1990... Anno 1991... Anno 1992... Anno 1993... Anno 1994... Anno 1995... Anno 1996... Anno 1997... Anno 1998... Anno 1999... Anno 2000... Anno 2001... Anno 2002... Anno 2003... Anno 2004... Anno 2005... Anno 2006... Anno 2007... Anno 2008... Anno 2009... Anno 2010... Anno 2011... Anno 2012... Anno 2013... Anno 2014... Anno 2015... Anno 2016... Anno 2017... Anno 2018... Anno 2019... Anno 2020... Anno 2021... Anno 2022... Anno 2023... Anno 2024... Anno 2025... Anno 2026... Anno 2027... Anno 2028... Anno 2029... Anno 2030... Anno 2031... Anno 2032... Anno 2033... Anno 2034... Anno 2035... Anno 2036... Anno 2037... Anno 2038... Anno 2039... Anno 2040... Anno 2041... Anno 2042... Anno 2043... Anno 2044... Anno 2045... Anno 2046... Anno 2047... Anno 2048... Anno 2049... Anno 2050... Anno 2051... Anno 2052... Anno 2053... Anno 2054... Anno 2055... Anno 2056... Anno 2057... Anno 2058... Anno 2059... Anno 2060... Anno 2061... Anno 2062... Anno 2063... Anno 2064... Anno 2065... Anno 2066... Anno 2067... Anno 2068... Anno 2069... Anno 2070... Anno 2071... Anno 2072... Anno 2073... Anno 2074... Anno 2075... Anno 2076... Anno 2077... Anno 2078... Anno 2079... Anno 2080... Anno 2081... Anno 2082... Anno 2083... Anno 2084... Anno 2085... Anno 2086... Anno 2087... Anno 2088... Anno 2089... Anno 2090... Anno 2091... Anno 2092... Anno 2093... Anno 2094... Anno 2095... Anno 2096... Anno 2097... Anno 2098... Anno 2099... Anno 2100...

outly one meant  
passage some  
coming from  
by himselfe and  
over haren did also  
company him) that  
to that should offer  
right) did make his  
way, at length he  
Emperour; and he  
summe of his  
person's name  
Emperour, know  
now to be dischar  
to prevent his dan  
assault that should  
brought him to  
delivered him as  
he happily (though  
great trouble  
The name of the  
the twelfth  
there; after having  
stage, he presented  
are, Suche & Do  
man upon it after  
Asia, and were cha  
men with these bea  
brought nine  
William  
ich

named for Cathay,  
nobilitie, by and  
Mr Andrew Iudee,  
of merchans, was  
was committed to  
sufficent number  
afforded to wit, The  
d Bonadventure,  
discovered Ward  
and the bay of  
of people at a  
pamphlets found  
such experience  
fell upon a delict  
o, named Arzina,  
Reca,

Reca, distant East from a Russian Monastery of Donkeys called Pechingham, from whence they never returned, but all in the number of 20. persons perished, which was for want of ex-  
pense, and want of victuals, and houses. These were found with the Shippes the next Summer  
Anno 1554. by Ruffe's Ambassadors, and in Anno 1555. the place sent unto by English Merchants  
as beere's appearance.

Anno 1554. the said Shippe Edward Bonadventure (although robbed home wards by Fle-  
ants) returned with her company to London, shipping and setting forth their entertainments  
and merriments of the country a coven to the cite of Mosco, from whence they brought a pinnace  
with them, with the bodies of great many souls, the other two shippes looked for & unknown  
to them were never seen.

An. 1555. The said company of Merchants for divers reasons upon a new supply, sent thither a  
gentle with them, to wit, the Edward Bonadventure, and others bearing the name of the King  
and Queene, Phillip and Marie, whose Spaietres by they letters to the said Polcovick, recom-  
mended them to the Emperour, who by letters of certaintie to wit, Richard Chancelour, George  
Killingworth, Henry Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrivall at the Bay, and passing by  
Dvina to Voloda, went first by to Mosco, where upon knowledge of the said letters, they with  
their company had speciall entertainment, with houses and diet appointed, and shortly permitted to  
the Emperour's presence, they were with gentleness brought through the cite of Mosco, to the ca-  
stle and palace, replenished with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entered sundrie  
rooms furnished in the way with sundrie greene personages, all in long garments of fustie colours,  
and called halberds, and bowes, as our vestments and coyes have been in England, furnished with  
capes, and chaires. These were found to be no countryes, but ancient Polcovicks, inhabi-  
tants, and other their merchants of credit, as the manner is, furnished thus from the wardrobe  
and Treasury, waiting and wearing this apparell for the time, and so to repose it.

Then coming into the presence, being a large roome flooyed with carpets, were men of more  
cheer, and richer shew, in number about an hundred set square, who after the said English men  
came in, doing reverence, they all stood by the place only sitting, and yet rising at any occasion,  
when our King and Queene's names were read or spoken. Then after speeches by interpretation  
of our men killing his hand, and bidden to dinner, were stayed in another room, and at dinner  
brought to them, where might be scene masse silver and gile plate, some like & as big as halber-  
dins, and halboobles, and entering the dining place, being the greater room, the prince was set  
here becom, his robe and rich cappe standing upon a pinnace by. Not farre distant, sat his  
Metropolitane, with divers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines: none set o-  
ver against him, or any, at other tables, their backs to wards him: which tables all furnished with  
gold and silver, there was for the Englishmen, named by the Ruffes, Ghoffi Carabelski, to wit, stran-  
gers or merchants by ship, a table in the middell of the room, where they were set direct against  
the prince: and then began the service, brought in by a number of his poong Lords and Gentle-  
men, in such rich attire, as is above specified, and still from the princes table (notwithstanding  
they saw furniture) they had his whole messes set over all in masse fine golde, delivered every  
time from him by name to them, by their severall Christian names, as they face, viz. Richard,  
George, Henry, Arthur. Likewise bread and sundry drincks of purified mead, made of fine white  
and clarified honie. At their sitting, the prince called them to his table, to receive: each one a cuppe  
from his hand to drinke, and took into his hand Master George Killingworths beard, which re-  
ceived over the table, and pleasantly delivered it the Metropolitane, who seeming to blesse it, said in  
Ruffe, this is Gods gift. As in deed at that time it was not only thicke, broad, & yellow colour'd,  
but in length sixe foot & two inches of all size. Then taking leave, being night, they were accompa-  
nied & followed with a number, carrying pots of drinke, and dishes of meat, desired to our lodging.

This were the two shippes, with the dead bodies of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people,  
were sent unto by Master Killingworth, (which remained there in Mosco, Agent almost two  
yeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recovered and found.

Anno 1556. The company sent two shippes for Russia, with extraordinary masters and sailers  
to bring home the two shippes, which were frozen in Lappia, in the river of Arzina aforesaid. The  
two shippes sent this yere from England sailing from Lapland to the Bay of S. Nicholas, toke  
in loading with passengers, to wit, a Ruffe ambassador, named Ioseph Nepey, and some of his men  
shipped with Richard Chancelour in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from  
Lappia, with all they new Masters and Mariners, never were heard of, but in foule weather,  
and wrought seas, after they two yeres wintering in Lapland, became, as is supposed, in search  
and sink, where in were drowned also divers Ruffes merchants, and servants of the ambassador.

Note.

Anno 1554.

Anno 1555.

The King and  
Queene's let-  
ters.

of Billings-  
worths beard  
of a miracu-  
lous length.

Anno 1556.

A third ship the Edward afterwards, sailing on the North part of Scotland, upon a rocke was altogether lost, and Master Chancelier, with divers other, drowned. The said Russe Ambassador, hardly escaping, with other his men, mariners, and some goods saved, were sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants (the messenger being M. Doctor Lawrence Hulse, and others.) And then, as in the chronicles appeareth, honourably entertained and treated at London.

This yeere also the companies furnished and sent out a pinelack, named the Serchchrist, to discover the harbours in the North coast from Norway to Wardhouse, and so to the Bay of St. Nicholas. There was in her Master and Pilot, Stephen Burrough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their discourse was beyond the Bay, as toward the Samocod, people dwelling neere the river of Ob, and found a sound of sea which an Island called Vignat, first by them put into the Card of Wapper. In that place they dyed some out of their ships pinelack, with hauled in August, by which circumstance, and lacke of store, they came backe to Russia, and wintered at Colmogro.

Anno 1557.

Boghar voyaged.

1560.

The first trade to the Narue. 1560.

Anno 1557. The companies with some good ships sent backe the said Russe Ambassador, and in companie with him, sent as an Agent, for further discourse, M. Doctor Anthony Jenkinson, who after ward anno 1558, with great favour of the Emperour of Moscovie, and his letters patentes directed to the King, and meaning to strike the Cathay by land, was by many troubles and companies of various Tartarians, encountered, and in danger: but keeping companie with merchants of Bacteria, Boghar, & Vrgeme, travelling with camels, he with his company, went to Boghar, and no further, whose entertainment of the King is to be had of Master Jenkinson, who returned anno 1559, to Moscovie. And in anno 1560. he, with Henry Lane, came home into England, which yeere was the first safe returne, without losse of ship, packe, or head straight, and burnings. And at this time was the first traffike to the Narue in Livonia, which continues with Lithuania, & all the dominions of Russia, with the market, faire, commodities, great towne & rivers, were sent unto by divers servants: the reports were taken by Henry Lane, Agent, and delivered to the companies, 1561. The trade to Ric, and Revel, of olde time hath bene long since frequented by our English nation, but this trade to the Narue was hitherto concealed from us by the Danes and Lubekers.

Anno 1561. the said Master Anthony Jenkinson went Agent into Russia, who the next yeere after, passing all the river of Volga to Astracan, and over the Caspian sea, returned in Persia, and opened the trade thither.

Also betwixt the yeeres of 1568. and 1573. sundry voyages after Master Jenkinson, were made by Thomas Alcocke, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Bannister, and Master Geoffrey Duckett, whose returne (if spoile neere Volga had not prevented by routing the enemies) had almost beene saved and recovered the companies (called the olde companies) great losse, charges, and damages: but the saying is true, By vnicie small things grow great, and by contention great things become small. This may be understood best by the companies. The forwardnes of some few, and enill doing of some unskillfull factors, was cause of much of the enill success.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579, and died in the voyage at Astracan. About which matters, are to be remembered the voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambassador, anno 1567. And late of Sir Jerome Bowes, anno 1583. both trading and treating for further discoveries, freedoms, & privileges, to be had with Imedie not. But in conclusion, for their pastes and adventures this way (as divers doe now waape other waapes) as woorthie Gentlemen sent from princes, to doe their Countrey good, I put them in your memorie, with my hearty farewell. From M. Margarets neere Dartforth in Kene.

Yours Henrie Lane.

The late ambassage of Master Giles Fletcher, Doctor of the  
Ciuill Law sent from her Maiestie to the Emperour  
of Russia, Anno 1588.

**I**n the yeere 1588, was sent Ambassador from her Highnesse, into the Countrey of Russia, Giles Fletcher Doctor of the Ciuill Law, as well to create with the new Emperour Phedor Iuanowich, about league and amitie, in like manner as was before with his father Iuan Vasilowich, as also for the reestablishing and reducing into order the decayed trade of our English men there. And who notably standing at his first arrivall at the Mosco, founde some parties of hard intercoment, by means of certaine rumors, concerning the late nauall victorie, which was there reported

Alcocke slain in Persia. Bannister died in Persia. Edwards died at Astracan.

ported to haue  
cause of our  
conditions, and  
increased of, and

1 A continu  
Phedor Iuanow  
2 A confirm  
English merch  
necessary addi  
after, viz. That  
ticular men, b  
corporation, v  
3 That vpr  
milled, as befo  
4 That iust  
upon such as  
paiment, taxat  
5 That the  
time they ha  
the said Empe  
fate to be tak  
6 That the  
are made by u  
7 That the  
siant in that co  
as the agent sh  
places of the l  
8 That the  
northern selue  
good. But in  
strany name  
held as priuat  
9 That if a  
crise, as selio  
tormented, til  
done, the wh  
10 That t  
of the Emper  
11 That r  
countries, by  
12 Where  
debt, made b  
stocke was in  
and houiser  
three marks  
The said  
Of the Russe  
1 Of ch  
2 Of ch  
3 Of ch  
4 Of ch  
5 Of ch  
6 Of ch  
7 Of ch  
8 Of ch  
9 Of ch  
10 Of ch  
11 Of ch  
12 Of ch  
13 Of ch  
14 Of ch  
15 Of ch  
16 Of ch  
17 Of ch  
18 Of ch  
19 Of ch  
20 Of ch



ported to have fallen on the Spanish side, as also for some dislike conceived against the privileged state of our English merchants. Yet in the end obtained of the Emperour many good & equal conditions, and was courteously and honorably dismissed by him. The principall points which by treaty were granted unto him by the said Emperour, were these.

1. A continuation of league and amitie betwene her Highnesse, and the said Emperour Phœdor Iuanowich, in like manner as was before with his father Iuan Yafowlow.

2. A confirmation and reestablishment of the former privileges of the company of our English merchants, which were infringed and annulled in the principall points, with diuers necessary additions to the same, for the better ordering of their trade in those countries hereafter, viz. That the state of the priuilege granted before in the names of some priuate and particular men, be altered in that point, and the same granted by the name and stile of their incorporation, viz. To the fellowship of English merchants, for the discouerie of new trades.

3. That vpon euery furnise and light quarrell, the said priuilege be not reuoked, and annulled, as before time it hath bene.

4. That iustice shall be admittred to the said companie and their agent, without delay, vpon such as shall offer them any despite or iniurie, or shall exact or impose vpon them any payment, taxation, or imposition whatsoeuer, contrary to the freedom of the said grant.

5. That the goods and commodities of the said companie, be not forcibly taken, as before time they haue bene by the Emperours officers, or people of authoritie, either for the vse of the said Emperour or of his officers. But in case they haue need of the said commodities, the same to be taken at reasonable prices, and for ready money.

6. That the said companie be not charged heereafter with the answering of such debts as are made by any English man, nor being of the societie.

7. That the Emperours authorized people, shall not heereafter repute any English man resident in that country, to be any factor, seruant, or dealer in the said companie's affaires, but such as the agent shall inregister by name, within the offices where custome is entred in all such places of the land, where the said companie haue residencies to traffike.

8. That the names of such as shall so be inregistred, be no longer continued in record, nor themselves reputed as factors or dealers, for the said companie, then the agent shall thinke good. But in case the said agent in his discretion shall thinke meet to strike out of the register any name of such as haue bene employed in the companie's seruite, the said person to be held as priuate, and whose act in bargaining or otherwise, shall not charge the said companie.

9. That if any English man within the countrey of Russia, be suspected for any notorious crime, as felony, treason, &c. the same be not straight waies set vpon the Pudkey, nor otherwise tormented, till such time as he shall be conuicted by plaine and euident proofes: which being done, the whole proceeding to be sent ouer to the Queene of England.

10. That the said priuilege, with the additions, shall be published in all townes and parts of the Emperours dominions, where the said companie haue traffike.

11. That the said companie shall be permitted to vse a sole trade through the Emperours countries, by the riuier Volga, into Media, Persia, Bogharia, and the other the East countries.

12. Whereas there was claimed of the said companie, the summe of 23553. markes of debt, made by certaine of their factors for the said companie, for payment whereof, their whole stocke was in danger of arrest, by publike authoritie: Further also 2140. rubbles for custome and house-rent, he obtained a rebatement of seuentene thousand, eleuen hundred, fiftie and three markes of the said debt.

The said Ambassado, Master Giles Fletcher, as I understand hath written a booke, intituled, Of the Russe Common wealth, containing:

First, A Cosmographical description of the countrey, which hath these chapters.

1. Of the length and breadth of the countrey of Russia, with the names of the shires.
2. Of the soile and climat.
3. Of the native commodities of the countrey.

Secondly, a description of their pollicie, contained in these Chapters, viz.

1. Of the constitution or state of the Russe Common wealth.
2. Of their Parliaments, and manner of holding them.
3. Of the Russe Nobilitie, and means, whereby it is kept in an vnder proportion, agreeable to that state.
4. Of the manner of gouerning their prouinces or shires.

- 6 Of the Emperours private counsell, and their revenues, with the practice for the increase of them.
  - 7 Of the Russe commodities, and their condition.
  - 8 Of their publike iustice, and maner of proceeding therein.
  - 9 Of the Emperours forces for his warres, with the chiefe officers, & their salary or pay.
  - 10 Of their maner of mustering, arming, and provision for victuall.
  - 11 Of their ordering, marching, charging, and their martiall discipline.
  - 12 Of their colonies, and policie in maintaining their purchases by conquest.
  - 13 Of their borderers, with whom they have most to do in warre and peace.
  - 14 Of their church offices, and degrees.
  - 15 Of their liturgie, or forme of church seruice.
  - 16 Of their maner of administering the Sacraments.
  - 17 Of the doctrine of the Russe church.
  - 18 Of the maner of solemnizing their marriages.
  - 19 Of the other ceremonies of the Russe church.
- Thirdly the Oeconomie or private behavior of the Russe, containing these chapters.*
- 20 Of the Emperours household officers, and order of his house.
  - 21 Of the private behavior and maner of the Russe people.

The booke it selfe beinge not good, for diuers considerations, to make publike at this time.

**A testimony of the Northeastern discouerie, made by the English, and of the profit that may arise by pursuing the same: taken out of the second volume of navigations, and voyages, fol. 17. of the notable Cosmographer M. Iohn Baptista Ramusius, Secretarie to the state of Venice: Written in Italian, in the yeere, 1557.**

**D**alle parti poi di sotto la nostra Tramontana, che chiascono scrittori & Cosmographi di questi & de passati tempi fin hora vi ha messo & mette mare congelato, & che la terra corra continuamente fino a 90. gradi verso il Polo: sopra questo mapamondo all'incontro si vede che la terra vi solamente un poco sopra la Noruega & Suetia, & volando corre poi Greco & Levante nel paese della Mosconia & Rossia, & va diritto al Caspio. Et che cio sia la verita, le navigationi che hanno fatte gli Inglesi con le loro navi, volendo andare a scoprire il Caspio al tempo del Re Odoardo Sesto d'Inghilterra, questi anni passati, ne possono far vera testimonianza: perche nel mezzo del loro viaggio, capitate per fortuna a liti di Mosconia, dove trovarono alhora regnare Giouanni Vasiluich Imperatore, della Rossia & gran Duca di Mosconia, il quale con molto piacere & meraviglia vedendogli, fece grandissime carezze, hanno trovato quel mare essere navigabile, & non agghiacciato. La qual navigatione (ancor che con l'esito fin hora non sia bene intesa) se col spesse frequentarla & col lungo uso & cognitione di que mari si continuerà, e per fare grandissima navigatione & riuolgimento nelle cose di questa nostra parte del mondo.

*of The same in English.*

**M**oreouer (having before spoken of diuers particularities, in an excellent mappe of Paulus Venetus) on that part lieth to our North pole, where euery writer & Cosmographer of these, and of former times hitherto, haue, and doe place the frozen sea, and that the land stretcheth continually to 90. degrees towards the pole: contrariwise, in this mappe is to be seene, that the land extendeth only a little aboue Norway and Suechland, and then turning it selfe, extendeth at certwars towards the Southeast, and by East, vnto the country of Moscouie and Russia, and stretcheth directly vnto Cathay. And that this is true, the navigatione which the English men haue of late made, intending to discouer Cathay, in the time of Edward the first king of England, are very sufficient witnesses. For in the mids of their voyage, lighting by chance vpon the coast of Moscouie (where they found then reigning Iohn Vasiluich Emperour of Russia, and great duke of Moscouie, who after he had to his great delight, and admiration, seene the English men, enterteyned them with exceeding great courtesies) found this sea to be navigable, and not frozen. This navigation to Cathay, although it be not as yet thoroughly knowen, yet if with often frequenting the same, and by long use and knowledge of those seas, it be continued, it is like to make a wonderfull change and riuolution in the state of this our part of the world.

Forren testi  
The testim  
of Eit



The most fam  
great occasio  
discouery hath the  
che last elcuation,  
of the city of Mosc  
concerning of the fl  
I though it may bu  
hath bene publi

Another te  
the same



navigationem B  
uehunt argenti v  
res merces, ad vi  
gula, pericelide  
aeris pretiofas a

**D**U least all,  
Duards, the  
nered the Roeth  
the traffike of th  
the Ocean sea,  
the the coast o  
coast of Gronel  
conflict with th  
small mercerie  
gainers, purfes  
all kinde of pe

The testimonie of Gerardus Mercator, in his last large mappe of Europe, touching the notable discoveries of the English, made of Moscouie by the Northeast.

**M**agnam occasionem certamque rationem emendandæ Europæ nobis attulit celeberrima Anglorum per Cronium mare navigatio: quæ littora Septentrionalia Finlappiæ Moscouiæque iuxta cæli situm, mundi que plagas digesta habet. Exacta etiam vrbis Moscuæ latitudo ab Anglis obseruata, interiorum Regionum emendatiùs describendarum infallibilem legem præscripsit: Quibus oblati ad miniculis pulcherrimis, iniquum putauit tabulam hanc castigatiorem non reddere.

¶ The same in English.

The most famous navigation of the English men by the Northeast sea, hath offered unto me a great occasion, and certaine direction for the reformation of the mappe of Europe: which discoverie hath the Northeast parts of Finmarke, Lapland, and Moscouie, laid out according to the iust situation, and the quarters of the world. And further, the true obseruation of the latitude of the city of Mosco, made by the foresaid Englishmen, hath yeelded me an infallible rule, for the correcting of the situation of the inland countreies: which notable helps being ministered vnto me, I thought it my duty to exhibit to the world this mappe, more exact and perfect, then hitherto it hath bene published.

Another testimonie of Ioannes Metellus Sequanus, concerning the same navigation, and discoverie, in his preface prefixed before

Olorius de rebus gestis Emanuelis Regis Portugalliæ,  
written about the yeere, 1574.

**N**e omnis, vnus Hispanis, Oceani maris gloria totaque concederetur, Britannii Septentriones noua in Moscouiam navigatione, ab hinc annis viginti plus minus illustrarunt. Nam bellis Sueticiis à Moscouitarum, Naruæque Liouoniæ exclusi commercio, iter ad illos Oceano, hinc Noruegiæ, Finmarchiæ, Lappiæ, Scricfinniæ, Biarmixque: illinc Groenlandiæ littora præteruerti, vltra Septuagesimum latitudinis Aquilonaris gradum sibi patefaciunt. Quam navigationem Belgæ postea, non sine tamen cum ipsidem Britannis velitatione, sunt secuti. Eò vehunt argenti veteris fragmenta, lineæque vestes propè detritas, omnisque generis minutiores merces, ad vsum, cultumque corporis hominum vtriusque sexus, veluti lineæ & byssea cingula, periscelides, crumenas, cultros, & id genus sexcenta. A Moschis autem pelles omnis generis pretiosas adferunt, & Salmones salitos, fumoque duratos.

¶ The same in English.

But least all, and the whole glorie of discovering the Ocean sea, should be ascribed to the Spaniards, the English men about twenty yeeres past, by a new navigation into Moscouie, discovered the Northeast parts. For they by reason of the warres of Swechland, being hindered from the traffike of the Moscouites, and of the Narue in Liland, opened a passage for themselves by the Ocean sea, beyond the Northeast latitude of 70, degrees: hauing in the way course on the one side the coasts of Norway, Finmarke, Lapland, Scrickine, and Biarmia: On the other side the coast of Groneland. Which voyage the Hollanders afterward entred into, but not without some conflict with the English. They carry thither olde place, and course linnen cloth, and all kinde of small mercerie wares, seruing for the apparelling of men and women, as linnen, and silke girdles, garters, puttes, kinnies, and many such like things. And they bring away from the Moscouites, all kinde of pretious fures, and Salmones salted, and dried in the smoke.

The end of the second part.

The testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.

A new occasion of certifying the testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.



The same in English.

The testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.

Another testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.

The testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.



The same in English.

The testimony of Charles Martel in his last will and testament touching the notable conquest of the West Indies.

The end of the second part.



THE TH principal made so

The voye



land to farre 1200  
This land mu  
selves to be the fir  
land to the which  
upon it is manife  
bus of Americas  
we there be man  
rather to augmen  
home, and declar  
upon the contrar  
another, he prep  
to live in quietne  
foye it is to be p  
by Francis Lo  
Wierchy it ma  
aros. But beca  
to and used the  
This I ad  
let most of his  
friends, to imbat  
ted by Gutyn  
The causes wh  
The comm  
der from a str



THE THIRD AND LAST PART OF THE  
 principall Navigations and Discoueries of the English nation

made to the West, Northwest, and Southwest parts of the world, with  
 the Letters, Priuileges, Discourses, Obseruations, and other  
 necessarie thinges concerning the same.

The voyage of Madoc the sonne of Owen Guyneth Prince of Northwales,  
 to the West Indies, in the yeere 1170: taken out of the hi-  
 storie of Wales, lately published by M. David  
 Powel Doctor of Divinitie.



For the death of Owen Gwyneth, his sonnes fell at  
 debate who should inherit after him: for the eldest sonne  
 boine in matrimony, Edward of Iorwerth Drwydion,  
 was counted on to governe, because of the maine  
 vpon his face: and Powel that tooke vpon him all the  
 rule was a base sounr, begotten vpon an Irish woman.  
 Therefore Dauit gathered all the power he could, and  
 came against Powel, and fighting with him slew him,  
 & afterwards intored quietly the whole land of North-  
 wales, until his brother Iorwerth's sonne came to age.  
 Madoc another of Owen Gwyneth his sonnes left the  
 land in contention betwixt his brethren, & prepared cer-  
 taine ships, with men and munition, and sought adven-  
 tures by seas sailing West, and leauing the coast of Ire-

Madoc the  
 sonne of Owen  
 Gwyneth.

land so farre North, that he came to a land vnknooen, where he saw many strange things.

This land must needs be some part of that countrey of which the Spanyards affirme them-  
 selves to be the first finders since Hannoes time. For by reason, and order of Cosmographie, this  
 land to the which Madoc came, must needs be some part of Noua Hispania, or Florida. Where-  
 vpon it is manifest that this countrey was long before by Britaines discovered, as by Colu-  
 mbus of Americus Vesputius led any Spanyards thither. Of the voyage and returne of this Ma-  
 doc there be many fables fained, as the common people do vse in distance of place & length of time  
 rather to augment then to diminish, but sure it is that there he was. And after he had returned  
 home, and declared the pleasant and fruitfull countreyes that he had seene without inhabitants, and  
 vpon the contrary part, for what barren wilde ground his brethren and neyghes did meet her one  
 another, he prepared a number of shippes, & got with him such men and women as were desirous  
 to line in quietnesse, and taking leave of his friends,ooke his iourney thitherward againe. There-  
 fore it is to be presupposed, that he & his people inhabited part of those countreyes: for it appeareth  
 by Francis Lopez de Gomara, that in Acuzamil and other places the people honored the crosse.  
 Whereby it may be gathered that Christians had bene there before the coming of the Spany-  
 ards. But because this people were not many, they followed the maners of the land they came in-  
 to, and vsed the language they found there.

Wm. Lloyd.

Gomara lib. 2.  
 cap. 16.

This Madoc arriving in that Western countrey, vnto the which he came in the yeere 1170,  
 left most of his people there, and returning backe for more of his owne nation, acquaintance and  
 friends, to inhabit that sayde and large countrey, went thither againe with ten sailes, as I finde no-  
 ted by Owen Owen. I am of opinion that the land wherunto he came, was some part of Mexico.  
 The causes which make me to thinke so be these,

Ed. Petrus  
 abbat.

1 The common report of the inhabitants of that countrey, which affirme that they rulers descen-  
 ded from a strange nation that came thither from a farre countrey. Which thing is confessed by

Mutezuma king of that country, in an oration made for quieting of his people, at his submission to the king of Castile, Hernando Cortes being then present, which is laid downe in the Spanish chronicles of the conquest of the West Indies.

Don. Ingram,  
Sir. Humber  
Giberts his  
courtier.

The British voyages, and names of places used in that countrey, even to this day, doe argue the same, as when they talke together, they use this word Gwrand which is, Dearthen of India, Also they have a certaine bird with a white head, which they call Pengwyn, that is, White head, but the Island of Corcofo, the river of Guyndor, and the white rocks of Pengwyn, which be all British or Welsh words, do manifestly shew that it was that countrey which Madoc and his people inhabited.

**Carmina Meredith filij Rhesi mentionem facientia de Madoco  
filio Oweni Gwynedd, & de sua navigatione in terras incognitas.**

Vixit hic Meredith circiter Annum Domini

1477.

These verses  
I received of  
my learned  
friend Mr.  
William  
Gamben.

**M**Adoc wyf, mwyedic wedd,  
Lawn genau, Owen Gwynedd:  
Ni fynnum dir, fy enaid oedd  
Na da mawr, ond y moroedd.

*¶ The same in English.*

**M**Adoc I am the same of Owen Gwynedd  
Welsh stature large, and comely grace adorne:  
No lands at home nor store of wealth me please,  
My minde was wbole to search the Ocean seas.

**The offer of the discoverie of the West Indies by Christopher  
Columbus to King Henrie the seventh in the yeere 1488 the 13 of**

February: with the Kings acceptation of the offer, and the cause where-  
upon he was deprived of the same, recorded in the thirteenth  
chapter of the historie of Don Fernand Columbus  
of the life and deeds of his Father Christo-  
pher Columbus.

**C**ristophoro Colon temendo, se parimento i Re di Castiglia non assentissero alla sua impresa, non gli bisognasse parlarla di nuovo à qualche altro principe, & così in ciò passasse lungo tempo: mandò in Inghilterra un suo fratello, che hauena appreso di se, chiamato Bartholomeo Colon: il qual quantunque non hauesse lettere Latine, era però hno mo: pratico, & giudizioso nelle cose del mare, & sapea molto bene far carte da nauigare, & sphere, & altri instrumenti di quella professione, come dal suo fratello era instruito. Partito adunque Bartholomeo Colon per Inghilterra, volle la sua sorte, che desse in man di corsali, quali lo spogliarono insieme con gli altri della sua nave. Per la qual cosa, & per la sua povertà & infermità, che in così diuerse terre lo assalirono crudelmente, prolungo per gran tempo la sua ambasciata, fin che, acquistata un poco di facilità con le carte, ch'ei fabricaua, cominciò a far pratiche cò il Re Enrico settimo, padre di Enrico octauo, che al presente regna: a cui appresentò un mappamondo, nel quale erano scritti questi versi, che fra le sue scritture lo trouaui, & da me saranno qui posti pin tosto per l'antichità, che per la loro eleganza.

Terrarum quicunque cupis feliciter oras  
Noscere, cuncta decens doctè pictura docebit,  
Quam Strabo affirmat, Ptolomæus, Plinius, atque  
Isidorus: non vna tamen sententia cuique.  
Pingitur hic etiam nuper sulcata carinis  
Hispanis Zona illa, prius incognita genti  
Torrida, quæ tandem nunc est notissima multis.

*Es pin di sotto dierna.*

Pro

Iantua  
Colum  
Londra  
Oceano  
Febru

Es, perciocche  
vidde alcune forte  
Columbus de terra  
dura, & cio che l'  
mare. Ma, percioc  
dura, & tornato e  
ra di raccontar ch  
raglio, &c.

**C**hristopher  
Columbus had  
same againe to  
caine brother of  
bet he had not the  
causes, and could  
fession, as he was  
departed for Eng  
of them which was  
uery and skillful  
red his ambassag  
him with making  
the of Henry the  
world, wherein  
them downe, rath

Thou who  
This com  
Which S  
Per for all  
Per re all  
By Doct  
Wherof

De, who  
Euen he  
The pee  
And eight  
In Lond

And beaufe  
bra, I say, than  
bus, before he  
rubra. But to  
my father Ch  
and sent to call  
lumbus was g  
herafter in o  
which Bartho

his submission in the Spanish  
at day, doe argue  
Dearken of Liden,  
is, White head,  
wyn, which be all  
doe and his people

le Madoco  
gnitas.

Christopher  
the 13 of  
wher-  
th

o alla sua impresa,  
cio passasse lungo  
chiamato Barthe-  
nomo pratico, &  
altri instrumen-  
holmeo Colon per  
e con gli altri del-  
terre lo assalirono  
o ai faculta con le  
rico ottano, che al-  
rsi, che fra la sua  
le ganna.

Pro autore siue pictore.

Iantua cui patriz est nomen, cui Bartholomæus  
Columbus de terra rubra, opus edidit istud,  
Londonijs anno Domini 1480 atque insuper anno,  
Octauo decimaque die cum tertia mensis  
Februarij. Laudes Christo cantentur abundè.

Es, percioche amertirà alcuno, che dice Columbus de terra rubra, dico, che medesimamente lo  
viddo alcune sottoscrittioni dell' Ammiraglio, primo che acquistasse lo stato, on'egli si fosse scrivenua,  
Columbus de terra rubra. Ma, tornando al Re d' Inghilterra, dico, che, da lui il mappa moudo ve-  
duta, & cio che l' Ammiraglio gli offerima, con allegro volto accetto la sua offerta, & mandolo a chia-  
maro. Ma, percioche Dio l'hauena per Castiglia serbata, già l' Ammiraglio in quel tempo era an-  
dato, & tornato con la vittoria della sua impresa, secondo che per ordine si racconterà. Lasciàto ho-  
ra di raccontar ciò, che Bartolomeo Colon ha uena negociato in Inghilterra, & tornato all' Ammi-  
raglio, &c.

The same in English.

Christopher Columbus fearing least if the king of Castile in like maner (as the king of Por-  
tingall had done) should not condescend vnto his enterpryse, he should be inforced to offer the  
same againe to some other pynre, and so much time should be spent therin, sent into England a cer-  
taine brother of his which he had with him, whose name was Bartholomew Columbus, who, al-  
beit he had not the Latine tongue, yet neuertheless was a man of experience and skillfull in sea  
causes, and could very well make sea cards & globes, and other instruments belonging to that pro-  
fession, as he was instructed by his brother. Wherefore after that Bartholomew Columbus was  
departed for England, his lucke was to fall into the hands of pirates, which spoiled him with the rest  
of them which were in the ship which he went in. Upon which occasion, and by reason of his po-  
uerty and sicknesse which cruelly assaulted him in a country so far distant from his friends, he deferred  
his ambassage for a long while, untill such time as he had gotten somewhat handsome about  
him with making of sea cards. At length he began to deale with king Henry the sixtenth the fa-  
ther of Henry the eighth, which reigned at this present: vnto whom he presented a mappe of the  
world, wherein these verses were written, which I found among his papers: and I will heere set  
them downe, rather for theyr antiquity then for theyr goodnesse.

Thou which desirest easily the coasts of lands to know,  
This comely mappe right learnedly the same to thee will shew:  
Which Strabo, Plinie, Ptolomew and Isidore maintaine:  
Yet for all that they do not all in one accord remaine.  
Here also is set downe the late discovered burning Zone  
By Portugallies, vnto the world which whilom was unknowne,  
Which of the knowledge now at length though all the world is downe.  
And a little vnder he added.

For the author or the drawer.

Ye, whose deare native soyle height shal be Genua,  
Euen he whose name is Bartholomew Colon de Terra rubra,  
The peere of grace a thousand and foure hundred and fourescore  
And eight, and on the thirteenth day of February moxe,  
In London published this word, To Christ all land therefore.

And beause some peradventure may obserue, that he calleth himselfe Columbus de Terra  
rubra, I say, that in like maner I haue seene some subscriptions of my father Christopher Colum-  
bus, before he had the degree of Admirall, wherein he signed his name thus, Columbus de Terra  
rubra. But to returne to the king of England, I say, that after he had seene the map, & that which  
my father Christopher Columbus offered vnto him, he accepted the offer with ioyfull countenance,  
and sent to call him into England. But because God had reserved the said offer for Castile, Co-  
lombus was gone in the meane space, and also returned with the performance of his enterpryse, as  
hereafter in order shall be rehear'd. Now will I leave off from making any farther mention of that  
which Bartholomew Colon had negociated in England, and I will returne vnto the Admirall, &c.

King Henry  
his accepta-  
tion of Co-  
lombus offer.

Another testimony taken out of the 60 chapter of the foresayd  
*histry of Ferdinando Columbus, concerning the offer that*

Bartholomew Columbus made to king Henric the seuenth  
 on the behalfe of his brother Christopher.



*Ornato adunque l' Ammiraglio dallo scoprimento di Cuba & di Giamaica, trovò nella Spagnuola Bartolomeo Colon suo fratello, quello, che era già andato a trattare accordo col Re d' Inghilterra sopra lo scoprimento delle Indie, come di sopra habiamo detto. Questo poi, ritornando sene verso Castiglia con capitoli conceduti, hauera inteso a Parigi dal re Carlo di Francia, l' Ammiraglio suo fratello hauer già scoperte l' Indie: perche gli somenne per poter far il Viaggio di cento scudi. Et, Auenga che per coral vnua egl' si fosse molto affrettato, per arrimar l' Ammiraglio in Spagna, quando non dimeno giunse a Sinigaglia, egli era già tornato alle Indie co' 17 nauigli. Perche, per eseguir quanto ci gli hauea lasciato, di subito al principio dell' anno del 1494. sen' andò al Re Catholico, menando seco Don diego Colon, mio fratello, & me ancora, accioche seruisimo di paggi al serenissimo prencipe Don Giouanni, il qual vna in gloria, sicome hauea comandato la Catholica Reina donna Isabella, che allora era in Valadolid. Tosto adunque che noi giungemmo, i Re chiamarono don Bartholomeo & Mandaronlo alla Spagnuola con tre nauì, &c.*

*¶ The same in English.*

**C**hristopher Columbus the Admirall being returned from the discovery of Cuba and Iamaya, found in Hispaniola his brother Bartholomew Columbus, who before had bene sent to treat of an agreement with the king of England for the discovery of the Indies, as we haue said before. This Bartholomew therefore returning vnto Castile, with the capitulations granted by the king of England to his brother, vnder stood at Paris by Charles the king of France, that the Admirall his brother, had already performed that discovery: and gaue him 100 crownes towards his voyage. And albeit he made great haste vpon this good newes to meet with the Admirall in Spain, yet at his comming to Sinigaglia his brother was already returned to the Indies, with 17 saile of shippes. Wherefore to fulfill that which he had left him in charge, in the beginning of the yeere 1494 he repayed to the Catholike princes, taking with him Diego Colon my brother and me also, which were to be preferred as pages to the most excellent prince Don Iohn, who now is with God, according to the commandement of the Catholike Quene lady Isabell, which was then in Valadolid. As soone therefore as we came to the Court, the princes called for Don Bartholomew, and sent him to Hispaniola with three shippes, &c.

The letters patents of king Henry the seuenth granted vnto  
*Iohn Cabot and his three sonnes, Lewis, Sebastian, and Sancius,*  
 for the discouerie of new and vknowne lands.



Henricus Dei gratia rex Angliæ & Franciæ, & Dominus Hiberniæ, omnibus ad quos præsentis literæ nostræ peruenerint, salutem.  
 Notum sit & manifestum, quòd dedimus & concessimus, ac per præsentem damus & concedimus pro nobis & hæredibus nostris, dilectis nobis Iohanni Caboto ciui Venetiarum, Lodouico, Sebastiano, & Sancio, filijs dicti Iohannis, & eorum ac cuiuslibet eorum hæredibus & deputatis, plenam ac liberam autoritatem, facultatem & potestatem nauigandi ad omnes partes, regiones, & sinus maris orientalis, occidentalis, & septentrionalis, sub banneris, vexillis, & insignijs nostris, cum quinque nauibus siue nauigijs, cuiuscunq; portituræ & qualitatis existant, & cum rot & tantis nautis & hominibus, quot & quantos in dictis nauibus secum ducere voluerint, suis & eorum proprijs sumptibus & expensis, ad inueniendum, discooperiendum, & inuestigandum quascunq; insulas, patrias, regiones siue prouincias gentiliū & infidelium quoruncunq; in quacunq; parte mundi positas, quæ Christianis omnibus ante hæc tempora fuerint incognitæ. Concessimus etiam eisdem & eorum cuiuslibet, eorumq; & cuiuslibet eorum hæredibus & deputatis, ac licentiam dedimus ad affigendum prædictas banneras nostras & insignia in quacunq; villa, oppido, castro, insula seu terra firma à se nouiter inuentis. Et quòd prænominatus Iohannes, & filij eiusdem, seu hæredes & eorum deputati, quascunq; huiusmodi villas, castra, oppida,

pida, & insulas possidere valea dominium, citu terræ firmæ sic emolumentis, præfatus Iohannes omni viagio suo applicare teneat eoldem factis, re: Dantes no stumorum omni sic nouiter inu hæredibus & d a se inueniat, q frequentari se putatorum, su loca sic inuent gulis nostris su deputatis, bon sione quietatu prouidentaru cuius rei testin asterium qui

**H**enry by these pat

Be it knowne and our besyes sames of the authority, Ieau the North, and be, and as many proper costs and vices of the which before to curry of the reue to sit vnto found. occupy and po of the same vil

Yet so that den of all the voyage, as oft and holden on to pay vnto being vnto the of all and sin found.

And moxco firme landes, to finde, may foresayd Iohn shippes, as of a dwelling, an sea, appointe



the foresayd  
r that  
h

di Giamaica, irom  
va andato a trattare  
me di sopra habiamo  
i concedati, hanna  
atello hauer gia sco-  
so fandi. Et, An-  
pagna, quando non  
er esseguit quanto ci  
olici, menando seco  
ssimo principe Don  
adonna Isabella, che  
don Bartholomeo &

Cuba and Iamay-  
oze had bene sent to  
ics, as we haue said  
lactons granted by  
ag of France, that  
m 100 crotones to  
merc with the Ad-  
rned to the Indies,  
parage, in the begin-  
Diego Colon my  
prince Don Iohn,  
erue lady Tabell,  
e pynces callcott

anted vnto  
ancius,

berniz, omnibus

us, ac per presen-  
dilectis nobis Io-  
Sancio, filijs dicti  
tis, plenam ac li-  
regiones, & sinus  
guis nostris, cum  
cum tot & tantis  
int, suis & eorum  
igandum qualcu-  
munque, in qua-  
uerint incognita,  
hæredibus & de-  
signia in quacun-  
renominatus Io-  
li villas, castra, op-  
pida,

pida, & insulas à se inuentas, quæ subiugari, occupari, possideri possint, subiugare, occupare, possidere valeant tanquam vasalli nostri, & gubernatores, locatentes, & deputati eorundem, dominium, titulum & iurisdictionem earundem villarum, castrorum, opidorum, insularum, ac terræ firmæ sic inuentorum nobis acquirentido. Ita tamen, vt ex omnibus fructibus, proficijs, emolumentis, commodis, lucris, & obuentionibus ex huiusmodi nauigatione prouenientibus, præfatus Iohannes, & filij ac hæredes, & eorum deputati, teneantur & sint obligati nobis pro omni viagi suo, toties quoties ad portum nostrum Bristollicæ applicuerint (ad quem omnino applicare teneantur & sint ascripti) deductis omnibus sumptibus & impensis necessarijs per eosdem factis, quintam partem capitalis lucri facti, siue in mercibus, siue in pecunijs perfolue- re: Dantes nos & concedentes eisdem suisq; hæredibus & deputatis, vt ab omni solutione cus- tumarum omnium & singulorum bonorum & mercium, quas secum reportarint ab illis locis sic nouiter inuentis, liberi sint & immunes. Et insuper dedimus & concessimus eisdem ac suis hæredibus & deputatis, quod terræ omnes firmæ, insulæ, villæ, oppida, castra, & loca quæcunq; à se inuenta, quotquot ab eis inueniri contigerit, non possint ab alijs quibusuis nostris subditis frequentari seu visitari, absque licentia prædictorum Ioannis & eius filiorum suorum quorundem de- putatorum, sub pœna amissionis tam nauium quàm bonorum omnium quorumcunq; ad ea loca sic inuenta nauigare præsummentium. Volentes & strictissime mandantes omnibus & sin- gulis nostris subditis, tam in terra quàm in mari constitutis, vt præfato Ioanni, & eius filijs ac deputatis, bonam assistentiam faciunt, & tam in armandis nauibus seu nauigijs, quàm in prouide- tiene quietatis & victualium pro sua pecunia emendorum, atque aliarum omnium rerum sibi prouidentiarum pro dicta nauigatione sumenda suos omnes fauores & auxilia impertiant. In cuius rei testimonium has literas nostras fieri fecimus patentes. Teste meipso apud Westm- nasterium quinto die Martij anno regni nostri vndecimo.

Ann. 1495.

¶ The same in English.

Henry by the grace of God, King of England & France, and lord of Ireland, to all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting.

Be it knowne that we haue giuen and granted, and by these presents doe giue and grant for vs and our heyyes, to our welbeloued John Cabot citizen of Venice, to Lewis, Sebastian & Sanctius sonnes of the said John, and to the heyyes of them, and euerij of them, and theyr deputies, full & free authority, leaue, and power to saile to all parts, countreies, and seas of the East, of the West, and of the North, vnder our banners and ensignes, with siue ships of what burthen or quantity soeuer they be, and as many mariners or men as they will haue with them in the sayd ships, vpon theyr owne proper costs and charges, to secke out, discouer, and finde whatsoeuer Isles, countreies, regions or prouinces of the heathen and infidels whatsoeuer they be, and in what part of the world soeur they be, which befoze this time haue bene vnknowne to all Chyistians: we haue granted to them, and also to euerij of them, the heyyes of them, and euerij of them, and theyr deputies, and haue giuen them licence to set by our banners and ensignes in euerij village, towne, castle, yle, or manie land of them wholy found. And that the aforesaid John and his sonnes or theyr heyyes and assigns may subdue, occupy and possesse all such townes, cities, castles and Isles of them found, which they can subdue, occupy and possesse, as our ballas, and licutenants, getting vnto vs by the rule, title, and iurisdiction of the same villages, townes, castles, and firme land so found.

Yet so that the aforesaid John, and his sonnes and heyyes, and theyr deputies, be holden & bounden of all the frutes, profites, gaines, and commodities growing of such nauigation, for euerij theyr voyage, as often as they shall arriue at our port of Bristoll (at the which port they shall be bound and holden only to arriue) all manner of necessary costs and charges by them made, being deducted, to pay vnto vs in waies or money the fift part of the capitall gaine so gotten. The giuing & granting vnto them and to theyr heyyes and deputies, that they shall be free from all paying of customes of all and singular such wurchandize as they shall bring with them from those places so newlic found.

And mozeouer, wee haue giuen and granted to them, theyr heyyes and deputies, that all the firme landes, Isles, villages, townes, castles and places whatsoeuer they be that they shall chance to finde, may not of any other of our subiectes be frequented or visited without the licence of the foresayd John and his sonnes, and theyr deputies, vnder payne of forfeiture as well of theyr ships, as of all and singular goods of all them that shall presume to sayle to those places so found. Willing, and most straightly commanding all and singular our subiectes as well on land as on sea, appointed officers, to giue good assistance to the aforesaid John, and his sonnes and deputies,

and that as well in arming and furnishing the ships or vessels, as in provision of quietness, and in buying of victualles for the money, and all other things by them to be provided necessarie for the said navigation, they do give them all theyr helpe and fauour. In witness whereof we have caused to be made these our letters patentes. Witness our selfe at Westminster, the sixt day of March, in the eleventh yere of our reigne.

*Billa signata Anno 13 Henrici 7.*

*A recorde of the rolls touching the voyage of John Cabot & Sebastian his sonne.*

**R**Ex tertio die Februarij, anno 13, licentiam dedit Ioani Caboto, quod ipse capere possit sex naues Anglicanas, in aliquo portu, siue portibus regni Angliæ, ita quod sint de portagio 200 denariorum, vel subtus, cum apparatu requisito, & quod recipere possint in dictas naues omnes tales magistris, marinarios, & subditos regis, qui cum eo exire voluerint, &c.

*¶ The same in English.*

**T**he king vpon the third day of February, in the 13 yere of his reigne, gaue licence to John Cabot to take sixe English ships in any haven or hauens of the realme of England, being of the burden of 200 tunnes, or vnder, with all necessary furniture, and to take also into the sayde ships, all such maisters, martiners, and subiects of the king as willingly will go with him, &c.

An extract taken out of the mappe of Sebastian Cabot, cut by  
*Clement Adams, concerning his discouerie of the West Indies,*  
which is to be seene in her Maiesties priuie gallerie at Westminster, and in many other ancient merchants houses.



**A**nno Domini 1494, Ioannes Cabotus venetus, & Sebastianus illius filius eam terram fecerunt peruiam, quam nullus prius adire ausus fuisset, die 24 Iunii, circiter horam quintam bene manè. Hanc autem appellauit Terram Primum visam, credo quod ex mari in eam partem primum oculos iniecerat. Nam quæ ex aduerso sita est insula, eam appellauit insulam D. Ioannis, hac opinor ratione, quod aperta fuit eo die qui est sacer D. Ioanni Baptistæ: Huius incolæ pelles animalium, exuiuasque ferarum pro indumentis habent, easque tanti faciunt, quanti nos vestes preciosissimas. Cum bellum gerunt, vtuntur arcu sagittis, hastis, spiculis, clauis ligneis & fundis. Tellus sterilis est, neque villos fructus affert, ex quo fit, vt leonibus albo colore, & ceruis inuisitatæ apud nos magnitudinis referta sit: piscibus abundat, iisque sanè magnis, quales sunt lupi, & quos salmones vulgus appellat, soleæ autem reperiuntur tam longæ, vt vltra mensuram excedant. Imprimis autem magna est copia eorum piscium, quos vulgari sermone vocant Bacallaos. Gignuntur in ea insula accipitres ita nigri, vt coruorum similitudinem mirum in modum expriment, perdiceæ autem & aquilæ sunt nigri coloris.

*¶ The same in English.*

**I**n the yere of our Lord 1494, John Cabot a Venetian, & his sonne Sebastian (with an English fleet set out frō Bristol) discouered that land which no man before that time had attempted, on the 24 of June, about five of the clocke early in the morning. This land he called Prima villa, that is to say, first seene, because as I suppose it was that part whereof they had the first sight from sea. That Island which lyeth out before the land, he called the Island of S. John, vpon this occasion, as I thinke, because it was discouered vpon the day of John the Baptist. The inhabitants of this Island vse to weare beasts skines, and haue them in as great estimation, as we haue our finest garments. In theyr wars they vse bowes, arrows, pikes, darts, wooden clubs, & slings. The soile is barren in some places, & yeeldeth little fruit, but it is full of tobac pipes, & stags farre greater then ours. It yeeldeth plenty of fish, and those very great, as seales, and those which commonly we call salmones: there are soles also aboue a yard in length: but especially there is great abundance of that kinde of fish which the Saluages call Bacallaos. In the same Island also there breed hawks, but they are so blacke, that they are very like to rauen, as also theyr partridges, & eagles, which are in like sort blacke.



is therefore called  
him not, he pro-  
some knowledge  
a valiant man,  
being an expert  
hand, and that b  
incertained him  
world, with cer  
that he spake fur  
When my fa  
trade of mercha  
having neuer b  
father died in th  
discouered the co  
then reigned, in  
then humane, c  
known before,  
tence some nota  
way of the North  
king to be aboue  
with all things a  
in the begin ning  
that any other la  
taine dayes: I fo  
Beneuolence, I  
land still contin  
East, departing  
land to ward the  
part of this firm  
chence and retu  
tion for warres  
age. Whereupo  
stouerished to ha  
which they caule  
and large riuers  
filled and follo  
saice, and inhabi  
Into this riuier  
ther bolages, w  
caule there are u  
inuenie: I do

A discourse of Sebastian Cabot touching his discouerie of part of the West India out of England in the time of king Henry the seuenth, viced to Galeacius Bunnigarnus the Popes Legate in Spaine, and reported by the sayd Legate in this fort.



Do you not vnderstand said hee (speaking to certaine Gentlemen of Venice) how to passe to India toward the North west winde, as did of late a citizen of Venice, so valiant a man, and so well practised in all things pertaining to Navigations, and the science of Cosmographie, that at this present hee hath not his like in Spaine, in somuch that for his vertues he is preferred aboue all other Pilotes that saile to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his licence, and is therefore called Piloto Maggiore (that is) the grand Pilote. And when we said that wee knew him not, he proceeded, saying, that being certaine yeeres in the cite of Siusil, and desirous to haue some knowledge of the Navigations of the Spaniards, it was told him that there was in the cite a valiant man, a Venetian boyne, named Sebastian Cabot, who had the charge of those things, being an expert man in that science, and one that could make Cardes for the Sea with his owne hand, and that by this report, seeking his acquaintance, he found him a very gentle person, who entertained him friendly, and shewed him many things, and among other a large mappe of the world, with certaine particular navigations, as well of the Portugals, as of the Spaniards, and that he spake further vnto him in this effect.

This discourse is taken out of the second booke of Voyages of Baptista Amaluis.

When my father departed from Venice many yeeres since to dwell in England, to follow the trade of merchandises, he tooke me with him to the cite of London, while I was very yong, yet having neuertheless some knowledge of letters of humanitie, and of the Sphere. And when my father died in that time when newes were brought that Don Christofer Colonus Genueis, had discovered the coasts of India, whereof was great talke in all the court of king Henry the 7. who then reigned, in somuch that all men with great admiration affirmed it to be a thing moze diuine then humane, to saile by the West into the East where spices growe, by a way that was neuer knowne before, by this same and report there increased in my heart a great flame of desire to attempt some notable thing. And vnderstanding by reason of the Sphere, that if I should saile by way of the North west winde, I should by a shorter tract come into India, I thereupon caused the king to be advertised of my desire, who immediatly commaunded two Caruels to be furnished with all things appertaining to the voyage, which was, as farre as I remember, in the yeere 1496 in the beginning of Sommer. I began therefore to saile toward the North west, not thinking to find any other land then that of Cathay, and from thence to turne toward India, but after certaine dayes I found that the land ranne towards the North, which was to me a great displeasure, neuertheless, sailing along by the coast to see if I could find any gulfes that turned, I found the land still continent to the 56. deg. vnder our pole. And seeing that there the coast turned toward the East, despairing to find the passage, I turned backe againe, and sailed downe by the coast of that land toward the Equinoctiall (euer with intent to find the said passage to India) and came to that part of this firme land which is now called Florida, where my victuals failing, I departed from thence and returned into England, where I found great tumults among the people, and preparation for warres in Scotland: by reason whereof there was no moze consideration had to this voyage. Whereupon, I went into Spaine to the catholike king, and Queene Elizabeth, which being advertised what I had done, entertained me, and at their charges furnished certaine ships, whereunto they caused me to saile to discouer the coasts of Brasillie, where I found an exceeding great and large riuer named at this present, Rio de la plata, that is the riuer of siluer, into the which I sailed and followed it into the firme land, moze then fye score leagues, finding it euery where very faire, and inhabited with infinite people, which with admiration came running daily to our ships. Into this riuer runn so many other riuers, that it is in manner incredible. After this I made many other voyages, which I now permit, and having old, I giue my selfe to rest from such trauels, because there are now many yong and lustie Pilotes and mariners of good experience, by whose succour I do reioyce in the fruit of my labours, and rest with the charge of this office, as you see.

The second voyage of Cabot to the land of Brasillie, and Rio de plata.

The

tion of quietnesse, you uided necessitate uerof ue hanc ter, the sixt day of

quod ipse capere Angliz, ita quod o, & quod recipe- abditos regis, qui

ue licence to John England, being also into the sayde o with him, &c.

ot, cut by Indias, in-

us illius filius eam fter, die 24 Iunij, Terram Primam receerat. Nam que hac opinor ratione habet animalium, es preciosissimas, dis. Tellus sterilis usitatæ apud nos, & quos salmo- xcedant. Impi- callaos. Gignun- dum exprimat,

an (with an Eng- had attempted, alled Prima villa, had the first sight. John, upon this tiff. The inhabi- ation, as we haue at clubs, & slings, ons, & stags farre those which com- ly there is great I, and also there epp partridges, &

The foresayd Baptista Ramusius in his Preface to the third  
volume of the Navigations, writeth thus of Sebastian Cabot.



the latter part of this volume are put certaine relations of John de Verazana, a Florentine, and of a great capitaine a Frenchman, and of the two voyagers of Iacques Cartier a Byton, who sailed vnto the land set in 50. degrees of latitude to the North, which is called New France, which lands hitherto are not thought by known, whether they doe lye w<sup>th</sup> the firme land of Florida and Noua Hispania, or whether they be separated and deuised all by the Seas as Islands: and whether that by that way one may goe by sea vnto the countrey of Cathaia. As many yeeres past it was written vnto me by Sebastian Caboto our countrey man a Venetian, a man of great experience, and very rare in the arte of Nauigation, and the knowledg of Cosmographie, who sailed along and beyond this land of New France, at the charges of king Henry the 7. king of England: and he aduertised me, that hauing sailed a long time West and by North, beyond those Islands vnto the latitude of 67. degrees and an halfe, vnder the North pole, and at the 11. day of June finding still the open sea without any manner of impediment, he thought verily by that way to haue passed on still the way to Cathaia, which is in the East, and would haue done it, if the multitude of the Shipmaster and mariners had not hindered him and made him to returne home wards from that place. But it seemeth that God doeth yet still reserve this great enterprise for some great prince to discover this voiage of Cathaia by this way, which for the bringing of the Spices from India into Europe, were the most easie and shortest of all other wayes hitherto found out, And surely this enterprise would be the most glorious, and of most importance of all other that can be imagined, to make his name great, and fame immortall, to all ages to come, farre more then can be done by any of all these great troubles and warres which daily are vsed in Europe among the miserable christian people.

Another testimonie of the voiage of Sebastian Cabot to the  
West and North west, taken out of the 6. chapter of the third Decade of  
Peter Martyr of Angleria.



Crutatus est oras glaciales, Sebastianus quidam Caborus genere Venetus, sed à parentibus in Britanniam insulam tendentibus (vri moris est Venetorum, qui commercij causa terrarum omnium sunt hospites) transportatus penè infans. Duo is sibi nauigia, propria pecunia in Britannia ipsa instruxit, & primò tendens cum hominibus tercentum ad Septentrionem donec etiam Iulio mense vastas repererit glaciales moles pelago natantes, & lucem ferè perpetuam, tellure tamen libera gelu liquefacto: quare coactus fuit, vti ait, vela vertere & occidentem sequi: tetenditq; tantum ad meridiem littore sese incuruante, vt Herculei freti latitudinis fere gradus æquarit: ad occidentemq; profectus tantum est vt Cubam Insulam, à læua, longitudine graduum penè parem, habuerit. Is ea littora percurres, quæ Baccalaos appellauit, eisdem se reperisse aquarû, sed lenes delapsus ad Occidentem ait, quos Castellani, meridionales suas regiones ad nauigantes, inueniunt. Ergò non modò verisimilius, sed necessario concludendum est, vastos inter vtramq; ignotam hæcenus tellurem iacere hiatus, qui viam præbeant aquis ab oriente cadentibus in Occidentem. Quas arbitror impulsu cælorum circulariter agi in gyrum circa terræ globum, non autem Demogorgone anhelante vomit, absorberit; vt nonnulli senserunt, quod in fluxu, & refluxu forsitan assentire darent. Baccalaos, Cabotus ipse terras illas appellauit, eò quod in earû pelago tantam repererit magnorum quorundam piscium, rynnos æmulantium, sic vocatorum ab indigenis, multitudinem, vt etiam illi interdum nauigia detardarent. Earum Regionum homines pellibus tantum cooperitos reperiebat rationis haudquaquam expertes. Vriorum inesse regionibus copiam ingeniter refert, qui & ipsi piscibus vescantur. Inter densa namq; piscium illorum agmina sese immergunt vrsi, & singulos singuli complexos, vnguibûsque inter squammas immixtis in terram raptant, & comedunt. Propterea minimè noxios hominibus vilos esse a. Orichalcû in plerisque locis se vidisse apud incolas prædicat. Familiarem habeo domi Cabotum ipsum, & contubernalem interdum. Vocatus namque ex Britannia à Rege nostro Catholico, post Henrici Maioris Britannia Regis mortem, concurialis noster est, expectatq; indies, vt nauigia sibi parentur, quibus arcanum hoc naturæ latens, iam tandem detegatur.

The

The first  
ing yet bus  
on to restore  
the world on  
charges, and  
in the month  
of small bay  
lighte  
at the Sunne.  
follow the  
South, by re  
Latitude, w  
degree. He  
his left hand  
in  
land, which  
West, but the  
found in the  
allo of necess  
certaine gre  
the West, wh  
ning and imp  
ching of Dem  
to eude and  
Seas there ab  
(which the in  
people of th  
lately there  
sewes into  
in their sc  
satisfied w  
gions, he  
the familiar  
being called  
death of ki  
and a distan  
for him to

The first  
the four  
die



was so cold,  
in a manner  
feeling the  
sailed along  
England,

the third

The same in English.

John de Verarza. The two voyages of degrees of latitude into are not thought Florida and Nova Se a ss Islands i. As many yeres ian, a man of great iomographie, who entyr the 7. king of North, beyond those and at the 11. day of verily by that way ue done it, if the m- eturne homewards pise for some grea g of the Spiceries hitherto found one, of all other that can farre more then can Europe among the

These North seas have bene searched by one Sebastian Cabot, a Venetian boyne, whom being yet but in manner an infant, his parents caried with them into England, having occasson to voyage thither for trade of merchandise, as is the manner of the Venetians to leaue no part of the world vnsearched to obtaine riches. He therefore furnished two ships in England at his owne charges, and first with 300. men, directed his course so farre towards the North pole, that euen in the moneth of Iulie he found monstrous heapes of ice swimming on the sea, and in manner continuall day light, yet saw he the land in that tract free from ice, which had bene molten by the heat of the Sunne. Thus seeing such heapes of ice before him, he was enforced to turne his sailes and follow the West, so coasting still by the Spoye, that hee was thereby brought so farre into the South, by reason of the land bending so much Southward, that it was there almost equall in latitude, with the sea Fretum Herculeum, hauing the North pole eleuate in manner in the same degree. He sailed likewise in this tract so farre towards the West, he had the Island of Cuba on his left hand, in manner in the same degree of longitude. As he traueiled by the coasts of this great land, (which he named Baccalaos) he saith that hee found the like course of the waters toward the West, but the same to runne more softly and gently then the swift waters which the Spaniards found in their Nauigations Southward. Wherefore it is not onely more like to be true, but ought also of necessitie to be concluded that betwene both the lands hitherto unknowen, there should be certaine great open places wherby the waters should thus continually passe from the East unto the West: which waters I suppose to be giuen about the globe of the earth by the vncessant moouing and impulsion of the heauens, and not to bee swallowed by and cast by againe by the breathing of Demogorgon, as some haue imagined, because they see the seas by increase and decrease to ebbe and flowe. Sebastian Cabot himselfe named those lands Baccalaos, because that in the Seas thererabout hee found so great multitudes of certaine bigge fishes much like unto Tunies, (which the inhabitants call Baccalaos) that they sometimes stayed his ships. He found also the people of those regions couered with beastes skinnes, yet not without the vse of reason. Hee also saith there is great plentie of Beares in those regions which vse to eat fishes: for plunging themselves into the water, where they perceiue a multitude of these fishes to lie, they fasten their claws in their scales, and so draw them to land and eatethem, so (as he saith) the Beares being thus satisfied with fish, are not noisome to men. Hee declareth further, that in many places of these regions, he sawe great plentie of Laton among the inhabitants. Cabot is my very friend, whom I haue familiarlie, and delight to haue him sometimes keepe me companie in mine owne house. For being called out of England by the commaundement of the Catholike king of Castile, after the death of king Henry the seventh of that name, king of England, he was made one of our counsellors and Assistants, as touching the affaires of the new Indies, looking for ships daily to bee furnished for him to discover this hid secret of Nature.

bot to the cascade of

Venetus, sed a pa- etorum, qui com- e infans. Duo isibi dens cum homini- rit glaciales moles eto: quare coctus in littore sese incur- profectus tantum est ca littora percurret, d Occidentem ait, non modò verifi- Stenus tellurem ia- Quas arbitror im- mogorgone anhe- n assentire daretur. am reperitric mag- nis, multitudinem, libus tantum coo- bus copiam ingen- a gmina sese in- immissis in terram Orichalcū in pleris- tum ipsum, & con- blico, post Henrici , vt nauigia sibi pe-

The testimonie of Frauncis Lopez de Gomara a Spaniard, in the fourth chapter of the second booke of his generall historie of the West Indies concerning the first discouerie of a great part of the West Indies, to wit, from 58. to 38. degrees of latitude, by Sebastian Cabota out of England.

Which brought most certaine newes of the countrey and people of Baccalaos, saith Gomara, was Sebastian Cabote a Venetian, which rigged by two ships at the cost of king Henry the 7. of England, hauing great desire to traffique for the spices as the Portugals did. Hee caried with him 300. men, and tooke the way towards Island from beyond the Cape of Labrador, untill hee found himselfe in 58. degrees and better. Hee made relation that in the moneth of Iulie it was so cold, and the ice so great, that he durst not passe any further: that the dayes were very long, in a manner without any night, and for that short night that they had, it was very cleare. Cabot feeling the cold, turned towards the West, refreshing himselfe at Baccalaos: and afterwards hee sailed along the coast unto 38. degrees, and from thence hee shaped his course to returne into England,



A note of Sebastian Cabots first discouerie of part of the Indies taken out of the latter part of Robert Fabians Chronicle not hitherto printed, which is in the custodie of M. Iohn Stowe a diligent preferuer of Antiquities.



In the 13. yeere of king Henry the 7. (by meanes of one Iohn Cabot a Clerke) an which made him selfe very expert and cunning in knowledge of the circuit of the world and Islands of the same, as by a Sea carde and other demonstrations reasonable he betwix) the king caused to man and victuals a ship at Bristol, to search for an Island, which he said he knew well was rich, and plentiful with great commodities: Which ship thus manner and victualled at the kings cost, diuers merchantes of London ventured in her small booke, being in her as chiefe patron the sayd Venetian. And in the companie of the sayd ship, sailed also out of Bristol three or foure small ships fraught with sleight and grosse merchandises, as course cloth, caps, laces, points, and other trinkets, And so departed from Bristol in the beginning of May, of whom in this Spains time returned no tidings.

Of three sauages which Cabot brought home and presented vnto the king in the fourteenth yeere of his raigne, mentioned by the foresayd Robert Fabian.



This yeere also were brought vnto the king three men taken in the New found Land that before I speake of, in William Purchas time being Spain: These were clothed in beasts skins, and did eate rawe flesh, and spake such speech, that no man could vnderstand them, and in their demeanour like to brute beasts, whom the king kept a time after, Of the which vpon two yeeres after, I sawe two apparelled after the manner of Englishmen in Westminster palace, which that time I could not discern from Englishmen, till I was learned what they were, but as for speech, I heard none of them vnder one word.

The voiage of Sir Thomas Pert and Sebastian Cabot, about the eight yeere of king Henry the eight, which was the yeere, 1516. to Brasil, S. Domingo, and S. Iohn de porto ricco.



Not learned and painefull writer Richard Eden in a certaine epistle of his to the late duke of Northumberland, before a worke which hee translated out of Spaine in the yeere 1553. called A treatise of the new India, maketh mention of a voyage of discouerie vnderaken out of England by Sir Thomas Pert and Sebastian Cabot, about the eight yeere of king Henry the 8. of famous memoire, imputing the outcrippes thereof vnto the cowardise and want of stomacke of the sayd Sir Thomas Pert, in manner following. If manly courage, saith he, (like vnto that which hath bene seene and prooued in your grace as well in forraigne realmes, as also in this our country) had not bene wanting in other in these our dayes, at such time as our soueraigne lord of noble memorie king Henry the 8. about the same yeere of his raigne, furnished and sent out certaine ships vnder the gouernance of Sebastian Cabot yet liuing, and one Sir Thomas Pert, whose faint heart was the cause that the voyage tooke none effect, if I say such manly courage, whereof we haue spoken, had not at that time bene wanting, it might happily haue come to passe, that that rich treasure called Perulaz, (which is now in Spaine in the cite of Siuil, and so named, for that in it is kept the infinite riches brought thither from the Newfound land of Peru) might long since haue bene in the Tower of London, to the kings great honour and wealth of this realme. Perunte that of so is to be referred vnto the worshipfull M. Robert Thorne wrote to the sayd king Henry the 8. in the yeere 1527. by doctor Leigh his ambassador sent into Spaine to the Emperour Charles the first, whose wordes be these. Now rest to bee discouered the North partes, the which it seemeth vnto me, is onely your highnes charge and dutie, because the situation of this your realme is thereunto nearest and aptest of all other: and also, for that alreadie you haue taken it in hand. And in mine opinion it will not seeme well to leaue so great and profitable an enterprize, seeing it may so easilie and with so litle cost, labour & danger, be folowed and obtained. Though hitherto your grace haue made thereof a prooffe, & found not the commoditie thereby as you trusted, at this time it shall be none impediment: for there may be now prouided remedies for things

This Sir Thomas Pert was discouered in an house called Blackwell.

More.

things then lacked  
ees desire tooke  
said new courtes  
fed and taken m  
Gods grace no c  
Robert Thorne  
the North) to be  
childe he maketh  
though by the king  
Saluo de Quiedo  
the 13. chapter of  
ing very well wit  
gen. The author  
mous man Bapti  
comes con una gra  
isla Spagnuola, e  
su batello pieno de  
neguare. Ma in g  
gloria da questo c  
rairano suori, ch  
che se'en fosse na  
e della citta e' de  
di San Giovanni,  
dimandarono vet  
do che essi non ven  
camie. Hora quin  
lauerati e' altro o  
con se no seppa piu  
yeere 1517. an  
into the parte of  
Island of Hispani  
and sent his ship  
that he came with  
Francis de Tapia  
reedy with the h  
those that were in  
den of the castle c  
could not haue co  
of the ship seeing  
into the port of S  
and things needf  
Domingo, sayin  
and merchandise  
pnd them with e  
ward Europe, wh  
Thus farre pro  
this great Englis  
to discoure, and  
in the Island of S  
houses for honest  
and Spanisli w  
these nations for  
led by or looked  
all to other men

in Cabot a Clerk  
age of the circum-  
of demonstrations  
ship at Bristol, to  
remembered with  
at the kings cost,  
the patron the saye  
of foure final voyes,  
s, and other trilles,  
loys time returned

presented  
d by

He to found Island  
these were cloaked in  
man could under-  
g hepe a time after,  
of Englishmen in  
till I was leaues

oot, about  
6. to Bra-

le of his to the late  
of Spunster in the  
A voyage of discou-  
bastian Cabot, a  
ouerthow the  
maner following,  
ued in your grace  
g in other in these  
y the 8. about the  
ernance of Seba-  
cause that the voi-  
en, had not at that  
surie called Peru-  
is kept the infan-  
ce haue bene in  
Peruunto that at  
king Henry the 8.  
erour Charles the  
which it seemeth  
his your realme is  
e taken in hand,  
an enterprise, see-  
obtained. Though  
ie thereby as you  
ided remedies for  
things

things then lacked, and the inconueniences and lets remooued, that the were cause your gra-  
ces desire tooke no full effect: which is, the courtes to be chaunged, and to follow the afore-  
said new courtes. And concerning the mariners, ships, and prouision, an order may be deu-  
sed and taken meete and conuenient, much better then hitherto: by reason whereof, and by  
Gods grace no doubt your purpose shall take effect. And whereas in the aforesaid wordes Sr  
Robert Chome saith, that he would haue the old courtes to be chaunged, and the new courtes (as  
the North) to be followed: It may plainly bee gathered that the former voyage wherofe wise or  
thrift he maketh mention, wherein it is like that Sr Thomas Pert and Sebastian Cabot were fet  
forth by the king, was made toward Brasil and the South parts. Forouer it seemeth that Gon-  
saluo de Ouiedo, a Spanish famous writer, alludeth vnto the said voyage in the beginning of  
the 13. chapter of the 19. booke of his generall and naturall historie of the West Indies, agree-  
ing very well with the time about which Richard Eden writeth that the foresaid voyage was be-  
gun. The authors wordes are these As I find the m translated into Italian by that excellent and fa-  
mous man Baptista Ramusius. Nel 1517. *Vn Corsaro Inglese, sotto colore di venire a discoprire se ne  
veniva con vna gran nave alla volta del Brasil nella costiera di terra ferma, & indi aueraverso a questa  
isola Spagnuola, & giunse presso la bocca del porto di questa città di S. Domingo, & mandò in terra il  
suo batello pieno di gente, & chiese licentia di potere qui entrare, dicendo che venia con mercantie a  
negociare. Ma in quello instante il castellano Francesco di Tapia fece tirare alla nave vn tiro d'arte-  
glieria da questo castello: perche ella se veniuua diritta al porto. Quando gli Inglese videro questo, si  
ritirarono fuori, & quelli del batello tosto si raccolsero in nave. Et nel vero il Castellano fece errore: per-  
che se ien fosse nave entrata nel porto, non sarebbono le genti potuto smontare à terra senza volontà  
& della città & del castello. La nave adunque veggendo come vi era ricenna, tirò la volta dell' isola  
di San Giouanni, & entrata nel porto di San Germano parlarono gli Inglese con quelli della terra, &  
dimandarono vestonaglie & fornimenti per la nave, & si lamentarono di quelli di questa città, dicen-  
do che essi non venivano per fare di piacere, ma per contrattare, & negoziare con suoi danari & mer-  
cantie. Hora quini hebbero alcune vestonaglie, & in compensa essi diedero & pagarono in certi stagni  
lunari & altre cose. Et poi si partirono alla volta d'Europa, dove si crede, che non giungessero, perche  
non se ne seppe piu noua mai.* This extract importeth thus much in English, to wit: That in the  
year 1517. an English Rouer vnder the colour of traouelling to discouer, came with a great ship  
vnto the parts of Brasil on the coast of the Firme land, and from thence he crossed ouer vnto this  
Island of Hispaniola, and arriued neere vnto the mouth of the haueu of this citie of S. Domingo,  
and sent his shipboate full of men on shore, and demanded leaue to enter into this haueu, saying,  
that he came with merchaundise to traffique. But at that very instant the gouernour of the castie  
Francis de Tapia caused a tite of ordinance to be shot from the castie at the ship, for wee here in di-  
rectly with the haueu. When the Englishmen sawe this, they withdrew themselves out, and  
those that were in the shipboate, got themselves with speede on shipboate. And in truerth the Gouer-  
nor of the castie committed an oversight: for if the ship had entred into the haueu, the men thereof  
could not haue come on land without leaue both of the citie and of the castie. Therefore the people  
of the ship seeing how they were there receiued, sayled toward the Island of S. Iohn, and entering  
into the port of S. Germaine, the Englishmen paried with those of the towne, requiring victuals  
and things needfull to furnish their ship, and complained of the inhabitants of the citie of S. Iohn  
Domingo, saying that they came not to doe any harme, but to trade and traffique for their money  
and merchaundise. In this place they had certaine victuals, and for recompense they gaue and  
paid them with certain vellell of wroughte tinne and other things. And afterward they departed to-  
ward Europe, where it is thought they arriued not: for we neuer heard any moze newes of them.  
Thus farre proceedeth Gonsaluo de Ouiedo, who though it please him to call the capitaine of  
this great English ship a Rouer. yet it appeareth by the Englishmens owne wordes that they came  
to discouer, and by their traffique for pewer vellell and other wares at the towne of S. Germaine  
in the Island of S. Iohn de porto ricco, it cannot bee denied but that they were furnished with  
wares for honest traffique and exchange. But whosoever is conuerfant in reading the Portugall  
and Spanish writers of the East and West Indies, shall commonly finde that they account all o-  
ther nations for pirates, rouers and theues, which vnto any heathen coast that they haue ones sa-  
led by or looked on. Howbeit their passionate and ambitious reckoning oughe not to be prejudiciall  
all to other mens chargeable and painful enterprises and honourable trauels in discouerie.

The voyage of the two ships, whereof the one was called the Dominus vobiscum, set out the 20. day of May, in the 29. yeere of king Henry the eight, and in the yeere of our Lord God, 1527. for the discoverye of the North partes.

Mich. Wakins.

**M**aster Robert Thorne of Bristoll, a notable member and ornament of his countrey, as well for his learning, as great charitie to the poore. In a letter of his to king Henry the 8. and in a large discourse to doctor Leigh, his Ambassadoy to Charles the emperor, (which booke are to be seene almost in the beginning of the second part of this my worke) shewed the foresaid king with very waighte and substantiall reasons, to set forth a discouerie euen to the North pole. And that it may bee knowne that this his motion tooke present effect, I thought it good herewithall to put downe the testimonies of two of our Chyoniciers, M. Hall, and M. Grafton, who boch wrote in this voye. This same moneth (say they) king Henry the 8. sent two faire ships well manned and victualled, hauing in them diuers cunning men to seeke strange regions, and so they set forth out of the Thames, the 20. day of May in the 29. yeere of his raigne, which was the yeere of our Lord, 1527.

And whereas master Hall, and master Grafton say, that in those ships there were diuers cunning men, I haue made great inquisrie of such as by their peeres and delighe in navigation, might giue me any lighte to knowe who those cunning men should be which were the directers in the foresaid voyage. And it hath bene told mee by Sir Martin Frobisher, and master Richard Allin, a knight of the Sepulchre, that a Canon of S. Paul in London, which was a great Mathematician, and a man indowd with wealth, did much auuaunce the action, and went therein himselfe in person, but what his name was, I can not learne of any. And further they told mee that one of the ships was called the Dominus vobiscum, which is a name likely to bee giuen by a religious man of those daies: and that sailing very farre North westward, one of the ships was cast away as it entred into a dangerous gulph, about the great opening, betwene the North partes of New found land, and the countrey lately called by her maieste Meta Incognita. Whereupon the other ship shaping her course towards Cape Briton, and the coast of Norumbega, and oftentimes putting their men on land to search the state of those vnknown regions, returned home about the beginning of October, of the yeere foresaid. And thus much (by reason of the great negligence of the writers of those times, who should haue vsed moze care in preserving the memories of the worthy acts of our nation,) is all that hitherto I can learne, or find out of this voyage.

The voyage of master Hore and diuers other Gentlemen, to Newfoundland, and Cape Breton, in the yeere 1536. and in the 28. yeere of king Henry the eight.



**H**e master Hore of London, a man of goodly stature and of great courage, and giuen to the studie of Cosmographic, in the 28. yeere of king Henry the 8. and in the yeere of our Lord 1536. encouraged diuers gentlemen and others, being assisted by the kings fauour and good countenance, so accompany him in a voyage of discouerie vpon the North west partes of America: wherein his persuasions tooke such effect, that within short space many gentlemen of the iunes of court, and of Chauncerie, and diuers other of good worship desirous to see the strange things of the world, very willingly entered into the action with him, some of whose names were as followeth. M. Wickes a gentleman of the West countrey of five hundred markes by the yeere liuing. M. Tucke a gentleman of Kent. M. Tuckfield. M. Thomas Butts the sonne of sir William Butts knight of Norfolk, which is yet aliue, and from whose mouth I wrote most of this relation. M. Walter Harde, master Biron, master Carter, master Waight, master Kaskall Sericant, Kaskals brother, master Ridley, and diuers other, which all were in the admirall called the Trinitie, a ship of seuen score tonnes, wherein M. Hore himselfe was imbarked. In the other shippe whose name was the Pinion, went a very learned and vertuous gentleman, one master Arnould Wade, father to the worshipfull master William Wade now clerke of the priuie counsell. M. Walter Dabney merchant of London. M. Toy afterward gentleman of the kings chappell, with diuers other of good account. The whole number that went in the two tall shipps aduentsyd, to wit, the Trinitie and the Pinion, were about six score persons, whereof 30. were gentlemen, which all were mustered in warlike manner at Grauesend, and after the receiuing of the sacrament, they imbarked themselves in the end of Aprill, 1536.

From

From the time of  
two moneths, on  
Cape Breton, the  
Penguin, which  
hauing white and  
great  
eggs, the foule et  
they walked and  
they of beares  
booke.

M. Oliver Dav  
M. Richard  
admirall in Newf  
some any of the  
hatches, spied a be  
gall upon the st  
as were under ha  
Countrey, that the  
weste of the S. au  
on a shipboote co  
them, returned to  
men pursued the  
fire, and the stee  
There in the sa  
with certaine by  
ing: And these call  
any thing els  
of wax and pine  
And further, the  
and that the  
that brought home  
that increased am  
of to be herbes  
lett of herbes  
here and there, the  
cutting out piece  
dely deuoured the  
By this meane  
And it fortuned th  
in the felde the sa  
followes to strue  
that had the byopl  
le's meane that I  
the Captaine fou  
were neither de  
be shoo up and  
mightie, and h  
them that called  
of former time  
addressed, that  
howe releued for  
and soule to the  
to repentance, and  
withable present  
and that the same  
and such was the  
and it apling the  
the their. four

cus



called the  
ing Henry  
isco-

f his countrey, as  
king Henry the 8.  
e emperor, (which  
my worke) explored  
countre even to the  
fect, I thought it  
Hall, and so. Cra-  
e. 8. sent two faire  
e strange regions,  
f his raigne, which

e were divers cum-  
navigation, might  
recters in the adve-  
Richard Allen, a  
great Mathematick  
therein himselfe in  
ld see that one of  
men by a religious  
was cast away at  
ch partes of New  
thereupon the other  
and oftentimes pub-  
home above the be-  
er at negligence of  
remories of the voy-  
ge.

lemen, to  
the 28.

reat courage, and  
Henry the 8, and in  
and others, being as  
my him in a voyage  
in his persuasions  
the innes of court,  
range things of the  
were as followeth  
yeere living. One  
ne of Sir William  
the most of this re-  
Rasall American  
called the Tritie,  
other Shippe which  
ter Arnigill Ollate,  
fell, so after Oliver  
appell, which did  
to be, the  
men, which all were  
ment, they embarked

From the time of their setting out from Grauesende, they were very long at sea, so wittie, about two moneths, and neuer touched any lande until they came to part of the West Indies about Cape Breton, passing their course thence Northward, until they came to the Island of Penguin, which is very full of rocks and stones, whereon they were and founde it full of great fowles white and gray, as bigge as geese, and they saw infinite numbers of their egges. They saw a great number of the fowles into their boates upon their sailes, and tooke by many of their egges, the fowle they feed and their skinned were like bonny combs full of holes being dead off: they washed and eatte them, and found them to be very good and nourishing meate. They saw also some of beares both blacke and white, of whome they killed some, and tooke them for no badde fowle.

Oliver Dawbeny, which (as it is before mentioned) was in this voyage, and in the Minion, with M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple these things following: to wit, That after their arrival in Newfoundland, and having bene there certaine dayes as aforesaid, and not having yett seen any of the naturall people of the Countrey, the same Dawbeny walking one day on the beaches, spied a boate with Saunges of those partes, rowing downe the bay towards them, to gett upon the shore and our people, and taking viewe of their rowing a loofe, hee called to such as were under hatches, and willed them to come by if they would see the naturall people of the Countrey, that they had so long and so much desired to see: Whereupon they came by and tooke viewe of the Saunges rowing toward them and their shippe, and upon the viewe they manned out a shipboote to meett them and to take them. But the shippe our shipboote making towards them, returned with maine force & fled into an Island that laye by in the bay or riuer there, and our men pursued them into the Island, and the Saunges fledde and escaped: but our men founde a fire, and the store of a beere on a wooden spit left at the same by the Saunges that were fledde.

There in the same place they founde a boote of leather garished on the water side of the calfe with certaine byasse trailles, as it were of rawe silke, and also founde a certaine great warme mitton: And these carried with them, they returned to their shippe, not finding the Saunges, nor seeing any thing else besides the people, and the things growing in the same, which chiefly were some of haw and pine trees.

And further, the said M. Dawbeny told him, that lying there they grew into great want of victuals, and that there they found small reliefe, more then that they had from the nest of an Osprey, that brought hourly to her young great plenty of divers sortes of fishes. But such was the famine that increased amongst them from day to day, that they were forced to seeke to relieue themselves of the herbes and rooces that they sought on the maine: but the famine increasing, and the relief of herbes being to little purpose to satisfie their insatiable hunger, in the fieldes and desertes here and there, the fellowe killed his mate while hee stooped to take by a rooce for his reliefe, and cutting out pieces of his body whome hee had murdered, hee devoured the same on the coles and greedily devoured them.

By this means the company decreased, and the officers knewe not what was become of them; And it fortuned that one of the company driven with hunger to seeke aboade for reliefe, found out in the fieldes the saucour of byoyled flesh, and fell out with one for that hee would suffer him and his fellowes to sterue, enjoying plentie as he thought: And this matter growing to cruel speeches, he that had the byoyled meate, burst out into these wordes, If thou wouldst seeke to knowe, the byoyled meate that I had, was a piece of such a mans buttocke. The report of this brought to the ship, the Captaine found what became of those that were missing, & was perswaded that some of them were neither devoured with wilde beastes, nor yet destroyed with the Saunges: And hereupon he stood up and made a notable Oration, containing, How much these dealings offended the Almighty, and touched the Scriptures from first to last, what God had in case of distress done for them that called upon him, & told them that the power of the Almighty was then no lesse, then in former time it had bene. And added, that if it had not pleased God to have helper them in that distress, that yet it had bene better to have perished in body, and to have lived ever lastingly, then to have remained for a poore time their mortall bodies, and to be condemned everlastingly both body and soule to the unquenchable fire of hel. And thus having ended to that effect, he began to exhort to repentance, and besought all the company to pray that it might please God to looke upon their miserable present state, and for his owne merite to relieue the same. And such was the mercie of God, that the same night there arrived a French Shippe in the bay, well furnished with vittails, and such was the policie of the English, that they became members of the same, and changing ships and the place, they set saile to come into England.

In their journey they were to seeke Northward, that they sawe mightie Islands of ice in the

Cape Breton.

The Island of Penguin, flourisheth about the latitude of 50. degrees.

Oliver Dawbeny report to M. Richard Hakluyt of the Temple.

They beheld the Saunges of Newfoundland land.

Extreme fast.

Our men eat one another for famine.

The Captaine was taken.

The English capture a French ship, wherein they returned home.

From

B b

Wanted and  
other foules.

Foules they  
pursu in de  
Roghes.

the sommer season, on which were haukes and other foules to rest themselves being wearie of flying ouer farre from the maine. They sawe also certaine great white foules with redde billies and redde leggs, some what bigger then Perons, which they supposed to be Nozkes. They arrived at S. Iues in Cornewall about the ende of October. From thence they departed into a certaine Castle belonging to Sir Iohn Luttrell, where M. Thomas Bues, and M. Ralfall, and other Gentleman of the voyage were very friendly entertained: after that they came to the Earle of Barche at Barche, and thence to Bristol, and so to London. M. Bues was so changed in the voyage with hunger and miserie, that Sir William his father and my Lady his mother, knewe him not to be their soune, untill they found a certaine secret marke which was a wart upon one of his knees, as he tolde me Richard Hakluyt of Oxforde himselfe, to whome I rode 100. miles onely to learne the whole crueltie of this voyage from his owne mouth, as being the onely man nowe alive, that was in this discoverie.

The French  
royally recom-  
penced by King  
Henry the 8.

Certaine moneths after, those Frenchmen came into England, and made complaint to King Henry the 8: the King causing the matter to be examined, and finding the great distresse of his subiects, and the causes of the beating so with the French, was so moued with pittie, that hee punished not his subiects, but of his owne purse made full and royall recompense unto the French.

In this distresse of famine, the English did somewhat relieve their vitall spirits, by drinking at the springe the fresh water out of certaine wooden cups, out of which they had drunke their Aqua composita before.

### The large pension graunted by K. Edward the 6. to Sebastian Cabota, constituting him grand Pilot of England.



Edwardus sextus Dei gratia Anglię, Francię, & Hibernię rex, omnibus Christi fidelibus, ad quos presentes he litterę nostrę peruenerint salutem. Sciatis quod nos in consideratione boni & acceptabilis seruitiij, nobis per dilectum seruientem nostrum, Sebastianũ Cabotam, impensi atque impendendi, de gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa scientia, & mero motu nostro, nec non de aduifamento, & consensu præclarissimi auunculi nostri Edwardi Ducis Somerseti personę nostrę Gubernatoris, ac Regiorum, dominiorum, subditorumque nostrorum protectoris, & æterorum consiliorum nostrorum, de dinus & concessimus, ac per presentes damus, & concedimus eidem Sebastianõ Cabotæ, quandam annuatim siue annualem reditum, ceterum sexaginta & sex librarũ, tresdecim solidorum, & quatuor denariorum sterlingorum habendam, gaudendam, & annuatim percipiendam prædictam annuitatem, siue annalem reditum eidem Sebastianõ Cabotæ, durante vita sua naturali, de thesauro nostro ad receptum scacarii nostri Westmonasterij per manus thesaurariorum, & Camerarium nostrorum, ibidem pro tempore existentium, ad festa annuntiationis beate Marię Virginis, natiuitatis sancti Iohannis Baptistę, Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, & Natalis Domini per æquales portiones soluendam. Et ulterius de vberiori gratia nostra, ac de aduifamento, & consensu prædictis damus, & per presentes concedimus præfato Sebastianõ Cabotæ, tot & tantas Denariorum summas, ad quot & quantas dicta annuitas siue annalis redditus centi sexaginta sex librarum, tresdecim solidorum, & quatuor denariorum, a festo sancti Michaelis Archangeli vltimo præterito huc vsque se extendit, & attingit, habendas & recipiendas præfato Sebastianõ Cabotæ & assignatis suis de thesauro nostro prædicto per manus prædictorum Thesaurariorum, & Camerarium nostrorum de dono nostro absque computo, seu aliquo alio nobis hæreditibus, vel successibus nostris proinde reddendo, soluendo, vel faciendo, eo quod expressa mentio, &c. In cuius rei testimonium, &c. Teste Rege, apud Westmonasterium, 6. die Ianuarii, Anno 2. Regis Edwardi sexti.

#### *¶ The same in English.*

Edward the sixt by the grace of God, King of England, France and Ire land, desirous of the safety, to all Christian people to whom these presents shall come, sendeth greeting. Knowe ye that wee, in consideration of the good and acceptable service done, and to be done, unto us by our beloued seruant Sebastian Cabote, of our speciall grace, certayne knowledge, meeete motion,

and by the aduise and  
consent of our person,  
our Counsaile, haue  
Sebastian Cabota,  
pension, thirtene shil-  
linges annuall, of yeer  
of our Treasurie ac-  
cords and paymaster  
the blessed Cirgill  
treasurie of our L. 10. sh.

And further, of our  
and by these presents  
summes of money  
pound, thirtene shil-  
linges the  
Archangel last past  
bota, and his assigne  
and officers of our C  
pension, payed, of m  
made to the contrary.

In witness where-  
of we haue subscribed  
at Westminster the  
L. 1548.

A voya-  
lian



whereby hee ma-  
nyes very rare, es-  
timate of Sestos upon the  
Olympanes ceeth, and  
Brasil. used there sug-  
get into great fan-  
savage kings of the  
pound thirtie into C  
pledge for his safeti  
king being arriued,  
at Whitehall: at the  
not without cause: for  
in small bones were  
they was reputed for  
set a precious stone  
very strange to the  
Dauing remaine  
the, M. Haukins ac-  
his Countrey: but  
saunge king died at  
keram his pledge,  
of our men with the  
any man of the con-

and by the advise and counsell of our most honourable uncle Edward duke of Somerset gouernour of our person, and Protector of our kingdomes, dominions, and subiects, and of the rest of our Counsaile, haue given and graunted, and by these presentes doe giue and graunt to the saide Sebastian Cabota, a certaine annuittie, or yeerely reuenue of one hundred, threescore and five poundes, thirtene shillings foure pence sterling, to haue, enioye, and yeerely receiue the foresaide annuittie, or yeerely reuenue, to the foresaide Sebastian Cabota during his naturall life, out of our Treasurie at the receite of our Exchequer at Westminster, at the handes of our Treasurers and paymasters, there remapping for the time being, at the sealles of the Annuntiation of the blessed Virgine Mary, the Natiuittie of S. Iohn Baptist, S. Michael the Archangel, and the Natiuittie of our Lord, to be payde by equall portions.

And further, of our moze speciall grace, and by the advise and consent of foresaide we doe giue, and by these presentes doe graunt vnto the foresaide Sebastian Cabota, so many, and so great summes of money as the saide annuittie or yeerely reuenue of an hundred, threescore and five poundes, thirtene shillings 4. pence, doeth amount and rise vnto from the lease of S. Michael the Archangel last past vnto this present time, to be had and receiued by the foresaide Sebastian Cabota, and his assignes out of our foresaid Treasurie, at the handes of our foresaide Treasurers, and officers of our Exchequer of our free gift without accompe, or any thing else therfore to be payed, payed, or made, so vs, our heires or successours, soasmuch as herein expresse mention is made to the contrary.

In witness whereof we haue caused these our Letters to be made patents: Witness the king at Westminster the first day of Januarie, in the second yeece of his raigne. The yeece of our Loyde: 548.

A voyage to Brasill, made by the worshipfull M. William Hawkins of Plimmouth, father to sir Iohn Hawkins knight now liuing, in the yeece 1530.



Our M. William Hawkins of Plimmouth, a man for his wisdome, valoure, experience, and skill in sea causes much esteemed, and beloued of king Henry the eight, and being one of the principall Sea Captaines in the West partes of England in his time, not contented with the shoye voyages commonly then made onely to the known coastes of Europe, armed out a tall and goodly ship of his owne of the burthen of 250. tunnes, called the Pole of Plimmouth, wherewith hee made three long and famous voyages vnto the coast of Brasill, a thing in those times very rare, especially to our Nation. In the course of which voyages he touched at the Riuer of Senos vpon the coast of Guinea, where hee trafiqued with the Negroes, and tooke of them Elephants teeth, and other commodities which that place yeeldeth: and so arriuing on the coast of Brasill, shew there such discretion, and behaued himselfe so wisely with those sauage people, that he grew into great familiaritie and friendship with them. In somuch that in his 2. voyage, one of the sauage kings of the Countrey of Brasill, was contented to take shippe with him, and to bee transported hither into England: wherunto M. Hawkins agreed, leauing behinde in the Countrey as a pledge for his safetie and returne againe, one Martin Cockeram of Plimmouth. This Brasilian king being arriued, was brought by to London, and presented to king Henry the 8. lying as then at Whitehall: at the sight of whom, the king and all the Nobilitie did not a little marueile, and not without cause: for in his cheekes were holes made according to their sauage maner, and therein small bones were planted, standing an inch out from the said holes, which in his owne Countrey was reputed for a great hauerie. He had also another hole in his necke lippe, wherein was set a precious stone about the bignesse of a pease: All his apparell, behauiour and gesture, were very strange to the beholders.

Quaunting remained here the space almost of a whole yere, and the king with his sight fully satisfied, M. Hawkins according to his promise and appointment, purposed to courey him againe into his Countrey: but it fell out in the way that by change of ayre, and alteration of diet, the saide sauage king died at Sea, which was feared woulde turne to the losse of the life of Martin Cockeram his pledge. Nevertheless, the Sauiages being fully perswaded of his honest dealing of our men with their Prince, refused againe the saide pledge, without any harme to him, or any man of the companie: which pledge of theirs they brought home againe into England,

with their shippes, rigged, and furnished with the commodities of the Countrey. Which Marine Cocke ram, by the witness of sir John Haukins, being an officer in the towne of Plummouth, was living within these fewe yeeres.

I haue bene informed by M. Anthony Garrard an ancient & worshipfull merchant of London, that this voyage to Brasill was frequented by Robert Reniger, Thomas Borey, and diuers other wealtie Marchantes of Southhampton, about 50. yeeres past, to wit, in the yeere 1540.

An acte against the exaction of money or any other thing  
by any officer for licence to trafique into *Iseland, and New*  
found land, made in An. 2. Edwardi sexti,

**F**orthasmuch as within these fewe yeeres now last past, there hath bene leuied, per-  
tained & taken by certaine of the officers of the Admiraltie, of such Marchantes,  
and fishermen as haue vsed and practised the adventures and iourneys into *Is-*  
*land, New found land, Ireland, and other places commodious for fishing, and*  
the getting of fish, in and vpon the seas or other wise, by way of Marchants in  
those parties diuers great exactions, as summes of money, doles or shares of  
fish, & such other like things, so the great discouragement & hinderance of the same marchants and  
fishermen, and to no litle damage of the whole common wealth, and thereof also great complaints  
haue bene made, & informations also preely to the kings Haulties most honourable counsell: for  
reformation whercof, & to the intent also that the said marchants and fishermen may haue occasion  
rather to practise and vse the same trade of marchandizing, and fishing freely without any such  
charges or exactions, as is before limited, wher: by it is to be thought that moze plenty of fish shal  
come into this realme, & thereby to haue the same at moze reasonable prices: Be it therfore enacted  
by the king our soueraigne Lord, and the lords & commons in this present parliament assembled,  
and by authoritie of the same, that neither the Admiral, nor any officer, or minister, officers or minis-  
ters of the Admiraltie for the time being, shall in any wise hereafter exact, receiue, or take by him-  
selfe his seruant, deputie, seruants, or deputies of any such marchant or fisherman, any summe or  
summes of money, doles or shares of fish, or any other reward, benefite or aduantage whatsoeuer it  
be for any licence to passe this Realme to the saide voyages or any of them, nor vpon any respect  
concerning the saide voyages, nor any of them, vpon paine to forfeite for the first offence treble the  
summe, or treble the value of the rewarde, benefite or aduantage, that any such officer or minister  
shall hereafter haue or take of any such marchant or fisherman. For the which forfeiture the partie  
griued, and euery other person or persons whatsoeuer he or they be, shall and may sue for the same  
by information, bill, plaint, or action of debt in any of the kings courts of record: The king to  
haue the one moitie, and the partie complayning the other moitie: in which suite no assigne, pro-  
tection, or wager of lawe shalbe allowed. And for the second offence the partie so offending, not onely  
to loose and forfeite his or their office or offices in the Admiraltie, but also to make fine and ran-  
some at the kings will, and pleasure.

By this act it appeareth, that the trade out of England to New found land was common and  
frequented about the beginning of the raigne of Edward the 6. namely in the yeere 1548, and it is  
much to be maruelled, that by the negligence of our men, the countrey in all this time hath bene  
no better searched.

The first voyage of the right worshipfull and valiant knight,  
*sir John Haukins, now treasurer of her Maiesties nauie*

Royall, made to the West Indies 1562.

**M**aster John Haukins hauing made diuers voyages to the ples of the Cana-  
ries, and there by his good and vpright dealing being growne in loue and fa-  
uour with the people, informed himselfe amongst them by diligent inquiri-  
tion, of the State of the West India, wherof he had receiued some knowlege  
by the instructions of his father, but increased the same by the advertisement  
and reports of that people. And being amongst other particulars assured, that  
Negroes were very good marchandise in Hispaniola, and that store of Ne-  
groes might easly be had vpon the coast of Guinea, resolved with himselfe to make trial thereof,  
and

and communicate  
Ducker, Sir Thom  
and others. All  
tees and aduentu  
pounded: The on  
ment as General  
Haupton: And c  
women: in which  
well, and other i  
With this coun  
ber 1562, and in  
from thence he  
the Countrey is  
by the sword, and  
merchandises, w  
the Island of His  
raunce of his Eng  
farther then that  
he went to Port  
also hee sailed o  
his coaching, wh  
for which he rece  
do not onely lat  
but he stragbred  
Spaine. And the  
of the Caycos,  
West India. A  
uenturers he ca

A VO



I procured a th  
runne, and had  
the Spanish ma  
was in the com  
himselfe appoi  
Spaine, althoug  
the all beyare  
being vnder th  
nia, wher: am  
otherwise call  
leagues distan  
Pueblo de los  
bing men to i  
It is a Citie y  
I hauing con  
Spanish fleet,  
and there recei  
ducars, & mo  
the commodities

and communicated that devise with his worshipfull friends of London: namely with Sir Lionell Ducker, Sir Thomas Lodge, M. Gunston his father in lawe, Sir William Winter, M. Bromfield, and others. All which persons liked so well of his intention, that they became liberrall contributors and adventurers in the action. For which purpose there were 3. good shippes immediately provided: The one called the Salomon of the burthen of 120. tunne, wherein M. Haukins himselfe went as Generall: The 2. the Swallow of 100. tunnes, wherein went for Captaine M. Thomas Haupo: And the 3. the Jonas a barke of 40. tunnes, wherein the Master supplied the Captaines name: in which small flette, M. Haukinsooke with him not above 100. men, for feare of sickness, and other inconveniences, wherunto men in long voyages are commonly subject.

With this company hee put off and departed from the coast of England in the month of October 1562. and in his course touched first at Teneriffe, where he received friendly intertainment. From thence hee passed to Sierra Leona, upon the coast of Guinea, which place by the people of the Countrey is called Tagarin, where he stayed some good time, and got into his possession partly by the sword, and partly by other meanes, to the number of 300. Negroes at the least, besides other marchandises, which that Countrey yeeldeth. With this praye he sailed over the Ocean sea unto the Island of Hispaniola, and arrived first at the port of Isabella: and there hee had reasonable reverence of his English commodities, as also of some part of his Negroes, trusting the Spaniards no further, then that by his owne strength he was able still to master them. From the port of Isabella he went to Porte de Plata, where he made like sales, standing alwayes up to his gorne: from thence also hee sailed to Monte Christi another port on the North side of Hispaniola, and the last place of his touching, where he had peaceable traffique, & made vent of the whole number of his Negroes: for which he received in those 3. places by way of exchange, such quantitie of marchandise, that he did not onely lade his owne 3. shippes, with hides, ginger, sugars, and some quantitie of pearles, but hee freighted also two other bukes with hides, and other like commodities, which he sent into Spaine. And thus leaving the Island, hee returned and disimboke, passing over by the Islands of the Caycos, without further entering into the bay of Mexico, in this his first voyage to the West India. And so with prosperous successe and much gaine to himselfe, and the aforesaide adventurers he came home, and arrived in the month of September 1563.

### A voyage made by M. Roger Bodenham, to S. Iohn de Vllua in the bay of Mexico, in the yeere 1564.



Roger Bodenham, having a long time lived in the Citie of Siuill in Spaine, being there married, and by occasion thereof using trade and traffique to the parts of Barbarie, grew at length to great losse and hindrance by that new trade begunne by mee in the Citie of Fez: Whereupon being returned into Spaine I began to call my wits about me, and to consider with my selfe by what meanes I might recouer & renew my State: and in conclusion by the ayde of my friends, I procured a shippe called the Barke Foxe, pertaining to London, of the burthen of 8. or 9. score tunnes, and with the same I made a voyage to the West India, having obtained good favour with the Spanish marchants, by reason of my long abode, and marriage in the Countrey. My voyage was in the companie of the Generall Don Pedro Melendes, for Noua Hispania. Who being himselfe appointed Generall for Terra firma and Peru, made his sonne our Generall for Newe Spaine, although Pedro Melendes himselfe was the principall man and director in both flectes. We all departed from Cales together the last day of May in the yeere 1564. And I with my ship being under the conduct of the sonne of Don Pedro aforesaide, arrived with him in Noua Hispania, where immediately I tooke order for the discharge of my marchandise at the port of Vera Cruz, otherwise called Villa Rica, to be transported thence to the Citie of Mexico, which is 70. and abde leagues distant from the said port of Villa Rica. In the way are many good townes, as namely, Pueblo de los Angelos, & another called Tlaxcalan. The citie of Mexico hath 3. great caufets to bring men to it, compassed with a lake, so that it needeth no walles, being so defended by the water. It is a Citie plentiful of all necessary things, having many faire houses, Churches & monasteries. I having continued in the Countrey the space of 9. months, returned againe for Spaine with the Spanish flect, & delivered the marchandise & silver which I had in my ship, into the Contraction house, and there received my freight, which amounted outwards and homewards to the value of 13000. lincas, & more. I observed many things in my time of my abode in Noua Hispania as well touching the commodities of the countrey, as the manners of the people both Spaniards & Indians, but because

the Spanish histories are full of those obseruations, I omit them, and refer the readers to the same: onely this I say, that the commodity of Couchenillo, groweth in greatest abundance about the towne of Pueblo de los Angelos, and is not there worth about 40. pence the pound.

The voyage made by the worshipful *M. Iohn Haukins Esquire,*  
now knight, *Captaine of the Iesus of Lubek, one of her Maiesties*  
shippes, and Generall of the Salomon, and other two barkes go-  
ing in his companie to the coast of Guinea, and the Indies  
of Noua Spania, being in Affrica, and America :  
begunne in Au. Dom. 1564.

October 18.



The opinion,  
the Iohn  
Baptist, and  
the Merline  
bound to  
Guinea.

After Iohn Haukins with the Iesus of Lubek, a shippe of 700. and the Salomon a ship of 7. scope, the Tiger a barke of 50. and the Swallowe of 30. tonnes, being all well furnished with men to the number of one hundred, threescore and tenne, as also with ordnance, and vittuall requisite for such a voyage, departed out of Plimmouth the 18. day of October, in the yere of our Lord 1564. with a prosperous winde: at which departing, in cutting the foystail, a maruelous misfortune happened to one of the officers in the shippe, who by the puelle of the heare was slaine out of hande, being a sorrowfull beginning to them all. And after christ leaving our terme leagues to the sea, he met the same day with the Minion a ship of the Queenes Maiesties, wherof was Captaine Dauid Carlet, and also her consoyt, the Iohn Baptist of London, being bounde to Guinea also, who halsted one the other after the custome of the Sea, with certaine pieces of ordnance for ioy of their meeting: which done, the Minion departed from him to seeke her other consoyt, the Merline of London, which was a starme out of sight, leauing in M. Haukins companie the Iohn Baptist her other consoyt.

Thus sayling forwarde on their way with a prosperous winde untill the 21. of the same moneth, at that time a great storme arose, the winde being at North-east about 9. a clocke in the night, and continued so 23. houres together, in which storme M. Haukins lost the companie of the Iohn Baptist aforesaid, and of his pinnelle called the Swallow, his other 3. shippes being soe beaten with the storme, the 23. day the Swallow to his no small reioycing, came to him againe in the night, 10. leagues to the Northward of Cape Finister, he hauing put roomer not being able to double the Cape. In that there rose a contrary winde at South-west. The 25. the wind continuing contrary, he put into a place in Galicia, called Ferroll, where hee remained five dayes, and appointed all the Masters of his shippes an order for the keeping of good companie in this manner: The small shippes to be at waies a head and a weacher of the Iesus, and to speake twice a day with the Iesus at least: if in the day the Ensigne bee ouer the poope of the Iesus, or in the night two lightes, then shall all the shippes speake with her: If there be three lightes aboord the Iesus, then doeth she call about: If the weather be extreme, that the small shippes cannot keepe companie with the Iesus, then all to keepe companie with the Salomon, and sooythwith to repaire to the Island of Teneriffe, to the Northward of the roade of Sirroes; If any happen to any misfortune, then to shewe two lightes, and to shooote off a piece of Ordinance. If any loose companie, and come in sighte againe, to make three paues, and strike the Spyon three times: Where God dayly, loue one another, preserue your vittuals, be ware of fire, and keepe good companie.

The 26. day the Minion came in also where hee was, for the reioycing wherof hee gaue them certaine pieces of Ordinance, after the courtesie of the Sea for their welcome, but the Minions men had no murther, because of their consoyt the Merline, whome at their departure from M. Haukins byon the coast of England they went to seeke: and hauing mette with her, kept companie two dayes together, and at last by misfortune of fire (though the negligence of one of their gunners) the powder in the gunners roome was set on fire, which with the first blast strooke out her poope, and therewithall lost thye men, besides many soe burned (which escaped by the Triganidine being at her sterne) and immediatly, to the great losse of the owners, and most horrible sight to the beholders, she souke before their eyes.

The 30. day of the moneth M. Haukins with his consoyts and companie of the Minion, hauing now bene both the Triganidine as her sterne, wayed ancre, and set sail on their voyage, hauing a prosperous winde therrunto.

The fourth of Nouember they had sight of the Islande of Madera, and the six day of Teneriffe,

Council, which  
came to the Coast  
a head of 8. hee  
the manner they  
used, upon which  
Teneriffe, and be-  
yet to fetch it by  
he could not discer-  
marke of Teneriffe  
Teneriffe, with the  
poop of Adecia, be-  
being in the weat-  
small, some what  
wing to haue sent  
welled a leagu  
upon the two po  
others, to the num  
re to his eye crea  
onger, not know  
call to them, for th  
be an especiall fri  
welld. And in the  
both their hands,  
and then asking se  
swoy, whome he  
common with hin  
things, and of the  
whed for him. In  
of the Iesus, which  
kiffe and his men,  
of came to him, o  
some what of the  
asking thereof, the  
for they make two  
compared to barme  
many other seruic  
pellers, carell, nor  
of the people for  
id as he is caught  
gender back ward  
ned, with a little  
whole, sauing the  
the head, with a b  
head with her  
to carry 500. w  
bians, a certai  
will see that he  
abundance, that  
hauwen to be a  
to marvell, seeing  
will were going  
perce. Of the tre  
all, but not so ab  
of a prate tree. O  
sterne, and when  
now known, by  
ther: and therof

...abundance about the  
...and.

*Esquire,  
Maiesities*

...and the Salo-  
...of 300000  
...such a voyage,  
...of our Lord 1564.  
...of the heat was  
...the fasting our terme  
...Patentes, whereof  
...being bounde to  
...create pieces of op  
...the her other com  
...Hawkins companie

...of the same mo-  
...a clocke in the  
...the companie of the  
...ness being soe bea-  
...e to him againe in  
...not being able to  
...wind continuing  
...the dapes, and ap-  
...ie in this maner  
...e twice a day with  
...p in the night two  
...word the Iesus, then  
...keeps companie  
...to repaire to the  
...to any misfortune,  
...ompanie, and come  
...God dayly, loose

...of her gave them  
...but the Minions  
...are from M. Hau-  
...re, kept companie  
...f one of their gun-  
...nd strooke out ber  
...ed by the Digniti-  
...most horrible sight

...the Minion, he  
...to voyage, having

...the first day of  
Teneriffe,

...Cannibals, which they thought to have bene the Canaries, in that they supposed themselves to have  
...to the Eastward of Teneriffe, and were not: but the Wynton being a thre or foure leagues  
...a head of his, as on her course to Teneriffe, having better sight thereof, then the other had, and by  
...that means they parted companie. For Master Hawkins and his companie, went moze to the  
...West, upon which course having sailed a while, he espied another Island, which he thought to be  
Teneriffe, and being not able, by the meanes of the fogge upon the hills, to discern the same, nor  
...yet to fetch it by night, went sooner, untill the morning, being the 7. of November, which as yet  
...he could not discern, but sailed along the coast, the space of two bowyes, to perceive some certaine  
...marke of Teneriffe, and found no likelihood thereof at all, accompeing that to be, as it was in  
...the Isle of Palmes: and so sailing forwards, espied another Island, called Gomera, and also  
Teneriffe, with the which he made, and sailing all night, came in the morning the next day to the  
...port of Adezia, where he found his pinnelle which had departed from him the sixt of the month,  
...being in the weather of him, and espying the pike of Teneriffe all a high, bare thither. At his ar-  
...rival, some what before he came to anchor, he hoyle out his ships pinnelle robbing a shoare, inten-  
...ding to have sent one with a letter to Peter de ponte, one of the Gouernours of the Island, who  
...dwelled a league from the shoare: but as he pretended to have landed, suddnly there appeared  
...upon the two points of the roade, men leuelling of ballis and harguebusses to them, with diuers  
...others to the number of 80. with halberes, yokes, swords, and targets, which happened so contra-  
...rie to his expectation, that it did greatly amase him, and the moze, because he was now in their  
...danger, not knowing well how to auoide it, without some mischance. Wherefoze he determined  
...to call to them, for the better appealing of the matter, declaring his name, and professing himselfe  
...to be an especiall friend to Peter de ponte, and that he had sundry things for him, which he greatly  
...wished. And in the meane time, while he was thus talking with them, whereby he made them to  
...hold their hands, he willed the marriners to rowe away, so that at last he gat out of their danger:  
...and then asking for Peter De Ponte, one of his names being Signior Nicholas Ponte, came  
...forth, whome he perceauing, desired to put his men aside, and he himselfe would leape a shoare, and  
...common with him, which they did: so that after communication had betwene them of sundry  
...things, and of the feare they both had, Master Hawkins desired to haue certaine necessaries pro-  
...vided for him. In the meane space, while these things were providing, he trimmed the maine mast  
...of the Iesus, which in the Roome aforesaid was Spung: here he sojourned 7. daies, refreshing him-  
...selfe and his men. In the which time Peter de ponte dwelling at S. Cruz, a Citie 20. leagues  
...off, came to him, & gave him as gentle entertainment, as if he had bene his own brother. To speak  
...some what of these Islands, being called in olde time Insulz fortunatz, by the meanes of the so-  
...rthing thereof, the fruitfulness of them doeth surely excede farre all other that I haue heard of:  
...for they make wine better then any in Spaine, they haue grapes of such bigness, that they may be  
...compared to damascus, and in taste inferior to none: for sugar, lukes, raisons of the Sunne, and  
...many other fruits, abundance: for rosin & rawe silke, there is great soze, they want neither coyne,  
...pullets, cattell, nor yet wilde fowle: they haue many Camels also, which being yong, are eaten  
...of the people for victuals, and being olde, they are used for carriage of necessaries: whose propertie  
...is as he is taught to kneele at the taking of his loade, and unlading againe: his nature is to in-  
...gender backward, contrarie to other beastes: of vnderstanding very good, but of shape very deformed,  
...with a little bellie, long misshapen legges, and feete very broad of flesh, without a hoofe, all  
...whole, sauing the great toe, a backe bearing up like a molehill, a large and thinne necke, with a lit-  
...tle head, with a bunch of hard flesh, which nature hath giuen him in his breast, to lean vpon. His  
...head smeth hardy, and is contoured with strawe, and stubble, but of force strong, being well able  
...to carry 500. weight. In one of these Islands, called de Fierro, there is by the reportes of the inha-  
...bitants, a certaine tree that raineth continually, by the dropping whereof, the inhabitants and cat-  
...till are satisfied with water, for other water haue they none in all the Island. And it raineth in such  
...abundance, that it were incredible vnto man to beleue such a vertue to be in a tree, but it is  
...known to be a true matter, and a thing obtained by God, at whose power thereth, we ought not  
...to marvel, seeing he doth by his providence, as we read in the Scriptures, when the children of Is-  
...raell were going into the land of promise, see be them with Manna from heauen, for the space of 40.  
...yeeres. Of the trees aforesaid, we sawe in Guinie many, being of great height, dropping continu-  
...ally, but not so abundantly as the other, because the leaues are narrower, and are like the leaues  
...of a pear tree. About these Islands, are certaine sitting Islands, which haue bene oftentimes  
...sene, and when men approached nere them, they vanishes as the like bene of these Islands  
...now known, by the report of the Inhabitants, which were not for made of long time one after the o-  
...ther: and therefore it shoulde seeme he is not yet boyne, to whome God hath appointed the find-  
...ing

The Isle of  
Valinro,  
Gomera and  
Teneriffe.

De Sierra.

Tree drop-  
ping water in  
Guinie.

The pike of  
Tencriffe.

ding of them. In this Island of the Tencriffe, there is a hill called the Pike, because it is piked, which is in height by their reports, 20. leagues, having both winter and summer, abundance of snowe in the toppe of it: this pike may be scene in a cleere day 50. leagues off, but it is the best as though it were a blacke cloud, a great height in the element. I haue heard of none to be compared with this in height, but in the Iudias I haue scene many, and in my iudgement not inferior to the pike, and so the Spaniards write.

Cape de Bar-  
bas.

The 15. of Nouember at night, we departed from Tencriffe, and the 20. of the same, we had sight of 10. Caruels, that were fishing at sea, with whom we would haue spoken, but they tra-ving vs, led into a place of Barbarie, called Cape de las Barbas.

The 20. the shippes pinnesse, with two men in her, sailing by the shippe, was ouertaken by the ouersight of them that were in her, the wind being so great, that before they were espied, and the ship had cast about for them, she was distu-rued halfe a league to leeward of the pinnesse, and had lost sight of her, so that there was small hope of recouerie, had not Gods helpe, and the Captaines diligence bene, who hauing well marked, which way the pinnesse was by the Summe, appointed 24. of the lustiest rowers in the great boate, to rowe to windwards, and so recouered, contrary to all mens expectations, both the pinnesse and the men sitting vpon the keele of her.

Cape Blanco.

The 25. he came to Cape Blanco, which is vpon the coast of Affrica, and a place where the Portingals doe ride that fish there, in the month of Nouember especially, and is a very good place of fishing, for Pargoes, Mullet, and Dogge fish. In this place the Portingals haue no holde for their defense, but haue rescue of the Barbarians, whom they entertaine as their souldiers, for the time of their being there, and for their fishing vpon that coast of Affrica, doe pay a certaine tribute to the King of the Moores. The people of that part of Affrica, are tawnie, hauing long haire, without any apparell, sauing before their priuie members. Their weapons in warres, are bowes, and arrowes.

Cape Verde  
in 14. degrees.

The 26. we departed from S. Auis Bape, within Cape Blanco, where we refreshed our selues with fish, and other necessaries: and the 29. we came to Cape Verde, which lieth in 14. degrees, and a halfe. These people are all blacke, and are called Negroes, without any apparell, sauing before their priuities: of stature goodly men, and well liking, by reason of their foode, which passeth all other Guynians for hie, goats, pullin, rise, fruits, and fish. Here we tooke fishes with haire like Conies, and teeth nothing varying, of a iollie thickness, but not past a foote long, and is not to be eaten without flaying or cutting of his head. To speake somewhat of the sundry sortes of their Guynians. The people of Cape Verde, are called Leophares, and counted the goodliest men of all other, sauing y<sup>e</sup> Manicco goes, which do inhabit on this side y<sup>e</sup> Cape de Buena Speranza. These Leophares haue warres against the Ieloffes, which are borders by them: their weapons are bowes, and arrowes, targettes, and shoye daggers, darts also, but varying from other Negroes: in whereas the other be a long dart, to fight with in their hands, they carry five or six small ones a peece, which they cast with. These men also are moxe ciuill then any other, because of their deile craftlike with the Frenchmen, and are of nature very gentle, and louing: for while we were there, we tooke in a Frenchman, who was one of the 19. that going to Brasile, in a Barke of Diepe, of 60. tunnes, and being a sea boord of Cape De Verde, 200. leagues, the planks of their barke with a sea brake out vpon them so suddenly, that much a doe they had to saue themselves in their boates: but by Gods prouidence, the wind being westerly, which is rarely scene there, they got to the shoare, to the Isles Braues, and in great penurie got to Cape Verde, where they remained five weekes, and had meate and drinke of the same people. The said Frenchman hauing so taken his fellows, which were: here leagues off from the shoare, and wandring with the Negroes too and fro, fornuied to come to the water side, and communing with certaine of his countrey men, which were in our ship, by their perswasions came away with vs: but his entertainment amongst them was such, that he desired it not: but through the importunace request of his Countrey men, consented at the last. Here we staid but one night, and part of the day: for the 7. of December, we came away, in that pretending to haue taken Negroes there perforce, the Spaniards men gaue them there to vnderstand of our coming, and our pretence, wherefore they did auoide the success we had laid for them.

The 8. of December, we ankered by a small Island, called Alcatrazas, whererin at our going a shoare, we found nothing but sea bitos, as we call them Ganets, but by the Portingals called Alcatrazas, who for that cause gaue the said Island the same name. Wherinn halfe of our boates were laden with pong and olde towle, who not being vled to the sight of men, flew so about vs, that we stroke them downe with poles. In this place, the two ships riding, the two barkes, with their boates, went into an Island of the Sapies, called La Formio, to see if they could take any of them, and

and there landed  
them in such order  
as they came to a  
with their bowes  
backes to them as  
cheerful: but I thin-  
ke was not I thin-  
ke a harquebus  
could not see the  
cause we could n-  
of a pistol, which  
we with our gre-

The 10. of  
I came two daies  
me: for whereas  
day, the Salomon  
going every day  
before were  
These Samboses  
haue so planted  
goats, of small  
Palmito trees, si-  
ly, whereby they  
pass, which they  
in that they ney-  
take many in the  
boles: the white  
de, in their teeth  
their flesh, both le-  
a tekin. These S-  
the spoile of their  
not care mans fle-  
not vled, but by  
some great store.  
who prouoked by  
singed thereunto  
those that they  
another occasion,  
was of their riches  
appointed for that  
haue the same re-  
this Island of Sa-  
of one peece of  
long, and one in  
out the arriuall  
they are about  
ding by night, with  
heads and leng-  
four to twere, an  
ton. Their tow-  
their towne, and  
they are built in a  
case, with wake  
some large, & etc  
and over the roof  
partly conuerted  
all their prouision  
they lie in is vru-



...eraule it is p...  
...er, abundance of  
...ff, but it is the best  
...f none to be compa  
...erment not inferior

...of the same, wee had  
...oken, but they ita

...was ouert h...  
...y were espied, and  
...pinnelle, and had  
...and the Captaines  
...Sonne, appointed  
...ouered, contrary to  
...er.

...o a place where the  
...and is a very good  
...ngals haue no hope  
...their souldiers, for  
...oe pay a certaine m...  
...hauing long haire,  
...warres, are better,

...refresht our selues  
...dith in 14. degrees,  
...apparell, sauing be  
...foode, which passeth  
...ie fishes with bread  
...e long, and is not to  
...wazy foxes of the  
...the goodliest men of  
...na Speranza. Their  
...their weapons are  
...other Negroes: for  
...of fire small ones a  
...e cause of their dulle  
...while we were there,  
...Barke of Depe, of  
...inkes of their barke  
...themselves in their  
...ene there, they got to  
...e they remained fire  
...hauing so; taken his  
...the Negroes too and  
...countreymen, which  
...inent amongst them  
...Countreymen, com...  
...of December, were  
...spynious men gave  
...did auoide the flames

...herein at our going a  
...ortingals called Al-  
...e of our boates were  
...about vs, that wee  
...backes, with their  
...to take any of them,  
...and

and there landed to the number of 80, in armour, and espying certaine, made to them, but they flew in such order into the woods, that it dooted them not to followe: so going on their way forward all they came to a riuer which they could not passe ouer, they espyed on the other side two men, who with their bowes and arrowes shot terribly at them. Whereupon we discharged certaine harquebusses to them againe, but the ignorant people waied it not, because they knewe not the danger thereof; but vsing a maruelous crying in their sight, with leaping, and turning their tails, that it was most strange to see, and gaue vs great pleasure to behold them. At the last, one being hurt with a harquebuss upon the thigh, looked upon his wound, and wist not howe it came, because he could not see the pellet. Here Master Hawkins perceaunting no good to be done amongst them, because we could not finde their toynes, and also not knowing how to goe into Rio grande, for want of a pilot, which was the very occasion of our comming thither: and finding so many Idols, feared with our great ships to goe in, and therefore departed our pretended way to the Idols.

The 10. of December, hauing a northeast wind, with raine, and storme, which weather continued two daies together, was the occasion, that the Salomon, and Tyger losse our company: for whereas the Iesus, and pinnelle ankered at one of the Islands, called Sambula, the 12. day, the Salomon and Tyger came not thither, till the 14. In this Island, we staid certaine daies, going euery day a shoare, to take the Inhabitantes, with burning, and spoiling their townes, who before were Sapies, and were conquered by the Samboses, Inhabitantes beyond Sierra Leona.

These Samboses had in habited there 3. yeeres before our comming thither, and in so short space had so planted the ground, that they had great plentie of mill, rice, roots, pompions, pullin, goates of small spee dyed, euery house full of the Countrey fruite planted by Gods prouidence, as Palmito trees, fruites like dates, and sundry other in no place in all that Countrey so abundantly, whereby they liued more deliciously then other. These inhabitants haue diuers of the Sapies, which they tooke in the warres, as their slaues, whome onely they keepe to till the ground, in that they neither haue the knowlege thereof, nor yet will worke themselves, of whome we tooke many in that place, but of the Samboses none at all, for they fled into the maine. All the Samboses haue white teeth as wee haue, far vnlike to the Sapies, which doe inhabit about Rio grande, for their teeth are all filed, which they doe for a haunterie, to set out themselves, and doe iagge their fish, both legges, armes, and bodies, as workemanlike, as a Jerkinmaker with his pineth a tuckin. These Sapies be more skilful then the Samboses: for whereas the Samboses liue most by the spoile of their enemies, both in taking their victuals, and eating them also, the Sapies doe not eat mans flesh, vntill in the warres they be driuen by necessitie therunto, which they haue not vntill, but by the example of the Samboses, but liue onely with fruites, and cattell, whereof they haue great store. This plentie is the occasion that the Sapies desire not warre, except they be therunto prouoked by the insulations of the Samboses, whereas the Samboses for want of foode, are insouered thereunto, and therefore are not woont onely to take them that they kill, but also keepe those that they take, vntill such time as they want meate, and then they kill them. There is also another occasion, that prouoketh the Samboses to warre against the Sapies, which is for courtousnes of their riches. For whereas the Sapies haue an order to burie their dead in certaine places appointed for that purpose, with their golde about them, the Samboses diggeth vp the ground, to haue the same creature: for the Samboses haue not the like store of golde, that the Sapies haue. In this Island of Sambula, we found about 50. boates, called Almabyes, or Canoas, which are made of one peece of wood, digged out like a trough, but yet of a good proportion, being about 8. pades long, and one in breadth, hauing a beake head, and a sterne very proportionably made, and on the out side artificially carued, and painted red, and blew: they are able to carry 20. or 30. men, but they are about the coast able to carry three score, and byward. In these Canoas they rowe standing vpright, with an omer somewhat longer then a man, the ende whereof is made about the breadth and length of a mans hand, of the largest size. They rowe very swift, and in forme of them liue to wares, and one to sterne make as much way, as a paire of oares in the Thames of London. Their townes are presently diuided with a maine streete at the entering in, that goeth through their towne, and another ouerthwart streete, which maketh their townes crosse waies: their houses are built in a ranke very orderly in the face of the streete, and they are not made round, like a house here, with stakes set full of Palmito leaues, in steede of a wall: they are not much more then a fathom large, & two of height, and thatched with Palmito leaues very close, other some with reede, and ouer the roofe thereof, for the better garnishing of the same, there is a round bundle of reede presently conuerted like a louver: in the inner part, they make a loft of stiches, whereupon they lay all their provision of victuals: a place they reserve at their entrance for the kitchen, and the place they lie in is diuided with certaine mats artificially made with the rinde of Palmito trees: their

The Island called Sambula.

The Samboses

The Sapies.

The Canoas of Africa.

The forme of their townes.

ben.

bedeekes are of small staves, laide along, and raised a foote from the ground, vpon which to laide a matre, and another vpon them when they list: for other covering they haue none. In the middle of the Towne, there is a house larger and higher then the other, but in forme alike, adioyning vnto the which, there is a place made of foure good stacions of woode, and a round rooffe ouer it, the grounde also raised round with claye, a foote high, vpon the which flooze were strabed many fine matres: this is the consultation house, the like whereof is in all Townes, as the Poringals affirme: in which place, when they sitte in Counsell, the King or Captaine sitte in the middle, and the Elders vpon the flooze by him: (for they giue reuerence to their Elders,) and the common foze sitte round about them. There they sitte to examine matters of thist, which if a man be taken with, to steale but a Poringall clothe from another, he is solde to the Poringals for a slaue. They consulte also, and take order what tyme they shall goe to warres: and as it is certainly reported by the Poringals, they take order in gathering of fruites in the season of the peere, and also for receauing of Palmite wine, which is gathered by a hole cutte in the toppe of a tree, and a goyde set for the receauing thereof, which falleth in by dropes, and yeeldeth freche wine againe within a moneth, and this diuided, part and portion like to euery man, by the iudgement of the Captaine and Elders, euery man holdeth himselfe contented: and this surely I iudge to be a very good order: for otherwise, wherreas scarcelye of Palmite is, euery man would haue the same, which might breed great strife: but for such things, as euery man both plant for himselfe, the sower thereof respecteth it to his owne vse, so that nothing is common, but that which is vsed by mans handes. In their houses there is moze common passage of Lizards, like C. ungs, and other greater, of blacke and blew colour, of neere a foote long, besides their tails, then there is with vs of Wile in great houses. The Sapies and Samboses also, vse in their warres bowes and arrowes, made of reedes, with heads of pyon poisoned with the iuice of a C. umber, whereof I haue had many in my handes. In their battels they haue target men, with boarde wicker targets, and darts with heaves at both endes, of pyon, the one in forme of a two edged swoorde, a foote and a halfe long, and at the other ende, the pyon long of the same length, made to counterpeale it, that in casting, it might kee leuell, rather then for any other purpose, as I can iudge. And when they espye the enemy, the Captaine to theere his men, crieth, Hungry, and they answer Heygre, and with that euery man placeth himselfe in order, for about euery target man three bowemen will couer themselves, and shooe as they see advantage: and when they giue the onset, they make such terrible cryes, that they may be heard two miles off. For their beliefe, I can heare of none that they haue, but in such as they themselves imagine to see in their dreames, and so worshippe the pictures, whereof we sawe some like vnto Diuels. In this Island aforesaide, wee sojourned vnto the one and twentieth of December, where hauing taken certaine Negroes, and of their fruites, rise, and myll, as we could well carry away, whereof there was such store, that we might haue laden one of our Barkes therewith, we departed, and at our departure, diuers of our men being desirous to goe a shoare, to fetch Pompons, which hauing p.oued, they found to be very good, certaine of the Tygers men went also, amongst the which there was a Carpenter, a pong man, who with his fellowes hauing set many, and carried them downe to their boates, as they were ready to depart, desired his fellowes to carry, while he might goe by to fetch a few which he had layed by for himselfe, who being moze licentious then circumspect, went by without weapon, and as hee went by alone, possibly being marked of the Negroes that were vpon the trees, espying him what he did, perreceiving him to be alone, and without weapon, dogged him, and finding him occupied in binding his Pompons together, came behynd him, ouerthrowing him, and straight cutte his throate, as he afterwards was founde by his fellowes, who came to the place for him, and there founde him dead.

The extreme negligence of one of the company.

The first Cal. b. 17.

The towne of Bamba.

The two and twentieth the Captaine went into the Riuer, called Callowfa, with the two Barkes, and the Iohns pinnetle, and Salomons boate, leauing at anker in the Rivers mouth the two shippes, the Riuer being twentie leagues in, where the Poringals road: he came the first and twentieth, and dispatched his business, and so returned with two Carauels, laden with Negroes.

The 27. the Captaine being aduertised by the Poringals, of a Towne of the Negroes, called Bamba, being in the way as they returned, where was an ouerly great quantitie of golde, but so that there were not about forty men, and a hundred women, and children in the Towne, so that if hee would giue the aduencure vpon the same, hee might gette a hundred slouts: with the which springing hee bearing glauce, because the Poringals should not thinke him to bee of so bafe a courage, but that hee wold to giue them that, and greater attempts: and being

being thereunto  
 here, where he  
 say before the  
 men in armour,  
 guides certaine  
 after boate, and  
 of this in a comp  
 in the meane t  
 whereas if stue  
 worthwhile to 40  
 by a route of the  
 some of them, bu  
 Negroes who stie  
 that some with g  
 the water, and ye  
 when men went  
 ting at them in t  
 coming, they r  
 they returned ag  
 somewhat discon  
 ry cheerfull out  
 of the rest, a ligh  
 Poringals being  
 to further displea  
 gues, and lost se  
 and he had 27. o  
 same instant, a m  
 up shacks of T  
 saure by the Salo  
 of the lesus men,  
 ch, and straped w  
 The 28. they  
 to Taggarin.

The first of J  
 we called the C  
 came to Taggar  
 two shippes thit  
 thinking to haue  
 some at their bo  
 to the castles, and  
 want we had of  
 make, where the  
 peere there the  
 ons stie, and the  
 ether. The time  
 here stene, to the  
 nes of our men,  
 day.

The 28. of J  
 now, before whic  
 and as they came  
 gree in a table  
 a shoare, hauing  
 in another, but  
 a great company  
 their shippes, no  
 were, which cl  
 had with the 12

being thereunto also the more p[ro]uoked with the prosperous successe he had in other Islands ad-  
 vent, where he had put them all to flight, and taken in one boate 20. together, determined to  
 stay before the Towne three or foure houres, to see what he could doe: and therefore prepared his  
 men in armour, and weapon together, to the number of forty men well appointed, hauing to their  
 guides certaine Poringals, in a boate, who brought some of them to their death: the landing boate  
 after boate, and diuers of our men scattering themselves, contrarie to the Captaines will, by one  
 of them in a companie, for the hope they had to finde golde in their houses, ransacking the same,  
 in the meane time the Negroes came vpon them, and hurte many, being thus scattered,  
 whereas if they had bene together, they had bene able, as their companies did, to giue the o-  
 verthwote to 40. of them, and being diuised to take their boates, were followed so hardly  
 by a rout of Negroes, who by that took courage to pursue them to their boates, that not onely  
 some of them, but others standing a shoare, not looking for any such matter, by meanes that the  
 Negroes did lie at the first, and our companie remained in the towne, were suddenly so set vpon,  
 that some with great hurt recouered their boates: other some not able to recouer the same,ooke  
 the water, and perished by meanes of the oaze. While this was a doing, the Captaine, who with a  
 wester men went though the Towne, returned, finding 200. Negroes at the waters side, shoot-  
 ing at them in the boates, and cutting them in peeces, which were drowned in the water, at whole  
 coming they ranne all away: so he entred his boates, and before he could put off from the shoare,  
 they returned againe, and shot very fiercely, and hurt diuers of them. Thus wee returned backe,  
 somewhat discomfited, although the Captaine in a singular wise manner, with countenance ve-  
 ry cheerefull outwardly, as though he did little weigh the death of his men, nor yet the great hurt  
 of the rest, although his heart inwardly was hoken in peeces for it, done in this ende, that the  
 Poringals being with him, should not presume to resist against him, nor take occasion to put him  
 to further displeasure or hinderance, for the death of our men hauing gotten by our going ten Ne-  
 groes, and lost seuen of our best men, whereof Walter Field, Captaine of the Salomon, was one,  
 and he had 27. of our men hurt. In the same hoare, while this was a doing, there happened at the  
 same instant, a meruelous miracle to them in the shippes, who roade ten leagues to seaward, by many  
 banks of Tuberon, who came about the shippes, among which one was taken by the Iesus, and  
 sent by the Salomon, and one very soe hurt, escaped: and so it fell out of our men, whereof one  
 of the Iesus men, and foure of the Salomons were killed, and the 5. hauing 20. wounds, was restru-  
 ed, and frayed with much adoe.

Portingals  
not to be cru-  
el.

Want of circ-  
umspection in  
our men.

The 28. they came to their shippes, the Iesus, and the Salomon, and the 30. departed from thence  
to Taggarin.

Taggarin.

The first of Januarie, the two barkes, and both the boates forsooke the shippes, and went into a ri-  
 ver, called the Casseroes, and the 6. hauing dispatched their business, the two barkes returned, and  
 came to Taggarin, where the two shippes were at anchor. Not two daies after the coming of the  
 two shippes thither, they put their water caskes a shoare, and filled it with water, to season the same,  
 thinking to haue filled it with fresh water afterward: and while their men were some a shoare, and  
 some at their boates, the Negroes set vpon them in the boates, and hurt diuers of them, and came  
 to the caskes, and cut off the hoops of twelue butts, which lost vs 4. or 5. dayes time, besides great  
 want we had of the same: sojourning at Taggarin, the Swallowe went by the river about her  
 make, where they sawe great townes of the Negroes, and Canoas, that had three score men in a  
 peere: there they vnderstoode of the Poringals, of a great battell, betwene them of the Sierra Le-  
 ona side, and them of Taggarin: they of Sierra Leona, had prepared 300. Canoas, to invade the  
 other. The time was appointed not past 6. daies after our departure from thence, which we would  
 haue bene, to the intent we might haue taken some of them, had it not bene for the death, and sick-  
 nes of our men, which came by the contagionnes of the place, which made vs to make haste a-  
 way.

January.  
The river of  
Casseroes.

Very great  
Canoas.

The contagion  
of the Canoe  
trip of Sierra  
Leona.

The 18. of Januarie at night, we departed from Taggarin, being bound to the West Ind-  
 ies, before which departure, certaine of the Salomons men went a shoare, to fill water in the night,  
 and as they came a shoare with their boate, being ready to leape a land, one of them espied a Ne-  
 groe in a white coat, standing vpon a rocke, being ready to haue receaued them, when they came  
 a shoare, hauing in sight of his fellows all nine, some in one place leaping out, & some  
 in another, but they by themselves straight againe: whereupon our men doubting they had dealt  
 a great company, and thought to haue taken them at moze advantage, as God would, departed to  
 their shippes, not thinking there had bene such a mischief pretended toward them, as then was in  
 deed. Which the next day we vnderstoode of a Poringall, that came to us, who had traffi-  
 ked with the Negroes, by whom he vnderstoode, that the King of Sierra Leona had made a flie  
 shot

pon which is laide  
 ne. In the middle  
 e, aboyning vnto  
 rooke ouer it, the  
 dra wted many fue  
 the Poringals af-  
 ch in the middes,  
 (w.) and the com-  
 e, which if a man  
 the Poringals by a  
 and as it is certain-  
 ason of the peere,  
 in the copping of a  
 and yeridely strebe  
 man, by the iunge-  
 and this surely I  
 euery man would  
 man doth plant by  
 non, but that with  
 Lizards, like the  
 slides their tails,  
 use in their waies  
 iutice of a Cum-  
 target men, with  
 in foyme of a too  
 of the same length,  
 other purpos, as  
 eu, crieth, Hungry,  
 r, for about eury  
 nantage: and when  
 two miles off. For  
 lines imagine to see  
 into Duels. In  
 ver, where hauing  
 carry away, (where-  
 with,) we departed  
 Thompions, which  
 not also, amongst  
 ing for many, and  
 fellows to carry,  
 being moze licious  
 ally being man-  
 cauting him to be  
 his Thompions to  
 as he afterwards  
 e founde him na-  
 wfa, with the two  
 Rivers mouth the  
 he came the first and  
 loaden with the  
 the Negroes, called  
 ie of golde, but al-  
 in the Towne, so  
 a hundred shoues:  
 not thinke him to  
 ter attempts: and  
 being

power be could, to take some of vs partly for the desire he had to see what kind of people we were, that had spoiled his people at the Idols, wherof he had newes before our coming, and as I haue also, upon other occasions prouoked by the Tangomangoes, but sure we were that the arme was come downe, by means that in the evening we sawe such a monstrous fire, made by the warning place, that before was not seene, which fire is the onely marke for the Tangomangoes, to know where their armie is alwaies. If these men had come downe in the evening, they had done us great displeasure, for that we were a hoare, sitting water: but God, who worketh all things for the best, would not haue it so, and by him we escaped without danger, his name be praised for it.

Tangomangoes.

February.

The 29. of the same moneth, we departed with all our ships from the Sierra Leona, towards the West Indias, where for the space of 28. daies, we were becalmed, having no wind and then contrary winds, and some Ternados amongst the same calme, which happened to vs very ill, being but reasonably watered, for so great a companie of Negroes, and our selues, which perched vs all, and that without was worth, put vs in such feare, that many neuer thought to haue reached to the Indias, without great death of Negroes, and of themselves: but Almighty God, who neuer suffereth his elect to perish, sent vs the streene of February, the vnderstande Bisele, which is the North west winde, which neuer left vs, till we came to an Island of the Cannibals, called Sancta Dominica, where we arrived the ninth of March, vpon a Saturday: and because it was the most desolate place in all the Islands, we could see no Cannibals, but some of their houses, where they dwelled, and as it should seeme, forsooke the place, for want of fresh water, for wee could finde none there but raine water, and such as fell from the hills, and remanued as a puddle in the dale, wherof we filled for our Negroes. The Cannibals of that Island, and also others adiacent, are the most desperate warriors that are in the Indias, by the Spaniards report, who are neuer able to conquer them, and they are molested by them not a little, when they are driuen to water there in any of those Islands: of very late, not two moneths past, in the same Island, a Carauell being driuen to water, was in the night sette vpon by the Inhabitants, who cutte their cable in the halter, whereby they were driuen a hoare, and so taken by them, and taken, came to one of those Islands, called Guanado, and being driuen to water, could not be the same, for the Cannibals, who fought with him very desperately two daies. For our part also, if we had not lighted vpon the deserted place in all the Island, we could not haue missed, but should haue bene greatly troubled by them, by all the Spaniards report, who make them Devils in respect of men.

Dominica Island. March.

Cannibals eating things cruel, and to be avoided.

The tenth day, at night, we departed from thence, and the streene had sight of nine Islands, called the Alcaldes: and the thirteenth, of an Island, called Margarita, where we were entertained by the Teltigo, and had both beeces and sheepe giuen vs, for the refreshing of our men: but the Governour of the Island, would neither come to speake with our Captaine, neither yet giue him any licence to traffike: and to displeas vs the more, whereas wee had hired a Pilot, to haue gone with vs, they would neither suffer him to goe with vs, but also sent word by a Carauell out of hand, to Santo Domingo, to the Viceroy, who doth represent the Kings person, of our arrival in those parts, which had like to haue turned vs to great displeasure, by the means that the same Viceroy did send word to Capo de la Vela, and to other places along the coast, commanding them by the vertue of his authoritie, and the obedience that they owe to their Prince, no man should traffike with vs, but should resist vs with all the force they could. In this Island, notwithstanding that we were not within foure leagues of the Towne, yet were they so afraid, that not onely the Governour himselfe, but also all the Inhabitants forsooke their Towne, assembling all the Indians to them, and fled into the mountaines, as we were partly certified, and also sawe the experience our selues, by some of the Indians coming to see vs, who by three Spaniards a boord, passing hard by vs, went vnto the Indians, hauing euerie one of them their bowes, and arrows, procuring them away, who before were conversant with vs. Here perceiving no traffike to be had with them, nor yet water for the refreshing of our men, wee were driuen to depart the twentieth day, and the thio and twentieth, we came to a place in the mappe, called Kenimnawo, whither the Captaine going in his pinnet, spake with certaine Spaniards, of whom he demanded traffike, but they made him and were they were but soldiers, not to come thither, and were not able to buy one Negroe: whereupon he asked for a watering place, and they pointed him a place two leagues off, called Sancta Fee, where we found marvellous goodly watering, and commodious for the taking in thereof: for that the fresh water came into the Sea, and so our shippes had aboue 20. fadomes water, where about this place, inhabited certaine Indians, who the next day of

The Religion of the Spaniards in this Island.

delighting in the things of God.

March 21. we came to the place called Sancta Fee, where we found marvellous goodly watering, and commodious for the taking in thereof: for that the fresh water came into the Sea, and so our shippes had aboue 20. fadomes water, where about this place, inhabited certaine Indians, who the next day of

wee came thither, had of course called in length, hauing by leaders, priuies potatoes be the roots. Their pinnet, but it is so much more delicious than having euerie one wearing the same, which men not to be as it groweth, on the which they the other parties concerned, having this both before and small barrels of grapes, and in the other. These men in waters, which other some with whereof we sawe others that the Sea of two inches high which they may find is of such a sort as the Spaniards as they make it, poison, with the make a medley.

The Indian whom we had hang calson while the Spaniards, who making any further here are made of bone with them women. The pilot had it bene vponly peaceable.

From hence land and the Island sawe five hundred time the Capitan hope, and some him golde, me the manners of christened: but the bene for want of bene for want of bene it, hee was here no such kind and are called a Darbozoa, by the small fens by the our Capitan made to him of the Spaniards

of people we were, and as I judge that the armie was made by the warring hangoes, to knowe they had done us such all things by name bee paples

ra Leona, to make noise and then to be very all felues, which brought to hime that I mighte see the ordinarie Wyeth of the Cannibals, and because some of their bow of fresh water, by and remaynes as a that Island, and al by the Spaniards a little, when they this past, in the same of the Inhabitantes, who in by them, and attempts, in Sparte, could not doe the For our part also, if e misse, but should like them Devils in

of nine Islands, we were entrep- of our men: but ne, neither yet give ed a Pilot, to come by a Caruall out of our arrivall means that the same no man should traf- Island, notwithstanding that not onely assembling all the also sawe the Spaniards a horseback, and arrivall, no traffike to be prepared the twentieth minnow, whither he demanded traf- and were not able to ed him a place the and commodities by appes had done so the, who the next day of

we came thither, came downe to us, presenting mill & cakes of bread, which they had made of a kind of corne called Spasse, in bignes of a peale, the eare wherof is much like to a graffe, but a span in length, having thereon a number of graines, Also they brought downe to us which we boughte by beanes, pewter whistles, glasses, knives, and ocher trifles, Pennes, Potatoes and pines. These pines are the most delicate rootes that may bee eaten, and doe farre exceede their paltreys of corne. Their pines be of the bignesse of two fistes, the outside wherof, is of the making of a pine apple, but it is soft like the rinde of a Couromber, and the inside eareth like an apple, but it is more delicious then any sweete apple sugred. Their Indians be of colour tawnic like an Olive, having every one of them both men and women, hair all blacke, and no ocher colour, the women wearing the same hanging downe to their shoulders, and the men rounded, and without beards, neither men nor women suffering any haire to growe in any part of their body, but daily pull it off as it groweth. They goe all naked, the men covering no part of their body but their part, by on the which they weare a gourd or piece of cane, made fast with a coper about his loines, leading the ocher partes of their member unconcovered, wherof they take no shame. The women also uncover, having with a cloth which they weare a handbread, wherewith they cover their privities both before and behind. These people be very small feeders, for travelling they carrie but two small boxes of gourdes, wherethin they put in one the iuice of Soyrell wherof they haue great store, and in the ocher sloype of their Spasse, which being moist, they eat, taking sometime of the ocher. These men carrie every man his bowe and arrowes, wherof some arrowes are poisoned by warres, which they keepe in a Cane together, which Cane is of the bignesse of a mans arme, ocher some with broad heades of iron wherewith they strike fishe in the water: the experience wherof we sawe not once nor twice, but daily for the time we taried there, for they are so good archers that the Spaniards for feare thereof arme themselves and their horses with quilted canvas of two inches thicke, and leave no place of their bodie open to their enemies, saving their eyes which they may not hide, and yet oftentimes are they bit in that so small a scantling: their poison is of such a force, that a man being stricken therewith, dieth within foure and twentie howers, as the Spaniards doe affirme, and in my judgement it is like there can bee no stronger poison as they make it, using therewith apples which are very faire and red of colour, but are a strong poison, with the which together with venomous Bats, Vipers, Adders and ocher serpents, they make a medley, and therewith anoint the same.

The use of Soyrell.

The making of their poison.

The Indian women belighe not when they are yong in bearing of children, because it maketh them have hanging breasts which they account to bee great deforming in them, and upon that occasion while they bee yong, they destroy their breasts, saying, that it is fittest for olde women. Whosoever, when they are delivred of child, they goe straight to washe themselves, without making any further ceremonie for it, not lying in bed as our women doe. The beds which they use are made of Gossypine cotton, and wroughed artificially of divers colours, which they carrie about with them when they travell, and making the same fast to two trees, lie therein they and their women. The people bee surely gentle and tractable, and such as desire to live peaceable, or els had it bene impossible for the Spaniards to have conquered them as they did, and the more to live now peaceable, they being so many in number, and the Spaniards so few.

The manner of the yong women.

From hence we departed the eight and twentieth, and the next day we passed betwene the maine land and the Island called Fortuga, a very lowe Island, in the peere of our Lord God one thousand five hundred sixtie five aforesaid, and sailed along the coast untill the first of Apriil, at which time the Captaine sayled along in the Jesus pinnace to discerne the coast, & saw many Caribes a Shore, and some also in their Canowas, which made tokens unto him of friendship, and shewed him golde, meaning thereby that they would traffique for wares. Whereupon he stayed to see the manners of them, and so for two or three cristes gave such things as they had about them and departed: but the Caribes were very importunate to haue them come a Shore, which if it had not bene for want of wares to traffique with them, he would not have denied them, because the Indians we sawe before were very gentle people, and such as doe no man hurt. But as God would have it, hee wanted that thing, which if hee had had, would have bene his confusion: for these here no such kinde of people as wee tooke them to bee, but more diuells a thousand partes, and are eaters and deuourers of any man they catch, as it was after wares delated unto us at Darbozoats, by a Caruall comming out of Spaine with certaine souldiours, and a captaine general sent by the king for those Eastward parts of the Indians, who sailing along in his pinnace about Captaine did to descie the coast, was by the Caribes called a Shore with sundry tokens made to him of friendship, and golde shewen as though they desired traffique, with the which the Spaniards being moued, suspecting no treccie at all, went a Shore amongst them,

The Isle of Fortuga.

C. C.

who

The crueltie of  
the Caribes.

who was no sooner a shoye, but with 4. or 5. more was taken, the rest of his company being murthered by them, saved themselves by flight, but they that were taken, paid their ranfome with their lives, and were presently eaten. And this is their practise to kill with their golde the ignorant to their shaires: they are bloudsuckers both of Spaniards, Indians, and all that lig be in their laps, not sparing their owne countrymen if they can conveniently come by them. Their pollicie in fight with the Spaniards is maruelous: for they choose for their refuge the mountains and woods where the Spaniards with their horse cannot follow them, and if they fortune to bee met in the plaine where one boyfman may ouerrunne 100. of them, they haue a deuise of late practised by them to pitch stakes of wood in the ground, and also small iron pikes to mischiefe their horse, wherein they shew themselves pollicke warriours. They haue more abun dance of gold then all the Spaniards haue, and liue upon the mountains where the Spines are in surh number, that the Spaniards haue much adoe to get any of them from them, and yet sometimes by assembling a great number of them, which happeneth once in two yeeres, they get a piece from them, which afterwards they keepe sure inough.

Burboyoata.

Thus hauing escaped the danger of them, wee kept our course along the coast, and came the third of Apriill to a Towne called Burboyoata, where his ships came to an anchor, and hee himselfe went a shoye to speake with the Spaniards, to whom he declared himselfe to be an Englishman, and came thither to trade with them by the way of merchandize, and therefore required licence for the same. Unto whom they made answer, that they were forbidden by the king to traffique with any fozen nation, vpon penaltie to forfeit their goods, therefore they desired him not to molest them any further, but to depart as he came, for other comfoze he might not looke for at their hands, because they were subjects & might not goe beyond the law. But hee replied that his necessitie was such, he might not doe so; for being in one of the Queenes Armados of England, and hauing many soulbours in them, he had neede both of some refreshing for them, and of victuals, and of money also, without the which hee could not depart, and with much other talke perswaded them not to feare any dishonest part of his behalfe towards them, for neither would hee commit any such thing to the dishonour of his prince, nor yet for his honest reputation and estimation, wilst hee were too rigorously dealt withall, which hee hoped not to finde at their hands, in that it should as well rebound to their profit, as his owne, and also hee thought they might doe it without damage, because their princes were in amitie one with another, and for our partes wee had free traffique in Spaine and Flaunders, which are in his dominions, and therefore hee knew no reason why hee should not haue the like in all his dominions. To the which the Spaniards made answer, that it laie not in them to giue any licence, for that they had a gouernour to whom the gouernment of those partes was committed, but if they would stay tenne dayes, they would send in their gouernour who was three score leagues off, and would returne answere within the space appointed of his mind.

In the meane time they were contented he should bring his ships into harbour, and there they would deliuer him any victuals he would require. Whereupon the fourth day wee went in, where being one day and receiuing all things according to promise, the captaine abused himselfe, that to remaine there tenne dayes idle, spending victuals and mens wages, and perhaps in the eue receiue no good answer from the gouernour, it were meere follie, and therefore determined to make request to haue licence for the sale of certaine leane and sicke Negroes which he had in his styppe like to die vpon his hands if he kept them ten dayes, hauing little or no refreshing for them, where as other men hauing them, they would be recouered well inough. And this request hee was forced to make, because he had not otherwise wherewith to pay for victuals & for necessaries which he should take: which request being put in writing and presented, the officers and towne dwellers assembled together, and finding his request so reasonable, graunted him licence for thirtie Negroes, which afterwards they caused the officers to view, to the intent they should grant to nothing but that were very reasonable, for feare of answering thereunto afterwards. This being past, our captaine according to their licence, thought to haue made sale, but the day past and none came to buy, who before made them that they had great neede of them, and therefore wist not what to surmise of them, whether they went about to prolong the time of the Gouernour his answere because they would keepe themselves blamelesse, or for any other pollicie hee knew not, and for that purpose sent them word, maruelling what the matter was that none came to buye them. They answered, becaust they had graunted licence onely to the poore to buye those Negroes of small price, and their money was not so readable as other mens of more wealth. Shoye then that as soone as euer they sawe the shippes, they conueyed away their money by their wits that went into the mountains for feare, and were not yet returned, and yet asked two dayes to seeke

the

the wits and see  
tion, but could not  
make perceiving the  
that if hee had licence  
places, and send for  
himselfe to be very  
necessary to come  
and of hed him whome  
to haue his licence.  
for, which hee percei  
ferred him his wits  
as in his shipping, a  
Negroes for a grea  
not to sell better the  
should not loose his  
taine being put in  
groes, which they  
and paid for them  
groes, being the  
giue the discharge  
might be demaund  
wilst the Gouernour  
made petition, des  
England, being b  
sight, hee had nec  
neede of money for  
therfore although  
the licence for the  
to traffique with  
that the thing perce  
seruice, and that it  
gations wist diu  
counsell for that m  
which was the ab  
be graunted vnto.

Whereupon the  
by a great deale  
will be a great lo  
which was too v  
shortness of Apri  
les and pikes, wi  
uermour, hee str  
marche no further  
do our captaine  
the same abated,  
was thorough b  
them. And this t  
should bee to his  
ness finding so li  
wills, or els they  
beginning our tra  
Thus hauing  
traded to goe ou  
mon shoye haui  
they were come  
captaine knew to  
without any ac al

The nine and

pany being in  
in some such  
the ignorant  
to be in their  
the pollicie in  
times and bo  
to be met in  
of late practi  
by their host  
re of gold the  
number, that  
by assembling  
them, which a

and, and came  
and her com  
an Englishm  
quired licence  
to traffique  
not to molest  
their hands, b  
was necessar  
and, and havi  
victuals, and  
of victuals the  
communic any  
tion, whilste  
that it should  
it without dan  
wee had free  
knew no reaso  
lards made an  
to whom the go  
they would send  
in the space ap

, and there the  
we went in, wh  
to himselfe, th  
chaps in the e  
ze determined  
which he had in  
re thing for them,  
this request he  
of necessaries  
cers and towne  
in licence for th  
they should gra  
vices. This do  
the day past  
and therefore w  
Gouernour his  
ie he hurt no  
me came to bu  
e those Negroes  
Hoye then that  
their wares that  
no wayes to seeke  
their

ship wines and fetch their money. Notwithstanding, the next day diuers of them came to the port, but could not agree of price, because they thought the price to high. Whereupon the Captaine perceiuing they went about to bring downe the price, and meant to buie, and would not consent if hee had licence, that hee might sell at any reasonable rate, as they were wont in other places, and bid for the Principals of the Towne, and made a she woe would depart, declaring himselfe to be very sorry that hee had so much troubled them, and also that hee had sent for the gouernour to come downe, seeing now his price was to depart, whereat they marvelled much, and asked him what cause moued him thereunto, seeing by their working he was in possibilitie to haue his licence. To the which he replied that it was not onely a licence that he sought, but profit, which hee perceiued was not there to be had, and therefore would seeke further, and withall shewed him his writings what hee paid for his Negroes, declaring also the great charge hee was in his shipping, and mens wages, and therefore to counteruaile his charges, hee must sell his Negroes for a greater price then they offered. So they doubting his departure, put him in countenance to sell better there then in any other place. And if hee sold out that hee had no licence, that hee should not loose his labour in tarrying, for they would buie without licence. Whereupon the captaine being put in comfort, promised them to stay, so that hee might make sale of his leane Negroes, which they graunted vnto. And the next day did sell some of them, who hauing bought and paid for them, thinking to haue had a discharge of the Customes for the custome of the Negroes, being the kings waite, they gaue it away to the poore for Gods sake, and did refuse to giue the discharge in writing, and the poore not trusting their wordes, for feare, least hereafter it might be demaunded of them, did refraine from buying any more, so that nothing els was done vntill the Gouernours coming downe, which was the fourteenth day, and then the Captaine made petition, declaring that hee was come thither in a shippe of the Queenes maiesties of England, being bound to Guinie, and thither driuen by winde and weather, so that being come thither, hee had neede of sundry necessaries for the reparation of the sayde shaule, and also great neede of money for the payment of his shouldours, vnto whom hee had promised payement, and therefore although hee would, yet would not they depart without it, and for that purpose requested licence for the sale of certaine of his Negroes, declaring that although they were forbidden to traffique with strangers, yet for that there was a great amitie betwene their princes, and that the thing pertained to our Queenes highnesse, hee thought he might doe their prince great service, and that it would be well taken at his hands, to doe it in this cause. The which allegations with diuers others put in request, were presented vnto the Gouernour, who sitting in counsell for that matter, graunted vnto his request for licence. But yet there fell out another thing which was the abating of the kings custome, being vpon euery slaue 30. buckets, which would not be graunted vnto.

Whereupon the captaine perceiuing that they would neither come neere his price hee looked for by a great deale, nor yet would abate the kings custome of that they offered, so that either hee must be a great looser by his wares, or els compell the officers to abate the same kings custome which was too vntreasonable, for to a higher price hee could not bring the buiers: Therefore the sternment of Apull hee prepared one hundred men well armed with bowes, arrows, harquebushes and pikes, with the which he marched to the towne wardes, and being perceiued by the Gouernour, hee straight with all expedition sent messengers to know his request, desiring him to marche no further forward vntill hee had answer againe, which incontinent hee should haue. So our captaine declaring how vntreasonable a thing the kings custome was, requesting to haue the same abated, and to pay seuen and a halfe per centum, which is the ordinarie custome for wares through his dominions there, and vnto this if they would not graunt, he would displease them. And this word being carried to the Gouernour, answer was returned that all things should be to his content, and thereupon hee determined to depart, but the shouldours and mariners finding so little credite in their promises, demaunded gages for the performance of the promises, or els they would not depart. And thus they being constrained to send gages, we departed, beginning our traffique, and ending the same without disturbance.

Thus hauing made traffique in the harborough vntill the 28. our Captaine with his ships intended to goe out of the roade, and purposed to make shew of his departure, because now the common sort hauing imploried their money, the rich men were come to towne, who made no shew that they were come to buie, so that they went about to bring downe the price, and by this pollicie the captaine knew they would be made the more eger, for feare least we departed, and they should goe without any at all.

The wine and ciuencie we being at anchor without the roade, a French shippe called the Greene

The reports  
of the mutiny  
of the Spaniards  
in Guinea.

May.

Waxen kept  
ready sailed.

Exceeding  
plentie of cat-  
till in Curacao.

Dragon of the whauen, whereof was captaine one Don Temps came in, who saluted us after the manner of the Sea, with certaine pieces of ordinance, and we returned him with the like againe: with whom having communication, he declared that he had bene at the Spine in Guinea, and was beaten off by the Portugals Gallies, and enforced to come thither to make sale of such wares as he had: and further that the like was happened unto the Spaniards, besides the captaine, Donie Carlet and a merchant, with a dozen mariners betrayed by the Negroes at their first arrival thither, and remaining prisoners with the Portugals, besides other misadventures of the rest of their men, happened thorough the great lacke of fresh water, with great doubts of bringing home the ships, which was most sorrowfull for vs to understand.

Thus having ended our traffique here the 4. of May, wee departed, leaving the French men behind us, the night before the which, the Cariben whereof I have made mention before, being to the number of 200. came in their Canoes to Burbopoua, intending by night to have burned the towne, and taken the Spaniards, who being more vigilant because of our being there, then their custome was, perceiving them coming, raised the towne, who in a moment being a litle backe, by means their custome is for all doubts to keepe their hostes ready sailed, in the night bet upon them, and took one, the rest making shift for themselves, escaped a way. But this one, because hee was their guide, and was the occasion that divers times they had made invasion upon them, had for his reward a stake thrust thorough his fundament, and so out at his necke.

The six of May aforesayd, wee came to an Island called Curacao, where wee had thought to have anchored, but could not finde ground, and hauing let fall an anker twich two cables, were faine to weie it againe, and the 7. sayling along the coast to seeke an harborow, and could finde none, came to an anker where wee rode open in the sea. In this place we had traffique for Hides, and found great refreshing both of beefe, mutton and lambs, whereof there was such plentie, that sawing the skinner, we had the flesh giuen vs for nothing, the plentie whereof was so abundaunt, that the worst in the ship thought to see not onely of mutton, but also of sodden lambe, which they did daine to eat vntill.

The increase of cattell in this Island is marvellous, which from a dozen of each sorte brought thither by the gouernour, in 25. yeeres had 100. thousand at the least, and of other cattell was able to kill without spoile of the increase, 15. hundred yeerely, which he killith for the skinner, and of the flesh sauerly onely the tongues, the rest he leauech to the soule to deuour. And this I am able to affirme, not onely vpon the Gouernours owne repute, who was the first that brought the increase thither, and so remaineth vnto this day, but also by that I sawe my selfe in one field, where an hundred open lay one by another all whole, sauing the skinne and tongue taken a way, and it is not so maruelous a thing why they doe thus call a way the flesh in all the Islands of the West Indies, seeing the land is great, and more then they are able to inhabit, the people fewe, hauing delicate fruites and meates inough besides to feede vpon, which they rather desire, and the increase which passeth means reason to beleue, when they come to a great number: for in St. Dominga an Island called by the finders thereof, Hispaniola, is so gre at quantitie of cattell, and such increase thereof, that notwithstanding the daily killing of them for their hides, it is not able to allwaie the number of them, but they are deuoured by wild dogs, whose number is such by suffering them first to range the woods and mountains, that they eat and destroy 60000. a yeere, and yet small lacke found of them. And no marvell, for the said Island is almost as big as all England, and being the first place that was found of all the Indies, and of long time inhabited before the rest, and therfore it ought of reason to be most populous, and to this howe the Viceroy and counsell roiall, abideth there as in the chiefest place of all the Indies to prescribe orders to the rest for the kings behalf, yet haue they but one citie and 13. villages in all the same Island, whereby the spoile of them is respect of the increase is nothing.

The 15. of the foresaid month we departed from Curacao, being not a litle to the reioycing of our captaine and vs, that we had there ended our traffique, for notwithstanding our sweete meate, we had sower sauce, for by reason of our riding so open at sea, what with blades whereby our ankens being a ground, chace at once came home, and also with contrary winde blowing, whereby for feare of the shoare we were faine to hale off to haue anker hold, sometimes a whole day and a night turning by and downe, and this happened not once, but halfe a dozen times in the space of our being there.

The 16. wee passed by an Island called Aruba, and the 17. at night, ankerd 6. howers at the West end of Cabo de La vela, and in the morning being the 18. weie againe, keeping our course, in the which time the captaine sailing by the shoare in the pinnace, came to the Rancharia, a place where the Spaniards use to sh for pearles, and there spoke with a Spaniard, who told him how

farre

farre off he was from  
againe, and the 19.  
next three, declared  
by the gouernour the  
advice that they  
colligence of our be-  
could, inasmuch the  
should loose all the  
name. Our captaine  
and sent about othe-  
rary bindes to com-  
Spaine, to the coun-  
tes. But seeing the  
should not be said by  
he would rather pre-  
tuller them to be  
so vpon this it was  
piece as was the one  
and none other will  
so weak ocherwise  
to them a letter, the  
of his commodities  
like as any other man  
meaning bying them  
be that of a whole  
borne a shoare, hain-  
be in their noses,  
with their dumme  
the number of an  
hope, whereby they  
uing them so bying  
in no small feare  
they fell flat to the  
perish themselves  
colligence. The boy  
and to come with the  
kings in the other  
they gaue ground  
to be dofolp: and  
to haue encounter  
Captaine, who de-  
quies, in consider-  
but the Captaine  
paled him to stay  
come and speake  
his armour with  
near him for feare  
committing to gr  
the company, the  
wile when they  
ing that no in the  
assurance then to  
we made our tra-  
byreth off from  
was made free  
with 4. sec. a los  
his nature is to  
the, which is his



lured vs after the  
the like against  
Duties, and was  
of such forces as  
line, Donie Cap-  
first arrivall this  
of the last of  
of hanging some

the French man  
in before, being to  
to have burned  
ring there, then  
ing being a losse  
in, in the night  
But this one, be-  
the situation upon  
necke.

he had thought to  
find some, where  
ould finde none,  
for Pides, and  
plentie, that was  
so abundant,  
the, which they

each foze brought  
er cattell was a  
e skinner, and  
this I am able  
broughte the in-  
one field, where  
away, and it is  
of the West In-  
le fewe, having  
and the increase  
D. Domingo  
and such increase  
to all wage the  
serving them first  
yet small lacke  
and being the  
and therefoze  
I rotall, abideth  
kings behalle,  
toile of them in

the rejoycing of  
is sweete meate,  
whereby our an-  
to wings, where  
whole day and  
in the space of

5. bowlers at the  
ping our court,  
charia, a place  
to told him how  
farre

low off he was from Rio de la Hacha, which because he would not overthoote, whereto that night  
again, and the 19. came thither, where having talke with the kings treasurer of the Indies, rest  
and there, declared his quiet traffique in Burboyan, and shewed a certificate of the same, made  
by the gouernour thereof, and therefore he desired to haue the like there also: but the treasurer made  
answer that they were forbidden by the Viceroy and counsell of S. Domingo, who having in-  
sistence of our being on the coast, did send express commission to resist vs, with all the force they  
could, inasmuch that they would not traffique with vs in no case, alleging that if they did, they  
should loose all that they did traffique for, besides their homes at the magistrates commande-  
ment. Our capitaine replied, that hee was in an Armado of the Quenes maiesties of England,  
and sent about other her affaires, but dyuen besides his pretended boiage, was enforced by con-  
trary windes to come into those partes, where he hoped to find such friendship as hee should doe in  
Spain, to the contrary wherof he knew no reason, in that there was amitie betwix their prin-  
ces. But seeing they would contrary to all reason goe about to withstand his traffique, he would it  
should not be said by him, that having the foze he hath, to be dyuen from his traffique purpote, but  
he would rather put it in aduenture to trie whether he or they should haue the better, and therefore  
willed them to determine either to giue him licence to trade, or els to stand to their owne harmes:  
So upon this it was determined hee should haue licence to trade, but they would giue him such a  
price as was the one halfe lesse then he had sold for before, and thus they sent word they would do,  
and none otherwile, if it liked him not, he might do what he would, for they were not determined  
to deale otherwile with him. Whereupon, the capitaine waiying their unconstruable request, wrot  
to them a letter, that they dekt too rigorously with him, to goe about to cut his choise in the price  
of his commodities, which were so reasonable rated, as they could not by a great deale haue the  
like at any other mans hands. But seeing they had sent him this in his supper, hee would in the  
morning bring them as good a breakfast. And therefore in the morning being the 21. of May,  
he shot of a whole Caluering to summon the towne, and preparing one hundred men in armour,  
went a boze, having in his great boate two Faulcons of hault, and in the other boates double ba-  
ds in their noses, which being perceived by the Townesmen, they incontinent in battell arise  
with their drumme and ensigne displayed, marched from the Towne to the sands, of footmen to  
the number of an hundred and fiftie, making great hyaggas with their cries, and swearing vs a  
hoze, whereby they made a formidable to haue foughte with vs in deede. But our Capitaine percei-  
uing them so hyagge, commanded the two Faulcons to be discharged at them, which put them  
in no small feare to see, as they afterward declared, such great pieces in a boate. At euery boote  
they fell flat to the ground, and as we approached neere vnto them, they hoke their arate, and dis-  
garded themselves so much for feare of the ordinaunce, that at last they went all away with their  
ensigne. The footmen also being about thirtie, made as hyane a shew as might be, courting vs  
and to done with their hoyses, they haue white leather Targets in the one hand, and their Iau-  
elings in the other, as though they would haue receiued vs at our landing. But when we landed,  
they gaue ground, and considered what they should doe, for liell they thought we would haue lan-  
ded so boldly: and therefore as the Capitaine was putting his men in aray, and marched forward  
to haue encountered with them, they sent a messenger on horsebacke with a flagge of cruce to the  
Capitaine, who declared that the treasurer marvelled what hee ment to doe to come a boze in that  
order, in consideration that they had graunted to euery reasonable request that hee did demand:  
but the Capitaine not well concerned with this messenger, marched forwardes. The messenger  
paled him to stay his men, and said, if hee would come apart from his men, the treasurer would  
come and speake with him, wherunto hee did agree to common together. The capitaine onely with  
his armour without weapon, and the treasurer on horseback with his iaueling, was afraid to come  
neere him for feare of his armour, which hee said was worse then his weapon, and so keeping aloofe  
communicating together, granted in fine to all his requests. Which being declared by the capitaine to  
the company, they desired to haue pledges for the performance of all things, doubting that other-  
wile when they had made themselves strong, they would haue bene at defiance with vs: and see-  
ing that now they might haue what they would request, they iudged it to be moze wisdom to be in  
assurance then to be forced to make any moze labours about it. So upon this, gages were sent, and  
we made our traffique quietly with them. In y meane time while we staid here, the water a good  
pace off from the shore, where by the sight of the fresh water running into the sea, the salt water  
was made fresh. In this river we saw many crocodils of slidy bignesses, but some as big as a boze,  
which 4. feet, a long broad mouth, & a long talle, whose skin is so hard, that a sword will not pierce it.  
This nature is to liue out of the water as a frog doth, but he is a great deuourer, & spareth neither  
fish, which is his comon food, nor beests, nor men, if he take the, as the prooue thereof was knowen

pp. 534  
his letter to  
the treasurer  
of Rio de la  
Hacha.

by a Negroe, who as he was filling water in the tiner was by one of them carried cleane away, and neuer seene after. His nature is ever when he would have his paine, to crye, and sobbe like a christian bodie, to pioushe them to come to him, and then hee snatches at them, and thereupon came this pouverbe that is applied unto women when they weepe, Lachryma Crocodili, the meaning whereof is, that as the Crocodile when he crieth, goeth then about most to deerie, so doth a woman most commonly when she weepeth. Of these the matter of the *Itelias* watched one and by the barthes shee strooke him with a pike of a bill in the side, and after 3. or 4. times turning in sight, hee ranke dothome, & was not afterward seene. In the time of our being in the rivers of Guatida, we saw many of a monstrous bignes, amongst the which the capatine being in one of the barthes comming dothome the same, shot a saulcon at one, which very narrowly he missed, and with a steere plunged into the water, making a streame like the way of a boate.

How while we were here, whether it were of a feare that the Spaniards doubted wee would have done them some harme before wee departed, or for any reason that they pretended towardes vs, I am not able to say, but then came thither a capatine from some of the other townes, with a doozen souldiers, who upon a time that our capatine and the treasurer cleared all things betwixt them, and were in a communication of a debt of the governours of *Burboaca*, which was to be paid by the said treasurer, who would not answer the same by any means. Certaine words of displeasure passed betwixt the capatine and him, and parting the one from the other, the treasurer possibly doubing that our capatine would perhaps have sought the same, did immediately command his men in armour both horsemen and footemen: but because the capatine was in the River on the backe side of the towne with his other boates, and all his men unarmed and with our weapons, it was to be judged hee might have mischieued many of his men, but the capatine having understanding thereof, not trusting to their gentleness, if they might have the advantage, departed aboard his ships, and at night returned againe, & demanded amongst other talke, what they meant by assembling their men in that order, and they answered, that their capatine being come to towne did murder his men according to his accustomed manner. But it is to bee judged to bee a cloake, in that comming for purpose hee might have done it sooner, but the truth is, they were not of force to kill them, whereby to enterprize any matter against vs, by meanes of pikes and harquebushes, whereof they have many, and were now furnished by our capatine, and also 3. saulcons, which having got in other places, they had secretly conveyed thither, which made them the bolder, and also for that they sawe now a convenient place to do such a feat, and time also serving thereunto, by the means that our men were not only unarmed and unprovided, as at no time before the like, but also were occupied in getting of wood, & least thinking of any harme: these were occasions to pioushe them thereunto. And I suppose they were about to bring it to effect, in that \* I with another gentleman being in the towne, thinking of no harme towardes vs, and seeing men assembling in armour to the treasurers house, whereof I marvelled, and crusing to minde the former talke betwixt the capatine and him, and the unradaisell of our men, of whom advantage might have bene taken, departed out of the towne immediately to give knowledge thereof, but before wee came to our men by a slight shot, two horsemen riding a gallop were come neere vs, being sent, as wee did gesse, so that vs least we should carrie netes to our capatine, but seeing vs so neere our men staid their horses, comming together, and suffering vs to passe, belike because wee were so neere, that if they had gone about the same, they had bene espied by some of our men which then immediately would have departed, whereby they should have bene frustrate of their ppretence: and so the two horsemen ride about the bushes to espye what wee did, and seeing vs gone, to the intent they might shew their comming dothome in post, whereof suspition might be had, saim to a simple cruce in asking whether hee could sell any wine, but that seemed so simple to the capatine, that standing in doubt of their curtesie, hee returned in the morning with his 3. boates, appointed with bales in their noses, and his men with weapons accordingly, where as before hee came in none: & thus dissembling all subtities conceived of both partes, the capatine went a hoze, leaving pledges in the boates for himselfe, & cleared all things betwixt the treasurer and him, causing for the governours debt, which the one by no means would answer, nor the other, because it was no his due debt, he would not molest him for it, but was content to remit it vntill another time, & therefore departed, causing the two barthes which rode neere the hoze to tiee and goe under saile, which was done to the intent that capatine demanding a testimoniall of his good behauiour there, could not have the same vntill hee were vnder the saile ready to depart, and therefore at night went for the same againe, and received it at the treasurers hand, of whom very curteously heeooke his leave, and departed spooring of the bales of his boate for his farewell, and the towne men also thus off

The manner of  
this voyage.

house

of them carried cleane away,  
ie, to drie, and fobbe like a  
bech at them, and thereupon  
Lachrymæ Crocodili, the  
in about moſt to dectine, ſo  
of the Jeths watched me  
after 3. or 4. times turning  
being in the rivers of Cuba  
being in one of the barkes  
to be miſſed, and with a ſcare

our ſouldiers would  
that they pretended to worke  
of the other towes, with a  
er cleared all things becauſe  
harbovota, which was to be  
meanes. Certaine voyagers  
from the other, the treaſure  
ſame, did immediately conſu-  
the captaine was in the  
his men unarmed and with  
advantage of him, that com-  
but the captaine having  
the advantage, departed  
other talke, what they meant  
captaine being come to toſome  
me ſudged to bee a clothe, in  
which is, they were not of force  
of pikes and harquebuzes,  
ſo alſo 3. ſaulcons, which he  
de them the bolden, and alſo  
ſeruing thereunto, by the  
time before the like, but alſo  
were occaſions to provoke  
in that \* If with another  
and ſeeing men aſſembling in  
to minde the former talke be-  
orn advantage might have  
dge thereof, but before we  
come neere vs, being ſent, as  
ſeeing vs to neere our men  
be cauſe we were to neere,  
our men which then imma-  
of their pretence: and ſo the  
yſ gone, to the intent they  
he had, ſained a ſimple cru-  
the captaine, that ſtanding  
os, appointed with baſes in  
occur'd name: and thus di-  
voy, leaving pledges in the  
in, ſaſuing for the governours  
iſe it was no bis due debt,  
time. & therefore departed,  
under ſaile, which was done  
behaviour there, could not  
reſoſe as mighte were for the  
readily heooke his leave,  
he to ſome ſenent alſo ſhot of  
ſoure

four ſaulcons and chirtie harquebuzes, and this was the firſt time that we knew of the concey-  
ance of they ſaulcons.

The 3. of May we departed, keeping our courſe to Hiſpaniola, and the fourth of June we  
had ſight of an Iſland, which we made to be Iamaica, marvelling that by the beſt courſe of the  
ſea we ſhould be ſpurne ſo farre to ſeeward: ſo ſetting our courſe to the Weſt end of Hiſpa-  
niola we fell with the middle of Iamaica, not withſtanding that to all mens ſight it ſeemed a broad  
land, but they were all deceived by the clouds that lay upon the land two dayes together, in ſuch  
ſort that we thought it to be the head land of the ſaid Iſland. And a Spaniard being in the ſhip, who  
was a merchant, and inhabitant in Iamaica, having occaſion to go to Guinie, and bring by reaſon  
taken of the Negroes, & afterwards bought by the Tangomangoes, was by our captaine brought  
from thence, and had his paſſage to go into his country, who perceiving the land, made as though  
he knew every place thereof, and pointed to certaine places, which he named to be ſuch a place, and  
ſuch a mans ground, and that betwix ſuch a point was the harbovota, but in the end he pointed ſo  
from one point to another, that we were a leeboord of all places, & found our ſelves at the Weſt  
end of Iamaica before we were aware of it, and being oner to leeward, there was no getting by  
again, ſo that by truſting of the Spaniards knowledge, our captaine ſought not to ſpeake with  
any of the inhabitants, which if he had not made himſelfe ſure of, he would have done, as his cuſtom  
was in other places: but this man was a plague not onely to our captaine, who made him looſe,  
by overſhooting the place, two thouſand pounds by hides, which he might have gotten, but alſo to  
himſelfe, who being there perceres out of his country, and in great miſery in Guinie, loth among  
the Negroes and Tangomangoes, and in hope to come to his wife and friends, as he made ſure  
account, in that as his going in to the pinnell, when he went a ſhoare he put on his new clothes,  
and ſo lay ſlung away his olde, could not afterwards finde any habitation, neither there nor in all  
Cuba, which we ſapled all along, but it fell out ever, by one occaſion or other, that we were put  
betwix the ſame, ſo that he was ſayne to be brought into England, and it happened to him as it did  
to a Duke of Samaria, when the Iſraelites were beleeged, and were in great miſery with hunger,  
and being told by the Prophet Eliazus, that a buſhell of ſo were ſhould be ſolde for a ſicke, would  
not beleue him, but thought it impoſſible: and ſo for that cauſe Eliazus prophesied he ſhould ſee  
the ſame done, but he ſhould not eate thereof: ſo this man being abſent three yeeres, and not ever  
thinking to have ſeene his owne country, did ſee the ſame, went upon it, and yet was it not his  
intent to come to it, or to any habitation, whereby to remayne with his friends according to his  
deſire.

Thus having ſailed along the coaſt two dayes, we departed the ſeventh of June, being made  
to beleue by the Spaniard, that it was not Iamaica, but rather Hiſpaniola, of which opinion the  
captaine alſo was, becauſe that which he made Iamaica ſeemed to be but a piece of the land, and  
ſhortlyooke it rather to be Hiſpaniola, by the lying of the coaſt, and alſo for that being ignorant  
of the force of the current, he could not beleue he was ſo farre by in to leeward, and therefore ſet-  
ting his courſe to Iamaica, and after certaine dayes, not finding the ſame, percered then certainly  
that the Iſland which he was at before, was Iamaica, and that the clouds did deceive him, whereof  
he marvelled not a little: and this miſtaking of the place came to as ill a paſſe as the overſhooting  
of Iamaica: for by this did he alſo overpaſſe a place in Cuba, called Santa Cruz, where, as he  
was informed, was great ſtope of hides to be had: and thus being diſappointed of two of his ports,  
where he thought to have raiſed great profit by his traffike, and alſo to have found great reſreſh-  
ing of victualles and water for his men, was now diſappointed greatly, and ſuch want he had of  
freſh water, that he was forced to ſeek the ſhoare to obtaine the ſame, which he had ſight of after  
certaine dayes overpaſſed with ſtormes and contrary windeſ, but yet not of the maine of Cuba, but  
of certaine Iſlands, in number two hundred, whereof the moſt part was deſolate of inhabitants: by  
the which Iſlands the captaine paſſing in his pinnell, could finde no freſh water until he came to  
an Iſland bigger then all the reſt, called the Iſle of Pimas, where we anchored with our ſhippes the  
ſeventh of June, and found water, which although it were neither ſo ſweetſome as running wa-  
ter, by the meanes it is ſtanding, and but the want of raine, and alſo being neere the ſea was ſhar-  
kly, yet did we not reſuſe it, but were moze glad thereof, as the time then required, then we ſhould  
have beene an other like with ſwe conduct water. Thus being reaſonably watered we were de-  
ſirous to depart, becauſe the place was not very convenient for ſuch ſhippes of charge as they were,  
becauſe there were many ſhoales leeward, and alſo lay open to the ſea for any winde that ſhould  
blow, and therefore the captaine made the moze haſte away, which was not unneceſſary for ſo little  
ſomer were there ankens weped, and ſoſeſay ſet, but there aroſe ſuch a ſtorme, that they had not  
much to ſpare for doubling out of the ſhoales: ſo one of the barkes not being fully ready as the reſt  
was

June.

The beſt ſight  
force of the  
current.

Two hundred  
Iſlands for  
the moſt part  
not inhabited.

was lame for haste to cutte the cable in the hawse, and looke both anker and cable to save her selfe.

The cape of  
S. Anthony  
in Cuba.

Florida.

July.  
The first of  
August.  
Great hope of  
birds.

A hill called  
the Table.

The port of  
Havana.

Thus the seventeenth of June we departed and the twentieth fell with the West end of Cuba, called Cape S. Anthony, where for the space of three dayes, we doubled along till we came beyond the shoales, which are 20 leagues beyond S. Anthony. And the ordinary brile taking us, which is the North-east winde, put us the 24 from the shoare, and therefore we went to the Southward to fresh winde, and also to the coast of Florida to have the brise of the current, which was iudged to bene set to the Eastward: so the 29 wee found our selues in 27 degrees, and in the soundings of Florida, where we kept our selues the space of foure dayes, sailing along the coast as nere as we could, in tenne or twelve fathome water, having all the while no sight of land.

The first of July we had sight of certaine Ilandes of land, called the Tortugas (which is some land) where the capitaine went in with his pinnesse, and found such a number of birds, that in halfe an houre he laded her with them, and if they had bene tenne boats more, they might have done the like. These Ilandes beere the name of Tortels because of the number of them, which there be byed, whose nature is to live both in the water and upon land also, but theye do onely upon the shoare, in making a great pit wherein they lay egges to the number of thre or foure hundred, and covering them with sand, are bred by the heat of the sunne, and by this meane commeth the great increase. Of these we tooke very great ones, which have both backe and belly all of bone of the thickness of an inch, the fish whereof we spouore, eating much like beale, and finding a number of egges in them, called also of them, but they did eat very sweetly. Here we anchored five houres, and then springing a fayre gale of winde, we weyed anker, and made saile to ward Cuba, whither we came the first day, and weathered as farre as the Table, being a hill so called, because of the forme thereof: here we lay off and on all night, to keepe that wee had gotten to windward, intending to have watered in the morning, if we could have done it, or els if the winde had come larger, to have plyed to windward to the Hauana, which is a harborow whereunto all the fleet of the Spanyards come, and doe there carry to have one the company of another. This hill we thinking to have bene the Table, made account (as it was in deed) the Hauana, to be but eight leagues to windward, but by the persuasion of a French man, who made the capitaine believe he knew the Table very well, and had bene at the Hauana, said that it was not the Table, and that the Table was much higher, and neerer to the sea shoare, and that there was no plaine ground to the Eastward, nor hills to the Westward, but all was contrary, and that behinde the hills to the Westward was the Hauana: to which persuasion credite being given by some, and they not of the worth, the capitaine was persuaded to go to leeward, and so sailed along the seventh and eight dayes, finding no habitation, nor no other Table, and then perceiving his folly to give care to such matters, was not a little sorry, both because he did consider what time he should spend ere he could get so farre to windward againe, which would have bene with the weathering which we had 10 or 12 dayes tocke, and what it would have bene longer he knew not, and that (which was worst) he had not about a dayes water, and therefore knew not what still to make: but in fine, because the want was such, that his men could not live with it, he determined to seeke water, and to go further to leeward, to a place (as it is se in the card) called Rio de los porcos, which he was in doubt of both whether it were inhabited, and whether there were water or not, and whether for the shoales he might have such access with his shippes that he might conveniently take in the same: and while we were in these troubles, and kept our way to the place of aforesaid, almighty God our guide (who would not suffer us to runne into any further danger, which we had bene like to have incurred, if we had ranged the coast of Florida along as we did before, which is so dangerous (by reports) that no shippe escape which commeth thither, as the Spanyards have very well spouored the same) sent us the eight day at night a fayre Westery winde, whereupon the capitaine and company consulted, determining not to refuse Gods gift, but every man was contented to pinch his owne belly whatsoeuer had happened, and taking the sayd winde, the ninth day of July got to the Table, and sailing the same night, unawares overshot the Hauana, at the which place we thought to have watered, but the next day, not knowing that we had overshoot the same, sailed along the coast, seeking it, and the eleventh day in the morning, by certaine knowne markes, we understood that we had overshoot it twenty leagues: in which coast ranging, we found no convenient watering place, whereby there was no remedy but to dissemble, and to water upon the coast of Florida: for, to go further to the Eastward, we could not for the shoales, which are very dangerous, and because the current shoereth to the North-east, we doubted by the force thereof to be set upon them, and therefore durst not approach them so making but reasonable waye the day aforesaid, & all night the 12 day in the morning, we fell with the Ilands upon the cape of Florida, which we could scant double by the meanes

meanes that fearing  
West, which to us  
escape, and then  
backe against a  
meane to use, which  
for if they could  
winning which er,  
winde springing at  
they saw them  
had taken, but  
no account but to  
which they had  
the sight of the  
saw them againe,  
to, the shippes  
sing all failed, it  
came sent the  
the current was  
to the inere the  
The Jesus also  
might passed and  
them, but the  
all in wine, by  
carry no longer,  
the Jesus, who  
as God would  
had sight of them,  
having sight of  
no greatly rejoyce  
themselves betw  
ly God thought  
being soe opposit  
shippes then that  
gone to the shoare  
them, either to  
bene very hard  
ing one hundred  
whole bandes  
was in Florida  
and gentle inter  
pounded for  
to wage, seeing  
boldest then any  
who intended  
and of they  
to persuade the  
ones, and his  
In these Ilands  
heads and bodies  
shells. Due to  
The fourteenth  
utty of the m, w  
and so then  
to an anker, and  
arranging all  
overshote no  
along the shoare,  
understand

meanes that bearing the shales to the Callowes, and bowbing the current running out of the West, which is not of that force we made account of, for we felt little or none till we fell with the Cape, and then felt such a current, that bearing all Calles against the same, yet were driven backe againe a great pace: the experience wherof we had by the Jesus pinnelle, and the Gallonons boate, which were sent the same day in the afternoon, while the Shippes were at anchor, so that they could have any way upon the Islands at daybreak, who spent a great part of the day in coming thither, being further off then they becom it to be, and in the meane time a fowle gale of wind springing at sea, the Shippes departed, making a signe to them: to come away, who although they saw them depart, because they were so neere the shoare would not loose all the labour they had taken, but determined to keepe the way, and see if there were any water to be had, making no account but to finde the Shippes well enough: but they spent so much time in filling the water which they had founde, that the night was come before they could make an end, and having lost the sight of the Shippes, towed what they could, but were wholly ignorant which way they should seek them againe, as in deede there was a more doubt then they knew of. For when they departed, the Shippes were in no current, and sayling but a mile further, founde one so strong, that bearing all Calles, it could not prevaille against the same, but were driven backe: wherupon the captaine sent the Gallonon, with the other two barkes, to beare neere the shoare all night, because the current was lesse there a great deale, and to beare light with shooting off a peece now and then, to the intent the boates might better knowe how to come to them.

The Day of the currents of Florida.

The Jesus also bare a light in her coppe gallant, and shot off a peece also now and then, but the night passed and the morning was come, being the thirteenth day, and no newes could be heard of them, but the Shippes and barkes forsooke not, but to looke still for them, yet they thought it was all in vaine, by the meanes they heard not of them all the night past, and therefore determined to tarry no longer, seeking for them till noone, and if they heard no newes, then they would depart to the Jesus, who perforce (by the vehemency of the current) was carryed almost out of sight, but as God would have it, no time being come, and they having tacked about in the pinnelles cap, had sight of them, and tooke them by: they in the boates, being to the number of one and twentie, having sight of the Shippes, and seeing them tacking about, whereas before at the first sight of them we greatly rejoyce, were now in a greater perplexitie then ever they were: for by this they thought themselves verely saylaken, whereas before they were in some hope to have found them. Truly God wrought marvellously for them, for they themselves having no victualles but water, and being sore oppressed with hunger, were not of opinion to bestowe any further time in seeking the Shippes then that present noone time: so that if they had not at that instant espyed them, they had gone to the shoare to have made provision for victualles, and with such things as they could have gotten, either to have gone for that part of Florida, where the French men are (which would have bene very hard for them to have done, because they wanted victualles to bring them thither, being one hundred and twentie leagues off) or els to have remayned amongst the Floridians, at whose hauses they were put in company by a French man, who was with them, that had remayned in Florida at the first finding thereof, a whole yeere together, to receive victualles sufficient, and gentle entertainement, if neede were, for a yeere or two, untill which time God might have provided for them. But how contrary this would have fallen out to the expectation, it is hard to judge, seeing those people of the cape of Florida, are of more savage and fierce nature, and more belient then any of the rest, which the Spaniards well knowe, who being five hundred men, who intended there to land, returned few or none of them, but were enforced to forsake the same, and of their cruelty mention is made in the booke of the Decades, of a Spaniard, who taking upon him to persuade the people to subiection, was by them taken with his skime cruelly pulled over his eyes, and his flesh eaten.

In these Islands they being a shoare, founde a dead man byed in a manner whole, with other heads and bodies of men, so that those signs of men are eaters of the flesh of men, as well as the Canibals. But to returne to our purpose.

The fourteenth day the shippe and barkes came to the Jesus, bringing them newes of the recovery of the men, which was not a little to the rejoycing of the captaine, and the whole company: and so then altogether they kept on their way along the coast of Florida, and the sixteenth day came to an anchor, and so from six and twenty degrees to thirtie degrees a halfe, where the French men were ranging all the coast along, seeking for fresh water, watching every night, because we would have found no place of fresh water, and in the day time the captaine in the Shippes pinnelle sayled along the shoare, went into every creeke, speaking with divers of the Floridians, because he would understand where the French men inhabited, and not finding them in eight and twentie degrees

of Hawkins ranged all the coast of Florida.

ble to save the  
end of Cuba,  
e came beyond  
by a, which is  
well to fresh  
to have the  
gs of Florida,  
as we could in  
which is some  
e, that in halfe  
e have bene the  
which there be  
pon the shoare,  
yed, and conce  
nch the great  
all of bone of  
inding a numbe  
e answered five  
to ward Cuba,  
led, because of  
o twinedward,  
inde had come  
to all the fleet  
of the hill we thin  
e eight leagues  
erue hee had  
to that the T-  
to the Callow  
of the worst,  
o such waters,  
he could get to  
e had 10 of 12  
was worst be  
e, because the  
to go further  
was in doubt of  
for the shales  
me: and while  
our guide (who  
me incurred, if  
y report) that  
owed the same)  
company con-  
his owne bel-  
to the Table,  
thought to bene  
the coast, seeking  
that we had  
watering place,  
Florida: for, to  
and because the  
e, and therefore  
the 12 day we  
e double by the  
meanes

The river of  
Spain.

Florida found  
to be cut in  
Florida.  
Florida.  
The coun-  
tries of  
Florida.

The houses of  
Florida.

The manner of  
kindling of fire  
in Florida.

as it was declared unto him, marvelled thereat, and never left sailing along the coast till he found them, who inhabited in a river, by them called the river of May, and it indeed in thier degrees and better. In ranging this coast along, the captain found it to be all an Island, and therefore it is all lowe land, and very scant of fresh water, but the countrey was marvellously sweet, with both marsh and meadow ground, and goodly woods among. There they found they could growe as abundantly as grass, and where they houses were, great store of maize and mill, and grapes of great bignesse, but of taste much like our English grapes. Also there great plenty, which came upon the sands besyde them. They houses are not many together, for in one house a hundred of them do lodge: they being made much like a great barn, and in strength not inferior to ours, for it hath stanchions and rafters of whole trees, and covered with Palmito leaves, having no place divided, but one small roome for their King and Queene. In the middell of this house is a hearth where they make great fires all night, and upon certaine pieces of wood betwen in for the boiling of their beakes, and another place made high for their heads, they lye upon the same, which they put one by another all along the walles on both sides. In their houses they remaine onely in the night, and in the day they desire the fields, where they drye their meat, and make provision for victualles, which they provide onely for a meale from hand to mouth. There is one thing to be marvelled at, for the making of their fire, and not onely they but also the Negroes doe the same, which is made onely by two stiches, rubbing them one against another: and this they may doe in any place they come, where they finde stiches sufficient for the purpose. In their apparell the men onely vse verre skinned, wherewith some onely cover their privy members, other some vse the same as garments to cover them besyde and behynde, which skinned are painted, some yellow & red, some blacke and russet, and every man according to his owne fancy. They do not omit to paint their bodies also with curious knots, or antique worke, as every man in his owne fancy deviseth, which painting to have it to continue the better, they vse with a thorne to prick their flesh, and dent in the same, wherby the painting may have better holde. In their warres they vse a sligher couler of painting their faces, wherby to make themselves seeme the more fierce: which after their warres ended they wash away againe. In their warres they vse bowes and arrowes, wherof their bowes are made of a kinde of Pew, but blacker then ours, but many passing the strength of the Negroes of Indians, for it is not greatly inferior to ours, their arrowes also of a great length, but yet of reeds like other Indians, but varying in two pointes both for length, and also for nocks and feathers, which the other lacke, wherby they shoot very steady: the heads of the same are byrres teeth, bones of fishes, flux stones, piked pointes of knives, which having gotten of the French men, broke the same, and put the pointes of them in their arrowes heads: some of them have their heads of siluer, other some that have want of these, put in a kinde of hard wood, notches, which percerth as farre as any of the rest. In their fight, being in the woods, they vse a marvellous pollicie for their owne safegard, which is by clasping a tree in their armes, and yet shooting notwithstanding: this pollicie they vse with the French men in their fight, wherby it appeareth that they are people of some pollicie: and although they are called by the Spaniards Gente triste, that is to say, Bad people, meaning thereby, that they are not men of capacity: yet have the French men found them to wispe in their answers, that by the capitaines owne report, a counsellour with vs could not give a more profound reason.

The French  
sight.

Monsieur  
Laudonier.

The women also in their apparell vse painted skinned, but most of them gounes of mofse, somewhat longer then our mofse, which they sewe together artificially, & make the same purple wife, wearing their haire downe to their shoulders, like the Indians. In this river of May also said, the captain entering with his pinelle, found a French ship of fourescore tunne, and two pinelles of fiftene tunne a peice, by her, and speaking with the keepers thereof, they tolde him of a fort two leagues by, which they had built, in which they captain Monsieur Laudonier was, with certaine souldiers therein. To whom our captain sending to understand of a waerting place, where he might conveniently take it in, and to have licence for the same, he straight because there was no convenient place but by the river two leagues, where the water was fresh, did send him a pilot for the more expedition thereof, to bring in one of his barkes, which going in with other boats provided for the same purpose, ankred before the fort, into the which our captain went, where he was by the general, with other capitaines and souldiers, very gently entertained, and detoured unto him the time of their being there, which was 14 months, with the extreme they were thus for want of victuals, having thought very little with them, in which place they being 200 men at their first coming, had in thoyr space eaten all the maize they could buy of the inhabitants about them & therefore were by them certeyne of thier to serve a King of the Floridians against other his enemies for mill, and other victualles, which having gotten, coulde not serve them, being so many so long a time,

but

along the coast till he found  
 and in which in thirte beggers  
 e all an Island, and therefore  
 marvellously sweet, with both  
 found so excell to growe as  
 in a mill, and grapes of  
 ere great plenty, which came  
 for in one house a hundred of  
 length not inferior to ours, for  
 imito leaves, having no place  
 idest of this house is a hearty  
 wood betwen in for the bowing  
 ves upon the same, which they  
 they remaine onely in the  
 meat, and make provision for  
 uch. There is one thing to be  
 so the Negroes doe the same,  
 ber: and this they may doe in  
 se. In they appaill the men  
 nders, other some vse the same  
 nted, some yellow & red, some  
 y do not omit to paine their bo-  
 owne fancy devised, which  
 like their flesh, and dent in the  
 es they vse a lighter couler of  
 : which after their warres en-  
 owes, wher of their bowes are  
 the strength of the Negroes of  
 great length, but yet of reeds  
 o for nocke and fetters, which  
 are as bipes teel, bones of  
 French men, broke the same,  
 aue their heads of siluer, other  
 which percut as farre as any of  
 illitie for their owne safeguard,  
 standing: this pollicy they vse  
 re people of some pollicy: and  
 ap. Bad people meaning ther-  
 und them so wispy in their an-  
 ould not giue: noye poisond

all of them gowmes of wine,  
 ally, & make the same surple-  
 In this riuer of May aforesaid,  
 scoe wine, and two pinnelles  
 herof, they tolde him of a for-  
 unscieur Laudonier was, with  
 and of a waering place, where  
 he straight because there was  
 was fresh, did send him a pilot  
 going in with other boats  
 a captain went, where he was  
 rained, and declared vnto him  
 ey were vnto for want  
 y being 200 men at their first  
 inhabitants about them & ther-  
 of other his enemies for mill,  
 bring so many so long a time,  
 but

but want came vpon them in such sort, that they were faine to gather acquies, which being stamped  
 small, and often washed to take away the bitterness of them, did vse the same both bread, eating  
 withall sunny times rootes, whereof they found many good and wholesome, and such as true  
 rather for medicines then for meates alone. But this harmlesse not concerning some of them,  
 who would not take the paynes so much as to fish in the riuer before they dooyes, but would haue  
 all things put in their mouths, did rebell agaynst the captaine, taking away first his armour,  
 & afterward imprisoning him: and so to the number of fourescore of them, departed with a barke  
 and a pinnelle, spoiling theyr store of victuall, and taking away a great part therof with them, and  
 so went to the Islands of Hispaniola & Iamaica a routing, where they spoiled, and pilld the Spa-  
 niardes, and hauing taken two caruels laden with wine and Calaua, which is a beade made of  
 wox, and much other victualles and treasure, had not the grace to depart threewith, but were of  
 such hauncie stomachs, that they thought their force to be such that no man durst meddle with them,  
 so kepe harborough in Iamaica, going daily a shoare at their pleasure. But God which would  
 not suffer such euill doers unpunished, did indurate their hearts in such sort, that they longered  
 time so long, that a shippe and galeaffe being made out of S. Domingoes, came thither into the  
 harborough, andooke twentie of them, wherof the most part were hanged, and the rest carried in-  
 to Spayne, and some (to the number of five and twentie) escaped in the pinnelle, and came to Flo-  
 rida, where at their landing they were put in prison, and incontinent foure of the chiefest being con-  
 demned at the request of the souldiours, did passe the harquebussiers, and then were hanged vpon a  
 gibbet. The lacke of these scoye men was a great discouragement & weakening to the rest, for they were  
 of the best souldiours that they had: and whereas they had now made the inhabitants weary of them  
 by their euilly craning of mapais hauing no waies left to content them withall, and therefore infor-  
 ced to robbe them, and to take away their victuall perforce, was the occasion that the Floridians (not  
 well contented therewith) did take certaine of theyr company in the woods, and slew them, where-  
 by there grew great warres betwixt them and the French men, and therefore they being but a few  
 in number durst not venture aboad, but at such time as they were inforced therunto for want of food  
 to do the same: and going thwentic harquebussiers in a company, were set vpon by eighthe kings,  
 hauing tenen or eithe hundred men, which with one of theyr bowes slew one of their men, and hurt  
 a dozen, and dyone them all downe to theyr boats, whose pollicy in fight was to be marvelled at: for  
 hauing shot at diuers of theyr bodies which were armed, and perceiuing that their arrowes did not  
 preuaile against the same, they shot at their faces & legs, which were the places that the French men  
 were hurt in. Thus the French men returned, being in ill case by the hurt of their men, hauing not  
 aboute forty souldiours left unhurt, wherby they might ill make any more assaults vpon the Flori-  
 dians, and keepe theiir way thithall: which they must haue bene dyuen vnto, had not God sent vs  
 thither for their succour, for they had not about ten dayes victuall left before theyr ruine. In which  
 perplexity our captaine seeing them, spared them out of his ship twenty barrels of meale, and foure  
 pipes of beanes, with diuers other victuals and necessaries which he might conueniently spare  
 and to helpe them the better home wards whither they were bound before our coming, at their re-  
 quest we spared them one of our barks of fifty runnes. Notwithstanding the great want that the  
 French men had, the ground doth yeeld victuals sufficient, if they would haue taken paines to get  
 the same, but they being souldiours, desired to liue by the sweat of other mens browes: for while they  
 had peace with the Floridians, they had fish sufficient, by waies which they made to catch the same:  
 but when they grew to warres, the Floridiansooke away the same againe, and then would not  
 the French men take the paines to make any more. The ground yeeldeth naturally grapes in great  
 store, for in the time that the French men were there, they made twenty hogheads of wine. Also it  
 yeeldeth roots passing good, beere marvellous store, with diuers other beales, and fowle, seruicea-  
 ble to the vse of man. These be things where with a man might liue, hauing some of mapais wher-  
 with to make bread: for mapais maketh good sauoy bread, and cakes as fine as flower. Also it ma-  
 keth good meale beaten and sodden with water and eateth like pappe wher with we feed children.  
 It maketh also good beurrage sodden in water, and nourishable: which the French men did vse  
 to drinke of in the morning, and it assuaged their thirst, so that they had no need to drinke all the day  
 after. And this mapais was the greatest lacke they had, because they had no laborers to sow the  
 same, and therefore to them that should inhabit the land it were requisite to haue laborers to till and  
 sow the ground. For they hauing victuals of theyr owne, wherby they neither rob nor spoile the  
 inhabitants, may liue not onely quietly with them, who naturally are more desirous of peace then  
 of warres, but also shall haue abundance of victuals proffered them for nothing: for it is with them  
 as it is with one of vs, when we see another man euer taking away from vs, although we haue e-  
 nough besides, yet then we thinke all to little for our selues: for surely we haue heard the French

bread made of acornes.

The occasion of the fatting out with the Floridians.

The French greatly refused to buy of M. Hawkins.

Thwentic hogheads of wine made in Florida, like to the wine of Spaine.

laborers necessary to inhabit new countries.

men report, and I know it by the Indians that a very little cometh thereof: for the Indians with the head of maize roasted, will travel a whole day, and when they are at the Spaniards lining, they give them nothing but sodden herbs and maize, & in this order I saw the scope of them here, who were laden with wares, and came little leagues off. The Floridians when they travel have a kinde of herbe byes, which with a cane, and an earthen cup in the end, with fire, and the dried herbes put together, do sucke thow to the same the smoke thereof, which smoke satisfieth their hunger, and there with they live foure or five dayes without meat or drinke, and this all the French men use for this purpose: yet do they holde opinion withall, that it causeth water and steame to void from their stomacks. The commodities of this land are more then are yet knowne to any man: for besides the land it selfe, whereof there is more then any King Christian is able to inhabit, it flourisheth with meadow, pasture ground, with woods of Cedar and Cypress, and other soyes, as better can be in the world: they have for apothecary herbes, trees, roots and gumme great store, as Scroax liquida, Turpentine, Gumme, Myrre and Frankincense, whereof I know not the names. Coulers both red, blache, yellow, and russet, very perfect, where with they paint their bodies, and beere skinner which they wear about them, that with water it neither fadeth away, nor abtrench couler. Golde and Silver they want not: for at the French mens first coming thither, they had the same offered them for little or nothing, for they received for a hachet two pound weight of golde, because they knew not the estimation thereof: but the souldiours being greedy of the same, did take it from them, giving them nothing for it: the which they perceiving, that both the French men did greatly esteeme it, and also did rigorously deale with them, by taking the same away from them, at last would not be knowen they had any more, neither durst they wear the same for feare of being taken away: so that saving at their first coming, they could get none of them: and both they came by this golde and silver, the French men know not as yet, but by gift, who having travelled to the South west of the cape, having found the same dangerous, by means of lundry banks, as we also have found the same, and there finding matts which were wpacks of Spaniards coming from Mexico, judged that they had gotten treasure by them. For it is most true that divers wpacks have bene made of Spaniards, having much treasure. For the French men having travelled to the capeward a hundred and fiftie miles, did finde two Spaniards with the Floridians, which they brought afterward to theyr ship, whereof one being in a Caravel, coming from the Indies was calld away fourteene yeeres ago, and the other twelue yeeres, whose fellows some escaped, other some were slaine by the inhabitants. It cometh they had estimation of theyr golde and silver, for it is wroughte fine and grauen, which they wear about their necks, other some made round like a pancake, with a hole in the middle to be adorned by their byasses withall, because they thinke it a deformitie to have great byasses. As for mines either of golde or silver, the French men can heare of none they have vpon the Island, but of copper, whereof as yet also they have not made the proofe, because they were but few men: but it is not unlikely, but that in the maine where are high hills, may be golde and silver as well as in Mexico, because it is all one maine. The French men obtained pearles of them of great bignesse, but they were blacke, by means of roasting of them, for they do not fish for them as the Spaniards do, but for their meat: for the Spaniards use to keepe dayly a fishing some two or three hundred Indians, some of them that be of choyle a thousand: and their order is to goe in Canoas, or rather great pinnacles, with thirtie men in a piers, whereof the one halfe, or most part be divers, the rest doe open the same for the pearles: for it is not suffered that they should use dragging, for that would bring them out of estimation, and marre the beads of them. The oysters which have the smallest sort of pearles are found in leuen or righte sathome water, but the greatest in eleven or twelue fathom.

The Floridians have pieces of Anticoines boines, which they wear about their necks, whereof the French men obtained many pieces. Of those Anticoines they have many, for that they doe asseme it to be a beast with one boine, which coming to the river to drinke, putteth the same into the water before they drinke. Of these Anticoines there is of our company, that having gotten the same of the French men, brought home thereof to be we. It is therefore to be presupposed that there are more commodities, as well as that, which for want of time, and people sufficient to inhabit the same, can not yet come to light: but I trust God will reveale the same before it be long, to the great profit of them that shall take it in hand. Of beastes in this countrey besides Deer, Foxes, Hares, Volcaes, Cunnies, Dunces, Leopards, I am not able certainly to say: but it is thought that there are Lions and Tygers as well as Anticoines, Lions especially, if it be true that is said of the enmity betwene them & the Anticoines. For there is no beast but hath his enemy, as the Cunny the Volcae, a Sheepe the Wolfe, the Elephant the Rhinoceros, and so of other beastes the like: insomuch, that whereas the one is the other is not be missing. And seeing I have made

**Cabare,** & the great vertue thereof.

**The variety of commodities in Florida.**

**Coulers.**

**Golde and silver.**

**Two Spaniards** lived long among the Floridians.

**Pieces of golde** grauen among the Floridians.

**Florida** esteemed an island.

**This copper** was found perfect golde, called by the Spaniards, Syroa phyn.

**Pearles.**

**Anticoines** boines, which the Floridians wear about their necks.

**Beastes.**



etch them: for the Indians with  
 are at the Spaniards finding,  
 I saw the scope of them sea-  
 dians when they travel have a  
 with fire, and the viced heros  
 the sacrifice the ir dungre, and  
 this all the French men who  
 water and beame to void from  
 ere how true to any man: for he  
 is able to inhale, it is shortly  
 and other foys, as better can me  
 some great store, as Storax li-  
 others, wherof I know not the  
 where with they paine their bo-  
 it neither saveth away, nor do-  
 mens first coming thither,  
 rived for a hatchet two pound  
 the souldiours being greivof  
 they perceiving, that both they  
 with them, by taking the same  
 either durd they wear the same  
 they could get none of them  
 to not as yet, but by grief, it is  
 dangerous, by means of lun-  
 which were wacks of Spire  
 by them. For it is most true  
 measure. For the French men  
 kinde two Spaniards with the  
 being in a Carauell, coming  
 twelve peres, whose fellows  
 they had estimation of they  
 about their necks, other some  
 y their bestes withall, because  
 of golde or silver, the French  
 peres as yet also they have we-  
 e, but that in the maine where  
 aule it is all one maine. The  
 were blacke, by means of wa-  
 for their meat: for the Sp-  
 dians, some of them that be of  
 great pinnelles, with thirke  
 rest doe open the same for the  
 would bring them out of this  
 the smallest foys of pearles are  
 twelve fathom.  
 ere about their necks, wherof  
 y have many, for that they doe  
 to yinke, putteth the same into  
 company, that hauing gotten  
 is therefore to be presupposed  
 time, and people sufficient to  
 eale the same before it be long,  
 this countrey bestes Deer,  
 ble certaintly to say: but it is  
 vious especially, if it bee true  
 is no beast but hath his ene-  
 the Rhinoceros, and so of other  
 missing. And seeing I have  
 made

made mention of the beasts of this Countrey, it shal not be from my purpos to speake also of the  
 numerous beastes, as Crocodiles, wherof there is great abundance, Advers of great bignesse,  
 wherof our men killed some of a pard and a halfe long. Also I heard a miracle of one of these ad-  
 vers, upon the which a Falcon seazing, the same adder did clasp her taile about her, which the  
 French Capaine seeing, came to the rescue of the Falcon, and tooke her slaying the adder, and  
 this Falcon being wiled he did reclaime her, and kept her for the space of 2. moneths, at which  
 time for very want of meat he was faine to call her off: On this adder the Frenchmen did feede  
 to no litle admiration of vs, and affirmed the same to be a delicate meate. And the Capaine of the  
 Frenchmen sawe also a Serpent with 3. heads and 4. seete, of the bignesse of a great Spaniell  
 which for want of a barquebulle he durd not attempte to slay. Of fish also they haue in the river,  
 pike, roche, salmon, troute, and diuers other small fishes, and of great fish, some of the length of a  
 man and longer, being of bignesse accordingly, hauing a snoute much like a swope of a parde  
 long. There be also of sea fishes which wee sawe coming along the coast flying, which are of  
 the bignesse of a smelt, the bigger sort wherof haue foure winges, but the other haue but two:  
 Of these we sawe coming out of Guinea, a hundred in a companie, which being chased by the  
 Galleys, otherwise called the Bonitoes, doe to auoyde them the better take their flight out of  
 the water, but yet are they not able to flee farre, because of the drying of their winges, which serue  
 them not to flye but when they are moyste, and therefore when they can flye no further, fall into  
 the water, and hauing wetted their winges take a newe flight againe. These Bonitoes be of big-  
 nesse like a carpe, and in colour like a makarell, but it is the swiftest fish in swimminge that is,  
 and followeth her preye very secretly, not onely in the water, but also out of the water: for as the flying  
 fish taketh her flight, so doeth this Bonito leape after them, and taketh them sometimes aboue the  
 water. They were some of those Bonitoes, which being galled by a sturges did follow our ship  
 coming out of Guinea 500. leagues. There is a sea foule also that chaseth this flying fish as well as  
 the Bonito: for as the flying fish taketh her flight, so doeth this foule pursue to take her, which to be-  
 holde is a greater pleasure then hauing, for both the flights are as pleasaunt, and also more often  
 then 100. times: for the foule can flie no way but one or other lightly in her pawes, the number of  
 them are so abundant. There is an innumerable poung frie of these flying fishes, which commonly  
 herpe about the shippe, and are not so bigge as butterflies, and yet by flyinge doe auoyde the vni-  
 diuinitie of the Bonito. Of the bigger sort of these fishes we tooke many, which both night and  
 day flew into the sailes of our shippe, and there was not one of them which was not worth a Boni-  
 to: for being put upon aooke dyabling in the water, the Bonito would leape thereat, and so was  
 taken. Also, we tooke many with a white clothe made fast to a hook, which beinge tied so short  
 in the water, that it might leape out, and in, the greedy Bonito thinkinge it to be a flying fish leape  
 thereat, and so is deceiued: Wee tooke also Dolphins which are of very goodly colour and pro-  
 portion to beholde, and no less delicate in eate. Foules also there be many, both vpon lande and  
 vpon sea: But concerning them on the lande I am not able to name them, because my abode  
 was there so short. But for the foule of the fresh riuers, these two I neede to see the chiefe, where-  
 of the Flemengo is one, hauing all redde feathers, and long redde legges like a Herne, a necke ac-  
 cording to the bill redde, wherof the vpper nebbe hangeth an inch or ouer the nebbe: And an Eg-  
 ryppe which is all white as the swanne, with legges like to an bearneshe we, and of bignesse ac-  
 cordingly, but it hath in her taile feathers of so fine a plume, that it passeth the Estridge his fea-  
 ther. Of sea foule aboue all other not common in Englaube, I noted the Pellicane, which is  
 faigned to be the louingest birde that is: which rather then her yong would want, will spare her  
 heart blood out of her bestie, but for all this louingesse shee is very desformed to beholde, for shee  
 is of colour rustie, notwithstanding in Guinea I haue seene of them as white as a swanne, ha-  
 uing legges like the same, and a body like a Herne, with a long necke, and a thicke long beake,  
 from the nerther iawe wherof downe to the beak passeth a skinnie of such a bignesse, as is able to  
 receiue a fish as bigge as ones thigh, and this her bigge throate and long bill, doeth make her  
 seeme so ugly.

Here I haue declared the estate of Florida, and the commodities therein to this day knowne,  
 which although it may seeme vnto some, by the meanes that the plenty of Golde and Silver is  
 not so abundant, as in other places, that the cost bestowed vpon the same, will not bee able to  
 quite the charges: Yet am I of the opinion, that by that which I haue seene in other Islands of  
 the Indians, where such increase of cattell hath bene that of twelve head of beastes in 25. peres,  
 and in the space of them raise 1000. pound profit yearly, that the increase of cattell onely would  
 raise profit sufficient for the same: For wee may consider, if so small a portion did raise so much  
 gaines in such short time, what would a greater doe in many peres?

Falcons in Florida.

Serpents.

Dolphins.

Flemengo.

The Egrype.

The Pellicane

Wanted to seepe a list of the commodities in Florida and Virginia.

And surely I may this affirme, that the ground of the Indians for the byerde of caecell, is not in any point to be compared to this of Florida, which all the yere long is so greene, as any time in the Sommer with vs: which surely is not to be marvelled at, seeing the Countrey standeth in so waerie a climate: for once a day without faile they haue a showe of raine, which by meane of the Countrey it self, which is drye, and more seruene boe then ours, doeth make all things to flourish therein: and because there is not the thing wee all seeke for, being rather deirous of present gaine, I do therefore affirme the attempt thereof to be more requisite for a prince, who is of power able to goe thowto with the same, rather then for any subiect.

From thence we departed the 28. of July, vpon our voyage home wards, hauing there all things as might be most conuenient for our purpose: andooke leaue of the Frenchmen that there still remained, who with diligence determined to make great speeue after, as they coude. Thus by meane of contrary windes oftentimes, we prolonged our voyage in such manner that victuals scant with vs, so that we were diuers (or rather the most part) in despair of euer comming home, had not God of his goodnesse better provided for vs, then our desiring. In which case of great miserie, we were prouoked to call vpon him by seruene prayer, which moued him to heare vs, so that wee had a prosperous winde, which did set vs so farre thowt, as to be vpon the banke of Newfoundland, on S. Bartlemewes eue, & founded thereupon landing ground, at 130. fathoms, being that day somewhat becalmed, andooke a great number of fresh cobbe fish, which greatly relieved vs: and very glad thereof, the next day departing, by longring little gales for the space of four or fve dapes, at the which we sawe a couple of French ships, and had so much fish as would serue vs plentifully for all the rest of the way, the Captaine paying for the same both golde and siluer, to the iust value thereof, vnto the chiefe owners of the saide ships, which they not looking for any thing at all, were glad in themselves to meete with such good incertreimene at sea, as they had at our handes. After which departure from them, with a good large winde the 20. of September we came to Padstow in Cornewall God be thanked, in safete, with the losse of 20. persons in all the voyage, and profitable to the venturers of the saide voyage, as also to the whole Realme, in bying home both golde, siluer, pearles and other itwels great ampe. His name therefore be praised for euermore. Amen.

Their arrival  
in Padstow in  
the month of  
September,  
1595.

### The names of certaine Gentlemen that were in this voyage.

M. Iohn Hawkins,  
M. Iohn Chester, } Sir William Chesters sonne.  
M. Anthony Parkhurst.  
M. Fitzwilliam.  
M. Thomas Woorley,  
M. Edward Lacie, } with diuers others.

The Register and true accompts of all herein expressed, hath bene  
approved by mee Iohn Sparke the yonger, who went vpon the  
same voyage, and wrote the same.

### The arriual and courtesie of M. Hawkins to the distressed

*Frenchmen in Florida, is elsewhere also recorded, both in French,*

and English, in the historie of Laudonier, written by himselfe,

and printed in Paris, Anno 1586.

And translated into English by mee Richard Hakluyt, Anno 1587.

and published as followeth.



Aske of vs were much toymented in minde with diuers cogitations, the  
thirde of August I desired foure sailles in the Sea, as I walked vpon a  
little hill, wherof I was exceeding well apayde: I sent immediately one of  
them which were with me, to aduertise those of the fox thereof, which were  
so glad of those newes, that one would haue thought them to be out of their  
wits, to see them laugh and leape for ioy. After these ships had cast ancre,  
we desired that they sent off their shippe boates to land: wherupon I saw  
led one of mine to be armed with diligence to sende to meete them, and to knowe who they were.

Their arriual  
and the courtesie  
of M. Hawkins.

In the meane wh  
attending the re  
who brought me  
whole name was  
behalf of M. Iohn  
fresh water, where  
dapes on the coast  
made of wheate, &  
vpp of wine: new  
Acinas had guided  
he came thither w  
request, he signifi  
ships to enter into  
ably apparell'd, p  
me. On my part I  
be killed, which v  
Michael. Now 3. an  
dians came in fiv  
so signified vnto  
thence for ward:  
men spye ouer all  
behalf of the king  
to make waerie ag  
them, & gratified  
bygrace or a sion w  
comppany boate: w  
son he made so lar  
ly: and although I  
in England, yet I  
spitrelle: where se  
soldiers, which sa  
before, was not suff  
The byuice and m  
ships, he told certa  
with him, he decla  
past safely in thos  
no doubt be in gre  
men in his ship  
were no sooner r  
ly consented toge  
with him, and forsa  
attended themsel  
intercion, wher  
I gathered togeth  
mance with them.  
same the occasio  
d, being forsaken  
After sumptie deb  
wey in the price  
gave him the best  
wherupon not  
the Queene of Eng  
as before she had  
went to our Spaine  
wealth. And that  
lize, which at her  
ration of the weal  
thus concludes, an

In the meane while fearing least they were Spaniards, I set my souldiers in order and readinesse, attending the returne of Captaine Vasseur, and my Lieutenant, which were gone to meete them, who brought me word that they were Englishmen. And in truerth they had in their companie one whose name was Martine Acinas of Diepe, which at that time was in their seruice: which on the behalfe of M. Iohn Hawkins their Generall came to request me that I would suffer them to take fresh water, whereof they stood in great neede, signifying vnto mee that they had bene about 15. dayes on the coast to get some. He brought vnto me from the Generall 2. flagons of wine, & bread made of wheate, which greatly refreshed mee, so much as for 7. moneths space, I neuer tasted a drop of wine: neuertheless it was all deuised among the greatest part of my souldiers: this Martin Acinas had guided the Englishmen to our coast, wherewith he was acquainted. For in the yeere 1562. he came thither with me, & therfoze the Generall sent him to me. Therfoze after I had granted his request, he signified the same vnto the generall, which the next day following caused one of his small ships to enter into the riuer, & came to see me in a great shipboat, accompanied wth gentlemen honorably apparelled, yet vnarmed: he sent for great store of bread & wine to distribute thereof to euery one. On my part I made him the best chere I could possibly, & caused certaine heepe & poultry to be killed, which vnto this present I had caused carefully to be preserued, hoping to soze the coldeye which. Now in 3. dayes passed while the English general remained wth me, during whichtime the Indians came in to see me, & asked me whether he were my brother: I told them he was so, & signified vnto them, that he was come to see me, & a pde me with so great store of victuals, that thence forth I should haue no need to eate any thing of them. The while herof incontinently was spied ouer all the countrey in such sort, as Ambassadors came vnto me to all parts, which on the behalfe of the king & their masters, desired to make alliance wth me, & euen they which before sought to make waite against me, came to offer their seruice & friendship vnto me: wherupon I retriued them, & gratified them with certaine presents. The general inmeadiely vnderstood the desire and vrgent occasion which I had to returne into France; wherupon he offered to transport me, & all my company home: wherunto notwithstanding I would not agree, being in doubt vpon what occasion he made so large an offer. For I knew not how the safe stood betwixt the French & the English: and although he promised me on his faith to put me on land in France, before he would touch in England, yet I stood in doubt least he would attempte somewhat in Florida in the name of his Mistresse: wherefoze I flatly refused his offer. Wherupon there rose a great mutinie among my souldiers, which said that I sought to destroy them all, and that the Pyganine wherof I spake before, was not sufficient to transport them, considering the season of the yeere, wherein wee were. The while and mutinie increased moze and moze: so after that the generall was returned to his ships, he told certaine gentlemen and souldiers which went to see him, partly to make good chere wth him, he declared and said vnto them, that he greatly doubted, that hardily we should be able to passe safely in those vessels which wee had, and that in case we should enterpryse the same, we should not be in great leopordie: notwithstanding, if I were so contented, he would transport part of my men in his ships, and that he would leaue me in a small ship to transport the rest. The souldiers were no sooner come home, but they signified the offer vnto their companions, which incontinently consented together, that in case I would not accept the same, they would imbarke themselves wth him, and forsake me, so that he would receiue them according to his promise. They therfoze assembled themselves together, and came to seeke me in my chamber, and signified vnto me their intencion, Wherunto I promised to answere them in one houre after. In which meane space I gathered together the principall members of my companie, which, after that I had broken the matter wth them, answered mee all with one voyce, that I ought not to refuse his offer, nor consume the occasion which presented it selfe. And that they could not thinke rull of it in France, it being forsaken as we were. Wee apde our selues wth such meanes, as God hath sent to vs. After summe debates of this matter, in conclusion I gaue my aduise that wee ought to be let from the price of the shippe which hee was to leaue vs, and that for my part I was content to giue him the best of my stuffe, and the silver which I had gathered in the Countrey.

Wherupon notwithstanding it was determined, that I should keepe the silver, for feare least the Queene of Englande seeing the same, should be the rather bee incouraged to set footing there, as before she had desired: That it was farre better to carry it into France, to giue incouragement to our Princes not to leaue off such an enterpryse of so great importance for our Common wealth. And that seeing wee were resolved to depart, it was farre better to giue him our Artillery, which otherwise wee should be constrained to leaue behinde vs, or to hide in the ground, by reason of the weaknesse of our men, being not able to imbarke the same. This point being thus concluded, and resolved on, I went (my selfe) vnto the English Generall, accompanied with

cell, is not in  
me, as any time in  
entirely standeth in  
rich by means of  
all things to show  
stirous of present  
who is of point  
g there at things  
men that there will  
outdoe. Thus by  
ere that victuals  
of cuer coming  
In which case of  
ued him to heare  
upon the banks of  
ne 130. factious,  
which greatly re-  
s for the space of  
rich sly as would  
he both golde and  
they not loosing  
in earnest at sea, as  
withe the 20. of  
th the lode of 20.  
all to the whole  
shippe. His name  
ressed, hath bene  
went vpon the  
stressed  
rench,  
7.  
cogitations, the  
I walked vpon a  
imediately one of  
reof, which were  
to be out of their  
had cast ancre,  
therupon I saw  
who they were.  
In

which in  
Foyde.

with my lieutenant, and Captaine Valleur, Captaine Verdier, and Trenchant the pilot, and my striants, all men of experience in such affaires, & knowing sufficiently how to vantage such a bargain. We therfore took a view of the ship, which the Generall would sell, whom we dyed to such reason, that he was content to stand vnder mine owne mens iudgement, who esteemed it to bee worth 700. crownes, whereof we agreed very friendly. Wherefore I deliuered him in earnest of the summe, 2. balliards, 2. millions, one thousand and ypon, & one thousand of powder: this bargain thus made, he considered the necessity wherein we were, hauing for al our sustenance but mil & water: whereupon being moued with pittie, he offered to relieue me with 20. barrels of meale, 6. pipes of beanes, one hoghead of sale, and 100. of more to make candles. Moreover, for so much as he saw my souldiers goe barefoot, he offered me besides 50. paire of shoes, which I accepted, and agreed of a ypiece with him, and gaue him a bill of my hand for the same, for which vntill this present I am indebted to him. He did more then this, for particularly he bestowed vpon my selfe a great barre of oyle, a barre of vinegar, a barre of olives, and a great quantitie of rise, and a barre of white bisket: besides he gaue diuers presents to the principall officers of my company, according to their qualities. So that I may say, that we receiued as many courtesies of the General, as it was possible to receive of any man liuing. Wherein doubtlesse, he hath wonne the reputation of a good & charitable man, deserving to be esteemed as much of vs al, as if he had saued all our liues. Incontinent after his departure, I spared no paines to hasten my men, to make biscuits of the meale which he had left me, and to hoope my caskes to take in water needfull for the voyage.

Thus farre Laudoniere, concerning M. Haukins and his courtesie.

### A relation of the commodities of Noua Hispania, and the manners of the inhabitants, written by Henry Hawkes merchant,

which liued 5. yeeres in the said Countrey, and drewe the same at the request of M. Richard Hakluyt Esquire of Eiton in the Countie of Hereford, 1572.

S. John de Villua.



Aint John de Villua, is an Island not high above the water, whereas now the Spaniards, vpon M. Iohn Hawkins being there, are in making a strong fort. In this place all the shippes that come out of Spaine with goods for these parts do unlade. For they haue none other port so good as this is. The coming into this place hath 3. chanelis, and the best of all is the Northmost, which goeth by the maine land: and on every side of the chanelis, there are many small rockes as bigge as a small barrell: they will make men stand in doubt of them, but there is no feare of them. There is another Island thereby called the Island of sacrifices, whereas the Spaniards did in times past unlade their goods. And for that they say there are vpon it spirits of deuils, it is not frequented as it hath bene. In these places the North winde hath so great dominion, that oftentimes it destroyeth many shippes and barches. This place is giuen to great sickness. These Islands stand in 18. degrees and a halfe, and about the same is great plenty of fish.

Spirits.

Vera Cruz.

Five leagues from S. Iohn de Villua is a faire riuer: it lieth North west from the port, and goeth to a little towne of the Spaniards called Vera Cruz, and with small bellis or barches, which they call Fragates, they carry all their marchandise which cometh out of Spaine, to the said towne: and in like manner bring all the golde, silver, Cochoanelis, hides, and all other things that the shippes carry into Spaine vnto them. And the goods being in Vera Cruz, they carry it to Mexico, and to Pueblo del los Angeles, Sacatecas, and Saint Martin, and diuers other places so farre within the Countrey, that some of them are 700. miles off, and some more, all vpon horses, mules, and in waynes vnto one with oxen, and in carres vnto one with mules. In this towne of Vera Cruz within these 20. yerres, when women were brought to bedde, the children neuer boyme incontinently died: which is not so now in these dayes, God be thanked.

Muskito.

This towne is inclined to many kinde of diseases by reason of the great heate, and a certaine gnaw of sic which they call a Muskito, & bitheth both men and women in their sleepe, and as some as they are bitten, incontinently the flesh swelleth as though they had bene bitten with some venomous worme. And this Muskito is great doerth most followe such as are newly come into the Countrey: Many there are that die of this annoyance.

This towne is situated vpon the riuers side, and compassed with woodes of diuers manners and costes, and many fruits, as Oranges and Lemmons, Guiaues, and diuers others, and birds in them,

them, papinapes being on the east of small mountains

This towne of 40 miles being past their towne with them if they should be burnt all.

Before you come 16000. house hold the occasion that they see all the Countrey.

Mexico is a great city on the shore of the bay under the Spaniards of fathers and mothers, some of the beautiful which is not so far from the bay, and the houses, which they are great for their

This City is the best and best, because in this City are as well Spaniards as of things that these fathers is vpon the Thursday, vnto the Vicere, other places of the not appeare from summer: And if it fall into this lake goeth out.

The Indians in this City hath beene: for the Indians and Debar recreation. The best of their bo

There are need them a monstrous canell. He is too any man of bea

There is a dead, whereas they have newly

There is a well and by the name of the island and Groenland. They say, accompt to be m

Towards the

them, papinapes both small and great, and some of them as bigge as a raven, and their tailes as long as the eade of a f. e. There are also many other kinde of beeres of purple couller, and small drinking marvellous proper.

Papinapes.  
Spencers.

This towne of Ache Countrey continueth 45. miles towarde the Citie of Mexico: and the 45. miles being passed, then there is a temperate Countrey and full of alliage: but they water all their corne with rivers which they runne in upon it. And they gather their wheate twice a yeere. And if they should not water the ground where as their corne is sowne, the Countrey is so hotte it would burne all.

Whate this is in a poore.

Before you come to Mexico, there is a great towne called Tlaxcalla, which hath in it about 16000. householde. All the inhabitants thereof are free by the kings of Spaine: for these were the occasion that Mexico was wonne in so short time, and with so little losse of men. Wherefore they are all Gentlemen and pay no tribute to the king. In this towne is all the Cochohilio growing.

Tlaxcalla a free Citie.

Mexico is a great Citie: it hath more then fiftie thousande householde, whereof there are not past five or sixe thousande houses of Spaniards, all the other are the people of the Countrey, which live under the Spaniards lawes. There are in this Citie stately buildings and many Monasteries of friers and nonnes which the Spaniards have made. And the building of the Indians is somewhat beautiful outwarly, and within full of small chambers, which very small houses, which is not so comely as the building of the Spaniards. This Citie standeth in the midst of a great lake, and the water goeth through all of the most part of the streets, and there come small boats, which they call Canoes, and in them they bring all things necessary, as wood and coales, and grass for their houses, stones and lime to bulde, and coyns.

America.

This Citie is subiect to many earthquakes, which oftentimes call downe houses, and kill people. This Citie is very well provided of water to drinke, and with all manner of victuals, as fruits, fish and fish, bread, hennes and capons, Guinie cocks and hennes, and all other soule. There are in this Citie every weeke thre faires or marketes, which are frequented with many people as well Spaniards as the people of the Countrey. There are in these faires or marketes all manner of things that may bee invented to sell, and in especial things of the Countrey. The one of these faires is upon the Monday, which is called S. Hypolitos faire, and S. James his faire is upon the Thursday, and upon Saturday is S. Iohns faire. In this Citie is allwayes the kings Governour or Viceroy, and there are kept the Termes and Parliaments. And although there bee severall places of Justice, yet this is above all: so that all men may appeale unto this place, and may not appeale from this Citie, but onely into Spaine before the King: and it must be for a certaine summe; And if it be under that summe, then there is no appellation from them. Many rivers fall into this lake which the Citie standeth in: but there was never any place founde whither it goeth out.

It may be by some opinion.

The Indians knowe a way to towne the Citie, and within these 3. yeeres they would have passed the same: but they which should have bene the doers of it were hanged, and ever since the Citie hath bene well watched both day and night, for feare least at sometime they might be deceived: for the Indians love not the Spaniards. Round about the towne there are very many gardens and Orchards of the fruits of the Countrey marvellous faire, where the people have great recreation. The men of this Citie are marvellous vicious, and in like maner the women are dishonest of their bodies, more then they are in other Cities or townes in this Countrey.

Crocodiles.

There are neere about this Citie of Mexico many rivers and standing waters, which have in them a monstrous kinde of fish which is marvellous rauening, and a great devourer of men and cattell. He is wont to sleepe upon the drye land many times: and if there come in the meane time any man or beast and wake or disquiet him, he speedeth well if he get from him. Hee is like unto a serpent fasting: hee doerh not sleepe, neither hath he wings.

Navigatioe to China from this port be the same way.

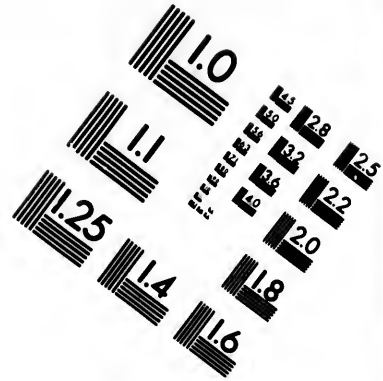
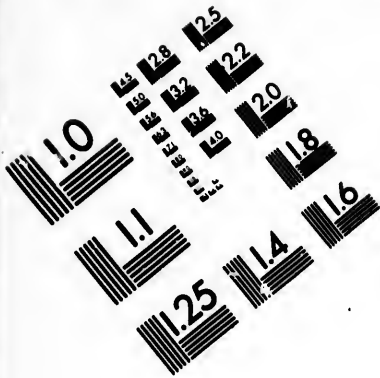
There is without of Mexico a port towne which is on the South sea, called Puerto de Navidad, where as there are shippes which they have ordinarily for the Navigatioe of China, which they have newly found. This port is threescore leagues from Mexico.

The South sea strange.

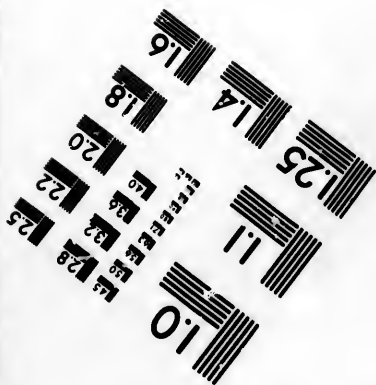
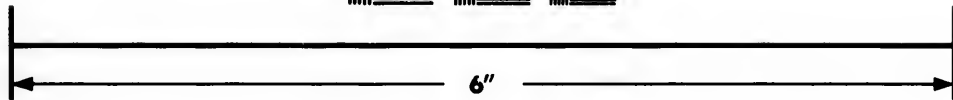
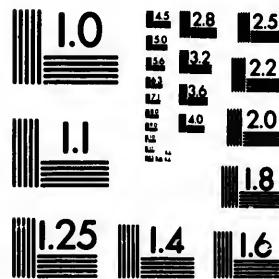
There is another port towne which is called Culluacan on the South sea which lyeth West and by North out of Mexico, and is 150. leagues from the same. And there the Spaniards made two shippes to goe seeke the streight of gulfie, which as they say is betwene the Newfounde land and Greenland, and they call it the Englishmens Straite, which as yet was never fully found. They say that the Straight lieth not farre from the maine land of China, which the Spaniards attempt to be marvellous rich.

Towarde the North from Mexico, there are great flocks of silver mynes. There is greater quan-





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28



quantity of silver founde in these mines toward the North, then there is in any other partes; and as the most minen of experience said alwayes, they finde the richer mines the more Northerly. These mines are commonly vpon great hills and stoue ground, maruailous hard to be laboured and wrought.

Out of some of the mines, the Indians finde a certaine kinde of earth of diuers colours, whereby they paint themselves in times of their vaunces, and other pastimes which they doe.

In this Countrey of Noua Hispania, there are also mines of gold; although the golde be commonly found in riuers, or very neere vnto riuers. And now in these dayes there is not so much golde found as there hath bene heretofore.

There are many great riuers and great stoupe of fishe in them, not like vnto our kindes of fish. And there are maruailous great woods, and as faire trees as may be scene of diuers sortes, and especially firre trees that may make any shippe that goeth vpon the sea, oaks and pines, and another tree which they call a Miskitoit beareth a fruite like vnto a peasecod maruailous sweet, which the wilde people gather and keepe it all the yeere, and eat it in steede of bread.

The Spaniards haue notice of seuen Cities which olde men of the Indians shewe them should lie towards the North-west from Mexico. They haue used and vse dayly much diligence in the seeking them, but they cannot finde any one of them. They say that the witchcraft of the Indians is such, that when they come by these tolines they cast a miste vpon them, so that they can not see them.

They haue vnderstanding of another Citty which they call Copalla, and in like manner, of my being in the Countrey, they haue used much labour and diligence in the seeking of it: they haue found the lake on which it should stande, and a Canoa; the head wherof was wrought with copper curiously, and coulde not finde nor see any man nor the towne, which to their vnderstanding should stand on the same water of very neere the same.

There is a great number of beastes of kine in the Countrey of Cibola, which were neuer brought thither by the Spaniards, but breed naturally in the Countrey. They are like vnto our oxen, saying that they haue long haire like a Lion, and hoar horns, and they haue vpon their shoulders a bunke like a Camell, which is hieer then the rest of their body. They are maruailously wilde and swift in running. They call them the beastes of kine of Cibola.

This Cibola is a Citty which the Spaniards founde nowe of late, without any people in the same, goodly buildings, faire chimneys, windows made of stone and timber excellently wrought, faire welles with wheelles to drawe their water, and a place where they had buried their dead people, with many faire stones vpon the graues. And the Capitaine woulde not suffer his soldiers to breake vp any part of these graues, saying, hee would come another time to doe it.

They asked certaine people which they mette, whether the people of this Citty were gone; and they made answer, they were gone vnto a riuer which was thereby very great, and there had builded a Citty which was more for their commodity.

This Capitaine lacking thing's necessari: for himselfe and his men, was faine to returne backe againe without finding any treasure according to his expectation: neither founde they but fewe people, although they founde beaten wayes, which had bene much haunted and frequented. The Capitaine at his comming backe againe, had a great checke of the gouernour, because he had not gone forwards and scene the ende of that riuer.

They haue in the Countrey farte from the seales, standing waters which are salt: And in the moneths of Apill and May, the water of them congealeth into salt, which salt is all taken for the kings vse and profit.

Their dogges are all crooked backe as many as are of the Countrey kinde, and cannot runne fast: their faces are like the face of a pigge or an hogge, with sharpe noses.

In a certaine youtince which is called Guatimala, and Sacanofco, there is growing great stoupe of Cacao; which is a berrie like vnto an Almond: It is the best Sparchandise that is in all the Indies. The Indians make binke of it, and in like manner meate to eat. It goeth curantly for money in any market of faire, and may buy any flesh, fish, bread or cheere or other things.

There are many kinde of frutes of the Countrey which are very good, as Plantans, Sapoces, Guiaues, Pinas, Aluacaras, Tunas, Maimos, Lymons, Orenge, Walnus, very small and hard, and little meate in them, grapes which the Spaniards brought into the Countrey, and also wilde grapes, which are of the Countrey, and are very small, quinses, peches, figges, and but fewe apples, and very small, and no peares; but there are melons and Calabasses.

There is much bottle body of bees, and also of a kinde of tree which they call Maguez. This body

Painting  
partly  
of  
Golde mines.

7. Cities by  
witchcraft not  
found of the  
seekers.

The beastes of  
Noua Hispania.

Cibola aban-  
doned.

Water con-  
gealed to salt.

Dogs of In-  
dia described.

Cacao a fruit  
succulent as  
nutmeg.

Fruites.

of Maguez is not  
the other is: and  
bags, and are good  
They haue in  
haue scene one  
a spring which ha  
within one halfe  
scene halfe a S  
of it.

There are man  
Quaples,  
They haue gro  
people doe open ch  
of fishe, and keepe  
Countrey, so fill  
Cenck, nor Pike.

There are in th  
commonly burne,  
ces, which are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

There are in th  
gers, which Tyge  
In this Countrey  
and when they me  
the Kings offi  
ly took the said m  
certaine dates the  
mighte of his were  
was among them,  
happened to finde  
outcome and man  
men that found th  
hame the quicke s  
declared vnto the  
as mynes, and succ  
done in this Coun  
There is great  
them into Peru, w  
The people of c  
giuen much to dy  
of Maguez, and ro  
mine Pulco. They  
their munkennes,  
their pleasures an  
vpon paines of mo  
if this commodity  
West India one  
They are of m  
They vse diuers t  
tions: many time  
wilde for that offer  
The people arc  
they learned since  
call in making of  
wines as he is. T  
as should giue the

There are in t  
Which is amon  
It and it is good. A  
for purgations, an

any other parts; more soberly, and to be labourer  
s couters, where they use  
the golde be com-  
re is not, so much  
ar Kindes of fish,  
oiners loyes, and  
and principles, and  
aruelous sweet,  
ead.  
ewie them should  
b diligence in the  
but craft of the  
n, so that they can  
like maner, as my  
s of it: they have  
ought with copie  
understanding  
which were neuer  
are like unto our  
they have upon  
They are mar-  
ny people in the  
lently wrought,  
buried their dead  
not suffer his sole  
to doe it.  
tite were gone  
great, and there  
faine to returne  
ether founde they  
ated and frequen-  
uennour, because  
s sake: And in the  
s all taken for the  
nd cannot runne  
s growing great  
hantle that is in  
e rate. It goeth  
of cheere or other  
ntrians, Sapores,  
y small and barb,  
p, and also wilde  
s, and but few  
guez. This hony  
of

Maguez is not so sweete as the other hony is, but it is better to be eaten onely with bread, then the other is: and the tree serueth for many things, as the leaues make theye to sowe any kinde of bags, and are good to couer oʒ hatch houses, and for diuers other things.

They haue in diuers places of the Countrey many hot springs of water. As about all other, I haue scene one in the prouince of Mechuacan. In a plaine field without any mountaine, there is a spring which hath much water, and it is so hot, that if a whole quarter of beefe bee cast into it, within our halfe houre, it will be as well sodden, as it will be ouer a fire in halfe a daye. I haue scene halfe a Sheepe cast in; and immediatly it hath bene sodden, and I haue eaten parte of it.

Hot Springs.

There are many Hares and some Conies. There are no Partridges, but abundance of Quayles.

Hares and Conies.

They haue great store of fish in the South Sea, and many Dyffers, and very great. The people doe open the Dyffers, and take out the meate of them, and dry it, as they doe any other kind of fish, and keepe them all the yere: and when the times serue, they sende them aboad into the Countrey, so sell as all other fish. They haue no Salmon, no Trout, no Pele, no Carpe, Tench, no Pike, in all the Countrey.

Sea fish.

There are in the Countrey mightie high mountaines, and hills, and snowe upon them. They commonly burne, and twise every day they cast out much smoke, and ashes, at certaine open places, which are in the toppes of them.

Mountaines.

There is among the wild people much Manna. I haue gathered of the same, and haue eaten it, and it is good. For the Apothecaries send their seruants at certain times, to gather of the same, for purgations, and other uses.

Manna.

There are in the mountaines many wild hogs, which all men may kill, and Lyons and Tygers, which Tygers doe much harme to men that trauell in the wilderness.

In this Countrey, not long since, there were two poore men that found a meruelous rich myne, and when these men went to make a register of the same, according to the Lawe and custome, before the Kings officers, they thought this myne not meete for such men as they were, and violentlyooke the said myne for the King, and gaue no part thereof into the two poore men. And within certaine daies the Kings officers returned thither to labour in the myne, and they found two great mightie hills were come together, so they founde no place to worke in. And in the time, while I was among them, which was sixe yeres, there was a poore shepheard, who keeping of his sheepe, happened to finde a Well of quicke siluer, and he went in like manner to manifest the same, as the custome and manner is. The Kings officers dealt in like order, as they did with the two poore men that found the rich myne, taking it quite from the shepheard: but when they went to fetch home the quicke siluer, oʒ part thereof, they could neuer finde it againe. So these things haue bene declared vnto the King, who hath giuen commandement, that nothing being found in the fieldes, as mynes, and such like, shall be taken away from any man. And many other things haue bene done in this Countrey, which men might count for great meruels.

Miner digged, not found e. time.

There is great abundance of Sugar here, and they make diuers conserues, and very good, & send them into Peru, whereas they sell them meruelous well, because they make none in those parts.

Sugar and conserues.

The people of the Countrey, are of a good stature, tawnye coloured, broad faced, flat noses, and giuen much to drinke both wine of Spaine, & also a certain kind of wine, which they make w hony of Maguez, and rootes, and other things which they vse to put into the same. They call the same wine Pulco. They are soone drunke, and giuen to much headlines, and void of all goodnes. In their drunkennes, they vse and commit sodomie, and with their mothers and daughters they haue their pleasures and pastimes. Whereupon they are defended from the drinkeing of wines, upon paines of money, as well he that selleth the wines, as the Indian that drinketh the same. And if this commandment were not, all the wine in Spaine, and in France, were not sufficient for the West India onely.

Description of the Indians prison and markets.

They are of much simplicity, and great cowards, void of all valour, and are great Warthes. They vse diuers times to talke with the Deuill, to whome they doe certaine sacrifices and oblations: many times they haue bene taken with the same; and I haue scene them most cruelly punished for that offence.

The people are giuen to learne all manner of occupacions and sciences, which for the most part they leaured since the continuing of the Spaniards: I say all manner of artes. They are very artfull in making of Images, with teachers, oʒ the proportion oʒ figure of any man, in all kinde of manner as he is. The fineries and excellencie of this is wonderfull, that a barbarous people as they are, should giue themselves to so fine an arte as this is. They are Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, and Copper-

Smiths.

Copper Smiths, Carpenters, Spalons, Shoemakers, Tailors, Saddlers, Embroderers, and of all other kind of sciences: and they will and doe worke so good cheape, that poore yong men that go out of Spaine, to get their living, are not set on worke. Which is the occasion there are many idle people in the Countrey. For the Indian will liue all the weeke with lesse then one groate, which the Spaniard cannot doe, nor any man else.

The Indians ignorance from whence they came.

They say, that they came of the lineage of an olde man, which came thither in a boate of wood, which they call a Canoa. But they cannot tell whether it were before the flood, or after, neither can they giue any reason of the flood, nor from whence they came. And when the Spaniards came first among them, they did certaine sacrifice to an Image made in stone, of their owne inuention. The stone was set vpon a great hill, which they made of bricke of earth, they call it their Cowa. And certaine daies in the yeere, they did sacrifice certaine olde men, and yong children, and onely deceyed in the Sunne and the Spooone, saying, that from them they had all things that were needfull for them. They haue in these parts great store of cotton wool, with which they make a manner of linnen cloth, which the Indians weate, both men and women, and it is frerely for shirts & smocks and all other kind of garments, which they weare vpon their bodies: and the Spaniards use it to all such purposes, especially such as cannot buy other. And if it were not for this kind of cloth, all manner of cloth that goeth out of Spaine, I say, in new cloth would be sold out of all measure.

The skinne and moone horns etc.

The wild Indians.

The wild people goe naked, without any thing vpon them. The women weare the skinne of a Deere, before their pinnities, and nothing else vpon all their bodies. They haue no care for any thing but onely from day to day for that which they haue neede to eate. They are bigger men, and likewise the women, they shoote in bowes, which they make of a cherrie tree, and their arrows are of a Cane, with a sharpe flint stone in the end of the same: they will pierce any coate of maile, and they kill Deere, and Cranes, and wild Geese, Duckes, and other fowle, and Wopines, and Snakes, and diuers other vermin, which they eate. They liue very long, for I haue seene men that haue bene 100. yeeres of age. They haue but very litle haire in their face, nor on their bodies.

Fraters in theuicence.

The Indians haue the Fraters in great reuerence. The occasion is, that by them, and by their meane, they are free, & out of bondage, which was so obtained by Charles the Emperour, which is the occasion, that now there is not so much gold and siluer comming into Europe, as there was while the Indians were slaves. For when they were in bondage, they could not chuse but doe their easke euery daye, and bring their Masters so much metall out of their Spynes. But now they must be well paid, and much entreated to haue them worke. So it hath bene, and is a great hindrance to the owners of the Spynes, and to the Kings quinto of custome.

Copper mines.

There are many Spynes of Copper in great quantitie, wherof they spend in the Countrey, as much as serueth their turnes. There is some gold in it, but not so much as will pay the costes of the mining. The quantitie of it is such, and the Spynes are so farre from the sea, that it will not be woorth the freight to carry it into Spaine. On the other side, the Kings officers will giue no licence to make Ordnance thereof: wherupon the Spynes, lie vnlaboured, and of no valuation.

The pompe of owners of Spynes.

There is much lead in the Countrey, so that with it they couer Churches, and other religious houses: wherfore they shall not neede any of our lead, as they haue had neede thereof in times past. The pompe and liberalitie of the owners of the Spynes, is meruelous to behold. The apparell both of them, and of their wiues, is more to be compared to the apparell of Noble persons, then otherwise. If their wiues goe out of their houses, as vnto the Church, or any other place, they goe out with great Pageantie, and with as many men and maides, as though they were the wife of some Noble man. I will assure you, I haue seene a Spynners wife goe to the Church, with 100. men, and 20. Gentlewomen, and maides. They keepe open house, who will, may come to eate their meate. They call men with a bell to come to dinner and supper. They are Princes in keeping of their houses, and housefull in all manner of things.

A good owner of Spynes must haue at the least 100. slaves, to carrie, and to stamp his metalls: he must haue many Spules, and men to keepe the Spynes: he must haue mills to stamp his metalls: he must haue many waines, and Oxen to bring home wood to fire the vye: he must haue much quicksiluer, and a meruelous quantitie of salt pyne, for the metalls, and he must be at many other charges. And as for this charge of quicksiluer, it is a newe inuention, which they finde more profitable, then to fire their vye with lead. Notwith the same is very costly. For there is neuer a hundredth of quicksiluer, but costeth at the least 60. pounds sterling. And the Spynes fall dayly in decay, and of lesse value: and the occasion is, the fewe Indians that men haue to labour their Spynes.

The plenty of coccol.

There is in new Spaine, a meruelous increase of coccol, which daily doeth increase, and they are of a greater groweth then ours are. You may haue a great store of that both an hundred weight of coccol

callow in his bell  
stone. They set the  
red. They spend m  
ery is great, so is t  
commonly hal the  
we in Cuba, and P  
and into Spaine. C  
them. They haue n  
serueth the Countre  
made in the Citie  
Gogall, and the v  
lam, and Spall. La  
they make no cloth  
cloth. The wooll s  
ry of the Countre  
and doth serue but  
They make hat  
cheape, then they c  
Spany people at  
and in neede of oil  
worke to fire a the  
for lesse then 12. pe  
They haue mus  
of all colours, and  
but: but the blacke  
They haue man  
haue as good Item  
their Spules they  
There is raine  
uery day, which tin  
waters which fall  
would be destroyed  
the common peopl  
the same. This  
without it, they cou  
of this Paiz, and  
The Indians  
of Paiz, which is  
Hispania, of as m  
free, because the C  
And although at t  
dispute vpon them  
the King, which is  
tribune, as the oth  
The ships wh  
let charge the sal  
stone, in the south  
here they doe thi  
3. months, and t  
ships are lost in t  
seeke Salomons I  
Man ch many  
them. And beca  
went not on land,  
in Noua Hispani  
ry, whereas the p  
They haue in  
which are certai

oberers, and of all  
young men that go  
ere are many whe  
e groate, which  
a boate of wood,  
of asser, neither  
e Spaniards came  
e otone invention,  
all it their Cowa  
idern, and onely  
gs that were neede  
they make a maner  
y shirts & stocks  
spaniards use it to  
is kind of cloth, all  
fall measure.

are the skime of a  
ue no care for any  
re bigge men, and  
and their arrowes  
ny coate of made,  
nd Coyms, and  
I haue serue men  
oy on their bodys,  
hem, and by their  
Temperour, which  
hope, as there was  
chuse but doe their  
s. But now they  
is a great hinde

in the Countrey, as  
they the colles of  
spat it will not be  
will giue no liuere  
saluation,  
nd other religious  
ceof in times past.  
old. The apparell  
le persons, then o  
er place, they goe  
re the tosse of some  
h, with 100. men,  
come to eate their  
in keeping of

Stampe his me  
nts to stamp his  
ye: he must haue  
e must be at many  
chey finde more  
of, there is neuer  
gynes fall dayly  
ue to labour their  
crease, and they ar  
pounded weight of  
callowe

callowe in his bellie for 16. shillings, and some one man hath 20. thousand head of cattell of his  
name. They sel the hides vnto the Merchants, who lade into Spaine as many as may be w<sup>e</sup>l sp<sup>a</sup>  
ren. They spend many in the Countrey in shoes and bootes, and in the mynes: and as the Count  
rey is great, so is the increase of the cattell wonderfull. In the Island of Santo Domingo, they  
commonly kill the beastes for their hides and callowe, and the fowles eate the carcases: and so they  
ue in Cuba, and Porto Ricco, whereas there is much suger, and Cansahuala, which daily they  
send into Spaine. They haue great increase of sheepe in like maner, and daily doe intend to increase  
them. They haue much wool, and as good as the wooll of Spaine. They make cloth as much as  
serue the Countrey, for the common people, and send much cloth into Peru. I haue seene cloth  
made in the Citie of Mexico, which hath bene sold for ten pezos a bare, which is almost 4. pounds  
English, and the bare is less then our pard. They haue Dye growing in the Countrey, and Al  
lam, and Brazil, and diuers other things to dye withall, so that they make all colours. In Peru  
they make no cloth, but hereafter our cloth will be little set by in these partes, vntill it be some fine  
cloth. The woolls are commonly 4. shillings euery roue, which is 25. pounds: and in some pla  
ces of the Countrey that are farre from the places wher as they make cloth, it is worth nothing,  
and both serue but onely to make bents for men to lye on.

Sheepe, wool  
Cloth.

Dye.  
Brazil.  
Alall.

They make hats, as many as doe serue the Countrey, very fine and good, and sell them better  
cheape, then they can be brought out of Spaine, and in like maner send them into Peru.

Spany people are set on worke, both in the one, and in the other: they spin their wooll as we do,  
and in steede of oyle, they haue hoggs greate: they twill not their threds so much as we doe, neither  
worke so fine a threed. They make no kersies, but they make much cloth, which is coarse, and sell it  
for less then 12. pence the bare. It is called Bayall.

They haue much silke, and make all maner of stoyes thereof, as Cassataes, Wattins, Celuetes  
of all colours, and they are as good as the silkes of Spaine, sauing that the colours are not so per  
fect: but the blackes are better then the blackes that come out of Spaine.

Woolles,  
Hules.  
Armetes.

They haue many hoxes, and mares, and mules, which the Spaniards brought thither. They  
haue as good firmness, as any are in Spaine, and better cheape then they be in Spaine. And with  
their Hules they carry all their goods from place to place.

There is raine vsually in this Countrey, from the month of May, to the midd of October, e  
uery day, which time they call their winter, by reason of the said waters. And if it were not for the  
waters which fall in these hot seasons, their Spais, which is the greatest part of their sustenance,  
would be destroyed. This Spais is the greatest maintenance which the Indian hath, and also all  
the common people of the Spaniards. And their hoxes and mules which labour, cannot be without  
the same. This graine is substantiall, and increaseth much blood. If the Spiners thould bee  
without it, they could not labour their Spines: for all their seruantes eate none other bread, but onely  
of this Spais, and it is made in cakes, as they make oaten cakes, in some places of England.

Spais graine  
for man and  
beast.

The Indians pay tribute, being of the age of 20. yeeres, 4. shillings of money, and an hanget  
of Spais, which is woorth 4. shillings more, vnto the King euery yeere. This is paid in all Noua  
Hispania, of as many as be of the age of 20. yeeres, sauing the citie of Tlascalla, which was made  
free, because the Citizens thereof were the occasion that Cortes tooke Mexico in so litle a time.  
And although at the first, they were freed from payment of tribute, yet the Spaniards now begin to  
charge vpon them, and make them to till a great field of Spais, at their owne colles euery yeere for  
the King, which is as beneficiall vnto him, and as great toll vnto them, as though they paid their  
tribute, as the others doe.

The ships which goe out of Spaine with goods from Peru, goe to Nombre de dios, and there  
uncharge the said goods: and from thence they be carried over the necke of a Lande, vnto a port  
towne, in the south sea, called Panama, which is 17. leagues distant from Nombre de dios. And  
thence they doe ship their goods againe, and so from thence goe to Peru. They are in going thither  
3. months, and they come backe againe in 20. daies. They haue selldome foule weather, and few  
ships are lost in the south sea. Fourte yeeres past, to wit, 1568. there was a ship made out of Peru, to  
seeke Salomons Islands, and they came some what to the south of the Equinoctiall, and founde an  
Island, wher many blacke people, in such number, that the Spaniards durst not goe on land among  
them. And because they had bene long vpon the voyage, their people were very weake, and so  
went not on land, so know what commoditie was vpon it. And for want of victuals, they returned  
in Noua Hispania, in a port called Porte de Nauidad, and thence returned backe againe vnto Pe  
ru, whereas they were exill entreated, because they had not knowen more of the same Islands.

Salomons Is  
lands sought,  
and found in  
the South sea.  
1568.

They haue in this port of Nauidad, ordinarily their ships, which goe to the Islands of China,  
which are certain Islands, which they haue found within these 7. yeeres. They haue brought from  
thence

China found  
by the West.

thence gold, and much Cinamon, and dishes of earth, and cups of the same, so fine, that every man that may haue a peece of them, will giue the weight of silver for it. There was a mariner that brought a pearle, as big as a doves egge, from thence, & a stone, for which the Viceroy would haue giuen 3000. buckets. Spany things they bring from thence, most excellent. There are many of these Islands, & the Spaniards haue not many of them as yet: " for the Portugals disturbe them much, & combat with them every day, saying, it is part of their conquest, & to the maine land they cannot come at any hand. There are goodly people in them, & they are great mariners, richly apparelled in cloth of gold, & silver, & like of all sorts, & goe apparelled after the manner of Turkes. This report make such as come from thence. The men of the maine lande, haue certaine traffike with some of these Islanders, & come thither in a kind of ships, which they haue with one saile, and bring of such merchandize as they haue neede of. And of these things there haue bene brought into Newe Spaine both cloth of gold, & silver, & diuers maners of silkes, & wokes of gold and silver, maruelous to be seene. So by their saying, there is not such a Countrey in the whole world. The maine land is from the Islands 150. leagues: and the Islands are not farre from the Moluccas northwards. And the people of those Islands, which the Spaniards haue, say, that if they would bring their wiues & children, that then they should haue among them what they would haue. So there goe women daily, & the king payeth all the charges of the married men & their wiues, that go to those Islands. And there is no doubt, but the trade will be meruelous rich in time to come.

It was my fortune to be in companie with one Diego Gutierres, who was the first Pilot that euer went to that Countrey of the Phillipinaes. He maketh report of many strange things in that Countrey, as well riches, as others, and saith, if there be any Paradijs vpon earth, it is in that countrey: and addeeth, that sitting vnder a tree, you shall haue such sweete smells, with such good content and pleasure, that you shall remember nothing, neither wife, nor children, nor haue any kind of appetite to eate of, or drinke, the odoriferous smells will be so sweete. This man hath good liuing in Noua Hispania, not withstanding he will returne thither, with his wife and children, and as for treasure, there is abundance, as he maketh mention. In this Countrey of Noua Hispania, there are many Bucks and Does, but they haue not so long hoines as they haue here in England. The Spaniards kill them with handguns, and with grayhounds, and the Indians kill them with their bowes, and arrowes, and with the skins they make chamoyre, such as we in England make doublets and hols of, as good as the skins that are dyed in Flanders, and like wise they make maruelous good Spanish leather of them. There is a bird, which is like vnto a Rauen, but he hath some of his feathers white: there is such abundance of them, that they eate all the corrupt and dead flesh which is in the Countrey. Otherwise the abundance of carren is so much, that it would make a maruelous corrupt aire in all the Countrey, and be so noisome, that no man could abide it. Therefore it is commaunded, there shall none of them be killed. These birds are alwaies about Cities, and Townes, where there is much flesh killed.

The Indians are much fauoured by the Iustices of the Countrey, and they call them their Opphanes. And if any Spaniard should happen to doe any of them harme, or to wrong him in taking any thing from him, as many times they doe, or to strike any of them, being in any towne, whereas iustice is, they are as well punished for the same, as if they had done it one Spaniard to another. When a Spaniard being farre from Mexico, or any place of iustice, thinking to doe with the poore Indian what he list, considering he is so farre from any place of remedie, he maketh the Indian doe what he commaundeth him, and if he will not doe it, he beateeth and misuseth him, according to his owne appetite. The Indian holdeth his peace, vntill he find an opportunity, and then taketh a neighbour with him, and goeth to Mexico, although it be 20. leagues off, and maketh his complaint. This his complaint is immediatly heard, and although it be a Knight, or a right good Gentleman, he is forthwith sent for, and punished both by his goods, and also his person is imprisoned, at the pleasure of the Iustice. This is the occasion that the Indians are so tame and ciuill, as they are: and if they should haue this fauour, the Spaniards would scarce dispatch all the Indians, or the Indians would kill them. But they may call them dogs, and use other euill words, as much as they will, and the Indian must needs put it vp, and goe his way.

The poore Indians will goe every day 2. or 3. leagues to a Faire or Market, with a childe vpon their necks, with as much fruite or rootes, or some kind of ware, as coccon wooll, or Cables of all colours, as shall be not past worth a pennie: and they will maintaine themselves vpon the same. For they liue with a maruelous small matter.

They are in such pouertie, that if you neede to ride into the Countrey, you shall haue an Indian to goe with you all the day, with your bed vpon his backe, for one roll of plate: and thus you shall haue from one Towne to another. Here you are to vnderstand, that all men that travel by the

" This is to be  
briker food of  
the time when  
this dilcouerie  
was written.  
anno 1572.

China ships  
with one saile.

Chamoire.

Spanish leas  
ther.  
Iohn Rauens  
not killed, so  
beuotus carol.  
87.

Spanys home  
to the Indi-  
ans punished.

Iustice com-  
of children.

the way, are a loo-  
all that they may.

The garment  
a woman struck  
one to put on  
flowers, of red  
and then they haue  
waite, and reache  
to some halfe the  
men haue a small  
cheir beeches, an  
and with a knot by  
cheir apparell, all  
The walls of t  
shall not well per  
che means that c  
rie in their walls.  
very little, so that  
cheir houses, are l  
calke one with an  
full of images, an  
and sleepe on the

The Indians

for they know n  
In Noua Hisp  
Mexico: so there

Mutezuma wh  
hane bene seene  
they, and all man  
all trees, and flow  
his treasure, and in  
they say that the  
would giue none  
though he were n  
so that he was not  
to bring at such a  
free, but himselfe.  
Alwaies when lo  
mens shoulders,  
and many colours,  
this day, so doe al

The Spaniards  
not dagger, nor k  
may they ride by  
which they take  
tions, but they ha

There remain  
the bones of a Sp  
that had no other  
come againe, wh  
place, about the s  
their mynes they

They haue in  
of the commodie  
They haue a l  
meruelous good  
There are in l

fine, that every man  
was a mariner that  
Ciceroy would have

There are many of  
ingals disturbe them  
the maine land they  
mariners, richly ap-  
maner of 3 Turkes  
have certaine traffike  
ie with one isle, and  
have bene brought in  
s of gold and silver,  
the whole world. The  
from the Moluccas  
that if they would  
their wives, that go  
in time to come,

is the first Pilot that  
change things in that  
ly, it is in that com-  
with such great com-  
noy have any kinde  
in hath good living  
children, and as for  
oua Hispania, there  
e in England. The  
all them with their  
England make bove  
they make maner  
n, but he hath some  
grape and dead fish  
at it would make a  
to abide it. There  
ates about Cities,

call them their Dy-  
ong him in taking  
up to one, whereas  
aniard to another.  
doe with the poore  
maketh the Indian  
him, according to  
and then taketh a  
o maketh his com-  
be, or a right good  
o his person is im-  
are so tame and cle-  
dispatch all the  
other euill woordes,

t, with a childe up-  
oll, or Cadis of all  
s upon the same.

shall have an Indi-  
ate: and this you  
om that travel by  
the

the way, are a waies wont to carry their beds with them. They are great theues, and will steale  
all that they may, and you shall haue no recompence at their hands.

The garments of the women, are in this manner. The vppermost part is made almost like to  
a woman's smock, sauing that it is as broad about as beneath, and hath no sleeves, but holes on e-  
che side one to put out the ir armes. It is made of lumen cloth, made of cotton wooll, and filled full of  
flowers, of red Cadis and blew, and other colours. This garment cometh downe to the knees,  
and then they haue another cloy made after the same manner, and that goeth round about their  
waite, and reacheth to their shoes and ouer this a white fine sheete upon their heads, which goeth  
downe halfe the legges. Their haire is made vp round with an haire lace about their head. And the  
men haue a small paire of breeches, of the same cotton wooll, and their shirts which hang ouer  
their breeches, and a broad girdle about their middles, and a sheete with flowers vpon their backs,  
and with a knot vpon one shoulder, and an hat vpon their heads, and a paire of shoes. And this is all  
their apparell, although it be a Calique, which they vse in all the Countrey.

The apparit  
of the Indis  
ans.

The wals of the houses of the Indians, are but plaine, but the stones are laid so close, that you  
shall not well perceaue the ioynts betweene one stone and another, they are so finely cut: and by  
the means that the stones are so workmanly done, and finely ioynted together, there is some beau-  
tie in their wals. They are meruelous small and light, as Pumie stones. They make their doozes  
very little, so that there can goe in but one man at a time. Their windowes, and rooms wit-  
hin their houses, are small, and one roome they haue reserved for their friends, when they come to  
take one with another, and that is alwaies faire matted, and kept meruelous cleane, and hanged  
full of images, and their chaires standing there to sit in. They eate their meate vpon the ground,  
and sleepe on the ground vpon a mat, without any bed, both the gentlemen, and other.

The houses of  
the Indians.

The Indians strike their fire with one stick in another, as well the tame people, as the wilde.

Fire ribben  
out of two  
sticks.  
Diners spee-  
ches.

For they know not howe to doe it with an yron, and a stone.  
In Noua Hispania, euerp 10. or 12. leagues they haue a contrarie speech, sauing onely about  
Mexico: so there is a number of speeches in the Countrey.

Mutezuma which was the last King of this Countrey, was one of the richest Princes which  
haue bene seene in our time, or long before. He had all kind of beasts, which were then in the coun-  
try, and all maner of birds, and fishes, and all maner of wormes, which creepe vpon the earth, and  
all trees, and flowers, and herbes, all fashioned in silver and gold, which was the greatest part of al  
his treasure, and in these things had he great ioy, as the olde Indians report. And vnto this day,  
they say that the treasure of Mutezuma, is hidden, and that the Spaniards haue it not. This King  
would giue none of his people freedom, nor forgive any of them that shoulde paye him tribute,  
though he were neuer so poore. For if it had bene told him, that one of his tributaries was poore,  
that he was not able to pay his tribute, according to the custome, then he would haue him bound  
to bring at such times as tributes shoulde be paid, a quill full of Xpre, saying, he would haue none  
free, but himselfe. He had as many wives, or concubines, as he would haue, and such as liked him.  
Alwaies when he went out of his Court, to passe the time, he was borne vpon 4. of his noble  
mens shoulders, set vpon a table, some say, of gold, and very richly dressed with feathers, of diuers  
and many colours and flowers. He washed all his bodie euery day, were it neuer so cold. And vnto  
this day, so doe all the Indians, and especially the women.

Mutezuma,  
and his riches

The Spaniards keepe the Indians in great subiection. They may haue in their houses no sword  
nor dagger, nor knife with any pointe, nor may weare vpon them any maner of armes, neither  
may they ride vpon any horse, nor mules, in any saddle nor bydle, neither may they drinke wine,  
which they take for the greatest paine of all. They haue attempted diuers times to make insurrec-  
tions, but they haue bene ouerthrowen immediately by their owne great and healthy cowardlines.

The Indians  
wash them-  
selues euery  
day.

There remaine some among the wilde people, that vnto this day eate one another. I haue seene  
the bones of a Spaniard, that haue bene as cleane burnt, as though it had bene done by men  
that had no other occupation. And many times people are carried away by them, but they neuer  
come againe, whether they be men or women.

Campbala.

They haue in the sea Islands of red salt in great abundance, whereas they lade it from place to place, about the sea coast: and they spend very much salt with salting their hides, and fische: and in  
their mynes they occupie a great quantitie.

Island of Gale.

They haue much Allam, and as good as any that is in all the Leuane, so that they neede none  
of that commoditie.

They haue also of their owne growing, much Cana fistula, and much Salsa Perilla, which is  
meruelous good for many kind of diseases.

Canna fistula,  
Salsa Perilla

There are in Florida, many Tarretalcans, and many other kind of Quakes, which the Gen-  
men

Florida,  
men

men of Noua Hispania send for euery yeere. The Spaniards haue two fortcs there, chiefly to keepe out the Frenchmen from planting there.

The 3. vnfortunate voyage made with the Iesus, the Minion,  
and foure other shippes, to the partes of Guinea, and the West In-  
dias, in the yeeres 1567. and 1568, by M. Iohn Hawkins.

October.

A storme.



The shippes departed from Plymmouth, the second day of October, Anno 1567. and had reasonable weather, until the seventh day, at which tyme foxtie leagues North from Cape Finester, there arose an extreme storme, which continued foure daies, in such sort, that the fleet was disperfed, and all our great boates lost, and the Iesus our chiefe shippe, in such case, as not thought able to ferre the voyage: whereupon in the same storme we sette our course homeward, determining to giue ouer the voyage: but the eleuenth day of the same moneth, the winde changed with faire weather, whereby we were animated to followe our enterpryse, and so did, directing our course with the Islands of Grand Canaries, where according to an order before prescribed, all our shippes before disperfed, mette in one of those Islands, called Gomera, where we tooke water, and departed from thence the fourth day of Nouember, towarde the coast of Guinea, and arrived at Cape Verde, the eighteenth of Nouember: where wee landed 150. men, hoping to obtaine some Negroes, where we gatte but fewe, and those with great hurt and damage to our men, which chiefly proceeded of their enuemenomed arrowes: & although in the beginning, they seemed to be but small hurtes, yet there hardely escaped any, that had bloode drawn of them, but died in strange sort, with their mouthes swete, some ten dayes before they died, and after their woundes were whole, where I my selfe had one of the greatest woundes, yet thanks be to God, escaped. From thence we past the time vpon the coast of Guinea, searching with all diligence, the Rivers from Rio grande, vnto Sierra Leona, till the twelfth of Ianuarie, in which time wee had not gotten together a hundred and fiftie Negroes: yet notwithstanding the sickness of our men, and the late time of the yeere commanded vs away, and thus hauing nothing where to goe to seeke the coast of the West Indias, I was with the rest of our companie in consultation to goe to the coast of the Spynie, hoping there to haue obtained some golde for our wares, and thereby to haue defraied our charge. But euen in that present instant, there came to vs a Negro, sent from a King, oppressed by other Kings his neighbours, desiring our aide, with promise, that as many Negroes as by these wares might be obtained, as well of his part, as of ours, should be at our pleasure: whereupon we concluded to giue aide, and sent 120. of our men, which the fiftene of Ianuarie, assaulted a towne of the Negroes of our Allies aduersaries, which had in it 8000. Inhabitants, and very strongly impaled and fenced, after their manner, but it was so well defended, that our men prevailed not, but lost the men, and 40. hurt: so that our men sent forthwith to me for moze helpe: whereupon considering that the good successe of this enterpryse might highly further the commoditie of our voyage, I went my selfe, and with the helpe of the King of our side, assaulted the towne, both by land and sea, and very hardly with fire (their houses being couered with drye Palme leaues) obtained the towne, and put the Inhabitants to flight, where we tooke 150. persons, men, women, and children, and by our friends the King of our side, there was taken 600. prisoners, whereof we hoped to haue had our chaffe: but the Negro (in which nation is seldom of neuer found truth) meant nothing lesse: for that night he remooued his campe, and prisoners, so that we were faine to content vs with those fewe which we had gotten our selues.

Gomera.

Nouember.

Enuemenomed  
arrowes.December.  
Ianuarie.A towne of  
8000. Negroes  
was taken.No truth in  
Negroes.

February.

March.  
Dominica.

April.

May.

How had we obtained betwene 4. and 500. Negroes, wherewith we thought it somewhat reasonable to seeke the coast of the West Indias, and there, for our Negroes, and other our merchandise, we hoped to obtaine, whereof to counteruaile our charges with some gaine, whereunto we proceeded with all diligence, furnished our warring, tooke fuel, and departed the coast of Guinea the third of February, continuing at the sea with a passage more hard, then before hath bene accustomed, till the 17. day of March, which day we had sight of an Island, called Dominica, vpon the coast of the West Indias, in 14. degrees: from thence we coasted from place to place, making our traffike with the Spaniards, as we might, somewhat hardly, because the King had straightly commanded all his Governours in those partes, by no meanes to suffer any trade to be made with vs notwithstanding we had reasonable trade, & courteous entertainment, from the Isle of Margarita into Cartagena, without anything greatly worth noting, sauing at Capo de la Vela, in a towne called Rio de la Hacha, from whence come all the pearles: the treasurer who had charge there, would by no meanes agree to any trade, or suffer vs to take water, he had fortified his towne with

duces

duces bulwarke  
gambiers, so that  
which purpose he  
could by no meane  
their bulwarke  
to the Spaniards  
Thus hauing  
partly by frien  
reioined to vs by  
we traued the S  
At Cartagena  
caine to deale w  
finished we thou  
yeare departed f  
then loone after  
ba, towarde the  
which continued  
buildings, her r  
rather vpon the  
passe sought the  
halowes of the  
after 3. dayes, w  
called Saint I  
our way w. ship  
be a meane to b  
of our fleet: ho  
and in our ente  
the Countrey e  
but immediatly  
found also in the  
River, all which  
in my way chie  
a grate: ouer  
tion and sent p  
Counsell there,  
of the repaire o  
ship to be furnis  
all conuenient l  
hed for, there m  
of amitie, their  
the fiftene of m  
morning which  
shippes, and w  
General of the fl  
to enter y<sup>e</sup> port,  
and maine nau  
nor three foot  
Island standeth  
there is not in a  
wind hath there  
and vpon this I  
Queen was so li  
not giue place t  
said I, I am in  
keepe oue the fle  
or els suffer the  
where they may  
there bin preser

... chiefly to keepe

Minion,  
West In

October, Anno 1567.

... tyme soztye leagues

... which continued

... all our great boares

... the able to serue the

... toward, determin

... vnde changed with

... to did, directing ou

... soze prescribed, all

... where we tooke wa

... of Guineza, and ap

... men, hoping to ob

... damage to our men,

... vinding, they seeme

... of them, but did in

... after their wounde

... be to God, escaped,

... illigence, the Rivers

... time we had not god

... of our men, and the

... ity to seeke the coast

... oe to the coast of tje

... to haue defraied our

... in a King, oppelled

... my Negroes as by

... pleasure: whereup

... Januarie, assaulted

... habitants, and very

... that our men praye

... or moze helpe, wher

... e the commoditie of

... ed the towne, both

... y Palme leaves Job

... sons, men, women,

... sonsers, wherof we

... never found trus)

... hat we were faine to

... ght it som what ren

... other our mercenar

... wherunto we

many bulwarke in ail places where it might be entered, and furnished himselfe with a 100. Car-  
gubblers, so that he thought by famine to haue enforced vs to haue put a land our Negroes: of  
which purpose he had not greatly failed vntill we had by force entered the towne: which (after we  
could by no means obtaine his fauour) we were enforced to do, & so with 200. men brack in vpon  
their bulwarke, & entered the towne with the losse only of ii. men of our partes, and no hurt done  
to the Spaniards because after their voise of shot discharged, they all flew.

Thus hauing the towne, with some circumsiance, as partly by the Spaniards desire of Negroes,  
& partly by friendship of the Treasorer, we obtained a secreete trade: whereupon the Spaniards  
reioiced to vs by night, & bought of vs to the number of 200. Negroes: in all other places where  
we traded the Spaniards inhabitants were glad of vs and traded willingly.

At Caragena the last towne we thought to haue serue on the coast, we could by no means ob-  
taine to deale with any Spaniard the gouernor was so straight, & because our trade was so neere  
knulped we thought not good either to aduenture any landing, or to detract further time, but in  
peace departed from thence the 24. of Iulij, hoping to haue escaped y<sup>e</sup> time of their stormes which  
then soone after began to raigne, the which they cal Furicanos, but passing by the west end of Cu-  
ba, towards the coast of Florida there happened to vs the xii. day of August an extreme storme  
which continued by the space of 4. daies, which so beat the Iesus, that we cut downe all her higher  
buildings, her rudder also was soze shaken, and with all was in so extreme a leake that we were  
eager vpon the point to leaue her then to keepe her any longer, yet hoping to hing all to good  
passe sought the coast of Florida where we found no place nor Hauen for our ships because of the  
shalownes of the coast: thus being in greater dispaire, & taken with a new storme which continued  
other 3. dayes, we were enforced to take for our succor y<sup>e</sup> Port which serueth the Citie of Mexico  
called Saint Iohn de Vllua which standeth in six. degrees: in seeking of which Port we tooke in  
our way iii. ships which carried passengers to y<sup>e</sup> number of C. which passengers we hoped should  
be a meane to vs the better to obtaine victuals for our money, and a quiet place for the repairing  
of our fleet: vntill after this the xvi. of September we entered the Port of Saint Iohn de Vllua

and in our entrie the Spaniards thinking vs to be the fleet of Spaine, the chiefe officers of  
the Countrey came aboide vs, which being deceiued of their expectation were greatly dismayed:  
but immediately when they sawe our demaund was nothing but victuals, were reconcited, &  
found also in the same Port xii. ships which had in them by the report. 200000. li. in golde and  
silver, all which (being in my possession, with the Kinges Island as also the passengers before  
in my way thitherwarde stayde) I set at libertie, without the taking from them the waygbe of  
a croce: onely because I would not bee delayed of my dispatch, I stayde two men of estima-  
tion and sent post immediatly to Mexico, which was 200. miles from vs, to the Presidents and  
Counsell there, shewing them of our arriual there by the force of weather, and the necessitie  
of the repaire of our shippes and victualles, which wantes we required as friends to king Phi-  
lip to be furnished of for our money, and that the Presidents and Counsell there should with  
all conuenient speede take order, that at the arriual of the Spanishe fleet, which was daily too-  
ked for, there might no cause of quarrel rise betweene vs and them, but for the better maintenance  
of amitie, their commaundement might bee had in that behalfe. This message being sent away  
the sixteenth day of September at nyght, being the very day of our arriual, in the next  
morning which was the sixteenth day of the same moneth, we sawe open of the Hauen xiii. great  
shippes, and vnderstanding them to be the fleet of Spaine, I sent immediatly to aduertise the  
General of the fleet of my being there, doing him to vnderstand, that before I would suffer them  
to enter y<sup>e</sup> Port, there should some order of condicions passe betweene vs for our safe being there,  
and maintenance of peace: now it is to be vnderstood that this Port is a little Island of stones  
not thre foote aboue the water in the highest place, and but a bow shoote of length any way, this  
Island standeth from the maine land two bowe shootes or moze, also it is to be vnderstood that  
there is not in all this coaste any other place for shippes to arrive in safetie, because the North  
wind hath there such violence, that vnles the shippes be very safely moyed w<sup>th</sup> their ankers fast-  
ned vpon this Island, there is no remedie for these North windes but death: also the place of the  
Hauen was so little, that of necessitie the shippes must ride one aboord the other, so that we could  
not giue place to them, nor they to vs: here I began to bewaile y<sup>e</sup> which after folowd, for now  
saib I, I am in two dangers, & forced to recreate the one of them. That was, either I must haue  
kept out the fleet from entering the Port, y<sup>e</sup> which w<sup>th</sup> Gods helpe I was very well able to do,  
or els suffer them to enter in w<sup>th</sup> their accustomed reason, which they neuer faile to execute,  
where they may haue opportunity, or circunuet it by any meane: if I had kept the out, then had  
there bin preser<sup>u</sup>ed shipwarke of al y<sup>e</sup> fleet which amounted in value to sixe Millions, which was in  
value

Tune.  
Rio de la Hacha  
taken.

Caragena.

Iulij.  
Furicanos.

Storme.

September.  
Saint Iohn  
de Vllua a Port.  
The Spane  
pays dectures

Our request.

The fleet of  
Spaine.

The manner of  
the Port S.  
Iobide Vllua.

North winds  
perious.

C e e.



1800. thons  
sand. pound.

A vice Roy.

Faire voydes  
beghed.

Our requests.

The peace  
concluded.

Treason.

A vice Roy  
saile of his  
woyde.The treason  
broke forth.

Sudden feare.

The opinion  
escaped hardly.The Iesus es-  
caped hardly.

Sharpe wars.

3. Shippes of the  
Spanyarde  
continued.

value of our money 180000. li. which I considered I was not able to answer, fearing the Queens Spatities indignation in so waighey a matter. Thus with my selfe resolving I doubte, thought rather better to abide Iust of the vn certainty, then the certainty. The vn certaine doubt I account for their treason which by good policy I hoped might be prevented, & therefore as chusing the least mischiefe I proceeded to conditions. Now was our first messenger come & returned from the fleet with reports of the arrival of a vice Roy, so that he had aucthority, both in all this Spouince of Mexico (other wise called noua Hispania) & in the sea, who sent vs word that we should send our conditions, which of his part should (for the better mainenance of amity be. weene I Spinces) be both fauorably granted, & faithfully performed, with many faire woys how passing the coast of the Indies he had understood of our honest behaviour towards the inhabitants where we had to do actual elsewhere as in I same Voyt, the which I let passe, thus following our demand we required victual for our money, & licence to sel almost ware as might furnish our woys, & that there might be of either part xi. gentlemen as hostages for the mainenance of peace: and that the Island for our better safety might be in our owne possession, buring our abode there, & such ordinance as was planted in the same Island which was xi. peeces of Brasle: & that no Spanyarde might land in the Island with any kind of weapon: these conditions at the first, he somewhat misliked, chiefly the gard of the Island to be in our owne keeping, which it wey had had, we had soone known our fare: for with the first North wind they had cut our cables and our ships had gone ashore: but in the ende we concluded to our request, bying the xi. hostages to x. which with all speede of epyther part weare receaued, with a writing from the vice Roy signed with his hand and sealed with his seale of all the conditions concluded, & forthwith a trumpet blowing with commandement that none of either part should be meane to inuolate the peace vpon paine of death: & further it was concluded that the two generalls of the fleetes should meete, & giue faith eche to the other for the performance of the premises which was so done. Thus at the end of 3. daies all was concluded and the fleet entered the Voyt, saluting one another as the manner of the sea doth require. Thus as I said before, thursday we entered the Voyt, friday we sawe the fleet, and on monday at night they entered the Voyt: then we laboured it, daies placing the English ships by them selues & the Spanish ships by them selues, the captaines of each part & interour men of there partes promising great amity of all sides: which euen as to all civility was ment of our part, so the Spanyardes ment nothing lesse of their parts, but from the maine land had furnished them selues with a supplie of men to the number of 1000. and ment the next thursday being the 23. of September at dinner time to set vpon vs of all sides, the same thursday in the morning the treason being at hand, some appearance they we, as shifting of weapon from ship to ship, planting and bending of ordinance from the ship to the Island where our men warde, passing too & fro of companies of men more then required for their necessary business, and many other yll licklyhodes which caused vs to haue a vehement suspicion, and therewithall sent to the vice Roy to enquire what was ment by it, which sent immediately straight commandement to byplant all chinges suspicious, & also sent word that he in the faith of a vice Roy would be our defence from all villanies. Wee we being not satisfied with this answer because we suspected a great number of men to be hid in a great ship of 900 tonnes which was moyed next vnto the Spouince sent againe to the vice Roy the master of the Iesus which had the Spanish tongue and required to be satisfied if any such thing were or not, which seeing the vice Roy that the treason must be discouered, forthwith sayd our master, bid we the trumpet, and of all sides set vpon vs: our men which warde a hope being stricken with sudden feare, gaue place, fled, and sought to recouer succour of the shippes, the Spanyardes being before provided for the purpose landed in all places in multitudes from their shippes which they might safely doe without boates, and steele all our men a hope without mercy, a fewe of them escaped aboide the Iesus. The great shippe which had by the estimation 300. men placed in hid secretly, immediately fell aboide the minion which by Gods appointment in the time of the suspicion we had, which was onely one halfe houre, the opinion was made ready to auoide and so leaving hie headsteeles, and bayling away by the stearne fastes shee was gotten out: thus with Gods helpe she defended the violence of the first hunc of these CCC. men. The opinion being passe out they came aboide the Iesus, which also with very much a doe and the losse of many of our men weare defended and kept out. Then were there also two other shippes that assailed the Iesus at the same instant, so that they had hard getting loose, but yet with some time we had cut our headsteeles and gotten out by the stearne fastes. Now when the Iesus and the opinion weare gotten abroad two shippes length from the Spanish fleet, the fight beganne both of all sides that within one houre the Admirall of the Spanyardes was supposed to be suncke their vice Admirall burned and one other of there principall ships supposed to be sunke, so that the ships,

ships were little

Then is it to

bendes, which

sus, in such soys

whereupon wee

abide all the bat

to take such rel

fer vs, and to le

the hott of the

ming directly v

marcellous fear

the winde will

wayes there say

sent of the Cap

the opinion.

The most par

nion in a small

the mercy of the

Iudith (a small

our great myse

two bowe spoo

lande a myle fr

onely with two

Ankers) were e

to a longer tye

The weather

ber of men and

the Spanyarde

to the Indoles

so thus with ma

teene dayes, ty

meate, rattes,

mountaynes that

counne one dinn

bottom of the s

hane founde in

of our shippe

hooting of our

fende and keep

weyther people

some perill we

whereunto I co

And such as

wards, I put ap

of the other sides

which being lan

victuals to take

The next da

dier preparing o

roul by no mea

looked for ship

But yet God

departed the sh

ther all the fir

the coast of the

weene the Cap

the colde Coun

ere, fearing the  
 olving of doubt,  
 in certaine doubt  
 d, & therefore as  
 ger come & retray  
 ship, both in all  
 vs word that we  
 amity be. weene  
 vs how passing  
 habitants where  
 our demand  
 our waite, & the  
 ease: and that the  
 here, & such ordi  
 no Spanyarde  
 e somewhat mis  
 had, we had loone  
 ships had gone a  
 r. which with all  
 with his hand and  
 vnc with coman  
 ne of death: & fur  
 with eche to other  
 vles all was con  
 sea doeh require.  
 no on monday as  
 by them selues &  
 there partes yo  
 art, so the Span  
 them selues with  
 3. of September  
 treason being at  
 and bending of  
 companies of men  
 which caused vs  
 hat was ment by  
 cious, & also sene  
 bet we being not  
 id in a great ship  
 oy the master of  
 ch thing were of  
 sayd our master,  
 he being stricken  
 the Spanyarde  
 ur shippes which  
 hereby, a fewe of  
 300. men placed  
 in the time of the  
 oy to auoide and  
 out: thus with  
 the Opinion being  
 the losse of many  
 pps that attan  
 ch some time we  
 us and the Opin  
 beganne boot  
 ed to be suncke  
 sunke, so that the  
 ships,

ships were little to annoy vs.

Then is it to be understood that all the ordinance upon the Lande was in the Spanyarde  
 handes, which did vs so great annoyance, that it cutt all the Spawes and yarde of the Je  
 sus, in such sort that there was no hope to cary her away: also it sunke our small shippes,  
 whereupon we were determined to place the Jesus on that side of the Opinion that wee myght  
 abide all the batterie from the Lande, and so be a defence for the Opinion till night, and then  
 to take such reliefe of victuall and other necessaries from the Jesus as the time woulde suf  
 fer vs, and to leaue her. As wee were thus determining and had placed the Opinion from  
 the foot of the lande, suddenly the Spanyarde had fired two great shippes which were com  
 manding directly with vs, and hauing no meanes to auoide the fire, it bred among our men a  
 marvellous feare, so that some sayd, let vs depart with the Opinion, other sayde, let vs see where  
 the winde will carrie the fyre from vs. But to bee short, the Opinions men which had al  
 wayes there sayles in a readinesse, thought to make sure waye, and so without epyther con  
 sent of the Captayne or Master cutte their sayle, so that verie hardy I was receaued into  
 the Opinion.

The most part of the men that were left a lyeue in the Jesus, made shift and followed the Opi  
 nion in a small boate, the rest which the little boate was not able to receaue, were enforced to abide  
 the mercy of the Spanyarde (which I doubt was very little): so with the Opinion onely and the  
 Judith (a small barke of fiftye tunne) were escaped, which barke the same nyght forsooke vs in  
 our great myserie: wee were nowe remoued with the Opinion from the Spanyarde shippes  
 two boate spores and there roade all that nyght: the next morning wee recovered an Is  
 lande a myle from the Spanyarde where there tooke vs a North winde, and being left  
 onely with two Ankers and two cables (for in this conflict we loste thre cables and two  
 Ankers) wee thought alwayes upon death which euer was present, but God preserued vs  
 to a longer tyme.

The weather wayed reasonable, and the Satturday wee set sayle, and hauing a great num  
 ber of men and lyeite victualls our hope of life wayed lesse and lesse: some desired to yelde to  
 the Spanyarde, some rather desired to obayne a place where they might giue themselves  
 to the Indians, and some had rather abide with a little pittance the mercie of God at Sea:  
 so thus with manie sorrowfull hearts wee wandred in an unknowen Sea by the space of four  
 teene dayes, till hunger enforced vs to seeke the lande, for bites were thought very good  
 meate, rattes, catter, mice and dogges none escaped that myght bee gotten, parrots and  
 monkayes that were had in great pyll, were thought there very profittable if they serued the  
 course one dinner: thus in the ende the epyght day of October wee came to the lande in the  
 bottom of the same bay of Mexico in twenty three degrees and a halfe where wee hoped to  
 haue founde inhabitants of the Spanyarde, reliefe of victualles, and place for the repaire  
 of our shippe, which was so foze beaten with thotte from our enemyes and hysed with  
 shooting of our owne ordinance, that our heary and weake armes were scarce able to de  
 fend and keepe out the water. But all thinges happened to the contrary, for we founde  
 neyther people, victuall, nor haue of reliefe, but a place where hauing faire weather with  
 some perill we might land a boate: our people being enforced with hunger desired to be set a land,  
 whereunto I concluded.

And such as were willing to land I put them apart, and such as were desirous to goe home  
 wards, I put apart, so that they were indifferently parted a hundred of one side and a hundred  
 of the other side: these hundred men we set a land with all diligence in this little place before said,  
 which being landed, we determined there to refresh our water, and so with our little remaine of  
 victualls to take the Sea.

The next day hauing a lande with me fiftie of our hundred men that remained for the spee  
 der preparing of our water aboode, there arose an extreme storme, so that in thre dayes we  
 could by no meanes repayre our shippes: the shippe also was in such perill that euery houre we  
 looked for shipwacke.

But yet God againe had mercie on vs, sent faire weather, had aboode our water, and  
 departed the sixtene day of October, after which day wee had faire and prosperous wea  
 ther all the sixtene day of Nouember, which day God be prayled wee were cleere from  
 the coast of the Indians, and out of the Chanell and Goulls of Bahama, which is be  
 tweene the Cape of Florida, and the Landes of Cuba. After this growing neere to  
 the colde Countrie, our men being oppressed with famine, died continually, and they that  
 were

Hard case.

Fire.

Small hope to  
be had of  
renewal.  
No hope.Small hope of  
life.

Hard case.

Myserie.

October 1568.

Spany mis  
erie.The greatest  
miserie of all.Nouember.  
The goulls of  
Bahama.

were left, grewe into such weakenes that we were scanty able to manure our Ship, and the wind being alwaies yll for vs to recouer England, determined to go w<sup>th</sup> Galicia in Spaine, with intenc there to releue our company & other extreme wants. And being arriued the last day of **December.** December in a place neare vnto Vigo called Ponte vedra, our men w<sup>th</sup> excess of frethe meane grew into miserable diseases, and died a great part of them. This matter was boyme out as long as it might be, but in the end although there was none of our men suffered to goe a lande, yet by access of the Spaniards, our feblenes was knowen to them. Whereupon they ceased not to seeke by all meanes to betray vs, but w<sup>th</sup> all speede possible we departed to Vigo, where we had some helpe of certaine English ships & xlii. fresh men wherewith we repaired our wants as wee might, and departing the xx. day of January 1568, arriued in Spaines bay in Cornuwall the xxii. of the same moneth, praised be God theretoze.

**January.**

If all the miseries and trouble some affaires of this sorrowfull voyage should be perfectly and thoughtly written, there should neede a paynfull man w<sup>th</sup> his penne, and as great a time as hee had that w<sup>o</sup>uld the liues and deaches of the martirs.

John Hawkins.

**The Relation of Dauid Ingram of Barking, in the Countie of Essex Saylor, of sundry things which he with others did see, in traueiling by land from the most Northerly partes of the Baie of Mexico (where he with many others were set on shoare by Master Hawkins) through a great part of America, vntill he came within fiftie leagues or thereabouts of Cape Britton.**



About the beginning of October, Anno 1568. Dauid Ingram w<sup>th</sup> the rest of his company being 100. persons in all, were set on land by M<sup>r</sup>. John Hawkins, about five Leagues to the West of the riuer La mina, or Rio de Minas, which standeth about 140. leagues west & by North from the cape of Florida, who traueiling towards cape Britton, spent about 12. moneths in the whole. And about seuen moneths therof in those Countiees, which lie towards the North of the riuer of May, in which time (as the said Ingram thinketh) he traueiled by land two thousand miles at the least, and neuer continued in any one place about thre or foure dayes, sauing onely at the Citie of Balma, where he stayed fixe or seuen dayes.

**Kings.**

There are in those partes (as he) very many Kings, commonly within a hundred or a hundred and twenty miles one from an other, who are at continual waeres together: The first King that they came befoze, dwelt in a Countrey called Giricka, who caused them to be stripped naked, and wounding greatly at the whitenes of their skins, let them depart without further harme.

**Large precious stones.**

The Kings in those Countiees are clothed w<sup>th</sup> painted or colourd garments, and thereby you may know them, and they weare great precious stones, which commonly are Rubies, being 4. inches long, and two inches broad. And if the same bee taken from them, either by force or sleight, they are presently deuyied of their kingdomes.

**The Kings in their maiestie.**

When they meane to speake with any person publicly, they are alwaies carried by men in a sumptuous chaire of Siluer or Chittal, garnished w<sup>th</sup> diuers sortes of precious stones.

**The manner of saluting their Kings.**

And if you will speake with the king at your first appoaching neere to him, you must kneele downe on both your knees, and then arise againe and come somewhat neerer him, w<sup>th</sup>in your length, the kneele downe againe as you did befoze. Then take of the earth or grasse between both your hands, kissing the backside of each of them, and put the earth or grasse on the croome of your head, and so come, & kisse the kings seete. Which circumstances being performed, you may then arise and stand vp, and talke with him.

**How to know the noble men.**

The Noble men and such as be in special fauour w<sup>th</sup> the King, do commonly weare feathers in the haire of their heads for the most part, of a Byrde, as bigge as a goose of russet colour. And this is the best marke that this Ingram can giue to know him by.

**Pearle.**

There is in some of those Countiees great abundance of pearle, for in euery cottage he found pearle, in some houses a quart, in some a pottle, in some a pecke, moze or lesse, where he did see some as great as a beane. And Richard Browne one of his companions, found one of these great pearles in one of their Canoes or boats, which pearle he gaue to Mounfier Campaign, who tooke them aboard his Ship, and brought them to Newhauen in France,

**Bacelets of Gold.**

All the people generally do weare Spanillos or Bacelets, as big as a mans finger, vpon each

of their armes, and two siluer.

And many of the people of currees, a

The people counte high, somewhat of somewhat calumnia foote, the haire of

In the South wities are covered of the palme tree,

being next to their being are to buy

They are natur but wile them cour

sende them exce

hemmes, or such li

If any of them on both sides, then may be.

If any of them that hee is a spee

the king, or any w

mayes either Ent

If you will ha

If you will ha

and go from it a

will giue for it in

you like it not, a

moze. Where wille

it, vntill you hau

When they g

Their Crum

they make of bea

w<sup>th</sup> willowes tw

Their meapone

long, which are s

They haue al

rowes are of bon

small force w<sup>th</sup>

They haue h

bearing edges th

Their haue cr

will carue excell

Their Ensign

colours, as red, y

The people in

Canibals doe mo

and thereby you

vnto some wood

poyned arrow

Their buildin

les, and they doe

boules in the top

and chypstall, str

of age, and some

This Ingram

of their armes, and the like on the small of erbe of their legs, whereof commonly one is golde and two silver.

And many of the women also doe weare plates of golde, covering their bodies in maner of a poyse of cures, and many braceletts and chains of great pearle.

The people commonly are of good favour, feuler & shape of body, of growth aboute five foote high, somewhat thicke, with their faces and skins of colour like an olive, and toward the North somewhat tawnye, but some of them are painted with divers colours, they are very swift of foote, the haire of their heads is shaven in sundry spots, and the rest of their head is traced.

In the South partes of these countreys they go all naked, saving that the Noble mens piliuities are covered with the necke of a goose, and the womens piliuities with the haire of leafe of the palme tree. But in the North partes they are clothed with beastes skins, the happye side being next to their bodies in winter.

They are so brutish & beastly, that they wil not sojbeare the use of their wines in open presence. They are naturally very courteous, if you do not abuse them, either in their persons or goods, but vie them courteously. The killing or taking of their beastes, birds, fishes, or fruites cannot offend them, except it be of their cattell which they keepe about their houses, as Kine, Swinie hennes, or such like.

If any of them doe holde by both their hands at length together, and kisse the backes of them on both sides, then you may undoubtedly trust them, for it is the greatest token of friendship that may be.

If any of them shal come unto you with a boysetaile in his hand, then you may assure your selfe that hee is a Messenger from the King, and to him you may safely committe your person, or go to the king, or any where else, or by him send any thing or message to the king. For these men are alwayes either Ensigne bearers in the warres, or the kings messengers, who wil never betray you.

If you will have any of the people come aboarde your ship, hang out some white cloth upon a staffe, so that is a signe of amitie.

If you will bargaine for wares with them, leave the thing that you will sell upon the ground, and go from it a pteetic way of: then will they come and take it, and set downe such wares as they will give for it in the place: And if you thinke it not sufficient, leave the wares with signes that you like it not, and they will bring more, untill either they or you be satisfied, or will give no more. Othertwise you may hang your wares upon a long poles end, and so put more or less on it, untill you have agreed on the bargain.

When they goe to the warres, they march in battell aray two and thre in a ranck.

Their Crumpees they doe make of certaine beastes teeth, they have a kinde of Drum which they make of beastes skins, they make Shields and Targets of the skins of beastes, compassed with willowe twigs, and being dyed, they are strong and defensible.

Their weapons are bartes, headed with yron, the heads are two fingers broad, and halfe a foot long, which are fastened within a socket.

They have also shot bowes, strung with y bark of trees, being halfe an ynch broad, & the arrows are of bone, yarde long, nocked and headed with silver & bone, and their arrows are of small force within a stones cast of them, and you may yut them by with a staffe a pteetic way off.

They have shot broad swordes of blacke yron of the length of a yarde, or very neere an elle, bearing edges thicker then backs of knives, somewhat like the foyles in our fence schooles.

They have crooked knives of yron, somewhat like a woodknife, or hanger, wherewith they will carue excellently both in wood and bone.

Their Ensigne is a hoyle taile, with glasse or Chrystall in some of them being dyed in sundry colours, as red, yellow, greene, &c.

The people in those Countreys are professed enemies to the Canibals or men eaters: The Canibals doe most inhabite betweene Norumbega, & Barinia, they have teeth like dogs teeth, and thereby you may know them. In the warres they doe pitch their campe as neere as they may unto some wood of Palme tree, which yeelde them meate, drinke, and present remedy against poisoned arrows.

Their buildings are weake and of small force, their houses are made round like Dove houles, and they doe dwell together in Townes and Villages. And some of them have banqueting houles in the top of them, made like the loover of a hall, bullded with pillars of masse silver, and chrystall, framed square: whereof many of them are as big as a doyes leg of fiftene peeres of age, and some less.

This Ingram did also see divers Townes and Villages, as Gunda, a Towne a slight

Cures of golde. The fashion and shape of the people.

Naked people

Whitish beastes. The manner of their courtesies.

A signe token of friendship.

Spettengers from the king

To allure the people to speech.

The manner of traffique and dealing with them.

How they march in battell. Their weapons and instruments for warre.

Canibals.

Their houses and buildings

Townes and Villages.

shoote in length.

Ochala, a great Towne a mile long.

Balma, a rich Citie, a mile and a halfe long.

Bega, a Countrey, and Towne of that name, thre quarters of a mile long, where are good store of Dye woods.

Saguanah, a Towne almost a mile in length.

Barinia, a Citie a mile and a quarter long: Also there is a River and a Towne of that name, but lesse then the first above named.

Guinda, a small Towne and a River, both of that name. And this is the most Northerly part, that this Ingram was at.

There are besides those Townes aforesaid, many other great Townes which this Ingram passed by, commonly distant six or eight miles one from the other, which have divers small Villages within eight or ten miles from them.

Vessels of  
masse silver,  
for common  
uses.

They have in every house scowpes, buckets, and divers other vessels of masse silver, wherewith they doe shovve out water and dust, and otherwise doe employ them to their necessary uses in these houses: All which this Ingram did see common and usual in some of these Countreys, especially where he found the great Pearles.

Gold in the  
heads of Ri-  
vers.

There are also great rivers, at the heads whereof, this Ingram & his companions did find sum-  
my pieces of golde, some as big as a mans fist, the earth being washed away with the water,

Rocks of chyp-  
stan.

And in other places, they did see great rocks of Chypstal, which growe at the heads of great  
and many Rivers, being in quantitie to loade shippes.

Fine Furrtes.

There are also in those partes, plentie of fine Furrtes, unknown to this Ingram, dressed ac-  
cording to the manner of the Countrey.

Sweete turke  
to burne.

The people there doe burne a kind of white Turke earth, which they dig out of the marishes,  
a sadome deepe in the ground, & burneth very cleare, and smelleth as sweete as muske, and that  
earth is as wholesome, sweete, and comfortable, to smell unto, as any Pomander. They doe make  
their fire of this earth for the sweetnes thereof, having great abundance of wood.

Their manner  
of kindling fire

When they want fire, they take briers, and rub them very hard together betwene their fist,  
and so with hard and often rubbing they kindle and make fire.

Iron and  
Minerall salt.

They have great plentie of Iron, and there is also great plentie of minerall salt, in the marish  
ground which looketh reddish, a thing necessary for the great fishings neere the sea boze, which  
are there abundant, and the fish very large and huge.

The fertilitie  
of the soyle.

The ground & Countrey is most excellent, fertile and pleasant, & specially towards the River  
of May. For the grasse of y<sup>e</sup> rest is not so greene, as it is in these partes, for the other is burnt away  
with the heate of the Sunne. And as all the Countrey is good and most delicate, having great  
plaines, as large & as saye in many places as may be seene, being as plaine as a board: And then  
great & huge woods of sundry kind of trees, as cedar, Lignum vite, Bombasse, plants & bushes,  
bark that bitech like Pepper, (of which kind, yong M. Winter brought home part from y<sup>e</sup> straight  
of Magelane) with the fruitfull Palme tree, & great plentie of other sweete trees to this Ingram

Plaines.

Great woods.

Palmes.

Cloves and pa-  
stures.

unknown. And after these plaines againe, and in other places great closes of pasture, environed  
with most delicate trees, in stead of hedges: they being as it were set by the hands of men: Yet  
the best grasse for the most part is in the high Countreys, somewhat farre from the Sea side, and  
great Rivers, by reason that the lowe grounds there be so rancke, that the grasse groweth sader  
then it can be eaten, whereby the olde grasse lieth withered thicke, and the newe grasse growing  
through it. Whereas in the upper partes, the grasse and ground is most excellent and greene.  
The ground not being overcharged with any olde withered grasse, as is aforesaid specified.

The Palme  
tree.

The Palme tree aforesaid carrieth hayres on the leaves thereof, which reach to the ground,  
whereof the Indians doe make ropes and cords for their Cotten beds, and doe use the same to  
many other purposes.

Wine of the  
Palme.

The which Tree, if you picke with your knife, about two foote from the roote, it will peede  
a Wine in colour like wybe, but in taste strong and somewhat like Balsam, which is most excel-  
lent to drinke. But it wil dissemper both your head and body, if you drinke too much thereof, as our  
strong Wines will doe in these partes.

Spente of the  
Palme.

The branches of y<sup>e</sup> top of y<sup>e</sup> tree, are most excellent meat raw, after you have pared away y<sup>e</sup> bark.  
Also there is a red oyle that cometh out of y<sup>e</sup> roote of this tree, which is most excellent against  
poisoned arrows & weas: ons: for by it they doe recover themselves of their poisoned wounds.

The plantaine  
which is fruits

There is a tree called a Plantaine, with a fruite growing on it like a pudbing, which is most  
excellent meate rawe.

They have a  
growth on the  
greene Kallin, &  
they keepe in be  
They have a

There is all  
like ours in  
Also, they ha  
Graine is like a  
They doe all  
small as they ca  
There is also  
shewe, & are  
most part being  
great store of t  
having long ear  
hed like Rams

The Hives of t  
ples, male and f  
There is also g  
great knoweth n  
of course wood  
exceeding fatte  
at night, untill  
but after they b  
in some 500, an  
Saint Marie, a  
Mooltes. The  
mes both white

This Exam  
and in proporti  
towards the bir  
long growing

Hee did also  
strange Beall M  
his head. This  
like a Rat, full

There are i  
are also Birds  
There are gre  
as big as Geel  
led a flaming  
and is very go  
teth the River  
wings are cou  
like the peep  
for the Count  
also in these d  
Bird, thise as  
Peacocks sea  
his head and c  
by colours an  
proportion lik  
Touching  
sayd, that he  
the houses to g  
He farther  
ly turneth co

They have also a red berry like a Pestod, called Guyarhos, two or three puches long, which groweth on short bushes full of prickles like the Sloe or Thorne tree, and the fruite eateth like a greene Raisin, but sharper somewhat: They stamp this berry and make Wine thereof, which they keepe in vessels made of wood.

They have also in many places, Vines which beare Grapes as big as a mans thumb.

There is also great plentie of herbes, and of all kinde of flowers, as Roses, and Gilckflow-ers, like ours in England, and many others which he knoweth not.

Vines with great Grapes, Herbes and flowers.

Also, they have a kinde of Graine, the eare whereof is as big as the wrist of a mans arme: the Graine is like a flat pease, it maketh very good bread and white.

They doe also make bread of the roote called Cassava, which they doe drie, and beate it as small as they can, and temper it with water, and so bake it in cakes on a stone.

Bread of a Cassava.

There is also great plentie of Buffes, Beares, Hoxes, Kine, Woolues, Foxes, Deare, Goats, Sheepe, Vares, Conies: Also other cattell like ours, to this Examinee unknowen, the most part being white: the Hides and Skinnes of them are good Marchandise. There is ber great sort of those Buffes, which are beasts as big as two Dren, in length almost twentie foot, having long eares like a Blood hound, with long haire about their eares, their hoznes be crooked like Rams hoznes, their eyes blacke, their haire long, blacke, rough, & shagged as a Goat: The Hides of these beasts are solde very deare, this Beast doeth keepe companie onely by couples, male and female, & doeth alwayes fight with others of the same kinde when they do meete.

Beasts of many kindes.

Deere gibbous la, suppoied a Buffe.

There is also great plentie of Deare both red, white, and speckled. This last sort this Examinee knoweth not. There is also great plentie of another kinde of Sheepe which carie a kinde of course wooll: This Sheepe is very good meate, although the flesh be very red. They are exceeding fatte, and of nature loth to rise when they are laid, which is alwayes from five a clocke at night, untill five a clocke in the morning: betwene which time you may easily kill them, but after they be on foote they are very wilde, & rest not in one place, but lute together in herds, in some 500, as it happeneth, moze or lesse: And these red Sheepe are most about the Bay of Saint Marie, as this Examinee getteth. There are Beares both blacke and white. There are Woolues. The Foxes have their skins moze grised then ours in England. There are Conies both white and red, and grey in every place great plentie.

Deare. Sheepe bearing wooll the flesh red.

This Examinee did also see in those Countries a monstrous beast whose as big as an Hoxe, and in proportion like to an Hoxe, both in maine, hoofs, haire, and neyging, saving it was small towards the hinder partes like a Grey hound. These Beasts hath two teeth or hoznes of a foote long growing straight forth by their noses: they are naturall enemies to the Hoxe.

A strange Beast.

Hee did also see in that Countrey both Elephants and Dunces. Hee did also see one other strange Beast bigger then a Beare, he had neither head nor necke: his eyes and mouth were in his breast. This beast is very ugly to beholde, and cowardly of kinde. It beareth a very fine skin like a Rat, full of silver haire.

Elephants and Dunces. A strange shapeless Beast.

There are in those Countries abundance of Rustlet Parrots, but very fewe greene. There are also Birds of all sortes as we have, and many strange Birds to this Examinee unknowen. There are great plentie of Guinie hennes which are tame Birds, and proper to the Inhabitants, as big as Geese, very blacke of colour, having feathers like Downe. There is also a Bird called a Flamingo, whose feathers are very red, and is bigger then a Goose, billed like a Shouell, and is very good meate. There is also another kinde of Foule in that Countrey which hunteth the Rivers neere unto the Islands: They are of the shape and bignesse of a Goose but their wings are covered with small yelow feathers, and cannot flie: You may dye them before you like theye: They are exceeding fatte and very delicate meate, they have white heads, and therefore the Countrey men call them Penguins (which seemeth to be a Welsh name.) And they have also in the divers other Welsh words, a matter worthy the noting. There is also a very strange Bird, whose as big as an Eagle, very beautifull to beholde, his feathers are moze orient then a Peacocks feathers, his eyes are glittering as an Hawks eyes, but as great as a mans eyes, his head and thigh as big as a mans head and thigh: It hath a crest and tuft of feathers of sundry colours on the top of the head like a Lapwing hanging backwards: His beake and talents in proportion like Eagles, but very huge and large.

Rustlet Parrots. Birds like Guinie hens.

A red Bird.

Penguins.

A great strange Bird.

Touching Tempests and other strange monstrous things in those partes, this Examinee saith, that he hath scene is Lightning and Thunder in sommer season by the space of foure & twentie houres together: the cause whereof he iudgeth to be the heate of the Climate.

He farther saith, that there is a Cloud sometime of the yeere scene in the ayre, which commonly turneth to great Tempests. And that sometimes of the yeere there are great windes in manner

Tempests.

Thunder.

Tempests.

Tempests.

Tempests.

Tempests.

, where are good

a Towne of that

most Motherly

which this Ingram

divers small Cit-

tieles silver, where-

their necessary uses

these Countreys,

ations did find sum-

the water.

the heads of great

gram, dressed af-

t of the marishes,

as muske, and that

er. They do make

wood,

twene their fits,

sale, in the marsh

the sea Hoze, which

towards the River

er is burnt away

ate, having great

a board: And then

plants & bushes,

re from a straight

are also Birds of all

ature, environed

nds of men: Yet

the Sea a live, and

le groweth faster

grasse growing

lent and greene.

perished.

y to the ground,

he use the same to

note, it will peede

rich is most excel-

ch thereof, as our

red away a bark.

excellent against

stoned wounds.

y, which is most

They

of *Whirlewindes*.

*Their manner  
of Religion.*

*T*ouching their Religion, he saith that they honoꝝ for their God a Deuil, which they call *Colluchio*, who speaketh vnto them sometimes in the likenesse of a blacke Dogge, and sometimes in the likenesse of a blacke Calf.

And some doe honoꝝ the Sunne, the Moone, and the Starres.

*Whulterie pun-  
ished with  
death.*

He saith þ the people in those Countreies are allowed many *Wines*, some *blue*, some *terme*, & a *king* sometimes an *hundred*: And þ *Whulterie* is very severely punished in manner following, that is to say: The woman taken in *adulterie*, must with her owne hands cut þ *throte* of the *Adulterer*, and the next of his kindred doth likewise cut þ *throte* of the *Adulteresse*. And being asked in what manner they take their executions, he saith: That they are brought to execution by certaine *Magistrates*, who do deliuer vnto þ woman the knife, wherewith the cutteth þ *throte* of the *Adulterer*.

Then appeareth their *Colluchio* of *Deuil*, in the likenesse aforesaid, and speaketh vnto them, and to that *Deuil* the parties brought to execution doe great reuerence, and with many prayers to it doe take their death.

*Their manner  
of Burials.*

He saith that such persons as are put to death in such sort, haue not any of their friends buried with them: but such as die naturally, haue alwayes buried quicke with them one of their dearest friends to keepe them companie, and to prouide necessaries and vtuall for them, who doe willingly consent thereto, being thereto persuaded by their *Colluchio* of *Deuil*, whi they do worship.

*The Deuil sed  
abowp at the  
name of the  
holy Trinitie.*

He saith further, that he & his two fellowes, namely, *Richard Broune*, and *Richard Twide*, went into a poore mans house, & there they did see the said *Colluchio* of *Deuil*, with very great eyes like a blacke Calf: Upon the sight whereof, *Broune* saide, There is the *Deuil*, and there vpon he blessed himselfe: In the name of the *Father*, and of the *Sonne*, and of the *holy Ghost*. And *Twide* saide very vehemently, *I desie thee and all thy workes*. And presently the *Colluchio* spranke away in a stealing maner forth of the doores, and was seene no moꝝe vnto them.

*Great Riuer.*

Also they passed ouer many great *Riuers* in those Countreies, in *Canoes* or *Boates*: some foure, some fixe, some eght, some tenne miles ouer: whereof one was so large, that they coude scarce crosse the same in foure and twentie houres.

*Spittall in-  
struments.*

Also he saith, that in the same Countrie, the people haue instruments of *Musick* made of a peece of a *Cane*, almost a foote long, being open at both endes: which sitting downe, they smite vpon their thighes and one of their handes, making a pleasant kind of sound,

And they do vse an other kind of instrument like a *Taber*, covered with a white skinne somewhat like *Parchment*.

This *Examine* can very well describe their gestures, dauncing, and songs,

After long traualle, the aforesaid *David Ingram* with his two companions *Broune* and *Twide*, came to the head of a riuer called *Garinda*, which is 60. Leagues West frõ *Cape Bleton*: where they vnderstood by the people of that Countrey of þ *arriuall* of a *Christian*. Where vpon they made their repaire to the *Sea side*, and there found a *French Captaine* named *Monsieur Champaigne*, who tookethem into his *Shippe* and brought them vnto *Newhauen*, & from thence they were transported into *England*, Anno. Dom. 1569.

*Wher in ex-  
change of  
trades.*

This *Monsieur Champaigne*, with diuers of his companie was brought into þ *Village* of *Barrinah*, about twentie miles by into the Countrie by þ said *Examine* and his two Companions, by whose meanes he had a trade with the people of diuers *sortes* of fine fures, & of great redde leaues of trees almost a yard long, & about a foote broad, which he thinketh are good for dying.

Also the said *Monsieur Champaigne*, had there for exchange of trifling wares, a good quantitie of *ruide*, and wrought *siluer*.

He saith further, that diuers of the said *Frenchmen* which were in the said *Shippe* called the *Gargarine*, are yet liuing in *Domstet* vpon the coast of *France*, as he thinketh, for he did speake with some of them within these three yeeres.

About a fourtnight after their comming from *Newhauen* into *England*, this said *Examine* and his two companions came to master *John Hawkins*, who had let them on shore vpon the *Baye* of *Perico*, and vnto eche of them he gaue a reward.

*Richard Broune* his companion was slaine about fixe yeeres past in the *Elizabeth* of master *Cockins* of *London*: And *Richard Twide* his other companion died at *Ratcliffe* in *John Shers* woods house there, about three yeeres past.

*The language  
of some of the  
Countreies.*

{ *Gwando*. Is a woꝝde of *Salutation*, as among vs: *Good moꝝrow*, *Good euen*,  
God saue you or such like.  
Caricon. A *King*.  
Caracona. A *Loꝝd*,

Fona.

For  
Ca  
Ke

Also the sayd  
Northside of Am  
the people signifi  
ground the shape  
proueth the passa  
do, which found

Also the sayd  
of six thousand  
a flane to a Span  
hundred of two b  
ding from the mo  
at the least, euery  
with as great reu  
nere them by the  
of those people, a

A discours

the compan

yecre

Sp

Wherein is shew  
number, and an  
dealing vpon



taine Master Jo  
Captaine Thom  
D. Francis Dy  
fir of the Swall  
age vncill the ce  
fier, which duce  
another, and our  
page, and to cr  
and the winde co  
And so commin  
cording to an o  
wee then tooke  
our course, vpon  
Africa, at cape

{ Fona. Bread.  
 Carmugnar. The Priuitles.  
 Kerucca. The Sunne.

Also the sayd David Ingram traueiling towardes the North, found the maine sea vpon the North side of America, and traueiled in the sight thereof the space of two whole dayes, where the people signified vnto him, that they had seene shippes on that coast, and did shew vpon the ground the shape and figure of shippes, and of their sailes and flagges. Which thing especially moueth the passage of the Northwest, and is agreeable to the experience of Vasques de Coronado, which found a Shippe of China or Cataia vpon the Northwest of America.

Also the sayd examine saith, that there is an Island called Corrasau, and there are in it fine or six thousand Indians at the least, and all those are governed by one onely Negro, who is but a slave to a Spaniard. And moreover the Spaniards will send but one of their slaves with an hundred or two hundred of the Indians, when they goe to gather golde in the Rivers descending from the mountaines. And when they shal be absent by the space of twentie or thirty dayes at the least, euery one of the Indians will neuertheless obey all the slaves commaundments with as great reuerence, as if he were their naturall King, although there be neuer a Christian nere them by the space of an hundred or two hundred miles: which argueth the great obedience of those people, and how easly they may be governed when they be once conquered.

**A discourse written by one Miles Phillips Englishman, one of the company put a shore in the West Indies by M. Iohn Hawkins in the**

yeere 1568. contayning many speciall things of that countrie and of the Spanish gouernement, but specially of their cruelties vsed to our Englishmen, and amongst the rest to himselfe for the space of 15. or 16. yeeres together, vntill by good and happy meanes he was deliuered from their bloody hands and returned to his owne countrie. Anno, 1582.

The first Chapter.

Wherein is shewed the day and time of our departure from of the coast of England, with the number, and names of the shippes, their Captaines and Masters, and of our traffique and dealing vpon the coast of Africa.



**V**pon munday being the second of October, 1567. the weather being reasonable sayle, our Generall M. Iohn Hawkins, hauing commaunded all his captaines and masters to be in a readinesse to make sayle with him, hee himselfe being imbarked in the Iesus, whereof was appointed for Master, Robert Barret, hoysed sayle, and departed from Plymnoth vpon his intended voyage for the parts of Africa, & America, being accompanied with five other sayle of shippes, as namely the Mynion, wherein went for Captaine Master Iohn Hampton, and Iohn Garret Master. The William and Iohn, wherein was Captaine Thomas Bolton, and James Rauce Master. The Iudith, in whome was Captaine M. Francis Drake now knyght, and the Angel whose Master, as also the Captaine and Master of the Swallow I now remember not. And so sayling in companie together vpon our voyage vntill the tenth of the same moneth, an extreme storme then tooke vs nere vnto cape Finister, which durd for the space of foure dayes, and so separated our shippes, that wee had lost one another, and our Generall finding the Iesus to be but in yll case, was in minde to giue ouer the voyage, and to returne home. Howbeit the eleuenth of the same moneth the seas waxing calme, and the winde comming sayle, he altered his purpose, and helde on the former intended voyage, and so comming to the Islands of Gomera being one of the Islands of the Canaries, where according to an order before appoynted, we met with all our shippes which were before disperfed, wee then took in fresh water and departed from thence the fourth of Nouember, and holding on our course, vpon the eighteenth day of the same moneth we came to an anker vpon the coaste of Africa, at cape Verde in twelue sadome waters, and here our Generall landed certaine of our men,

This fleet consisteth of 6 shippes.  
 1 The Iesus.  
 2 The Phoenix.  
 3 The Mynion.  
 4 The Iudith.  
 5 The Angel.  
 6 The Swallow.



men, to the number of 160 or there about, seeking to take some Negroes. And they going by in to the country for the space of six miles, were encountred with a great number of the Negroes: who with their enuomed arrowes did hurt a great number of our men, so that they were enforced to retyre to the Shippes, in which conflict they recovered but a few Negroes, and of these our men which were hurt with their enuomed arrowes, there died to the number of 7. or 8. in very strange manner, with their mouths flat, so that we were forced to put sticks & other things into their mouths to keepe them open, & so after ward passing the tyme upon the coast of Guinea, untill the twelfth of Januarie, we obtained by that time the number of 150 Negroes. And being ready to depart from the sea coast, there was a Negro sent as an Ambassadour to our Generall, from a King of the Negroes, which was oppressed with other Kings his bordering neighbours, desiring our Generall to graunt him succour and ayde against those his enemies, which our Generall granted unto, and went himselfe in person a land, with the number of 500 of our men or thereabouts, and the sayde King which had requested our ayde, did toyne his force with ours, so that thereby our Generall assaulted, and set fyre vpon a towne of the sayd King his enemies, in which there was at the least the number of 8 or 10 thousand Negroes, and they perceiving that they were not able to make any resistance fought by sight to saue themselves, in which their flight there were taken prisoners to the number of 8 or 900, which our Generall ought to haue had for his share: howbeit the Negro King which requested our ayde falsifying his word and promise, secretly in the night couayped himselfe away with as many prisoners as hee had in his custodie: but our Generall notwithstanding finding himselfe to haue nowe very neere the number of 500 Negroes thought it best without longer aboue to depart with them, and such marchandize as he had from the coast of Africa to wardes the West Indies, and therefore commaunded with all diligence to take in fresh water and fuel, and so with speede to prepare to depart. Howbeit before we departed from thence, in a storme that we had, we lost one of our ships namely the William and John, of which ship and of her people, we heard no tidings during the time of our voyage.

### The 2. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed the day and time of our departure from the coast of Africa, with the day and time of our arriall in the West Indies, also of our trade, and traffike there, and also of the great crueltie that the Spaniards vsed towards vs, by the Vice-Roy his direction, and appointment, falsifying his faith and promise giuen, and seeking to haue intrapped vs.



LI things being made in a readinesse, at our Generall his appointment, vpon the thirtieth day of February, 1568. we departed from the coast of Africa, hauing the weather somewhat tempestuous, which made our passage the more hard, and lasting for the space of 25. dayes, vpon the 27. of March, 1568. we came in sight of an Island, called Dominica, vpon the coast of America in the West Indies, situated in 14. degrees of latitude, and 222. of longitude: from thence our Generall coasted from place to place, euer making traffike with the Spaniards, and Indians as he might, which was somewhat hardly obtayned, for that the king had straightly charged all his gouernours in those partes not to trade with any: yet notwithstanding, during the monthes of April, and May, our General had reasonable trade and traffike, and curious entertainment in sundry places, as at Margarita, Corasao, and els where, till we came to Cape de la vela, & Rio de Hacha, (a place from whence all the pearles doe come): the gouernour there would not by any meanes permit vs to haue any trade or traffike, nor yet suffer vs to take in fresh water: By means whereof our Generall for the auoyding of famine & thirst about the beginning of June, was enforced to lande two hundred of our men, and so by maine force and strength to obtaine that which by no faire meanes he coulde procure: And so recovering the Towne with the losse of two of our men, there was a secreete and peaceable trade admitted, and the Spaniards came in by night, and bought of our Negroes to the number of two hundred and bywards, and of our other marchandize also. From thence we departed for Carthagena, where the Gouernour was so straight, that we coulde not obtaine any traffike there, and so for that our trade was neere finished, our Generall thought it best to depart from thence the rather for the auoyding of certaine dangerous stormes called the Huricanos, which accustomed to beginne there about that time of the yeere, and so the 24. of July 1568. we departed from thence directing our course North, leaving the Islands of Cuba vpon our right hand, to the East ward of vs, and so sailing towarde Florida, vpon the 12. of August, an extreme tempest arose, which durd for the space of eight dayes, in which our ships were most dangerously tossed & beaten hither, & thither,

so that we were  
and in the ende  
a Cruz, situated  
which is the port  
Generall met by  
and so the sixten  
Spaniards there  
the countrey the  
to haue made an  
beit our Generall  
which by report  
our Generall his  
which he had be  
sayd two men  
Don Pedro de R  
thre score leagu  
stirre as our  
that there fore he  
Rome, and quiet  
arriall of the  
there might no  
heach of amitie  
some speciall o  
it being the bet  
number, we dese  
had the king of  
heretof, of our  
shoulde enter the  
Generalls some  
peace betweene  
And at this instar  
that if he shoul  
able to doe with  
losse of all their  
crownes. Agai  
stirre by all maner  
that the other flo  
that if their fleet  
haued done so, th  
mighte a caus  
assurance, and so  
which we were  
Marsine de Hen  
ric to commaun  
did certifie our  
and our Honer  
fourmed: signi  
our Generall, e  
the sayde voye  
1 The first  
was, as might  
2 The secon  
3 The thir  
In which I stan  
ced certaine o  
might so cont  
bearing any k  
4 The four

to they going up in  
re of the Negroes:  
at they were infop  
groes, and of these  
mber of 7, or 8  
es & other things  
e coast of Guinea,  
groes. And being  
to our Generall,  
bordering neigh  
s enemies, which  
mber of 200 of our  
yne his force to  
King his ene  
, and they perer  
mselves, in which  
Generall ought  
sipping his wope  
ers as hee had in  
e very nere the  
t them, and such  
erefoze comman  
pare to depart.  
of our ships name  
during the time

to that wee were in continuall feare to bee drowned by reason of the shallownesse of the coaste,  
and in the ende we were constrained to flee for succour to the port of S. John de Villa, or Ve  
Cruz, situated in 19 degrees of latitude, and in 200. seuentie nine degrees of longitude  
which is the porte that serueth for the citie of Mexico: in our seeking to reconer this porte our  
Generall met by the way, three small shippes that carped passengers, which heeooke with him,  
and so the thirtenth of September, 1568 we entered the sayde port of S. John de Villa. The  
Spaniards there supposing vs to haue bene the King of Spaynes flecte, the chiefe officers of  
the countrey there abouts came presently aboide our Generall, where perceiving themselves  
to haue made an vnwise aduencure, they were in great feare to haue bene taken and slayed: how  
beit our Generall did vse them all very curteously: in the sayd porte there were twelue shippes,  
which by report had in them in treasure to the valewe of 200 thousand pound, all which bring tu  
our Generall his power and at his deuotion, hee did freely set at libertie, as also the passengers  
which hee had before slayed, not taking from any of them all the valewe of one groate: onely hee  
slayed two men of credite and account, the one named Don Laurenzo de Alua, and the other  
Don Pedro de Reuera, and presently our Generall sent to the Vizroye to Mexico which was  
thirtie leagues of, certifying him of our arriual there by force of weather, desiring that for  
asmuch as our Queene his Soueraigne, was the King of Spayne his louing sister and friend,  
that therefore he would, considering our necessities and wants, furnish vs with victuals for our  
flams, and quietly to suffer vs to repaire and amend our shippes. And furthermore that at  
the arriual of the Spannish flecte which was there dayly expected and looked for, to the ende that  
there might no quarrell arise betweene them, and our Generall and his companie for the  
hearch of amitie, hee humbly requested of his excellencie, that there might in this behalf  
some speciall order bee taken. This message was sent away the 16 of September, 1568,  
it being the very day of our arriual there. The next morning being the seuententh of the same  
moneth, we descried 13 sayle of great shippes: and after that our Generall vnderstood, that it  
was the king of Spaynes flecte then looked for, hee presently sent to aduertise the Generall  
herof, of our being in the sayde porte, and gaining him further to vnderstand, that before hee  
shoulde enter there into that harbour, it was requisite that there shoulde passe betweene the two  
Generals some orders and conditions to bee obserued on either part, for the better contriuing of  
peace betweene them and theirs, according to our Generals request made vnto the Viceroye.  
And at this instant our Generall was in a great perplexitie of minde, considering with himselfe  
that if he should keepe out that flecte from entering into the porte, a thing which he was very wel  
able to doe with the helpe of God, then should that flecte be in danger of present shipwacke and  
losse of all their substance, which amounted vnto the valewe of one myllion and 800 thousand  
crownes. Again hee saw that if he suffered them to enter, hee was assured that they would pra  
ctise by all maner of meanes to betray him and his, and on the other side the haue was so litle,  
that the other flecte entering, the shippes were to ride one hard aboide of another: also hee sawe  
that if their flecte should perish by his keeping of them out, as of necessitie they must if he should  
haue done so, then should hee in great feare of the Queene our Soueraignes displeasure in so  
weightie a cause, therefore did hee choose the less euill, which was to suffer them to enter vnder  
assurance, and so to stande vpon his garde, and to defende himselfe and his from their treasons  
which we were wel assured they would praetise, and so the messenger being returned from Don  
Martine de Henriques, the new Viceroy, who came in the same flecte, and had sufficient autho  
ritie to commaund in all cases both by sea and by land in this ppointe of Mexico or new Spaine,  
did certifie our Generall, that for the better maintenance of amitie betweene the king of Spaine  
and our Soueraigne, all our requests should bee both fauourably graunted, and faithfully per  
formed: signifying further that he heard and vnderstood of the honest and friendly dealing of  
our Generall, toward the King of Spaynes subjects in all places where hee had bene, as also in  
the sayde porte: so that to be yeefe our requests were articulated, and set downe in writing, viz.

ica, with the day  
there, and also of  
his direction, and  
intrapped vs.

pointment, vpon  
of Africa, hauing  
the moze hard, and  
568, we came in  
in the West In  
: from thence out  
ds, and Indians  
ghtly charged all  
ring the moneths  
s entertainment  
de la vela, & Rio  
e would not by a  
fresh water: By  
inning of Iune,  
rength to obtaine  
one with the losse  
Spaniards came  
ywards, and of  
e the Governour  
at our trade was  
for the auoiding  
time there about  
ee directing our  
ard of vs, and in  
which dured for the  
gether, & whicher,  
so

- 1 The first was that we might haue victuals for our money, and license to sell as much  
wares, as might suffice to furnish our wants.
- 2 The second, that we might be suffered peaceably to repayre our shippes.
- 3 The third that the Island might bee in our possession during the time of our abode there.  
In which Island our Generall for the better safetie of him and his, had alreadye planted and plac  
ed certaine ordnance which were eleuen peeces of brass, therefore hee required that the same  
might so continue, and that no Spaniard should come to land in the sayde Island, hauing of  
bearing any kinde of weapon about him.
- 4 The fourth and the last, that for the better and moze sure performance and maintenance of  
peace

4. Articles  
concluded vpon  
on, betwixt the  
English and  
Spaniards:  
although the  
travellers  
Spaniards  
kept none of  
them.

peace, and of all the conditions, there might twelue gentlemen of crevise be deliuered of either part as hostages. These conditions were concluded and agreed vpon in writing by the viceroy and signed with his hande, and sealed with his seale, and tenne hostages vpon either part were receiued. And further it was concluded that the two Generals should meete, and giue faith eche to other for the performance of the promises. All which being done, the same was proclaimed by the sound of a trumpet, and commandement was giuen that none of either part should violat or breake the peace vpon payne of death: thus at the end of thre dayes all was concluded, and the flecte entred the port, the ships saluting one another as the manner of the sea doth require: the morow after being Friday we laboured on all sides in placing the English ships by themselves, and the Spanish ships by them selues, the captaines and inferiour persons of either part, offering, and shewing great curtesie one to another, and promising great amitie vpon all sides. Howbeit as the sequel shewed, the Spaniards meant nothing lesse vpon their parts. For the Viceroye, and gouernour thereabout, had secretly at land assembled to the number of 1000 chosen men, and with appointed, meaning the next thursday being the 24 of September at dinner time to assault vs, and set vpon vs on all sides. But before I goe any further, I think it not amisse by itselfe to describe the maner of the Island as it then was, and the force & strength, that it is now of. For the Spaniards since the time of our Generals being there, for the better fortifying of the same place, haue vpon the same Island built a faire castle, and bulwarke very well fortified: this port was then at our being there, a litle Island of stones, not past three foute about water in the highest place, and not past a bowthoote ouer any way at the most, and it standeth from the mayne land, two bowthootes or moze: and there is not in all this coast any other place for ships safely to arriue at: also the North windes in this coast are of great violence and force, and vnlesse the shippes bee safely mozed in, with their ankers fastened in this Islande, there is no remedie, but present destruction and shipwacke. All this our generall wisly foreseeing, did prouide that hee would haue the sayde Island in his custodie, or els the Spaniards might at their pleasure, haue cut our cables, and so with the first Northwinde that blew wee had our passage, for our shippes had gone a shoze. But to returne to the matter. The time approaching that their treason must bee put in practise, the same Thursday morning, some appearance thereof beganne to shewe it selfe, as shifting of weapon from shippe to shippe, and planting, and bending their ordinance against our men that warded vpon the lande, with great repaying of people: which apparant shewes of breach of the Viceroyes faith, caused our Generall to sende one to the Viceroye, to enquire of him what was ment thereby, which presently sent and gaue order, that the ordinance aforesayde, and other things of suspicion shoulde bee remooued, returning answer to our Generall in the sayth of a Viceroye, that hee would bee our defense, and safetie from all villanous treacherie: this was vpon Thursday in the morning. Our Generall not being therewith satisfied, seeing they had secretly conuaid a great number of men aboode a great hulke of ship of theppes of 300 tunne, which shippe rode hard by the Mynion, hee sent againe to the Viceroy Robert Barret the master of the Iesus, a man that coulde speake the Spanish tongue very well, and required that those men might bee vnshipped againe, which were in that great hulke. The Viceroy then perceiuing that their treason was thoroughly espied, stayed our Master, and sounded the trumpet, and gaue order that his people should vpon all sides charge vpon our men, which warded on shoze, and else where, which brooke such a masse, and sudden feare among vs, that many gaue place, and sought to recouer our ships for the safetie of themselves. The Spaniards which secretly were hid in ambush at lande were quikly conuaid ouer to the Island in their long boates, and so comming to the Island, they slew all our men that they coulde meete with, without any mercie. The Mynion which had somewhat before prepared her selfe to auoyde the danger, hailed away and aboue the first hunt, of the 300 men that were in the great hulke: then they sought to fall aboode the Iesus, where was a cruel fight, and many of our men slayne: but yet our men defended themselves, and kept them out: so the Iesus also gotte loose, and joyning with the Mynion, the fight waxed what vpon all sides: but they hauing wonne and got our ordinance on shoze, did greatly annoy vs. In this fight, there were two great ships of the Spaniards sunke, and one burnt, so that with their shippes they were not able to harme vs, but from the shoze they beat vs cruelly with our owne ordinance, in such sort that the Iesus was very sore spoiled, and suddenly the Spaniards hauing fired two great shippes of their owne, they came directly against vs, which bred among our men a maruelous feare. Howbeit the Mynion which had made her sailes ready, shifted for her selfe, without consent of the Generall, captaine or master, so that very hardly our Generall could be receiued into the Mynion: the most of our men that were in the Iesus shifted for themselves

The vailts of  
a Spanish  
Viceroy his  
sayth.

The villanous  
treacherie of  
the Spaniards  
& their cruelty.

selues, and follow  
come, were most  
men and the In  
common cruelty  
aine of our men  
blow burst out o  
thers yet all us,  
here at home in  
and tokens of th

Wherein is shew  
perish with  
trained to p  
mongst the



two bowthoote  
he wored anker,  
with a Northwin  
bers left: for in  
the forme being  
number, and but  
wee were in dis  
mide to pebble  
of Indels, and  
and vs to eate h  
our hunger was  
get to eate.

And on the ci  
where hee hoped  
mailes, and a pl  
sacrificable with  
in the one line,  
gan to be in woo  
great many that  
with themselves  
des, where the  
by appointing, p  
quest our Gener  
him to lessen his  
solow to set half  
sudden mens  
were none of  
rail was in fore  
lions of offence  
account, as we  
he appointed su  
howe they shou  
eather come hi

taken, and followed the Spanion in the boate, and those which that small boate was not able to receive, were most cruellly slaine by the Spaniards. Of our Shippes none escaped saving the Spanion and the Judith; and all such of our men as were not in them were enforced to abide the tyrannous cruellty of the Spaniards. For it is a certaine certet, that whereas they had taken certayne of our men at shoare, theyooke and hung them by by the armes upon high postes untill the blood burst out of their fingers thus: of which men so vied, there is one Copflow, and certayne others yet aliue, who though the mercifull prouidence of the almighty, were long since arrived here at home in England, carrying still about with them (and shall to their graues) the markes and tokens of those they inhumane and moze then barbarous cruell dealing.

## The third Chapter.

Wherein is shewed, how that after we were escaped from the Spaniards, we were like to perish with famine at the Sea, and how our Generall, for the auoiding thereof was constrained to put halfe of his men on land, and what miseries wee after that sustayned amongst the Savage people, and how we fell a gaine into the hands of the Spaniards.



After that the Vice Roy, Don Martin Henriques, had thus contrary to his faith and promise, most cruellly dealt with our Generall maister Watkins, at S. Iohn de Vlua, where most of his men were by the Spaniards slaine and drowned, and all his Shippes sunke and burnt, saving the Spanion, and the Judith which was a small barke of stiee tuncie, wherein was then captaine, maister Francis Drake, atoleat: the same night the said barke lost vs, we being in great necessitie, and enforced to remooue with the Spanion two bowshooce from the Spaniard fleet, where we ankered all that night: and the next morning we weighed anchor, and recovered an Island a mile from the Spaniards, where a stormeooke vs such a North winde, in which we were greatly distressed, hauing but two cables, and two anchors left: for in the conflict before, we had lost three cables and two anchors. The storme being ceased, and the weather sayne, we weighed, and set saile, being many men in number, and but small hope of victualles to suffice vs for any long time: by means whereof we were in dyspaye and feare that we should perish through famine, so that some were in minde to perdie themselves to the mercie of the Spaniards; other some to the Sauages or Induels, and wandering thus certayne dayes in these unknowne Seas, hunger constrained vs to eat hides, caces and dogges, mice, rattes, parats and munkyes: to be short, our hunger was so great, that we thought it lawourie and sweete; whatsoeuer we coude get to eat.

And on the eight of October we came to lande againe, in the bottome of the bay of Mexico, where we hoped to haue found some inhabitants, that we might haue had some reliefe of victualles, and a place where to repaie our shippe, which was so greatly bruised, that we were scarce able with our weary armes to keepe forth the water: being thus oppressed with famine on the one side, and danger of drowning on the other, not knowing where to finde reliefe, we began to be in woonderfull despaye, and we were of many mindes, amongst whom there were a great many that did desire our Generall to set them on lande; making theyr choise rather to submit themselves to the mercie of the Sauages or Induels: then longer to hazard themselves at Sea, where they very well saw, that if they should all remayne together, if they perished not by drowning, yet hunger would enforce them in the ende to eat one another: to which request our Generall did very willingly agree, considering with himselfe that it was necessary for him to lessen his number, both for the safetie of himselfe and the rest: and thereupon being resolved to set halfe his people on shore that hee had then left aliue, it was a woilde to see howe suddenly mens mindes were altered; for they which a little before desired to be set on land, were nowe of another minde, and requested rather to stay: by means whereof our Generall was enforced, for the more contentation of all mens mindes, and to take away all occasions of offence, to take this order: first hee made choise of such persons of seruice and account, as were necessfull to stay, and that being done, of those which were willing to goe he appointed such as hee thought might be best spared, and presently appointed that by the boate they should be set on shore, our Generall promising vs that the next yeere he would seeke come himselfe, or else sende to seeke vs home. Where againe it would haue

caused any man's heart to have relented to heare the pitifull moane that many did make, and how loth they were to depart: the weather was then somewhat stormie and tempestuous, and therefore we were to passe with great danger, yet notwithstanding there was no remedy, but we that were appointed to goe away, must of necessitie doe so. Howbeit those that were in the first boate were safelie set a shoare, but of them which went in the second boate, of which number I my selfe was one, the seas wrought so high, that we could not attayne to the shoare, and therefore we were constrained through the cruell dealing of John Hampton capitaine of the *Orizon*, and John Sanders boatewaine of the *Jesus*, and Thomas Ballard his mate, to leape out of the boate into the maine Sea, hauing more then a mile to shoare, and so to shift for our selues, and either to smicke or swimme. And of those that so were (as it were) throwen out, and compelled to leape into the Sea, there were two drowned, which were of capitaine Blands men.

In the evening of the same day, it being *Friday* the eighth of *October*, 1568, when we were all come to shoare, we found fresh water, whereof some of our men dwinke so much, that they had almost cast themselves away, for we could scarce get life in them for the space of two or three hours after: other some were so cruellly swollen, what with the drinkeing in of the salt water, and what with the eating of the fruites which were found on land, hauing a stone in it much like an almond (which fruite is called *Capule*) that they were all in very ill case, so that we were in a manner all of vs both feeble, faint and weake.

The next morning it being *Tuesday* the ninth of *October*, we thought it best to trauell along by the Sea coast, to seeke out some place of habitation: whether they were *Christians* or *Indians*, we were indifferent, so that we might haue wherewithall to sustaine our hungry bodies, and so departing from an hill where wee had rested all night, not hauing any dry theed about vs, for those that were not wet being throwne into the Sea, were thrownto wet with raine, for all the night it rained cruellly: As we went from the hill, and were come into the plaine, we were greatly troubled to passe for the grasse and woods that grew there higher then any man. On the left hand we had the Sea, and upon the right hand great woods, so that of necessitie we must needs passe on our way Westward, through those marshes, and going thus, suddenly we were assailed by the *Indians*, a warlike kinde of people, which are in a manner as *Cannibals*, although they do not feed vpon mans flesh as *Cannibals* do.

These people are called *Chichemici*, and they vse to wear the haire long, cuen downe to their knees, they doe also colour their faces greene, yellow, red and blacke, which maketh them to seme very ougly and terrible to beholde: These people doe keepe warres against the *Spaniards*, of whom they haue bene oftentimes very cruellly handled: for with the *Spaniards* there is no mercy. They proceeding vs at our first coming on land, supposed vs to haue bene their enemies, the bordering *Spaniards*, and hauing by thes forerunners descried what number we were, and how feeble and weake without armour or weapon, they suddenly according to their accustomed manner, when they encounter with any people in warlike sort, rayed a terrible and huge crye, and so came running fiercely vpon vs, shooting off their arrowes as thicke as haile, with whose mercy we were constrained to yeeld, not hauing amongst vs any kinde of armour, nor yet weapon, sauing one caluer, and two olde rustie swoordes, whereby to make any resistance, or to saue our selues: which when they perceiued, that we soughte not any other then fauour and mercy at thes hands, and that we were not thes enemies the *Spaniards*, they had compassion on vs, and came and cauled vs all to sit downe: and when they had a while sturueyed, and taken a perfect view of vs, they came to all such as had any coloured clothes amongst vs, and those they did stripe sharke naked, andooke their clothes away with them, but they that were apparelled in blacke they did not meddle withall, and so went their wayes, and left vs, without doing vs any further hurt, onely in the first burst they killed eight of our men. And at our departure, they perceiuing in what weake case we were, pointed vs with their hands which way we should goe to come to a towne of the *Spaniards*, which as we afterwards perceiued, was not past ten league s from thence, being these towne s: *Tampoco*, *tampoco Christiano*, *tampoco Christiano*, which is as much (we thinke) as to say in English, So that way, and you shall finde the *Christians*. They weaone that they vs are no other but bowes and arrowes, and their aime is so good, that they very seldome misse to hit any thing that they shooe at. Shortly after they had left vs stripe (as aforesaid) we thought it best to diuide our selues into two companies, and so being separated, halfe of vs went vnder the lea ding of one *Anthony Gobard*, who is yet a man alive, and dwelled at this instant in the towne of *Winnmouth*, whom before we chose to be capitaine ouer vs all, and those which went vnder his lea ding, of which number I Miles Phillips was one, trauelled Westward that way which the *Indians* with their hands had before pointed vs to go. The other halfe went vnder the leading

Chichemici a  
warlike and  
cruell people.

of one John Doe  
with him, David  
by after, with  
and their captain  
themselves, and  
gone Westward,  
countie of the  
we began to reck  
the number to be  
haire at the first it  
went Westward  
gram since hart  
but six and thre  
there is yet lackin  
I doe thinke that  
hereafter I pur  
that make me so  
and simoy others  
we trauelled on  
codgels to breake  
we should trauell  
as we passed in  
stricken by the  
men as they went  
were also ostent  
Tequani, and che  
ber of other kind  
they be so small,  
and if you kill the  
cruelly, euen as  
goe away of the  
somewhat bigger  
flies, not knowin  
ken: as for colde  
led thus for the  
up into the toppes  
they coude not p  
length they destr  
after, we heard a  
that we were nee  
comfoyt, and with  
has also no small  
*Spaniards* haue  
before we heard:  
shoate vpon our le  
water in fire. Daye  
to come to the pla  
reined many *S*  
and they perceiui  
the *Chichemici*,  
andooke an *I*  
hauing taken the  
out any delay in  
the *Canoas*, they  
to that side of th  
them with thes  
*Anthony Gobard*  
thence into them

make, and how  
is, and therefore  
out we that were  
in our first boate  
were  
I my selfe was  
hope we were con-  
and John Dan-  
be boate into the  
to leape into the

3, when we were  
sch, that they had  
two of three hours  
water, and what  
like an almond  
ere in a maner all

to trauell along  
distants of Span-  
hungrie bodies,  
p theed about vs,  
raune, for all the  
we were greatly  
On the left hand  
must needs path  
were assaulted by  
ough they do not

men downe to their  
eth them to seme  
the Spaniards, of  
wards there is no  
ue bene their ene-  
what number we  
oyding to their  
terrible and longe  
as haile, with  
of armour, nor yet  
any resistance, or  
in fauour and mer-  
compassion on vs,  
and taken a perfit  
se they did stripe  
led in blacke they  
any further hurt,  
perceiving in what  
come to a towne of  
com thence, being  
much (we thinke)  
pons that they did  
adme mite to be  
we thought it best  
ent vnder the lea-  
nt in the towne of  
pent vnder his lea-  
t way which the  
vnder the leading

of one John Hooper, whom they did choose for their captain, and with the company that went with him, David Ingram was one, and they tooke their way and trauelled Northward, and shortly after, within the space of two dayes, they were againe encountered with the savage people, and their captain Hooper and two more of his company were slaine: then againe they divided themselves, and some held on their way still Northward, and other some, knowing that we were come Westward, sought to meet with vs againe, as in truth there was about the number of sixe or seuen of sise and twentieth of them that mette with vs in the space of four dayes againe, and then we began to reckon amongst our selues, how many we were that were set on board, and we found the number to be an hundred & fouretee, whereof two were drowned in the Sea, and eight were slaine at the first encounter, so that there remained an hundred and foure, of which five and the next were Westward with vs, and two and fiftie to the North with Hooper and Ingram: and as Ingram since hath often tolde me, there were not past three of the company slaine, and there were but five and twenty of them that came againe to vs, so that of the company that went Northward, there is yet lacking, and not certainly heard of, the number of thye and twentie men. And verely I doe thinke that there are of them yet alive, and married in the sayd countrey, at Sibola, as hereafter I purpose (God willing) to discourse of more particularly, with the reason and causes, that make me so to thinke of the that were lacking, which were David Ingram, Thide, Whotone, and sundry others, whose names we could not remember. And being thus met againe together, we trauelled on still Westward, sometime thowto such thicke woods, that we were enforced with cogrels to breake a way the byambles and bushes from clearing our naked bodies: other some times we should trauell thowto the plaines, in such high grasse that we could scarce see one another, and as we passed in some places, we should haue of our men slaine, and fall downe suddenly, being stricken by the Indians, which stood behinde trees and bushes, in secret places, and so killed our men as they went by, for we went scatteringly in seeking of fruites to relieue our selues. We were also oftentimes greatly annoyed with a kinde of fle, which in the Indian tongue is called Tequani, and the Spaniards called them Muskeras. There are also in the sayd countrey a number of other kinde of flies, but none so noyfull as these Tequanies be: you shall hardly see them they be so small, for they are scarce so bigge as a gnat: they will sucke ones blood maruelously, and if you kill them while they are sucking, they are so venomous that the place will swell extremely, euen as one that is stung with a waspe or bee: but if you let them sucke they fill, and to goe away of themselves, then they doe you no other hurt, but leaue behinde them a redde spotte somewhat bigger then a fleabiting. At the first we were terrible troubled with these kinde of flies, not knowing their qualities, and resistance we coude make none against them, being naked: as for colde we feared not any, the countrey there is alwayes so warme. And as we trauelled thus for the space of tenn or twelue dayes, our captain did oftentimes cause certaine to goe vnto the toppes of high trees, to see if they could descie any towne or place of inhabitants, but they could not perceiue any, and vling often the same order to climbe by into high trees, at the length they descryed a great riuer that fell from the Northwest in the maine Sea, and presendie after, we heard an harquebulle shotte off, which did greatly incourage vs, for thereby we knew that we were nere to some Christians, and did therefore hope shortly to finde some succour and comfort, and within the space of one houre after, as we trauelled, we heard a cocke crowe, which was also no small ioy vnto vs, and so we came to the North side of the riuer of Panuco, where the Spaniards haue certaine Salines, at which place it was that the harquebulle was shot off, which before we heard: to which place we went not directly, but missing thereof, we left it about a bow-shotte vpon our left hand: of this riuer we thanke very greedilie, for we had not mette with any water in sixe dayes before, and as we were heere by the riuer side resting our selues, and longing to come to the place where the cocke did crowe, and where the harquebulle was shot off, we perceiued many Spaniards vpon the other side of the riuer, riding vp and downe on horsebacke, and they perceiuing vs, did suppose that we had bene of the Indians they bordering enemies, the Chichemici, the riuer was not past halfe a bowe shoot over: and presendly one of the Spaniards tooke an Indian boate called a Canoa, and so came ouer, being rowed by two Indians, and having taken the view of vs, did presendly rowe ouer backe againe to the Spaniards, who with- out any delay made out about the number of twentie horsemen, and imbarcking themselves in the Canoas, they led their horses by the reines swimming ouer after them, and being come ouer to that side of the riuer where we were, they sadled their horses, and being mounted vpon them with their lances charged, they came very fiercely, running at vs. Our captain Anthony Godard seeing them come in that order, did persuaide vs to submitte and yeelde our selues vnto them, for being naked, as wee at this time were, and without weapon, we

David Ingram.

could not make any resistance, whose bidding wee obeyed, and upon the peeding of our selues, they perceiued vs to be Christians, and did call for more Canoes, and carryed vs ouer by foure and foure in a boate, and being come on the other sho, they vnderstanding by our capitaine ho to long we had bene without meate, imparted betwene two and two a loafe of bread made of that countrey wheat, which the Spaniards call Mayfe, of the bignesse of one of our halpennie loaves, which bread is named in the Indian tongue Clashacally. This bread was very sweet and pleasant vnto vs, for wee had not eaten any in a long time before, and what is it that hunger doth not make to haue a fawny and a delicate taste? and hauing thus imparted the bread amongst vs, those which were men they sent afoze to the Towne, hauing also many Indians inhabitants of that place to garde them: they which were young, as boyes, and some such also as were feeble, they tooke by vpon the shoulders, behinde them, and so carryed vs to the Towne where they dwelt, which was very nere distant a mile from the place where we came ouer.

This Towne is well situated, and well replenished with all kindes of fruites, as Oranges, Limmons, Pomgranets, Apples, and Peaches, and sundry others, and is inhabited with a great number of tame Indians, or Mexicans, and had in it also at that time about the number of two hundred Spaniards, men, women, and children, besides Negroes. Of theyr Salines, which lie vpon the West sho of the riuer, more then a mile distant from thence, they make a great profit, so that it is an excellent good merchandize there: the Indians doe buy much thereof, and carrie it by into the Countrey, and there sell it to theirowne Countrey people, in doubling the price. Also much of the Salt made in this place, is transported from thence by Sea to sundry other places, as to Cuba, S. Iohn de Vilua, and the other Voyers of Tamiago, and Tamachos, which are two barred Hauens West and by South about threescore leagues from S. Iohn de Vilua. When we were all come to the Towne, the Governour there shewed himselfe very ferece vnto vs, and threatened to hang vs all: and then he demanded what money wee had, which in truth was very little, for the Indians which we first met withall, had in a manner taken all from vs, and of that which they left, the Spaniards which brought vs ouer, tooke away a good part also: howbeit, from Anthony Godard the Governour here had a chaine of golde, which was giuen vnto him at Carthagena, by the Governour there: and from others he had some small sorce of money: so that we accounted that amongst vs all he had the number of five hundred Pezoes, besides the chaine of golde.

And hauing thus satisfied himselfe, when he had taken all that we had, he caused vs to be put into a little house much like a Dogstie, where we were almost smothered: and before we were thus shutte by into that little coate, they gaue vs some of the Countrey wheat, called Mayfe, sodden, which they feed theyr Dogges withall. But many of our men which had bene hurt by the Indians at our first comming on land, whose wounds were very sore and grievous, desired to haue the helpe of theyr Surgeions to cure theyr wounds. The Governour, and most of them all answered, that we should haue none other Surgeion but the hangman, which should sufficiently heale vs of all our griefes: and thus reuiling vs, and calling vs English dogges, and Lutheran heretikes, we remayned the space of thre dayes in this miserable state, not knowing what should become of vs, waiting euery houre to be bereaued of our liues.

#### The fourth Chapter.

Wherein is shewed how we were vsed in Panuco, and in what feare of death we were there, and how we were carryed to Mexico to the Vice Roy, and of our imprisonment there and at Tescuco, with the courtesies and cruelties wee receiued during that time, and how in the end we were by proclamation giuen to serue as slaues to sundrie Gentlemen Spanyardes.



**M**ou the fourth day after our comming thither, and there remaining in a perplexitie, looking euery houre when we should suffer death, there came a great number of Indians and Spaniards weaponed to seeth vs out of the house, and amongst them we espied one that brought a great many of newe balcers, at the sight whereof wee were greatly amazed, and made no other account but that we should presently haue suffered death, and so crying and calling to God for mercy and for forgiveness of our sinnes, we prepared our selues, making vs ready to die, yet in the end, as the sequell shewed, their meaning was not for vs when we were come out of the house, with those balcers they bound our armes behinde vs, and

in coupling vs  
along the count  
West and by  
the house, they be  
homes and were  
could say at night  
call it Santa Ma  
lies to, and g  
all, made of the  
chole, which fr  
feeding caused b  
hee one of our n  
the first incount

The next mo  
and garden as  
holic leagues of  
there are about  
theyre sent vs m  
ry courteously,  
very like of the  
which fruite did  
selues. The in  
as aforesaid, I  
souldly increas  
ry to the veterin  
and neuer depart  
and sometimes  
as he required c  
betwene the ne  
he cry and say  
much in say in e  
Had the next day  
this towne of P  
leagues distant

Deere at this  
nighers, hauing  
man his compa  
the villages, an  
we had neede, c  
sustaine vs. A  
which is called  
a fayre house of  
wards in the W  
of we were all b  
ued, and let tree  
thus carryed bo  
wy, nor be mer  
otherwise.

The next mo  
led till we came  
church, called ou  
high, as large  
of liter as there  
Spaniards pal  
the church, e k  
whether he be ho  
spealed, which  
they call in the s

In coming by two and two together, they commanded us to march on through the Towne, and so along the country from place to place toward the citie of Mexico, which is distant from Panuco West and by South the space of threety leagues, having onely but two Spaniards to conduct us, they being accompanied with a great number of Indians warding on either side with bowes and arrows, lest we should escape from them. And travelling in this order, upon the second day at night we came unto a Towne which the Indians call Nobeles, and the Spaniards call it Santa Maria: in which Towne there is a house of White fryers, which did very courteously receive us, and gave us hote meat, as mutton and hooch, and garments also to cover our selves withall, made of better hayes: we fed very greedily of the meat, and of the Indian fruite, called Nohole, which fruite is long and small, much like in fashion to a little Cowmunder: Our greete feeding caused us to fall sicke of hote burning agues. And herre at this place one Thomas Barber one of our men died of a hurt: for he had bene before shot in with an arrowe into the throat at the first encounter.

The next morning about ten of the clocke, we departed from thence, having two of two together, and garden as before, and so travelled on our way toward Mexico, till we came to a towne within five leagues of Mexico, named Mexiclan, where is a house of Blacke fryers: and in this towne there are about the number of threety Spaniards, both men, women, and children. The fryers sent us meat from the house ready dyed, and the fryers, and men and women, bid us very courteously, and gave us some shirts and other such things as we lacked. Here our men were very sicke of their agues, and with eating of another fruite called in the Indian tongue, Guaceros, which fruite did hurt us so sore, that for the space of ten or twelve dayes we could not see our selves. The next morning we departed from thence with our two Spaniards & Indian yate, as before. Of these two Spaniards the one was an aged man, who altho way did very courageously increase us, and would carefully goe before to provide for us both meat and things necessary to the betterment of his power: the other was a young man, who all the way travelled with us, and never departed from us, who was a very cruell catiffe, and he carried a iavelin in his hand, and sometimes when as our men with very feebleness and faintness were not able to go so fast as he required them, he would take his iavelin in both his hands, and strike them with the same betwene the necke and the shoulders so violently, that he would strike them downe, then would he cry and say: Marches, marches Engleses perros, Luterianos, enemigos de Dios: which is as much to say in English: March, march on you English dogges, Lutherians, enemies to God. And the next day we came to a towne called Pachuca, and there are two places of that name: as this towne of Pachuca, and the mines of Pachuca, which are mines of silver, and are about five leagues distant from this towne of Pachuca toward the North-west.

Here at this towne the good olde man our Governour suffered us to stay two dayes and two nights, having compassion of our sicke and weak men, full sore against the minde of the young man his companion. From thence we took our journey, and travelled foure or five dayes by little villages, and Sciencias, which are Farmes or Dairie houses of the Spaniards, and ever as we had neede, the good olde man would still provide us sufficient of meates, fruites, and water to sustaine us. At the end of which five dayes we came to a towne within five leagues of Mexico, which is called Quoghliclan, where we also stayed one whole day and two nights, where was a large house of Gray fryers, howbeit, we saw none of them. Here we were tolde by the Spaniards in the Towne, that we had not past fiftene English miles from thence to Mexico, wherof we were all very ioyfull and glad, hoping that when we came thither, we should either be relieved, and set free out of bondage, or els be quickly dispatched out of our lives: for seeing our selves thus carried bound from place to place, although some bled us courteously, yet could we never be, nor be merry till we might perceive our selves set free from that bondage, either by death of ourselfe.

The next morning we departed from thence on our journey toward Mexico, and so travelled till we came within two leagues of it, where there was built by the Spaniards a very large church, called our Lady church, in which there is an image of our Lady of silver and gile, being as high & as large as a tall woman, in which church, and before this image, there are as many lamps of silver as there be dayes in the yeere, which upon high dayes are all lighted. Whensoever any Spaniards passe by this church, although they be on horsebacke, they will alight, and come into the church, & kneele before this image, and pray to our Lady to defend them from all evil: so that wher they be horseman or footman he will not passe by, but first goe into the church, and pray as a freeman, which if they doe not, they thinke and beleue that they shall never prosper, which image they call in the Spanish tongue, Nuestra signora de Guadalupe: At this place there are certaine



colde baths, with cold springing by as though the water did stretch: the water whereof is some-  
what brackish in taste, but very good for any that have any sores or wounds, to wash themselves there-  
with, for as they say, it healeth many: and every yeere once upon our Lady day the people be to  
repaired together to offer, and to pray in that Church before the image, and they say that our Lady  
of Guadalupe doeth worke a number of miracles: About this Church there is not any towne of  
Spaniards that is inhabited, but certaine Indians doe dwell there in houses of theyr owne coun-  
treys building.

Perce we were met with a great number of Spaniards on horsebacke, which came from  
Mexico to see us, both gentlemen, and men of occupations, and they came as people to see a won-  
der: we were still called upon to march on, and so about foure of the clocke in the afternoon of  
the said day we entered into the cite of Mexico, by the way of street called La casa Sancta Cather-  
rina: and we stayed not in any place till we came to the house of pallace of the Vice Roy, Don  
Martin Henriquez, which standeth in the middell of the city, hard by the market place, called La  
plaza del Marquesse. We had not stayed any long time at this place, but there was brought vs  
by the Spaniards from the market place great store of meat, sufficient to have satisfied five times  
so many as we were: some also gave vs hoes, and some gave vs money: in which place we stayed  
for the space of two houres, and from thence we were conveyed by water in to large Canoes to our  
hospitall where as certaine of our men were lodged, which were taken before the sight at S. John  
de Vlioa: we should have gone to our Ladies hospitall, but that there were also so many of our  
men taken before as that sight that there was no room for vs. After our comming thither, many  
of the company that came with me from Panuco dyed within the space of fouretee dayes: some  
after which time we were taken forth from that place, and put altogether into our Ladies hospita-  
ll, in which place we were courteously used, and visited oftentimes by veruous gentlemen and  
gentlewomen of the cite, who brought vs divers things to comfort vs withall, as succres and ma-  
sticades, and such other things, and would also many times give vs many things, and that very  
liberally: In which hospitall we remained for the space of five moneths, untill we were all whole  
and sound of body, and then we were appointed by the Vice Roy to be carred unto the towne of  
Tescuko, which is from Mexico Southweat distant eight leagues: in which towne there are cer-  
taine houses of correction and punishment for all people called Obrajes, like to Bridewell here  
in London: into which place divers Indians are sold for slaves, some for ten yeeres, and some for  
twelve. It was no small griefe unto vs when we understood that we should be carred thither,  
and to be used as slaves, we had rather be put to death: howbeit there was no remedy, but we  
were carred to the prison of Tescuko, where we were not put to any labour, but were very straitly  
kept, and almost famished, yet by the good providence of our mercifull God, we happened there  
to meet with one Robert Swearing, who was the soune of an English man borne of a Spanish  
woman: this man could speake very good English, and by his means we were holpen very  
much with victualles from the Indians, as mutton, hennes, and bread. And if we had not bene  
so relieved, we had surely perished: and yet all the provision that we had gotten that way was but  
 slender. And continuing thus straightly kept in prison there for the space of two moneths, at the  
length we agreed amongst our selves to speake forth of prison, come of it what would, for we  
were minded rather to suffer death then longer to live in that miserable state.

And so having escaped our prison, we knew not what way to sit for the safetie of our selves,  
the night was darke, and it rained terribly, and not having any guide, we went we knew not whi-  
ther, and in the morning, at the appearing of the day, we perceived our selves to be come hard to  
the cite of Mexico, which is foure & twentieth English miles from Tescuko. The day being come  
we were espyed by the Spaniards, and pursued, and taken, and brought before the Vice Roy and  
head iudices, who threatened to hang vs for breaking of the kings prison. Yet in the end they sent  
vs into a garden belonging to the Vice Roy, and comming thither, we found there our English  
gentlemen which were deliuered as hostages when as our generall was betrayed at S. John de  
Vlioa, as is aforesaid, and with them we also found Robert Barret, the Spaiiser of the Jesus, in  
which place we remained labouring and doing such things as we were commanded, for the space  
of foure moneths, having but two sheepe a day allowed to suffice vs all, being very neere a hun-  
dred men, and for bread, we had euery man two loaves a day, of the quantity of one halfepemie  
loafe: At the end of which foure moneths, they having remooued our gentlemen hostages, and  
the Spaiiser of the Jesus to a prison in the Vice Roy his owne house, did cause it to be proclaimed,  
that what gentleman Spaniard sooner was willing, or would haue any English man to serue  
him, and be bound to keepe him forth comming, to appeare before the Iudices within one moneth  
after notice given, that they should repaie to the said garden, and there take their choise: which  
proclamation

proclamation was  
that happy was be

Wherein is the  
the commi  
imprisonm  
gainst vs, an



and by Negroes  
the said cite of Me-  
xico many of vs  
to be, and to see a  
many of vs did pre-  
by a peere, which I  
brought under our  
Spaniards whi-  
in vs 3 marks of ch-  
19. Peeres of a hal-  
meanly bestow our  
five thousand pe-  
As concerning the  
in the Viceroy his  
as aforesaid, they  
comming thither,  
to goe for Spaine,  
have heard it credi-  
the Inquisition how  
tion of that house  
sent away with the  
drew in the In-  
four moie of our  
I knew, for they  
them I know not.

How after that  
time we had bene  
yeere of our Lord  
shed in the Indies,  
untill this time  
that bloodie and  
Contreras, and Lo-  
la Rios, the Sherre  
the white Friers,  
that their most dete-  
it be to call vs the  
perfect knowledge  
declared, and there  
began our sorowes  
proclamation mad  
we keepe secret any  
apprehended in all

proclamation was no sooner made, but the gentlemen came and repaired to the garden againe, so that happy was he that could soonest get one of vs.

## The 5. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed in what good sort, and how wealthily we liued with our masters vntill the coming of the Inquisition, when as agayne our sorowes began a fresh: Of our imprisonment in the holy house, and of the seuerer judgement and sentences giuen against vs, and with what rigour and crueltie the same were executed.



The gentlemen that thus tooke vs for their seruants or slaues, did not apparre vs throughout, with whom we abode, being such seruice as they appointed vs vnto, which was for the most part to attend vpon them at the table, and to bee as their chamberlaines, and to waite vpon them when they went abroad, which they greatly accounted of: for in that countrey no Spaniard will serue one another, but they are all of them attended and serued by Indians weekly, and by Negroes which be their slaues during their life. In this sort we remained and serued in the said cite of Mexico, and thereaboutes for the space of a yeere and somewhat longer. Afterward many of vs were by our masters appointed to go to sundry of their Spines wher they had to doe, and to bee as ouerscers of the Negroes and Indians that laboured there. In which Spines many of vs did profite and gaue greatly: for first we were allowed thre hundred Peces a man for a yeere, which is thre score pound sterling, and besides that the Indians and Negroes which wrought vnder our charge, vpon our well vsing and increasing of them, would at times as vpon some dayes wher they had left to worke, labour for vs, & giue as much siluer as should be worth vnto vs 3, marks of chereaboutes, euery marke being worth 6 Peces, & a halfe of their mony, which is 19 Peces, & a half, is worth 4. li. 10. s. of our mony. Sundrie weekes we did gaue so much by this means besides our wages, that many of vs became very rich, and were worth thre thousand or some thousand Peces, for wee liued and gained thus in those Spines some thre or foure yeeres. As concerning those Gentlemen which were deliuered as hostages, and that were kept in prison, in the Viceroy his house, after that we were come from out the garden to serue sundry Gentlemen as aforesaid, they remained prisoners in the sayde house for the space of foure moneths after their coming thither, at the ende wherof the Fleet being readie to depart from S. Iohn de Villua, to goe for Spaine, the said Gentlemen were sent away into Spaine with the fleet, where as I haue heard it credibly reported, many of them died with the cruell handling of the Spaniards in the Inquisition house, as those which haue bene deliuered home after they had suffered the persecution of that house can moze perfectly declare. Robert Barret also the master of the Iesus, was sent away with the fleet into Spaine the next yeere following, where afterwards he suffered persecution in the Inquisition, and at the last was condemned to bee burnt, and with him thre or foure more of our men, of whom one was named Gregorie, and another John Bournie, whom I know, for they were of our Generall his Spulicians, but the names of the rest that suffered with them I know not.

Now after that fye yeeres were fully expired since our first coming into the Indies, in which time we had bene imprisoned and serued in the said countreys as is before truly declared. In the yeere of our Lord one thousand five hundred seuentie foure, the Inquisition beganne to be established in the Indies, very much against the mindes of many of the Spaniards themselves: for neuer vntill this time since their first conquering and planting in the Indies, were they subject to that bloodie and cruell Inquisition. The chiefe Inquisitor was named Don Pedro Moya de Contreras, and Iohn de Bouilla his companion, and Iohn Sanchis the Fiscal, and Pedro de la Rios, the Secretarie: they being come and settled, and placed in a very faire house nere vnto the white Friers, considering with themselves that they must make an entrance and beginning of that their most detestable Inquisition here in Mexico, to the terrour of the whole countrey, thought it best to call vs that were Englishmen first in question, and so much the rather, for that they had perfect knowledge and intelligence, that many of vs were become very rich, as hath bene already declared, and therefore we were a very good bootie and praye to the Inquisitors: so that now again began our sorowes a fresh, for we were sent for, and sought out in all places of the countrey, and proclamation made vpon paine of loosing of goods, and excommunication, that no man should hide or keepe secret any Englishman or any part of their goods. By means wherof we were all soon apprehended in all places, and all our goods seized and taken for the Inquisition vs, and so from all

all partes of the countrey we were coueied and sent as prisoners to the cite of Mexico, and there committed to prison in stony darke dungeons, where we could not see, but by candle light, & were neuer past two together in one place, so that we sawe not one another, neither could one of vs tell what was become of an other. Thus we remained stoll unpysioned for the space of a yere and a halfe, and others for some lesse time, for they came to prison euer as they were appyled. During which time of our imprisonment, as the first beginning we were often called before the Inquisitors a one, and there severly examined of our faith, and commaunded to say the Pater noster, the Ave Maria, and the Credo in Latin, which God knoweth a great number of vs could not say, otherwise then in the English tongue. And hauing the said Robert Sweering who was our friend at Tescuco alwayes present with the sayd an inquisitor, he made reply for vs, & in our owne countrey speech, we could say them perfectly, although not word for word as they were in Latin. Then did they proceed to demaund of vs upon our othes what we did beleue of the Sacrament, & whether there did remaine any bread of wine after the words of consecration, yea or no, and whether we did not beleue that the host of bread which the priest hold vpon ouer his head, and the wine that was in the chalice, was the very true and perfect body & blood of our Saviour Christ, yea or no: To which if we answered not yea, then was there no way but death. Then they would demaund of vs what we did remember of our selues, what opinions we had held, or had bin taught to hold contrary to the same whiles we were in England: to which we for the safetie of our liues were constrained to say, that we neuer did beleue, nor had bene taught otherwise then as before we had sayd. Then would they charge vs that we did not tell them the truth, that they knew to the contrary, and therefore we should call our selues to remembrance, & make them a better answer at the next time, as els we should be rackt, and made to confesse the truth whether we would or no. And so coming againe before them the next time, we were still demaunded of our beliefs whiles we were in England, and how we had bene taught, & all what we thought or did know of such of our owne countrey as they did name vnto vs, so that we could neuer be free from such demaunds, and at other times they would promise vs, that if we would tell them truth, then should we haue fauour & be set at liberty, although we very well knewe their false speeches were but means to incite vs to the hazard and losse of our liues: howbeit God so mercifully wrought for vs by a secret meane that we had, that we kept vs still to our first and true, & would still say that we had told the truth vnto them, and knewe no more by our selues nor any other of our fellowes then as we had declared, and that for our finnes and offences in England against God and our Ladie, or any of his blessed saintes, we were heartily sorry for the same, and did crye God mercie, and besought the Inquisitors for Gods sake, considering that we came into those countreies by force of weather, and against our wills, and that nature in all our liues we had rather spoken of done any thing contrary to their lawes, that therefore they would haue mercy vpon vs, yet all this would not serue: for still from time to time we were called vpon to confesse, and about the space of 3. moneths before, they proceeded to their seuerer iudgement, we were all rackt, and some enforced to vtter that against themselves, which afterwards cost them their liues. And thus hauing gotten from our owne mouthes matter sufficient for the iudgement in iudgement against vs, they caused a large scaffold to be made in the middell of the market place in Mexico right ouer against the head church, & 14. or 15. dayes before the day of their iudgement, with the sound of a trumpet, and the noise of their Attabalies, which are a kind of drummes, they did assemble the people in all partes of the cite, before whom it was then solemnly proclaimed, that whosoever would vpon such a day repaire to the market place, they should heare the sentence of the holy Inquisition against the English heretikes, Lutheranes, and also see the same put in execution. Which being done, and the time appoaching of this cruell iudgement, the night before they came to the prison where we were, with certaine officers of that holy hellish house, bringing with them certaine fooles coats which they had prepared for vs, being called in their language S. Benitos, which coats were made of pealow cotton & red crosses vpon them, both before & behind: they were so busied in putting on their coats about vs, and in bringing vs out into a large yard, and placing and pointing vs in what order we should go to the scaffold or place of iudgement, vpon the morow, that they did not once suffer vs to sleepe all that night long. The next morning being come, there was giuen to euery one of vs for our hearkfast a cuppe of wine, and a slice of bread fried in honte, and so about eight of the clocke in the morning, wee set forth of the prison, euery man alone in his pealow coat, and a rope about his necke, and a great greene Waxe candle in his hand vntighted, hauing a Spaniard appoynted to go vpon a yther side of euery one of vs: and so marching in this order and maner toward the Scaffold in the Market place, which was a bowe shoote distant of thereabouts, wee found a great assemble of people all the way, and such throng, that certayne of the Inquisitors officers on horsebacke were constrained to make way, and

and so coming to  
and prepared for  
ment. We being  
the pair of stairs  
to one and a place  
to a great number  
of let in the place  
manden and then

The first man  
to batt  
for 10. yeres

After him was  
and one Thomas

he committed to  
Then was call  
demmed to serue

Then were st  
call iudgement,

to the galleys, for  
And then was

without any stry

Then were call  
Doywell and C

some for 3. yeres  
being done, and in

the Jailman, who  
to the place

quickly burnt and  
we were caried to

by, the yere of  
we found a hostle

and to be commit  
up on horseback

people to behold  
stripes to euery

by sundry men a  
cries which cries

the way as they  
takehell order st

Gods enemies  
was to the Inqui

were then taken  
sent into Spain

with me to which  
the monasteries.

Wherein is  
expired,  
Francis I  
how I se  
gaine I

**T**his was  
of a  
bery

Spain, and there  
 candle light, & were  
 could one of us tell  
 space of a peece and  
 appeyement. Du-  
 before the Inqui-  
 Peter nother, the  
 could not say other  
 was our friend at  
 in Latin. Then did  
 rament, & whether  
 and whether we did  
 the wine that was  
 dist, pea o) no 1 Ca  
 and demaund of us  
 light to hold contra-  
 lues were contra-  
 before we had sayd,  
 to the contrary, and  
 at the next time, ag  
 And so comming  
 we were in Eng-  
 of our owne compa-  
 and aother times  
 favour & be set at li-  
 ay us, to the hazard  
 cause that we had  
 wech into them, and  
 red, and that for our  
 d faintes, we were  
 for Gods sake, con-  
 dils, and the noise  
 that therefore they  
 time we were calld  
 their seuer iudge-  
 ch afterwards col-  
 rment for the to yon-  
 ddest of the market  
 day of their iudge-  
 kind of hummes,  
 solemnly yprociat-  
 ould heare the sco-  
 so see the same put  
 ment, the night be-  
 bellish house, by in-  
 in their language  
 eh before & behinde  
 into a large yard,  
 of iudgement, by  
 next morning bo-  
 and a slice of bread  
 the prison, every  
 ene waxe candle  
 of every one of us  
 lace, which was a  
 all the way, and  
 tied to make way,  
 and

and so comming to the Scaffold, wee went by by a paire of Staires, and found seates reabic made and prepared for vs to sit downe on, every man in order as he should be called to receive his iudgement. The being thus set downe as we were appointed, presently the Inquisitors came by another paire of Staires, and the Clergy and all the chiefe Justices with them. When they were set downe and placed under the cloth of estate agreeing to their degrees and calling, then came by also a great number of Friers, white, blacke and gray, about the number of 300. persons, they being set in the places for them appointed. Then was there a solemne Oyes made, and Silence commanded, and then presently began their seuer and cruell iudgement.

The first man that was called was one Roger the chiefe Armourer of the Iesus, and hee had iudgement to haue three hundred stripes on horsebacke, and after condemned to the gallies as a slave for 10. yeeres.

The cruell iudgements of the Spanish Inquisitors upd our poore countreymen.

After him was called John Gray, John Howme, John Rider, John Poone, James Collier, and one Thomas Howme: these were adiudged to haue 200. stripes on horsebacke, and after to be committed to the Gallies for the space of 8. yeeres.

Then was called John Keers, and was adiudged to haue 100. stripes on horsebacke, and condemned to serue in the gallies for the space of 6. yeeres.

Then were severally called the number of 53. one after another, and every man had his seuerall iudgement, some to haue 200. stripes on horsebacke, and some 100. and condemned for slaves in the gallies, some for 6. yeeres, some for 8. and some for 10.

And then was J Phillips called, and was adiudged to serue in a monasterie for 5. yeeres, without any stripes, and to weare a fooles coate, of S. Benito, during all that time.

Then were called John Scobie, Richard Williams, David Alexander, Robert Cooke, and Postwell and Thomas Hull: these five were condemned to serue in monasteries without stripes, some for 3. yeeres and some for foure, and to weare the S. Benito during all the said time. Which being done, and it now being towards night, George Ruelle, Peter Pomfrie, and Cornelius the Iustman, were called, and had their iudgement to be burnt to a shes, and so were presently sent away to the place of execution in the market place but a litle from the scaffold, where they were quickly burnt and consumed. And as for vs that had receiued our iudgement, being 68. in number, we were carried backe that night to prison againe. And the next day in the morning being good Friday, the yeere of our Lord 1575. we were all brought into a court of the Inquisitors pallace, where we found a horse in a readinesse for every one of our men which were condemned to haue stripes, and to be committed to the gallies, which were in number 60. and so they being inforced to mount up on horsebacke naked from the middle upward, were carried to be shewed as a spectacle for all the people to behold throughout the chiefe and principall streets of the Citie, and had the number of stripes to every one of them appointed, most cruellly layd upon their naked bodies with long whips by handy men appointed to be the executioners thereof: & before our men there went a couple of criers which cried as they went, Behold these English dogs, Lutherans, enemies to God, and all the way as they went, there were some of the Inquisitors themselves, and of the familiars of that rakehell order, that cried to the executioners, Strike, lay on those English heretikes, Lutheranes, Gods enemies: and so this horrible spectacle being shewed round about the citie, and they returned to the Inquisitors house, with their backs all goze blood, and swollen with great bumps, they were then taken from their horses, & carried againe to prison, where they remained untill they were sent into Spaine to the gallies, there to receive the rest of their martyrdom, and I and the 6. other with me which had iudgement, and were condemned amongst the rest to serue an appentiship in the monasteries, were taken presently & sent to certaine religious houses appointed for the purpose.

The 6. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed how we were vsed in the religious houes, and that when the time was expired, that wee were adiudged to serue in them, there came newes to Mexico of M. Francis Drakes being in the South Sea, & what preparation was made to take him, and how I seeking to escape, was againe taken and put in prison at Vera Cruz, and how againe I made mine escape from thence.

**M**iles Phillips and William Lowe, were appointed to the blacke Friers, where I was appointed to be an overseer of Indian workemen, who brought there in building of a new church: amongst which Indian I learned their language of Spanish tongue very perfectly, and had great familiaritie with many of them, whom I found to bee a

cruell

curteous and louing kind of people, ingenious, and of great vnderstanding, and they hate & abhorre the Spaniards w<sup>th</sup> all their hearts, they haue vsed such horrible cruelties against them, and doe still keepe them in such subiection and seruitude, that they and the Negroes also doe daily lie in waite to partise their deliuerance out of that thraldome and bondage, that the Spaniards doe keepe them in. William Lowe he was appointed to serue the Cooke in the kitchen, Richard Williams and David Alexander were appointed to the gray Friers, John Stoye and Robert Cooke to the white Friers: Paule Hovsewell the Secretarie tooke to be his seruant: Thomas Hul was sent to a monasterie of priests, where afterward he died. Thus we serued out the yeeres that wee were condemned for, w<sup>th</sup> the vse of our fooles coats, and we must needs confesse that the Friers did vse vs very curteously: for euery one of vs had his chamber w<sup>th</sup> bedding and diet, & all things cleane and neat: yea many of the Spaniards and Friers themselves doe bitterly abhorre and mislike of that cruel Inquisition, and would as they durst betwaile our miseries, and comfort vs the best they could, although they stood in such feare of that diuelish Inquisition, that they durst not let the left hand know what the right doeth. Now after that the time was expired for which we were condemned to serue in those religious houses, wee were then brought againe before the chiefe Inquisitor, and had all our fooles coats pulled off and hanged vp in the head church, called Ecclesia Maiore, and euery mans name and iudgement w<sup>ritten</sup> thereupon w<sup>th</sup> this addition, An heretike Lutheran reconciled. And there are also all their coats hanged vp, which were condemned to the gallies, w<sup>th</sup> their names and iudgements, and vnderneath his coat, Heretike Lutheran reconciled. And also the coats and names of the thre that were burned, wherupon were w<sup>ritten</sup>, An obstinate heretike Lutheran burnt. Then were we suffered to goe vp and to done the country, and to place our selues as we could, and yet not so free, but that we very well knew that there was good espyall alwayes, attending vs and all our actions, so that wee durst not once to speake or looke awyie. David Alexander and Robert Cooke they returned to serue the Inquisitor, who shortly after married them both to two of his Negro women: Richard Williams married a rich widow of Bilikate w<sup>th</sup> 4000. Pezoes: Paule Hovsewell is married to a Melita, as they name those whose fathers were Spaniards, and their mothers Indians, and this woman which Paule Hovsewell hath married, is sayd to be the daughter of one that came in w<sup>th</sup> Hernando Cortes the Conquerour, who had w<sup>th</sup> her in marriage foure thousand Pezoes, and a faire house: John Stoye hee is married to a Negro woman: William Lowe had leaue and licence to goe into Spaine where hee is now married: for mine owne part I could neuer thoughtly settle my selfe to marrie in that country, although many faire offers were made vnto mee of such as were of great abilitie and wealth, but I could haue no liking to liue in that place, where I must euerj where see and knowe such horrible idolatrie committed, and durst not once for my life speake against it: and therefore I had alwayes a longing and desire to this my native countrey: and to returne and serue againe in the Indies where I might haue gathered great riches and wealth, I theyr well saw that at one time or another I should fall againe into the danger of that diuelish Inquisition, and so be stript of all, w<sup>th</sup> losse of life also, and therefore I made my choise rather to learne to weaue Crogranes and Cassataes, and so compounding w<sup>th</sup> a Silke weauer, I bound my selfe for 3. yeeres to serue him, and gaue him 150. Pezoes to teach me the science, other wise he would not haue taught me vnder teuen yeeres penitency, and by this meanes I liued the more quiet, and free from suspicion. Howbeit I should many times bee charged by familiars of that diuelish house, that I had a meaning to runne away into England, and to bee an heretike Lutheran againe: To whom I would answer that they had no neede to suspect any such thing in mee, for that they knewe all very well that it was impossible for mee to escape by any maner of meanes: yet notwithstanding I was called before the Inquisitor, and demanded why I did not marrie: I answered that I had bound my selfe at an occupation. Well sayd the Inquisitor, I knowe thou meanest to runne away, and therefore I charge thee here vpon payne of burning as an heretike relapsed, that thou depart not out of this cite, nor come nerre to the porte of S. Iohn de Villa, nor to any other porte, To the which I answered, that I would willingly obey. Hea sayd he, see thou doe so and thy fellows also, they shall haue the like charge.

So I remained at my science the full time, and learned the Arte, at the end whereof there came newes to Mexico that there were certaine Englishmen landed w<sup>th</sup> a great power at the port of Acapulco, vpon the South sea, & that they were coming to Mexico to take the spoile thereof, which brought a maruelous great feare amongst them, & many of those that were rich, began to shift for themselves, their wiues & children: vpon which burlie burlie the Microp caused a generall muster to be made of all the Spaniards in Mexico, and there were found to the number of 7000. and odder householders of Spaniards in the cite & suburbs, & of single men vnmarried, the number of 3000. and

of Mexico, which  
thousand persons,  
my, and were sent  
for to Captaine  
but one, which was  
of Plimouth in  
we answered, no.

While these things  
was there eight  
was sent to  
Luis Soares, the  
John Cortes, & two  
by captaine Don  
it was sayd that  
Corte, w<sup>th</sup> whom  
When we  
thence, more then  
preparatly embark  
part with him  
as interpreter in  
certaine, if we ha  
buried kept our co  
as we could, and  
come of twentie  
ships which came  
of the coast more  
landed, our Capt  
while that I was  
Duke, we should  
re wherem I liue  
thereof, when I  
doubt any man kn  
strained to make  
my towards Me  
50 leagues from  
Tepaca 24. leag  
hill which catter  
Mexico, from the  
most of his men  
ten weekes of the  
sare he hau traue  
heard of. To wh  
lands wherem a la  
Sur, it is not poss  
sire him to land  
cite of Mexico,  
there I should  
going to Meca  
that they had the  
rie for me to goe  
and comming t  
intelligence cha  
S. Iohn de Vill  
des, preparing  
w<sup>th</sup> my selfe, a  
our, and to goe  
more standing  
dozes, sometimes

they hate & abhorre  
 maint them, and doe  
 also doe daily lie in  
 the Spaniards doe  
 thin, Richard Gill  
 and Robert Cooke  
 Thomas Hul was  
 the peeres that wee  
 the friends  
 and dies, & all things  
 by abhorre and mis-  
 and comfort by the  
 and they durst not let  
 for which we were  
 efuse the chiefes  
 b, called Ecclesia  
 dition, An heretike  
 condemned to the  
 Lutheran reconci-  
 written, An ob-  
 the country, and to  
 ac that there was good  
 I speake of lookes  
 who shortly after  
 rich widow of Bisi-  
 me those whose fa-  
 ule Postwell hath  
 the Conquerour,  
 tozie hee is married  
 where hee is now  
 in that country,  
 ric and wealthy, but  
 we knowe such boy-  
 therefoze I had al-  
 erue againe in the  
 w that at one time  
 so be stripes of all  
 Crogranes and  
 teres to serue him,  
 caught me under  
 in suspicion. Now  
 I had a meaning  
 join I would an-  
 standing I was  
 that I had bound  
 runne a way, and  
 at thou depart not  
 er poize, To the  
 by fellows al-

of Phillips, which are counted to be the sounes of Spaniards borne of Indian women twentie  
 thousand persons, and then was Paule Postwell and Miles Phillips sent for before the Viceroy,  
 and were examined if we did know an English man named Francis Drake, which was bro-  
 ther to Captaine Hawkins: to which we answered, that Captaine Hawkins had not any brother  
 his one, which was a man of the age of thre score yeeres or thereabouts, and was now gouernour  
 of Bermoothe in England. And then he demanded of vs if we knew one Francis Drake, and  
 we answered, no.

While these things were in doing, there came newes that all the Englishmen were gone, yet  
 was there eight hundred men made out under the leading of severall captaines, wherof two hun-  
 dred were sent to the poize of S. Iohn de Villua, vpon the North Sea vnder the conduct of Don  
 Lays Suares, two hundred were sent to Guatimala in the South sea, who had for their captaine  
 Iohn Cortes, two hundred more were sent to Guatulo, a port of the South sea, ouer whom went  
 the captaine Don Pedro de Roblis, and two hundred more were sent to Acapulco, the port wher  
 it was sayd that Captaine Drake had bene. And they had for Captaine doctor Roblis Alcalde de  
 Corte, with whom Miles Phillips went as interpreter, hauing licence given by the Inquisi-  
 tors. When we were come to Acapulco, we found that Captaine Drake had departed from  
 thence, more then a moneth before we came thither. But yet our captaine Alcalde de Corte there  
 presently embarked himselfe in a small ship of thre score tunne or thereabout, hauing also in com-  
 panie with him two other small barkes, and not past two hundred men in all, with whom I went  
 as interpreter in his otone ship, which God knoweth was but weake and ill appointed, so that for  
 certaine, if we had met with captaine Drake, he might easily haue taken vs all: Wee being im-  
 backed kept our course and raine Southward to wards Panama, keeping still as nigh the shore  
 as we could, and leaving the land vpon our left hand, and hauing coasted thus for the space of eigh-  
 tene or twentie dayes, and were more to the South then Guatimala, wee met at last with other  
 ships which came from Panama, of whom we were certainly informed that he was cleane gone  
 off the coast more then a moneth before: and so we returned backe to Acapulco againe, and there  
 landed, our Captaine being thereunto forced, because his men were very sore sea sicke: All the  
 while that I was at Sea with them, I was a glad man, for I hoped that if we met with master  
 Drake, we should all be taken, so that then I should haue bene freed out of that banger and mis-  
 erre wherein I liued, and should returne to mine otone countrey of England againe. But missing  
 thereof, when I sawe there was no remedie but that wee must needs come on land againe; like  
 with any man knowe the sorrow and grieue that inwardly I felt, although outwardly I was con-  
 strained to make faire weather of it. And so being landed, the next morow after, wee began our iour-  
 ney towards Mexico, and past these towne of name in our way, as first the towne of Tuatpec,  
 30. leagues from Mexico, from thence to Washaca, 40. leagues from Mexico: from thence to  
 Tepiaca 24. leagues from Mexico, and from thence to Lo pueblo de los Angeles, wher is a high  
 hill which catcheth our fire three times a day, which hill is 18. leagues in manner directly West from  
 Mexico, from thence we went to Scapelapa, 8. leagues from Mexico, and there our captaine and  
 most of his men tooke boate, and came to Mexico againe, hauing bene fourty about the space of se-  
 ven weekes of thereabouts. Our captaine made report to the Viceroy what he had done, and how  
 farre he had trauelled, and that for certaine he was informed that captaine Drake was not to bee  
 heard of. To which the Viceroy replied and said, Surely we shall haue him shortly come into our  
 hands vpon a land though necessitie in some one place or other, for he being now in these seas of  
 Sea, it is not possible for him to get out of them againe, so that if he perish not at sea, yet hunger will  
 force him to land. And then againe I was commanded by the Viceroy that I should not depart the  
 cite of Mexico, but alwayes be at my masters house in a readinesse at all bowres warning, when  
 sooner I should be called for: that notwithstanding within one moneth after certaine Spaniards  
 going to Mecameca, 18. leagues from Mexico, to sell a way certaine hides and Cuchichello,  
 that they had there at the Spaniards of daite houses, and my master hauing leaue of the Secre-  
 tary for me to goe with them, I tooke my iourney with them being very well hoised and appointed,  
 and coming thither and passing the time there at Mecameca certaine dayes till we had perfect  
 intelligence that the fleet was ready to depart, I not being past 3. dayes iourney from the poize of  
 S. Iohn de Villua, thought it to be the meetest time for me to make an escape, and I was the bol-  
 der, pressing vpon my Spanish tongue, which I spake as naturally as any of them all, thinking  
 with my selfe, that when I came to S. Iohn de Villua, I would get to bee entertained as a soldier  
 our, and so goe home into Spaine in the same fleet, and therefore secretly one euening late, the  
 moone shining faire, I conueted my selfe away, and riding so for the space of two nightes and two  
 dayes, sometimes in, and sometimes out, resting very little all that time, vpon the second day at  
 night

The Spaniard  
 Viceroy pro-  
 pheticall, but  
 false.

hereof there came  
 at the poize of A-  
 uille thereof, which  
 began to shift for  
 a generall mutter  
 of 7000. and abde  
 number of 3000. and  
 of

night I came to the towne of Vera Cruz, distant from the poye of S. Iohn de Villua, where the ships rode, but only 8. leagues, and here purposing to rest my selfe a day or two, I was no sooner sighted, but within the space of one halfe hower after, I was by ill hap arrested, and brought before Iustices there, being taken and suspected to be a gentleman some of Spexico, that was runne away from his father, who in truth was the man they sought for: So I being arrested, and brought before the Iustices, there was a great hurle burle about the matter, every man charging me that I was the sonne of such a man dwelling in Spexico, which I flatly denied, affirming that I knew not the man, yet would they not belecue me, but begged still upon me that I was he that they sought for, and so I was conueied away to prison. And as I was thus going to prison, to the further increase of my griefe, it chanced that at that very instant there was a poore man in the preak that was come to towne to sell hennes, who told the Iustices that they did me wrong, and that in truth hee knew very well that I was an Englishman and no Spaniard. They then demaunded of him how hee knew that, and threatened him that he sayd so, for that hee was my companion, and sought to conuey mee away from my father, so that hee also was threatened to be laid in prison with mee: he for the discharge of himselfe stood stille in it, that I was an Englishman, and one of captain Hawkins men, and that hee had knowen me weare the S. Benito in the blache friers at Spexico, for three or foure whole yeeres together, which when they heard they forsooke him, and began to examine me a new whether that speech of his were true, yea or no, which when they perceived that I could not deny, and perceiuing that I was run from Spexico, and came thither of purpose to conuey my selfe away with the fleet, I was presently committed to prison with a sorrowfull heart, often wishing my selfe that that man which knew me had at that time bene further off, to wit: hee in sinceritie had compassion of my distressed state, thinking by his speech, and knowing of me, to haue set me free fro that present danger which he saw me in: howbeit, contrary to his expectation, I was thereby brought into my extreme danger, & to the hazard of my life, yet there was no remedie but patience perforce: and I was no sooner brought into prison, but I had a great paire of boles clapt on my legs, and thus I remained in that prison for the space of 3. weeks, where were also many other prisoners which were thither committed for sundry crimes, and condemned to the gallies. During which time of imprisonment there, I found amongst those my prison fellows some that had knowen me before in Spexico, and truly they had compassion of me, and would spare of their vituals & any thing els that they had to do me good, amongst whom there was one of them that told me that hee understood by a secret friend of his which often came to the prison to him, that I should be shortly sent back againe to Spexico by wagon, so loone as the fleet was gone from S. Iohn de Villua, for Spexico. His poore man my prison fellow of himselfe, & without any request made by me, caused his said friend which came often unto him to the grace of the prison to bring him some & vituals to buye for him two knives which had files in their backs, which files were so well made that they would serue & suffice any prisoner to file off his irons, and of those knives of files hee brought one to me, & told me that hee had caused it to be made for me, & let me haue it at very price it cost him, which was 2. pieces, the value of 8. s. of our mony, which knife when I had it, I was a topfull man, and conueied the same into the foote of my boot, vpon the inside of my left leg, and so within 3. or 4. dayes after that I had thus receiued my knife, I was suddenly called for, & brought before the head Iustice which caused those my irons with the round bolt to be striken off and sent to a Smiths in y<sup>e</sup> towne, where was a new paire of boles made ready for me of another fashion, which had a broad iron barre running between y<sup>e</sup> shackles, & caused my hands to be made fast with a paire of manacles, and so was I presently laid into a wagon all alone, which was there ready to depart with sundry other wagons to the number of 60. towards Mexico, and they all were laden with sundry merchandize which came in the fleet out of Spaine.

The wagon that I was in was foremost of all the companie, and as wee travelled I being alone in the wagon, began to trie if I could plucke my handes out of the manacles, and as God would although it were somewhat painfull for mee, yet my handes were so slender that I could pull them out, and put them in againe, and euer as wee went, when the wagons made most noyse, and the men busied, I would be working to file off my boles, and travelling thus for the space of eight leagues from Vera Cruz, wee came to an high hill, at the ending by of which (as God would) one of the wheelies of the wagon wherein I was, brake, so that by that means the other wagons went a foare, and the wagon man that had charge of me set an Indian Carpenter a worke to mend the wheele: and here at this place they barked at an odde that a Negro woman keepe, and at this place for that the going by of the hill is very steepe, for the space of two leagues and better, they doe alwayes accustome to take the moles of 3. or 4. wagons, and to place them all together for the drawing by of one wagon, & so to come downe againe, and so by others in that order.

which came to  
me to vnto by t  
ing my time in t  
my selfe into the  
hills, and two fra  
and then couered  
that night. And t  
finding the roller.

Wherein is new  
port of Cau  
uana, and  
prisoner, an  
into Engla



that going on t  
mountaine wher  
was, and my br  
were hunting of  
them to helpe mee  
that I was thus  
them to guide me  
kingly did: and s  
laps, where I sta  
that I had quille  
foes, and so traua  
one that I had b  
and one that did  
me very courteo  
adventure to see  
pay him of his a  
me which was n  
three dayes, and  
there amongst t  
freely gaue vnto  
from Mexico, a  
from thence I r  
till I  
here at this tow  
that in trinita l  
were two India  
boles which he  
and every night  
which we place  
with Cypres, s  
open standing W  
port of Cadiz  
leagues, and t  
without either  
was, where I n

luis, where the ships  
was no sooner ely  
brought before I  
at was runne along  
ed, and brought to  
changing me that I  
rning that I know  
be that they thought  
to the further in  
in the pears that  
ag, and that in truth  
then demaunders of  
my companion, and  
laid in prison with  
man, and one of cap  
e blake Friars at  
ooke him, and be  
when they percei  
me either of priso  
with a sorrowful  
the further off, how  
b, and knowing of  
contrary to his expe  
per, yet there was no  
had a great paine  
oreks, where were  
to be condemned to  
prison fellowes some  
and would spare of  
re was one of them  
prison to him, that  
as gone from wh  
it hurt any requit  
prison to bring him  
fines were so well  
of kniues of fles be  
e it at y very price  
I had it, I was a  
my left leg, and so  
led for, & brought  
then off and sent to  
her fashion, which  
e fast with a paine  
e ready to depart  
were laden with

welld I being  
es, and as God  
nder that I could  
made most noyse,  
is for the spare of  
which (as God  
neanes the other  
arpenter a woyme  
a woman keepe,  
two leagues and  
nce from all toge  
pers in that order.  
All

All which came very well to passe for as it drew towards night whil most of the Waggoners were gone to vnto vpon their wagons, in this soe I being alone had quickly slied off my bolts, & so espyng my time in the darke of the evening before they returned vnto the bill againe, I conueyed my selfe into the woods there adoyning, carrying my bolts and manacles with me, and a few biscuits, and two small cheeses. And being come into the woods I threw my yrons into a thicke bush, and then covered them with moss and other things, and then hidde for my selfe as I might all that night. And thus by the good prouidence of Almighty God, I was freed from mine yrons all being the collar, that was about my necke, and so got my libertie the second time.

The 7. Chapter.

Wherein is shewed how I escaped to Guatimala, vpon the South sea, and from thence to the port of Cauallios, where I got passage to goe into Spaine, and of our arriuall at the Havana, and our comming to Spaine, where I was againe like to haue bene committed prisoner, and how through the great mercie of God I escaped, and came home in safetie into England, in Februarie 1582.

**T**he next morning (day light being come) I perceiued by the Sunne rising what way to take to escape their handes, for when I fledde, I tooke the way into the woods vpon the left hande: and hauing left that way that went to Mexico vpon my right hand, I thought to keepe my course as the woods and mountaines lay, still direct South as nere as I coulde: by meanes wherof I was sure to conuey my selfe farre enough from that way that went to Mexico. And as I was thus going on in the woods, I saw many great fires made to the North not past a league from the mountaine where I was, and crauailing thus in my bootes with mine yron collar about my necke, and my head and cheeke the very same forenoone I met with a companie of Indians which were hunting of beare for their sustenance, to whom I spake in the Mexicane tongue, and toke them notice that I had of a long time bene kept in prison by the cruel Spaniards, and did desire them to helpe me slied off mine yron collar, which they willingly did, reioycing greatly with mee, that I was thus escaped out of the Spaniards handes. Then I desired that I might haue one of them to guide me out of those desart mountaines towarde the South, which they also most willingly did: and so they brought me to an Indian towne 8. leagues distant from the euere named Shalpa, where I stayed 3. dayes, for that I was somewhat sickely. At which towne (with the golde that I had quiled in my dibler,) I bought me an horse of one of the Indians, which cost me 6. Pefoes, and so crauailing South, within the space of 2. leagues I happened to overtake a gray frier, one that I had bene familiar withall in Mexico, whome then I knowe to be a zealous good man, and one that did much lament the crueltie vsed against vs by the Inquisition, and truly hee vsed me very courteously: and I hauing confidence in him did indeede tell him, that I was minded to adventure to see if I could geet out of the said countrey, if I could finde shipping, and did therefore pray him of his ayde, direction, and aduice heren, which hee faithfully did, not onely in directing me which way was my safest way to crauaile, but hee also of himselfe kept me company for the space of three dayes, and euer as we came to the Indians houses (who vsed and incertained vs well) hee gathered among them in money to the value of 20. Pefoes, which at my departure from him hee freely gaue vnto me. So came I to the citie of Guatimala vpon the South sea, which is distant from Mexico, about 250. leagues, where I stayed 6. dayes, for that my horse was weake. And from thence I crauailed still South and by East seuen dayes journey, passing by certaine Indian townes, until I came to an Indian towne distant from Mexico, direct South 309. leagues. And here at this towne enquiring to goe to the port Cauallios in the Northward sea, it was answered that in crauailing thither I should not come to any towne in 20. or 12. dayes journey: so here I hired two Indians to be my guide, and I bought hennes, and bread to serue vs so long time, and toke with vs stings to kindle fire every night, because of wilde beastes, and to byle two meate: and euery night when we rested, my Indian guides would make two great fires, betwene the which we placed our selues, and my horse. And in the night whil we should here the Lions roare, with Cypers, Dunces, and other beastes, and some of them we should see in the night, which had eyes shining like fire. And crauailing thus for the space of twelue dayes we came at last to the port of Cauallios vpon the East sea, distant from Guatimala South and by East, two hundred leagues, and from Mexico 440. or thereabouts. This is a good harbor for shipping, and is without either taffe of bulwarke. I having dispatched my guides, went downe to the harbor, where I saw certaine ships bounde chiefly with Canary wines, where I spake with one of the



Passers, who asked me what Country man I was, and I told him that I was borne in Granada, & he said, that then I was his councryman. I requir'd him that I might passe home with him in his ship paying for my passage: And he said yea, so that I had a safe conduct, or letter testimonial to the wch, that he might incur no banger; for said he, it may be that you haue killed some man, or be indebted, and would therefore runne away: To that I answered that there was not any such cause. Well, in the end we got to a place, that for 60. pezoes, he would carry me into Spaine: a glad man was I at this good hap, and I quickly sold my horse, & made my provision of hennes and bread to serue me in my passage; And thus within 2. dayes after we set saile, and neuer stayed untill we came to the Hauana, which is distant from port de Cauallios by sea 500. leagues: where we toke the whole flecte of Spaine, which was bounde home from the Indies. And here I was hired for a souldier to serue in the Admirall ship of the same Beete, wherein the General himself went. There landed while I was here 4. ships out of Spaine, being all full of souldiers and ordnance, of which number there were 200. men landed here & 4. great hualt pieces of ordnance, although the castle were before sufficiently poulded: 200. men more were sent to Campeche, & certaine ordnance: 200. to Florida with ordnance, And 100. lastly to S. John de Villu. As for ordnance there they haue sufficient, and of the very same which was ours, which we had in the Iesus, and those others which we had planted in the place, where the Vice Roy betrayed M. Hawkins our general, as hath bene declared. The sending of those souldiers to euery of those places, and the strengthening of them, was done by commandment from the king of Spaine, who wrote also by them to the general of his flecte, giuing him in charge so to doe, as also directing him what course he should keepe in his coming home into Spaine, charging him at any hand not to come nigh to the ples of Azores, but to keepe his course more to the Northward, aduertising him withall, what number and power of French ships of warre, and other, Don Anthony had at that time at the Tercera, & ples aforesaid: which the general of the flecte well considering, and what great store of riches he had in bring home with him into Spaine, did in all very dutifully obserue and obey: for in truth he had in his said flecte 37. saile of ships, and in euery of them there was as good as 30. pipes of siluer one with another, besides great store of gold, Cochenlio, sugars, hides, and Cana Fistula, with other Apothecarie drugs. This our general, who was called Don Pedro de Gusman, did proudly take order for, for their mozt strength and defence, if neede should be to the vttermozt of his power, and commanded vpon paine of death, that neither passenger nor souldier should come aboard without his command and harquebulle, with shot and powder, to the end that they might be the better able to encounter the flecte of Don Anthony, if they should hap to meete with them, or any of them: and euer as the weather was faire, the said general would himselfe come aboard from one ship to another, to see that euery man had his full provision according to the commandment giuen. Yet to speake truly what I thinke, too good tall ships of warre would haue made a foule spoile amongst them. For in all this fleet there were not any that were strong and warlike appointed, sauing onely the Admirall, and Vice Admirall: And againe ouer and besides the weakenes and the ill furnishing of the rest, they were all so deeply laden, that they had not bene able (if they had bene charged) to haue held out any long fight. Well, thus we set saile, & had a very ill passage home, & weather was so contrary. We kept our course in manner Northward, and brought our selues to the height of 42. degrees of latitude, so be sure not to meete with Don Anthony his flecte, and were vpon our waye from the 4. of June, until the 10. of September, & neuer saw land til we fell with the Arenas Gordas had by S. Lucar. And there was an order taken that none should go on shore until he had licence: as for me, I was knowne by one in the ship, who told the Master that I was an Englishman, which (as God would) was my good hap to heare: for if I had not heard it, it had cost me my life. Notwithstanding, I would not take any knowledge of it, and seemed to be merry, & pleased that we were all come so well in safetie. Wherewith after licence came that we should goe on shore, and I pressed to be gone with the first boat, the wch came vnto me and said, Sirra, you must goe with me to Siuil by water: I knew his meaning well enough, & that he ment there to offer me vp as a sacrifice to his Holy house. For the ignorant zeale of a number of these superstitious Spaniards is such, that they thinke, that they haue done God good seruice, when they haue brought a Lutheran heretike to the fire to be burnt: For so do they account of vs. Well, I perceiving all this,ooke vpon me not to suspect any thing, but was still iocund and merry: to witte, I knew to it shode me vpon to this for my selfe. And so waoping my time when the Master was in his cabin asleepe, I romieped my selfe secretly vnto me by the shouders into the ship boate, and made no stay but cut the rope where withall she was moored, and so by the cable haled on shore, where I lepe on land & let the boate go whither it would. Thus by the helpe of God I escaped that day, & then neuer staid at S. Lucar, but went all night by the way which I had seene other take toward Siuil: so that the

next morning I  
which was the  
not for my life on  
in 4. dayes after I  
Englishman that  
to 60. I might  
within doores at  
to get me new clo  
and bought me a  
be overbolde to b  
S. Lucar bound fo  
that I might ha  
those which Cay  
haue him crea sed  
I came. Which  
me without wa  
where I put my  
iorca, and commit  
the one of London  
for a faire wind,  
I had bene 2. pee  
and see my friend  
I toke shipping,  
uing sustained m  
came home to thi  
huarie in the ship

## The voy

nia i

A

**R**ober  
Engl  
in a  
within  
son remained 15  
within 4. dayes a  
and from thence r  
ed to one Iohn F  
pices married wi  
one whole peece o  
to see the order o  
flecte the flectes o  
flecte, pearles, p  
determine with him  
where such great  
had I. Field (when  
himself, with his  
cause of the King  
the late Tomson  
cellary provision  
all ready to depa  
cedd til further  
Tomson and his  
and seeing the  
part, determined  
Lucar, and there  
make stay at the  
next

next morning I came to Siuill, and sought me out a workemaster, that I mighte fall to my science, which was weauing of cassataes, and being incertained I set my selfe close to my worke, and durst not for my life once to stirre abroad for feare of being knowen, and being thus at my worke, within 4. dayes after I heard one of my felowes say, that he heard there was great inquirie made for an Englishman that came home in the fleete: what an heretique Lutheran (quoth I) was it, I would to God I might knowe him, surely I would present him to the Holy house. And thus I kept still within doores at my worke, and fained my selfe not well at ease, & that I would labor as I might to get me new clothes. And continuing thus for the space of 3. moneths I called for my wages, and bought me all things newe, different from the apparell that I did weare at sea, and yet durst not be overdole to walke abroad: and after vnderstanding that there were certaine English ships at S. Lucar bound for England, I tooke a boate and went aboard one of them, and desired the Master that I mighte haue passage with him to goe into England, and told him secretly that I was one of those which Captaine Hawkins did set on shoare in the Indies: he very courteously prayed mee to haue him excused, for he durst not meddle with me, & prayed mee therefore to returne from tobenee I came. Which when I perceiued, with a sojoyfull heart God knoweth I tooke my leaue of him, not without waerie cheekes. And then I went to S. Mary port, which is 3. leagues from S. Lucar, where I put my selfe to be a souldier to go in the k. of Spaines Gallies, which were bound for Maiorca, and comming thither in the end of 3. Christmas holypayes, I found there 2. English ships, the one of London, and the other of the West country, which were ready freighted and staped but for a faire wind. To the head of the one, which was of the West country went I, and told him that I had bene 2. yeeres in Spaine to learne the language, and that I was nowe desirous to go home and see my friends, for that I lacked maintenance: and so hauing agreed with him for my passage I tooke shipping. And thus through the prouidence of Almighty God, after 16. yeeres absence, hauing sustained many and sunny great troubles and miseries, as by this discourse appeareth, I came home to this my natieue countrey of England, in the yeere 1582. in the the moneth of February in the shippe called the Landret, and arrived at Poole.

The voyage of Robert Tomson marchant, into Noua Hispania in the yere 1555. With diuers obseruations concerning the state of the Countrey: And certaine accidents touching himselfe.

**R**obert Tomson borne in the towne of Andouer in Hampshire, begun his trauaille out of England in An. 1553. in the moneth of March, who departing out of the citie of Bristol in a good ship called the Barke yong, in companie of other marchants of the saide citie, within 8. dayes after arrived at Lisbon in Portugal, where the said Robert Tomson remained 15. dayes, at the end of which he shipped himselfe for Spaine in the said shippe, and within 4. dayes arrived in the bay of Cadiz in Andalusia, which is vnder the kingdom of Spaine, and from thence trauailed by to the Citie of Siuill by land, which is 20. leagues, and there he repaired to one Iohn Fields house an English marchant, who had dwelt in the said citie of Siuill 18. or 20. yeeres married with wife and children: In whose house the said Tomson remained by the space of one whole yeere or there about, for 2. causes: The one to learne the Castilian tongue, The other to see the orders of the countrey, and the customes of the people. At the ende of which time hauing seene the fleetes of ships come out of the Indies to that citie, with such great quantitie of gold and silver, pearles, precious stones, sugar, hides, ginger, and diuers other riche commodities, hee did determine with himselfe to seeke meanes & opportunitie to passe ouer to see that rich countrey from whence such great quantitie of rich commodities came. And it fel out that within short time after the said Field (where the said Tomson was lodged) did determine to passe ouer into the West Indies himselfe, with his wife, children & familie, and at the request of the said Tomson, he purchased a licence of the King to passe into the Indies, for himselfe, his wife & children, & among them also for the said Tomson to passe with them: so that presently they made preparation of victual & other necessary prouision for the voyage. But the ships which were prepared to performe the voyage being all ready to depart, vpon certaine considerations by the kings commandement were stayed & arrested till further should be knowen of the kings pleasure. Whereupon the said Iohn Field, with R. Tomson and his company being departed out of Siuill & come downe to S. Lucar 15. leagues off, and seeing the stay made vpon the ships of the said fleete, & being not assured when they would depart, determined to shippe themselves for the ples of the Canaries, which is 250. leagues from S. Lucar, and there to stay till the said fleete would come thither: for that is continually their port to make stay at five or eight dayes, to take fresh water, bread, flesh, and other necessaries.

So that in the moneth of February in An. 1553. the said Rob. Tomson with the said John Field and his company, shipped themselves out of the towne of S. Lucar in a caruel of the citie of Cadiz, and within 6. dayes they arrived at the port of the Grand Canaria, where at our coming the ship that rode in the said port beganne to cry out of all measure with loud voyces, in so much that the Caste which stood fast by began to shooe at vs, and shot 6. or 8. shot at vs, and strooke down our maine mast, before we could hoist out our boate to go on land, to know what the cause of the shooting was, seeing that we were Spanish ships, and coming into his countrey. So that being on land & complaining of the wrong and damage done unto vs: they and wether, that they had thought we had bene French rowers, that had come into the said port, to do some harme to the shippes that were there. For that 8. dayes past, there went out of the said port a caruel much like unto ours, laden with sugars and other merchandise for Spaine, and on the other side of the point of the said Island, met with a Frenchman of warre, who took the said caruel, & unladed out of her into the said Frenchship, both men & goods. And being demanded of the said Spaniards what other shippes remained in the port whence they came, they answered that there remained divers other shippes, and one laden with sugars (as they were) & ready to depart for Spaine, w<sup>ch</sup> the which nettes the Frenchmen put 30. tall men of their ship wel appointed, into the said caruel that they had taken, and sent her backe againe to the said port from whence she had departed the day before. And somewhat late towards the evening came into the port, not the wing past 3. or 4. men, and so came to an ancre hard by the other shippes that were in the said port, & being seene by the castle & by the said shippes, they made no reckoning of her, because they knew her, and thinking that she had found contrary winds at the sea, or had forgot some thing behinde them, they had returned backe againe for the same, & so made no account of her, but let her alone riding quietly among the other shippes in the said port: So that about midnight the said caruel with the Frenchmen in her, went aboard the other ship that lay hard by laden with sugars, and moue the Spaniards that were in her vnder hatches, and presently let slip her cables and ancre, and set saile and carried her cleane away, & after this foze deieined them: And they thinking or fearing that we were the like, did shooe at vs as they did. This being past, the next day after our arrival in the said port, we did vnbark our selues and went on lande by the citie of head towne of the great Canaria, where we remained 18. or 20. dayes: and there found certaine Englishmen marchants seruants of one Anthony Hickman & Edward Castellin, marchants of the citie of London, that lay there in craque, of whom we received great courtesie and much good cheere. After the which 20. dayes being past, in the which we had seene the countrey, the people, and the disposition thereof, we departed from thence, and passed to the next yle of the Canaries 18. leagues off, called Teneriffe, & being come on land, went by to the citie called the La Laguna, where we remained 7. moeths, attending the coming of the whole flecte: which in the ende came, and there hauing taken that which they had neede off, we shipped our selues in a ship of Cadiz, being one of the said flecte, which was belonging to an Englishman married in the citie of Cales in Spaine, whose name was John Sweeting, and came in the saide ship for captaine also an Englishman married in Cadiz, & sonne in law to the saide John Sweeting, whose name was Leonard Chilton, and also came in the saide ship another Englishman which had bene a marchant of the citie of Exeter, one of 50. yeeres or there about, whose name was Raph Sarrc. So that we departed from the said Islands in the moneth of October the foresaid yeere 8. shippes in our company, and so directed our course towards the bay of newe Spaine, and by the way towards the Island of S. Domingo, otherwile called Hispaniola. So that within 42. dayes after we departed from the yles of Canaries, we arrived with our ship at the port of S. Domingo, & went in ouer the barre where our ship knocked her keele at her entrie: and there our ship rid before the towne, where we went on land and refreshed our selues 16. dayes, where we found no bread made of wheate, but biskeit brought out of Spaine, and out of the bay of Mexico: for the countrey it selfe doeth yeeld no kinde of graine to make bread withall. But the bread they make there is certaine cakes made of rootes, called Cassaua, which is something substantiall, but it hath but an vnflauery taste in the eating thereof. Flesh of beefe and mutton they haue great store: for there are men that hath 10000. head of caetel, of oxen, bulles and hine, which they do keepe onely for the hides, for the quantitie of flesh is so great, that they are not able to spend the sumbert part. Doggs flesh is there good store, very sweete & sauery, and so wholesome, that they giue it to sicke folkes to eat in stead of beemes and capons: although they haue good store of poultre of that sort, as also of Guinycocks & Guiny hens. At the time of our being there, the citie of S. Domingo was not of about 500. householdes of Spaniards, but of the Indians dwelling in the suburbs there were more. The countrey is most part of the yere very hot, & very full of a kind of flies or gnats with long bills, which do picke & molest the people very much in the night when they are asleepe, in picking their faces & hands, and other parts

parts of their bodies  
of that manner  
which they use to  
that it would make  
3. or 4. inches of  
and hine, & finger,  
ners there is fo  
in that place, is bl  
like money of g  
they should haue g  
gods of stuer, and  
were comming fr  
ember, which was  
the day of Mexicc  
we came within  
charge: And betw  
from Terra Flori  
should be cast by  
the winde and sea  
that were cogethe  
company being o  
as we did, but we  
John de Vlna, bu  
of that ship 75. ye  
meanes to saue th  
present the yere  
hould be. The tw  
might, by sterou  
the were a fashio  
by feare of sinkin  
would not serue.  
piece, which earl  
God there was o  
great fogge, wh  
great experience,  
them for the loue  
our foresaile as  
of the bid: A  
of sea, strooke in  
there was no ho  
nery wife her  
to Almighty G  
when all hope w  
within 2. houres  
man, woman & c  
last person that  
of the ship into ch  
was a good whi  
of her clothes ro  
fill her childre w  
childre would not  
childre so fall vnt  
our shippe and I  
when we left it.  
Newe Spaine,  
ther, in the night  
little light, muc  
sancto, and fald

he said John Field  
the citie of Cadiz,  
comming the ship  
so much that the  
stroke doth our  
cause of the sho-  
do that being on  
they had thought  
to the shippes that  
like unto ours, la-  
point of the said I-  
of her into the said  
other shippes remai-  
the shippes, and one  
was the French  
had taken, and some  
and somewhat late  
to an ancre hard  
shippes, they made  
stray winds at the  
the same, & so made  
said port: So that  
ship that lay hard  
to presently let slip  
it deteined them:  
This being past,  
went on lande by to  
S: and there found  
Castelin, mar-  
great courtesie and  
reue the country,  
the next yle of the  
itie called the La  
leete: which in the  
selues in a ship of  
ried in the citie of  
capitaine also an  
name was Leo-  
nene a marchant of  
ere. So that wee  
shippes in our compa-  
to wardes the Je-  
ster wee departed  
went in ouer the  
ye to towne, where  
made of wheate, but  
like doeth yeeld no  
fine cakes made of  
in lauerie (as in  
are men that hath  
wides, for the quan-  
tish is there good  
in stead of hennes  
mycocks & Guiny  
100. houtholds of  
they is most part  
no yricke & molest  
& hands, and other  
parts

parts of their bootes & we encounter, & make them to swell wondrously. Also there is another kinde  
of small worme which creepeth into the soles of mens feete & especially of y<sup>e</sup> blacke Spoozes & chil-  
dren which use to go barefoot, and maketh their feete to grow as big as a rians head, & doth so ake  
that it maketh them to run mad. They haue no remedy for the same, but to open y<sup>e</sup> flesh sometimes  
3. or 4. inches & so digge them out. The countrey yeeldeth great store of sugar, sides of oxen, buls  
and hie, ginger, Cana fistula & Salsa perilliamines of silver & gold there are none, but in some ri-  
uers there is found some small quantitie of gold. The principall comode that they do craque withall  
in that place, is black money made of copper & brass: and wherthey say they do use noe for that they  
take money of golde and silver to trade withall out of the other partes of India, but because if  
they should haue good moile, the marchants that deale with them in trade, would carry away their  
gold & silver, and let the countrey commodities lie still. And thus much for S. Domingo. So wee  
were comming fro the yles of Canaries to S. Domingo, and there staying until the month of De-  
cember, which was 3. moneths. About the beginning of January we departed thence to wardes  
the bay of Mexico and new Spaine, towarde which we set our course, and so sailed 24. dayes till  
we came within 15. leagues of S. John de Villua, which was the port of Mexico of our right dis-  
tance: And being so neere our said port, there rose a storme of northerly winds, which came off  
from Terra Florida, which caused vs to cast about into the sea againe, for feare least that night we  
should be cast vpon the shoare before day wd breake, & so put our selues in danger of casting away:  
the winde and sea grew so foule and strong, that within 2. houres after the storme began, 8. shippes  
that were together were so dispersed, that we could not see one another. One of the shippes of our  
company being of the burthen of 500. tunne called y<sup>e</sup> hulke of Carion, would not cast about to sea  
as we did, but went that night with the land, thinking in the morning to purchase the port of S.  
John de Villua, but missing the port went with the shoare & was cast away. There were boorded  
of that ship 75. persons, men women and children, and 64. were saued that could swimme, and had  
meanes to saue themselves: among those that perished in that ship, was a gentleman who had bin  
present the yere before in S. Domingo, his wife and 4. daughters with the rest of his seruants and  
household. We with y<sup>e</sup> other 7. shippes cast about into the sea, the storme during 10. dayes with great  
might, boisterous winds, fogs & raine: our ship being old & weak was so tossed, that she opened at  
the keene a fathom vnder water, & the best remedy we had was to stop it w<sup>th</sup> beds & pilobiers, and  
for feare of sinking we thre w<sup>th</sup> lightened into the sea all the goods we had or could come by: but that  
would not serue. Then we cut our maine mast & thre we all our ordnance into the sea sauing one  
piece, which early in a morning when we thought we should haue sunke, we shot off, & as pleased  
God there was one of the shippes of our company nere vnto vs, which we saw not by meanes of the  
great fogge, which hearing the sound of the peece, & vnderstanding some of the company to be in  
great extremite, began to make to wards vs, & when they came within hearing of vs, we desired  
them for y<sup>e</sup> loue of God to helpe to saue vs, for that we were all like to perish. They willed vs to hoist  
our foresaile as much as we could & make to wards them, for they would doe their best to saue vs,  
and so we did: And we had no sooner hoisted our foresaile, but there came a gale of winde & a peece  
of sea stroke in the foresaile, and carried saile and maste all ouerboord, so that then wee thought  
there was no hope of life. And then we beganne to embrace one another, euery man his friends,  
euery wife her husbande, and the children their fathers and mothers, committing our soules  
to Almighty God, thinking neuer to escape aliuie: yet it pleased God in the time of most neede  
when all hope was past, to asse vs with his helping hand, & caused the wind a litle to cease, so that  
within 2. houres after, the other ship was able to come aboard vs, & tooke into her with her boare  
man, woman & child, naked without hose or shoe vpon many of our feete. I do remember that the  
last person that came out of the ship into the boate, was a woman blacke Spooze, who leaping out  
of the ship into the boate with a yong sucking child in her armes, lepe to thort and fell into the sea and  
was a good while vnder the water before the boate could come to rescue her, and with the hpyding  
of her clothes rose aboue water againe, and was caught by the coat & pulled into the boate hauing  
still her child vnder her arme, both of them halfe drowned, and yet her naturall loue towards her  
child would not let her let the child goe. And when she came aboarde the boate, she helde her  
child so fast vnder her arme still, that two men were scant able to get it out. So we departed out of  
our shippe and left it in the sea: it was worth foure hundred and threescore, shippes and goods  
when we left it. And within thre dayes after wee arrived at our port of S. John de Villua in  
Newe Spaine. I doe remember that in the great and boisterous storme of this foule wea-  
ther, in the night, there came vpon the toppe of our maine parte and maine maste, a certaine  
little light, much like vnto the light of a little candle, which the Spaniards called the Corpus  
sancto, and saide it was saint Elmo, towhome they take to be the aduocate of Seailers. At the which

As the Spaniards fell downe upon their knees and worshipped it, and praying God and saint Elmo to cease the tempest, and save them from the perill that they were in, with promising him that at their coming on lande, they would repair unto his Chappell, and there cause Masses to be saide, and offer rekenonies to be done. The Priests cast reliques into the sea, to cause the sea to be still, and likewise saide Gospels, with other crossings and ceremonies upon the sea to make the storme to cease: which (as they said) did much good to weaken the furie of the storme. But I could not perceive it, nor gaue no credite to it, till it pleased God to sende vs the remede and deliuered vs from the rage of the same. His Name be praised therefore. This light continued, a boorde our shippe about 3. houres, flying from masse to masse, and from topppe to topppe: and sometime it would be in ebow of three places at once. I informed my selfe of learned men afterward what that light should be, and they saide, that it was but a congelation of the winde and vapours of the sea congelated with the extremitie of the weather, and so flying in the winde, many times doeth chance to be in the masts and sprowes of the shippes that are at sea in foule weather. And in truethe I do take it to be so: for that I have seene the like in other shippes at sea, and in sunny shippes at once. By this men may see how the Papists are giuen to beleue and worship such vaine things, and toyes, as God, to whome all honour doth appertaine, and in their needs and necessities doe let to call vpon the liuing God, who is the giuer all good things.

The 16. of Apriill in An. 1556. we arrived at the port of S. Iohn de Villua in the west Spaine, very naked & distressed of apparel, & all other things, by meanes of the losse of our foyle said ship & goods, and from thence we went to the new towne called Vera cruz, 5. leagues from the said port of S. Iohn de Villua, marching still by y sea side, where we found lying vpon the sands great quantitie of mightie great trees with roces & al some of them of 4. 5. & 6. cart load by our estimation, which as the people told vs, were in the great stormy weather which we dured at sea, rooted out of y ground in Terra Florida, right against that place, which is 300. leagues ouer by sea, and brought thither. So that we came to the said towne of Vera cruz, where we remained a moneth; and there the said Iohn Field chanced to meet with an old friend of his acquaintance in Spaine, called Gonçalo Ruiz de Cordoua, a very riche man of the saide towne of Vera cruz: who hearing of his coming thither with his wife & family, and of his misfortune by sea, came vnto him & receiued him and al his household into his house, & kept vs there a whole moneth, making vs very good chere, & giuing vs good intertainment, & also gaue vs that were in al 8. persons of the said I. Fields house, double apparel new out of the shop of very good cloth, coates, cloakes, hose, shirts, smocks, gownes for the women, hose, shoes, and al other necessary apparel, and for our way by to the citie of Mexico, horse, molyes, & men, & money in our purses for the expences by the way, which by our account might amount vnto the summe of 400. crownes. So that after we were entered 2. dayes iourney into the countrey, I the said Robert Tomson fel sicke of an ague, so that the next day I was not able to ste on my horse, but was faaine to be carried vpon Indians backs, from thence to Mexico, And when we came within half a dayes iourney of the citie of Mexico, the said I. Field also fel sicke, and within 3. dayes after we arrived at the said citie, he died: And presently sickened one of his children, and 2. more of his household peopple, and within 8. dayes died. So that within 10. dayes after we arrived at the citie of Mexico, of 8. persons that were of vs, of y said company, there remained but 4. of vs a liue. I the said Tomson at the point of death of the sicknes that I got vpon the way, which continued with me the space of 6. moneths. At the end of which time it pleased almighty God to restore me my health againe, although weak & greatly disabled. And being some thing strong, I procured to seeke meanes to liue, & to seeke a way how to profit my self in y countrey, seeing it had pleased God to send vs thither in safetie. Then by friendship of one Th. Blake a Scottish man borne, who had dwelt & had bene married in the said citie about 20. yeeres before I came to the saide Citie, I was preferred to the seruice of a gentleman a Spaniard dwelling there, a man of great wealth, and one of the first conquerers of the saide citie, whose name was Gonçalo Serezo, with whom I dwelt 2. moneths & a half. At the end of which I was maliciously accused by the holy booke for matters of religion, & so apprehended and carried to prison, where I lay close prisoner 7. moneths, without speaking to any creature, but to y Jailer that kept the said prison, when he brought me my meate & drinke. In the meane time was brought into the said prison one Augustin Boacio an Italian of Genoua also for matters of religion, who was taken at Sacatecas 80. leagues to the Southeastward of the citie of Mexico: At the ende of the sayde seuen moneths, wee were both carried to the high Church of Mexico, to doe open penance vpon an high Scaffold, made before the high Altar, vpon a Sunday, in the presence of a very great number of people, who were at the least five or six thousande. For there were that came one hundredeth mile off, to see the sayde Auto (as they call it) so that there were neuer none before, that had done the like in the saide

saide Countrey, of any such thinge backe, which is by our a mans behauiour. S. Andrew. The common people stand, that we too we had bene more than people children began to they neuer late to us so much cruel persons of such a great pittie that v high Church, and the people, vntill and putting vs in vpon vs, for that faith of the Catho to rectie in this p ches, euery man that was that e his life, and put it ed and lost. And bertie. And for to done from Me for Spaine, which wickers, the sp all into the Inquisit should full our p ches giuen. For was 65. leagues carried for Spaine himselfe in Spair get, when we we the Azores: the si meanes to get hi ly got him to the ringall, in the w ended his life in the Spaine, and was close prison, till I ly put out of pris an English merca Citie of Mexico had got great fur for Spaine, and b name was Mari with her. The mels of great price put their trust in the world, should could attaine bu set by in the high ble & custome, w Church doct rat diuers others of d And because it th

God and saint El-  
 peth promising him  
 these cause Spallers  
 the sea, to cause the  
 ties upon the sea to  
 curie of the Ropine,  
 be vs the remedie  
 his light continued,  
 to coppe: and some  
 earned men after-  
 n of the winde and  
 in the winde, many  
 in foule weather,  
 the sea, and in sunny  
 towship such vaine  
 ede and necessities

ne the Spaine, very  
 el said ship & goods,  
 the said port of S.  
 great quantitie of  
 timation, which as  
 oted out of y<sup>e</sup> growin  
 id brought thither,  
 ; and there the said  
 lla. Gonçalo Ru-  
 of his coming thi-  
 ued him and all his  
 o cheere, & giving  
 elds house, double  
 s. gownes for the  
 of Mexico, hope,  
 ur accompt might  
 s journey into the  
 was not able to lie  
 ico. And when we  
 cke, and with 3,  
 is children, and 2,  
 as after we arrived  
 ained but 4, of vs  
 e way, which ch-  
 they God to restore  
 g strong, I procu-  
 reeing it had plea-  
 y man boque, who  
 the saide Citie, I  
 of great wealth,  
 20, with whom  
 the holy house for  
 oner 7. months,  
 e brought me my  
 n Boacio an Ita-  
 o. leagues to the  
 s, wee were both  
 de, made before  
 ole, who were at  
 f, to see the layde  
 the like in the  
 saide

saide Countrey, nor could not tell what Lutheranes were, nor what it meant; for they neuer heard  
 of any such thing before. We were brought into the Church, every one with a S. Benito upon his  
 backe, which is halfe a part of yellow cloth, with a hole to put in a mans head in the midst, and call  
 over a mans beade: both flaps hang one before, and an other behinde, and in the midst of euery  
 flap, a S. Andrewes crosse, made of red cloth, so wed on upon the same, and that is called S. Benito.  
 The common people, before they sawe the penitents come into the Church, were given to under-  
 stand, that we were Heretikes, Infidels, and people that did despise God, and his workes, and that  
 we had bene more like devils then men, and thought we had had the fauour of some monisters, or  
 heathen people. And when they saw vs come into the Church in our plaiers coates, the women &  
 children began to cry out, and made such a noise, that it was strange to see and heare, saying, that  
 they neuer sawe goodlier men in all their liues, and that it was not possible that there could be in  
 vs so much euil, as was reported of vs, and that we were more like Angels among men, then such  
 persons of such euil religion as by the priests and Frickers we were reported to be, and that it was  
 great pittie that we should be so used for so smal an offence. So that being brought into the saide  
 high Church, and set vpon the stalfold which was made before the high altar, in the presence of al  
 the people, vntill high Masse was done, and the sermon made by a Frier, concerning our matter,  
 and putting vs in all the disgrace they coult, to cause the people not to take so much compassion  
 vpon vs, for that we were Heretikes, and people that were seduced of the deuill, and forsaken the  
 faith of the Catholike Church of Rome, with diuers other repporchful wordes, which were too long  
 to recite in this place. High Masse & sermon being done, our offences, as they called them, were re-  
 corded, euery man what he had said and don, and presently was the sentence pronounced against vs.  
 That was, that the said Augustine Boacio was condemned to weare his S. Benito all the daies of  
 his life, and put into perpetual prison, where he should fulfil the same, and all his goods confiscat-  
 ed and lost. And I the said Tomson to weare the S. Benito for 3. yeres, and then to be set at li-  
 bertie. And for the accomplishing of this sentence, or condemnation, we must be presently sent  
 downe from Mexico, to Vera Cruz, and from thence to S. Iohn de Villua, and there to be shipped  
 for Spaine, which was 65. leagues by land, with strait commandement, that vpon paine of 1000.  
 wickets, the Spallers euery one should looke strailly vnto vs, and carpe vs to Spaine, and deliuer vs  
 into the Inquisitors of the Holy house of Siuill, that they should put vs in the places, where we  
 should fulfil our penances that the Archbishop of Mexico had enjoyned vnto vs, by his sentence  
 there giuen, for performance of the which, we were sent downe from Mexico, to the sea side, which  
 was 65. leagues, with fetters vpon our feete, and there deliuered to the Spallers of the ships, to be  
 caried for Spaine, as before is said. And it was so, that the Italian fearing, that if he had presented  
 himselfe in Spaine before the Inquisitors, that they woulde haue burned him, to prevent that dan-  
 ger, when we were coming homeward, & were arrived at the Island of Terceira, one of the Isles of  
 the Azores: the first night that we came into the said port to an anker, about midnight he found the  
 men, to get him naked out of the ship into the sea, and swamme naked a shoare, and so present-  
 ly got him to the further side of the Island, where he found a little Canuel ready to depart for Por-  
 tingall, in the which he came to Lisbon, and passed into France, and so into England, where he  
 ended his life in the Citie of London. And I for my part kept still aboard the ship, and came into  
 Spaine, and was deliuered to the Inquisitors of the Holy house of Siuill, where they kept me in  
 close prison, till I had fulfilled the 3. yeres of my penance, which time being expired, I was free-  
 ly put out of prison, and set at libertie, and being in the citie of Siuill a calser of one Hugh Typton,  
 an English merchant of great doing, by the space of one yere, it fortuned that there came out of the  
 Citie of Mexico, a Spaniard, called Iohn de la Barrera, that had bene long time in the Indias, and  
 had got great summes of gold and silver, and with one only daughter shipped himselfe for to come  
 for Spaine, and by the way chanced to die, and gaue all that he had vnto his onely daughter, whose  
 name was Marie de la Barrera, and being arrived at the Citie of Siuill, it was my chance to marry  
 with her. The marriage was worth to me 2500. pounds in bars of golde and silver, besides se-  
 uers of great price. This I thought good to speake of, to shewe the goodnes of God to all them that  
 put their trust in him, that I being brought out of the Indias, in such great miserie and infamie to  
 the world, should be poynted at Gods hande in one moment, of more then in all my life before. I  
 could attaine vnto by my owne labour. After we departed from Mexico, our S. Benitos were  
 set by in the high Church of the saide Citie, with our names written in the same, according to their  
 use & custome, which is and shall be a monument and a remembrance of vs, as long as the Romish  
 Church doeth raigne in that Countrey. The same haue bene seene since by one Iohn Chilton, and  
 diuers others of our nation, which were left in that Countrey long since, by sir Iohn Hawkins.  
 And because it shall be knowne wherfore it was that I was so punished by the Clergies hand, as  
 before

before is mentioned, I will in these wordes declare the same.

It is so, that being in Mexico, at the table, among many principal people at dinner, they began to inquire of me being an Englishman, whether it were true, that in England they had overthrowen all their Churches, and houses of religion, and that all the images of the saints, of heauen they were in them, were thowen downe and broken, and burned, and in some places stoned high maies with them, and denied their obedience to the Pope of Rome, as they had beene certified out of Spaine, by their friends, To whom I made answer, that it was so, that in deede they had in England put downe all the Religious houses of Friars, and Monks, that were in England, and the images that were in their churches, & other places, were taken away, & vsed there no more, for that (as they say) by making of them, and putting of them where they were adored, was cleane contrary to the expresse commandement of Almighty God, Thou shalt not make to thy selfe any graven image, &c. & that for this cause they thought it not lawfull that they should stand in the church, which is the house of adoration. One that was at the declaring of these wordes, who was my Spader, Gonfalo Cerefo answered and said, if it were against the commandement of God, to haue images in the churches, that then he had spent a great deale of money in vaine, for that a perres past, he had made in this monastery of Santo Domingo, in this city of Mexico, an image of our Lady of pure silver & gold, with pearles & pretious stones, which cost him 7000, & odde pesos, & euery peso is 6, s. 8. d. of our money, which in deede was true, for that I haue seene it many times, my selfe where it stands. At the table was an other gentle man, who presuming to defende the cause, moe then any other that was there, said, that they knew wel ynough that they were made but of stocks & stones, & that to them was no worship giuen, but that there was a certaine veneration due vnto them, after they were set up in the church, & that they were set there to a good intentione one, for that they were bookes for the simple people, to make them vnderstand the glozy of the saints that were in heauen, & a shewe of them, to put vs in remembrance to cal vpon them, to be our intercessors vnto God for vs, for that we are such miserable sinners, that we are not worthy to appeare before God, & that by our deuotion to saints in heauen, they may obtaine at Gods handes the sooner, the thing that we demand of him. As for example, said he, imagin that a subiect hath offended his king vpon this earth, in any kind of respect, is it for the partie to go boldly to the king in person, & to demand pardon for his offences: no saith he, by presumption were to great, & possibly he might be repulled, & haue a great rebuke for his labour. Better it is for such a person to seeke some priuate man neere the king in his Court, & make him acquainted with his matter, and let him be a Mediator to his Maieste, for him, & for the matter he hath to do with him, and so might he the better come to his purpose, & obtaine the thing which he doeth demande: euen so saith he, it is with God & his saints in heauen, for we are wretched sinners, and not worthy to appeare, nor present our selues before the Maieste of God, to demand of him the thing that we haue neede of: therefore thou hast neede to be deuout, and haue deuotion to the mother of God, and the saints of heauen, to be intercessors to God for thee, & so maist thou the better obtaine of God the thing that thou doest demand. To this I answered, & saide, first, as touching the comparison you made of the intercessors to the king, how necellare they were, I would but aske you this question. Set the case that this king you speake of, if he be so merciful, as when he knoweth that one, or any of his subiects hath offended him, he send for him to his owne towne, or to his owne house, or place, & say vnto him, come hither, I knowe that thou hast offended many lawes, if thou doest knowe thereof, & doest repent thee of the same, with full intent to offend no more, I will forgive thy trespassse, & remember it no more: said I, if this be done by the kings owne person, what then hath this man neede to go seeke friendship at any of the kings priuate seruants handes, but goe to the principal, seeing that he is readier to forgive thee, when thou art to demand forgiveness at his handes. Euen so is it with our gracious God, who calleth & crieth out vnto vs throughout all the world, by the mouth of his Prophets, Apostles, & by his owne mouth, saith, Come vnto me all ye that labour, & are ouer laden, & I will refresh you, besides 1000, other offers & proffers which be doth make vnto vs in his holy Scriptures. What then haue we neede of the saints helpe that are in heauen, whereas the Lord himselfe doth so freely offer himselfe vnto vs: At which sayings, many of the hearers were assuied, & said, that by that reason, I would giue to vnderstand, that the inuocation of saints was to be disallowed, & by the lawes of God not commanded. I answered, that they were not my wordes, but the wordes of God himselfe: looke into the scriptures your self, & you shal to find it. The talke was perceaued to be prejudiciall to the Romish doctrine, & therefore it was commanded to be no more entreated of, & al remained without giuing vpon, had it not bene for a villanous Portingall that was in the company, who said, Basta fer Ingles para saber todo esto y mas: who the next day, without imparting any thing to any body, went to the Bishop of Mexico, and his Promitor, & saide, that in a place where he had bene the day before, was

an Englishman, who of Quines, vpon none other thing, as how to speake of S. Iohn de Villu, of not aboute a bow there was but one ward, is made by wherefore the great come and goe al alone, and an other whereby winds, is all away to the l in nothing else, de Countrey: al these great quantitie of go by into the wil from this poze the, all you come v wood, till you come without water, T for the folke of the the owners and the with also in a very blomen from the le to wne also is subie who we with those r not knewe the dang fruite of the Count cheit first comming. Passe a vates is the Rinconado, where the Indians betwix that and V you do begin to em in the world, & the de los Angelos, w of 600, household, come thorough wa Riuers of fresh wa gelos, to Mexico, city in my time, of the Suburbs of thic of Mexico, is 6 with in the midst o lake of standing w of the city, are man also with great m of lake of standing ter doth proceede themselves togeth ground, & in the m of in the midst of the not halfe finished, houses where Mus Cicropes that th Cicrop a gentler out against the fa

inner, they began  
y had ouerthow  
es of beauen the  
oned high waies  
ne certified out of  
they had in Eng  
ngland, and the  
no moze; for that  
cleane contrary  
selfe any grauen  
be church, which  
was my Spatter,  
to haue images  
peres past, he had  
our Lady of pure  
every yeto is 6,  
mp selfe whete it  
more then any o  
orks & stones, &  
unto them, after  
for that they were  
to were in heauen,  
toys unto God for  
oize God, & that  
he thing that wee  
ing upon p earth,  
emand pardon for  
ed, & haue a great  
meere the King in  
his Spacitie, for  
his purpose, & ob  
aintes in heauen,  
to fore the Spacitie  
e to be deuout,  
to God for the,  
his J and were, &  
to necessarie they  
of, if he be lo mer  
end for him to his  
that thou halt of  
sh full intent to of  
done by the kings  
king's puiat de  
en thou art to de  
y & crieth out w  
ton mouth, saith,  
1000, other of  
haue we need of  
himselfe unto vs?  
I would giue to  
God not consumm  
oke into the scrip  
the Romish doo  
oughte upon, ha  
r Ingles para la  
body, went to the  
we say before, was  
an

an Englishman, who had said, that there was no neede of sautes in p church, nor of any inuocation of Saints, vpon whose denomination I was apprehended for the same wordes here repeated, and none other thing, and thereupon was vled, as before is written.

Now to speake somewhat of the description of the countrey, you shall vnderstande, that the port of St. Iohn de Villua, is a very litle Island lott by the water side, the breadth is longed part the rest of it about a bowe shoote ouer, and standeth within two furlongs of the firme land. In my time there was but one house, and a litle Chappell to say Masse in: in all the Island, the side to the land wards, is made by mans hands, with free stone and grauel, and is 4. fathom deepe downe right, wherfoze the great ships that come in there, doe ride so nere the shoare of the Island, that you may come and goe aland vpon their beake noses. They vde to put great chaines of yron in at their halles, and an auker to the landward, and all litle ynough to moze well their shippes for feare of the wytherly winds, which come off the coast of Florida, that sometimes haue caried ships, and hoults, & all a way to the shoare. The king was wont to haue 20. great mighty Negroes, who did serue for nothing else, but onely to repaire the said Island, where the soule weaether doth hurt it. The Countrey al there about, is very plaine ground, & a mile from the sea side a great wildernes, with great quantitie of red Dzeere in the same, so that when the marriuers of the ships are disposed, they go by into the wildernes, & do kil of the same, & bringeth them aboord to eate, for their recreation.

From this port to the next towne, which is called Vera Cruz, are 5. leagues almost by the sea side, if you come within one league of the place, and then you turne by towards the land, into a wood, till you come to a litle riuer hard by the said towne side, which some times of the yere is dry without water. The towne of Vera Cruz in my time, had not past 300. householdes, and serued but for the folke of the ships, to buy and bring their goods aland, and deliuer it to their owuers, as also the stomers and their factors to receaue their goods of the Spatters of the ships. This towne standeth also in a very plaine on the one side the riuer, and the other side is entoured with much land blownen from the sea side with the tempest of weaether, many times comming vpon that coast. This towne also is subiect to great sicknesses, & in my time many of the mariners & officers of the ships did die with those disease, there accustomed, & especially those that were not vded to the Countrey, nor knew the danger thereof, but would commonly go in the fume in the heat of the day, & did eat fruits of the Countrey, which much disorder, & especially gaue themselves to womens company at their first comming: wherupon they were cast into a burning ague, of the which fewe escaped.

Halfe a daies iourney from Vera Cruz, towards Mexico, is a lodging of 5. or 6. houses, called the Rinconado, which is a place, where is a great pinnacle made of lime & stone, fast by a riuer side, where the Indians were wont to do their sacrifices vnto their gods, which is a plaine & low ground betwix that and Vera Cruz, and also subiect to sickness: but afterward, halfe a daies iourney that you do begin to enter into the high land, you shall find as faire, good, and sweete Countrey, as any in the world, & the farther you go, the goodlier and sweeter the countrey is, till you come to Pueblo de los Angeles, which may be some 43. leagues from Vera Cruz, which in my time a towne of 600. householdes, or thereabout, standing in a goodly soile. Betweene Vera Cruz & that, you shall come thorough many townes of the Indians, & villages, & many goodly fields of meadow grounds, Rivers of fresh waters, forrests, & great woods, very pleasaunt to behold. From Pueblo de los Angeles, to Mexico, is 22. leagues of very faire way, & countrey, as before is declared. Mexico was a city in my time, of not about 1500. householdes of Spaniards inhabiting there, but of India people in the Suburbs of the said City, dwelt about 300000. as it was thought, and many moze. This Citie of Mexico, is 69. leagues from the Noth sea, and 75. leagues from the south sea, so that it standeth in the midst of the maine land, betwixt the one sea & the other. It is situated in the middell of a lake of standing water, & entoured round about with the same, sauing in many places, going out of the city, are many broad waies through the said lake of water. This lake and city is entoured also with great mountaines round about, which are in compasse about 30. leagues, & the said city & lake of standing water, doth stand in a great plaine in the midst of it. This lake of standing water doth proceede from the shedding of the raime, that falleth vpon the said mountaines, & so gather themselves together in this place. All the whole proportion of this city doth stand in a very plaine ground, & in the midst of the said city, is a square place of a good bowe shoote ouer from side to side: & in the midst of the said place, is the high church, very faire & wel builded al though, at that time not halfe finished, & round about the said place, are many faire house & built: on the one side, are the houses where Mutezuma the great king of Mexico that was, dwelt, & nowe there lie alwaies the Altarpes that the king of Spaine sendeth thither euery 3. yeres. And in my time was there for Miceroy a gentleman of Castil, called Don Luis de Velasco. And on the other side of p said place, was against the same, is the Bishops house, very faire built, and many other house of goodly building:



ding. And hard by the same, are also other very faire houses, built by the Marques de Valle, otherwise called Hernando Cortes, who was he that first conquered the said Citie and Countrey, who after the said conquest which he made with great labour and trauell of his person, and danger of his life, and being grown great in the Countrey, the King of Spaine sent for him, saying that he had some particular matters to impart vnto him. And when hee came home, he could not be suffered to returne backe againe, as the King before had promised him. With the which, for sorrow that hee took, hee died, and this hee had for the reward of his good seruice. The said Citie of Mexico, hath the streets made very broad, and right, that a man being in the high place, at the one ende of the streete, may see at the least a good mile forward, and in all the one part of the streets of the North part of their Citie, there runneth a pretie lake of very cleere water, that every man may put into his house, as much as he wil, without the cost of any thing, but of the letting in. Also there is a great caue, of ditch of water, that cometh through the Citie, runneth vnto the high place, where come euery morning at the break of the day, 20. or 30. Canoes, of troughes of the Indians, which bring in them all manner of provision for the Citie, which is made, and groweth in the Countrey, which is a very good commodity for the Inhabitants of that place, And as for victuals in the said Citie, of Beefe, Mutton, and Pennes, Capons, Quails, Quince, Cocks, and such like, all are very good cheape: to say, the whole quarter of an Oxe, as much as a slaue can carry away from the Butchers, for 5. tompnes, that is, 5. Roials of place, which is iust 2. shillings, and 6. pence, and a fat Sheepe at the Butchers, for 3. Roials, which is 18. pence, and no more. Bread is as good cheape as in Spaine, as Apples, Peares, Pomegranats, and Quinces, at a reasonable rate. The Citie goeth wonderfully forwards in building of Friceries and Sunneries, and Chappels, and is like in time to come, to be the most populous Citie in the world, as it may be supposed. The weather is there alwaies very temperate, the day differeth but one howre of length all the yeere longe. The fieldes and the woods alwaies greene. The woods full of Popiniayes, and many other kind of birdes, that make such an harmonie of singing and crying, that any man will reioyce to heare it. In the fieldes are such odoriferous smells of flowers and herbes, that it giueth great content to the senses. About the Citie of Mexico 2. 3. or 4. leagues off, are diuers towncs of Indians, some of 4000. or 6000. households, which doe stand in such a goodly soile, that if Christians had the inhabitation thereof, it would be put to a further benefite. In my time were dwelling and aliaue in Mexico, many ancient men, that were of the Conquerors at the first conquest, with Hernando Cortes: for then it was about 36. yeeres agoe, that the said Countrey was conquered. About Mexico, there are diuers Spynes of silver, and also in other places there about, but the principall Spynes that are in all New Spaine, are in Sacatecas, 80. leagues from Mexico, and the Spynes of S. Martines, 30. leagues, both to the eastward of Mexico, where is great store of gold and silver. Also there is a place, called the Miltca, 50. leagues to the north west, whith doth yeeld great store of very good silke, and cochinnell. Wine and oile there is none growing in the Countrey, but what cometh out of Spaine. Also there are many goodly fruites in that Countrey, wherof wee haue none such, as Plantanos, Cuyanes, Sapotes, Cumes, and in the wilderness great store of black cherries, & other wholesome fruites. The Cochinnell is not a woome, or a flye, as some say it is, but a herrie that groweth vpon certaine bushes in the wilde field, which is gathered in time of the yeere, when it is ripe. Also the Indico that doth come from thence to die blew, is a certaine herbe that groweth in the wild fieldes, and is gathered at one time of the yeere, and burnt, and of the ashes thereof, with other confections put therunto, the said Indico is made. Balme, salsa perilla, Cana fistula, sugar, Oxe hides, and many other good & seruiciable things the Countrey doth yeeld, which are yeerely brought into Spaine, and there sold and distributed to many nations.

Robert Tomson.

A notable discourse of Master Iohn Chilton, touching the people, manners, Mynes, Cities, riches, forces, and other memorable things of the west Indias, seene and noted by himselfe in the time of his trauals, continued in those partes, the space of 17. or 18. yeeres.



In the yeere of our Lord, 1562, in the moneth of July, I Iohn Chilton, went out of this Citie of London into Spaine, where I remained for the space of 7. yeeres, and from thence I sailed into Noua Hispania, and so trauelled there, and by the south sea, vnto Peru, the space of 17. or 18. yeeres: after whose time expired, I returned into Spaine, and so in the yeere, 1586, in the moneth of July, I arrived at the foresaide Citie of London, where perusing the notes which I had taken in the time of my trauell in those yeeres, I haue set downe,

where, as followeth.

In the yeere  
sett in the Baye  
in her lading, a  
within a moneth  
pania, and came  
2. miles from the  
the Spyes, and a  
building, and cel  
There are built  
where the ships  
a shoare. From  
the, where all the  
as come thither,  
into Spaine. The  
Spanish fleet of  
ning of a pill for  
miles further up  
never any woman  
with child, the y  
the euery moir  
pours of the ear  
certaine houses  
wards, who accu  
the land. It stand  
store of know, wh  
first number of  
Perota, 9. league  
out of certaine  
houses, for the use  
the Angels, to cal  
belides a great  
topping to it, ma  
thousand Indians  
handfull of wher  
ren by the Kings  
but, anely for th  
whom the Tlaxc  
The Governour  
fresh chiefest can  
ter vices, as vni  
are chosen euery  
14. yeeres olde  
hamege of Diaz  
among them, pay  
the clothe with  
diuers and fine  
14. from Mexic  
then 60. thousand  
about two leag  
or 12. Spaniards  
belides these, the  
and Tichamacha  
Cities, they b  
to the Citie of M  
the Indias, ha  
in length, and s  
bring their provi

ques de Valle, orber  
and Countrey, who  
person, and danger  
he sent for him, sup  
came home, he could  
With the which,  
good service. The  
being in the high  
and in all the one  
of very cleere wa  
of any thing, but of  
ough the Citie, euen  
of 30. Canoas, of  
Citie, which is made,  
bitants of that place,  
s, Quatles, Guimpe  
n Ore, as much as  
of plate, which is worth  
ich is 18. pence, and  
as Apples, Peares,  
ly forward in build  
to be the most popu  
les very temperate,  
the woods alwaies  
make such an harmo  
are such odoriferous  
the Citie of Mexico  
of such goodnes, wh  
ould be put to a fur  
e men, that were of  
as about 36. yeeres  
s Pynes of silver,  
New Spaine, are in  
ues, both to the east  
called the Miltuca,  
and cochinele. Wine  
ine. Also there are  
uncanos, Guapares,  
of some fruites. The  
werth upon certaine  
re. Also the Indico  
wild fieldes, and is  
her confections put  
re hides, and many  
oughte into Spaine,

son.  
g the people,  
things of the  
continued in

Chilton, went out of  
ce of 7. yeeres, and  
and by the south sea,  
turned into Spaine,  
Citie of London,  
yeeres, I have set  
volume,

volume, as followeth.

In the yeere 1568, in the moneth of March, being desirous to see the world, I embarked my  
selfe in the Baye of Cales in Andalusia, in a Ship bound to the Isles of Canaries, where she toke  
in her lading, and set forth from thence for the voyage, in the moneth of June, the same yeere,  
Within a moneth after, we fell with the Isle of S. Domingo, and from thence directly to Noua His  
pania, and came into the port of S. Iohn de Vllua, which is a litle Island, standing in the sea, about  
2. miles from the land, where the king maintaineth about 50. souldiers, and capitaines, that keepe  
the Voyes, and about 150. Negroes, who all the yeere long are occupied in carrying of stones for  
building, and other uses, and to helpe to make fast the ships that come in there, with their cables.  
There are built two bulwarkes at each ende of a wall, that standeth like wise in the said Island,  
where the ships use to ride, made fast to the said wal, with their cables so neere, that a man may leape  
a boare. From this port I journeyed by land to a towne called Vera Cruz, standing by a rivers  
side, where all the factors of the Spanish merchants dwell, which receive the goods of such ships  
as come thither, and also take the same with such creature, and merchandize, as they returne backe  
into Spaine. They are in number about 400. who onely remaine there, during the time that the  
Spanish fleet discharge, and is loden againe, which is from the ende of August, to the begin  
ning of April following. And then for the unwholesomes of the place, they depart thence, 16.  
miles further by within the Countrey, to a towne called Xalapa, a very healthful soile. There is  
never any woman deliuerer of child, in this port, for so soone as they perceiue themselves conceiued  
with child, they get them into the Countrey, to auoid the perill of the infected aire, although they  
ke every moeying to buye throughout the towne about 2000. head of carrell, to take away the ill va  
pours of the earth. From Xalapa 7. leagues, I came to another place, named Perota, wherein are  
certaine houses builded of straw, called by the name of Ventz, the Inhabitants whereof are Sp  
aniards, who accustom to harbour such trauellers, as are occasioned to iourney that way by  
the land. It standeth in a great wood of Pine, & Cedar trees, the soile being very cold, by reason of  
slope of snow, which lieth on the mountaines there, all the yeere long. There are in that place, an  
infinite number of Deere, of bignes like unto great mules, hauing also homes of great length. From  
Perota, 9. leagues, I came to the fontes of Ozumba, which fontes are springes of water, issuing  
out of certaine rocks, into the midst of the high waies, where likewise are certaine raiuges, and  
houses, for the uses before mentioned. Eight leagues off from this place, I came to the Citie of  
the Angels, so called by that name, of the Spaniards, which inhabiteth there, to the number of 1000.  
besides a great number of Indians. This Citie standeth in very plaine fieldes, hauing neere ad  
joining to it, many sumptuous Cities, as namely the Citie of Tlaxcala, a Citie of two hundred  
thousand Indians, Tributaries to the King, although he exacteth no other tribute of them, then a  
handfull of wheate a yeere, which amounteth to 13. thousand Spanneges, yearly, as hath app  
eared by the Kings booke of account. And the reason why he contenteth himselfe with this tri  
bute onely for them, is, because they were the occasion that he tooke the Citie of Mexico, with  
whom the Tlaxcallians had warre at the same time, when the Spaniards came into the Countrey.  
The Governour of this Citie, is a Spaniard, called among them, the Alcalde Maior, who admini  
strerth chiefest causes of iustice, both vnto the Christians, and Indians, referring smaller and lig  
ter vices, as drunkennes, and such like, to the iudgement, and discretion of such of the Indians, as  
are chosen every yeere to rule amongst them, called by the name of Alcaldes. These Indians from  
14. yeeres olde vnto wards, pay vnto the King for their yeerely tribute, one ounce of silver, and an  
hamege of Wax, which is valued among them commonly, at 12. Roials of plate. The widows  
among them, pay halfe of this. The Indians both of this Citie, and of the rest, lying about Mexico,  
are clothed with mantels of linnen cloth, made of cotton wool, painted throughout with workes of  
diuers and fine colours. It is distant from the Citie of the Angels, 4. leagues to the northward, and  
14. from Mexico. There is another Citie a league from it, called Cholula, consisting of more  
then 60. thousand Indians, tributaries, and there dwelleth not about 12. Spaniards there. From  
it, about two leagues, there is another, called Acazingo, of about 50000. Indians, and about 8.  
or 12. Spaniards, which standeth at the foote of the Vulcan of Mexico, on the East side. There are  
besides these, three other great Cities, the one named Tepiac, a very famous Citie, Waxazingo,  
and Tichamachalcho: all these in times past, belonged to the kingdom of Tlaxcal, and from these  
Cities they bring all their Curbanos into Spaine. The distance from the Citie of the Angels,  
to the Citie of Mexico, is 20. leagues. This Citie Mexico, is the Citie of greatest fame in all  
the Indies, hauing goodly, and costly houses in it, builded all of lime and stone, and seven streetes  
in length, and seven in breadth, with rivers running thorough every second streete, by which they  
bring their provision in Canoas. It is situated at the foote of certaine hills, which containe in com  
passe

Durcan is a  
hill that conti  
nually burn  
eth with fire.  
Cochinilla.

passe by estimation, about 20. leagues, compassing the said Citie on the one side, and a lake which is 14. leagues about on the other side. Upon which lake, there are built many notable and sumptuous Cities, as the City of Tezcuc, where the Spaniards built 6. frigates, at that time when they conquered Mexico, and where also Fernando Cortes made his abode 5. or 6. moneths, in curing of the sickness of his people, which they had taken at their coming into the Countrey. There dwelt in this Citie, about 60000. Indians, which pay tribute to the King. In this Citie the said Fernando built the finest Church that ever was built in the Indies, the name whereof is S. Peters. After I had continued 6. yeeres in this Citie, being desirous to see further the Countreys, I imploied that which I had, and tooke my voyage towards the provinces of the California, in the which was discovered a certaine Countrey, by a Byskaine, whose name was Diego de Guirara, and called it after the name of his Countrey, New Biskaye, where I sold my merchandize for exchange of silver, for there were there certaine rich Mines discovered by the aforesaid Biskaine. Going from Mexico, I directed my voyage toward the south west, to certaine Mines, called Tamascal Tepec, and so travelled forwarde, the space of 20. daies, through desert places uninhabited, till I came to the valley of S. Bartholomew, which joyneth to the province of New Biskaye. In all these places the Indians for the most part goe naked, and are wild people. Their common armour is bowes, and arrows, they use to eate up such Christians as they come by. At my returne to Mexico, I came along by the coast of the South sea, throught the province of Sacatula, from thence into the province of Coloa, where I imploied the silver that I had, in a certaine graine, growing like an Almond, called amongst the Indians, Cacao, which in Nova Hispania is current for money, to buy things of small value, as fruits, &c. for that they have no small money there, and in which also they pay the King his tribute. They grinde this graine to a powder, and mingle it with water, and so is made both bread, and drinke unto them, which is a provision of great profit, and good strength. From hence departing, I came to another province, named Xalisco, and from thence to the port of Nauidad, which is 66. leagues from Mexico, in which port arrive alwaies in the moneth of Aprill, all the ships that came out of the South sea, from China, and the Philippines, and there they laie their merchandize a shoare. The most part whereof, is manuels made of cotton wool, waxe, and fine platters gilded, made of earth, and much gold. The next summer following, being in the yeere 1570. (which was the first yeere that the Spanes Bulls were brought into the Indies) I undertooke another voyage to wards the province of Sonsonate, which is in the kingdom of Guaximala, wherher I carried divers merchandize of Spaine, all by land, on Mules backs. The way thitherward from Mexico, is to the Citie of the Angels, and from thence to another Citie of Christians, 80. leagues off, called Guaxaca, in which there dwelt about 50. Spaniards, and many Indians. All the Indians of this province, pay their tribute in manuels of cotton wooll, and Cochonello, wherof there groweth abundance throughout this Countrey. Neere to this place there lieth a port in the South sea, called Aquatulca, in the which there dwelleth now about 3. or 4. Spaniards, with certaine Negroes, which the King maintaineth there: in which place, Sir Francis Drake arrived, in the yeere, 1579. in the moneth of Aprill, where I lost with his being there, about 1000. duckets, which he tooke away, with much other goods of other merchants of Mexico, from one Francisco Gomes Rangifa, factor there for all the Spanish merchants that then traded in the South sea: for from this port they use to imbarke all their goods that goe for Peru, & to the kingdom of Hunduras. From Guaxaca, I came to a towne named Nixapa, which standeth upon certaine very high hills, in the province of Sapotecas, wherem inhabiteth about the number of 20. Spaniards, by the king of Spaines commandement to keepe that Countrey in peace, for the Indians are very rebellious: & for this purpose, he bestoweth on them the townes & cities that be within that province. From hence I went to a Citie, called Teccoantepec, which is the farthest towne to the Eastward in all Nova Hispania, which sometimes did belonge to the Marques De Valle, and because it is a very fit port, standing in the South sea, the king of Spaine, upon a rebellion made by the said Marques against him, tooke it from him, and doth now possesse it as his owne. Here in the yeere 1571. I saw a peece of Ordnance of brass, called a Demy culverin, which came out of a ship, called the Jesus of Lubeecke, which Captaine Hawkins left in S. John de Villu, being in fight with the Spaniards, in the yeere, 1568. which yeere they afterwards carried 100. leagues by land, over mighty mountains to the said city, to be imbarked there for the Philippines. Leaving Teccoantepec, I went still along by the South sea, about 150. leagues in the desolate province of Soconusco, in which province there groweth Cacao, which the Christians carry from thence into Nova Hispania, for that it will not growe in any colde Countrey. The Indians of this Countrey, paye the King their tribute, in Cacao, giving him 400. Cartas, and every Cart is 2000. Almonds, which Cart is worth in Mexico 30. peeces of reals of plate. They are

Acto Biskap.

The haven  
where the  
ships of China  
& the Philip-  
pines arrive.

Aquatulca.

A ship  
called the  
Jesus of  
Lubeecke  
being in  
fight with  
the Spaniards.

men of great  
20. christians.  
Guafacapan:  
about 200. In  
Guaximala, wh  
yards, & here t  
repairs for the  
land, and is bet  
Citie to the S  
I carried out  
lyeth 7. league  
caxula, where  
lade backe ag  
nare: I traile  
beth all the shi  
to Costaricca,  
Panama, and t  
not passe by L  
annele (which  
Cauillos, lyin  
ming in of the  
strength, hau  
merch of Augu  
receiv in agat  
though it be u  
and golde of N  
dize they retur  
course by the I  
pades of no g  
intermost part  
which is the ch  
greatest impo  
ca, & all other  
they take in v  
for said place  
this port it is  
famous deepe  
towne, in whic  
on the Sea, an  
people of the c  
stand therof.  
the Tower the  
ance subvert  
fayle of ships,  
the towne of H  
taineth there  
ed in it about  
though at the  
cher towne call  
place, 60. leag  
land. The chie  
led Cuba, wh  
Southside of  
they kill only  
taine there ma  
led, and cut in  
come for Span  
ouer to Nonib

de, and a lake which  
is notable and fump  
that time when they  
moneths in curing  
metre. There be  
the said Fernan-  
of S. Peters. After  
tre is, I imploied  
ia, in the which was  
Guaira, and called it  
e for exchange of  
kaine. Going from  
Tamalescal Tepec,  
bites, till I came to  
In all these places  
in armour is better,  
turne to Mexico, I  
from thence into the  
ne, growing like an  
current for money to  
re, and in which also  
ing it with water,  
at profit, and good  
o, and from thence to  
e alwaies in the mo-  
the Phillipinz, and  
made of cotton wool,  
ner following, being  
ought into the Indi-  
is in the kingdome  
e, on Pules backs,  
thence to another Ci-  
e 50, Spaniards, and  
of cotton wool, and  
I recee to this place  
ellect not about 3, of  
in which place, this  
I lost with his being  
other merchants of  
merchants that then  
ys that goe for Peru,  
apa, which standeth  
about the number of  
antrey in peace, for  
to lunces, & cities that  
, which is the farthest  
to the Marques De  
aine, vpon a rebellion  
stesse it as his owne,  
culuerin, which came  
ohn de Villua, being  
caried 100, leaguers  
hillippinas. Learning  
e do late prouince of  
carry from thence to  
The Indians of this  
as, and every Carge  
of place. They are  
men

men of great riches, and withall very proud, and in all this prouince throug hout, there dwell not  
20. christians. I traualled through another prouince called Suchtepec: thence to y prouince of  
Guadalacapan: in both which prouinces are very fewe people, the biggest towne therein hauing not  
about 200. Indians, the chiefest marchandize there is Cacao, and hence I went to the City of  
Guatemala, which is the chief city of all this kingdome. In this cite do inhabit about 80. Span-  
yards, & here the kin: hath his gouernors, & Counsell, to whom all the people of the kingdome  
repaire for Justice. This City standeth from the coast of the South sea, 14. leagues within the  
land, and is very riche by reason of the gold that they fetch out of the coast of Veragua. From this  
cite to the Eastward 60. leagues, lyeth the prouince Sonsonate, where I sold the marchandize  
I carred out of noua Hispania. The chiefest cite of this prouince is called S. Saluador, which  
lyeth 7. leagues from the coast of the South sea, and hath a port lying by the Sea coast called A-  
cazuela, where the ships arriue with the marchandize they bring from noua Hispania: from thence  
I came againe the Cacao there dwill be to the number of 60. Spanyards. From Sonson-  
ate I traualled to Nicoya, which is in the kingdome of Nicaragua, in which port the king buildeth  
all the shipping that trauele out of the Indies to the Molucces. I went forward from thence to  
Costaricca, where the Indians both men and women goe all naked, & the lande lyeth between  
Panama, and the kingdome of Guatemala: and for that the Indians there liue as warriors, I durst  
not passe by land, so that here in a towne called S. Saluador, I bestowed that which I carred, in  
ancke (which is a kinde of thing to dye blew withall) which I carred with mee to the port of  
Cauallas, lying in the kingdome of Honduras, which port is a mighty huge riuer, and at com-  
ming in of the one side of it, there lyeth a towne of little force without oppinance, any other  
strength, hauing in it houses of strawe: at which towne the Spaniards vse yearly in the mo-  
neth of August, to vnlade 4. ships, which come out of Spaine laden with riche marchandize and  
receiue in againe here their lading of a kind of marchandize called Anneile and Cutchanelio(al,  
though it be not of such value as that of noua Hispania) and siluer of the mines of Tomangua,  
and golde of Nicaragua, and bites, and Salsa perilla, the best in all the Indies, al which marchandize  
they returne and depart from thence alwaies in the moneth of Aprill following, taking their  
course by the Island of Iamaica, in which Island there dwell on the West side of it certaine Span-  
yards of no great number. From this place they goe to the cape of S. Anthonie, which is the  
westernmost part of the Westward of the Island of Cuba, and from thence to Hauana lying hard by,  
which is the chiefest port of the king of Spaine hath in all the Countreies of the Indies, and of  
greatest impoytance: for all the ships, both from Peru, Honduras, Portorricco, S Domingo, Iama-  
ica, & all other places in his Indies, arriue there at their returne to Spaine, for that in this port  
they take in victuals, and water, and the most part of their lading: here they meete from all the  
foreignest places alwaies in the beginning of May by the kings commandement: at the entrance of  
this port it is so narrow, that there can scarce come in two ships together, although it be about 6.  
leagues deepe in the narrowest place of it. In the Northside of the coming in their standeth a  
towne, in which there watcheth euery day a man, to descric the Sailes of ships, which he can see  
on the Sea, and as many as he discovereth so many banners he fettereth vpon the Tower that the  
people of the towne (which standeth within the port about a mile from the towne) may vnder-  
stand thereof. Under this tower there lyeth a sandy shoie, where men may easily go a land, and by  
the Tower there runneth a hill along by the waters side, which easely with small force of oppi-  
nance subdueth the towne and port. The port within is so large that there may easely ride a  
slepe of ships, without anker or cable, for no winde is able to hurt them. There inhabit within  
the towne of Hauana about 300. Spanyards, and about 60. Souldiers, which the King main-  
taineth there for the keeping of a certaine Castell, which he hath of late erected, which hath plain-  
ted in it about 12. peeces of small ordnance, and is compassed round with a small ditch, where  
though at their pleasure, they may let in the sea. About 14. leagues from Hauana, there lyeth ano-  
ther towne called Wanabacoa, in which there is dwelling, about 100. Indians, and from this  
place, 60. leagues, there lyeth another towne named Bahama, situate on the Northside of the Is-  
land. The chiefest cite of it is the Island of Cuba, (which is about 200. leagues in length) is also cal-  
led Cuba, where dwelleth a 3. shop, and about 200. Spanyards, which towne standeth on the  
Southside of the Island, about 2. leagues from Hauana. All y trades of this Island is cattel which  
they kill onely for the byss y are brought thence into Spaine: for which end the Spaniards main-  
taine there many Negroes to kill their cattel, & foster a great number of hogges, which being kil-  
led, and cut into small peeces, they dry in the sunne, and so make it pousiffon for the ships, which  
come for Spaine. Hauing remained in this Island ii. moneths, I tooke shipping in a Frigate, & went  
ouer to Nonibre de Dios, and from thence by land to Panama, which standeth vpon y Southsea.

The description  
of Hauana  
at large.

The final force  
of Hauana.

The common  
dities of Cuba

From Nombre de Dios to Panama, it is 17 leagues distant. From which towne there runneth a river which is called the river of Chagre, which runneth within 5 leagues of Panama, to a place called Cruces, through which river they carry their goods, & disembark it at the sayd Cruces, and from thence it is conveyed in Poles backes to Panama by lande: where they againe imbarke it in certaine small ships in the South sea for all the coast of Peru. In one of these ships, I went to Potossi, and from thence by lande to Cusco, and from thence to Paica. There I remained the space of seven moneths, & then returned into the kingdome of Guatimal, and arrived in the prouince of Nicoya, and Nicaragua. From Nicaragua I traueiled by lande to a prouince called Nicamula (which lyeth toward the North sea in certaine high mountaines) for that I could not passe thorough the kingdome of Guatimal at that time for waters, where with all the lowe Countreies of the Prouince of Suconusco, lying by the South sea is drowned, with the raine that falleth about in the mountaines enduring alwaies from Aprill to September: which season for that cause they call their winter. From this prouince, I came into another called de Vera Paz, in which the chiefest Citie is also called after that name, where there dwelleth a Bishop, and about foure Spaniards. Among the mountaines of this Countreie toward the North Sea, there is a prouince called La canona, where are Indian men of warre which the king cannot subdue, for that they haue Townes and Fortes in a great lake of water about in the saide mountaines, the most part of them go naked, and some weare mantels of Cotten wooll. Distant from this about eight leagues, I came into another Prouince called the Prouince of Chiapa, wherein the chiefest Citie is called Sacatlan, where there dwelleth a Bishop, and about a hundred Spaniards. In this Countreie there is great store of Cotton wooll, wherof the Indians make fine linnen cloth, which the Christians buye and carie into Noua Hispania. The people of this Prouince pay their tribute to the king all in Cotton wooll and Fetters. Fourteene leagues from this Citie, there is another called Chiapa, where are the finest Gennes in all the Indies, which are caried hence to Mexico, 300 leagues from it. From this Citie I traueiled hill through hills and mountaines, till I came to the ende of this Prouince, to a hill called Ecatepec, which in English signifieth the hill of wind: for that they say, it is the highest hill that euer was discovered: for from the toppe of it may be discovered both the North, and the South Seas, and it is in height supposed to be nine leagues. They which traueile ouer it, lie alwaies at the foote of it ouernight, and begin their iourney about midnigh, to trauell to the toppe of it before the Sunne rise the next day, because the winde bloweth with such force afterwards, that it is impossible for any man to goe vpon the foote of this hill, to Teoantepec, the first Towne of Noua Hispania, are about fiftene leagues, and so from hence I iourneyed to Mexico. By and by after I came to Mexico (which was in the yeere 1572.) in the companie of another Spaniard, which was my companion in this iourney, we went together toward the Prouince of Panuco, which lieth vpon the coast of the North Seas, and within thre dayes iourney we entered a Citie called Mexiclan, where there dwelleth twelue Spaniards: the Indian inhabitants there were about thirtie thousand. This Citie standeth vpon certaine high mountaines, which are very thicke planted with Townes very holtsome, and fruitfull, hauing plentifull fountaines of water running through them. The hie wayes of these hilles are all set with frutes, and trees of diuers kindes, & most pleasant: in euery Towne as we passed through, the Indians presented vs with victuals: Within twentie leagues of this place, there is another Citie called Clanchinolitepec, belonging to a Gentleman, where there inhabiteth about fourtie thousand Indians: and there are among them eight or nine Fryers of the order of Saine Augustine, who haue there a Monasterie. Within thre dayes after we departed from this place, and came to a Citie called Guaxutla, where there is another Monasterie of Fryers of the same order: there dwell in this Towne about twelue Spaniards. From this place forwarde beginneth a Prouince called Guastecan, which is all plaine grownds without any hills. The first Towne we came vnto is called Tanguialabe, in which there dwell many Indians high of stature, hauing all their bodies painted with blew, and weare their haire long downe to their knees, tyed as women vse to doe with their hairelaces. When they goe out of their doores, they carrie with them their bowes and arrowes, being very great archers, going for the most part naked. In those Countreies they take neither golde, nor siluer for exchange of any thing, but onely Salt, which they greatly esteeme, and vse it as a principall medicine for certaine wormes which breed in their lippes, and in their gummies. After nine dayes trauell from this place, we came to a Towne called Tampica, which is a port Towne vpon the Sea, wherein there dwell I thinke fourette Christians, of which number whilst we abode there, the Indians killed fourteene, as they were gathering of Salt, which is all the trade that they haue in this place: it standeth vpon the entrie of the river of Panuco, which is a mightie great river, and there it is not for a sand that lieth

Ecatepec a hill  
nine leagues  
high.

Salt a principall  
part marchants  
vse.

John Chilton.  
at the mouth of  
hence we went  
tie, where the k  
the Christians,  
In this count  
ter, which wate  
pation came to  
stare, which I  
came to me, an  
withstanding n  
forward in our  
ner in a Canoa,  
many wayes, c  
about two leagu  
in certaine co  
their bowes and  
I made signes  
lovs which was  
and laid me vpo  
hought vnto m  
mounded to ask  
them: for (sayd  
to whom I answ  
chou in ayre: th  
eare thce. So I  
med about any c  
asked me what I  
hile water to dri  
guided full of w  
that the Casique  
the hilles where  
which this Casic  
other things a res  
with them about  
her, & I desired  
way, going befo  
hought me into  
come to a towne  
plaine fields wall  
about 4. or 5. & th  
tries subiect vnto  
partes of the Ind  
In this towne af  
of me but that I  
those kinde of Ju  
great pride in kill  
bought it about  
dayes, till I recou  
hdom the Micco  
certaine way fro  
travoye their ma  
So this captaine  
which he had brou  
wine called Tanc  
las Palmas of Gre  
by this river the sp  
sufficed to cut tim  
swimming in the wa  
through woods, ha



in all the Indies, and from thence they fetch most siluer: In which mines there dwelt about 300. Christians, and there our Captaine gaue vs leaue to depart. So we came to the valley of S. Michael towards Mexico, and from thence to Pueblo nouo, & from that place to the prouince of Mechuacan, after which name the chiefest Citie of that place is called, where there dwels a Bishop, and about 100. Spaniards in it. It aboundeth with all kinde of Spanish fruites, and hath woods full of nutt trees, and wilde vines there are many mines of copper, and great store of catel: It lyeth 60. leagues from Mexico, whither we came within 4. daies after: the Indians of this Countrey are very mightie and bygge men. Afterwards I returned another way to the prouince of Sonfonate by Vera cruz, and so to Rio Aluarado, and from thence to the prouince of Campego, which lyeth on the Southside of the bay of Mexico: The chief towne of this prouince is called Merida, in which is a Bishop and almost C. Spaniards. The Indians of this prouince pay all their tribute in mantles of cotten wooll and cacao. There is no poxe in all this prouince for a theyr of a C. tunne to ryde in, but onely in the riuer of Tabasco, by which riuer this Citie of Merida standeth. The chiefest marchandize which they lade there in final Frigates is a certaine wood called Campege, (where with they vse to dye) as also hydes and annyle. By this there lyeth the prouince Iucatan where the Hundura by the Nozle sea coast, where there is also another Bishop, and a towne likewise named Iucatan where there dwell a fewe Spaniards. They haue no force at all in all this coast to defende themselves withall, save onely that the sea is low, and there is no Port to receive any shipping, unlesse they be Frigates, which carry from thence to the Port of S. John de Villua waxe, Cacao, honny, & also mantels of cotten wooll, whereof they make there great store, and of which kinde of Marchandize there is great trade thence to Mexico: of the same also they pay their tribute to the King. The king hath tribute brought him yeerely out of the Indies into Spaine betwene 17. and 7. Millions of gold, and siluer: for he receiuech of euery Indian which is subiect vnto him, excepting those which doe belong to the Incomendados (which are the childre of those Spaniards, who first conquered the land) to whom the king gaue, and graunted the government of the Citie and townes subdued for three liues, twelue royals of plate, and a bannege of Spais (which is a wheat of the Countrey, v. of them making a quarter of English measure) and of euery widow woman he hath vi. royals and a bannege of Spais, and so if any Indidell haue 17. children in his house he payeth for euery one of them being aboute 17. yeres old after that rate: this wheat being duely brought to the Governour of euery prouince and Citie, is solde in Mexico by the Kinges gouernours there euery yeere: so that the monee receiued for it, is put into the kings Treasurie there, and so is yeerely caried from thence into Spaine. Of the Spaniards which are owners of the mines of gold and siluer, he receiuech the fife part of it, which hee calleth his Quintas, which being taken out of the heape, there is his armes set on it, for otherwise it may not be brought out of the lande into Spaine, vnder paine of death. The marke of siluer which is 8. ounces, when it cometh out of the mines not hauing the Kinges Seale vpon it, is woorth fortye thre royales of plate, and so it is currant, and when they will bring it to Spayne, they carry it to the Kinges Treasure house, where his Seale is set vpon it, and so it is rayled in value thereby to thre score and foure royals of plate, and so the king hath for his custome of euery marke of plate twenty and one royals. From the yeere of 70. which was the yeere, that the Popes Bulls came into the Indies, as is aforesaid mentioned, he hath receiued both of Indians which are tributaries vnto him, and also of all others belonging to the Incomendados of euery one being aboute 12. yeeres of age, 4. royals of euery bull. Also they carry other pardons with them into the Indies for such as bee dead, although a 100. yeeres before the Spaniards came into the countrey: which pardons the Fryers in their preaching perswaded the poore Indians to take, telling them that with giuing 4. royals of plate for a Masse, they would deliuer their soules out of purgatory. Of the Christians likewise dwelling there he hath 14. royals for euery Bull, and there be certaine Bulls brought thither for the Christians besides the former, which serue for pardoning all such faules wherein they haue transgressed either against the king by keeping backe his customes, or one against another by any other inuery, for euery hundred crownes whereof his conscience doth accuse him that hee hath decreed the king or any other, he must giue 10. for a Bull and so after that rate for euery C. which he hath any way stolen, and so is pardoned the fault. The reuenuue of his Bulls after this maner yeereth vnto his Treasurie yeerely aboute thre Millions of gold as I haue bene credibly informed: although of late both the Spaniards, and Indians do refuse to take the Bulls, for that they perceiue he doth make a yeerely custome of it: onely the Indians take one pardon for all his household, whereas in former time euery Indian vsed to take one for euery person in his house, and searcht the same into small peeces, and giueth to euery one of his household a little

Copper mines

The greatest  
of the king of  
Spaine recei-  
ueth out of the  
west Indies.

The Quinto.

peere, saying  
for, they had  
seen where they  
somes, which  
ple of both loze  
other King of  
that they should  
he brought our  
groweth in S.  
wayes in subie  
and lost of good  
the people their  
undoubtedly do

About Mexi  
Nege, which ye  
make hennep, re  
leaf, there grow  
any thing.

Thus to n  
haue obserued.

The first ve  
ant Capt.

and ano  
yeere  
ner



uers, and found  
him after the sa  
people hereupo  
their sleepe fled  
mainting as me  
Towne. But  
the market plac  
ket place they d  
caliures at thos  
one of the princ  
the rest of thei  
seeing that they  
they in the Tow  
taine comming  
great feare, the  
waded all to the  
Thus this  
flew onely one  
ter was, and of  
But hee bein  
of Darienc, & h  
Panama, and N  
golde and situa

peere,

well about 300,  
the valley of S.  
to the prouine of  
here dwells a Sp.  
fruites, and hath  
great store of ear.  
the Indians of this  
ap to the prouine  
duince of Campe.  
prouince is called  
prouince pay all  
his prouince for a  
this Citie of Mexi.  
is a certaine wood  
his there lyeth the  
also another Sp.  
ardes. They haue  
e L and is low, and  
from thence to the  
whereof they make  
ce to Mexico: of the  
jim yeerely out of  
e receiue of eur.  
Incommenderos  
poin the king gaue,  
s, we lue royals of  
aking a quarter of  
annage of Spayle,  
them being aboue  
e of every prouince  
e that the money  
d from thence into  
er, he receiue the  
eape, there is his  
aine, vnder paine of  
minis not hauing  
it is current, and  
e houle, where his  
ure royals of plate,  
royals. From the  
as is afoze mentio.  
of all others belon.  
oyals of euery bull,  
ad, although a 100.  
pers in their yea.  
4, royals of plate for  
is likewise dwelling  
thicher for the Chi.  
they haue receiued  
r by any other inu.  
e hath deceiued the  
e which he hath a.  
his maner yeeldeth  
dibly in forment: al.  
s, for that they per.  
don for all his houl.  
person in his houl.  
houlshoulde a litle  
pierre,

peace, saying thus, they neede nowe no more, seeing in that which they bought the yeere before, they had about 10000. peeres pardon. These pieces they sticke vp in the wall of the houses where they lie. Both the Chyilians and Indians are weary with these infinite taxes and customs, which of late he hath imposed vpon them, more then in the yeeres before. So as the people of both partes did rebell thus in the time that I was among them, and would haue set vp another King of them selues: For which cause the King hath commanded vpon paine of death, that they should not plant either wine or oyle there, but should alwayes stand in neede of them to be brought out of Spaine, although there would more growe there in foure yeeres, then there groweth in Spaine in twentie, it is so fertile a countrey. And the King to keepe the countrey alwayes in subiection, and to his owne vse, hath straightly prouided by Law, vpon paine of death, and loss of goods, that none of these countreies should traffike with any other nation, although the people themselues doe much more desire to trade with any other then with them, and would undoubtedly doe, if they feared not the perill ensuing thereupon.

Rebellions in  
Noua Hispania,  
by too great  
exactions.

About Mexico, and other places in Noua Hispania, there groweth a certaine plant called Nege, which yeeldeth Wine, vinegar, Honey, and black Sugar, and of the leaues of it dried, they make hempe, ropes, shooes which they vse, and cytes for their houses: and at the ende of euery leaf, there groweth a sharpe point like an awle, wherewith they vse to boze or pearce through any thing.

Thus to make an ende, I haue here set downe the summe of all the chiefest things that I haue obserued, and noted in my 17. yeeres trauelle in those partes.

The first voyage, attempted and set forth by the expert, and valiant Captaine M. Francis Drake himselfe, with a ship called the Dragon,

and another ship, and a Pinnesse, to Nombre de Dios, and Dariene, about the yeere 1572. Written, and recorded by one Lopez a Spaniard, in this manner following: which Spaniard, with the discourse about him, was taken at the Rauer of Plate by the Ships set forth by the Right Honourable the Earle of Cumberland, in the yeere 1586.

**T**here was a certaine English man named Francis Drake, who hauing intelligence howe the Towne of Nombre de Dios in Noua Hispania, had but small store of people remaining there, came on a night, & entered the Port with foure Pinnesses, and landed about 150. men, and leauing 70. men with a trumpet, in a fozte which was there, with the other 80. he entered the Towne, without doing any harme, all hee came to the market place, and there discharged his calliwers, and sounded a trumpet very loude, and the other which he had left in the Fozte answered him after the same maner, with the discharging their calliwers, and sounding their trumpet: the people hereupon not thinking of any such matter, were put in great feare, and waking out of their sleepe fled all into the mountaines, inquiring one of another what the matter should be, remaining as men amazed, not knowing what that vproze was which happened so suddenly in the Towne. But fourteene or fiftene of them toyning together with their barquebusses, went to the market place to knowe what they were that were in the Towne, and in a corner of the market place they did discouer the English men, and seeing them to be but fewe, discharged their calliwers at those English men: their fortune was such that they killed the Trumpetter, and shot one of the principall men thorow the leg, who seeing himselfe hurt, retyped to the Fozte, where the rest of their company was left: they which were in the Fozte sounded their trumpet, and seeing that they in the Towne did not answer them, and hearing the calliwers, thought that all thep in the Towne had bene slaine, and thereupon fled to their Pinnesses: The English Captaine comming to the Fozte, and not finding his men which he left there, hee and his were in so great feare, that leauing their furniture behinde them, and putting off their hose, swamme, and waded all to their Pinnesses, and so went with their shippes againe out of the Fozte.

Thus this English Captaine called Francis Drake departed from Nombre de Dios, and flew onely one man in the Towne which was looking out of a windowe to see what the matter was, and of his men had onely his Trumpetter slaine.

But hee being discontented with the repulse which he had receiued there, came to the sound of Dariene, & hauing conference with certaine Negroes which were fled from their masters of Panama, and Nombre de Dios, the Negroes did tell him, that certaine Spules came laden with golde and silver from Panama to Nombre de Dios, who in companie of these Negroes went

The battaine  
exploite of M.  
Francis Drake  
betwixt Pana-  
ma and Nombre  
de Dios.



thereupon on land, and stayed in the way where the treasure should come with 100. shot, and soooke two companies of muses, which came onely with their dryeres mistrusting nothing, and he caried away the golde onely, for they were not able to carrie the siluer through the mountaines. And two dayes after he came to the house of Crosses, where hee killed sixe or seuen marchants, but found no golde nor siluer but much marchandise: so he fired the house, where was burnt about 200000. Duckets in marchandise, and so went to his shippe againe: and within halfe an houre after he was a shipboorde, there came downe to the sands 300. shot of the Spaniards in the sight of his shippes, of purpose to seeke him, but hee cared little for them being out of their reach, and so departed with his treasure.

### The voyage of Iohn Oxnam of Plymmouth, to the West India, and ouer the Straight of Dariene into the South

Sca. Anno 1575. Written by the foresayd  
Lopez in the same discourse.

**T**here was another English man, who hearing of the spoyle that Francis Drake had done upon the coast of Noua Hispania, and of his good aduerture and safe returne home, was thereby prouoked to vndertake the like enterpryse, with a ship of 140. tunnes, and 70. men, and came thither, and had also conference with the foxe sayde Negroes: and hearing that the golde and siluer which came by the Strailes from Panama to Nombre de Dios, was now conducted with souldiers, he determined to doe that which neuer any man before enterprised: and landed in that place where Francis Drake before had had his conference with the Negroes. This man courtes his ship after he had brought her aground with boughes of trees, and hid his great Ordnance in the ground, and so not leauing any man in his shippe, hee tooke two small pieces of ordnance, and his calliers, and good store of victuals, & so went with the Negroes about twelue leagues into the maine land, to a Riuer that goeth to the South sea, and there hee cut wood and made a Pinnele, which was 45. foote by the keele, and hauing made this Pinnele, he went into the South sea, carrying sixe Negroes with him to be his guides, & so went to the Island of Pearles, which is 25. leagues from Panama, which is in the way that they come from Peru to Panama, and there he was ten dayes without shewing himselfe to any man, to see if he might get any ship that came from Peru: At last, there came a small Barke by, which came from Peru from a place called Quito, which hee tooke, and found in her 60. thousand waight of golde, and much victuals. But not contenting himselfe with this prise, hee stayed long without sending away his prise of any of the men, and in the ende of sixe dayes after, hee tooke another Barke which came from Lima, in which hee tooke 100. thousand waight of siluer in barres, with the which hee thought to haue gone, and entered the Riuer, but first hee went into the Islands to see if he could finde any Pearles: Where hee found a fewe, and so returned to his Pinnele againe, and so sayling to the Riuer from whence hee came, and comming nere to the mouth of the sayd Riuer, hee sent away the two prises that hee tooke, and with his Pinnele hee went by the Riuer. The Negroes that dwelt in the Island of Pearles, the same night that hee went from them, went in Canoas to Panama, and the Governour within two dayes sent foure Barkes with 100. men, twentie five men in euery one, and Negroes to rowe with the Captaine, Iohn de Ortega, which went to the Island of Pearles, and there had intelligence, which way the English men were gone, and following of them, hee met by the way the ships which the English men had taken, of whom hee learned, that the English men were gone by the Riuer, and hee going thither, when hee came to the mouth of the Riuer, the Captaine of Panama knew not which way to take, because there were three passages in the Riuer to goe by in, and being determined to goe by the greatest of the three Riuers, hee saue comming downe a lesser Riuer many feathers of hennes, which the English men had pulled to eate, and being glad thereof, hee went by that Riuer where hee saue the feathers, and after that hee had bene in that Riuer foure dayes, hee discied the English mens Pinnele upon the sands, and comming to her, there were no more then sixe English men, whereof they killed one, and the other five escaped away, and in the Pinnele hee found nothing but victuals: But this Captaine of Panama not herewith satisfied determined to seeke out the Englishmen by land, and leauing twentie men in his Pinneles, hee with 80. shot went by the countrey: hee had not gone halfe a league, but hee found a house made of boughes, where they found all the English mens goods, and the gold and siluer also, and carrying it backe to their Pinneles, the Spaniards were determined to goe away, without following the English men any further.

Sp. Francis Drake burnt the house of Crosses.

The Island of Pearles 25. leagues from Panama.

But at the end and about 200 hauing the adu English men, a two were slaine

Among other why they went Captaine had where they had of foure iourne eines would be his word, fell out killed the Cape would seeke Negroes to car from the Spaniards had done treasure if they bowes and arrow companie were England. They ten all things tued to Panama would have done

Nowe when os, and they of wards say) four that the Uiceroy countrey, sent them out, who some Barke of groes, who in the And the Justice of the licence of upon hee and alaine, the Past was executed by

The King of those Negroes niards, and as selues to the Spaniards,

At the first great iustice by the Spaniards

The Span quering of this neuer sawe Eng due many ffe two English in

All these appointed to k after that this aduerture to ap with a strong na. and S. Aug of Spaine liue, from the naual

But

...shot, and firing nothing, and the mountaineers, seven marchants, were burnt within halfe an houre, the Spaniards being out of their

West India,

Francis Drake venture and safe capture, with a conference which was conducted with and landed in that this man coured great Ordinance in times of ordinance, and made a see went into the land of Pearles, Peru to Panama, might get any ship from a place much victuals, way his pisse of, hee thought to could finde any to sayling to the, he sent away Negroes that Canoas to Panama five men went to the Island and following of hee learned, that to the mouth of e were three part of the three Ri- the English men the feathers, and minesse upon the he killed one, als: But this men by land, and hee had not gone the English mens Spaniards were

But at the end of three dayes, the English Captaine came to the River with all his men, and about 200. Negroes, and set upon the Spaniards with great furie: But the Spaniards hauing the aduantage of trees which they stood behind, did easely preuaile, and killed cleuen English men, and five Negroes, &ooke other seven English men aaine, but of the Spaniards, two were slaine and five soe hurt.

A skirmish betwene the English men, and the Spaniards.

Among other things, the Spaniards enquired of the English men which they tooke, why they went not away in thiese dayes libertie which they had. They answered, that their Captaine had commaunded them to carry all that golde and silver which they had, to the place where they had left their shippe, and they had promised him to carry it, although they made thepe of fourte iourneys of it, for he promised to giue them part of it besides their wages, but the mariners would haue it by and by, and so their Captaine being angry because they would not take his word, fell out with them, and they with him, in so much that one of the companie would haue killed the Captaine, so that the Captaine would not haue them to carry the treasure, but sayd hee would seeke Negroes to carry it, and so he went, and sought for Negroes, and bringing those Negroes to carry it, he met with the five English men that he had left in his Pinelle which ran from the Spaniards, and the rest also which ran from the house, & they tolde him what the Spaniards had done, and then making friendship with all his men, he promised them halfe of all the treasure if they got it from the Spaniards, and the Negroes promised to helpe him with their bowes and arrowes, and thereupon they came to seeke the Spaniards, and now that some of his companie were killed and taken, he thought it best to returne to his ship, & so to passe backe for England. The Spanish Captaine hearing this, hauing buried the dead bodies, & hauing gotten all things into his Barks, and taking the English men and their Pinnes with him, he returned to Panama: so the voyage of that English man did not prosper with him, as hee thought it would haue done.

Nowe when the four Barks were come to Panama, they sent aduise also to Nombre de Dios, and they of Nombre de Dios, sent also from them other foure Barks (which, as the Spaniards say) found the English ship where he was hid, and brought her to Nombre de Dios: and that the Viceroy of Peru, not thinking it good to suffer fittle English men to remaine in the countrey, sent a seruant of his called Diego de Frees, with 150. shot into the mountaines to seeke them out, who found them making of certaine canoas to go into the North sea, and there to take some Barke or other: some of them were sicke, and were taken, and the rest fled with the Negroes, who in the end betrayed them to the Spaniards, so that they were brought to Panama. And the Justice of Panama asked the English Captaine whether hee had the Ducenes licence, or the licence of any other Prince or Loyde for his attempt. And he answered he had none, whereupon he and all his companie were condemned to dye, and so were all executed, sauing the Captaine, the Waster, the Pilote, and five boyes which were carried to Lima, and there the Captaine was executed with the other two, but the boyes be yet liuing.

The English brought to the Spaniards.

The death of John Oxnam.

The King of Spaine hauing intelligence of these matters, sent 300. men of warre against those Negroes which had assisted those English men, which before were slaines vnto the Spaniards, and, as before is sayd, fled from their masters into those mountaines, and so toynded themselves to the English men, to the end they might the better reuenge them selues on the Spaniards.

At the first comming of these 300. souldiers, they tooke many of the Negroes, and executed great iustice vpon them: But after a season, the Negroes grew wise and wary, and prevented the Spaniards, so that none of them could be taken.

The Spaniards of that Countrey maruelled much at this one thing, to see that since the conquering of this land, there hath bene many French men, that haue come to those Countries, but neuer saw English men there but onely those two of whom I haue spoken. And although there haue many French men bene on the coast, yet neuer durst they put foote vpon land, onely those two English men aduентured it, and did such exploits, as are before remembred.

All these things comming to the hearing of the King of Spaine, he pouided two Gallies well appointed to keepe those coasts: and the first yeere, they tooke sixe or seuen French ships. And after that this was knowne, there were no more French men of warre that durst aduementure to appoch the coast, vntill this present yeere 1586, that the aforesayd Francis Drake, with a strong flecte of 24. shippes arrived there, and made spoyle of S. Domingo, Carthage-na, and S. Augustine, things that are knowne to all the world. But it is likely that if the King of Spaine liue, he will in time provide sufficient remedy, to keepe his Countreys, and subiects from the inuasion of other nations,

The English mens coming to the Indies, caused the King of Spaine to build Gallies to keepe the Stra.

A discourse written by Sir Humfrey Gilbert Knight, to prooue  
a Passage by the Northwest to Cathaia, and the East Indies.

The Table of the matters contained in euery Chapter of this discourse.

Capitulo 1.

**T**o prooue by authoritie a passage to be on the Northwest side of America, to goe to Cathaia, China, and to the East India.

Capitulo 2.

To prooue by reason a passage to be on the Northwest side of America, to goe to Cathaia, Molluccæ, &c.

Capitulo 3.

To prooue by experience of sundry mens trauailes the opening of this Northwest passage, whereby good hope remaineth of the rest.

Capitulo 4.

To prooue by circumstance, that the Northwest passage hath bene sayled throughout.

Capitulo 5.

To prooue that such Indians as haue bene diuised vpon the coasts of Germanie came not thither by the Southeast, and Southwest, nor from any part of Africke or America.

Capitulo 6.

To prooue that the Indians aforesaid came not by the Northeast, and that there is no thorough passage nauigable that way.

Capitulo 7.

To prooue that these Indians came by the Northwest, which induceth a certaintie of this passage by experience.

Capitulo 8.

What severall reasons, were alleaged before the Queenes Maestie, and certaine Lordes of her Highnesses priuie Counsell, by M. Ienkinson a Gentleman of great traualle and experience, to prooue this passage by the Northeast, wth my seuerall answers then alleaged to the same.

Capitulo 9.

To shew that this passage by the Northwest, is more commodious for our traffike, then the other by the Northeast, if there were any such.

Capitulo 10.

What commodities would ensue, this passage being once discovered.

To prooue by authoritie a Passage to be on the North side of America, to goe to Cathaia, and the East India.

Chapter 1.



When I gaue my selfe to the studie of Geographie, after I had perused and diligently scanned the descriptions of Europe, Asia, and Africke, and conferred them with the Mappes and Globes both Antiquie and Moderne: I came in fine to the fourth part of the world, commonly called America, which by all descriptions I founde to be an Island enuironed round about with the Sea, hauing on the Southside of it, the frete, or straight of Magellan, on the West side Mare de Sur, which Sea runneth towards the North, separating it from the East partes of Asia, where the Dominions of the Cathaians are. On the East part our West Ocean, and on the North side the Sea that seuereth it from Groneland, chooswe which Northren Seas, the Passage lyeth, which I take nowe in hand to discover.

Plato in Timæo, and in the Dialogue called Critias, discourseth of an incomparable great Island, then called Atlantis, being greater then all Africke, and Asia, which lay Westward from the Straights of Gibraltar, nauigable round about: affirming also that the Princes of Atlantis, did atwell enjoy þe gouernance of all Africke, & the most part of Europe, as of Atlantis it selfe.

Also to prooue Platoes opinion of this Island, and the inhabiting of it in auncient time, by them of Europe, to be of the more credite: Marinus Siculus, in his Chronicle of Spaine, reporteth that there hath bene found by the Spaniards, in the Golde Mines of America, certaine pieces of Money, ingraued with the Image of Augustus Cæsar: which pieces were sent to the Pope, for a testimonie of the matter, by Iohn Rufus, Archbishop of Conuentinum.

Moreouer, this was not only thought of Plato, but by Marsilius Ficinus, an excellent Florentine Philosopher,

Philosopher, C  
booke De Muni  
with water, by r  
The like where  
Superum, it cut  
ning of his four

And also the  
the Corinthian  
the sea, and are  
known of long  
Vespucius, in th  
strophis Col

The same ca  
time, which son  
for the manner  
vsual moneth,

So that in e  
cell of this Acl  
cerning ther

Then, if wh  
round about th  
Northwest, see  
not detery tak  
the olde, and a  
Northwest pa  
America, was  
acresse of mo

Also Aristo  
notations by  
peare, Asia, A  
passed about t  
Island, and in

Also many  
East of India,  
sik, Mare Acl  
the earth.

So that it  
name Atlanti  
or yet the Se  
that those S  
the one and t  
King ther eol  
bed between

Therefore  
this our ente  
confirmed by  
Geographers

Michael Tra  
monranus, P  
our Anno 1  
lega to C. D  
wards any p  
sea, from any

All which  
that Americ  
land, by the  
passed to Cat  
either the S

Philosopher, Crantor the Grecian, Proclus, also Philo the famous Iewe, (as appeareth in his Proclus pag. 4. booke De Mundo, and in the Commentaries vpon Plato) to be ouerflown, and swallowed up with water, by reason of a mighty earthquake, and streaming down of the beu'nly Floodgates. The like whereof happened vnto some part of Scalic, when by the forciblenes of the Sea, called Superum, it cut of Sicilia from the Continent of Calabria, as appeareth in Iustine, in the beginning of his fourth booke. Also there chaunced the like in Zeland a part of Flanders. Iustine Lib. 4.

And also the cities of Pyrrha, and Antissa, about Meotis palus: and also, the citie Buryis, in Plinie the Corynthian bosome, commonly called Sinus Cormthiacus, haue bene swallowed up with the sea, and are not at this day to bee discerned: By which accident, America grew to bee vnknewen of long tyme, vnto vs of the later ages, and was lately discouered againe, by Americus Vesputius, in the yere of our Lord, 1497, which some say to haue bene first discouered, by Christophorus Columbus a Genuois, Anno. 1492.

The same calamitie happened vnto this Ile of Atlantis 600, and odde yeres before Plato his time, which some of the people of the southeast partes of the world accounted as 9000, yeres: for the manner then was to reckon the moone her Period of the Zodiak for a yere, which is our vsual moneth, depending vpon Luminari minore.

So that in these our dayes there can no other mayne of Islande be found or Iudged to bee parcel of this Atlantis, then those Westerne Islands, which beare now the name of America: concerning thereby the name of Atlantis, in the knowledge of our age.

Then, if when no part of the said Atlantis was oppressed by water, & earthquake, the coast round about the same were nauigable: a farre greater hope nowe remaineth of the same by the Northwest, seeing the most part of it was, since that time, swallowed up with water, which could not directly take away the old occyes and chanelles, but rather, be an occasion of the enlarging of the olde, and also an inforcing of a great many newe: why then shoulde we nowe doubt of our Northwest passage & nauigation from England to India? &c. seeing that Atlantis nowe called America, was euer knowne to be an Island, and in those dayes nauigable round about, which by access of moze water coulde not be diminited.

Also Aristotle in this booke de Mundo, and the learned Germaine, Simon Gryneus in his annotations vpon the same, saith that the whole earth (meaning thereby as manifestly doeth appere, Asia, Africk, and Europe, being all the countries then knowne) to be but one Island, compassed about with the reach of the Sea Atlantine: which likewise appoueth America to bee an Island, and in no part adioyning to Asia, or the rest.

Also many Auncient writers, as Strabo and others, called both the Ocean sea (which lieth Strabo lib. 15. East of India) Atlanticum pelagus, and that Sea also on the West coastes of Spayne and Africk, Mare Atlanticum: the distance betweene the two coastes, is almost halfe the compass of the earth.

So that it is incredible, as by Plato appeareth manifestly, that the East Indian Sea had the name Atlanticum pelagus, of the mountaine Atlas in Africk, or yet the Sea adioyning to Africk, or yet the Sea adioyning to Africk had name Oceanus Atlanticus, of the same mountaine: but that those Seas and the mountaine Atlas, were so called of this great Island Atlantis, and that the one and the other, had their names for a memoriall of the mightie yince Atlas, sometime King thereof, who was Iapher yongest sonne to Noah, in whose time the whole earth was deuided betweene the thre brethren, Sem, Cam, and Iaphet.

Wherefore I am of opinion that America by the Northwest, will be founde fauourable to this our enterprise, and also the rather imbodened to beleuee the same, for that I finde it not only confirmed by Plato, Aristotle, and other ancient Philosophers: but also by all the best moderne Geographers, as (Gemma Frisius, Munsterus, Appianus, Hunterus, Gastaldus, Guyccardinus, Michael Trameisus, Franciscus Demongenitus, Barnardus Puteanus, Andreas Vauaso, Tramoncanus, Petrus Martyr, and also Ortelius) who doth coast out in his generall Spappe (set out Anno 1569, all the countreys and capes, on the Northwest side of America, from Hochelegata to C. De Paramantia: describing likewise the sea coastes of Cataia and Grondland, towards any part of America, making both Grondland and America, Islands distoynd by a great sea, from any part of Asia.

All which learned men and painefull traouellers haue affirmed, with one consent and voice, that America was an Island: and that there lyeth a great Sea betweene it, Cataia, and Grondland, by the which any man of our countrey, that will giue the attempt, may with smal danger passe to Cataia, the Molucces, India, and all other places in the East, in much shorter time, then either the Spaniard, or Portugale doeth, or may doe, from the nearest parte of any of their countreys.

Valerius Anselmus in Catago annorum et principum, fol. 6. Gen. 9. 10.

crets within Europe.

We ought by reason right to have a reasonable opinion of worthy men.

What mooued these learned men to affirme thus much, I know not, or to what end so many and sundry travellers, of both ages, haue allowed the same: But I coniecture that they would neuer haue so constantly affirmed, or notified their opinions therein to the world, if they had not had great good cause, and many probable reasons, to haue lead them therunto.

How Lord Burleighs high Creatur of Englands. A Nauigator on of our Ocheber made in King Alirels title.

Now least you should make smal accompt of ancient writers or of their experiences which trauelled long before our times, reckoning their authoritie amongst fables of no importance: I haue for the better assurance of those proofes, set downe some part of a discourse, written in the Saxon tongue, and translated into English by Mr. Nowel seruant to Maister Secretarie Cecil, wherein there is described a Nauigation, which one Ochther made, in the time of King Alired, King of Westsaxe Anno. 871. the wordes of which discourse were these: He sailed right North, hauing alwaies the desert land on the Starborde, and on the Larbord the mayne sea, continuing his course, vntill he perceived that the coast bowed directly towards the East, or else the Sea opened into the lande he could not tel how far, where he was compelled to stay vntill he had a westerne winde, or somewhat vpon the North and sayled thence directly East, alongst the coast, so farre as he was able in foure dayes, where he was a gaine inforced to tary vntill he had a North winde, because the coast there bowed directly towards the South, or at least opened he knew not how far into the land, so that he sayled thence along the coast continually full South, so far as he could trauel in the space of fise dayes, where he discovered a mightie riuer, which opened far into the lande, and in the entrie of this riuer he turned backe againe.

A perfect description of our Mucouia vopage.

Whereby it appeareth, that he went the very same way, that we now do perely trade by S. Nicholas into Mucouia, which way no man in our age knew, for certaintie to be sea, vntill it was since discovered by our English men, in the time of King Edward the sixt: but thought before that time that Groneland had toynd to Normoria Byarmia, & therefore was accompted a new discovery, being nothing so in deede, as by this discourse of Ochthers it appeareth.

25p Sir Hugh Wylloubby, knight, Chauncery and 26p 1599.

Nevertheless if any man should haue taken this soiage in hand, by the incouragment of this onely author, he should haue bene thought but simple: considering that this Nauigation was written so many yeres past, in so barbarous a tongue by one onely obscure author, and yet wee in these our dayes finde by our owne experiences, his former reports to be true.

Howe much moze then, ought we to beleue this passage to Cataia to be, being verified by the opinions of all the best, both Antique, and Moderne Geographers, and plainly set out in the best and most allowed Mappes, Charts, Globes, Cosmographical tables, and discourses of this our age, and by the rest not denyed, but left as a matter doubtful.

To proue by reason, a passage to be on the Northside of America: to goe to Cataia, &c.

CHAP 2.

Experimented by our english ships.

**I**f all seas are maintained by the abundance of water, so that the neerer the ende, any Riuer, Baye or Pauen is, the shallower it waret, (although by some Accidental barre, it is sometime found otherwise) But the farther you saille West, from Island, towards the place, where this fretis thought to be, the more deeper are the seas: which giueth vs good hope, of continuance of the same sea, with Marc del Sur, by some frets that lyeth betwene America, Gronelande, and Cataia.

2 Also, if that America were not an Islande, but a part of the continent adlopying to Asia, either the people which inhabite Mangia, Anian, and Quinzay, &c. being borderers vpon it, would before this time, haue made some roade into it: hoping to haue found some like commodities to their owne:

where makes the old wale so correct.

3 Where the Scythians, and Tartarians (which often times heretofore, haue sought far & nere, for new seats, diuen thereunto, though the necessitie of their colde, and miserable countreys) would in all this time, haue found the way to America, and entred the same, had the passages bene neuer so strait, or difficult: the countrie being so temperate, pleasant and fruitful, in comparison of their own. But there was neuer any such people found there, by any of the Spaniards, Portingals, or Frenchmen, who first discovered the Inland of that Countrie: which Spaniards, or Frenchmen, must then of necessitie, haue seene some one Ciuit man in America, considering how full of ciuit people Asia is: But they neuer sawe so much as one token, or signe, that euer any man of the known part of the world, had bene there.

4 Furthermoze,

4 Furthermoze the people newly discovered in America, haue entred many yeres, before to Cataia, or to any part of Asia, being to Asia, &c. other.

5 Whereunto the the Confines gone from the them together,

6 But neel America, and y performed a y ques de Coron thence by land,

7 Also it ap the East to the inferior bodie wntely seeme from the East to ager, Eastward uers courses, t upon the fret of the earth: and son of the narr yelding to ac farte as Cap. F which is about

8 So that affereth it to America, then Westward to by the authori Finmarke, an force, the n it Magellan to the Spenele ent remainin which it doct show this

The like Conterenus all the coast Gibraltar, by Barbarie, by It may thereby im such soze as Coast of A such like m if pe linke a two gunne counte of cl By the farte soue

9 Also

4 Furthermore, it is to be thought, that if by reason of mountaines, or other craggy places, the people neither of Cataia, or Tartarie coulde enter the countrie of America, or they of America, have entered Asia, if it were so ioynd: yet some one sauage, or wandring beaſt would in ſo many yeeres, haue paſſed into it: but there hath not any time bene found any of the beaſts proper to Cataia, or Tartarie &c. in America: nor of thoſe proper to America, in Tartarie, Cataia, &c. or any part of Aſia. Which thing pꝛoueth America, not only to be one Iſland, and in no part adioyning to Aſia, But alſo that the people of thoſe Countreys, haue not had any traffyke with eache other.

5 Hopeouer at the leaſt ſome one of thoſe painefull trauellers, which of purpoſe haue paſſed the Conſines of both countreys, with intent only to diſcouer, would, as it is moſt likely haue gone from the one to the other: if there had bene any piece of land, or liſthmos, to haue ioynd them together, or elſe haue declared ſome cauſe to the contrary.

6 But neither Paulus venetus, who lꝛued, and dwelt a long time, in Cataia, euer came into America, and yet was at the Sea coaſtes of Mangia, ouer againſt it, where he was imbarked, and perſormed a great Nauigation along thoſe Seas: Neither yet Verarzanus, or Franciſcus vaſques de Coronado, who trauelled the North parte of America by lande, euer found entry from thence by land, to Cataia, or any part of Aſia.

7 Alſo it appeareth to be an Iſland, inſomuch as the Sea runneth by nature circularly, from the Eaſt to the Weſt, following the Diurnal motion of Primum Mobile, and carrieth with it all inferiour bodies mouable, atwel ceſtiall, as elemental: which motion of the waters, is moſt euidently ſeene in the Sea, which lyeth on the Southſide of Afrik, where the current that runneth from the Eaſt to the Weſt, is ſo ſtrong (by reaſon of ſuch motion) that their Portugals in the voyages, Eaſtward to Callicute, in yelling by Cap. De buona ſperança, are enforced to make diuers courſes, the current there being ſo ſwift, as it ſtriketh from thence, all along Weſtward, vpon the ſet of Magellan, being diſtant from thence, neere the fourth part of the longitude of the earth: and not hauing free paſſage and entrance, thow that free towards the Weſt, by reaſon of the narrownes of the ſaid ſtraite of Magellan, it runneth to ſalue this wrong (Nature not yielding to accidental reſtraints) all along the Eaſterne coaſts of America, Northwardes, ſo farre as Cap. Fredo, being the fartheſt knowne place of the ſame continent, towards the North: which is about, 4800. leagues, reckoning therewithal the trending of the land.

8 So that this Current, being continually maintained with ſuch force, as Iaques Cartier affirmeth it to be, who met with the ſame being at Baccalaos, as he ſailed alongſt the coaſtes of America, then, either it muſt of neceſſitie, haue way to paſſe from Cap Fredo, thow that this ſet, Weſtward towards Cataia, being known to come ſo farre, onely to ſalue his former wrongs, by the auſpicious beſoye named: or els it muſt needs ſtrike ouer, vpon the coaſt of Iſland, Lappia, Finmarke, and Norway, (which are Eaſt from the ſaid place, about 360. Leagues) with greater force, then it did from Cap. de buona Sperança, vpon the ſet of Magellan or from the ſet of Magellan to Cap. Fredo, vpon which coaſtes, Iaques Cartier mette with the ſame, conſidering the ſhortneſſe of the Cut, from the ſaide C. Fredo, to Iſland, Lappia, &c. And ſo the cauſe Efficient remaining, it would haue continually followed along our coaſtes, though the narrow ſeas, which it doth not, but is diſſected about the North of Labrador, by ſome though paſſage there, thow this ſet.

The like courſe of the water, in ſome reſpect, happeneth in the Mediterrane Sea (as affirmeth Concerenus) whereth the current, which cometh from Tanais, & the Euxinus, running along all the coaſtes of Greece, Italie, France and Spaine, and not finding ſufficient way out through Gibraltar, by meanes of the ſtraightneſſe of the ſet, it runneth backe againe, alongſt the coaſtes of Barbarie, by Alexandria, Nartolia, &c.

It may (peradventure) bee thought that this courſe of the ſea, doth ſometime ſurceaſe, and thereby impugne this pꝛinciple, becauſe it is not diſcerned all along the coaſt of America, in ſuch ſoye as Iaques Cartier found it: Whereunto I anſwere this: that albeit, in euery part of the Coaſt of America, or els where, this Current is not ſenſibly perceiued, yet, it hath euer moſt ſuch like motion, either the vppermoſt, or nethermoſt part of the ſea: as it may bee proued true, if ye ſinke a ſayle by a couple of ropes, neere the grounde, faſtning to the nethermoſt corners, two gunne chambers or other weights: by the diuining whereof you ſhall plainly perceiue, the courſe of the water, and Current, running with ſuch like courſe in the bottome.

By the like experiment, you may finde the opinarie motion: of the ſea, in the Ocean: howe farre ſoener you be off the land.

9 Alſo there cometh another Current from out the Northeaſt from the Sythian Sea (as Dr. Ienkinſon

The Sea hath three motions. 1 Motum ab oriente in occidentem. 2 Motum fluxus et refluxus. 3 Motum circumlarem. Ad cetera nomina elementa omnia (excepta terra) mouentur.

Postea causa, posterior effectus.

Concerenus.

an oblection answereth The Sea hath euer more peculiar motion, either in Suprema, or concaua superficie aquae.

pp. Jenkinson a man of rare vertue, great trauaile and experience, told me) which runneth Westward towards Labrador, as the other did, which cometh from the South: so that both these Currents, must haue way thowth this our fret, or else incounter together and runne contrary courses, in one line, but no such conflict of streames, or contrary courses are found about any part of Labrador, or Terra noua, as witness our yerely fishers, and other saylers that way, but is there disgraced, as aforesaid, and founde by the experience of Barnard de la Torre, to fall into Mare del Sur.

10 Furthermoze, the Current in the great Ocean, coulde not haue beene maintained to runne continually one way, from the beginning of the world, vnto this day, had there not bene some thowth passage by the fret aforesaid, and so by circular motion, bee brought againe to maintaine it selfe: For the Tides, and courses of the Sea are maintained by their interchangeable motions: as fresh riuers are by springes, by cbbing and flowing, by rarification and condensation.

The flowing is occasioned by reason that the beate of the moone doyleth and maketh the water thine by way of rarification. An experience to proue the falling of this Current, into Mare del Sur.

So that it seemeth not possible (so farre as my simple reason can comprehend) that this perpetuall current, can by any meanes be maintained, but onely by continuall reaccess of the same water, which passeth thowth the fret, and is brought about thither againe, by such Circular motion as aforesaid. And the certaine falling thereof by this fret into Mare del Sur, is proued by the testimonie & experience, of Barnard de la Torre, who was sent from P. del la Natiuidad to the Molluccz, Anno domini 1542. by commaundement of Anthonie Mendoza, then Viceroi of Noua Hispania, which Barnard, sayled 750. Leagues, on the Northside of the Equator, and there met with a current, which came from Northeast the which dyoue him backe againe to Tidore.

Wherefoze, this current being proued to come from C. de buona Speranza, to the fret of Magellan, and wanting sufficient entrance there, by narrownes of the Straite, is by the necessity of nature forced, brought to Terra de Labrador, where Jacques Cartier met the same, and thence certainly knowne, not to strike ouer vpon Island, Lappia, &c. and found by Barnard de la Torre, in Mare del Sur, on the backeside of America, therefore this current (hauing none other passage) must of necessity, fall out thowth this our fret into Mare del Sur, and so trending by the Molluccz, China, and C. De buona Speranza, maintaieth it selfe by circular motion, which is all one in nature, with *Morus ab Oriente in Occidentem*.

So that it seemeth, we haue now moze occasion to doubt of our returne, then whether there be a passage that way, yea or no: which doubt, hereafter shall be sufficiently removed. Wherefoze, in mine opinion, reason it self, grounded vpon experience, assureth vs of this passage, if there were nothing els to put vs in hope thereof. But least these might not suffice, I haue added in this Chapter following, some further prooffe hereof, by the experience of such as haue passed some part of this discovery: and in the next adioyning to that the authoritie of those, which haue sayled wholly, thowth euery part thereof.

### To prouue by experience of sundrie mens trauels, the opening of some part of this Northwest passage: Whereby good hope remaineth of the rest.

#### CHAP. 3



**P**aulus Venetus, who dwelt many yeeres in Cataia, affirmed that he sailed 1500 miles, vpon the coastes of Mangia, and Anian, towards the Northeast: alwayes finding the Seas open before him, not onely as farre as he went: but also as farre as he coulde discerne.

2 Also Francisus Valques de Coronado passing from Mexico by Ceuola, through the countrey of Quiuir, to Sierra Neuada, found there a great Sea, where were certaine Schippes laden with Merchandise, the mariners wearing on their heads the pictures of certaine birds, called Alcatrazzi, part wherof were made of golde, and part of siluer: who signified by signes, that they were thirtie dayes comming thither: which likewise proueth America by experience to bee distoynd from Cataia, on that part, by a great Sea, because they could not come from any part of America, as I haue thereof: for that, so farre as is discovered, there hath not bene founde there any one Schippe of that countrey.

3 In like maner, Iohan. Baros, ittifieth that the Cosmographers of China (where he himselfe

Baros lib. 9. Of his first Sea voy. cap. 1.

like had bene) allu-  
tioner all latitude  
of: And that the  
hinder.

By whose expe-  
rience it is proued  
that what might

4 And I found  
the weste Grondle  
de Labrador, 500

5 Spozouer  
cier, who made the  
of America.

6 Like wise  
of the same land,

7 Also I haue  
that there was a  
passed to be the po-

Furthermoze  
scribed this passage  
like at Whiteba  
the same fret: affir-  
Northside of Terra  
rude of 67, & a h  
gone to Cataia, &

How as these  
shall put you in  
part thereof.

To pr



1 First, as  
passage wherere

2 Also Plin  
there were certai  
ted by the king

3 And Plin  
where there is  
lage that way,

4 And for  
ted, to proue m  
ly in that behal  
were likewise  
great tempest,

5 Also wh  
other Indians

6 Like the  
Emperours, &

itch runne th... so that both these... contrary... are found about any... lers that way, but... a Torre, to fall into

ene mainteined to... had thre not bene... brought againe to... their interchangea-... rification and con-

nd) that this perpe-... successe of the same... such Circular mo-... ur, is p'oued by the... la Natiuidad to the... a, then Viceroy of... e Aequator, and... n backe againe to

a, to the fret of Ma-... by the necessitie of... e same, and thence... arnard de la Torre... one other passage)... g by the Molluccs, which is all one in

then whether there... emoo'ed, Where-... his passage, if there... I haue added in this... haue passed some... which haue sayled

the opening... hope

ermed that he failed... wardes the North-... nely as farre as he

om Mexico by Ce-... found there a great... handise, the ma-... part wherof were... ie dayes comming... n Cataia, on that... as Natives ther-... one Shippe of that

a (where hee him-... selfe

like had bene) affirme that the Sea coast, trendeth from thence North-east, to 50. degrees of Sep-  
tentrionall latitude, being the farthest part that may, which the Portugals had then knowledge  
of: And that the saide Cosmographers knewe no cause to the contrary, but that it might continue  
further.

By whose experiences, America is p'oued to be separate from those partes of Asia, directly a-  
gainst the same. And not contented with the iudgements of these learned men onely, I haue feare-  
d what might be further said for the confirmation hereof.

4 And I found that Franciscus Lopes de Gomara affirmeth, America to be an Island, and  
likewise Gronland: and that Gronland is distant from Lappia 40. leagues, and from Terra  
de Labrador, 50.

5 Howouer, Aluarus Nunnius a Spaniard, and learned Cosmographer, and Iacobus Car-  
tier, who made two voyages into those partes, and sayled 500. myles upon the North-east coastes  
of America.

6 Likewise Hieronimus Fracastorius, a learned Italian, and traualler in the North partes  
of the same land.

7 Also Iaques Carier hauing done the like, heard say at Hochelaga in Noua Francia, howe  
that there was a great Sea at Saguinay, wherof the end was not known: which they p'cep-  
ted to be the passage to Cataia.

Furthermore, Sebastian Cabota, by his personal experience and trauell hath set forth, and de-  
scribed this passage in his Charts, which are yet to be seene in the Queenes Maiesties priute Gal-  
lerie at Whitehall, who was sent to make this discouerie by king Henrie the seventh, and cured  
the same sex: affirming, that he sayled very farre Westward, with a quarter of the North, on the  
North-west of Terra de Labrador, the elsuenth of June, untill he came to the Septentrionall lati-  
tude of 67. & a halfe degree, and finding the Seas still open, said, that he might, and would haue  
gone to Cataia, if the mutinie of the Spasser and Spairners had not bene.

Now as these mens experience hath p'oued some part of this passage: so the chapter following  
shall put you in full assurance of the rest, by their experiences which haue passed through euery  
part thereof.

To prouue by circumstance that the Northwest passage  
hath bene failed throughout.

Cap. 4.



The diuersitie betwene brute beastes and men, or betwene the wilde and the im-  
ple is, that the one iudgeth by sense onely, and gathereth no iudgement of any thing  
that he hath not seene, feelt, heard, tasted, or smelled: And the other not so onely,  
but also smutheth the certaintie of things by reason, before they happen to be seene.  
Wherefore I haue added proofes of both sortes, that the one and the other might  
thereby be satisfied.

Quinq' sensus.  
1. Visus.  
2. Auditus.  
3. Olfactus.  
4. Gustus.  
5. Tactus.  
Singularia sensus,  
vniuersalia vero  
mente percipiun-  
tur.

1 First, as Gemma Frisius reciteth, there went from Europe thre brethren through this  
passage: wherof it tooke the name of Fretum trium fratrum.

2 Also Plinie affirmeth out of Cornelius Nepos, (who wrote 57. yeeres before Christ) that  
there were certaine Indians vsituen by tempest, vpon the coast of Germanie which were presen-  
ted by the king of Sueuia, vnto Quintus Metellus Celer, then Gouernour of France.

3 And Plinie vpon the same saith, that it is no maruell though there be Sea by the North,  
where there is such abundance of moisture: which argueth, that he doubted not of a nauigable pas-  
sage that way, though which those Indians came.

4 And for the better proofe that the same authoritie of Cornelius Nepos, is not by me wre-  
sted, so p'oue my opinion of the Northwest passage: you shall finde the same affirmed moye plain-  
ly in that behalfe, by the excellent Geographer Dominicus Marius Niger, who dwelt howe ma-  
ny wayes the Indian Sea stretcheth it selfe, making in that place recital of certaine Indians, that  
were likewise vsituen through the North Seas from India, vpon the coastes of Germanie, by  
great tempest, as they were sapling in trade of merchandize.

5 Also whilst Frederic Barbarossa reigned Emperour, Anno Do. 1160. there came certaine  
other Indians vpon the coast of Germanie.

6 Likewise Othon, in the North of the Gothes affirmeth, that in the time of the Germane  
Emperours, there were also certaine Indians call by force of weaether, vpon the coast of the

lib. cap. 66.

pag. 590.

Wherof by  
Franciscus Lopes  
de Gomara in  
his discouerie of  
India, lib. 1.  
cap. 10.



said countrey, which foresaid Indians could not possibly haue come by the Southeast, Southwest, nor from any part of Affrike or America, nor yet by the Northeast: therefore they came of necessity by this our Northwest passage.

To prouue that these Indians aforesaid, came not by the Southeast, Southwest, nor from any other part of Affrike, or America,

## Cap. 5.

**F**irst, they could not come from the Southeast by Cape de buona Sperança, because the roughness of the Seas there is such (occasioned by the currents and great winds in that part) that the greatest Armadoes the King of Portugal hath, cannot without great difficultie passe that way, much lesse then a Canoa of India could liue in those outrageous seas without shipwacke (being a vessel but of very small burden) and haue conducted themselves to the place aforesaid, being men vnexpert in the Arte of navigation.

2 Also, it appeareth plainly that they were not able to come from alongst the coast of Affrike aforesaid, to those partes of Europe, because the windes doe (for the most part) blow there Easterlie off from the Shore, and the current running that way in like sort, should haue driuen them Westward vpon some part of America, for such windes and tides could neuer haue led them from thence to the said place where they were found, nor yet could they haue come from any of the counteries aforesaid, keeping the seas alwayes, without skillfull mariners to haue conducted them such like courses as were necessarie to performe such a voyage.

3 Presuppasing also, if they had bene driuen to the West (as they must haue bene, comming that way) then they should haue perished, wanting supplie of victuals, not hauing any place (once leauing the coast of Affrike) vntill they came to America, nor from America, vntill they arriued vpon some part of Europe, or the Islands adioining to it to haue refreshed themselves.

4 Also, if (notwithstanding such impossibilities) they might haue recouered Germanie, by comming from India by the Southeast, yet must they without all doubt haue striken vpon some other part of Europe before their arrivall there, as the Isles of Spadera, Portugall, Spaine, France, England, Ireland, &c. which if they had done, it is not credible that they should or would haue departed vndiscovered of the inhabitants: but there was neuer found in those dayes any such ship or men, but onely vpon the coasts of Germanie, where they haue bin sundry times and in sundry ages cast a land: neither is it like that they would haue committed themselves againe to sea, if they had so arriued, not knowing where they were, nor whether to haue gone.

5 And by the Southwest it is vnpossible, because the current aforesaid which commeth from the East, striketh with such force vpon the feet of Spagellan, and fallerh with such swiftnesse and furie into Mare de Zur, that hardly any ship (but not possible a Canoa, with such vnkilfull mariners) can come into our Westerne Ocean through that fret, from the West seas of America as Magellans experience hath partly taught vs.

6 And further, to prouue that these people so arriuing vpon the coast of Germanie, were Indians, and not inhabitants of any part either of Affrike or America, it is manifest, because the natives both of Affrike and America, neither had, or haue at this day (as is reposed) other kind of boates then such as do beare neither masts nor sailes, (except onely vpon the coasts of Barbarie and the Turkes ships) but do carrie themselves from place to place neere the shore, by the oar onely.

To prouue that those Indians came not by the Northeast, and that there is no thorow Nauigable passage that way.

## Cap. 6.

**I**t is likely that there should be no thorow passage by the Northeast, whereby to goe round about the world, because all Seas (as aforesaid) are maintained by the abundance of water, waxing more shallow and shellie towards the ende, as we find, it doeth by experience, in Mare Glacial towards the East, which breedeth small hope of any great continuance of that sea, to be nauigable towards the East, sufficient to saile thereby round about the world.

Why the Indians could not come by the Southwest.

That the Indians could not be natives either of Affrike, or of America.

2 Also, it may be obserued the inuention of the partes of it sheweth them an extreme degree, by an arrowe sold for such as the

3 Furthermore, since the sailes are sette neerer the water of no boat

4 Also, the arrowe can well see, rich

5 Also, the colour here their

6 Moreover, to be discerned on the sea, as Mare Mea other knownen hat to the maine sea, which Mare Glacial followeth that open to the maine

7 Moreover, by from the maine the like whereon the sea toward the

8 Also, the fact could not happen (Euery thing the seas are, in fact)

And therefore, the like as Mare Nilus, Danu

9 Furthermore, the throughout uppermost part, small depth, with

losing his rest, it is frozen, not in his light or be

effect.

10 And yet, yet must it be by of the same about great darkness

11 Furthermore, the no shippe can be to danger of (yet) farre to the

12 And it is recited, for them from the Continent other part of the

And if the purpose for our

Southeast, South  
they came of us

not by the

ona Sperança, be  
the currents and  
of Spouting bath,  
then a Canoa of In  
being a vessel but of  
e aforesayd, heing

the coast of Affrike  
t) blow there Ca  
have driven them  
haue led them from  
any of the coun  
nducted them such

ue bene, comming  
ing any place (once  
untill they arrived  
delus.

red Germanie, by  
Striken upon some  
yng gall, Spaine,  
ep should or would  
ofe dayes any such  
y times and in sum  
tes againe to sea.

ch commeth from  
ch Northwest and  
ch unskillfull ma  
as of America as

manie, were Indi  
because the natives  
der kind of boates  
Barbarie and the  
e of onely.

theast, and

east, whereby to  
re maintained by  
rds the ende, as  
ll, which breedeth  
owards the East,

1 Also, it standeth scarcely with reason, that the Indians dwelling under Torrida Zona, could  
more the inuairie of the cold ayre, about the Septentrionall latitude of 80. degrees, under which  
elevation, the passage by the Northeast, cannot bee (as the often experience had of all the South  
partes of it the west) seeing that some of the inhabitants of this cold climate (whose Sommer is  
to them an extreme Winter) haue bene stricken to death, with the cold dampes of the aire, about 72  
degrees, by an accidentall mistay, and yet the aire in such like Elevation is alwayes cold, and too  
cold for such as the Indians are.

Quicquid natu-  
rali loco prius  
tur, quam climi-  
me corrumpitur.

Qualis causa,  
talis effectus.

3 Furthermore, the piercing cold of the grosse thicke aire so neere the Pole, will so stiffen and  
furre the sailes and ship cackling, that no mariner can either boiste or strike them (as our experience  
hath neerer the South, then this passage is presupposed to bee, hath taught vs) without the vse  
whereof no botage can be performed.

4 Also, the aire is so darkened with continuall mists and fogs so neere the Pole, that no man  
can well see, either to guide his ship, or direct his course.

5 Also the compass at such elevation doeth very suddenly varie, which things must of force  
haue bene their destructions, although they had bene men of much more skill then the Indi-  
ans are.

6 Moreover, all Bays, Gulfes and Riuers doe receiue their increase vpon the fload, sensible  
to be discerned on the one side of the hope or the other, as many wayes as they be open to any main  
Sea, as Mare Mediterraneum, Mare Rubrum, Sinus Persicus, Sinus Bodicus, Tharnesis, and all  
other known hauens or riuers in any part of the world, and each of them opening but on one part  
to the maine sea, doe likewise receiue their increase vpon the fload the same way, and none other,  
which Mare Glaciale doeth onely by the West (as W. Jenkinson affirmed vnto me) and therefore  
it followeth that this Northeast sea, receiuing increase but onely from the West, cannot possible  
open to the maine Ocean by the East.

Similium finibus  
ratio.

7 Moreover, the farther you passe into any sea towards the end of it, on that part which is shut  
up from the maine Sea (as in all those aboue mentioned) the lesse and lesse the tides rise and fall.  
The like whereof also happeneth in Mare Glaciale, which prooueth but small continuance of the  
Sea toward the East.

8 Also, the further ye goe toward the East in Mare Glaciale, the lesse salt the water is: which  
could not happen, if it were open to the salt Sea towards the East, as it is to the West onely, see-  
ing (Euery thing naturally ingendereth his like) and then must it bee like salt throughout, as all  
the seas are, in such like climate and elevation.

Quicquid cor-  
rumpitur à con-  
trario corrup-  
tius.

And therefore it seemeth that this Northeast sea is maintained by the riuer Ob, and such like  
rivers as Mare Ponticum, and Mare Mediterraneum, in the vppermost parts thereof by the ri-  
uers Nilus, Danubius, Neper, Tanais, &c.

Omne simile  
ignis sui simile.

9 Furthermore, if there were any such Sea at that elevation, of like it should be alwayes fro-  
zen throughout (there being no tides to hinder it) because the extreme colouelness of the aire in the  
vppermost part, and the extreme colouelness of the earth in the bottome, the sea there being but of  
small depth, where by the our accidentall colouelness doeth meet with the other, and the Sunne not  
having his reflection so neere the Pole, but at very blunt angles, it can neuer bee dissolved after  
it is frozen, notwithstanding the great length of their day: for that the sunne hath no heate at all  
in his light of beames, but proceeding onely by an accidentall reflection, which there wanteth in  
effect.

10 And yet if the Sunne were of sufficient force in that elevation, to vpeate against this ice,  
yet must it be broken before it can be dissolved, which cannot bee but through the long continuance  
of the sunne about their Horizon, and by that time the Sommer would be so farre spent, and so  
great darkness and cold ensue, that no man could be able to endure so cold, darke, and discomforta-  
ble a navigation, if it were possible for him then, and there to liue.

11 Further, the Ice being once broken, it must of force so vniue with the windes and tides,  
that no shippe can saile in those seas, seeing our Fishers of Island, and the New found land, are sub-  
iect to danger through the great Islands of Ice which flie in the Seas (to the sailors great dan-  
ger) farre to the South of that presupposed passage.

12 And it cannot be that this Northeast passage should bee any neerer the South, then before  
receiued, for then it should cut of Ciremissi, and Turbi, Tartarij, with Vzelucani, Chifani, and others  
from the Continent of Asia, which are known to be adjoining to Sceptia, Tartaria, &c. with the  
other part of the same Continent.

And if there were any chonow passage by the Northeast, yet were it so small ende and  
purpose for our traffique, because no shippe of great burden can navigate in so shallow a Sea:

and ships of small burde are very vnfit and vnprofitable, especially towards the blustering North, to performe such a volage.

To prooue that the Indians aforesnamed, came onely by the Northwest, which induceth a certaintie of our passage by experience.

## Cap. 7.

**T**is as likely that they came by the Northwest, as it is unlikely that they should come either by the Southeast, Southwest, Northeast, or from any other part of Africa or America, and therefore this Northwest passage hauing bene already so many wayes prooued, by vnsuouing of the others, &c. I shall the lesse need in this place, to vse many wordes other wise then to conclude in this sort, That they came onely by the Northwest from England, hauing these many reasons to lead me therunto.

1 First, the one halfe of the windes of the compasse might bring them by the Northwest, bearing alwayes betweene two heats, with which kinde of sayling the Indians are onely acquainted, not hauing any vse of a bowe line, or quarter winde, without the which no shippe can possibly come either by the Southeast, Southwest, or Northeast, hauing so many sundry Capes to double, whereunto are required such change and shift of windes.

2 And it seemeth likely that they should come by the Northwest, because the coast whereon they were diuic'd, lay East from this our passage, And all windes doe naturally driue a ship to an opposite point from whence it bloweth, not being other wise guided by Arte, which the Indians do vterly want, and therefore it seemeth that they came directly through this our fret, which they might doe with one wind.

3 For if they had come by Cape de buona Sperança, then must they (as aforesaid) haue fallen vpon the South partes of America.

4 And if by the fret of Magellan, then vpon the coasts of Africke, Spaine, Portugall, France, Ireland or Englund.

5 And if by the Northeast, then vpon the coasts of Ceremissi, Tartarij, Lappia, Island, Terra de Labrador, &c. and vpon these coasts (as aforesaid) they haue neuer bene found.

So that by all likelihood they could neuer haue come without ship wracke vpon the coastes of Germanie, if they had first striken vpon the coastes of so many countries, wanting both Arte and shipping to make orderly discovery, and altogether ignorant both in the Arte of Nauigation, and also of the Rocks, flats, Sands, or Hauens of those parts of the world, which in most of these places are plentifull.

6 And further it seemeth very likely, that the inhabitauntes of the most part of those countries, by which they must haue come any other way besides by the Northwest, being for the most part Anthropophagi, or men eaters, would haue deuoured them, slaine them, or (at the least wise) kept them as wonders for the age.

So that it plainly appeareth that those Indians (which as you haue heard in sundry ages were diuic'd by tempest vpon the shoare of Germanie) came onely through our Northwest passage.

7 Moreover, the passage is certainly prooued by a Nauigation that a Portugall made, who passed through this fret, giuing name to a Promontorie farre within the same, calling it after his owne name, Promontorium Corterialis, neere adioyning vnto Poliscus fluiuius.

8 Also one Scolmus a Dane, entred and passed a great part thereof.

9 Also there was one Salua Terra, a Gentleman of Victoria in Spaine, that came by chance out of the West Indias, into Ireland, Anno 1568, who affirmed the Northwest passage from vs to Cataia, constantly to be beleeued in America nauigable, And further said in the presence of Sr Harry Sidney (then lord Deputie of Ireland) in my hearing, that a Frier of Mexico, called Andro Vrdaneta, more then eight yeeres before his then comming into Ireland, tolde him ther, that he came frō Mare del Sur into Germanie through this Northwest passage, and shewed Salua Terra (at that time being then with him in Mexico) a Sea Card made by his owne experience and trauell in that volage, wherein was plainly set downe and described this Northwest passage, agreeing in all points with Ortelius mappe:

And

Crux, borb in  
venis oblique  
fimbrius, as al  
sa in venis ex  
diametro spi  
cibus,

**B**

he found a Naui  
gation, which he

The first was

very farre towar  
dage to be that w

Whereunto I

the Arte of Naui  
gation true: an

east in a wide sea,

Or if he failed  
doubling of man  
along the shoare.

And further, in  
nothing that was

small assurance  
beejudged by th

at sea.

Northwe

And further,  
west) that there  
to publish the same  
make the passage  
and experience  
(as Salua Terra  
ua Terra, being y  
Spaniards in ha  
which of like be  
And now as t  
these things (g  
to prooue this pas  
then vterly vnkn  
yeeres before Ch  
hath these wordes  
dayes of Asiuera  
Christ. Also Qu  
India. Also, Aria  
Aria, and of Gara  
that both India &

These things  
by the Northwest  
and in all, by the  
named, the India  
And yet no certai  
tain by the North  
the year followi

Certaine

North

And further, this Frier tolde the king of Portugall (as hee returned by that countrey home-ward) that there was (of certaintie) such a passage Northwest from England, and that he meant to publish the same: which done, the king most earnestly desired him not in any wise to disclose or make the passage knowne to any nation: For that (sayde the king) if England had knowledge and experience thereof, it would greatly hinder both the king of Spayne and me. This Frier (as Salua Terra reported) was the greatest Discoverer by sea, that hath bene in our age. Also Salua Terra, being perswaded of this passage, and by the common opinion of the Spaniards inhabiting America, offered most willingly to accompanie mee in this Discouerie, which of like he would not haue done if he had stood in doubt thereof.

And now as these moderne experiences cannot be impugned, so least it might be objected that these things (gathered out of ancient writers, which were so many yeeres past) might serue little to prouoe this passage by the North of America, because both America and India were to them then utterly unknowne: to remouee this doubt, let this suffice: That Aristotle, (who was 300. yeeres before Christ) named Mare Indicum. Also Berofus (who liued 330. yeeres before Christ) hath these wordes, Ganges in India. Also in the first chapter of Helles hee these wordes, In the dayes of Afluerus which ruled from India to Aethiopia, which Afluerus liued 580. yeeres before Christ. Also Quintus Curtius (where hee speaketh of the Conquests of Alexander) mentioneth India. Also, Arianus Philostratus, and Sidrach in his discourses of the warres of the king of Bactria, and of Garaab, who had the most part of India vnder his government. All which assured vs, that both India and Indians were knowne in those dayes.

These things considered, we may (in my opinion) not onely assure our selues of this passage by the Northwest, but also that it is nauigable both to come and goe, as hath bene prououed in part and in all, by the experience of diuers s, as Sebastian Cabora, Corterialis, the three brethren aboue named, the Indians, and Vrdaneta the Frier of Mexico, &c.

And yet notwithstanding all which, there be some that haue a better hope of this passage to Cataia by the Northeast then by the West, whose reasons with my seuerall answers ensue in the chapter following.

Certaine reasons alleaged for the proueing of a passage by the

Northeast, before the Queenes Maiestie, and certaine Lordes of the Counsell, by Master Anthome Ienkinson, with my seuerall answers then vsed to the same.

Cap. 8.

**B**Ecause you may vnderstand as well those things alleaged against mee, as what doth serue for my purpose, I haue here addeed the reasons of M. Anthome Ienkinson a worthy gentleman, and a great traveller, who conceiued a better hope of the passage to Cataia from vs, to be by the Northeast, then by the Northwest.

He first said that hee thought not to the contrary, but that there was a passage by the Northwest, according to mine opinion: but assured hee was, that there might be found a nauigable passage by the Northeast from England, to goe to all the East parts of the world, which hee endeouored to prouoe three wayes.

The first was that hee heard a Siberian of Tartaria say in hunting the Morce, that hee sailed very farre towards the Southeast, finding no ende of the Sea: whereby hee hoped a thoro' waye passage to be that way.

Whereunto I answered, that the Tartarians were a barbarous people, and utterly ignorant in the Arte of Nauigation, not knowing the vse of the Sea Card, Compaſſe or Starre, which hee counted true: and therefore they could not (said I) certainly knowe the Southeast from the Northeast, in a wide sea, and a place unknowne from the sight of the land.

Or if hee sailed any thing neere the Shore, yet hee (being ignorant) might be deceiued by the bounding of many points and Capes, and by the trending of the land, albeit hee kept continually along the Shore.

And further, it might be that the poore Siberian though simplicitie, thought that there was nothing that way but Sea, because hee sawe no land: which prooue (vnder correction) giueth small assurance of a nauigable Sea by the Northeast, to goe rounde about the world. For that hee iudged by the eye onely, seeing we by this our cleare eye doe account twentie miles a heuere at Sea.

The words of the king of Portugall, to Salua Terra, touching the concealing of this Northwest passage from England to Cataia.

An objection.

Aristotle lib. de mundo, cap. 3. Berofus lib. 5.

The Northwest passage affirmed vnder.

The first reason.

The answer on resolution.

Vitus nonnunquam fallitur in suo obiecto.

st passage.

uffering North,

y by the

that they should  
any other part of  
ing bene already  
all the lesse need in  
his voye. That they  
many reasons to

Northwest, be-  
e onely acquaint-  
type can possibly  
Capes to double,

e coast whereon  
drive a ship to  
re, which the In-  
is our fret, which

e said) haue fallen

Portingall, France,

pia, Island, Terra  
and.

pon the coastes of  
ing both Arte and  
Nauigation, and  
most of these pla-

f those countries;  
for the most part  
least wise) hepe

in sundry ages  
Northwest pas-

ingall made, who  
calling it after his

e came by chance  
best passage from  
of the presence of  
of Mexico, called  
tolde him there,  
and between Salua  
dome experience  
Northwest passage,

And

The second  
reason of al-  
legation.

This second reason is, that there was an Unicoynes home found upon the coast of Cataia, which could not come (sayd he) thither by any other means then with the tides, though some free in the North-east of Mare Glaciale, there being no Unicoyne in any part of Asia, saving in India and Cataia, which reason (in my simple iudgement) forceth as little.

The answer of  
resolution.

First, it is doubtfull whether those barbarous Cartarians do know an Unicoynes home, yea, or no: and if it were one, yet it is not credible that the Sea could haue dyuen it so farre, being of such nature that it wold not swimme.

Also the tides running too & fro, would haue dyuen it as farre backe with the ebbe, as it brought it forward with the flood.

There is also a beast called Ainus Indicus (whose home most like it was) which hath but one home like an Unicoyne in his forehead, whereof there is great plentie in all the North parts thereof adjoining, as in Lappia, Noruegia, Finmarke, &c. as Iacobus Zeiglerus writeth in his historie of Scandia.

And as Albertus saith, there is a fish which hath but one home in his forehead like to an Unicoyne, and therefore it seemeth very doubtfull both from whence it came, and whether it were an Unicoynes home, yea, or no.

The third and  
last reason of  
assertion.

This third and last reason was, that there came a continuall streame of currant, through Mare Glaciale, of such swiftnesse (as a Colmax told him) that if you cast any thing therein, it would presently be carried out of sight towards the West.

The answer of  
resolution.

Whereunto I answered, that there doth the like flow from Mzotis Palus, by Pontus Euxinus, Sinus Bosphorus, and along the coast of Græcia, &c. As it is affirmed by Contarenius, and diuers others that haue had experience of the same: and yet that Sea lieth not open to any maine Sea that way, but is maintained by freshets as by Tanais, Danubius, &c.

In like manner is this currant in Mare Glaciale increased and maintained by the Dvina, the riuer Ob, &c.

Now as I haue here briefly recited the reasons alleaged, to prouoe a passage to Cataia by the North-east, with my severall answers thereunto: so will I leave it to your iudgement, to hope or dispaire of either at your pleasure.

How that the passage by the Northwest is more commodious  
for our traffique, then the other by the East, if there  
were any such.

Cap. 9.



First, by the North-east (if your windes doe not giue you a matuelous speedie and luckie passage) you are in danger (being so neere the Pole) to bee benighted almost the one half of the yeere, and what danger that were, to liue so long comfortlesse, void of light, (if the cold killed you not) each man of reason or understanding may iudge.

2 Also Mangia, Quinzai, and the Molluccæ, are neerer vnto vs by the North-west, then by the North-east, more then two five parts, which is almost by the halfe.

3 Also we may haue by the West a yeerely returne, it being at all times nauigable, whereas you haue but 4. months in the whole yeere to goe by the North-east: the passage being at such elevation as it is formerly expressed, for it cannot be any neerer the South.

4 Furthermore, it cannot be finished without diuers windings by the way, hauing no hauiens in any temperate climate to harbour in there: for it is as much as wee can well saile from hence to S. Nicholas, in the trade of Spoutouta, and returne in the nauigable season of the yeere, and from S. Nicholas to Cerimiffi Tartarij, which standeth at 80. degrees of the Septentrional latitude, it is at the least 400. leagues, which amounteth scarce to the third part of the way, to the ende of your voyage by the North-east.

5 And yet after you haue doubled this Cape, if then there might be found a nauigable Sea to carrie you South-east according to your desire, yet can you not winter conueniently, until you come to 60. degrees, and to take by one degree running South-east, you must saile 24. leagues and three foure partes, which amounteth to 495. leagues.

6 Furthermore, you may by the North-west saile thither with all Easterlie windes, and to returne with any Westerly windes, whereas you must haue by the North-east sumptie windes, and those proper, according to the lying of the coast and Capes, you shall bee enforced to double,

which

which windes  
be greatly pro-  
longable, who

7 Whereupon  
there were any  
what privilege  
riching (so great  
hauling to great

But by the  
Christian of W

8 Also the  
great princes of  
the succour the  
should happen.

Further, no  
is at this present  
er, for it is the l

How it seeme  
things were, a  
are highly decla

Wh



2 For throu-  
hought from e  
And further, th

any part of Am

3 Also we  
jurisdictions,  
ious stones, c  
chandise of an  
the Mournies.

4 Also we  
our countrey,  
ced to commit

5 Whereupon  
scape some co  
seme best for

6 Beside w  
appeareth in H  
then the colour  
as part of his  
ur, of such like  
great estimati  
farre better be  
ding either by  
part of Europ

which winde is not alwaies to be had; when they are looked for: whereby your iourney should be greatly prolonged, and hardly endured so neere the Pole. As we are taught by Sir Hugh Willoughby, who was frozen to death farre neerer the South.

7 *Howeuer*, it is very doubtful, whether we should long ioy that trade by the Northwest, if there were any such passage that way, the commodities thereof once knowne to the Spaniards, what priuilege soeuer he hath granted, seeing pollice with the maze of exorbitant gaine; to the wishing (so greatly) of himselfe and all his dominions, would perswade him to presume the same, being so great an opportunity, to better the commodities of those countries by the Narue.

But by the Northwest, we may safely trade without danger, or annoyance of any prince living, Christian or Heathen, it being out of all their trades.

8 Also the Queenes Spanisches dominions are neerer the Northwest passage then any other great princes that might passe that way, and both in their going and returne, they must of necessity succour themselves and their shippes upon some part of the same, if any tempestuous weather should happen.

Further, no prince in auiie of the world, is able to encounter the Queenes Spanisches nauie, as it is at this present: and yet it should be greatly increased by the traffike ensuing upon this discovery, for it is the long voyages that increase and maintaine great shipping.

Now it seemeth necessarie, to declare what commodities would growe thereby, if all these things were, as we haue heretofore presupposed, and thought them to be: which next adioyning are briefly declared.

### What commodities would ensue, this passage once discovered.

Chap. 10.



If it were the onely way for our princes, to possesse the wealth of all the East parts (as they terme them) of the world, which is infinite: as appeareth by the experience of Alexander the great, in the time of his conquest of India, and other the East partes of the world, alleged by Quintus Curtius, which would be a great advancement to our countrey, woonderfull enriching to our prince, and vspeakable commodities to all the inhabitants of Europe.

2 For though the shortness of the voyage, we should be able to sell all manner of merchandize, brought from thence, farre better cheape then either the Portugall or Spaniard doth or may doe. And further, there with the Portugall in the East, and the Spaniard in the West, by trading to any part of America, thow in Mare del Sur, where they can no manner of way offend vs.

3 Also we sayle to diuers marvellous rich countreyes, both ciuill and others, out of both their iurisdictiones, trades and traffikes, where there is to be found great abundance of golde, siluer, precious stones, cloth of golde, silkes, all manner of spices, grocery wares, and other kindes of merchandize of an inestimable price, which both the Spaniard and Portugall, through the length of their iournies, can not well attaine vnto.

4 Also we might inhabit some part of those countreyes, and settle there such needie people of our countrey, which no way trouble the common wealth, and though want here at home, are inclined to commit ourragious offences, whereby they are daily consumed with the gallows.

5 *Howeuer*, we might from all the aforesaid places haue a yeerely returne, in inhabiting for our staple some convenient place of America, about Sierra Neuada, or some other part, whereas it shall seeme best for the shortning of the voyage.

6 Beside bettering of our countrey commodities, which the Indians, &c. much esteeme: as appeareth in Hester, where the prince is expelled of the great king of India, Assuerus, who matcheth the coloured clothes, where with his houses and tents were apparelled, with golde and siluer, as part of his greatest treasure: not mentioning either veluets, silkes, cloth of golde, cloth of siluer, or such like, being in those countreyes most plentiful: whereby it plainly appeareth in what great estimation they would haue the clothes of this our countrey, so that there would be found a farre better vent for them by this meanes, then yet this realme euer had: and that without depending either vpon France, Spayne, Flanders, Portugall, Hambowgh, Emiden, or any other part of Europe.

7 Also

7 Also, heere we shall increase, both our shippes and mariners, without burthening of the State.

8 And also haue occasion to set poore mens children to learne handie craftes, and thereby to make cristles and such like, which the Indians and these people do much esteeme: by reason whereof, there should be none occasion to haue our country combed with loiterers, bagabonds, and such like idle persons.

All these commodities would grow by following this our discovery, without injury done to any Christian prince, by crossing them in any of the sayd trades, whereby they might take any just occasion of offence.

This haue I briefly shewed you some part of the grounds of mine opinion, trusting that you will no longer iudge me fantastike in this matter: seeing I haue conceived no hope of this voyage, but am persuaded therunto by the best Cosmographers of our age, the same being confirmed, both by reason and certaine experiences.

Also this discovery, hath bene diuers times heretofore by others, both offered, attempted and performed.

It hath bene offered by Stephan Gomes vnto Carolus the sixt Emperour, in the yeere of our Lord God 1527, as Alphonso Villu testifieth in the story of Carolus life: who would haue set him forth in it (as the story mentioneth) if the great want of money, by reason of his long warres had not caused him to surreas the same.

And the king of Portugal, fearing lest the Emperour would haue persecuted in this his enterprise, gaue him, to leaue the matter vnattempted, the summe of 35000 crownes: and it is to be intended that the king of Portugal would not haue giuen to the Emperour such summes of money for eggs in mooneshine.

It hath bene attempted by Corterialis the Portugall, Scolmus the Dane, and by Sebastian Cabota in the time of king Henry the seuenth.

And it hath bene performed by the thye brethren, the Indians aforesaid, and by Vrdaneta the friser of Mexico.

Also diuers haue offered the like vnto the French king, who hath sent two or thre times to haue discovered the same: The discoverers, spending & consuming theyr vicualles, in searching the gulffes and bays betweene Florida and Terra de Labrador, whereby the life is spoken to the after commers.

So that the right way may now easily be found out in short time: and that with little expence and little expences.

For America is discovered so farre towards the North, as Cape Fredo, which is at 62 degrees, and that part of Gronland next adioyning, is knowne to stand but at 72 degrees. So that we haue but 10 degrees to saile North and South, to put the world out of doubt herof: and it is likely that the king of Spaine, and the king of Portugal would not haue sat out all this while, but that they are sure to possess to themselves, all that trade they now vse, and fear to deale in this discovery, lest the Queenes Maiestie, hauing so good opportunity, and finding the commodity which thereby might ensue to the common weale, would cut them off, and enjoy the whole traffique to her selfe, and thereby the Spaniards and Portugalls, with theyr great charges, should beate the bushe, and other men catch the birds: which thing they forseeing, haue commanded, that no pilot of theys, vpon paine of death, should seeke to discover to the Northwest, or plat out in any Sea card any thow way passage that way by the Northwest.

Now, and if you will indifferently compare the hope that remaineth, to animate me to this enterprise, with those likelihoods which Columbus alleged before Ferdinando the king of Castilia, to prouue that there were such Islands in the West Ocean, as were after by him and others discovered, to the great commodity of Spaine and all the world: you will thinke then this Northwest passage to be most woorthy trauell thereto.

For Columbus had none of the West Islands set forth vnto him, either in globe or card, neither yet once mentioned of any writer (Plato excepted, and the commentaries vpon the same) from 942 yeeres before Christ, vntill that day.

Howeuer, Columbus himselfe had neither seene American or any other of the Islands about it, neither vnderstood he of them, by the report of any other that had seene them, but onely comforted himselfe with this hope, that the land had a beginning where the Sea had an ending: for as touching that which the Spaniards doe vnder a Biscaine, which should haue taught him the way thither, it is thought to be imagined of them, to depprue Columbus of his honour, being none of the country man, but a stranger boyne.

This discovery offered.

This discovery attempted.

This discovery performed.

The labour of this discovery shouled by other mens trauell.

Why the kings of Spaine and Portugal would not perseuer in this discovery.

And if it were the knowledge of And albeit, touching experience, and authoritie, and cure part of lumbus wance.

These things which this discovery with learned Bay, bene referred for happy: desiring if I may perceive you a large discovery.

And further, to performe the same wherein I haue as I haue bene.

And therein I make the degree.

And haue also first knowing of And a price of any discovery, mayes then one.

Desiring you will enterprise: the same remaine.

And therefore is not worthie and his owne hope in this behalfe.

Certain

**F**

ought in respect of. Our weight, books, for like South-eastern, lie acquainted of all men, and spoken of, better further.

The second South continent doe reade of, for doubt the Sp there, could the theretwixt the y

burthening of the  
and thereby to  
e: by reason tober  
gabonds, and such  
injury done to any  
might take any ill  
trusting that you  
hope of this voy-  
being confirmed,  
ed, attempted and  
in the peere of our  
ho would have let  
of his long warres  
red in this his en-  
wines: and it is to  
re such summes of  
and by Sebastian  
d by Vrdaneta the  
of three times to  
alles, in searching  
is is spoken to the  
with little to operdie  
which is at 63 de-  
72 degrees. So  
doubt hereof: and  
we see out all this  
ble, and feare to  
le, and finding the  
hem off, and entoy  
with the py great  
they foreteling,  
to discover to the  
thwest.  
make me to this co-  
king of Castilia,  
and others discov-  
in this voythe  
globe of earth, nei-  
on the same) from  
The Islands about  
but onely comfop-  
an ending: for as  
he taught him the  
hour, being none  
And

And if it were true of the Biscane, yet did yet but roue at the matter, or (at the least) gathered the knowledge of it, by conjectures onely.

And albeit, my selfe haue not seene this passage, or any part thereof, but am ignorant of it as touching experience (as Columbus was before his attempt made) yet haue I both the report, relation, and asseveration of diuers most credible men, which haue both seene and passed through some and euery part of this discouerie, besides sundry reasons for my assurance thereof: all which Columbus wanted,

These things considered, & indifferently weighed together, with the wonderfull commodities which this discouerie may bring, especially to this realme of England: I must needs conclude with learned Baptista Ramusius, and diuers other learned men, who said, that this discouerie hath bene reserved for some noble prince or woorthie man, thereby to make himselfe rich, and the world happy: desiring you to accept in good part this briefe and simple discourse, written in haste, which if I may perceiue that it shall not sufficiently satisfie you in this behalfe, I will then impart vnto you a large discourse, which I haue written onely of this discouery.

And further, because it sufficeth not, onely to know that such a thing there is, without abilitie to performe the same, I will at leasure make you partaker of another simple discourse of nauigation, wherein I haue not a little crauelled, to make my selfe as sufficient to bying these things to effect, as I haue bene readie to offer my selfe therein.

And therein I haue deuised to amend the errors of vsuall sea cards, whose common fault is, to make the degrees of longitude in euery latitude of one like bignesse.

And haue also deuised therein a Spherickall instrument, with a compasse of variation for the perfect knowing of the longitude.

And a precise orderto prick the sea card together, with certaine infallible rules for the voyning of any discouery, to know at the first entering of any fret, whether it lie open to the Deau more wayes then one, how farre fouer the sea stretcheth it selfe into the land.

Desiring you hereafter to uer to mislike with me, for the taking in hand of any laudable and honest enterprise: for if through pleasure or idleness we purchase shame, the pleasure vanissheth, but the shame remaineth for euer.

And therefore to giue me leaue without offence, alwayes to liue and die in this minde. That he is not woorthie to liue at all, that for feare, or danger of death, shunneth his country seruice, and his owne honour: seeing death is inuicible, and the fame of vertue immortall. *Whereto in this behalfe, Mutare vel timere sperno.*

Peres qui vult  
bras tunc.

Certaine other reasons, or arguments to prouue a passage by the Northwest, learnedly written by M. Richard Willes Gentleman.



Our famous wayes there be spoken of to those fruitfull and wealthy Islands, which we do vsuallly call Mollucacs, continually haunted for gain, and dayly trauelled for riches therein growing. These Islands, although they stand East from the Meridian, distant almost halfe the length of the world, in the extreme heate, vnder the Equinoctiall line, possessed of Indidelles and Barbarians: yet by our neighbours great abundance of wealth there is painefull sought in respect of the voyage decreely bought, and from thence dangroufully brought home vnto vs. Our neighbours I call the Portugallies in comparison of the Molucchians for narrowness vnto vs, for like situation Westward as we haue, for they vsuall trade with vs, for that the farre South-eastlings doe knowe this part of Europe by no other name then Portugall, not greatly acquainted as yet with the other Nations thereof. The voyage is very well understood of all men, and the South-easterne way rounde about Affrike by the cape of Good hope, more spoken of, better knowne and crauelled, then that it may seeme needfull to discourse thereof any further.

The seconde way lyeth South-west, betweene the West Indle of South America, and the South continent, though that narrow straighe where Magellanus first of all men that euer we doe reade of, passed these latter yeeres, leaving thereunto therefore his name. This way no doubt the Spaniards woulde commodiously take, for that it lyeth neere vnto theyr dominions there, could the Easterne current and leuant windes as easily suffer them to returne, as speedily therewith they may be carryed thither: for the which difficultie, or rather impossibility of striving against

1. By the  
Southwest.

2. By the  
Southwest.



against the force both of winde and streame, this passage is little or nothing vfed, although it be very well knowne.

3. By the Northwest.

The third way by the Northwest, beyond all Europe and Asia, that woorthy and renowned knight Sir Hugh Willoughbie sought to his perill, enforced there to end his life for colde, congealed and frozen to death. And cruelly this way consisteth rather in the imagination of Geographers, then allowable either in reason, or approved by experience, as well it may appear by the dangerous trending of the Serpenth Cape led by Ortelius under the 80 degree North, by the unlikely sailing in that Northerne sea alwaies clad with ice & snow, or at the least continually pestered therewith, if happily it be at any time dissolved: besides bays and shelves, the water waiping more shallow towards the East, that we say nothing of the foule mists and darke fogs in the colde climate, of the little power of the Sunne to cleare the ayre, of the uncomfortable nights, so nere the Pole, sixe moneths long.

Ortelius, Astr.

4. By the Northwest.

A fourth way to go unto these aforesaid happy Islands Molucca, Sir Humfrey Gilbert learned and ballant knight, disourseth of at large in his new passage to Cathayo. The enterprise of it selfe being vertuous, the fact must doubtlesse deserue high praise, and whensoever it shall be finished, the fruits thereof can not be small: where vertue is guide, there is fame a follower, and fortune a companion. But the way is dangerous, the passage doubtful, the voyage not thoroughly knowne, and therefore gainesaid by many, after this maner.

Ob. 1.

First, who can assure vs of any passage rather by the Northwest then by the Northeast? doe not both wayes lye in equal distance from the North Pole? stande not the North Capes of either continent under like elevation? Is not the Ocean Sea beyonde America farther distant from our Meridian by thirtie or forty degrees West, then the extreme pointes of Cathayo Eastward, if Ortelius generall Carde of the world be true. In the Northwest that noble knight Sir Hugh Willoughbie perished for colde: and can you then promise a passenger any better happe by the Northwest? who hath gone for triall sake, at any time, this way out of Europe to Cathayo.

In Centre.

Ob. 2.

If you seeke the aduise herein of such as make profession in Cosmographie, Ptolome the father of Geographie, and his eldest childe, will answere by theyr mapes with a negatiue, concluding most of the sea within the land, and making an end of the world Northward, nere the 63 degree. The same opinion, when learning chiefly boythen, was received in the Romans time, as by theyr Poets writings it may appear: Et re colet vltima Thule, said Virgil, being of opinion, that Island was the extreme part of the world habitable toward the North. Ioseph Moletius an Italian, and Mercator a Germane, for knowledge men able to be compared with the best Geographers of our time, the one in his halfe Apphars of the whole world; the other in some of his great globes, haue continued the West Indies land, euen to the North Pole, and consequently cut off all passage by sea that way.

The same doctors, Mercator in other of his globes and mapes, Moletius in his sea carde, notwithstanding doubting of so great continuance of the former continent, haue opened a gulfe betwixt the West Indies and the extreme Northerne land: but such a one, that richer is not to be traueled for the causes in the first objection alleged, or cleare that by from vs in Europe by Greenland: the South end wherof Moletius maketh firme land with America, the North part continent with Lapland and Norway.

Ob. 3.

Thirdly, the greatest fauourers of this voyage, can not deny but that if any such passage be, it lyeth subiect vnto ice and snow for the most part of the yere, whereas it flourisheth in the edge of the frosty Zone. Before the Sunne hath warmed the ayre, and dissolved the ice, how will it knoweth that there can be no sailing: the ice once broken through the continuall abode the Sunne maketh a recreate reason in those parts: how shall it be possible for so weak a vessel as a Shippe is, to holde out amid whole Islands, as it were of ice continually beathing on each side, and at the mouth of the gulfe, issuing downe furiously from the North safely to passe, when whole mountains of ice and snow shall be combed downe vpon her.

Ob. 4.

Well, grant the West Indies not to continue continent vnto the Pole, grant there be a passage betwene these two lands, let the gulfe lye neerer vs then commonly in cartes we finde it set, namely, betwene the 61 and 64 degrees North, as Gemma Frisius in his mapes and globes imagineth it, and so left by our country man Sebastian Cabor in his table which the Earle of Derby hath at Chertles: Let the way be voyde of all difficulties, yet doeth it not follow that we haue free passage to Cathayo. For examples sake: You may tread all Norway, Finmarke, and Lapland, and then bow Southward to Saint Nicholas in Moscovia: you may likewise in the Mediterranean Sea fetch Constantinople, and the mouth of Tanais: yet is there no passage

passage by Sea in the aforesaid parts and Spic bayes iourney lucas, for though the North, usually called pan, yea three thors to passage there being open unto any one that minde, no French Geog of a Part you well agreeth to part est, Asia part of Asia.

Furthermore by such a new and siluer, no lawe denyng nature to let in a there impious the woorthy temper to be brought in those Seas, hollie.

Finally, all traueilers might say, that wealthiers, haue sought singalles doe hardly taught by viously on that can returne thence, then we following after other currant fr ether it is of necessity consequently the South into Mahans fret, both in Don Diego set downe.

Neuertheles Europe, we h Frisus receiue Pratum. Further spea Spanish pious out of Mar del by his owne credit.

Now if the ceberth arte, that cure were Europe into M way to be nau

although it be be-

by and renowned  
is like for cold, con-  
mation of Geogra-  
may appear by the  
North, by the in-  
continually pecked  
water working more  
in the colde climate,  
so neere the Pole,

Freyc Gilbert a leat-  
The enterprise of  
ruer it shall be fini-  
lower, and forme  
throughly knowne,

the North-east doe  
North Capes of Cy-  
rica farther distant  
prizes of Cathayo  
North-east that noble  
like a passenger any  
his way out of Eu-

Proleme the father  
a negative, conclu-  
rd, neere the 63 de-  
Romans time, as by  
being of opinion,  
Ioseph Moletius an  
with the best Geo-  
ether in some of his  
d consequently cut

in his sea carde, ne-  
ned a gulf betwixt  
not to be trauelled  
by Groenland: the  
part continent with

such passage be, it  
the edge of the fro-  
one well knoweth  
the Summe maketh a  
shippe is, to holde  
the mouth of that  
uncertaine of use and

tant there be a pas-  
des we finde it ser-  
happes and globes  
the Earle of Bed-  
not follow that true  
or way, Finmarke,  
a: so way may like-  
his: yet is there no  
passage

passage by Sea through Moscouia into Pont Euxine, now called Mare Maggiore. A game, in the aforesaid Mediterranean sea, we sail to Alexandria in Egypt, the Barbarians bring the peare and spices from the Moluccas by the red sea and Arabian goulph to Sues, yearly theye payes iourney from the aforesaid haven: yet haue we no way by sea from Alexandria to the Moluccas, for that Istmos of little straight of land betwene the two seas. In like manner although the Northerne passage be free at 61 degrees latitude, and the West Ocean beyond America, usually called Mar del Zur, known to be open at 40 degrees elevation, for the Island Giapan, yea three hundred leagus Northely about Giapan: yet may there be lande to hinder the shorow passage that way by Sea, as in the examples aforesaid it falleth out, Asia and America there being ioyned together in one continent. We can this opinion seeme also together frivolous unto any one that diligently peruseth our Cosmographers doings. Iosephus Moletius is of that minde, not onely in his plaine Hemisphere of the worlde, but also in his Sea card. The French Geographers in like manner, be of the same opinion, as by the mappe cut out in some of a Cart you may perceiue: as though the West Indies were part of Asia. Which sentence well agreeth with that olde conclusion in the Schooles: Quidquid præter Africam & Europam est, Asiæ est. Whatsoeuer land doth neither appertaine unto Africke nor to Europe, is part of Asia.

Furthermore it were to small purpose to make so long, so painefull, so doubtfull a voyage as by such a new found way, if in Cathayo you should neither be suffered to lande for silkes and siluer, nor able to seth the Molucca spices and pearle for piracle in those Seas. Of a late dening all Aliens to enter into China, and forbidding all the inhabitants vnder a great penalty to let in any stranger into those countreyes, shall you reade in the report of Galeotto Perera there imprisoned with other Portugallies: as also in the Giaponish letters, howe for that cause the woorthie traueler Xauierus bargained with a Barbarian merchant for a great summe of pey- per to be brought into Canton, a port in Cathayo. The great and dangerous piracie used in those Seas, no man can be ignorant of, that listeth to reade the Giaponish and East Indian histories.

Finally, all this great labour would be lost, all these charges spent in vaine, if in the end our travellers might not be able to returne againe, and bring safely home into theyr owne native countrey, that wealth and riches, they in foreyn regions with aduventure of goods, and danger of theyr liues, haue sought for. By the North-east there is no way, the South-east passage the Portugallies doe holde, as the Lords of those Seas. At the South-west Magellanus experience hath partly taught vs, and partly we are persuaded by reason, how the Easterne current striketh so violently on that straight, and falleth with such force into that narrow goulph, that hardly any ship can returne that way into our West Ocean out of Mar del Zur. The which, if it be true, as truly it is, then we may say that the aforesaid Easterne current or leuant course of waters continually following after the heauenly motions, looeth not altogether his force, but is doubled rather by another current from out the North-east, in the passage betwene America and the North land, whither it is of necessitye carryed: hauing none other way to maineaine it selfe in circular motion, and consequently the force and fury thereof to be no lesse in the straight of Anian, where it striketh South into Mar del Zur, beyond America (if any such straight of Sea there be) then in Magellans free, both straightes being of like breadth: as in Belogina Zalerius table of new France, and in Don Diego Hermano de Toledo his card for nauigation in that region we do finde precisely set downe.

Neuertheless to approue that there lieth a way to Cathayo at the North-west, from out of Europe, we haue experience, namely of three brethren that went that iourney, as Gemma Frisius receiveth, and left a name unto that straight, whereby now it is called Fretum trium Fratrum. We doe reade againe of a Portugall that passed this straight, of whome Halster further speaketh, that was imprisoned therfore many yeeres in Lisbon, to verifie the olde Spanish prouerbe, I suffer for doing well. Likewise An. Vidaneta a flyer of Mexico came out of Mar del Zur this way into Germanie: his Carde, for he was a great discoverer, made by his owne experience and trauell in that voyage, hath bene scene by Gentlemen of good credit.

Now if the obseruation and remembrance of things breedeth experience, and of experience proceedeth arte, and the certaine knowlege we haue in all faculties, as the best Philosophers that euer were do affirme: truly the voyage of these aforesaid trauelers that haue gone out of Europe into Mar del Zur, and returned thence at the North-west, do most evidently conclude that way to be nauigable, and that passage free. So much the more we are so to thinke, for that the

Ge. i. de orat.  
An. pri.  
Metaph.

first

first principle and chiefe ground in all Geographie, as Ptolome saith, is the history of travel, that is, reports made by travellers full in Geometrie and Astronomie, of all such things in their journey as to Geographie do belong. It onely then remaineth, that we now answer to those arguments that seemed to make against this former conclusion.

The first objection is of no force, that generall table of the world set forth by Ortelius of Mercator, for it greatly skilleth not, being unskillfully drawn for that point: as manifestly it may appeare unto any one that conferreth the same with Gemma Frisius his universall mappe, with his rounde quartered card, with his globe, with Sebastian Cabota his table, and Ortelius his generall mappe alone, woorthily preferred in this case before all Mercator and Ortelius other dotings: for that Cabota was not onely a skillfull Sea man, but a long traveller, and such a one as entered personally that straight, sent by King Henry the seventh to make this aforesaid discovery, as in his owne discourse of navigation you may reade in his card drawn with his owne hand, that the mouth of the Northwesterne straight lyeth neere the 318<sup>th</sup> Meridian, betwene sixtie one and sixtie foure degrees in the elevation, continuing the same byeth about tenne degrees West, where it openeth Southerly moze and moze, untill it come under the tropique of Cancer, and so runneth into Mar del Zur, at the least eigheteene degrees moze in byeth there then it was where it first begonne: otherwise I coulde as well imagine this passage to be moze vniuersally then; the voyage to Moscouia, and moze impossible then it for the farre situation and continuance thereof in the frostie climate: as now I can affirme it to be very possible and most likely in comparison thereof, for that it neither coasteth so farre North as the Moscouian passage doeth, neither is this straight so long as that, before it bowe downe Southerly towards the Sunne againe.

The second argument concludeth nothing. Ptolome knew not what was about extreme degrees South beyond the Equinoctiall line, he was ignorant of all passages Northward from the elevation of thirtie three degrees, he knew no Ocean sea beyond Asia, yet haue the Portugals traueled the Cape of Good hope at the South point of Afrike, and traueled to Giapan an Island in the East Ocean, betwene Asia and America: our merchants in the time of King Edward the first discovered the Moscouian passage farther North then Thule, and shewed Groenland not to be continent with Lappeland and Norway: the like our Northwesterne travellers haue done, declining by their navigation that way, the ignorance of all Cosmographers that either doe ioyne Groenland with America, or continue the West Indies with that frosty region vnder the North pole. As for Virgil he sang according to the knowledge of men in his time, as an other Poet did of the hot Zone:

Quarum quæ media est, non est habitabilis æstu. Imagining, as most men then did, Zonam torridam, the hot Zone, to be altogether inhabitable for heat, though presently we know many famous and woorthy Kingdomes and cities in that part of the earth, and the Island of St. Thomas neere Aethiopia, or the wealthe Islands of the which chiefly all these voyagers are taken in hand, to be inhabited euen vnder the equinoctiall line.

To answer the third objection, besides Cabota and all other travellers navigations, the only credit of M. Frobisher may suffice, who lately through all these Islands of ice, and mountaines of snowe, passed that way, euen beyonde the gulfe that runneth betwene the North, and in some places though he byew one inch thicke ice, as he returning in August did, came home safely againe.

The fourth argument is altogether frivolous and vaine, for neither is there any isthmus or straight of lande betwene America and Asia, ne can these two landes ioinly be one continent. The first part of my answer is manifestly allowed of by Homer, whom that excellent Geographer Strabo followeth, prebiding him in this facultie the pyce. The author of that booke likethwise to Alexander, attributed vnto Aristotle, is of the same opinion that Homer and Strabo hee of, in two or three places. Dionysius in his history hath this verse: *οὐκ ἔστιν ἵσθμὸς ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν Ἀμερικήν*. So doeth the Ocean Sea runne round about the world: speaking onely of Europe, Afrike, and Asia, as then Asia was traueled and knownen. Which these Doctours may you ioyne Pomponius Mela. capit. 2. lib. 1. Plinius lib. 2. capit. 67. and Pius 2. cap. 2. in his description of Asia. All the which writers doe no lesse confirme the whole Eastern side of Asia to be compassed about with the Sea, then Plato doth affirme in Timæo, vnder the name Atlantis, the West Indies to be an Island, as in a speciall discourse thereof R. Eden writeth, agreeable vnto the sentence of Proclus, Marsilius Ficinus, and others. Out of Plato it is gathered that America is an Island. Homer, Strabo, Aristotle, Dionysius, Mela, Plinie, Pius 2. affirme the continent of Asia, Afrike, and Europe, to be circumscribed

circumscribed with the Ocean, (as none at all) that Asia and Europe, contrary to the opinion hath bene brought in contrary fourth objection.

The second part, namely *οὐκ ἔστιν ἵσθμὸς ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν Ἀμερικήν* where the earth is most hollow, as it goeth further, Omega, Duina, Ob, potwye may doeth that sea strike the more shallowe: from the 2. Met. cap. 1. of necessity the earth there to shake off those of waters augmented in them. Alber. in 2. Meteor. change of water. So that the South on the West of Groenland, or betwixt Groenland and the North, if you experience it doeth, it may to me, the deeper although name where the chanel is deeper fall continually from the straight we speake of, and being downe furiously out froing impossible to want sea discovered no land. Finally which after that hee had seen land betwixt the aforesaid together that conclusion from the world then knownen, and

The last objection requirer Barbarians favour by some shall haue the repulse in one vnder time, and disreere for a violent entrie, would of so great a Nation, farre to the waters, unless their part

Couching their lawes at Galeotto Perera, that the trade into his Countrey for Moores had, until such time came the Saracene: wherefore at Fuquien, a great title in C they bee most detestous to be strictly handled there at the insomuch that the Lourea of the Canoa halley those sea and downe that reach from lucaas: and shall an English name) cease to talle in that voyce of perill:

To the last argument. I shall they be constrained well to be in danger of the same way they doe goe. The reason alleaged for

Lib. 1. Geog. cap. 2.

Sol. 1.

Quid. 1. Meta.

Sol. 3.

Sol. 4.

Lib. Geog.

Pios.

considered with the Ocean. I may therefore boldly say, (though later intelligences thereof had  
 we name at all) that Asia and the West Indies be not tied together by any Isthmos or straight of  
 land, contrary to the opinion of some newe Cosmographers, by whome doubtfullly this matter  
 hath bene brought in controuersie. And thus much for the first part of my answer vnto the  
 fourth objection.

The second part, namely that America and Asia cannot be one continent, may thus be proued,  
 where the earth is most holowe and deepe, wikteth Aristotle: and the Sea, (saith hee in the same  
 place,) as it goeth further, so is it founde deeper. Into what guise doe the Moscouian riuers  
 Onega, Duina, Ob, poune out their streames Northward out of Moscouia into the sea. Which  
 may weeth that sea strike? The South is maine lande, the Easterne coast waretly moze and  
 more holowe: from the North, either naturally, because that part of the earth is higher Aristot.  
 2. Met. cap. 1. or of necessity, for that the forcible influence of some Noztherne starres causeth  
 the earth there to shake off the Sea, as some Philosophers doe thinke: or finally for the great  
 slope of waters engendred in that frostie and colde climate, that the bankes are not able to holde  
 them. Alber. in 2. Meteo. cap. 6. From the North I say, continually falleth downe great abun-  
 dance of water. So that this Noztheasterne current must at the length abruptly bowe towarde  
 the South on the West side of Finmarke and Norway: or else strike downe Southward aboute  
 Groneland, or betwixt Groneland and Iceland, into the Northwest straight wee speake of, as of  
 congruence it doeth, if you marke the situation of that Region, and by the report of M. Frobisher,  
 experience teachech vs. And M. Frobisher the further hee trauielled in the former passage, as he  
 tolde me, the deeper alwayes he found sea. Lay you now the summe hercof together. The riuers  
 runne where the channels are most hollowe, the sea in taking his course waretly deeper, the sea wa-  
 ters fall continually from the North Southward, the Noztheasterne current striketh downe into  
 the straight we speake of, and is there augmented with whole mountaines of yce and snowe, fal-  
 ling downe furiously vnto the land vnder the North pole. Where slope of water is, there is it a  
 thing impossible to want sea, where sea not onely doeth not want, but waretly deeper, there can be  
 discouered no land. Finally, whence I pray you came the contrary tide, that M. Frobisher mette  
 withal after that hee had sailed no small way in that passage, if there be any Isthmos or straight of  
 land betwixt the aforesaid Nozthwesterne, gulfe and Mar del Zur, to ioyne Asia and America to-  
 gether? That conclusion frequented in scholes Quidquid preter, &c. was ment of the partes of  
 the world then knowen, and so is it of righte to be vnderstoode.

The sixt objection requirerth for answer, wisdom and policie in the trauieler, to winne the  
 Barbarians fauour by some good meanes: and so to arme and strengthen himselfe, that when he  
 shall haue the repulse in one coast, he may safely trauiel to an other, commodiously taking his co-  
 mmerces times, and discretely making choise of them with whome hee will thoughtly deale. To  
 hope a violent entrie, would for vs Englishmen be very hard, considering the strength and valour  
 of so great a Nation, farre distant from vs, and the attempt thereof might be most perillous vn-  
 to the doers, in lesse their part were very good.

Touthing their lawes against strangers, you shall reade neuertheless in the same relations of  
 Galeotto Perera, that the Cathaian king is wont to graunt free access vnto all sojourners that  
 trade into his Countrey for Marchandise, and a place of libertie for them to remaine in: as the  
 Moores had, until such time as they had brought the Loucea or Lieutenant of that coast to be a cir-  
 cumcised Saracene: wherofore some of them were put to the sword, the rest were scattered abroad:  
 at Pucien, a great citie in China, certaine of them are yet this day to be seene, as for the Giapans  
 they be most desirous to be acquainted with strangers. The Portingals though they were  
 strictly handled there at the first, yet in the ende they founde great fauour at the Prince his handz,  
 insomuch that the Loucea or president that misused them, was therefore put to death. The rude In-  
 dian Canoa halleth those seas, the Portingals, the Saracenes, and Moores trauiel continually by  
 and downe that reache from Giapan to China, from China to Malacca, from Malacca to the Mo-  
 lucceas: and shall an Englishman, better appointed then any of them al (that I say no more of our  
 name) see to saile in that Ocean? What feat at all doe want piracie? what Nauigation is there  
 voyde of perill?

To the last argument. Our trauielers neede not to seeke their returne by the North-east, nei-  
 ther shall they be constrained, except they list, either to attempt Magellane straight at the South-  
 west, or to be in danger of the Portingals for the South-east: they may returne by the North-west,  
 that same way they doe goe sooth, as experience hath shewed.

The reason alleaged for prooofe of the contrary, may be disposed after this manner. And first.

it may be called in controuersie, whether any currant continually be forced by the motion of Primum mobile, round about the world, or no: for learned men doe diuersly handle that question. The naturall course of all waters is downeward, wherefoze of congruence they fall that way where they finde the earth most lowe and deepe: in respect whereof, it was first laide, the seas do strike from the Northzen landes Southerly. Violently the seas are tolled and troubled diuers wayes with the windes, encreased and diminished by the course of the Moone, holled by & downe through the sundry operations of the Sunne and the starres: finally, some be of opinion, that the seas be carried in part violently about the world, after the daply motion of the highest moueable heauen, in like maner as the elements of aire and fire, with the rest of the heauynly spheres are, from the East vnto the West. And this they doe call their Easterne currant, or leuant streame. Some such currant may not be denied to be of great force in the hot Zone, for the neere nesse thereof vnto the centre of the Sunne, and blustering Easterne windes violently duiuing the seas Westward: howbeit in the temperate climes, the Sunne being further off, and the windes more diuers blowing as much from the North, the West and South, as from the East, this rule doeth not effectually withhold vs from traauiling Eastward, neither be wee kept ever backe by the aforesayde Leuant windes and streame. But in Magellans straight wee are violently duiuen backe Westward: Ergo, though the Northwesterne straight of Anian strette shall wee not be able to retorne Eastward: it followeth not. The first, for that the Northwesterne straight hath moze sea room at the least by one hundred English miles, then Magellans fret hath, the onely want whereof causeth all narrowe passages generally to be most violent. So would I say in Anian gulfes, if it were so narrowe as Don Diego and Zalcerius haue painted it out, any returre that way to bee full of difficulties, in respect of such straightnesse thereof, not for the neere nesse of the Sunne, or Easterne windes, violently forcing that way any leuant streame: But in that place there is more sea come by many degrees, if the Carpes of Cabota, and Gemma Frisius, and that which Framazine impuere, be true.

And hitherto reason see I none at all, but that I may as well giue credite vnto their doings, as to any of the rest. It must be Peregrinationis historia, that is true reportes of skilful traauilers, as Ptolome writeth, that in such controuersies of Geographic must put vs out of doubt. Ortelius in his vniuersall tables, in his particuler Mappes of the West Indies, of all Asia, of the Northzen kingdomes, of the East Indies, Mercator in some of his globes, and generall Mappes of the world, Molecius in his vniuersall table of the Globe dished, in his sea Carde, and particuler tables of the East Indies, Zalcerius, and Don Diego, with Fernando Bertely, and others, doe so much differ both from Gemma Frisius and Cabota, among themselues, and in diuers places from themselues, concerning the diuers situation and sundry limites of America, that one may not so rashly, as truly I surmise, these men either to be ignorant in those points touching the aforesaide region, or that the Mappes they haue given out vnto the world, were collected onely by them, and neuer of their owne making.

The first voyage of *M. Martine Frobisher*, to the Northwest  
for the search of the straight or passage to *China*, written by  
Christopher Hall, and made in the yeere of  
our Lord 1576.

Apr.

June.

I am assured  
that the  
was Captaine  
of the ship.



Don Sunday the 13. of May the Barke Gabriel was launched at Redriff, and vpon the 27. day following she valed from Redriff to Ratcliffe.

The 7. of June being Thursday, the two barkes, viz. the Gabriel, the Michael, and our pinnelle set saile at Ratcliffe, and bare downe to Detford, and there we ancred: the cause was, that our pinnelle burst her boulsprit, and forasmuch aboard of a shippe that rode at Detford, elle wee ment to haue past that day by the Court then at Greenewiche.

The 8. day being Friday, about 12. of the clocke we wayed at Detford, and set saile all three of vs, and bare downe by the Court, where we shotte off our ordinance, and made the best we wee could: Her Maestie beholding the same commended it, and bade vs farewell with shaking her hand at vs out of the window. Afterward she sent a Gentleman a boote of vs, who declared that her Maestie had good liking of our doings, and thanked vs for it, and also willed our Captaine to come the next day to the Court to take his leaue of her.

The same day towards night M. Secretarie Woolly came aboarde of vs, and declared to the companie

Luc. lib. 1.  
Pharal.

What the  
Easterne cur-  
rant is.

Lib. 1. Geog.  
Cap. 1.

companie, that  
to their Capta  
The ninth day  
set saile to be pa  
againe.

Sunday the  
the winde being  
well sunne, the

The 12. day  
dore, which wa  
green and a half  
at Northzen by  
the Hope, and at  
home being low

The 13. day  
downe the Sea  
East Northeast  
and so came to a

The 14. day  
in Orfordnesse,

The 15. we v  
led downe to Alb  
we downe to So  
high water being  
Northwest sunn

The 16. day  
sailed to A  
a stiff gale, the

The 17. day  
sailed, and by No  
East Sunne, and

The 18. day  
sailed out of Har

The 19. day  
Southeast, and  
quarter's blow, I  
Northwest the e

From tenn  
a faire gale, et

The 20. day in  
a faire gale, the  
the forenoone, th  
glasses, foure lea

to eight stre leag  
we hauing 30. f  
a clocke in the m  
hauing 37. fatho

From 4. a clo  
Southeast, a fair  
west 6. leagues,  
present we obser

The 22. day fr  
faire Southeast  
Shippe sailed, Nor  
all 12. a clocke a  
west 3. leagues, I

From 12. to fo  
North 1. league

by the motion of Pri-  
ole that question. The  
p fall that way where  
side, the seas do strike  
roubled divers wayes  
to by & downe through  
nton, that the seas bee  
moueaible heauen,  
spheres are, from the  
tant Streame. Some  
erecence thereof was  
the seas Well worde:  
es moze diuers blow-  
rule doeth not effectu-  
cke by the aforesayde  
p byuen backe. Which  
not be able to returne  
hach moze sea roome  
ouely want whereof  
say in Anian gulfe, at  
ture that way to bee  
esse of the Sunne, at  
at place there is more  
that which Trame-

te into their doings,  
of skillful traualers,  
out of doubt. Orre-  
fall Asia, of the Roy-  
generall Appoynted  
Carde, and particuler  
7, and others, doe so  
in diuers places from  
that one may not fo  
the aforesayde co-  
d one ly by them, and

Northwest  
ritten by

unched at Redriff,  
to Ratcliffe,  
the Gabriel, the Mi-  
unte to Derford, and  
at her boultspitt, and  
ee ment to haue pass

to set saile all thre of  
e the best the we were  
ell with shanking her  
of vs, who declared  
to be our Cap-  
and declared to the  
company

company, that her Hateshe had appointed him to giue them charge to be obedient, and diligent  
to their Capteine, and gouernours in all things, and walke vs happy successe.

The ninth day about noone the winde being Westerly, hauing our ancre aboarde ready to  
set saile to depart, wee wanted some of our companie, and therefore stayed, and moated them  
againe.

Sunday the 10. of June, wee set saile from Blackewall at a South west, and by West sunne,  
the winde being at North Northwest, and sailed to Grauesend, and ancred there at a West north-  
west sunne, the winde being as befoze.

The 11. day being ouer against Grauesend, by the castle of blockhouse we obserued the lati-  
tude, which was 51. degrees 33. min. And in that place the variation of the Compasse is 11. de-  
grees and a halfe. This day we departed from Grauesend, at a West South west sunne, the winde  
at North and by East a faire gale, and sailed to the West part of Tilberie hope, & so turned downe  
the Hope, and at a West sunne the winde came to the East South east, and wee ancred in 7. fa-  
thome being lowe water.

The 12. day wee set saile at a North east sunne, the winde at West South west, and sailed  
downe the Swane and ouer the Spits, and at a South south west sunne, the winde came to the  
East North east, then we turned downe to the Raze and so ouer the Raze, & in the craling ground,  
and so came to ancre.

The 13. day we wayed at 3. of the clocke afternoone, the winde at Southeast, and sailed downe  
to Orfordnesse, and there ancred being litle winde, and the floud in hand.

The 14. we wayed at 2. a clocke in the morning being litle winde at North north west, and sail-  
ed down to Alborough, and thwart of Alborough the wind came to the North north east, we tur-  
ned downe to Solde, and there ancred at 9. a clocke in 5. fathoms, and rode all the floud, and at a  
high water being a stiffe gale at North North east wee wayed and put roome with Harwiche at a  
North west sunne, being 9. a clocke at night.

The 15. day wee wayed and set saile at 3. of the clocke afternoone the winde at South south-  
east, & sailed to Alborough. And at that present the winde came to the North north west, and North  
a stiffe gale. Wee put roome with Orfordnesse, and there rode all the night.

The 16. day we wayed at Orfordnesse at a Southeast, & by East sunne, the winde at North  
east, and by North, a good gale, and put roome with Harwich, and ancred there at a South, and by  
East sunne, and did obserue the latitude of the place which was 51. deg. 54. min.

The 17. day we wayed at Harwich, at a North east sunne, the winde at West south west, and  
sailed out of Harwich Haufe.

Their depa-  
ture from Har-  
wich the 18. of  
June.

The 18. day wee set saile from Yarmouth roade at a South west sunne, the winde at East  
Southeast, and sailed betwix the Cockle and the maine in thre fathome, and a halfe at thre  
quarters floud. From 7. to 10. a clocke at night the winde at South Southeast, the shippe sailed  
North west thre leagues.

From tenne a clocke at night to 2. of the clocke in the morning the winde at South Southeast,  
a faire gale, the shippe sailed North west 4. leagues.

The 19. day in the morning from 2. of the clocke to sixe a clocke, the winde at South Southeast  
a faire gale, the shippe sailed North west foure leagues. From 6. a clocke to tenne of the clocke in  
the forenoone, the winde at South Southeast a faire gale, the shippe sailed North west eight  
glasse, foure leagues. From tenne a clocke to two a clocke foure leagues moze. And from two  
to eight sixe leagues: from eight to midnight we sailed North North west five leagues, we found  
two hauing 30. fathome, and fine sande with blackes among and one shell. From midnight to 4.  
a clocke in the morning, the shippe sailed with all sailes 6. leagues, and that way out we founde  
hauing 37. fathomes, and fine gray sand.

From 4. a clocke in the morning to 8. in the forenoone, being the 21. day, the winde at South-  
Southeast, a faire gale, the shippe sailed North North west 8. glasse, 5. leagues, then North north  
west 6. leagues, the maine yard a crosse: we founde hauing 40. fathome, and fine sand. And at that  
present we obserued the latitude, which was 54. degr. 41. min.

The 22. day from 4. a clocke in the morning till 4. a clocke the next morning we sailed with a  
faire Southeast winde, 3. leagues. This day from 4. to 8. of the clocke the winde as befoze the  
shippe sailed, North North west five leagues, founde 50. fathome, and fine sand. From 8. a clocke  
till 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at South litle winde with fogge, the ship sailed North North  
west 3. leagues, I founde hauing 54. fathome, and fine sand like ore.

The 23. day.

From 12. to foure of the clocke, the winde at South South west litle winde, the shippe sailed  
North 1. league with great fogge. At the end of 8. weech founde, hauing 55. fathome & fine sand,  
From

From 4. to 8. a clocke the winde at West Northwell, litle winde with fogge, the ship went North 2. leagues. Sounded hauing 50. fathome, and by some sands. From 8. to midnight, the winde at Northwell litle wind of fog, the ship went Northnortheast 3. leagues, & to midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning of wind at Northwell, & by North smooth waters, & the ship went Northeast 3. leagues.

The 24. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, the wind at North northwell, faire weather, the sea smooth, the ship went West, 3. leagues and a halfe, and at the end of this waite the founte, hauing 60. fathome, and ozle sand, & litle white shels. From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at Northwell and by North, a faire gale, the sea smooth, the ship went West 3. leagues and a halfe: sounded hauing 53. fathome, and streame ground with litle shels. From 12. to 4. in the afternoone the winde at North northwell, the ship went Northnortheast 4. leagues.

Fare Island.

At 2. of the clocke after noone I had sight of Faire yle, being from vs 6. leagues North, and by East, and when I brought it Northwell and by North, it did rise at the Southermost ende with a litle hommocke, and swampe in the middes.

From 4. a clocke at afternoone to 8. a clocke litle wind, & the ship sailed Northnortheast 2. leagues, I sounded hauing 60. fathomes, & streame ground with shels, 4. leagues from the land. From 8. a clocke to midnight caline, and without accompt. From midnight to 4. a clocke, in the morning, the winde Northwell, and by North litle winde, the ship sailed Northnortheast 1. league.

Shotland.

The 25. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, the winde at Northwell, and by North a fresh gale, I call about to the Westward, the Southermost head of Shotland called Swinborne head Northnorthwest from me, and the land of Fare yle, West Southwell from me. I sailed directly to the Northhead of that said land sounding as I ranne in, hauing 60. 50. and 40. fathoms, and gray redde shels: and within halfe a mile of that Island, there are 36. fathoms, so I sailed to that Island to see whether there were any reddeerde for a Northwell winde, and I soude by my sounding hard rocks, and soule ground and deepe water, within two cables length of the shore, 28. fathome, and so did not ancre but plied to and fro with my foresaile, and mixt till it was a high water vnder the Island. The tide seteth there Northwell and Southeast: the floud seteth Southeast, and the ebb Northwell.

Fowlay Island.

The 26. day I hauing the winde at South a faire gale, sayling from Fare yle to Swinborne head, I did obserue the latitude, being the Island of Fowlay West Northwell frō me 6. leagues, and Swinborne head East southeast from me, I found my elevation to be 37. degr. and my declination 22. degr. 46. min. So that my latitude was 59. degr. 46. min. At that present being nere to Swinborne head, hauing a leake which did trouble vs, as also to take in fresh water, I plyed roome with a founte, which is called S. Tronions, and there did ancre in seuen fathoms water, and faire sande. You haue running in the sound's mouth in the entring 17. 15. 12. 10. 9. 8. and 7. fathoms, and the sound lyeth in North Northwell, and there roade to a West sunne, and stopped our leake, and hauing refreshed our selues with water, at a North Northwell sunne, I set saile from S. Tronions the winde at South Southeast, and turned out till wee were cleare of the sound, and so sailed West to go cleare of the Island of Fowlay. And running off toward Fowlay, I sounded, hauing fiftie fathome, and streame ground, and also I sounded Fowlay, being North from mee one league off that Island, hauing fiftie fathome at the South head, and streame ground, like broken oemell, and one shell being redde and white like mackerell.

Whee they began to take Northwell. Latitude 59. deg. 59. min.

The 27. day at a South sunne I did obserue the latitude, being the Island of Fowlay, from mee two leagues East Northwell: I founde my selfe to be in latitude 59. degrees, 59. min. truly obserued, the winde at South Southwell: I sailed West, and by North.

From 12. to foure a clocke afternoone, the winde at South, a faire gale the shippe sailed West and by North 6. leagues, and at the end of this waite, I sounded hauing 60. fathome, with litle stones and shels, the Island from vs 8. leagues East.

From 4. to 8. a clocke the winde at South a good gale, the shippe sailed West and by North 6. leagues.

From 8. a clocke to midnight, the winde at South Southeast, a good gale, the ship sailed west, and by North 7. leagues, I sounded hauing 65. fathoms. In balling by the lead the line brake, and so we lost our lead.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the winde at Southeast a good gale, our maine saile ferled our maine topsaile, foresaile, and spereclade aboard, the ship sailed West and by North 8. leagues.

The 28. day from 4. to eight a clocke, the winde at Southeast a good gale, the shippe sailed West and by North eight leagues: from eight to 12. a clocke, the winde at East Southwell a fresh gale, the shippe sailed West and by North eight leagues.

From

From 12. to 4.

East and by North

From 4. to 8.

3. leagues. I did

From 8. to mid

From midnight

sailed West 8. lea

From 4. to 8.

West 8. leagues.

From 8. to 12

to West 6. leagu

fathome.

From 4. to 8.

From 8. to mi

From midnig

The 30. day fr

From 8. to 12

From 12. to 4.

and hauing 100.

From 4. to 8.

From 8. to mi

From midnig

The first of Ju

had so much w

From 8. to 12

From 12. to 4.

From 4. to 8.

From 8. to mi

From midnig

The second da

From 8. to 12

the end of this

From 4. to 8.

From midnig

The 3. day to

4. to 8. a clocke

From 8. to 12

Compass to be

From 12. to 4

From 4. to 8.

From 8. to m

From midnig

The 5. day fr

From 8. to 1

From 12. to

6. leagues. From

From midnig

North 7. leagues

The 6. day fr

From 12. to

the ship went North  
onight, the winde at  
night to 4. a cloke in  
North 3. leagues.  
well, faire weather,  
his watche sounded,  
at noone, the winde  
leagues and a halfe;  
4. in the afternoone

gues North, and by  
hermost ende with a

North 2. leagues,  
in the land. From 8.  
the in the morning,  
1. league.

st, and by North a  
I called Swinborne  
om me. I failed to  
b. and 40. fathoms,  
oms, so I failed to  
and I founde by my  
ngth of the hoare,  
mixin till it was a  
all: the fload fetter)

yle to Swinborne  
frob me 6. leagues,  
degr. and my berth  
present being nere  
fresh water, I plyed  
fathoms water, and  
2. 10. 9. 8. and 7. fa-  
me, and stopped out  
me, I set sail from  
re of the sound, and  
owlay, I founde,  
g North from mee  
mine grounde, like

of Fowlay, from  
es, 59. min. crutch

hippe sailed West  
athome, with little

st and by North 6.

the ship sailed west,  
and the line brake,

od gale, over maine  
West and by North

, the shippe sailed  
East South East 1

From

From 1. to 4. a clocke at afternoone, the winde at East South East, a fresh gale, the ship sailed East and by North 8. leagues.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, the winde at East South East a fresh gale, the ship sailed West 8. leagues. I did sound, and could not get ground at 70. fathome.

From 8. to midnight the winde at East South East a good gale, the ship sailed West 8. leagues. From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning, the winde at East North East, a fresh gale the ship sailed West 8. leagues and a halfe.

From 4. to 8. a clocke the 29. day the winde at East North East a good gale, the shippe sailed West 8. leagues. 29.

From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone, the winde at East North East, the ship sailed West 8. leagues.

From 1. to 4. a clocke in the afternoone the winde at East North East a faire gale, the ship sailed West 6. leagues, and at the ende of this watche I did sounde, and could get no ground at 100. fathome.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, we sailed West 5. leagues.

From 8. to midnight 4. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 4. leagues West.

The 30. day from 4. to 8. a clocke in the forenoone, we sailed West 3. leagues. 30.

From 8. to 12. a clocke 3. leagues.

From 1. to 4. a clocke at afternoone West 5. leagues. And at the ende of this watch I sounde having 100. fathome and no ground.

From 4. to 8. a clocke 6. leagues.

From 8. to midnight, we sailed West 8. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 8. leagues.

The first of July, from 4. to 8. a clocke, we sailed West 4. glasses 4. leagues, and at that present July the first we had so much winde that we spooned afoze the sea South West 2. leagues.

From 8. to 12. at noone West and by North 6. leagues.

From 1. to 4. a clocke 6. leagues.

From 4. to 8. foure miles.

From 8. to midnight we sailed with 2. coarles 4. leagues West.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 6. leagues.

The second day from 4. to 8. a clocke, 6. leagues and a halfe West.

From 8. to 12. West 7. leagues. From 1. to 4. at afternoone West 7. leagues more. And at the ende of this watch I sounde having 100. fathome, and no ground. 31.

From 4. to 8. a clocke 7. leagues. From 8. to midnight West, and by North 7. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning west and by North 6. leagues.

The 3. day we found our COMPASSE to bee varied one point to the Westwards: this day from 4. to 8. a clocke we sailed West, and by North 6. leagues. 32.

From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone West, and by North 4. leagues. At that present I found our COMPASSE to be varied 11. deg. and one 4. part to the Westwards which is one point.

From 1. to 4. a clocke at afternoone West and by North one league.

From 4. to 8. West, and by North one league.

From 8. to midnight West, and by North 2. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning West, and by North 3. leagues.

The 4. day from 4. to 8. the winde at North West and by North 4. leagues. 33.

From 8. to 12. at noone West and by North 2. leagues. And at that present we sent off our pin- nace from the Gabriel to fish being calme.

From 1. to 4. a clocke at afternoone calme, and without accompt.

From 4. to 8. a clocke at night, West and by North 2. leagues.

From 8. to midnight West, and by North 7. leagues.

From midnight to 4. a clocke in the morning 9. leagues.

The 5. day from 4. to 8. a clocke West and by North 8. leagues. 34.

From 8. to 12. having calme and fogge, West and by North 6. leagues.

From 1. to 4. at afternoone West and by North 7. leagues. From 4. to 8. North North West 6. leagues. From 8. to midnight North and by West 4. leagues.

From midnight to 6. a clocke in the morning we were hulled by the winde, and went West and by North 5. leagues.

The 6. day from 8. to 12. at noone, West and by North 5. leagues. 35.

From 1. to 4. a clocke West and by North 5. leagues.

From



7. From 8. at night to 8. in the morning 4. leagues.  
From 12. to 4. a clocke at afternoone, North Northwest 4. leagues.  
From 4. to 8. at night North Northwest 4. leagues.  
From 8. to midnight, North two leagues.  
From midnight to 8. a clocke calme, and without accompt.
8. The 8. day from 8. to 12. at noone, 3. leagues West.  
From 12. to 4. a clocke West, 6. leagues.  
From 4. to 8. eight leagues.  
From 8. to midnight wee tooke in all our sails, and spooned aloft the sea because of our pin-  
nelle, and at that present came fogge and miste, and so we lost sight of her. Wee sailed West five  
leagues.  
From midnight to 4. a clocke, West south west 4. leagues, with very much winde.
9. From 4. to 8. in the forenoone, the sea being mightily growne, 4. leagues.  
From 8. to 12. South west above the sea 4. leagues.  
From 12. to 4. a clocke, West South west 5. leagues.
10. From that time to 8. a clocke the next day I layd the ship a hal, her way was south 4. leagues.  
From 8. to 4. a clocke calme, and without accompt.  
From 4. to 8. five leagues. From 8. to midnight 7. leagues.  
From midnight to 4. a clocke, North 8. leagues.
11. From 4. to 8. a clocke, West and by south 5. leagues. From 8. to 12. a clocke at noone West,  
and by south 4. leagues, & at the south east sunne we had sight of the land of Friseland being from  
us West north west 16. leagues, and rising like pinacles of steeples, and all covered with snow. I  
found my selfe in 61. deg. of latitude. Wee sailed to the shoare & could finde no ground at 150. fa-  
thome, we hoisted out our boate, & the Captaine with 4. men rowed to the shoare to get on land, but  
the land lying full of yce they could not get on land, and so they came aboarde againe: Wee had  
much adoe to get cleare of the yce by reason of the fogge. Yet from Thursday 8. a clocke in the  
morning to Friday at noone we sailed South west 20. leagues.
12. The 13. day, a North east wind cleared us of the thicke miste, & we sailed south west 5. leagues.
13. The 14. day the vehemencie of the winde brake our forepart, and boze ouer boord our mylles  
maste, so we put our spert saile yard, with the spert saile coarce to our foremast, and spooned aloft  
the sea South west 15. leagues, till it was Sunday.
14. This day from 4. in afternoon to 8. we sailed South west 2. leagues. From thence to Sun-  
day morning 4. of the clocke, calme, and without accompt.
15. The 16. day from 4. to 8. the winde at South south west, we sailed 6. leagues and a half. From  
8. to 12. 5. leagues and a half, and from 12. to 4. 6. leagues. At the ende of this watch the head of  
our maine mast, maine topmaste, with the top saile brake, and fel into the sea altogether.  
From 4. to 8. we ranne somewhat a drift, because we layd by the ropes of our maine mast, and  
set our maine saile againe. From 8. to midnight, North west and by West 3. leagues.
16. The 17. day from 4. to 8. 3. leagues. From 8. to 12. two leagues, from 12. to 4. at afternoone  
3. leagues, from 4. to 8. a clocke 2. leagues, in our old cource: I ppoosed to sounde but sounde no  
ground. From 8. to midnight, West and by South 2. leagues, from midnight to 4. a clocke in the  
morning 2. leagues.
17. From 4. to 8. three leagues, from 8. to 12. at noone 3. leagues, and here at a South east sunne,  
I found the sunne to be elevated 33. deg. And at a South south east 40. deg. So I obserued it ill  
I founde it at the highest, and then it was elevated 52. deg. I Iudged the variation of the Com-  
passe to be 2. points and a halfe to the West.
18. From 12. to 4. three leagues, from 4. to 8. three leagues, from 8. to midnight 2. leagues. From  
midnight to 4. a clocke one league, being litle winde.  
From 4. to 8. North, 4. leagues, from 8. to 12. 8. leagues, from 12. to 4. foure leagues, from 4.  
to 8. 4. leagues, and at the end of this watch we call about to the Eastwards. From 8. to midnight  
3. leagues, from midnight to 4. a clocke East and by North 3. leagues.
19. From 4. to 8. 3. leagues, from 8. to 12. 3. leagues, from 12. to 4. 4. leagues. From 4. to 8. three  
leagues, from 8. to midnight 4. leagues. From midnight to 4. a clocke 4. leagues, from 8. to 12.  
North north east 4. leagues. From 12. to 4. 4. leagues, from 4. to 8. 4. leagues, from 8. to midnight  
four leagues North east. From midnight to 4. a clocke, North east four leagues, and at the ende  
of this watch we had sight of a great drift of yce, seeing a firme land, and we call Westward to be  
cleare of it.
20. From 4. to 8. south west 3. leagues, from 8. to 12. 2. leagues, from 12. to 6. 3. leagues, from 6. at  
night

The Island of  
Frisland.

Deep deepe  
sea.

The variation  
of the needle,  
two points  
and a halfe to  
the West.

A great drift  
of yce.

night to five the  
From 6. to 1  
north east, 8. leag  
north west, 7. leag

From 4. to 8.  
8, 5. leagues: from  
ning, west, north  
From 4. to 8,  
leagues: from 8  
the clocke, 4. leag

This day was  
latitude was 62.  
From 4. to 8,  
morning calme,  
From 4. to 8,  
leagues, but very

ring up of the fog  
yce about the lan  
and the yce being  
Upon Friday, I  
full of yce, and ou  
length of the yoa  
current is there g  
we would haue se  
halfe, in one how

This day at 4  
as we lodged, be  
that land, and  
yce stretched alo

Wednesday the  
led out, being ha  
den within two ca  
founde againe  
we founde the n  
that present bein  
as if a great cliff  
had 90. fathome,  
fit to the boare.

Wee sailed this  
The next day I  
The next day  
moone we call abo  
The first day it  
towards night, w  
The strength di  
of againe.

The eight day  
The ninth day  
calme.

The tenth I to  
the maine, and ch  
as I could not ge  
me, and I feared o  
the Island, and be  
aboard.

The 11. we fou  
night.

The 12. we se

night to flye the next morning, northeast five leagues,

From 6. to 12. west line leagues, from 12. to 4. northnorthwest, 6. leagues: from 4. to 8. northnorthwest, 8. leagues: from 8. to midnight, 7. leagues: from midnight to 4. of the clocke, northnorthwest, 7. leagues.

From 4. to 8. 7. leagues: from 8. to 12. 7. leagues more: from 12. to 4. 5. leagues: from 4. to 8. 5. leagues: from thence to midnight, 6. leagues: from midnight to 4. of the clocke in the morning, west, northwest, 6. leagues.

From 4. to 8. 7. leagues: from 8. to 12. 7. leagues: from 12. to 4. 8. leagues: from 4. to 8. 8. leagues: from 8. to midnight, 4. leagues, west, northwest, and with fogge: from midnight to 4. of the clocke, 4. leagues.

This day was litle wind, and we tried with both our courses: we had sight of a land of yce: the latitude was 62. degrees, two minuts. We ran from 12. to 4. 4. miles.

From 4. to 8. 4. miles: from 8. to 4. calme, and fogge: from thence to 4. of the clocke in the morning calme, and foggie also.

From 4. to 8. 4. leagues: from 8. to 12. 3. leagues: from 12. to 4. northwest and by west, five leagues, but very foggie: from thence to 8. of the clocke in the morning, litle wind: but at the rising up of the fogge, we had sight of lande, which I supposed to be Labrador, with great store of yce about the land: I ran in towards it, and sounded, but could get no ground, at 100. fathom, and the yce being too thicke, I could not get to the shoare, and so lay off, and came cleare of the yce. Upon Spunday, we came within a mile of the shoare, and sought a harborow: all the sound was full of yce, and our boate toying a shoare, could get no ground, at 100. fathom, within a Cables length of the shoare: then we failed Call northeast along the shoare, for the lande lieth, and the current is there great, setting northeast, and south west: and if we could have gotten anker ground, we would have seen what force it had runne, but I iudge a ship may drive a league and a halfe, in one howe, with that tide.

This day, at 4. of the clocke in the morning, being faire and cleere, we had sight of a head land, as we iudged, bearing from vs north, and by East, and we sailed northeast, and by North, to that land, and when we came thither, we could not gette to the lande for yce: for the yce stretcht along the coaste, so that we could not come to the land, by five leagues.

Monday the first of August, it calmed, and in the after noone, I caused my boate to be hoisted out, being hard by a great Island of yce, and I and foure men rowed by that yce, and sounded within two cables length of it, and had spereyne fathome, and after that sounded againe within a Spindon shotte, and had ground, at an hundred fathome, and faire land: we sounded the next day a quarter of a myle from it, and had sprie fathome rough grounde, and at that present being aboard, that great Island of yce fell one part from another, making a noyce as if a great cliffe had fallen into the Sea. And at foure of the clocke, I sounded againe, and had 90. fathome, and small blacke stones, and litle white stones, like peacles. The tide here did sit to the shoare.

We failed this day south southeast of ward, and layd it aerie.

The next day was calme and thicke, with a great sea.

The next day we failed South, and by East, two leagues, and at eight of the clocke in the fore noone we cast about to the Eastwards.

The first day it cleered, and we ranne northwest into the shoare, to get a harborow, and being towards night, we norwithstanding kept at sea.

The second day we plyed roome with the shoare, but being neere it, it waxed thicke, and we bare off againe.

The eight day we benved in towards the shoare againe.

The ninth day we sounded, but could gette no ground: at 130. fathome: the weather was calme.

The tenth Iooke foure men, and my selfe, and rowed to shoare to an Island one league from the maine, and there the shoode stretcht Southwest alongst the shoare, and it sheweth as neere as I could iudge for to, I could not carry to pprove it, because the shippe was a great way from me, and I feared a fogge: but when I came a shoare, it was a lowe water. I went to the toppe of the Island, and before I came backe, it was hied a foot water, and so without carrying, I came aboard.

The 11. we found our latitude to be 63. degrees, and eight minuts, and this day ended the first night.

The 12. we set saille towards an Island, called the Gabriels Island, which was 10. leagues then

23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
31  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12

because of our pinne failed West five  
inde.  
four 4. leagues,  
at noone West,  
land being from  
ered with snow. I  
ground at 150. fa-  
to get on land, but  
againe: We had  
8. a clocke in the  
thwest 5. leagues,  
boord our mylles  
and spooned afoye  
n thence to Sun-  
and a half. From  
weach the head of  
gether.  
maine mast, and  
gues.  
o. 4. at afternoone  
de but founde no  
4. a clocke in the  
South: I minne,  
I obserued it till  
tion of the Com-  
b. leagues. From  
leagues, from 4.  
m 8. to midnight  
from 4. to 8. three  
From 8. to 12.  
m 8. to midnight  
and at the ende  
Westward to be  
agues, from 6. at  
night

The latitude  
of 62. de. 2. mi.  
Sight of land  
supposed to  
have bene La-  
brador.

then from vs.

13 We espied a shoare, and bare with it, and came to a sandie Baye, where we came to an anchor, the land bearing East fourteenths of vs, and there we rode all night in 8. fathome water. It showed there at a Southcast Poone. We called it Priors sounde, being from the Gabriels Island, tenne leagues.

14 The 14. we waied, and ranne into another sounde, where we ankered in 8. fathome water, faire land, and blacke oaze, and there calked our ship, being weake from the wailes byward, and tookt in fresh water.

15 The 15. day we waied, and sailed to Priors Baye, being a mile from thence.

16 The 16. day was calme, and wee rode still, without pre, but presently within two houre it was frozen round about the shippe, a quarter of an ynche thicke, and that daye very faire, and calme.

17 The 17. day we waied, and came to Thomas Williams Island.

18 The 18. day, we sailed north north west, and ankered againe in 23. fathome, and caught oaze, vnder Burchers Island, which is from the former Island, ten leagues.

19 The 19. day in the morning, being calme, and no winde, the Captaine and I, tookt our boate, with eight men in her, to rowe vs a shoare, to see if there were there any people, or no, and going to the coope of the Island, we had sight of fouen boates, which came rowing from the East side, toward that Island: whereupon we returned aboord againe: at length we sent our boate with five men in her, to see whether they rowed, and so with a white cloth brought one of their boates with their men along the shoare, rowing after our boate, till suchtime as they sawe our shippe, and then they rowed a shoare: then I went on shoare my selfe, and gaue eury of them a thred-den point, and brought one of them aboord of me, where he did eate and drinke, and then carried him on shoare againe. Whereupon all the rest came aboord with their boates, bearing nineteene persons, and they spake, but we vnderstoode them not. They be like to Tartars, with long blacke haire, broad faces, and flatte noses, and tawnie in colour, wearing Seale skinnes, and so doe the women, not differing in the fashion, but the women are marked in the face with blishe streakes to wote the cheekes, and round about the eyes. Their boates are made all of Seale skins, with a keele of wood within the skinn: the ypposition of them is like a Spanish Gallie, save onely they be flat in the botcome, and sharpe at both ends.

Height of the  
Country per-  
ple.

The descripti-  
on of the peo-  
ple.

7. of our men  
taken by the  
people.

20 The twentieth day, we waied, and went to the East side of this Island, and I and the Captaine, with foue men more went on shoare, and there we sawe their houses, and the people cyping vs, came rowing to wardes our boate: whereupon wee plied to our boate: and wee being in our boate, and they aboarde, they called to vs, and wee rowed to them, and one of their companie came into our boate, and wee carried him aboord, and gaue him a Bell, and a knife: so the Captaine and I willed five of our men to set him a shoare at a rocke, and not among the companie, which they came from, but their wilfulness was such, that they would goe to them, and so were taken themselves, and our boate lost.

21 The next daye in the morning, wee stode in neere the shoare, and shoott of a sauronet, and sounded our trumpet, but wee coulde heare nothing of our men: this sounde wee called the five mens sounde, and plied out of it, but ankered againe in thirte fathome, and oaze: and rising there all night, in the morning, the snowe laye a foote thicke vpon our ha-ches.

22 The two and twentieth daye in the morning, we waied, and went againe to the place where wee lost our men, and our boate. Wee had sight of fouereteene boates, and some came neere to vs, but we coulde learne nothing of our men: among the rest, we intised one in a boate to our shippes side, with a Bell, and in giuing him the Bell, wee tookt him, and his Boate, and so kept him, and so rowed dotune to Thomas Williams Island, and there ankered all night.

23 The 26. day we waied, to come homeward, and by 12. of the clocke at noone, we were thwart of Trumpeys Island.

27 The next day, we came thwart of Gabriels Island, and at 8. of the clocke at night, we had the Cape Labradore West from vs, ten leagues.

28 The 28. day we went our course Southcast.

29 Wee sailed Southcast, and by East, 22. leagues.

Account of  
the

30 The first day of September in the morning, we had sight of the land of Friseland, being eight leagues from vs, but we could not come neerer it, for the monstrous pre that lay about it. From that day, till the sixth of this month, wee came along Island, and had the South part

part of it at right

The seventh

men was blowe

held, till the Cap

The 25. day

we

The first day

at Yarmouth, an

A  
C  
A  
K  
M  
C  
C  
A  
C  
A  
P  
A  
C  
T  
I  
K  
M  
Y

The sec  
Ves



Lord Admirall

well furnished

volage, for the

by west and mo

west parts of A

though our De

North: most p

greater beaustie

the same. Our s

before, with two

they attempte row

the benefite of th

second voyage,

those people, an

the page the pecc

Upon which

to Harwich, w

ladies, and with

gaily Orkney, b

part of it at eight of the clocke, Cast from vs ten leagues.

The seventh day of this month, we had a very terrible storme, by force whereof, one of our men was blown into the sea out of our waste, but he caught holde of the foresaide sheate, and there held, till the Captaine plucked him againe into the ship.

The 25. day of this month, we had sight of the Island of Orknye, which was then Cast from

The first day of October, we had sight of the Shetls, and so sailed along the coast, and ankered at Yarmouth, and the next day we came into Harwicke.

### The language of the people of *Meta incognita*.

Argotteyr, a hand.  
Cangnawe, a nose.  
Arered, an eye.  
Keiotot, a tooth.  
Mutchwer, the head.  
Chewat, an eare.  
Comagaye, a legge.  
Atoniagay, a foot.  
Callagay, a paire of shooes.  
Artegay, a coate.  
Polleuetagay, a knife.  
Accaskay, a shippe.  
Coblone, a chumbe.  
Teckkere, the foremost finger.  
Ketteckle, the middle finger.  
Mekellacanc, the fourth finger.  
Yackerrone, the little finger.

### The second voyage of Master Martin Frobisher, made to the West, and Northwest Regions, in the yeere, 1577. With a description of the Countrey, and people: Written by Dionisic Settle.



In Whitsundaye, being the five and twentieth of Maye, in the yeere of our Loyde God, 1577. Captaine Frobisher departed from Blacke Wall, with one of the Queenes Maiesties shippes, called The Aide, of nine score came, of thre hundred: and two other litle Barkes likewise, the one called The Gabriell, whereof Master Fenton, a Gentleman of my Lord of Warwikes, was Captaine: and the other, The Michael, whereof Master Yorke, a Gentleman of my Lord Admiralls was Captaine, accompanied with seven score Gentlemen, soldiers, and sailers, well furnished with victuals, and other provision necessarie for one halfe yeere, on this his second voyage, for the further discovering of the passage to Cathay, and other countreies therunto adiacent, by west and north-west navigations: which passage of way, is supposed to be on the north & north-west parts of America: and the said America to be an Island enuironed with the Sea, where though our Merchants might haue course and recourse with their merchandize, from these our Northernmost parts of Europe, to those Orientall coastes of Asia, in much shorter time, and with greater benefite then any others, to their no litle commoditie and profit: that wee of shall traffike the same. Our said Captaine and General of this present voyage and companie, hauing the yeere before, with two litle pinnets, to his great danger, and no small commendations, given a voyage attempt towards the performance thereof, is also prest (when occasion shall be ministered, to the benefite of his Prince, and native Countrey) to adventure himselfe further therein. As for this second voyage, it seemeth sufficient, that he hath bene employed and searched the commodities of those people, and Countreies, with sufficient commoditie vnto the aduenturers, which in his first voyage the yeere before, he had found out.

Vpon which considerations, the day and yeere before expressed, we departed from Blacke Wall to Harwicke, where making an accomplishment of things necessarie, the last of May we hoised by sailles, and with a merrie wind the 7. of June, we arrived at the Islands, called Orchades, by which

The Islands Orchades, as they are called.

of

The Dutch  
and upon final  
occasion flee  
their home.

In wood in  
Dhnyep.

Fisher men of  
England haue  
daily traffike  
to Dhnyep.

In June and  
July no night  
in this well  
and north-west  
regions.

Fr. Snow, and  
hale in June  
and July.

Friland be  
wre to fogge.

Frobishers  
strait.

side of  
1603.

of fresh waer: in the doing whereof, our General licensed the Gentlemen and Souldiers, for their recreation, to goe on shoare. At our landing, the people fled from their poore cottages, with whyles and alarms, to waerne their neighbours of enemies, but by gentle persuasions we reclaimed them to their houses. It seemeth they are often frighted with Pirates, or some other enemies, that moue them to such sudden feare. Their houses are very simply builded with stibble stone, without any chimnies, the fire being made in the middell thereof. The good man, wife, children, and other of their familie, eate and sleepe on the one side of the house, and their cattell on the other, very healthly and ruderly, in respect of ciuilitie. They are destitute of wood, their fire is turkie and Cowhardes. They haue corne, bigg, and oates, with which they pay their Kings rent, to the maintenance of his house. They take great quantitie of fische, which they drie in the winde and Sunne. They dresse their meate very fleshy, and eate it without salt. Their apparell is after the rudest sort of Scotland. Their money is all base. Their Church and religion is reformed according to the Scots. The Fisher men of England, can better declare the dispositions of these people then I: wherefore I remit other their vsages to their reports, as perely repairs this bet, in their course to goe from Island to fische.

We departed here hence, the 8. of June, and followed our course betweene West and North-west, until the 4. of Iulie: all which time, we had no night, but that easly, and without any impediment, we had when we were so disposed, the frustration of our bookes, and other pleasures to passe away the time: a thing of no small moment, so such as wander in unknown seas, and long navigations, especially, when both the winde and raging surges, do passe their common and wonted course. This benedite endureth in those parts not 6. weekes, whilst the sunne is neere the Tropike of Cancer: but where the Pole is raised to 70. or 80. degrees, it continueth the longer.

All along these seas, after we were six daies sailing from Orkney, we met floating in the Sea, great fire trees, which as we iudged, were with the furie of great floods rooted by, and so byuen into the sea. Island hath almost no other wood nor fuel, but such as they take by vppon their coastes. It seemeth, that these trees are byuen from some part of the New found lande, with the current that stretch from the West to the East.

The 4. of Iulij, we came within the making of Frilande. From this shoare 10. or 12. leagues, we met great Islands of ice, of halfe a mile, some more, some lesse in compasse, the being about the sea, 30. or 40. fathoms, and as we supposed, fast on ground, where, with our lead we could scarce find the bottom, for depth.

Here, in place of odoriferous and fragrant smells of sweete gums, & pleasant notes of muscicall birds, which other Countreys in more temperate Zone do yeeld, we tasted the most boisterous Boeal blasse, mixed with snow & haille, in the moneths of June & July, nothing inferior to our intemperate winter: a sudden alteration, and especially in a place of Paralele, where the Pole is not 6. leuats above 61. degrees: at which height other Countreys more to the North, yet, unto 70. degrees, be themselves more temperate then this doth.

All along this coast ye liech, as a continual bulwarke, & so defendeth the Countrey, that those which would land there, incur great danger. Our General 3. daies together, attempted with the ship to goe on shoare, which, for that without great danger he could not accomplish, he deferred it until a more convenient time. All along the coast lie very high mountaines, covered with snow, except in such places, where, through the steepness of the mountaines, of force it must needs fall. Four daies coasting along this land, we found no signe of habitation. Little birds, which we iudged to haue lost the shoare, by reason of thicke fogges, which that Countrey is much subiect vnto, came flying to our ships, which caused vs to suppose, that the Countrey is both more tollerable, and also habitable within, then the outward shoare maketh shewe of signification.

From hence we departed the eight of Iulie: and the 16. of the same, we came within the making of land, which land our General, the yere before, had named The Queenes foreland, being an Island, as we iudge, lying neere the supposed continent with America: and on the other side, opposite to the same, one other Island, called Halles Ille, after the name of the Passer of the ship, neere adiacent to the firme land, supposed continent with Asia. Betweene the which two Islands there is a large entrance, or streight, called Frobishers streight, after the name of our General, the first finder thereof. This said streight, is supposed to haue passage into the sea of Sur, which I leaue unknown as yet.

It seemeth, that either here, or not farre hence, the sea should haue more large entrance, then in other partes, within the frozen or intemperate Zone: and that some contrary tide, either from the East or West, with maine force casteth out that great quantitie of ice, which cometh floating from this coast, even vnto Frilande, causing that Countrey to seeme more intemperate then o-

thers, much moe

I cannot but  
then declination  
tion harmonize  
and huge pee, a  
and tide, with

Before we c  
med, we had ch  
that opinion.

As our first c  
no little cause of  
and difficile acc  
Prince, and Co  
them to the Cal  
lay off and on so

Which he b  
threwed themse  
miration to our  
inuius, and oth  
being laid on th  
of theirs to coun  
to our General  
vnto them: who  
on them, but the  
them, (not respe  
arowes hurt th

Which our  
the East shoare,  
that he had final  
amongst and in  
had bene of force  
all necessities, b  
scent come to s  
minent dang  
we had not incur  
General and A  
als: but by the  
ates, men exp  
the dangers of  
struction of our l

The day foll  
newes of great  
we were all fact  
might before, wit  
pouches, ho to  
forgetting both  
tanning riches,  
the his greedie

Within four  
whines of perfect  
any impedimem  
ter, with great v  
ough for the ship  
and young the  
Gods visitation.

As our first ar  
be spared from e  
ons, that at our e

ould bits, for their  
eages, with spikes  
we reclaimed them  
emies, that moose  
Stone, with busse  
llyden, and other  
becher, very health  
and Colo Garden.  
be maintenance of  
vunne. They besse  
rudest foze of Scor  
ding to the Scots.  
then 3: wherefore  
re course to 9 from

West and North  
without any impo  
other pleasures to  
wen seas, and long  
common and won  
is neere the Cro  
the longer.  
locking in the Sea,  
ted by, and so by  
ake by bypon their  
nd lande, with the

0. 02 1. leagues,  
be wing aboute the  
ad we could scarce  
e notes of muscull  
off boisterous Bo  
for to our venter  
the Pole is not 6  
2, yea, unto 70. be

ountrey, that those  
attempted with the  
not accomplish, be  
mountaines, covered  
s, of force it must  
action. A lile bitre,  
Countrey is much  
erep is both more  
signification,  
me with the ma  
forceland, being  
on the other side,  
Waster of the ship,  
which two Islands  
of our Generall,  
of Sur, which I  
entrance, then in  
de, either from the  
commeth being  
temperate then o  
ther

thers much more noxtherly then the same.

I cannot iudge, that any temperature vnder the Pole, beinge the tyme of the Sunnes Max  
thern declination, haile a yeere together, and one whole day, (considring, that the Sunnes eleva  
tion surmounteth not 23. degrees, and 30. minutes,) can haue power to dissolve such monstrous  
and huge yce, comparable to great mountaines, except by some other foze, as by swift currents  
and tides, wch the helpe of the said day of halfe a yeere.

Islands of yce  
comparable to  
mountaines.

Before we came within the making of these lands, we casted cold Snowes, in so much that it fre  
wed, we had changed summer with winter, if the length of the bayes had not remoued vs from  
that opinion.

At our first comming, the Streights seemed to be shut vp with a long mure of yce, which gaue  
no litle cause of discomfozt vnto vs all: but our Generall, (to whose diligence imminent dangers,  
and difficulte attempts seemed nothing, in respect of his willing minde, for the commoditie of his  
Prince, and Countrey,) with two litle Pinnell's prepared of purpose, passed twice thorough  
them to the East Hoare, and the Islands therunto adiacent: and the ship, with the two Barkes,  
lay off and on something further into the sea, from the danger of the yce.

Captain Fro  
bisher his spe  
ciall care and  
diligence for  
the benefite of  
his Prince  
and Countrey.

While he was searching the Countrey neere the Hoare, some of the people of the Countrey  
threw themselves, leaping and daunting, with strange spikes, and cries, which gaue no litle ad  
miracion to our men. Our Generall desirous to allure them vnto him by faire meanes, caused  
knives, and other thing s, to be profered vnto them, which they would not take at our handes: but  
being laid on the ground, and the partie going away, they came andooke by, leauing some thing  
of theirs to counteruaile the same. At the length, two of them leauing their weapons, came downe  
to our Generall and Waster, who did the like to them, commanding the company to stay, and went  
vnto them: who, after certaine dumbe signes, and mute congratulations, began to lay handes vpon  
them, but they beliuerly escaped, and came to their bowes and arrowes, and came fiercely vpon  
them, (not respecting the rest of our companie, which were ready for their defence) but with their  
arrows hurt diuers of them: we tooke the one, and the other escaped.

The other of  
the people app  
earing on  
hoare.

Arrows and  
bold people,  
one taken.

While our Generall was builed in searching the Countrey, and those Islands adiacent on  
the East Hoare, the ship and barkes hauing great care, not to put farre into the sea from him, for  
that he had finall hope of victuals, were forced to abide in a cruell tempest, chancing in the night,  
amongst and in the thickest of the yce, which was so monstrous, that euen the least of a thousand  
had bene of force sufficient, to haue shattered our ship and barkes into smal peccions, if God (who in  
all necessities, hath rare vpon the infirmitie of man) had not provided for this our extremitie a suf  
ficient remedie, through the light of the night, whereby wee might well discern to flee from such  
imminent dangers, which we auoided with 14. Bourdes in one watch the space of 4. houres. If  
we had not incurred this danger amongst these monstrous Islands of yce, we should haue lost our  
Generall and Waster, and the most of our best sailers, which were on the Hoare betwixt of victu  
als: but by the nature of our Waster Gunner, Waster Iackman, and Andrew Dier, the Wasters  
Wates, men expert both in navigation, and other good qualities, wee were all content to incurre  
the dangers afoze rehearsed, before we would, with our owne safetie, runne into the seas, to the de  
struction of our said Generall, and his companie.

Richard Cox,  
Waster Gun  
ner.  
Waster Jack  
man.  
Andrew Dier,

The day following, being the 19. of Iulie, our Capteine returned to the shippe, with good  
newes of great riches, which shewed it selfe in the bowels of those barren mountaines, togeth  
we were all facilitated. A sudden mutation. The one part of vs being almost swallowed by  
the night before, with cruell Neptunes foze, and the rest on hoare, taking thought for their greedie  
pamches, how to find the way to New found land: at one moment we were all vnayd with ioy,  
forgetting both where we were, and what we had suffered. Behold the glorie of man, to night con  
tending riches, and rather looking for death then ocherwise: and to morrowe deuising how to sa  
tisfie his greedie appetite with golde.

New found  
land.

Within foure daies after we had bene at the entrance of the Streights, the northward and West  
winnes dispersed the yce into the sea, and made vs a large entrance into the Streights, that without  
any impediment, on the 19. of Iulie, we entered them, and the 20. thereof, our Generall and W  
ster, with great diligence, soughte out and founde the West Hoare, and founde out a faire Harbo  
rough for the shippe and barkes to ride in, and named it after our Wasters mate, Iackmans sound, Iackmans  
and brought the ship, barkes, and all their companie to safe anker, excepte one man, which died by  
Gods visitation.

Jackmans  
sound.

At our first arrivall, after the ship had at anker, our Generall, with such companie as could wel  
be spared from the shipps, in maning order entered the lande, hauing speciall care by exhortati  
ons, that at our entrance thereto, we should all with one voice, kneeling vpon our knees, thanke  
God.

thanke God for our safe arrivall: secondly, beseech him, that it would please his divine Maieste, long to continue our Queene, for whom he, and all the rest of our companie, in this order toke possession of the Countrey: and thirdly, that by our Christian Studie and endeavour, those barbarous people craven up in Paganie, and insubelitic, might be reduced to the knowledge of true religion, and to the hope of saluation in Christ our Redeemer. Which other wordes were apt to signifie his willing mind, and affection towards his Maieste, and Countrey: whereby all suspicion of an unwhisfull Subject, may credibly be iudged to be heartily exempted from his mind. All the rest of the Gentlemen, and other, bestreue worshiply herein, their due praise and commendacion.

possession is  
his.

These things in this order accomplished, our Generall commanded all the companie to be obedient in things needefull for our owne safegard, to Master Fenton, Master Yorke, and Master Beale, his Lieutenant, while he was occupied in other necessary affaires, concerning our coming thither.

After this order we marched through the Countrey, with Ensigne displayed, so farre as was thought needefull, and namd and then beaped by stones on high mountaines, and other places, in token of possession, as likewise to signifie unto such as hereafter may chance to arrive there, that possession is taken in the behalfe of some other Maieste, by those which first found out the countrey.

For needfull  
to be regarded  
of fearing  
men.

Also to make their navigacions to these Countreys, hath not onely extreme windes, and furious seas, so encounter withall, but also many monstrous and great Islands of yce: a thing both rare, wonderfull, and greatly to be regarded.

We were forced sundry times, while the ship did ride here at anker, to have continual watch, with boates & men ready with halbers, to kuit fall unto such yce, which with the ebbe & flood were tolled to & fro in the harborough, & with force of oares to hale them away, for endangering of ship.

Our Generall, certaine daies searched this supposed continent with America, and not finding the commoditie to answer his expectation, after hee had made triall thereof, hee departed thence with two little barkes, and men sufficient, to the East shoare, being the supposed continent of Asia, and left the ship with most of the Gentlemen, souldiers, and sailers, unvill such time as he, either thought good to send, or come for them.

Stones glister  
with sparkles  
like gold.  
It cometh  
spencerie.

The stones of this supposed continent with America, be altogether sparkled, and glister in the Sunne like gold: so likewise doth the sand in the bright water, yet they verifie the old proverbe: All is not golde that glistereth.

On this West shoare we found a dead fish floating, which had in his nose a hozne straight and corquet, of length two yarres lacking two yuches, being broken in the top, where he might perceive it hollowe, into which some of our sailers putting spiders, they presently died. I sawe not the triall hereof, but it was reported unto me of a truth: by the vertue whereof, we supposed it to be the sea Unicorn.

The sea Uni-  
corn.

After our Generall had found out good harborough for the ship and barkes to anker in, and also such store of gold ore, as he thought himselfe satisfied withall, he returned to the Michael, whereof Master Yorke aforesaid, was Captaine, accompanied with our Master, and his Mate: who coasting along the West shoare, not farre from whence the ship rode, they perceaved a faire harborough, and willing to sound the same, at the entrance thereof they espied two tents of Seale skins, unto which the Captaine, our said Master, and other companie repaired. At the sight of our men, the people fled into the mountaines: neuertheless, they went to their tents, where leaving certaine trifles of ours, as glasses, bells, knives, & such like things, they departed, not taking any thing of theirs, except one dogge. They did in like manner leave behind them, a letter, pen, iyncke, and paper, whereby our men, whom the Captaine left the peere before, and in that peoples custome, might (if any of them were alive) be advertised of our presence, and being there.

The people  
fled at the sight  
of our men.

On the same day, after consultation had, all the Gentlemen, and others likewise, that could be spared from the ship, under the conduct and leading of Master Philpot, (unto whom, in our Generall his absence, and his Lieutenant Master Beale, all the rest were obedient) went a shoare, determining to see, if by faire means we could either allure them to familiaritie, or otherwise take some of them, & so attain to some knowledge of those men, whom our Generall left of peere before.

Master Phil-  
pot.  
Master Beale.

At our coming backe againe to the place where their tents were before, they had removed the tents further into the said Bay, or Baynes, where they might, if they were driven from the land, flee with their boates into the sea. While parting our selves into two companies, and compassing a mountaine, came suddenly upon them by land, who espying us, without any tarryng, fled to their boates, leaving the most part of their oares behind them for halfe, and rowed downe the bay, where our two Ministers met them, and drove them to shoare: but, if they had had all their oares, it doubtles they in rowing, it had bene lost time to have chased them.

Which

When they wounded they leape off the ice submitted them they iudged to be received at our nets, in extreme was miserably perceiving the danger to escape to escape young child, and himself, or a wife heve and deformed men the place to after the name of Having this as yet, is not an, something to an old spirit, a thing else unto Their riches the skins of red black, with other ditie needefull Thus returne with America, call on the East to which is an found and the. In this Isle, with such a second August might both be expect a much time hath conceger of our Generall, that fear of our Generall the ship and two In the mean unto us, sundry to have some he paired with the ned to bring the desired penne, y iudged bying t They also mar ried on mens t With this they would not tooke up: which which is left, so It seemeth they farre distans fr After 4. daies before. Our the boate, and s teine point of th

in divine Paetic, in this order took our, those barbarous knowledge of true things very apt to signify by all suspicion of mind. All these commendation.

company to be obeyed, and Master concerning our com

so farre as was to other places, in our arrivie there, that our the country, and furious a thing both rare,

continual watch, ebbe & flood were endangering the ship, and not finding we departed the continent of Asia, in time as he, either

and glister in the the old howe:

boyme straight and here we might perily died. It is we not if, we supposed it to

to anchor in, and the Michael, where his Spair: who made a faire harbor of Seale skins, the sight of our men, where leaving cer taking any thing pen, yncke, and paper peoples custome,

wife, that could be borne, in our Se were a hoare, by other will take lost the peere before. They had remoued the bymen from the mines, and comp any carrying, led to ed downe the bay, to all their care.

When

When they were lanoed, they nereely assailed our men with their bowes and arrowes, who wounded thre of them with our arrowes: and perceiuing them felues thus hurt, they desperately leape off the Rocks into the Sea, and drowned them selues: which if they had not done, but had submitted them selues, or if by any means we could haue taken aliue (being their enemies as they iudged) we would both haue saued them, and also haue sought remedie to cure their wounds inflicted at our hands. But they, altogether voyde of humanitie, and ignorant what mercy meant, in extremities looke for no other then death: and perceiuing they should fall into our hands, thus miserably by drowning rather desired death, then other wise to bee saued by vs: the rest, perceiuing their fellows in this distresse, fled into the high mountaines. Two women, not being so apt to escape as the men were, the one for her age, and the other being incompared with a young child, we tooke. The olde wretch, whom diuers of our Saylers supposed to be eyther a diuell, or a witch, had her buskins plucked off, to see if she were elouen footed, and for her ougly betwe and besomitic, we let her goe: the young woman and the child, we brought away. We named the place where they were slaine, Bloude point: and the Bay of Warbozough, Yorkes found, after the name of one of the Captaines of the two Barkes.

so fierce assault of a few.

Having this knowledge both of their fiercenesse and cruelty, and perceiuing that faire means, as yet, is not able to allure them to familiaritie, we disposed our selues, contrary to our inclination, on something to be cruel returned to their tents, and made a spole of the same: where we found an olde shirt, a doublet, a girdle, and also shoes of our men, whom we lost the peere before: on nothing else vnto them belonging could we see our eyes.

faire means not able to allure them to familiaritie.

Their riches are not gold, silver, or precious Dycpery, but their said tents and boates, made of the skins of red Deare and Seale skins: also, dogges like vnto wolues, but for the most part black, with other cruell, moxe to be wounded at for their strangenesse, then for any other commodity needfull for our vse.

Boates of skinned.

Thus returning to our ship the 3. of August, we departed from the west Hoare, supposed firme with America, after we had anchored there 13. daies: and so, the 4. thereof, we came to our Generall on the East Hoare, and anchored in a faire Harbozough named Anne Warrwicks found, vnto which is annexed an Island both named after the Countesse of Warwicke, Anne Warrwicks found and Isle.

our departure from the west Hoare.

In this Isle, our Generall thought good, for this voyage, to freight both the ships and barkes, with such Stone or gold minerall, as he iudged to counteruaille the charges of his first, & this his seconde Nauigation to these countries, with sufficient interest to the venturers, where by they might both be satisfied for this time, and also in time to come (if it please God and our Prince) to expect a much more benefite, out of the bowels of those Septentrionall Paralels, which long time hath concealed it selfe, till at this present, though the wonderfull diligence, and great danger of our Generall and others, God is contented with the revealing thereof. It first so abundantly, that from the beginning of August, to the 22. thereof (euery man following the diligence of our General) we rayed about ground 200. tunne, which we iudged a reasonable freight for the ship and two barkes, in the sayd Anne Warrwicks Isle.

In the meane time of our abode here, some of the countrie people, came to shewe themselves vnto vs, sundry times on the maine Hoare, neere adiacent to the said Isle. Our General, desirous to haue some newes of his men, whom he lost the peere before, with some company with him repaired with the ship boar, so common, or signe with them for familiaritie, wherunto he is perswaded to bring them. They, at the first shewe, made tokens, that thre of his true men were aliue, and desired penne, yncke, and paper, and that within thre or foure daies, they would returne, and (as we iudged) bring those of our men, which were liuing, with them.

The countrie people shewe their letters vnto vs.

They also made signes or tokens of their King, whom they called Cacough, & how he was carried on mens shoulders, & a man farre surmounting any of our company, in bignesse & stature. With these tokens and signes of writing, penne, yncke, and paper was deliuered them, which they would not take at our hands, but being layd vpon the Hoare, and the parcie gone away, they tooke vp: which like wise they do, when they desire any thing for change of theirs, laying for that which is left, so much as they thinke will counteruaille the same, and not comming neare together. It seemeth they haue bene vied to this trade or traffique, with some other people adoyning, or not farre distant from their Countrie.

Their place in traffique of exchange.

After 4. daies, some of them shewed themselves vpon the firme land, but not where they were before. Our General very glad thereof, supposing to heare of our men, went from the Island, to the boate, and sufficient company with him. They seemed very glad, and allured him, about a certaine point of the land: behind which they might perceiue a companie of the craftie villains to lye lurking,

The people shewe them letters the third time.



lurking, whom our Generall would not deale withall, for that he knew not what company they were, & so with few signes dismissed them, & returned to his company.

The people  
showe them  
selves againe  
on sicine land.

Their first  
meanes to al-  
lure vs to  
shoare.  
Their second  
meanes.

Their third  
and craftiest  
attirement.

An other time, as our said Generall was coasting the countrey, with two litle Pinicks, where-  
by at our returne he might make the better relation thereof, of the craftie villians, with a  
whicie skin allured vs to them. Once againe, our Generall, for that he hoped to heare of his men,  
went towards them: at our comming neare the shoare, where on they were, we might perceiue a  
number of them lie hidden behinde great stones, & those theye in sight labouring by al meane pos-  
sible, that some would come on land: & perceiving we made no halt by wayes nor friendly signes,  
which they vsed by clapping of their hands, and being without weapon, and bus theye in sight, they  
sought further meanes to p'voke vs thereunto. One alone layd self on the shoare, which wee  
ooke up with the Boate hooke, as necessary victuals for the relieuing of the man, woman, and  
childe, whom we had taken: for that as yet, they could not digest our meate: where by they percei-  
ued themselves deceiued of their expectation, for all their craftie allurementes. Yet once againe, so  
make (as it were) a full shewe of their craftie natures, and subtille sleightes, to the intent thereby  
to haue intrapp'd and taken some of our men, one of them conceited himselfe impotent and  
lame of his legges, who seemed to descend to the water side, with great difficultie: & to cover his  
craftie the moze, one of his fellowes came downe with him, and in such places, where hee seemed  
unable to passe, heooke him on his shoulers, set him by the water side, and departed from him,  
leaving him (as it should seeme) all alone, who playing his craftierite pagane very well, thought  
thereby to p'voke some of vs to come on shoare, not fearing, but that one of vs might make our  
partie good with a lame man.

Compassion  
to cure a craftie  
lame man.

Our Generall, having compassion of his impotencie, thought good (if it were possible) to cure  
him therof: wherefore, he caused a souldiour to shoote at him with his Calieuer, which grazed be-  
foye his face. The countierite villaine deliuerly fled, without any impediment at all, and got him  
to his bowe and arrowes, and the rest from their lurking holes, with their weapons, bowes, ar-  
rowes, slings, and darts. Our Generall caused some calieuers to be shot off at them, whereby some  
being hurt, they might hereafter stand in moze feare of vs.

This was all the sunnwere, for this time, we could haue of our men, of our Generals letter,  
their craftie dealing, at these thre severall times, being thus manifest unto vs, may plainly  
shewe, their disposition in other things to be correspondent. We iudged, that they vsed these tra-  
gagemmes, thereby to haue caught some of vs, for the deliueing of the man woman and childe  
whom we had taken.

They are men of a large corp'ature, and good p'p'ozition: their colour is not much unlike the  
Sunne burnt Countrey man, who laboureth daily in Sunne for his living.

They weare their haire something long, and cut befoze, either with stone o' knife, very disor-  
derly. Their women weare their haire long, and knit up with two loupes, shewing forth on either  
side of their faces, and the rest soltred vpon a knoe. Also, some of their women race their faces p'p'or-  
tionally, as chinne, cheekes, and fozehead, and the w'p'ices of their hands, whereupon they lay  
a colour, which continueth darke azurine.

They eate their meate all rawe, both fleshe, fishe, and soule, of something perboyled with bloud  
and a litle water, which they drinke. If o' lacke of water, they will eate pee, that is hard frozen, as  
pleasantly as we will doe Sugar, Candie, o' other Sugar.

If they, for necessitees sake, stand in neede of the yemilles, such grasse as the countrey yeeldeth  
they plucke vpp, and eate, not deintily, o' fallerwise to allure their stomaches to appetite: but for  
necessitees sake, without either salt, oyles, o' washing, like brute beasts deuouring the same. They  
neither vs table, stooles, o' table cloth for comelines: but when they are imbued with bloud, amice-  
kle berpe, and their kniues in like sort, they vs their tongues as apt instrumentes to lick them  
cleane: in doing whereof, they are assured to loose none of their victuals.

Doggs like  
unto wolues.

They frack o' keepe certeine doggs, not much unlike Wolues, which they p'oke together, as  
we do open o' houses, to a sled o' traile: and so carrie their necessaries ouer the pee and snow, from  
place to place: as the captiue, whom we haue, made perfect signes. And when those doggs are not  
apt for the same vse: o' when with hunger they are constrained for lacke of other victuals, they  
eate them: so that they are as needful for them, in respect of their bignesse, as our oren are for vs.

They eate  
doggs flesh.

They apparell themselves in the skinnes of such beastes as they kill, sewed together with the  
sinewes of them. All the foule which they kill, they skin, and make there of one kinde of garment  
o' other, to defend them from the colde.

Woods and  
taires to their  
apparel.

They make their apparel with woods and tailes, which tailes they giue, when they thinke to  
gratifie any friendshippe shewed vnto them: a great signe of friendshippe with them. The men  
haue

haue them not so spde

The men and women  
are open before, as  
with the furre side in  
they put their kniues  
their hole, which reach  
in place of garter, etc.

They vse their  
they weare the furre  
the said skinnes.

Those beastes, fish  
ing, hole, shoes, they  
in neede, and almost a

Their houses are  
meeting at the coppe,  
so pitched up, that the

They haue other  
stones and whale bone  
the entrance of them is  
a time to fishe, hunt,  
gaine.

Their weapons are  
long, sinewed on the  
bowe stringes are lik  
ed with bone, with th  
part of litle moze. Th  
thers layd vpon the ar  
are tyed on, to haue fo  
foze of stone o' p'one, p  
head, with a hooke on e  
pointed. They are not  
casion, the arrowe lea  
ry neere, when they sh

Their Dares are m  
likewise in the middl  
they cut out of an ind  
lays, with a long bore  
their most hurt: all wa  
They haue two soz  
artificially tyed toget  
ties, wherein streene  
as they kill, very fine  
litle and rowe in, with

Their order of fishe  
o' how they vse them,  
I can suppose the  
are of such force to be  
all in nyether doe I see

Those houses, o' ra  
troden, which is one of  
them, when they haue  
haue sufficiently stoyed  
to their winter statio  
perceiue to be in chat

They haue some p  
to woike their boats,  
withall, but without  
It seemeth, that the

have them not so loose as the women.

The men and women wear their hose close to their legges, from the waist to the knee, without any open before, as well the one kind as the other. Upon their legges they wear hose of leather, with the furred side inward, two or three paire on at once, and especially the women. In those hose, they put their knives, needles, and other things needfull to beare about. They put a bone within their hose, which reacheth from the soole to the knee, whereupon they draw their said hose, and so in place of garters, they are holden from falling downe about their feete.

They weare these skinnes very soft and souple with the haire on. In cold weather or Winter, they weare the furred side inward: and in Summer outward. Other apparell they haue none, but the said skinnes.

Those beastes, fishes, and fowles, which they kill, are their meate, drinke, apparell, houses, bedding, hose, shoes, theye, and sailes for their boates, with many other necessaries, wherof they stand in neede, and almost all their riches.

Their houses are tents, made of Beale skins, pitched vp with 4. Firre quarters, foure square, meeting at the toppe, and the skinnes sewed together with sinewes, and layd therupon: they are so pitched vp, that the entrance into them, is alwaies South, or against the Sunne.

Their houses of Beale skins and furs.

They haue other sortes of houses, which we found, not to be inhabited, which are raised with stones and Whale bones, and a skinne layd ouer them, so with stande the raine, or other weather: the entrance of them being not much vnlike an Duens mouth, whereto I thinke, they resort for a time to fish, hunt, and fowle, and so leaue them vntill the next time they come thither againe.

Their weapons are bowes, arrowes, darts, and slinges. Their bowes are of wood, of a yard long, sinewed on the back with strong sinewes, not glued too, but fast girded and tyed on. Their bowe strings are likewise sinewes. Their arrowes are three perces, nooked with bone, and ended with bone, with those two endes, and the wood in the middell, they passe not in lengthe halfe a yerd or little more. They are fettered with two fetthers, the penne end being cutt away, and the fetthers layd upon the arrow with the broad side to the wood: in so much that they seeme, when they are tyed on, to haue foure fetthers. They haue likewise three sortes of heades to those arrowes: one sort of stone or yron, proportioned like to a heare: the second sort of bone, much like vnto a floyre head, with a hooke on the same: the third sort of bone like wise, made sharpe at both sides, and sharp pointed. They are not made very flat, but lightly tyed to, or else set in a nocke, that vpon small occasion, the arrowe leaueh these heades behinde them: and they are of small force, except they be very nere, when they shooe.

Their weapons of beastes.

Their sorts of heades to their arrowes.

Their Darts are made of two sortes: the one with many forkes of bones in the foze ende, and likewise in the middell: their proportions are not much vnlike our toasting yrons, but longer: these they cast out of an instrument of wood, very readily. The other sort is greater then the first aforesayd, with a long bone made sharpe on both sides, not much vnlike a Rapier, which I take to bee their most hurtfull weapon.

Two sortes of darts.

They haue two sortes of boats made of leather, set out on the inner side with quarters of wood, artificially tyed together with thongs of the same: the greater foze are not much vnlike our wherries, wherem in sixteen or twenty men may sit: they haue for a sayle, yest the guttes of such beastes as they kill, very fine and thinne, which they sewe together: the other boate is but for one man to sit and rowe in, with one oare.

Two sortes of boats made of leather.

Their order of fishing, hunting, and fowling are with these sayd weapons: but in what sort, or how they vse them, we haue no perfect knowledge as yet.

They be to fowle, fish, and hunt.

I can suppose their abode or habitation not to be here, for that neither their houses or apparell are of such force to withstande the extremity of colde, that the countrie seemeth to be infected with allinethere doe I see any signe likely to performe the same.

It is to be supposed that their inhabitation is elsewhere.

Those houses, or rather dennes, which stand there, haue no signe of footway, or any thing elsse troden, which is one of the chiefest tokens of habitation. And those tentes, which they bring with them, when they haue sufficiently hunted and fished, they remove to other places: and when they haue sufficiently stoyed them of such victuals, as the countrey yeldeth, or bringeth forth, they returne to their Winter stations or habitations. This coniecture do I make, for the infertility, which I perceiue to be in that countrie.

Their best pion.

They haue some yron, wherof they make arrowe heades, knives, and other litle instruments, to worke their boates, bowes, arrowes, and darts withall, which are very vnapt to doe any thing withall, but with great labour.

It seemeth, that they haue conuersation with some other people, of whom for exchange, they

Should receiue the same. They are greatly delighted with any thing that is bright, or giueth a sound.

Anthropophagi.

What knowledge they haue of God, or what Idol they adore, we haue no perfect intelligence. I thinke them rather Anthropophagi, or deuourers of mans flesh, then otherwise: for that there is no flesh or skin, which they finde dead (smell it neuer so stinkily) but they will eat it, as they finde it, without any other blessing. A loathsome thing, either to the beholders, or hearers.

Signes of gold cure.

There is no maner of creeping beast hurtfull, except some Spiders (which, as many affirme, are signes of great store of Golde:) and also certeine stinging Gnattes, which bite so fiercely, that the place where they bite, shortly after swelleth, and itcheth very sore.

Signes of gold from other people.

They make signes of certaine people, that weare bright plates of gold in their foreheades, and other places of their bodies.

Description of the Countries

The Countries, on both sides the streights, lye very high with rough stonie mountaines, and great quantitie of snowe thereon. There is very little plaine grounde, and no grasse, except a little, which is much like vnclo mosse that groweth on soft ground, such as we get Turcks in. There is no wood at all. To be hysed, there is nothing fitter, or yosttable for the vie of man, which that Countrie with rooze peelbeth or byingeth forth: Howbeit, there is great quantitie of Deere, whose skinner are like vnclo Alces, their heads or hoznes doe farre exceede, as well in length as also in breadth, any in these our partes of Countrie: their feete likewise, are as great as our opens, which we measure to be seuen or eght ynches in breadth. There are also bares, wolues, slythng bears, and Sea foule of sundy sortes.

As the Countrie is barren and vnfertile, so are they rude & of no capacitie to culture the same, to any perfection: but are contented by their hunting, fishing, and sowling, with rawe fleshe and warme blood, to satisfie their greedie panches, which is their onely glorie.

Signe of Earthquakes or thunder.

There is great likelihood of Earthquakes, or thunder: for that there are huge & monstrous mounteines, whose greatest substance are stones, and those stones so shaken with some extraydinarie means, that one is separated from another, which is discoriant from al other Quarries.

No riuers, but such as the Sunne doeth cause to come of snowe.

There are no riuers, or running springes, but such, as though the heate of the Sunne, with such water as descendeth from the mounteines and hilles, whereon great dykes of snowe doe lie, are ingendred.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

It argueth also, that there should be none: for that the earth, which with the extremitie of the Winter, is so frozen within, that that water, which should haue recourse within the same, to mainteine springes, hath not his motion, whereof great waters haue their originall, as by experience is seene other where. Such ballies, as are capable to receive the water, that in the Summer time, by the operation of the Sunne, descendeth from great abundance of snowe, which continually lyeth on the mounteines, and hath no passage, sinketh into the earth, and so vanissheth away, without any runnell about the earth, by which occasion, or continual standing of the said water, the earth is opened, and the great frost yeldeth to the force thereof, which in other places, foure or five fathoms within the ground for lacke of the said moisture, the earth: (euen in the very Summer time) is frozen, and so combineth the stones together, that scarcely instruments, with great force, can vnknit them.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Also, where the water in those ballies can haue no such passage away, by the continuance of time, in such order as is before rehearsed, the peereley descent from the mounteines, filleteth them full, that at the lowest banke of the same, they fall into the next ballie, and so continue, as slythng ponds or Stagnes in Summer time full of water, and in the Winter hard frozen: as by skartes, that remaine there of in Summer, may easily be perceined: so that, the heate of Summer, is nothing comparable or of force, to dissolve the extremitie of colde, that cometh in Winter.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Neuertheless, I am assured that belowe the force of the frost, within the earth, the waters haue recourse, and vncrypt themselves out of sight into the sea, which though the extremitie of the frost, are constrained to doe the same: by which occasion, the earth within is kept the warmer, and springes haue their recourse, which is the onely nutriment of Golde and Minerals within the same.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

There is much to be said of the commodities of these Countries, which are couched within the bowris of the earth, which I let passe till moze perfect triall be made thereof.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Thus conseruaturg, till time, with the earnest industrie of our Generall and others (who by all diligence remaine prest to employe the truth of that which is vnemployd, as he hath to his excellent praise founde out that which is like to yelde an innumerable benefite to his Prince and countrie) offer further triall, I conclude,

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

Improbability, that there should be neither spring or riuers in the ground.

The 27. of the voyages, though not our own, as are befall with the last to the Court. We lost our of the same month. Byllowe, and two men, one is surge of the S.

I Could declare I we haue bene flanges of temp strange, but I same. I haue vnderstanding the clared.

Countries n webe name giu Our Genera of diuers Robb

The t



The 27. of the readinge, the ykers, and hope then and there a mirall, whom t and were welc rall continued the voyage, vn mitting our sel crep, in such tu the utmost part

And here it and speake of a meeting of cer and Routers: an and sent him a But because mentioning of shippes now fa winde, sometime forslayd in one and craggd la craggd rockes red with foggi

The

The 23. of August, after we had sacrificed our mindes with straight sufficiency for our desires, though not our courteous desires, with such knowledge of the countrey, people, and other commodities as are before rehearsed, the 24. thereof we departed thence hence: the 17. of September we fell with the lands end of England, and so to Hillsyd Haven, from whence our Generall rode to the Court for order, to what Port of Haven to conduct the Shippe.

We lost our two Barkes in the way homeward, the one, the 29. of August, the other, the 31. of the same month, by occasion of great tempest and fogge. Dowber, God rejoyced the one to Byllowe, and the other making his course by Scoeland, to Permouth. In this Voyage we lost two men, one in the way by Gods visitation, and the other homeward cast over boide with a surge of the Sea.

I Could declare unto the Readers, the Latitude and Longitude of such places and regions, as we have bene at, but not altogether so perfectly as our masters and others, with many circumstances of tempests and other accidents incident to Sea faring men, which seeme not altogether strange, but I let them passe to their reportes as men most apt to see soothly and declare the same. I have also left the names of the Countreies on both the Voyes untouched, for lacke of understanding the peoples language: as also for sundry respects, not needfull as yet to be declared.

Countries newe discovered, where commoditie is to be looked for, doe better accept with a newe name given by the explorers, then an uncertaine name by a doubtfull Auctour.

Our General named sundry Islands, Mountaines, Capes, and Harbovoughs after the names of Divers Noble men, & other gentlemen his friends, as wel on the one Voye, as also on the other.

The third and last voyage into Meta Incognita, made by M. Martin Frobisher, in the yeere 1578. Written by Thomas Ellis.



These are to let you knowe, that upon the 25. of May, the Thomas Allen, being Viceadmirall, whose Captaine was M. Yorke, M. Gibbs Master, M. Christopher Hall Pilot, accompanied with the Rearadmirall named the Hopewel, whose Captaine was M. Henrie Carewe, the M. Andrewe Dier, and certaine other Shippes, came to Grauesend, where we ankred and abode the comming of certaine other of our Fleete, which were not yet come.

Master Yorke, Christopher Hall, the Hopewel, Captaine Carewe, Andrew Dier.

The 27. of the same moneth, our Fleete being nowe come together, and all things prest in a readinesse, the winde favouring, and tide serving, we being of sailes in number eight, waied anchors, and hoysed our sailes toward Harwich, to meete with our Admirall, and the residue, which then and there abode our arrivall: where we safely arrived the 28. thereof, finding there our Admirall, whom we, with the discharge of certaine pieces, saluted (according to order and duetie) and were welcomed with the like courtesie: which being finished, we landed: where our Generall continued mustring his Souldiers and Spicers, and setting things in order appertaining to the voyage, untill the last of the sayd moneth of May, which day we hoysed our sailes, and committing our selves to the conducting of Almighty God, we set forward toward the West countrey, in such luckie wise, and good successe, that by the first of June, we passed the Durles, being the best part of Ireland, to the Westward.

Harwich, Durles, Ireland.

And here it were not much amisse, no; farre from our purpose, if I should a litle discourse and speake of our adventures and chances by the way, as our landing at Plymouth, as also the meeting of certaine poepe men, which were robbed and spoiled of all that they had, by Pirates and Rovers: amongst whom was a man of Byllowe, on whom our General used his liberalitie, and sent him away with letters into England.

Plymouth, Byllowe.

But because such things are impertinent to the matter, I will returne (without any more mentioning of the same) to that, from the which I have digressed, and swarved, I name our Shippes now sailing on the surging Seas, sometime passing at pleasure with a wisped Easterne winde, sometime hindered of our course againe by the Westerne blastes, untill the 20. day of the sayd moneth of June, on which day in the morning we fell with Frizeland, which is a very high and cragged land, and was almost cleane covered with snowe, so that we might see nought but craggie rockes, and the tops of high and huge hills, sometimes (and for the most part) all covered with foggie mistes. There might we also perceiue the great Isles of Ice lying on the seas,

Frizeland.

like mountaynes, some small, some big, of sundry kindes of Shapes, and such a number of them, that we could not come neere the Shore for them.

Thus sailing alonge the coast, at the last we sawe a place somewhat boyde of yce, where our Generall, (accompanied with certayne other,) wente a Shore, where they sawe certayne tentes made of beastes skins, and boats much like unto theirs of Meca incognita. The tentes were furnished with flesh, fish, skins, and other trifles: amongst the which was found a boxe of nailes: whereby we did conjecture, that they had either Traffickers amongst them, or els a traffike with some other nation. The men ranne away, so that we could have no conference or communication with them. Our Generall (because he would haue them no more to flee, but rather encouraged to stay through his courteous dealing) gaue commaundement, that his men should take nothing away with them, saving onely a couple of white Doggs, for which he left pins, popnes, knives, and other trifling things, and departed, without taking or hurting any thing, and so came a boyd, and boyed sayles, and passed forwarde.

But being scarce out of the sight thereof, there fel such a fogge and hidious mist, that we could not see one another: whereupon we strooke our drums, and sounded our trumpets, to the ende we might keepe together: and so continued all that day and night, till the next day, that the mist brake vp: so that we might easly perceiue all the Shippes thus sayling together all that day, vntill the next day, being the 22. of the same: on which day wee sawe an infinite number of yce, from the which we call about to shun the danger thereof.

But one of our small Barkes, named the Michael, whose Captaine was Master Kinderlieke, the Master Bartholomewe Bull, lost our companie, inasmuch that we could not obtaine the sight of her many dayes after, of whom I meane to speake further anon, when occasion shall be ministered, and opportunitie serued. Thus we continued on our course, vntill the second of July, on which day we fell with the Queenes shoyland, where wee sawe so much yce, that we thought it impossible to get into the Straights: yee at the last we gaue the aduenture, and entered the yce.

Being in amongst it, we sawe the Michael, of whome I spake before, accompanied with the Iudith, whose Captaine was Master Fenton, the Master Charles Jackman, bearing into the shoyland yce, farre distant from vs, who in a shoyne that fell, that present night, (whereof I will at large. God willing, discourse hereafter) were seuered from vs, and being in, wandred vp and downe the Straights, amongst the yce, many dayes, in great perill, till at the last, (by the prouidence of God) they came safely to harbor in their wished Shoye, in the Countesse of Warwickes sound, the 20. of July aforesayd, ten dayes before any of the other Shippes: who going on shoye found where the people of the Countrey had bene, and had hid their prouision in great heapes of stoncs, being both of flesh, and fish, which they had killed: whereof we also found great store in other places after our arrivall. They found also diuers engines, as bowes, slings, and darts. They found likewise certayne peeces of the Dinnette which our Generall left there the yeere before, which Dinnette he had soonke, minding to haue it againe the next yeere.

Nowe, seeing I haue entreated so much of the Iudith, and the Michael: I will returne to the rest of the other Shippes, and will speake a litle of the shoyne which fell, with the mishaps that we had, the night that we put into the yce: whereof I made mention before.

At the first entrie into the yce, in the mouth of the Straights, our passage was very narrowe, and difficult: but being once gotten in, we had a saype open place without any yce, for the most part: being a league in compasse, the yce being round about vs, and inclosing vs, as it were within the pales of a park. In which place, because it was almost night, we minded to take in our sayles, and lie a hull all that night. But the shoyne so increased, and the woues beganne to mount aloft, which brought the yce so neere vs, and comming on so fast vpon vs, that we were faine to beate in and out, where we might espye an open place. Thus the yce comming on vs so fast, we were in great danger, looking euery houre for death. And thus passed we on in that great danger, seeing both our felues, and the rest of our Shippes so troubled and tossed amongst the yce, that it would make the strongest heart to relent.

At the last, the Barke Dionysie, being but a weake ship, and hysed afore amongst the yce, being so leake that she no longer could carry about 3 water, sank without saving any of the goods which were within her: which sight so abashed the whole Fleet, that wee thought verily wee should haue tasted of the same sauce. But neuertheless, we seeing them in such danger, manned our boates, and saved all the men, in such wise, that not one perished, (God be thanked.)

The shoyne still increased, and the yce inclosed vs, that wee were faine to take poune toy and toy masses: for the yce had so entironed vs, that we could see neither land, nor sea, as farre as we could keene: so that we were faine to cut our cables, to hang ouer boye for senders, somewhat

The Countesse  
of our Generall  
sail.

Master Kinderlieke,  
Bartholomewe Bull,  
new Whill.

The Michael,  
The Iudith,  
M. Fenton,  
Charles Jackman.

The Countesse  
of Warwickes  
sound.

The entrance  
of passage, &c.

Barke Dionysie

Barke Shippes  
for safetye.

what to caule  
some sending  
diarly with  
from the Shippes  
that not onely  
ships, that it

Thus cont  
for instant bea  
although be  
and the fogge  
ceiue, about a  
of winde, wh  
vs then we de  
fresh gale at  
he added more  
after punishm

Thus we  
God for our d  
seeing that no  
whom I spake  
bulding off an  
ge into the

And as we  
passed all the  
water, and we  
scorpe fathom

Also the sh  
the same: so  
sayle, and to  
well of the  
ous fogge hau  
fogge the teat  
of Bridge wate

The streete  
bearc in with  
step, which  
them soules, a  
they had smal

Then we  
came by two  
we sawe none  
we were at  
ranne on rock  
vs, opening th  
ly were, and a  
rocks.

When we  
(God be than  
but the fogge

Then the  
rocks, brook  
as yet had not  
till the next m  
gine notice th  
which they ou

Then hain  
and keeping o  
bake vp and

number of them,  
of yee, where our  
certaine tenets  
were fur-  
a boze of nailer  
s a traffike with  
our rather encou-  
ment should take  
left pins, poppes,  
ny thing, and so  
ill, that we could  
ces, to the rude  
day, that the mist  
all that day, vnto  
number of yee,  
after Kinderlie,  
obtaine the sight  
ion shall be  
cond of July, on  
that we thought  
entered the yce,  
mpained with the  
bearing into the  
(whereof I will  
wanded by and  
all, (by the yout-  
le of Warwick  
o going on shoar  
at great boapes of  
and grent stoie in o-  
and darts. They  
the yeeere before,  
ill returns to the  
mishaps that we  
as very narrowe,  
yee, for the most  
ng vs, as it were  
minded to take in  
boaves beganneto  
s, that we were  
omining on vs so  
he on in that great  
amongst the yce,  
onght the yce, be-  
any of the goods  
ught verily wee  
danger, manned  
anked.)  
e downe toy and  
y sea, as farre as  
y fenders, some  
what

what to ease the shippes sides, from the great and byrre strokes of the yce: some Captian barres, some sending off with oares, some with planks of two ynches thicke, which were broken immedi- arly with the force of the yce, some going out vpon the yce to beare it off with their shoulders from the shippes. But the rigourousnesse of the tempest was such, and the force of the yce so great, that not onely they burst and spoiled the foresayd prouision: but likewise so raised the sides of the shippes, that it was pitifull to beholde, and caused the hearts of many to faint.

Thus continued we all that dismal and lamentable night, plunged in this perplexitie, looking for instant death: but our God, (who neuer leaueth them destitute which faithfully call vpon him) although hee often punisheth, for amendments sake, in the morning caused the windes to cease: and the foggie, which all that night lay on the face of the water, to cleare: so that wee might perceiue, about a mile from vs, a certaine place cleare from any yce, to the which with an easie breath of winde, which our God sent vs, we bent our selues. And furthermore, hee prouided better for vs then we deserued, or hoped for: for when we were in the foresayd cleare place, hee sent vs a fresh gale at West, or at West Southwest, which set vs cleare without all the yce. And further, he added moie: for he sent vs so pleasant a day, as the like we had not of a long time before, as after punishment, consolation.

Thus we ioyfull wighetes, being at libertie, tooke in all our sailes, and lay a hull, praying God for our deliuerance: and stayed to gather together our flecte: which once being done, wee seeing that none of them had any great hurt, neither any of them wanted, sauing onely they of whom I spake before, and the ship which was lost, then at the last we hoised our sailes, and lay hulling off and on, till such time as it would please God to take away the yce, that wee might get into the Straights.

And as we thus lay off and on, we came by a marueilous huge mountaine of yce, which sur- passed all the rest that euer we sawe: for wee iudged it to be nere foure scoie fathoms aboue water, and we thought it to be a ground for any thing that wee could perceiue, being there nine scoie fathoms deepe, and of compass about halfe a mile.

Also the sixt of July, there fell a bidious foggie and mist, that continued till the nineteenth of the same: so that one shippe could not see another, Therefore we were faine to beare a small sayle, and to obserue the time: but there ran such a current of Tide, that it set vs to the North- west of the Quenees foyleland, the backside of all the Straights: where (though the contag- ious foggie hauing no sight either of Sunne or Starre) we scarce knew whers we were. In this foggie the tenth of July, wee lost the companie of the Viceadmirall, the Anne Francis, the Busse of Bridgewater, and the Francis of Foy.

The sixteenth day, one of our small Barks, named the Gabriel, was sent by our Generall to beare in with the land, to descrite it, where being on land, they met with the people of the Coun- trey, which seemed very humane and ciuill, and offered to traffike with our men, profering their foules, and skins, for knives, and other trifles: whose courtisie caused vs to thinke, that they had small conuersation with the other of the Straights.

Then we bare backe againe, to goe with the Quenees foyleland: and the eighteenth day wee came by two Islands, whereon we went on shoare, and found where the people had bene: but we sawe none of them. This day we were againe in the yce, and like to be in as great perill as we were at the first. For though the darkenes and obscuritie of the foggie mist, we were almost runne on rocks and Illands, before we sawe them: But God, euen miraculously, prouided for vs, opening the foggies, that we might see clearly, both where, and in what danger we present- ly were, and also the way to escape: so els, without faile, wee had ruinously runne vpon the rockes.

When we knew perfectly our instant case, we call about, to get againe on Sea boarde, which (God be thanked) by night we obtained, and praised God. The cleare continued fraise an houre, but the foggie fell againe as thicke as euer it was.

Then the Rearadmirall, and the Beare got them selues cleare without danger of yce and rockes, strooke their sayles, and lay a hull, hoping to haue the rest of the flecte come forth: which as yet had not found the right way to cleare themselves from the danger of rockes and yce, vntill the next morning, at what time the Rearadmirall discharged certaine warning pieces to give notice that he had escaped, and that the rest (by following of her) might see themselves free, which they did that day.

Then hauing gathered our selues together, we proceeded on our purposed voyage, bearing off, and keeping our selues distant from the coast, till the 19. day of July: at which time the foggies brake vp and dispersed, so that wee might plainly and clearly beholde the pleasant ayre, which

Gods prou- idence.

A mountaine of yce appea- ring in this way.

A fog of long continuance.

The Gabriel.

The people offer to traffike with vs.

Warning pieces of the vantage discharge.

which so long had bene taken from vs, by the obscuritie of the foggie mists: and after that time, we were not much encombyed therewith, vntill we had left the confines of the Countrey,

A faire found  
betwene the  
Queenes soj-  
land & Jack-  
mans found.

Then we espying a fayre found, supposed it to go into the Straights, betwene the Queenes sojeland, & Jackmans found, which yfould, as we imagined, for our Generall sent forth againe the Gabriel, to discouer it, who passed through with much difficultie: for there ran such an extreme currant of a tide, with so horrible a gulfie, that with a fresh gale of winde they were scarce able to sterme it: yet at the length with great trauaile they passed it, and came to the Straights, where they met with the Thomas Allen, the Thomas of Ipswich, and the Bulle of Byrdgewater: who all together aduentured to heare into the yce againe, to see if they could obtaine their wished Poyle. But they were so encombyed, that with much difficultie they were able to get out againe, yet at the last they escaping, the Thomas Alline, and the Gabriel bare in with the Westerne Hoyle, where they found harbour, and there moored their shippes, vntill the fourth of August, at which time they came to vs in the Countesse of Warwickes found. The Thomas of Ipswich caught a great leake, which caused her to cast againe to Sea boye, and so was mended.

We sailed along still by the coast, vntill we came to the Queenes sojeland, at the point whereof we met with part of the gulfie aforesayd, which place of gulfie (as some of our Spasters do credibly report) doeth flowe nine houres, and ebb but thre. At that point wee discouered certaine lands Southwarde, which neither time nor opportunitie would serue to search. Then being come to the mouth of the Straights, we met with the Anne Francis, who had laine bulding by and downe euer since her departure alone, neuer finding any of her companie. We met then also the Francis of Foy, with whom againe we intended to venter and get in: but the yce was yet so thicke, that we were compelled againe to retyre and get vs on Sea boye.

An horrible  
snowe fell in  
Iuly.

There fell also the same day, being the 26. of Iuly, such an horrible snowe, that it lay a foote thicke vpon the barenes, which froze as fast as it fell.

We had also at other times, diuers cruell stormes, both of snowe and halle, which manifestly declared the diffeperature of the Countrey: yet for all that we were so many times repulsd and put backe from our purpose, knowing that lingering delay was not profitable for vs, but hurtfull to our voyage, we mutually consented to our valiant Generall once againe, to giue the onset.

The time of  
our setting for-  
ward, &c.

The 28. day therefore of the same Iuly we assayed, and with little trouble (God be prayd) we passed the dangers, by day light. Then night falling on the face of the earth, we builed in the cleare, till the cheare full light of the day had chased away the noysome darkenes of the night: at which time we set forward toward our wished poyle: by the 30. day we obtined our expected desire, where we found the Iudich, and the Michael: which brought no small ioy vnto the Generall, and great consolation to the beaute hearts of those wearied wights.

The 30. day of Iuly we brought our ships into the Countesse of Warwickes found, and moored them, namely these ships, the Admirall, the Rereadmirall, the Francis of Foy, the Beare, Arniel, the Salomon, and the Bulle of Byrdgewater: which being done, our Generall commaunded vs all to come a shoyle, vpon the Countesse Island, where he set his Spiners to worke vpon the Spine, giuing charge with expedition to dispatch with their lading.

The Countesse  
of Suffex Is-  
land.  
Winters soj-  
nace.  
Dauids found.

Our Generall himselfe, accompanied with his Gentlemen, diuers times made rodes into sundry partes of the Countrey, as well to finde new Spines, as also to finde out and see the people of the Countrey. He found out one Spine, vpon an Island by Beares found, and named it the Countesse of Suffex Island. One other was found in Winters Foynace, with diuers others, to which the ships were sent sundrerly, to be laden. In the same rodes hee met with diuers of the people of the Countrey, at sundry times, as once at a place called Dauids found: who shot at our men, and very desperately gaue them the onset, being not about thre or foure in number, there being of our Countrey men about a dosen: but seeing themselves not able to preuaile, theyooke themselves to flight: whom our men pursued, but being not vsed to such craggy cliffes, they soone lost the sight of them, and so in vaine returned.

The pollicie  
of the people for  
saferie of their  
lives.

We also saw of them at Beares found, both by Sea and land, in great companies: but they would at all times keepe the water betwene them and vs. And if any of our ships chanced to be in the found, (as they came diuers times) because y harbor was not very good, the ship labed, & departed againe: then so long as any ships were in sight, the people would not be seene. But when as they perceived the ships to be gone, they would not only shew themselves standing vpon high cliffes, and call vs to come our vnto them: but also would come in their boats, very neere to vs, as it were to brag at vs: whereof our Generall hauing aduertisement, sent for the Captaine and Gentlemen of the shippes, to accompanie and attende vpon him, with the Captaine also

of the Anne Fran-  
cing lost vs: the 2  
they found good  
wowe we had all  
(who compelled  
our lading.

Our Genera  
the Countesse of  
tes, and went ou  
in hall left certai  
could not finde.

The next mo  
thole to them, in  
neere vnto them  
their cunning an  
ching, our Gene  
booyd with our  
in: for often kno  
in the morning  
is a calme and  
dap of August w

But before  
I will turne my  
inhabited all the  
that neither fear  
perature of so v  
betwe of such an  
neither regarde  
lifer a thing of a  
to be of sufficien  
haue profited the  
and singular ma  
and vntuill pro  
manifest and im  
so many casual  
Theftes aston  
serue speciall co  
with hood their

For the Bark  
and should haue  
which, which ha  
see her, since th  
causes, hauing  
and therefore la

But before we  
and garnished i  
on horsebacke a  
critic the peop

Thus haui  
the Bulle had n  
meane while, th  
an outragious  
walked about:  
great goodnes  
danger was mo  
not any one sh  
bles, some bot  
This boye

after that time,  
unterp.  
ne the Queenes  
nt forth againe  
such an extreme  
ere scarce able  
be straighte,  
ulle of Byrdge  
could obtaine  
ey were able to  
bare in with the  
ll the fourth of  
he Thomas of  
o was mended,  
he point where  
Pasters do cre  
ouered certaine  
arch. Then be  
d laine bulding  
e. We met then  
but the pee was  
at it lay a foote  
which manifestly  
times repul'd  
ble foys, but  
ine, to giue the  
Don be prayd)  
we bulled in the  
of the night: at  
our expected be-  
vnto the Gene-  
ound, and mo-  
o, the Beare, Ar-  
rall comman-  
woyke vpon the  
made robes into  
and see the pro-  
nd named it the  
diuers others,  
y diuers of the  
: who shot at  
ure in number,  
o yeuall, they  
y cliffs, they  
mics: but they  
s chanced to be  
ship laded, & de-  
ene. But when  
ding vpon big  
ry nere to vs,  
the Captaine  
Captaine also  
of

of the Anne Francis, who was but the night befoze come vnto vs. For they, and the seebore ha-  
uing lost vs the 26. day, in the great snowe, put into an harbour in the Queenes foeland, where  
they found good care, wherewith they laded themselves, and came to seeke the Generall: so that  
nowe we had all our shippes, sauing one Barke, which was lost, and the Thomas of Ipswich,  
(who compelled by what furie I know not,) so forsooke our companie, and returned home with-  
out lading.

Our Generall accompanied, with his Gentlemen, (of whom I spake) came altogether to  
the Countesse of Suffex Island, nere to Beares sound: where he manued our certaine Pinnis-  
ses, and went ouer to the people: who perceiuing his arriual, scode away with all speede, and  
in half left certaine darts and other engines behind them, which we found: but the people we  
could not finde.

The next morning our Generall perceiuing certaine of them in bote vpon the Sea, gaue  
chase to them, in a Pinnisse vnder saile, with a fresh gale of winde, but could by no meanes come  
nere vnto them: for the longer he sailed, the further off he was from them: which well he woe  
their cunning and actiuitie. Thus time wearing away, and the day of our departure appo-  
ching, our Generall commanded to lade with all expedition, that we might be againe on Sea  
boord with our ship: for whilst we were in the countrie, we were in continual danger of freezing  
in: for often snow and halle often the water was so much frozen and congealed in the night, that  
in the morning we could scarce rowe our boates of Pinnisses, especially in Diers sound, which  
is a calme and still water: which caused our Generall to make the more haste, so that by the 30.  
day of August we were all laden, and made all things ready to depart.

But befoze I proceede any further herein, to shewe what fortune befell at our departure,  
I will turne my penne a litle to M. Captaine Fenton, and those Gentlemen, which should haue  
inhabited all the yeere in those countries, whose valiant mindes were much to bee commended,  
that neither feare of foze, nor the cruel nipping stoynes of the raging winter, neither the intem-  
perature of so vnhealthfull a country, neither the sauagenesse of the people, neither the sighe and  
heue of such and so many strange Pecesozes, neither the desire to returne to their native soile,  
nither regarde of friends nor care of possessions and inheritances: finally, not the loue of  
life (a thing of all other most sweete) neither the terrour of dreadfull death it selfe, might seeme  
to be of sufficient foze, to withdraue their yronesse, or to restraine from that purpose, there by to  
haue possided their countrey: but that with most willing hearts, venturous mindes, stout stomacks,  
and singular manhood they were content there to haue tarried for the time, among a barbarous  
and vnciuill people, Infidels and miscreants to haue made their dwelling, nor terrified with the  
manifest and imminent dangers which they were like to runne into: and seeing befoze their eyes  
so many casualties, whereto their life was obiect, the least wherof would haue made a milk soy  
Theatres astonishd and vterly discomfited: being I say thus minded and purposed, they de-  
serue speciall commendation: For doubtlesse, they had done as they intended, if lucke had not  
withstood their willingnesse, and if that fortune had not so frowned vpon their intents.

For the Barke Dionys, which was lost, had in her much of their house, which was prepared  
and should haue ben builded for: here, with many other implements. Also the Thomas of Ips-  
wich, which had most of their yrouillon in her, came not into the Streights at all: neither did we  
see her, since the day we were separated in the great snow, (of which I spake befoze.) For these  
causes, hauing not their house, nor yet yrouillon, they were disapointed of their presence to earte,  
and therefore laded their shippes, and so came away with vs.

But befoze weooke shipping, we builded a litle house in the Countesse of Marwicks Island,  
and garnished it with many kinds of crisses, as Pinnes, Pointes, Laces, Glasses, Rombes, Bases  
on horsebacke and on foote, with innumerable other such fancties and toys: thereby to allure and  
entice the people to some familiaritie against other yeres.

Thus hauing finished all things we departed the countrie, (as I haue befoze:) but because  
the Busse had not lading enough in her, she put into Beares sound to take in a litle more. In the  
meane while, the Admirall, and the rest, without the Sea, layed for her. And that night fell such  
an outrageous tempe, bearing on our shippes, with such vehement rigor, that anchor and cable a-  
uallid nought: for we were byuen on rocks and Islandes of yee, insomuch that (had not the  
great goodnes of God bene miraculouly shewed to vs,) we had bene cast away euery man. This  
danger was more doubtful and terrible, then any that proceeded of went befoze: for there was  
not any one Shippe, (I thinke) that escaped without danage. Some lost anchor and also ga-  
bles, some bores, some Pinnisses: some anchor, gables, bores, and Pinnisses.

This boystrous stoynie so scattered vs one from another, that one Shippe knewe not what was  
become

Their speede  
flight at our  
Sines also  
arrual.

Gentlemen  
shoold haue  
inhabited the  
Countrie.

Referreth  
vnto the same  
nhabitation.

An house errec-  
ted and garnis-  
hed with di-  
uerse fancties.

An outrage  
ous tempest.



become of another. The Admirall knew not where to finde the Uccadmirall of Rear admirall, or any other ship of our companie. Our Generall being on land in Beares sound, could not come to his shippe, but was compelled to goe a booyde the Gabriel, where hee continued all the way homeward: for the dangerous blastes continued so extremely and so long a time, that it sent vs homeward (which was Gods fauour towarde vs) will we, nill we, in such haste, as not any one of vs were able to keepe in companie of other, but were separated. And if by chaunce any one ship did ouerakee other, by swiftnesse of saile, or mette (as they often did:) yet was the rigour of the winde so hidious, that they coulde not continue companie together the space of one whole night.

Our entering  
the coastes  
dangerous.

Thus our Iourney outward was not so pleasaunt, but our coming thither entering the coastes and countrie, by narrow streights, perillous yce, and swift tides, our times of aboade there in snow, and stormes, and our departure from thence, the 3. of August, with dangerous blustering winde and tempests, which that night arose, was as vncomfortable & separating vs so, as we failed, that not any of vs met together, until the 28. of September, which day we fell on the English coastes, betwene Sylley and the landes ende, and passed the channell, untill our arrival, in the riuer of Thames.

*The report of Thomas Wiars, passenger in the Emanuel, otherwise called the Busse of Bridgewater, wherein James Leeche was Master, one of the shippes in the last voyage of Master Martin Frobisher, 1578. concerning the discouerie of a great Island in their way homeward the 12. of September.*



The Busse of Bridgewater, was left in Beares sounde at Meta incognita, the second day of September behind the Flete, in some distreffe, through much winde ryding neere the Lee shore, and forced there to ride it out vpon the board of her cables and ankers, which were all aground but two. The thirde of September being saye weather, and the wind North northwest the sea sayle, and departed thence and fell with Friland, on the 8. day of September, at 6. of the clocke at night, and then they set off from the Southwell poynt of Friland, the winde being at East, and East southeast, but that night the winde beared Southerly, and shifted oftentimes that night: but on the tenth day in the morning, the wind at west north west saye weather, they steered southeast, and by south, and continued that course untill the 12. day of September, when about 11. a clocke before noone, they descried a lande, which was from them about five leagues, and the Southermost part of it was Southeast by East from them, and the Northmost next, North North east, or North east. The master accompted that Friland, the South east poynt of it, was from him at that instant, when hee first descried this newe Island, North west by North, 50. leagues. They account this Island to be 25. leagues long, and the longest way of it South east, and North west. The Southerne part of it is in the latitude of 57. degrees and 1. second part, or thereabout. They continued in sight of it, from the 12. day at 11. of the clocke, till the 13. day three of the clocke in the after noone, when they left it: and the last part they saw of it, bare from them, North west by North. There appeared two harbours vpon that coast: the greatest of them seuen leagues to the Northwardes of the Southermost poynt, the other but foure leagues. There was verie much yce neere the same lande, and also thirtie or thirtie leagues from it, for they were not cleare of yce, till the 15. day of September, after noone. They plied their voyage homeward, and fell with the west part of Ireland about Galway, and had first sight of it on the 25. day of September.

The Island is  
length 25.  
leagues.  
This Island is  
in the latitude  
of 57. degrees  
and 1. second  
part.

Notes

*M. Hak*

Notes from

quire, g  
North  
pt



land have accell  
seare is to bee  
sweete water,  
up of those, as  
filling of mine  
of those neede

Stone of  
White M  
such a  
Stone of  
may  
Timber  
to be  
Reede co  
like,

The people  
and by trade of  
herd by want of  
fire, and so will  
Spaniards, but  
by yce becomes  
then in hande.

And by trade  
commodities,  
that the natur  
for the same,  
supply of the

Such natur  
ter with force

And for the  
lander's man  
bearing of re  
hours, so that  
rich and stron  
to be brought  
lake, and the  
dispersing of  
Nothing  
best discouer  
strengths, at  
rate in peace  
sequence.

...of heat admiral,  
and could not come  
turned all the way  
for a time, that it sent  
such haste, as not a  
and if by chance a  
did: yet was the ti  
per the space of one

...either entering the  
ness of aboade there  
dangerous blis  
parating us so, as  
day we fell on the  
well, untill our ar

Emanuel, o-  
n James  
e last  
3.

...eta incognita, the  
...the, though much  
...it our upon the ba-  
...two. The shure of  
...with the sea sayle,  
...September, at 6,  
...island, the wind  
..., and shifted often  
...est saye weather,  
...ay of September,  
...n them about five  
...and the North-  
...land, the South-  
...ve Island, North-  
...g, and the longest  
...de of 57. degrees  
...day at 11. of the  
...: and the last part  
...boroughs by a  
...urthermost point,  
...and also twentie  
...September, after  
...land about Gal-

Notes framed by M. Richard Hakluit of the middle Temple Es-  
quire, giuen to certaine Gentlemen that went with M. Frobisher in his  
Northwest discouerie, for their directions: And not vnfit to be committed to  
print, considering the same may stirre vp considerations of these and  
of such other things, not vnmeet in such newe voyages as  
may be attempted hereafter.



That the first Seate be chosen on the seashore so as (if it may be) you may haue  
your owne Hauke within Bay, riuer or lake, within your seate safe from the  
emie: and so as the emie shall be forced to lie in open rode abroade with-  
out, to be dispersed with all windes and tempests that shall arise. Thus se-  
ced you shall bee least subiect to annoy of the emie, so may you by your Ha-  
uie within, passe out to all partes of the world, and so may the shippes of Eng-  
land haue access to you to supply all wants, so may your commodities be caried away ails. This  
seate is to be chosen in temperate Climat, in sweete ayre, where you may possesse alwayes  
sweete water, wood, seacoales, or turfe, with fish, flesh, grayne, frutes, herbes and rosetts, or so ma-  
ny of those, as may suffice very necessitie for the life of such as shall plant there. And for the pos-  
sessing of mines of golde, of siluer, copper, quicksiluer, or of any such precious thing, the wantes  
of those needefull things may be supplied from some other place by sea, &c.

- Stone to make Lyme of,
- Slate stone to cile withall or  
such clay as maketh tyle,
- Stone to wal wall, if Wycke  
may not be made,
- Timber for buyding easely  
to be conuied to the place,
- Reede to couer houses or such  
like, if tile or slate be not,

are to be looked for as things without which no Citie  
may be made nor people in ciuil socy be kept together.

The people there to plant and to continue are eyther to liue without trafficke, or by trafficke  
and by trade of marchandise. If they shall liue without sea trafficke, at the first they become na-  
ked by want of linen and wollen, and very miserable by infinite wants that will ocherwise en-  
sue, and so will they be forced of themselves to depart, or else easely they will be consumed by the  
Spaniards, by the Frenchmen, or by the naturall inhabitants of the countrey, and so the inter-  
pice becomes reprochfull to our nation, and a let to many other good purposes that may be ta-  
ken in hande.

And by trade of marchandise they can not liue, except the sea or the lande there may yeelde  
commoditie. And therefore you ought to haue most speciall regard of that poynt, and so to plant,  
that the naturall commodities of the place and seate, may drawe to you access of Nauigation  
for the same, or that by your owne Nauigation you may carie the same out, and fetch home the  
supply of the wants of the seate.

Such nauigation so to be employed, shall besides the supply of wants, bee able to encoun-  
ter with foxye force.

And for that in the ample bene of such things as are brought to you out of England by sea,  
standeth a matter of great consequence, it behouery that all humanitie and curtesie and much for-  
bearing of reuenge to the inland people be used, so shall you haue firme amitie with your neyg-  
bours, so shall you haue their inland commodities to maintaine traffike, and so shall you waue  
rich and strong in force. Diuers and seuerall commodities of the inland are not in great plenty  
to be brought to your hands, without the ayde of some portable or Nauigable ryuer, or ample  
lake, and therefore to haue the helpe of such a one is most requisite: And so is it of effect for the  
dispersing of your owne commodities in exchange into the Inlands.

Nothing is moye to be indouored with the Inland people then familiaritie. For so may you  
best discouer all the naturall commodities of their countrey, and also all their wants, all their  
strengths, all their weaknesse, and with whome they are in warre, and with whome confede-  
racye in peace and amitie, &c. which knowne you may worke many great effects of greatest con-  
sequence.

Notes

And

And in your planninge the consideration of the climate and of the soyle be matters that are to be respected. For if it be so that you may let in the salt sea water, nor mixed with the fresh into flats, where the sunne is of the heats that it is at Rochel, in the Bay of portingall, or in Spaine, then may you procure a man of skill, and so you haue wonne one noble commodity for the fishing, and so trade of merchandise by making of Salt.

Or if the soyle and climate bee such as may yeelde you the Grape as good as that at Durdeu, as that in Portingall, or as that about Duill in Spaine, or that in the Islands of the Canaries, then there resteth but a workman to put in execution to make wines, and to vse the Resigns of the sunne and other, &c.

Or if ye finde a soyle of the temperature of the South part of Spaine or Barbarie in which you finde the Olive tree to growe: Then you may be assured of a noble merchandize for this realme, considering that our great trade of clothing doth require oyle, and weying howe deere of late it is become by the vent they haue of that commodity in the West Indies, and if you find the wilde Olive there it may be grafted.

Or if you can find y<sup>e</sup> herrye of Cochenille with which we colour Stammelles, or any Roote, Berrye, Fruite, wood, or earth fitte for dying, you winne a notable thing fitte for our State of clothing. This Cochenille is naturall in the west Indies on that firme.

Or if you haue hides of beasts fit for sole Lether, &c. It wold be a merchandize right good & the saunges there yet can not tame Lether after our kind, yet excellently after their own maner.

Or if the soyle shal yeeld Figges, Almonds, Sugar Canes, Quinces, Oranges, Lemons, potatoes, &c. there may arise some trade & traffick, by figs, almonds, sugar, marincade, surker, &c.

Or if great woods be found, if they be of Cypres, chests may be made, if they be of some kinde of trees, pitch and tarre may be made, if they be of some other then they may yeeld Rosin, Turpentine, &c. and all for trade and trafficke, and Calkes for wine and oyle may be made, likewise ships and houses, &c.

And because trafficke is a thing so material, I wish y<sup>e</sup> great obseruation be taken what euery soyle yeeldeth naturall, in what commoditye sort, & what it may be made to yeeld by indouour, & to send vs notice home, y<sup>e</sup> therupon we may deuise what means may be thought of to raise trades.

Now admit that we might not be suffered by the saunges to enioy any whole countrie of any more then the scope of a citie, yet if we might enioy trafficke & be assured of the same, we might be much enriched, our Reuie might be increased, and a place of safetie might there bee founde, if change of religion or ciuil wars should happen in this realme, which are things of great benefit. But if we may enioy any large territorye of apt soyle, we might so vse the matter, as we should not depend vpon Spaine for oyles, sarks, religas, oranges, lemons, Spanish skins, &c. For vpon Fraunce for wood, baylax, and galeoyne wines, nor on England for flaxe, pitch, tarre, mallas, &c. So we should not so exhaust our treasure, and so exceedingly enrich our doubtful friends, as we do, but should purchase the commodities that we want for halfe the creature that now we do; but should by our owne industries and the benefits of the soile there cheaply purchase oyles, waxes, salt, frutes, pitch, tarre, flaxe, hempe, mallas, woods, fish, gold, siluer, copper, tallow, hides & many commodities: besides if there be no flats to make salt on, if you haue plenty of wood you may make it in sufficient quantitie for common vses at home there.

If you can keepe a safe haue, although you haue not the friendship of the neere neighbours, yet you may haue trafficke by sea vpon one shoare or other, vpon that firme in time to come if not present.

If you find great plenty of timber on the shoare side or vpon any portable riuer, you were best to cut downe of the same the first winter, to be seasoned for ships, barks, boats and houses. And if neere such wood there be any riuer or brooke vpon the which a sawing mill may be placed, it would doe great seruice, and therefore consideration would be had of such place.

And if such place or chosen place of settling were in possession & after fortified by art, although by the land side our Englishmen were kept in, and might not enioy any traffick with the next neighbours, nor any vituals: yet might they victual themselves of fish to serue very necessitie, and enter into amitie with the enemies of their next neighbours, and so haue vent of their merchandize of England & also haue victual, or by meanes herevpon to be vfed to force the next neighbours to amitie. And keeping a nauie at the settling place, they should finde out along the coast of the land to haue trafficke, and at diuers Islands also. And so this first seat might in time become a stapling place of the commodities of many countreys and territoryes, and in time this place might become of all the prouinces round about the only gouernour. And if the place first chosen should not so well please our people, as some other more lately found out: There might be an easie

remoue

remoue, and the  
If the soles  
pie then men  
facts therein, and

To plant vpon  
ring into the ri  
portable tarre in  
the one or on the  
king contenting

Such rivers  
the same. These  
win of the bart of

Since euery  
hing in your re  
quire to amend  
planting place to  
careped thier e  
some fruit, and th

shoely after shall  
trees shall be ab  
as may suffice th

If the soile haue  
dly to haue after  
make mention of

A letter



an Italian gen  
and father in la  
known among  
ter, which he ha  
both giue with h  
a thousand roue

woy or lesse. A  
whole ingenio  
living Lord th

Also certaine  
few dayes past,  
for maisters to

berp much. T  
and in twenty f  
the tropike of C

Howeouer, t  
this countrey, f  
me to giue me  
come hither wi

God sending in  
dether from La  
proced may be

...ers that are to  
with the fresh  
al, as in Spaine,  
for the fishing.

... as that at Dur  
... of the Cana  
... of the Religions

... barle in which  
... change for this  
... ing howe deere  
... and if you find

... s, as any Roote,  
... our State of clo

... e right good of the  
... in own maner.  
... nges, Lemons,  
... in case. Further ge  
... be of some kinde  
... cloe Kofin, Tur  
... be made, likewise

... taken what every  
... ed to by indour,  
... of to raise trades,  
... ole countrie of any  
... e same, we might  
... here bee founde, if  
... s of great benefi  
... ter, as we should  
... ins, &c. For upon  
... care, makes, &c.  
... ful friends, as we  
... at now we do; but  
... these opies, wines,  
... allow hides & man  
... tie of wood you

... here neighbours,  
... me to come if not

... uer, you were best  
... and houses.  
... g mill may be pla  
... ch place.

... by art, although  
... sick with the next  
... e very necessitie,  
... vent of their mar  
... ce the next neigh  
... along the tract of  
... be in time become  
... in time this place  
... place first chosen  
... might be an easie  
... remoue

... remoue, and that might be raised, as rather kepe for others of our nation to avoid an ill neigbdr).  
If the soiles adjoining to such convenient haven and setting places be found marshie and boggy then men skilfull in dypping are to be carryed thither. For arte may worke wonderfull effects therein, and make the soile rich for many uses.

To plant upon an Island in the mouth of some noceable river, as upon the point of the land entering into the river, if no such Island be, were to great end. For if such river were navigable or passable farre into the land, it would arise great hope of planting in freill soiles, and traffike on the one or on the other side of the river, or on both, or the linking in amitie with one or other partie being contenting there for dominion.

Such rivers found, both barges & boats may be made for the safe passage of such as shall pierce the same. These to be covered with doubles of course linnen artificially wrought, to defend the armo of the bart of the sawge from the rower.

Since every soile of the world by arte may be made to yeld things as feed and to cloch man, being in your returne a perfect note of the soile without and within, and we shall deusse if neede require to amend the same, and to draw it to more perfection. And if you finde not fruites in your planting place to your liking, we shall in due times furnish you with such kindes of plantes to be carryed thither the winter after your planting, as shall the best next summer following yeld you some fruit, and the yere next following, as much as shall suffice a towne as big as Calice, and that shortly after shall be able to yeld you great store of strong durable good siter to dyke, and these trees shall be able to increase you within lesse then seven yeres as many trees presently to beare, as may suffice the people of divers parties, which at the first setting may stand you in great need, if the soile have not the commoditie of fruites of goodnesse already. And because you ought greatly to haue after things that yeld present reliefe, without trouble of carriage thither, therefore I make mention of these, thus specially, to the end you may haue it specially in minde.

A letter written to M. Richard Stapers by John Whichall  
from Brasill, in Santos the 26 of June.

1 5 7 8



Whysfull sir, and welbeloued friend M. Staper, I haue me most heartily recommended vnto you, wishing your health euen as mine owne.

These few words may be to let you vnderstand, that, whereas I wrote vnto you not many dayes past, by the way of Lisbon, how that I determined to be with you very shortly, it is in this countrey offered me to marry, and to take my choice of thre or foure: so that I am about three dayes ago comforted with an Italian gentleman to marrie with his daughter within these foure dayes. This my friend and father in law Signior Ioffo Dore is borne in the citie of Genua in Italie: his kindred is well knowne amongst the Italians in London: also he hath but onely this child which is his daughter, which he hath thought better bestowed vpon me then on any Portugall in all the countrey, and doth giue with her in marriage to me part of an Ingenio which he hath, that doth make euery yere a thousand routes of sugar. This my marriage will be woorth to me two thousand ducets, little more or lesse. Also Signior Ioffo Dore my father in law doth intend to put into my handes the whole Ingenio with fiftie or seuentie slaues, and thereof to make me factor for vs both. I giue my liuing Lord thanks for placing me in such honoy and plentifulnesse of all things.

Also certaine dayes past I talked with the pnyeboy and the captaine, and they haue certified me few dayes past, that they haue discouered certaine mines of siluer and golde, and looke euery day for maisters to come to open the said mines: which when they be opened will enrich this countrey very much. This place is called Saine Vincent, and is distant from youe two thousand leaguers, and in tweney foure degrees of latitude on the South side of the equinoctiall line, and right vnder the tropike of Capricorne. A countrey it is very healthfull without sickness.

Spoyeouer, I haue talked with the captaine and pnyeboy, and my father in law, who rule all this countrey, for to haue a shippe with goods to come from London thither, which haue promised me to giue me licence, saying that now I am free denizen of this countrey. To cause a shippe to come hither with such commodities as would serue this countrey, would come to great gaines, God sending in safetie the profit and gaines. In such wares and commodities as you may shippe thither from London is for euery one commoditye deliuered here thre for one, and then after the pnyeboy may be employed in white sugar at foure hundred reis the route.

Whites of gold  
a siluer new  
is discouered  
at S. Vincent.

The daye  
to S. Vincent  
would this  
for one.

¶ m m

How

I meane also to haue a friend in London to send me a shippe of 60 or 70 tunnes, little more or less, with such commodities as I shall giue aduice for. This voyage is as good as any Peru voyage. If you and maister Osborne will deale herre, I will deale with you before any other, because of our olde friendly friendship in time past. If you haue any Hamache thereon, in the name of God doe you crie out a fine barke of seruente or eighty tunnes, and send her hither with a Hoyngeall pilot to this port of saint Vincent in Basill, bordering vpon the borders of Peru.

Also I herewith write vnto you in what forme and maner you shall furnish this voyage both in commodities and otherwise.

In what maner  
to be a voyage  
to be. Whence  
with a shippe  
of 70 or 80  
tunnes to be  
sent.

First you must lade in the said shippe certayne Hampshire and Devonshire hartles; for the which you must let her depart from London in October, and to couch in the Canaries, and there to make sale of the said hartles, and with the proceed thereof to lade fifteene tunnes of waxes that be perfect and good, and six dozen of cobouan shimmes of these colours, to wit, orange tawne, yellow, red, and very fine blacke. I thinke you shall not finde such colours there. Therfore you must cause them that shall go vpon this voyage, to take fasten with them, to cause the same shimmes to be put into the said colours, Also I thinke you shall finde oyle there. Ther hogheads of sweet oyle for this voyage is very necessary, of a hundred and thirtie barres of oyle.

Also in London you may lade in the said shippe these parcels of commodities or wares, as foloweth:

- In primis, Foure pierces of hollands of middle saye.
- Item, One pierce of fine holland.
- Foure hundred elles of osenbygen very fine.
- Foure dozen of llypps of all sayes.
- Seventeene hntals of pierce of the Canaries,
- Twentie dozen of great knives which be made in fardles, of a lowe price.
- Foure dozen of a small saye.
- Sixe pierces of bays of the lowest saye.
- One very fine pierce of bays.
- Foure hundred elles of Spanish cottons, most blacke, greene, some yellow.
- Eight or tenne dozen of hats, the one halfe trimmed with castles, the other plaine, with the bands of Cyprus.
- Sixe dozen of course sherts.
- Thye dozen of doublets of canvas.
- Thye dozen of doublets of steebed canvas.
- One pierce of fine Millan fullian barres.
- Sixe dozen of locks for doores and chests.
- Sixe thousand of all maner of sh books.
- Foure dozen reames of paper.
- Two dozen of glasses of diuers sayes.
- Two dozen of Venice glasses, the one halfe great, the other middle saye.
- Two dozen of mantles of frize of the lowest price that can be.
- Thye dozen of frize gowones.
- Foure hundred pound of tinne of the best of Hoyngeall, most small dishes and treuchers.
- Foure pound of silke of all colours.
- Twentie pound of spices, cloves, cinnamon, pepper, and caston.
- Two hntals of white saye.
- Thye pound of chyeed, white, blacke, and blew.
- Thye pound of fine white chyeed.
- Item, halfe a dozen of Hoyngeall hartles of diuers colours.
- Foure sayng clothes, blew, red, yellow, and greene.
- Sixe Hoyngeall dozens of diuers colours.
- One fine blew cloth of eight pound.
- One fine damell of tenne or twelue pound.
- One fine sheeps coloured cloth of twelue pound.
- One fine blacke hartle.
- One fine damell hartle.
- Sixe yards of blacke veluet.
- Thye barrells of nails for chests.
- Two barrells of nails for shippes and barkes.

Dit

Sixe hntals of ocrem  
Two dozen of veluet  
Foure yards of cassata  
Two dozen of leather  
Sixe dozen of apes, hats  
Foure mases of gittone  
Foure hundred of fine  
and sherts.

Fourte tunne of yron.  
These be such saye of mar  
hether, haue you no doubt,  
to your contentment and pro  
sumery.

My father in law and I  
finger we intend to shippe for  
you to be ale with us in this  
me answere thereof, and sent  
of hand.

Beside the premises I  
Sixe yards of crimolin  
Sixe yards of crimolin  
Twelue yards of fine y  
There in this country in  
they haue used this name so  
fo. When you write vnto m

Thus I commit you with  
If you send this shippe, I  
Quinte nor any of her coast,  
writes let her be dispatched  
Also a dozen of sherts for  
Item, six or eight pierces  
can be sent.

A copie of the letter

Whitthall

An

**M**

After  
by your s  
Whitthall  
we haue  
them to s  
did write  
tertainment, but also should  
every thing, and that for to  
red dye sugars; a pound of  
great credit that they and  
be heerunder written, to toy  
to send this good shippe to  
fo, but also with as many o  
countrey. And we craue of  
hant in you and of your letter  
to other intinde of your purpose  
shall nor anly haue cause to  
the magistrates there to be

Six huzalles of ocom.

Two dozen of velvet girdles without hangers.

Four yards of cassaca red, blacke, and blew, with some greene.

Two dozen of leather girdles.

Six dozen of axes, hatchets, and small billies to cut wood,

Four mases of gittone strings.

Foure hamper of sixe hundred elles of some linnen cloth that is of a lowe price to make shires and sherts.

Foure tunne of yron.

These be such sorte of wares as I would you should send, If you meane to deale or send any ship hither, have you no doubt, but by the helpe of God I shall put all things in good order according to your contentment and profite: for my father in law with the capitaine and youeodor doe rule this countrey.

My father in law and I shall (God willing) make a good quantity of sugar every yeere, which longer we intend to shippe for London from hence soforth, if we can get a trustie and good friend as you to deale with vs in this matter. I pray you presently after the receit of this my letter to write me answere thereto, and send your letter to Sp. Wolber to Lisbon, and he will conuey it to me out of hand.

Besides the promise send sixe yards of skarkt, parchment lace of divers colours,

Sixe yards of crimosin velvet.

Sixe yards of crimosin latten.

Twelve yards of fine yuke blacke.

Here in this countrey in stead of John Whithall they haue called me John Leitoom: so that they haue vsed this name so long time, that at this present there is no remedie but it must remaine so. When you write vnto me let the superscription be vnto John Leitoom.

Thus I commit you with all yours to the Holy ghost for euer,

If you send this shippe, I would haue you give order that she touch in no part of the coast of Guinie nor any other coast, but to come directly hither to the port of S. Vincent, and from the Canaries let her be dispatched in my name, to wit, John Leitoom,

Also a dozen of shires for my wearing let be sent if you send the shippe.

Item, sixe or eight pieces of sayes for mancles for women, which is the most necessarie thing that can be sent.

By your assured friend

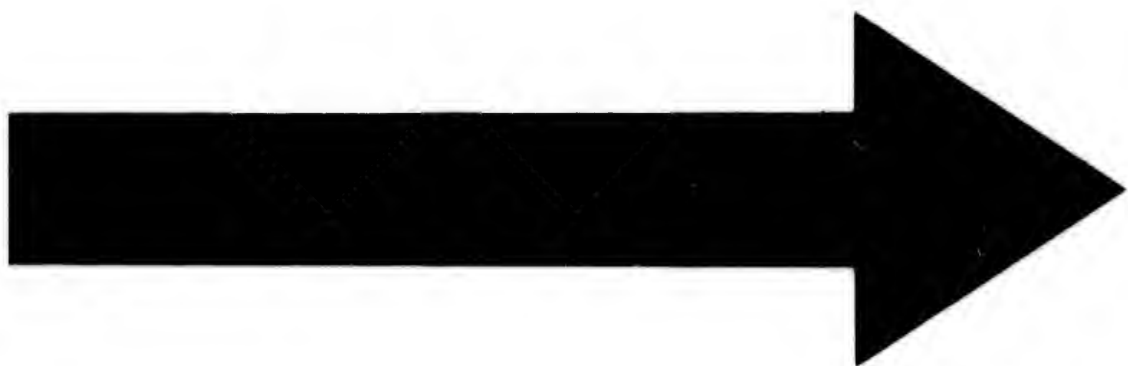
John Whithall.

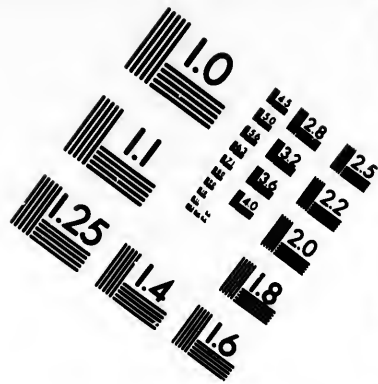
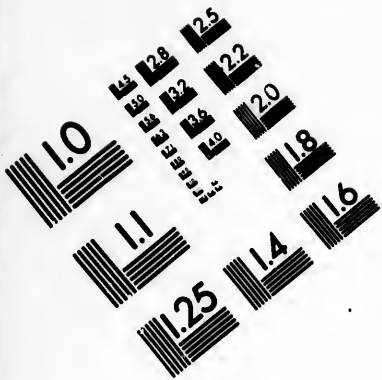
A copie of the letters of the Aduenturers for Brasill sent to Iohn Whithall dwelling in Santos, by the Minion of London.

Anno 1580 the 24 of October in London.

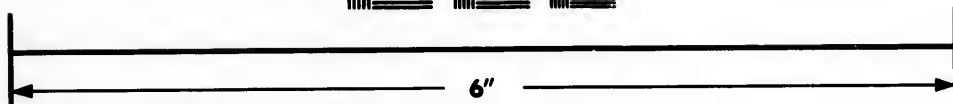
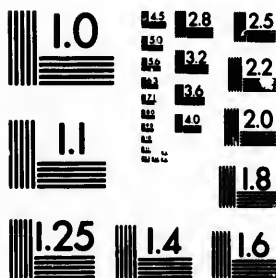


After Whithall, as vnaquainted we commend vs vnto you, &c. vnderstanding by your friends, M. John Bird, Sp. Robert Chalkaden, & your brother James Whithall of certaine letters that they haue receiued of yours from Santos, which we haue seene and read, wherein from time to time you doe require, and desire them to send a good shippe to Santos, with such wares and commodities as you did write for, whereby you did not onely promise that they should haue good entertainment, but also should sell the said commodities to make thre of one outward at the least in euery thing, and that for to reade they shippe backe, they should haue of the best, finest, and whitest sugers 3 pound of one we (gbe for a bucket at the most. The promise is considered, with the great credit that they and we do give to your writing and promise, haue caused vs, whose names be hereunder written, to loine our selves in company together, and to be at great charges purpose to send this good shippe the opinion of London, not onely with such merchandises as you wrote for, but also with as many other things as we thought might any wayes please you, of those the countrey. And we craue of you, that we and our factours may haue some credit of you, as we haue in you and of your letters, which is to beleue vs that we haue taken this voyage vpon vs, with no other minde or purpose then to deale faithfully and cruelly in the trade by sea and land, so as you shall not onely haue cause to reioyce, and deserve thanks for our coming, but also you will procure the magistrates there to be bound, as they use in Galizia, that they may be preserved and defended





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



14 12.8  
13.6 13.2  
13.0 12.5  
12.0  
11.8  
5

110  
10  
13.6  
13.2  
12.8

from all repressalls and imbargements of princes or subjects for any causes or matters whatsoever, whereby we may be encouraged by them, giuing vs this security of good intertainment, to continue the trade peerelely henceforth: and for our parts we promise vpon our credits and fidelities, to commit no outrage at the sea nor land, nor suffer any to be done in our company that we may let, but rather to defend and protect all other peaceable merchantes as we are with the sayd shippes and goodes.

And to the end that you and others shall know that we meane as we say, we haue giuen order to our factours to giue you good hostages for your assurance of our good fidelities: and further we haue sent a testimoniall of our owne true meaning in writing vnder the seales of this honourable citie of London, which we will not discredit by our behauiours for all the treasure that you haue, and so we haue written to your magistrats of your poze, and others in Spanissh, the copy whereof we send you heerewith closed in English. And if the time should fall out so contrary to our expectations, that there should not be fine white sugar sufficient to lade our said shippe in due time at Santos, then we pray you direct our factours where they may go with the shippe in safete to supply their want, and helpe them to a good sure pilot for that purpose, and write your letters to your friends where the best sugar is made in the sayd parts, and helpe our factours to haue a testimoniall from Santos, that they and you traded together friendly, and so departed in good and perfect amity, and shew them that the iust cause of our coming is to trade as merchantes peaceably, and not as pirates to commit any offence to one or other.

Also we pray you if there be any store of waere, or salt pecker, whereby the price there may yeeld vs as much profit as the white sugars at a bucket the roue, or any other commodity of like profit, then to procure that we may lade it without danger of law, be it euere of golde or silver or whatsoeuer els.

We haue sent you copper cauldrions for your enginos with iron, and all other necessaries for your purpose, and artificers to set the same: and as we haue at your request bene at great charges in sending these men, so we pray you let vs haue lawfull fauor in like courtesie to fauor all our causes. And if any of our mariners or passengers should in any respect of displeasure against their company, or in hope of preferment of marriage or otherwise, would procure to tarp and dwell there, and leaue his charge & office, that then you will be a meane to the iustice that such fugitiues should be sent aboard the shippe as prisoners: for as you know, without our men we can not bring home our shippes.

We haue giuen order to our factours to vse your counsell and helpe in the sayd affaires, and to grauntie you for the same as to your courtesie and faithfull friendship shall appertaine to your good liking: and in the meane time for a token of our good willes towards you, we haue sent you a field bech of walnut tree, with the canopy, valens, curtaines, and gilt knops. And if there be any commodity els that may pleasure you or your friends, we haue giuen order that they shall haue the refusing of it before any other, giuing for it as it is woorth.

And thus to conclude, promising to performe all the foresayd things on our parts in every condition, we commit you to God, who euere preserve you with all his blessings.

Your louing friends  
 Christopher Hodsdon.  
 Anthonie Garrard.  
 Thomas Bramlie.  
 John Bird.  
 William Elkin.

### Certaine notes of the voyage to Brasill with the Minion of London aforesaid, in the yeere 1580, written by

Thomas Grigges Purser of the said shippe.



The third day of Nouember in the yeere aforesaid we departed in the opinion of London from Harwich, from which time no great thing woorth the knowledge or regard of others happened untill the 22 of December the next moneth, which day for our owne learning & vse we obserued the setting of the sunne, which was West south west, we then being vnder the line equinoctiall, where we found the aire very temperate, and the wind for the most part Southeast & East south east.

The same day we also obserued the rising of the moone, being one day after the full, which rose at East north east.

60. Christoph.  
Hare was  
captaine in  
this voyage.

Nouember.

December.

The first  
we arrived  
The 16 da  
they met  
thence to  
arrived at

Our court  
by West, and

This shipp  
at nine fatho

Upon the  
The third

we and inter  
The fourth

shippe, and the  
The eighth

were sent to h  
The 18 da

great French  
but were deli

upon the cap  
liners, and the

The 19 da  
againe, and b

to be taken th  
The 20 da

shoten in th  
The 22 da

Santos, and r  
for the straig

The 23 da  
gaine, and ca

at Santos,

This day  
pill, for they

haue trade th  
About this

that the shipp  
that the shipp

The 25 da  
in a barke th

The 22 da  
with the Pad

they were so  
Rio Genero

Rome and he  
they church

to stand ou  
and further r

The 28 of  
The 21 of

The 10 da  
English writ

to haue a pil  
The 11 da

eighteenth d  
and leakes

and in the m

The first land that we fell with upon the coast of Brasil was the Island of S. Sebastian, where January we arrived the 14 day of January, in the yeere 1581.

The 16 day Thomas Babington, and others in our pinnell, went a shoare to Guaybea, where they met with John Whitball his father and mother in law, who hauing receiued letters from thence to be deliuered at Santos, came aboard, and then we weped and set saile, and the 28 day we arrived at the Island of Santa Catelina, neere the entrance of Santos.

Our course from S. Sebastians was South west and by West, and betwixt the South west and by West, and West south west.

This Island of Catelina seemeth at the first to be a part of the Island of Girybia. We ankered at nine fathome blacke oile ground.

Upon the Island there growe many Palmito trees, but no fresh water is there to be found.

The 17 day of February we arrived before the towne of Santos, and were there well receiued February 17 and intertaind of the captaine, the kings officers, and all the people.

The fourth day we tooke into our shippe a hiefe alitie, which serued for the victualling of the shippe, and the refreshing of our men, and to make vs the merrier at Shrouetide.

The eight day we deliuered to M. John Whitball a bedsted with the appurtenances, which were lent to him from our merchants of London.

The 18 day the captaine of Santos came aboard our ship, by whom we had knowledge of foure great French shippes of warre, that had bene at the riuier Genero, which there tooke thre canoas, but were taken from thence by the captaines & foyses, and were looked for here at Santos. Whereupon the captaine requested vs to lend them some armoz and artillery, and we lent them twenty caliuers, and two barrels of powder.

The 19 day our skiffe which we had sent to Alkatrafes, and had bene away sixe dayes, came againe, and brought good stoye of great and good fish, and tolde vs that there was good stoye of fish to be taken there by the booke, and as much wood as we would haue of the Palmito tree.

The 20 day at night, Nicholas Gale, one of our company, fell ouer our shippes sides, and was drowned in the port of Santos before the towne, where our shippe rode at anker.

The 22 day two of the canoas which the Frenchmen tooke in the riuier of Genero, returned to Santos, and reported that the foure French shippes were past to the Southwards as they thought for the straights of Magellan, and so into the South sea.

The 23 day the aforesaid Nicholas Gale, who fell ouerboard two dayes before, was founde againe, and taken by thre miles from our shippe, & our company went to his buriall in the church at Santos.

This day the captaine and iustices of Santos bid vs to carry in theiyr road till the last of Apyll, for they had sent a barke of Santos to Bayea at the kings charges, to know whether we should haue trade there or no, and this barke could not returne before that time.

About this time there arriued at Fernanbucke a shippe from Portugall, which brought the newes that the Islands, Indies, & Portugall ic selfe was molested and troubled by the Spaniards, and that the Portugalls had both English & Frenchmen to Lisbon to defend them against Spaine.

The 25 day we sent two of our men, namely Thomas Michael & Simon Thorne to Bayea in a barke that went thither from Santos.

The 22 day of Apyll our maister and Thomas Babington hauing some talke and conference with the Padrez of Santos, they (our men being ready to go to the riuier Genero) tolde them that they were sorry for our banishment from the church, which was by the Spinistrador written from Rio Genero, that sayn much as this 20 yeeres or more the English nation had denied the church of Rome and her proceedings, therefore the Spinistrador commaunded that none of vs should come to theiyr church: the Padrez willed vs heerein to haue patience, and to take it in good part, and promised to haue our friends in theiyr word & writing, both to the Spinistrador, and to the bishop at Bayea, and further requested all our English company to haue no ill opinion of them.

The 28 day of Apyll we laden sugars into our shippe.

The 21 day we tooke in fresh victualles from Santos.

The 10 day of June we gratified one Ioho Thorno, dwelling in Santos, with some of our English victualles, and intertaind him in good soye in our shippe, and this day we were provided to haue a pilot at Santos to carry vs to Bayea.

The 11 day we went to fish, to make provision for our shippe & men, and from that time till the eighteenth day we fet water, and cut wood for our fire, and trimmed our shippe of the barnes and leakes which the woynes had made in her while we rided at the Island of S. Sebastians, and in the meane time wee departed from before the towne of Santos. Our Maister sent his

Day. June.

Weeks in the opinion made by woynes.

ceers whaforcurr, inment, to contri, es and fidelities, to y that we may let, y they shippes and

le haue giuen order es: and further we of this honourable sure that you haue, sly, the copy wher- itary to our expect- ppe in due time at in safetie to supply our letters to your haue a testimoniall ood and perfect ami- careably, and not as

nice there may peeld modity of like profit, of siluer or whatsoe.

ether necessaries for beene at great char- restie to fauor all our pleasure against their ary and dwell there, uch fugitiues should can not bying home

theyr affayres, and to ertaine to your good haue sent you a field if there be any com- they shall haue the re-

parts in euery condi

opher Hodsdon. onie Garrard. as Bramlic. Bird. am Elkin.

Minion of by

red in the opinion of ooth the knowledge e next month, which the sunne, which was where we found the east & East south east, er the full, which role

The

Whose name  
was Christopher  
Hare.

skiffe from the barre of Santos, thinking to have brought Thomas Babington and William Cuet, with the pilot, which we had carryed for three dayes, and as the skiffe was going William Cuet being by the riuers side, called to our pinnelle, & sent a letter to our maister, which Thomas Babington had written, wherein was no newes, but that the Spinistrado was arrived at Santos from the riuer Genero, and would speake with our maister, but he willed that whatsoeuer Thomas Babington did write, no credit should be giuen to it. And further willed vs by presently to depart for S. Sebastians, and there to dispatch our businelle, and then to send backe for Babington and himselfe to Guaybea, where he (if he were well) would giue his attendance to come aboard.

As we rid two leagues a sea boord the barre of Santos, we broke a cable in the open sea, which hapned the 15 day of this moneth.

We arrived at S. Sebastians the 15 day, and there tyfied our ballast, and had in stones, and belied our shippe a ground to stoppe our leaks, and carryed our calke a shoare to be booped for water, which in deed might better haue bene done in Santos, before the Spinistrado came thither: yet we finished all things pertaining to our shippe, by the 22 of this moneth, at S. Sebastians.

July.

The first day of July Thomas Babington came aboard with William Cuet, in our pinnelle, and the rest of our men that went for them: but there was no pilot brought according to promise, to carry vs to Bayca.

The things that we obserued and noted in the time of our being at Santos, were these.

All such wares and merchandizes as owe no custome in Byasil, they vse us, to set a price vpon the same, howe it shall be solde: which is done by the magistrats of the towne, according to the ordinances of their king.

But for all such merchandizes as do owe custome there, the merchants are to sell them according as they may, to the greatest profit and aduantage that they can.

Concerning the prouince of Peru, we learned that one part of it by land and water is but theue dayes iourney from the towne of Santos, and from thence it may be about foure or five dayes iourney by water to the maine riuer of Plate.

From the head of the riuer of Plate, and from the two chiefest townes there, they do trade & traffike by land into Peru by maggones, and hostes of mules.

The said riuer of Plate is so full of sands and dangers, and the strech so fierce sometimes, that no shipping bares to deale with it, small barks to their knowledge may go vpon it, and not els.

The Portugals here can not be suffered to vntill they mines of treasure in these parts, vpon paine of death, the contrary being commanded by the king, and the Viceroy, who is as their king in place of authority.

About 20 leagues from Santos, there is a certaine kinde of wilde Sauages, lying in the mountaynes, which are in friendship with the Portugals, and they haue continuall warres with certaine other Sauages that dwell about the borders of Peru, which is distant from Santos about 40 or 50 leagues: These Sauages of Peru haue store of golde and siluer, but they know not the vse of it.

Looke what Sauages of their enemies they take, they sell them to the Portugals for knives, combs, axes, or hatchets, and other trifles: they will sell one for a penny knife to a Portugall, and after two peeces they are worth twenty or thirty buckets to a Portugall.

This people haue also continuall warres with the Spaniards: and this was tolde vs by one of those Sauages, which hath dwelt among the Portugals these seven peeces, with his maister called Senior Manoel Veloso. And this fellowe would willingly haue come with vs for England.

There are certaine rocks that lie off betwene Alcatrazes and S. Sebastians, about two leagues, which are to be taken heed of, which a farr of in saye weather shew like the sailes of shippes.

There are other rocks that lie off S. Carolina also five leagues to the East and by South into the sea off the Island.

At our coming vp to Santos we found foure fathome & a halfe water in the shallowest place, and the like we found within a league after we were parted from S. Carolina, little more or lesse, but after you haue runne in the depth of foure fathome & a halfe, about a mile or lesse, then you shall haue it deeper againe more and more.

Before the towne of Santos we rode in eight and tenne fathome water.

Instructions

S. Fran  
The fa  
Sea

On the  
four a  
inhabit  
nerall, be  
aboard, o  
boord our  
prouisio  
mongst  
departed  
The m  
fecting ou  
them, the  
and so lay  
of himselfe  
Dur y  
ber, and a  
which w  
ther we  
The  
within  
into the  
uen his m  
In ch  
is, and l  
which th  
All ch  
with vs  
sall, wh  
The  
called M  
did pecc  
tray of T  
the mha  
per the n  
prouisio  
ter and  
(as by  
miles, &

The famous voyage of Sir Francis Drake into the South Sea, and there hence about the whole Globe of the Earth,

begun in the yeere of our Lord, 1577.



The 15. day of November, in the yeere of our Lord, 1577. Sir Francis Drake, with a flecte of five ships and barkes, and to the number of 164. men, Gentlemen and Sailers, departed Plimmouth, giving out his pretended voyage for Alexandria: but the winde falling contrary, he was forced the next morning to put into Falmouth haven in Coynwall, whers such and so terrible a tempest tooke vs, as few men have seene the like, and was in deed so vehement, that all our ships were like to have goneto wracke, but is pleased God to preserve vs from that extremitie and to afflict vs only for that present with these two particulars: The maste of our Admirall which was the Pellican, was cut our hood for the safegard of the ship, and the Starre godd was driven a shoare, & some what buisied, for the repairing of which damages we returned againe to Plimmouth, and having recovered those harmes, and brought the ships againe in good state, we set forth the second time from Plimmouth, and set saile the 13. day of December following.

The 25. day of the same month we fell with the Cape Canine, upon the coast of Barbarie, and coasting along, the 27. day we found an Island called Magador, lying one mile distant from the maine, betwene which Island and the maine, we found a very good and safe harbour for our ships to ride in, as also very good entrance, and void of any danger.

The Isle of Magador on the coast of Barbarie.

On this Island our Generall erected a pinnace, wherof he brought out of England with him foure already framed, While these things were in doing, there came to the waters side some of the inhabitants of the countrey, the wyng tooch their flags of truce, which being scene of our Generall, he sent his ships to care to the shoare, to know what they would: they being willing to come aboard, our men left there one man of our companie for a pledge, and brought two of theirs aboard our shippe, which by signes shewed our Generall, that the next day they would bring some provision, as Sheepe, Capons and Hennes and such like, whereupon our Generall bestowed among them some linnen cloth and shoes, and a iaveling, which they very joyfully received, and departed for that time.

The next morning they failed not to come agayne to the waters side, and our Generall againe setting out our boats, one of our men leaping oner rashly a shoare, and offering friendly to embrace them, they set violent hands on him, offering a dagger to his throte if he had made any resistance, and so laying him on a boise, carried him away, so that a man cannot bee too circumspect and wary of himselfe among such miscreants.

Our pinnace being finished, we departed from this place the thirtieth and last day of December, and coasting along the shoare, we did desire, not contrary to our expectation, certaine Caniers which were Spanish shermen, to whom we gave chase, and tooke 3. of them, and proceeding further we met with 3. Caruells and tooke them also.

The 17. day of January we arrived at Cape Blanco, where we found a ship riding at anchor, within the Cape, and but two simple Mariners in her, which ship we tooke and carried her further into the harbour where we remained 4. dayes, and in that space our Generall mulctred, and trapped his men on land in warlike maner, to make them fit for all occasions.

January.

In this place we tooke of the Fishermen such necessaries as was wanted, and they could yeld vs, and leaving here one of our little barkes called the Benedic, wee tooke with vs one of theirs which they called Camers, being of the burden of 40. tunnes of thereabouts.

All these things being finished, we departed this harbour the 22. of January, carrying along with vs one of the Portugall Caruells which was bound to the Islands of Cape de Verde, for saile, wherof good store is made in one of those Islands.

The master of Pilot of that Caruell, did advertise our Generall that upon one of those Islands called Mayo, there was great store of dried Cabaritas, which a few inhabitants there dwelling, did yeerely make ready for such of the kings ships as did there touch, being bound for his countrey of Brasile or else where. We fell with this Island the seven and twentieth of January, but the inhabitants would in no case traffique with vs, being thereof forbidden by the kings Edict: yet the next day our Generall sent to view the Island, and the likelihoods that might be there, of provision of victuals, about three score & two men under the equano: & gouernment of Wincer and master Doughtie, and marching towards the chiefe place of habitation in this Island (as by the Portugall wee were informed) hauing travelled to the mountains the space of three miles, and arriving there somewhat before the day break, wee arrested our selves to see day

The Isle of Mayo.

ber Hare.

son and William going William, which Thomas arrived at Santos asfoever Thomas sent to depart for bington and him above.

in stones, and halloped for water, came chicher: yet baskians.

et, in our pinnelle, being to promise to

ere these, to let a price upon copying to the ope

to sell them acco

water is but twelve of five dayes jour

do trade & traffike

sometimes, that no and not els.

these parts, upon do is as their king

ying in the moun- t warres with cer Santos about 40 they know to not the

ngals for knives, a Portugall, and

as tolde vs by one es, with his mai- come with vs for

out two leagues, as of Shippes.

nd by South into

shallo west place, little more of tell, Me, then you shall

structions

## The voyages and discoueries *Sir Fran. Drake.*

before vs, which appearing, wee found the inhabitants to bee few: but the place by reason that it was manured, we found to bee more fruitfull then the other part, especially the halles among the hills.

*Ripe grapes in Winter.*

Here we gaue our selues a little refreshing, as by very ripe and sweete grapes, which the fruitfullnesse of the earth at that season of the yeere prouided vs: and that season being with vs the depth of Winter, it may seeme straunge that those fruites were then there growing: but the reason thereof is this, because they being betwene the Tropike and the Equinoctiall, the Sunne passeth twice in the yeere through their Zenith ouer their heads, by meanes whereof they haue two Summers, and being so nere the heate of the line, they neuer lose the heate of the Sunne so much, but the fruites haue their increase and continuance in the midst of Winter. The Island is wonderfully storied with goates and wilde hennes, and it hath salt also without labour, save onely that the people gather it into heapes, which continually in great quantitie is increased vpon the sands by the flowing of the sea, and the receding heate of the sunne heating the same, so that of the increase thereof they keepe a continuall traffique with their neighbours.

*The description of the tree that beareth Cocos.*

Amongst other things we found here a kind of fruit called Cocos, which because it is not commonly known with vs in England, I thought good to make some description of it.

The tree beareth no leaues nor branches, but at the very top the fruit groweth in clusters, hard at the top of the stemme of the tree, as big every leuerall fruit as a mans head: but hauing taken off the vttermost bark, which you shall find to be very full of strings or sinowes, as I may terme them, you shall come to a hard shell which may hold of quantitie in liques apine commonly, of some a quart, and some lesse: within that shell of the thickness of halfe an inch good, you shall haue a kind of hard substance and very white, no lesse good and sweete then almonds: within that againe a certaine cleere liques, which being drunke, you shall not onely find it very delicate and sweete, but most comfortable and cordiall.

*31 goates.*

After we had satisfied our selues with some of these fruites, wee marched further into the Island, and sawe great store of Cabaritas alite, which were so chased by the inhabitants, that we could doe no good towards our pposition, but they had taken out as it were to stop our mouths withall certayne old wyed Cabaritas, which being but ill, and small and few, wee made no account of.

*The Isle of S. Iago.*

Being returned to our ships, our Generall departed hence the 21. of this moneth, and sayled by the Island of S. Iago, but fare through from the danger of the inhabitants, who tooke and discharged at vs three pieces, but they all fell short of vs and did vs no harme. The Island is large and large, and as it seemeth rich and fruitfull, and inhabited by the Portugals, but the mountaines and high places of the Island are sayd to be possessed by the Wooes, who hauing bene slaued to the Portugals, to ease themselves, made escape to the desert places of the Island, where they abide with great strength.

*A prize, and a Portugall prize taken.*

Being before this Island, we espied two ships vnder sayle, to the one of which we gaue chase, and in the end boorded her with a ship boate without resistance, which we found to be a good prize, and pelded into vs good store of wine, which prize our Generall committed to the custodie of Sp. Doughtie, and receiving the pilot, sent the rest away with his pinnace, giuing them a Buize of wine and some victuals, and their wearing clothes, and so they departed.

*The Isle of Fogo.*

The same night we came with the Island called by the Portugals, *Ila del fogo*, that is, the burning Island: in the Mouth whereof is a consuming fire, the matter is sayd to bee of Sulphure, but notwithstanding it is like to bee a commodious Island, because the Portugals haue built, and doe inhabit there.

Upon the Southside thereof lieth a most pleasant and sweete Island, the trees whereof are alwayes greene and faire to looke vpon, in respect whereof they call it *Ila del Braua*, that is, the braue Island. From the banks thereof into the sea doeth run in many places reasonable streames of fresh waters easie to be come by, but there was no convenient roade for our ships: for such was the depth, that no ground could be had for anchoring, and it is reported, that ground was neuer found in that place, so that the tops of Fogo beare not so high in the ayre, but the rootes of Braua are quenched as low in the sea.

Being departed from these Islands, we went towards the line, where wee were becalmed the space of 3. weekes, but yet subject to diuers great stormes, terrible lightenings and much thunder: but with this miserie we had the commoditie of great store of fish, as Dolphin, Bonitas, and flying fishes, whereof some fell into our shippes, where hence they could not rise againe for want of more cure, for when their wings are drye, they cannot flye.

From the first day of our departure from the Islands of Cape Verde, wee sayled 54. dayes with

*S. Fran*

without light  
the list of  
at 12 by the  
we learned  
ceremonie  
gathered to  
the calling  
ments.

The crew  
Carter who  
care in dis  
led the Ca  
cure and su  
were great  
welling fur  
that they w  
some whar  
of the corke  
pposition r

From be  
and ranne  
ships sine  
againe to le  
Doughtie  
many and  
haue laden  
derfull to s  
want of fee

Our G  
people of e  
lique with  
call vpon  
be very act

The ei  
were abien  
we espied  
and to fear  
into vs an  
bare and e  
we flew to

Here on  
pposition  
sh burnt h  
cayne of c  
of haire an  
colours, a  
was an ell  
liuer, and  
men might  
at length  
and bee of  
his gold b  
the one.

Hauin  
vpon our  
Generall  
Good boy  
The n

Drake.

S. Fran. Drake. of the English nation.

without sight of land, and the first land that we fell with was the coast of Brasil, which we sawe the first of Aprill in the height of 33. degrees towards the pole Arctarctike, and being discovered by the inhabitants of the countrey, they made upon the coast great fires for a sacrifice (as we learned) to the devills, about which they use contrivations, making heapes of sands and other ceremonies, that when any ship shall goe about to stay upon their coast, not onely sands may be gathered together in shoales in every place, but also that stormes and tempests may arise, to the casting away of ships and men, whereof (as it is reported) there have bene divers experiments.

33 degrees.

The seventh day in a mightie great storme both of lightning, rayne and thunder, wee lost the Canter which wee called the Christopher: but the eleventh day after, by our Generalls great care in dispersing his ships, we found her againe, and the place where we met our Generall called the Cape of Joie, where every ship took in some water. Here wee found a good temperature and sweete aire, a very faire and pleasant countrey with an exceeding fruitfull soile, where there were great store of large and mightie Deere, but we came not to the sight of any people: but travelling further into the countrey, we perceived the footing of people in the clay ground, shewing that they were men of great stature. Being returned to our shippes we waped anchor, and ranne somewhat further and harboured our selves betweene a rocke and the maine, where by meanes of the rocke that brake the force of the sea, we rid very safe, and upon this rocke wee killed for our provision certaine sea wolues, commonly called with vs Seales.

The Cape of Joy.

From hence we went our course to six and thirtie degrees, and entered the great river of Plate, and ranne into 54. and 53. fadomes and a halfe of fresh water, where we filled our water by the ships side: but our Generall finding here no good harbourough as he thought her should, bare out againe to sea the 27. of Aprill, and in bearing out we lost sight of our Flie boate wherein matter Doughtie was, but wee lay sailing along, found a fayre and reasonable good Baie wherein there were many and the same profitable Islands, one whereof had so many Seales as would at the lead have laden all our ships, and the rest of the Islands are as it were laden with foules which is wonderful to see, and they of divers sortes. It is a place very plentifull of victuals, and hath in it no want of fresh water.

These entrance into the river of Plate.

Abundance of Seales.

Our Generall after certaine dayes of his abode in this place, being on shoze in an Island, the people of the countrey thewed themselves unto him, leaping and dauncing, and entered into treatise with him, but they would not receive any thing at any mans hands, but the same must bee cast upon the ground. They are of cleane, comely, and strong bodies, swift on foot, and seeme to be very active.

The eighteenth day of May our Generall thought it needfull to have a care of such shippes as were absent, and therefore intending to seeke the Flie boate wherein matter Doughtie was, we espied her againe the next day: and whereas certaine of our ships were sent to discover the coast and to search an harbour, the Marygold and the Canter being employed in that buisnes, came unto vs and gave vs understanding of a safe harbour that they had found, where with all our ships bare and entered it, where we watered and made new provision of victuals, as by seales, whereof we flew to the number of 2.01.300. in the space of an hower.

MAP.

Here our Generall in the Admirall did close aboard the Flie boate, and tooke out of her all the provision of victuals and what els was in her, and halling her to the land, set fire to her, and so burnt her to saue the iron worke, which being a doing, there came downe of the countrey certaine of the people naked, sawing onely about their waite the skinn of some beast with the furre of white on, and something also wreathed on their heads: their faces were painted with divers colours, and some of them had on their heads the similitude of hognes, every man his bowe which was an ell in length, and a couple of arrowes. They were very agill people and quicke to deliver, and seemed not to be ignorant in the feates of warres, as by their order of ranging a few men might be appeare. These people would not of a long time receive any thing at our hands, yet at length our Generall being a shoze and they dauncing after their accustomed manner about him, and hee once turning his backe towards them, one leapt suddenly to him, andooke his cap with his gold band off his head, and ran a little distance from him and shewed it with his fellow, the cap in the one, and the band to the other.

The Flie boat cast off and burnt.

The people of the countrey.

Having dispatched all our buisnes in this place, wee departed and set sayle, and immediately upon our leaving forth we lost our Canter which was absent thye or foure dayes, but when our Generall had her againe, he tooke out the necessaries, and so gaue her over nere to the Cape of Good hope.

Cape Good hope.

The next day after being the twentieth of June, we harboured our selves againe in a very good

# The voiaiges and discoueries Sir Fran. Drake.

S. Fran

The hundred lea which begett Eclipse of the Sunned Octen sold.

From the South among the farre from Canoas with vs for the which was as also at the of Capricorn the sunne

The 8 then we found to be Thus b to lie as the to the 1200

hitherto will set downe a We can we call and where we for their ow the being bringing them other gaine to the for Span them, and

Our G coast of Ch thinking t was a gre gaue him which is a

When aros and med vs to as we we stroke on One of th himselfe: desperate morning

They Dur G sing come ner. chall his mmi

wee fi wood, all

Post. 2. Jus. 1111.

good harborough, called by Magellan Port S. Julian, where wee found a gibber standing vpon the maine, which we supposed to be the place where Magellan did execution vpon some of his disobedient and rebellious company.

The two and twentieth day our Generall went a shoze to the maine, and in his company, John Thomas and Robert Winterhie, Oliuer the master gunner, John Brewer, Thomas Hood, and Thomas Drake, and entering on land, they presently met with two or thre of the countrey people, and Robert Winterhie hauing in his hands a bow and arrowes, went about to make a shoze of pleasure, and in his draughte his bow string brake, which the rude Sauages taking as a token of warre, began to bend the force of their bowes against our company, and dioued them to their last very narrowly.

In this port our Generall began to enquire diligently of the actions of M. Thomas Doughtie, and found them not to be such as he looked for, but tending rather to concretion of murdrine, or some other disorder, whereby (withour reuells) the successe of the voyage might greatly haue bene hazarded: whereupon the companie was called together and made acquainted with the particulars of the cause, which were found partly by master Doughties owne confession, and partly by the euidence of the fact to be true: which when our Generall saw, although his priuate affection to M. Doughtie (as hee then in the presence of vs all secretly protested) was great, yet the care hee had of the state of the voyage, of the expectation of her maiestie, and of the honour of his countrey did more touch him, (as in deed it ought) then the priuate respect of one man, so that the cause being thoroowly heard, and all things done in good order as nere as might be to the course of our labours in England, it was concluded that M. Doughtie should receiue punishment according to the qualitie of the offence: and hee seeing to remede but patience for himselfe, desired before his death to receiue the communion, which hee did at the hands of M. Fletcher our Minister, and our Generall himselfe accompanied him in that holy action: which being done, and the place of execution made ready, he hauing embraced our Generall and taken his leaue of all the companie, with prayer for the Queens maiestie and our reialme, in quiet for laied his head to the blocke, where he ended his life. This being done, our Generall made diuers speeches to the whole company perswading vs to vnitie, obedience, loue, and regard of our voyage, and for the better confirmation thereof, willed euery man the next Sunday following to prepare himselfe to receiue the communion as Christian brethren and friends ought to do, which was done in very reuerent sort, and so with good contentment euery man went about his busines.

M. Thomas Doughtie executed.

August.

The freight of Magellan.

The 17. day of August we departed the port of S. Julian, & the 20. day we fell with the freight of freat of Magellan going into the South sea, at the Cape of headland whereof, we found the body of a dead man, whose flesh was cleane consumed.

The 21. day we entered the freights which we found to haue many turnings, and as it were shuttings vp, as if there were no passage at all, by meanes whereof we had the wind often against vs, so that some of the flecte recovering a Cape or point of land, others should be forced to turne backe agayne, and to come to an anker where they could.

In this freight there be many faire harbor, with store of fresh water, but yet they lacke their best commodities for the water is there of such deperth, that no man shall find ground to anker in, excepte it be in some narrow riuier or coryer, or between some rocks, so that if any extreme blast or contrary winds doe come (whereunto the place is much subject) it canerly with it no small danger.

The land on both sides is very huge and mountainous, the lower mountains whereof although they be monstrous and wonderfull to looke vpon for their height, yet there are others which in height exceed them in a strange manner reaching themselves aboue their fellowes so high, that betwene them did appeare three regions of cloudes.

These mountains are covered with snow: at both the Southerly and Easterly partes of the freight there are Islands, among which the sea hath his indynghte into the freights, euen as it hath in the maine entrance of the freat.

This freight is extreme colde, with frost and snow continually, the trees seeme to sleepe with the burden of the weather, and yet are greene continually, and many good and sweete herbes doe very fruitfully grow and increase vnder them.

The breadth of the freight is in some place a league, in some other places 2 leagues, and thre leagues, and in some other 4. leagues, but the narrowest place hath a league ouer.

The 24. of August we arrived at an Island in the freights, where we found great store of foule which could not flye, of the bignesse of geese, whereof we killed in lesse then one day 3000. and victualled our seluers thoroowly therewith.

The abundance of foule in the freight.

September.

The 6. day of September we entered the South sea at the Cape of head shoze.

The



The twentieth day wee were driven by a great storme from entering into the South sea two hundred leagues and odd in longitude, and one degree to the Southward of the straight, in which height and so many leagues to the Westward, the fifteenth day of September fell out the Eclipse of the Moone: at the houre of five of the clocke at night, but neither did the Eclipse all consist of the Moone impair our state, nor her clearing againe amend us a whit, but the accustomed Eclipse of the seas continued in his force, wee being darkened more then the Moone seuen fold.

From the Bate (which we called the Bate of severing of friends) wee were driven backe to the Southward of the straight in 55. degrees and a cerce: in which height wee came to an anchor among the Islands, having there fresh and very good water, with herbes of singular vertue. Not farre from hence we entered another Bate, where we found people both men and women in their Canoes naked, and ranging from one Island to another to seeke their meate, who entered traffike with us for such things as they had.

Wee returning hence Northward againe, found the 3. of October three Islands, in one of which was such plenty of birdes as is scant credible in report. Wee had by proofs in this place, as also at the furthestmost Islands, that the sunne being at the least 8. degrees from the Tropike of Capricorne, the night was but two howers long, and scant that, so that we perceived that when the sunne should be in the Tropike, there would be no night at all.

The 8. day of October we lost sight of one of our Consoys wherein M. Winter was, who then we supposed was put by a storme into the straight againe, which at our returne home was found to be true, and he not perished as some of our company feared.

Thus being come into the height of the straight againe, we ran, supposing the coast of Peru to lie as the general Maps have described it, namely Northwest, which we found to lie and trend to the North east and Eastward, whereby it appeareth that this part of Peru hath not bene truly hitherto discovered, or at the least not truly reported for the space of 12. degrees at the least, being set downe either of purpose to deceive, or of ignorant conjecture.

We continuing our course, fell the 29. of November, with an Island called la Moucha, where we cast anchor, and our Generall hoysing out our boate, went with ten of our company to shore, where wee found people, whom the cruell and extreme dealings of the Spaniards have forced for their owne safetie and libertie to flee from the maine, and to forsake themselves in this Island. Wee being on land, the people came downe to us to the water side with fiew of great cuttles, bringing to us potatoes, rootes, and two very fat sheepe, which our Generall received and gave them other things for them, and had promise to have water there: but the next day repassing againe to the boze, and sending two men a land with barrels to fill water, the people taking them for Spaniards (to whom they vsed to be in no favour if they take them) laid violent handes on them, and as we thinke slew them.

Our Generall seeing this, staid here no longer, but wayed anchor, and set sayle towards the coast of Chile, and drawing towards it we met neere to the shore, an Indian in a Canoe, who thinking vs to have bene Spaniards, came to vs and told vs, that at a place called S. Iago, there was a great Spanish ship laden from the kingdome of Peru, for which good newes our Generall gaue him diuers trifles, whereof he was glad, and went along with vs and brought vs to the place which is called the port of Valparizo.

When we came thither, we found in deed the ship riding at anchor, having in her eight Spaniards and three Negroes, who thinking vs to have bene Spaniards and their friends, welcomed us with a humme, and made ready a Buttrick of wine of Chile to drinke to vs: but as soon as we were entered, one of our company called Thomas Moore began to lay about him, and stroke one of the Spaniards, and said unto him, Abaxo Perro, that is in English, we downe dog. One of these Spaniards seeing persons of that qualitie in those seas, all corrected, and blessed himselfe but to be hoze, we showed them under hatches all save one Spaniard, who suddenly and desperately lepe over boord into the sea, and swamme a hoze to the towne of S. Iago, to give them warning of our arrivall.

They of the towne being not above 9. households, presently fled a way and abandoned the towne. Our Generall manned his boate, and the Spanish ships boate, and went to the Towne, and being come to it, we rifled it, and came to a small chappell which we entered, and found therein a silver chalice, two cruets, and one altar cloth, the spoyle whereof our Generall gaue to M. Fletcher his minister.

We found also in this towne a warehouse stoyed with wine of Chile, & many hoodes of Cedar wood, all which wine we brought a way with vs, and certaine of the hoodes to burne for firewood.

# The voiaiges and discoueries *Sir Fran. Drake.*

and so being come aboard, we departed the haven, having first set all the Spaniards on land, saving one John Grego a Greeke boye, whom our General carried with him for his Pilot to bring him into the haven of Lima.

John Grego  
a Pilot taken

When we were at sea, our Generall rifled the ship, and found in her good store of wine of Chile, and 25000. peeces of very pure and fine gold of Baldivia, amounting in value to 37000. duckets of Spanish money and above. So going on our course, we arrived next at a place called Coquimbo, where our Generall sent 14. of his men on land to fetch water: but they were chisped by the Spaniards who came with 300. horsemen and 200. footemen, and slew one of our men with a piece, the rest came aboard in safetie, and the Spaniards departed: wee went on shore againe, and buried our man, and the Spaniards came downe againe with a flag of truce, but we set sayle and would not trust them.

Coquimbo.

Taurapaza.

From hence we went to a certaine port called Taurapaza, where being landed, wee found by the sea side a Spaniard lying a sleepe, and had lying by him 13. barres of silver, which weighed 4000. duckets Spanish, weooke the silver and left the man.

Arica.

Here hence we sailed to a place called Arica, and being entered the port, we found there three small barkes which we rifled, and found in one of them 57. wedges of silver, each of them weighing about 20. pound weight, and euery of these wedges were of the fashion and bignesse of a byckbat. In all these 3. barkes we found not one person for they mistrusting us strangers, were all gone a land to the Towne, which consisteth of about threentie houses, which wee would haue ransacked if our company had bene better and more in number, but our Generall contented with the spoile of the ships, left the Towne and put off againe to sea and set sayle for Lima, and by the way met with a small barke, which he booyed, and found in her good store of linnen cloth, whereof taking some quantitie, he let her goe.

February.  
Lima.

To Lima we came the 13. day of February, and being entered the haven, we found there about threelue sayle of ships lying fast moored at an anchor, hauing all their sayles carried on shore, for the masters and merchants were here most secure, hauing neuer bene assaulted by enemies, and at this time feared the approach of none such as wee were. Our Generall rifled these shippes, and found in one of them a chest full of royals of plate, and good store of silkes & linnen cloth, andooke the chest into his owne ship, and good store of the silkes and linnen. In which ship he had newes of another ship called the Cacafuego which was gone towards Paica, and that the same ship was laden with treasure, whereupon we staid no longer here, but cutting all the cables of the ships in the haven we let them drue whither they would, either to sea or to the shore, and with all speed we followed the Cacafuego toward Paica, thinking there to haue found her, but before wee arrived there she was gone from thence toward Panama, whom our Generall still pursued, and by the way met with a barke laden with ropes and cackle for ships, which he booyed and searched, and found in her 80. li. weight of gold, and a crucifixe of gold with goodly great Emperours therein which he tooke, and some of the voyage also for his owne ship.

The rich ship  
taken the Cacafuego taken.

From hence we departed still following the Cacafuego, and our Generall promised our company that whosoeuer could first descrite her, should haue his chaine of gold for his good newes. It fortuned that John Drake going by into the top, descrite her about three of the clocke, and about five of the clocke we came to her and booyed her, and stoote at her three peeces of ordinaunce, and strake downe her Masten, and being entered, we found in her great riches, as iewels and precious stones, thirtene chests full of royals of plate, foure score pound weight of gold, and five and twentie tunne of silver. The place where we tooke this prize, was called Cape Francisco, about 170. leagues from Panama.

Cape Francisco.

The Pilots name of this ship was Don Francisco, and amongst other place that our Generall found in this ship, he found two very fatte guilt boales of silver, which were the Pilots: to whom our Generall says: Senior Pilot, you haue here two silver cups, but I must needs haue one of them, which the Pilot because he could not otherwise chuse, yelued vnto and gaue the other to the steward of our Generals ship.

When this Pilot departed from vs, his boy said thus vnto our Generall, Captaine, our ship shall bee called no more the Cacafuego, but the Cacaplata, and your shippe shall bee called the Cacafuego, which pretty speech of the Pilots boy ministered matter of laughter to vs, both then and long after.

When our Generall had done what hee would with this Cacafuego, hee cast her off, and wee went on our course still towards the West, and not long after met with a ship laden with linnen cloth and fine China dishes of white earth, and great store of China silkes, of all which things wee tooke as we listed.

China silks.

The

S. Fran

The of  
our Gen  
lot of the

This  
Spaniards  
to wine, an  
with their  
which I  
to witte  
water, they  
found a p

And by  
spring  
eis, which

At this  
he took  
set them  
ved, and b  
shed our

And v  
in her  
ched the  
place, an  
niards an  
sufficien  
counten  
to count

The  
Spaniards  
being let  
of the me  
as he fou  
course to  
Islands  
Bona Sp

Upon  
fesse wh  
counte, u  
longitud  
y still, all

The  
that sur  
the furt  
time to  
ren ouer  
grees to  
with a g

In cl  
waters  
Why  
rail (oo  
ly bedd  
good, an  
were fe

The  
circle, c  
by reat  
The

The owner himselfe of this shippe was in her, who was a Spanish Gentleman, from whom our Generall tooke a Fawcon of golde, with a great emraude in the breast thereof, and the Pilot of the shippe he tooke also with him, and so call the shippe off.

This Pilot brought vs to the haven of Guatulca the towne wherof as he told vs, had but 17 Spaniards in it. As soone as we were entered this haven wee landed, and went presently to the towne, and to the Towne house, where we found a Judge sitting in iudgement, he being assidee with three other officers, upon three Tre grots that had conspired the burning of the Towne: both which Judges, and prisoners we took, and brought them a shipboord, and caused the rible Judge to write his letter to the Towne, to command all the Townsmen to avoid, that we might safely water there. Which being done, and they departed, we ransaked the Towne, and in one house we found a pot of the quantitie of a bushell, full of copals of place, which we brought to our shippe.

And here one Thomas Moone one of our companie, tooke a Spanish Gentleman as he was flying out of the towne, and searching him, he found a chaine of golde about him, and other Jewels, which he tooke, and so let him goe.

At this place our Generall among other Spaniards, set a boare his Portugall Pilot, which he tooke at the Islands of Cape Verde, out of a shippe of St. Marie port of Portugall, and having set them a boare, we departed hence, and sailed to the Island of Canon, where our Generall landed, and brought to shore his amze ship, and discharged her, mended, and graued her, and furnished our shippe with water and wood sufficiently.

And while we were here, we espied a shippe, and set saile after her, and tooke her, and founde in her two Pilots, and a Spanish Gouvernour, going for the Islands of the Philipinas: we searched the shippe, andooke some of her marchandizes, and so let her goe. Our Generall at this place, and time, thinking himselfe both in respect of his private injuries received from the Spaniards, as also of their contemptes and indignities offered to our countrey and Prince in general, sufficiently satisfied, and reuenged; and supposing that her Malicie at his returne would not contented with this service, purposed to continue no longer upon the Spanish coasts, but began to consider and to consult of the best way for his Countrey.

He thought it not good to returne by the Streights, for two speciall causes: the one, least the Spaniards should there waite, and stand for him in great number and strength, whose hands being left but one shippe, could not possibly escape. The other cause was the dangerous situation of the mouth of the Streights in the south side, where continuall stormes raining and blustering, as he found by experience, besides the shoales, and sands upon the coast, he thought it not a good courie to adventure that way: he refused therefore, to goe forward to the Islands of the Moluccaes, and there hence to saile the course of the Portugals by the Cape of Bona Speranza.

Upon this resolution, he began to thinke of his best way to the Moluccaes, and finding himselfe where he now was becalmed, he sawe, that of necessitie he must be forced to take a Spanish countreymen to saile somewhat Northerly to get a winde. He therefore set saile, and sailed in latitude 600. leagues at the least for a good winde, and thus much we sailed from the 16. of the pill, till the 3. of June.

The 5. day of June, being in 42. degrees towards the pole Arctike, we found the aire so colde, that our men being grievously pinched with the same, complained of the extremite thereof, and the further we went, the more the colde increased upon vs. Whereupon we thought it best for that time to seeke the land, and did so, finding it not mountainous, but some plaine land, and rather low over with lowe, so that we dye we backe againe without landing, till we came within 58. degrees towards the line. In which height it pleased God to send vs into a faire and good Bay, with a good winde to enter the same.

In this Baye we anchored, and the people of the Countrey, having their houses close by the waters side, showed themselves unto vs, and shew a present to our Generall.

When they came unto vs, they greatly wondered at the things that we brought, but our Generall (according to his naturall and accustomed humanitie) courteously increased them, and liberally bestowed on them necessarie things to cover their nakednes, whereupon they supposed vs to be gods, and would not be persuaded to the contrary: the presents which they sent our Generall, were feathers, and eals of networke.

Their houses are digged round about with earth, and have from the extremest brimmes of the circle, clifts of wood set upon them, joining close together at the toppe like a spere temple, which by reason of that closenes are very warme.

Their beds is the ground with rushes strewed on it, and lying about the house, have the fire in the

The Portugall Pilot for our use. The Island of Cockles.

It ship with a government for the Islands of Philipinas.

It purposed to returne by the Streights of Malacca.

Time. St. Francis sailed on the backe of the line to 42. deg. and 58. degrees.

It being the nature of the wood and the way of the house.

the modest. The men goe naked, the women rake busshes, and kinde them after the manner of hemp, and thereof make their loose garments, which being knit about their middles, hang downe about their hippes, hauing also about their shoulders a skinne of Deere, with the haire vpon it. These women are very obedient and seruicable to their husbonds.

After they were departed from vs, they came and visited vs the second time, and brought with them feathers and bags of Tabacco for presents: And when they came to the top of the hill (as the booke we had written we had written) they staid themselves: where one appointed for speaker, wearied himselfe with making a long oration, which done, they left their bowes vpon the hill, and came downe with their presents.

In the meane time, the women remaining on the hill, comented themselves lamentably, tearing their flesh from their cheekes, whereby we perceiued that they were about a sacrifice. In the meane time, our Generall, with his companie, went to prayer, and to reading of the Scriptures, at which exercise they were attentive, & seemed greatly to be affected with it: but when they were come vnto vs, they cryed againe vnto vs those things which before we bestowd vpon them.

The newes of our being there, being spread through the Countrey, the people that inhabited round about came downe, and amongst them the King himselfe, a man of a goodly Nature, & comely personage, with many other tall, and warlike men: before whose coming were sent two Ambassadors to our Generall, to signifie that their King was comming, in doing of which message, their speech was continued about halfe an houre. This ended, they by signes requested our Generall to send some thing by their hand to their King, as a token that his comming might be in peace: wherein our Generall hauing satisfied them, they returned with glad tidings to their King, who marched to vs with a princely maiestie, the people crying continually after their manner, and as they drew neere vnto vs, so did they strive to behaue themselves in their actions with comelines.

In the face front was a man of a goodly personage, who bare the scepter, or more before the King, whereupon hanged two crownes, a leese and a bigger, with three chaines of a maruelous length: the crownes were made of knit woole wrought artificially with feathers of diuers colours: the chaines were made of a brittle substance, and seue by the persons among themselves are admitted to wear them: and of that number also the persons are limited, as some ten, some 12, &c. Next vnto him which bare the scepter, was the King himselfe, with his Garde about his person, clad with Coate of Armes, & other things: after them followed the naked children of the people, every one hauing his face painted, some with white, some with blacke, and other colours, & hauing in their handes one thing or another for a present, not so much as their children, but they also brought their presents.

In the meane time, our Generall gathered his men together, and marched with his fenced place, making against their approaching, a very warlike shew: They being trooped together in their order, and a general salutation being made, there was presently a general silence. Then he that bare the scepter before the King, being informed by another, whome they assigned to that office, with a manly and loud voice, proclaimed that which the other spake to him in secret, continuing halfe an houre: which ended, and a general Amen as it were giuen, the King with the whole number of men, and women (the children excepted) came downe without any weapon, who descending to the foot of the hill, set themselves in order.

In comming to ward our bulwarke and tents, the scepter bearer began a song, observing his friends in a dance, and that with a stately countenance, whom the King with his Garde, and every degree of persons following, did in like manner sing and dance, leaving onely the women which danced, & kept silence. The Generall permitted them to dance within our bulwarke, where they continued their song and dance a reasonable time. When they had satisfied themselves, they made signes to our Generall to sit downe, at which the King and others of them made several orations, or rather supplications, that he would take their promise of Kingdome into his hand, and become their King, making signes that they would resigne vnto him their right and title of the whole land, and become his subiectes. In which, as he was persuading vs the better, the King and the rest, with one consent, and with great reverence, together singing a song, did set the crowne vpon his head, fastened his necke with all their chaines, and offered vnto him many other things, honouring him by the name of Hoh, adding thereto as it were, a signe of triumph: which thing our Generall though he not intend to receiue, because he knewe not what honour and profit it might be to our Countrey. Wherefore in the name, and to the vse of her Maiestie he took the scepter, crowne, and signet of the said Countrey into his hand, wishing that the riches & treasure thereof might be so conveniently transported to the hurting of our home, as it should be in his time.

The common voice of people leaving the King, and his Garde with our Generall, fastened themselves together with their sacrifices among our people, taking a diligent viewe of every person

person: and such as offered their sacrifices to their faces with their wishing this, and the whome onely they offered them at our hands, in state of their griefes, sacrifices vnto vs, but could not be long absence, which departure increased vs, that betwixt we nullified.

Our necessarie bulwarke to their was most large, and fat.

We found the tobacco as be the Barre of a Rat being gathered her meate, great acrompy of the

Our Generall called of the white banks some assistance with on

There is no part of silver.

At our departure justices right and title ingrauen her Spanish the prouince and people in a peere of five pence the name of our Generall

It seemeth that the did ever discover the

After we had set forth following, which ward of the line, from 4. in some 6. and in 11 noas were hollow without and bearing of one soxe, preiding for a haure, and on more or less, according

This people haue love vpon their cheekes hands are an yche of an herbe with a kin purpose.

We leaving this uers others, some with

We continued on the Portugals, the

The 14. of Nouer receed our course to King of Ternate, die all haue, and came at sunne in with Ternate comming, and would that might be

*S. Fran. Drake.* of the English nation.

person: and such as pleased their fancie, (which were the pongest) they inclosing them about of  
fred their sacrifices unto them with lamentable weeping, scratching, and tearing the flesh from  
their faces with their nails, whereof issued abundance of blood. But wee bled signes to them of  
dissliking this, and staled their hands from soyce, and directed them bywards to the living God,  
whome onely they ought to worshippe. They shewed unto vs their wounds, and craued helpe of  
them at our hands, whereupon wee gaue them lotions, plaisters, and ointments agreeing to the  
state of their griefes, beseeching God to cure their diseases. Euery thirde day they brought their  
sacrifices unto vs, vncill they vnderstoode our meaning, that we had no pleasure in them: yet they  
could not be long absent from vs, but daily frequented our companie to the houre of our depar-  
ture, which departure seemed so grieuous unto them, that their ioy was turned into sorrow, they  
increated vs, that being absent we would remember them, and by such provided a sacrifice, which  
we mistiked.

Our necessarie buslines being ended, our Generall with his companie traualled vp into the <sup>Great heades</sup>  
Countrey to their villages, where wee found heardes of Deere by 1000. in a companie, being <sup>of Deere.</sup>  
most large, and fat of bodie,

We found the whole Countrey to be a warren of a strange kinde of Connies, their bodie is <sup>Abundance of</sup>  
bignes as be the Barbarie Connies, their heads as the heads of ours, the feete of a Munt, and the <sup>strange conies</sup>  
taile of a Rat being of great length: vnder her chymie on either side a bagge, into the which she  
gathereth her meate, when she hath filled her bellie abroad. The people eate their bodie, and make  
great account of their skinnes, for their Kings coate was made of them.

Our Generall called this Countrey, Noua Albion, and that for two causes: the one in respect <sup>Noua Albion.</sup>  
of the white bankes and cliffes, which lie to wards the sea: and the other, because it might haue  
some affinitye with our Countrey in name, which sometime was so called,

There is no part of earth here to be taken vp, wherein there is not a reasonable quantitie of gold <sup>Gold and sil-  
uer in the  
earth of Noua  
Albion.</sup>  
or siluer.

At our departure hence our General set by a monument of our being there, as also of her <sup>Spa-  
nishes</sup> righte  
and title to the same, namely a plate, nailed vpon a faire great poste, whereupon was  
ingrauen her <sup>Spa-  
nishes</sup> name, the day and yeere of our arriuall there, with the free giuing vp of  
the prouince and people into her <sup>Spa-  
nishes</sup> hands, together with her highnes picture and armes,  
in a peece of fyre pence of currant English money vnder the plate, where vnder was also written  
the name of our Generall.

It seemeth that the Spaniards hitherto had neuer bene in this part of the Countrey, neither  
did euer discover the lande by many degrees, to the South wards of this place.

After we had see fallie from hence, we continued without sight of land till the 13. day of Octo- <sup>October.</sup>  
ber following, which day in the morning we fell with certaine Islands 8. degrees to the North-  <sup>certaine Is-  
lands in 8. de-  
grees.</sup>  
ward of the line, from which Islands came a great number of Canoas, hauing in some of them  
4. in some 6. and in some also 14. men, bringing with them coquos, and other fruites. Their Ca-  
noas were hollowe within, and cut with great arte, and cunning, being very smooth within and  
with out, and bearing a glasse as if it were a houe daintly burnished, hauing a prow, and a sterne  
of one soyce, peelding in ward circle wise, being of a great heigth, and full of certaine white shels  
for a byarterie, and on each side of them lie out two peeces of timber about a yard and a halfe long,  
more or lesse, according to the smalnes, or bignes of the boate.

This people haue the nether part of their eares cut into a round circle, hanging botone very  
lowe vpon their cheekes, whereon they hang things of a reasonable weight. The nalles of their  
hands are an ynche long, their teeth are as blacke as pitch, and they renewe them often, by eating  
of an herbe with a kinde of powder, which they alwaies carrie about them in a case for the same  
purpose.

After leaving this Island the night after we fell with it, the 18. of October, we light vpon di- <sup>Islands.</sup>  
uers others, some whereof made a great shew of Inhabitants.

We continued our course by the Islands of Tagulada, Zelon, and Zewarra, being subiect to  
the Boytingals, the first whereof hath growning in it great stoe of Sinnamon.

The 14. of Nouember we fell with the Islands of Molucca, which day at night (hou. g. di- <sup>Nouember.</sup>  
receded our course to runne with Tydore) in coasting along the Island of Mury, belonging to the  
King of Ternate, his Deputie or Viceking seeing vs at sea, came with his Canoa to vs without  
all force, and came aboard, and after some conference with our Generall, willed him in any wise to  
runne in with Ternate, and not with Tydore, assuring him that the King would be glad of his  
comming, and would be ready to doe what he would require, for which purpose he himselfe <sup>The Isle of  
Ternate.</sup>  
would that night be with the King, and tell him the newes, with whome if he once dealt, he should  
finde

## The voiaiges and discoueries *Sir Fran. Drake.*

Ande that as he was a King, so his word should stand: adding further, that if he went to Tydore before he came to Ternate, the King would haue nothing to doe with vs, because he held the Roytingall as his enemy: whereupon our Generall resolued to runne with Ternate, where the next morning early we came to anker, at which time our Generall sent a messenger to the king, with a velvet cloke for a present, and token of his comming to be in peace, and that he required nothing but traffike, and exchange of merchandize, whereof he had good store in such things as he wanted.

In the meane time, the Uiceking had bene with the King according to his promise, signifying vnto him what good things he might receiue from vs by traffike: whereby the King was moued with great liking towards vs, and sent to our Generall with speciall message, that he should haue what things he needed, and would require, with peace, and friendship, and moreover that he would yeelde him life, and the right of his Island to be at the pleasure and commandement of so famous a Prince as we serued. In taken whereof he sent to our Generall a signet, and within short time after came in his owne person, with boates, and Canoas to our ship, to bring her into a better and safer roade then he was in at that present.

In the meane time, our Generalls messenger being come to the Court, was met by certaine noble personages with great solemnitie, and brought to the King, at whose handes he was most friendly and graciously receiued.

The King purposing to come to our Shippe, sent before 4. great and large Canoas, in euery one whereof were certaine of his greatest states that were about him, attired in white lawne of cloth of Callicut, haating ouer their heads from the one ende of the Canoa to the other, a covering of chinie perfumed mats, borne by with a frame made of reedes so: the same vse, vnder which euery one did sit in his order according to his dignitie, to keepe him from the heate of the Sunne, diuers of whom being of good age, and grauitie, did make an ancient and fatherly shew. There were also diuers yong and comely men attired a white, as were the others: the rest were souldiers, which stood in comely order round abe at on both sides, without whome face the rowers in certayne galleries, which being chye on 7. side all along the Canoas, did lie off from the side thereof, at 4. paces, one being orderly builded lower then another, in euery of which galleries, were the number of 4. scoze rowers.

These Canoas were furnished with warlike munition, euery man fo: the most part hauing his shoode, and target, with his dagger, beside other weapons, as lances, caluers, darts, bowes, and arrowes: also euery Canoa had a small cast bale mounted at the least one full yerde vpon a stocke set vpright.

Thus comming neere our Shippe, in order they rowed about vs, one after another, and passing by, did their homage with great solemnitie, the great personages beginning with great grauitie & fatherly countenances, signifying that the King had sent them to conduct our ship into a better roade.

Soone after, the King himselfe repaired, accompanied with 6. graue and ancient persons, who did their obeisance with maruelous humilitie. The King was a man of tall stature, and seemed to be much delighted with the sound of our musicke, to whom as also to his nobilitie, our Generall gaue presence, where with they were passing well contented.

At length the King craved leave of our Generall to depart, promising the next day to come aboard, and in the meane time to send vs such victuals, as were necessarie for our provision: so that the same night we receiued of them meale, which they call Sago, made of the tops of certaine trees, taasting in the mouth like soyze curds, but meltech like sugar, whereof they yeue certaine cakes, which may be kept the space of ten yeeres, and yet then good to be eaten. Wee had of them store of rice, benne, imperfect and liquid sugar, sugar canes, and a fruit which they call Figo, with store of cloves.

The King hauing promised to come aboard, brake his promise, but sent his brother to make his excuse, and to intreate our Generall to come on shore, offering himselfe payntie aboard for his safe returne. Whereunto our Generall consented not, vpon mislike conceaude of the breach of his promise, the whole companie also verely refusing it. But to satisfie him, our Generall sent certaine of his Gentlemen to the Court, to accompanie the Kings brother, reseruing the Uiceking for their safe returne. They were receiued of another brother of the kings, and other states, and were conducted with great honour to the Castle. The place that they were brought vnto, was a large and faire house, where were at the least 1000. persons assembled.

The King being yet absent, there sat in their places 60. graue personages, all which were said to be of the kings Counsell. There were besides 4. graue persons, apparellled all in red, downe to the ground, and attired on their heads like the Turkes, and these were said to be Romanes, and Ligiers there to keepe continual traffike with the people of Ternate. There were also two Turkes

Ligiers

The king of Ternate of old hath beene and his sonnes borne to the service of the Queen of England.

The great and strange Canoes of the King of Ternate.

The king of Ternate came to visite Sir Fran. Drake.

Shops a kind of meale.

It castle in Ternate.

Romanes and Turkes Ligiers in Ternate.

*S. Fra*

Ligiers to ouer with a called Mon after the m the ground were a pain hooped rim were grea his chaire ring the at sayppes, and moou were licen

This 3. Ilanos be Poones, v

After ch and all ne and how fa longer, Ju Southwa les, 26. val and witho thome in selues an our commu candle.

Crayfishes for 4. bung experience

When haing at need to the continue of againe, an which lie of our ship

raune sud in the after rail as he eie and p fully, boe that in the

Wee lig meale and changing gate vpon which we

The 8. meane th ly in body we had th lectue our their head

on their a of waste, c

to Tydore  
to the Pope  
the next  
king, with a  
red nothing  
he wanted,  
figuring  
ng was mo  
he should  
ower that he  
ement of fo  
and within  
ng her into a

by certaine  
he was most

in euery one  
stone of cloth  
a covering of  
which euery  
unne, diuers  
There were  
e soldiers,  
uers in cer  
de thereof, 2  
ies, were the

et hauing his  
s, bowes, and  
upon a stocke

and passing  
at grauitie  
n better road.  
persons, who  
nd seemed to  
our Generall

ap to come a  
dition: so that  
s of certaine  
ake certaine  
e had of them  
yp call Figo,

ther to make  
adood for his  
head of his  
sent certaine  
Creeking for  
es, and were  
1, was a large

ich were said  
in red, do wne  
omanes, and  
to two Turks  
Ligiers

Ligers in this place, and one Italian. The king at last came in garded with 12. launces covered  
our with a rich canopy, with embossed golde. Our men accompanied with one of their Captaines  
called Moro, sising to meete him, he graciously did welcome, and intertaine them. He was accited  
after the manner of the Countrey, but moze sumptuously then the rest. From his waste dovne to  
the ground, was all cloth of golde, and the same very riche: his legs were bare, but on his feete  
were a paire of shoes, made of Cordouan skaine. In the attire of his head were finely wreathed  
hooped rings of golde, and about his necke he had a chaine of perfect golde, the linkes wherof  
were great, and one folde double. On his fingers hee had sixe very faire iewels, and sitting in  
his chaire of estate, at his right hand stode a page with a fanne in his hand, wreathing and garbe-  
ring the aire to the King. The fanne was in length two foote, and in bredth one foote, set with 8.  
sappires, richly imbrocree, and knit to a staffe 3. foote in length, by the which the Page did hold,  
and moue it. Our Gentlemen hauing deliuered their message, and receiued order accordingly,  
were licensed to depart, being safely conducted backe againe by one of the Kings Councell.

The maiestie  
of the King.

This Island is the chiefest of all the Islands of Molucca, and the King hereof is king of 70.  
Islands besides. The king with his people are Spoopes in religion, obseruing certaine newe  
Spoones, with fasting: during which fasts, they neither eat nor drinke in the day, but in y night.

After that our Gentlemen were returned, and that we had here by the fauour of the king recei-  
ued all needfull thinges that the place could yeelde vs: our Generall considering the great distance,  
and how farre he was yett off from his Countrey, thoughte it not best here to linger the time any  
longer, but waping his ankers, set out of the Island, and sailed to a certaine litle Island to the  
Southwards of Selebes, where we graued our ships, and continued there in that and other busines-  
ses, 26. daies. This Island is thowly growen w<sup>th</sup> wood of a large and high growth, very straight  
and without boughes, saue onely in the head of top, whose leaues are not much differing from our  
broom in England. Amongst these trees night by night, though the whole land, did thew them  
selues an infinite swarme of fierie wormes flying in the aire, whose bodies being no bigger then  
our common English flies, make such a shew, and light, as if euery twig of tree had bene a burning  
candle. In this place breedeth also wonderfull soze of Bats, as bigge as large hermes: of  
Crabshee also here wanted no plentie, and they of exceeding dignes, one whereof was sufficient  
for 4. hungrie stomacks at a dinner, being also very good, and restoring meate, whereof we had  
experience: and they digge them selues holes in the earth like Conies.

This Island  
to the South-  
wards of Sele-  
bes.

Fierie wormes

Bats.  
Crabshee.

When we had ended our busines here, we waited, and set saile to runne for the Moluccas: but  
hauing at that time a bad winde, and being amongst the Islands, with much difficultie we reco-  
uered to the Northward of the Island of Selebes, where by reason of contrarie windees wee able to  
continue our course to runne Westwards, we were enforced to alter the same to the Southward  
again, finding that course also to be very hard and dangerous for vs, by reason of infinite shoales  
which lie off, and among the Islands: whereof we had too much triall to the hazard and danger  
of our shippe and liues. For of all other daies vpon the 9. of Januarie, in the yeere 1579. wee  
raune suddenly vpon a rocke, where we stucke fast from 8. of the clocke at night, till 4. of the clocke  
in the afternoon the next day, being in deede out of all hope to escape the danger: but our Gene-  
rall as he had alwaies hitherto shewed himselfe couragious, and of a good confidence in the mercie  
and protection of God: so now he continued in the same, and left he should seeme to perish wil-  
fully, both he, and we did our best endeavour to saue our selues, which it pleased God so to blese,  
that in the ende we cleared our selues most happily of the danger.

Januarie in  
anno 1579.

Their danger  
vpon a rocke.

We lighted our shippe vpon the rockes, of 3. tunne of cloues, 8. peeces of ordnance, & certaine  
meale and beanes: and then the winde (as it were in a moment by the speciall grace of God,)  
changing from the North wind to the larboard of the shippe, wee boyled our sailes, and the happie  
gale droue our shippe off the rocke into the sea againe, to the no litle comfort of all our hartes, for  
which we gave God such praise and thanks, as so great a benefice required.

Cloues.  
The helpe of a  
cunninge in the  
belluic.

The 8. day of Februarie following, we fell with the fruitful Island of Barateie, hauing in the  
meane time suffered many dangers by windees and shoals. The people of this Island are comeli-  
ly in body and stature, and of a ciuill behauiour, iust in dealing, and courteous to strangers, whereof  
we had the experience sundry waies, they being most glad of our presence, and very readie to re-  
leue our wants in those thinges which their Countrey doth yeelde. The men goe naked, sauing  
their heads and ymitities, euery man hauing some thing or other hanging at their eares. Their  
women are covered from the middle dovne to the soote, wearing a great number of bracelets vpon  
their armes, for some had 8. vpon each arme, being made some of bone, some of hoine, and some  
of wastle, the lightest whereof by our estimation wailed two ounces a pece.

Februarie  
Barateie Is-  
land.

With this people linnen cloth is good merchandize, and of good request, wherof they make  
robs





Instructions giuen by the honourable, the Lordes of the Counsell,  
to Edward Fenton Eiqwire, for the order to be obserued in the voyage recom-  
mended to him for the East Indies and Cathay. April 9. 1582.



**I** First you shall enter as capitaine Generall, into the charge and gouernement of these Voyages, byz, the Beare Gallion, the Edward Bonauenture, the Barke Francis, and the small Frigate of Dinnest.

2 Item you shall appoint for the furnishing of the vessels in the whole, to the number of 200, able persons, accomping in that number the Gentlemen and their men, the Spinisters, Chirurgians, Factors, &c. which said number is no way to be exceeded, whereof as many as may be, to be sea men, and shall distribute them into euery vessel, as by awise here before your going shall be thought meete: Provided that you shall not receiue vnder your charge of gouernement, any disordered or mutinous person, but that you know ledge had, you shall remoue him before your departure hence, or by what way as soone as you can conveniently auoide him, and receiue better in their places.

3 Item, for the moze and better circumspect execution, and determination in any waightie causes incident in this voyage, we will that you shall take vnto you for assistants, capitaine Pawkins, capitaine Warre, Sir Nicholas Parker, Sir Paddor, Sir Walker, Evans, Randolph, Shato, Gathew, Talboys, with whom you shall consult and conferre in all causes, matters, and actions of importance, not provided for in these instructions touching this seruice now in hand. And in all such matters so handled, argued, and debated, we thinke it convenient that alwayes to be executed, which you shall thinke meetest with the assent also of any 4. of them, the matter hauing bene debated, and so assented vnto, in the presence of your said Assistants. And in case that if such conference and debating the opinions of the aforesaide Assistants be founde in effect any way to differ, then it is thought meete, that all such matters so argued vpon, shall rest to be put in execution in such sort, as you shall thinke most meetest, hauing the assent of any 4. of them as aforesaide. And if any of these Assistants shall die, then the number of the one halfe of the Suruiours to supplye with the General Capitaine for content in all things aforesaid.

4 Of all which your assemblies and consultations, for the matters aforesaid, we thinke it very convenient, that a particular and true note should be kept, for which cause we appoint master Paddor minister, and if he should decease, then the General with halfe the Assistants Suruiours, to name one to keepe a booke of all such matters as shall be brought in consultation, and of all such reasons as shall be propounded by any person, either on the one side, or on the other: what was resolved on, and by whose consent, who dissented therefrom, and for what causes. In which booke he shall in the beginning of the note of euery such assembly, set downe particularly the day, and the place, if it may be, the names of the persons then present, and vpon what occasion the said consultation was appointed or holden, and shall haue to euery acte, the hands of the General, and of all, or so many of the said Assistants as will subscribe: which booke the said master Paddor, or the officer vpon his decease appointed in his place shall keepe secreete, and in good order to be exhibited vnto vs, at your returne home.

5 Item, if there happen any person or persons employed in this seruice, of what calling or condition he or they shall be, should conspire, or attempt priuately or publickly, any treason, mutinie, or other disord, either touching the taking a way of your owne life, or any other of authority vnder you, where by her Majestyes seruice in this voyage might thereby be ouerthrowne, or impinged: we will therefore, that vpon just prooffe made of any such treason, mutinie, or any other disord attempted as aforesaid, the same shall be punished by you, or your Lieutenant, according to the qualitie and enormitie of the facte. Provided alwayes, and it shall not be lawfull neither for you, nor for your Lieutenant to exceede the punishment of any person, by losse of life or limme, vntill the partie shall be iudged to haue deserued it by the rest of your Assistants, as is before expressed, or at the least by foure of them. And that which shall concerne life to be by the verdict of twelue men, of the companie employed in this voyage, to be impanelled for that purpose, with the obseruation of the forme of our Countrey lawes in that behalfe, as neere as you may. Provided, if it shall not appeare, that the forbearing of the execution by death, shall minister cause to increase the facte of the offendour, then it were better to conuince the partie of his facte, by the othes of 12. indifferent persons, and to commit him to hard imprisonment, vntill the returne. And as well of the facte committed by any, as also of the prooffe thereof, and of the opinions of you, and your Assistants, and the manner of the punishment, the Register shall make a particular and true note, in the booke of your consultation, as is before appointed,

29. Carline by  
an occasion  
went not in  
the boynage.

6 Item, you shall not remouue captain William Dawkins your lieutenant, master captain Luke Ward your Viceadmirall, or captain of the Edward Bonaventure, nor captain Carline from his charge by land, who he will not to refuse any such seruice as shall be appointed to him by the Generall and the counsell, nor any captain of other vessels from their charges, but upon such cause as shall be proved, and by consent of your Assistants, or of 4. of them at the least.

7 Item, by the succellion of the Generall gouernour of this whole boynage, if it should please God to take him away, it is thought meete, that there should be the names of such Gentlemen secretly set downe to succeed in his place one after the other, which are severally written in parchment, included in bals of Waxe, sealed with her Maiesties signet, put into two coffers locked with three severall locks, whereof one key is to be in the custodie of captain Luke Ward, the other of William Dawkins, the third of master Spador the minister, and the same two coffers to be put into two severall shippes, videlicet, the one coffer in the Gallion, in the custodie of the Generall, the other in the Edward Bonaventure in the custodie of the Viceadmirall, the same two coffers by on any such casualtie of the Generalls death by consent of the Assistants which shall overlive, to be opened, and the partie therein named to succeed in the place, who shall thereupon take upon him the charge in the said boynage according to these instructions, in such sort as if they had bene specially directed unto him, and the rest of the companie so to take and repute him in every respect, as they will answer to the contrarie. But if it shall so fall out, (as we hope it will) that there shall be no such need, but that the Generall doe continue still, then shall you at your returne deliuer backe the sayd coffers and bals of waxe sealed in such sort as they be, without opening them, vntill it be in the case aforesayd.

8 You shall make a iust and true inuentorie in every ship and vessel appointed for this boynage of all the tackle, munition, and furniture belonging to them at their setting forth hence, and of all the positions whatacouer, and ofte copie thereof vnder your hand, & vnder the hands of your Viceadmirall and lieutenant, to be deliuered to the Erie of Leicester, and the other to the Gouernour of the companie for them before your departure hence, and the like to be done at your returne home of all things then remaining in the said shippes and vessels, with a true certificate how and by what means any parcel of the same shall haue bene spent or lost.

9 Item, you shall vse all diligence possible to depart from Southhampton with your said ships and vessels, before the last of this present moneth of Aprill, and so goe on your course by Cape de bona Speranca, not passing by the streight of Magellan, either going or returning, except upon great occasion in cident, that shall be thought otherwise good to you, by the aduise and consent of your said Assistants, or 4. of them at the least.

10 Item, you shall not passe to the Northward the fortye degree of latitude at the most, but shall take your right course to the Isles of Moluccaes, for the better discouerie of the Northwest passage, if without hinderance of your trade, and within the same degree you can get any knowledge touching that passage, whereof you shall do well to be inquisitive as occasion in this sort may serue.

11 Item, you shall haue speciall regard after your departure from the coast of England, so to order your course as that your shippes and vessels loose not one another, but keepe company together both out ward and home ward. And least they happen to leuer the one from the other by tempest or other wise, it shall not be amisse that you appoint to the captains and masters, certain places where in you will stay certaine daies. And every ship passing aforesaid, and not knowing what is become of the other ships to leaue upon every Promontorie or Cape, a token to stand in sight with a writing lapped in lead to declare the day of their passage. And if any wilfulness or negligence in this behalfe shall appere in any person or persons that shall haue charge of any of the ships or vessels aforesayd, or if they or any of them shall doe other wise then to them appertaineth, you shall punish such offenders sharply to the example of others.

12 Item, we do straightly exort you, and consequently all the rest employed in this boynage in any wise, and as you and they will answer the contrary at your coming home by the lawes of this realme, that neither going, carping abroad, nor returning, you doe spoile or take any thing of any of the Queenes Maiesties friends or allies, or any christians, without paying iustly for the same, nor that you vse any manner of violence or force against any such, except in your owne defence, if you shall be set upon, or otherwise be forced for your owne safegard to do it.

13 Item, we will that you deale altogether in this boynage like good and honest merchants, trafficking & exchanging wares for wares, with all rutenesse to the nations you shall deale with, as well Christians as others, & for that cause you shall instruct all those that go with you, that whensoever you or any of you shall happen to come in any place to conference with the people of those parts, & in all your

doings

doings and chere  
sure thet friend  
misking, & else

14 Item  
in the most str  
such places bo  
some one of th  
them for pledge  
in deliuering  
rather deliuer  
it. Howdnt  
for good excha

15 Item  
we be he shall  
other matter of  
so sealed of fur  
soone as he can  
Lieutenant, a  
pense he is to  
punishmet, as  
punished here a

16 Item  
armour, or any  
lique, that is  
puiate accom  
places where t  
England, and  
whom it doeth

17 Item  
the same ship a  
as of those you  
shalbe made, y  
you see that th  
and the other

18 Item  
tions of the sa  
scriptions, w  
this our coast  
the like to be

19 Item  
uerment ma  
ly be. And wh  
and straight  
sooth of the  
brought in an  
ther order an  
gainst such a

20 Item  
vnderstand,  
these, as othe  
conuenient o  
if they shall  
do to them, so  
mitted, not to  
like to haue

21 Item  
haue an ship  
companie re

the master captain  
the capitaine Carlisle  
appointed to him by  
orders, but upon such

if it should please  
each Gentleman so  
written in parcho-  
ffers locked with  
Aard, the other of  
offers to be put  
le of the Generall,  
the two coffers by  
shall ouerline, to  
non take upon him  
ey had bene speci-  
euerly respect, as  
that there shall be  
ne deliuer backe  
em, unless it be

to for this voyage  
hence, and of all  
of your Vice-  
the Governour of  
returne home of  
how and by what

th your said ships  
urke by Cape de  
ing, excepte upon  
le and content of

at the most, but  
of the Northwell  
an get any know-  
in this sort may

England, so to or-  
mpany together  
er by tempest or  
in places where-  
what is become  
sight with a wy-  
elligence in this  
e ships or vessels  
you shall punish

in this voyage in  
by the lawes of  
the any thing sed  
justly for the same,  
the defence, if you

merchants, traffi-  
ch, as well they  
benefit you or  
arts, in all pene  
doing a

doings and theirs, you and they so behaue your selues towards the said people, as may rather pro-  
cure their friendship & good liking toward you by courtesiousness, then to moue them to offence, or  
mishaking, & especially you shall haue great care of the performance of your word, & promise to them.

14 Item the will, that by the aduise of your Assistants, in places where you and they shall  
thinke most fitte, you settle if you can, a beginning of a further trade to be had hereafter: and from  
such places doe bring ouer with you some fewe men, and women, if you may, and doe also leaue  
some one or two, or moze, as to you, and your Assistants shall seeme convenient of our nation with  
them for pledges, and to learne the tongue, and secrets of the Countreies, hauing diligent care, that  
in deliuering, and taking of hostages, you deliuer not personages of more value then you receiue, but  
rather deliuer meane persons vnder colour of men of value, as the Indians doe for the most part  
it. Provided that you stay not longer to make continuance of further trade, then shall be expedient  
for good exchange of the wares presently caried with you.

15 Item you shall haue care, and giue generall warning, that no person of what calling soe-  
uer he be, shall come by, or keepe to himselfe and his priuate use, any stone, pearle, golde, siluer, or o-  
ther matter of commoditie to be had or found in places where you shall come, but he the said person  
so leas'd of such stone, pearle, golde, siluer, or other matter of commoditie, shall with all speede, or so  
soone as he can detect the same, and make deliuerie thereof to your selfe, or your Viceadmirall, or  
Lieutenant, and the Factors appointed for this voyage, vpon paine of forfeiture of all the recom-  
pense he is to haue for his seruice in this voyage by share, or other wise: and further to receiue such  
punishment, as to you, & your Assistants, or the moze part of them shall seeme good, & other wise to be  
punished here at his returne, if according to the qualite of his offence, it shall be thought needfull.

16 Item, if the Captaines, Marchants, or any other, shall haue any apparell, ierwels, chaunces,  
armour, or any other thing whatsoever, which may be desired in Countreies where they shall traf-  
fique, that it shall not be lawfull for them, or any of them to traffique, or sell any thing thereof for their  
priuate accompt: but the same shall be payed by the most of those that shall be in commission in the  
places where the same may be so required, rated at such value, as it may be reasonably worth in  
England, and then solde to the profite of the whole voyage, and to goe as in aduerture for those to  
whom it doeth appertaine.

17 Item you your selfe shall in the Gallion keepe one booke, and the Factors appointed for  
the same ship another, wherein shall be a iust accompt kept, as well of the marchandize caried hence,  
as of those you shall bring home. And as well at your setting forth, as frō time to time, as exchange  
shall be made, you shall set your hand to their booke, and they theirs to yours, and the like order shall  
you see that the Captaine, and the Factors in the Edward Bonauenture, shall vse in their shippes,  
and the other Captaines and Factors in eache other vessel.

18 Item you shall giue straight order to restrain, that none shall make any Cartes, or Descrip-  
tions of the said voyage, but such as shall be deputed by you the Generall, which said Cartes and de-  
scriptions, we thinke meete that you the Generall shall take into your hands, at your returne to  
this our coast of England, leauing with them no copie, & to present them vnto vs at your returne  
the like to be done if they finde any Cartes, or Papers in those Countreies.

19 Item you shall at your returne so direct your course, that all the shippes vnder your go-  
uernment may come home together, and arrive here in the riuer of Thames, if it may convenient-  
ly be. And wherefoeuer in this Realme you, or any of the shippes shall arrive, you shall giue special  
and straight order, that no person of what condition soeuer he be, shall vnlade, or bring on land, or  
sooth of the vessels in which it came, any part or parcel of marchandize, or matter of commoditie  
brought in any of the said vessels, vntill we being certified of your, or their arrivall, shall giue fur-  
ther order and direction therein, vnder the penalties and forfeitures expressed in the 15. article, a-  
gainst such as shall receive any thing to their priuate use, as in the same article is further expressed.

20 Item to the intent that all such persons, as shall goe with you in this voyage may better  
vnderstand, what they ought to doe, and what to avoide, we thinke it requisite, that aduise out of  
these, as of heretofore with the aduise of your Assistants, and masters of the ships, you shall cause some  
convenient order to be set downe in writing for their better government both at Sea, and land,  
if they shall happen to goe on land any where. And the same to be openly read, and made known  
vnto them: to the intent they may vnderstand how to behaue themselves; and vpon any faule com-  
mitted, not to haue any excuse to ppetend ignorance, and so to avoide such punishment, as it is requi-  
site to haue ministered, for the keeping of them in good order.

21 And to the end God may blesse this voyage with happy and prosperous successe, you shall  
haue an especiall care to see that reverence and respect be had to the ministers appointed to ac-  
companye you in this voyage, as appertaineth to their place and calling, and to see such good orders  
as

Strange peo-  
ple to be brou-  
ght home.

as by them shalbe set downe for reformation of life and maners, onely obeyed and performed, by causing the transgressours and concerners of the same to be severely punished, and the ministers to remove sometime from one bestell to another.

22 Provided alwayes, that the whole direction and government of the people, life and limme excepted, as in the fifth article, and the course of this voyage shalbe wholly at your disposition, excepte in the course by the Streight of Magellan, either outward or homeward, and in your passage by the Northward of 40. degrees in latitude, wherein you shall followe the direction set downe in the 9. and 10. articles, as also in the displacing of the Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, & other captaines, wherein you shal followe the order appointed in the 6. article: Provided that we meane not by this article to derogate any thing to the authoritie of your Assistants established in the third article, or in any other article of these instructions.

23 Item, in all occasions and enterprises that may fall out to be upon the land, wee will that captaine Carille shall have the generall and chiefe charge thereof.

24 And finally wee require you and every of you to have a due regard to the observation and accomplishment of these our instructions, and of all such other things, as may any kind of way tend to the furtherance and benefite of this service committed to your charge.

### The voyage intended towards China, wherein M. Edward

Fenton was appointed Generall, written by master Luke Ward his Vice-admirall, and Captaine of the Edward Bonaventure, begun

Anno Dom. 1582.



The second of Aprill I departed with the Edward Bonaventure from Blacke-well, and the 19. of the same arrived in Spetie rode at Hampton, where I found riding the Gallion Leicester, and so remaining there till the first of May, we set saile thence in the forenoone, being of vs in the whole 4. saile.

1 The Gallion Leicester of 400. tunnes Admirall, whereof was Generall, captaine Edward Fenton and William Hawkins the younger lieutenant Generall in her, and Christopher Hall, master.

2 The Edward Bonaventure of 300. tunnes Viceadmirall, whereof was Captaine Luke Ward, and Thomas Perrie master.

3 The Francis of 40. tunnes, whereof was captaine John Drake, and William Parkham master.

4 The Elizabeth of 50. tunnes, whereof was Captaine Thomas Skerwington and Rafe Crane master.

We spent by meanes partly of businesse, and partly of contrary winds, the moneth of May upon the coast, and then leaving the land we put off to sea, and proceeded on our voyage intended by the grace of God for China: untill the moneth of August following, nothing fell out much worthy the knowledge of the world, which is not common to all Nautigants, but about the beginning of August aforesayd, being somewhat neere the coast of Guinie, upon the shooting off of a peece & the putting out of a flag in the Admirall, I went on boord, & M. Walker, M. Shaw, M. Gerries, our master & pilot with me, where the general counsel was assembled to consider of two points, viz.

The first, whether it were necessarie to water presently or not, which was thought very needfull of all men, and so concluded.

The 2. where the best and aptest place was to water in, which was thought of the greater number to be at Sierralcons, on the coast of Guinie, which was also concluded, and by the Master, and Pilotes agreed to goe thence Southward, which determined, we returned aboard, and left Nicholas Allen, my master Carpenter aboard the Gallion, and his bove to take physike.

The 2. day of August, we went all day, and all night Southward: the forenoone in staying our foremast with a sail of the Sea, having the top saile, and all aboyde, we cracked the same within 3. payes under the toppe, since which time we were in great feare of it.

The 3. day at noone master Hall, and Edward Gillman, with others came aboard, and brought our master Carpenter, and one of their Carpenters with him, to mend our maste which we mended not withall; and after some conference they went aboard againe. We were at this day Southward and East Southward, till 6. a clocke at night, that we sawe the lande of Guinie, which bare North-east of vs about 12. leagues off, which scene, we sounded, and had no ground: then went I, and our Master and Pilote aboard the Admirall, & after many debatements, concluded to runne in North-east by East, and at 11. at night we came aboard againe, and went all night Northward by East.

The 4. at 8. in the forenoone, we were within 2. leagues of the land which bare of vs North-east, which

rose like a high  
that it was the  
of the hope, and  
king it a bairn  
with larbooye

In this time  
and the Elizabeth  
tongue of a ven  
fresh water fish  
other unknown  
South by the  
woke fish with

The 4. all the  
east by South  
of 4. leagues or

The 5. day  
frank gale, the  
der our Lee wa  
to the North wa  
with our skiffe  
wards. At 2. o  
of the hope we  
we could lie

The 6. day

well, and so the  
Northward and  
Shallow water  
so running alo  
should followe  
of vs, and so to  
and good heire  
under in 10. fa  
found a tide to  
South Southward

The 7. of A  
master & pilot  
a shallow whic  
cis afoze, and  
10. a clocke of  
North Northward  
we ankred in  
land without  
and of a small  
thicke and ran  
Northward, wh  
shore which in  
rounds alle at  
night. After  
put to Leeward

Then the  
raped upon the  
The 9. at  
Northward, I  
before and de  
thwart of the  
mirall shot of  
boat and wo  
id halfe a m

When the  
raped upon the  
The 9. at  
Northward, I  
before and de  
thwart of the  
mirall shot of  
boat and wo  
id halfe a m

and performed, by  
and the ministers

ple, life and limme  
e disposition, except  
nd in your passage  
nd in your passage  
nd in your passage  
nd in your passage  
nd in your passage

nd, wee will that

e obstruction and  
y kind of way tend

Edward

s Vice-

are from Blacke.  
on, where I found  
first of Spay, wee  
re 4. saile.

of was Generall,  
Lieutenant Gene-

s Capaine Luke

William Parham

ington and Rafe

ometh of Spay by

stage intended by

out much woody

the beginning of

off of a peece & the

Sp. Gentries, our

two points, viz.

the very needefull

the of the greater

nd by the Paster,

d, and left Richo

me in staying our

the same within

oyd, and brought

which we medel

day South-east

which bare North

went I, and our

ruine in North

east by East.

North-east, which

roft

use like a high hill full of woods, and of each side lowe land, we being perswaded by our Pilots that it was the entrance into Sierraleona, went in North-east until we were within an halfe league of the shore, and had brought the South point South-east by East of vs. At 11. a clocke we finding it a baie, and not Sierraleona, brought our eackes aboard and stood along West by North and West larboord tacked.

In this time our Admiralls pinnace rowed in, and went on land upon the South side of the baie, and the Elizabeths boat with her. They found houses of doughes, and in one of the houses the tongue of a beast, and a bullocks tongue freshly killed. Also a lake with plenty of fresh water, and fresh water fish in it hard by the sea side: they found six pomegranates, and pease like nuts, with other unknown fruites under the trees. The Elizabeth ranne in, and brought the South point South by West of her, and ankred within fawntion shot of the shore in 7. fadome oze, where they woke fish with hookes, while he staid for the boates.

The 4. all the afternoon we ran along the coast (which lieth North west by North, and South-east by South) West, and within a point one way of the other, seeing the land under our Lee, 3. or 4. leagues off, and all night likewise.

The 5. day at 6. in the morning we went West north-west, and North-west by West with a frank gale the North-west land bearing North-west off vs, 12. leagues, & the North-east land under our Lee within 3. leagues. So we ran along till 12. at noone: then the wind shifted upon vs to the North north-west, till 3. afternoon, all which time it ble to litle but rained much. I went off with our kittle, and ankred in 18. fadome with a grapnell, and found the currant to set to the Eastwards. At 3. the wind came againe to South a frank gale, so we went along within 3. leagues of the shore West by South larboord tacked. At 6. at night we shaped our course off as neere as we could to the West next hand, and so went all night.

The 6. day at 6. a clocke in the forenoone, being 5. leagues off the shore, we went in North-west, and so the ships stood along. At 7. a clocke I went aboard the Elizabeth, and ran into the shore North-west and by North, till we were within a league and a halfe of the land, and saw a breach of shallow water under our Lee: then we tacked of West being in 7. fadome sand at 9. a clocke: I and so running along, we saw as we thinke two Islands, but durst not put in with them, least the ships should follow vs and be on the Lee shore. About 11. a clocke we brought the West-most land North of vs, and so we edged off after our ships, and at one afternoon I got aboard the Edward againe, and stood before larboord tacked West of West north-west, till 8. a clocke at night, that we came to anker in 10. fadome lacke a fourth part grey sand, and there rid all night. During which time, we found a tide to run very strong, which runneth in the shore North north-east, and the ebbe stretcht out South south-west.

The 7. of August about 7. afternoon, M. Hawkins came aboard vs, with whom my selfe, our master & piloch had some conference what was best for vs to do, and how to seeke a harbour being on a shallow unknovven to vs all. In the eve we thought good at 9. a clocke to weie, & send the Francis afoze, and to get into deeper water if we could, & when it were cleare to seeke the harbour. At 10. a clocke the ebbe was come, & although it were thicke and rainie weather, we weied, and ran North north-west, and North-west till noone, and then seeing the miserable weather of rainie & fog, we ankred in 9. and a half fadome, hauing gone before betwene 12. fadome, to 4. fadome, 3. parts sand without sight of land. At 4. in the afternoon it cleared by, and we had sight of the Elizabeth, and of a small Island very high, like the pike of Tenerif, 6. leagues off vs, North-east, then tacking thicke and rainie againe. The 8. after 9. a clocke afoze noone, wee weied, and went hence North north-west, until 12. at noone, and from noone till 6. at night we went North next hand to seeke the shore which we had sight of at 5. in the afternoon, and bare north-east of vs being high land. The round Isle and two small Islands which we saw by it, bare East, and to the Southwards at 5. at night. After 6. at night the Elizabeth came by and told vs, she lost an anker and a cable, and was put to Lee wards into 17. fadome water by trussing to an old cable.

Then the Gallion came roomer, and we all ankred at 7. a clocke in 14. fadome sand: Our ship rased upon the shore West south-west.

The 9. at 3. in the morning our Admirall shot off a peece, and at 4. wee weied and went hence North-east. At 5. in the morning we saw the land along, and the Island which wee saw the night before and others other Islands about it, and so ran in North-east until we had brought our steeles thwart of the river, and then ran in East about 6. at night, being a league within the river. Our Admirall shot off a peece, and there we ankred in eight fadome sand. Being at anker, I minded our boat and would have gone aboard the Admirall, but could not the flood was bent so strong, and she rid halfe a mile beneath vs in the tide, but we had no tide.

The

The 10. in the morning at 5. a clocke I sent our skiffe with our pilot in her to find the roade, and waiting place: in the meane time at 6. a clocke, we set saile with our ship, and being calme we rowed with our boar untill 10. and then ankred a mile shoare of the waiting place. After dinner I went a land with my skiffe to finde timber to fill our make, and searching along the shoare we found a good waiting place: and further seeking in the wood, which all the countrey is full of, and of diuers sortes, we found Limmon trees full of fruite: all trees growing by the water side with the halkes hung full of oysters and great periwinkles and crabbes among them: we found dye pomegranates with many other fruits unknowne to vs. In the meane time our Admirall and the Edwards, with the barks, hauing a gale at West, set saile, and ran by and ankred in the roade before the accustomed waiting place.

About 5. afternoone I came aboard, & brought 6. barricoes of water with me: after, I went and supped aboard with the Generall, where we conferred, and about 8. at night I came aboard againe and rid quietly all night.

The 11. day our long boat with the master and pilot, went a land & carried all our water caskes, which they washed and filled to scason, & our Cooper repaired part of the same. In the meane time I with our carpenters & others went in our skiffe, and found a tree to fish our foremast, which we felled, but not able to carie it away because it would not swim, we left it till a better meane were made to bole it. After I with my companie went by into a pretty riuer of fresh water, a mile into the countrey, which was full of oysters growing vpon trees, and very fresh water, which done, we gathered some Limmons and came aboard. The 12. being Sunday, we had a generall communion in both the ships. After dinner I went aboard to the generall, and spent the afternoone with him in conference, and supped aboard, and diuer strangers with me.

The 13. of August, we were assembled aboard the Admirall, for the descending of controuersies, betwene the Captaine, Master, and companie of the Elizabeth: by prooffe it appeared vnto vs, that the Master Ralfe Crane, had in speech deserved some punishment, so that we by generall consent agreed, that he should be put into the Bilboes, which was done: but within halfe an houre, at mine, and others request, he was vpon his submission released. Which done, we dined al with the Generall, and after dinner, with my boate and skiffe, we went and brought the tree for fishes for our make into a sandie Baye, by our waiting place, to haue it squared, which done with our waluers, at night we returned aboard.

The 14. in the forenoone, we washed our ship, and scraped off the Barnackes, the Generall came aboard, and dined with me, and Captaine Drake, Master Hall, and others. After dinner we went to the old waiting place, from thence I went aboard the Elizabeth, and brought diuers things a way: then we carried part of our water caskes to the other waiting place, & there I met with Mr. Hawkins, Mr. Maddox, Mr. Walker, Mr. Lewes, and diuers others, which all supped a land there with Godden Dykers, & a fresh Pullet, and Rice porrage, and came late aboard of all hands.

The 15. day we romaged, and got vp our strong beere out of the formost roome, and placed it by the maine make.

The 16. day in the forenoone, we stricke downe most of our Ordnance, and bestowed most of our things abast make in hold: and in the afternoone, we tooke in 4. tunnes of water, and certain things, which I fetched out of the Elizabeth of ours.

The 17. we romaged, and tooke in water, and I kept my cabbie, being sicke: the Generall came aboard, and supped with me.

The 18. day weooke in water, & romaged our ship all the forenoone. About noone there came vnto the riuer a canoo with 3. Portugals in it, with whom I had conference aboard the Admirall.

The 19. of August being Sunday, it rained all the night before, and all the day, till 2. a clocke after noone: then I manned our long boat and skiffe, and went a land into the oyster baie, where I met captaine Watkins, captaine Drake, with all our boats, and 130. men which came all to gather oysters, where with we laded our boats, and sent them aboard with the greatest number of our men: and we with the rest went ouer land through the Limmon garden, and gathered many which we carried aboard with vs, and so parted to our charges. The 20. day our company stowed our Ordnance, and fetched certaine things from aboard the Elizabeth: the carpenters set by one fish of our foremast, our Cooper repaired some of the caskes which the Spring tide had broken.

The master, pilot and I in our skiffe went along the riuer to the vttermost baie, at the coming in at the West end, where we found a flat baie, yet a crooked channell in it: and we went a league vp a fresh riuer, which at the upper end was so thicke of oyster trees, that we could not get to the head of it, so we returned backe againe to the West point, and there I obserued the same: which done, we felled two Palm-treees and came to the bathing place, where we washed, and refreshed

our selves, and came aboard

The 21. day in the morning the riuer in his pinnesse, with our netwe made me meaning to haue made among vs a Crocodile with figgs, ykes, and opened, and flayed, in the

This day also we went

The 22. day the

Portingals and Nether Portingals and of rice, 500. and odde vnto the Generall, and the rice and saltes hauing neede of it and naught, whereof we had 5. bushels, and of the Gallion 300. and a pinnesse by the riuer to vs: who not finding her with the Admirall, and buying had many good

The 23. day I returned and others went on land for wood, and brought

The 24. day in the forenoone in them. After dinner the commissions for the company boate was brought full

The 25. day of August which was fully accroppe, wood, hoopes, and I rooted my tarre, of the scales in my cabbie

The 26. day being Captaine Drake, Mr. Euans with me: after dinner Oliphant, but saw him and supped together.

This night I was stung of a fruite of the tree, and eate foure, some the reason.

The 27. day in the quest that hee mighte be downe, with whom I went, that the stow was sent themselves in the time I sent 4. of my men

The 28. day in the to the West point to the as all our company

During the time of our former boate, which: and also the rest whereof I went aboard

our selves, and came aboarde, where wee had prayer, and supped, and so went to bedde: but before morning we had much winde and raine.

The 21. day in the morning I went aboard the Admirall to visite him, and found him gone by the river in his pinnell, then I brake my safte with Captaine Hawkins and the rest: which done, wech our netwe made nettes we went a fishing into the Oyster bay, where wee pitched our nettes, meaning to haue made a draught: and as wee waded with our nettes, wee sawe in the water among vs a Crocodile or Alligato, which we assaulted, and within 3. houres / ter many wounds, with sigges, stkes, and shot, we slew him, and brought him aboarde the Admirall, where hee was opened, and slayed, in whose body we found many small stones, and of Palmito nuts.

His stings  
hills.

This day also we went a hunting, and being wearie we brought some oysters aboarde the Admirall, and there M. Walker, M. Lewis and I supped: which done we came aboard.

The 22. day the Portingals which had bene with vs before, came towne and brought some ether Portingals and Negroes with them in a shippe boate, wherein they brought vs 80. metres of rice, 500. and odde waighe of Oliphants teeth, and a boy Negro, which boy they gaue the Generall, and the rice and teeth for the Elizabeth which wee solde them, with all her tackle, and sailes, hauing neede of the rice, because our meale which we brought out of England, was decayed and nauight, whereof we had into the Edward 30. bushels, which is a me to and a halfe: the Francis had 5. bushels and the Gallion had the rest. And wee had 200. waight of Oliphants teeth, and the Gallion 300. and a halfe, and 6. li. During this time wee sent our skiffe with the Admirals pinnell by the river to meete with a Gondall, which the Portingals had sent for fresh victuals for vs: who not finding her, returned at night: All this day I with M. Walker remained aboarde with the Admirall, and after their dinner and supper we ended our businesse, and returned aboard, having had many good speaches with the Portingals.

Their traine  
here with the  
Portingals.

The 23. day I remained romaging aboarde, in which time the Pastor with the Carpenters, and others went on lande and felled moze wood for fishes for our masse, and cut a boates ladng of firewood, and brought it aboard.

The 24. day in the forenoone our Generall and Captaine Parker came aboarde, where wee passed the forenoone in talke, and after Seruice I sent for M. Hall, and M. Maddox to dine with them. After dinner Captaine Parker and I, our boates full of men went on lande, and gathered limmons for the companie, which done, wee returned aboarde our shippes: in the meane time our boate was brought full of wood aboard, and the Carpenter squared timber.

The 25. day of August I was sent for to the Generall about furnishing by of the Elizabeth, which was fully accomplished and deliuered to the Portingals. Out of her our boate brought yea, wood, hoopees, and many other such necessaries. The Portingals dined with mee: after dinner I cooted my tarre, plared him, and filled him with water: and this day Iohn Johnson brought the sticles in my cabbins.

The 26. day being Sunday, Captaine Hawkins, M. Maddox, M. Hall, M. Bannister, Captaine Drake, M. Euans, M. Hood, and others came aboarde and heard the Sermon, and dined with me: after dinner we went on boate to the lower point where wee followed the footing of an Oliphant, but saw him noe, and so spent the time to and fro till supper time, & then came aboarde, and supped together, which done, ech man departed to his abode.

This night I was very sicke, (and so were all they that were on boate with mee,) with eating of a fruite of the Countrey, which wee founde on trees like nuttes: Whereof some fruite in Guldrone, some foure, some five, some sixe, and moze, but wee vomitted and stoured vpon it without reason.

Sickness by  
eating some  
fruite in Guldrone.

The 27. day in the afternoone, the olde Greeke Francisco, came aboarde to mee, with request that hee might haue the Francis boate to goe by for his owne boate: which was not come downe, with whom I talked of this Countrey and Countrey people, untill five of the clocke at night, that the stowd was come, and then I went aboarde to the Admirall, and got his consent, and sent themselves in her: viz. Ferdinando the Portingall Pastor, and his Negro: In the meane time I sent 4. of my men to watch in the Elizabeth all night.

The 28. day in the morning at 4. a clocke, I sent my skiffe with the Admirals pinnell downe to the West point to fish, who came aboarde againe at one in the afternoone, and brought as much fish as all our companies could eat.

During the time that our boates were a fishing, came downe the river a Canot of the Portingals former boate, with beanes, oranges, plantans, which they presented the Generall and mee with: and also the rest of the rice due to vs for the payment of the Elizabeth. For the partition thereof I went aboard the Admirall, where I dined. After dinner, M. Euans beganne to barter

The Portingals  
presents.

M. Euans one  
of our  
away  
chants.

away certaine of the ships commodities with the Negroes, without acquainting the Generall of any other until he had done, wherof grew moze words then yosse, as by the booke of Parthandis appeareth. Which done I came aboard, and had 2. of the Portingals to supper with me. About 2. a clocke in the morning we had a Ternado, and much raine.

They search  
the Countrey.

The 29. about 4. in the morning, I in my skiffe, and Captaine Parker in his pinnell, went downe to the West point, and there wee laded with 11. men in all well furnished, and searched the woods, plaines and places, after an Olyphant, finding the haunt, footing and soyle of many newly done, yet we sawe none of them. We sawe hogs, goats, of fatons, and divers foxes of foules very wilde: and hauing traualled about two leagues, about noone wee returned to the point, where we landed, and met our boates which had bene at sea, and taken plentie of good fish: there wee refreshed our selues with such victuals as wee had, and came aboarde our frerall shippes, where I found the Portingals and Negroes, who had dined, and after supped aboarde with me.

After supper I batted with them certaine linnen cloth, and gaue them 2. redde cappes for 3. Olyphants teeth, as by the notes thereof appeareth.

The 3. day in the morning at three a clocke I sent my pinnell to sea a fishing, and after our long boate to bee mended and trimmed, which both returned about thye in the afternoone: the Generall, Captaine Parker, and Captaine Drake, came aboarde mee at Seruice time, and after examined certaine of the Portingals and Negroes for things by them bought of our companions, and especially for a staine cloake, which would not be heard of: which doue we supped aboarde together, and after they returned to their charges.

The last of August I went on lande, and obserued the sunne, and made prooue of other Instruments, and had the Pastor, and others with mee: after we dyewe fish with our nette. In this time Pastor Shawe, and M. Euans sawe a bullocke and shote at him: wee rained a great deale of grounde, but coule see none, and so returned aboarde, where supped with mee thye of the Portingals. At two of the clocke in the morning, our skiffe went to sea a fishing, and had foule weather.

September.

The first of September about five of the clocke in the morning wee set saile, and got downe with little winde at North-east, to the Westward two miles: then being calme at 9. a clocke wee ancred.

After Seruice, and dinner, in our long boate, the Pastor, M. Walker, M. Geffreys and others, went on lande into a bay with our nette, where wee dyewe about 70. fishes, and cut a palmetre. The Generall being aboarde a fishing with his pinnell came into me, to whom I gaue part of our fish, and returned aboarde where wee found plentie of fish taken in our skiffe, for which wee thanked God, and supped. About 7. at night wee had a sudden flawe of winde, raine, and lightning, till 9. a clocke: after a faire night.

The 2. we set saile at 6. in the morning, and went out West, betwene 7. and 10. fathome, with a yerie gale at East till 8. then it wared calme, wee being shotte out of the harbour a league and a halfe. It continued calme this day till one in the afternoone, and then it blew by at West South-west, a good gale, so we stood of North North-west, and North-west, till 5. in the afternoone, then we ancred in 12. fathome, being 6. leagues off the point West by North.

This afternoone Captaine Hawkins came aboarde to me and brought the sample of clothes, which he desired to haue put into the aduerture, and to haue our Parchants praise them, which to do the better I sent them aboarde the Admirall, to conferre with the Generall and the rest. Where they supped, and returned without taking them into the venture, for that they could not agree to Captaine Hawkins liking.

The 3. day about 8. a clocke in the forenoone the Generall came aboarde to mee, complaining that his maine crosse trees were broken, and therefore determined to goe into Sierra leona againe when the winde blew at 12. at noone we set saile, and went in East South-east, and South-east, being carried to the Northward with the flow. And at 7. at night wee ancred in 8. fathome 3. leagues of the entrance, West North-west.

All this day the Generall remained aboarde with me, dinner supper, and Seruice, till we ancred, which time we discoursed, &c.

The 4. day about 11. at noone we set saile, and stood in Southeast with the ebb untill we were within a mile of the entrance, and then finding it calme wee ancred in 14. fathome 2. mile of the West point: in coming to ancre, our quarter Pastres, let slip an ancre, and newe cable, ende for ende through negligence: Captaine Drake being a boare with his boat a fishing, put off thinking to recouer his backe but could not, and with much paine got aboarde me where he supped, and his companie, and stayed all night.

They returne  
to Sierra leona  
againe.

The

The 5. of  
and cable, but  
the river, and  
Admirall the  
where we ridd

About 6. car  
cans, and sup

The 6. betw  
by our ancre a  
ing aboard at v  
boord the Gen  
others, with ou  
ped with him.

The 7. day  
nere, and wen  
some great mu  
I stayed late o  
and remained a

The 8. day  
open to bake b  
went to the oth  
met there with

The 9. day t  
to that compan  
there dined: af  
and make place  
tooke fish in ou  
per. Certaine  
Smiths and C

The 10. day  
noone to kill a  
net, and at noon  
dox, Captaine  
supper I sent d

The 11. day  
and dragged fo  
at 5. came M. V  
where we sup  
clocke at night

The 12. day  
with who the th  
after that rate t  
mong the Port  
After I had be  
the Generall, M  
place. Immed  
at night we be

The 13. in th  
after I sent by  
for one of the  
board. The M  
same, brought i

The 14. day  
the tree, selled  
and ended the

The 15. aft  
a great deale of  
day, I founde



ing the Generall of  
pouches of Parthian  
per with me. About

his pinnele, went  
fish, and searched  
and soyle of many  
hers soles of soules  
turned to the point  
of good fish: there  
of our severall shippes,  
abooyd with me.  
redde cappes for 3.

thing, and after our  
the afternoone: the  
twice time, and after  
of our companie,  
I supped abooyd to

ofe of other Instru-  
our nette. In this  
see ranging a great  
ped with mee thre  
a fishing, and had

ille, and got downe  
te at 9, a clocke wee

effreys and others,  
and cut a palmetre.  
I gaue part of our  
which were thanked  
lightning, till 9 a

10, fathome, with  
about a league and  
by at West South-  
afternoone, then we

samples of clothes,  
asse them, which to  
id the rest. Where  
y could not agree to

ence, complaining  
Sierra Leona againe  
and Southeast, and  
light wee anchored in

ruice, till we anchored,

ebb untill we were  
thome 2. mile of the  
elwe cable, ende for  
put off thinking  
be supped, and his

The

The 9. of September in the forenoone about 8, a clocke we anchored, & dragged for our ancre, and cable, but found it not: it like wist at 3. in the afternoone till 4. then were let fall, and went into the river, and ranne in Southeast from 4. fathome and a halfe, to 14. fathome, and moored by our Admirall shoure of the Oyiter bay in 8. fathome at 5. a clocke at night, hauing left a barrell boy where we roode, for a marke to finde our ancre.

The oyter bay.

About 6. came the olde Portingall, and 3. more with him, and brought me Dyeuges, and Plantans, and supped with me. After supper they went abooyd the barke.

The 6. before day, both our boates went downe with the Admiralls boates to fish, and dragge for our ancre and cable, and found it not: after our skiffe went a fishing, andooke plencie. I being abooyd at dinner, the Portingals came and dined with me. After dinner, in the boate I went abooyd the Generall, and there left my Carpenter, my selfe, with M. Walker, M. Maddox, and others, with our net byew good plencie of fish, whereof I carried part abooyd the General and supped with him. After supper M. Walker and I came abooyd.

The 7. day in the morning I embred many opinarie businesse: after dinner I called the General, and went downe with the net into the accustomed bay, & there byew 120. fish, whereof were some great mullets. The Generall went abooyd to suppe with Captaine Drake in the Francis: I layed late on shoare, and supped abooyd with our companie, all sauing M. Walker, who supped and remained all night with the General abooyd Captaine Drake in the Francis.

Smiths forge and an oven set by me Sierra Leona.

The 8. day our companie of all handes went on shoare, and set by a Smiths forge, and an oven to bake bread: I went in to the Cockle bay with our net, and finding no plencie of fish there, went to the other bay, and brought abooyd plencie of fish, and Captaine Drake with mee whome I met there without a boate, and 4. men with him.

The 9. day being Sunday, M. Walker went abooyd the Francis to minister the Communion to that companie, and there he dined: I went abooyd the Admirall, and there heard Seruice, and there dined: after dinner most part of our people went on land, with the Generall to play chess, and make place for the Carpenters and Smithes on shoare: and I in my skiffe went downe andooke fish in our nette for supper, and returned before night, and sent the Generall part for his supper. Certaine of our men lay on lande to keepe watche with Captaine Parker, to garde the Smiths and Carpenters.

Watch on land.

The 10. day at 4. a clocke in the morning I went downe in our skiffe, and loode till 11. at noone to kill a Pellicane, but could not: in the meane time our long boate went along with the net, and at noone with both the boates we returned abooyd well fishen, where I founde M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and M. Hall, who ate there, and at night went abooyd their shippe: after supper I sent 6. men to watch on shoare with Captaine Parker.

The 11. day at 6. a clocke in the morning I went downe with my boate, & the Admiralls boate, and dragged for our ancre, but found no hope thereof, and returned abooyd at 3. in the afternoone: at 5. came M. Walker in our skiffe, and brought the Generall, and M. Maddox abooyd with him, where he supped and were merry together: after supper eche returned to his place: about 11. a clocke at night, we had a great storme of winde, and raine at East Southeast.

The 12. day about 8. in the forenoone came downe the three boate with three other Portingals with whosome the Generall bargained, to let them haue 3. barrells of salt, for 5. barrells of rice, and after that rate to exchange for 40. barrells, which hee acquainted mee with: after wards I dined among the Portingals with him, after dinner I went on shoare to the oven, and to the Carpenters, after I had bene on shoare and seene the worke there, I returned abooyd, & there supped with me the Generall, M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and 7. Portingals, after supper eche returned to his place. Immediately after it rained and blew much at Northnortheast. About one a clocke after midnight we had a tornado, which continued 3. hours at East next hand.

Crasque with 3. other Portingals. his. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100.

The 13. in the afternoone, the Portingals came againe abooyd me, and brake their salt with mee, after I sent by them by the river in my skiffe 12. barrells of salt, and gaue them a boete of wine for one of the sauage Querries. The Carpenters felled a tree, and squared it for planke and boord. The M. had our foresaile on land, and began to binde it, but not hauing time to mend the same, brought it abooyd, where we supped with fish, which came from the nette.

The 14. day after drincking our boate went on land with our foresaile, and men to pit and sawe the tree, felled & he wed the day before they came abooyd to dinner, & after dinner they went againe and ended the saile, and cut a boace full of wood and at night returned abooyd.

The 15. after dinner the M. Walker, M. Walker, and I, accompanied with 12. other traueiled over a great deale of ground to finde some cattle, but founde none: & comming home thow the Oyiter bay, I founde of my companie and of the Admiralls together seeking oysters: and going from

They came by to watch the Country.

in two or three  
hairs.

them, Thomas Russell one of my companie sawe a strange fish named Vtelis, which had tounge with a Crocodile, and being hurt came neere the boare where he was in, and by the talle drew him a lande, and there slew him, and sent the Generall the hinder halfe of him: the head part I kept, in whose nose is like a sword a bone of two foote long, with 23. pyckes of a fine, sharpe and strange: The body we did eat, and was like a Shark.

The 16. day being Sunday we all kept abooye till after Aduerice, and dinner, then M. Walker and I went abooye the Admirall, where I had diuers debatchments with the Generall about our affaires, and there supped, about 8. a clocke we returned abooye.

The 17. day in the morning I sent Nicholas Allen, and two more of my Carpenters to helpe the Admirall about their maine make: I sent our Cooper, and men to helpe him to cut hoops in the wood. After dinner with my long boate, and the Master with me, we went abooye the Admirall, and there took in the nette, and Captaine Parker and the Master Hall, and went out to the sande to the Northwards in the river a mile about the roade. And sounding when we went of the Southside, had 14. fathome, and sholde by litle and litle, so halfe a fathome and a foote water, on the sand, which is bare two mile long at quarter ebb, hard sand: we dye we there with our net, butooke litle fish, and so turned abooye.

The 18. day we beganne a newe fishing nette for our selues, and remained busie about it all day abooye: our Cooper cut bootes, and the Baker baked bread on lande: M. Walker supped abooye the Admirall.

Wednesday day.

The 19. day before 3. in the morning, I went downe in the Admiralls pinnet, which went with the net to fish. They landed me besides Pellicane bay, and there I tooke up my standing vncil 3. afternoone: in which time I sawe a crane, a martine, and diuers other foules, but shot at none but one hearne, which I killed: after came abooye the Edward, where the Generall, M. Maddox, M. Cotton, and Captaine Parker supped with me.

The 20. day after dinner, I sent my boate with the Master, and companie with him to dragge for our ancre, & cable, who could neither finde the same nor see our booy, which were left riding by a small cagger, for a marke for the other greater ancre, so I accept all lost. By the way in their going downe the river they put me a lande by the Pellicane bay, and there I stood till their returne about 5. at afternoone, and came backe againe with them, and Hooker killed a monkie with a pfeere. At my returne abooye I found the Portingals caruel come downe the river at ancre by our ships.

in Portingal  
caruel.

The 21. day in the morning the Generall sent for me and M. Walker, who went abooye them, where hee acquainted vs with the faulces founde in his maine masse, perished in the partterns, which to mende I sent him two of my Carpenters, and two ancre stocks to fish the same: Also hee opened before vs two and M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, certaine wordes which happened betweene him and the Master Hall, howe Hall saide vnto him among other speaches, that hee was there appointed Master, as hee was Generall, and that hee would be Master though hee said nay: the which wordes the Master confessed not to speake in effect, but vntil speaches passed betweene them. Whereupon hee demaunded our opinions, whether he might displace him or not, which wee graunted hee might vpon so full a cause, but intreated the Generall rather to accept his submission, which Hall willingly yeelved vnto, which followed presently. At Aduerice the Master openly before the whole companie acknowledged to haue outshotte himselfe in vndecent speaches, and craued pardon of the Generall, who willingly forgoue the offence as though it had not bene committed. After dinner I went on lande, the Master, and M. Walker with me, to ouersee the Baker, the carpenters, the smith, and our ropemakers, all which were at worke on land.

After I had bene on land, comming abooye, and captaine Parker with me, we went abooye the caruel, and there saw 30. or 40. slaues fettered together, the men but the women and children went loose. After the view of them, their behauiour & other trifles there seene, I went abooye. At supper came certaine of the Portingals to me & thanke with me, & after vey long talke, and so departed.

The 22. day in the morning I sent my workmen ahoare, and about 8. a clocke, I and M. Walker, with others went downe in my boat to the Pellicane bay, but got nothing: in the meane time they in the boat went downe to the point, & gathered a good many of great oysters, and so returned abooye about 6. at night well wet with raine, and slouge with Bees.

Bees in  
Gut  
na.

The 23. day being Sunday, while we were at the Sermon came the Portingal Captaine Mathew Fernandes, & brought me a Negro boy of 7. yeres old, which he gaue me, whose name was Iohn Primero. After he had dined with me, came captaine Hawkins, captaine Drake, M. Hoode, M. Faireweather, M. Tailboyes, and M. Bannister, with many others to visite me: after we had  
talked

talked a while together, I  
Portingall Captaine How  
debarments with the Gen

The 24. day we remma  
was filled not 20. dayes b  
eaten with woymes, which  
much. M. Blackoller, &  
but found them not: we too  
of our caske. This afterne  
clocke afternoone, among  
Francis, who died the same

The 26. we filled ware  
and lead, and all things to  
a monkie, and an Olyphan

The 27. day at 3. a clo  
my long boate to the fish  
the wecke of the land, & pla  
the cattle, who came so fast  
for a quarter of an houce,  
wearing our selues not b  
so returned to our fishing

This morning came e  
which came to the Gener  
as the Parchant and M  
him. There hee receiued o  
him a cloake, & certaine c

The 28. day in the mo  
downe a fishing with our  
booy. The 29. day after

ment concerning our goi  
forwards with the prouisi  
kins, Captaine Parker, I  
to proceede, and with this  
I went abooye the Elizab  
they would saile away, a  
fter, the pilot, M. Shaw, at  
the Portingals to looke e

The 30. and last day o  
foymone from fishing w  
with haire and lymptis  
which to see I sent for th  
came and brought with h  
his companie, who haui  
and dyelred, proued an e  
ced all our companys fo

This day during the  
med in Commission into  
our going forwards, all  
gellan: and being in the  
many hotte, and disba  
taine Parker, and also th  
very displeasent, which  
after to dinner, then a sh  
part of this day in much  
great boate laden with o

The 1. day of Octob  
barrels for the 12. barrel  
in the morning I Gener

talked a while together, I went aboard the Admirall and M. Walker, where wee agreed that the Portingall Captaine should goe to the riuier for our shiffe, who was contented to goe after many debaitements with the Generall, and supper with him I came aboard.

The 24. day we rommaged to take vp some of our ordnance, & perusing our water cask, which was filled not 20. dayes before, founde with greene wood cut. in this place found the same to be eaten with wormes, which caused the greater part of the water to leake out, which troubled vs much. *Greene wood* *subiect to* *wormes.* *Robert Rose* went downe in our boate to magge for our ancre & cables but found them not: we tooke vp 7. pieces of ordnance, filled some water, and amended some part of our cask. This afternoon the Generall came aboard to me, & conferred about, &c. About 5. a clocke afternoon, among others I went on lande to the buriall of William Marcham *of the Francis,* who died the same afternoon before. *The death of* *William Marcham* *of the Francis.*

The 26. we filled water, mended our cask and stowed many things in hold, & ended the cooke, and lead, and all things to the net belonging: this afternoon the king Parama, sent our Generall a monkie, and an Olyphanes toothe, by a messenger a Negro of some accompt. *What sent to our men by* *M. Parama.*

The 27. day at 3. a clocke in the morning the Spaller and I, well accompanied went downe in my long boate to the fishing bay, where seeing the footing of many cattle, we drew a rope thwart the necke of the land, & placed men to gard the straight: the rest went into the wood to vnde downe the cattle, who came so fast vpo our men that one of them ouerthrew W. Towlson, that he lay dead for a quarter of an houre, and being recouered in 2. hours hee knewe not what he did. Thus we waied our selues not being able to kill any of them, although we gaue them many stripes, and so returned to our fishing againe, where we tooke more fish then we could eat.

This morning came the same messenger aboard, to present mee with an Olyphanes toothe, which came to the Generall from king Parama, but finding me absent, received such incontinement as the Marchants and M. Walker gaue him, & so went aboard the Admirall, taking the toothe with him. There hee received of the Generall to present the king as much scarlet clothe as would make him a cloake, & certaine canuas: and for y<sup>e</sup> Queene a brought Moscouy smocke, & a looking glasse.

The 28. day in the morning came M. Maddox and other aboard mee: after breakfast we went downe a fishing with our net, & returned aboard to supper, and when we had supped, they went aboard. The 29. day after dinner M. Walker and I went aboard the Admirall, and grew in argument concerning our going toothe to the ples of Cape Verde, or whether it were better to proceed forwards with the pouison we now haue. At this conference was the General, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, M. Maddox, M. Walker and I: after sundry debaitements we concluded to proceed, and with this conclusion we supped there together. After supper by the same consent, I went aboard the Elizabeth and the caruel, and brought their sailes aboard the Admirall, fearing they would saile away, and decriue me of my boate and salt: which done, I imparted to the Spaller, the pilot, M. Shaw, and M. Geffris, what had bene determined, and left 6. of my men aboard the Portingals to looke to them.

The 30. and last day of September, the Francis Cooke came aboard about 7. a clocke in the forenoon from fishing with my net, and brought among other fish, a sea calfe (as wee called it) with haire and lymphits, and barnacles vpon him, being 7. foote long, 4. foote 9. inches about: which to see I sent for the Generall, and such as pleased to come see it out of the Admirall, who came and brought with him M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, and most part of his companie, who hauing viewed the head, which was ougly being a liue, it being flayed, opened, and dyelled, spouered an excellent, faire, and good meate, broped, roasted, sodde and baked, and sufficed all our companie for that day. *A strange fish* *taken.*

This day during the time that our dinner was dressing, the Generall assembled vs before named in Commission into my cabin, where he propounded diuers questions and doubts touching our going forwards, all which being answered, it was agreed to proceed for the straightes of Magellan: and being in the South sea, to deale as occasion should be giuen. In this conference grew many hotte, and disdainfull speeches and comparifons betweene Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, and also the Generall, as offended with Captaine Hawkins, used speeches to him very displeasing, which with much adoe was all in the ende pacified, and so went to Seruice, and after to dinner then a shoare, and aboard againe to Seruice, and supper, so that we passed the latter part of this day in much good fellowship, the more, because my skiffe came downe with another great boate laden with rice for our salt, whereof we tooke in part.

The 1. day of October in the morning we took in to make vp our full complement of rice 20. barrels for the 12. barrels of salt deliuered y<sup>e</sup> Portingal, Lewis Henriques before. About 7. a clocke in the morning y<sup>e</sup> Generall sent for me & M. Walker, touching certaine speeches, that Miles Euans

*Spies Euans*  
departed from  
the company  
promising to  
remaine with  
the Portugals.

one of our *Parchantes* vsed at dinner abooye the Gallion in the absence of the Generall, which was set downe in Articles, and hee charged with them, whereof hee confessed a great part, which seemed so odious, and vnbonest, that *M. Walker, M. Maddox, M. Parker, the Lieutenant,* and *J.* concluded with the Generall that he might displace him, which thing *Euans* earnestly often desired, saying that he would go into England well ynough, as from hence in the Elizabeth with the *Portingals*, with whom in the afternoone he made freight, and carried his chest, a barre, & 2. parks abooyd, which *J.*, *M. Parker,* and *Lieutenant Hawkins* searched by the Generalls order.

Hauing done these things, wee found that the *Portingals* had not brought vs rice for so much sale, as they promised the Generall, who sent *Captaine Parker* and others to searche for the same in the Elizabeth and the caruell, where was found good store which wee tooke part of, and payed them sale according to our bargaine. Further wee found searching for rice a boye Negro bigger then my boy *John Primero*, which *J.* changed him for: and by the Generalls order we tooke foure men Negroes, 2. for the Edward, and 2. for the Admirall, for which wee gaue the owners certaine carsey, and other things, as pease, biker, &c.

The 2. day about five in the morning wee set saile hauing little winde in the Captaine with the *Master*, and other of their companie of the *Portingals* came abooye mee complaying that the carsey by them receiued for the foure Negroes of the Generall was not sufficient for their payment, whereupon *J.* gaue them scarlet caps, and other things to their content, who finding themselves well pleased, departed away in the Gondall, and we hauing little winde, got downe thwart of the fishing bay, and there came to ancre about nine a clocke the same fozenoone.

About one a clocke *J.* sent my skiffe with the nette a fishing, which came abooye, and brought fish for supper plentie.

The 3. day about two a clocke in the morning wee set saile, and went hence Southwezt by West till two in the afternoone then being little winde: at 5. we ancred five leagues East South-east of the Southermost part of the lande in fifteene fathome, and there wee ride till eight a clocke at night, and then set saile with a stiff gale at Northeast, which sometime blew, and sometime was little winde, and so continued all night. This afternoone *Captaine Hawkins*, and *M. Cotton* came to supper with me, and before we could set them abooyd came a ternado, so that they taried all night abooyd with me.

The fourth day about eight a clocke in the fozenoone wee set *Captaine Hawkins*, and *master Cotton* abooyd the Admirall, and went Southwezt by West till two afternoone, then being little winde, we made small way, or none at all till the next day: in the afternoone weooke in our boate and skiffe, and at night shtred our companie because some were dead, and wee had taken in more men out of the Elizabeth.

The 5. day it was calme all day till sixe at night, wee lay to and fro dying, which *J.* can make no allowance of: at sixe at night wee went South by West with a small gale till one at midnight, then we mette the winde at South Southwezt, and went West by North, till thre a clocke following: then came a pretie gale at Northeast, with which we went South Southwezt till sixe in the morning.

The 6. day at 6. in the morning wee had a small gale at West, and went thre booyd tacked South a while there being little winde: we went Southwezt by South till 8. a clocke, from 8. we went South Southwezt, with a small gale all day, and all night.

The 7. day little winde or none but lay still among great shoales of foules, and skulls of fish all day and night by our spyngny Compass: in this place the sunne rose at East, and by South, and to the Southwards, and set West by South to the southwards.

The eight day little winde, or none: all day and night wee laye dying among fish and foule.

The 9. day we had in the fozenoone some raine, and a small gale at Northeast, which continued not long, but was calme till midnight, then we had a Ternado of winde, Northeast and raine: after that a small gale at East and southeast all night.

The tenth day wee went all the fozenoone South Southwezt larre booyd tacked, after the winde shtinking to the Southwezt by South, wee went South, till sixe afternoone: this afternoone the Generall in his long boate, accompanied with *M. Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, M. Cotton, M. Hoode* and others came abooyd to see mee: after dyinking departed a way againe: but when they were in the boate, their shype not comming roome for them, *J.* was faine to shooote off two minions to make them looke out. After sixe a clocke in the afternoone it continued calme till after midnight, then had wee a Ternado, and after a small gale for 3. houres, at East Northwezt, with which we went South Southwezt.

Winde East  
Southwezt.

The 11. day it was calme  
at 6. it blew more, and

The 12. day we had  
suffer vs, sometime West

The 13. day we had  
and sometime South by

The 14. day we had  
ether from the Gallion, and  
which we ate to supper:  
it was in manner calme,  
for fighting at dinner.

The 15. day it was calme  
blew a small gale, at Noone,  
to dinner, where we n  
gaine, and *Captaine Haw*

The 16. day it was calme  
we went West, and some  
calme all the rest of the morn  
and *John Collins*, byoug  
all out of the *Stewards*

The 17. day at ten of  
afternoone, then had we less  
South southeast, and som

The 18. day it was a  
southwezt.

The 19. day we went  
we went but little all nig

The 20. day it was ca  
small gale, at East southe  
calme, we went little all

The 21. it was calme,  
afternoone, then it blew e  
Southwezt among till mi

The 22. it was calme  
had an extreme Ternado  
the raine and a calme cou

The 23. day we had m  
before in a Ternado, fro  
red by, we sawe each other  
All this night we bare a g  
the South by West, at  
wards, so farre as wee  
roome.

The 24. day in the for  
ten of the clocke, After di  
next hand, all day and nig

The 25. day we went

The 26. day and night  
West southwezt, but mig  
rall.

The 27. day we went  
sometime southwezt all d

The 28. day after dy  
was faine to singe thre  
them: they tolde vs that  
we thought not best, for  
heres close, so that wher  
next hand South southwe

The

The 11. day it was calme till 2. of the clocke afternoone, then it began to blowe a small gale. At 6. it blew more, and so it continued all night large.

The 12. day we had raine at noone: all the rest of the day, and night, we went as the wind did suffer vs, sometime West, sometime South-west, and sometime South.

The 13. day we had litle wind all day, and all night, but went our course South South-west, and sometime South by West.

The 14. day we had litle wind, or none. In the afternoone came Captaine Hawkins, and other from the Gallion, and Captaine Drake, who brought me a peece of a Porpoise with him, which we ate to supper: after supper they departed aboard the Francis: all the night following, it was in manner calme. This day was Iohn Roberts, and Iohn Hillarde whipped at the mast, for fighting at dinner.

The 15. day it was calme all day, and night, except two howres. In the morning it rained, & blew a small gale, at Notheast. This forenoone Captaine Drake sent for Master Walker, and me, to dinner, where we met Captaine Hawkins, and others. After dinner we returned aboard againe, and Captaine Hawkins went aboard the Admirall.

The 16. day it was calme till 7. at night, then we had a pretty gale at South-west, with which we went West, and sometime West north-west, till 2. of the clocke in the morning, then was it calme all the rest of the night. This day were Robert Parker, Marke Thoughts, Iohn Roberts, and Iohn Collins, brought to the capstone, and there whipped naked, for stealing certaine victuall out of the Storewards roome, the Sunday night before.

The 17. day at ten of the clocke, we had a pretty gale, at East north-east, which lasted till 4. afternoone, then had we lesse wind at Southeast, which continued all night: so we went sometime South-south-east, and sometime South-west by South, and South-west.

The 18. day it was a small gale all day, and all night, so that wee went our course South south-west.

The 19. day we went our course South south-west, till midnight, then being in manner calme, we went but litle all night.

The 20. day it was calme, till ten of the clocke afternoone, then we went South-west, with a small gale, at East south-east, with which we went South south-west till midnight, there being calme, we went litle all night.

The 21. it was calme, till ten afternoone, then a gale till 12. at noone, then calme againe, till 3. afternoone, then it blew a small gale at Southeast, with which we went South south-west, and South-west among till midnight, but then it was calme all the rest of the night.

The 22. it was calme in manner all day, and night, saving at 2. of the clocke after midnight, we had an extreme Tornado of wind, raine, thunder, and lightning. The wind lasted not an howre, but the raine and a calme continued till day.

The 23. day we had much raine, calme, and chicke weather, so that being separated the night before in a Tornado, from our Admirall we lost the sight of him many times: yet when it cleared up, we sawe each other, but hauing no winde, could not come neere together by two leagues. All this night we bare a good saile, and had a reasonable gale, with which wee went betwene the South by West, and the South-west. In the morning wee sawe the Admirall on Lee-wards, so farre as wee might descrye her sayles, with whome the Francis, and wee went roome.

The 24. day in the forenoone, we went roome to our Admirall, West south-west, and West, till ten of the clocke. After dinner we hailed her, and went from ten in the forenoone, south south-west next hand, all day and night following, with a franke gale.

The 25. day we went South-west next hand, all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The 26. day and night, we went with a pretty gale, betwene the South south-west, and the West south-west, but might haue beene neerer the winde, but for going roome with the Admirall.

The 27. day we went West south-west, and south-west by West among, with a pretty gale, and sometime south-west all day, and night.

The 28. day after dinner, our Admirall laye by the Lee, to stoppe a leake in his howes, and was faine to slinge thre men ouer board to doe it: in the meane tyme we came by, and hayled them: they tolde vs that if the winde scanted one point more, they meant to cast about, which we thought not best, for certaine causes. Whereupon we tooke in our spyt saile, and hayled aft our heere close, so that whereras all day before we went South-west, and litle better, now we went next hand South south-west, but alwaies better then South-west by South all night following.

This

This evening I set the Sunne at his going downe, hee set more then halfe a point to the South of West by South.

The next morning, I observed the Sunnes rising, which was to the Southwards, a little of East by South.

The 29. day after dinner, the Francis boate with her Master, and Master Dore, came aboard of vs, for a hoghead of yoke by the Generals order, which was delivered them. All this day and night, we went next hand Southwest by South.

The 30. daye wee went next hande Southsouth West all daye, and all night, with a pretie gale.

The 31. day, and last of October, we went all day, and all night, South Southwest, and Southwest by South among, sailing two watches, which were calme in the night, after the raine.

November.

The first day of November, in the forenoone, we tooke in our maine saile, to mend it: in the meane time, the Admirall came by by vs, and desiring me, with my Master, and Master Blackcoller, to come aboard to him, about certaine conference, hee sent his boate for vs, where by him was propounded, whether it were best for vs to stande on with the coast of Brasile, as we did, or els to stande about Starboord tacked to the Eastwards: whereupon divers of their Charts and reckonings were shewed by some it appeared, we were 115. leagues, by some 150. leagues, by some 140. leagues, and some a great deale further South of Brasile, next hand north-east of vs: but all agreed to be within 20. minutes of the line, some in the line, some to the north, some to the south of the line.

After many debatements, it was agreed by most consent to stande on for the coast of Brasile, except the wind changed, and there to doe, as weather should compell vs. In this consultation, we had speeches of courses, and places of meeting, if by misfortune we should be separated, wherein was no full order concluded, but that we should speake every night with the Admirall, if we conveniently might, and so to appoint our course from time to time, if wee lost companie, to scape 15. daies in River de Plate, and from thence to goe for the Straights, and there to ride, and water, and trimme our shippes (in no certaine place named.)

After dinner, we returned aboard our shippe, Captaine Drake, and his Master, to their barke, and went hence as neere as we could lie South Southwest, and Southwest by South all night to following, with a fresh gale.

The second day and night, we went next hand South by West, and sometime South Southwest among, with a franke gale.

The third day, we went South by West next hand, all day and all night.

The fourth day in like manner.

The fifth day wee went South by West all daye, and all night wee went South with a franke gale.

The sixth day we went South next hand all day, and night, and South by West among.

The seventh day we went South, and South by West all day and night, with a franke gale.

The eighth day we went South, and South by West all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The ninth day we went South next hand all day, and night, with a franke gale.

The 10. day we went South next hand, and South by West, all day and night, lesse wind.

The 11. day being Sunday, in the forenoone, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Drake, came aboard, and dined with me. After dinner came the General, Master Maddox, Master Parker, Master Bannister, Master Cotton, and divers others, to visite Master Walker, who sickened the Friday before of a Callentura. After they had drunke, and ate some iunkets, they all departed to their charges. We went all day, and all night, South, and South by West among.

The 12. in the afternoone, Master Maddox, Master Hall, Master Bannister, and other, came aboard to visite Master Walker. After a time of abode with him, they returned to the Gallion all againe, except Master Maddox, who remained with Master Walker here aboard.

This night Master Maddox, and I, behelde many constellations in the firmament, and sette downe certaine newe Starres, raised to the Southwards. All day and night, we went South, and South by East among.

The 13. at 6. in the morning, our mistle tie brake, and the yard fell downe, many men being neere the same, yet God be thanked, it hurt no man, but it brake in peeces, and was splited, and by againe betwixt noone.

This forenoone the General, M. Bannister, Captaine Parker, M. Tailboyes, and others, came aboard, & visited M. Walker, and went aboard the Gallion againe, & M. Maddox with them, leaving M. Bannister with vs, all afternoone that I boate brought M. Maddox againe: then departed Master

M. Walker  
sicke of a  
Callentura.

Observation  
of the South  
Winds.

Master Bannister  
Master Walker  
East, with a flat

The 14. day  
clocke, Master  
forenoone, came  
Master Maddox  
went South by C

The 15. day  
tion to Master  
for Maddox, and  
went South by C

The 16. day  
sides in by way  
a large and frame  
and set the same  
Southwards.

The 17. day  
lesse, whome C  
England, and a  
Captaine Drake  
had done before  
19. degrees to  
hence South four

The 18. day  
many other, came  
again. All this

The 19. day  
degrees, and 33  
when a fresh ga  
morning, are m  
day, and night,  
Bannister by ou  
to speeches bet

The 20. day  
and coole we at

The 21. day  
ny bles: all w  
sights, upon the  
gale, South West

The 22. day  
wind shifted to  
a good gale: th

The 23. in c  
a small gale, all  
West among, ou

The 25. bet  
Maddox, came  
plac, and reche  
we also persued  
founde our selu  
least our water  
ter this detern  
West.

The 26. day  
led vs, and cold

The 27. day

to the South  
wards, a little of

ore, came aboard  
All this day and

gbe, with a petic

well, and South-  
the raine.

to mende it: in the  
and Master Black-  
os, where by him  
rable, as we did, of  
their Charrs and  
e 150 leagues, by  
thead of vs: but all  
ome to the south of

coast of Brasile, ex-  
consultation, we  
eparated, wherein  
mirall, if we com-  
panie, to stave 15.  
to ride, and water,

ter, to their barke,  
thly all night follow-

south south west &

south with a franke

among.  
franke gale.  
nke gale.  
le.

esse wind.  
eaine Drake, came  
Master Parker, Ma-  
o sickened the Fri-  
ill departed to their

r, and other, came  
to the Gallion all  
nd.  
mament, and lette  
ent south, and south

, many men being  
was splited, and by

s, and others came  
lox with them, le-  
ain: when departed  
Master

Master Bannister, Captaine Hawkins, and all, excepte Master Maddox, who still remained with Master Walker, who made his Will, this afternoone. We went all this day and night South by East, with a floure sheete, and a franke gale.

W. Walker  
with made.

The 14. day afternoone, Master Walker was let blood againe: afterward, about 9. of the clocke, Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, went aboard the Gallion againe. Also the same forenoone, came the Master, and others of the Francis, to see master Walker, and in the afternoone Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, came againe to visite him. All this day, and night, we went south by East, with a franke gale.

Wind East  
north east.

The 15. day afternoone, came Master Maddox, and Master Bannister, aboard, and brought a potion to Master Walker. Afternoone the Generall, Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Parker, Master Maddox, and others, came aboard to visite Master Walker, &c. All this day, and night, we went south by East our course, with a floure sheete, all sailes drawing.

The 16. day we went our course south by East, till noone, and then by the Sunne finding our stur in by wards of 17. degrees, we shaped our course south, and so went till next morning, with a large and franke gale. This morning the Sunne rose East by south, and to the southwards, and set the same night betwene the south west by West, and the West south west, rather to the southwards.

The 17. day afternoone, we shot off three peeces of Ordnance, in honour of our Queenes Pa-lesie, whome God preserve, and grant her a long life, and prosperous raigne over the Realme of England, and all other of vs her subiects. This day after dinner came Master Maddox, and Captaine Drake, with others, to take their leave of Master Walker, as I, with all my companie had done before, supposing him past hope of recouerie. At 4. of the clocke, finding our selues in 19. degrees to the southwards of the line, and cleere of the Shoales, called by vs Powles, we went hence south south west all night following.

19. degrees of  
south by west  
tube.

The 18. day, being Sunday, after dinner, the Generall, Master Maddox, Captaine Parker, & many other, came aboard, and visited Master Walker: which done, they ranke, & departed aboard againe. All this day, and night, we went our course south west by south, with a franke gale.

The 19. day, about noone, the Sunne was our Zenith, being declined to the southwards, 21. degrees, and 33. minuts, where we found the aire fresh, and temperate, as in England in June, when a fresh gale of winde doth blowe in the heate of the day, but the evening, the night, and the morning, are moze fresh, and colder here, then it is in England, either in June, or Julie. All this day, and night, we went our course south west by south, with a good gale: the forenoone Master Bannister brought Master Walker a potion, and Captaine Hawkins came with him: there passed speeches betwixt Master Bannister, and me.

Gold evening

The 20. day we went all day, and all night, south west by south our course, with a fresh gale, and coole weather, wind sometime north east, and sometime East north east.

The 21. day afternoone, we brought our best maine top saile to the part, and cut thole for many uses: a litle we began to make a newe maine coyle and bonnet, and fitted our stauions for our sights, vpon the vpper decks, as afe masse. This day and night, we went our course, with a franke gale, south west by south.

The 22. day we went our course, south west by south, till 8. of the clocke at night: then the wind shifted to the south south east, so that we could lie but south west by west, till 2. a night, with a good gale: the rest till day, was in a manner calme.

The 23. in the morning, it was raine, and calme, till 8. of the clocke, then we went West, with a small gale, till noone, and from noone, till the next morning, we went south west by south, & south west among our course.

Wind north  
east.

The 24. day we went our course all day, and night, south west, with a small gale.

The 25. being Sunday, in the morning, the Generall, and Captaine Parker, with Master Maddox, came aboard to visite Master Walker: which done, we perused our Masters and Pilots plots, and reckonings, and after I went aboard, and dined with the Generall, where after dinner, we also perused the Master, and Pilots charts and reckonings, aboard the Gallion, where by we founde our selues farre off the lande, and thought good to ege in with the shoare South west, least our water should faile vs, and then being becalmed farre of, might be for want distressed. After this determination, I returned aboard againe, and went all day, and night, our course South west.

The 26. day we went our course all day, and night, south west: this evening the Admirall hat- ted vs, and told vs he would put into the Riuer De Plate.

The 27. day we went our course all day, and night, south west next hand.

The

The 28. day little wind all the forenoone, at noone the wind shifted to the South, with raine, till 3. of the clocke afternoone: then it blew at East fourbeast, till 4. in the morning: at 4. it changed to the East north-east. All this time we went our course south-west, except sometime we had a lache to the westwards, after the Admirall.

The 29. day at noone, wee altered our course to the West south-west, and so haled in with the land all night, being cleere weather, and a faire night, but a stoue gale all night.

The 30. being S. Andrewes day, and the last of November, at 5. of the clocke in the morning, we had much wind at South, and South by West, and very colde weather, which spooke vs into a coarfe, and bonnet of each. At 4. of the clocke afternoone, the wind changed to the south-west, and ble we very much, and rained, being so colde, that we were glad to put on winter apparell. So we stood close by north-west, and west north-west all night.

The first of December, about the of the clocke in the morning, wee sawe lande on the coast of Brasile, in the height of 28. degrees, or thereabouts, which bare north-west, and was 8. leagues from vs very high land. We stood in with it, being much wind, and comming ueere, found diuers Islands: and seeing the Francis, would not come roome, nor runne a heade vs, we stood in with the shoare, and towined in 30. fathome or 32. three leagues off the lande, bearing from the West north-west to the north north-west of vs, and so stood in till it shoaled ouerly into seuen fathome, within a mile of a head lande: then perceauing a breach ouer our boate, and no hope of a good harbour in that place, we bare vp roome, and our Admirall after vs, whome we haled: then he tolde vs he would seeke harbour to Leeward, requiring me to goe a heade. Then seeing the barke was a sterne, I hoised out my skiffe, and sette her maile and saile, taking her ging, and Tobias, one of my Gallies mates with me, and ranne before the shippe, towinding in 15. fathom faire land, leauing a ledge of rockes a sea boord of vs: so the shippe, and the barke looked vp vnder a head land, and ankered in eight fathome, halfe a mile off the land, hauing brought the head land, which lieth in 27. degrees, 50. minutes, south southeast of them, and the North land northeast of them.

I stood on with the skiffe, hoping to find a better harbour to Leeward three leagues, but it proved not so: wherefoe I returned, and in my way aboard, I met with a rocke in the sea, where we landed, and killed good stoe of fowle, and after I went aboard the Admirall, where I presented him with fowle, and returned aboard to supper.

In this time our boates had bene a land, and found water, ballaste, and two decayed houses, as they told me, and our men aboard hooked fresh silbe. This night we rtd quietly.

The second being Sunday, in the morning, our Generall, Captaine Hawkins, Master Maddox, and others, came aboard to visite Master Walker: during his being here aboard, a sudden quaine came ouer his stomake, which made him scooze vp, and downe wards: then I sent for Master Parker, and with him came Master Bannister: after he began to be a little better, we all, except the Generall, which remained sicke in my cabin, went aboard the Gallion to dinner, which was appointed the night before. This forenoone our Gallies moored our shippes further into the Baye. We brought the South point southeast of vs, and the north land northeast, and so rtd.

After dinner, Captaine Parker, with my boate, and company, went a lande, and there placed pipes, and made three Wells. In the meane time, I accompanied with Master Hawkins, Master Maddox, Master Cotton, and diuers of mine owne people landed farther within the Baye, and found two riuers of fresh water, and a good fishing place. Presently I sent a boord for my net, with which at one draught, we drew 600. great spullets, and five great Balles, the like draught was neuer seene with so small a net: with which we went aboard, giuing to the Admirall 240. to the Francis 80. and the rest our companie spent, and gaue Almighty God thanks for his great goodness.

All this while was captaine Parker, and others, gone into the land, and fired the woods, which burne extremely: at length we all met, and supped aboard the Edward with mee, and after supper departed aboard to their charges. All this night we had faire weather.

The third day in the morning, our Carpenter calked without boord, and the Master, and others, took vp all the merchandize in the sterne heetes to the keele, and there put downe a boate loading of stone: and seeing the merchandize well conditioned, towed the same againe: in the meane time, my selfe, and others in our boates, trapped off the worms, and washed the rudder, and part of one side of our ship.

After dinner, the Master, Pilot, and I, went a shoare, and obserued the Soume at noone, which being past, with our net wee drew plenty of diuers sortes of silbes, and went from that Baye to the watering place: from thence, aboard the Generall, which had taken Phylcke, and gaue them

Great cold in  
the latitude of  
28. degrees.

December.

The latitude  
of 27. degrees,  
50. minutes.

28. daye.

Wells made  
by our men.

We exceeding  
great draught  
of silbe.

The woods  
fire on fire by  
our men.

them and the Francis  
maged a foremast,  
make.

The 4. day in the  
and some to mend our  
water, to stiffe the  
lighted her steeple  
ped and washed all

This afternoone  
I went, andooke  
Dores: after we were  
himselfe sicke, whom  
from boate, and gaue

The 5. day being  
shippe to starboord,  
med our caske, and o  
some water, we stoek  
hindred our business

The 6. daye in the  
southwards the Ad  
appointed me to goe  
into the Francis, an  
leagues to the Le  
we ankered in the sea  
the prize together, be  
so that about the of

After we had taken  
with them, before the  
to aboard the Gener  
the Gouvernour of the

We founde an  
of England foure an  
of Place, at a Cotme  
were no woe determin  
friers, the rest boye

The olde Frier was  
Dolte Father, he was  
Donasterie.

The subsance of  
of Magellan, as they  
nero, where they had  
company. but came  
and foure scoze person  
ber, could not agree, a  
olde Frier bought this  
deuided themselves, a  
before at Riuer de Pla  
men to remaine abo  
spleas a way with m  
day.

The 7. day in the  
dox, certaine articles,  
ded altogether to the  
might be discovered b  
whose comming was  
which was not determ  
Then was determin  
not to set vp forge, no



them and the Francis shipe for their companies, and so went aboard, where our companie had romaged a foyemall, so that this afternoone we tooke in two boates moxe lading of stones afoze make.

The 4. day in the morning, I sent 30. men a land, some to cut hoopes, some to cut fire wood, and some to mend our maine saile: the rest aboard emptied our caske, whicht was filled with salt water, to stiffen the shippe, and with Dynance, and all our meanes trimmed her over to port, and lightned her Demme, that the Carpenter mighte the better come to the leake. After dinner we scraped and washed all her Starboord side, and tooke in a boates lading of stones.

This afternoone the Generall sent for me to goe a land with him in his Pinnelle, with whom I went, and tooke my netts with mee, and there tooke good soze of fishe, especially fishes called Dores: after we went to the warring place, and came aboard the sooner, because the Generall found himselfe sicke, whom I set aboard in my skiffe, and went aboard my selfe, and sent for our peopie from shoare, and gaue God thanks, and supped late.

The necessitie of us.

The 5. day betimes in the morning, we sent our saile menders a shoare, and trimmed our shippe to starboord, and washed the other side. In the meane while, our Cooper, and others, trimmed our caske, and others placed it in holde. Also we tooke in 2. boates lading moxe of stones, and some water, we stocked a heate anker, and bent a netwe cable, for it was very much winde, which hindred our buisines greatly.

The 6. daye in the morning, before 6. of the clocke, wee sawe a saile which went towards the fourthwards the Admirall not hauing knowledge thereof: I went aboard, and certified him, who appointed me to goe and bring her in, and to take Captaine Parker, and some of the Gallions men into the Francis, and the Admirals skiffe with vs: so wee gaue her chase, and tooke her five leagues to the Lewards of the place we rode in. Then not being able to fetch the roade againe, we ankered in the sea. I, intending to come away in the Pinnelle, and leaue the Francis, and the prize together, being readie to depart, the winde blew at South, a stout gale, and raine, so that about five of the clocke, we ankered in the roade, where our ships ride in.

the Galie comes and to. etc.

After we had taken them, and that Captaine Parker, and I, were aboard, we had much talke with them, before they came to the shippes, and being ankered there, the chiefe men were carried aboard the Generall, which was a Gentleman, named Don Francisco de Vera, Nephew to the Gouvernour of the Riuer De Plate, named Don John de Torre Vera.

We founde an Englishman, named Richard Carter, bozne in Limehouse, who had bene out of England foure and twentie yeeres, and hath bene nere twelue yeeres dwelling in the Riuer of Plate, at a Colome named Ascension, three hundred leagues up in the Riuer, whither they were no we determined to goe, and inhabit, hauing two women, and two young children, seven Friars, the rest boyes, and saylers, to the number of 21. persons.

Richard Carter an Englishman taken in the prize.

The olde Friar was had in great reuerence among the rest: in so much that they called him the Holie Father, he was abiding in no place, but as Wilcox, he went visiting from Monasterie to Monasterie.

The number of 21. in the prize.

The substance of all the speeches was, that the Spanish Fleet was before at the Streights of Magellan, as they thought, for they were departed five weekes past from the Riuer of Genero, where they had bene seuen moneths to refresh and winter. And that these were not of that companie, but came out of Spaine, the 26. of Maye, 1582. in a Barke of foure scoze tunne, and foure scoze persons of purpose, for the Riuer of Plate: the Friars beeing eightene in number, could not agree, and their Barke was a ground at Spirito santo, like to be lost: therefore the olde Friar bought this small barke of 46. tunne, at a port, named Spirito santo in Brasile, and so wended themselues, and coming from thence, lost companie at sea, but they thought they were before at Riuer de Plate. After his speeches, I went, and appointed (by the Generals order) men to remaine aboard the prize, with Captaine Parker, and bought one of the Poringals sayles away with mee, and came aboard, where I founde that our men had filled water all day.

The 7. day in the morning, the Generall sent for me, where he shewed me, and Master Madox, certaine articles, which the Friars, and mariners Spaniards were examined of, which ended altogether to the knowledge of the Spanish fletes intent, and of the meanes whereby wee mighte be discovered by way of Riuer de Plate, by land to Peru. In this time came the rest, after whose coming was debated, whether it were best to take the boate, and people with vs, or not, which was not determined, but referred till further examination.

Then was determined to passe by the streights notwithstanding the Spaniards were there, but not to set vp forge, nor to build pinnelle, but water, and so chozung.

Further

Further, it was determined, that Captaine Hawkins, Master Tailboys, Master Gessies, Master Hoode, Master Blackcoller, and two leaders of each shippe, should romage the prize: about the appointment of whome, &c. we vnkinde, and hot speeches, betweene the Generall, and Master Parker, against me, concerning authoritie, and government, and also Captaine Hawkins finding himselfe injured, was plaite with them both: so that we were beyond the termes of Commissioners, and fell to plaine bawling, and bugging: the circumstances I omit, as too long, and vniuse to be written. Time being thus spent, the Generall called for wine, and ended all contentions, and so we dined there with him.

After dinner they searched the barke, and found in her diuers trifles, which are noted in a paper by themselves. I went a fishing, and came aboard, from whence the Generall fetched me, and went aboard to the old Frier in the barke: after we had talked with him, we came aboard, and there supped in the Edward with me, the Generall, M. Maddox, Captaine Parker, and Master Hall: we debated of diuers causes before, and after supper, and so departed, with promise to dine with the Generall the next day.

This day also weooke by all the rest of our Ordnance, and placed them, and tooke in a boate lading of stones, and filled water all day.

The 8. day afoze noone, Master Walker, and I, went aboard the Admiral to dinner, where was determined to discharge the Spanish barke, named our Ladie of pitie, and all the men excepte Richard Carter, the Englishman, and Iohn Pynro, a Portingall, which dwelled at Riuier de Plac.

After dinner, the Generall appointed me, and Captaine Hawkins, to see them all set aboard their ship, and to receaue from them certaine necessaries, which willingly they imparted with vs, and to leaue them satisfied. Which done, I returned aboard, and hauing deuised the necessaries to each ship his part, we entered into consultation, where Master Walker propounded certaine questions to the Generall of vnkindnes, by me conceaued against him, which moued him to some cholerike termes with me, which I answered: and in the ende, all matters almost being agreed betweene vs, then began he to question with Captaine Hawkins, which contention was tedious, and not fully ended before supper, & began againe after supper: so that about 10. of the clocke after supper, we came aboard.

In this morning before my going forth, we trimmed our shippe ouer to port, and came to our leakes, and not being able to stop the same without boord, we stopped the same within boord, and after our men filled all our water caskes, laded, and placed all our Ordnance, and made all things ready to goe hence.

The 9. day being Sunday, in the morning, I sent master Shawe, and master Gessies, aboard the Admirall, to peruse the Spaniards letters, wherein they found the estate of the Fleet, which was in the Streights of Magellane, as by the note thereof appeareth.

About ten of the clocke, the Generall, master Maddox, Captaine Hawkins, and Captaine Parker, came aboard of me, the Generall began to reppoue my Quarter master, for grudging of victuall for the Francis, which was answered, and he well satisfied. Then sent I for the old Frier, and Don Francisco, who all dined with me, and after dinner, the Spaniards hauing receaued the Canoto which was sunke a land, and lones to ballast them, with my boate carried them, and all other things to their liking, and content, they departed from mee: the Generall also departed, and his companie, who being gone, I deuised the sugar, and ginger among my people, which the Spaniards gaue vs, and after spent the day in ordinarie busines.

The 10. day in the morning, our skiffe went a fishing, whereof we eate as much to supper, as serued the companie, the rest we saued for stowe, and to proue if they would take salt or not. In the afternoone our skiffe went againe to fish, and tooke good stowe: the rest of our people tooke their ease, some aboard, and some on boare.

The 11. day, betimes in the morning, our skiffe went againe to fish, & tooke great plenty. About 7. of the clocke, I went a land, taking with me the M. & others of our best men, to the number of 22. persons, & traueled to y place, where our people before had found many great fars of earth, & decayed habitations of the Indians, & trees being dead, and withered of sweete wood. From that place, we saw ouer the tops of a narrow wood, a faire plaine, which at the request of the M. and the rest, I went with them to see. We passed through a thicke & perillous wood, before we came to the supposed plaine: & when we came to it, we found the lowest part thereof higher then any of our heads, and so mossie vnder foote, that we slipped to the knees many steps, which so wearied vs, that for my part, I was very sicke, and so halted aboard, leauing the Master with 15. men, which cut a tree of sweete wood, and brought many peeces thereof aboard.

About 3. afternoone, M. Walker, and many of our men being a shoure, the winde came late,

The Spanish  
barke the Admirall  
set.

Spaniards  
vnder  
leakes.

Things found  
in the Island.

and we layd out a warpe with a hende,

The 12. day about ledge of rocks, & the per and all brake, so may the same: after v. hour, and went rooming to helpe out our boate the sooner, and all, and put out a About 6. a clocke at about, 'all night it w

The 13. day about which gale we stood of the land a hebd, al but is all sandy hille dom water and with ans to giue warning: good off, South east South by west all ne

The 14. day we w morning about 7. lea west, and the wind th night for a while, the South by west all ne

This day at 8. a it was in maner calk

The 15. day in the whole default I know then we hapled her, that the wind was boaze, and stood off a boord tacked, and fou

The 16. day being ning, at 8. a clocke in along south by west a clocke, the wind last which bare west sou so we went all night The Sunne set this morning East by sou

The 17. day we lay betweene the S

The 18. day afoze ded them, and rised clocke at night it be and South southw

The 19. day we

The 20. day about ker the Master, the neral; vpon our conning byned, the Seruing two demands,

The effect of the 1. Whether it was considering the for termination was ch necessary businesse

2. Demand was

and we layd out a warpe to the North-east, and began to wunde a hebd: after we layd out another warpe with a bende, and wound to the plat, and so ridde by it one anker all night.

The 12. day about 5. a clocke in the morning, we set sayle, and as we ranne out betwene the ledge of rocks, & the mayne in 8. fadom water, as we were cutting our anker, the cartrope, Roper and all broke, so that we were glad to let slip all the cable, and cast off our boate, and kiffe away the same: after we had stood out a good way, the Admirall was vnder sayle, then call we about, and went toome with the Admirall which weaned vs, who sent in his pinnell, and the Francis to helpe out our boate, so by the helpe of the Admirals pinnell, with her sayle, we had our boate the sooner, and about 12. a clocke at noone taken in the awker, cable, our long boate, kiffe, and all, and put out all our sayles bearing after the Admirall, which went hence South by east. About 6. a clocke at night being thicke weather we lost sight of the land, being 4. leagues off: there about, all night it was but litle winde, yet went we our course South by west.

The 13. day about 7. a foxnoone the wind blew at South south-east, & was very fogge, with which gale we stood in larboord tacked west, till 10. a clock the same foxnoone: then had we sight of the land a hebd, all along (so it waxed cleere weather) it theweth a farre off, like white cleeres, but is all sandy hilles, and bays along the sea side: at one a clocke afternoone we were in 16. fadom water and within halfe a league of the shoare, where we saw seuerall fires made by the Indians to giue warning to the other people within the land as we supposed: then we cast about, and stood off, South-east by east till midnichte, that the wind came large: then went wee our course, South by west till next morning.

The 14. day we went our course South by west hauing sight of the land at 6. a clocke in the morning about 7. leagues off, and so went till 6. at night that we saw lande againe, 7. leagues off west, and the wind shifted to the South: then we cast about and stood off East south-east at 7. at night for a while, then came by the wind at North-west and blew a good.

This day at 8. a clocke at night we had a pretty gale and went our course with it till 12. after, it was in maner calme all night.

The 15. day in the morning, the Admirall was a hebd, as farre as we could almost see her, by whose default I know not, & being litle wind we could not get to her, till 4. a clocke afternoone, then we hapled her, and stood in betwene the South south-west, and the south-west till 6. at night that the wind was variable, and soule weather: then we cast about, and sounded in 23. fadom soft oaze, and stood off a while North-east: and presently cast about againe, and went south by east larboord tacked, and south south-east among all night: at 4. in the morning 15. fadom same.

The 16. day being Sunday we saw the land within 3. leagues of vs at 6. a clocke in the morning, at 8. a clocke we cast about and went North-east till 11. the same foxnoone, then we stood along south by west till within 3. or 4. leagues of the shoare, and in 12. fadom water, land about 2. a clocke, the wind larged, so we went south by east: at 6. a clocke we were 6. leagues off the lande which bare west south-west of vs, and was in the 23. fadom, after the wind came by at North-east: so we went all night South with our sheats hapled of: a cleere night of starrs but cold weather. The Sunne set this night at south-west by west, and to the Northwards a litle, and rose the next morning East by south, and to the Southwards.

The 17. day we went our course South till 11. a clocke afternoone: then the wind scanting we lay betwene the South-east, and the East south-east, till the next day morning with litle winde.

The 18. day foxnoone, being calme yet a boylting sea, we tooke in all our sayles, and mended them, and stued newe mayne tides, and repaired many decayes, as a Ramme head &c. at 7. a clocke at night it began to blowe at south-east, & so we lay by larboord tacked, south-west by south, and South south-west all night with a good gale.

The 19. day we stood in next hand south-west all day and night.

The 20. day about 10. a clocke afternoone, we went about the Admirall: viz. Walter Malaker the Master, the Pilot, the two Marchants, and my selfe, being directed so to do by the General: vpon our comming the General was going to dinner where we also dined with him hauing dined, the General called by his Assistants into his cabben, and there deliuered to vs in writing two demands, to bee by vs considered vpon, and by to haue our opinions therein.

The effect of the demands were these.

1. Whether it was best for vs to aduencure our selues to passe the Streights of Magellan or not, considering the force of the enemy, which we knew to be there before vs: and also that our determination was there to set by our pinnell, make vpon hoops, carrene our ships, and do all our necessary buisnesses for the full accomplishment of our voyage.

2. Demand was, if that course were not thought best, which way were meetest for vs to take.

To the first we were of opinion, that it were good to heare the opinions of Captaine Hawkins, Captaine Drake, & the 2. pilots, which had passed the streights, and knew the harbors, and likeliest places to be fortified, & inhabited or not, who were called, and the 3. Masters with them: their opinions were as divers as their names, & almost differed, as befoze this time they were wont usually to do: only they all agreed in this one point, & it was impossible for vs to passe the streights without seeing, and incountring with the ships although the fortification of the lande did not annoy vs, which being long and thoroughly debated, and their opinions with the 3. Masters demanded, which accorded not scant any one with other, they were dismissed.

Then the General received the opinions of vs his Assistants: beginning with the pongest in authority first, which when he had harde them all over, & being set downe in writing vnder our hands, he tooke deliberation till after supper to giue his determination.

When we had all supped then he sent for vs downe into his cabden and deliuered in writing his determination, which was) to victuall, and furnish our selues on this coast befoze we proceeded any further, and named 3. places Riuer de Plate, or S. Vincent to be chosen.

Richard Carter the English man taken in the ylle, carried along with them.

For the better deciphering of Riuer de Plate, and the commoditis thereof, was called befoze vs Richard Carter, which both dwel there, who could not assure vs of any wine except we could stay 4. moneths for it, but other victuals plenty: the riuer shoale & dangerous, & rood 7. leagues from any towne, or place of commoditie: which considered with the trecherie that might from thence be led, into the Streights by sea, & into Peru by land, we all concluded to go to S. Vincent, which place is inhabited with Portugals, and where in honett sort we might conueniently haue all our buisness done.

They returned in the latitude of 33.

With this resolution we tooke our leaues about 8. a clocke at night, & being come aboard presently bare vp, & went roome, hauing all the day befoze beate by the winde larboord tacked East southeast till at night after it was a litle wunde all night, we went North next hande.

The 21. day after scrutice, I declared vnto my company, the intent of our returne to the Port of S. Vincent, wherewith they were wel satisfied being befoze doubtfull that we should not proceede, but returne without performance of our voyage. It continued calme all day till 6. at night, then we went Northwest by west, till 8. at night: and then we cast abbut, and stood off East southeast, and East by South all night with a good gale.

John Drake in the Francis went to the Riuer of Plate wherewith his ship was cast away, but the men gatt to land, and lived 15. moneths among the Sauiages.

The 22. day in the morning, we missed the Francis, which by all presumption went roome in the beginning of the night.

About sixe afozenoone we cast about, and stood in Northwest, till sixe a clocke at night: then we went about, and stood of East by South, and East Southeast among all night, till foure a clocke next morning.

The 23. day at foure a clocke in the morning, we cast about, and stood in West north west, and West by north, till twelue at noon: Then we stood about larboord tacked a while, and presently the winde came large, so we went North by east, & North north east all day & night following.

The 24. day we went North north east, and North by east, till one a clocke after midnigh: then we cast about, and stood of East southeast, and Southeast by east, all the rest of the night.

The 25. day being Christmas day, it was litle winde in the forenoone till ten a clocke, then it blew a fresh gale, with which we went our course North north east: in the afternoon it was lesse winde: yet went we our course North by east, and North north east and North and North by west till midnigh. Then being in shoaled water, we cast about, and lay South southeast, and Southeast by south an houre, & seeing our Admiral came not after vs, we cast about back againe & presently met him, so we went both together next hand South southeast, at the rest of the night.

Infinite number of fishes.

This afternoon we saw the skimme of fishes so thicke in the sea, that it seemed a water troubled with trampling of hoyses, which was thicke, and slimy, for we had taken vp some of it.

The 26. day at 7. afozenoone we cast about, and stood in North by west, and North north west: about 11. at noone we saw the Land which lay North west of vs 4. leagues, at one a clocke we cast about, and stood of Southeast with a South gale all night.

The 27. day we stood off into the sea between the Southeast, and the East by North all day and night with a foule gale of wind at North.

The 28. day it was calme all the forenoone till 12. a clocke then we went West north west: during this calme we tooke in our mayne Sayle and toppe sayles, and mended them all the day and night following much winde.

The 29. day we went West north west with a soure gale, till 6. a clocke at night: then it thundred, lightned and rained, the winde almost calme and drifting, wherewith we went all night, betweene the East, and the North north east.

The

The 30. day being Sunday we went out our skiff: the bank of the Riuer was by our selues of the lande 4. of the clocke we cooled till 8. at night, the sea much fogge.

The 31. day of the month then seeing the land 3.

The first day of January next hand North north east, Carpieter wrought by

The 3. day we went we stood off East south

The 4. day at 4. a clocke in sight of land about and stood of South

This forenoone we

The 5. day at 9. a clocke southeast by east north

The 6. day after midnigh

The 7. day we went

The 8. day we went North west, and betw

The 9. day after we

The 10. day we went

The 11. day we went

The 12. day we went

The 13. day we went

About 3. a clocke then

The 14. day in the

The 15. day we went

The 16. day hauing

The 17. day we went

The 18. day we went

The 19. day we went

The 30. day being Sunday, after Sermon, dinner, and obseruation of the Sunne at noone, we hopped out our skiffe the Waker, P. Walker, and I went a boord the Admirall where wee had a banquet of sweete meates: after that ended, the General and I fell into familiar conference several by our selues of the State of our voyage, & debated long of the same in good sort: then being neere 4. of the clocke we tooke our leaues, & came aboard, & tooke in our skiffe, and went North north-west till 8. at night, then we cast about, and went southeast, and southeast by south at night smooth sea, much fogge.

The 31. & last of Decerber at 6. afojnoon we cast about, & stood in northeast till 5. afternoone: then seeing the land 3. leagues off vs, we cast about, & stood off east southeast at night w hiele wind.

The first day of January, we had litle wind all day and night, but we layd our course withall January. next hand North north-east.

The 2. day our fojertoppmast being perished, we tooke it downe, & the cap of y<sup>e</sup> Mast, which the Carpenter wrought upon a day, & night: we w<sup>e</sup>l our course next hand, north north-east litle wind.

The 3. day we went our course till 11. a clocke at night North by east, then the wind scanted, & we stood off East southeast till 4. next morning.

The 4. day at 4. a clocke afojnoon we went North next hand, till 5. a clocke at night, hauing sunne in sight of land all day, then being in 15. fadom water within 2. mile of the shoare, we cast about and stood of South southeast, and Southeast all night, with a reasonable gale.

This afojnoon we set up our fojertoppmast againe, being wel mended.

The 5. day at 9. a clocke afojnoon, we cast about: whereas all the morning befoze we went Southeast by east now we went North till 5. afternoone: then being in sight of land, 3. leagues hope of the place were we were the day befoze at that time we cast about, and went Southeast all night with a stout gale of wind. This afternoone our mainetoppstaire split from the boltropes, and was greatly cojue wich we got downe, and began to mende.

The 6. day after dinner we gatt by our mainetoppstaire againe, and went all day and night, betweene the southeast, and the East by south with much winde.

The 7. day we went betweene the east by south, & the east all the day & night with a stout gale.

The 8. day we went next hand, East till 5. a clocke afternoone, then we cast about, and stood in North-west, and betweene that and the West all night.

The 9. day after we had stricken and mended our mainesayle we went north by east, litle wind for a while, but afternoone it blew a stout gale: so we went our course all day, and night next hand North north-east.

The 10. day we went all day and night our course North north-east with a stout gale of wind.

The 11. day we went our course North, and North by east all day, and night with a stout gale of winde.

The 12. day we went betweene the north, and the North-west till 12. at midnichte: then we being neere the land cast about, and stood of East north-east till 4. in the morning.

The 13. day we went about after 4. a clocke in the morning, and stood in west hauing sight of the lande West by north till one a clocke afternoone: then being within 4. leagues of the shoare: where we saw a white pinnacle like a watch towe, which bare West north-west of vs: we cast about and stood off east, till 10. a clocke at night litle winde.

About 3. a clock this afternoone I hopped out my skiffe and sent her with the Waker, & Pilot aboard the Admirall, to confere with them there, who shewing them that I was not well at ease, caused the General, P. Maddox, and Captaine Parker, to come aboard and visite me, where they supped: & hauing had some conference with him about our dealings at S. Vincenc &c. he departed and the skiffe brought the Waker & Pilot aboard againe who supped aboard the Gallion.

At 10. a clocke the winde came large and we went all night betweene the North-east by east, and the North-east to goe cleare of the land we saw our night.

The 14. day in the morning it was haplie and thicke weather, so we sawe not the land till 9. a clocke in the fojnoon, vntill which time we halled in West north-west: but then seeing lande beare North north-west of vs we stood hence east north-east til 7. a clocke at night: then our Admirall would needs come to anker upon the hed land, but I thought it not best and lay close by all night, so that at 6. a clocke in the morning we were 4. myles to wyndward of her.

The 15. day we piped off and on in the entrance of the bay, and got litle or nothing all day and night, we kept sight of our Admirall which ridde at anker till 12. at noone: then set sayle, and lay close by the wind as we did.

The 16. day hauing turned to winde wards all night befoze, we found our skies in the morning a league to leeward of the place, where we were overnight by the listings of the winds to

our disadvantage, this forenoone about tenne a clocke we meet a change of waters, which runne our South southeast into the sea which wee supposed to be some streetch which came out of the Bay, and lyeth along the coast North north-east and South-south-west with a great difference both of colour and sypling.

This afternoon we rode in North north-east, into eight sadomes and a halfe on the West side of the Bay, and about 4. a clocke we stood out againe South southeast, in hope to see our Admirall, whose sight we lost the night before, but seeing we went so fast to leeward we ankred at 7. a clocke under a small Island, a myle off Westour ship caped East north-east, & North-east most part of the night, which we iudge was some streame which came by way, for it was litle wind,

The 17. day about 7. a clocke the Master, master Blacoller, and I went in our skiffe and rowed, and sounded round about the Ile, and found 16. sadomes within a stones cast hard aboyde the shoare, and faire grounds: after we landed, and found nothing but woods and bushes, and strange wyemes: we saw a saulce, and one other small birde, and therefore named it Faulcon Ile: it is ample about, with a rocke on the East side, which lyeth close to it, and it is in sight without danger, after we came aboord, and byned, at two a clocke, we set saile with winde Southeast, & ranne in North-east a while till the winde shewed: then we went in North north-east, till we were in 7. sadome and a halfe of water, within a league of the shoare: then we cast about, and stood off south southeast all night till 6. a clocke next morning.

The 18. day at 6. a clocke a forenoone we cast about and stood in North by east, North north-east, and sometime North-east, being sometime a gale, sometime calme: about thre a clocke afoze-day we saw our Admirall againe, and kept her company till day.

The 19. day being within a league of the Citron Ile about 8. a clocke a forenoone we went aboyde the Generall viz. M. Walker, the Master, the Pilot, and my selfe rejoycing of our good meeting, who tolde me of their sull roade, where they lost an anker, a cable and a hatscrane how the day before their pinuelle was a shoare on the same Island and found some water there, whither now they had lene their boate, and pinuelle for more water, where I knowe they had small store.

I also taking captaine Parker, the Master, and M. Wilkes with me went a shoare, & traueled to the top of the Ile, which is wooded, & high gras, but euill water, & litle on it, but yong fowle plenty, & dangerous coming to them. By this time I hauing ser the Isles, & had lands about in sight with a compass, came a small gale, at South southeast, then our Admirall shot off a peece for the boate & hence he went, & I dyed aboyde with him: & came after aboyde, and went in North north-east and North-east till morning, at which time we were within a league of the Ile, entering before S. Vincens, but knew not how much water was vpon the barre to go ouer.

The 20. day in the morning being calme, the Generalls pinuelle came into the shoare, with intent to sound the entrance, but seeing 3. Canowes with each at the least 20. men, wherof the greater part were naked Indians which tolde, the rest Portugals, they returned aboyde againe: the Canowes came with a flage of cruce win calling of our ship, & we shewed them the like, asking what we weare & of what nation, at length one Portugall went aboyde the Admirall, by whom the General sent a letter to the Governour craving a Pilot to bring in our ship of curtelie and to haue traffike. About noone hauing the wind at South we bare in North-west, & so to the North-east as the chanel trended: but coming into 7. sadome water we ankred, until our boates had sounded the barre. During which time I went aboord the Admirall to conferre w him about our proceedings.

After I had stayed a while aboyd the Admirall the General came aboyd with me, where wee published vnto all my company very good rules for their behauior & profit, to their great satisfaction: after he went downe into my cabbin, where with all his assistants he conferred of diuers particulars of our voyage: by which time the boate being returned from sounding, we departed, & set saile following our skiffes, and with our ships got within the barre into 7. sadome, then being becalmed ankred againe before a sandy bay, wherein standes a Castle and houses: wee ryd within musket shot of it and ankred about 4. a clocke afternoon.

Then went I forwarde with my skiffe vntill a farther point, sounding along: before my returne, the General had sent for me to supper, & either I went: but being ready to sit downe there came out to vs a Canow wherein were 10. Indians and 11. christians, the one an auncient Senoa the other a Portugall, who came aboord, & there receiued a small banker, declaring their committing was to vnderstand our intents and what we sought, who being satisfied departed with a farewell of thre great peeces from each ship.

Then went we to supper, and after I got me aboord being weary, but before I went to bedde came diuers complaints vnto me of the euill speeches & parties used by Thomas Russell, which I partly

A small Island  
which our  
men called  
Faulcon Ile.

Citron Ile.

Their arrival  
at S. Vincens.

3. Canowes of  
Portugals  
and Indians.

11. Canowes with  
10. Indians  
and 11. christi-  
ans wherof  
one was an  
old Genoaite.

partly examined before  
noon, I committed him  
carefull watch with ch.

The 21. day being  
fresh Ast on the North  
clocke after seruiue, I  
sing: and also after din-

After dinner I com-  
them, but concluded th  
Also in the presence  
the Masters mate, was  
written by M. Walker.

About thre a clocke  
a Fleming named Pa-  
the Generall, and wit-  
questes a banker was r-  
pets, and I in my Sh-  
a mile by the river: ad-  
and after vs came Ca-  
to attende on the Gen-  
made our felues merry.

The 22. day being  
ding of some token an-  
to send him thre par-  
the old Genoaite, S-  
thre yards of fine bla-  
rals Skiffe, about nin-

Also this forenoone  
sed them to goe tow-  
found the place both v-  
mination. This day I

About two a clocke  
at the Towne becaul  
stay until there had be-  
yet, but shortly woul-

The rest of this fo-  
for the Towne becaul  
soule speeches betwe-  
leasure I revealed br-

Then went we to  
the Generall a stran-  
les, great pins, and b-  
wards Saint Vincens  
turned aboyde againe.

The 23. day our S-  
a shoare to be mend-  
them aland, to take o-  
the Generall with al-  
appointed out the fit-  
for our coopers to tri-

After the well per-  
nerall, M. Parker, M-  
had some priuate con-  
rest of this day in pu-

The 24. day at fo-  
whome I sent my S-  
which is married be-  
I sent word to the C-

partly examined before Master Walker, the Master, and M. Jeffries, and finding cause of correction, I committed him to the bilboes, untill further leisure to examine the cause: so placing a carefull watch w<sup>th</sup> charge to haue care of the same, we passed 8 night very wel, God be prayd.

The 21. day betimes in the morning, I went aland in the skiffe, and tooke good plentie of fresh fish on the North side: for we moored on the South side and found litle of none. At nine a clocke after seruice, I sent to bury Robert Resc, one of the Masters mates, which died this morning: and also after dinner died Griffyn who was there buried.

After dinner I conferred with the Master and Pilot about the choyse of another Mate for them, but concluded that father Kyd should be assistant in the watch, but no Masters made moze.

Also in the presence of the Master, M. Walker, the Pilot, M. Jeffries, M. Shawe, and Tobias the Masters mate, was Thomas Russell examined, and his accusers, which examinations were written by M. Walker, and rest to be further considered of hereafter.

About thye a clocke after noone, came a Canoa, with the old Genouoys, named Ioseph Dory, a Fleming named Paul Badeues, and Steuen Repose a Hoizingale, and brought a letter from the Generall, and withall answer of feare and doubt of vs, &c. After many speches and requests a banket was made them, and the Generall in his Pinnetle with his musike, and trumpets, and I in my Skiffe with trumpets, drum and fife, and taboz, and pipe, accompanied them a mile by the riuer: at going off, saluted them with a voyle of thye great peeces out of eche ship: and after vs came Captaine Parker with the Admirals long boate, and certaine shot in the same, to attende on the Generall. So we returned aboyde the Edwarde, and then supped together, and made our selues merry, and after supper they departed.

The 22. day betimes in the morning, I went aboyde the Admirall to conferre abo<sup>t</sup> the sending of some token and present to the Gouverour, which was by all the Assistants determined to send him thye yards of fine skarlet, and thye yards of fine murrie cloth, and to Ioseph Dory the old Genouoys, Steuen Repose the Hoizingale, & to Paul Badeues the Fleming, eche of them thye yards of fine blacke cloth, which our marchants went by to Santos withall, in the Admirals Skiffe, about nine a clocke afoyenoone.

Also this foynoon we being minded to goe by higher with our stypes into harbor, I aduised them to goe vnto the place, and found the road befoze we went by, which we did, where were found the place both vnconuenient, and the road woyle, and so we returned and left the first determination. This day we tooke downe our maine tops, and top make, and all the stayes.

About two a clocke afternoone our marchants returned with their presents, not hauing bene at the Towne because Steuen Repose by the way met them on the Riuer, and aduised them to stay vntill there had bene woyle sent to the Gouverour, who was vnwilling to speake with them yet, but shortly would send their answer.

The rest of this foynoon, we spent in communication about the appointing of a Purser, for the Edward. Also we signed an assent for comming to this place: about which thing grewe foule speches betweene the Generall, and his Lieutenant after the olde custome. After being at leasure I reuealed vnto him Russels offences.

Then went we to supper, and being at supper, certaine Indians came aboyde, and brought the Generall a strange Crowe, and Potatos, and Sugar canes, to whom he gaue looking glasses, great pins, and bisket, and so we departed being late. Also this afternoone I ranne ouer towards Saint Vincent, and founded the Bay a league ourt, and found the chanel and flats and returned aboyde againe within two houres, hauing a good gale of winde.

The 23. day our Skiffe went a shoare to fish, and tooke prettie stoze: we sent our mayne top a shoare to be mended, and many of our men to wash their clothes: also I went my selfe with them aland, to take order, that no man should any wayes offend the Indians. In the meane time the Generall with all the rest of the chiefest Gentlemen, came a shoare, and viewed the place, and appointed out the fittest roome, to set vp our smithes foize, and ouens to bake our bisket, & place for our coopers to trim our water cask.

After the well perusing of the place, and some familiar conference with the Indians, the Generall, M. Parker, M. Walker and I came aboyde, and dined in the Edward: after dinner we had some priuate conference, and about one a clocke they went aboyde the Gallion: I spent the rest of this day in putting many things in order.

The 24. day at foure a clocke befoze day, we heard one call for a boate on the North Shoare, to whome I sent my Skiffe, who brought aboyde one named Iohn Whitehall an English man, which is married here in this place, and with him two of his Indians: whom I inuertained vntill I sent woyle to the Generall to prepare himselfe to receiue him, in which time he and I talked of

John Whitehall an English man, which is married here in this place, and with him two of his Indians: whom I inuertained vntill I sent woyle to the Generall to prepare himselfe to receiue him, in which time he and I talked of

The Indians presents.

The chanel of S. Vincent founded.

John Whitehall.

many severall particulars.

Good counsell  
by the foresaid  
Englishman  
given to our  
men.

About fixe a clocke I conceived him aboyde the Admirall: there he discovered unto vs, what had bene done at the Towne, as fortification, and sending their wives away, &c. advising vs to receive no more delays, but to come by presently befoze the Towne with our shippes.

About ten a clocke, came a canoa, and brought downe Ioseph Dory, and Steven Repose, who tolde vs that on Saturd day the Governour would meete our General, and take with him, praying vs in the meane time to vse our ordinarie busines of cooperage, carpenters worke, fishing water, fishing, and washing, &c. but not to set voye, nor ouer, vncill speere had with our Governour. After this answer we dined together aboyde the Gallion: After dinner we left the Spelengers sitting in the cabbin, and went vpon the pooy, where the Generall demaunded the aduise of his assistants, whether it were not best to stay these men while we had them or not, or whether it were best to goe by with our ships to the Towne or no.

Whereunto ech man paused to make answer: wherefoze I deliuered my opinion, which was, that we were forbidden to vse violence to any nation for trade.

The opinion  
of London  
some  
time in  
Holland  
for traffike.

Secondly, I considered that diuers of our nation worshipfull marchants, and notable aduenturers in this voyage, had set out the Spinion hieer, and begun a trade, which with our forcible dealing might be spoiled, and our nation brought in hatred.

Lastly, that with force we were not like to attaine to so much commoditie, as we were in possibility to haue with courtesie.

Whereupon all was concluded, and they suffered to passe away: to whome the Generall gave the three cloke clothes, to Ioseph Dory, to Paul Baudeuse, and to Steven Repose, to ech of them one, which were befoze cut out for them: and so friendly we and they departed about two a clocke afternoone: which done, I went aboyde, and prepared for the enterainment of certaine of the Gallions men, which determined to sup with me.

Three Span  
with ships  
discouered.

About foure a clocke this afternoone we sawe three sayle of ships come bearing in about the point, which aldoone as they sawe vs, ankred vpon the barre, and put their selues in readines, sending from one ship to another with their boats, and blowing off their ordinance, meaning to take vs: and we befoze night, getting our men and other necessaries from the shoare which were busie aland, armed our ships to defend our selues. Then went I aboyd y Admirall to know what he meant to doe: who determined to see his watch in warlike sort, and so hee did, for after the trumpets and drumme had sounded he shot off a great peece, as they befoze had done: And presently the Viceadmirall shot at me, whome I answered with another, and so ceased. We then set vp our mayne top, and top made rigged befoze 11. clocke the same night: In the meane while they let slip their ankres and cables, and came vntoing and towing with their boats in vpon vs meaning to haue boarded vs: and being nere our Admirall he hailed them, who refused to tell of whence they were, thinking by spending of time to get aboyde of him, to whome I called still to beware, and to shoote at them in time. At length he let sice at them, yet was glad to let an anker and cable slip to auoyde them: then came they all vntoing downe thwart my hawse, so that I was faine to let slip an anker and cable to stum the Gallion: all this while the ordinance & small shot pyled of all parts, and I was faine to send the Gallion my Skiffe with a hawser to ride by, for the was loose, and with the flood draue vp within me. Then was the Viceadmirall on my board the who was well payde befoze, yet I left not gawling of him, till I thought our powder spent in vaine to shoote at him, he was so toyme and broken downe by vs. About foure a clocke it rained so fast, that we could scant discern one the other the Spone being gone downe, yet ryd the Admirall, and the Rearadmirall, but a litle ahead of vs: during which time we paused, and made ready all our munition.

The fight be  
twixt the En  
glish, & Spa  
nish ships at  
S. Vincent.

The Spanish  
Viceadmirall  
sunke by the  
English.

This Creeke  
to the Sea  
nearall, that  
there were  
600. and abde  
in the three  
Spanish ships

The 25. day, by day light, we sawe the Viceadmirall sunke hard by vs, so that his yards which were hopped acrosse, and his tops, and that ouer head was aboue water: most of their men were gotten away in their boats, sauing about fourtie persons which hung in the spowds, and tops, whom I aduised our Generall to send for away, and had made ready, and well manned our Pinnesses: but being vpon the way going, the General called them backe, and would not suffer them to goe: there were thye of their boats also going for them from their shippes, at whome I shot, and made them to retye and leaue them vpon the spowds. At length our Generall sent for two of the men away, which his Pinness brought to him, the one was heaued ouer boye because he was soze hurt not like to liue, and he was a Harillan, the other was a Creeke doyne in Zanec, boatswaine of the Viceadmirall: the rest of the men, some swanne away vpon rats, some were drowned, and some remained still hanging on her, By this time it was sayze day light, and

and I called to our Generall and anker on their went downe, & ankred by wards. There ryd I al Admirals anker would mirall came, he had ben

At length our Admirall gan to stand out into the sea to get out of shot, but coget by her ankres endur her, and sometime the noone. The rest of this our ordinance and furn with vs.

The 26. day in the morn we manned our shippes the night befoze so we lost that anker. I sent vnto the Spanish men ynches, and wee had nothing worth.

After dinner I went to Sea, and thither I found an named Peter, which is a Spaniards calluer, that brought him aboyde to dead men on lande and there were certaine Spaniards, Captaine Hawk and harnes of my Shipp his burtes, who had but

The 27. day we set

The 28. day in the morn we stode to the Northward of S. Vincent.

The 29. day in the morn we stode to the Northward of S. Vincent, where we met the ship Walker, Master Shewell, whome I met, and the ship Pilot, and Masters them, and to meete them I sent for falling into the rest aduised mee to spend consumed victual to get in with calmes and our hands, and from her both aboyd the Admirall

The 30. day our Canoa came, and toyme

The 31. day the like

The first day of February we went the same course to the Northward of S. Vincent

The 5. day about 10. o'clocke of the bloody

him ouer booyd, and shot

From the 6. day to the

The 12. day hauing great boyled, with thye of the same.



and I called to our Generall to waite, and byue downe to them, who required mee to goe first and anker on their quarter, and hee would follope, and anker on their bowes. I wayed, and went downe, & ankred by them, yet not so nere as I meant, for the ebbe put me off to the Northwards. There yed I alone spending shot at them, and they both at mee foure houres, before our Admiralls anker would come by, during which time I had some spoyle done, but when our Admirall came, he had her part, and eased me very well.

At length our Admirall began to warpe away, and being come without mee set sayle, and began to stand out into the Sea: I went aboyde of him to knowe his pleasure, who determined to get out of shot, but could not because the winde scanted on them: the Edward before she couly get by her ankres endured many moze shot, after the Gallion was further off a good way then shee, and sometime the Gallion had two or thre: thus we ended about two a clocke afternoon. The rest of this day and part of the night we spent in mending, siting, and putting our ordnance and furniture in order for the next morning, thinking they would haue bene with vs.

The 26. day in the morning wee could not see them, because they were gone by the River: wee manned our boats, and Pinnettes, and wayed two ankres, and one cable that they let slippe the night before: as our men were waying the thirde anker, the booprope brake, and so wee lost that anker. Our Admirall had an anker of twelue hundred, and a good cable of cleuen perches, and wee had an anker about sixe hundred, with a piece of a balle cable, and booprope nothing worth.

After dinner I went aboyde the Admirall, to conferre with him, who determined to goe off to Sea, and thither I carried Senior Pinto, to interprete the Indian language, with an Indian named Peter, which fledde from the Bay where wee yed in a canoa, and brought with him a Spaniards caluer, flasse, and touchpoze, to goe with vs, whome our Admiralls boate met, and brought him aboyde to the Admirall. Hee tolde vs that the Spaniards had brought many dead men on lande and burped them, and also landed many hurt men in their Bay, and that there were certaine Spaniards gone ouer thoyowe the woods to looke after vs. Then the Generall, Capitaine Hawkins, and Master Maddox came aboyde of mee to viewe my hurt men, and harmes of my shippes, both men, shippe, and tackle, and I also went aboyde him to peruse his hurtes, who had but one man a sayler slaine.

The 27. day wee set sayle, and ran South by east, and sometime North by east.

The 28. day in the morning dyed Lancelot Ashe of a hurt, who departed very godly. This day we tooke to the Northwards, and in getting in our ankres and kisse, wee were put thre leagues to leeward of Fiddle Ile, but the Gallion yed still.

The 29. day in the morning, seeing my selfe put to sea from the Admirall, I assembled Master Walker, Master Shawe, Master Ieffries, the Master, the Masters mate, and the Pilote, to whom I shewed, that I was desirous to goe backe to seeke our Admirall, wherunto the master Pilote, and Masters mate answered directly, that we could not fetch the Ile where wee left them, and to meete them in going backe it was very vnlkely and to vs dangerous many wayes, as well for falling into the laps of the Spaniards, as to bee put on a lee shoare: Whereupon all the rest advised mee to stand off into Sea, wherunto I assented, remembering withall, that time spent consumed vnicuall, and howe long we had beaten by and downe in the same Bay before, to get in with calmes and contrary windes.

Thus we concluded that Master Walker should set downe each mans opinion, and we set to our hands, and from henceforth he to keepe a Register of all our proceeding, as Master Maddox doth aboyd the Admirall.

The 30. day our Carpenters wrought in repairing the sides of our ship, which were somewhat brused, and toyme with shot.

The 31. day the like was done, and we went East south east.

The first day of February, we went East by south, and East south east with a stout gale: and went the same course the 3. 4. and 5. dayes following.

The 5. day about 10. a clocke in the forenoone Master Walker dyed, who had bene weak and sicke of the bloody flux 6. dayes, wee tooke a view of his things, and pyised them, and beaue him ouer boord, and shot a peece for his knell.

From the 6. day to the 11. day we went North east and North north east.

The 12. day hauing considered the lacke of water, the company were contented to haue the pease boyled, with thre iacks of freshe water, and two iacks of salte water, for the prolonging of the same.

The

Here the Gallion and the Edward boate were sent, and neuer met afterward.

Whether the preacher die.

The 13. day we went North with a sweete gale.

The 14. day I called into my cabbine the two marchants, the Master and the Pilot shewing them our wants of vittuals and other necessaries, whereupon they and I concluded, that it was best for vs to returne to our Countrey, with as little losse of time and expence of vittuals as might be, being without hope of reliefe upon this coast, and yet to keepe the coast of Brazil to friends for feare of extremitie.

The 15. and 16. dayes we went our course North-east.

The 17. day in the morning hauing much raine, we saued about two tunne of water, of which we were very glad.

Variation of  
the compasse.

The 18. day I obserued the variation of the compasse, which varied one point, and a halfe to the Southwards, by our ordinarie compasse of London.

From the 19. day to the 27. we went our course North-east, and North, as the winde serued.

The 27. day, I allowed a certaine portion of wine to our men, to wit, halfe a canne of wine to euery sixe men euery night at eight of the clocke, at the setting of the watche, to strengthen their weakenesse.

sp. Wylks  
dyeth.

The 28. day M. William Wylks hauing bene sick of the fluxe a moneth before, grewe impatient and outrageous in his discale, but by prayer and good persuasions we recouered him to his former good and quiet minde, and at night after nine a clocke he meekely departed the seruant of God.

sp. arch.

The 1. of March wee heaued him ouer boarde, and gaue him a pierce.

The 2. day the Master, Pilot, and I, agreed to fetch the Ile of Fernado Lorona.

From the 3. day to the 10. day we went West, and by South, and ran in for the shoare.

The 10. day we sawe the land, which was sandy hilles with woods on it.

The 11. day seeking to goe a shoare, we sawe foure men, which weaned to vs with a white shire, and we weaned to them with a flag of truce: At length one of them swamme to our boats side, and there lay in the sea talking with vs, almost an houere: in the ende, being partly perswaded by Pinto, who talked with them in the Indian tongue, and partly enticed with such trifles as I shewed him, he came into our Skiffe, and called to his companions on shoare, who came a boarde swimming: we deliuered them certaine barricos to fetch vs them full of fresh water: after, there came downe 40. Indians, boyes, women, and men, and with them a French boy, but the former Indians deceived vs of our barricos, whereupon Pinto and Russell swamme a shoare to seeke water, but found none.

The same day we sayled to a place where boats might land, and I went a land in my Skiffe, and found the Indians, and Frenchman which were with me the day before, and they brought our thier barricos full of fresh water: for which I rewarded them with some trifles. In y meane time our boate went a shoare, and our men with some of the Indians brought vs twentie barricos more of fresh water, and I my selfe went to shoare and brought 23. hennes of India.

The 12. day betimes in the morning, we manned our boate and Skiffe, &ooke some trifling things to shoare, and barricos: at our first arriual the rude Indians stocked together, wading to the Skiffe wherein I was, begging, and wondring about vs: first I caused them to fetch 27. barricos of water, whom I rewarded with small belles, &c. In the meane time they brought hens to me, wading to the Skiffe, for I kept my selfe alwayes a float, and for thet: hens I gaue them a knife, and a small looking glasse. All this while M. Blackcoller our Pilot, Thomas Russell, Marke Thawghs were still on shoare, and would not tarry aboyd: In the ende, fearing some treacherie, because all the Indians were slipped on shoare from me, I called our men away, and suddenly they laide hands on our men a shoare, & with their bowes shot thicke or vs in the boats, and waded into the water to vs, laying hands on our Skiffe, yet God of his mercy deliuered vs from their hands, with the losse of sixe men slaine, and others hurt.

Creation of the  
Indians.

Thus we got aboyde with fourtie Hens, Ducks, Turkeys, and Parrats, and thre hogheads of water: and I carried a Frenchman aboyde with me, named Iaques Humfrey, who was by chance in the boate with me when this fray began.

Iaques Humfrey a Frenchman slaine.

The 13. day we set sayle, and went North-east.

The 14. day, the Master shaped our course North north-east, to recouer the coast of Guyny, then the next shoare to vs.

The 15. day we went the same course.

The 16. day it rained, and we saued a butte of water

The 17. day weooke three Barke in the morning.

From that day to the first of April, we went our course, sometime with raine, and sometime with

with variable winds, and which boerred about the maine chicke in the sea, Cape verde.

From this day till we went according to the night before spoken by the name, left overbood, went betwixt the North

The 12. day we spreye the cop sayle upon him

From hence to the 2. station of the compasse: a poyn to the West was

From this day to the winde: this 25. day was

The 26. day it was in gale at East southeast: a at night betwene the N

The 28. day about 1. wee and split our sayle to tacle, without the burr on it, who were sayne to for barrics, &c. So we the North-east, and the N

The 29. day, our cap North north-east, lesse v

The 30. day with gre course which was meant foze: after we went all weather.

The first day of May the winde blew a little night but North, and N

The 2. day it contin hooke off our bonnets: East southeast, and

The 3. day wee cont the East North-east, and

The 4. day it was les put aboad all our othe large, and a good gale v

The 5. day being S winde but large, with

The 6. day it was fo North, all day and night

The 7. day and night

The 8. day and night day was foggy, and so South-west.

The 9. day it rained night with which wee North-east with which North-east.

The 10. day it rained East southeast: lathoo spyt sayle parde, and wi and night following C

with variable winds, and so til the 4. of April, which day wee saw foure byzds with long tailed, which honered about the Ship, and in the afternoone we saw and tooke by many weedes which were churke in the sea, which wee iudged to be byuen with the East windes from the ples of Cape verde.

From this day till the 11. day wee went our course sometime North-east, sometime North-west according to the winds: upon this 11. day George Cope one of our carpenters, hauing the night before broken by the hold, and stolen wine, and drunken himselfe drunke, being taken in the roomes, leapt ouerboard out of the beake heade, and so dyed himselfe: this day and night we went betwixt the North by West, and the North with much winde.

The 12 day wee spied our foremast to bee perished in the botomes, and durst not beare our mayne sayle upon him but went hence with our sayles next hand, North all day, and night.

From hence to the 20. day wee went North-east, and by North. This day I obserued the variation of the compasse: and I noted that the south point of the compasse caried more then halfe a point to the Westwardes.

From this day to the 25. wee went our course North north-east, with a reasonable gale of winde: this 25 day was litle winde stirring.

The 26 day it was in a manner calme, till seuen a clock at night, then it began to blowe a good gale at East south-east all night, with which wee went North-east, and North-east by east, and at night betwene the North-east, and the North-east by east.

The 28 day about 10 a clocke in the forenoone, our mayne yarde brake in sunder in the middest and split our sayle with being put to great streffe, which wee got in and all the sayle, and cackle, without the hurt of any man God be thanked. After dinner our Carpenter wrought upon it, who were sayne to take our do:wee, and anker stocke, the boats masts, pinnes, shaws, capston barres, &c. So we went all day & night following with our foresayle, and sailes betwene the North-east, and the North-east by east, with a stoute gale.

The 29. day, our carpenter wrought all day, we went with our foresayle, and mullen next hand North north-east, litle winde then before, and rayne.

The 30 day with great labour in the rayne, about 6, a clocke afternoone, wee set our mayne course which was mended, and ether of our sayles hauing made small way, on none the day before: after we went all night betwene the North north-east, and the North-east thicke and moyst weather.

The first day of May, it was a great fogge calme, and thicke myste till 4. afternoone, then the winde blew a stiffe gale at East, and still scanted to the Northwards, that we could lye all night but North, and North by west, with much winde and fogge.

The 2. day it continued very foggie, and much winde, so that at 9. a clocke afternoone wee spooke off our bonnets: at 12. at noone wee cast about, and went larbooye tacked betwene the East South-east, and the South-east all day, and night.

The 3. day wee continued in the morning our course with much winde, and went betwene the East North-east, and the East all day, and night.

The 4. day it was litle winde, so that betimes in the morning, wee laced on our bonnets, and put aboade all our other sayles, and went East North-east till 8. at night, then hauing the winde large, and a good gale we went all night our course East by North.

The 5. day being Sunday wee had a stoute gale till 5. a clocke afternoone, then it was litle winde but large, with which we went our course all day, and night East by North.

The 6. day it was foggie, and blew a stiffe gale, with which wee went our course East by North, all day and night.

The 7. day and night we went our course East by North, with a stoute gale.

The 8. day and night, wee went our course East by North with a franke gale, but all the day was foggie, and sometime raine, the winde shifting betwene South-west, and the West South-west.

The 9. day it rained till noone, and blew a stoute gale, at West south-west till 12 a clocke at night with which wee went our course East by North, then it shifted to the East, and East North-east with which wee went the rest of the night, betwene the North, and the North North-east.

The 10. day it rained, and blew much afternoone: about 9. a clocke we cast about, and went East South-east larbooye tacked, at 12. at noone with bearing ouer much sayle, wee brake our spittsayle yarde, and with much paine saued the peeres, and the toyme sayle: so wee went all day and night following East North-east, and sometime East by North, and sometime East with

out

our fojecoarse, and the mayne coarse, and beauner.

The 11. day it was lesse winde and by weather till noone: then it blew a good gale, and in the night very much winde, and colde weather: all this day wee made syffe, and made another spitsayle parde of our Top gallant maste, our Pyssen topmast, our mayne Flagstaffe, oars, &c. and went our course East by North, all day and night.

The 12. being Sunday, it was hayzie afoyenoone and much winde, so that hauing out our topsayles, and spitsayles, wee tooke them in at noone, and went all day and night our course East by North with a floute gale.

The 13. day in the morning it was somewhat lesse winde, and we tooke off, and mended our fojebonnet, which was toyne the night before, and at noone brought it to the parde againe, and after dinner put out our topsayles, being litle winde and rapne, so went all day, and night our course East by North with a small gale.

The 14. day we went our course East by North, till 12. at midnight with a pretty gale, then was it flake calme.

The 15. day it was calme till 9. a clocke afoyenoone, then it blew a smal gale, at East south-east, with which we went North-east till noone, then came by the winde, at South south-east, and at midnight blew so much, that wee meaning to haue shaken of our bonnets, tooke in all our sayles, and seeing the winde still increased, we lay to hull from midnight till 6. next morning hauing gone before East north-east, and East by North, and East amongst: this afternoone we saw a sayle but spake nor with them.

The 16. at 6. afoyenoone we set sayle with much winde at South south-west, and went East our course, with a coarse and bonnet of each, all day and night with very much winde.

The 17. day about 8. at night wee sounded, and had no ground, in 160 fathome, so wee kept our course on East till 12. at midnight, then the winde began to scant, so we went betwene the East north-east, and the East by North, all the rest of the night.

The 18. day at 8. at night we sounded againe, but had no ground, so we went all day & night, betwene the North-east, and the North by East with a skant winde.

The 19. being Sunday at 6. afoyenoone, the wind came to the South-east, so we went East North-east till 8. at night, then it was flat calme, and all night litle winde at North, with which we went next hand East south-east saye weather.

The 20. day it was litle wind all the fojenoone at North, then it changed to the North north-east, and blew but litle: so we were all day, and night betwene the East by South, and the South-east with a small gale saye weather.

The 21. day was saye weather and litle winde betwene the East and the North-east with which we went all day and night betwene the South-east by South, and the South by East till spitting: this day wee saw a Turtle done.

The 22. day it was a pretty gale, and saye weather: wee went all day till 8. at night East South-east, then the winde being somewhat larger, wee went all night East.

The 23. day wee went East by North till 8. at night, then hauing sounding in 66. fathome fine sande, we shaped our course North-east, but would not lye so nere, but as we might, went all night betwene the North-east by East, and the East north-east.

The 24. day we wen: East north-east, & East by North, till 7. at afternoone, then we sounded and had 65. fathome gray sand, hauing sayled by many weedes, & burton beds all day before: after we went all night as the day before East north-east, and East by North with litle winde.

The 25. day we went betwene the East north-east, and the North-east with a small gale till 5. a clock afternoone: then had we sight of land, which rose ragged to the Northwards like hopten land, we being about 5. leagues off: that Ile, bare North-east by North of vs, and the Northernmost part bare North by East of vs, with a rock a sea boord: we then sounded, & had 55. fathome gray sande, and mazy great stoe in it: so we stood in North-east till 8. a clocke, and then beled it againe being win 4. leagues of it, bearing as before, but we could not make it, so some thought it to be the fojeland of Fontenay, some iudged it the Ile of Vlsan: the: we sounded againe, in 55. fathome browne sand, and litle mazy in it: at 8. a clocke at night we went about, and stode of South south-west one watche, then the winde shynked to the South-west, that we could lye but South south-west 6. glasses, so that at 3. a clock we cast about, and lay North-west 6. glasses, and North north-west a watche being then 8. a clocke the next day.

The 26. day we lay as nigh as we could betwene the North and the North north-east, and sawe the same land againe, and made it to be the fojeland of Fontenay, and the ragges to bee the Seames, which bare some East North-east of vs: and wee stode on till 10. a clocke, then being

being within two leagues we could not bubble the water very faste, for the ebbe forwarde, for the space of our watche: at twelue at noon South south-west one watche afoyenoone.

The 27. day, hauing by before deceiued, and went clearkes to the South-west.

At 7. a clocke afoyenoone of vs, and 57. leagues of

About 9. a clocke, we hoists aboord vs, of whom our men thought it were

But hearing newes of the gale God thanks, and West, and West by South North by West, and the being litle winde.

The 28. we had by our hoysed out our skiffe at 8. noone we had brought North of vs, passing by vs 2. leagues of.

Then we had sight of east, with litle winde all this night about 2. a ton of the Skurrite.

The 29. day at 6. afoyenoone a league of it, and went that at eleven of clocke our ship came aground betw that it was halfe floude.

In this meane time I tuall, and necessaries for

The Spaior, B. Bronckhones, and dnyed with us in the yle being South by Weste hurried in the G. Spalter Bronckhones, houle.

The 30. day about 9. a and William Tolwofen sons with diuers gentlen

Berimes this morning patched many business things were done: a grethe aboard.

The 31. I wrought at ung pittie of some poore med Purser, which rid in a small ship, which they b of theirs aboard of mee: within wards of him, then our comfort would not con turned into our old roade. Spithooke men againe a

being within two leagues of the rockes and lesse, we cast about and stood of south west, because we could not dubble the better most rockes: when we were about wee draue to the Southwardes very faste, for the ebbe set vs West south west, and being spring tydes, it hoysed vs a pace to leewardes, for the space of an houre: then with the flood which was come, we draue againe to windwardes: at twelue at noone it was calme till 6. afternoone, then we stood about larboard tacked, South south west one watche, then at midnight wee cast about and stood ouer North till foure afozenoone.

The 27 day, hauing brought the lande East southeast of vs, wee made it to be Syllye being before deceiued, and went hence East by north to dubble Grymsbie, leauing the Bishop, and his clearkes to the South west wards, which wee before tooke to be the Seames.

At 7. a clocke afozenoone wee sawe the landes ende of England, which bare East by North of vs, and is 7. leagues of from Syllye.

About 9. a clocke, we shewing our flags, and ensigne, and shoting of a peece, there came two boates aboord vs, of whome we thought fish, and some other trifling fresh victuals, with refreshed our men though it were but little.

But hearing newes of them of the health of our Queenes maiestie, and our country in peace, we gaue God thanks, and stood hence East by South hauing brought the Island of Syllye, West, and West by South 3. leagues off vs. At eight at night wee had brought the landes ende North by West, and the Lysard bare East of vs 6. leagues, so wee stood along all night East, being little winde.

The 28. wee had brought the Lysarde West North west of vs, a league and a halfe of, wee hoysed out our skiffe at 8. in the morning, and went along North east by East: at 12 a clocke at noone wee had brought Hellsbide, and the Spanacles rockes which lye two miles of the mayne North of vs, passing by Falmouth: at 2. a clocke afternoone, wee brought Dudman North of vs 2. leagues of.

Then we had sight of Ramme head, and stood on North east by east, and sometime North east, with little winde all day and night following.

This night about 2. a clocke after Midnight dyed Robert Webber, and Walter Skeuington of the Skurrie.

The 29. day at 6. afozenoone wee had brought the Ramhead North of vs, and weare within a league of it, and went in North east next hande, being thicke and foggie, and little winde: so that at eleuen of clocke wee got in within the Island, and their by mistaking of a sounding, our ship came aground betwene the ple, and the mayne, and there sat till 4. a clocke afternoone that it was halfe flabbe.

In this meane time I sent M. Blacoller, and Johnson a shope to prouide men, and fresh victuall, and necessaries for our present neede.

The Spanio, M. Bronkojne, M. Partyn, and many other of the towne, came abooyde to visite me, and dined with mee about 5. a clocke the ship being moored in 7. fadoms water, the castle in the ple being South by East of vs, I went a lande and sawe M. Skeuington, and Robert Webber buried in the Churchyard, and supped with M. Gerryses, and Walter Symberbe, at Walter Bronckhones, and not hauing a boate to come abooyde, I lay a shope all night at that house.

The 30. day about 9. a clocke, with much a doe I furnished away M. Jetties, M. Symberbe, and William Colweson with letters, after dined at M. Blacollers, and made many salutations with diuers gentlemen.

Verimes this morning I sawe a cable bought, cymber for a Dauet, and anker stocks, and dispatched many businesse and at 12. a clocke I came abooyde, and set a cooper to worke, and other things were done: a great many of our weake men went a shope, to refresh themselves, and to lye a shope.

The 31. I wrought abooyde all day, and put our ship, and things in order: Afternoone I hauing pittie of some poore men of Spylbooke which were robbed the night before by a Pyrat named Purser, which rtd in Cawson bay, I consented to go out with the Edward in companie of a small ship, which they had furnished to be their Master, so about 5. afternoone, came 100. men of theirs aboord of mee: about 12. a clocke we set sayle, and by 3. afozeday wee were gotten to windwardes of him, then he set sayle, and went hence to the East wards, and outsayled vs, because our consort would not come neere him: after a small chafe which we gaue him to no effect we returned into our old roade, and there moored the ship about 9. afozenoone, and hence went all the Spylbooke men againe a shope from mee, and thus I ended a troublesome voyage.

An extract out of the discourse of one Lopez a Spaniard before spoken of, touching the foresayd fight of M. Fenton with the Spanish ships together with a report of the proceeding of M. John Drake after his departing from him,



Upon the relation of Pedro Sarmiento concerning the Streights, and for that the king heard, that there were shippes in England preparing for the same Streights, hee commanded Diego Flores de Valdes a noble man of Spaine, to passe thither with 23. shippes, and 3500. men to stoppe the passage of the English men.

There went in this flecte the gouernour of Chile with 500. olde Souldiers & came out of Flanders: but this flecte was the unhappiest shippes that euer went out of Spayne: for before they came from the coast of Spaine a storme tooke them, and cast away 5. of the flecte, and in them about 800. men, and the rest came into Caes. But the king sent them word that they should proceede: and so there went out on the voyage 16. of the shippes, for 2. more of their flecte were much spoiled by the storme which they had.

In these 16. shippes, Pedro Sarmiento was sent to bee gouernour in the streights, & had assigned vnto him 500. men to stay there with him, and hee carreyd with him all kinde of Artificers to make him foys, and other necessaries, with great store of ordnance and other munition.

This flecte because it was late, did winter on the coaste of Brasil, in the riuer of Genero and from thence they went when the winter was past, and about the height of 42. degrees they had a sudden storme, so that Diego Flores beat it by and downe 22. dayes, in which time he lost one of the best shippes that he had, which had in her 300. men, and 20. women, that went to inhabitte the streights: and in this shippe also was most part of the munition which should haue bene left in the streights, so in the end the storme grew to be so great, that the shippes were not able to endure it at any longer, but were put backe vnto an Island, called Sancta Catalina: and there hee found a barke wherein were some Fryers going for the riuer of Plate: whyle Fryers tolde him of two great English shippes, and a pynnelle, which had taken them, but tooke nothing from them, nor did them any harme, but onely asked them for the king of Spaynes shippes.

Whereupon Diego Flores, knowing that these English shippes would goe for the Streights, determined to goe thither although it was in the moneth of Februarie, and choosling 10. shippes of the 15. that were left, he left two shippes which were not in case to goe to sea at the Island, and the other three shippes which were old, and shaken with the storme he put into them all the women, and sick men, in all the flecte, and sent them to the riuer of Genero, and hee with the other 10. returned againe for the Streights.

The 3. shippes in which the sick men and women were, went to Brasil, and there they founde wiche in the port of S. Vincent the two English shippes before mentioned.

They would haue had the English men to haue gone out of the harbour, and thereupon they fell to fight, and because that these 3. shippes were weake with the storme, and the men that they had were the worst in all the flecte, the English men easely put them to the worst, and sunke one of them, and might haue sunke another, if the English men would: but they minded not the destruction of any man: for that is the greatest vertue that can be in a man, that when he may do hurt, yet hee will not doe it: so the English men went from this port to Spirito Sancto, where they had victuals for their Marchandise, and so they went backe for England, without doing of any harme in the country.

The cause why these English shippes vnder the conduct of Master Fenton went not to the streights, I know not: but some say that they were put backe by foule weacher: other some say that it was for feare of the kings shippes.

But the pynnelle of these two shippes went from them, in which was Captaine John Drake: the cause why they parted I know not, but the pynnelle came into the riuer of Plate, and within 5. leagues of leale Island, not far from the place where the Earle of Cumberland's shippes did take in fresh water, hee was cast away vpon a ledge of rocks: but the men were saved in their boate, which were in number 18. who went a shoare on the Nozelylloe, and went a daies Iourney into the land, and met with the Saouages, which are no men eaters, but take all the Christians that they can, and make them slaues.

But the English men fought with them, and the saouages slew 5. of them, and tooke 13. aliue, which were with the Saouages about 15. moneths. But the Master of the pynnelle, whose name was Richard Fawcett being not willing to indure the misery that hee was in, and being knowledg that there was a towne of Christians on the other side of the riuer, he in a night cal-

5. Shippes of this flecte cast away on the coast of Spaine.

M. Fenton took these Fryers.

In fight hee sunke our 2. English shippes & the Spanish shippes

led John Drake, and another had but two oares, and so were 3. dayes before they might way that went to waite at last came to an house where the Spaniards, white and one of the Indians with 4. boyesmen, and brought

This captaine clothed in a cable, and they were But the Viceroy of Peru but the other too were ke more of their affaires.

Upon this comming of to seeke the rest of the En ple, but I am not certaine

A letter written

containing a re b

After I have receiued your kinnesse to me proceeding, I receive benefit your co

that you do not onely becom for which I would to be known to those that haue pen, wherewith you cease fires to some parte, though malice of twicked men, the at least few) to proceede aning of the christian faith, vith. Alas the labourers are to increase the number, a chose parts from out of ch

How to answer our friend land, of Terra noua, for fit and therefore be certain the like among vs: who, 50. which commeth to p neighbors haue had great paines perely to go in pson that I do searche the Englishman hath done. So to let this passe, you shall ards that come to take C 02 30. more that come fro and furniture of munition the harbours where they sit an old custome of the count more then a boat of maine lent intruders, who do offe it may be well nere true and they make all wet in bywarde. Of the freer most of their shipping is sanably well appointed,

les John Drake, and another young man which was with them, & took a very little Canow, which had but two oares, and so passed to the other side of the riuer, which is about 9. leagues broad, and were 3. dayes before they could get ouer without meate, and comming to land, they hit upon a high way that went towards the christians: and seeing the footing of hoyses, they followe it, and at last came to an house where there was come sowed, and there they met with Indians seruants vnto the Spaniards, which gaue them to eate, and clothes to couer them, for they were all naked, and one of the Indians went to the to tone, and told them of the Englishmen: so the capitaine sent 4. hoysmen, and brought them to the towne behind them.

This capitaine clothed them, and provided lodging for them, and John Drake diered at the capitaine table, and they were all very well intreated, the capitaine purposing to send the for Spaine. But the Viceroy of Peru hauing newes hereof, sent for them, and so John Drake was sent to him, but the other two were kept there, because they were married in the countrey, so that I know no more of their affaires,

John Drake sent to the Viceroy of Peru.

Upon this comming of the Englishmen, there were prepared 50. hoysmen to goe ouer the riuer to seeke the rest of the Englishmen, and also certain Spaniards that were among the sassage people, but I am not certaine whether they went forward or not.

A letter written to M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple,

containing a report of the true state and commodities of New found land,  
by M. Anthonie Parkhurst Gentleman, 1578.

**M** After Hakluyt, after most heartie commendations, with like thanks for your manifold kindnesse to me shewed, not for any merites that hitherto haue bene mine, but wholly preceeding, I must needs confesse, of your owne good nature, which is so ready yrell to benefit your countrey and al such poore men as haue any sparke in them of good desires, that you do not onely become their friend, but also humble your selfe as a seruant in their affaires, for which I would to God I were once in place where I might cause your burning zeale to bee knowne to those that haue authority, power, and abilitie to recompence your trauelling mind and pen, wherewith you cease not day nor night to labour and trauell to bring your good and godly desires to some passe, though not possible to that happy ende that you most thirst for: for such is the malice of wicked men, the diuels instruments in this our age, that they cannot suffer any thing (or at least few) to prosper and prosper, that tendeth to the setting forth of Gods glory, & the amplifying of the christian faith, wherewith hitherto princes haue not bene so diligent as their calling requirer. Alas, the labourers as yet are few, the harvest great, I trust God hath made you an instrument to increase the number, and to moue men of power, to redeeme the people of New found land, and those parts from out of the captiuitie of that spirituall Babilon, the diuell.

As to answer some part of your letter touching the sunny nauies that come to New found land, of Terra noua, for sith you shall vnderstand that some sith not weere the other by 200. leagues, and therefore the certaintie is not knowne, & some yeeres come many more then other some, as I see the like among vs: who, since my first trauell being but 4. yeeres, are increased from 30. saile to 50. which commeth to passe chiefly by the imagination of the Westerne men, who thinke their neighbors haue had greater gaines then in verp deed they haue, for that they see me to take such paines yere ly to go in wyper person, they also suppose that I find some secret commodity by reason that I do search the harbours, creekes and hauens, and also the land much more then euer any Englishman hath done. Surely I am glad that it is increased, wherof soeuer it springeth. But to let this passe, you shall vnderstand that I am informed that there are about 100. saile of Spaniards that come to take God (who make all wet, and doe dye it when they come home) besides 20. or 30. more that come fro Biskae, to kil Whale for craime. These be better appointed for shipping and furniture of munition, then any nation, sauing the Englishmen, who commonly are loyes of the harbours where they sith, and do vse all strangers helpe in sithing if need require, according to an old custome of the countrey, which thing they do willingly, so that you take nothing from them more then a boat or twaine of sale, in respect of your protection of them against rowers of other violence iuruders, who do often put them from good harbour, &c. As touching their tunnage, I thinke it may be well nere five or sixe thousand: but of Portugals there are not lightly about 50. saile, and they make all wet in like sorte, whose tunnage may amount to thre thousand tunnes and bywarde. Of the French nation and Bitcons, are about one hundred and fiftie sailes, the most of their shipping is verp small, not past fortye tunne, among which some are great and reasonably well appointed, better then the Portugals, and not so well as the Spaniards, and the

pp.

burden

burden of them may be some 7000. tunne. Their shipping is from all partes of France and Britaine, and the Spaniards from most parts of Spaine, the Portugals from Aueiro and Viana, and from 2. or 3. portes more. The trade that our nation hath to Island, maketh that the English are not there in such numbers as other nations.

How to certifye you of the fertilitie and goodnesse of the countrey, you shall vnderstand that I haue in sundry places sowne Wheate, Barlie, Rie, Oates, Peanes, Pease and seedes of herbes, kernels, plumstones, nuts, all which haue prospered as in England. The countrey yeeldeth many good trees of fruite, as Filberds in some places, but in all places Cherie trees, and a kind of pear tree meete to graffe on. As for Roses, they are as common as Brambles here: Straberberies, Dewberies, and Raspes, as common as grass. The timber is most Firre, yet plentie of Pineapple trees: few of these two kindes meete to make a ship of thre score and ten: but neere the grand baie of Cape Britton big, and sufficient for any ship. There bee also oakes and thornes, there is in all the countrey plentie of Birch and Alder, which be the meekest wood for cole, and also Willow which will serue for many other purposes. As touching the kindes of fish beside Cod, there are Herrings, Salmones, Choynebacke, Blasse, or rather wee should call them Flounders, Dog fish, and another most excellent of taste, called of vs a Cat, Dillers, & Pul kles, in which I haue found pearles aboute 40. in one Spul kle, and generally all haue some, great or small. I heard of a Portugall that found one worth 300. ducches: There are also other kinds of Shel fish, as limpets, cockle, wilkes, lobsters, and crabs: also a fish like a \*Smelt which commeth on shore, and another that hath the like property called a Squid: these be the fishes, which (when I please to bee merie with my old companions) I say, doe come on shore when I commaund them in the name of the 5. portes, and cometh them by such like wordes: These also bee the fishes which I may sweepe with byoomes on a heape, and neuer wet my foote, onely pronouncing two or thre wordes whatsoeuer they be appointed by any man, so they heare my voyce: the vertue of the wordes bee small, but the nature of the fish great and strange. For the Squid, whose nature is to come by night as well as by day, I tell them, I set him a candle to see his way, with which he is much deligthen, or els commeth to wonder at it, as doe our fresh water fish, the other commeth also in the night, but chiefly in the day, being forced by the Cod that would deuour him, and therefore for feare comming to neere the shore, is driuen bye by the surge of the Sea on the pibble and sands. Of these being as good as the Smelt, you may take by with a house net, as plentifully as you doe Wheate in a howell, sufficient in thre or foure howers for a whole Citie. There bee also other fishes which I tell those that are desirous of strange newes that I take as fast as one would gather up stones, and them I take with a long pole and hook. Sea marrie say they, wee beleue so, and that you catch all the rest you bring home in that sort, from Portugals and Frenchmen. How surely, but thus I doe: with thre hookes stretched forth in the end of a pole, I make as it were an Cete speare, with which I picke those Flounders as fast as you would take by fritters, with a sharpe pointed sicke, and with that tooke I may take by in lesse then halfe a day Lobsters sufficient to finde thre hundred men for a dayes meate. This pastime ended, I shew them that for my pleasure I take a great Halkie I haue, and say no more to him then thus: Goe fetch me this rebellious fish that obedieth not this Gentleman that commeth from Kent and Cheshire, bringing them to the high water marke, and when hee doubteth that any of those great Coddes by reason of the slaying ground bee like to tumble into the Sea againe, hee will warily take herde and carrie him by backe to the heape of his fellowes. This doeth cause my friendes to wonder, and at the first hearing to iudge them notorious lies, but they laugh and are merie when they heare the meanes how each tale is true.

I told you once I doe remember how in my trauell into Africa and America, I found trees that bare Dillers, which was strange to you, till I told you that their boughes hung in the water, on which both Dillers and Pul kles did sicke fast, as their proprietie is to stikes and timber.

Howe to let these merie tales pass, and to come to earnest matters againe, you shall vnderstand that New found land is in a temperate Climate, and not so colde as foolish Mariners doe say, who finde it colde sometimes when plentie of Ice lie neere the shore: but by in the land they shall finde it hotter then in England in many partes of the countrey toward the South. This colde commeth by an accidentall meanes, as by the Ice that commeth flecting from the North partes of the world, and not by the situation of the countrey, or nature of the Climate. The countrey is full of little small riuers all the peere long proceeding from the mountaines, ingreinded both of snow and raine: fewe springs that euer I could finde or heare of, excepte it bee toward the South: in some places or rather in most places, great lakes with plentie of fish, the countrey

Called by the Spaniards Anchoas, and by the Portugals Capetinas.

very most coured with water Beeres euery where, so heere, and hardly you matters we may take like the other kind of birdes store, may drie them on a place Penguins, and cannot see that fish neere the grand mapes with these birdes grand baie, and in the Sea beastes, as Luzernes and I did see them farre off in the water, and bigger than I read to bee in the countrey Northward, Vares and fish before our faces, whose sons were turning of by the shoot and set the dogges to take your fish before you be forced.

How to shew you my red of late by our nation: called of the Frenchmen Isle, which places it by throughout all New found land please the Queenes maiestie lately discovered: but rich Mines in more times we haue seen, where we are very likely by the heere and forie and better: choosing these two commodities some knowledge in such and most diligent inquirers who cried on mee to write haunce: wherefore this name, should be inhabited thereof, as I will shew you that I haue red and in Britton. I had almost forgot black, white & gray: of Mines of iron and copper our great benefite, if our home some of the oare of bene deuced by the vnder to haue searched this riuer benefited our countrey: appointed me of the salt defending them two peeres them.

By meanes whereof I was called to come home into Portugall, to demaund the Queenes maiestie & heere as they haue banished shall be worth 600. li. of way I were best to take up there are that doe



very most couered with woods of firre, yet in many places indifferent good graille, and plentie of Beares euery where, so that you may kill of them as oft as you list: their flesh is as good as porck here, and hardly you may knowe the one from the other, if it be powdered but two dayes. Of Divers we may take like stoye. There are Sea Gulls, Sparres, Duckes, wilde geese, and many other kind of birdes stoye, too long to write, especially at one Island named Penguin, where we may drie them on a planke into our ship as many as shall lade her. These birdes are also called penguins, and cannot flie, there is more meate in one of these, then in a goose: the Frenchmen that fish neere the grand baie, doe bring small stoye of flesh with them, but virtuallly they alwayes with these birdes. Nowe againe, for Genison plentie, especially to the North about the grand baie, and in the South neere Cape Race, and Plelance: there are many other kind of beasts, as Luzernes and other mightie beastes like to Camels in greatnesse, and their feete clowen, I doo see them farre off not able to discerne them perfectly, but their steps shewed that their feete were clowen, and bigger then the feete of Camels, I suppose them to be a kind of Buffes which I read to bee in the countreys adiacent; and very many in the firme land. There bee also to the Northward, Hares and Foxes in all partes so plentifully, that at noone dayes they take away our flesh before our faces, within lesse then halfe a paire of butts length, where foure and twentie persons were turning of drie fish, and two dogges in sight, yet stode they not in feare till wee gaue shoot and set the dogges vpon them: the Beares be also as bold, which will not spare at middaie to take your fish before your face, and I beleue assuredly would not hurt any bodie unless they be forced.

Now to shew you my fauile what places I suppose meetest to inhabite in those partes discouered of late by our uation: There is neere about the mouth of the grand baie, an excellent harbour called of the Frenchmen Chateau, and one Island in the very entrie of the streight called Bell Isle, which places if they be peopled and well fortified (as there are stone and things meete for it throughout all New found land) we shall be lordes of the whole fishing in small time, if it doe please the Duenes maiestie, and from thence send wood and cole with all necessaries to Laborador lately discouered: but I am of opinion, and doe most stedfastly beleue that we shall finde as rich Mines in more temperate places and Climates, and more profitable for fishing then any yet we haue vied, where we shall haue not farre from thence plentie of salte made by fire undoubtedly, and very likely by the heate of the Sunne, by reason I finde salte kernes on the rockes in nine and fortye and better: these places may bee found for salte in thre and fortye. I knowe more touching these two commodities last remembered, then any man of our nation doth: for that I haue some knowledge in such matters, and haue most desired the finding of them by painefull crauell, and most diligent inquirie. Now to be short, for I haue bene ouerlong by master Buclers means, who cried on mee to write at large, and of as many things as I call to minde woorthy of remembrance: wherefore this one thing more, I could wish the Island in the mouth of the riuer of Canada, should be inhabited, and the riuer searched, for that there are many things which may rise thereof, as I will shew you hereafter. I could find in my heart to make prooffe whether it be true or no that I haue read and heard of Frenchmen and Portugals to bee in that riuer, and about Cape Britton. I had almost forgot to speake of the plentie of wolues, & to shew you that there be Foxes, black, white & gray: other beastes I knowe none sauethose before remembred. I found also certaine Mines of iron and copper in S. Johns, and in the Island of Iron, which things might turne to our great benefite, if our men had desire to plant thereabout, for prooffe whereof I haue brought home some of the aare of both soyers. And thus I ende assuring you on my faith, that if I had not bene deceiued by the vile Portugals, descending of the Jewes and Judas kind, I had not failed to haue searched this riuer, and all the coast of Cape Britton, what might haue bene found to haue benefited our countrey: but they breaking their bands, and falsifying their faith and promise, did appointed me of the salt they should haue brought me in part of recompence of my good seruice in defending them two yeeres against French Rowers that had spoiled them, if I had not defended them.

By meanes whereof they made me loose not onely the searching of the countrey, but also forced me to come home with great losse aboue, 600.li. for recompence whereof I haue sent my man into Portugall, so demaund iustice at the kings hand, if not, I must pue vp my supplication to the Duenes maiestie & her honourable counsell, so grant me leaue to stay here so much of their goods as they haue dammified mee, or els that I may take of them in New found land, as much silue as shall be worth, 600.li. or as much as the salte might haue made. I may you aduertise mee what way I were best to take, and what hope there may be of a recompence if I followe the suite: many there are that doe comfort mee, and doe bidde mee proceede, for that her Maiestie and the

counsell doe tender yoor fishermen, who with me haue sustained 300. pound losse in that voyage. And to conclude, if you and your friend shall thinke me a man sufficient and of credite, to seeke the Riuell of St. John, of the riuer of Canada, with any part of the firme land of Cape Britton, I shall giue my diligence for the true and perfect discouerie, and leaue some part of mine owne businesse to further the same, and thus I end committing you to God. From Willow the 13. of Nouember, 1578.

Yours to vs and commaund,  
Anthonie Parkhurst,

### The Letters Patents graunted by her Maiestie to Sir Humfrey

Gilbert knight, for the inhabiting and planting of our people in America.



ELIZABETH by the grace of God, Queene of England, &c. To all people to whom these presents shall come, greeting. Know ye that of our especiall grace, certaine science and meere motion, we haue giuen and granted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, doe giue and graunt to our trustie and welbeloued seruauant Sir Humfrey Gilbert of Compton, in our Countie of Devonshire knight, and to his heires and assignes for euer, free libertie and licence from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, to discouer, finde, searchout, and viewe such remote, heathen and barbarous lands, countries and territories not actually possessed of any Christian prince or people, as to him, his heires and assignes, and to euery or any of them, shall seeme good, and the same to haue, hold, occupie and enioy to him, his heires and assignes for euer, with all commodities, iurisdictions and royalties both by sea and land: and the said Sir Humfrey and all such as from time to time by licence of vs, our heires and successours, shall goe or trauell thither, to inhabite or remaine there, to build and fortifie at the discretion of the said Sir Humfrey, and of his heires and assignes, the statutes or actes of parliament made against fugitiues, or against such as shall depart, remaine out of our Realme of England without licence, or any other acte, statute, lawe, or matter whatsoeuer to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding. And we doe like wise by these presents, for vs, our heires and successours, giue full authoritie and power to the said Sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery of them, that he and they, and euery, or any of them, shall and may at all and euery time and times hereafter, haue, take, and lead in the same voyages, to trauel thitherward, or to inhabite there with him, and euery or any of them, such, and so many of our Subjects as shall willingly accompany him and them, and euery or any of them with sufficient shipping, and furniture for their transportations, so that none of the same persons, nor any of them be such as hereafter shall be specially restrained by vs, our heires and successours. And further, that hee the said Sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, and euery or any of them shall haue, hold, occupie and enioy to him, his heires or assignes, and euery of them for euer; all the soile of all such lands, countries and territories so to bee discovered or possessed as aforesayd, and of all Cities, Castles, Townes and villages, and places in the same, with the rites, royalties and iurisdictions, as well marine as other, within the sayde landes or countries of the Seas thereunto adioyning, to be had or used with full power to dispose thereof, and of euery part thereof in fee simple or other wise, according to the order of the lawes of England, as neere as the same conveniently may bee, at his, and their will and pleasure, to any person then being, or that shall remaine within the Allegiance of vs, our heires & successours, paying unto vs for all seruices, duties & demands, the fifth part of all the oare of gold & silver, that from time to time, & at all times after such discouerie, subduing and possessing shall be there gotten: all which lands, countries and territories, shall for euer be holden by the said Sir Humfrey, his heires and assignes, of vs, our heires and successours by homage, and by the sayd payment of the sayd fifth part before referred onely for all seruices.

And moreover, we doe by these presents for vs, our heires and successours, giue and graunt licence to the sayde Sir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires or assignes, & to euery of them, that hee and they, and euery or any of them shall, and may from time to time, and all times for euer hereafter, for his and their defence, encounter, expulse, repell, and resist, as well by Sea as by land, and by all other waies whatsoeuer, all, and euery such person and persons whatsoeuer, as without the speciall licence and liking of the said Sir Humfrey, and of his heires and assignes, shall attempt to inhabite within the sayd countries, or any of them, or within the space of two hundred leagues

neere

neere to the place of planting or inhabiting within the sayd her Maiestie, within any of their territories and adioyning, or that shall by Sea or land, the said their companies: giue licence to the said Sir Humfrey, his heires hereafter to take and set on foot, with their shipping, sayd Sir Humfrey, or by howeough or harborough, Realmes and dominions, yell or shipwracke one goods, and furniture, tion of him the sayd writing in more perfect sealed and inhabited after encouragement of all such countreys so by hee of the allegiance, sayd Sir Humfrey, and all persons, being of our aynd within this our Realme of England, his heires or assignes, shall hereafter, trauel to his heires, that they and euery or any of them, within any the lands, and enioy all the puiissance, any law, custome

And so farre as touching the said territories as themselves in those territories each with other, unto they shall attaine with pleasure and contentment to his heires and assignes to time for euer hereafter by the Seas thither, a pardon, gouerne and vnder in causes capitall or other as shall from time to time of possession, or territories as aforesayd, or where the said Sir Humfrey or companies, shall inhabit, lawes and ordinances, or any of them due, so at waies that the same be agreeable to the forme of the Christian faith or religion of the subjects of our people as their immediate lord and successours, giue as the said Sir William Cecil knight of England, of vs for any four of them

were to the place of places within such countries as aforesayd, if they shall not bee before planted  
 or inhabited within the limites aforesayd, with the subjects of any christian prince, being in amitie  
 with her Majesty, where the said Sir Humphrey, his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or his or their,  
 or any of their associates or companies, shall within sixe yeeres next ensuing, make their dwellings  
 and abiding, or that shall enterpryse or attempt at any time hereafter vnlawfully to any, either  
 by Sea or Land: the said Sir Humphrey, his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or his or their, or any of  
 their companies: giving and granting by these presents, further power and authoritie to the said  
 Sir Humphrey, his heires and assignes, and euery of them from time to time, & at all times for euer  
 hereafter to take and surprize by all manner of meanes whatsoever, all and euery person and per-  
 sons, with their shippes, vessels, and other goods and furniture, which without the licence of the  
 sayd Sir Humphrey, or his heires or assignes, as aforesayd, shall be found traffiquing into any har-  
 borough or harboroughs, creeke or creekes, within the limites aforesayd, (the subjects of our  
 Realmes and dominions, and all other persons in amitie with vs, being diuied by force of tem-  
 pest or shipwracke ouely excepted) and those persons and euery of them with their ships, vessels,  
 goods, and furniture, to detain and possess, as of good and lawfull prize, according to the discre-  
 tion of him the sayd Sir Humphrey, his heires and assignes, and of euery of any of them. And for  
 vnting in moze perfect league and amitie of such countreys, landes and territories so to bee pos-  
 sessed and inhabited as aforesayd, with our Realmes of England and Ireland, and for the bet-  
 ter encouragement of men to this enterpryse: we doe by these presents graunt, and declare, that  
 all such countreys so hereafter to bee possessed and inhabited as aforesayd, from thenceforth shall  
 bee of the allegiance of vs, our heires, and successours. And we doe graunt to the said Sir Hum-  
 phrey, his heires and assignes, and to all and euery of them, and to all and euery other person and  
 persons, being of our allegiance, whose names shall be noted or entered in some of our courts of Re-  
 cord within this our Realme of England, and that with the assent of the sayd Sir Humphrey, his  
 heires or assignes, shall now in this iourney for discoverie, or in the second iourney for conquest  
 hereafter, trauele to such lands, countries and territories as aforesayd, and to theire and euery of their  
 heires, that they and euery of any of them being either borne within our said realmes of England,  
 or Ireland, or within any other place within our allegiance, and which hereafter shall be inhabiting  
 within any the landes, countries and territories, with such licence as aforesayd, shall, and may haue,  
 and enjoy all the priuiledges of free denizens and persons native of England, and within our alle-  
 giance, any law, custome, or vsage to the contrary notwithstanding.

And so farre as vpon the finding out, discovering, and inhabiting of such remote lands, coun-  
 tries and territories as aforesayd, it shall be necessarie for the safetie of all men that shall aduenture  
 themselves in those iournies or voiajes, to determine to liue together in Christian peace and ciuill  
 quietnesse each with other, where by euery one may with moze pleasure and profit, enjoy that where-  
 unto they shall attaine with great paine and perill: we for vs, our heires and successours are like-  
 wise pleased and contented, and by these presents doe giue and graunt to the said Sir Humphrey and  
 his heires and assignes for euer, that he and they, and euery of any of them, shall and may from time  
 to time for euer hereafter within the said mentioned remote lands and countreys, and in the way  
 by the Seas thither, and from thence, haue full and meere power and authoritie to correct, punish,  
 pardon, gouerne and rule by their, and euery of any of their good discretions and pollicies, as well  
 in causes capitall or criminall, as ciuill, both marine, and other, all such our subjects and others,  
 as shall from time to time hereafter aduenture themselves in the said iournies or voiajes habita-  
 tion or possession, or that shall at any time hereafter inhabit any such lands, countreys or territo-  
 ries as aforesayd, or that shall abide within two hundred leagues of any the said place or places,  
 where the said Sir Humphrey or his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or any of his or their associates  
 or companies, shall inhabit within the yeeres next ensuing the date hereof, according to such sta-  
 tutes, lawes and ordinances, as shall be by him the said Sir Humphrey, his heires and assignes, or euery  
 of any of them devised or established for the better gouernment of the said people as aforesayd  
 so alwaies that the said statutes, lawes and ordinances may be, as neere as conueniently may, as  
 agreeable to the forme of the lawes, & pollicie of England: and also, so as they be not against the true  
 christian faith or religio now possessed in the church of England, nor in any wise to withstand any  
 of the subjects or people of those lands or places from the allegiance of vs, our heires or successours,  
 as their immediate soveraignes vnder God. And further we do by these presents for vs, our heires  
 and successours, giue and graunt full power and authoritie to our trustie and welbeloued counsellor,  
 Sir William Cecil knight, lord Burleigh, our high treasurer of England, and to the lord treasurer  
 of England, of vs for the time being, and to the priuie counsell of vs, our heires and successours,  
 or any foure of them for the time being, that hee, they, or any foure of them, shall, and may from

time to time and at all times hereafter, under his or their bandes or Seales by vertue of these pre-  
sents, authoritie and licence the sayd Sir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires and assignes, and euery of a-  
ny of them by him and themselues, or by their or any of their sufficient attornies, deputies, officers,  
ministers, factors and seruants, to imbarke and transport out of our realmes of England and Ire-  
land, all, or any of his or their goods, and all or any the goods of his or their associates and compan-  
ies, and euery of any of them, with such other necessaries and commodities of any our Realmes,  
as to the sayd Lord Treasurer or foure of the pryncie counsell of vs, our heyres or Successors for the  
time being, as aforesaid, shall be from time to time by his or their wisdoms or discretions thought  
meete and conuenient for the better reliefe and supportacion of him the sayd Sir Humfrey, his  
heires and assignes, and euery of any of them, and of his and their, and euery of any of their said as-  
sociates and companies, any acte, statute, law, or other thing to the contrarie in any wise not with-  
standing.

Wherbye alwayes, and our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby declare to all Christian  
kings, princes and States, that if the sayd Sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or any  
other by their licence or appointment, shall at any time or times hereafter robbe or spoyle by Sea  
or by land, or doe any acte of violence and vniuall hostilitie to any of the subiects of vs, our heires,  
or Successors, or any of the subiectes of any king, prince, ruler, gouernour of state being then in  
perfect league and amitie with vs, our heires or Successors, and that vpon such iniurie, or vpon  
iust complaint of any such prince, ruler, gouernour of state, or their subiectes, we, our heyres or  
Successors shall make open proclamation within any the portes of our Realme of England com-  
modious, that the sayd Sir Humfrey, his heires or assignes, or any other to whom these our let-  
ters patents may extend, shall within the terme to be limited by such proclamacions, make full re-  
stitution and satisfaction of all such iniuries done, so as both wee and the sayd princes, or others  
so complaining, may hold vs and themselues fully contented: And that if the sayd Sir Humfrey, his  
heires and assignes, shall not make or cause to be made satisfaction accordingly, within such time  
so to be limited: that then it shall be lawfull to vs, our heires & Successors, to put the sayd Sir Hum-  
frey, his heires and assignes, and adherents, and all the inhabitants of the said places to be disco-  
uered as is aforesaid, or any of them out of our allegiance and protection, and that from and after  
such time of putting out of protection the sayd Sir Humfrey, and his heires, assignes, adherents  
and others so to be put out, and the sayd places within their habitation, possession and rule, shall be  
out of our protection and allegiance, and free for all princes and others, to pursue with hostilitie  
as being not our subiects, nor by vs any way to be aduowed, maintained or defended, nor to be  
holden as any of ours, nor to our protection, dominion or allegiance any way belonging, for that  
express mention, &c. In witness whereof, &c. Witness our selfe at Westminster the 11. day of  
June, the 20. yeere of our raigne.

Per ipsam Regiam, &c.

**A report of the voyage and successe thereof, attempted in the yeere**  
of our Lord, 1583. by Sir Humfrey Gilbert knight, with other Gentlemen assisting him  
in that action, intended to discover and to plant Christian inhabitants in place conueni-  
ent, vpon those large and ample countries extended Northward from the Cape of Flori-  
da, lying vnder very temperate Climes, esteemed fertile and rich in Minerals, yet not in  
the actual possession of any Christian prince, written by M. Edward Haies Gentleman,  
and principal actor in the same voyage, who alone continued vnto the end, and by Gods  
special assistance returned home with his retinue safe and entire.

**M**any voyages haue bene pretended, yet hitherto neuer any thoroughly accomplished by our  
nation, of exact discouerie into the bowels of those maine, ample, and vast countries, ex-  
tended infinitely into the North from 30. degrees, or rather from 25. deg. of Septentrion-  
all latitude, neither hath a right way bin taken of planting a Christian habitation and  
regiment vpon the same, as well may appeare both by the little wee yet do actually possesse therein,  
and by our ignorance of the riches and secrets within those landes, which vnto this day we knowe  
chiefly by the trauel & report of other nations, & most of the French, who albeit they cannot challenge  
such right and interest into the said countries, as we neither these many yeeres haue had oportuni-  
tie nor means so great, to discover & to plant (being vexed with the calamities of intestine warres)  
as we haue had by the inestimable benefit of our long & happy peace: yet haue they both waies per-  
formed more, & had long since attained a sure possession and seled government of many prouinces  
in those northerly parts of America, if their many attempts into those forren and remote landes  
had not bene impeached by their garbods at home.

The

The first discouery of  
Caber, and Sebastian his  
great tract of land stretch  
Newfoundland: all which  
if with like diligence the se  
coast, and out parts thereo  
and reuennue had bene mi  
of Christian religion had  
brought forth a most plent  
the chiefe intent of such as  
ther foundation shall in eu

And although we can  
hundreds of men spured by  
yet the euents do the to the  
hath not permitted so abun  
wealed vnto those Indiel

But most assuredly, th  
ward at the time assigned  
both of thole ample count  
standing God in his wisde  
and misty knowledge, by  
will enough in the yeare  
of his will against the du

In the meane while, t  
nation vnto this attempte,  
suartice, he may assure h  
Gods protection and alli  
vpon the land: whom G  
but not to build vpon so b

Otherwise, if his mot  
honor of God, compellio  
full and dreadfull maner  
sed countreymen, willin  
ple within this realme di  
nificant God, wherwit  
man.

And the same, who se  
confidently repose in the  
the time is complet of re  
him an instrument to effe  
by the Spaniards and  
hath referued the same to

For not long after the  
West Indies for Spain  
rida Northwards, to the

And whensoever affe  
ueries) did attempt any  
prouen most unhappie,  
of many both religious  
der the Spanish iurisdic  
might not exceed: as by

The French, as the  
by how much the Span  
vnto Florida, and the  
ping vpon our right, an  
they had bene the first  
but left off to discover  
permitted them to estab

The first discovery of these coasts (never heard of before) was well begun by John Cabot the father, and Sebastian his sonne, an Englishman borne, who were the first finders out of all that great tract of land stretching from the cape of Florida unto those Islands which we now call the Virgin Islands: all which they brought and annexed unto the crowne of England. Since when, if with like diligence the search of Inland countries had bene followed, as the discovery upon the coast, and out parts thereof was performed by those two men: no doubt her Spanishes territories and revenue had bene mightily enlarged and advanced by this day. And which more is: the seed of Christian religion had bene sowed amongst those pagans, which by this time might have brought forth a most plentiful harvest and copious congregation of Christians. Which must be the chiefe intent of such as shall make any attempt that way: or els whatsoever is builded upon this foundation shall never obtaine happy successe nor continuance.

The coasts of Florida northward, first discovered by the English nation.

And although we can not precisely iudge (which onely belongeth to God) what have bene the humors of men stirred up to great attempts of discovering & plaving in those remote countries: yet the events do shew that either Gods cause hath not bene chiefly preferred by them, or els God hath not permitted so abundant grace as the light of his word and knowledge of him to be revealed unto those Infidels as for the appointed time.

But most assuredly, the onely cause of religion hitherto hath kept backe, and will also bring forward at the time assigned by God, an effectual and complet discovery and possession by Christians both of those ample countries and the riches within them, hitherto concealed: whereof notwithstanding God in his wilddome hath permitted to be revealed, from time to time, a certaine obscure and misty knowledge, by little and little, to allure the mindes of men that way (which els will be well enough in the scale of his cause) and thereby to prepare us unto a readinesse for the execution of his will against the due time attained, of calling those pagans unto Christianity.

It is his comendation.

In the meane while, it behoueth every man of great calling, in whom is any instinct of inclination unto this attempt, to examine his owne motions: which if the same proceed of ambition or avarice, he may assure himselfe it cometh not of God, and therefore can not have confidence of Gods protection and assistance against the violence (els irresistible) both of sea, and infinite perils upon the land: whom God yet may use an instrument to further his cause and glorie some way, but not to build upon so bad a foundation.

Otherwise, if his motives be derived from a vertuous & heroycall minde, preferring chiefly the honor of God, compassion of poore Infidels captiued by the deuil, extannizing in most wonderfull and dreadfull manner over their bodies and soules: advancement of his honest and well disposed countrey-men, willing to accompany him in such honourable actions: reliefe of sunnyp people within this realme distressed. All these be honorable purposes, imitating the nature of the munificent God, wherewith he is well pleased, who will assist such an attour beyonde expectation of man.

And the same, who feeleth this inclination in himselfe, by all likelihood, may hope, or rather confidently repose in the providance of God, that in this last age of the world (or likely never) the time is complet of receiving also these Gentils into merchandize: And that God will raise him an instrument to effect the same. It seemng probable by event of precedent attempts made by the Spaniards and French sundry times: that the countreyes lying North of Florida, God hath reserved the same to be reduced unto Christian civiltie by the English nation.

Probable conjectures that the lands north of Florida, are reserved for the English nation to possess.

For not long after that Christopher Columbus had discovered the Islands and continent of the West Indies for Spaine, John and Sebastian Cabot made discovery also of the rest from Florida Northwards, to the behoofe of England.

And whensoever afterwards the Spaniards (very prosperous in all their Southerne discoveries) did attempt any thing into Florida and those regions inclining to wards the North: they proceeded most unhappily and were at length discouraged utterly by the hard and lamentable successe of many both religious and vallant in armes, endeavouring to bring those Northerly regions also under the Spanish iurisdiction: as if God had prescribed limites unto the Spanish nation which they might not exceed: as by their owne getts recordeed may be aptly gathered.

The Spaniards prosper in the Southerne discoveries, yet unhappily in these Northerly parts.

The French, as they can pretend lesse title unto these Northerne parts then the Spaniards, by how much the Spaniards made the first discovery of the same continent so farre Northward as unto Florida, and the French did but reuiew that before discovered by the English nation, usurping upon our right, and imposing names upon countreyes, riuers, bays, capes, or headlands, as if they had bene the first finders of those coasts, which iniurie we offered not unto the Spaniards, but left off to discover when we approached the Spanish limits: even so God hath not hitherto permitted them to establish a possession permanent upon an others right, notwithstanding they

The French are but discoverers upon our right.

manifest

ent.  
le pro  
p of a  
sices,  
to In  
compa  
sines,  
of the  
ought  
y his  
aid ab  
with  
Christian  
of any  
Sea  
rices,  
ben in  
upon  
yes of  
to com  
ur led  
full re  
deber  
y his  
y time  
Hum  
disco  
after  
erents  
all bee  
sistite  
to be  
of that  
day of  
ere  
ghim  
ueni  
f Flo  
not in  
eman,  
Gods  
by our  
es, ex  
temi  
on and  
herein,  
e know  
halfe  
exuni  
acres)  
es per  
vinces  
landes  
The

The French also intrusted in those parts of America. A good encouragement for the English nation, to proceed in the conquests of the North of America.

The word of God mooveth circularly.

The planting of Gods word must be handled with reverence.

In actions coloured by pretence of planting upon remote lands.

The first and great preparation of Sir Humfrey Gilbert.

manifesto be attempts, in which the issue hath bene no lesse tragicall then that of the Spaniards, as by the private reports is extant.

Then seeing the English nation onely hath right unto these countreyes of America from the cape of Florida Northward by the privilege of first discovery, unto which Cabot was authorized by regall authority, & set forth by the experience of our late famous King Henry the seventh: Which right also seemeth strongly defended on our behalfe, by the powerfull hand of almighty God, withstanding the enterprises of other nations: It may greatly incourage us, upon so iust ground, as is our right, and upon so sacred an intent, as to plant religion, (our right and intent being meet foundations for the same) to prosecute effectually unto a full possession of those so ample & pleasaunt countreyes apperteyning unto the crowne of England: the same (as is to be concludured by infallible arguments of the worlds end appoyching) being now arrived unto the time by God prescribed of thes; vocation, if ever the; calling unto the knowledge of God may be expected. Which also is very probable by the revolution and course of Gods word and religion, which from the beginning hath mooved from the East, to wards, and at last unto the West, where it is like to end, unless the same begin againe where it did in the East, which were to expect a like world againe. But we are assured of the contrary by the prophesie of Christ, whereby we gather, that after his word preached throughout the world, shall be the end. And as the Gospel when it descended Westward beganne in the South, and after ward spred into the North of Europe: euen so, as the same hath begunne in the South countreyes of America, no lesse hope may be gathered that it will also spred into the North.

These considerations may helpe to suppress all yeards rising of hard euents in attempts made this way by other nations, as also of the heauie successe and issue in the late enterpryse made by a worthy gentleman our country man Sir Humfrey Gilbert knight, who was the first that of our nation carried people to erect an habitation and gouernement in those Northely countreyes of America. About which, albeit he had consumed much substance, and lost his life at last, his people also perishing for the most part: yet the mystery thereof we must leaue unto God, and iudge charitably both of the cause (which was iust in all pretence) and of the person, who was very zealous in prosecuting the same, desiring honourable remembrance for his good minde, and experience of life in so vertuous an enterpryse. Whereby neuertheless, least any man should be dismayed by example of other folks calamity, and misbecome that God doth resist all attempts intended that way: I thought good, so farre as my selfe was an eye witness, to deliuer the circumstance and manner of our proceedings in that action: in which the gentleman was so unfortunately incumbered with wants, and woefully matched with many ill disposed people, that his rare iudgement and regiment ynnemittate for those affaires, was subjected to tolerate abuses, and in sundry extremities to holde on a course, more to upholde credit, then likely in his owne conceit, happily to succeed.

The issue of such actions being alwayes miserable, not guided by God, who abhorreth confusion and disorder, hath left this for admonition (being the first attempt by our nation planned) unto such as shall take the same cause in hand hereafter, not to be discouraged from it: but to make men well aduised how they handle his so high and excellent matters, as the carriage is of his word into those very mighty and vast countreyes. An action doubtlesse not to be intermeddled with base purposes, as many haue made the same but a colour to shadow actions, other wise scarce iustifiable: which doth excite Gods heauy iudgements in the end, to the terrifying of weak mindes from the cause, without pondering his iust proceedings: and doth also incense foren princes against our attempts how iust soeuer, who can not but deeme the sequelle very dangerous unto the; state (if in those parts we should grow to strength) seeing the very beginnings are entered with spoile.

And with this admonition denounced vpon zeale towards Gods cause, also towards such in whom appeared disposition honorable unto this action of planting Christian people and religion in those remote and barbarous nations of America (vnto whom I wish all happinell) I will now proceed to make relation by itselfe, yet particularly, of our voyage vnder taken with Sir Humfrey Gilbert, begun, continued, and ended aduersly.

When first Sir Humfrey Gilbert vnder tooke the Westerne discovery of America, and had procured from her Majesty a very large commission to inhabit, and possesse at his choise all remote and heathen lands not in the actual possession of any Christian prince, the same commission exemplified with many privileges, such as in his discretion he might demand: They many gentlemen of good estimation dye to vnto him, to associate him in so commendable an enterpryse, so that the preparation was expected to grow vnto a puissant fleet, able to encounter a kings power by sea: neuertheless, amongst a multitude of voluntary men, the; dispositions were diuers, which bred a iarre,

and made a diuision in the and when the shipping was some time brake course, & others failed of the; generall with few of his of no lesse misfortune, he (more to his griefe) of a v

Hauing burped onely red, his minde yet not dissimulate, good occasion seruing his desire: at last he granted ability, desiring the priuilege of the riuer of Canada, to w of moment was expected, and be a furtherance vnto court, might be excused to gions were of no regard: vertue of his grant, vnto which induced Sir Humfrey Gilbert, because his commission

possession.

Time went away with himselfe to take a voyage most was expected of which In furtherance of his vnto lesse very zealous to the men to the; ability is open cause. Who beginning of and things requisite, some such were the difficulties lesse then two yeeres: ma

The last place of four at vnto Plymouth: then before our floze yet remayned doubtlesse it seemed first ended discovery, either fr

The first (that is begun here assured to haue come and would haue furthered wards cape Bixton, and

Also the yeere being finished in Northely courses, which which we had space enough that season, being m long and rigorous.

These & other like contrary was inferred: that diminished and left in suff to haue a course most like way, which was but less that time of the yeere, a fish: we should be relieved might well spare, and fr

Not staying long vnto Summe, vntill we arrived. By which reasons was necessitie, which must be going with it continuall

and made a division in the end, to the confusion of that attempt euen before the same was begunne, and when the shipping was in a maner prepared, & men ready vpon the coast to go aboard: at what time some byake course, and followed courses degenerating from the voyage before pretended. Others failed of theyr promises contracted, and the greater number were distract. & leaving the generall with few of his assured friends, with whom he aduentured to sea: where hauing called of no lesse misfortune, he was hoylely driuen to retorne home with the losse of a tall shippe, and (more to his grieffe) of a valiant gentleman Spiles Spogan.

Hauing buried onely in a preparation a great masse of substance, wher by his estate was impaired, his minde yet not dismayd, he continued his former designe and purpose to reuile this enterprise, good occasion seruing. Upon which determination standing long, without meanes to satisfie his desire: at last he granted certaine assignements out of his commission to sundry persons of meane ability, desiring the priuilege of his grant, to plant and settle in the North parts of America about the riuer of Canada, to whom if God gaue good successe in the North parts (where then no matter of moment was expected) the same (he thought) would greatly aduance the hope of the South, and be a furtherance vnto his determination that way. And the wooll that might happen in that countrey, might be excused without prejudice vnto him by the former supposition, that those North regions were of no regard: but chiefly a possession taken in any part of those heathen countries by vertue of his grant, did inuest him of territories extending euery way two hundred leagues: which induced Sir Humfrey Gilbert to make those assignements, desiring greatly theyr expedition, because his commission did expyre after five yeeres, if in that space he had not gotten actual possession.

A constant resolution of Sir H. Gilbert.

Time went away without any thing done by his assignees: insomuch at last he must resolve himselfe to take a voyage in person, for more assurance to keepe his patent in force, which then almost was expired: or within two yeeres.

A second preparation of Sir H. Gilbert.

In furtherance of his determination, amongst others, Sir George Beckam knight serued himselfe very zealous to the action, greatly aiding both by his aduise and in the charge. Other gentlemen to the priuilege ioyned vnto him, resolved to aduenture theyr substance and liues in the same cause. Who beginning theyr preparation from that time, both of shipping, munition, victuall, men, and things requisite, some of them continued the charge two yeeres complet, without intermission, such were the difficulties and crosse accidents, opposing these proceedings, which tooke not end so little then two yeeres: many of which circumstances I will omit.

The last place of our assembly, before we left the coast of England, was in Caulet bay, nere the town of Plymouth: then resolved to put vnto the sea with shipping and prouision, such as we had, before our voyage yet remaining, but chiefly the time and season of the yeere were too farre spent. Wherefore it seemed first very doubtfull, by what way to shape our course, and to beginne our intended discovery, either from the South Northward, or from the North Southward.

The first (that is beginning South) without all controuersy was the likeliest, wherein we were assured to haue commoditie of the currant, which from the cape of Florida stretcheth Northward, and would haue furthered greatly our navigation, discovering from the foresaid cape along towards cape Britton, and all those lands lying to the North.

Consultation about our course.

Also the yeere being farre spent, and arriued to the month of June, we were not to spend time in Northely courses, where we should be surpris'd with timely winter: but to court the South, which we had space enough, then to haue attained: and there mighte with lesse detrimēt haue wintered that season, being more mild and hoze in the South then in the North, where winter is both long and rigorous.

Commodities in discouraging from South Northward.

These & other like reasons alleged in fauor of the Southerne course, first to be taken, to the contrary was inferred: that so much as both our victualls, and many other needfull prouisions were diminished and left insufficient for so long a voyage, and for the wintering of so many men, we ought to shape a course most likely to minister supply: and that was to take the Newfoundland land in our way, which was but seuen hundred leagues from our English coast. Where being usually at that time of the yeere, and vntill the fine of August, a multitude of shippes repaying thither for fish: we should be relieved abundantly with many necessaries, which after the fishing ended, they might well spare, and freely impart vnto vs.

Not staying long vpon that New land coast, we might proceed Southward, and followe still the Sunne, vntill we arriued at places more temperate to our content.

Cause why we began our discovery to the North. The commodities in beginning North.

By which reasons we were the rather induced to followe this Northely course, obeying vnto necessitie, which must be supplied. Other wise, we doubted that sudden approach of winter, hindring with it continuall fogge, and thicke miste, tempest and rage of weather: also contrarietie of

currents

Courants descending from the cape of Florida vnto cape Bixton and cape Rafe, would fall out to be great and irrefutable impediments vnto our further proceeding for that parte, and compell vs to labour in those North and colde regions.

Wherefoze suppressing all objections to the contrary, we resolved to beguine our course Northward, and to follow directly as we might, the trade way vnto Newfoundland: from whence after our refreshing and reparation of wants, we intended without delay (by Gods permission) to proceed into the South, not omitting any riuer or bay, which in all that large tract of land appeared to our view worthy of search. Immediately we agreed vpon the manner of our course and orders to be obserued in our voyage: which were deliuered in writing vnto the capitaines and maisters of euery shippe a copie in maner following.

Euery shippe had deliuered two bollets of scrowles, the one sealed by in ware, the other left open: in both which were included seuerall watchwords: that open, seruing vpon our owne coast of the coast of Ireland: the other sealed, was promised on all hands not to be broken by vntill we should be cleere of the Irish coast: which from thencefoorth did serue vntill we arrived and met altogether in such harbours of the Newfoundland as were agreed for our Rendevous. The said watchwords being requisite to know our courses, whensoever by night, either by fortune of weather, our fleet dispersed should come together againe: or one should hale another: or if by ill watch and steardage one shippe chance to fall aboord of another in the darke.

The reason of the bollet sealed, was to keepe secret that watchword while we were vpon our owne coast, least any of the company, stealing from the fleet, might betray the same: which known to an enemy, he might boord vs by night without mistrust, hauing our owne watchword,

### Orders agreed vpon by the Capitaines and Maisters to be obserued by the fleet of *sir Humfrey Gilbert.*



1. Item, the Admirall to carry his flagge by day, and his light by night.

2. Item, if the Admirall shall shoot his saile by night, then to shew two lightes vntill he be answered againe by euery shippe shewing one lighte for a short time.

3. Item, if the Admirall after his shooting of saile, as aforesaid, shall make moze saile againe: then he to shew three lightes one aboue another.

4. Item, if the Admirall shall happen to hull in the night: then to make a waivering lighte ouer his other light, waivering the lighte vpon a pole.

5. Item, if the fleet should happen to be scattered by weather, or other mishap, then as soone as one shall descry another, to hoist both toppes sailes twise, if the weather will serue, and to strike them twise againe: but if the weather serue not, then to hoist the maine toppes saile twise, and forthwith to strike it twise againe.

6. Item, if it shall happen a great fogge to fall, then presently euery shippe to beare by with the admirall, if there be winde: but if it be a calme, then euery shippe to hull, and so to lie at hull till it be cleare. And if the fogge do continue long, then the Admirall to shoot off two pieces euery evening, and euery shippe to answer it with one shot: and euery man bearing to the shippe, that is to leeward so neere as he may.

7. Item, euery maister to giue charge vnto the watch to looke out well, for laying aboord one of another in the night, and in fogges.

8. Item, euery evening euery shippe to haile the Admirall, and so to fall astraine him, saying through the Ocean: and being on the coast, euery shippe to haile him both morning and evening.

9. Item, if any shippe be in danger any way, by leake or other wise, then he to shoot off a piere, and presently to hang out one light, whereupon euery man to beare towards her, answering her with one lighte, for a short time, and so to put it out againe, thereby to giue knowledge that they haue scene her taken.

10. Item, whensoever the Admirall shall hang out her ensigne in the maine spowes, then euery man to come aboord her, as a token of counsell.

11. Item, if there happen any storme or contrary winde to the fleet after the discouery, whereby they are separated: then euery shippe to repaige vnto their last good port, there to meete againe.

Our

The course first Southwardly to of Fermous, & vnto the North to repaige to that place Northward of it: and when you shall depart, to

### A directio

Beginning our course Northward such time as the Ocean is subject muchly to 45 to 47 degrees of latitude North of the height of 47 the contrary: but to do so, because cape Rafe

If by contrary winde

ley for a place of our

If we be driven backe

place of our assembly to

If we shall not happen

ton, or the nearest habo

If by meanes of other

port to the Westward, &

the after commeth to know

The marks that euery

written by himselfe, sea

was not to be opened un

instruction of after comm

who had bene there, or

which way.

Orders thus deterrm

himselfe vnto his charge

soft gale of winde, we b

our Loyd 1583, hau

names and burthens, b

as follo weth:

1 The deliight (alia

Generall, and William

2 The Barke Rato

then Vice admirall: in

3 The Golden hinc

ward Hayes capitaine

4 The Swallow

5 The Squirill, o

one Cade maister.

We were in numbre

as shipwrightes, & al

Generall men and Re

we were prouided of

Dobby hoist, and Pa



Our course agreed vpon.

**T**he course first to be taken for the discovery is to beare directly to cape Rafe the most southerly cape of Newfoundland. And there to harbor our selues either in Rogneux or Fermous, being the first places appointed for our Rende vous, and the next harbors unto the Northward of cape Rafe. And therefore euery shippe separated from the fleet, to repaye to that place so fast as God shall permit, whether you shall fall to the Southward, or Northward of it: and there to stay for the meeting of the whole fleet the space of tenne dayes, and when you shall depart, to leaue marks.

A direction of our course vnto the New found land.

**B**eginning our course from Silley, the neerest is by West south west (if the winde serue) vntill such time as we haue brought our selues in the latitude of 43 or 44 degrees, because the Ocean is subiect much to Southerly winde in June and July. Then to take traueise from 45 to 47 degrees of latitude, if we be enforced by contrary winde: and not to go to the Northward of the height of 47 degrees of Septentrional latitude by no means, if God shall not enforce the contrary: but to do your induoy to keepe in the height of 46 degrees, so neere as you can possibly, because cape Rafe lyeth about that height.

Notes.

**I**f by contrary winde we be vsuene backe vpon the coast of England, then to repaye vnto Silley for a place of our assembly and meeting.

If we be vsuene backe by contrary winde, that we can not passe the coast of Ireland: then the place of our assembly to be at Beare haueu or Baltimore haueu.

If we shall not happen to meet at cape Rafe, then the place of Rende vous to be at cape Bixton, or the neerest harbor vnto the Westward of cape Bixton.

If by meanes of other shipping we may not safely stay there, then to rest at the very next safe port to the Westward, euery shippe leauing theyr marks behinde them for the more certaintie of the after commers to know to where to finde them.

The marks that euery man ought to leaue in such a case, were of the Generals private deuise, written by himselfe, sealed also close in waue, and deliuered vnto euery shippe one scroutle, which was not to be opened vntill occasion required, whereby euery man was certified what to leaue for instruction of after commers: and euery of vs comming into any harbour or riuer, might knowe who had bene there, or whether any were still there by higher into the riuer, or departed, and which way.

Orders thus determined, and promises mutually giuen to be obserued, euery man with him selfe vnto his charge, the anchors being already weyrd, and our shippe vnder saile, hauing a soft gale of winde, we began our voyage vpon Tuesday the eleuenth day of June, in the yere of our Lord 1583, hauing in our fleet (at our departure from Causet bay) these shippes, whose names and burthens, with the names of the captaines and maisters of them, I haue also inserted, as followeth:

- 1 The delight (alias) the George, of burthen 120 tunnes, was Admirall: in which went the Generall, and William Winter captaine in her, and part owner, and Richard Cleark maister.
- 2 The Barke Ratley, set forth by M. Walter Ratley, of the burthen of 200 tunnes, was then vice admirall: in which went M. Butler captaine, and Robert Davis of Bristoll maister.
- 3 The Golden hinde, of burthen 40 tunnes, was then Reser admirall: In which went Edward Hayes captaine and owner, and William Cox of Lim: house maister.
- 4 The Swallow, of burthen 40 tunnes: in her was captaine Maurice Bologne.
- 5 The Squirrell, of burthen tenne tunnes: in which went captaine William Aubreyes, and one Cade maister.

We were in number in all, about 260 men: among whom we had of euery faculty good choice, as Shipwrights, Halons, Carpenters, Smithes, and such like, requisite to such an action: also Spinners, men and Refiners. Besides, for solace of our people, and allurement of the Sauaiges, we were provided of Muske in good barrey: Not omitting the least toys, as Hoys dancers, Dobby hoys, and Spynlike conceits to delight the Sauage people, whom we intended to winne

Beginning of the voyage.

Our fleet consisted of five Gallies, in which we had about 260 men. Spinners in the ship, for such conceits.

bert.  
all our to  
mpell us  
e Royt-  
ence as  
ffion) to  
ppears  
orders  
matters of  
ther left  
one coast  
ntill we  
and met  
The said  
e of wa-  
ll warch  
pon our  
: which  
ch word,  
c  
no light  
time.  
the moye  
the our  
soone as  
the them  
xythwich  
by with  
ie at hull  
es every  
pe, that  
nd one of  
, saying  
and cut-  
a piece,  
ring her  
hat they  
then o  
scourry,  
to merce  
Our

by all fayre meanes possible. And to that end we were indifferently furnished of all prett haberdasherie wares to barter with those simple people.

June 11.

In this manner we set forward, departing (as hath bene said) out of Causon bay the eleventh day of June, being Tuesday, the weather and winde fayre and good all day, but a great storme of thunder and winde fell the same night.

June 13.

Obscure.

Thursday following, when we hailed one another in the evening (according to the order before specified) they signified unto vs out of the Vice admirall, that both the captain, and very many of the men were fallen sicke. And about midnight the Vice admirall forooke vs, notwithstanding we had the winde East, fayre and good. But it was after credibly reported, that they were infected with a contagious sicknesse, and arrived greatly distressed at Plymouth: the reason I could never understand. Sure I am, no cost was spared by the y<sup>e</sup>ownc *H. Raleigh*, in fetching them forth: Therefore I leave it unto God.

By this time we were in 48 degrees of latitude, not a litle grieved with the losse of the most puissant shippe in our fleet: after whose departure, the Golden hinde succeeded in the place of Vice admirall, and remoued her flagge from the mizon unto the foze toppe.

June 15.

From Saturday the 15 of June untill the 28, which was upon a Friday, we never had fayre day without fogge or raine, and windes bad, much to the West north west, whereby we were driven Southward unto 41 degrees scarce.

About this time of the yere the windes are commonly West to wards the Newfoundland land, keeping ordinarily within two points of West to the South or to the North, whereby the course thither falleth out to be long and tedious after June, which in March, April & May, hath bene performed out of England in 22 dayes and lesse. We had winde alwayes so scant from West north west, and from West South west againe, that our traueise was great, running South unto 41 degrees almost, and afterward North into 51 degrees.

July 20.  
Great fogges  
upon the Sea  
an Sea North  
ward.

Also we were incumbered with much fogge and mists in manner palpable, in which we could not keepe so well together, but were distressed, losing the company of the Swallow and the Squirit upon the 20 day of July, whom we met againe at severall places upon the Newfoundland coast the third of August, as shall be declared in place convenient.

July 27

Saturday the 27 of July, we might descry not farre from vs, as it were, mountaines of ice driven upon the sea, being then in 50 degrees, which were carried Southward to the weather of vs: whereby may be conjectured that some current doth set that way from the North.

The banks in  
length unknown  
when first they  
from South  
into South,  
in breadth 10  
leagues, in  
depth of water  
300 fathome.

Before we come to Newfoundland about 50 leagues on this side, we passe the banks, which are high grounds rising within the sea, and under water, yet deepe enough, and without danger, being commonly not lesse then 25 and 30 fathome water upon them: the same (as it were) some baine of mountaines within the sea) doe runne along, and from the Newfoundland land, beginning Northward about 52 or 53 degrees of latitude, & do extend into the South in sinicity. The breadth of this banke is somewhere moze, and somewhere lesse: but we found the same about 10 leagues over, having sounded both on this side thereof, and the other toward Newfoundland land, but found no ground, with almost 200 fathome of line, both before and after we had passed the banks. The Portugallies, and French chiefly, have a notable trade of fishing upon this banke, where are sometimes an hundred or more fialles of shippes: who commonly begiune the fishing in April, and have ended by July. That fish is large, alwayes wet, having no land nere to drye, and is called Coyre fish.

A great fishing  
upon the banks.

During the time of fishing, a man shall know without sounding, when he is upon the banke, by the incredible multitude of sea fowle hovering over the same, to prey upon the offalles and garbage of fish throwen out by fisher men, and floting upon the sea.

Abundance of  
fowles.

July 30.

First sight of  
land.

Upon Tuesday the 11 of June, we forooke the coast of England. So againe Tuesday the 30 of July (seven weeks after) we got sight of land, being immediately embayed in the Grand bay, or some other great bay: the certainty whereof we could not iudge, so great was the fogge did hang upon the coast, as neither we might discern the land well, nor take the Sunnes bright. But by our best computation we were then in 51 degrees of latitude.

Forsoaking this bay and uncomfortable coast (nothing appearing unto vs but hideous rocks and mountaines, bare of trees, and void of any greene herbe) we followed the coast to the South, with wether fayre and cleere.

Islands and a  
fowle named  
Penguin.

We had sight of an Island named Penguin, of a fowle there breeding in abundance, almost incredible, which can not flye, the wings not able to carry the body, being very large (not much lesse then a goose) and exceeding fat: which the French men use to take without difficulty upon that Island, and to barrell them up with salt. But for lingering of time we had made vs there the like provision.

Creeping

Creeping this coast the maine to the South which goeth in a great Swallow againe, whereof it seemed they were not to cast by into albeit himselfe was vobesert: who for the mainland, being pirates, and another with salt, was the same ship not from the General) the low the same company consenting to their murder and approbation of byooke ceuenge upon these went under protest.

Therefore byd further home after the fishing too of victual, and the Admiral, they besought might be spared, the charge to deale favourables, and the meno wane our life what mischief) as they tooke sea, and certaine of whom they had before afterward of the poor home (whiche they dengeance not long the world Gods iudge.

Thus after we had against the harbor cal for the enurance into English marchants (of fishermen within meeting both of the ready our fights, & being within of all n to give them knowle for his voyage he had enurance (which is but boord side by great o the hoare, where merchants to helpe vs in which to woe off the

Having taken pling aboard our Ad fleet of Englishmen all satisfied when to the behalfe of p regions, requiring farre as convenient wherof he made off they should demaund dition of his demaun milled them, after p

Trending this coast, we came to the Island called Baccalcu, the same not past 2. leagues from the maine: to the South wherof lieth Cape S. Francis, 7. leagues distant from Baccalcu, betwene which goeth in a great bay, by the vulgar foze called the bay of Conception. Here we met with the Swallow againe, whome we had lost in the fogge, and all her men altered into other apparell wherof it seemed their foze was so amended, that for loy & congratulation of our meeting, they spured not to call by into the aire and overboord, their caps and hats in good plentie. The Capaine albeit himselfe was very honest and religious, yet was he not appoynted of men to his hunt; and desert: who for the most part were such as had bene by vs surpris'd vpon the narrow seas of England, being pirats, and had taken at that instant certaine Frenchmen laden one barke with wines, and another with salt. Both which we rescued, &ooke the man of warre with all her men, which was the same ship now called the Swallow, following still their kinde so oft, as (being separated from the General) they found opportunity to robbe and spoile. And because Gods iustice did follow the same companie, euen to destruction, and to the overthrow also of the Capaine (though not consenting to their misdeameany:) I wil not conceale any thing that maketh to the manifestacion and approbation of his iudgements, for examples of others, perfwaded that God moze sharplyooke reuenge vpon them, and hath tollerated longer as great outrage in others: by howe much the more vnder protection of his cause and religion, which was then presented.

Herfoze by further enquire it was knowne, how this company met with a barke returning home after the fishing with his freight: and because the men in the Swallow were very neere standers of vicual, and chiefly of apparel, doubtful withal where or when to finde and meete with their Admirall, they besought the captaine they might go aboard this Newlander, only to borrow what might be spared, the rather because the same was bound homeward. Leane giuen, not without charge to deale fauorably, they came aboard the fisherman, whom they pressed of tackle, sailes, cables, vitayles, and the men of their apparel: nor sparing by torture (winding ropes about their beaues) to drawe oute else what they thought good. This done with expedition (like men skillfull in such mischief) as they took their rocke boat to goe aboard their owne ship, it was ouerwhelmed in the sea, and certaine of these men there drowned: the rest were preserved euen by those seely soules whom they had before spoiled, who saued and deliuered them aboard the Swallow. What became afterward of the poore Newlander, perhaps destitute of sailes & furniture sufficient to carry them home (whither they had not less to ruine then 750. leagues) God alone knoweth, whoooke vengeance not long after of the rest that escaped at this instant, to reuise the fact, and iustitie to the world Gods iudgements inflicted vpon them, as shall be declared in place conuenient.

Thus after we had met with the Swallow, we held on our course Southward, until we came against the harbor called S. Johns, about 5. leagues from the former Cape of S. Francis: where before the entrance into the harbor, we found also the frigate of Squirrel lying at anchor. All home the English marchants (that were & atwaies be Admiralls by turnes interchangeably ouer the flectes of fishemen within the same harbor) would not permit to enter into the harbor. Glad of so happy meeting both of the Swallow and frigate in one day (being Saturday the 3. of August) we made ready our fighes, & prepared to enter the harbor, any resistance to the contrary notwithstanding, there being within of all nations, to the number of 36. sailes. But first the General dispatched a boate to giue them knowlege of his comming: for no ill intent, hauing Commission from her Maiestie for his voyage he had in hand. And immediately we followed with a slacke gale, and in the very entrance (which is but narrow, not about 2. bures length) the Admirall fell vpon a rocke on the leeward side by great oversight, in that the weather was faire, the rocks much about water fast by the shoare, where neither went any sea gate. But wee found such readinesse in the English Marchants to helpe vs in that danger, that without delaye there were brought a number of boates, which to wedd off the ship, and cleared her of danger.

Hauing taken place conuenient in the road, we let fall anchors, the Captaine & masters repairing aboard our Admirall: whither also came immediatly the Masters and owners of the fishing flecte of Englishmen, to vnderstand the Generals intent & cause of our arrival there. They were all satisfied when the general had shewed his commission, & purpose to take possession of those lands to the behalfe of her Crowne of England, & the aduancement of Christian religion in those paganish regions, requiring but their lawfull ayd for repairing of his flecte, & supply of some necessaries, so farre as conueniently might be afforded him, both out of that & other harbors adjoining. In lieu wherof, he made offer to gratifie them with any fauor & priuiledge, which vpon their better aduise they should demaund, & like being not to be obtained hereafter for greater price. So craving expedition of his demaund, minding to proceed further south without long detention in those parts, he dismissed them, after promise giue of their best endeavour to satisfie speedily his so reasonable request.

An Island called Baccalcu, of the fish taken there.

Wherof some of them in the Swallow.

English ships are the strongest and the Admirals of other flectes, fishing vpon the South parts of these found lands.

The marchants with their Masters departed, they caused forthwith to be discharged all the great Ordinance of their fleet in token of our welcome.

Good order taken by English marchants for our supply in New found land.

It was further determined, that every ship of our fleet should deliuer unto the marchants and Masters of that harbour, a note of all their wants: which done, the ships as well English as strangers, were taxed at an easie rate to make supply. And besides, Commissioners were appointed, part of our owne company, and part of theirs, to goe into other harbours adloyning, (for our English marchants commaund all there) to leaue our provision: wherunto the Portingals (about other nations) did most willingly and liberally contribute. In somuch as we were presented (about our allowance) with wines, marmalads, most fine ruske of bis ket, sweet oyles, and sundry delicacies. Also we wanted not of fresh salmons, troutes, lobsters, and other fresh fish brought bayly unto vs. Moreover, as the maner is in their fishing, euery weeke to choose their Admirall a new, or rather they succeed in orderly course, and haue weekly their Admirals feast solemnized: euen to the General, Captaines and masters of our fleet, were continually inuited and feasted. To growe they, in our abundance at home, the intertainment had bene delighful, but after our wants and tedious passage through the Ocean, it seemed moze acceptable and of greater contentation, by how much the same was unexpected in that desolate corner of the worlde: where at other times of the yere, wilde beastes and birds haue onely the fruition of all those Countreys, which now seemed a place very populous and much frequented.

Good entertainment in New found land. No Sauiages in the South part of Newe found land.

August 4.

The next morning being Sunday the 4. of August, the General & his company were brought on lande by English marchants, who shewed vnto vs their accustomed walke vnto a place they call the Garden. But nothing appeared moze then Nature it selfe without art: who confusedly hath brought forth roses abundantly, wilde, but odoriferous, and to sense very comfortable. Also the like plentie of raspis berries, which do grow in euery place.

August 5.

Possession taken.

Monday foloweing, the General had his tent set vp, who being accompanied with his owne followers, summoned the marchants, and masters, both English and strangers to be present at his taking possession of those Countreys. Before whom openly was read & interpreted vnto the strangers, his Commission: by vertue whereof he tooke possession in the same harbour of S. Johns, and 200. leagues euery way, inuaded the Queenes Maiestie with the title and dignitie thereof, had deliuered vnto him (after the custome of England) a rod and a turffe of the same soile, entering possession also for him, his heires and assignes for euer: And signified vnto al men, that from that time forthward, they should take the same lande as a terricoyle appertaining to the Queene of England, and himselfe authorized vnder her Maiestie to possesse and enjoy it, And to ordeine lawes for the gouernment thereof, agreeable (so neere as conueniently might be) vnto the lawes of England: vnder which all people comming thither hereafter, either to inhabite, or by way of trafique, should be subiected and gouerned. And especially at the same time for a beginning, he posed and deliuered three lawes to be in force immediately. That is to say: the first for Religion, which in publique exercise should be according to the Church of England. The 2. for maintenance of her Maiesties right and possession of those terricoyles, against which if any thing were attempted prejudiciall, the partie or parties offending, should be adiudged and executed as in case of high treason, according to the lawes of England. The 3. if any person should utter words sounding to the dishonour of her Maiestie, he should loose his eares, and haue his ship and goods confiscate.

Three Lawes.

Actual possession maintained in Newe found land.

These contents published, obedience was promised by general voice & consent of the multitude of Englishmen as strangers, paying for continuance of this possession & gouernment begun. After this, the assembly was dismissed, And after ward were erected not farre from that place the Armes of England ingrauen in lead, & inscribed vpon a pillar of wood. Yet further & actually to establish this possession taken in the right of her Maiestie, & to the behoofe of Sir Humfrey Gilbert knight, his heires and assignes for euer: the General granted in fee farme diuers parcels of land lying by the water side, both in this harbor of S. Johns, & elf where, which was to the owners a great commodity, being thereby assured (by their proper inheritance) of groundes conuenient to dresse and to drie their fish, whereof many times before they did faile, being persecuted by them that came first into the harbor. For which groundes they did couenant to pay a certaine rent and seruice vnto Sir Humfrey Gilbert, his heires or assignes for euer, and secretly to mainteine possession of the same, by themselves or their assignes.

Open appointed to make search.

It was remained onely to take in provision graunted, according as euery shippe was taxed which did fish vpon the coast adloyning. In the meane while, the General appointed men vnto their charge: some to repair and reuin the ships, others to attend in gathering together our supply and provisions: others, to search the commodities and singularities of the countrey, to be found by sea or land, & to make relation vnto the General what either themselves could knowe by their owne tra- uail

uail and experience quented the same coast coastre exactly grade a briefe description of and such also as are in plats that were by the Admirall: wheretoze

A b

What which or rather (as in the North Laurence it

North side of this Ista 400. miles, accompanying deg of September

boys, safe roades for the The common opinion as of some part it may ries of Europe, which of the climate that the Se lie under the climates o so much differ from the the Ocean & Harpe w

Where the mountaine ritie and rigoz of the le the moze subiect to colde not in Newfound land the mountaine are ex which commeth to pas in the countreys lying cents, the valleys also a in Newfound land: it not be so foxyble in the sicke: by howe much most part) by land an where by his motion i the contrary, he passed by a weth and caried to by the Sunnes reuert Northward, Newerth 46, 47, and 48. (effer also there are very ma there be certaine heat seeme, not heard of in c June, July, August & so men remaining by found the cold to erre haue arrived there aft no marueile, consider the place most decli not be found within la breaking off the whole parts, about the w of Russia: yet are the commodities of S. Ioue in the Newfound lan

use and experience, or by good intelligence of men English or strangers, who had longest frequented the same coast. Also some observed the elevation of the pole, and by the places of the coast exactly graded. And by that I could gather by each mans several relation, I have drawn a briefe description of the New found land, with the commodities by sea or lande already made, and such also as are in possibilitie and great likelihood to be made: Neerthe lesse the Caros and plates that were drawing, with the de: gradation of the harbours, bays, & capes, did perish with the Admiral: wherefore in the description following, I must omit the particulars of such things.

A briefe relation of the New found land and commodities thereof.

**W**hat which we do call the Newfound land, and the Frenchmen Bacalaos, is an Island, or rather after the opinion of some it consisteth of sundry Islands & broken lands, situate in the North regions of America, upon the gulfes & entrance of the great river called S. Laurence in Canada. Into the which navigation may be made both on the South and North side of this Island. The land lieth South & North, containing in length betwene 3. and 400. miles, according from Cape race (which is in 46. deg. 25. min.) unto the Grand bay in 52. deg. of Septentrional latitude. The Island round about hath very many goodly bays and harbours, safe roades for ships, the like not to be found in any part of the known world.

Newfound land is of Islands of broken lands.

Goodly roads and harbours.

The common opinion that is had of intemperature & extreme cold that should be in this countrey, as of some part it may be verified, namely the North, where I grant it is more cold then in countreys of Europe, which are under the same elevation: even so it cannot stand with reason & nature of the climate, that the South parts should be so intemperat as the hute hath gone. For, as if same do lie under the climats of Britton, Aniou, Poictou in France, betwene 46. & 49. deg. so can they not so much differ from the temperature of those countreys: unless upon the outcoasts lying open unto the Ocean & sharpe winds, it must in deede be subject to more colde, then further within the land, where the mountaines are interposed, as walles and bulwarkes, to defende and to resist the aspect and rigor of the sea and weaether. Some holde opinion, that the Newfound land might be the more subject to cold, by how much it lieth high and neere unto the middle region. I graunt, that not in Newfound land alone, but in Germany, Italy & Affricke, even under the Equinoctial line, the mountaines are extreme cold, and sel dome uncovered of snow, in their culme & highest tops, which cometh to passe by the same reason that they are extended towards the middle region: yet in the countreys lying beneath them, it is found quite contrary. Even so at hillies having their discents, the vales also and low grounds must be like wise hot or temperate, as the climate doeth giue in Newfound land: though I am of opinion that the Sunnes restriction is much cooler, and cannot be so forcible in the Newfound land, nor generally throughout America, as in Europe or Affricke: by how much the Sunne in his diurnal course from East to West, passeth over (so) the most part) by land and sandie countreys, before hee arriveth as the West of Europe or Affricke, whereby his motion increaseth heate, with little or no qualification by moyst vapours. Where, on the contrary, he passeth from Europe and Affricke unto America over the Ocean, from whence it draweth and carrieth with him abundance of moyst vapours, which do qualifie and infeeble greatly the Sunnes reuerberation upon this countrey chiefly of Newfound land, being so much to the Northward. Neertheles (as I said before) the cold cannot be so intollerable under the latitude of 46. 47. and 48. (especially within land) that it should be uninhabitable, as some doe suppose, seeing also there are very many people more to the North by a great deale. And in these South parts there be certaine beasts, ounces of leopards, & birds in like maner, which in the Sommer we haue scene, nor heard of in countreys of extreme and vehement coldness. Besides, as in the months of June, July, August & September, the heate is somewhat more then in England at those seasons: so men remaining upon the South parts neere unto Cape Race, until after Hollandes, haue not found the cold so extreme, nor much differing from the temperature of England. Those which haue arrived there after November & December, haue found the snow exceeding deepe, whereat no marvell, considering the ground upon the coast, is rough & brenen, and the snow is driven into the places most declining, as the like is to be scene with vs. The like depth of snow happily shall not be found within lande upon the plainer countreys, which also are defended by the mountaines, breaking off the violence of winds & weather. But admitting extraordinary colde in those South parts, about this which by here: it can not be so great as in Sweueland, much lesse in Moscouia or Russia: yet are the same countreys very populous, and the rigor of colde is dispensed with by the commodity of Scours, warme clothing, meates and drinkes: all which neede not to be wanting in the Newfound land, if we had men there to inhabit.

Newfound land habitable.

Cold by actual means.

Commodities

Fish of sea and  
fresh water.

In the South parts we found no inhabitants, which by all likelihood have abandoned those coastes, the same being so much frequented by Christians: But in the North are savages altogether barremesse. Touching the commodities of this Countrey, serving either for sustentation of inhabitants, or for maintenance of traffique, there are & may be made divers: that it seemeth Nature hath recompensed that only desert and incommoditie of some sharpe cold, by many benefits: viz. With incredible quantitie, and no lesse varietie of kindes of fish in the sea and fresh waters, as trouts, salmons & other fish to us unknowne: Also codde, which alone hath many nations thither, and is become the most famous fishing of the world. A bundance of whales, for which also is a very great trade in the bays of Placentia & Grand bay, where is made Trane oyles of the whale: Herring the largest that have bene heard of, and exceeding the Hailstrand herring of Norway: but hitherto was neuer benefit taken of the herring fishing. There are sundry other fish very delicate, namely the Bonito, lobsters, turbot, with others infinite not sought after: Oysters hauing peele but not orient in colour: Iooke it by reason they were not gathered in season.

Concerning the inland commodities, as well to be taken from this land, as from the exceeding large Countreys adioyning: there is nothing which our East and Noztherly countreies of Europe doe yeeld, but the like also may be made in them as plentifully by time and industrie: Namely, rosen, pitch, earre, soapashes, dealwood, malkes for shippes, hides, furrer, flaxe, hempe, coyne, cables, roydage, linen cloth, mettals and many more. All which the Countreies will asoarde, and the soyle is apt to yeelde.

The trees for the most in those South parts, are firretrees, pine and Cypressell, all yeelding gumme and carpentine.

Cherrie trees bearing fruit no bigger then a small pease. Also pearre trees but fruitlesse. Other trees of some sortes to us unknowne.

The soyle along the coast is not deepe of earth, bringing forth abundantly peason small, yet good feeding for caele. Roses passing sweete, like vnto our muske roses in soyme, raspases, a berrie we call burts, good and wholesome to eat. The grasse and herbe doth far exceede in very those space, yroued by English merchants which haue caried sheepe thither for fresh vitale, & had them raised exceeding fat in lesse then 7 weekes. Deason which our countrey men haue sowne in the time of May, haue come by faire, & bene gathered in the beginning of August, of which our Generall had a present acceptable for the rarenesse, being the first fruits comming by art and industrie in that desolate and inhabited land.

Lakes or poodes of fresh water, both on the toppes of mountaines and in the valleys. In which are said to be muskels not unlike to haue pearle, which I had put in trial, if by mischance falling vnto me, I had not bene letted from that and other good experiments I was minded to make.

Foule both of water & land in great plenty and diuersitie. All kinde of greene foule: Others as bigge as buzzards, yet not the same. A great white foule called of some a Gaunt.

Vpon the land diuers sortes of haukes, as faulcons, and others by report: Partridges most plentifully larger then ours, gray and white of colour, and rough footed like bones, which our men after one flight did kill with cougels, they were so fat and unable to flye. Birds some like blackbirds, linnets, canary birds, and others very small. Beasts of sundry kinds, red deare, buttolesse of a beast it seemeth by the tract and foote very large in manner of an ox. Beares, ounces of leopards, some greater & some lesser, wolues, foxes, which to the Northward a litle further are blacke, whose furre is esteemed in some Countreies of Europe very rich, Otters, beuers, marternes: And in the opinion of most men that saw it, the General had brought vnto him a Shable alive, which he sent vnto his brother Sir John Gilbert knight of Devonshire: but it was neuer deliuered, as after I vnderstood. We could not obserue the hundredth part of creatures in those inhabited landes: but these mentioned may induce vs to glorifie the magnificent God, who hath superabundantly replenished the earth with creatures serving for the vse of man, though man hath not bled the last part of the same, which the more doth aggravate the fault and foolish slouth in many of our nation, chusing rather to liue indirectly, and very miserably to liue and die within this Realm: reffered with inhabitants, then to aduventure as becormmed men, to obtaine a habitation in these remote landes, in which Nature very prodigally doth minister vnto mens enduors, and for art to worke vpon.

For besides these already recounted and infinite moe, the mountaines generally make the vse of mineral substance: Iron very common, lead, & some where copper. I was not aware of richer mettals: albeit, by the circumstance following, more then hope may be conceiued thereof.

For amongst other charges given to inquire out the singularities of this countrey, the General was most curious in the search of mettals, commanding the minerall man and refiner, especially to be diligent. The same was a Saxon boine, honest, and religious, named Daniel. Who after

Also fourth  
land both mi-  
nister commo-  
dities abun-  
dantly for art  
and industrie.

after search brought at next time he found ore yielding proceetation, than where it was, aduising deare vnto him as the it fell not out according

My selfe at this indispotion of our refiner therein, and to haue for here it but to facilitate and necessitate, to bring we haue already done haue sent it aboode, by harbor: being here but kept any byuite of mine desire, we may returne contenting me well: vnto land, and proceede to

While the better of matters for plotting of mischiefe, by the Generals and vnto. Others met laden with fish, setting woods to hide themselves departed from the coast other our company much as after we had of men to furnish all o loue with such ypoint

The Captaine of pointed Captaine, M him into the Delight, peracted and committed

The Generall man was amongst them covered vpon the coast doe. Therefore the babes and such small safetie of her and the r

Notue hauing mai Squirrel, and put abo sweete oyles: besides we had other necess boates or pinnelles st as if we had bene in a

We departed from found by exact obseru at Cape Race, as Ilea

This Cape Ipech about halfe a league is easily knowne: It

Vnder this Cape to take codde, and by bays after the fode

From hence the st alle directly to Cap

after search brought at first some boxes of oare, seeming rather to be yron then other mettall. The next time he found oare, which with no small shew of contentment he deliuered vnto the Generall, using ypostration, that if sliuer were the thing which might facilitate the Generall & his followers, there it was, aduising him to seeke no further: the perill wherof hee vnderooke vpon his life (as heare vnto him as the Crowne of England vnto her Paetie, that I may vse his owne wordes) if it fell not out accordingly.

Other oare brought vnto the Generall.

My selfe at this instant liker to die then to liue, by a mischance, could not follow this confident opinion of our restner to my owne satisfaction: but afterward demanding our Generalls opinion therein, and to haue some part of the oare, he replied: Content your selfe, I haue seene enough, and were it but to satiffie my private humour, I would proceed no further. The promise vnto my friends, and necessitie, to bring also the South countreys within compass of my Patene (neere expired) as we haue already done these North parts, do onely perswade me further. And touching the oare, I haue sent it aboord, wherof I would haue no speech to be made so long as we remaine within harbor: being here both Portugals, Biscayes and Frenchmen not farre off, from whome must be kept any bryute or muttering of such matter. When we are at sea prooue shalbe made if it be to our desire, we may returne the sooner hither againe. Whole answer I iudged reasonable, and contenting me well I wheretwith I will conclude this narration and description of the New foundland, and proceede to the tell of our voyage, which ended tragically.

Reasons why no further search was made for the Oare mine.

While the better sort of vs were seriously occupied in repairing our wants, and contriuing of matters for the commoditie of our voyage: others of an other sort & disposition, were plotting of mischiefes. Some casting to steale away our shipping by night, watching opportunite by the Generalls and capitaines lying on the shoare: whose conspiracies discovered, they were prevented. Others went together in company, and caried away out of the harbors and yning, a ship laden with fish, feeding the poore men on shoare. A great many more of our people stole into the woods to hide themselves, attending time and meanes to returne home by such shipping as dayly departed from the coast. Some were sicke of fluxes, and many dead: and in briefe, by one meanes or other our company was diminished, and many by the Generall licensed to returne home. Inso-much as after we had reuietued our people, resolved to see an ende of our voyage, we grewe scant of men to furnish all our shipping: it seemed good therefore vnto the Generall to leaue the Swallowe with such provision as might be spared for transporting home the sicke people.

Spies became in our company.

The Captaine of the Delight or Admirall returned into Englaunde, in whose steade was appointed Captaine, Maurice Browne, before Captaine of the Swallowe: who also brought with him into the Delight, all his men of the Swallowe, which before haue bene noted of outrage perpetrated and committed vpon fishermen there mette at sea.

Was brought together these men into the ship, and bound to prison, who before had committed such outrage.

The Generall made choise to goe in his frigate the Squirrel, (wherof the Captaine also was amongst them that returned into England.) the same frigate being most convenient to discover vpon the coast, and to searche into euery harbour or creeke, which a great shippe could not doe. Therefore the frigate was prepared with her nettings and sights, and ouer charged with bales and such small Ordnance, more to give a shewe, then with iudgement to seeke vnto the safetie of her and the men; which afterward was an occasion also of their ouerthrow.

Why Sir H. Gilbert went in the frigate.

Nowe hauing made ready our shipping, that is to say, the Delight, the golden Hinde, and the Squirrel, and put aboarde our provision, which was wines, bread of ruske, fish wette and drie, sweete oyles: besides many other, as marmalades, figs, lymmons, barreled and such like: Also we had other necessary provisions for trimming our shippes, nettes and lines to fishewithall, boates of pinneslesse fit for discoverie. In briefe, wee were supplied of our wants commodiously, as if we had bene in a Countrey of some Citie populous and plentifull of all things.

Liberalitie of the Portugals.

We departed from this harbour of S. Johns vpon Tuesday the twentieth of August, which we found by exact obseruation to be in 47. degrees 40. minutes. And the next day by night we were at Cape Race, 25. leagues from the same harborough.

August 20. S. Johns in 47. deg. 40. min.

This Cape lyeth South Southwest from S. Johns: it is a low land, being off from the Cape about halfe a league: within the sea, riseth by a rocke against the point of the Cape, which thereby is easily knowne: It is in latitude 46. deg. 25. min.

Cape Race in 46. deg. 25. min.

Under this Cape we were becalmed a small time, during which we layde out hookes and lines to take codde, and byen in lesse then two houres, fish so large and in such abundance, that many dupes after we stode vpon no other provision.

Very large and plentiful.

From hence we shaped our course vnto the Island of Sabla, if conveniently it would so fall out, also directly to Cape Britton,

Cattel in the  
Isle of Sabla.

Sabla lieth to the Westward of Cape Britton about 25 leagues, whither we were determined to goe vpon intelligence wee had of a Porcingall, (during our abode in S. Johns,) who was himselfe present, when the Porcingalls (about 30. yeeres past) did put into the same Islande both Meate and Swine to breed, which were since exceedingly multiplied. This seemed vnto vs very happy tidings, to haue in an Islande lying to neere vnto the maine, which wee intended to plant vpon, such store of cattel, whereby we mighte at all times conueniently be relieved of victual, and serued of stowe for beede.

Good soile.

In this course wee trended along the coast, which from Cape Race stretcheth into the North-west, making a baye, which some called Trepassa. Then goeth out againe towarde the West, and maketh a point, which with Cape Race lie in maner East and West. But this point inclineth to the North: to the West of which goeth in the bay of Placentia. We sent men on land to take view of the soyle along this coast, whereby they made good report, and some of them had will to be planted there. They sawe growing pease in great abundance euery where.

The distance betwene Cape Race, and Cape Brigon is 100. leagues. In which Nauigation we spent 8. dayes: hauing many times the wind indifferent good, yet could we neuer attaine sight of any land all that time, seeing we were hindered by the currant. At last we fel into such flats and dangers, that hardly any of vs escaped: where neuertheless we lost our Admirall with all the men and provision, not knowing certainly the place. Yet for inducing men of skill to make coniecture, by our course and way we held from Cape Race thither, And thereby the flats and dangers may be inferred in sea Cards, for warning to others that may follow the same course hereafter: I haue set downe the best reckonings that were kept by expert men, William Coxe Master of the Hind, and Iohn Paul his mate, both of Limehouse.

### Reckonings kept in our course from Cape Race towards the Island of Sabla, or Cape Britton, to the time and place where we lost our Admirall.

August 22.	West,	14. leagues.
	West and by South,	25.
	West Northwest,	25.
	West Northwest,	9.
	South Southwest,	10.
	Southwest,	12.
	South Southwest,	20.
August 29.	West Northwest,	12. Here we lost our Admirall,
	Summe of these leagues,	117.

### The reckoning of Iohn Paul Masters mate, from Cape Race.

August 22.	West,	14. leagues.
23.	Northwest and by West,	9.
24.	Southwest & by South,	5.
25.	West and by South,	40.
26.	West and by North,	7.
27.	Southwest,	3.
28.	Southwest,	9.
	Southwest,	7.
	West Southwest,	7.
29.	Northwest and by West,	20. Here we lost the Admiral.
	Summe of all these leagues	121.

Our course we helde in clearing vs of these flats was East Southeast, and South east, and South 14. leagues with a maruelous scant winde.

The

Th

Vpon Tewshope ch  
gat to townd, who  
grees.

Wednesday towarde  
West north west, con  
all, depriued of pow  
holer other course, alle  
waies.

The euening was t  
of this Wednesday night  
Delight, continued in  
Connes, Daughte hopes  
full haels.

Towards the euening  
berping yron, hauing s  
on the yron, but could n  
nd portens storme. I o  
of the same night, which s

Thursday the 29. o  
binging withall raine  
betimes in the morning  
mongest which, wee fo  
game to townd: but st  
ned (in his iudgement)  
ery any land, it being v  
though the halt and the

Immediatly tokens  
greater shippe, and of be  
that they knewe not the  
Admirall stroke a grou  
whereupon the rest (th  
cast about East southea  
that was carried vs to  
thome, then five fathom  
then but these fathome,  
some despaire, so sea too

In this distresse, w  
power to giue the men  
saue themselves, either  
presencing themselves  
ble meanes. But all i  
the next, we began v  
good hap we might esp

This was a heauie  
great provision, gather  
was the losse of our m  
whome was wounded  
Budarus, who of piet  
royd in the L. at the cong  
uerie, to the honour of  
and rare Poet of our ti

Here also perished  
mongst some of vs in t

No lesse heauie was  
creeke Gentleman, our  
restrained, who thewed



The manner how our Admirall was lost.

Vpon *Tuesday* the 27. of August, toward the evening, our General caused them in his frigat to fownd, who found white lande at 35. fathome, being then in latitude about 44. degrees.

*Wednesday* toward night, the winde came South, and we bare with the lande all that night, West northe west, contrary to the minde of *Master Cox*: neuertheless wee followed the Admirall, deprived of power to auoide a mischiefe, which by no contradiction coulde be brought to holde other course, alleaging they could not make the shippe to woyke better, nor to ipe other waies.

The evening was faire, and pleasant, yet not without token of storme to ensue, and most part of this *Wednesday* night, like the *Swanne* that singeth befoze her death, they in the Admirall, of Delight, continued in sounding of Trumpets, with Drummes, and Fifes: also winding the Cornets, *Waight-hopes*: and in the ende of their iollite, left with the battell and ringing of dolefull knels.

Toward the evening also, we caught in the Golden *Hinde* a very mightie *Whorpe*, with a harping yron, hauing first striken diuers of them, and brought a way part of their flesh, sticking vpon the yron, but could recouer onely that one. These also passing through the *Drean*, in heares, did poyrend storme. I omit to recite frivolous reportes by them in the *Frigat*, of strange voyces, the same night, which started some from the helme.

*Thursday* the 29. of August, the winde rose, and blew very vehemently at South and by East, bringing withall raine, and thicke miste, that wee could not see a Cable length befoze vs. And betimes in the morning, wee were altogether runne and folded in amongst flats and sandes, amongst which, wee found shoale and deepe in every thre or foure shippes length, after wee began to fownd: but first wee were vpon them vntwaies, buttill *Master Cox* looking out, discerned (in his iudgement) white riffs, crying (lande) withall, though we could not afterward descry any land, it being very likely the breaking of the sea white, which seemed to be white cliffs, though the hait and thicke weather.

Immediately tokens were giuen vnto the *Delight*, to cast about to Sea ward, which, being the greater shippe, and of burden 120. tunnes, was yet foremost vpon the beach, keeping so ill watch, that they knewe not the danger, befoze they felt the same, too late to recouer it: for presently the Admirall stroke a grounde, and had soone after her sterne and hinder partes beaten in peeces: whereupon the rest (that is to say, the *Frigat*, in which was the General and the Golden *Hinde*) cast about East south east, bearing to the South, euen for our liues into the windes eye, because that way, carried vs to Sea ward. Making out from this danger, we fownded one while seuen fathome, then five fathome, then foure fathome and lesse, againe deeper, immediatly foure fathome, then but thre fathome, the sea going mightily and high. At last we recouered (God be thanked) in some despayre, to sea toome enough.

In this distresse, wee had vigilant eye vnto the Admirall, whom we sawe cast a way, without power to giue the men succour, neither could wee espye any of the men that leaped over boord to saue themselves, either in the same *Whinelle* or *Cocke*, or bypon rafters, and such like meanes, presenting themselves to men in those extremities: for we desired to saue the men by euery possible meanes. But all in vaine, sith God had determined their ruine: yet all that day, and part of the next, we heare by and downe as nere vnto the wracke as was possible for vs, looking out, if by good hap we might espye any of them.

This was a heauie and grieuous curst, to lose at one blowe our chiefe shippe fraighted with great provision, gathered together with much trauell, care, long time, and difficultie. But more was the losse of our men, which perished, to the number almost of a hundred soules. Amongst whome was appointed a learned man, an Hungarian, borne in the Citie of Buda, called *Therof Budaeus*, who of pietie and zeale to good attempts, aduentured in this action, minding to recorde in the Latine tongue; the deeds and things worthy of remembrance, happening in this disaster, to the honour of our nation, the same being adorned with the eloquent stile of this *Orator*, and rare Poet of our time.

Here also perished our *Warren Resiner* and Discoverer of inestimable riches, as it was left amongst some of vs in vndoubted hope.

No lesse heauie was the losse of the *Captaine Maurice Browne*, a vertuous, honest, and discrete Gentleman, our friende giuely in libertie giuen late befoze to men that ought to haue bene restrained, who showed himselfe a man resolute, and neuer vnprepared for death, as by his last act

August. 27.

28

Wherewith  
before the  
wracke.

29

Losse of our  
Admirall.

Wherewith  
Hungarian.

Wherewith  
ner of metall.

bert.  
etermined  
who was  
of Islande  
into vs  
ended to  
of victual,  
the Roysh  
West, and  
tinely to  
to be plan-  
uigation  
hine light  
flats and  
the men  
niecture,  
ers may  
I haue  
the Hind,  
South  
The

of this tragedie appeared, by report of them that escaped this wacke miraculously, as shall be hereafter declared. For when all hope was past of recourring the shippe, and that men began to give ouer, and to saue themselues, the Captaine was aduised before to lift also for his life, by the promise at the sterne of the shippe: but refusing that counsell, would not giue example with the first to leaue the shippe, but vsed all meane to exhort his people not to despair, nor so to leaue off their labour, choosing rather to die, then to incurre infamie, by forsaking his charge, which then might be thought to haue perished through his default, he being an ill president vnto his men, by leauing the shippe first himselfe. With this minde he mounted vpon the highest decke, where he attended imminent death, and inuoidable: how long, I leaue it to God, who withouthery noe his comfort from his seruants at such times.

It wonderfull  
escape and de-  
liverance.  
So great be-  
dread.  
So desperate re-  
solutions.

In the meane season, certaine, to the number of foueteene persons, leaped into a small pin-  
nelle (the bignes of a Thames barge, which was made in the New found land) cut off the rope  
wherewith it was to web, and committed themselues to Gods merrie, amidst the boyme, and  
rage of sea and winde, destitute of foode, not so much as a byppe of fresh water. The boate fell-  
ing ouercharged in foule weather with companie, Edward Heady a ballant souldier, and well  
reputed of his companie, preferring the greater to the lesse, thought better that some of them  
should euen all, made this motion to cast loes, and them to be throwen ouer board vpon whom  
the loes fell, thereby to lighten the boate, which otherwise seemed impossible to liue, offered himselfe  
with the first, content to take his aduventure gladly: which neuertheless Richard Clarke, that was  
Spalder of the Admirall, and one of this number, refused, aduising to abide Gods pleasure, who  
was able to saue all, as well as a fewe.

Thus was he  
misled.

The boate was carried before the winde, continuing fixe daies and nightes in the Ocean, and  
arrived at last with the men (aloue, but weake) vpon the New found land, saving that the fore-  
saide Heady, (who had bene late sicke) and an other called of vs Brasile, of his travell into those  
Countreies, died by the way, famished, and lesse able to holde out, then those of better health. For  
such was their poore mens extremite, in colde and wette, to haue no better sustenance then their  
owne urine, for fixe daies together.

Thus whome God deliuered from drowning, hee appointed to be famished, who doth giue li-  
mits to mans times, and appointeth the manner and circumstance of dying: whome againe he will  
preserue, neither Sea, nor famine, can confound. For those that arrived vpon the Newe founde  
land, were brought into France by certaine French men, then being vpon that coast.

After this heauie chance, we continued in beating the sea by Gods will, expecting when the wea-  
ther would cleere vp, that wee might yet beare in with the land, which we iudged not farre off, ei-  
ther the continent of some Island. For we many times, and in studdy places, found ground at 50.  
45. 40. fathomes, and lesse. The ground coming vpon our lead, being sometimes oyste lands,  
and other while a broad shell, with a litle land about it.

Contenting  
ing us to re-  
turne home as  
gaine.

Our people lost courage daily after this ill successe, the weather continuing thicke and blis-  
tering, with increase of colde. Winter by drawing on, which tooke from them all hope of amendment,  
feeling an assurance of worse weather to growe vpon vs euery day. The Lesse of vs laye full  
of flates and daungers inuoidable, if the winde blew harde at South. Some againe doubting  
we were ingulged in the Baye of S. Laurence, the coast full of dangers, and vnto vs vnknoen.  
But about all, prouision waxed scant, and hope of supply was gone, with losse of our Admi-  
rall.

Those in the Frigate were already pinched with spare allowance, and want of clothes chie-  
fly: Wherevpon they besought the Generall to returne for England, before they all perished.  
And to them of the Golden Pinde, they made signes of their distress, pointing to their mouths,  
and to their clothes of stinne and ragged: then immediately they also of the Golden Pinde, grew to  
be of the same opinion and desire to returne home.

The former reasons hauing also moued the Generall to haue compassion of his poore men, in  
whome he sawe no want of good will, but of meane fitt to performe the action they came for, re-  
solved vpon rectie: and calling to the Captaine and Spalder of the Pinde, he peeled them many  
reasons, inspyring this vnexpected returne, withall protesting himselfe greatly satisfied with that  
he had seene, and knew already.

Reiterating these wordes, he content, we haue seene enough, and take no care of eppence past:  
I will see you forth royally the next Spring, if God send vs safe home. Therefore I pray you  
let vs no longer sturue here, where we fight against the elements.

Omitting circumstance, both vnto the Captaine & Spalder of the Pinde consented to this

this motion, but to our con-  
ue returne as Shipping, and  
with the action as that of

So vpon Saturday  
harke for England, as to  
us and towar of the land  
not swimming after the  
er with his whole body  
about the water, as the re-  
confidently (setting him-  
selues in open view and  
and sight of men. Thus  
with ouglie demonstration  
right against the winde)  
spectacle we all beheld  
merry strange thing, as to  
What opinion others ha-  
uoke it for Bonum Om-  
nium.

The wind was large  
as the Frigate wherewith

Monday in the after  
de more then two dayes  
Race, vnto the place wher  
gaine is to be impured v  
in our returne.

This Monday the G  
his force, which he hurt  
of hard successe to be all  
night, that we might hee  
created to carry in the  
harpe boyme, which we

The weather faire, it  
with the Captaine, Sat  
morning vnto night. D  
and to come, lanmenting  
bookes and notes, and  
doubles being some man  
him: yet by circumstance  
vnto him in the Newe f  
as not able to containe  
cer the miscarriying of  
coast of New found land  
certaine things: among  
time, he could neuer con-  
fine to neede at hand.

Herein my opinion is  
me haue the greater hop  
conceit of these north y  
land. And as before he r  
two these north partes, I  
especially of S. Johns, w  
money and trauell vpon  
partie, whome he seemet

Also laying vnto me  
then to be reattempted  
discouerie, and referred  
from the South, and that

this motion, his owne compaignie can cease: yet comforced with the Generalls promises, of a speedie returne at Shipping, and induced by other apparant reasons, p[ro]voking an impossibilitie, to accomplish the action at that time, it was concluded on all hands to retire.

So upon Saturday in the afternoon the 31. of August, we changed our course and returned backe for England, at which very instant, even in winding about, there passed a longg betweene us and toward the land we now foresooke, a very lion to our seeming, in shape, haire and colour, not swimming after the manner of a beast by moving of his feete, but rather sliding upon the water with his whole body (excepting the legs) in sight, neither yet diving under, and againe rising about the water, as the manner is of Whales, Dolphins, Tunies, Porpoises, and all other fish: but confidently spewing himselfe above water without hiding: Notwithstanding, we presented our selves in open view, and gesture to amaze him, as all creatures will be commonly at a sudden gaze and sight of men. Thus he passed along turning his heade to and fro, yawning and gaping wide, with ought demonstration of long teeth, and glaring eyes, and to bidde us a fare well (comming sight against the wind) he sent forth a horrible voyce, roaring or bellowing as doeth a lion, which spectacle we all beheld so farre as we were able to discern the same, as men prone to wonder at every strange thing, as this doubtlesse was, to see a lion in the Ocean sea, or fish in shape of a lion. What opinion others had thereof, and chiefly the generall himselfe, I forbeare to deliver: But he wote it for Bonum Omen, rejoycing that he was to warre against such an enemy, if it were the worst.

August 31.

A monster of the sea.

The wind was large for England at our returne, but very high, and the sea rough, insomuch as the Frigate wherein the Generall went, was almost swallowed up.

Monday in the after noone we passed in sight of Cape Race, having made as much way in little more then two dayes and nights backe againe, as before we had done in eight dayes from Cape Race, unto the place where our ship perished. Which hinderance thitherward, and speede backe againe, is to be imputed unto the swift current, as well as to the windes, which we had more large in our returne.

September 2.

This Sunday the Generall came aboard the Hind, to have the Surgeon of the Hind to vesse his foote, which he hurt by treading upon a nail: At what time we comforced each other with hope of good successe to be all past, and of the good to come. So agreeing to carry our lightes alwaies by night, that we might keepe together: he departed into his Frigate, being by no means to be created to carry in the Hind, which had bene more for his service. Immediately after, followed a sharpe storme, which we overpassed for that time. Praised be God.

The weather faire, the Generall came aboard the Hind againe, to make merrie together with the Captaine, Master, and companie, which was the last meeting, and continued there from morning unto night. During which time, there passed sundry discourses, touching affaires past, and to come, lamenting greatly the losse of his great shippe, more of the men, but most of all, of his bookes and notes, and what els I knowe not, for which he was out of measure grieved, the same doubtles being some matter of more importance then his bookes, which I could not take from him: yet by circumstance gathered, the same to be the oare which Daniel the Spanon had brought unto him in the Newe found land. Whatsoever it was, the remembrance touched him so deepe, as not able to containe himselfe, he beate his boy in great rage, even at the same time. So long after the miscarriage of the great ship, because upon a faire day, when we were becalmed upon the coast of New found land, neere unto Cape Race, he sent his boye aboard the Admirall, to fetch certaine things: amongst which, this being chiefe, was yet forgotten and left behind. After which time, he could never conveniently send againe aboard the great ship, much lesse he doubted her time to neere at hand.

Our last conference with our Generall.

Circumstances to be well observed in our Generall, imputing the oare to be of a Musc Shippe.

Wherein my opinion was better confirmed diversly, and by sundry coniectures, which maketh me have the greater hope of this riche mine. For whereas the Generall had never before good conceit of these north partes of the world: now his minde was wholly fixed upon Newe founde land. And as before he refused not to grant assignements liberally to them that required the same into these north partes, now he became contrarily asserted, refusing to make any so large grants, especially of S. Johns, which certaine English merchants made suite for, offering to employ their money and travell upon the same: yet neither by their owne suite, nor of others of his owne companie, whom he seemed willing to pleasure, it could be obtained.

Also laying downe his determination in the Shipping following, for disposing of his voyage then to be reattempted: he assigned the Captaine and Master of the Golden Pemb, unto the South discovrie, and reserved unto himselfe the north, affirming that this voyage had wonne his heart from the South, and that he was now become a northerne man altogether.

Last

Last, being demanded what meanes he had at his arrivall in England, to compasse the charges of so great preparation, as he intended to make the next Spring: having determined upon two fleets, one for the North, another for the South: I enquired of him (he replied) I will take a pen-  
 nie of no man. I will bring good tidings unto her Majestie, who will be so gracious, to lende mee 10000. pounds, willing us therefore to be of good cheere: for he did thanke God (he said) with all his heart, for that he had scene, the same being enough for us all, and that wee needed not to seeke any further. And these last words he would often repeate, with demonstration of great fervencie of mind, being himselfe very confident, and settled in believe of insurmountable good by this voyage: which the greater number of his followers neuertheless mistrusted altogether, not being made partakers of those secrets, which the Generall kept unto himselfe. Yet all of them that are living, may be witnesses of his wordes and protestations, which sparingly I have delivered.

Leaving the issue of this good hope unto God, who knoweth the truth only, and can at his good pleasure bring the same to light: I will hasten to the ende of this tragedie, which must be knit up in the person of our Generall. And as it was Gods ordinance upon him, even so the vehement perswasion and intreatie of his friends could nothing availe, to divert him from a willfull resolution of going through in his Frigate, which was overcharged upon their deckes, with sightes, needings, and small artillerie, too cumbersome for so small a boate, that was to passe through the Dredan sea at that season of the yere, when by course we might expect much storme and foule weather, whereof in deede we had enough.

But when he was intreated by the Captaine, Master, and other his well willers of the Vinde, not to enter in the Frigate, this was his answer: I will not forsake my little company going homeward, with whom I have passed so many stormes, and perils. And in very truth, he was voyd to be so ont hard, by hard reports giuen of him, that he was afraid of the sea, albeit this was rather rashnes, then advised resolution, to preferre the winde of a vaine report to the weight of his owne life.

Seeing he would not bend to reason, he had provision out of the Vinde, such as was wanting aboard his Frigate. And so we committed him to Gods protection, and set him aboard his Junckell. We being more then 300. leagues outward of our way home.

By that time we had brought the Islands of Acores South of us, yet we then keeping much to the North, until we had got into the height and elevation of England: we met with very foule weather, and terrible seas, breaking hoze and high Pyramid wise. The reason whereof seemed to procede either of hilly grounds high and lowe within that sea, (as we see hills and dales upon the land) upon which the seas doe mount and fall: or else the cause proceeded of diversitie of winds, shifting often into sundry points: as which having power to moue the great Ocean, which againe is not presently settled, so many seas doe encounter together, as there had bene diversitie of winde. Howsoever it cometh to passe, men which all their life time had occupied the sea, never sawe more outrageous Seas. We had also upon our maine yarde, an apparition of a little fire by night, which sea men doe call Callor and Pollux. But we had onely one, which they take an evil signe of more tempest: the same is vsual in stormes.

Sunday the ninth of September, in the afternoone, the Frigate was nere cast away, oppressed by waues, yet at that tyme recovered: and giuing forth signes of ioye, the Generall sitting abast with a booke in his hande, cryed out unto us in the Vinde (so oft as wee did appoche within hearing:) Wee are as nere to heauen by Sea, as by lande. Reiterating the same speerch, well beseeching a souldier, resolute in Iesus Christ, as I can tellie hee was.

The same Sunday night, about twelue of the clocke, or not long after, the Frigate being a head of us in the Golden Vinde, suddenly her lightes were out, whereof as it were in a moment, wee lost the sight, and withall our watch cryed, the Generall was cast away, which was verie true. For in that moment, the Frigate was deuoured and swallowed vpp of the Sea, yet still we looked out all that night, and euer after, until wee arrived vpon the coast of England: Drinking no small salt at Sea, unto which wee graue not the tokens betwene us, agreed vpon, to haue perfect knowledge of each other, if wee shoulde at any time bee sepa-  
 rated.

In great torment of weather, and perill of drowning, it pleased God to send safe home the Golden Vinde, which arrived in Falmouth, the 21. day of September, being Sunday, not without as great danger escaped in a flawe, comming from southeast, with such thicke mist, that we could not discern land, as put in right with the haven.

From Falmouth we went to Dartmouth, and lay there at anchor before the range, while the cap-  
 taine

Withins in  
the Generall.

It token of a  
good mind.

It resolute and  
Christianlike  
saying in a  
breath.

Sir Humfrey  
G. returned.

Arrivall in  
England of  
the Golden  
Vinde.

taine went a land, to inquire  
happily have bene before  
hard successe, whom the  
of all occurrences in the  
for particularly, in discha-  
doe, holding himselfe satis-  
of his voychers safest, offer-  
ing to haue his Barke  
help to tow her in.

Nevertheless, when the  
every man to his home: a  
maned money to carry the  
barke should be carried into  
benefit of the wind, then  
Captaine, and great calv-

Reason accompanied with  
cause of his sudden depart-  
the Golden Vinde departed  
of so unprofitable a voy-  
and labour, hard diet, and  
les, by his great charges, it  
without providence follow-  
whosoever have confidence  
powerful hand and protect-  
in which he leaured them, as  
of their ruine.

Even so, amongst very  
mortalitie, spoilinges, and  
to hope a time may be sup-  
on may be collected, and so  
support this companie, (of  
the rest kept together in re-  
the voyage, which none el-  
comes, or prevented by dea-

Thus have I delivered  
brightly, faithfully, for so mu-  
(though he be extinguisht)  
pose by all presence honest  
will of God, and Christian  
possessed by Christians, as  
which, as his zeale deterr'd  
presumption (rather) in the

First, when yet there was  
on secret, neither any den-  
thel, he both was too pro-  
to employ both his and the  
like his associates were pro-  
which pleased not God to

Secondly, when by his  
his designements, as it is  
which God might raise, he  
ning, the cause pretended  
ving thus made recient, he  
went to proceede, least his  
betwene extremities, he  
would refused not to enter  
on the successe whereof hat-

But such is the infinite

came vnto a land, to inquire if there had bene any newes of the Frigas, which sailing well, might happily haue bene before vs. Also to certifie Sir Iohn Gilbert, vnto the Generall, of our hard successe, whome the Captaine desired (while his men were yet aboord him, and were withoutes of all occurrences in that voyage.) It might please him to take the examination of euery person particularly, in discharge of his and their faithfull endeour. Sir Iohn Gilbert refused so to doe, holding himselfe satisfied with rejoyce made by the Captaine: and not altogether despairing of his voyagers safetie, offered friendshipp and curtesie to the Captaine, and his companie, requiring to haue his Barke brought into the harbour: in furtherance wherof, a boate was sent to helpe to tow her in.

At motion of the Captaine vnto Sir Humfrey Gilbert.

Nevertheless, when the Captaine returned aboord his ship, he founde his men bent to depart, euery man to his home: and then the winde seruing to proceede higher vpon the coast: they demanded money to carry them home, some to London, others to Harwicke, and else where: (if the barke should be carried into Dartmouth, and they discharged, so farre from home:) or else to take benefite of the wind, then seruing to drawe neerer home, which should be a lesse charge vnto the Captaine, and great ease vnto the men, hauing els farre to goe.

Reason accompanied with necessitie perswaded the Captaine, who sent his lawfull excuse and cause of his sudden departure vnto Sir Iohn Gilbert, by the boate of Dartmouth, and from thence the Golden Hind departed, and tooke her harbour at Wainmouth. All the men tired with the tediousnes of so vnprofitable a voyage to their seeming: in which their long expence of time, much toyle and labour, hard diet, and continuall hazard of life was vntocompensed: the Captaine neuertheless, by his great charges, impaired greatly thereby, yet comforted in the goodnes of God, and his vndoubted providence following him in all that voyage, as it both alwaies those at other times, who soeuer haue confidence in him alone. Yet haue we more neere feeling and perseverance of his powerful hand and protection, when God both bying vs together with others into one same perill, in which he leaured them, and deliuereth vs, making vs thereby the beholders, but not partakers of their ruine.

In all recompense.

Even so, amongst very many difficulties, discontentments, mutinies, conspiracies, sicknesses, mortalitie, spoilinges, and wracks by sea, which were afflictions, more then in so small a flecte, or so short a time may be supposed: albeit true in euery particularitie, as partly by the former relation may be collected, and some I suppressed with silence, for their sakes liuing, it pleased God to support this companie, (of which onely one man died of a maladie inueterate, and long infectious:) the rest kept together in reasonable contentment and concord, beginning, continuing, and ending the voyage, which none els did accomplish, either not pleased with the action, or impatient of want, or preuented by death.

Thus haue I deliuered the contents of the enterpryse and last action of Sir Humfrey Gilbert beinge faithfull, so far as I thought meete to be published: wherein may alwaies appeare, (though he be extinguished) some sparkes of his vertues, he remaining firme and resolute in a purpose by all presence honest and godly, as was this, to discouer, possesse, and to reduce vnto the seruire of God, and Christian pietie, those remote and heathen Countries of America, not actually possessed by Christians, and most rightly appertaining vnto the Crowne of England: vnto the which, as his zeale deserueth high commendation: euen so, he may iustly be taxed of temeritie and presumption (rather) in two respects.

Constancie in Sir Humfrey Gilbert.

First, when yet there was onely probability, not a certaine and determinate place of habitation selected, neither any demonstration of commoditie there in esse, to induce his followers: neuertheless, he both was too prodigall of his owne patrimonie, and too careless of other mens expences, to employ both his and their substance vpon a ground imagined good. The which sailing, very like his associates were promised, and made it their best reckoning to be salued some other way, which pleased not God to prosper in his first and great preparation.

His temeritie and presumption.

Secondly, when by his former preparation he was enabled of abilitie and credite, to performe his designements, as it were impatient to abide in expectation better opportunitye and means, which God might raise, he thrust himselfe againe into the action, for which he was not fitte, presuming, the cause pretended on Gods behalfe, would carry him to the desired ende. Into which, hauing thus made rentrie, he could not yeeld againe to wish what, though he sawe no encouragement to proceede, least his credite foiled in his first attempt, in a second should utterly be disgraced. Betwene extremities, hee made a right aduenture, putting all to God and good fortune, and would not refuse to entertaine euery person and means whatsoever, to furnish out this expedition, the successe wherof hath bene declared.

But such is the infinite bountie of God, who from euery euill deriueth good. For besides that

fruit

afflictions  
werefall in the  
country of  
God.

fruites may growe in time of our traueling into those north-west lands, the crosses, turmoiles, and afflictions, both in the preparation and execution of this voyage, did correct the intemperate humors, which before were noted to be in this Gentleman, and made vnsauoye, and lesse delighefull his other manifold vertues.

Then as he was refined, and made neerer drawing vnto the image of God: so it pleased the deuntie will, to reforme him vnto himselfe, whither both his, and euery other high and noble minde, haue alwaies aspired.

Ornatissimo viro, Magistro Richardo Hakluyto Oxonij in  
Collegio adis Christi, artium, & Philosophia Magistro, amico,  
& fratri suo.



" Dominus  
Hakluyt.

Non statueram ad te scribere, cum in mentem veniret promissum literarum tuarum. Putabas te superiore iam Iunio nos subsecuturum. Itaque de meo statu ex doctore Humfredo certiorum te fieri iusseram. Verum sic tibi non esset satisfactum. Itaque scribam ad te ijsdem serere verbis, quia noua meditari & <sup>contemplari</sup> mihi hoc tempore non vacat, Vndecimo Iunij ex Anglia reuera tandem & serio soluimus, portu & terra apud Plemuthum simul relicti. Classis quinque nauibus constabat, maxima, quam frater Amiralij accommodauerat, ignotum quo consilio, statim tertio die a nobis se subduxit. Reliqui perpetuo coniunctim nauigauimus ad 23. Julij, quo tempore magnis nebulis intercepto aspectu alii aliam viam tenuimus: nobis seorsim prima terra apparuit ad Calendas Augusti, ad gradum circiter 50. cum vltra 41. paucis ante diebus descendissemus spe Australium ventorum, qui tamen nobis suo tempore nunquam spirauerunt. Insula est ea, quam vestri Penguin vocant, ab auium eiusdem nominis multitudine. Nos tamen nec aues vidimus, nec insulam accessimus ventis alio vorantibus. Ceterum conuenimus omnes in eundem locum paulo ante portum in quem communi consilio omnibus veniendum erat, idque intra duas horas, magna Dei benignitate & nostro gaudio. Locus situs est in Newfoundlandia, inter 47. & 48. gradum, diuum Ioannem vocant. Ipse Admiralius propter multitudinem hominum, & angustiam nauis paulo afflictiorum comitatum habuit, & iam duos dysentericis doloribus amisit: de ceteris bona spes est. Ex nostris (nam ego me Mauricio Browno vere generoso iuueni me coniunxeram) duo etiam casu quodam submersi sunt. Ceteri salui & longè firmiores. Ego nunquam sanior. In hunc locum tertio Augusti appulimus: quinto autem ipse Admiralius has regiones in suam & regni Anglię possessionem potestatemque vendicauit, iatis quibusdam legibus de religione & obsequio Regiņę Anglię. Reficimus hoc tempore paulo hilarius & lautius. Certè enim & qualibus ventis vsi sumus, & quam festi esse poterimus tam longi temporis ratio docuerit, proinde nihil nobis deest. Nam extra Anglos, 20. circiter naues Lusitanicas & Hispanicas nacti in hoc loco sumus: ex nobis impares non patientur nos esurire. Angli etsi satis firmi, & a nobis tuti, autoritate regii diplomatis omni obsequio & humanitate prosequuntur. Nunc narrandi erant mores, re giones, & populi. Ceterum quid narrem mi Hakluyte, quando præter solitudinem nihil video? Piscium inæhausta copia: inde huc commentibus magnus quæstus. Vix hamus fundum attingit, illicò insigni aliquo onustus est. Terra vniuersa montana & syluestris: arbores vt plurimum pinus: ex partim consenuere, partim nunc adolescunt: magna pars vetustate collapsa, & aspectum terrę, & iter euntium ita impedit, vt nusquam progredi liceat. Herbarum omnes procerę: sed raro a nostris diuersę. Natura videtur velle niti etiam ad generandum frumentum. Inueni enim gramina, & spicas in similitudinem fecales: & facile cultura & fatione in vsum humanum assueseri posse videtur. Rubi in syluis vel potius fraga arborescentia magna suauitate. Vix circa tuguria nonnunquam apparent, & conficiantur: sed albi sunt, vt mihi ex pellibus conicere licuit, & minores quam nostri. Populus an vllus sit in hac regione incertum est: Nec vllum vidi qui testari posset. (Et quis quæso posset, cum ad longum progredi non liceat?) nec minus ignotum est an aliquid metalli subsistat montibus. Causa eadem est, etsi aspectus eorū mineras latentes præ se ferat. Nos Admiralio auctores fuimus sylvas incendere, quo ad inspicendam regionē spaciū pareretur: nec displicebat illi consilium, si non magnū incommodum allaturum videretur. Confirmatum est enim ab idoneis hominibus, cum casu quopiam in alia nescio qua statione id accidisset, septenium totū piceas non comparuisse, ex acerbata maris vnda ex terebynthina, que cõflagentibus arboribus per riuulos defluebat. Cælum hoc anni tempore ita feruidum est, vt nisi piceas, quę arefiunt ad solem, assidui inuertantur, ab adustione defendi non possint. Hyeme

" In the south  
side of these  
mountains  
there is a  
stone  
of plaine  
and  
champion  
consisteth  
as  
Richard Clark  
saith.

" The great  
state of the  
mountain  
is  
other.

quã

quam frigidum sit, mensis Maio sexdecim essent insule: quarum item ita inuertiam, vt ne, vt consecrationem ebulę: Et in ipso mari anglicę, & pices capibus in hoc loco, in A deiis quas petimus reuo ne incassum, Impudum intelligere velim. Reuera autem spes, h vt me tuum putes, & eatenus, vt tu quoque & nos ama. In New

To the world  
Christi  
and b

I had not purposed  
I thought in June last  
I would be advertised of  
I will write therefore  
meditate new matters

The 11. of June  
uing the haue and la  
greatest, which the  
knowe not vpon what  
the of July: at which  
some of vs sayled one  
August, about the last  
degrees in hope of so  
ay sette time.

It is an Islande wh  
name. Yet wee neither  
our course directed to  
Hauen, whereunto the  
space of 20. houres b  
tuated in Newfoundland  
of Saint Iohns: the  
ness of his Shippe, be  
company, which died  
I toynd my selfe with  
chance were by our net  
more healthy. After a  
possession of the Cou  
publiques certaine ha  
at this time our fare  
the experience of so l

quam frigidum sit, magna moles glaciæ in medio mari nos docueret. Relatum est à comitibus mensè Maio sexdecim totos dies interdum se inter tantam glaciem hessisse, vt 60. orgyas altè essent infulg: quarum latera soli opposita cum liquecerent, libatione quadam vniuersam motem ita inuertiam, vt quod antè pronumerat, supinum euaderet, magno presentium discrimine, vt consentaneum est. Aer in terra mediocriter clarus est: ad orientem supra mare perpetuè nebulæ: Et in ipso mari circa Bancum (sic vocant locum vbi quadraginta leucis à terra fundus attingitur, & pisces capi incipiunt) nullus ferme dies absque pluuia. Expeditis nostris necessitatibus in hoc loco, in Austrum (Deo iuuante) progrediemur, tantò indies maiori spe, quò plura de diis quas petimus regionibus commemorantur. Hæc de nostris. Cupio de vobis scire: sed meo ne incassum, Imprimis autem quomodo Vntonus meus absentiam meam ferat, præter modum intelligere velim: Habebit nostrum obsequium & officium paratum, quamdiu vixerimus. Reuera autem spero: hanc nostram peregrinationem ipsius instituto vsui futuram. Nunc restat, vt me tuum putes, & quidem ita tuum, vt neminem magis, Iuuet dei filius labores nostros euenus, vt tu quoque participare possis. Vale amicissime, suavissime, ornatisime Hakluyte, & nos ama. In Newfoundlandia apud portum Sancti Iohannis 6. Augusti 1583.

Stephanus Parmenius  
Budeius, tuus,

¶ The same in English.

To the worshipfull, Master Richard Hakluyt at Oxforde in  
Christs church, Master of Art, and Philosophie, his friend  
and brother.

I had not purposed to write to you, when the promise of your letters came to my mind: But I thought in June last to haue followed vs your selfe, and therefore I had left order that you should be aduertised of my state, by Master Doctor Dunsfrep: but so you would not be satisfied: I will write therefore to you almost in the same words, because I haue no leasure at this time, to meditate new matters, and to vary or multiply words.

The 11. of June we set sayle at length from Englande in good earnest, and departed, leaving the haue and lande behinde vs at Wymmouth: our flecte consisted of five shippes: the greatest, which the Admirals brother had lent vs, with by her selfe from vs the third day, wee knowe not vpon what occasion: with the rest wee sayled still together till the thre and twentie of July: at which time our viewe of one another being intercepted by the great mists, some of vs sayled one way, and some another: to vs alone the first lande appeared, the first of August, about the latitude of fiftye degrees, when as before wee had descended beyonde 41. degrees in hope of some Southerly winde, which notwithstanding neuer blew to vs, at any like time.

It is an Island which your men call Penguin, because of the multitude of birdes of the same name. Yet wee neither sawe any birdes, nor by we nere to the lande, the winde seruing for our course directed to another place, but wee met all together at that place a little before the Haue, whereunto by common Counsell wee had determined to come, and that within the space of thr̄. houres by the great goodnesse of God, and to our great ioy. The place is situated in Newfoundland, betweene fortye leuen and fortye eight degrees, called by the name of Saint Iohn: the Admirall him selfe by reason of the multitude of the men, and the smallnesse of his shippe, had his company somewhat sickly, and had all ready lost two of the same company, which died of the Flux: of the rest wee conceiue good hope. Of our company (for I toynd my selfe with Maurice Bywne, a very proper Gentleman) two persons by a mischance were bywound, the rest are in safetie, and strong, and for myne owne part I was neuer more healchy. Wee arrived at this place the third of August: and the first the Admirall tooke possession of the Countrey, so him selfe and the kingdome of England: hauing made and published certaine Lawes, concerning religion, and obedience to the Queene of England: at this time our fare is somewhat better, and daintier, then it was before: so in good sooth, the experience of so long time hath taught vs what contrary winde wee haue founde, and

Rrr,

what

what great trauell we may enoure hereafter: and therefore we will take such order, that wee will want nothing, for we founde in this place, about twenty Portuguese, and Spanishe Shippes, besides the Shippes of the English: which being not able to marche vs, suffer vs not to be hunger starued: the English although they were of them selues stronge ynough, and safe from our force, yet seeing our aucthoritie, by the Queenes letters patentes, they betwix vs all manner of dutie and humanitie.

The manner of this Countrey, and people remaine nowe to bee spoken of. But what shall I say, my good Hakluyt, when I see nothing but a very wilderness? of fish here is incredible abundance, whereby great gayne growes to them, that trauell to their partes: the booke is no sooner throwne out, but it is eftsouenes dyuine by with some goodly fishes: the whole lande is full of hills and woodes. The trees for the most part are Pynes and of them some are very olde, and some yong: a great part of them beeing fallen by reason of their age, doth so hynder the sighte of the Lande, and stoppe the way of those that seeke to trauell, that they can goe no whither: all the grasse here is long, and tall, and little differeth from ours. It seemeth also that the nature of this soyle is fitte for coyne: for I founde certayne blades and eares in a manner bearded, so that it appeareth that by manuring and sowing, they may easilie bee framed for the vse of man: here are in the woodes bushe berries, or rather strawe berries growing vpon like trees, of great sweetnesse, Beares also appeare about the fishers Nagges of the Countrey, and are sometimes killed, but they seeme to be white, as I coniectured by their skinner, and somewhat lesse then ours. Whether there bee any people in this Countrey I know not, neither haue I seene any to witness it. And to say truth who can, when as it is not possible to passe any whither: In like sort it is vnknowne, whether any mettals lye vnder the hills: the cause is all one, although the very colour and hue of the hills seeme to haue some mynes in them: we myned the Admirall to see the woods a fire, that so we might haue space, and entrance to take view of the Countrey, which motion did nothing displease him, were it not for feare of great incontinence that might thereof insue: for it was reported and confirmed by verie credible persons, that when the like happened by chance in another Voye, the fish neuer came to the place about it, for the space of 7. whole yerres after, by reason of the waters made byter by the turpentyne, and rosen of the trees, which ranne into the ryuers vpon the firing of them. The weather is so hot this time of the yeere, that except the very fish, which is layd out to be dyed by the sunne, be euery day turned, it cannot possibly be preserued from burning: but how cold it is in the winter, the great heapes, and mountaines of yce, in the midst of the Sea haue taught vs: some of our company repoze, that in Spay, they were sometimes kept in, with such huge yce, for 16. whole dayes together, as that the Islands thereof were threescore fathomes thicke, the sides whereof which were towards the Sunne, when they were melted, the whole masse of heape was so innerted and turned in manner of balancing, that that part which was before downward rose vppwarde, to the great perill of those that are nere them, as by reason we may gather. The ayre vpon land is indifferent cleare, but at Sea towards the East there is nothing els but perpetual mistes, and in the Sea it selfe, about the Banke (for so they call the place where they find ground at forty leagues distant from the Shoare, and where they began to fische) there is no day without rayne. When we haue serued, and supplied our necessitie in this place, we purpose by the help of God to passe towards the south, with so much the more hope euery day, by how much greater the things are, that are reported of those Countreies, which we go to discouer. Thus much touching our estate.

Now I desire to know somewhat concerning you, but I feare in vaine, but specially I desire out of measure to know how my Patrone Master Henry Ampton doth take my absence: my obedience, and dutie shall alwaies be readie towards him as long as I live: but in drede I hope, that this Iourney of ours shall be profitable to his intentions. It remaineth that you thinke me to be still yours, and so yours as no mans more. The sonne of God bless all our labors, so farre, as that you your selfe may be partaker of our blessing. Adieu, my most friendly, most sweete, most vertuous Hakluyt: In Newfoundland lande, at Saint Johns Port, the sixt of August, 1583.

Steuens Parmenius of  
Buda, yours.



at hand and vnknowne  
to go west north west  
fifteene leagues off,  
The Generall sayd n  
I would thewe my se  
because hee presented  
of the clocke in the n  
the Generall went of  
shippe cast away men  
the lande for eyther o  
God woulde the day  
soule with his piece,  
to recouer the soule,  
it in againe that r  
burthen one tunne  
of the company could  
ay men as they could  
They happened on m  
ted into the boate as  
rehearse. And when  
had none: for they di  
for God, and looked  
bering so litle and so  
shippe to brooke hal  
nights, and that wa  
thing to helpe vs wa  
and so went euen as  
that put forth this  
boate lpueth in the S  
boate were not ouer  
shortest lottes wee w  
to him saying, no, i  
hance were good: the  
was off the lande, an  
they were but thesel  
in comfort. Thus we  
the wordes that swan  
noter moreouer: the  
Sunne but once e the  
day: then we were de  
and promised they sho



A relation of Richard Clarke of Weymouth, master of the shippe called the Delight, going for the discoverie of Norumbega with Sir

Humphrey Gilbert 1583. Written in excuse of that fault of casting away the shippe and men imputed to his oversight,

**D**Eparting out of Saint Johns Harborough in the Newfoundland land the twentieth of August unto Cape Raz, from thence we directed our course unto the Isle of Sablon or the Isle of Sande, which the generall Sir Humphrey Gilbert would willingly have seen. But when wee came within twenty leagues of the Isle of Sablon, we fell to controuersie of our course. The General came by in his Frigate and demanded of me Richard Clarke Master of the Admirall what course was best to keepe: I said that west south west was best: because the wind was at south & might at hand and unknown sands lay off a great way from the land. The General commaunded me to go west north west. I tolde him againe that the Isle of Sablon was West north west and but fifteene leagues off, and that he should beere upon the Island before day if hee went that course. The Generall sayd my reckoning was vntreue and charged mee in her Maiesties name, and as I would the we my selfe in her Countrey to followe him that night. I fearing his threatnings, because hee presented her Maiesties person, did followe his commaundement, and about seuen of the clocke in the morning the shippe strooke on ground, where shee was cast away. When the Generall went off to Sea, the course that I would haue had them gon befoze and saue the shippe cast away men and all, and was not able to saue a man, for there was not water vpon the sande for eyther of them much lesse for the Admirall that we were foureteen foote. Howe as God would the day befoze it was very calme, and a Souldier of the shippe had killed some foule with his peece, and some of the company desired me that they might hope out the boate to recouer the foule, which I granted them: and when they came aboarde they did not hope it in againe that night. And when the shippe was cast away the boate was a sterne being in burthen one tunne and an halfe: there was left in the boate one oare and nothing els. Some of the company could swimme and recouered the boate and did hale in out of the water as many men as they could: among the rest they had a care to watch for the Captaine of the Admirall: They happened on my selfe being the master, but could neuer see the Captaine: Then they halled into the boate as many men as they could in number 16. whose names hereafter I will rehearse. And when the sixtene were in the boate, some had sinale remembrance, and some had none: for they did not make account to liue, but to prolong their liues as long as it pleased God, and looked euery moment of an hower when the Sea would eate them vp, the boate being so litle and so many men in her, and so foule weather, that it was not possible for a shippe to brooke halfe a course of Sayle. Thus while wee remayned two dayes and two nightes, and that wee sawe it pleased God our boate liued in the Sea, (although wee had nothing to helpe vs with all but one oare, which wee kept by the boate withall vpon the Sea, and so went euen as the Sea would driue vs) there was in our companie one Master Hedely that put forth this question to mee the matter. I do see that it both please God that our boate lyueth in the Sea, and it may please God that some of vs may come to the lande if our boate were not ouer laden. Let vs make sixtene lottes, and those foure that haue the foure best lottes we will cast ouer boord, preferring the Master among vs all. I replied vnto him saying, no, we will liue and dye together. Master Hedely asked mee if my remembrance were good: I answered I gaue God praye it was good, and knewe howe farre I was off the lande, and was in hope to come to the lande within two or thre dayes, and sayd they were but thre score leagues from the lande, (when they were seuenie) all to put them in comfort. Thus wee continued the thirde and fourth day without any sustenance, saue onely the weedes that swame in the Sea, and salt water to drinke. The fifth day Hedely dyed and another moyeouer: then we desired all to die for in all these six dayes and six nightes we sawe the Summe but once & the Starre but one night, it was so foule weather. Thus we did remaine the 6. day: then we were very weake and wished all to die sauing only my selfe which did comforte them and promised they should come soone to land by the helpe of God: but the company were verie

20. Leagues from the Isle of Sablon.

15. Leagues from the Isle of Sablon.

Richard Clarke vntreuey that gett the Generall Sir Gilbert.

The ship cast away on Thursday being the 20 of August 1583.

Wherewith came into the ship boate.

Master Hedelys vngodly proposition.

impotunate, and were in doubt they should neuer come to land, but that I promised them the seuenth day they should come to shoare or els they should cast me ouer boord: which did happen true the seuenth day, for at eleuen of the clocke we had sight of the land, and at thre of the clocke at afternoone we came on lande. All these seuen dayes and seuen nightes the wind kept continually South. If the winde had in the meane time spitted vpon any other point, we had neuer come to land: we were no sooner come to the land, but the winde came cleane conerary at North within halfe an hower after our arriuall. But we were so weake that one could scarcely helpe another of vs out of the boate, yett with much a doo being come all on shoare we kneeled downe vpon our knees and gaue God praise that he had dealt so mercifully with vs. Afterwards those which were strongest holpe their fellowes vnto a fresh brooke, where wee sacrificed our selues with water and berries very well. There were of all sortes of berries plentie, and as goodly a cuntry as euer I saw: we found a very faire plaine Champion ground that a man might see very farre euery way: by the Sea side was here and there a litle wood with goodly trees as good as euer I saw any in Norway, able to mast any shippe, of pyne trees, spruce trees, firre, and very great birch trees. Where we came on land we made a litle house with boughes, where we rested all that night. In the morning I deuised the company thre and thre to goe euery way to see what foooe they could find to sustayne themselves, and appointed them to meete there all againe at noone with such food as they could get. As we went aboord to see found a great stoe of prason as good as any wee haue in England: a man would thinke they had ben sowed there. We rested there thre daies and thre nightes and liued very well with pease and berries, wee named the place *Saint Laurence*, because it was a very goodly riuer like the riuer of *S. Laurence* in Canada, and we found it very full of Salmones. When we had well rested our selues wee rowed our boate along the shoare, thinking to haue gon to the Grande Bay to haue come home with some Spaniards which are perely there to kill the Whale: And when wee were hungry or a thirst we put our boate on land and gathered pease and berries. Thus we rowed our boate along the shoare side daies: about which time we came to a very goodly ryuer that ranne farre vpon into the cuntry and sawe very goodly growen trees of all sortes. There we happened vpon a ship of *Saint Iohn de Luz*, which ship brought vs into *Biskap* to an harborough called *The Passage*. The Master of the Shippe was our great friend or els we had bene put to death if he had not kept our counsaile. For when the visitors came aboord, as it is the order in *Spaine*, they demanding what we were, he sayd we were poore fishermen that had cast away our ship in *Newfoundland*, and so the visitors inquired no more of the matter: that time, as soone as night was come he put vs on land and bad vs shift for our selues. Then had wee but tenne or twelue myles into *France*, which we went that night, and then cared no more for the Spaniards. And so shortly after we came into *England* toward the end of the yeere 1583.

They came on land the 7. day after their ship was wrecked.

The first settlement of the fourth part of Newfoundland land.

Fourteene of our men brought out of Newfoundland land in a ship of *S. Iohn de Luz*.

A true Report of the late discoueries, and possession taken in the right of the Crowne of England of the Newfoundland Lands, By that valiant and worthy Gentleman, Sir Humfrey Gilbert Knight,

Wherein is also briefly set downe, her highnesse lawfull Title therewnto, and the great & manifold commodities, that are likely to grow thereby, to the whole Realme in generall, and to the Aduenturers in particular, Together with the easines and shortnes of the Voyage.

Written by Sir George Peckham Knight, the chiefe aduenturer, and furtherer of Sir Humfrey Gilbertes voyage to Newfoundland,

The first Chapter, wherein the Argument of the Booke is contained.



Master Edward Hays.

It was my fortune (good Reader) not many dayes past, to meete with a right honest and discrete Gentleman, who accompanied that valiant and worthy Knight Sir Humfrey Gilbert, in this last iourney for the Westerne discoueries; and is owner and Capitaine of the onely vessell which is as yet returned from thence,

By

By him I did vnderstand last past, with fine sayings, forsooke his company.

The other four (I men, in Newfoundland Partners of the English themselves with his, his Commission: which honourably as did become that they could, and they

Then he went to be and soldiers. They for that season of the year Fifth of sunny soyes, his victual an Arnie, an Realme right necessitate place more convenient

On Sunday being an hill, in the view of twene thirtie and foure clemen and other foule Englishmen as Spaniards then and there, in the of England to be open berries, and assigned, by liberties, and priuiledges, he tooke possession a Turke and receiuing Lawe and custome of

Then he signified v were to liue in that lawe governed by such law as might be, should be on, presently he opened First, that Religion Church of England.

The second, that if itlie, her Crowne and

The third, if any of his eares, his ship and

All men doo very to Palestines Armes to English men, made sure by handings & byping place great accompt of, which session maintained for dispose of many thing

And after their ship want of men sufficient to proceede any further, the Delight, where returned immediately Capitaine and owner, goe, seeming to him

The 21. day they called, they tooke C where any of them had centia, the Generall

By him I did understand, that Sir Humfrey departed the coast of England the eleventh of June last past, with five sayle of shippes from Cautionbay neere Plymmouth, whereof one of the best forsooke his companie, the thirteenth day of the same moneth, and returned into England.

The other foure (through the assistance of Almighty God) did arrive at Saint Johns Haven, in Newfoundland, the third of August last. Upon whose arrivall all the Masters and chief Partners of the English Fleete, which were in the sayd Haven before, endeavouring to fraughte themselves with fish, repaired unto Sir Humfrey, whom he made acquainted with the effect of his Commission: which being done, he promised to intreate them and their goods well and honourably as did become her Majesties Lieutenant. They did all welcome him in the best sort that they could, and shewed him and his, all such courtesies as the place could afford or yeelde.

Then he went to viewe the Countrey, being well accompanied with most of his Captaines and souldiers. They found the same very temperate, but somewhat warmer then Englands at that season of the yeere, replenished with Beasts and great store of Fowle of divers kindes: And full of sundry foxes, both in the safe water and in the fresh, in so great plenty as might suffice to victual an Armie, and they are very easily taken. What sundry other commodities for this Realme might be necessary, the same doeth yeelde, you shall understand in this treatise hereafter, in place more convenient.

On Monday being the first of August, the Generall caused his tent to be set upon the side of an hill, in the viewe of all the Fleete of Englishmen and Strangers, which were in number betwene thirtie and fourtie sayle: then being accompanied with all his Captaines, Masters, Gentlemen and other souldiers, he caused all the Masters, and principall Officers of the shippes, as well Englishmen as Spaniards, Portugales, and of other nations, to repaie unto his tent: And then and there, in the presence of them all, he did cause his Commission under the great Seale of England to be openly and solempnely read unto them, whereby were graunted unto him, his heires, and assignes, by the Queenes most excellent Majestie, many great and large royalties, liberties, and priviledges. The effect whereof being signified unto the Strangers by an Interpreter, he tooke possession of the sayd land in the right of the Crowne of England by digging of a Turke and receiving the same with an Asel wambe, delivered unto him, after the maner of the Lawe and custome of England.

Then he signified unto the companie both Strangers and others, that from thenceforth, they were to live in that land, as the Territories appertaining to the Crowne of England, and to be governed by such Lawes as by good advise should be set downe, which in all points (so neere as might be) should be agreeable to the Lawes of England: And so to put the same in execution, presently he ordeined and established three Lawes.

First, that Religion publicly exercised, should be such, and none other, then is used in the Church of England.

The second, that if any person should be lawfully convicted of any practise against her Majestie, her Crowne and dignitie, to be adjudged as traitors according to the Lawes of England.

The third, if any should speake dishonourably of her Majestie, the partie so offending, to loose his eares, his ship and goods, to be confiscate to the use of the Generall.

All men did very willingly submit themselves to these Lawes. Then he caused the Queenes Majesties Armes to be ingraued, set by, & erected, with great solempnicie. After this, divers Englishmen, made suite unto Sir Humfrey to have of him by inheritance, their accustomed stagers, Readings & vying places, in sundry parts of that land for their fish, as a thing that they do make great account of, which he graunted unto them, in free farms. And by this means, he hath possession maintained for him, in many parts of that Countrey. To be briefe, he did let, set, give and dispose of many things, as absolute Governour there, by vertue of her Majesties letters patents.

And after their shippes were repaired, whereof one hee was driven to leaue behind, both for want of men sufficient to furnish her, as also to carrie home such sicke persons as were not able to proceede any further, he departed from thence the 20. of August, with the other three, namely, the Delight, wherein was appointed Captaine in Sir William Wincers place, (that thence returned immediately for England) Sir Maurice Browne: the Golden Vinde, in which was Captaine and owner, Sir Edward Day: and the little Frigate where the Generall himselfe did goe, seeming to him most fit to discover and appoach the shoare.

The 21. day they came to Cape Race, toward the South partes whereof, lying a while becalmed, they tooke Cod in largenes and quantitie, exceeding the other parts of Newfoundland, where any of them had bene. And from thence, trending the coast West, toward the Bay of Placencia, the Generall sent certaine men a shoare, to viewe the Countrey, which to them as

Sir Humfrey Gilbert did arrive at Saint Johns Haven in Newfoundland the 3. of August. Anno 1583.

Among these there was found the trace of a beare of 7. pines and a ballcour.

Sir Humfrey tooke possession of the new found land in right of the Crowne of England.

Three lawes established there by Sir Humfrey.

Sundry persons, became Swornes to Sir Humfrey, and tooke possession for him in his three places there.



and mercy of Almighty God in planting the Christian faith, in those so long unknown regi- ons, having in purpose to acquaint (as he did) that renowned Prince, the Queenes Father, grandfather, King Henry the seventh, with his intended voyage for the Westerne discourtes, was not onely derided and mocked generally even here in England, but afterwards became a laughing stocke to the Spaniards them selves, who at this day (of all other people) are most bounden to laude and praise God, who first stirred the man to that enterprise.

God doeth not  
atones begun  
his great  
wishes by the  
great per-  
sons.

And while hee was attending there to acquaint the King of Castile (that then was) with his intended purpose, by howe many wayes and meanes was he derided? Some scoyned the pldnes of his garments, some tooke occasion to iest at his simple and silly lookes, others asked if this were he, that totted so lowe, which did take vpon him to bring men into a Countrey that aboundeth with Golde, Pearle, and Precious Stones: If he were any such man (sayde they) hee would carry another manner of countenance with him, and looke somewhat loftier. Thus some iudged him by his garments, and others by his looke and countenance, but none entred into the consideration of the inward man.

His custome  
was to hold  
himselfe very  
lowe in man-  
king of count-  
erie.

In the ende, what successe his voyage had, who list to reade the Decades, the Historie of the West Indies, the conquest of Hernando Cortes about Mexico, and those of Francisco Pizarre in Peru about Cafamalcha and Cusco, may knowe moze particularly. All which their discoueries, traualles, and conquests, are extant to be had in the English tongue. This deuise was then accounted a fantastical imagination, and a drowle dzeame.

Hernando  
Cortez.  
Francisco  
Pizarre.

But the sequel thereof, hath since awaked out of dzeames thousand of soules to knowe their Creator, being theresof before that time altogether ignorant: And hath since made sufficient prooffe, neither to be fantasticke, nor vaine imagines.

Withall, howe mightily hath it enlarged the dominions of the Crowne of Spaine, and greatly enriched the subiects of the same, let all men consider. Besides, it is wel knowne, that sithence the time of Columbus his first discouerie, throughe their planting, possesing, and inhabiting those partes, there hath bene transpoyted and brought home into Europe, greater store of Golde, Siluer, Pearle, and Precious Stones, then heretofore hath bene in all ages, since the creation of the worlde.

I doe therefore hartely wish, that seeing it hath pleased almighty God, of his infinite mercy at the length, to awake some of our worthy Countrey men, out of that drowle dzeame, wherein we all haue so long slumbered:

That wee may nowe not suffer it to qualle for want of maintenance, that by these valiant Gentlemen our Countrey men is so nobly begun and enterprised. For which purpose, I haue taken vpon me to write this simple short treatise, hoping that it shall be able to perswade such as haue bene, and yet doe continue detractors and hinderers of this iourney, (by reason perhaps that they haue not deliberately and aduisedly entred into the iudgement of the matter) that yet now vpon better consideration they will become fauourable furtherers of the same. And that such as are already well affected therunto, will continue their good disposition: And withall, I most humbly pray all such as are no niggards of their purses in buying of costly and rich apparel, and liberal Contributors in setting foorth of games, pastimes, feasting and banquets, (whereof the charge being past, there is no hope of publique profite or commoditie) that henceforth they will bestowe and employ their liberalitie (heretofore that way expended) to the furtherance of these so commendable purposes proceedings.

is reasonable  
require.

And to this ende haue I taken pen in hand, as in conscience therunto mooued, desiring much rather, that of the great multitude which this Realme doeth nourish, farre better able to handle this matter then I my selfe am, it would haue pleased some one of them to haue undertaken the same. But seeing they are silent, and that it falleth to my lotte to put pen to the paper, I will endeavour my selfe, and doe stand in good hope (though my skill and knowledge be simple, yet through the assistance of almighty God) to prooue that the voyage, late enterprised for trade, traffike, and planting in America, is an action tending to the lawfull enlargement of her Maiesties Dominions, commobious to the whole Realme in general, profitable to the aduenturers in particular, beneficiall to the Saouages, and a matter to be attained without any great danger or difficultie.

The arguments  
of the booke.

And lastly (which most of all is) A thing likewise tending to the honour and glory of almighty God: And for that the lawfulness to plant in those Countreies, in some mens iudgements seemeth very doubtful, I will beginne the prooffe of the lawfulness of trade, traffike, and planting.

The

The seconde Chapter sheweth that it is lawfull and necessarie to trade and traffike with the Sauges: And to plant in their Countries: And deuideth planting into two sortes.



As first for traffike, I say that the Christians may lawfully trauell into those Countries and abide there, whom the Sauges may not iustly impugne and forbid in respect of the mutuall societie and fellowship betwene man and man prescribed by the Lawe of Nations.

For from the first beginning of the creation of the world and from the renting of the same after Noes flood, all men haue agreed, that no violence should be offered to Ambassadors: That the Sea with his Hauens should be common: That such as should fortune to be taken in warre, should be seruantes or slaves: And that Strangers should not be driven away from the place of Countrey whereunto they doe come.

If it were so then, I demaund in what age, and by what Lawe is the same forbidden or denied since? For who doubteth but that it is lawfull for Christians to vse trade and traffike with Infidels or Sauges, carrying thither such commodities as they want, & bringing from thence some part of their plenty.

A thing so commonly and generally practised, both in these our dayes, and in times past, beyonde the memoire of man, both by Christians and Infidels, that it needeth no further proofe.

And for as much as the vse of trade and traffike (be it neuer so profitable) ought not to be preferred before the planting of Christian faith: I will therefore some what entreate of planting (without which, Christian Religion can take no roote, be the Preachers neuer so careful and diligent) which I meane to deuide in two sortes.

The first, when Christians by the good liking and willing assent of the Sauges, are admitted by them to quiet possession,

The second, when Christians being vnwillingly repulsed, doe seeke to attaine and mainteine the right for which they doe come.

And though in regard of the establishment of Christian Religion, either of both may be lawfully and iustly exercised: (Whereof many examples may be found, as well in the time of Popes and Iosua, and other Rulers before the birth of Christ, as of many vertuous Emperours and Kings since his incarnation:) yet doe I wish, that before the second be put in practise, a proofe may be made of the first, sauing that for their safetie as well against the Sauges, as all other forraigne enemies, they should first well and strongly fortifie them selues: which being done, then by all fayre speeches, & every other good meanes of persuasion to seeke to take away all occasions of offence.

As letting them to vnderstand, howe they came not to their hurt, but for their good, and to no other ende, but to dwell peaceably amongst them, and to trade and traffike with them for their owne commoditie, without molesting or grieuing them any way, which must not be done by wordes onely but also by deedes.

For albeit, to maintaine right and repel iniurie, be a full cause of warre: yet must there hereof be due care had, that whereas the Sauges be fearful by nature, and sonde otherwise, the Christians should do their best endeour to take away such feare as may grow vnto them by reason of their strange apparel, Armour, and weapon, of such like, by quiet and peaceable conuersation, and letting them liue in securitie, and keeping a measure of blameless defence, with as little diuersion to the Sauges as may bee: for this kinde of warre would be onely defence and not offence.

And questionles there is great hope & likely hope that by this kind of meanes, we should bring to passe all effects to our desired purposes: Considering that all creatures, by constitution of nature, are rendered more tractable and easier wonne for all allayes, by courtesie and mildnesse, then by crueltie or roughnes: and therefore being a principle taught vs by naturall reason, it is first to be put in bre.

For albeit as yet the Christians are not so thoroughly furnished with the perfect rule of their language, either to expresse their mindes to them, or againe to conceiue the Sauges intent: Yet for the present opportunitie, such pollicie may be used by friendly signes, and courteous tokens towards them, as the Sauges may easily perceiue, (were their senses neuer so grosse) an assured friendship to be offered them, and that they are encountered with such a nation, as brings them benefite, commoditie, peace, tranquillity and safetie. To further this, and to accomplish it in deedes, there must bee presented vnto them graces, some kindes of our pettye marchandizes

The principal causes why this voyage is undertaken.

The first kinde of planting.

chandises and trifles: gold, Christall, Amber, accounted by them of more to a liking and a desire. Forsoeuer, it shall be the maine meanes, to signify our being admitted betwixt them, will alwayes bee ready in all inuasions, spoiles, and other hurtfull things: and a man whome it is bestow.

For it appeareth by experience in those countries, that as continuall warre being a cruel kinde of punishment, soe it is not to be used against the Sauges againe: and onely mightily stirred the Christians, proffering frankes, consents shall be correspondent to the Christians: that they haue of Land, thereby by such as the first sort of planting place.

But if after these good successfull factitions, but be Christians from their hope for which they painfull. Then in such a case to pursue reuenge with force, it is allowable by more securitie to increase their dealing.

Wherein if also the (as I iudge) but that it is to see their enemies, subduing murderous: this day is used: and no session, least happily attended, should afterwards their horrible idolatry, their wicked custome.

And in so doing, do of civilitie, for as much bene done by sundry respect to begin their of Christ, mightie and pollicie, and subdue. A

The trade in the old kinde began onely of sued in the Arke with of Nations, which in as much as all their poe their predecessour, & towards being vnderwrite the Land of Co

chandises and trifes: As looking glasses, Beis, Beads, Bracelets, Chaimes, or collers of Be-  
wige, Chyffball, Amber, Jet, or Glasse &c. For such be the things thought to vs of small value, yet  
accounted by them of high price and estimation: and soonest will induce their Barbarous na-  
tures to a liking and a mutual society with vs.

Howeuer, it shal be requisite, either by speeche, if it be possible, either by some other cer-  
taine meanes, to signifie unto them, that once league of friendship with all louing consuetu-  
dine, being admitted betwene the Christians and them: that then the Christians from thence forth  
will alwayes bee ready with force of Armes to assist & defende them in their iust quarrels, from  
all inuasions, spoyles and opprellions, offered them by any Tyrants, Adversaries, or their  
next boyders: and a benefite is so much the more to be esteemed, by howe much the person by  
whome it is bestowed standeth in neede thereof.

For it appeareth by the relation of a countreman of ours, namely David Ingram, (who tra-  
uelled in thole countries xi. moneths and more) That the Sauages generally for the most part,  
are at continuall warres with their next adioyning neighbours, and especially the Cannibals,  
being a cruel kinde of people, whose foode is mans flesh, and haue teeth like dagges, and do pur-  
sue them with rauenous mindes to eate their flesh, and deuoure them.

And it is not to be doubted, but that the Christians may in this case iustly and lawfully ayde  
the Sauages against the Cannibals. So that it is very likelic, that by this meanes we shall not  
onely mightely stirre and inflame their rude mindes gladly to embrace the louing company of  
the Christians, proffering vnto them both commodities, succour, and kindness: But also by their  
franke confessions shall easily enioy such competent quantitie of Lande, as euery way shall be co-  
respondent to the Christians expectation, & contentation, considering the great abundance  
that they haue of Lande, and howe small account they make thereof, taking no other fruites  
thereby then such as the ground of it selfe dooth naturally yeelde. And thus much concerning  
the first sort of planting, which as I assuredly hope, so I most hartelie pray may take effect and  
place.

But if after these good and fayre meanes vsed, the Sauages neuertheless will not bee here-  
withall satisficd, but barbarously will go about to practise violence either in repelling the Chri-  
stians from their Voyes & safe landings: or in withstanding them after wards to enioy the rights  
for which both painfully and lawfully they haue aduentured themselves thither:

Then in such a case I holde it no breach of equitie for the Christians to defende themselves,  
to pursue reuenge with force, and to do whatsoeuer is necessarie for the attayning of their safety:  
For it is allowable by al Lawes in such distresses, to resist violence with violence: And for their  
more securitie to increase their strength by building of fortres, for auoyding the extremitie of in-  
iurious dealing.

Wherein if also they shal not be suffered in reasonable quietnes to continue, there is no barre  
(as I iudge) but that in slioure assemblies, the Christians may issue out, and by strong hand pur-  
sue their enemies, subdue them, take possession of their Townes, Cities, or Villages, (and in a-  
uoyding murderous tyrannie) to vse the Lawe of Armes, as in like case among all nations at  
this day is vsed: and most especially to the ende they may with securitie holde their lawfull pos-  
session, least happily after the deparrure of the Christians, such Sauages as haue bene conuer-  
ted, should after wards through compulsion and enioyement of their wicked Rulers, returne to  
their horribile idolatric (as did the chyldren of Israel, after the decease of Iosua) and continue  
their wicked custome of most vnnaturall sacrificing of humane creatures.

And in so doing, doubtlesse the Christians shall no whit at all transgresse the bonds of equite  
or civilitie, for as much as in former ages, (yea before the incarnation of Christ) the like hath  
bene done by sundry Kings and Princes, Gouvernours of the chyldren of Israel: chiefly in  
respect to begin their planting, for the establishment of Gods woyle: as also since the Natyuitie  
of Christ, mightie and puissant Emperours and Kings haue performed the like, I say to plant,  
possesse, and subdue. For prooue whereof, I will alleadge you examples of both kindes.

We reade in the olde Testament, howe that after Noes flood was ceased, restoracion of man-  
kinde began onely of those fewe of Noes chyldren and familie as were by God prelected to be  
sauerd in the Arke with him, whose seede in proccesse of time, was multiplied to infinite numbers  
of Nations, which in diuers sortes deuided themselves to sundry quarters of the earth. And for-  
asmuch as all their posteritie being mightily increased followed not the perfect life of Noe  
their predecessour, God chose out of the multitude, a peculiar people to himselfe, to whome af-  
terwards being vnder the gouernement of Moyses in Mount Synay, hee made a grante to in-  
herite the Land of Canaan, called the land of promise, with all the other rich and fertile Coun-  
tries

The second  
kinde of plant-  
ing.

were next aduoyning therto. Nevertheless, before they came to possession thereof, hauing bene afflicted with many greuous punishments and plagues for their sinnes they fell in dispaye to enjoy the same.

But being encouraged and comforted by their Rulers, (men of God) they proceeded, arming themselves with all patience, to suffer whatsoeuer it should please God to sende: and at last attaining to the lands, they were encountered with great numbers of strong people and mighty Kings.

**Iosua 4.** Notwithstanding Iosua their leader replenished with the spirit of God, being assured of the iustnesse of his quarell, gathered the chiefe strength of the children of Israel together, to the number of 40000, with whom he safely passed the huge riuer Iordan, and hauing beset some priue spies for the discoverie of the famous citie Ierico, to vnderstand the certaintie of the Cities estate, he forthwith came thither, and enuironed it rounde about, with his whole power the space of seven dayes.

**Iosua 6.** In which respect, perceiuing none of the Gentiles disposed to yeld or call for merrie, he then commanded (as God before had appointed) that both the citie Iericho should be burned, yea, and all the inhabitants, as well olde as young, with all their cattell should be destroyed onely excepted Rahab, her kindred and familie, because she before had hid secretly the messengers of Iosua, that were sent thither as spies. As for all their golde, siluer, precious stones, or vessels of brasse, they were reserved and consecrated to the Lords treasure.

**Iosua 8.** In like manner hee burned the citie Hay, slew the inhabitants thereof, and hanged by their King. But for so much as the Gebionites (feearing the like event) sent Ambassadors vnto Iosua, to intreate for grace, fauour, & peace: he commanded that all their liues should be saved, and that they should be admitted to the company of the children of Israel. Yet vnderstanding afterwards they wought this by a policie, he vled them as Iudges to hew wood & to carie water, and other necessaries for his people. Thus began this valiant Captaine his conquest, which he pursued & neuer left till he had subdued all the Hethites, Amorites, Cananites, Peresites, Hewites, and Iebusites, with all their Princes and Kings, being thirtie and one in number, and diuers other strange nations, besides whose lands & dominions, he whole deuised among Gods people.

**Iosua 9.** After that Iosua was deceased, Iuda was constituted Lord over the Armie, who reuerting like charge from God pursued the proceedings of the holie captaine Iosua, and utterly banquished many Gentiles, Idolaters, and aduersaries to the children of Israel, with all such Rulers of Kings, as withstood him, and namely Adonibezek, the most cruell tyrant: whose thombes and great toes, he caused to be cut off, for so much as hee had done the like before vnto sennitie Kings, whome being his prisoners, he forced to gather up their victuals vnderneath his Table. In this God shewed his iustice to reuenge tyanny. Like reade likewise, that Gedeon a most puilliant and noble warrior, so behaued himselfe in following the worthy acts of Iosua & Iuda that in short time he not only deliuered the children of Israel from the hands of the multitude of the fierce Madianites, but also subdued them, and their Tyrants, whose landes he caused Gods people to possesse and inherite.

**Judg. 11. 13.** I could recte diuers other places out of the Scripture, which apely may be applied hereunto were it not I do endeavour my selfe by all meanes to be briefe. Now in like manner will I alledge some few of Inductions out of the autentick writings of the Ecclesiasticall Historiographers, all tending to the like argument. And first to begin with all, we doe reade: That after our Saviour Iesus Christ had suffered his passion, the Apostles being inspired with the holy ghost, and the knowlege of all strange languages, did immediately disperse themselves to sundry partes of the world, to the preaching of the Gospel. Yet not in so generall a manner, but that there remained some farre remote countries vnvisited by them, among the which it is reported that India the great, called the vttermost India, as yet had receiued no light of the word. But it came to passe, that one Metrodorus, a vertie learned and wise Philosopher in that age, being desirous to search out vnknowne landes, did first discover the same, finding it wonderfull populous and rich, which vpon his returne being published, and for certaine vnderstood, there was another graue Philosopher of Tyrus called Meropius, being a christian, who did resolve himselfe (following the example of Metrodorus) to trauaile thither, and in a short time assidid but with a few, in a small Vessel arrived there, hauing in his company two young youtnes, Edecius, and Frumentius, whome (being his schollers) hee had thoughtly instructed, both in liberall Sciences and christian Religion. Whome after that Meropius somewhat staying there, had (as he thought) sufficient vnderstanding of the Indians whole estate: He determined to depart, and to bring notice thereof vnto the Emperour, whome he meant to exhort to the conquest of the same.

A good note for Al Conquerors to be mercifull. **Judg. 6. 7.**

But

But by misfortune he was, a soze tempest at of the land: where he by his company, excepte the they were of comely the their King and Queene and ordered Edecius to be son of their learning and tion with the Princes. Some to gouerne, and go to passe to their native so highly fauoured them to reach them to carie and some grew to ripe pre

And Frumentius exerts at his discretion, of christian religion with swation might be best yea to passe accordingly, hee his native countrie. Am flamine, the effect of all thereof, by the abuse and set forth a conuenient position means came the Emperour the possession of all tract hereof, from the

Howeuer Eusebius hath mention how Constantine next neighbours, but heathen nations, as the Emperour thoughtly advised to christian religion, then called the Illud, made tributarie, and as to his wisdome seeme the world, and there were by friendly persuasions warde hee determined most parts of the South became victour ouer the ans, that nowe are the name of christians.

In the East likewise woman and brought in some any part of the world, el but in time hee overcame

This worthy beginner ouer Emperours all the booke of Eusebius call hisopic maketh mention his time, as well in converting the prophane Tyrant, as in the overthrow of the West, who father, either in enlarg

Howeuer, it is reported inferior in vertuous li



But by misfortune he was persecuted, for being in the midst of his course on the Sea home-ward, a storme tempest arose, and perforce dyone him backe againe, to an unknowne Ioye of the Cape land: where he by the most cruel barbarous Indians on the suddaine was slaine with all his company, except the two young schollers aforesaid, whom the barbarous Indians, by reason they were of comely stature and beautifull personages, took, and forthwith presented them to their King and Queene: which both being very well liked of, the King courteously created, and ordered Edesius to be his Butler, and Frumentius his Secretarie, and in few yeres by reason of their learning and civill government, they were had in great favour, honour, and estimation with the Princes, But the King departing this life, left the Queene his wife with her young sonne to governe, and gave free scope and libertie to the two christians, at their best pleasure to passe to their native soyles, allowing them all necessaries for the same. Yet the Queene who highly favoured them was verie sorrowfull they should depart, and therefore most earnestly intreated them to tarry and assist her in the government of her people, till such time as her young sonne grew to ripe yeres, which request they fulfilled.

And Frumentius excelling Edesius farre in all wisdom, ruled both the Queene and her subjects at his discretion, whereby hee tooke occasion to put in practice privately, that the foundation of christian religion might best yssue, and that soonest would be given unto him: which being thought to passe accordingly, he then with his fellowe Edesius, took leave of the Queene to returne to his native countrie. And so soone as he was arriv'd there, he revealed to the Emperour Constantine, the effect of all those events: who both commending his verbes and wholie allowing thereof, by the advise and good liking of Athanasius then Bishop of Alexandria, did arme and let forth a convenient power for the aide of Frumentius, in this his so godlie purpose. And by this means came the Emperour afterwards by faire promises, and by force of armes together, unto the possession of all the Indians countrie. The aucthor of this Royall Rufinus, received the truth hereof, from the verie mouth of Edesius companion to Frumentius.

Howsoever Eusebius in his Historie Ecclesiasticall in precise termes, and in divers places maketh mention how Constantine the great, not onely enlarged his Empire by the subduing of his next neighbours, but also endeavour'd by all means, to subiect all such remote Barbarous and heathen nations, as then inhabited the foure quarters of the world. For (as it is written) the Emperour thoughtly aided with a puissant armie of valiant souldiers whom he had before perswaded to christian religion, in proper person himselfe, came even unto this our countrey of England, then called the Island of Brittaines, bending from him full west, which he wholie conquered, made tributarie, and seled therein christian faith, and left behinde him such Rulers there of, as to his wisdome seemed best. From thence he turned his force towards the North coast of the world, and there betwixt subdued the rude and cruell Nation of the Scythians, whom of part by friendly perswasions, part by maine strength, he reduced the whole to Christian faith. Afterwards hee determined with himselfe to search out what strange people inhabited in the better most parts of the South. And with great hazard and labour, making his journey thither, at last became vicour over them all, even to the countrey of the Blemmyans, and the remote Ethiopians, that now are the people of Presbyter John, who yett till this day, continue and beare the name of christians.

In the East likewise, what Nation soever at that time hee could have notice of, hee easily wonne and brought in subiection to the Empire. So that to conclude, there was no region in any part of the world, the inhabitants whereof being Gentiles, though unknowne unto him, but in time hee overcame and vanquished.

This worthy beginning of Constantine, both his sonnes succeeding his route, and also divers other Emperours after ward to their bittermost endeavour followed and continued, which all the booke of Eusebius moze at large sette forth. Theodoretus likewise in his Ecclesiasticall Historie maketh mention how Theodosius the vertuous Emperour, employed earnestly all his time, as well in conquering the Gentiles to the knowledge of the holy gospel, betwixt subverting the poppish Temples and abominable Idolatry, as also in extinguishing of such vsurping tyrannies, as with Paganisme withstood the planting of christian religion. After whose decess his sonnes, Honorius, and Arcadius, were created Emperours, the one of the East, the other of the West, who with all stout godlinesse, most carefully imitated the footsteps of their Father, eicher in enlarging their territories, or increasing the christian flocke.

Howsoever, it is reported by the said aucthor, that Theodosius Junior the Emperour, notwithstanding inferior in vertuous life to any of the aboue named Princes, with great studie & zeale pursued, and

Meropius flaur.

Cedius and Frumentius persecuted by the Indians.

Frumentius in great favour with Constantine the great.

An other great work of God begun by a man of irate birth. Rufinus the Bishop of this storie.

Eusebius in his ecclesiasticall Historie maketh mention how Constantine the great, not onely enlarged his Empire by the subduing of his next neighbours, but also endeavour'd by all means, to subiect all such remote Barbarous and heathen nations, as then inhabited the foure quarters of the world.

Eusebius lib. 1. de vita Constant. Cap. 4. et cap. 9.

Eusebius lib. 1. cap. 30.

Theodor. in eccle. lib. 1. cap. 20.

Theodor. cap. 20. eodem lib.

ing bene  
page to  
den, ar  
and at last  
might  
stured of  
er, to the  
foze sent  
the Citti  
ower the  
be then  
yea, and  
ed onely  
ngers of  
cessles of  
by their  
unto lo-  
aned, and  
ng after  
water,  
which he  
Heures,  
ainers o-  
y people.  
ung like  
nglished  
ulers of  
ombes  
stuentie  
Table,  
n a most  
a Juda  
ctitude of  
ed Gods  
d hereun-  
will I al-  
toplogra-  
after oue  
p good,  
so sway  
that there  
beyond that  
it came  
bestious  
populous  
another  
se (follow-  
d a fewe,  
and Fru-  
dences  
thought)  
ng notice  
But

and prosecuted the Gentiles, subdued their tyrants & countries, and verely destroyed all their idolatry, converting their soules to acknowledge their onely Goddes and Creator, and their Countries to the enlargement of the Empire. To be briefe, who so lusteth to read Eusebius Pamphilus, Socrates Scholasticus, Theodoritus, Herma, Sozomen, & Eusegius Scholasticus, which all were most sage Ecclesiasticall writers, shall finde great store of examples of the worthy lives of sundry Emperours, tending all to the confirmation of my former speeches.

And for like examples of latter time (yea even in the memoire of man) I shall not neede to recite any other then the conquest made of the West and East Indies, by the Kings of Spaine and Portugale, whereof there is particular mention made in the last Chapter of this booke. Perrin haue I used moze copy of examples, then otherwise I would haue done, seeing that I haue bene in place where this manner of planting the Christian faith, hath bene thought of some to be scarce lawfull, yea, such as doe take vpon them to be moze then mearely learned. To these examples could I Ioyne many moe, but whosoever is not satisfied with these fewe, may satisfie himselfe in reading at large the Authours last aboue recited. Thus haue I as I trust prooued that we may iustly trade and traffike with the Saouages, and lawfully plant and inhabite their Countries.

The third Chapter doeth shewe the lawfull title, which the  
*Queenes most excellent Maiestie hath vnto those Countries, which*  
through the ayde of almightie God are meant to be inhabited.

1170.  
Owen Wynne  
meth, was then  
Prince of  
North Wales.  
Nullum tempus  
occurret Regi.  
This Island  
was discouered  
by Sir  
Wynne and  
his company,  
in this his  
last journey.



As it is very euident that the planting there shall in time right amply enlarge her Maiesties Territories and Dominions; I might rather say) re- store her to her Dignitie auncient right and interest in those Countries, in- to the which a noble and worthy personage, lineally descended from the blood royal, borne in Wales, named Madock ap Owen Gwyneth, departing from the coast of England, about the yeere of our Lord God 1170. arrived and there planted himselfe and his Colonies, and afterwarde returned himselfe into England leaving certaine of his people there, as appeareth in an auncient Welch Chronicle, where hee then gaue to certaine Islands, beastes, and foules sundry Welch names, as the Islands of Pen- gwin, which yet to this day beareth the same.

There is likewise a Soule in the sayd Countreys, called by the same name at this day, and is as much to say in English, as Whitehead, and in truth, the sayd foules haue white heads.

There is also in those Countries a fruite called Gwynethes which is likewise a Welch word. Moreover, there are diuers other Welch wordes at this day in vse, as Dauid Ingram aforesayd repository in his relations. All which most strongly argueth, the sayd Prince with his people to haue inhabited there. And the same in effect is confirmed by Muczuma that mightie Emperour of Mexico, who in an Oracion vnto his subjects for the better pacifying of them, made in the presence of Hernando Cortes, used these speeches following.

O my kindmen, friends, and seruants, you doe well knowe that eightene yeeres I haue bene your King, as my fathers and Graundfathers were, and alwayes I haue bene vnto you a louing Prince, and you vnto me good and obedient subjects, and so I hope you will remaine vnto me all the dayes of my life. You ought to haue in remembrance, that either you haue heard of your fathers, or else our Diuines haue i. Arcted you that we are not naturall of this Countrey, nor yet our Kingdome is durable, because our forefathers came from a farre Countrey, and their King and Captaine who brought them hither, returned againe to his naturall Countrey, saying, that he would send such as should rule and gouerne vs, if by chance hee himselfe returned not, &c.

These be the very wordes of Muczuma, set downe in the Spanishe Chronicles, the which being thoroughly considered, because they haue relation to some strange noble person, who long before had possessed those Countries, doe all sufficiently argue, the vndoubted title of her Maiestie: Forasmuch as no other Nation can truely by any Chronicles they can finde, make prescription of time for themselves, before the time of this Prince Madoc. Besides all this, for further prooffe of her Dignities title I shew the arriual of this noble Britton into those parts (that is to say) in the time of the D. Pauleties graundfather, of worthy memory, King Henry the seventh, Letters patents were by his Maiestie graunted to John Cabora an Italian, to Lewis, Sebastian, and Santhus, his three sonnes, to discouer remote, Barbarous and Heathen Countries, which discouerie, was afterwards executed to the vse of the Crowne of England, in y<sup>e</sup> said Kings time, by

Muczuma  
his Oracion  
to his subjects  
in presence of  
Hernando  
Cortes,  
which Oracion  
was  
made about  
the year. 1520.

by Sebastian and Santhus his  
sonnes, there is a fayre haven in  
the cape of Florida, as appeareth  
in the booke of the Discouery.  
And this may stand for an  
example then any other Christian  
of possition thereof, obiective  
ques Nunnes de Balboa, He  
thinks it needefull to write an

The fourth chapter sheweth  
likely to prooue very pro



As to the  
merally to  
realme, a  
martiall  
ready to  
of this bo  
there in sundry places of this r  
of fishing only; yet notwithstanding  
the name of fishermen, will  
more els brought of strange  
fish, as the especiall fishing  
in farre, and knowne safe ha  
thereabouts: whereas they no  
pleaseth themselves; or rather  
as might be sufficient to feed  
found there) whereof Dauid  
there is great plenty: & well  
small growing, yet it might  
where. Which being brought  
it be in respect of fishing on  
ities which are there found.

Moreover, it is well knowe  
that dwell in the North, so fe  
vellous delight in any gar  
ten calloske, a cappe of fish

For I my selfe haue hea  
dwell in the South  
of lesse time: that the prop  
ments. Which being so, i  
nettle to all such persons &  
ment of such as are discreet  
And questionlesse here  
haue bene, and now are  
woyke, by reason of the tra  
path) that by this means is  
to the enlargement of our

To what end need I e  
and navigation shalbe in  
example of the neere neig  
first discouery of the Indi  
themselves and theyr sub  
maisters and maisters. a  
Besides this, it will p  
onely a great number of  
& impossible to this rea

By Sebastian and Santius his sonnes, who were bozne heere in England: In true testimony whereof, there is a sayde haue in the westound land, knowne, and called vncle this day by the name of Santius haue, which ppooueth that they first discouered vpon that coast, from the height of 63; but in the cape of Florida, as appeareth in the Decades.

St. Oluer  
Halborp.  
St. Edward  
Roto.  
J. H. N. W.  
J. H. J. N.

And this may stand for another title to her Majesty: but any of the sayde titles is as much or more then any other Christian prince can pretend to the Indies, before such time as they had any possession thereof, obtained by the discouery of Christopher Columbus, & the conquest of Valques Nunnes de Balboa, Hernando Cortes, Francisco Pysarro, and others. And therefore I thinke it needefull to write any more touching the lawfullness of her Majesties title.

The fourth chapter sheweth how that the trade, traffike, and planting in those countryes, is likely to prooue very profitable to the whole realme in generall.



Now to the how the same is likely to prooue very profitable and benefitfull generally to the whole realme: It is very certaine, that the greatest wealth of this realme, and the chiefest strength and force of the same, for defence or offence in martiall matter and maner is the multitude of shippes, maisters & mariners, ready to assist the most stately and royall nauy of her Majesty, which by reason of this voyage shall haue both increase & maintenance. And it is well knowne,

that in sundry places of this realme shippes haue bene built and set forth of late dayes, for the trade of fishing onely: yet notwithstanding the fish which is taken & brought into England by the English nauie of fishermen, will not suffice for the expence of this realme foure moneths, if there were none els brought of strangers. And the chiefest cause why our English men do not goe so far Westward, as the especiall fishing places do lie, both for plenty & greatnesse of fish, is for that they haue no factories and knowne safe harbor in those parts. But if our nation were once planted there, or nere therabouts: where as they now fish but for two moneths in the yeere, they might then fish so long as pleased themselves: or rather as they comming finde such plenty of fish ready taken, salted & dried, as might be sufficient to fraugeth them home without long delay (God granting that sale may be found there) whereof Dauid Ingram (who trauelled in those countryes as aforesaid) saith that there is great plenty: & wisheth all the climate doth giue great hope, that though there were none naturally growing, yet it might as well be made there by art, as it is both in Rochell & Bayon, or els where. Which being brought to passe, shall increase the number of our shippes and mariners, were it but in respect of fishing onely: but much more in regard of the sundry merchandises and commodities which are there found and had in great abundance.

For the main  
net.

Moreover, it is well knowne that all Sauages, as well those that dwell in the South, as those that dwell in the North, so soone as they shall beginne but a little to taste of ciuility, will take marvellous delight in any garment, be it neuer so simple: as a tunicke, a blew, yellow, red, or greene coten callocke, a cappe or such like, and will take incredible paines for such a trifle.

For I my selfe haue heard this report made sundry times, by diuers of our countrymen, who haue dwelt in the Southerly parts of the West Indies, some twelues yeeres together, and some of lesse time: that the people in those parts are easily reduced to ciuility both in maners and garments. Which being so, what bene for our English clothes will thereby ensue, and how great benefite to all such persons & artificers whose names are coted in the margent, I do leaue to the iudgement of such as are discreet.

Clothiers,  
Woolmers,  
Carders,  
Spinners,  
Wauers,  
Fullers,  
Shearmen,  
Dyers,  
Drapers,  
Clothers,  
Cappers,  
Hatters, &c.  
And many be  
rapid towne  
repaired,

And questionlesse hereby it will also come to passe, that all such towne and villages, as both haue bene, and now are bitterly decayed and ruinated (the pooze people thereof being not set on worke, by reason of the transportation of raw wooll of late dayes, more excellently then in times past) that by this means be restored to theyr pristinae wealth and estate, all which do like wise tend to the enlargement of our nauie, and maintenance of our nauigation.

To what end need I endow my selfe by arguments to prooue, that by this voyage our nauie and nauigation shall be enlarged, when as there needeth none other reason then the manifest & late example of the neere neighbors to this realme, the kings of Spaine and Portugall, who since the first discouery of the Indies, haue not onely mightily enlarged theyr dominions, greatly increased themselves and theyr subjects: but haue also by iust account crebled the number of theyr shippes, maisters and mariners, a matter of no small moment and importance.

The able persons of this realme shall by occasion of this voyage be well employed, and set on worke.

Besides this, it will prooue a generall benefite vnto our countrye, that though this occasion, not onely a great number of men which do now liue idly at home, and are burthenous, chargeable, & impossible to this realme, shall hereby be set on worke, but also children of twelue or fourteen yeeres

peres of age, or vnder, may be kept from idleness, in making of a thousand knives of trading things, which will be good merchandise for that countrey. And moreover, our idle women (which the realme may well spare) shall also be employed on plucking, drying, and sorting of feathers, in pulling, beating, and working of hemp, and in gathering of cotton, and diuers things which neede necessity for dying. All which things are to be found in those countreys most plentifully. And the men may employ themselves in dragging for pearle, working for mines, and in matters of husbandry, and the worst in hunting the Whale for tallow, and making calkes to put the same in; besides in fishing for cod, salmon, and herring, drying, salting, and barreling for the same, and selling of furs, by buying and sawing of them, and such like works, meet for those persons as are no men of art or science.

Many other things may be found to the great reliefe and good employments of no small number, of the naturall subjects of this realme, which do now liue herre (idle) to the common annoy of the whole state. Neither may I heere omit the great hope and likelihood of a passage by the Grand bay, into the South seas, confirmed by sundry authors to be found leading to Cathay, the Moluccas and Spiceries, whereby may ensue as general a benefit to the realme, or greater then yet hath bene spoken of, without either such charges, or other inconueniences, as by the tedious tract of time and perill, which the ordinary passage to those parts at this day doeth minister.

And to conclude this argument withall, it is well knowne to all men of sound iudgement, that this voyage is of greater importance, and will be found more beneficiall to our countrey, then all other voyages at this day in vse and trade amongst vs.

The fift chapter sheweth, that the trading and planting in those countreys is likely to prooue to the peticular profit of all aduenturers.



But now according to my promise shew forth some probable reasons, that the aduenturers in this journey are to take particular profit by the same. It is therefore convenient that I do diuide the aduenturers into two sortes: the noblemen & gentlemen by themselves, and the merchants by themselves. For as I do heere, it is meant that there shall be one society of the noblemen and gentlemen, and another society of the merchants. And yet not so diuided, but that each society may freely and frankly trade and traffike one with the other.

And first to bend my speech to the noblemen and gentlemen, who do chiefly seeke a temperate climate, wholesome ayre, fertile soile, and a strong place by nature, whereupon they may fortifie, and there either plant themselves, or such other persons as they shall thinke good to send to be lords of that place and countrey: to them I say that all these things are very easily to be found within the degrees of 30 and 60 as before said, either by South or North, both in the Continent, and in Islands thereunto adioyning at their choice: but the degree certaint of the elevation of the pole, and the best climate where the best places of force and fertility are to be found, I omit to make publike, for such regard as the wisest sort can easily coniecture: the rather because I do certainly vnderstand, that some of those which haue the managing of this matter, know it as well or better then I my selfe, and do meane to reueale the same when cause shall require, to such persons whom it shall concerne, and to no other: so that they may learne and testie themselves in such climate as shall best agree with their owne nature, disposition, and good liking; and in the whole tract of that land, by the distribution of as many as haue bene there, great plenty of minerrall matter of all sorts, and in very many places, both stones of ppyre, pearle and chrystall, and great store of beaues, birds, and fowles both for pleasure and necessary vse of man are to be found.

And to such as take delight in hunting, there are Beagges, Wild boyes, Foxes, Hares, Curriers, Badgers, Otters, and diuers other such like for pleasure. Also for such as haue delight in hauking, there are haues of sundry kinds, and great store of game, both for land and riuers, as Foyants, Partridges, Cranes, Heronshaws, Ducks, Gallards, and such like. There is also a kinde of beaue, much bigger then an Ox, whose hide is more then eightene foot long, of which sort a country man of ours, one Walker a sea man, who was vpon that coast, did for a true trust repose in the presence of diuers honourable and worshipfull persons, that he and his company did stand in one cottage about two hundred and forty hides, which they brought away and sold in France for forty shillings an hide: and with this agreeth David Ingram, and describeth that beaue at large, supposing it to be a certaine kinde of Buffe: there are likewise beaues and fowles of diuers kinds, which I omit for breuities sake, great store of fish both in the salt water and in the fresh, plenty of grapes as bigge as a mans thumb, and the most delicate wine of the Palme tree, of which wine there be diuers of good credit in this realme haue tasted: and there is also a kinde of graine called

Worme both  
golds worme  
is. Last  
faint natur  
rally.

Keath the bee  
gimming of the  
bees in  
is, diuers  
voyages  
concerning the  
bees  
of  
AMERICA.

Beaues for  
pleasure.

If there be  
for forty  
things a piece.

Wine grapes,  
wine of the  
Palme tree.

Maize, Potato roots, and they are once sown, they

And now for the better well disposed merchants, I will first say vnto the degrees about said, fertility of soile, and euery we do trauell into Barbadoes may be either presently to danger then now we haue likelihood and presumption to thinke that they haue

Of beaues for furs

Marterns.  
Beaues.  
Foxes, blacke and white  
Leopards.

Of Wormes.

Silke wormes great

Of Birds.

Hawkes.  
Bitters.  
Curlewes.

Of Fruits.

Grapes very large.  
Muskmellons.  
Limmons.  
Dates great.  
Orenges.  
Figgis.  
Proines.  
Raisins great and small.  
Pepper.  
Almonds.  
Citrons.

And seeing that for the first supply will giue vnto well minded persons of so good an enterprise

Now for the trial of this voyage, there is proposed first aduerture: and yet seruans, his and they other voyagers haue not haue aduencured in the there are to be admitted in therefore generally I shal haue. For if it do so fauour will) the gaine which with little charge, great deepe riuers at the best port for in the most part that three times, or there, & dwell vpon the assistance in the world

Maize, Potato rootes, and sundry other frutes naturally growing there: so that after such time as they are once settled, they shall need to take no great care for themall.

And now for the better contentation and satisfaction of such woorthfull, honest minded, and well disposed merchants, as haue a desire to the furtherance of euery good and commendable action, I will first say vnto them, as I haue done before to the noblemen and gentlemen, that within the degrees aboue said, is doubtlesse to be found the most wholesome and best temperature of ayre, fertility of soile, and euery other commodity of merchandize, for the which, with no small perill we do trauell into Barbary, Spaine, Portugal, France, Italie, Spofconie & Danske. All which may be either presently had, or at the least with in very short time, portured from thence with lesse danger then now we haue them. And yet to the end my argument shall not altogether stand vpon likelihoods and presumptions, I say that such persons as haue discouered and trauelled those parts, do testifie that they haue found in those countreyes all these things following, name ly:

<i>Of beasts for swares.</i>	Herons.	Salmon.
Martens.	Partridges.	Seales.
Beauers.	Cranes.	Herrings.
Foxes, blacke and white.	Mallards.	<i>Of Trees.</i>
Leopards.	Wilde geefe.	Palme trees yeelding sweet
<i>Of Wormes.</i>	Stocke dooues.	wines.
Silke wormes great & large	Margaus.	Cedars.
<i>Of Birds.</i>	Blacke birds.	Firres.
Hawkes.	Parrots.	Salafras.
Bitters.	Pengwins.	Oake.
Curlewes.	<i>Of Fishes.</i>	Elme.
	Codde.	Popler.

And sundry other strange Trees, to vs unknowne.

<i>Of Fruits.</i>	<i>Of Mettals.</i>	Chrystal.	Traine oile.
Grapes very large.	Gold.	<i>Sundry other commodities of all sorts.</i>	Muske codde.
Muskemellons.	Siluer.		Salt.
Limmons.	Copper.		Tallow.
Dates great.	Lead.	Rosen.	Hides.
Orenges.	Tinne.	Pitch.	Hempe.
Figges.	<i>Of Stones.</i>	Tarre.	Flaxe.
Proines.	Turkies.	Turpentine.	Cochenello & dies
Raisins great and small.	Rubies.	Frankensence.	of diuers sorts.
Pepper.	Pearls great & faire.	Honny.	Feathers of sundrie
Almonds.	Marble, of diuers kinds.	Waxe.	sorts, as for pleasure and filling of
Citrons.	Iasper.	Rubarbe.	Featherbeds.
		Oile Oliue.	

And seeing that for small costes, the truth of these things may be understood (whereof this intended supply will giue vs more certaine assurance) I doe finde no cause to the contrary, but that all well minded persons should be willing to aduenture some conuenient portion for the furtherance of so good an enterpryse.

Now for the trial<sup>l</sup> hereof, considering that in the articles of the society of the aduenturers in this voyage, there is provision made, that no aduenturer shall be bound to any further charge then his first aduenture: and yet notwithstanding herce still to himselfe, his children, his apprentices and seruants, his and theyr freedom for trade and traffike, which is a priuilege that aduenturers in other voyages haue not: and in the said articles it is likewise provided, that none other then such as haue aduentured in the first voyage, shall become aduenturers in this supply, at any time hereafter are to be admitted in the said society, but as redemptionaries, which will be very chargeable: therefore generally I say vnto all such according to the olde p<sup>r</sup>ouise, Nothing venture, nothing haue. For if it do so fall out, according to the great hope and expectation had (as by Gods grace it will) the gaine which now they reape by traffike into other far countries, shall by this trade returne with lesse charge, greater gaine, & more safety: Little charge I say, by reason of the ample & large deepe riuers at the very bankes, whereof there is many, whereby both easily & quietly they may transport fr<sup>o</sup> innermost parts of the main land, all kinde of merchandize, yea in vessels of great burde, & that three times, or twise in the yere at the least. But let vs omit all prescriptions how we should proceed, & dwell vpon the certaintie of such commodities as were discouered by Sir Humfrey Gilbert, & his assistants in Newfoundland in August last, & of there may be very easily made, Pitch, Tar, Rosen,

Commodities found in Newfoundland.

Hope asbes, in great plenty, yea, as it is thought, enough to serue the whole realme of euery of these kindes: And of Trame oile such quantity, as if I should see tohine the value that they doe esteeme it at, which haue bene there, it would seeme incredible.

It is hereby intended, that these commodities in this abundance manner, are not to be gathered from thence, without planting and sowing there. And as for other things of more value, and those of more sorts and kindes then one or two (which were likewise discovered there) I doe holde it for some respects, may meet for a time to be concealed then better.

Of the sowing I do speake nothing, because it is generally knowne: and it is not to be forgotten, what trifles they be that the Saouages do require in exchange of these commodities: yea, for pearle, golde, siluer, and precious stones, All which are matters in trade and traffike of great moment. But admit that it should so fall out, that the aboue specified commodities shall not happily be found out within this first yeere: Yet it is very cleere that such and so many may be found out as shall minister iust occasion to thinke all cost & labour well bestowed. For it is very certaine, that here is one seat for sowing, of great safety, wherein these commodities following, especially are to be had, that is to say, Grapes for wine, Whales for oyle, Krump for voyage, and other necessary things, and fish of farre greater size, and plenty, then that of the newfound land, and of all these so great store, as may suffice to serue our whole realme.

Besides all this, if credit may be giuen to the inhabitants of the same soyle, a certaine riuer doth euer runne aduoyne, which leadeth to a place abounding with rich substance: I do not hereby meane the passage to the Moluccas, whereof before I made mention.

And it is not to be omitted, how that about two yeres past, certaine merchants of M. Mallobes in France, did hyre a shippe out of the Island of Jersey, to the end that they would keepe that trade secret from theyr countrymen, and they would admit no mariner, other then the say boy belonging to the said shippe, to go with them, which shippe was about 70 tunne. I do knowe the shippe and the boy very well, and am familiarly acquainted with the owner, which voyage prooued very beneficiall.

To conclude, this which is already said, may suffice any man of reasonable disposition, to serue for a taste, vntill such time as it shall please almighty God through our owne industrie, to send vs better things. In the meane season, if any man well affected to this iourney, shall stand in doubt of any matter of importance touching the same, he may satisfie himselfe with the iudgement and liking of such of good calling and credit, as are principall dealers therein. For it is not necessary in this treatise, publickly to set forth the whole secrets of the voyage.

The sixt chapter sheweth that the traffike and planting in those countries, shall be vnto the Saouages themselves very beneficiall and gainfull.



Now to the end it may appeare, that this voyage is not undertaken altogether for the peculiar commodity of our selues, and our country (as generally other trades and iournies be) it shall fall out in proofe, that the Saouages shall hereby haue iust cause to blesse the houre, when this enterprise was undertaken.

First and chiefly, in respect of the most happy and glad some tidings of the most glorious Gospell of our Sauiour Iesus Christ, whereby they may be brought from fallhood to truth, from darknesse to light, from the way of death to the path of life, from superstitious idolatry to sincere Christianity, from the deuill to Christ, from hell to heauen. And in respect of all the commodities they can neede vs (where they many more) that they should but receiue this only benefite of Christianity, they were more then fully recompensed.

But herein it may be objected, that the Gospell must be freely preached, for such was the example of the Apostles: vnto whom although the authorities and examples before alleged of Emperours, Kings, and Princes, as well before Christs time as since, might sufficiently suffice: yet for further answer, we may say with S. Paul: If we haue sowed vnto you heauenly things, do you thinke it much that we should reape your carnall things? And withall, The workman is woorthie of his hire. These heauenly tidings which these labourers our countymen (as messengers of Gods great goodnesse and mercy) will voluntarily present vnto them, doe sette vnto theyr earthly riches. Whereouer, if the other inferior worldly & temporal things, which they shall receiue from vs, be weighed in equall ballance, I assure my selfe, that by equall iudgement of any indifferent person, the benefites which they then receiue, shall farre surmount those which they shall depart withall vnto vs. And admit that they had (as they haue not) the knowledge to put theyr hand to some use: yet being brought from iustly ignorance to iustly and knowledge, and made

made them to vnderstand map peeld more commodities iust cause of complaint: we create land, to the end they

But this is not all the knowledge how to till and honest manners, from dishonest and withall shall be caught them most vpon, they shall buye the Caribals, where meane many of theyr people, a most horrible and detestable among them. And do feare least I haue already

The seventh chapter sheweth the cultic, as many would



Now therefore without the glorious performance as aforesaid a good upon them to make more rage others, that be very which neither would be

I say and affirme that doe stand vs in need of goodnesse, of long time the same, both from slaughter at this day great number be contented to hazard their out wages, in hope the small charge to the victuall (whereof there great artillery, or costely such a journey may be vntill such time as diuers well woorthy a greater land withall before all

Another helpe we haue in this iourney procure other necessities needful for fish in Newfoundland commonly go with empearth the the fault of money then the detractione, hath in like manner his holy hand blessed the land, we may passe stre our enemies, or doubt selfe some faileth from them make great account of the passage is short, for different winds, & returne same our iourney, by recourse, we may part of goods there, be full of Christian prince, and made

make them to understand how the tenth part of the land may be so manured and employed, as it may peeld more commodities to the necessary vse of mans life, then the whole now doth: That w<sup>ch</sup> cause of complaint may they haue? And in my p<sup>ri</sup>uate opinion, I doe ver<sup>y</sup> thinke that God did create land, to the end that it should by culture and husbandry, yeeld things necessary for mans life, But this is not all the benefit which they shall receiue by the Christians: for, ouer and beside the knowledge how to till and dress the grounds, they shall be reduced from wilde, custom<sup>er</sup> to honest manners, from disorderd riotous routs and companies to a well gouerned commonwealth, and withall shall be taught mechanicall occupations, arts, and liberal sciences: and which shalbe them most vpon, they shall be defended from the cruelty of the tyranicall and bloody sucking nig<sup>ro</sup>boys the Canibals, whereby in iustice number of the people shall be preserved. And lastly, by this means many of the poore innocente children shall be preserved from the bloody knife of the sacrifice, a most horrible and detestable custome in the sight of God and man, now and euer heretofore used amongst them. Many other things could I here allege to this purpose, were it not that I do feare least I haue already sayd more then halfe tired the reader.

This bargain can not be used, where both parties are gainers.

The seuenth chapter sheweth that the planting there, is not a matter of such charge or difficulty, as many would make it seeme to be,

**N**ow therefore for prooff, that the planting in these parts is a thing that may be done without the aide of the princes power and purse, contrary to the allegation of many malicious persons, who will neither be actors in any good action themselves, nor so much as aske a good word to the setting forward thereof: and that woofe is, they will take vpon them to make molehills seeme mountaines, and flies elephants, to the end they may discourage others, that be very well or indifferently affected to the matter, being like vnto Clops togge, which neither would eat hay himselfe, nor suffer the poore hungry ass to feed theron:

I say and affirme that God hath provided such means for the furtherance of this enterprise, as doe stand vs in stead of great treasure: for first by reason that it hath pleased God of his great goodness, of long time to doe his mercifull hand ouer this realme in preserving the people of the same, both from slaughter by the sword, and great death by plague, pestilence, or otherwise, there are at this day great numbers (God be knoweth) which live in such penury and want, as they coulde be contented to hazard theyr liues, and to serue one yeere for meate, drinke and apparell only, without wages, in hope thereby to amend theyr estates: which is a matter in fact like iourneys, to a small charge to the prince. Moreover, things in the like iourneys of greatest price and cost, as victual (whereof there is great plenty to be had in that countrey without money) and powder, great artillery, or coforters, are not needfull in so plentifull and chargeable manner, as the few of such a iourney may present: for a small quantity of all these to furnish the fox onely, will suffice vntill such time as diuers commodities may be found out in those parts, which may be thought well woorthy a greater charge. Also the peculiar benefit of archers which God hath blessed this land withall before all other nations, will stand vs in great stead amongst those naked people.

Another helpe we haue also, which in such like cases is a matter of marvellous cost, and will be in this iourney procured very easly (that is to say) To transporte freely as well our people, as all other necessaries needfull for them into those parts by the fleet of merchants, that presently venture for fish in Newfoundland, being not farre distant from the countrey meant to be inhabited, who commonly go with empty vessels in effect, sauing some little freight with salt. And thus it appeareth that the soldiers wages, and the transportation may be defrayed for farre lesse summes of money then the detractors of this enterprise haue giuen out. Again, this intended voyage for conquest, hath in like maner many other singular priuileges wherewith God hath, as it were, richly blessed the same before all others. For after once we are departed the coast of England, we may passe straight way either, without danger of being driuen into any the countreys of our enemies, or doubtful friends: for commonly one winde serueth to bring vs thither, which seldom faileth from the middle of Tanmarie to the middle of May, a benefite which the mariners make great account of, for it is a pleasure that they haue in few or none of other iourneys. Also the passage is short, for we may goe thither in thirtie or fortye dayes at the most, hauing but an indifferent winde, & returne continually in twene or foure & twenety dayes at the most. And in the same our iourney, by reason it is in the Ocean, & quite out of the way from the intercourse of other countreys, we may safely trade and traffike without perill of piracy: neither shall our ships, people, or goods euer, be subiect to arrest or molestation of any Pagan potentate, Turkish tyant, yea, or Christian prince, which heretofore, sometimes vpon slender occasion in other parts, haue

Rayed our shippers and merchandizes, whereby great numbers of our countrey men haue bene verily vnder, diuers put to ranfome, yea, and some lost theyr liues: a thing so fresh in memory as it needeth no proofe, and well worthy of consideration.

Besides, in this voyage we do not cross the burne line, whereby commonly both beuerture and vicuall are corrupted, and mens healths very much impayed, neither doe we passe the frozen seas, which yeeld sundry extreme dangers: but haue a temperate climate at all times of the yere, so ferue our turnes. And lastly, there need no delays by the way, for taking in of fresh water and firewell, (a thing vsually done in long iournies) because as I said above, the voyage is not long, and the fresh waters taken in there, our men beere in England, at theyr returne home, haue found so wholesom and sweet, that they haue made choise to drinke it before our beere and ale.

Beholde heere, good countrey men, the manifold benesses, commodities and pleasures beere toforye vnknowne, by Gods speciall blessing not onely reuealed vnto vs, but also as it were infused into our bones, who though hitherto like dormice haue slumbered in ig norance thereof, being like the cats that are loth for theyr pray to wet theyr feet: yet if now therefore, at the last we would awake, and with willing mindes (seeing fruitolous imaginacions aside) become industrious instruments to our felices, questionlesse we should not onely beere by set foot the glory of our beauly father, but also easily attaine to the end of all good purposes, that may be wished of desire.

And may it not much encourage vs to hope for good successe in the countrey of these Saouages, being a naked kinde of people, void of the knowlege of the discipline of warre, seeing that a noble man, being but a subiect in this realme (in the time of our king Henrie the second) by name Stranghowe, then earle of Chepflow in South Wales, by himselfe and his allies and assistants, at theyr owne proper charges, passed ouer into Ireland, and there made conquest of the now countrey, and then kingdome of Lynester, at which time it was very populous and strong, which history our owne chronicles do witness: And why should we be dismayed more then were the Spaniards, who haue bene able within these few peeres to conquer, possesse and enioy so large a share of the earth, in the West Indies, as is betwene the two tropikes of Cancer and Capricorne; not onely in the maine firme land of America, which is 47 degrees in latitude from South to North, and doth containe 2820 English miles at the least, that the king of Spaine hath there in actual possession, besides many goodly and rich Islands, as Hispaniola, now called S. Domingo, Cuba, Jamaica, and diuers other, which are both beautifull and full of treasure, not speaking any whit at all, how large the said land is from East to West, which in some places is accounted to be 1500 English miles at the least, from East to West, betwene the one sea and the other.

Why should our noble nation be dismayed, more then was Vasques Nunnes de Valboa, a private gentleman of Spaine, who with the number of 70 Spaniards at Tichiri, gaue an overthrow vnto the mightie king Chemicus, hauing an armie of an hundred canoes and 5000 men, and the said Vasques Nunnes not long after, with his small number, did put to flight king Chiapes his whole armie.

Like wise Hernando Cortes, being also but a private gentleman of Spaine, after his departure from the Islands of Cuba and Acusamill, and entring into the firme of America, had many most victorious & triumphant conquests, as that at Cynda, where being accompanied with lesse then 500 Spaniards, thirtene horsemen, and sixe pieces of ordnance onely he overthroweth 40000 Indians. The same Cortes with his said number of Spaniards, tooke prisoner the mightie Emperour Mutezuma in his most chiefe and famous cite of Mexico, which at that time he had in it about the number of 500000 Indians at the least, and in short time after obtained not onely the quiet possession of the said cite, but also of his whole Empire.

And in like maner in the countrey of Peru, which the king of Spaine hath now in actual possession, Francisco Pizarro, with the onely ayd of Diego de Almagro, and Hernando Luche, being all three but private gentlemen, was the principall person that first attempted discovery and conquest of the large and rich countrey of Peru, which though the ayde of the almighty, he brought to passe and achieved in the Tambo of Cassiamalcha, (which is a large place of ground, enclosed with walles) in which place he tooke the great and mightie prince Atabalipa prisoner, amidst the number of 60000 Indians his subiects, which were euer before they day accustomed to be a warlike kinde of people, which his great victorie pleased God to grant vnto him in the yere of our Lord God 1533, he not hauing in his company about the number of 210 Spaniards, whereas there were not past thersore horsemen in all: after the taking of which prince Atabalipa, he offered vnto Pizarro for his ranfome, to fill a great large ball full of golde and silver, and such golde and silver vessels as they then used, euen as high as a man might reach with his arme.

And

And the sayd prince caused some Pizarro granted our subiects to bring in gold tomes of Quito, Pacia some writers doe affirm when as the said ball was it was commonly giuen pretence to raise a much overthrowen: wherupon partition of the golde and committing to make perfect his first part, as other wise of 132425 pound weight riches neuer before that the emperour for his first part weight, and to euer y bo very souldiour had 45 50 30000, some 20000, per calling, according to the

Francis Pizarro as the then any of the rest, our which weighed 25000, small a time, and with shoxes, some with golde, West Indies, where as

To this may I adde made round about the in the East Indies, and tpling and planting all a rightly weied and consi account it so hard and uer people, plant and pot aduancing and offering i the actual possession of a (I thinke) should not a li derstanding what large within these few peeres amille, chiefly in partt upon the sudden call the where more at large the of Barbaric the Island tropicaine & chiefe cite of Tangier, Seuta, Maz. of our L. 1535. Also for their vse Cape Verde of Bonauilla and San L. Rouge & Sierra Leone people and built the ca Benin, and Maniconge der the Equinoctiall li un tomes of port of Pa Dias was sent forth, Cape called Bon Espe east part of Africa, bet of the arriens, Madag the peere of our L. 153 through the trauals and drew Corfale, John de

2. Decad. lib. 5. fol. 77. of the West Indies, in English. Canaan is a kinde of boat. 3. Decad. lib. 1. fol. 97. About the peere of our L. 1511.

Conquest of the West Indies. fol. 43 & 45 English.

99 Innumerable victorie.



And the sayd pynce caused the same ball to be marked round about at the sayd heighe, which sau-  
some Pizarro granted to accept. And after, whē as this mightie pynce had sent to his vassals and  
subiects to buy in gold and siluer for the filling of the ball, as aforesaid, as namely to the cities of  
toynes of Quito, Paclacama and Cuzco, as also to the Caloa of Lima, in which towne as their  
owne writers doe affirme, they found a large and faire house, all stord and courted with gold: and  
when as the said ball was not yet a quarter full, a mutinie arose amongst the Spaniards, in which  
it was commonly giuen out, that the said pynce had policthely offered this great sauosome vnder  
pretence to raise a much more mightie power, whereby the Spaniards should be taken, slain and  
ouerthrowen: wherupon they grew to this resolution, to put the sayd pynce to death, and to make  
partition of the golde and siluer already brought in, which they presently put in execution. And  
comming to make perfect Inuention of the same, as well for the emperour then king of Spaine,  
his sistr part, as other wise, there was found to be already brought in into the sayd ball, the number  
of 132425. pound weight of siluer and in gold the number of 1828125. pezoes, which was a  
riches neuer before that no since scene of any man together, of which there did appertaine to the  
emperour for his sistr part of golde 365625. pezoes, and for his sistr part of siluer, 26485. pound  
waight, and to euery hoysman eight thousand pezoes of gold, and 67. pound waight of siluer. E-  
uery souldiour had 4550. pezoes of gold, and 280. pound waight of siluer. Euer y captiue had, some  
30000. some 20000. pezoes of gold and of siluer, proportionally answerable to their degrees and  
calling, according to the rate agreed vpon amongst them.

Francis Pizarro as their generall, according to his degree and calling proportionally, had more  
then any of the rest, our and besides the masse table of gold which Atabalipa had in his Licer,  
which waighed 25000. pezoes of golde: neuer was there before that day souldiours so rich in so  
small a time, and with so litle daunger. And in this iourney for want of iron, they did shoe their  
hoyses, some with golde, and some with siluer. This is to bee scene in the generall historie of the  
West Indies, where as the doings of Pizarro, & the conquest of Peru is moze at large set foorth.

To this may I adde the great discoveries and conquests which the pynces of Portugall haue  
made round about the West, the South, and the East partes of Africa, and also at Calicut, and  
in the East Indies, and in America, at Brasile and else where in sundry Islands, in forsyng, peo-  
pling and planting all along the said coastes and Islands, euer as they discovered, which being  
rightly wised and considered, worth minister inlrause of incouragement to our countrymen, not  
to account it so hard and difficult a thing for the subiects of this noble realme of England, to disco-  
uer, people, plant and possesse the like goodly lands and rich countries not farre from vs, but were  
aduiuing and offering it selfe vnto vs (as is aforesaid) which haue neuer yet heretofore, bene in  
the actual possession of any other Christian pynce, then the pynces of this realme. All which (as  
I thinke) should not a litle animate and encourage vs to looke out and to aduenture abroad, vnder-  
standing what large countries and Islands the Portugals with their small number haue  
within these few yeeres discovered, peopled and planted, some part wherof I haue thoughte it not  
amisse, by this in particular to name both the townes, countries and Islands, so neere as I coulde  
vpon the sudden call them to remembrance: for the rest I doe referre the Reader to the historie of  
where moze at large the same is to be scene. First, they did winne and reuere from the pynce  
of Barbaric the Islands of Geisera and towne of Arzilla, not past 140. mile distant from their Me-  
tropolitane & chiefe citie of Fesse: and after that they tooke also from the said pynce the towne  
of Tangior, Scuta, Mazigam, Azamore, and Azassie, all along the Sea coast. And in the yeere  
of our Lord, 1455. Alouis de Cadamosta a gentleman Venetian, was he that first discovered  
for their vse Cape Verd, with the Islands adioining, of which he then peopled and planted those  
of Bonauita and San Iago discovering also the river Senega, otherwile called Niger and Cape  
Rouge & Sierra Leone, and in a few yeeres after they did discover the coast of Guinea, and there  
peopled and built the caille of Sine: then discovered they further to the countries of Melegettes,  
Benin, and Manicongo, with the Islands of Principe, Anobon, S. Patheu, and S. Thomas vnder  
the Equinoctiall line, which they peopled and built in the sayd Island of S. Thomas, the ha-  
uon towne of port of Pauolan. After that, about the yeere of our Lord, 1494. one Bartholomev  
Dias was sent south, who was the first man that discovered and doubled that great and large  
Cape called Bon Esperance, and passing the straits that run vpon the said coast, on the South-  
east part of Africa, betwene the said maine land and the Island of S. Lawrence, other wile called  
of the ancients, Madagascar, he discovered to the harbor named the river of Infants. After that saze  
the yeere of our Lord God, 1497. and before the full accomplishment of the yeere of Christ, 1510.  
through the trauals and discoveries of Vasques de Game, Peter Aluares, Thomas Lopes, An-  
drew Corsale, John de Empoli, Peter Sinter, Sancho Deroar, and that noble and worthy gentle-  
man



erre hath sayd: That before the ende of the world, his word shall be preached to all nations. **W**her good worke I trust is reserved for our nation to accomplish in these partes: **W**herfore my beate counsellmen, be not dismayed, for the power of God is nothing diminished, nor the love that he hath to the preaching and planting of the Gospell any whit abated. **W**hat we then doubt he will be lesse ready most mightily and miraculously to assist our nation in this quarell, which is chiefly and principally undertaken for the enlargement of the Christian faith abroad, and the banishment of idolatry at home, then he was to Columbus, Vasques Nunnes, Hernando Cortes, and Francis Pizarro in the **W**est; & Vasques de Gama, Peter Aluares, and Alonso de Albuquerque in the East: **L**et us therfore with cheerful minds and courageous hearts, give the attempt, and leave the success to almighty God: for if he be on our part, what forceth it who be against us? **E**hus leaving the correction and reformation unto the gentle Reaver, whatsoever is in this treatise too much or too little, or otherwise imperfect, I take leave, and so end.

A letter written from M. Thomas Aldworth merchant, and then Maior of the citie of Brislow, to the right honorable Sir Francis Walsingham principall Secretarie to her Maiestie, concerning a Westerne voiage intended for discoueries in America.

**R**Ight honourable, vpon the receiue of your letters directed vnto mee and deliuered by the bearers thereof **M**. Richard Hakluyt and **M**. Struciton, bearing your carefull and speciall commendation, I presently conferred with my friends in priuate, whom I know most affectionate to this godly enterprise, especially with **M**. William Waltherne depuie of our companie of merchants: whereupon my selfe being as then sick, with as conuenient speed as he could, he caused an assemblee of the merchants to be gathered, where after duefull mention of your honourable disposition for the benefite of this citie, he by my appointment caused your letters being directed vnto me priuately, to be read in publicke, & after some good light giuen by **M**. Hakluyt vnto them that were ignorant of the countrey and enterprise, and were desirous to be resolved, the motion grew generally so well to bee liked, that there was estioones set down by mens owne hands then present, and apparently known by their owne speech, and very willing offer, the summe of 1000. markes and upward: to which summe if it should not suffice, we doubt not but otherwise to furnish out for this Westerne discouerie, a ship of three scope, and a barke of 40. tunne, to be left in the countrey vnder the direction and gouernment of your sonne in law **M**. Carlell, of whom we haue heard much good, if it shall stand with your honours good liking and his acceptation. In one of which barkes we are also willing to haue maister Struciton your honours messenger, and one well known to vs, as captaine. **G**od here in humble manner, desiring your honours to vouchsafe vs of your further direction by a general letter to my selfe, my brethren, and the rest of the merchants of this citie, at your honours best and most conuenient leisure, because we meane not to deferre the small proceeding in this voyage, any further then to the end of Aprill next comming. I cease, beseeching God long to blesse and prosper your honourable estate, Brislow. March 27. 1583.

A briefe and summarie discourse vpon the intended voyage to the hithermost parts of America: written by captaine Carlell in Aprill, 1583. for the better inducement to fauour such Merchants of the Moscouian companie and others, as in disbursing their money towards the furniture of the present charge, doe demand forthwith a present returne of gaine, albeit their said particular disbursments are required but in very slender summes, the highest being 25. li. the second at 12. li. 10. s. and the lowest at 6. pound five shillings.

**W**hen the Goldsmith desireth to finde the certaine goodnesse of a peece of gold, which is newly offered vnto him, he presently bringeth the same to the Touchstone, where, by comparing the stee of touch of this new peece with the touch of stee of that which he knoweth of old, he forthwith is able to iudge what the value is of that, which is newly offered vnto him. **A**fter the example whereof I haue thought it good to make some briefe repetition of the particular estate of many other foreigne voyages and trades already frequented and known vnto vs, whereby you may be the better able to conceiue and iudge what certaine likelihood of good there is to be expected in the voyage, which is presently recommended vnto your knowledge and resolution.

And

Holkow.

And first to lay downe that of *Holkow*, whose beginning is yet in the remembrance of many: It is well known, that what by the charges of the first discovery, and by the great gifts bestowed on the Emperour and his Nobilitie, together with the lewd dealing of some of their seruants, who thought themselves safe enough from severely punishment, it cost the companie above foure thousand pounds, before it could bee brought to any profitable reckoning. And now that after so long a patience and so great a burthen of expence, the same began to frame to some good course and commoditie: It falleth to very ticklish termes, and to as slender likelihood of any further goodnesse as any other trade that may be named.

For first the estate of those countreys and the Emperours dealings, are things more sicke then are by every body understood.

Dutchmen.

Next, the Dutchmen are there so crept in, as they daily augment their trade either, which may well confirme that uncertaintie of the Emperours disposition to keepe promise with our nation, Thirdly, the qualitie of the voyage, such as may not be performed but once the yeere.

Fourthly, the charges of all Ambassadors betweene that Prince and her Spacie, are always bovie by the merchants looke.

Denmarks.

And lastly, the danger of the king of Denmarke, who besides that presently he is like to enforce a tribute on vs, hath likewise an abauantage upon the ships in their voyage, either homewards or outwards whensoever he listeth to take the opportunitie.

Casterlings.

The badde dealings of the Casterlings are sufficiently known to bee such towards our merchants of that trade, as they doe not onely offer them many injuries ouerlong to bee written, but doe seeke all the means they can, to deprive them wholly of their occupying that way: and by the same purpose haue of late cleane debarr'd them their accustomed and auncient priuileges in all their great toynes.

Turkie.

The traffique into Turkie, besides that by some it is thought a hard point to haue so much familiaritie with the professed and obstinate enemies of Christ: It is likewise a voyage which can not be made but at the deuotion, and as it were in the daunger of many Dates, who for sundry respects are apt to quarrell with vs upon sudden occasions, and the presence to be giuen away in Turkie this yeere, cost little lesse then two thousand pounds.

Barbarie.

As for the trades into all the partes of *Italie*, it may easilie be considered by euery one of iudgement, that the same stande in the like termes touching the passages, as that of Turkie, and that many times our Shippes being taken in the way by the Gallies of Barbarie, our poore Mariners after the losse of their goods and travell, are set at such excessive ransomnes before they can bee freed of their slauierie, as for the most part they are no way able to discharge. As for example, at this instant there are some prisoners, poore ordinarie Mariners, for whose releasing there must bee paid two hundred Duckets the man, for some three hundred, yea, foure or five hundred Duckets the man for some of them, And both enuiously they doe stande opposite themselves against our frequenting into their partes, may appeare by the late customs which they haue imposed as well upon our English merchandize which we bring them, as also upon such other merchandize which we fetch from them.

Barbarie.

The trade into Barbarie groweth likewise to worse termes then before times, and when it was at the best, our merchants haue bene in danger of all their goods they had there, whensoever it happened the king to die. For untill a new were chosen, the libertie of all disordered persons is such, as they spoile and wrong whom they list, without any redress at all.

Spaine.  
Houingall.

Touching *Spaine* and *Houingall*, with whom we haue very great trade, and much the greater, by means of their venting a good part of our wares into their Indies, as also of the possession they haue from the same, where with are made many of our returns from them againe: It falleth out that twice the yeere ordinarily we send our Fleets into those parts: So that whensoever the king of *Spaine* listeth to take the opportunitie, hee may at these seasons deprive vs not onely of a great number of our very good ships, but also of our honestest and ablest sort of Mariners that are to bee found in our whole Realme againe, which is a matter of no small consequence: for it is to be noted, that when hee shall take a quarrell in hand, though it bee but his owne particularly, yet hath hee the means to put in hazard as well those our Shippes which are in his owne Countreies of *Spaine* and *Houingall*, as also all others which shall be bound to any the partes of all *Italie* or of *Turkie* either. And further whatsoever hee see that is but so meanely affected in Religion, as of necessitie becommeth euery ordinarie man and good Christian to bee, cannot but be aggriued in his heart to consider, that his children and seruants whom hee desireth to haue well brought vp, are in these trades of *Spaine* and *Houingall*, and all *Italie*, forced to denie their owne profession, and made to acquaint themselves with that which the Parents and Masters doe vterlie

denie

denie and refuse, yea to most wicked doctrine.

But who shall looke grees of these abuses, or moment belonging vnto

1 As first it is to be

2 Secondly, that they

3 Thirdly, that it is

4 Fourthly, that the

5 Fifthly, that those

6 Sixthly, that it is to

7 And to the goodly

8 And to the goodly

9 And to the goodly

10 And to the goodly

11 And to the goodly

12 And to the goodly

13 And to the goodly

14 And to the goodly

15 And to the goodly

16 And to the goodly

17 And to the goodly

18 And to the goodly

19 And to the goodly

20 And to the goodly

21 And to the goodly

22 And to the goodly

23 And to the goodly

24 And to the goodly

25 And to the goodly

26 And to the goodly

27 And to the goodly

28 And to the goodly

29 And to the goodly

30 And to the goodly

denie and refuse, yea which many of them doe in their owne hearts abboye as a detestable and most wicked doctrine.

But who shall looke into the qualitie of this voyage, being directed to the latitude of fortye degrees of theseaboures, of that hithermost part of America, shall find it hath as many points of good moment belonging unto it, as may almost be wished for.

1 As first it is to be understood, that it is not any long course, for it may be performed too and fro in foure moneths after the first discoverie thereof.

Commodities of this voyage in the north.

2 Secondly, that one wind sufficeth to make the passage, where as most of your other voyages of like length, are subiect to 3. or 4. winde,

3 Thirdly, that it is to be performed at all times of the yeere,

4 Fourthly, that the passage is upon the high sea, whereby you are not bound to the knowledge of dangers, on any other coast, more then of that countrey, and of ours here at home.

5 Fifthly, that those partes of England and Ireland, which lie next to the proceeding ourward of homeward upon this voyage, are very well storied of goodly harbours.

6 Sixthly, that it is to be accounted of no danger at all as touching the power of any foreign prince or state, when it is compared with any the best of all the other voyages before recited.

7 And to the godly minded, it hath this comfortable commoditie, that in this trade their Sacrosanct Religion enforced upon them, but contrarily shall bee at their free libertie of conscience, and shall finde the same Religion exercised, which is most agreeable unto their Parents and Masters.

As for the merchandising, which is the matter especially looked for, albeit, that for the present, we are not certainly able to promise any such like quantitie, as is now at the best time of the Sposcouian trade brought from thence: So likewise is there not demanded any such proportion of daily expences, as was at the first, and as yet is consumed in that of Sposcouia and other.

Commodities of the country more than those of Sposcouia.

But when this of America shall have bene haunted and practised thirtie yeeres to an ende, as the other hath bene, I doubt not by Gods grace, that for the tenne shippes that are now commonly employed once the yeere into Sposcouia, there shall in this voyage twelfe tenne be employed well, twise the yeere at the least. And if for the present time there doe fall out nothing els to bee found then the bare Fishing, yet doubt I not after the first yeeres planting, but by that matter onely to serue halfe a dozen of your best sort of ships, although my supply of people doe not follow me so substantially, as in all reason may be well looked for.

But when it is asked what may bee hoped from thence after some yeeres, it is first to be considered, that this situation in fourtie degrees, shall bee very apte to gather the commodities either of those partes which stande to the Southward of it, as also of those which are to the Northward.

The severall merchandises.

In the Northerie may bee expected not onely an especiall good Fishing for Salmon, Codde, and Whales, but also any other such commodities, as the Gallerne countreys doe yield us now: as Piche, Tarre, Hemp, and thereof Cordage, Hakes, Lasse hides, riche Fures, and other such like, without being in any sort beholding to a king of Denmarke, or other prince or state that shall be in such sort able to command our ships at their pleasure, as those doe at this day, by meanes of their straight passages and strong shipping.

As for those partes which lie West and to the Southwardes, it may well bee hoped they will yeeld Wines with a small helpe, since the grapes doe growe there of themselves already very faire and in great abundance. Olives being once planted, will yeeld the like Oyle as Spaine, Province and Italie. The countrey people being made to know, that for Wine and hony, we will give them such trifling things as they desire of vs, and by using them once the means how to provide the same, the labour thereof being so light, no doubt but in short time they will earnestly care to haue the same in good quantitie for vs. Besides, what great likelihood there is of good meanes to make Salte, which may serue for the fishing of those partes, may well enough appeare unto them, who can iudge the qualitie of such places as are required to make the same in.

Is late of Gold in Spaine this voyage.

Thus much for the beginning because they may bee had with an easie kind of travell, but when it may haue pleased God to establish our people there any such time as they may haue planted amongst them in sundry partes of the Countrey, and that by gentle and familiar entreating them, they bee made to see what is better for them then they doe as yet understand of, and that in so many sortes of occasions as were infinite to bee set to wiew. It is to bee assuredly hoped, that

that they will daily by little and little forsake their barbarous and savage living, and growe to such order and civillitie with vs, as there may bee well expected from thence no little quantitie and universitie of merchaundize then is now had out of Dutchland, Italic, Fraunce, or Spaine. And as the bordering neighbours are commonly the aptest to fall out with vs, so these partes being somewhat remote, are the likeliest to take, or giue lesse occasion of disquiet. But when it is considered that they are our owne kindred, and esteemed our owne countrey nation which haue the government, meaning by those who shall be there planted, who can looke for any other then the dealing of most louing and most assured friends?

There are further to bee considered these two pointes of good importance, concerning the matter of trade. The one is, that by the good prospering of this action, there must of necessitie fall out, a very liberall vnteruaunce of our English Clothes into a maine Countrey, described to bee bigger then all Europe, the larger part whereof bending to the Northward, shall haue wonderfull great vse of our sayde English Clothes, after they shall once come to knowe the commoditie thereof. The like will be of many other things, ouermany to bee reckoned, which are made here by our Artificers and labouring people, and of necessitie must bee provided from hence.

The other is, if there bee any possible meanes to finde a Sea passage or other fresh water course, which may serue in some reasonable and convenient sort, to transport our merchaundize into the East Indian Sea, though any of these Northerly partes of America, it shall be soonest and most assuredly performed by these who shall inhabit and first grow into familiaritie with the Inland people.

What Minerall matter may fall out to bee found, is a thing left in suspence, vntill some better knowledge, because there bee many men, who hauing long since expected some profit here-in, vpon the great promises that haue bene made them, and being as yet in no point satisfied, doe therefore conceiue that they bee but wordes purposely cast out for the inducing of men to bee the more readie and willing to furnish their money towards the charge of the first discoverie.

But nowe to answer some others who begin with an other obiection, saying: That it is not for the merchants purse to continue the charges of transporting and planting: and that since these hundred men which are now to bee planted, will cost foure thousand pound: It is then to bee thought, that the charge of a farre greater number, will bee also a farre greater summe of money.

Wherunto I answer, that in all attempts vnknown, especially such a one as is this, wherewith wee are presently in hande, the first charges are commonly aduentured in more desperate kinde, then those that follow vpon some better knowledge: and therewith it falleth out, that whereas one aduentureth in the first enterpryse, an hundred for that one will of themselves bee willing and desirous to aduenture in the next, if there bee neuer so little more apparance, that the intended matter is by some knowledge of our owne, found true in some pointes of our first presumption.

The examples are many, and may easily be remembred by those who bee merchants, euen in their ordinarie and daily trades, as well as in extraordinary attempts, which of late yeeres haue fallen into those termes of some likelihood, as is abovesayde. So then no doubt, but when certain reports shall be brought by them who directly come from thence, that such a Countrey and people they haue themselves seene, as is by vs spoken of, but that then there will come forward a greater number of those, who now neither haue heard any thing of the matter, as also of others, who presently make such frivolous scruple, and will not otherwise be satisfied, then by the report of Saint Thomas. I speake not this by the merchants call out for their freedomes of trade I would not haue pressed to any further charge then this first preparation, but rather by such as haue great affection to hazard the changing of their estates, and would be well content to goe in the voyage if they might onely be assured that there is such a countrey, and that their money should not be wasted to nothing in the preparations.

The right examination of this point must bee the contrary sequell of the common Thourbe that is vsed, Nothing venture, nothing haue: so on the other side by venturing, many great good profits are found out, to the wonderfull benefite of the Common weale, and to those especially in private, who take on the hazarde of their life and trauell, or substance in the first attempts: and therefore I would wishe that they, who (God bee thanked) are well able to spare that which is required of each one towards the vndertaking of this aduenture, bee well content and willing to employe the same, since the sequell in good and substantiall reason

The other of  
merchall dighe  
by the Arabis  
the cause  
the generall  
supplies. the  
the next  
next following,  
whereof the  
latter was of  
fourteene sail  
ships.

reason doth promise, no  
home exercise the trade  
line in poore estate, and  
better degree. Whereto  
who suspecteth least this  
charge, but that afterward  
happened in the discover  
action, which concerneth  
type of people throughout  
may be founde a matter  
towards the furtherance

But as it is a very little  
matter, so is it more than  
wise, to make any notable  
longer to a matter of so

To those who haue an  
this much more, that  
on, as any other that may  
most excellent worke, it  
but also in respect of our  
impossible, and often  
by the long peace, happy  
Realme, that the people  
their poynt in their par  
parties decrease, are by  
tion they fall into sundry  
ordinarily troubled, an  
might bee founde some  
part of them would bee  
greatly seruiciable in th

This I speake of mi  
the Countreys, during  
and by some little contin  
I can assure you, was a  
withall to a purpose of s  
sured kinde of good hope

Thus you see in eu  
matter and reason pro  
ner the quicke, and to s  
ching the trade which is  
because my aduise be  
which followeth, the  
deeper directly.

In the yeere 1534  
America, which ye to  
which voyage his p  
haue bene founde out. In  
year he went no higher  
returned backe into Sp

The next yeere fol  
where hee keeping the  
nada and other places,  
by the way, hee arriv  
of the Grand bay. In  
the month of Octobe  
a large in this discover  
himselfe Holy Crosse.  
the like happeneth w

reason doth promise, not onely a great commoditie in particular to the marchants, who shall here at home exercise the trade of Sparrhandise: but also to an infinite number of oth'r, who presently live in poore estate, and may by taking the opportunity of this discoverie, alter the same to a farre better degree. Wherefore to make some conclusion vpon this point of the Sparrhandis misthoubt, who suspecteth least this sort of businesse, without returne of present gaine, should not be all his charge, but that afterwards hee might yet further be bygd to continue the like againe, as hath happened in the discoverie of the Moscouian trade: It may suffice to consider, that this is not an action, which concerneth onely the Sparrhandis particularly, but a great deale more the generall sort of people throughout all England: And that when such relation shall be returned, as that it may be founde a matter worthy the following, the whole generalitie will not refuse to contribute towards the furtherance thereof, rather then it should sincke, for want of any reasonable supply.

But as it is a very little time, since I have bene thoughtly resolved, to trie my fortune in the matter, so is it more then thine, the preparation were in hande already, and therefore no fixe time now, to make any number of ignorant men to vnderstande with reason, the circumstance that belongeth to a matter of so great consideration and importance.

To those who have any forward minde in well doing to the generalitie of mankinde, I say this much more, that Christian charitie doeth as greatly perswade the furtherance of this action, as any other that may be layd before vs, in as much as thereby, wee shall not onely doe a most excellent worke, in respect of reducing the savage people to Chistianitie and ciuilitie, but also in respect of our poore sort of people, which are very many amongst vs, liuing altogether vnpolitick, and often times to the great disquiet of the better sort. For who knoweth not, howe by the long peace, happie health, and blessed plentifulnesse, wherewith God hath endued this Realme, that the people is so mightily increased, as a great number being brought vpon, during their youth in their parents houses, without any instruction howe to get their liuinges, after their parents decease, are vniuent to some necessitie, whereby very often, for want of better education they fall into sunny discoveries, and so the good sort of people, as I sayde before, are by them spinwardly troubled, and themselues ledde on, to one shamefull ende or other, whereas if there might bee founde some such kinde of employment, as this would be, no doubt but a greater part of them would bee withheld, from falling into such vile deedes: and in steade thereof, p'pose greatly seruicable in those affaires, where they might be so employed.

This I speake of mine owne experience, hauing seene diuers come ouer to the warres of the late Countreis, during my residence in the same, who here had bene very euill and idle liuers, and by some little continuance with vs, haue grown to be very industrious in their facultie, which I can assure you, was a more painefull manner of liuing, then in this action is like to fall out, and will fall to a purpose of farre lesse valew, in respect of their particular recompence, then with an assured kinde of good hope is looked for in this.

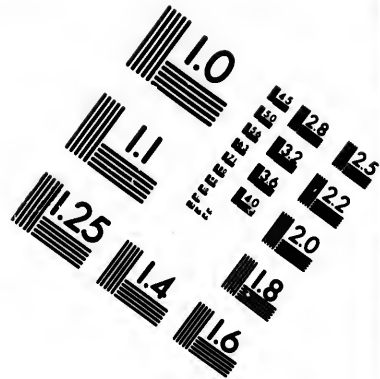
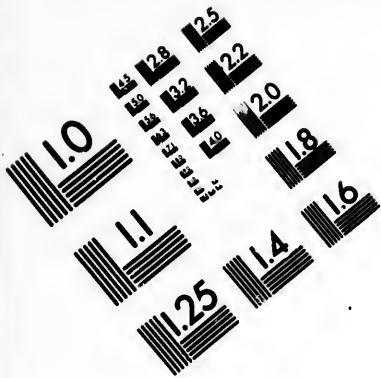
Thus you see in euery point, that may be wished for, in a good action and voyage, there is matter and reason enough to satisfie the well disposed. But nowe to growe some what nearer the quicke, and to shew you some greater apparance, then hath bene yet spoken of, touching the trade which is the onely subiect wherewith I doe meane to enuermuddle at this time, because my aduise herby is chiefly to men of such like facultie: you may vnderstande by that which followeth, the circumstance of a little discourse, which doeth concerne these matters very directly.

In the yeere 1534. James Carthier of S.Malo, made his first discoverie of those partes of America, which lye to the Westwardes, and as it were on the backe side of Newfoundland, In which voyage his principall intention was to seeke out the passage, which hee presumed might haue bene founde out, into the East Indian sea, oth'wise called the passage to Cathayo, but this yeere he went no bigger then the Islande of the Assumption in the great bay of S.Laurence, and so returned backe into France.

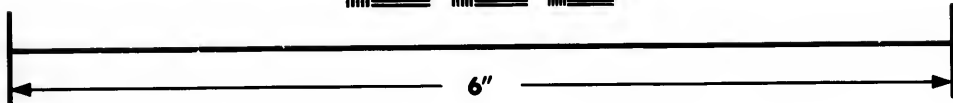
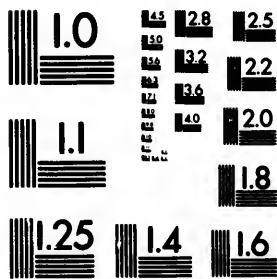
The next yeere following hee went with greater provision into the Grand bay againe, where hee keeping the Northerly shoare, ranne vpon the great Riuer that comes downe from Canada and other places, vntill at last with his small pinnacles, (hauing left his great shipping by the way, hee arrived at Hochelaga towne, being thre hundred leagues within the entrance of the Grand bay. In which trauaile hee had spent so much of the yeere, that it was nowe the moneth of October, and therefore thought it conuenient, for the better enioyming himselfe at large in this discoverie, to winter it out in those partes, which hee did at a place called by himselfe Holy Crosse. This Winter fell out to be a very long and hard winter, as many times the like happeneth with vs in these partes, and the savage people, who for the most part







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

make but a slender kinde of provision, such as it were from hande to mouth fell into some scarcity of victuals; yet did they not refuse to serue the Frenchmen, with any thing they had all the Winter long, albeit at somewhat higher prices towards the ende, when the neede was most, as with our selues the like happeneth at such times.

But when the French had had their wautes serued all the yeere, and that as yet they sawe noe any apparance of their intended matter, which was the discouerie of the passage, & yet imagining by the signes wherewith the willing people, endeuoured to declare their knowledge in that point, that some good matter might bee had from them, if they might haue bene well vnderstoode, they resolued with themselves, to take some of the sufficientest men of that Countrey boine into France, and there to keepe them so long, as that hauing once acqruied the French tongue, they might declare moze substantially their minde, and knowledge in the sayde passage, concluding this to be the meane of least charge, of least trauaile, and of least hazard.

And when they came to berthinke themselves, who might bee meetest for it, they determined to take the King, as the person who might be best enfourmed of such partes, as were somewhat remote from his owne Countrey, as also that for the respect of him, the people would bee alwayes readie, and content to doe them any further seruice, when it should happen them to returne thither againe about the discouerie.

Thus the poore King of the Countrey, with two or thre others of his chiefe companions coming aboarde the French shippes, being required thither to a banquet, was traiterously caried away into France, where hee liued foure yeeres, and then died a Christian there, as Theuer the French kings Cosmographer doeth make mention. This outrage and inuiolous dealing, did put the whole Countrey people into such dislike with the French, as neuer since they would admit any conuersation, or familiaritie with them, untill of late yeeres, the olde matter beginning to growe out of minde, and being the rather drawen on by giftes of many trifling things, which were of great value with them, they are (as I saide) within these two or thre yeeres content againe to admit a traffique, which two yeeres since, was begonne with a small barke of thirtie tunnes, whose returne was founde so profitable, as the next yeere following, being the last yeere, by thole Marchants, who meant to haue kept the trade serued vnto themselves, from any others of their owne Countrey men, there was hired a shippe of foure score tunnes out of the Isle of Jersey, but not any one Partner of that place, sauing a shipboy. This shippe made her returne in such sort, as that this yeere they haue multiplied thre shippes, to wit, one of nine score tunnes, an other of an hundred tunnes, and a thirde of foure score tunnes: which report is giuen by very substantiall and honest men of Plimmouth, who sawe the saide shippes in readinesse to depart on their voyage, and were aboard of some of them.

Here is at this instant in the towne a man of Gernesey, Lewis de Vicke, who reporteth to haue credibly heard, that by this last yeeres voyage the Frenchmen gotte foureteene or fiftene hundred for euery one hundred: But howe soeuer it be, it carrieth good likelihood of some notable profite, in asmuch as they doe so greatly, and thus suddenly increase the burthen and number of their shippes this present yeere.

Notwithstanding in so little as two yeeres times this voyage of the Northerne partes bee growne to such good passe as hath bene declared vnto you: it is worthy the thinking on to consider what may be hoped for, from the Southerne part: which in all reason may promise a great deale moze. And so as one who was neuer touched with any indirect meaning, I presume to wish and perswade you to some better taking of this matter to heart, as a thing which I doe verely thinke will turne to your greater and moze assured commoditie, then you receiue by any other voyage, as yet frequented of so many and safe a course as this hath: dealing here in no otherwise with you for your seuerall small summes, then I doe wish my selfe, both for moze of mine owne, then is required of any one of you: besides the hazard and trauaile of my person, and the cocall employment of my poore credit, which (I thanke God) hath hitherto passed cleare and vnsuspected in matters of greater importance and difficultie, then is like to fall out in this betweene you and me.

## Articles



there one whole per  
of the particuler est  
or presently looked

The charge to cr  
and other needefull  
ry readily offered by  
sande pounds, reman  
ture their money in

The Committee  
from her Maestie. h  
prouided for.

I will, that they b  
urers, and shall ha  
uer, and other meet  
couerie: yeelding t  
to be had out of any

That those partic  
be named Enterpri  
mines of Golde and  
Golde and siluer, as  
content of the great  
Enterprisers.

All, that all trad  
discouerie shall be fo  
their money for this  
Marchants to deale  
of shippe and goods,  
with: or oherwise by

That no person  
mentioned in the str  
tion: and they shall  
propotion of this th

The yeere  
1581.

Articles set downe by the Committies appointed in the be-  
*halfe of the Companie of Moscouian Marchants, to conserre*  
 with Master Carleil, vpon his entended discoueries and  
 attempt into the highermost partes  
 of America.

*The names of the Committies.*

Master Alderman Hart.  
 Master Alderman Spencer.  
 Master Hoddesden.  
 Master William Burrough.  
 Master Slany.  
 Master Towerfon.  
 Master Stapers.  
 Master Iohn Castelin.  
 Master Leake.



First, the Committies are well perswaded that the Countrey whereunto  
 this action ppretendeth is very fruitfull, inhabited with sauage people of a  
 milde and tractable disposition. And that of all other places which are un-  
 frequented at this day, it is the only most fitte and most commodious for vs  
 to entermeddle withall.

The conuenientest maner of attempting this enterpryse, is thought to bee  
 thus: That there should be one hundred men conueyed thither to remaine  
 there one whole yere: who with friendly entreatie of the people, may enter into better knowledge  
 of the particular estate of the Countrey, and thereby gather what commoditie may be hereafter,  
 or presently looked for.

The charge to transport these hundred men, to victuall them, and to furnish them of munition  
 and other needfull things, will not be lesse then foure thousand poundes: whereof each bene vo-  
 ry readily offered by the Citie of Bristoll one thousande poundes, the residue being three thou-  
 sande poundes, remaineth to be furnished by this Citie of London: or any others who will aduen-  
 ture their money in this first preparation.

The Committies thinke it conuenient that a priuiledge should be procured by Master Carleil  
 from her Maiestie, by vertue whereof these conditions and Articles following, may be effectually  
 provided for.

First, that they who shall disburse their money for the first preparation, shall be named Aduen-  
 turers, and shall haue the one halfe of all such landes, territories, townes, mines of golde and sil-  
 uer, and other metalls whatsoeuer, that shall be found, gotten, obtained, and conquered by this dis-  
 couerie: yeelding to her Maiestie the one fift part of all their part golde and siluer, as shall happen  
 to be had out of any mines that so shall be found.

That those parties which doe employe themselves personally in the present discouerie, shall  
 be named Enterprisers, and shall haue the other halfe of all the landes, territories, townes,  
 mines of Golde and siluer, and other metalles, yeelding to her Maiestie the fift part of the  
 Golde and siluer, as the Aduenturers doe: The same to be distributed by the Generall, with the  
 consent of the greatest part of twelve discrete persons to be chosen out of the whole number of  
 Enterprisers.

Also, that all trade of marchandise which shall bee bled to and from those partes, which by this  
 discouerie shall be found out, shall appertaine onely to the Aduenturers which first shall disburse  
 their money for this discouerie, with prohibition to all other her Maiesties subiects, and other  
 Marchants to deale in the saide partes, without the consent of the first Aduenturers, vpon loss  
 of shippe and goods, and punishment of their persons, that so shall aduenture in trade of marchan-  
 dise: or otherwise by imprisonment at the Companies pleasure.

That no person shall hereafter adventure in this discouerie, as Aduenturers for the profites  
 mentioned in the first Articles, but such onely as doe disburse their money in this first prepara-  
 tion: and they shall not adventure hereafter any greater summe, then taxably according to their  
 proportion of this their first adventure.



have, holde, occupie and enioye to him, his heires and assignes, and euery of them for euer, all the soile of a ll such landes, territories, and Countreys, so to bee discovered and possessed as aforesaide, and of all such Cities, castles, towines, villages, and places in the same, with the right, royalties, franchises, and iurisdictiones, as well marine as other within the saide landes, or Countreys, or the seas thereunto adjoining, to be had, or vsed, with full power to dispose thereof, and of euery part in fee simple, or otherwise, according to the order of the lawes of England, as nere as the same conveniently may bee, at his, with their will and pleasure, to any persons then being, or that shall remaine within the allegiance of vs, our heires, and successors: reseruing alwayes to vs, our heires, and successors, for all seruices, duties, and demaundes, the first part of all the oare of golde and silver, that from time to time, and at all times after such discouerie, subduing and possessing, shalbe there gotten and obtained: All which landes, Countreys, and territories, shall for euer be holden of the said Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, of vs, our heires and successors, by homage, and by the said payment of the said fifth part, reserued onely for all seruices.

And moreover, we doe by these presents, for vs, our heires and successors, giue and graunt licence to the said Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and euery of them, that he, and they, and euery of any of them, shall & may from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, for his and their defence, encounter and expulse, repell and resist as well by sea as by lande, and by all other wayes whatsoeuer, all, and euery such person and persons whatsoeuer, as without the speciall liking and licence of the saide Walter Ralegh, and of his heires and assignes, shall attempt to inhabit within the said Countreys, or any of them, or within the space of two hundred leagues nere to the place or places within such Countreys as aforesaid (if they shall not bee before planted or inhabited within the limits as aforesaide with the subiects of any Christian Prince being in amitie with vs) where the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, or assignes, or any of them, or his, or their, or any of their associates or company, shall within five yeeres (next ensuing) make their dwellings or abidings, or that shall enterpryse or attempt at any time hereafter unlawfully to annoy, either by sea or lande, the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires or assignes, or any of them, or his or their, or any of his or their companies giuing, and granting by these presents further power and authoritie, to the said Walter Ralegh, his heires and assignes, and euery of them from time to time, and at all times for euer hereafter, to take and surpriue by all manner of meanes whatsoever, all and euery those person or persons, with their shippes, vessels, and other goods and furniture, which without the licence of the saide Walter Ralegh, or his heires, or assignes, as aforesaid, shall be founde trafficking into any harbour, or harbours, creeke, or creekes, within the limits aforesaid, (the subiects of our Realmes and Dominions, and all other persons in amitie with vs, trading to the Newfound lands for fishing as heretofore they haue commonly vsed, or being taken by force of a tempest, or shipwracke ouerly epreyed:) and those persons, and euery of them, with their shippes, vessels, goods, and furniture to deteine and possesse as of good and lawfull prize, according to the discretion of him the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and euery, or any of them. And for vnting in more perfect league and amitie, of such Countreys, landes, and territories so to bee possessed and inhabited as aforesaide with our Realmes of Englande, and Ireland, and the better encouragement of men to these enterpryses we do by these presents, graunt and declare that all such Countreys, so hereafter to be possessed and inhabited as is aforesaide, from thenceforth shall bee of the allegiance of vs, our heires and successors. And wee doe graunt to the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires, and assignes, and to all, and euery of them, and to all, and euery other person, and persons being of our allegiance, whose names shall be noted or entered in some of our Courtes of recorde within our Realme of Englande, that with the assent of the saide Walter Ralegh, his heires or assignes, shall in his iourneys for discouerie, or in the iourneys for conquest, hereafter traueile to such lands, countreys and territories, as aforesaide, and to their, and to euery of their heires, that they, and euery of any of them, being either boine within our saide Realmes of Englande, or Irelande, or in any other place within our allegiance, and which hereafter shall be inhabiting within any the landes, Countreys, and territories, with such licence, (as aforesaide) shall and may haue all the priuiledges of free Denizens, and persons native of England, and within our allegiance in such like ample maner and forme, as if they were boine and personally resident within our said Realme of England, any lawe, custome, or charge to the contrary notwithstanding.

And for as much as vpon the finding out, discouering, or inhabiting of such remote lands, countreys, & territories as aforesaid, it shall be necessary for the safetie of all men, that shal aduenture them selves in those iourneys or voyages, to determine to liue together in Christian peace, & ciuil quietnes each with other, whereby euery one may with more pleasure & profit enioy that whereunto they



of the certaintie of the premises, or any part thereof, or of any other gift, or grant by vs, or any our progenitors, or predecessors to the said Walter Raleigh, before this time made in these presents be not expressed, or any other grant, or promise, or promise, or proclamation, or restraint to the contrary thereof, before this time, given, obtained, or promised, or any other thing, cause, or matter whatsoever, in any wise notwithstanding. In witness whereof, we have caused these our letters to be made publick, at the towne of Westminter the 27. day of March, in the five and twentieth yeare of our Raigne.

**The first voyage made to the coastes of America, with two barkes, wherein were Captaines Master Philip Amadas, and Master Arthur Barlowe, who discovered part of the Countrey, now called Virginia, Anno 1584: Written by one of the said Captaines, and sent to sir Walter Raleigh, knight, at whose charge, and direction, the said voyage was set forth.**



The 27. day of April, in the yeere of our redemption, 1584. we departed the west of England, with two barkes, well furnished with men and victuals, having receyved our last, and perfect directions by your letters, confirming the former instructions, and commandements delivered by your selfe at our leaving the river of Thames. And I thinke it a matter both necessarie, for the manifest discoverye of the Countrey, as also for tediousnes sake, to remember unto you the directionall of our course, sailing thither, and returning: onely I have presumed to present unto you this briefe discourse, by which you may iudge how profitable this land is likely to succede, as well to your selfe, (by whose direction and charge, and by whose servants this our discoverye hath bene performed) as also to her Highnes, and the Common wealch, in which we hope your wisdomme will be satisfied, considering, that as much by vs hath bene brought to light, as by those small meanes, and number of men we had, could any way have bene expected, or hoped for.

The tenth of May, we arrived at the Canaries, and the tenth of June in this present yeere, we were fallen with the Islands of the West Indies, keeping a more southeasterly course then was needefull, because we doubted that the current of the Baye of Mexico, disbugging betwene the Cape of Florida, and the Havana, had bene of greater force then after wards we found it to be. At which Islands we found the aire very unwholsome, and our men grewe for the most part ill disposed: so that having refreshed our selves with sweet water, and fresh victual, we departed the twelfth daye after our arrivall there. These Islands, with the rest adjoining, are so well knowne to your selfe, and to many others, as I will not trouble you, with the remembrance of them.

The second of July, we found shole water, which smelt so sweetly, and was so strong a smell, as if we had bene in the midst of some delicate garden, abounding with all kinde of odoriferous flowers, by which we were assured, that the land could not be farre distant: and keeping good watch, and bearing but slacke saile, the fourth of the same moneth, we arrived upon the coast, which we supposed to be a continent, and firme lande, and we sailed along the same, a hundred and twentie English miles, before we could finde any entrance, or river, issuing into the Sea. The first that appeared unto vs, we entered, though not without some difficultie, and cast anchor about threer harbours, which in the hauiens mouth, on the left haunde of the same: and after thanks given to God for our safe arrivall thither, we manned our boates, and went to viewe the lande next adjoining, and to take possession of the same, in the right of the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, as rightfull Queene, and Princessse of the same, and after delivered the same over to your selfe, according to her Maiesties grant, and letters patents, vnder her Highnes great Seale. Which being performed, according to the ceremonies used in such enterprises, we viewed the lande about vs, being whereas we first landed, very sandy, and lowe towards the water side, but so full of grapes, as the very beating, and surge of the Sea overflowed them, of which we founde such plenty, as well there, as in all places else, both on the lande, and on the greene soile on the hills, as in the plaines, as well on every little shrubbe, as also climbing towards the toppes of the high Cedars, that I thinke in all the world the like abundance is not to be founde: and my selfe having seene those partes of Europe that most abound, finde such difference, as were incredible to be written.

July 13. post. tedious labour.



We passed from the Sea side, towards the toppes of those hills next adjoining, being but of meane height, and from thence wee behelde the Sea on both sides to the North, and to the South, finding no ende any of both waters. This land laye stretching it selfe to the West, which after wee founde to be but an Island of twentie leagues long, and not above five miles broade. Under the banke of hill, wheron we stood, we behelde the vallies replenished with goodly Cedar trees, and hauing discharged our harquebusshot, such a flocke of C. ranes (the most part white) arose vnder vs, with such a crye redoubled by many C. rchoes, as if an armie of men had shoted all together.

This Island had many goodly woods, and full of Deere, Conies, Hares, and Fowle, euen in the midst of Summer, in incredible aboundance. The woods are not such as you finde in Bohemia, Moscouia, or Hyrcania, barren, and fruitlesse, but the highest, and reddest Cedars of the world, farre bettering the Cedars of the Acores, of the Indias, of Lybanus, Hyenes, Cypres, Salsappas, the L. entick, or the tree that beareth the Spalliche: he tree that beareth the rinde of blacke Simamon, of which Walter Winter brought from the Streights of Magellane, and many other of excellent smell, and qualitie. We remained by the side of this Island two whole daies, before we sawe any people of the Countrey: the thirde daye we espied one small boate rowing towards vs, hauing in it three persons: this boate came to the landes side, foure harquebusshot from our shippes, and there two of the people remaining, the thirde came along the shoare side towards vs, and we being then all within boord, he walked by and downe vpon the point of the lande next vnto vs: then the Spalter, and the Pilot of the Admirall, Simon Ferdinando, and the Captaine Philip Amadas, my selfe, and others, rowed to the lande, whose comming this fellowe attended, neuer making any shewe of feare, or doubt. And after he had spoken of many things not vnderstoode by vs, we brought him with his owne good liking, aboard the shippes, and gaue him a shirt, a hatte, and some other things, and made him taste of our wine, and our meate, which he liked very well: and after hauing viewed both barkes, he departed, and went to his owne boate againe, which hee had left in a little Coue, or Creeke adjoining: althoughe as he was too bowe shoote into the water, hee fell to fishing, and in lesse then halfe an houre, hee had laden his boate as deepe, as it could swimme, with which he came againe to the point of the lande, and there he deuised his fische into two partes, pointing one part to the shippe, and the other to the Pinnele: which after hee had (as much as he might,) requited the former benefits receaued, he departed out of our sight.

The next daye there came vnto vs diuers boates, and in one of them the Kings brother, accompanied with fortie or fiftie men, very handsome, and goodly people, and in their behauiour as mannerly, and civil, as any of Europe. His name was Granganimeo, and the King is called Wingina, the Countrey Wingandacoa, (and nowe by her Spalliche, Virginia,) the manner of his comming was in this sort: hee left his boates altogether, as the first man did a litle from the shippes by the shoare, and came along to the place ouer against the shippes, followed with fortie men. When hee came to the place, his seruants spread a long matte vpon the grounde, on which hee satte downe, and at the other ende of the matte, foure others of his companie did the like: the rest of his men stood round about him; somewhat a farr off: when wee came to the shoare to him with our weapons, he neuer moued from his place, nor any of the other foure, nor neuer mistrusted any harme to be offered from vs, but sitting still, he beckoned vs to come, and sate by him, which wee performed: and beinge seate, hee makes all signes of ioy, and welcome, striking on his head, and his breast, and afterwards on ours, to shewe we were all one, smiling, and making shewe the best hee could, of all loue, and familiarity. After hee had made a long speech vnto vs, wee presented him with diuers things, which hee receaued very ioyfull, and thankfull, none of his companie durst to speake one worde all the tyme: onely the foure which were at the other ende, spake one in the others eare very softly.

The King is greatly obeyed, and his brothers, and children reuerenced: the King himselfe in person was at our being there sore wounded, in a fight which he had with the King of the next Countrey, called Wingina, and was shotte in two places through the boode, and once cleane thorough the thigh, but yet hee recouered: by reason wherof, and for that hee laye at the chiefe Towne of the Countrey, beinge five dayes iourneye off, wee sawe him not at all.

After wee had presented this his brother, with such things as we thought hee liked, we likewise gaue somewhat to the other that sate with him on the matte: but presently he arose, and tooke all from them, and put it into his owne basket, making signes and tokens, that

all things ought to be kept: and after that Chammyne, with other things that hee sawe, sate his breast, and that it would be a terrible warre, with skinnes, woodch the woodch fittie Crow kinnes, and would be two of the daies, of meate, and of our by his wife with him of well fauoured of me with the furre side had a broad bande of brace lets of pearles bracelet) and those had pendants of cor and other Noble m of golde, or copper he by any meanes yarell was as his v on one. They are of men that had very

After that these bringing with them but when Granganimeo such as weare redd betweene the Noble red there, and you h the worlde carry m Kings brothers with of fiftie women alv two daughters, hee as many boates as shoare a farr off, to ched. Their boate knowne to our peo withall: if they ha which as those two Christian shippe, b of the people were of whose sides they Their manner of are winde fallen, a when it hath burne burne it deeper o means thep saltio like scoopes, and n

The Kings by we had: and offer time, because we v stood in what plac ry well vnderstan

He was very i woode, but euer he hyst of two of fact

all things ought to be deliuered vnto him, and the rest were but his seruants, and followers. A daye or two after this, we fell to trading with them, exchanging some things that we had for Chamirinos, Buffe, and Deere skins: when we shewd him all our packets of merchandize, of all things that he saw, a bright time was he most pleased him, which he presently tooke vp, & clapt it before his breast, & after made a hole in the bosome thereof, & hung it about his necke, making signes, that it would defende him against his enemies arrows: for those people maintaine a deadly and terrible warre, with the people and King aduoyning. We exchanged our tinne for twenty skines, woorth twenty Crownes, or twenty Nobles: and a copper kettle for fiftie skines, woorth fiftie Crownes. They offered vs very good exchange for our hatchets, and axes, and for knives, and would haue giuen any thing for swords: but we would not depart with any. After two or three daies, the Kings brother came aboard the shippes, and dranke wine, and ate of our meate, and of our bread, and liked exceedingly thereof: and after a few daies ouerpast, he brought his wife with him to the shippes, his daughter, and two or three little children: his wife was very well fauoured, of meane stature, and very bashfull: she had on her backe a long cloke of leather, with the furre side next to her bodie, and before her a peece of the same: about her forehead, she had a broad bande of white Corral, and so had her husband many times: in her eares she had bracelets of pearles, hanging downe to her middle, (whereof we deliuered your Worship a litle bracelet) and those were of the bignes of good peale. The rest of her women of the better sort, had pendants of copper, hanging in euery eare, and some of the children of the Kings brother, and other Noble men, haue five or sixe in euery eare: he himselfe had vpon his head, a broad plate of golde, or copper, for being vnpolished, we knew not what metall it should be, whether would he by any meanes suffer vs to take it off his head, but feeling it, it would bowe very easily. His apparell was as his wifes, onely the women weare their haire long on both sides, and the men but on one. They are of colour yellowish, and their haire blacke for the most, and yet we sawe children that had very fine auburne, and chestnut colour haire.

After that these women had bene there, there came downe from all parts great store of people, bringing with them leather, corral, diuers kinds of dyes very excellent, and exchanged with vs: but when Granganimo, the kings brother was present, none durst to trade but himselfe, excepte such as weare redde peeces of copper on their heades, like himselfe: for that is the difference betweene the Noble men, and Governours of Countries, and the meaner sort. And we both noted there, and you haue vnderstood since by these men, which we brought home, that no people in the world carry more respect to their King, Nobilitie, and Governours, then these doe. The Kings brothers wife, when she came to vs, as she did many times, she was followed with foure or fiftie women at waies: and when she came into the shippe, she left them all on lande, leaving her two daughters, her nurse, and one or two more. The Kings brother alwaies keepe this order, as many boates as he would come withall to the shippes, so many fires would he make on the shoare a farr off, to the ende wee might vnderstand with what strength, and companie he approached. Their boates are made of one tree, either of Pine, or of Birch trees: a wood not commonly knowne to our people, nor found growing in England. They haue no edge tooles to make them withall: if they haue any, they are very fewe, and those it seemes they had twenty yeeres since, which as those two men declared, was out of a wycke which happened vpon their coast of some Christian shippe, being beaten that way by some storme, and outrageous weather, whereof none of the people were saued, but onely the shippe, or some part of her, being cast vpon the sande, out of whose sides they drew the needles, and spikes, and with those they made their best instruments. Their manner of making their boates is this: they burne downe some great tree, or take such as are winde fallen, and putting myrre, and rosen vpon one side thereof, they sette fire into it, and when it hath burnt it hollowe, they cutte out the coale with their shels, and euer where they would burne it deeper or wider, they laye on their gummess, which burneth away the timber, and by this meanes they fashion very fine boates, and such as will transport twenty men. Their oares are like scoopes, and many times they sette with long poles, as the depeh serueth.

The Kings brother had great liking of our armour, a sword, and diuers other things, which we had: and offered to laye a great boze of pearle in gage for them: but we refused it for this time, because we would not make them knowe, that wee esteemed thereof, vntill we had vnderstoode in what places of the Countrey the pearle grew: which nowe your Worshippe doth very well vnderstand.

He was very full of his promise: for many times wee deliuered him merchandize vpon his word, but euer he came within the daye, and performed his promise. Wee sent vs euery daye a basket of two of face Ducks, Conies, Pares, & fische, the best of the world. Wee sent vs diuers kinds

kindes of fruites, Melons, Malnuts, Cucumbers, Gourdes, Pease, and diuers rootes, and fruites very excellent good, and of their Countrey corne, which is very white, faire, and well tasted, and groweth three times in five moneths: in Maye they sowe, in July they reape: in June they sowe, in August they reape: in July they sowe, in September they reape: onely they cast the corne into the ground, breaking a little of the soft turfe with wooden mattocke, or pickaxe: our felues psoned the soile, and put some of our Pease into the ground, and in tenne daies they were of foureteene ynches high: they haue also Beanes very faire, of diuers colours, and wonderful plenty: some growing naturally, and some in their gardenes, and so haue they both wheate and oates.

The soile is the most pleuisfull, sweete, fruitfull, and wholsome of all the world: there are aboue foureteene severall sweete smelling timber trees, and the most part of their hinder woods are Bapes, and such like: they haue those Okes that we haue, but faire greater, and better. After they had bene diuers times aboard our shippes, my selfe, with seuen more, went thentie mile into the Riuer, that runneth toward the Citie of Skicoake, which Riuer they call Occam: and the evening following, we came to an Island, which they call Roanoak, distant from the harbour by which we eured, seuen leagues: and at the North end thereof, was a village of nine houses, built of Cedar, and fortified round about with sharpe trees, to keepe out their enemies, and the entrance into it made like a turne pike very artificially: when we came towards it, standing neere vnto the waters side, the wife of Grangyno, the Kings brother, came running out to meete vs very cheerefully, and friendly, her husband was not then in the village: some of her people she commanded to draine our boate on the shoare, for the beating of the villoe: others she appointed to carry vs on their backs to the dry ground, and others to bring our oares into the house, for feare of stealing. When we were come into the better roome, hauing five roomes in her house, she caused vs to sitte vnto by a great fire, and after tooke off our clothes, and washed them, and dried them againe: some of the women pulled off our stockings, and washed them, some washed our feete in warme water, and shee her selfe tooke great paines to see all things ordered in the best manner shee coule, making great haste to dress some meate for vs to eat.

After we had thus dried our felues, shee brought vs into the inner roome, where she set on the hood standing along the house, some wheate like fermentie, sodden Xenison, and roasted, sith sodden, boyled, and roasted, Melons rawe, and sodden, rootes of diuers kindes, and diuers fruites: their drinke is commonly water, but while the grape lasteth, they drinke wine, and for want of caske to keepe it all the yeere after, they drinke water, but it is sodden with Ginger in it, and blacke Shinamon, and sometimes Sallapayas, and diuers other wholsome, and medicinal beaues and trees. We were entertained with all loue, and kindnes, and with as much bountie, after their manner, as they coule possibly deuise. Wee found the people most gentle, louing, and faithfull, void of all guile, and treason, and such as liued after the manner of the golden age. The earth bringeth forth all things in abundance, as in the first creation, without toyle or labour. The people onely care to defend them selues from the cold, in their short winter, and to feede themselves with such meate as the soile affordeth: their meate is very well sodden, and they make both very sweete, and sauorie: their vessels are earthen pots, very large, white, and sweete: their dishes are wooden platters of sweete timber: within the place where they feede, was their lodging, and within that their Idoll, which they worship, of which they speake incredible things. While we were at meate, there came in at the gates, two or three men with their bowes, and arrowes, from hunting, whome when we espied, we beganne to looke one towards another, and offered to reach our weapons: but as soone as they espied our mistrust, they was very much moued, and caused some of her men to runne out, and take away the bowes, and arrowes, and breaketh them, and withall beate the poore fellows out of the gate againe. When we departed in the evening, and would not carry all night, she was very sozie, and gaue vs into our boate our supper halfe vessel, pots, and all, and brought vs to our boates side, in which wee laye all night, remoouing the same a pretie distance from the shoare: shee perceiving our zealousie, was much grieued, and sent diuers men, and chittie women, to sitte all night on the banks side by vs, and sent vs into our boates five matres to couer vs from the rayne, vnto very many wordes to increase vs to rest in their houses: but because wee were fewe men, and if wee had miscarried, the voyage had bene in very great danger, wee durst not adventure any thing, although there was no cause of doubt: for a more kinde, and louing people, there can not be found in the world, as farre as we haue hitherto had trial.

Beyond this Islande, there is the maine lande, and ouer against this Islande falleth into this

this spacious water  
Towne called Pem  
cite, called Schycos  
at it, onely they spea  
heard affirme it, to be

Into this riuer fa  
Gullets, in which is  
called Nomopana,  
the Lord of that Co  
King of Wingand  
whome they call M  
wards the Sunne se  
Westermoll Town  
a shippe call away,  
the Countrey people

And after ten daies  
help of some of the  
made make vnto th  
the Countrey peele  
shortly after, it seme  
in another Island a di  
colour, either some of  
Inhabitants of Sequ  
we were amongst it  
to vie to the same: be  
so strange vnto them  
ged any peere, were  
strangenes of the san  
rowes ate but of sma  
kill a naked man. C  
for their defeat. The  
bones of a flagge, o  
of whome they aske  
sing songs as they m  
are very cruell, and bl  
ned of late yeeres and  
Countrey left desola

Adorning vnto th  
with the next King,  
sioke, stuate vpon  
with Wingina, King  
betweene the King P  
with vs into Englan  
Sequotanes, for man  
diuers men, and o  
when they were aloug  
meere illusion of the  
and stee them euery  
since perished vs to  
will be founde in it  
may be reuenged of t  
after.

Beyond this Island  
natural increase to  
some bounding vpon

When we first ha  
tinne: but after wee

this spacious water, the great riuer called Occam, by the Inhabitants, on which standeth a Towne called Pemeoke, and shee takes iourney further upon the same in skuate their greatest citie, called Schycoake, which this people affirme to be very great: but the Sauages were neuer at it, onely they speake of it by the report of their Fathers, and other men, whome they haue heard affirme it, to be about one daies iourney about.

Into this riuer falleth another great riuer, called Cipo, in which there is found great store of the Opulents, in which there are praires: like wise there descendeth into this Occam, another riuer, called Nomopans, on the one side whereof standeth a great Towne, called Chowanoack, and the Lord of that Towne and Countrey, is called Pooneno: this Pooneno is not subject to the King of Wingandacoa, but is a free Lord, Beyond this Countrey, is there another King, whome they call Mensoan, and these three Kinges are in league with eache other. Towards the Sunne set, foure daies iourney, is skuate a Towne called Sequotan, which is the Westernmost Towne of Wingandacoa, neere vnto which shee and twentie yeeres past, there was a shippe cast away, whereof some of the people were saued, and those were white people, whom the Countrey people persecuted.

And after ten daies, remaining in an out Island inhabited, called Wococan, they with the helpe of some of the dwellers of Sequotan, fastened two boates of the Countrey together, and made masses vnto them, and sailes of their shutes, and hauing taken into them such victuals as the Countrey yeeldes, they departed after they had remained in this our Island three weekes: but shortly after, it seemed they were cast away, for the boates were found vpon the coast, cast a land in another Island adioyning: other then these, there was neuer any people apperelled, or white of colour, either seene, or heard of amongst these people, and these adioyning were some onely of the Inhabitants of Sequotan which appeared to be very true, for they wondered maruelously when we were amongst them, at the whiteness of our skinnes, euer coueting to touch our faces, and to bite the same: besides they had our shippes in maruelous admiration, and all things els was so strange vnto them, as it appeared that none of them had euer seene the like. When we discharged any peece, were it but a harquebush, they would tremble thereat for very feare, and for the strangeness of the same: for the weapons which themselves vse, are bowes and arrowes: the arrowes are but of small canes, headed with a sharpe shell, or tooth of a fish sufficient enough to kill a naked man. Their swordes are of wood hardened: like wise they vse wooden beak places for their defense. They haue besides a kinde of clubbe, in the end whereof they fasten the sharpe pointes of a stagge, or other beast. When they goe to warres, they carry with them their Idoll, of whome they aske counsell, as the Romanes were wont of the Oracle of Apollo. They sing songs as they march towards the battell, in steede of drummes, and trumpets: their warres are very cruell, and bloodie, by reason whereof, and of their ciuill dissensions, which haue happened of late yeeres amongst them, the people are maruelously wasted, and in some places, the Countrey left desolate.

Adioyning vnto this Towne adioyning, called Sequotan, beginneth a Countrey called Poonouike, belonging to another King, whome they call Piemacum, and this King is in league with the next King, adioyning towards the setting of the Sunne, and the Countrey Neio-sioke, skuate vpon the side of a goodly Riuer, called Neus: these Kinges haue mortall warre with Wingina, King of Wingandacoa, but about two yeeres past, there was a peace made betweene the King Piemacum, and the Lord of Sequotan, as these men which we haue brought with vs into England, haue made vs vnderstande: but there remaineth a mortall malice in the Sequotanes, for many iniuries and slaughters done vpon them by this Piemacum. They invited diuers men, and thirtie women, of the best of his Countrey, to their Towne to a feast: and when they were altogether merrie, and praying before their Idoll, which is nothing else, but a meere illusion of the Deuill: the Captaine or Lord of the Towne came suddenly vpon them, and slew them euery one, reseruing the women, and children: and these too haue oftentimes since perswaded vs to surprize Piemacum his Towne, hauing promised, and assured vs, that there will be founde in it great store of commodities. But whether their perswasion be to the end they may be reuenged of their enemies, or for the loue they beare to vs, we leaue that to the trial hereafter.

Beyond this Island, called Croonoake, are many Islands, very plentifull of frutes, and other naturall increases, together with many Townes, and villages, along the side of the continent, some bounding vpon the Islands, and some stretching by further into the land.

When we first had sight of this Countrey, some thought the first lande we saue, to be the continent: but after wee entered into the Haven, wee saue before vs another mightie long Isle: for there

there lieth along the coast a tracte of Islands, two hundred miles in length, adioyning to the Ocean sea, and betwene the Islands, two or three entrances: when you are entered betwene them (these Islands being very narrowe, for the most part, as in most places fve miles broad, in some places lesse, in some more,) then there appeareth another great Sea, containing in breadth in some places fortye, and in some fiftie, in some twentie miles ouer, before you come vnto the continent: and in this included Sea, there are about a hundred Islands of diuers bignesses, whereof one is threeteene miles long, at which we were, finding it to be a most pleasant, and fertile ground, replenished with goodly Cedars, and diuers other sweete woods, full of Currans, of flax, and many other notable commodities, which we at that time had no leisure to view. Besides this Island, there are many, as I haue saide, some of two, of thre, of foure, of five miles, some more, some lesse, most beautifull, and pleasant to behold, replenished with Deere, Conies, Hares, and diuers beastes, and about them the goodliest and best fische in the world, and in greate abundance.

Thus Sir, we haue acquainted you with the particulars of our discouerie, made this yeres voyage, as farre forth, as the shoyms of the time we there continued, would allow vs to take viewe of: and so contenting our selues with this seruice at this time, which we hope hereafter to enlarge, as occasion and assistance shall be giuen, we resolved to leaue the Countrey, and to apply our selues to returne for England, which we did accordingly, and arrived safely in the West of England, about the middell of September.

And whereas we haue about certified you of the Countrey, taken in possession by vs, to her Maesties vse, and so to yours, by her Maesties grant, wee thought good for the better assurance thereof, to recorde some of the particular Gentlemen, and men of accompt, who then were present, as witnesses of the same, that thereby all occasion of cauill to the title of the Countrey, in her Maesties behalfe, may be prevented, which other wise, such as like not the action may vse, and pretend, whose names are:

<p>Master Philip Amadas, Master Arthur Barlowe,</p>	}	Captaines.
<p>William Greeneuile, John Wood, Iames Browewich, Henrie Greene, Beniamin Wood, Simon Ferdinando, Nicholas Petman, John Heyes,</p>	}	Of the companie.

### The voyage made by Sir Richard Greeneuile, for Sir Walter Raleigh, to Virginia, in the yeere, 1585.



The 19. day of Maye, in the yeere aboue saide, we departed from Plymouth, our fleet consisting of the number of seven sailes, to wit, the Tyger, of the burden of seuen score tunnes: a flie boate called the Roe Bucke, of the like burden: the Lyon of a hundred tunnes, or thereabouts: the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes, and the Dorothea, a small barke, whereunto were also adioyned for speede seruices, 2. small Pinnelles. The principall Gentlemen of our companie, were, Master Ralfe Lane, Master Thomas Candishe, Master John Arundell, Master Raimund, Master Stukely, Master Bremige, Master Vincent, and Master John Clarke, and diuers others, whereof some were Captaines, and other some Assistants for counsell, and good directions in the voyage.

The 14. day of Apriill, we fell with Lançacota, and Forte Ventura, Isles of the Canaries, and from thence we continued our course for Dominica, one of the Antiles of the West India, where with we fell the 7. day of Maye, and the 10. day following, we came to an anchor at Cotesa, a little Island situate neere to the Island of S. Iohn, where wee landed, and refreshed our selues all that day.

The 15. day of Maye, we came to an anchor, in the Baye of Muskito, in the Island of S. Iohn, within a Falcon shot of the Shoard: where our Generall Sir Richard Greenuill, and the most part of our companie landed, and began to foxtie, very neere to the sea side: the river ranne by the one side of our foyle, and the other two sides were environed with woods,

The

The 13. day we be  
felled in the countrey  
for bypon crucks, the

The 16. day, there  
a quarter of a mple fr  
soone as they saw 7.0

The 19. day, Master  
of Portugall arrived  
ben either a Spaniard  
roome with him, whi  
of whose coming, o  
ner of the Seas.

The 22. day, 20. Oct  
riuer: who being seen  
ours, moued vpon  
Island: they shewed to  
upon two of our men  
the two Spaniards r  
with ypon humors, to  
who notwithstanding  
that our principal int  
necessaries wherof w  
ly means, other wise  
the Spaniards in cor  
mites of all curtesie,

The 23. day our  
Captaines, and Gen  
plaine marsh, they  
to furnish vs with  
came not, wherupon  
the same day was fir

The 29. day we sen  
the Muskitoes: but  
nyards vpon the s  
gat, with good and  
ransomed for good

The 26. day our  
ken, to Roxo hap  
by a Spanisch Pilot  
increnched him self  
trench: who being  
of hostemen, and  
him to offer any re  
laded his frigate, an  
mans Bay. The lan

The 1. day of Ju  
The 3. day b  
certified by the re  
by our Generall, th  
to see the Govern  
sing within few da

The 5. day the  
their seruants, & Me  
scene, our Generall  
every man appointe  
Governor received  
Gentlemen, and the

The 13. day we began to builde a new pinnelle within the Foze, with the timber that we then felled in the countrey, some part whereof we set three myle vp in the land, and brought it to our Foze upon crucks, the Spaniards not daring to make of other resistance.

The 16. day, there appeared vnto vs out of the woods 8. hoysmen of the Spaniards, about a quarter of a myle from our Foze, staying about halfe an hower in viewing our forces: but as soone as they saw 5. of our shot marching towards them, they presently rettyred into the woodes.

The 19. day, Master Candish, who had bene seperated from our fleete in a storme in the Bay of Portugall arrived at Coceia, within the sight of the Tiger: we thinking him a farrer off to haue ben either a Spaniard or French man of warre thought it good to weigh anchors, and to goe roome with him, which the Tyger did, and discerned him at last to be one of our Consoys, for top of whose comming, our ships discharged their ordnance, and saluted him, according to the manner of the Seas.

The 22. day, 20. other Spanishe hoysmen shewed them selues to vs upon the other side of the riuer: who being seene, our General dispatched 20. footemen towards them, and two hoysmen of ours, mounted upon Spanishe hoyses, which wee before had taken in the time of our being on the Island: they shewed to our men a flagge of truce, and made signes to haue a parle with vs: whereupon two of our men went halfe of the way upon the sands, and two of theirs came and met them: the two Spaniards offered very great salutations to our men, but began according to their Spanishe proud humors, to expostulate with them, about their arrival, and fortifying in their countrey, who not withstanding by our mens discrete answers were so cooled, that whereas they were told, that our principal intention was onely to furnish our selues with water, and victuals, and other necessaries whereof we stood in neede, which we craved might be yelued vs with faire, and friendly means, other wise our resolution was to practise force, and to relieue our selues by the sword: the Spaniards in conclusion, seeing our men so resolute, yelued to our requestes with large promises of all curtesie, and great fauor, and so our men and theirs departed.

The 23. day our pinnelle was finished, and lanches, which being done, our Generall with his Captaines, and Gentlemen, marched by into the Countrey about the space of 4. myles, where in a plaine marsh, they layed expecting the comming of the Spaniards according to their promise, to furnish vs with victuals: who keeping their old custome for periurie and breach of promise came not, whereupon our Generall fired the woodes thereabout, and so retired to our Foze, which the same day was fired also, and each man came aboard to be ready to set saile the next morning.

The 29. day we set saile from Saint Johns, being many of vs stooing before upon Hoare with the Huskitoes: but the same night we took a Spanishe frigate, which was forsaken by the Spaniards vpon the sight of vs, and the next day in the morning very early, wee took another frigate, with good and rich fraight, and diuers Spaniards of account in her, which after wards we ransomed for good round summes, and lauded them in Saint Johns.

The 26. day our Lieutenant Master Raffe Lane, went in one of the frigats which we had taken, to Roxo bay vpon the South west side of Saint Johns, to fetch salt, bring thither conducted by a Spanishe Pilot: as soone as he arriued there, he landed with his men, to the number of 20. and increased him selfe vpon the sands immediately, compassing one of their salt hills within the trench: who being seene of the Spaniards, there came downe towards him two of their troopes of hoysmen, and footemen, who gaue him the looking, and gazing on, but durst not come neere him to offer any resistance, so that Master Lane mauer their troopes, carried their salt aboard, and laded his frigate, and so returned againe to our fleete the 29. day, which roade at Saint Germans Bay. The same day we all departed, and the next day arriued in the Island of Hispaniola.

June.

The 1. day of June we ankered at Isabella, in the North side of Hispaniola.

The 3. day of June, the Gouvernor of Isabella, and Captaine of the Port de Plata, being certified by the reports of sundry Spaniards, who had bene w<sup>th</sup> entertained aboard our shippes by our Generall, that in our fleete were many braue, and gallant Gentlemen, who greatly desired to see the Gouvernor aforesaid, he thereupon sent gentle commendations to our Generall, promising within few daies to come to him in person, which he performed accordingly.

The 5. day the foresaid gouernour, accompanied with a lusty frigate, & 22. other Spaniards, with their seruants, & Negroes, came downe to the sea side, where our ships roade at anker, who being seene, our General manned immediately the most part of his boats w<sup>th</sup> the chiefe men of our fleete, euery man appointed, and furnished in the best foze: at the landing of our Generall, the Spanishe Gouvernor receiued him very curteously, and the Spanishe Gentlemen saluted our English Gentlemen, and their inferiour foze did also salute our Souldiers and Sea men, liking our

men, and likewise their qualities, although at the first, they seemed to stand in feare of vs, and of so many of our boats, whereof they desired that all might not land their men, yet in the end, the curtelles that passed on both sides were so great, that all feare and mistrust on the Spaniards part was abandoned.

In the meane time while our English Generall and the Spanish Governour discoursed betwixt them of diuers matters, as of the State of the Country, the multitude of the Townes and people, and the commodities of the Island, our men provided two banquetting houles covered with greene boughs, the one for the gentlemen, the other for the seruants, and a sumptuous banquet was brought in serued by vs all in Plate, with the sound of trumpets, and consort of musick, wherewith the Spaniards were moze then delighted. Which banquet being ended, the Spaniards in recompense of our curtelles, caused a great herd of white buls, and kync, to be brought together from the Mountaines, and appointed for every Gentleman and Captaine that would ride, a horse ready sadled, and then singled out three of the best of them to be hunted by horsemen after their manner, so that the pastime grew very pleasant, for the space of three houres, wherem all they of the beasts were killed, whereof one tooke the sea, and there was slaine with a musket. After this sport, many rare presents and gifts were giuen and bestowed on both partes, and the next day we played the Marchants in bargaining with them by way of trucke and exchange for diuers of their commodities, as horses, mares, kync, buls, goates, swine, sheepe, bul hydes, sugar, ginger, pearle, tabacco, and such like commodities of the Island.

The 7. day we departed with great good will from the Spaniards from the Island of Hispaniola: but the wisler sort do impute this greateshew of friendship, and curtelles used towards vs by the Spaniards rather to the force that we were of, and the vigilance, and watchfulness that was amongst vs, then to any hartly good will, or sure freindly intertainment: for doubtlesse if they had bene wiser then wee, we might haue looked for no better curtelles at their handes, then Master John Hawkins received at saint Iohn de Vlua, or John Oxnam nere the strights of Dariens, and diuers others of our Countrymen in other places.

The 8. day we ankered at a small Island to take Seales which in that place wee understood to haue bene in great quantitie, where the Generall and certaine others with him in the pinnelle, were in very great danger to haue bene all cast away, but by the helpe of God they escaped the hazard, and returned aboard the Admirall in safetie.

The 9. day we arrived and landed in the Isle of Caycos, in which Islande we searched for salt pomes, vpon the aduertisement, and information of a Portugall: who in deede abused our General and vs, deseruing a halter for his hire, if it had so pleased vs.

The 12. we ankered at Guanema, and landed.

The 15. and 16. we ankered and landed at Sygateo.

The 20. we fell with the mayne of Florida.

The 23. wee were in great danger of a Whacke on a heache called the Cape of Feare.

The 24. we came to anker in a harbor where we caught in one tpe so much silke as would haue pelued vs 77. pounds in London: this was our first landing in Florida.

The 26. we came to anker at Wocokon.

The 29. we waighed anker to bring the Tyger into the harbour, where though the vnskillfullnesse of the Master whose name was Fernando, the Admirall strooke on ground, and sunke.

### July.

The 3. we sent word of our arriuing at Wococon, to Wingino at Roznocke.

The 6. M. Iohn Arundell was sent to the mayne, and Manteio with him: and Captayne Aubry, and Captaine Bonien the same day were sent to Croaroan, where they found two of our men left there, with 30. other by Captaine Reymond, some 20. daies before.

The 8. Captaine Aubry, and Captaine Bonien returned with two of our men found by them to vs at Wocokon.

The 11. day the Generall accompanied in his Tilt boate with Master Iohn Arundell, Master Stukelye, and diuers other Gentlemen, Master Lane, Master Candish, Master Harriot, and 20. others in the netwe pinnelle, Captaine Amadas, Captaine Clarke, with tenne others in a ship boate, Francis Dyaque, and Iohn White in another ship boate passed ouer the water from Ococon to the mayne land victualled for eight dayes, in which voyage we first discouered the townes of Pomioke, Aquacogoc and Secota, and also the great lake called by the Sauages Paquye, with

with diuers other pl

The 12. we came

The 13. we passe

The 15. we came to

The 16. we retur

cocke to demaund a

it according to his p

ing fleshe.

The 18. we retur

ryping at Wocokon

The 21. our fleet

The 27. our fleet

The 29. Grangin

with him.

The 2. The Adm

The 5. Master

The 25. our Gen

About the 31. he

made with boards of

and his men were ou

The 10. of Sept

of the Tyger.

The first the T

mouth.

The 18. the Gen

diuerie of his voyth

The nam

that re

M

Master

Master

Master

Thomas

Master

Master

Captain

Master

Master

Robert

Rife Co

Master

with divers other places, and so returned with that discovery to our fleets.

The 12. we came to the Towne of Pomeioke.

The 13. we passed by water to Aquascocke.

The 15. we came to Secotan and were well entertayned there of the Sauages.

The 16. we returned thence, and one of our boates with the Admirall was sent to Aquascocke to demaund a silver cup which one of the Sauages had stolen from vs, and not receiuing it according to his promise, we burnt, and spoiled their coyns, and Towne, all the people being fledde.

The 18. we returned from the discovery of Secotan, and the same day came aboard our fleets lying at Wocokon.

The 21. our fleets ankering at Wokocon, we wayed anker for Hatoraske.

The 27. our fleets ankered at Hatoraske, and there we rested.

The 29. Grangino, brother to king Wingino, came aboard the Admirall, and Manteco with him.

*August.*

The 2. The Admirall was sent to Weapemeoke.

The 5. Master John Arundell was sent for England.

The 25. our Generall wayed anker, and set saile for England.

About the 31. he tooke a Spanish ship of 300. tunne richly laden, boarding her with a boate made with boards of chests, which fell a lumber, and sunke at the shippe, the, alsoone as euer hee and his men were out of it.

*September.*

The 10. of September, by soule weather the Generall then shipped in the pisse lost sight of the Tyger.

*October.*

The first the Tyger fell with the landes ende, and the same day came to an anker at Falmonth.

The 18. the Generall came with the pisse to Plymouth, and was courteously receiued by diuerse of his worshipfull friends.

The names of all those as well Gentlemen as others,  
that remained one whole yeere in Virginia, un-  
der the Governement of Master  
*Ralfe Lane.*

Master Philip Amades, Ad-  
miral of the countrie,  
Master Harior,  
Master Acon,  
Master Edward Stafford,  
Thomas Luddington,  
Master Maruyn,  
Master Gardynier,  
Captaine Vaughan,  
Master Kendall,  
Master Prideox,  
Robert Holcroft,  
Rife Courtney,  
Master Hugh Rogers,

Master Thomas Harrie,  
Master Snelling,  
Master Anthony Russe,  
Master Allyne,  
Master Michel Polyson,  
John Cage,  
Thomas Parre,  
William Randes,  
Geffery Churchman,  
William Farthowe,  
John Taylor,  
Philippe Robyns,  
Thomas Phillippes,  
Valentine Beale.

Vuu 3

Thomas



- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Thomas Foxe,       | James Skinner,        |
| Edward Nugen,      | George Efeuen,        |
| Darby Glante,      | John Chaudeler,       |
| Edward Kelle,      | Philip Blunt,         |
| John Gostigon,     | Richard Poore,        |
| Erasinus Clesi,    | Robert Yong,          |
| Edward Ketcheman,  | Marmaduke Constable,  |
| John Linsey,       | Thomas Heskett,       |
| Theodius Romtaby,  | William Wallie,       |
| Roger Deane,       | John Feuer,           |
| John Hartis,       | Daniel,               |
| Francis Norris,    | Thomas Taylor,        |
| Mathewe Lynce,     | Richard Humfrey,      |
| Edward Kettell,    | John Wright,          |
| Thomas Wisse,      | Gabriell North,       |
| Robert Biscombe,   | Benner Chappell,      |
| William Backhouse, | Richard Saie,         |
| William White,     | James Lase,           |
| Henry Potkin,      | Smolkin,              |
| Dennis Barnes,     | Thomas Smart,         |
| Joseph Borges,     | Robert                |
| Doughan Gannes,    | John Euans,           |
| William Tenche,    | Roger Large,          |
| Randall Latham,    | Humfrey Garden,       |
| Thomas Hulme,      | Francis Whitton,      |
| Walter Myll,       | Rowland Griffyn,      |
| Richard Gilbert,   | William Millard,      |
| Steuen Pomarie,    | John Twyt,            |
| John Brocke,       | Edwarde Seklemore,    |
| Bennet Harpe,      | John Anwike,          |
| James Steuenfon,   | Christopher Marshall, |
| Charles Steuenfon, | Dauid Williams,       |
| Christopher Lowde, | Nicholas Swabber,     |
| Jeremy Man,        | Edward Chipping,      |
| James Mason,       | Syluester Beching,    |
| Douid Saker,       | Vincent Cheyne,       |
| Richard Ireland,   | Hauuce Walters,       |
| Thomas Booketer,   | Edward Barecombe,     |
| William Phillippe, | Thomas Skeuelabs,     |
| Randall Mayne,     | William Walters,      |

An account of the particularities of the imployments of the English men left in Virginia by Sir Richard Greenewill vnder the charge of Master Raife Lane General of the same, from the 17. of August, 1585, vntill the 18. of Iune. 1586. at which time they departed the Countrie: sent, and directed to Sir Walter Raleigh,



2. parts of this discourse.

That I may proceede with order in this discourse, I thinke it requisite to diuide it into two partes. The first shall declare the particularities of such partes of the Countrey within the mayne, as our weake number, and supply of things necessary was inable vs to enter into the discovery thereof.

The second part, shall set downe the reasons generally mouing vs to resolue on our departure at the instant with the General Sir Francis Drake, and our common request for passage with him, when the barkes, pinnacles, and boates with the Masters and Partners ment by him to be left in the Countrie for the supply of such, as for a further time ment to haue stayed there were not to stay with company, and soule weathers: In the beginning whereof shall be declared the true nature of Pemisapan, with the Sauages of the mayne to haue cutt be off &c.

part 1

part 2

The



thence was thoye  
and yet full of fl  
which boat cou  
uen bayes at the  
shalow sound, (y  
hand) we thought

To the North  
about 130. miles  
of the sound, and

But the Terr  
was for pleasan  
moditie of the  
woods of Shal

There be sum  
ming, to the same  
lonie of the Eng

To the North  
noak about 130  
and the chanel  
shoales.

The Coimes  
The womans  
vnder the terrid  
into the Riuer,  
till it come to C  
minster, and L

Betweene M  
high land, and th  
Ooanoke, and h

Choanoke it  
berp Coime it  
uincer it selfe.

The King of  
wife for a Saua  
concerning the  
also of his neigh  
Countrey yeeld  
gante me more v  
and Sauages th  
last past 1586.

his Riuer of Ch  
past our land,  
but his place of  
ter round about

Out of this I  
doeth to opinar  
ter force of his g  
houses are gar  
so see,

## The first part declaring the particularities of the Countrey of Virginia.



And therefore touching the particularities of the Countrey, you shall understand our discovery of the same hath bene extended from the Island of Roanoke, (the same having bene the place of our settlement or inhabitation) into the South, into the North, into the North-west, and into the West.

The uttermost place to the Southward of any discovery was Secotan, being by estimation foure score miles distant from Roanoke. The passage from thence was thoro' a broad sound within the mayne, the same being without kenning of land, and yet full of flats and shoales: we had but one boate with foure oares to passe through the same, which boate could not carry above fiftene men with their furniture, baggage, and victual for seven dayes at the most: and as for our Pinnell, besides that the yewe too deepe water for that shallow sound, he would not stirre for an oare: for these and other reasons (winter also being at hand) we thought good wholly to leaue the discovery of those partes untill our stronger supplye.

To the Northward our furthest discovery was to the Chespians, distant from Roanoke about 130. miles, the passage to it was very shallow and most dangerous, by reason of the breadth of the sound, and the litle succour that vpon any flawe was there to be had.

But the Territorie and soyle of the Chespians (being distant fiftene miles from the shore) was for pleasantnes of lease, for temperature of Climate, for fertilitie of soyle, and for the commodity of the Sea, besides multitude of beares (being an excellent good victual, with great woods of Hassackes, and Wall nut trees) is not to be excelled by any other whatsoeuer.

There be sundry Kinges, whom they call Weroances, and Countreies of great fertilitie adjoining to the same, as the Mandoages, Tripanicks, and Oposians, which all came to visit the Colonie of the English, which I had for a time appointed to be resident there.

To the North-west the farthest place of our discovery was to Choanoke distant from Roanoke about 130. miles. Our passage thither lyeth through a broad sound, but all fresh water, and the channell of great depth, nauigable for good shipping; but one of the channell full of shoales.

The Townes about the water side situated by the way, are these following: Pysshokonnok, The womans Towne, Chipanum, Weopomiok, Muscumunge, and Mattaquem: all these being vnder the iurisdiction of the king of Weopomiok, called Okisco: from Muscumunge we enter into the Riuer, and iurisdiction of Choanoke: There the Riuer beginneth to straighten vntill it come to Choanoke, and then groweth to be as narrowe as the Thames betwene Westminster, and Lambeth.

Betweene Muscumunge and Choanoke vpon the left hand as we passe thither, is a goodly high land, and there is a Towne which we called the blinde Towne, but the Sauages called it Ooanoke, and hath a very goodly corne field belonging vnto it: it is subiect to Choanoke.

Choanoke it selfe is the greatest Province and Seignorie lying vpon that Riuer, and the very Towne it selfe is able to put 700. fighting men into the fildes, besides the forces of the Province it selfe.

The King of the sayd Province is called Menatonon, a man impotent in his limbs, but otherwise for a Sauage, a very graue and wise man, and of very singular good discourse in matters concerning the state, not onely of his owne Countrey, and the disposition of his owne men, but also of his neighbours round about him as well farre as neere, and of the commodities that the Countrey yeeldeth. When I had him prisoner with me, for two dayes that we were together, he gaue me more vnderstanding and light of the Countrey then I had receiued by all the searches and saluages that before I or any of my companie had had conference with: it was in March last past 1586. Amongst other things he tolde me, that going three dayes iourney in a canoa vpon his Riuer of Choanoke, and then descending to the land, you are within foure dayes iourney to passe ouer land Northward to a certaine Kings countrey, whose Province lyeth vpon the Sea, but his place of greatest strength is an Island situate as he described vnto me in a Bay, the water round about the Island very deepe.

Out of this Bay hee signified vnto mee, that this King had so great quantitie of Pearle, and doeth so ordinarily take the same, as that not onely his owne skins that he weareth, and the better sort of his gentlemen and followers, are full set with the sayd Pearle, but also his beds, and houses are garnished with them, and that hee hath such quantitie of them, that it is a wonder to see,

The excellency of the lease of Chespians.

The Towne of Choanoke able to make 700. men of warre.

An Island in a Bay.

Pearles in exceeding quantitie.

He shewed me that the sayd King was with him at Choanoak two yeeres before, and brought him certaine Pearle, but the same of the worst sort, yet was hee faine to buy them of him for copper at a deere rate, as he thought: He gaue me a roape of the same Pearle, but they were blacke, and naught, yet many of them were very great, and a few amongst a number very orient and round, all which I lost with other things of mine, comming aboarde Sir Francis Drake his Fleete: yet he tolde me that the sayd King had great Joye of Pearle that were white, great, and round, and that his blacke Pearle his men did take out of shalowe water, but the white Pearle his men fished for in very deepe water.

It seemed to mee by his speech, that the sayd king had traffike with white men that had clothes as we haue for these white Pearle, and that was the reason that he would not depart with other then with blacke Pearles, to those of the same Countrey.

The king of Choanoak promised to giue me guides to goe ouer land into that kings Countrey whensoever I would: but he aduised me to take good store of men with mee, and good store of victuall, for he sayd, that king would be loth to suffer any strangers to enter into his Countrey, and especially to meddle with the fishing for any Pearle there, and that hee was able to make a great many of men into the fielde, which he sayd would fight very well.

Whereupon I resolued with my selfe, that if your supplie had come before the end of April, and that you had sent any store of boats, or men, to haue had them made in any reasonable time, with a sufficient number of men, and victualls to haue found vs vntill the new coyne were come in, I would haue sent a small Barke with two Spanes about by Sea to the Northward to haue found out the Bay he spake of, and to haue founded the barre if there were any, which should haue ridden there in the sayd Bay about that Island, while I with all the small boats I could make, and with two hundred men would haue gone by to the head of the Riuer of Choanoak, with the guides that Menatonon would haue giuen, which I would haue bene assured should haue bene of his best men, (for I had his best beloued sonne prisoner with me) who also should haue kept me companie in an handlocke with the rest foote by foote all the voyage ouer land.

By meaning was further at the head of the Riuer in the place of my descent where I would haue left my boates to haue rayfed a sconle with a small trench, and a pallisado vpon the top of it, in the which, and in the garde of my boates I would haue left five and thwentie, or thirtie men, with the rest would I haue marched with as much victuall as euery man could haue carried, with their furniture, mattocks, spades and axes, two dayes iourney. In the end of my marche vpon some conuenient plot would I haue rayfed another sconle according to the former, where I would haue left 15. or 20. And if it would haue fallen out conueniently, in the way I would haue raised my sayd sconle vpon some coyne fielde, that my companie might haue liued vpon it.

And so I would haue holden this course of insconing euery two dayes marche, vntill I had bene arrived at the Bay of Poxta he spake of: which finding to be worth the possession, I would there haue raised a mayne forte, both for the defence of the harboroughs, and our shipping also, and would haue reduced our whole habitation from Roanoak and from the harborough and port there (which by prooffe is very naught) vnto this other before mentioned, from whence, in the foure dayes marche before specified could I at all times returne with my companie backe vnto my boats ryding vnder my sconle, very neere wherunto directly from the West runneth a most notable Riuer, and in all those partes most famous, called the Riuer of Morotico. This Riuer openeth into the broad sound of Weopomiok: And whereas the Riuer of Choanoak, and all the other sounds, and Bayes, salt and fresh, shewe no current in the world in calme weather, but are moued altogether with the winde: This Riuer of Morotico hath so violent a current from the West and Southwest, that it made me almost of opinion that with oares it would scarce be nauigable: it passeth with many creeks and turnings, and for the space of thirtie miles rowing, and more, it is as broad as the Thames betwixt Greenwich, and the Ile of dogges, in some place more, and in some lesse: the current runneth as strong being entered so high into the Riuer, as at London bridge vpon a dale water.

And for that not onely Menatonon, but also the Sauages of Morotico themselves doe report strange things of the head of that Riuer, and that from Morotico it selfe, which is a principall Towne vpon that Riuer, it is thirtie dayes as some of them say, and some say fourette dayes voyage to the head thereof, which head they say springeth out of a maine rocke in that abundance, that forthwith it maketh a most violent strame: and further, that this huge rocke standeth neere vnto a Sea, that many times in stormes (the winde comming outwardly from the Sea) the waves thereof are beaten into the said fresh streame, so that the fresh water for a certaine space, groweth salt and brackish.

I tooke

Whether spake  
M. Ralph  
Lane meant to  
reliuious.

I tooke a rest  
for, and sent his  
with two double  
bs, vntill we cou  
ther kinde of So  
courring more be  
uing in that discou

For Pemisapa  
ganimo, had giu  
uing bin enforced  
and yet he did ne  
assembly euen at  
the number of 30  
were ioynd in th  
enterypise: And  
I found at my co  
haue the better b  
was altogether a  
who sent them co  
side he tolde me a

Hee in like fo  
Riuer, and to kil  
red into a leagu  
Riuer, and ret  
much as hauing  
a graine of coyne  
but two dayes v  
contrarie wildes  
of our voyage in  
then for our copp  
putting forth of  
all, and of mine  
soothly by them,  
us, and therefor  
our returne hom  
Weopomiok in  
mans Towne, a

Thus much  
greatest number  
some further vic  
wise to retyre ou  
them to delibera  
course accordin  
was (and not th  
pinte of coyne fo  
in the companie  
fell out) the con  
the current to c  
at the farthest  
dayes they wou  
either as friends  
them selues, a  
bene rather of el

And that wh  
friendship or o  
corious to all  
and traffike by  
This Wine is l

I tooke a resolution with my selfe, hauing dismissed Menatonon vpon a ranfome agreed for, and sent his sonne into the Hinnesle to Roanoak, to enter presently to sarre into that Riuer with two double wherries, and fourtie persons one of other, as I could haue victuall to carrie vs, vntill we could meete with more either of the Moratiks, or of the Mangoaks which is another kinde of Sauages, dwelling more to the Westwarde of the sayd Riuer: but the hope of recovering more victuall from the Sauages made me and my company as narrowly to escape sailing in that discouerie before our returne, as euer men did that missed the same.

For Pemisapan, who had changed his name of Wingina vpon the death of his brother Gran-ganimo, had giuen both the Choanists, & Mangoaks word of my purpose touching them, I hauing bin informed to make him priuie to y<sup>e</sup> same, to be serued by him of a guide to the Mangoaks, and yet he did neuer rest to sollicite continually my going vpon them, certifying me of a generall assembly euen at that time made by Menatonon at Choanoak of all his Weroances, & allyes to the number of 3000. bowes preparing to come vpon vs at Roanoak and that the Mangoaks also were ioynd in the same confederacie, who were able of themselves to bring as many more to the enterprise: And true it was, that at that time the assembly was holden at Choanoak about vs, as I found at my coming thither, which being vnlooked for did so dismay them, as it made vs haue the better hand at them. But this confederacie against vs of the Choanists and Mangoaks was altogether and wholly procured by Pemisapan himselfe, as Menatonon confessed vnto me, who sent them continuall word that our purpose was fully bent to destroy them: on the other side he tolde me that they had the like meaning towards vs.

Yee in like sort hauing sent word to the Mangoaks of mine intention to passe by into their Riuer, and to kill them (as he sayd) both they and the Moratiks, with whom before we were entered into a league, and they had euer dealt kindly with vs, abandoned their Townes along the Riuer, and receyued themselves with their Crencpoces; and thir come within the mapne: inso-much as hauing passed three dayes voyage by the Riuer, we could not meete a man, nor smoe a graine of corne in any their Townes: whereupon considering with my selfe, that we had but two dayes victuall left, and that wee were then 160. miles from home, besides casuallie of contrarie windes or hopes, and suspecting treason of our owne Sauages in the discouerie of our voyage intended, though we had no intention to be hurtfull to any of them, otherwise then for our copper to haue had corne of them: At night vpon the coys of garde, before the putting forth of sentinels, aduertised the whole companie of the ease wee stood in for victuall, and of mine opinion that we were betrayed by our owne Sauages, and of purpose byawen shortly by them, vpon vaine hope to be in the ende starued, seeing all the Countrey fledge before vs, and therefore while we had those two dayes victuall left, I thought it good for vs to make our returne homeward, and that it were necessarie for vs to get the other side of the sound of Weopomiok in time, where we might be releued vpon the weares of Chypanum, and the wemens Towne, although the people were fled.

Thus much I signified vnto them, as the safest way: neuerthelesse, I did referre it to the greatest number of voyces, whether we should aduenture the spending of our whole victuall in some further vielue of that most goodly Riuer in hope to meete with some better hap, or otherwise to recyue our selues backe againe: And for that they might be the better aduised, I willed them to deliberate all night vpon the matter, and in the morning at our going aboide to set our course according to the desires of the greatest part. Their resolution fully and wholly was (and not thre found to be of the contrary opinion) that whiles there was left one halfe pinte of corne for a man, that we should not leaue the search of that Riuer, and that there were in the companie two mastiues, vpon the portage of which with salfastas leaues (if the worst fell out) the companie would make shift to liue two dayes, which time would bring them downe the current to the mouth of the Riuer, and to the entrie of the sound, and in two dayes more at the farthest they hoped to crosse the sounde and to bee releued by the weares, which two dayes they would fast rather then be byawen backe a foote till they had seene the Mangoaks, either as friends or foes. This resolution of theirs did not a little please mee, since it came of them selues, although for mistrust of that which afterwards did happen, I proceeded to haue bene rather of the contrary opinion.

And that which made me most desirous to haue some doings with the Mangoaks either in friendship or otherwise to haue had one or two of them prisoners, was, for y<sup>e</sup> is it a thing most no-toxious to all y<sup>e</sup> countrey, that there is a y<sup>e</sup>rouince to the which the sayd Mangoaks haue recourse and traffike by that Riuer of Moraticco, which hath a marvellous and most strange spinerall. This y<sup>e</sup>rine is so noxious amongst them, as not onely to the Sauages dwelling by the sayd Riuer, but also

Wingina child  
get his name

Their wound

is marvellous  
spinerall in the  
countrey of  
Chyanum  
Riuer, Moraticco.

and brought  
him for cop  
were blarke,  
y<sup>e</sup> orient and  
Drake his  
bice, great,  
is the white  
en that had  
depart with  
ings Coun  
good store  
his Coun  
was able to  
of Apil, and  
time, with  
come in, I  
rde to haue  
rich should  
I could  
Choanoak,  
ured should  
also should  
uer land,  
re I would  
the top of  
hircie men,  
aue caried,  
my marhe  
mer, where  
y I would  
ed vpon it.  
ncill I had  
n, I would  
pping alls,  
y and por  
nce, in the  
backe into  
neth a most  
This Ri  
noak, and  
ne weather,  
lent a cur  
it would  
irricie mist  
ogges, in  
y into the  
ues doe re  
is a princi  
artic dayes  
abundance,  
ndeth nere  
the waters  
e, groweth  
Iooke

river, and also to the Sauges of Choanoke, and all them to the westward, but also to all them of the map, the countries name is of fame, and is called Chaunis Temoatan.

The mineral they say is Walsador, which is copper, but they call by the name of Walsador currey metall whatsoeuer: they say it is of the couler of our copper, but our copper is better then theirs: and the reason is for that it is redder and harder, whereas that of Chaunis Temoatan is very soft, and pale: they say that they take the sayd metall out of a riuer that falleth very swift from the rocks, and hys, and they take it in shallowe water: the manner is this. They take a great bowle by their discretion as great as one of our targets, and wryap a skinne ouer the hollowe part thereof, leauing one part open to receiue in the mineral: that done, they watch the coming downe of the current, and the change of the couler of the water, and then suddenly chop downe the sayd bowle with the skin, and receiue into the same as much oare as will come in, which is euer as much as their bowle will hold, which presently they cast into a fire, and forthwith it melteth, and doeth peiue in 5. partes, at the first melting, two partes of metall for thre partes of oare. Of this metall the Mangoaks haue so great store, by reposit of all the sauages adioyning, that they beautifie their houses with great plates of the same: and this to be true, I receiued by reposit of all the country, and particularly by pong Skiko, the king of Choanokes sonne my prisoner, who also himselfe had bene prisoner with the Mangoaks, and set downe all the particularities to mee before mentioned: but hee had not bene at Chaunis Temoatan himselfe: for he sayd, it was twentie dayes iourney ouerlande from the Mangoaks, to the saide mineral country, and that they passeth through certaine other territories betwene them and the Mangoaks, before they came to the saide country.

Upon reposit of the premises, which I was very inquisitive in all places where I came to take very particular information of, by all the sauages that dwelt towards those parts, and especially of Menatonon himselfe, who in euery thing did very particularly informe mee, and promised mee guides of his owne men, who shoulde passe ouer with mee, euen to the sayde country of Chaunis Temoatan, (for ouer lande from Choanok to the Mangoaks is but one dayes iourney from sunne rising to sunne setting, whereas by water it is 7. dayes with the soonest.) These things I say, made me verie desirous by all meanes possible to recouer the Mangoaks, & to get some of that their copper for an assay, and therefore I willingly yielded to their resolution: but it fell out very contrarie to all expectation, and likely hood: for after two dayes trauell, and our whole victual spent, lying on shoare all night, we could neuer see man, onely fires wee might perceiue made along the shoare where we were to passe, and by into the countrey until the very last day. In the euening whereof, about thre of the clocke we heard certaine sauages call as we thought, Manteo, who was also at that time with mee in boate, whereof we all being verie glad, hoping of some friendly conference with them, and making him to answer them, they presently began a song, as we thought in token of our welcome to them: but Manteo presently betooke him to his peece, and tolde mee that they ment to fight with vs: which word was not so soone spoken by him, and the lighte hoysman ready to put to shoare, but there lighted a bolle of their arrowes amongst them in the boate, but did no hurt God be thanked to any man. Immediately the other boate lying ready with their shot to shoure the place for our hand weapons to land upon, which was presently done, although the lande was very high and steepe, the Sauges forthwith quitted the boate, and betooke themselves to flight: we landed, and hauing saye and easily followed for a small time after them, who had wooed themselves we knew not where: the sunne drawing then towards the setting, and being then assured that the next day, if wee would pursue them, though wee might happen to meete with them, yet we should bee assured to meete with none of their victuall, which we then had good cause to thinke of, therefore choosing for the companie a convenient grounde in safetie to lodge in for the night, making a strong corps of garde, and putting out good centinels, I determined the next morning before the rising of the sunne to be going backe againe, if possibly wee might recouer the mouth of the riuer into the hoad of the riuer, which at my first motion I found my whole companie ready to assent vnto: for they were now come to their dogs payreage, that they had bespoken for them selves, if that befell them which did, and I before did mistrust we should hardly escape. The ende was, we came the next day by night to the riuers mouth within 4. or 5. miles of the same, hauing rowed in one day downe the current, as much as in 4. dayes we had done against the same: we lodged upon an Islande, where wee had nothing in the world to eate but portage of salfras leaues, the like whereof for a meate was neuer bled before as I thinke. The hoad of the riuer we had to passe, the next day all fresh and falling: that day the winde blew so strongly, and the billow so great, that there was no possibilitie of passage without sinking of our boates. This was upon Easter eue,

*I confesse be-  
gan by the Sa-  
uages.*

*The great cur-  
rent of the Ri-  
uer of Choanoke  
is.*

which was fallen  
wee entered the  
that wee had left  
not better to stay  
The next morning

I haue set downe  
(as true it is) the  
haue persued the  
of God, as a palle  
in request to be in  
it with the most  
manner in the  
make good appar  
worth the set chin

provided also  
to the Northward  
search of, and of  
I should haue had  
by some: the on  
ny convenient fu  
on of P. Harris  
Mexico, or els fe

And touching  
seeing the Saun

Therefore a  
four dayes iour  
lande though th  
up the riuer of M  
scones being set  
and hoad shall  
heart of the map  
and to the like  
formed.

Thus fir. I h  
of the gentlemen  
the Ioye in his r  
bene performed  
had provided for  
now at the last  
which cruelly the  
barks master, sh  
dusly supplied b  
performed the g  
for some his goo

The second

uu



sonings and suc  
The king w

which

which was fasted very true. Upon Easter day in the morning, the wind coming very calme, wee entered the sounde, and by 4. of the clocke we were at Clapannor, where all the Saouages that were had left there were fled, but their waters did peeble vs some fish, as God was pleased not utterly to suffer vs to be lost: for some of our companie of the light boylmen were far spent. The next morning we arrived at our home Roanoake.

I haue set downe this voyage somewhat particularly, to the ende it may appeare vnto you, (as true it is) that there wanted no great good will from the most to the least amongst vs, to haue persued this discouerie of the mine: for that the discouery of a good mine, by the good will of God, is a passage to the South sea, or some way to it, and nothing els can bring this country in request to be inhabited by our nation. And with the discouery of any of the thus above the web, it will be the most sweete, and healthfullest climate, and there withall the most fertile soyle, being manured in the world: and then will Sassafras, and many other rootes & gummes there found make good Marchandise and lauing for shipping, which otherwise of themselves will not be worth the fetching.

It is also, that there be found out a better harborough then yet there is, which must be to the Northward, if any there be, which was mine intention to haue spent this summer in the search of, and of the mine of Chawnis Temoatan: the one I would haue done, if the luckes that I should haue had of S. Francis Drake, by his honorable curtesie, had not bene giuen away by storme: the other if your supply of more men, and some other necessaries had come to vs in so very convenient sufficiency. For this riuer of Moratico promiseth great things, and by the opinion of M. Barrios the heade of it by the description of the country, either riseth from the bay of Mexico, or els from very neere vnto the same, that openeth out into the South sea.

And touching the Minerall, thus both M. Pougham affirme that though it be but copper, seeing the Saouages are able to melt it, it is one of the richest Mineralls in the world.

Wherefore a good harborough founde to the Northward, as before is sayd, and from thence some dayes ouerland, to the riuer of Choanoak soundes being rapied, from whence againe ouerland through the prouince of Choanoak one dayes voyage to the first towne of the Mangoaks by the riuer of Moratico by the way, as also vpon the sayd riuer for the defence of our boates like soundes being set, in this course of proceeding you shall cleare your selfe from all those dangers and head shallowes soundes before mentioned, and gayne within foure dayes trauell into the heart of the mayne 200. myles at the least, and so passe your discouerie into that most notable, and to the likeliest partes of the mayne, with farre greater felicitie then otherwise can be performed.

Thus sir, I haue though simply, yet truly set downe vnto you, what my labour with the rest of the gentlemen, and poore men of our companie, (not without both payne, and perill which the lord in his mercy many wayes deliuered vs from) could peeble vnto you, which might haue bene performed in some more perfection, if the lord had bene pleased that onely that which you had provided for vs had at the first bene left with vs, or that he had not in his eternall prouidence now at the last set some other course in these things, then the wisdome of man could looke into, which truly the carrying away, by a most strange, & vnlooked for storme all our provision, with barks, mastes, sparpners, and sundrie also of mine owne companie, all hauing bene so courteously supplied by the Generall S. Francis Drake, the same hauing bene most sufficient to haue performed the greatest part of the premises, must euer make me to thinke, the hand of God only, for some his good purpose to my selfe yet vnknowne, to haue bene in the matter.

The second part touching the conspiracy of Pemisapan, the discouerie of the same, and at the last, of our request to depart with S. Francis Drake for England.

**W**HENORE a sauage father to Pemisapan being the only friend to our nation that we had amongst them, and about the king, by the 20. of April, 1586. bee alone, had before opposed himselfe in their consultations against all matters proposed against vs, which both the king, and all the rest of them after Grange-moes death, were very willing to haue preferred. And he was not onely by the mere prouidence of God during his life, a meane to saue vs from hurt, as poore soundings and such like, but also to doe vs very great good, and singularly in this.

The king was abused and of himselfe disposed, as a ready meane to haue assuredly brought vs

vs to ruins in the moneth of March, 1586, himselfe also with all his Sauages to haue runne away from vs, and to haue left his ground in the Island vnswore, which if he had done, there had bene no possibilitie in common reason, (but by the immediate hand of God) that we could haue bene preserved from staruing out of hand. For at that time wee had no wearres for sike, neither could our men skill of the making of them, neither had wee one grayne of coyne for seede to put into the ground.

In mine absence on my voyage that I had made against the Chaonists, and Mangoaks, they had raised a byutte among themselves, that I and my company were part slayne, and part starued by the Chaonists, and Mangoaks. One part of this tale was too true, that I and mine were like to be starued, but the other false.

Reuertbelesse vntill my returne, itooke such effect in Pemisapans breast, and in those against vs, that they grew not onely into contempt of vs, but also (contrary to their former reuerend opinion in the way, of the almighty God of heauen, and Iesus Christ, whome wee serue and worship, whome before they would acknowledge and confesse the onely God:) nowe they began to blaspheme, and start to say, that our Lord God was not God, since hee suffered vs to sustaine much hunger, and also to be killed of the Renapoaks, for to they call by that generall name, all the inhabitants of the whole mayne, of what prouince soeuer. Insomuch as olde Ensenore, neither any of his fellows, could for his sake haue no moze credite for vs: and it came so farre that the King was resolued to haue presently gone away as is aforesaid.

But euen in the beginning of this byutte I returned, which when hee saw contrarie to his expectation, and the aduertisement that he had receiued: that not onely my selfe, and my company were al safe, but also by report of his owne 3. sauaiges, which had bene with mee besides Manrico in that voyage, that is to say, Terepano, his sisters husband Eracano, and Cosine, that the Chaonists, and Mangoaks, (whose name, and multitude besides their valour is terrible to all the rest of the prouinces) durst not for the most part of them abide vs, and that those that did abide vs were killed, and that we had taken Menatonon prisoner, and brought his sonne that he best loued to Roanoak with me, it did not a litle allwage all deuils against vs: on the other side, it made Ensenors opinions to be receiued againe with greater respects. For hee had often before tolde them, and then renewed those his former speeches, both to the king and the rest, that wee were the seruants of God, and that wee were not subiect to be destroyed by them: but contrariwise, that they amongst them that sought our destruction, should finde their owne, and not be able to worke ours, and that we being dead men were able to doe them moze hurt, then now we could do bring aliu: an opinion very confidently at this day holden by the wisest amongst them, and of their owne men, as also, that they haue bene in the night, beeing 100. myles from any of vs in the ayre shot at, and drowen by some men of ours, that by sicknesse had dyen among them: and many of them holde opinion, that wee be dead men returned into the world againe, and that we doe not remaine dead but for a certaine time, and that then we returne againe.

All these speeches then againe grew in ful credite with them, the King and all touching vs, when hee saw the small croupe returned againe, and in that sort from those whose whole very names were terrible vnto them: but that which made by the matter on our side for that time, was an accident, yea rather, (as all the rest was) the good prouidence of the Almighty for the sauing of vs, which was this.

Within certaine dayes after my returne from the said iourney, Menatonon sent a messenger to visite his sonne the prisoner with me, and sent me certaine peece for a present, or rather as Pemisapan tolde me, for the ransom of his sonne, and therefore I refused them: but the greatest cause of his sending them, was to signifie vnto me, that hee had commaunded Okisko king of Weopomiok, to yelde himselfe seruant, and homager, to the great Weoanza of England, and after her to Sir Walter Raleigh: to persourne which commandement receiued from Menatonon, the sayd Okisko to yntely with this Menatonons messenger, sent foure and twentieth of his principallest men to Roanoak to Pemisapan, to signifie that they were ready to persourne the same, and so had sent those his men to let me knowe, that from that time forwarde hee, and his successors were to acknowledge her Maiestie their onely Soueraigne, and next vnto her, as is aforesayde.

All which being done, and acknowledged by them all, in the presence of Pemisapan his father, and all his Sauages in counsel then with him, it did for the time, shew itselfe (as it seemed) change him in disposition toward vs: Insomuch as forthwith Ensenore won this resolution of him, that out of hand he should goe about, & withall, to cause his men to fet by wearres forth: with for vs: both which he, at that present went in hand withal & did so labour the expedition of it, that

that in the end of  
to haue sed our  
besides that he g  
maruellous comin  
haue bene the be  
stone soye woul  
which meane spa  
weares should fa  
growing coyne, I  
which we very h  
for within few  
dead, but certaine  
Wanchese most  
were ready im  
But that of sta  
hauing made the  
at Addeimocop  
wanted no soye  
this following.

First that Ok  
great quantitie o  
matter thus to be  
minde which the  
should haue bene  
ple with the Che  
populated to the m  
should interchan  
haue executed mo  
mayne forces of  
ched the rest of th  
broad in the Ill  
was this.

Tarraquine a  
with twentie mo  
same, which they  
would haue befe  
(as it was likel  
hirt without ser  
The same op  
our better for, a  
for them of the fo  
ber together, and  
pared, were a ter  
it in practise, sho  
in the night they  
once being byok  
that I must bee  
ces to liue vpon  
and other places  
ing, which saplet  
saying vs of fill  
my lord Admir  
pany, and also to  
sent master Whit  
shal to liue there  
the companie to

In the meane  
to see his groun

that in the end of April, he had sowed a good quantitie of ground, so much as had bene sufficient, to have fed our whole company (God blessing the growth) and that by the belly for a whole yeere besides that he gave vs a certaine plot of ground for our selues to sow. All which put vs in marvellous comfort, if we could passe from Apill, vntill the beginning of July, (which was to haue bene the beginning of their harvest,) that then a newe supplie out of Englande of els our stowt store would well inough maintayne vs: All our feare was of the two moneths betwixt, to which we very hardly had escaped but onely by the bande of God, as it pleased him to try vs. For within few dayes after, as before is sayde Ensenore our friends dyed, who was no sooner dead, but certaine our great enemies about Pemisapan, as Osoan a Weroance, Tanaquiny and Wanchefe most principally, were in hand again to put their old practises in vre against vs, which were reabily imbraced, & al their former deuises against vs renewed, & new brought in question.

The beginning of their harvest in June.

But that of staruing vs, by their forbearing to sow, was broken by Ensenore in his life, by hauing made the king all at one instant to sowe his grounde not onely in the Islande but also at Addefmocoepia in the mayne, within two leagues ouer against vs. Neuertheless there wanted no store of mischeuous practises among them, and of all they resolued principally of this following.

First that Okisko, king of Weopomiok, with the Mandoages, should bee moued, and with great quantitie of copper intertapped to the number of seuen, or 800 bowes to the enterpryse the matter thus to be ordered. They of Weopomiok should be inuited to a certaine kind of moneths rinde which they do vse to solemnise in their Sauage maner for any great personage dead, and should haue bene for Ensenore. At this instant also should the Mandoaks, who were a great people with the Chelapians, and their friends to the number of 700, of them to be armed at a day appointed to the mayne of Addefmocoepio, and there lying close at the signe of spers, which should interchangeably be made on both sides, whil Pemisapan with his troupe about named should haue executed me, and some of our Weroances (as they called all our principall officers,) the mayne forces of the rest should haue come ouer into the Island where they ment to haue dispatched the rest of the company, whome they did imagine to kinde both dismayed and dispersed a boarde in the Islande seeking of crabs, and fish to liue withall. The manner of their enterpryse was this.

The confederate of Pemisapan.

Tarraquine and Andacon two principall men about Pemisapan, and very lustie fellows with twentie more appointed to them had the charge of my person to see an order taken for the same, which they ment should in this sort haue bene executed. In the dead time of the night they would haue bett my house, and put fire in the reedes, that the same was couered with: meaning (as it was like) that my selfe would haue come running out of a sudden amazed in my shirt without armes, vpon the instant whereof they would haue knocked out my braines.

The same order was giuen to certaine of his fellowes, for W. Herrlots: so for all the rest of our better sort, all our houses at one instant being set on fire as afore is sayde, and that as well for them of the forte, as for vs at the towne. Now to the end that we might be the fewer in number together, and so be the more easilie dealt withall (for in deebe ten of vs with our armes prepared, were a terrour to a hundred of the best sort of them,) they agreed and did immediatly put it in practise, that they should not for any copper, sell vs any victuals whatsoeuer: besides that in the night they should send to haue our weares robbed, and also to cause them to be broken and once being broken neuer to be repaired againe by them. By this meane the King stood assured, that I must bee enforced for lacke of sustenance, there to disband my company into sundry places to liue vpon shell fishes, for so the Sauages themselves vor, going to Onorasco, Crotoan, and other places fishing and hunting, while their grounds be in sowing, and their coyn growing, which layed not his expectation, for the famine grew so extreme among vs, our weares sapling vs of fish, that I was enforced to send captaine Stafford with 20. with him to Crotoan my lord Admirals Island to ferue two turnes in one, that is to say to seepe himselfe, and his company, and also to keepe watch, if any shipping came vpon the coast to waerne vs of the same. I sent matter Widiour with the Wynnelle to Otterasco, and ten with him, with the Wronost Wathal to liue there, and also to waite for shipping: also I sent every weeke 16. or 20. of the rest of the companie to the mayne ouer against vs, to liue of Casada, and oysters.

The sufficient of our men to deale against the Sauages, 10. or 100.

The Sauges liue by fishing, and hunting, and barter.

In the meane while Pemisapan went of purpose to Addefmocoepio for 3. causes, the one, to see his grounds there broken by, and sowed for a second crosse: the other to withdrawe himselfe



selfe from my daily sending to him for supply of victuall for my company, for hee was afraid to denie me any thing, neither durst he in my presence but by colours, and with excuses, which I was content to accept for the time, meaning in the end as I had reason, to giue him the iump once for all: but in the meane whiles, as I had euer done before, I and mine bare all wrongs, and accepters of all excuses.

My purpose was to haue helped my selfe with Menatonon, and the Chaonists, who in truth as they are more valiant people and in greater number then the rest, so are they more faithfull in their promises, and since my late being there, had giuen many tokens of earnest desire they had to sojourn in perfect league with vs, and therefore were greatly offended with Pemisapan and Weopomiok for making him beleue such tales of vs.

The third cause of his going to Adelsmocopecio was to dispatch his messengers to Weopomiok, and to the Mandoags, as aforesaid, al which he did with great impresse of copper in hand, making large promises to them of greater spoyle.

They answered within fewe dayes after, came from Weopomiok, which was deuised into two parts. First for the King Okisko, who demped to be of þ partie for himselfe, or any of his especial followers, and therefore did immediately rettye himselfe with his foer into the mayne: the other was concerning the rest of the sayd yrounce who accepted of it: and in like sort the Mandoags receiued the impresse.

The day of their assembly aforesaid at Roanoak, was appoynted the 10. of July: all which the premises were discovered by Skycco, the king Menaronon his sonne my prisoner, who hauing once attempted to run away, I laid him in the bylboes, the aiming to cut off his head, whome I remitted at Pemisapans request: whereupon he being perswaded that he was our enemy to the death, he did not only seeke him with himselfe, but also made him acquainted with all his practises. On the other side, the yong man finding himself as well vsed at my hand, as I had meane to shew, and that all my companie made much of him, he stally discovered al vnto me, which also afterwards was revealed vnto me by one of Pemisapans own men. þ night before he was slaine.

These mischiefes being al instantly vpon mee, and my companie to be put in execution, stood mee in hand to study how to preuent them, and also to saue all others, which were at that time as aforesaid so farre from me: whereupon I sent to Pemisapan to put suspicion out of his heade, that I ment presently to goe to Crotoan, for that I had heard of the arrival of our flette, (though I in truth had neither heard nor hoped for so good aduerture,) and that I meant to come by him, to boyrw of his men to sith for my company, and to hunt for me at Crotoan, as also to buy some foure dayes provision to serue for my boyage.

He sent mee word that he would himselfe come ouer to Roanoak, but from day to day hee deferred, only to bring the Weopomioks with him, and the Mandoags, whose time appoynted was within 8. dayes after. It was the last of May, 1586. when all his owne sauages began to make their assembly at Roanoak, at his commandement sent aboad vnto them, and I resolved not to stay longer vpon his comming ouer, since he ment to come with so good company, but thought good to go, and visite him with such as I had, which I resolved to do the next day: but that night I went by the way to giue them in the Island a Canuisado, and at the instant to seafe vpon all the Canoas about the Island to keepe him from aduertisements.

But the towne tooke the allarum, before I ment it to them: the occasion was this. I had sent the Master of the light boylmen with a few with him, to gather by all the Canoas in the setting of the sunne, & to take as many as were going from vs to Adelsmocopecio, but to suffer any that came from thence to land: he met with a Canoa, going from the shoare, and ouerthrew the Canoa, and cut off 2. sauages heads: this was not done so secretly but hee was discovered from the shoare, whereupon the cry arose: for in truth they pyiue to their owne villanous purposes against vs, held as good spial vpon vs, both day and night, as we did vpon them.

The allarum giuen, theyooke themselves to their bowes, and we to our armes: some thre or foure of them at the first were slayne with our shot, the rest fled into þ woods: The next morning with the light boylmen, & one Canoa, taking 25. with the Colonel of the Chesepians, and the Seriant maio, I went to Adelsmocopecio, and being landed sent Pemisapan word by one of his owne sauages that met me at the shoare, that I was going to Crotoan, and ment to take him in the way to complaine vnto him of Osocon, who the night past was conueying away my prisoner, whom I had there yettent tied in an handlocke: hereupon the king did abode my comming to him, and sending my selfe amidst 7. or 8. of his principal Weroances, & followers, (not regarding any of the common foie) I gaue the watchword agreed vpon, (which was Chiff our victory) and immediately chose his chiefe men, and himselfe, had by the mercie of God for our deliuerance,

The slaughter,  
and surpris  
of the Pa  
nages.

uerance, that which  
well with a pistoll  
sons friends, as the  
stay as though he  
way shot thwart th  
ung me, one Ruge  
stooke him, and 2  
ligent to haue bene  
Pemisapans head in

This fell out the  
captaine Stafford,  
23. sailes: but when  
upon as good good

The 9. of the said  
day travelled by la  
gentleman that we  
forme any seruite

He brought me  
nourable offer for  
two, and that not  
they also by him to

The 10. day he  
the 11. day I came  
ting and message  
the captaine of his

With such than  
the matter desire  
pared what I wou  
gland a number of  
place of them th

That he would  
would carry me and  
of needfull provis

That it would  
England when it  
any and especially

Also for a suppl  
He hauing rece  
ment (as it was  
such of my officer

him, which were  
he appointed fo  
sent order for  
maunds whatsoe

An d further a  
forme all his foim  
sicient experimen  
with very sufficie  
action, as I sho

England agayne  
sith Werne.

While these ch  
hooy, my sayd m  
and mine owne of  
by the said Gener  
sorne, and contin  
his holy hand oue  
bout my dispatch

uerance, that which they had purposed for vs. The king himselfe being shot thozow by the Colonnell with a pistol lying on the ground for dead, & I looking as watchfull for the sauing of Mans friends, as others were busie that none of the rest should escape, suddenly he started vp, and ran away as though he had not bene touched, in somuch as he ouertan all the companie, being by the way shot thwart the buttocks by mine Irish boy with my Detronell. In the end an Irishman seeing me, one Nugent and the deputie yrouost undertooke him, and following him in the woods ouertooke him, and I in some doubt least we had lost both the king, and my man by our owne negligence haue bene intercepted by the Sauages, we met him returning out of the woods with Pemilapans head in his hand,

Pemilapan name.

This fell out the first of June, 1686, and the 8. of the same came aduertisement to me from captain Steafford, lying at my lord Admirals Island, that he had discovered a great flecte of 23. sailes: but whether they were friends or foes, he could not yett discern, he aduisd me to stand upon as good gard as I could.

The 9. of the said month, he himselfe came vnto me, hauing that night before, and that same day trauelled by land 20. miles, and I must truly rejoyt of him from the first to the last, he was the gentleman that neuer spared labour or perill either by land or water, faire weather or foul, to performe any seruice committed vnto him.

He brought me a letter from the Generall Sir Francis Drake, with a most bountifull and honourable offer for the supplie of our necessitics to the performance of the action, we were entered into, and that not onely of victuals, munition and clothing, but also of barkes, pinnaces and boates, they also by him to be victualled, manned, and furnished to my contentation.

A letter from Sir Francis Drake.

The 10. day hee arrived in the road of our bad harborough, and comming there to an anchor, the 11. day I came to him, whom I found in words most honourably to performe that which in writing and message he had most curteously offered, he hauing aforehand propounded the matter to all the captains of his flecte, and got their liking and consent thereto.

With such thanks vnto him and his captaines for his care both of vs and of our action, not as the matter deserued, but as I could both for my companie and my selfe, I (being aforehand) prepared what I would desire, craued at his hands that it would please him to take with him into England a number of weake, and unfit men for my good action, which I would deliuer to him, and in place of them to supply me of his companie, with oare men, artificers, and others.

1

That he would leaue vs so much shipping and victuall, as about August then next following, would cary me and all my companie into England, whē we had discovered some what that for lacke of needfull provision in time left with vs as yet remained undone.

2

That it would please him withall to leaue some sufficient masters not onely to cary vs into England when time should be, but also to search the coast for some better harborow if there were any and especially to helpe vs to some small boats and oare men.

3

Also for a supplie of calliciers, handweapons, match and lead, cooles, apparell, and such like.

4

He hauing receiued these my requests according to his vsuall commendable manner of gouernement (as it was told me) calling his captaines to counsell, the resolution was that I should send such of my officers of my companie, as I used in such matters, with their notes to goe aboard with him, which were the master of the victuals, the keeper of the store, and the Uicetreasurer, to whom he appointed forthwith for me the Francis, being a very proper barke of 70. tunnes, and tooke present order for bringing of victuall aboard her for 100. men for foure moneths withall my other demaunds whatsoever, to the vetermost.

And further appointed for me two fine pinnaces, and 4. small boats, and that which was to performe all his former liberalitie towards vs, was that he had gotten the full assentes of two of as sufficient experimentered masters as were any in his flecte, by iudgement of them that knewe them, with very sufficient grings to carie with mee, and to employ themselves most earnestly in the action, as I should appoynt them, untill the terme which I promised of our returne into England againe. The names of one of those masters was Abraham Kendall, the other Griffith Perne.

While these things were in hand, the provision afore sayd being brought, and in bringing a boord, my sayd masters being also gone aboard, my sayd barkes hauing accepted of their charge, and mine owne officers with others in like sort of my companie with the, all which was dispatched by the said Generall the 12. of the said month: the 13. of the same there arose such an unwanted storme, and continued foure dayes that had like to haue diuient all on shore, if the Lord had not held his holy hand ouer them, and the generall very prouidently foresene the worst himselfe, then about my dispatch putting himselfe aboard: but in the ende hauing diuient sundry of the flecte to

¶ F. F. ¶

put to sea the Francis also with all my provisions, my two masters, and my companie aboard, shee was scene to be free from the same, and to put cleare to sea.

This voye having continued from the 13. to the 16. of the month, and thus my barke put away as aforesaid, the Generall comming a shoye, made a new proffer to me, which was a shippe of 170. tunnes, called the Barke Bonner, with a sufficient master and guide to carie with mee the time appointed, and victualled sufficiently to carie mee and my companie thro England with all provisions as before: but hee tolde mee that hee would not for any thing undertake to haue her brought into our harbour, and therefore hee was to leaue her in the roade, and to leaue the care of the rest vnto my selfe, and aduised mee to consider with my companie of our case, and to deliuer presently vnto him in writing, what I would require him to doe for vs: which being within his power, hee did assure me as well for his Captaines, as for himselfe should be most willingly performed.

Thereupon calling such Captaines and Gentlemen of my companie as then were at hand, who were all as pituie as my selfe to the Generals offer, their whole request was to mee, that considering the case that we stood in, the weakenesse of our companie, the small number of the same, the carping away of our first appointed barke, with those two especiall masters, with our principall provisions in the same, by the very hand of God as it seemed, stretched out to take vs from thence: considering also, that his second offer, though most honourable of his part, yet of ours not to be taken, inasmuch as there was no possibilitie for her with any safetie to be brought into the harbours: Seeing furthermore our hope for supplie with Sir Richard Grenuill to be undoubtedly promised vs before Easter, not yet come, neither then likely to come this yeere considering the doings in England for Flaunders, as also for America, that therefore I would resolve my selfe, with my companie to goe into England in that Fleet, and accordingly to make request to the Generall in all our names, that he would be pleased to giue vs present passage with him. Which request of ours by my selfe deliuered vnto him, hee most readily assented vnto, and so hee sending immediately his pinnaces vnto our Island for the fetching away of fewe that there were left with our baggage, the weather was so boysterous, and the pinnaces so often on ground, that the most of all wee had, with all our Cartes, Bookes and writings, were by the Seaplers cast our board, the greater number of the Fleet being much grieued with their long and dangerous abode in that miserable roade.

From whence the Generall in the name of the Almighty, waiping his ankers (hauing bestowed vs among his Fleet) for the reliefe of whom hee had in that voye sustained moze perill of wrecke then in all his former most honourable actions against the Spaniards, with praises vnto God for all, set saile the 19. of June, 1586, and arriued in Portesmouth, the 27. of Iulie the same yeere.

### The third voyage made by a Ship, sent in the yeere 1586.

to the reliefe of the Colonie planted in Virginia, at the sole charges of Sir Walter Raleigh.

**I**n the yeere of our Lord, 1586. Sir Walter Raleigh at his owne charge prepared a ship of 100. tunnes, freighted with all maner of things in most plentifull maner for the supplie and relief of his Colonie then remaining in Virginia: but before they set saile from England, it was after Easter, so that our Colonie halfe disappointed of the comming of any supplie, wherefore euery man prepared for himselfe, determining resolutely to spend the residue of their life time in that countrey, and for the better performance of this their determination, they sowed, planted, and set such things as were necessarie for their reliefe in so plentifull a manner, as might haue sufficed them two yeeres without any further labor: thus trusting to their owne harvest they passed the summer till the tenth of June, at which time their cozne which they had sowed was within one fortnight of reaping, but then it happened, that Sir Francis Drake in his prosperous returne from the sacking of Saint Domingo, Cartagena, and Saint Augulines determined in his way homeward to visit his countrymen the English Colonie then remaining in Virginia: so passing along the coastes of Florida, he fell with the partes, where our English Colony inhabited, and hauing espied some of that companie, there he ankered, and went alande where he conferred with them of their state and welfare, and howe thinges had past with them: they answered him that they liued all, but hitherto in some scarcitie, and as yet could be here of no supplie out of England: therefore they requested him that he would leaue with them some two or thre shippes, that if in some

some reasonable time  
bee agreed to: while  
thers making rejoy  
board, a great stop  
shippes, at that inst  
bated to chost thre  
behinde, left all thin  
mie, and no doubt li  
rages committed by

Immediately after  
the shippe about me  
direction, arriued a  
Countrie, and not f

About foureene  
Grindfield Genera  
voyage arriued ther  
any newes of our C  
ling by into diuers  
long left there by  
couer some places o  
them, and finding o  
of the Countrie, wh  
leau some men bet  
the Ile of Roanoake  
partes for England

Not long after he  
led the Townes of a  
ardest with these, a  
homeward, he retur

A briefe and t  
commodities

Writen

Rafe Lan  
of the C  
T



Thus much vpon m  
in this treatise by th  
nesse then learning  
with the credite of  
mine owne part I a  
tie thereof assured  
the same. Farewel

some reasonable time they heard not out of England, they might then return themselves which  
 bee agreed to: whilst some were then writing their letters to send into England, and some o-  
 thers making responses of the accidents of their travels each to other, some on land, some on  
 boord, a great Storme arose, and dyoue the most of their fleet from their anchors to sea, in which  
 shippes, at that instant were the chiefest of the English Colony: the rest on land perceiving this,  
 hasted to those three sayles which were appointed to be left there, and for feare they should be left  
 behinde, left all things so confusedly, as if they had bene chased from thence by a mightie ar-  
 mie, and no doubt so they were, for the hande of God came vpon them for the crueltie, and out-  
 rages committed by some of them against the native inhabitants of that Countrey.

Immediately after the departing of our English Colonie out of this paradise of the worlde, <sup>Item.</sup>  
 the shippe above mentioned went, and set forth at the charges of Sir Walter Raleigh, and his  
 direction, arrived at Hatorask, who after some time spent in seeking our Colony by in the  
 Countrey, and not finding them, returned with all the aforesayd provision into England.

About fourteene or fiftene daies after the departure of the aforesayd shippe, Sir Richard <sup>Sir Richard</sup>  
 Grindfield Generall of Virginia, accompanied with three shippes well appointed for the same <sup>Grindfield's</sup>  
 voyage arrived there, who not finding the aforesayd shipp according to his expectation, nor hearing <sup>voyage.</sup>  
 any newes of our English Colony, there seated, and left by him, Anno 1585. him selfe traual-  
 ling by into diuers places of the Countrey, as well to see if he could here any newes of the Co-  
 lony left there by him the yere before, vnder the charge of Master Lane his deputie, as also to dis-  
 couer some places of the Countrey: but after some time spent therein not hearing any newes of  
 them, and finding the place which they inhabited desolate, yet unwilling to loose the possession  
 of the Countrey, which Englishmen had so long held: after good deliberation he determined to  
 leaue some men behinde to retaine possession of the Countrey: whereupon he landed 15. men in  
 the Ile of Roanoake furnished plentifully with all maner of provision for two yeres, and so de-  
 parted for England.

Not long after he fell with the Isles of Açores, on some of which Ilandes he landed, and spoy-  
 led the Townes of all such things as were worthy cartiage, where also he tooke diuers Sump-  
 ardes with these, and many other employes done by him in this voyage, as well outwarde as  
 homeward, he returned into England,

### A briefe and true report of the new found land of Virginia: of the commodities there found and to be raised, as well merchantable as others:

Written by Thomas Harriot, seruauant to Sir Walter Raleigh, a mem-  
 ber of the Colonie, and there employed in discovering,  
 a full tweluemonth.

#### Rafe Lane one of her Maiesties Equieres and Gouvernour

of the Colonie in Virginia above mentioned for the time there resident,  
 To the gentle Reader, witheth all happinesse in the Lord.



Lbeit (gentle Reader) the credite of the reports in this treatise contained,  
 can little be furthered by the testimonie of one as my selfe, through affecti-  
 on iudged partiall, though without desert: Neuerthelesse, forsomuch as I  
 haue bene requested by some my particular friends, who conceiue more  
 rightly of me, to deliuer freely my knowledge of the same, not onely for  
 the satisfying of them, but also for the true information of any other who  
 soeuer, that comes not with a preiudicate minde to the reading thereof:

Thus much vpon my credite I am to affirme, that things vniuersally are so truly set downe  
 in this treatise by the authour thereof, an Actor in the Colonie and a man no lesse for his ho-  
 nestie then learning commendable, as that I dare boldly auouch, it may very well passe  
 with the credite of truth: euen amongst the most true relations of this age. Which as for  
 mine owne part I am ready any way with my worde to acknowledge, so also (of the certaintie  
 thereof assured by mine owne experience) with this my publique assertion, I doe affirme  
 the same. Farewell in the Lord.

To the Aduenturers, Fauourers, and Welwillers of the enterprife for the inhabiting and planting in Virginia.



Since the first undertaking by Sir Walter Raleigh to deale in the action of discovering of that Countrey which is now called and known by the name of Virginia, many voyages having bene thither made at sundry times to his great charge, as first in the yeere 1584. and afterwards in the yeeres 1585, 1586, and now of late this last yeere of 1587. There have bene diuers and variable reportes, with some flaunderous and shamefull speaches byuited abroad by many that returned from thence. Especially of that discoverie which was made by the Colonie transported by Sir Richard Grenuill in the yeere 1585. being of all the others the most principall and as yet of most effect, the time of their abode in the countrey being a whole yeere, when as in the other voyage before they staid but fixe weekes, and the others after were onely for supplie and transportation, nothing more being discovered then had bene before. Which reportes haue not done a litle wrong to many that otherwise would haue also fauoured and aduentured in the action, to the honour and benefite of our nation, besides the particular profite and credite which would rebound to themselves the dealers therein, as I hope by the sequell of euents to the shame of those that haue annoyed the contrary shall be manifest, if you the aduenturers, fauourers and welwillers doe but either increase in number, or in opinion continue, or hauing bene doubtfull, renew your good liking and furtherance to deale therein according to the truth which thereof already found, and as you shall understand hereafter to be requisite. Touching which truth which through cause of the diuersitie of relations and reportes, many of your opinions could not be firme, nor the mindes of some that are well disposed, be settled in any certaintie.

I haue therefore thought it good beyng one that haue bene in the discoverie, and in dealing with the naturall inhabitants specially employed: and hauing therefore seene and knowne more then the ordinarie, to impart so much unto you of the fruits of our labours, as that you may knowe how inuiciously the enterprife is flaundered, and that in publique maner at this present, chiefly by two respects.

First, that some of you which are yet ignorant or doubtfull of the state thereof, may see that there is sufficient cause why the chief enterpriser with the fauour of her Spasitie, notwithstanding such reportes, hath not onely since continued the action by sending into the countrey againe, and replanting this last yeere a new Colonie, but is also ready according as the time and means will allow, to follow and prosecute the same.

Secondly, that you seeing and knowing the continuance of the action, by the title hereof you may generally knowe and learne what the countrey is, and thereupon consider how your dealing therein if it proceed, may returne you profite and gaine, be it either by inhabiting and planting, or otherwise in furthering thereof.

And least that the substance of my relation should be doubtfull unto you, as of others by reason of their diuersitie, I will first open the cause in a few words wherof they are so different, referring my self to your fauourable constructions, and to be aduinged of as by good consideration you shall find cause.

Of our companie that returned some for their misdeameour and ill dealing in the countrey, haue bene there woorthily punished, who by reason of their bad natures, haue maliciously not onely spoken ill of their Gouernours, but for their sakes flaundered the countrey it selfe. The like also haue those done which were of their consort.

Some being ignorant of the state thereof, notwithstanding since their returne amongst their friends and acquaintance, and also others, especially if they were in companie where they might not be gainesayd, would seeme to knowe so much as no men more, and make no men so great trauellers as themselves. They spooke so much, as it may seeme, vpon their credite and reputation, that hauing bene a twelue moneth in the countrey, it would haue bene a great disgrace vnto them as they thought, if they could not haue sayd much whether it were true or false. Of which some haue spoken of more then euer they sawe, or otherwise knewe to be there: Other some haue not bene ashamed to make absolute denial of that, which all though not by them, yet by others is most certainly and there plentifully knowen, and other some make difficulties of those things they haue no skill of.

The cause of their ignorance was, in that they were of that many, that were neuer out of the Island where wee were seated, or not farre, or at the least wise in few places els, during the time of our abode in the countrey, or of that many, that after golde and siluer was not so found,

found, as it was by the lies, or of that many who needfull or requisite.

Some also were who had seene the world by houses, not at their own or leathers, the countrey.

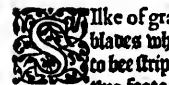
Because my purpose particularities of them by our owne countrey on, I meane not to trouble I haue to make relation.

The treatise wherof these speciall partes, or to be raised, which planters and inhabitors provided, as by way of your selues the profit greatly profite our other haue bene saue to purchase, I call Merchandise.

In the second, I hence both yeeld of it to inhabitants of the countrey.

In the last part I like to remember, and know of, which speciall description of the natur

The



like of grass blades who to be strip two foote selfe same climate as into Europe are made therwise, but that so great use and ending and planting it is. Although notwithstanding naturally and wild, found to be excellent

Worme Silke. It as our ordinarie elsewhere to be in the heed and nourish the others fit for them in fully gathered and by rise as great profit in ans and Spaniards.

Flaxe and Hemp one place together, but euer the lease and it is altogether as good experience of the so it will growe there there is so much grow

found, as it was by them looked for, had little or no care of any other thing but to pamper their bellies, of that many which had little understanding, lesse discretion, and more tongue then was needfull of requisite.

Some also were of a nice binging vp, only in cities or townes, of such as neutr (as I may say) had seene the world before. Because there were not to be found any English cities, nor such faire houses, nor at their owne wish any of their old accustomed daintie food, nor any soft beds of downe or feathers, the countrey was to them miserable, and their reproes thereof according.

Because my purpose was but in brieve to open the cause of the varietie of such speeches, the particularities of them, and of many envious, malicious and slanderous reports and deuises els, by our owne countrey men besides, as trifles that are not woorthie of wise men to bee thought upon, I meane not to trouble you withal, but will passe to the commodities, the substance of that which I haue to make relation of vnto you.

The treatise whereof for your more readie view and easier vnderstanding, I will diuise into three speciall partes. In the first I will make declaration of such commodities there already found or to be raised, which will not onely serue the opbinarie turnes of you which are and shall be the planters and inhabitants, but such an ouerplus sufficiently to be peeled, or by men of skill to be provided, as by way of traffique and exchange with our owne nation of England, will enrich your selues the merchants: those that shall deale with you, the enterprisers in generall, and greatly profite our owne countrey men, to supplie them with most things which heretofore they haue bene faine to provide either of strangers or of our enemies, which commodities for distinction sake, I call Merchantable.

In the second, I will set downe all the commodities which we know the countrey by our experience doeth yeeld of it selfe for vituall and sustenance of mans life, such as is usually sed vpon by the inhabitants of the countrey, as also by vs during the time we were there.

In the last part I will make mention generall of such other commodities besides, as I am able to remember, and as I shall thinke behoouefull for those that shall inhabit, and plant there to know of, which speciall concerne building, as also some other necessarie uses: with a brieve description of the nature and manners of the people of the countrey.

### The first part of Merchantable commodities.

**S**ilke of grasse, or grasse Silke. There is a kinde of grasse in the countrey, vpon the blades whereof there groweth very good Silke in foyme of a thinn glittering skinne to bee stript off. It groweth two foote and an halfe high or better: the blades are about two foote in length, and halfe inche broad. The like groweth in Persia, which is in the selfe same climate as Virginia, of which very many of the Silke workes that come from thence into Europe are made. Whereof if it be planted and ordered as in Persia, it cannot in reason be otherwise, but that there will rise in short time great profite to the dealers therein, seeing there is so great vie and want thereof as well in our countrey as elsewhere. And by the meanes of sowing and planting it in good ground, it will be farre greater, better, and more plentifull then it is. Although notwithstanding there is great store thereof in many places of the countrey growing naturallly and wild, which also by prooue here in England, in making a peece of silke Crogram, we found to be excellent good.

Worme Silke. In many of our iourneys wee found Silke wormes faire and great, as big as our ordinarie Walnuts. Although it hath not bene our happe to haue found such plentie as elsewhere to be in the countrey wee haue heard of, yet seeing that the countrey doeth naturallie breed and nourish them, there is no doubt but if Art be added in planting of Mulberrie trees and others fit for them in commodious places, for their feeding and nourishing, and some of them carefully gathered and husbanded in that sort, as by men of skill is knowen to be necessarie: there will rise as great profit in time to the Virginians, as thereof doeth now to the Persians, Turkes, Italians and Spaniards.

Flaxe and Hemp. The truth is, that of Hemp and Flaxe there is no great store in any one place together, by reason it is not planted but as the soyle doeth yeeld of it selfe: and how so euer the lease and Stamme of flaxe doe differ from ours, the flaxe by iudgement of men of skill is altogether as good as ours. And if not, as further prooue should finde otherwise, we haue the experience of the soyle, as that there cannot bee shewed any reason to the contrary, but that it will growe there excellent well, and by planting will bee yeelded plentifully, seeing there is so much ground whereof some may well be applied to such purposes. What benefice



that yeeld also white graines of metall, which is to be deemed silver. For confirmation whereof, at the time of our first arrivall in the countrey, I saw with some others with me, two small pieces of silver grossly beaten, about the weight of of a testrone, hanging in the eares of a Wiroans or Chiefe Lord that dwelt about fourescore miles from vs: of whom through enquiry, by the number of bapes & the way, I learned that it had come to his hands from the same place or neere, where I after understood the copper was made, and the white graines of metall found. The aforesaid copper we also found by triall to holde silver.

**Pearle:** Sometimes in feeding on muscles we found some pearle: but it was our happy to meet with ragges; of a yvde colour: not having yet discovered those places where we heard of better and more plenty. One of our company, a man of skill in such matters, had gathered together from among the Savage people about five thousand: of which number he chose so many as made a fayre chaine, which for theyr likenesse and unifomyty in roundnesse, orientnesse, and yvdenesse of many excellent colours, with equallite in great alle, were very fayre and rare: and had therefore bene presented to her Majesty, had we not by casualty and through extremity of a storme lost them, with many things els in comming away from the countrey.

Sweet gummies of divers kindes, and many other Apothecary drugges, of which we will make speciall mention, when we shall receive it from such men of skill in that kinde, that in taking reasonable paines shall discoure them more particularly then we have done, and then now I can make relation of, for want of the examples I had provided and gathered, and are now lost, with other things by casualty before mentioned.

**Dyes of divers kindes:** There is Shoemake well knowne, and used in England for blacke: the seed of an herbe called Wasebur, little small roots called Chappacor, and the bark of the tree called by the inhabitants Tangomockonomindge: which Dyes are for divers sorts of red: theyr goodnesse for our English clothes remaine yet to be pproved. The inhabitants use them only for the dying of hayre, and colouring of theyr faces, and mantles made of Deere skimes: and also for the dying of rushes to make artificiall woorks withall in theyr mats and baskets: having no other thing besides that they account of, apt to use them for. If they will not pprove merchantable, there is no doubt but the planters there shall finde apt uses for them, as also for other colours which we know to be there.

**Wood:** a thing of so great bent and uses amongst English Diers, which can not be yeilded sufficiently in our owne countrey for spare of ground, may be planted in Virginia, there being ground enough. The growth thereof neede not to be doubted, when as in the Islands of the Azores it groweth plentifully, which is in the same climate. So likewise of Madder.

We carped thither Sugar canes to plant, which being not so well preferred as was requisite, and besides the time of the yeere being past for theyr setting when we arrived, we could not make that proove of them as we desired. Notwithstanding, seeing that they grow in the same climate, in the South part of Spaine, and in Barbary, our hope in reason may yet continue. So likewise for Oranges and Limmons: there may be planted also Quinsles. Whereby may grow in reasonable time if the action be diligently prosecuted, no small commodities in Sugers, Suckets, and Marmelades.

Many other commodities by planting may there also be raised, which I leave to your discreet and gentle considerations: and many also may be there, which yet we have not discovered. Two more commodities of great value, one of certainty, and the other in hope, not to be planted, but there to be raised, and in short time to be provided and prepared, I might have specified. So likewise of those commodities already set downe, I might have said more: as of the particular places where they are found, and best to be planted and prepared: by what meanes, and in what reasonable space of time they might be raised to profit, and in what proportion: but because others then we ourselves might be therewithall acquainted, not to the good of the action, I have willingly omitted them: knowing that to those that are well disposed, I have uttered according to my promise and purpose, for this part sufficient.

The



The second part of such commodities as Virginia is known to  
*yeeld, for victuall and sustenance of mans life, vsually fed vpon by*  
 the naturall inhabitants : as also by vs, during the time of  
 our aboad. And first of such as are sowed  
 and husbanded.



**P**Agatowr, a kinde of graine so called by the inhabitants : the same in the West Indies is called Mayze : English men call it Guinney wheat, or Turkie wheat, according to the names of the countries from whence the like hath been brought. The graine is about the bignesse of our ordinary English pease, and not much different in forme and shape : but of diuers colours : some white, some red, some yellow, and some blew. All of them yeeld a very white and sweete floure : being vsed according to his kinde, it maketh a very good bread. We made of the same in the countrey some maile, whereof was buyed as good ale as was to be desired. So likewise by the helpe of hops, thereof may be made as good beere. It is a graine of marvellous great increase : of a thousand, sicken hundred, and some two thousand foide. There are three sorts, of which two are ripe in elcuen and twelue weeks at the most, sometimes in tenne, after the time they are set, and are then of height in stalk about sixe or seuen foot. The other sort is ripe in fouretee, and is about tenne foot high, of the stalks, some beare foure heads, some thre, some one, and two : euery head containing siue, siue, or seuen hundred grains, within a few moze or lesse. Of these graines, besides bread, the inhabitants make victuall, either by parching them, or seething them whole vntill they be broken : or boiling the floure with water into a paype.

Okindgier, called by vs Beanes, because in greatnesse and partly in shape they are like to the beanes in England, saying that they are flatter, of moze diuers colours, and some pide. The lease also of the stamme is much different. In taste they are altogether as good as our English pease.

Wickonzowr, called by vs Peaze, in respect of the beanes for distinction sake, because they are much lesse, although in forme they little differ: but in goodnesse of taste much like, and are farre better then our English pease. Both the beanes and peaze are ripe in tenne weeks after they are set. They make them victuall either by boiling them all to peeces into a broth, or boiling them whole vntill they be soft, and begin to breake, as is vsed in England, either by themselves, or mixtly together : sometime they mingle of the wheat with them : sometime also, being to whole sodden, they buye or punne them in a moyter, and thereof make loaves or lumps of doctish bread, which they vse to eat for variety.

Macoquer, according to theyr seuerall formes, called by vs Pompions, Mellions, and Gourds, because they are of the like formes as those kinbes in England. In Virginia such of seuerall formes are of one taste, and very good, and do also spring from one seed. There are of two sorts : one is ripe in the space of a moneth, and the other in two moneths.

There is an herbe which in Dutch is called Melden. Some of those that I describe it vnto, take it to be a kinde of Oyage : it groweth about foure or siue foot high : of the seed thereof they make a thicke broth, and portage of a very good taste : of the stalks by burning into ashes they make a kinde of salt earth, wherewithall many vse sometimes to season theyr broths : other salt they know not. We our selues vse the leaues also for potherbs.

There is also another great herbe, in forme of a Parigolde, about sixe foot in height, the head with the floure is a stamme in byrdth. Some take it to be *Planta Solis* : of the seeds hereof they make both a kinde of bread and broth.

All the aforesaid commodities for victuall are set or sowed, sometimes in grounds apart and seuerally by themselves, but by the most part together in one ground mixtly : the manner thereof, with the dressing and preparing of the ground, because I will note vnto you the fertilitye of the soile, I thinke good by this to describe.

The ground they neuer fatten with mucke, doong, or any other thing, neither plow nor digge it as we in England, but onely prepare it in sort as followeth. A fewe dayes before they sowe or set, the men with wooden instruments, made almost in forme of mattocks or hoes with long handles : the women with those peckers or parers, because they vse them sitting, of a foot long and about siue inches in byrdth, doe ouerly breake the vpper part of the ground to rayse by the weedes, grass, and othe stubbes of coyne stalks with theyr roots. The which after a day or twoes lying in the Sunne, being scrapt by into many small heaps, to save them labour for carrying them away, they burne into ashes. (And whereas some may thinke that they vse the ashes for to  
 better

better the ground : If they do not, excepte the ashes lie, which ground that they vse

When they set the ner of the plot, with couch not one another throughout the whole gard, that they be in the holes also in euery hole : where as diuers places also are

The ground being sowed with some peaches beanes and peaze, *Planta solis* : when thought to be much

I thought also know how specially solde waies in apply still in respect that I have made prooffe of come before) with large proportion for will peels, and of fine and twentie might be raised out and may at any time that they also set with standing they

For English corn you shall have farth and peaze, we haue sort of ground, and because it was much thus much haue course, and increas

There is an herbe In the West Indies it groweth, and is dried and brought in pipes made of clay, other grosse humors thereof not onely because of too long serued in health, and times afflicted.

This Vppow marvellously delige of the powder there cast some by into some therein and in but all done with of hands, and flares and noises.

We our selues our returne, and which the relation

better the growd: I say that then they would either disperse the ashes abroad, which we observed they do not, excepte the heaps be too great: or els would take speciall care to let theyr coine where the ashes lie, which also we finde they are carelesse of.) And this is all the husbanding of theyr ground that they vse.

Then theyr setting or sowing is after this maner, First for theyr coine, beginning in one corner of the plot, with a pecker they make a hole, wherein they put foure graines, with that care they couch not one another (about an inch asunder) and couer them with the mould againe: and so throughout the whole plot, making such holes, and vsing them after such maner: but with this regard, that they be made in ranks, every ranke differing from other halfe a fathome or a yard, and the holes also in every ranke, as much. By this meanes there is a yard spare ground betweene every hole: where according to discretion heere and there, they set as many beanes and peaze: in diuers places also among the seeds of Macocquer, Melden, and Planta folis.

The ground being thus set according to the rate, by vs experimented, an English acre containing fortye pearches in length, and foure in breadth, doth there yeeld in croppe of some of coine, beanes and peaze, at the least two hundredth London bushels: besides the Macocquer, Melden, and Planta folis: when as in England fortye bushels of our wheat yeelded out of such an acre, is thought to be much.

I thought also good to note this vnto you, that you which shall inhabite, and plant there, may know to how specially that countrey coine is there to be preferred before ours: Besides, the manifold wayes in applying it to victuall, the increase is so much, that small labour and paines is necessary in respect that must be vsed for ours. For this I can assure you, that according to the rate we haue made proofe of, one man may prepare and husband so much ground (having once borne coine before) with lesse then foure and twentie houres labour, as shall yeeld him victuall in a large proportion for a twelue moneth, if he haue nothing else but that which the same ground will yeeld, and of that kinde onely which I haue before spoken of: the sayd ground being also but of five and twentie yards square. And if need require, but that there is ground enough, there might be raised out of one and the selfsame ground two harvests or ofomes: for they sow or set, and may at any time when they thinke good, from the midd of Spary vntill the end of June: so that they also see when they haue eaten of theyr first croppe. In some places of the countrey notwithstanding they haue two harvests, as we haue heard, out of one and the same ground.

For English coine neuertheless, whether to vse or not to vse it, you that inhabite may do as you shall haue farther cause to thinke best. Of the growth you need not to doubt: for barley, oats, and peaze, we haue seene proofe of, not being purposely sown but fallen casually in the woost sort of ground, and yet to be as saye as any we haue euer seene here in England. But of wheat, because it was musty, and had taken salt water, we could make no triall: and of rie we had none. Thus much haue I digressed, and I hope not vndercessarily: now will I returne againe to my soueraine, and increas of that which yet remaineth appertaining to this chapter.

There is an herbe which is sowed apart by it selfe, and is called by the inhabitants Vppowoc: In the West Indies it hath diuers names, according to the seuerall places and countreys where it groweth, and is vsed: the Spanyards generally call it Tobacco. The leaues thereof being dried and brought into powder: they vse to take the fume or smoke thereof, by sucking it through pipes made of clay, in to theyr stomache and head: from whence it purgeth superfluous steame and other grosse humors, and openeth all the pores and passages of the body: by which meanes the vse thereof not onely preterueth the body from obstructions, but also (if any be, so that they haue not bene of too long continuance) in short time breaketh them: whereby theyr bodies are notably preserved in health, and know not many grievous diseases, wherewithall we in England are oftentimes afflicted.

This Vppowoc is of so precious estimation amongst them, that they thinke theyr gods are marvellously delighted therewith: whereupon sometime they make halloved fires, and cast some of the powder therein for a sacrifice: being in a stoyne vpon the waters, to pacifie theyr gods, they cast some by into the ayre and into the water: so a weare for fish being netwip set by, they cast some therein and into the ayre: also after an escape of danger, they cast some into the ayre likewise: but all done with strange gestures, stamping, sometime dancing, clapping of hands, holding vp of hands, and starting vp into the heauens, uttering therewithall, and chattering strange words and noises.

We our selves during the time we were there, vsed to sucke it after theyr maner, as also since our returne, and haue found many rare and wonderfull experiments of the vertues thereof: of which the relation would require a volume by it selfe: the vse of it by so many of late, men and women

women of great calling as else, and some learned Physicians also, is sufficient witness.

And these are all the commodities for sustenance of life that I know and can remember they use to husband: all else that follow are found growing naturally or wilde.

### Of Roots.

**O**penauk are a kinde of roots of round forme, some of the bignesse of walnuts, some farre greater, which are found in moist and marish grounds growing many together one by another in ropes, or as though they were fastened with a string: Being boiled or sodden they are very good meat.

Okeepenauk are also of round shape, found in drye grounds: some are of the bignesse of a mans head. They are to be eaten as they are taken out of the ground, for by reason of their smell they will neither rotte nor lesche. Their taste is not so good as of the former roots, notwithstanding for want of bread, and sometimes for variety the inhabitants use to eat them with fish or flesh, and in my iudgement they do as well as the household bread made of rie heere in England.

Kailnucpenauk a white kinde of roots about the bignesse of henne egges, and neere of that forme: their taste was not so good to our seeming as of the other, and therefore they place and manner of growing, not so much cared for by vs: the inhabitants notwithstanding used to boyle and eat many.

Tinaw a kinde of root much like unto that which in England is called the China root brought from the East Indies. And we know not any thing to the contrary but that it may be of the same kinde. These roots grow many together in great clusters, and do bying sooth a hieer skake, but the leafe in shape farre unlike: which being supported by the trees it groweth neere unto, will reach or climbe to the top of the highest. From these roots while they be new or fresh, being chope into small pieces, and stamp, is strained with water a iuice that maketh bread, and also being boyled, a very good spoonemeat in manner of a gelly, and is much better in case if it be tempered with oile. This Tinaw is not of that sort, which by some was caused to be brought into England for the China root, for it was discovered since, & is in use as is aforesaid: but that which was brought hither is not yet knownen, neither by vs nor by the inhabitants to serue for any use or purpose, although the roots in shape are very like.

Coculshaw, some of our company tooke to be that kinde of root which the Spaniards in the West Indies call Cassau, whereupon also many called it by that name: it groweth in very muddy pooles, and moist grounds. Being dyed according to the countrey manner, it maketh a good bread, and also a good spoonemeat, and is used very much by the inhabitants: the iuice of this root is poison, and therefore heed must be taken before any thing be made there of: either the roots must be first sliced and dyed in the Sunne, or by the fire, and then being punned into floure, will make good bread: or els while they are greene they are to be pared, cut into pieces, and stamp: loanes of the same to be laid neere or ouer the fire untill it be softe, and then being well punned againe, bread, or spoonemeat very good in taste and wholesome may be made thereof.

Habafcon is a root of hoce taste, almost of the forme and bignesse of a parsnip, of it selfe it is no victuall, but onely a helpe being boyled together with other meats.

There are also Leeks, differing little from ours in England, that grow in many places of the countrey, of which, when we came in places where they grow, we gathered and eat many, but the naturall inhabitants neuer.

### Of Fruites.

**C**hestnuts, there are in diuers places great store: some they use to eat rawe, some they stamp and boyle to make spoonemeat, and with some being sodden, they make such a manner of down bread as they use of their beanes before mentioned.

Walnuts: there are two kindes of walnuts, and of them infinite store: in many places where are very great woods for many miles together, the third part of trees are walnut trees. The one kinde is of the same taste and forme, or little differing from ours of England, but that they are harder and thicker shelled: the other is greater, and hath a very ragged and hard shell: but the kernell great, very oyle and sweet. Besides their eating of them after our ordinarie manner, they beate them with stones, and punne them in mortars with water, to make a milke which they use to put into some sorts of their spoonemeat: also among their sod wheat, peaze, beanes and pomptions which maketh them haue a farre more pleasant taste.

Medlars,

Medlars a kinde of not good untill they be the same bignesse: or ries, and very sweet:

Muraquefunnaul but that they are of a leaves are very thick where they haue steeer: describe his plant right or a bassard of wilde of the fruit, but finally obstruct.

Grapes there are Straberries there are Mulberies, Apples Sacquennummen grow together in clu of nine houres acco ten they will make a

There is a kinde of led is good meat.

In our trauels in were lesse, which are

### Of a

**T**here is a kinde of trees: the of these kinde of acory after the manner as will till they be soft, and also pounded to make for the inhabitants

Another sort is chestnuts. They lo

The first sort is eating dried after the manner, or sometime they fish or flesh.

**D**eer, in some bignesse as ours is better food, they snags of their home

Conies, Those hare: in some part of the furre or flue of

Saquenuckot are good meat. We had taken and brought

Squirrels which are

Bears which are

ants in time of winter monty in this sort.

haue spall of a man next tree they can, fi

Medlars a kinde of very good fruit, so called by vs chiefly for these respects: first in that they are not good untill they be rotten: then in that they open at the head as our medlars, and are about the same bignesse: otherwile in taste and colour they are farre different: for they are as red as cherries, and very sweet: but whereas the cherry is sharpe sweet, they are luscious sweet.

Muraquesunnauk, a kinde of pleasant fruit almost of the shape and bignesse of English peares, but that they are of a perfect red colour as well within as without. They grow on a plant whose leaves are very thicke, & full of prickles as sharpe as needles. Some that have bin in the Indies, where they haue seene that kinde of red die of great price, which is called Cochinele, to grow, do describe his plant right like vnto this of Muraquesunnauk, but whether it be the true Cochenile or a bastard or wilde kinde, it can not yet be certified: seeing that also as I heard, Cochenile is not of the fruit, but found on the leaues of the plant: which leaues for such matter we haue not so specially obserued.

Grapes there are of two sorts, which I mentioned in the merchantable commodities.

Straberries there are as good and as great as those which we haue in our English gardens.

Mulberries, Applecrabs, Hurts or Hurtleberries, such as we haue in England.

Sacquemener a kinde of berries almost like vnto capers, but somewhat greater, which grow together in clusters vpon a plant of herbe that is found in shallow waters: being boiled eight or nine houres according to theyr kinde are very good meat and wholesome, otherwile if they be eaten they will make a man for the time franticke or extremely sicke.

There is a kinde of Reed which beareth a seed almost like vnto our rie or wheat, and being boiled is good meat.

In our trauels in some places we found Wilde peaze like vnto ours in England, but that they were lesse, which are also good meat.

### Of a kinde of fruit or berry in forme of Acornes.

There is a kinde of berrie or acorne, of which there are five sorts that grow on severall kindes of trees: the one is called Sagatemener, the second Osamener, the third Pummuckoner. These kinde of acornes they vse to drie vpon hurdles made of reeds, with fire vnderneath, almost after the manner as we drye malt in England. When they are to be vsed, they first water them vntill they be soft, and then being so, they make a good victuall, either to eat so simply, or els being also yponned to make loaves or lumps of bread. These be also the three kindes, of which, I said before the inhabitants vse to make sweet oile.

Another sort is called Sapummener, which being boiled or parched, doth eat and taste like vnto chestnuts. They sometime also make bread of this sort.

The fift sort is called Mangummenauk, and is the acorne of theyr kinde of Oake, the which being dried after the manner of the first sorts, and afterward watered, they boile them, and theyr seruants, or sometime the chiefe themselves, either for variety or for want of bread, do eat them with theyr fish or flesh.

### Of Beasts.

Here, in some places there are great stoe: neere vnto the sea coast they are of the ordinary bignesse as ours in England, and some lesse: but further by into the countrey, where there is better food, they are greater: they differ from ours onely in this, their talle are longer, and the snags of theyr homes looke backward.

Conies, Those that we haue seene, and all that we can heare of are of a grey colour like vnto hares: in some places there are such plenty that all the people of some townes make them mantles of the furre or flue of the skines of those they vsually eate.

Saquenuckot and Maquowoc, two kindes of small beasts, greater then conies, which are very good meat. We neuer tooke any of them our selues, but sometime eat of such as the inhabitants had taken and brought vnto vs.

Squirels which are of a grey colour, we haue taken and eaten.

Bears which are all of blacke colour. The bears of this countrey are good meat: the inhabitants in time of winter do vse to eate and eat many, so also sometime do we. They are taken commonly in this sort. In some Islands or places where they are, being hunted for, as soon as the y haue the fall of a man, they presently runne away, and then being chased, they clime and get by the next tree they can, from whence with arrows they are shot downe stark dead, or with those weapons that

that they may after easily be killed: we sometime shot them downe with our calliers.

I haue the names of eight and twenty severall sorts of beastes, which I haue heard of to be here and there dispersed in the countrey, especially in the maine: of which there are onely twelue kindes that we haue yet discovered, and of those that be good meat we know only them before mentioned, The inhabitants sometime kill the Lyon, & eat him: and we sometime as they came to our hands of they? Woolues of Wooluish dogges, which I haue not set downe for good meat, least that some would vnderstand my judgement therein to be moze simple then needeth, although I could allege the difference in taste of those kindes from ours, which by some of our company haue bene experienced in both.

### Of Foule.

**T**urkie cocks and Turkie hennes: Stockdoves: Partridges: Cranes: Hernes: and in winter great store of Swannes and Geefe. Of all sorts of foule I haue the names in the countrey language, of fourescore and fixe, of which number, besides those that be named, we haue taken, eaten, and haue the pictures as they were there taken, with the names of the inhabitants of severall strange sorts of water foule eight, and severall kindes more of land foule, although we haue seene and eaten of many more, which for want of leisure there for the purpose, could not be pictured: and after we are better furnished and stored vpon further discovery, with they? strange beastes, fish, trees, plants, and herbs, they shall be also published.

There are also Parrots, Faulcons, and Marlin hauks, which although with vs they be not used for meat, yet for other causes I thought good to mention.

### Of Fish.

**F**oure moneths of the yeere, February, March, April and May, there are plenty of Sturgeons: And also in the same moneths of Herrings, some of the ordinary bignesse as ours in England, but the most part farre greater, of eightheene, twentieth inches, and some two foot in length and better: both these kindes of fish in those moneths are most plentiful, and in best season, which we found to be most delicate and pleasant meat.

There are also Trouts: Porpoises: Rayes: Oldwies: Mulletts: Plaice: & very many other sorts of excellent good fish, which we haue taken and eaten, whose names I know not but in the countrey language: we haue of twelue sorts more the pictures, as they were taken in the countrey, with they? names.

The inhabitants use to take them two manner of wayes, the one is by a kinde of weare made of reeds, which in that countrey are very strong. The other way, which is more strange, is with poles made sharpe at one end, by shooting them into the fish after the manner as Irish men call darts, either as they are rowing in they? boats, or els as they are wading in the shallowes for the purpose.

There are also in many places plenty of these kindes which follow:

Sea crabbes, such as we haue in England.

Oysters, some very great, and some small, some round, and some of a long shape: they are found both in salt water and brackish, and those that we had out of salt water are far better then the other as in our countrey.

Also Mufcles: Scalops: Periwinkles: and Creuifes.

Seekanauk, a kinde of crusty shell fish, which is good meat, about a foot in length, hauing a crustie taile, many legges like a crab, and her eyes in her backe. They are found in shallowes of waters, and sometime on the shoare.

There are many Tortoyes both of land and sea kinde, they? backs and bellies are shelled very thicke, they? head, feet, and taile, which are in appearance, seeme ugly, as though they were members of a serpent or venemous beastes: but notwithstanding they are very good meat, as also they? egges. Some haue bene found of a yard in length and better.

And thus haue I made relation of all sorts of victuall that we fed vpon for the time we were in Virginia, as also the inhabitants themselves, as farre forth as I know and can remember, that are especially worthy to be remembred.

The

The third a  
for those



also great store, and

Walnut trees, as  
four and five sashom

Fire trees six foot

Rakiock, a kinde  
neere unto vs doe co

helpe of fire, hatchets  
of one tree that they

great, tall, streight,  
for masts of ships.

Cedar, a sweete kinde  
things els, as I haue

ces where I haue no  
cellent uses, is also a

Maple, and also V  
Holly a necessary

Willowes good for  
though the inhabitan

for that turne very v  
Beech and Ashe,

things els,  
Elme,

Sassafras trees,  
A scope a kinde of

to that tree which M  
There are many

of which I am not in  
lar relation: seeing

of the rest, but that th  
Now for stone, by

are no kinde of stone  
haue bene brought

uers hard raggie sto  
inhabitants make

by into the Countre  
ther haue they use of

household haue one o  
for hatchets, they h

foote deepe: and the  
both may be in place

In the meane time  
the want of you wh

The third and last part of such other things as are behouefull  
for those which shall plant and inhabite to know of, with a de-  
scription of the nature and maners of the people of  
the Country.

Of commodities for building and other  
necessary vses,



Those other things which I am moze to make reherfall of, are such as concerne  
building, and other mechanicall necessarie vses, as diuers sorts of trees for boule  
and shippe timber, and other vses els: Also lime, stone, and bricke, least that be-  
ing not mentioned sonic might haue bene doubted of, or by some that are mali-  
cious reported the contrary.

Oaks, there are as faire, straight, tall, and as good timber as any can be, and  
also great store, and in some places very great.

Walnut trees, as I haue said befoze very many, some haue bene seene excellent faire timber of  
four and sixe fathome, and aboue fourestoie foote straight without bough.

Firre trees fit for masts of shipp, some very tall and great.

Rakioc, a kinde of trees so called that are swete wood, of which the inhabitants that were  
neere vnto vs doe commonly make their boates or Canoes of the forme of trowes, ouerly with the  
helpe of fire, hatchets of stones, and shels: we haue knowen some so great being made in that sort  
of one tree that they haue carried well 20. men at once, besides much baggage: the timber being  
great, tall, straight, soft, light, and yet tough ynough I thinke (besides other vses) to be fit also  
for masts of shipp.

Cedar, a swete wood good for seelings, chests, boxes, bedsteads, lutes, virginals, and many  
things els, as I haue also said befoze. Some of our companie which haue wandered in some pla-  
ces where I haue not bene, haue made certaine affirmation of Cyprus which for such and other ex-  
cellent vses, is also a wood of pyce and no small estimation.

Maple, and also Wich-hazle, whereof the inhabitants vse to make their bowes.

Holly a necessary thing for the making of birdlime.

Willowes good for the making of weares and whyles to take fishe after the English maner, af-  
though the inhabitants vse onely reedes, which because they are so strong as also flexible, do serue  
for that turne very well and sufficiently.

Becch and Alhe, good for caske hoops: and if neede require, plow wozke, as also for many  
things els.

Elme,

Sassafras trees.

Ascopo a kinde of tree very like vnto Latwel, the barke is hot in taste and spice, it is very like  
to that tree which Monardus describeth to be Cassia Ligna of the West Indies.

There are many other strange trees whose names I know not but in þ Virginia language,  
of which I am not now able, neither is it so conuenient for the present to trouble you with particu-  
lar relation: seeing that for timber and other necessary vses I haue named sufficient. And of many  
of the rest, but that they may be applied to good vse, I knowe no cause to doubt.

Now for stone, bricke and lime, thus it is. Neere vnto the Sea coast where wee dwell, there  
are no kinde of stones to be found (except a fewe small pebbles about foure miles off) but such as  
haue bene brought from further out of the maine. In some of our voyages wee haue seene di-  
uers hard raggie stones, great pebbles, and a kinde of grey stone like vnto marble, of which the  
inhabitants make their hatchets to cleue wood. vpon inquirie wee heard that a little further  
by into the Countrey were of all sortes very many, although of qualities they are ignorant, nei-  
ther haue they vse of any stone whereupon they should haue occasion to seeke any. For if euery  
household haue one or two to cracke nuts, grinde shels, whet copper, and sometimes other stones  
for hatchets, they haue ynough: neither vse they any digging, but onely for graues about three  
foote deepe: and therefore no maruile that they knowe neither quarries, nor lime stones, which  
both may be in places neerer then they wot of.

In the meane time until there be discoverie of sufficient stone in some place or other conuenient,  
the want of you which are & shall be the planters therein may be as well supplied by bricke: for the  
making

making whereof in diuers places of the Countrey there is clay both excellent good, and plenty, and also by lime made of oyster shells, and of others burnt, after the manner as they be in the Isles of Tence and Shepy, and also in diuers other places of England: Which kinde of lime is well known to be as good as any other. And of oyster shells there is plenty ynough: for besides diuers other particular places where are abundance, there is one shallowe sounde along the coast, where for the space of many miles together in length, & two or three miles in breadth, the ground is nothing els, being but halfe a foote or a foote vnder water for the most part.

Thus much can I say further more of stones, that about 120. miles from our fort neere the water in the side of a hill, was found by a Gentleman of our company, a great beine of hard ragge stones, which I thought good to remember vnto you.

### Of the nature and maners of the people.



Next I speake a worde of two of the naturall inhabitants, their natures and maners, leauing large discourse thereof vntill time more conuenient hereafter: nowe onely so farre forth, as that you may knowe, howe that they in respect of troubling our inhabiting & planting, are not to be feared, but that they shall haue cause both to feare and loue vs, that shall inhabite with them.

They are a people clothed with loose mantles made of beere skinned, and apions of the same round about their middles, all els naked, of such a difference of statures onely as we in England, hauing no edge tooles or weapons of yron or Steele to offend vs withal, neither knowe they howe to make any: those weapons that they haue, are onely bowes made of Birch hazle, and arrowes of reedes, flat edged: theons also of wood about a yard long, neither haue they any thing to defend themselves but targets made of barks, and some armoura made of sticks wickered together with chead.

Their towines are but small, and neere the sea coast but fetue, some contayning but tenne or twelue houses: some 20. the greatest that we haue seene, hath bene but of 30. houses: if they be walled, it is onely done with barkes of trees made fast to stakes, or els with poles onely fixed by right, and close one by another.

Their houses are made of small poles, made fast at the tops in rounde forme after the maner as is vied in many arbores in our gardens of England, in most towines covered with barkes, and in some with artificiall matts made of long rushes, from the tops of the houses downe to the ground. The length of them is commonly double to the breadth, in some places they are but 12. and 16. yards long, and in other some we haue seene of foure and twentie.

In some places of the Countrey, one onely towine belongeth to the government of a Wiroans or chiefe Loyde, in other some two or thye, in some five, eight, and more, the greatest Wiroans that yet we had dealing with, had but eigheteene towines in his government, & able to make not about seuen or eight hundred fighting men at the most. The language of euery government is different from any other, and the further they are distant, the greater is the difference.

Their maner of warres amongst themselves, is either by sudden surprizing one another most commonly about the dawning of the day, or moone light, or els by ambushes, or some subtille deuises. Set battels are very rare, except it fall out where there are many trees, where either part may haue some hope of defence, after the deliuerie of euery arrowe, in leaping behinde some other.

If there fall out any warres betweene vs and them, what their fight is likely to be, wee hauing abouantages against them so many maner of wayes, as by our discipline, our strange weapons and deuises els, especially ordnance great and smal, it may easily be imagined, by the experience we haue had in some places, the turning vp of their heeles against vs in running away was their best defence.

In respect of vs they are a people poore, and for want of skill and iudgement in the knowledge and vse of oile things, doe esteeme our trifles before things of greater value: Notwithstanding, in their proper maner considering the want of such meanes as we haue, they seeme very ingenious. For although they haue no such tooles, nor any such craftes, Sciences and artes as wee, yet in those things they doe, they be we excellente of wit. And by howe much they vpon due consideration shall finde our maner of knowledges and craftes, to exceede theirs in perfection, and speede for doing or execution, by so much the more is it probable that they shoulde desire our friendship and loue, and haue the greater respect for pleasing and obeying vs. Whereby may

be hoped, if meanes etc. and the inhabitan  
Some religion  
is, there is hope it n

They beleue t  
degrees, one onely  
firme, when hee pu  
as meanes and in  
the Sunne, Moon  
cipall. First (they  
creatures that are v

For mankinde  
goddes, conceived  
ginning.

But how many  
no letters nor other  
onely tradition from

They thinke tha  
images in the foym  
place in houses ap  
pray, sing, and mak  
but one Kewas, in  
so gods.

They beleue als  
parted from the bo  
cacle of gods, ther  
they thinke to be m  
burne continually:

For the confirm  
ly dead and reuiue  
Countrey of a vic  
grau being leene  
bene, that is to say, v  
him leaue to return  
place of toymnt.

The other happe  
from vs, and it wa  
gaine as the first, a  
altue, and had traua  
and pleasm trees,  
was able to express  
his father, that had b  
his friends what go  
done he shoulde after

That subtiltie  
ny of the common  
uerours, and also  
though not with dan  
gers, and other sorts  
beating, according

And this is the s  
some of their pite  
ditions and stories,  
owne, and no small  
meanes for want of

Good things they  
the loadstone in wat  
burning glasses, d

be hoped, if means of good government be used, that they may in short time be brought to civilitie, and the embracing of true religion.

Some religion they have already, which although it be farre from the truth, yet being as it is, there is hope it may be the easier and sooner reformed.

They beleuee that there are many Gods, which they call Mantoac, but of different sorts and degrees, one onely chiefe and great God, which hath bene from all eternitie. Who, as they affirme, when hee purposed to make the worlde, made first other gods of a principall order, to bee as meanes and instruments to be used in the creation and government to followe, and after the Sunne, Moone, and Starres, as petty gods, and the instruments of the other order moze principall. First (they say) were made waters, out of which by the gods was made all diversitie of creatures that are visible or invisible.

For mankinde they say a woman was made first, which by the woorking of one of the goddesses, conceived and brought forth children: And in such sort they say they had their beginning.

But how many yeeres of ages have passed since, they say they can make no relation, having no letters nor other such meanes as we to keepe recordes of the particularities of times past, but onely tradition from father to sonne.

They thinke that all the gods are of humane shape, and therefore they represent them by images in the formes of men, which they call Kewasowok, one alone is called Kewas: them they place in houses appropriate or temples, which they call Machicomucke, where they worship, pray, sing, and make many times offering unto them. In some Machicomuck wee have seene but one Kewas, in some two, and in other some three. The common sort thinke them to bee also gods.

They beleuee also the immortallitie of the soule, that after this life as soone as the soule is departed from the body, according to the workes it hath done, it is either carried to heauen the habitation of gods, there to enjoy perpetuall blisse and happinesse, or els to a great pitte or hole, which they thinke to be in the furchest partes of their part of the worlde towarde the Sunne set, there to burne continually: the place they call Popogusso.

For the confirmation of this opinion, they tolde mee two stories of two men that had bene lately dead and requied againe, the one happened but fewe yeeres before our coming into the Countrey of a wicked man, which having bene dead and buried, the next day the earth of the graue being seene to moove, was taken up againe, who made declaration where his soule had bene, that is to say, very neere entering into Popogusso, had not one of the gods saved him, and gaue him leave to returne againe, and teache his friends what they should doe to avoyde that terrible place of torment.

The other happened in the same yeere we were there, but in a towne that was threelooke miles from vs, and it was tolde mee for strange newes, that one being dead, buried, and taken up againe as the first, he shewed that although his body had lien dead in the graue, yet his soule was alive, and had traualled farre in a long broad way, on both sides whereof grew most delicate and pleasant trees, bearing more rare and excellent fruites, then euer hee had seene before, or was able to expresse, and at length came to most brane and faire heuses, neere which hee mette his father, that had bene dead before, who gaue him great charge to goe backe againe, and shewe his friends what good they were to doe to enjoy the pleasures of that place, which when hee had done he should after come againe.

That subtiltie sooner be in the Wiroances and priestes, this opinion worketh so much in many of the common and simple sort of people, that it maketh them have great respect to their Governours, and also great care what they doe, to avoyde torment after death, and to enjoy blisse, although notwithstanding there is punishment ordeined for malefactours, as stealers, whoyemongers, and other sorts of wicked doers, some punished with death, some with forfeitures, some with beating, according to the greatnesse of the factes.

And this is the summe of their Religion, which I learned by having special familiaritie with some of these priestes. Wherein they were not so sure grounden, nor gaue such credite to their traditions and stories, but through conversing with vs they were brought into great doubts of their owne, and no small admiration of ours, with earnest desire in many, to learne more then wee had meanes for want of perfect verterance in their language to expresse.

And things they set before with vs, as Mathematicall instruments, sea Compasses, the vertue of the loadstone in drawing yron, a perspective glasse whereby was shewed many strange sights, burning glasses, wilde fireworkes, gunnes, hookes, writing and reading, spring clockes that



seeme to goe of themselves, and many other things that wee had, were so strange vnto them, and so farre exceeded their capacities to comprehend the reason and meanes how they should be made and done, that they thought they were rather the workes of gods then of men, or at the leastwise they had bene giuen and taught vs of the gods. Which made many of them to haue such opinion of vs, as that if they knewe not the cruety of God and religion already, it was rather to bee had from vs, whome God so specially loued then from a people that were so simple, as they found themselves to be in comparison of vs. Whereupon greater credite was giuen vnto that we speake of, concerning such matters.

Many times and in euery towne where I came, according as I was able, I made declaration of the contents of the Bible, that therein was set forth the true and onely God, and his mightie workes, that therein was contained the true doctrine of saluation through Christ, with many particularities of spectacles and chiefe pointes of Religion, as I was able then to utter, and thought fit for the time. And although I tolde them the booke materially and of it selfe was not of any such vertue, as I thought they did conceiue, but onely the doctrine therein contained: yet would many bee glad to touche it, to embrace it, to kisse it, to holde it to their heauests and heades, and stroke ouer all their body with it, to shewe their hungrie desire of that knowledge which was spoken of.

The Wiroans with whome we dwelt called Wingina, and many of his people would be glad many times to be with vs at our prayers, and many times call vpon vs both in his owne towne, as also in others whither he sometime accompanied vs, to pray and sing Psalmes, hoping thereby to be partaker of the same effects which we by that meanes also expected.

Whise this Wiroans was so grievously sicke that hee was like to die, and as he lay languishing, doubting of any helpe by his owne priestes, and thinking he was in such danger for offending vs and thereby our God, sent for some of vs to pray and bee a meanes to our God that it would please him either that hee might liue, or after death dwell with him in blisse, for likewise were the requests of many others in the like case.

On a time also when their corne began to wither by reason of a drought which happened extraordinarily, fearing that it had come to passe by reason that in some thing they had displeas'd vs, many would come to vs and desire vs to pray to our God of England, that hee would preferre their corne, promising that when it was ripe we also should be partakers of the fruite.

There coude at no time happen any strange sickness, losses, hurtes, or any other crosse vnto them, but that they would impute to vs the cause or meanes thereof, for offending or not pleasing vs.

One other rare and strange accident, leauing others, will I mention before I end, which moued the whole Countrey that either knewe or heard of vs, to haue vs in wonderfull admiration.

There was no towne where we had any subtille deuise practis'd against vs, we leauing it unpunished or not reuenged (because we sought by all meanes possible to win them by gentleness) but that within a fewe dayes after our departure from euery such towne, the people began to die very fast, and many in short space, in some townes about twentie, in some fourtie, and in one five score, which in truth was very many in respect of their numbers. This happened in no place that we could learne, but where we had bene, where they vsed some practise against vs, and after such time. The disease also so strange, that they neither knewe what it was, nor how to cure it, the like by report of the oldest men in the Countrey neuer happened before, time out of minde. A thing specially obserued by vs, as also by the natural inhabitants themselves.

Inasmuch that when some of the inhabitants which were our friends, and especially the Wiroans Wingina, had obserued such effects in foure or five townes to followe their wicked practises, they were perswaded that it was the worke of our God through our meanes, & that we by him might kill and slay whom we would without weapons, and not come nere them.

And thereupon when it had vnderstanding that any of their enemies had abused vs in our iourneys, hearing that we had wrought no reuenge with our weapons, and fearing vpon some cause the matter should so rest: vnto come and increase vs that wee would be a meanes to our God that they as others that had dealt ill with vs might in like sort die, alleauging to vs much it would be for our credite and profit, as also theirs, and hoping furthermore that we would doe so much at their requests in respect of the friendship we profess'd them.

Whose enterprises although we suspected that they were vngodly, affirming that our God would not suffer himselfe to any such papers and requests of men: that in deede all things haue bene and were to be done according to his good pleasure as hee had ordained: and that we to shewe our

selues

selues his true seruants  
liue together with vs  
withstanding in such  
vnto will and pleasure

Yet because the  
thought neuertheless  
them, did but dissemble  
that although wee  
desires.

This maruelous  
people could not see  
their sickness, there  
so that we had no won

Some therefore  
call, but that wee  
mortalitie.

Some would like  
come, to kill theirs  
already done.

Those that were  
without bodies, and  
that for as they did

To confirme this  
would not bee alham  
blood that they sucke  
lets were tied and cat

Some also thought  
dwell, and killed the  
from vs sooner it wee

And other some sa  
hane cause in some so  
specially some Astrolo  
beside in our voyage  
which beganne to app  
er like them from be  
I thinke it at this pr

These that  
there is good hope  
thing of the cruety, an

And although so  
stere, in slaying sou  
through haue bene  
fermed, the alteration  
to be doubted. And  
all to be feared.

The best neuerth  
the worst that may  
eithere.

**N** Dwe I  
that the C  
entirely like  
less and  
neither the soyle,  
wee founde in our  
discouered and expe

selues his true seruants ought rather to make petition for the contrary, that they with them might liue together with vs, be made partakers of his crueltie and serue him in righteousnesse, but notwithstanding in such sort, that wee referre that as all other things, so bee done according to his will and pleasure, and as by his wisdom he had ordained to be best.

Yet because the effect fell out so suddenly and shortly after according to their desires, they thought neuertheless it came to passe by our meanes, and that wee in doing such speeches, they them, do but dissemble the matter, and therefore came vnto vs to giue vs thanks in their manner, that although wee satisfied them not in promise, yet in deedes and effect wee had fulfilled their desires.

This marvellous accident in all the Countrey wrought so strange opinions of vs, that some people could not tel whether to thinke vs gods or men, and the rather because that all the space of their sickness, there was no man of ours known to die, or that was specially sicke: they noted also that we had no women among vs, neither that we did care for any of theirs.

Some therefore were of opinion that wee were not borne of women, and therefore not moy call, but that wee were men of an olde generation many yeeres past, then risen againe to immortallitie.

Some woulde likewise sceme to prophesie, that there were more of our generation yet to come, to kill theirs and take their places, as some thought the purpose was, by that which was already done.

Those that were immediatly to come after vs they imagined to be in the ayre, yet inuisible any without bodies, and that they by our incantation and for the loue of vs, did make the people to die in that sort as they do, by shooting inuisible bullets into them.

To confirme this opinion, their Physicians (to excuse their ignorance in curing the disease,) would not bee ashamed to say, but earnestly make the simple people beleue, that the strings of blood that they sucked out of the sicke bodies, were the strings wherewithall the inuisible bullets were tied and cast.

Some also thought that we shotte them our selues out of our pieces, from the place where wee dwelt, and killed the people in any such countie that had offended vs as we liked, both farre distant from vs whether it were.

And other some saide, that it was the speciall worke of God for our sakes, as wee our selues haue cause in some sort to thinke no lesse, whatsoeuer some dog, or may imagine to the contrary, specially some Astrologers, knowing of the Eclipse of the Sunne which we sawe the same yeere before in our voyage thitherward, which vnto them appeared very terrible. And also of a Comet which beganne to appoare but a fewe dayes before the beginning of the said sickness. But to exclude them from being the speciall causes of so special an accident, there are further reasons which I thinke fit at this present to be alleaged.

These three opinions I haue set downe the more at large, that it may appaere vnto you that there is good hope they may be brought through discrete dealing and gouernement to the embracing of the truth, and consequently to honour, obey, feare and loue vs.

And although some of our companie towards the ende of the yeere, shewed themselves to fierce, in slaying some of the people, in some counties, vpon causes that on our part, might easily enough haue bene borne withall: yet notwithstanding, because it was on their part fully deserved, the alteration of their opinions generally and for the most part concerning vs is the lesse to be doubted. And whatsoever els they may be, by carefulnesse of our selues neede nothing at all to be feared.

The best neuertheless in this, as in all actions besides is to bee endeouored and hoped, and of the worst that may happen notice to bee taken with consideration, and as much as may bee eschewed.

### The Conclusion.

**W**he I haue (as I hope) made relation not of so fewe and small things, but that the Countrey (of men that are indifferent and well disposed) may bee sufficiently liked: If there were no more knownes then I haue mentioned, which doubtlesse and in great reason is nothing to that which remaineth to bee discovered, neither the soyle, nor commodities. As we haue reason so to gather by the difference wee finde in our traualles, for although all which I haue before spoken of, haue bene discovered and experimented not farre from the Sea coast, where was our abode and most of

our trauieling: yet sometimes as wee made our iournes further into the maine and Countrey; we found the soile to be fatter, the trees greater and to growe thinner, the grounde more firme and deeper mould, more and larger champions, finer grasse, and as good as euer we saw in England; in some places rockie and farre more high and hillie ground, more plentie of their fruites, more abundance of beastes, the more inhabited with people, and of greater pollicie and larger dominions, with greater townes and houles.

Why may we not then looke for in good hope from the inner partes of more and greater plentie, as well of other thinges, as of those which wee haue already discovered? Unto the Spaniards happened the like in discovering the maine of the West Indies. The maine also of this Countrey of Virginia, extending some wayes so many hundred of leagues, as otherwise then by the relation of the inhabitants wee haue most certaine knowledge of, where yet no Christian prince hath any possession of dealing, cannot but yeelde many kindes of excellent commodities, which we in our discovery haue not yet seene.

What hope there is els to bee gathered of the nature of the climate, being answerable to the Island of Iapan, the land of China, Persia, Iury, the Islands of Cyprus & Candy, the South parts of Greece, Italy, and Spaine, and of many other notable and famous Countreies, because I meane not to be tedious, I leaue to your owne consideration.

Whereby also the excellent temperature of the aire there at all seasons, much warmer then in England, and neuer so vehemently hot, as sometimes is vnder and betwene the Tropikes, or nere them, cannot be knowne vnto you without further relation.

For the holtsomnesse thereof I neede to say but thus much: that for all the want of prouision, as first of English victual, excepting for twentie dayes, we liued onely by drinkeing water, and by the victual of the Countrey, of which some sortes were very strange vnto vs, and might haue bene thought to haue altered our temperatures in such sort, as to haue brought vs into some grieuous and dangerous diseases: Secondly the want of English meanes, for the taking of beastes, fische, and foule, which by the helpe onely of the inhabitants and their meanes, could not be so suddenly and easily might haue bene to our better satisfaction and contentment. Some want also wee had of clothes. Furthermore, in all our traualles which were most speciall and often in the time of winter, our lodging was in the open aire vpon the ground. And yet I say for all this, there were but foure of our whole companie (being one hundred and eighty) that died all the yeere and that but at the latter ende thereof and vpon none of the aforesaid causes. For all foure, especially thre were feeble, weak, and sickly persons before euer they came thither, and those that knewe them, much marvelled that they liued so long being in that case, or had aduentured to traualle.

Seeing therefore the ayre there is so temperate and holtsome, the soile so fertile, and yeelding such commodities, as I haue before mentioned, the voyage also thither to and fro being sufficiently experimented, to be perfoarmed twise a yeere with ease, and at any season thereof: And the dealing of Sir Walter Raleigh so liberall in large giuing and granting lande there, as is already knowne, with many helpes and furtherances else: (The least that he hath granted hath bene five hundred acres to a man onely for the aduenture of his person) I hope there remaines no cause whereby the action should be misliked.

If that those which shall thither traualle to inhabite and plant, be but reasonably prouided for the first yeere, as those are which were transported the last; and being there, doe vse but that diligence and care, as is requisite, and as they may with ease: There is no doubt, but for the time following, they may haue victuals that are excellent good and plentie ynough, some more English sortes of cattell als hereafter, as some haue bene before, and are there yet remaining, may, and shall be (God willing) thither transported. So like wise, our kinde of fruites, rootes, and herbes, may be there planted and sowed, as some haue bene already, and prouoe well: And in short time also they may rayse of those sortes of commodities which I haue spoken of, as shall both enrich themselves, as also others that shall deale with them.

And this is all the fruite of our labours, that I haue thought necessary to auertise you of at this present: What else concerneth the nature and maners of the inhabitants of Virginia, the number with the particularities of the voyages thither made, and of the actions of such as haue bene by Sir Walter Raleigh therein, and there employed, many woethy to be remembered, as of the first discoverers of the Countrey: of our Generall for the time Sir Richard Greinville, and after his departure of our Governour here Walter Rafe Lane, with diuers other directed and employed vnder their gouernement: Of the Captaines and Wardens of the voyages made since for transportation, of the Governour and assistants of those already transported,

ted, as of many parts of a Chronicle, as be also published. Thus referring action, from him all things els, I

The fourth  
the year



Our Fleet  
the times:  
Portsmouth, and  
stayed eight daies

The 5. of  
the space of  
The 8. we  
The 16. Sim  
her distressed in th

The 19. we

lupe: the 2  
The 22. we ca  
on land, staying t  
our women, and n  
sudden burning i  
not speake. A l  
on such a burning  
24. houres, it wa

Also the first  
such dignes, that  
the Sea side, to  
water tober of w  
many as did but  
away the corrupti  
see in five or six d

The second da  
water, three one  
the toppe of an hi  
not any goodnes,  
way, he found in  
that Island: whe  
Fernando had tol

ted,

ted, as of many persons, accidents, and things els, I haue ready in a discourse by it selfe, in manner of a Chronicle, according to the course of times: and when time shall be thought convenient, shall be also published.

Thus referring my relation to your favourable constructions, expecting good successe of the action, from him which is to be acknowledged the author, and gouernour, not onely of this, but of all things els, I take my leaue of you, this moneth of February, 1588.

### The fourth voyage made to Virginia, with three shippes, in the yeere, 1587. Wherein was transported the second Colonie.



In the yeere of our Loyde, 1587. Sir Walter Raleigh intending to perseuere in the planting of his Countrey of Virginia, prepared a newe Colonie of one hundred and fiftie men to be sent thither, vnder the charge of Iohn White, whom he appointed Gouernour, and also appointed vnto him twelue Assistants, vnto whom he gaue a Charter, and incorporated them by the name of Gouernour, and Assistants of the Citie of Raleigh in Virginia.

#### Aprill.

Our Fleet being in number three saile, viz. the Admirall, a shippe of one hundred and twentie tonnes: a flie boate, and a Pinness, departed the 19 and twentieth of Aprill from Portesmouth, and the same day came to an anchor at the Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, where we staied eight daies.

#### Maye.

The 5. of Maye, at nine of the clocke at night, we came to Plymmouth, where we remained the space of two daies.

The 8. we waied anchor at Plymmouth, and departed thence for Virginia.

The 16. Simon Ferdinando Master of our Admirall, lettdly forsooke our flie boate, leaving her distressed in the Baye of Portingall.

#### Iune.

The 19. we fell with Dominica, and the same evening we sailed betweene it, and Guadalupe: the 21. the flie boate also fell with Dominica.

The 22. we came to an anchor at an Isle, called Santa Cruz, where all the planters were set on land, staying there till the 25. of the same moneth. At our first landing on this Island, some of our women, and men, by eating a small fruite, like greene apples, were fearefully troubled with a sudden burning in their moutnes, and swelling of their tongues so bigge, that some of them could not speake. Also a child by sucking of one of those womens brest, had at that instant his mouth set on such a burning, that it was strange to see how the infant was tormentted for the time: but after 24. houres, it waie away of it selfe.

Also the first night of our being on this Island, we tooke five great Coytesles, some of them of such bignes, that fiftene of our strongest men were tired with carrying of one of them but from the Sea shore, to our cabbins. In this Island we found no watering place, but a standing ponde, the water wherof was so stull, that many of our companie fell sicke with drinking thereof: and as many as did but wash their faces with that water, in the morning before the Sunne had broken away the corruption, their faces did so burne, and swell, that their eyes were shut up, and could not see in five or six daies, or longer.

The second day of our abode here, we sent forth some of our men to search the Island for fresh water, three one way, and two another way. The Gouernour also, with six others, went up to the toppe of an high hill, to view the Island, but could perceiue no signe of any men, or beasts, nor any goodnes, but Barres, and trees of Guicum. Returning backe to our Cabbins another way, he found in the descent of a hill, certaine postheards of sauage making, made of the earth of that Island: whereupon it was iudged, that this Island was inhabited with Sauiages, though Ferdinando had tolde vs for certaine, the contrarie. The same day at night, the rest of our compo-

" One of the  
Idea of the  
Indians, which  
I saw with  
Sauiages.

nie very late returned to the Gouernour. The one companie affirmed, that they had seene in a valley, eleuen Sauages, and diuers houles halfe a mile distant from the steepe, or topp of the hill where they staid. The other companie had found running out of a high rocke, a very faire spring of water, wherof they brough the three bottles to the companie: for before that time, wee dranke the stinking water of the pond.

The same second day at night, Captaine Stafford, with the pinnelle, departed from our fleet, riding at Santa Cruz, to an Island, called Beake, lying nere S. Johns, being so directed by Ferdinando, who assured him he should there finde great plentie of sheepe. The next day at night, our planters left Santa Cruz, and came all aboard, and the next morning after, being the 25. of June, we waied anker, and departed from Santa Cruz.

The seuen and twentieth we came to anker at Cortea, where we found the pinnelle riding, at our comming.

The 28. we waied anker at Cortea, and presently came to anker at S. Johns in Muskets Bay, where we spent three daies unprofitably, in taking in freshe water, spending in the meane time more water, then the quantitie of the water came vnto.

### Julie.

" Muskets Bay, is a Harbour vpon the South side of S. Johns Island, where we take in fresh water.

The first we waied anker at Muskitoes Baye, where were left behind two Irish men of our companie, Darbie Glauen, and Denice Cartell, bearing along the coast of S. Johns, till evening, at which time we fell vnto Rosse Baye. At this place Fernando had promised we should take in salt, and had caused vs before, to make and prouide as many sakes for that purpose, as we could. The Gouernour also, for that he vnderstoode there was a Cowhe in the bottom of the Baye, not farre from the salt hills, appointed thirtie horse, ten pikers, and ten targets, to man the pinnelle, and to goe a land for salt. Fernando percreauing them in a readines, sent to the Gouernour, vling great persuasions with him, not to take in salt there, saying that he knewe not well, whether that the same were the place or not: also, that if the pinnelle went into the Bay, she could not without great danger come backe, till the next day at night, and that if in the meane tyme any storme should rise, the Admirall were in danger to be cast away. Whilist he was thus perswading, he caused the lead to be cast, and hauing craftily brough the shippe in thre fathome, and a halfe water, he suddenly began to sweare, and teare God in peeces, dissembling great danger, crying to him at the helme, heare vp hard, heare vp hard: so we went off, and were disappointed of our sale, by his meanes.

The next day, sailing along the West end of S. Johns, the Gouernour determined to goe a land in S. Germans Baye, to gather pong plants of Dinges, Pines, Mameas, and Platonos, to set at Virginia, which we knewe might easily be had, for that they growe nere the shoare, and the places where they growe, well knowen to the Gouernour, and some of the planters: but our Simon deuiede, saying he would come to an anker at Hispaniola, and there lande the Gouernour, and some other of the Assaunts, with the pinnelle, to see if he could speake with his friend Alanfon, of whome he hoped to be furnished both of cattell, and all such thinges, as wee woulde haue taken in at S. Johns: but hee meant nothing lesse, as it plainly did appeare to vs afterwards.

The next day after, being the third of Julie, we sawe Hispaniola, and bare with the coast all that day, looking still when the pinnelle should be prepared to goe for the place where Fernando his friend Alanfon was: but that day passed, and we sawe no preparation for landing in Hispaniola.

The 4. of Julie, sailing along the coast of Hispaniola, vntill the next day at noone, and no preparation yet leane for the staying there, we hauing knowledge that we were past the place where Alanfon dwelt, and were come with Isabella: hereupon Fernando was asked by the Gouernour, whether he meant to speake with Alanfon for the taking in of cattell, and other thinges, according to his promise, or not: but he answered, that he was now past the place, and that Sir Walter Raleigh to be him, the French Ambassador certified him, that the king of Spaine had sent for Alanfon into Spaine: wherefore he thought him dead, and that it was to no purpose to touch there in any place, at this voyage.

The next day, we left sight of Hispaniola, and sailed off for Virginia, about 4. of the clocke in the afternoon.

The first of Julie, we came to the Islande Caycos, where in Fernando saide were two salt ponds, assuring vs if they were vnto, we might finde salt to last with, vntill the next

supplie,

supplie, but it ppono nando so faced him, that heer part of that day hunting Swannes: anker, leaving Cenia.

About the 16. of the Island of Crotoa, where Scastorde being moored vpon the beach vpon it: such was the

The two and twentieth we waied anker: the Gouernour intending to passe vnto which Sir Richard Richarference, concerning the returne againe to the Island, vnder the leading of the Shippe, a Gentleman called to the sailers, but leaue them in that the Summer vnto this were all for it booted not that night, at Summe season we found none of of one of those fiftie

The 23. of Julie, we came to the Island, where we had some houses, made by the Spaniards, but all the houses were ouergrown with weeds: so we returned.

The same day we sawe the houses, which we needed.

The 25. our shippe and comfort of greatly at their satisfaction from us, for that he neuer had gotten a place as they should surely be

The eight and twentieth we waied anker, and departed from the Island, where we had some houses, which we needed, and so fell the wea pon, late on the 29. of the month, we were two miles from the head in peeces, and

On the thirtieth of the Island of Crotoa

supplie, but it proved as true as the finding of the ye at Beake. In this Island, whilst Ferdinando solaced himself a shoare, with one of the company, in part of the Island, others spent the latter part of that day in other parts of the Island, some to seeke the salt ponds, some toiling, some hunting Swannes, whereof we caught many. The next day, early in the morning, we waded anker, leaving Caycos, with good hope, the first lande that wee sawe next, should be Virginia.

About the 16. of July, we fell with the maine of Virginia, which Simon Fernando tooke to be the Island of Croatoan, where we came to an anker, and rode there two or three daies: but finding himselfe deceived, he waded, and bare along the coast, where in the night, had not Captaine Stafforde bene more carefull in looking out, then our Simon Fernando, wee had bene all cast away upon the beache, called the Cape of Feare, for wee were come within two cables length upon it: such was the carelesnes, and ignorance of our Master.

The two and twentieth of Iulie, we arrived safe at Hatoraske, where our shippe and pinuelle ankered: the Gouvernour went aboard the pinuelle, accompanied with foytie of his best men, intending to passe by to Roanoake forthwith, hoping there to finde those fiftene Englishmen, which Sir Richard Greennull had left there the yeere before, with whom he meant to have conference, concerning the state of the Countrey, and Sauvages, meaning after he had so done, to returne againe to the fleet, and passe along the coast to the Baye of Chesepiok, where we intended to make our seat and foyle, according to the charge given vs among other directions in writing, vnder the hande of Sir Walter Raleigh: but as soone as we were put with our pinuelle from the shippe, a Gentleman by the meanes of Fernando, who was appointed to returne for England, called to the sailers in the pinuelle, charging them not to bring any of the planters backe againe, but leave them in the Island, except the Gouvernour, and two or three such as he appointed, saying that the Summer was farre spent, wherefoze hee would land all the planters in no other place. Unto this were all the sailers, both in the pinuelle, and shippe, perswaded by the Master, wherefoze it booted not the Gouvernour to contend with them, but passed to Roanoake, and the same night, at Sunne set, went aland on the Island, in the place where our fiftene men were left, but we found none of them, nor any signe, that they had bene there, saving onely we found the bones of one of those fiftene, which the Sauvages had flaine long before.

The 23. of July, the Gouvernour, with diuers of his companie, walked to the North ende of the Island, where Master Ralfe Lane had his foyle, with sundry necessarie and decent dwelling houses, made by his men about it the yeere before, where wee hoped to finde some signes, or certaine knowledge of our fiftene men. When we came thither, wee found the foyle raked downe, but all the houses standing vnhurt, saving the neather roomes of them, and also of the foyle, were overgrown with Pelons of diuers foyles, and Deere within them, feeding on those Pelons: so we returned to our companie, without hope of ever seeing any of the fiftene men living.

The same day order was given, that every man should be imploied for the repairing of those houses, which we found standing, and also to make other newe Cottages, for such as should neede.

The 25. our five boate, and the rest of our planters, arrived all safe at Hatoraske, to the great ioye and comfort of the whole companie: but the Master of our Admirall, Fernando grieved greatly at their safe coming: for he purposely left them in the Baye of Portingall, and stole away from them in the night, hoping that the Master thereof, whose name was Edward Spicer, for that he neuer had bene in Virginia, would hardly finde the place, or els being left in so dangerous a place as that was, by meanes of so many men of warre, as at that time were aboard, they should surely be taken, or flaine: but God disappointed his wicked pretences.

The eight and twentieth, George Howe, one of our twelve Assistants was flaine by diuers Sauvages, which were come our to Roanoake, either of purpose to espie our companie, and what number we were, or els to hunt Deere; whereof were many in the Island. These Sauvages being secretly hiden among high reedes, where oftentimes they finde the Deere asleepe, and so kill them, espied our man wading in the water alone, almost naked, without any weapon, save onely a small forked sticke, catching Crabs therewithall, and also being strayed two miles from his companie, shotte at him in the water, where they gave him fiftene wounds with their arrowes: and after they had flaine him with their wooden swords, bent his head in peeces, and shed over the water to the maine.

On the thirtieth of Iulie, Master Stafford, and twentie of our men, passed by water to the Island of Croatoan, with Manteo, who had his mother, and many of his kinred, dwelling in that

in that Island, of whome we hoped to vnderstande some newes of our fifteene men, but especial-ly to learne the disposition of the people of the Countrey towards vs, and to renew our olde friendship with them. At our first landing, they seemed as though they would fight with vs: but perceiving vs began to march with our shot towards them, they turned their backs, and fled. Then Manteo their countreyman, called to them in their owne language, whom, as soon as they heard, they returned, and they went away their bowes, and arrowes, and some of them came vnto vs, embracing and entertaining vs friendly, desiring vs not to gather or spill any of their come, for that they had but little. We answered them, that neither their come, nor any other thing of theirs, should be diminished by any of vs, and that our coming was onely to renew the olde loue, that was betwene vs, and them, at the first, and to liue with them as brethren, and friends: which answer seemed to please them well, wherefore they requested vs to walke vp to their Towne, who there treated vs after their manner, and desired vs earnestly, that there might be some token or badge giuen them of vs, whereby we might know them to be our friends, when we met them any where out of the Towne of Island. They tolde vs further, that for want of some such badge, diuers of them were hurt the yere before, being founde out of the Island by Master Lane his companie, whereof they shewed vs one, which at that very instant laye lame, and had lien of that hurt euer since: but they said, they knew our men mistooke them, and hurt them in steede of Winginoes men, wherefore they held vs excused.

### August.

**T**he next day, we had conference further with them, concerning the people of Secota, Aquacogoc, & Pomicoake, willing them of Croatoan, to certifie the people of those townes, that if they would accept our friendship, we would willingly recreate them againe, and that all unfriendly dealings past on both partes, should be utterly forgiven, and forgotten. To this the chiefe men of Croatoan answered, that they would gladly doe the best they could, and within seven daies, bying the Weronaes, and chiefe Governours of those townes with them, to our Countour at Roanoak, or their answer. We also vnderstoode of the men of Croatoan, that our man Master Howe, was slaine by the remnant of Winginoes men, dwelling then at Daramongueponke, with whome Winchese kept companie: and also we vnderstood by them of Croatoan, how that the 15. Englishmen left at Roanoke the yere before, by Sir Richard Grenuill, were suddenly set vpon, by 30. of the men of Secota, Aquacogoc, and Daramongueponke, in manner following. They couched themselves secretly behynd the trees, nere the houses, where our men carelessly liued: and hauing perceaued that of those 15. they could see but 11. onely, two of those Sauages appeared to the 11. Englishmen, calling to them by friendly signes, that but two of their chiefe men should come unarmed to speake with those two Sauages, who seemed also to be unarmed. Wherefore two of the chiefe of our Englishmen, went gladly to them: but whilest one of those Sauages traitorously embraced one of our men, the other with his sword of wood, which he had secretly hidden vnder his mantell, stroke him on the head, and slewe him, and presently the other eight and twentie Sauages slewed themselves: the other Englishman perceauing this, fled to his companie, whome the Sauages pursued with their bowes, and arrowes, so fast, that the Englishmen were forced to take the house, wherein all their victuall, and weapons were: but the Sauages forthwith set the same on fire, by meanes whereof, our men were forced to take vp such weapons as came first to hand, and without order to runne forth among the Sauages, with whome they skirmished, about an houre. In this skirmish, another of our men was shot into the mouth with an arrowe, whereof he died: and also one of the Sauages was shot into the side by one of our men, with a yule six arrowe, whereof he died presently. The place where they fought, was of great aduantage to the Sauages, by meanes of the thicke trees, behinde which the Sauages though their nimblenes, defended themselves, and so offended our men with their arrowes, that our men being some of them hurt, retired fighting to the water side, where their boate lay, with which they fled towards Hatorask. By that time they had rowed but a quarter of a mile, they espied their foure fellows coming from a creeke thereby, where they had bene to fetch Officers: these foure they receaued into their boate, leauing Roanoake, and landed on a little Island on the right hand of our entrance into the harbour of Hatorask, where they remained a while, but afterward departed, whither, as yet we knowe not.

Hauing now insufficiently dispatched our business at Croatoan, the same day we departed friendly, taking our leave, and came aboard the flecte at Hatoraske.

The

The eight of  
Pomicoake, Aqu  
past, within whic  
nothing of the  
nant of Wingino  
which had slaine  
Roanoake, he the  
bout midnight, he  
of Manteo was o  
ges dwell, where

The next day,  
landed nere the  
the woods, so that  
their fire, and som  
males, flew into  
shote one of the  
which we hoped  
uages were our fr  
place, because they  
Howe, and for ha  
all had bene deuc  
had like to haue p  
and women appar  
one of them, whic  
in steede of a man  
him, calling him  
our purpose, we g  
uing the rest with  
ges with vs ouer  
grieved Manteo,  
roans had kept the  
known that misch

The 13. of Aug  
chilled in Roan  
full seruice.

The 18. Elenc  
Stants was deliue  
following, and bec  
nia. By this time  
take in wood, and  
to prepare their le

Our two shippe  
arose such a tempe  
cut his cables, an  
come to vs again  
at the tyme that  
land.

At this time son  
two out of the twe  
land: for euery on  
at length, by much  
England: but the  
his minde, so that n

The next day, ch  
to the Countour,  
ter and sooner obta  
get many sufficien  
backe againe, with

The eight of August, the Governour hauing long expected the coming of the Weroanfes of Pomioake, Aquascogoc, Secora, and Daramongueponke, seeing that the seuen daies were past, within which they promised to come in, or to send their answers by the men of Croatoan, and no tidings of them heard, being certainly also informed by those men of Croatoan, that the remnant of Wingino his men, which were left alive, who dwelt at Daramongueponke, were they which had slaine George Howe, and were also at the dying of our eleven Englishmen from Roanoake, he thought to differre the renewing thereof no longer. Wherefore the same night, about midnight, he passed over the water, accompanied with Capaine Stafford, and 24. men, whereof Manteo was one, whome wee tooke with vs to be our guide to the place where those Sauages dwelt, where he behaved himselfe toward vs as a most faithfull English man.

The next day, being the ninth of August, in the morning so early, that it was yet darke, wee landed neere the dwelling place of our enemies, and very secretly conveyed our selves through the woods, to that side, where we had their houses betwene vs and the water: and hauing espied their fire, and some sitting about it, we presently sette on them: the miserable soules herewith amazed, fledde into a place of thicke reedes, growing fast by, where our men perceiving them, shotte one of them through the bodie with a bullet, and therewith wee entered the reedes, among which wee hoped to acquite their euill doing towards vs, but wee were deceaued: for those Sauages were our friends, and were come from Croatoan, to gather the coyne, and fruite of that place, because they vnderstoode our enemies were fledde immediatly after they had slaine George Howe, and for haste had left all their coyne, Tabacco, and Pomptions standing in such sorte, that all had bene deuoured of the birds, and Deere, if it had not bene gathered in time: but they had like to haue paid deereley for it: for it was so darke, that they being naked, and their men and women apparellled all so like others, we knewe not but that they were all men: and if that one of them, which was a Weroans wife, had not had her childe at her backe, she had bene slaine in steede of a man, and as happe was, another Sauage knewe Master Stafford, and ranne to him, calling him by his name, whereby he was saued. Finding our selues thus disappointed of our purpose, wee gathered all the coyne, Beale, Pomptions, and Tabacco, that we found ripe, leauing the rest vnspoiled, and tooke Menatoan his wife, with the pong childe, and the other Sauages with vs over the water to Roanoak. Although the mistaking of these Sauages somewhat grieued Manteo, yet he imputed their harme to their owne follie, saying to them, that if their Weroans had kept their promise in comming to the Governour, at the day appointed, they had not knowne that mischance.

The 13. of August, our Sauage Manteo, by the commandement of Sir Walter Raleigh, was christened in Roanoak, and called Lord thereof, and of Daramongueponke, in reward of his faithfull seruice.

The 18. Elenora, daughter to the Governour, and wife to Ananias Dare, one of the Assistants, was deliuered of a daughter in Roanoak, and the same was christened there the Sunday following, and because this childe was the first Christian borne in Virginia, she was named Virginia. By this time our shippes had vnladed the goods and viduals of the planters, and began to take in wood, and fresh water, and to cutwe calke and trimme them for England: the planters also prepared their letters, and tokens, to send backe into England.

Our two shippes, the Lyon, and the Flieboate, almost ready to depart, the 21. of August, there arose such a tempest at notheast, that our Admirall then riding out of the harbour, was forced to cut his cables, and put to Sea, where he lay beating off and on, five dayes before hee could come to vs againe, so that wee feared hee had bene cast away, and the rather, for that at the tyme that the wynde tooke them, the maste, and best of their Sapples, were left a land.

At this time some controuersies rose betwene the Governour, and Assistants, about choosing two out of the twelue Assistants, which should goe backe as factors for the companie into England: for euery one of them refused, saue one ly one, which all the other thought not sufficient: but at length, by much perswasion of the Governour, Christopher Cooper onely agreed to goe for England: but the next day, through the perswasion of diuers of his familiar friends, he changed his minde, so that now the matter woode as at the first.

The next day, the 22. of August, the whole companie, both of the Assistants, and planters, came to the Governour, and with one voice requested him to returne himselfe into England, for the better and sooner obtaining of supplies, and other necessaries for them: but he refused it, and alleaged many sufficient causes, why he would not: the one was, that he could not so suddenly returne backe againe, without his great discredit, leauing the action, and so many, whome he partly had



procured through his persuasions, to leave their native Countrey, and undertake that voyage, and that some enemies to him, and the action at his returne into England, would not spare to slander falsely both him, and the action, by saying he went to Virginia, but politike'ly, and to no other end, but to leade so many into a Countrey, in which he never meant to stay himselfe, and there to leaue them behind him. Also he alleaged, that seeing they intended to remoue 50. miles further up into the maine presently, he being then absent, his stuffe, and goods, might be both spoiled, and most of it pilfered away in the carriage, so that at his returne, hee should be either forced to provide himselfe of all such things againe, or els at his comming againe to Virginia, finde himselfe utterly unfurnished, whereof already he had found some prooffe, being but once from them but thre daies. Wherefore he concluded, that he would not goe himselfe.

The next day, not onely the Assistants, but diuers others, as well women, as men, beganne to renewe their requests to the Governour againe, to take vpon him to returne into England for the supplie, and dispatch of all such thinges, as there were to be done, promising to make him their bonde vnder all their handes, and seales, for the safe preserving of all his goods for him at his returne to Virginia, so that if any part thereof were spoiled, or lost, they would see it restored to him, or his Assignes, whensoever the same should be misse, and demanded: which bonde with a testimonie vnder their handes, and seales, they shortly made, and deliuered into his hands. The copie of the testimonie, I thought good to set downe.

May it please you, her Maiesties Subjects of England, wee your friends and Countrey men, the planters in Virginia, doe by these presents let you, and euerie of you to vnderstande, that for the present and specie supplie of certaine our knowen, and apparant lackes, and needs, most requisite and necessari for the good and happie planting of vs, or any other in this lande of Virginia, wee all of one minde, and consent, haue most earnestly intreated, and vncessantly requested Iohn White, Governour of the planters in Virginia, to passe into England, for the better and more assured helpe, and setting forward of the foresayde supplie: and knowing assuredly that hee both can best, and will labour, and take paines in that behalfe for vs all, and hee not once, but often refusing it, for our sakes, and for the honour, and maintenance of the action, hath at last, though much against his will, though our importunacie, yeelded to leaue his government, and all his goods among vs, and himselfe in all our behalves to passe into Englande, of whose knowledge, and fidelitie in handling this matter, as all others, wee doe assure our selues by these presents, and will you to giue all credite thereunto. the five and twentieth of August.

The Governour being at the last, though their extreame intreating, constrained to returne into England, hauing then but halfe a daies respite to prepare him selfe for the same, departed from Roanoake, the seuen and twentieth of August in the morning: and the same daie about midnight, came aboard the *Flie* boate, who already had water anker, and rode without the barre, the Admirall riding by them. who but the same morning was newly come thither againe. The same day, both the *Shippes* waied anker, and sette saile for England: at this waying their ankers, the lue of the men which were in the *Flie* boate, were thowen from the Capstone, which by meanes of a barre that brake, came so fast about vpon them, that the other two barres thereof strooke and hurt most of them so sore, that some of them neuer recouered it: neuertheless they assayed presently againe to waigh their anker, but being so weakened with the first sting, they were not able to weigh it, but were thowen downe, and hurt the seconde time. Wherefore hauing in all but fiftene men aboard, and most of them by this infortunate beginning so huised, and hurt, they were forced to cut their Cable, and leese their anker. Neuertheless, they kept companie with the Admirall, vntill the seuenteenth of September, at which time wee fell with Corou, and saue Flores.

### September.

The eighteenth, perceiving of all our fiftene men in the *Flie* boate, there remained but five, which by meanes of the former mischance, were able to stande to their labour: wherefore vnderstanding that the Admirall meant not to make any haste for England, but linger about the *Islande* of *Tercera* for purchase, the *Flie* boate departed for Englande with letters, where we hoped by the helpe of God to arrive shortly: but by that time wee had continued our course homeward, about twentie daies, hauing had sometimes scarce, and variable winde, our fresh water also by leaking almost consumed, there arose such a storme at *Roxheast*, which for

for 6. daies cease could recouer in and two of them daies together cooking water, being now we expected

The 16. of *October* same land at Dublin, and a p had we any boate whom we vnder presently with fr

The 18. the *Ship* of the new victual but within 4. dayes speboate, and the Dingen,

The first the p readie to put in Ireland, the la end, and were su

The 5. the *Ship* *Cometwall*.

The 8. we arriv to *Portsmouth*, and all his company sickness, and death boar, but were fo perished there, if a the chiefe men th ether saylers, who

The names *riued*

*John*  
*Roger*  
*Anan*  
*Christ*  
*Thom*  
*John*  
*Dyon*  
*Roger*  
*Geor*  
*Simo*  
*Nich*  
*Thom*  
*Anth*  
*John*

for 6. dayes ceased not to blowe so exceeding, that we were driven further in thole 6. then wee could recover in thirteene daies: in which time others of our saylers began to fall very sicke, and two of them dyed, the weather also continued so close, that our Mastre sometimes in foure daies together could see neither Sunne nor Starre, and all the bevrage we could make, with drinking water, vj gges of beere, and lees of wine which remained, was but 3. gallons, and therfore now we expected nothing but by famine to perish at Sea.

October.

The 16. of October we made land, but we knew not what land it was, bearing in with the same land at that day: about Sunne set we put into a harbour, where we found a Houke of Dublin, and a pynelle of Hampton ryding, but we knew not as yet what place this was, neither had we any boate to gae a Hoare, untill the pynelle sent off their boate to vs with 6. of 8. men, of whom we understood we were in Downwicke in the west parts of Ireland: they also releued vs presently with fresh water, wyne, and other fresh meate.

The 18. the Governour, and the Mastre ryd to Dingen Cushe, 5. myles distant, to take order of the new vicualling of our Flye boate for England, and for reliefe of our sicke and hurt men, but within 4. dayes after the boatswane, the steward, and the boatswanes made dyed aboord the flyeboate, and the 28. the Masters mate and two of our chiefe Shaplers were brought sicke to Dingen.

November.

The first the governour shipped him selfe in a ship called the Spunkie, which at that time was ready to put to Sea from Dingen for England, leauing the Flyeboate and all his company in Ireland, the same day we set saile, and on the thirde day we set with the Northside of the land end, and were shut by the Seuerne, but the next day we doubled the same, for Monts bay.

The 5. the Governour landed in England at Spartalet, neere Saint Michaels mount in Cozertwall.

The 8. we arrived at Hampton, where we understood that our consoye the Admittall was come to Portsmouth, and had bene there three weekes before: and also that Fernando the Mastre with all his company were not onely come home without any purchase, but also in such weakenesse by sicknes, and death of their cheefest men, that they were scarce able to bring their ship into the harbour, but were forced to let fall anchor aboue, which they could not way againe, but might all haue perished there, if a small barke by great hap had not come to them to helpe them. The names of the chiefe men that dyed are these, Roger Large, Iohn Mathew, Thomas Smith, and some other ther saylers, whose names I know not at the writing hereof. An. Do. 1587.

The names of all the men, women and Children, which safely arrived in Virginia, and remained to inhabite there. 1587.

Anno Regni Reginae Elizabethę. 19.

John White.  
Roger Bailie.  
Ananias Dare,  
Christopher Cooper.  
Thomas Steuens,  
Iohn Sampson.  
Dyonis Haruic.  
Roger Prat.  
George Howe,  
Simon Fernando,  
Nicholas Iohnson,  
Thomas Warner,  
Anthony Cage,  
Iohn Iones.

William Willes.  
Iohn Brooke,  
Curbert White,  
Iohn Bright.  
Clement Tayler.  
William Sole,  
Iohn Cotimur.  
Humfrey Newton,  
Thomas Colman.  
Thomas Gramme,  
Marke Bennet,  
Iohn Gibbes,  
Iohn Stilmann,  
Robert Wilkinson.

Asa,

Iohn

John Tydway,  
Ambrose Viccars.  
Edmond English.  
Thomas Topan,  
Henry Berrye,  
Richard Berrye,  
John Spendloue.  
John Hemmington.  
Thomas Butler.  
Edward Powell.  
John Burden.  
James Hynde.  
Thomas Ellis.  
William Browne.  
Michael Myllet.  
Thomas Smith.  
Richard Kemme.  
Thomas Harris.  
Richard Tauerner.  
John Earnest.  
Henry Johnson.  
John Starte.  
Richard Darige.  
William Lucas.  
Arnold Archard.  
John Wright.  
William Dutton.  
Morris Allen.  
William Waters.  
Richard Arthur.  
John Chapman.  
William Clement.  
Robert Little.  
Hugh Tayler.  
Richard Wildye.  
Lewes Wotton.  
Michael Bishop.  
Henry Browne.  
Henry Rufoote.  
Richard Tomkins.  
Henry Dorrell.  
Charles Florrie.  
Henry Mylton.  
Henry Payne.  
Thomas Harris.  
William Nicholes.  
Thomas Pheuens.  
John Borden.  
Thomas Scot.

Peter Little.  
John Wyles,  
Brian Wyles,  
George Martyn.  
Hugh Pattenfon.  
Martyn Sutton.  
John Farre.  
John Bridger.  
Griffen Iones.  
Richard Shaberdege.  
James Lasse.  
John Cheuen.  
Thomas Hewet.  
William Berde.

*Women.*

Elyoner Dare.  
Margery Harue.  
Agnes Wood.  
Wenefrid Powell.  
Ioyce Archard.  
Iane Iones.  
Elizabeth Glane.  
Iane Pierce.  
Audry Tappan.  
Alis Chapman.  
Emmie Merrimoth.  
Colman.  
Margaret Lawrence.  
Ioan Warren.  
Iane Mannering.  
Rose Payne.  
Elizabeth Viccars.

John Sampson.  
Robert Ellis.  
Ambrose Viccars.  
Thomas Archard.  
Thomas Humfrey.  
Tomas Smart.  
George Howe.  
John Prat.  
William Wythers.

Boyes and  
Children.

*Children borne in Virginia.*

Virginia Dare.  
Haruye.

*Sauages.*

Manteo. } That were in Englande and  
returned home into Virginia  
with them.  
Towaye. }

The first voyage intended for the supply of the Colonie planted in  
*Virginia* by *John VVhite* which being vnder taken in the yeere 1588  
by casualtie tooke no effect.

**A**fter the Governours returne out of Virginia the 20. of November 1587. he delivered  
his letters and other advertisements concerning his last voyage and state of the plan-  
tets to Sir Walter Raleigh whereupon he forthwith appointed a pinnesse to be sent  
thither with all such necessaries as he understood they stood in neede of: and also wrote  
his

his letters unto cl  
all convenient sp  
things needeful  
ing. Which pin  
bnder the charge  
but for a faire w  
report of the wor  
with the power o  
a readines in an  
was personally o  
meanes for this p  
of the planters fo  
tonnes called the  
uision, with cerca

Thus the 22.  
of Cornwal, and  
our company wo  
anker againe and

The next day  
chase to 4. ships,  
end, one of these  
The 24. day we  
we hoped also to

The 26. of Ap  
stayed for it. By  
him for an Engli  
ncere to vs we pe  
amassed hauing  
readie to clap vs  
one prepared with  
answered of fut  
bare from vs and

The 27. day in  
still at Northeast

The 28. day t  
cried a sape to cl

The 29. in th  
farre as we coul  
it was an hulke  
nelle perceiuing  
Biaue againe. A  
some men and o  
againe to the cha  
all night in with  
change of wind

The first day  
The 3. being  
ber: and the night  
consoye also, ha  
we could neither  
our course for th  
The same day  
berp wel manne  
we parted frind  
les we suspected

his letters vnto them, wherem among other matters he comforted them with promise, that with all conuenient speede he would prepare a good supply of shipping and men with sufficient of all thinges needefull, which he intended, God willing, should be with them the Sommer following. Which pinnesse and fleet were accordingly prepared in the West countrey at Biddeford vnder the charge of Sir Richard Greeneuil. This fleet being now in a readines only staying but for a faire wind to put to Sea, at the same time there was slyed throughout all England such rejoyce of the wonderfull preparation and munible fleets made by the king of Spaine toynd with the power of the Pope for the inuading of England; that most of the ships of warre then in a readines in any haven in England were stayed for seruice at home: And Sir Richard Greeneuil was personally commanded not to depart out of Coznewall. The voyage for Virginia by these meanes for this yere thus disappointed, the Gouvernour notwithstanding labored for the reliefe of the planters so earnestly, that he obtained two small pinnesses the one of them being of 30. tonnes called the Bzaue, the other of 25, called the Roe, wherein 15. planters and all their provision, with certaine reliefe for those that wintered in the Countrey was to be transported.

Thus the 22. of Aprill 1588. we put ouer the barre at Biddeford in the edge of the Northside of Coznewall, and the same night we came to an anker vnder the Ile of Lundy, where some of our company went on land: After we had roade there about the space of thre howers we wayed anker againe and all that night we bare along the coast of Coznewall.

The next day being S. Georges day and the 23. of Aprill shil bearing along the coast we gaue chase to 4. ships, & boyded them & forced them all to come to anker by vs in a final bay at the lands end, out of these ships we tooke nothing but 3. men, & the same night we weighed & put to Sea.

The 24. day we gaue chase to 2. ships, the one of them being a Scot the other a Breton. These we boyded also & tooke from them whatsoeuer we could find worth the taking, & so let them goe.

The 26. of Aprill we escried a ship on sterne of vs, for whom we strooke our coppe sayle, and stayed for it. By that time he came with vs we saw in his flagge a redb cross: whereupon we helde him for an Englishman, & gaue ouer our preparation to fight with him. But when he was come neere to vs we perceived his flagge not to be a right S. George: whereupon we were somewhat amazed hauing so farre mistaken, for it was a very tall ship, and excellently well appointed & now ready to clasp vs aboord. And it was not now neede to bid euery man to bestirre himselfe, for each one prepared with all speed to fight. In the meane time we hapied them whence they were: They answered of flushing, bound for Barbarie. And they perceiving vs to be Englishmen of warre bare from vs and gaue vs a peece, and we gaue them two peeces and so departed.

The 27. day in the morning we were come with the heigh of cape Finister, the wind being still at Northeast.

The 28. day the wind shifted: about foure of the clocke in the afternoone the same day we escried a sayle to the weather of vs, whom we kept so neere vnto vs as we could all that night.

The 29. in the morning we gaue chase to the same ship being then to the wind of vs almost as farre as we could ken. As soone as our pinnesse came vp to them, the pinnesse fought with the ship, & it was an Hulke of 200. tonnes & more, but after a few great shot bestowed on both sides, the pinnesse perceiving her confort not able to come to ayd her left the Hulke & came roome with the Bzaue againe. At their coming they desired the Captaine & Master of the Bzaue to lend them some men and other things wherof they had neede. Which thinges put aboord the they returned againe to the chase of the Hulke earnestly, and with full purpose to boord her. But the Hulke bare all night in with the coast of Spaine, and by morning were so neere land, that we fearing cyther change of wind or to be calmed gaue ouer the fight and put off to Sea againe.

*May.*

The first day of May being Wednesday the wind came large at Northeast.

The 3. being friday we gaue chase to another tall ship, but it was night before we spake to her: and the night grew darke suddenly in such sort, that we lost sight both of the great ship & of our consort also, hauing thus in the darke lost our pinnesse, & knowing our barke so bad of sayle that we could neither take nor leue, but were rather to be taken or lest of euery ship we met, we made our course for the Ile of Madera, hoping there to find our pinnesse abiding for vs.

The same day following being the 5. of May we spake to a man of warre of Rochel of 60. tons, very well manned & hauey appointed being bound, as he said for Peru: hauing hailed ecb other, we parted friendly in outward they, giuing ecb other a volcy of shot & a great peece: but neuertheless we suspected by which followed: for this Rocheller hauing tak perfect view of our ship, men, &

ordnance, towards cueuing fell on sterne of vs: and alsoone as it was darke left vs, and returned to vs confort which was a cal ship of 100. tonne lying then on hull to weather of vs out of ken, hauing 84. men in her, whereof 50. were smal shot, and 12. muskets, and in the ship 10. peeces of ordnance. This ship being this night certified by her confort that viewed vs, of what force we were and how bad of sayle, this greater shipooke in 20. of the chieftest men that were in the smallest ship, and presently gaue vs chase.

The next morning being Monday and the 6. of May, we escribed the m in the weather of vs, so that it was in vaine to seeke by sight, but rather by sight to helpe our selues. The same day about 2. of the clocke in the afternoone they were come with vs. We hapled them, but they would not answer. Then we waued them to leewardes of vs, and they waued vs with a sword amayne, sitting their sailes to clappe vs aboord, which we perceiuing gaue them one whole side: with one of our great shot their Mastler gonners shoolder was stroken away, and our Mastler gonner with a smal bullet was shot into the head. Being by this time grappled and aboord each of other the fight continued without ceasing one houre and a halfe. In which fight were hurt & laine on both sides 23. of the chieftest men, hauing most of them some 6. or 8. woundes, and some 10. or 12. woundes. Being thus hurt and spoiled they robbed vs of all our victuals, powder, weapons and iouillon, sauing a smal quantity of biscuitt to serue vs scarce for England. Our Mastler and his Mate were deadly wounded, so that they were not able to come forth of their beds. My selfe was wounded twise in the head, once with a sword, and another time with a pike, and hurt also in the side of the buttocke with a shot. Thre of our passengers were hurt also, whereof one had 10. or 12. woundes our Mastler hurt in the face with a pike and thrust quite through the head. Being thus put to our close fights, and also much pressed with cabbens and vnserviceable folkes we could not stirre to handle our weapons nor charge a peece: againe hauing spent all the powder in our flackes and charges which we had present for our defence, they cut downe our netting and entred so many of their men as could stand vpon our poope and forecable, from whence they playd extremely vpon vs with their shot. As thus we stood resolu'd to die in fight, the Captaine of the Frenchmen crid to vs to yeld and no force should be offered. But after we had yeldd, they knowing so many of their best men to be hurt and in danger of present death, began to grow into a new furie, in which they would haue put vs to the sword had not their Captaine charged them, and perswaded them to the contrary. Being at length pacified they fell on all handes to ridding and carrying aboord all the next day vntill 4. of the clocke: at which time by our greedy labing both their owne boate and ours, they sunke the one and split the other by the ships side: by meanes whereof they left vs two cables and ankers, all our ordnance and most part of our sailes, which other wise had ben taken away also. Furthermore they doubting the wind would arise, and night at hand, & a cal ship at that day by meanes of the calme in sight, they came aboord vs with their ship, and tooke in their men that were in vs, who left vs not at their departing any thing worth the carrying away. Being thus ranfacked and vbed as is aforesaid in all foyses, we determined (as our best shift in so hard a case) to returne for England, and caused all our able and unhurt men, to sal to netwe rigging & mending our sailes, tacklings, and such things as were spilled in our fight. By this occasion, God iustly punishing our former threuerie of our euil disposed mariners, we were of force constrained to break of our voyage intended for the reliefe of our Colony left the yere before in Virginia, and the same night to set our course for England, being then about 50. leagues to the Northeast of Madera.

The 7. of May being Wednesday in the forenoone the wind came large at East northeast and we hailed off as farre west and by north as we could vntill the 10. of May, fearing to meete with any moye men of warre, for that we had no maner of weapons left vs.

The 11. the wind larged moye, and the next foith we continued our due course for England.

The 17. of May we thrust our selues west of Visbant, & sounded, but found no ground at 110 fathoms. The same day at night we sounded againe, and found ground at 80. fathoms.

The 20. being Sunday we fell with the coast of Ireland.

The 21. in the forenoone we saw the Northside of Cornwel at the lands end.

The 22. of May we came to an anker betweene Lunday and Darting point neere vnto Chawell key, where we rood vntill the next tyde, and thence we put ouer the barre, and the same day landed at Biddesford.

Our other pinelle whose company we had lost before the last cruell fight, returned also home into Cornwell within fewe weekes after our arrival, without performing our intended voyage for the reliefe of the planters in Virginia, which thereby were not a litle distressed.

The



woyde, none of knownen, & frequentations aforesaid of our grace these presents for authoritie to the and to those his ed, and to their be at any time or without let, intertion, patent, charter, ny maner of meares, Realmes, Dominions, Territories, Seas, maner of other pward, is to be by age, and passage, etie or hurt then, wour, weapons, or may be requisite, trarie therof nor and his sayd aforesaid of euery of his sa their reliance in aucts, Joyntes, Waics, ypoites, and maner of priuilees yelding and pay, and siluer oare, pbert and his sayd or any of them sh by vs, our heires, plynmouth, ac sayd heires and a marchandizes w moyeour, we ha successos, of our authorize the say assignes and eueites, Seas, Rur Gylbert or his al discovered and stred, frequented licence in writin for euery of th one of them, that

The Letters patents of the Queenes Maiestie, graunted to Master  
*Adrian Gylbert and others for the search and discoverie of the*  
Northwell Passage to China.

**H**Elizabeth by the grace of God of England, France, & Ireland Queene, Defender of the faith, &c. To all, to whom these presents shall come, greeting: So farre as our trustie and welbeloued subiect Adrian Gylbert of Sandwidge in the Countie of Deuan, Gentleman, to his great costes and charges, hath greatly & earnestly traualled and sought, and yett both trauel & secke, & by diuers meanes in deuouretch & labourerch, that the Passage vnto China & the Isles of Molluccas, by the Northwellward, Northeastwarde, or Northwarde, vnto which part of partes of the world, none of our Loyal subiects haue hitherto had any traffike of trade, may be discovered, knownen, & frequented by the subiects of this our Realme: Know ye therefore that for the consideracions aforesayd & for diuers other good considerations vs thereunto specially mouing, We of our grace especiall, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, haue giuen and graunted, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, doe giue and graunt free libertie, power, and full authoritie to the sayd Adrian Gylbert, & to any other person by him or his heires to be assigned, and to those his Associates and assistants, whose names are written in a schedule hereunto annexed, and to their heires, and to one assignee of each of them, and ech of their heires at all times, and at any time or times after the date of these presents, vnder our Banners and Ensignes freely, without let, interruption, or restraint of vs, our heires or successors, any lawe, statute, proclamation, patent, charter, or prouiso to the contrary notwithstanding, to sayle, make voyage, and by any manner of meanes to passe and to depart out of this our Realme of Engleterre, or any of our Realmes, Dominions, or Territories into all or any Isles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Rivers, Portes, Bays, Creekes, armes of the Sea, and all Hauens, and all manner of other places whatsoever, that by the sayd Northwellward, Northeastward, or Northward, is to be by him, his associates or assignes discovered, and for and in the sayde sayling, voyage, and passage, to haue and vse so many Ships, Barks, Pinnelles, or other vessels of any quantitie or burthen, with all the furnituz of men, victuals, and all maner of necessary prouision, armour, weapouns, ordnance, targets, and appurtenances whatsoever, as to such a voyage shall be requisite, conuenient or commodious, any lawe, statute, ordinance or prouiso to the contrary thereof notwithstanding. And also we doe giue and graunt to the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his sayd associates, and to such assignee of him, & his heires, and to the heires & one assignee of euery of his sayde associates for ever, full power and absolute authoritie to trade and make their residence in any of the sayd Isles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Rivers, Portes, Bays, and Hauens, and all maner of other places whatsoever, with all commodities, profits, and emoluments in the sayd place or any of them, growing and arising, with all maner of priuileges, prerogatiues, iurisdictions and royalties both by sea and land whatsoever, yielding and paying thereto vnto vs, our heires and successors, the tenth part of all such golde and silver oare, pearles, jewels, and precious stones, of the value thereof, as the sayd Adrian Gylbert and his sayd associates, their heires and assignes, seruants, factors, or workemen, and euery or any of them shall finde, the sayd tenth to be deliuered duely to our Customes, or other officers by vs, our heires or successors thereunto assigned, in the Portes of London, Dartmouth, or Wymmouth, at which three places onely the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his sayd associates, their sayd heires and assignes, shall lade, charge, arriue, and discharge all maner of wares, goods, and marchandizes whatsoever to the sayd voyage, and newe trade belonging or appertaining. And moreover, we haue giuen, graunted, and authorized, and by these presents for vs, our heires and successors, of our grace especiall, certaine knowledge, and meere motion, doe giue, graunt, and authorize the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his sayd associates for ever, their heires, and their sayde assignes and euery of them, that if the aforesayd Isles, Countries, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Rivers, Portes, Bays, or Hauens, or any other of the premises by the sayd Adrian Gylbert or his associates, their heires and their sayd assignes, or any of them to be found by them discovered, and traffiked vnto by any trade as aforesayde, shall be by any other our subiects visited, frequented, haunted, traded vnto or inhabited by the wapes aforesayd, without the speciall licence in writing of the sayd Adrian Gylbert and his associates, and their heires and assignes for ever, or by the most part of them, so that the sayd Adrian Gylbert, his heires or assignes be one of them, that then aswell their Shippe, or Shippes in any such voyage or voyages vled, as all

and singular their goods, wares, and marchandizes, or any other things whatsoever, from or to any of the places aforesaid transported, that so shall presume to visite, frequent, haunt, trade vnto, or inhabit, shall be forfeited and confiscated, ipso facto, the one halfe of the same goods and marchandizes, or other things whatsoever, of the value thereof to be to the vse of vs, our heires or successours, and the other moytie thereof to be to the vse of the said Adrian Gylbert, and his said associates, their heires and assignes for ever: and vnto the said Adrian Gylbert and his said associates, their heires and assignes wee impose, giue, assigne, create and confirme this name peculiar to be named by, to sue and to be sued by, that is to wit, by the name of the Colleagues of the fellowship for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, and them for vs, our heires and successours by that name doe incorporate, and do erect and create as one body corporate to haue continuance for ever. Wherevnto the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his sayd associates, and vnto their heires and their sayd assignes for ever, by name of the Colleagues of the fellowship, for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, we haue giuen, graunted, & confirmed, and doe by these presents giue, graunt, and confirme full power and authoritie from time to time, and at all times hereafter, to make orders, decrees, and enact, constitute and ordeine, and appoint all such ordinances, orders, decrees, lawes, and acts, as the sayd newe corporation of body politique, Colleagues of the fellowship for the discouerie of the Northwest passage, shall thinke meete, necessary, & conuenient, so that they or any of them be not contrary to the lawes of this realme, & of this our present graunt.

And wee by our Royall prerogative, and fullnesse of our authoritie of our grace especiall, certayne knowlidge and meete motion, doe establish, confirme and ratifie all such ordinances, orders, decrees, lawes and acts to be in so full and great power and authoritie, as we, our heires or successours may or can in any such case graunt, confirme, or ratifie. And further for the better encouragement of our louing subjects in this discouerie, wee by our Royall prerogative, and fullnesse of authoritie for vs, our heires and successours, doe giue, graunt, establish, confirme, ordeine, ratifie and allowe by these presents, to the sayd Adrian Gylbert and to his associates, and to the heires and assignes of them and every of them for ever, and to all other person or persons of our louing subjects whatsoever that shall hereafter trauell, saile, discover, or make voyage as aforesayd to any the Isles, Mainelands, Countreies of Territories whatsoever; by vertue of this our graunt to be discovered, that the heires and assignes of them and every of them being bozne within any of the Isles, Mainelands & Countreies, or Territories whatsoever before mentioned, shall haue and enjoy all the priuileges of free Denizens, as persons native bozne within this our Realme of England, or within our allegiance for ever, in such like ample manner and forme, as if they were or had bene bozne and personally resident within our sayde Realme, any lawe, statute, proclamation, custome or vslage to the contrary hereof in any wise notwithstanding. Wherevnto, for the consideration aforesayde by vertue hereof, wee giue and graunt vnto the sayde Adrian Gylbert, his heires and assignes for ever, free libertie, licence and priuilege, that during the space of five yeeres next & immediately ensuing the date hereof, it shall not be lawfull for any person or persons whatsoever, to visite, haunt, frequent, trade, or make voyage to any Isles, Mainelands, Countreies, Regions, Prouinces, Territories, Seas, Riuers, Portes, Bayes, and Hauens, nor to any other Hauens or places whatsoever hitherto not yet discovered by any of our subjects by vertue of this graunt to be traded vnto, without the speciall consent and good liking of the sayd Adrian Gylbert, his heires or assignes first had in writing. And if any person or persons of the associates of the sayde Adrian, his heires or assignes, or any other person or persons whatsoever, see of this discouerie, shall doe any act or acts contrary to the tenour and true meaning hereof, during the space of the sayde five yeeres, that then the partie and parties so offending, they and their heires for ever shall loose (ipso facto) the benefite and priuilege of this our graunt, and shall stand and remaine to all intents and purposes as persons exempted out of this graunt: And further by vertue hereof, we giue & graunt for vs, our heires and successours at all times during the space of five yeeres next ensuing the date hereof, free libertie and licence, and full authoritie to the sayd Adrian Gylbert, and his heires and assignes, that if it shall happen any one or more in any shippe or shippes sayling on their sayde voyage, to become mutinous, seditious, disorderly, or any way vnruely to the puiudice or hinderance of the hope for successe in the attempt of prosecuting of this discouerie or trade intended, to vse or execute vpon him or them so offending, such punishment, correction, or execution as the cause shall be found in iustice to require by the verbit of twelue of the companie twome thereunto, as in such a case appertained: That expresse mention of the certaintie of the menues, or of other giftes or graunts by vs to the sayde Adrian Gylbert and his associates before this time made is not mentioned in these presents, or any other lawe, act, statute, p'ouiso, graunt, or proclamation

tion heretofore  
In wience it  
as Westminster,

## The first



for necessarie  
The seeing foot  
William Sand  
uaille which was  
vnto the rest of  
the acte of 1541

Thus therfore  
uent of June,  
the one being of  
named the Spoon  
are these followin  
mate, John Iane  
William Dicke  
Christopher Gor

The Spooner  
Spinners.

The 7. of June  
our victuals.

The 8. day the  
where we remaine

The 13. the w

The 14. with

The 15. we de

The 16. we w

Shilley where the

and I went abou

all the Islands, ro

thercunto conuer

The 28. in G

The 29. very

The 30. foggy

The first of J

and shot twice of

wound him into

The 2. we ha

The 3. we ha

that they burst ou

ster shot at them

the barres of the

all would not p

tion heretofore made or hereafter to be made to the contrary hereof in any wise notwithstanding. In witness whereof, we have caused these our Letters to be made patents: Witness our selfe at Westminster, the first day of February, in the five and twentie yere of our Reigne.

The first voyage of Master John Daus, vnder taken in June  
1585. for the Discoverie of the North west Passage,

Written by John Ianes Marchant, seruant to the  
worshipfull M. William Sanderfon.



Certaine Honourable personages and worthy Gentlemen of the Court and Countrey, with diuers worshipfull Barchanes of London and of the West Countrey, moued with desire to aduance Gods glory and to seeke the good of their native Countrey, consulting together of the likelihood of the Discoverie of the North west passage, which heretofore had bene attempted, but unhappily giuen ouer by accidents vnllooked for, which turned the enterprisers from their principall purpose, resolved after good deliberation, to put downe their adventures to prouide for necessary shipping, and a fit man to be chiefe Conductour of this so hard an enterpryse. The setting forth of this action was committed by the adventurers, especially to the care of M. William Sanderfon Barchant of London, who was so forward therein, that besides his trauaile which was not small, hee became the greatest adventurer with his purse, and commended vnto the rest of the company one M. John Daus, a man very well grounded in the principles of the arte of Nauigation, for Captaine and chiefe Pilot of this exploye.

Thus therefore all things being put in a readines, wee departed from Dartmouth the seuenth of June, towards the discoverie of the aforesayd North west passage, with two Barks, the one being of 50. tunnes, named the Sunneshyne of London, and the other being 35. tunnes, named the Mooneshyne of Dartmouth. In the Sunneshyne we had 23. persons, whose names are these following, M. John Daus Captaine, William Elston Master, Richard Pope Masters mate, John Iane Barchant, Henry Daue gunner, William Crosse boatwayne, John Bagge, Walter Arthur, Luke Adams, Robert Coxworthe, John Ellis, John Kelly, Edward Helman, William Dicke, Andrew Maddocke, Thomas Hill, Robert Wars Carpenter, William Russel, Christopher Gorney boy: James Cole, Francis Ridley, John Russel, Robert Cornish, Musicians.

The Mooneshyne had 19. persons, William Bruton Captaine, John Ellis Master, the rest Mariners.

The 7. of June the Captaine and the Master bywe out a proposition for the continuance of our victuals.

The 8. day the winde being at South west and West south west, wee put in for Falmouth, where we remained vntill the 13.

The 13. the winde blewe at North, and being saye weather we departed.

The 14. with contrarie winde we were forced to put into Sylley.

The 15. we departed thence, hauing the winde North & by East moderate and saye weather.

The 16. we were diuenc backe againe, and were constrained to arrive at newe Gymbsie at Sylley: here the winde remained contrary 12. dayes, and in that space the Captaine, the Master and I went about all the Islands, and the Captaine did platte out and describe the situation of all the Islands, rocks and harboroughs to the exact vse of Nauigation, with lynes and scale thereunto conuenient.

The 28. in Gods name we departed the winde being Easterly, but calme.

The 29. very foggie.

The 30. foggie.

The first of July we sawe great foye of Porpoises, The Master called for an harping ppon, July and shot twice of thise: sometimes he missed, and at last shot one and strooke him in the side, and wound him into the shippe: when we had him aboyde, the Master sayd it was a darlie dead.

The 2. we had some of the fish sodden, and it did eate as sweete as any mutton.

The 3. we had more in sight, and the Master went to shooote at them, but they were so great, that they burst our ppons, and we lost both fish, ppons, pastime and all: yet neuertheless, the Master shot at them with a pike, and had welnigh gotten one, but he was so strong that he burst off the barres of the pike and went away: then heeooke the boat hooke, and hit one with that, but all would not preuaile, so at length we let them alone.

The

They depart  
from Sylley.



The first we sawe a very great Whale, and every day after we sawe Whales continually.

The 16, 17, 18. we sawe great Hoys of Whales.

The 19. of July we fell into a great whirling and bustling of a tyde, setting to the Northwards and sailing about halfe a league we came into a very calme Sea, which bent to the South southwest: Here we heard a mighty great roaring of the Sea as if it had bene the breach of some South-west, the ayre being so foggie and full of thicke mist, that we could not see the one ship from the other being a very small distance asunder: so the Captaine and the Master being in distrust howe the tyde might see them, caused the Spooneshine to hoyle out her boate and to sound, but they could not finde ground in 300. fathoms and better. Then the Captaine, Master, and I went towards the breach, to see what it should be, giving charge to our gunners that at every glasse they should shoote off a musket shot, to the intent we might keepe our selues from loosing them: Then comming nere to the breach, we met many Islands of yce floating, which had quickly compassed us about: then we went vpon some of them, and did perceiue that all the roaring which we heard, was caused onely by the rouling of this yce together: Our company seeing vs not to returne according to our appointment, left off shooting muskets, and began to shoote fankonets, for they feared some mishap had befallen vs, but before night we came aboye againe with our boat laden with yce, which made very good fresh water. Then wee bent our course towards the North, hoping by that meanes to double the land.

The rouling of the yce together made a great roaring.

Yce turned into water.

The 20. as we sailed along the coast the fogge broke by, and wee discovered the land, which was the most desoynd rocky and mountainous land that euer we sawe: The first sight which we did see was as if it had bene in forme of a sugar loafe, standing to our sight above the cloudes, for that it did shewe out the togge like a white lisse in the skye, the tops altogether couered with snowe, and the shoare beset with yce a league off into the Sea, making such yskome noyse as that it seemed to be the true patterne of desolation, and after the same our Captaine named it, The land of Desolation.

The land of Desolation.

The 21. the winde came Northerly and ouerblewe, so that we were constrained to bend our course South againe, for we perceiued that we were runne into a very deepe Bay, where wee were almost compassed with yce, for we sawe very much toward the North northeast, West and South-west: and this day and this night we cleared our selues of the yce, running South south-west along the shoare.

Upon Thursday being the 22. of this moneth, about thre of the clocke in the morning, we hoyle out our boate, and the Captaine with sixe saylers went towards the shoare, thinking to find a landing place, for the night before we did perceiue the coast to be void of yce to our iudgement, and the same night we were all perswaded that wee had scene a canoa rowing along the shoare, but after wards we fell in some doubt of it, but we had no great reason so to doe. The Captaine rowing towards the shoare, willed the Master to heare in with the land after him, and before he came nere the shoare by the space of a league, or about two miles, hee found so much yce, that he could not get to land by any meanes. Here our mariners put to their lines to see if they could get any fish, because there were so many seales vpon the coast, and the birds did beate vpon the water, but all was in vaine: The water about this coast was very blacke and thicke, like to a filthy standing poole, we sounded and had ground in 120. fathoms, While the Captaine was rowing to the shoare, our men sawe woods vpon the rocks like to the rocks of Newfoundland, but I could not discern them. yet it might be so very well: for we had wood floating vpon the coast every day, and the Spooneshine tooke up a tree at Sea not farre from the coast being sixtie foote of length and fourteene handfulls about, having the roote vpon it: After, the Captaine came aboye the weather being very calme and saye we bent our course toward the South, with intent to double the land.

Very blacke water.

floating wood

The 23. we coasted the land which did lye East northeast and West southwest.

The 24. the winde being very faire at East, we coasted the land which did lie East & West, not being able to come nere the shoare by reason of the great quantitie of yce. At this place, because the weather was somewhat colde by reason of the yce, & the better to encourage our men, their allowance was increased: The Captaine and the Master tooke order that euery melle being five persons, should haue halfe a pound of bread and a kan of beere euery morning to breakfast. The weather was not very colde, but the ayre was moderate like to our April weather in England: when the winde came from the land of the yce it was somewhat colde, but when it came off the sea it was very hott.

Colde by reason of yce.

They sailed South-westward about foure dayes.

The 25. of this moneth we departed from sight of this land, at sixe of the clocke in the morning, directing our course to the North-westward, hoping in Gods mercy to finde our desired

passage, and so on

The 29. of July from vs. The water take some we were nere the coast, went into the land, where were hauing most for water and most a small shoare and Bay. The water the Master and I did vs, made a large hearing them, the likewise. The Canoa about a ship partly to warme others of their cold from our shippe, to see to allure the pdaunting, and mther Islands, and the other being in the shoare, and the imbractings and hands, would sometimes, before he appointed to be led to the sunne and one of them other things as dancing. So the

The next morning to vs to come up to the top of the seales skinn, and king a noyle like slaying in their by the sunne after killed my hand, on this single acc them: we bought skinnes: their but that we were full of buskins of the skinnes with their and thicke thong found in them the ked of them, and of an other: for it was betwene the double dealing, and solaters and co

During the time both fire, spuse where we found discovered, we knew were, because they gaue them to vs

passage, and so continued aboute foure dayes.

The 29. of July, we discovered land in 64. degrees 15. mi. of latitude, bearing North-east from vs. The winde being contrary to goe to the Northward, we bare in with this land to take some view of it, being utterly voyde of the pester of pee, and very temperate. Comming neere the coast, we found many fayre soundes & good roads for shipping, and many great inlets into the land, where by we iudged this land, to be a great number of Islands standing together. Here hauing moored our barke in good order, we went on shoare vpon a small Island, to seeke for water and wood. Vpon this Island we did perceiue that there had bene people: for we found a small shoe and peece of leather sowed with sinewes, and a peece of furre, and wooll like to Beuer. Then we went vpon another Island on the other side of our ships: And the Captaine the Gaffer and I, being got vp to the top of an high rocke, the people of the country hauing espied vs, made a lamentable noyse, as we thought, with great outcries and shriecchings: we hearing them, thought it had bene the howling of wolues. At last I hallowed againe, and they likewise cryed. Then we perceiuing where they stood, some on the shoare, and one rowing in a Canoa about a small Island fast by them, we made a great noyse partly to assure them to vs, and partly to warne our company of them. Whereupon Mr. Brown, and the master of his ship with others of their company, made great haste towards vs, and brought one Musicians with them from our shippe, purposing either by force to rescue vs, if neede should so require, or with curtesie to assure the people. When they came vnto vs, we caused our Musicians to play, our selues dauncing, and making many signes of friendship. At length there came 10. Canoas from the other Islands, and two of them came so neere the shoare where we were, that they talked with vs, the other being in their boats a prettie way off. Their pronounciation was very hollow though the shoare, and their speech such as we could not understand: onely we assured them by friendly imbracings and signes of curtesie. At length one of them pointing vp to the sunne with his hande, would presently strike his breast so hard, that we might here the blowe. This he did many times, before he would any way trust vs. Then John Ellis the master of the Mooneshine, was appointed to vse his best policie to gaine their friendship: who strooke his breast and pointed to the sunne after their order: which when he had diuerse times done, they began to trust him, and one of them came on shoare, to whom we tyed our caps, stockings and gloves, and such other things as then we had about vs, playing with our musicke, and making signes of ioy, and dancing. So the night comming we bade them farewell, and went aboard our barke.

The next morning being the 30. of July, there came 37. Canoas rowing by our ships, calling to vs to come on shoare: Wee not making any great haste vnto them, one of them went vp to the top of the rocke, and leapt and daunced as they had done the day before, shewing vs a seales skinne, and another thing made like a timbrel, which he did beate vpon with a sticke, making a noyse like a small drumme. Whereupon we manned our boats and came to them, they all staying in their Canoas: we came to the water side where they were: and after we had swoyne by the sunne after their fashion, they did trust vs. So I shooke hands with one of them, and hee killed my hand, and we wer: very familiar with them. Wee were in so great credit with them vpon this single acquaintance, that wee could haue any thing they had. Wee bought five Canoas of them: we bought their clothes from their backs, which were all made of seales skins and birdes skinnes: their buskins, their hose, their gloves, all being commonly sowed and well dyessed: so that we were fully perswaded, that they haue diuers artificers among them. Wee had a poire of buskins of them full of fine wooll like beuer. Their apparell for beate, was made of birdes skinnes with their feathers on them. Wee sawe among them leather dyessed like glouers leather, and thicke thongs like white leather of a good length. Wee had of their darts and oares, and found in them that they would by no meanes displeas vs, but would giue vs whatsoever we asked of them, and would be satisfied with whatsoever we gaue them. They tooke great care one of another: for when we had bought their boates, then two other would come and carle him away betweene them that had bought vs his. They are a very tractable people, voyde of craft or double dealing, and easie to be brought to any ciuillitie or good order: but wee iudge them to be Idolaters and to worship the Sunne.

During the time of our abode among these Islands, we found reasonable quantitie of wood, both fere, spruce and juniper: which whither it came floating any great distance to these places where we found it, or whither it grew in some great Islands neere the same place by vs not yet discovered, we know not. But wee iudge that it groweth there further into the lande then wee were, because the people had great store of darts & oares, which they made none account of, but gaue them to vs for small trifles, as poynts and peece of paper. Wee sawe about this coaste

And in 64.  
degrees 15. mi.

The southe  
where our  
ships did ride,  
was called  
Cuberts  
sound.

Musicians.

The people of  
the country  
came and con-  
ferred with our  
men.

Their musick.

Great familie  
attire with the  
Inalags.

Diuers sorts  
of wood.

They may  
make much  
travail, if they  
had means  
how to use it.  
It is coult  
glasse.  
It is like  
Coyntines.

marvelous great abundance of seales skulling together like skulls of small fish. Wee found no fresh water among these Islands, but only snow water, whereof we found great pools. The cliffs were all of such oare as *Sp. Froditus* brought from *meta Incognita*. Wee had divers shewes of *Stupe* of *Huskout* glasse shining not altogether unlike to *Chyrtal*. Wee founde an herbe growing upon the rocks, whose fruite was sweete, full of red ioyce, & the ripe ones were like coyntines. Wee found also birch & willow growing like shrubs to the ground. These people have great store of furs as we iudge. They made shewes unto vs  $\text{p} 30$ . of this present, which was the second time of our being with them, after they perceived we would have skins, & furs, that they would goe into the country & come againe the next day; with such things as they had; but this night the wind comming faire the Captaine & the master would by no means detract the purpose of our discovery. And so the last of this moneth about 4. of the clocke in the morning, in Gods name wee set saile, and were at that day becalmed upon the coaste.

August.  
Land in 66.  
degre. 40. min.

The 1. of August we had a faire wind & so proceeded towards the north west for our discouerie. The 6. of August we discovered land in 66. de. 40. min. of latitude: although they sayd from  $\text{p}$  pester of pce: we ankered in a very faire roade, vnder a very hyane mount, the clifffes whereof were as orient as gold. This mount was named mount Raleigh: the roade where our shipp lay at anker was called Totnes Rode. The sounde which did compass the mount was named Greter sound: the foze land towards the North, was called Dyers Cape. The foze land toward the south was named Cape Wallingham. So soone as we were come to an anker in Totnes Rode vnder mount Raleigh, we espied 4. white beares at the foote of the mount. We supposing them to be goates or wolues, manned our boats and went towards them: but when wee came neere the shoare, we found them to be white beares of a monstrous bignesse: we being dreisous of fresh victual and the shoyt, began to assault them, & I being on land one of them came down the hill right against me: my peece was charged with halfe shot and a bulle. I discharged my peece and shot him in the necke: he roared a litle andooke the water straight, making small account of his hurt. Then we followed him to our boate, & killed him w boare speares, & two moze that night. We found nothing in their matres, but we iudged by their dung, that they fed vpon grass, because it appeared in all respects like the dung of an horse, wherein we might very plainly see the very strawes.

The 7. we went on shoare to another beare which lay alight vpon the top of an Island vnder mount Raleigh, & when we came by to him he lay fast a sleepe. I leuied at his head, & the stone of my peece gaue no fire, with that he looked by and laid down his head againe: then I shot being charged with 2. bullets and strooke him in the head: he being but amazed fel backwardes, where vpon we ran al vpon land with boze speares and thrust him in the bodie: yet for all that he grype away our boze speares and went towards the water, and as he was going downe he came backe againe. Then our master shot his boze speare and strooke him in the head, and made him to take the water, and swynne into a cove fast by, where he killed him and brought him aboard. The breadth of his foze foote from one side to the other, was 14. ynches ouer. They were very fat so as we were constrained to cast the fat away. Wee saw a rauen vpon mount Raleigh. Wee found withies also growing lowe like shrubs and flowers like pyrimoles in the sayd place. The coast is very mountaynous, altogether without wood, grasse or earth, and is only huge mountaines of stone, but the hardest stone that euer we sawe. The ayre was very moderate in this country.

The 8. we departed from mount Raleigh coasting along the shoare, which lieth south south west, and east north east.

The 9. our men fel in dislike of their allowance, because it was so small as they thought. Whereupon we made a newe proportion: euery messe being five to a messe should haue 4. pound of bread a day: 2. wine quarts of bere: 6. newland fishes: and the fish vapes a gill of pease moze: so we restrayned them from their butter and cheese.

The eleuenth we came to the most southerly cape of this lande, which we named the Cape of Gods mercy: as being the place of our first entrance for the discouery. The weather being very foggie we coasted this Northland: at length when it brake vp, we perceived that we were shotte into a very fayre entrance of passage, being in some places 20. leagues broad, and in some 30. altogether voyde of any pester of pce, the weather very tollerable, and the water of the very colour, nature and qualitee of the mayne ocean, which gaue vs the greater hope of our passage. Having sayled North west fixte leagues in this entrance wee discovered certaine Islandes standing in the middell thereof, hauing open passage on both sides. Whereupon our shippes deuised themselves, the one sayling on the North side, the other on the South side, of the sayde Isles, where wee stayed five dayes hauing the winde at South east very foggie and soule weather.

The

The 14. we were like a wall, and fast

The 15. we had soze we went on the boate very gently killed two: and all them to be came deaples: we found sleds made like like inch boards sleds three heads

The 17. we were very small rifles, as of bone, beavs hauchings. The coast marble full of washing steame and hid

Our Captaine this place was all Secondly: the Thirdly we came to come from

Also as we were came, vpon the first the flood which was

Fifthly, in sayle thoms, sayre grapes so that hard aboard

Lastly, it did enter, so as we could

The 18. and 19. garde of their cret to make further

The 20. the weather for proceeding an

The 21. the weather south shoare we fast but Islands.

The 22. of this constrained to see sayre sound, and a manifest signes of place we sawe 4. iudged by the weather

The 24. in the purposing by the

The 26. we were home wards, vnder

The 20. of September we could get neere the next day: but sight of the Shoore

The 13. about in two houres at

The 27. of the Schoone and lost it

The 30. of September come in not two

The 14. we went on shoare and found signes of people, for we found stones layde by together like a wall, and saw the skull of a man or a woman.

The 15. we heard dogs howle on the shoare, which we thought had bene Wolves, and therefore we went on shoare to kil them. When we came on lande, the dogs came presently to our boate very gently, yet we thought they came to pray vpon vs, and therefore we shot at them and killed two: and about the necke of one of them we found a letheren collar, wherupon we thought them to be tame dogs. There were twentie dogs like mastiues with pycke eares and long bushy eayles: we found a bone in the pyzels of their dogs. Then wee went farther and founde two sleds made like ours in Englande. The one was made of firre, spuse and oken boards, sawen like inch boards: the other was made all of whale bone, and there hung on the toppes of the sleds thre heads of beastes, which they had killed. We saw here, larkes, rauen, and partridges.

The 17. we went on shoare, and in a litle thing made like an ouen with stones, I found many small cristles, as a small canoa made of wood, a picke of wood made like an image, a bird made of bone, beades hauing small holes in one end of them to hang about their necks, and other small things. The coast was very barbarous without wood or grasse. The rockes were very faire like marble full of baynes of diuerse coulours. We found a seale which was killed not long before, being skene and hid vnder stones.

Our Capitaine and master searched still for probabilities of the passage, and first found, that this place was all Islands with great sounds passing betweene them.

Secondly, the water remained of one colour with the mayne ocean without altering.

Thirdly we saw to the west of those Isles thre or foure Whales in a skul, which they iudged to come from a westerly sea, because to the Eastward, we saw not any whale.

Also as we were rowing into a very great sound lying south-west, from whence these whales came, vpon the suddaine there came a violent counter checke of a tide from the south-west against the flood which we came with, not knowing from whence it was maintayned.

Fiftly, in sayling 20. leagues within the mouth of this entrance we had sounding in 50. fathoms, saye graye sand, & the further we ran into the westwards, the deeper was the water, so that hard aboord the shoare among these yles, we could not haue ground in 330. fathoms.

Lastly, it did ebbe and flowe 6. or 7. fathome vp and downe, the flood comming from diuerse parts, so as we could not perceine the chiefe maintenance thereof.

The 18. and 19. our Capitaine and Master determined what was best to doe, both for the safegarde of their credites and satisfiing of the aduenturers, and resolved, if the weather brake vp, to make further search.

The 20. the winde came directly against vs, so they altered their purpose, and reasoned both for proceeding and returning.

The 21. the wind being North-west, we departed from these Islands, and as we coasted the south shoare we sawe many saye sounds, wherby we were perswaded, that it was no firme land but Islands.

The 23. of this month the wind came south-east very stormy and soule weather. So we were contrayned to secke harborowes vpon the south-east of this entrance, where wee fell into a very saye sound, and ankered in 25. fathoms greene ope sand. Here we went on shoare, where we had manifest signes of people, where they had made their fire, and laide stones like a wall. In this place we sawe 4. very faire faulcons, and M. Byrton took from one of them his pray, which was iudged by the wings and legs to be a Supte, for the head was eaten off.

The 24. in the afternoone, the wind comming somewhat faire wee departed from this roade, purposing by Gods grace to returne for England.

The 26. we departed from sight of the Northland of this entrance, directing our course homeward, until the tenth of the next month.

The 10. of September we fell with The land of desolation, thinking to goe on shoare, but we could get nearer a good harborow. That night we put to sea againe thinking to search it the next day: but this night arose a very great storme, and separated our ships so that we lost the sight of the Moonshine.

The 13. about noone (having cryed at the night before with a goose wing) we set saile, & within two houres after, we had sight of the moonshine againe: this day we departed from this land.

The 27. of this month wee fell with sight of England. This night wee had a marvellous storme and lost the Moonshine.

The 30. of September wee came into Dartmouth where wee found the Moonshine being come in not two houres before.

Timber

salween.

Folwe.

An image.

Probabilities  
for the passage.The water  
came into any  
bay before. or  
after, but the  
waters colour  
was altered  
very blackish.

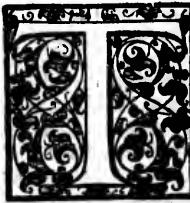
Faulcons.

Their returne.

September.

They came  
from the land  
of Desolation  
to England, in  
14. dayes.

The second voyage attempted by Master Iohn Davis  
with others, for the discoverie of the Northwest  
passage, in Anno 1586.



**T**he seventh day of May, I departed from the port of Dartmouth for the discovery of the Northwest passage, with a ship of an hundred and twentie tunnes, named the *Permaype*, a barge of 60. tunnes, named the *Sunneshine*, a barge of 35. tunnes named the *moonelight*, and a *Pinnace* of ten tunnes named the *North Starre*.

And the 15. of June I discovered land in the latitude of 60. degrees, and in longitude from the meridian of London westward 47. degrees, mightily pestered with yce, and snow, so that there was no hope of landing: the yce lay in some places 10. leagues, in some 20. and in some 50. leagues off the shoare, so that we were constrained to beat into 57. degr. to vobule the same, and to recover a free sea, which through Gods favourable mercy we at length obtained.

The nine and twentieth of June, after many tempestuous stormes, we againe discovered lande, in longitude from the Meridian of London, 58. degrees 30. minutes, and in latitude, 64. being East from vs: into which course sich it pleased God by contrarie winde to force vs. I thought it very necessary to beate in with it, and there to set up our *Pinnace*, provided in the *Permaype* to be our scoure for this discoverie, and so much the rather, because the yce before I had bene in the same place, and founde it very convenient for such a purpose, well stoyed with floe woode, and possessed by a people of tractable conversation: so that the nine and twentieth of this moneth we arrived within the Isles which lay before this lande, lying North North-west, and South South-east, wee knowe not howe farre. This lande is very high, and mountainous, having before it on the West side a mightie compaign of Isles full of saye soundes, and harbours. This land was very little troubled with snowe, and the sea altogether void of yce.

The shippes being within the soundes we sent our boates to searche for shole water, where wee might anker, which in this place is very harde to finde: and as the boate went sounding and searching, the people of the country having espied them, came in their Canoes towards them with many shoutes and cries: but after they had espied in the boate, some of our compaign that were the yere before heere with vs, they presently rowed to the boate, and tooke holde in the oare, and hung about the boate with such comfortable ioy, as woulde require a long discourse to be uttered: they came with the boates to our shippes, making signes that they knewe all those, that the yere before had bene with them. After I perceived their ioy, and small feare of vs, my selfe with the merchants, and others of the company went a shoare bearing with me twentie knives: I had no sooner landed, but they lept out of their Canoes, and came running to mee, and the rest, and embraced vs with many signes of hartie welcome: at this present there were eightene of them, and to each of them I gave a knife: they offered skinnes to mee for reward, but I made signes that it was not solde but given them of curtesie: and so dismissed them for that time, with signes that they shoulde returne againe after certain houres.

The next day with all possible speede the *Pinnace* was landed, upon an Isle there to be finished to serve our purpose for the discoverie, which Isle was so convenient for that purpose, as that we were very well able to defend our selves against many enemies. During the time that the *Pinnace* was there setting up, the people came continually unto vs, sometime an hundred Canoes at a time, sometime fourtie, thirtie, more and lesse, as occasion served. They brought with them seal skinnes, stagg skinnes, white bares, seal fith, samon peale, smal codde, bry caplin, with other fish, and bydes, such as the country did yeelde.

My selfe still desirous to have a farther search of this place, sent one of the shipboates to one part of the land, and my selfe went to another parte to searche for the habitation of this people, with straight commaundement that there should be no iniurie offered to any of the people, neither any gunne shot.

The boates that went from me found the tents of the people made with seal skinnes set by upon timber, wher in they founde great stoye of dried Caplin, being a litle fish no bigger then a pulchard: they founde baggs of trayne oyle, many litle images cut in wood, seal skinnes in canubs, with many other such trifles, whereof they diminished nothing.

They

They also found earth and grass, (which in the narrow they knew not how it offered a large in and there leaving into the country, by as large and limet

The third of June another found, which length they made the shoare, and as I returned againe towards vs, and to the men leape with they to wrestling, we for our men that were

The fourth of June I do very willingly wrong and skillfull Ioye himselfe with skinnes, having a with small slender unbearde, great returne to make a eth Ylyours, and these people are the baye of an estate

and in their boats

inhabitations, to be

Being among a kinde a fire, the hole he puts the end

of a suter, which done, with

these things, by they were best

in which they by

willed one of my them that we did

but marvellous of our lenity to shew

boat from her ster they stole our oare

ny and matters by and to leave the co

them, and immet with speed they

they came againe They brought vs

speaking: which simplicity, and w

pamp should be the time to make the

bylike salt water, the nature of the

his boat upon the have to be and at

They also found came miles within the snowy mountains a plaine champion countrey, with earth and grasse, such as my moony and waste grounds of England are: they went by into a river (which in the narrowest place is two leagues broad) about ten leagues, finding it still to continue they knew not how far: but I with my company rooke another river, which although at the first it offered a large inlet, yet it proved but a deepe bay, the end whereof in foure houres I attained, and there leauing the boat well manned, went with the rest of my company three or foure miles into the countrey, but found nothing, nor saw any thing, save onely gripes, saucns, and small birds, as larkes and jamer.

The third of July I manned my boat, and went with fifty canoes attending vpon me by into another sound, where the people by signes willed me to goe, hoping to finde theys habitacion: at length they made signes that I should go into a warme place to sleepe, at which place I went on shore, and ascended the toppe of an high hill to see into the countrey, but perceiving my labor vaine, I returned againe to my boat, the people still following me, and my company very diligent to attend vs, and to helpe vs by the rocks, and likewise downe: at length I was desirous to haue our men leape with them, which was done, but our men did ouerleape them: from leaping they went to wrestling, we found them strong and nimble, and to haue skill in wrestling, for they cast some of our men that were good wrestlers.

The fourth of July we lauched our pinnell, and had forty of the people to helpe vs, which they did very willingly: at this tyme our men againe wrestled with them, and found them as before, strong and skilfull. This fourth of July the master of the Hermaid went to certaine Islands to looke himselfe with wood, where he found a graue with diuers buried in it, onely covered with scale skinnes, hauing a crosse laid ouer them. The people are of good stature, well in body proportioned, with small slender hands and feet, with broad visage, and small eyes, wide mouthes, the most part vnbearded, great lips, and close toged. They cutome is as often as they go from vs, till at their returne to make a new tree, in this sort, holding his hand vpon the Sunne, with a loud voice cryeth Yiyauote, and smiteth his heelt, with like signes being promised laterie, he giueth credit. These people are much giuen to bleed, and therefore stoppe they noses with deere haype, or the haype of an eland: They are idolaters, and haue images great loze, which they were about them, and in theyr boats, which we suppose they worship. They are witches, and haue many kindes of Inchantments, which they often vse, but to small purpose, thanks be to God.

Being among them at thye fourth of July, one of them making a long oration, beganne to kindle a fire, in this manner: he took a piece of a boord, wherein was a hole halfe the way: into that hole he puts the end of a rodd like unto a bedstaffe, witting the end thereof in traine, and in fashion of a turner, with a piece of lether, by his violent motion doth very speedly produce fire: which done, with turfes he made a fire, into which with many words, and strange gestures, he put diuers things, which we supposed to be sacrifice: my selfe and diuers of my company standing by, they were desirous to haue me go into the smoke, I willed them likewise to stand in the smoke, in which they by no meanes would do, I then tooke one of them, and thrust him into the smoke, and willed one of my company to tread out the fire, & to spurne it into the sea, which was done to the wretched them that we did contemne theyr sojourn. These people are very simple in all theyr conuersation, but maruellous theuith, especially for iron, which they haue in great accord. They began though our lenity to shew theyr vile nature: they began to cut our cables: they cut away the Spoonlightes boat from her sterne, they cut our cloth where it lay to appe, though we did carefully looke vnto it, they stole our oares, a caluer, a boare speare, a sword, with diuers other things, wherat the company and matters being grieued, for our better security, desired me to dissolve this new friendship, and to leaue the company of these theuith miscreants: wherupon there was a caluer shot among them, and immediatly vpon the same a faulton, which strange noice did loze amaze them, so that with speed they departed: notwithstanding theyr simplicity is such, that within ten houres after they came againe to vs to intereat peace: which being promised, we againe fell into a great league. They brought vs scale skinnes, and sammon peale, but seeing iron, they could in no wise forbear stealing: which when I perceiued it did but minister vnto me an occasion of laughter, to see theyr simplicity, and willed that in no case they should be any more hardly used, but that our owne company should be the more vigilant to keepe theyr things, supposing it to be very hard in so short tyme to make them know theyr eris. They eat all theyr meat raw, they liue most vpon fish, they drinke salt water, and eat grasse and ice with delight: they are neuer out of the water, but liue in the nature of fishes, but onely when dead sleepe takerh them, and then vnder a warme rocke, laying his boat vpon the land, he lyeth downe to sleepe. Theyr weapons are all darts, but some of them haue bowes and arrowes, and slings. They make nets to take their fish, of the same of a whale: they

is goodly river.

is grane with a crosse laid ouer. The Carrans and people of Japon are all of small eyes.

Theyr manner of kindling fire like to theirs in America.

Great theuith

Theyr rude diet.

Theyr weapons. Strange news.

do all they things very artificially; and it should seeme that these simple cheerefull Islanders have warre with those of the maine, for many of them are sore wounded, which wounds they received upon the maine land, as by signes they gave vs to vnderstand. We had among them copper ore, blacke copper, and red copper: they pronouice they language very hollow, and deepe in the throat; these wordes following we learned from them.

Copper ore.

The island  
guage.

Kesinyoh, Eat some.  
Madlycoyte, Huske,  
Aginyoh, Gofetch,  
Yliaoure, I meane no harme,  
Ponameg, A boat.  
Paooyck, An oare.  
Afanock, A dart.  
Sawymeg, A knife.  
Vderah, A nose,  
Aoh, Iron.  
Blete, An eye.  
Vnuicke, Giue it.  
Tuckloak, A stagge of ellan,  
Panygmah, A needle.  
Aob, The sea.  
Mysacoah, Wash it.  
Lethickfaneg, A scale skinne.  
Canyglow, Kisse me.  
Vynera, My soune.  
Acu, Shot.

Conah, Lease.  
Maatuke, Fish.  
Sambah, Below.  
Maconmeg, Will you haue this  
Cocah, Go to him.  
Aba, Fallen downe.  
Icune, Come hither.  
Awenneyc, Powder.  
Nugo, No.  
Tucktodo, A fogge.  
Lechikfah, A skime.  
Maccoah, A dart.  
Sugnacoan, A coat.  
Gounah, Come downe.  
Safobneg, A bracelet.  
Vgnake, A trougue.  
Ataneg, A scale.  
Macuah, A beard.  
Pignagogah, A sheed.  
Quoylah, Giue it to me,

The seventh of July, being very desirous to search the habitation of this countrey, I went my selfe with our new pinnelle into the body of the land, thinking it to be a firme continent, and passing by a very large riuer, a great flate of lande,ooke me, whereby we were constrained to seeke succor for that night, which being had, I landed with the most part of my company, and went to the topp of a high mountaine, hoping from thence to see into the countrey: but the mountaines were so many and so mighty, as that my purpose prevailed not: whereupon I againe returned to my pinnelle, and willing diuers of my company to gather muskes for my supper, whereof in this place there was great store, my selfe hauing espied a very strange sight, especially to me that neuer before sawe the like, which was a mighty whirlewinde taking vp the water in very great quantitie, furiously mounting it into the ayre, which whirlewinde was not for a puffe of blast, but continuall, for the space of thre houres, with very little intermission, which sight it was in the course that I should passe, we were constrained that night to take vp our lodging vnder the rocks.

Spitules.

A strange  
whirlewinde.

The next morning the storme being broken vp, we went forward in our attempte, and sailed into a mighty great riuer directly into the body of the land, and in bylefe, found it to be no firme land, but huge, waste, and desert flles with mighty sounds, and inlets passing betweene sea and sea. Whereupon we returned towards our shippes, and landing to stoppe a fowle, we found the buriall of these miserants, we found of they fish in bagges, plaices, and caplin dyed, of which we tooke onely one bagge, and departed. The ninth of this moneth we came to our shippes, where we found the people desirous in theyr fashion, of friendshippe and barter: our mariners complained heauily against the people, and said that my lenity and friendly vsing of them gaue them stomache to mischefe: for they haue stolen an anker from vs, they haue cut our cable very dangerously, they haue cut our boats from our sterne, and now since your departure, with slings they spare vs not with stones of halfe a pound weight: will you still indure these iniuries? it is a shame to beare them, I desired them to be content, and said I doubted not but all should be well. The tenth of this moneth I went to the boze, the people following me in theyr canoas: I tolled them on boze, and led them with much curtesie, and then departed aboard, they following me, and my company. I gaue some of them bracelets, and caused seuen or eight of them to come aboard, which they did willingly, and some of them went into the topp of our shippe: and thus curiously v sing them. I let them depart: the Sunne was no looner downe, but they began to practise theyr deuillish nature, and with slings they throw stones very fiercely into the Spoonelight, & strake one of her men, the boatswaine that be surer they withall: wherat being moued, I changed my curtesie, & grew to hatred, my selfe in

Great Islands

Slings.

my owne boat  
diuers shot but to

The 11 of this  
came to me to the  
till we had his an  
was one of the flu  
he came crying III  
a knife for the in  
among vs: then v  
that he should be  
upon we weped, o  
our ship close abo  
Yliaour, which w  
five wordes vnto  
like, departed, as v  
and bowing of hi  
mong vs: I gra  
dure the colde, of  
would make oka  
I tooke when I

All this while  
creped, who dyed  
sea, with praise gr

The 17 of this  
ty and strange qu  
and being with hal  
as that we suppo  
we were certain  
ring the huge qu  
speake any furthe  
place we had be

We coasted  
post: the ayre in  
was banished of  
and compassed  
peere I found che

Our men the  
celle: wherupon  
snelte, and with  
with the preseru  
and fatherlesse cl  
to regard they  
great hope of ce  
eife. I thought  
into discrecie: v  
Shailty to moon  
tion of curcy  
bery strong and  
ler barke, especi  
adventurers, b  
with diuers oth  
men, & to proce  
ice, & bare East  
uorable winde  
33 min. & in lo

The second  
speed we graue  
while the barke

my owne boat well manned, with shot, and the barks boat like wise pursued them, & gaue them diuers shot but to small purpose, by reason of theyr swift rowing: so small content we returned.

The 11 of this moneth there came five of them to make a new truce the maister of the Admirall came to me to the use of theyr comming, and desired to haue them taken, & kept as prisoners untill we had his anker againe: but when he saw that the chiefe ringleader, & maister of mischiefc was one of the five, he then was vehement to execute his purpose, so it was determined to take him: he came crying I liaout, & striking his brest offered a payre of gloves to sell, the maister offered him a knife for them: so two of them came to vs, the one was not touched, but the other was soone captiue among vs: then we pointed to him & his fellows for our anker, which being had, we made signes that he should be set at liberty: within one houre that he came aboard, the winde came fayre, whereupon we weped, and set sail, and so brought the fellow with vs: one of his fellows still following our ship close aboard, talked with him, & made a kinde of lamentation, we still vnting him well, with Y liaout, which was the common course of curtesie. At length this fellow aboard vs spake foure or five wordes vnto the other, and claped his two handes vpon his face, whereupon the other doing the like, departed, as we suppose, with heauy chere. We iudged the covering of his face with his handes, and bowing of his body downe, signified his death. At length he became a pleasant companion among vs. I gaue him a new sute of frize after the English fashion, because I saw he could not endure the colde, of which he was very tofull, he trimmed vp his darts, and all his fishing toles, and would make okam, and set his hand to a ropes end vpon occasion. He liued with the dy caplin that I tooke when I was searching in the pinnelle, and did eat by Newland fish.

One of the  
people taken,  
which after  
ward,

All this while, God be thanked, our people were in very good health, onely one young man excepted, who dyed at sea the foureteenth of this moneth, and the fiftent h croozing to the order of the sea, with praise giuen to God by seruite, was cast ouerboard.

The 17 of this moneth, being in the latitude of 63 degrees 8 minuts, we set vpon a most mighty and strange quantity of ice, in one intyre masse, so bigge, as that we knew not the limits thereof, and being withall so very high, in foyme of a land, with bayes and capes, and like high cliffes land, as that we supposed it to be land, and therefore sent our pinnelle off to discover it: but at her returne we were certainly informed that it was onely ice, which byed great admiration to vs all, considering the huge quantity thereof, incredible to be reposed in truth as it was, and therefore I omit to speake any further thereof. This onely, I thinke that the like before was neuer seene, and in this place we had very thicke and strong currants.

We coasted this mighty masse of ice vntill the 30 of July, finding it a mighty barre to our purpose: the ayre in this time was so contagious, and the sea so yestered with ice, as that all hope was banished of proceeding: for the 24 of July all our shottowes, ropes, and sailcs were so frozen, and compacted with ice, onely by a grosse fogge, as seemed to me moze then strange, such the last yeere I found this sea feat and nauigable, without impediments.

The nature of  
fogges,

Our men though this extremity began to grow sicke & feeble, and withal hopelesse of good success: whereupon very orderly, with good discretion they intreated me to regard the state of this business, and withall aduised me, that in conscience I ought to regard the safety of mine owne life, with the preservation of the yrs, & that I should not through my ouerboldnesse leaue their widowes and fatherlesse children to giue me bitter curses. This matter in conscience did greauly moue me to regard theyr estates: yet considering the excellency of the business, if it might be attained, the great hope of certainty by the last yeeres discovery, & that there was yet a third way not put in practice, I thought it would grow to my great disgrace, if this action by my negligence should grow into discredit: whereupon seeking helpe from God the fountaine of all mercies, it pleased his diuine Spacitly to moue my heart to proferre that which I hope shall be to his glory, and to the contentation of euery Christian minde. Whereupon falling into consideration, that the Spermaid, albeit a very strong and sufficient ship, yet by reason of her burden, not so comenient and nimble as a smaller barke, especially in such desperate hazards: further hauing in account her great charge to the aduenturers, being at 100 li. the moneth: & that in doubtfull seruice, all the perillcs considered, with diuers other things, I determined to furnish the Spoonelight with bricquialling & sufficient men, & to proere in this action as God should direct me: whereupon I altered our course from the ice, & bare East southeast to recover the next shore where this thing might be performed: so with fauorable winde it pleased God that the first of August we discovered the land in latitude 66 deg. 33 min. & in longitude from the meridian of London 70 deg. void of trouble without shottow of ice.

Aug 1.

The second of August we harboured our selues in a very excellent good road, where with all speed we graued the Spoonelight, and reuertualled her: we searched this country with our pinnelle while the barke was trimming, which William Eaton did: he found all this land to be only islands,



Great heat.

with a sea on the East, a sea on the West, and a sea on the North. In this place we found it very hot, and we were very much troubled with a sie which is called Musketta, for they did sting grievously. The people of this place at our first coming in caught a seale, and with bladders fast tied to him sent him vnto vs with the floud, so as he came righe with our shippes, which we tooke as a friendly present from them.

The first of August I went with the two maisters and others to the toppe of a hill, and by the way William Ellison espied thre Canoas lying vnder a rocke, and went vnto them: there were in them skinnes, darts, with diuers superstitious toys, whereof we dimmished nothing, but left vpon euery boat a silke point, a bullet of lead, and a pinne. The next day being the first of August, the people came vnto vs without feare, and did barter with vs for skinnes, as the other people did: they differ not from the other, neither in their canoas nor apparell, yet is their pronuntiation more plaine then the others, and nothing hollow in the throat. Our miscreant aboord vs kept himselfe close, and made shew that he would faine haue another companion. Thus being prouided, I departed from this land the twelfth of August, at fixe of the clocke in the morning, where I left the Permaid at an anker: the foureteenth sailing West about fiftie leagues, we discouered land, being in latitude 66 degrees 19 minuts: this land is 70 leagues from the other from whence we came. This foureteenth day from nine a clocke at night till thre a clocke in the morning, we anchored by an Island of ice, twelue leagues off the shoare, being moored to the ice.

Great hope of a passage.

The sixteenth day at thre a clocke in the morning we departed from this land to the South, and the eighteenth of August we discouered land Northwest from vs in the morning, being a very fayre promontory, in latitude 65 degrees, hauing no land on the South. Here we had great hope of a thorough passage.

A great current to the West.

This day at thre a clocke in the afternoone we againe discouered land Southwest and by South from vs, where at night we were becalmed. The nineteenth of this month at noone, by obseruation, we were in 64 degrees 20 minuts. From the eighteenth day at noone vnto the nineteenth at noone, by precise ordinary care, we had sailed 15 leagues South and by West, yet by art and more exact obseruation, we found our course to be Southwest, so that we plainly perceived a great current striking to the West.

Islands.

This land is nothing in sight but Isles, which increaseth our hope. This nineteenth of August at fixe a clocke in the afternoone, it began to snow, and so continued all night with foule weather, and much winde, so that we were constrained to lie at full all night five leagues off the shore: In the morning, being the twentieth of August, the fogge and storme breaking by, we bare in with the land, and at nine a clocke in the morning we anchored in a very fayre and safe road and locket for all weathers. At tenne of the clocke I went on shore, to the toppe of a very high hill, where I perceived that this land was Islands: at foure of the clocke in the afternoone we weighed anker, hancing a fayre North northeast winde, with very fayre weather: at six of the clocke we were cleere without the land, and so shaped our course to the South, to discouer the coast, whereby the passage may be through Gods mercy found.

Hope of a passage.

We coasted this land till the eight and twentieth of August, finding it still to continue towards the South, from the latitude of 67 to 57 degrees: we found marvellous great store of birds, gulls & me wes, incredible to be reposed, whereupon being calme weather, we lay one glasse vpon the lee, to proue for fish, in which space we caught 100 of cod, although we were but badly prouided for fishing, not being our purpose. This eight and twentieth, hauing great distrust of the weather, we arriued in a very fayre harbor in the latitude of 56 degrees, and sailed ten leagues into the same, being two leagues broad, with very fayre woods on both sides: in this place we continued vntill the first of September, in which time we had two very great stormes. I landed, and went six miles by ghesse into the country, and found that the woods were stre, pine apple, alder, yew, witchy, and birch: here we saw a blacke beare: this place yeeldeth great store of birds, as fezzant, partridge, Barbary hennes, as the like, wilde geese, ducks, blacke birds, ieyes, thypulbes, with other kindes of small birds. Of the partridge and fezzant, we killed great store with bowe and arrowes: in this place, at the harbor mouth, we found great store of cod.

Fair woods.

A store of cod.

The first of September at tenne a clocke, wee set saile, and coasted the shoare with very faire weather. The third day being calme, at noone we str oke saile, and let fall a cadge anker, to proue whether we could take any fish, being in latitude 54 degrees 30 minuts, in which place we found great abundance of cod, so that the hooke was no sooner ouerboord, but presently a fish was taken. It was the largest and best reket fish that euer I saw, and diuers other men that were with me sayd that they neuer saw a moze suauile or better skull of fish in their liues: yet had they seene great abundance.

The

The fourth of  
month great store  
North of this pla  
passing betwee  
we greatly desire  
fashion fine land

The first of  
purposed to depa  
fish which we pur  
people of this co  
which when we  
latter bare into the  
the noice wherof  
with their arrow  
doubt, onely one  
creants neuer off

This present  
struous storme, th  
extreme. We w  
anker brake, so th  
Yet in this deepe  
vs a fayre lee, so  
God manifestly  
an olde sunke. T  
berp forcible, wh  
The eleuenth  
shaping our cour

The eleuenth  
shaping our cour

Maister



them if it be his

I haue no w  
passage to that c  
further. I can a  
further charge,  
action, Surely  
by Gods mercy  
card. I pray God  
that your skill i  
And thus with  
then I shall be

The fourth of September at five a clocke in the afternoon we anchored in a very good road among great Bayes of Isles, the countrey low land, pleasant, and very full of saye woods. To the North of this place eight leagues, we had a perfect hope of the passage, finding a mighty great sea passing betwene two lands West. The South Land to our iudgement being nothing but Isles, we greatly desired to go into this sea, but the winde was directly against vs. We anchored in foure fathome fine land. In this place is foule and fish mighty store.

A perfect hope of the passage.

The sixt of September having a saye Northnorthwest winde, having trimmed our barkie, we purposed to depart, and sent five of our sailers poong men a shoze to an Island, to fetch certaine fish which we purposed to weather, and therefore left it all night couered upon the Isle: the brutish people of this countrey lay secretly lurking in the wood, and upon the sudden assaulted our men: which when we perceived, we presently let slippe our cables upon the halfe, and vnder our foze-sails bare into the shoare, and with all expedition discharged a double musket vpon them twise, at the noise wherof they fled: notwithstanding to our very great griefe, two of our men were slaine with theyr arrowes, and two grievously wounded, of whom at this present we stand in very great doubt, onely one escaped by swimming, with an arrow shot thorow his arme. These wicked miscreants neuer offered parly or speech, but presently executed the very cursed fury.

Two of our men slaine by the Salvages.

This present evening it pleased God further to increase our troubles with a mighty tempestuous storme, the winde being Northnortheast, which lasted vnto the tenth of this moneth very extreme. The unrigged our shippe, and purposed to cut downe our masts, the cable of our theyr anchor brake, so that we onely expected to be driven on shoare among these Canibals for theyr prey. Yet in this deepe distresse the mighty mercy of God, when hope was past, gaue vs succor, and sent vs a saye lee, so as we recovered our anchor againe, and new moyed our shippe: where we saw that God manifestedly deliuered vs: for the straines of one of our cables were broken, we only rood by an olde sunke. Thus being freshly moyed, a new storme arose, the winde being West northwest, very forceible, which lasted vnto the tenth day at night.

The eleuenth day with a saye Westnorthwest winde we departed with trust in Gods mercy, shaping our course for England, and arrived in the West countrey in the beginning of October.

Maister Davis being arrived, wrote his letter to M. William Sanderson of London, concerning his voyage, as followeth.



As the Sunnshyne came into Dartmouth the fourth of this moneth: she hath bene at Island, and from thence to Groenland, and so to Scotland, from thence to Desolation, and to our merchants, where she made trade with the people, staying in the countrey twenty dayes. They haue brought home five hundred seal skimmes, and an hundred and forty halfe skimmes, and pieces of skimmes. I stand in great doubt of the pinnesse, God be mercifull vnto the poore men, and preserve them if it be his blessed will.

I haue now full experience of much of the Northwest part of the world, and haue brought the passenger to that certainty, as that I am sure it must be in one of foure places, or els not at all. And further, I can assure you vpon the perill of my life, that this voyage may be performed without further charge, nay with certaine profit to the aduenturers, if I may haue but your fauour in the action, Surely it shall cost me all my hope of welfare, and my portion of Sandridge, but I will by Gods mercy, see an end of these busineses. I hope I shall finde fauour with you to see your card. I pray God it be so true as the card shall be which I will bring to you: and I hope in God, that your skill in navigation shall be gainefull vnto you, although at the first it hath not proued so. And thus with my most humble commendations I commit you to God, desiring no longer to liue when I shall be yours most faithfully to command. From this 14 of October, 1586.

Yours with my heart, body and life to command JOHN DAVIS.

Bbb 3

The

The relation of the course which the Sunshine a barke of fiftie  
tunnes, and the Northstarre a small pinnesse, being two vessels of the

fleet of M. Iohn Davis held after he had lent them from him to  
discover the passage betwene Groenland and Island,

written by Henry Morgan seruant to M.

William Sanderfon of  
London.

May.



The seventh day of May 1586 we departed out of Dartmouth hauing foure  
sailes, to wit, the Permal, the Sunshine, the Spoonshine, and the Northstarre.  
In the Sunshine were sixene men, whose names were these: Richard Pope  
maister, Marke Carter maisters mate, Henry Hogan purser, George Da-  
ward, Iohn Spandie, Hugh Broken, Philip Iane, Hugh Hempton, Richard  
Borden, Iohn K lpe, Andrew Spadocke, William Wolcome, Robert Wagge  
carpenter, Iohn Bynshome, William A lbe, Simon Ellis.

Our course was West northwett the seventh and eithe dayes: and the ninth day in the morning  
we were on head of the Carrage of Syllie. Thus coasting along the South part of Ireland the 11  
day, we were on head of the Doyles: and our course was South southwett vncill six of the clocke  
the 12 day. The 13 day our course was Northwett. We remained in the company of the Per-  
mal and the Spoonshine vntill we came to the latitude of 60 degrees: and there it seemed best to  
our Generall M. Davis to diuide his fleet, himselfe sailing to the Northwett & to direct the Sun-  
shine, whererin I was, & the pinnesse called the Northstar, to seke a passage Northward betwene  
Groenland and Island to the latitude of 80 degrees, if land did not let vs. So the seventh day of  
Iune we departed from them: and the ninth of the same we came to a firme land of ice, which we  
coasted along the ninth, tenth, and the eleuenth dayes of Iune: and the eleuenth day at six of the  
clocke at night we saw land, which was very high, which afterward we knew to be Island: and the  
twelfth day we harborjed there, and found many people: the land lyeth East and by North in 66  
degrees.

M. Davis di-  
uideth his fleet  
into 2 parts.

Iune.

Islands de-  
scribed.

They com-  
modities.

They build-  
ings.

Their boats.

Their commodities were greene fish, and Island lings, and Stockfish, and a fish which is called  
caterfish: of all which they had great store. They had also kine, sheepe, and hozes, and hay for the  
cattell, and for the hozes. We saw also of thejr dogges. Thejr dwelling houses were made on  
both sides with stones, and wood laid cross over them, which was covered over with turfs of earth,  
and they are flat on the toppes, and many of these stood hard by the shoare. Thejr boats were  
made with wood, and iron all along the keele like our English boats: and they had nailes for to  
naile them wthball, and fish hooks and other things for to ketch fish as we haue here in England.  
They had also brasen kettles, and girdles and purses made of leather, and knoppes on them of cop-  
per, and hatchets and other small tooles as necessarie as we haue. They dyt thejr fish in the sun,  
and when they are dry, they packe them vp in the toppes of their houses. If we would go thither  
to fishing more then we do, we should make it a very good voyage: for we got an hundred greene  
fish in one morning. We found here two English men with a shippe, which came out of Eng-  
land about Easter day of this present yeere 1586, and one of them came aboard of vs, and brought  
vs two lambs. The English mans name was M. Iohn Kopden of Ipswich, merriam: he was  
bound for London with his shippe. And this is the summe of that which I obserued in Island.  
We departed from Island the threenthy day of Iune in the morning, and our course was North-  
wett, and saw on the coast two small barkes going to an harborough: we went not to them, but  
saw them a farre off. Thus we continued our course vnto the end of this moneth.

M. Iohn Kop-  
den of Ips-  
wich.  
They depart-  
ed frō Island  
Northwett.

Iuly.

Groenland  
discouered.

The land of  
Desolation.

The third day of Iuly we were in betwene two firme lands of ice, and passed in betwene  
them all that day vntill it was night: and then the maister turned backe againe, and so away we  
went to wards Groenland. And the seventh day of Iuly we did see Groenland, and it was very  
high, and it looked very white: we could not come to harborough into the land because we were  
hindered by a firme land, as it were, of ice, which was along the shoares side: but we were within  
three leagues of the land, coasting the same threer dayes together. The threenthy day of Iuly  
we saw the place which our captaine M. Iohn Davis the yeere before had named The land of  
Desolation, where we could not go on shoare for ice. The eighteenth day we were like wise trou-  
bled with ice, and went in amongst it at three of the clocke in the morning. After we had cleared  
our selues thereof, we ranged all along the coast of Desolation vntill the end of the aforesayd  
moneth.

The

The third day  
which was the  
Pere we came to

The 4. day in  
four of the peop  
with six of our m  
three dead peopl  
about them, and  
sawe their house  
crossed ouer with  
as for the place.

The 11. of A  
were one and th  
to kill them as t  
ship, did see them  
when they saw t  
nace did shoote  
onely to put the  
ball, and some of  
as soone as they  
harborow wher

The 13. day of  
thence was sou  
bout 5. or 6. leag

The 24. about  
to w, and as we  
there came to vs  
we rode, we had  
the Islands, & fo  
but could see now  
which we receiue

The stones of  
no value, neuer

The 30. of A  
contrary, so that  
there came to vs  
skinnes of them  
them before, and  
could not take it  
their barres, an  
againe, and four  
but our men too  
his knife, but we  
bryess, and he th  
ten with flames,  
hoze upon their  
on those hard by  
presently one of  
ster canied the  
ned backe to lan  
would not come

The 31. of A  
the harborow, th

The 2. of S  
The third da  
a hull tarping fo  
5. day South so  
Clere in Irelan

The third day of August we came in sight of Gilberts sound in the latitude of 64. deg. 15. min. <sup>August.</sup> which was the place where we were appointed to meete our general and the rest of our fleet. Here we came to an harborow at 6. of the clocke at night.

The 4. day in the morning the master went on shoze with 10. of his men, and they brought vs foure of the people rowing in their boates aboord the ship. And in the afternoon I went on shoze with six of our men, and there came to vs seven of them when we were on land. We found on shoze three dead people, and two of them had their haues lying by them, and their olde skins layed about them, and the other had nothing lying by, wherefore we thought it was a woman. We also sawe their houses nere the sea side, which were made with pieces of wood on both sides, and crossed ouer with poles & then covered ouer with earth: we found foxes running vpon the hills: as for the place, it is broken land all the way that we went, and full of broken Islands.

The 21. of August the master sent the boate on shoze for wood, with sixe of his men, and there were one and thirtie of the people of the countrey which went on shoze to them, and they went about to kill them as we thought, for they shot their darts towards them, and we that were aboord the ship, did see them goe on shoze to our men: whereupon the master sent the pinnace after them, and when they sawe the pinnace comming to wards them, they turned backe, and the master of the pinnace did shoote off a calliuer to them the same time, but hurt none of them, for his meaning was onely to put them in feare. Divers times they did weaue vs on shoze to play with them at the football, and some of our company went on shoze to play with them, and our men did cast them downe as soone as they did come to strike the ball. And thus much of that which we did see and do in that harborow where we arrived first.

Our men play at football with the Danes.

The 23. day we departed from the merchants where we had bene first, and our course from thence was South and by West, and the wind was North-east, and we ran that day and night about 5. or 6. leagues, vntill we came to anothe harborow.

The 24. about eleuen of the clocke in the forenoone, we entered into the aforesayd new harborow, and as we came in, we did see dogs running vpon the Islands. When wee were come in, there came to vs foure of the people which were with vs before in the other harborow, and where we rode, we had sandie ground. We sawe no wood growing, but found small pieces of wood vpon the Islands, & some small pieces of swete wood among the same. We found great Parts hoines, but could see none of the Stagges where we went, but we found their footings. As for the bones which we receiued of the Stagges, I cannot tell of what beasts they be.

Swete wood found.

The bones that we found in the countrey, were blacke and some white, as I thinke they bee of no value, neuerthelesse I haue brought examples of them to you.

The 30. of August we departed from this harborow towards England, & the windooke us contrary, so that we were faine to goe to another harborow the same day at 11. of the clocke. And there came to vs 39. of the people, and brought vs 13. Seale skins, and after we receiued these skinnes of them, the master sent the carpenter to change one of our boates which we had bought of them before, and they would haue taken the boate from him perforce, and when they sawe they could not take it from vs, they shot with their darts at vs, and stroke one of our men with one of their darts, and John filye shot one of them into the best with an arrow. And they came to vs againe, and foure of our men went into the shipboate, and they shot with their darts at our men: but our men tooke one of their people in his boate into the shipboate, and he hurt one of them with his knife, but we killed three of them in their boates: two of them were hurt with arrowes in the bests, and he that was aboord our boat, was shot in with an arrow, and hurt with a swoze, and beaten with haues, whom our men cast ouer boorde, but the people caught him and carried him on shoze vpon their boats, and the other two also, and so departed from vs. And three of them went on shoze hard by vs, where they had their dogs, and those three came away from their dogs, and presently one of their dogs came swimming towards vs hard aboord the ship, whereupon our master caused the Gunner to shoote off one of the great pieces towards the people, and so the dog turned backe to land, and within an houre after there came of the people hard aboord the ship, but they would not come to vs as they did come before.

A skinnish boate taken the Danes and our men.

The 31. of August we departed from Gilberts sound for England, and when we came out of the harborow, there came after vs 17. of the people looking which way we went.

The 1. of September we lost sight of the land at 12. of the clocke at noone.

September.

The third day at night we lost sight of the Northstarre our pinnace in a very great fogge, & lay a hull carping for them the 4. day, but could heare no more of them. Thus we shaped our course the 5. day South southeast, and sailing vntill the 27. of the sayd moneth we came in sight of Cape Clerc in Ireland.

The pinnace neuer returne no more.

The

The 30. day we entered into our owne channell.

The 3. of October we had sight of the Ile of Wight.

The 7. we coasted all along the Shore, and the 4. and 5.

The 6. of the sayd moneth of October we came into the river of Thames as high as Rueliffe in safetie God be thanked.

**The third voyage Northwestward, made by Iohn Davis Gentleman,** as chiefe Captaine and Pilot generall, for the discoverie of a passage to the Isles of the Molucca, or the coast of China, in the yeere, 1587. Written by Iohn Ianes seruanto to the aforesayd M. William Sanderson.

### May.



The 1. of this present moneth about midnight, we weighed our ankers, set saile and departed from Dartmouth with two barkes and a Clincher, the one named the Elizabeth of Dartmouth, the other the Sunne shine of London, and the Clincher called the Elm of London: thus in Gods name we set forwards with the wind at North-east a good fresh gale. About 3. howers after our departure, the night being somewhat thicke with darknesse, we had lost the pinnace, the captaine imagining that the men had ronne away with her, willed the master of the Sunne shine, to stand to Sea towards, and see if he could descric them, we bearing in with the shoer for Wllmouthe. At length we descried her, bare with her, and demanded whae the cause was: They answered that she tiller of their helme was burst. So hoping our course West South-west, we went forward, hoping that a hard beginning would make a good ending, yet some of vs were doubtfull of it, sailing in reckoning that she was a Clincher, neuertheless we put our trust in God.

The 21. we met with the Red Lion of London, which came from the coast of Spaine, which was afraid that we had bene men of warre, but we hastned them, and after a little conference, we desired the master to carie our letters for London, directed to my unckle Sanderson, who promised vs safe deliuerie. And after we had beamed thair a lead and a line, whereunto wee had made fast our letters, before they could get them into the ship, they fell into the sea, and so all our labour and theirs also was lost, notwithstanding they promised to certifie our departure at London, and so we departed, and the same day we had sight of Scelle. The 22. the wind was at North-east by East, with faire weather, and so the 23. and 24. the like. The 25. we laid our shippes on the Lee for the Sunne shine, who was a rommaging for a leake, they had 500. strokes at the pumpe in a watch, the wind at North-west.

The 26. and 27. we had faire weather, but the 27. the pinnaces foremaste was blown ouerboard. The 28. the Elizabeth towed the pinnace, which was so much bagged off by the owners report before we came out of England, but at Sea she was like to a cart drawn with open, sometimes we towed her because she could not saile for frame wind.

The 31. day our captaine asked if the pinnace were stanch, Iererson answered that she was as sound and stanch as a cuppe. This made vs something glad, when we sawe she would brooke the Sea, and was not leake.

### June.

The first 6. dayes we had faire weather: after that for 5. dayes we had fogge and rayne, the wind being South. The 12. we had cleare weather. The Mariners in the Sunne shine, and the master could not agree: the mariners would goe on their voyage a fishing, because the yeere began to waxe: the master would not depart till hee had the companie of the Elizabeth, whereupon the master told our captaine that he was afraid his men would take some contrarie course while he was a sleep, and so he should loose vs. At length after much talke and many threatenings, they were content to bring vs to the land which we looked for daily.

The 13. we had fogge and raine.

The 14. day we discovered land at five of the clocke in the morning, being very great and high mountains, the tops of the hills being covered with snow. Here the wind was variable, sometime at North-east, East North-east, and East by North: but wee imagined our selues to be 16. or 17. leagues off from the Shoer.

The 15. we had reasonable cleare weather.

The 16. we came to an anker about 4. or 5. of the clocke after noone, the people came presently

to vs after the old  
gan to set by the  
from London.

The 18. Peere  
went about an  
white and gilder  
strong lustie pe

The 20. about  
pinnace was but  
onely for the loue  
Elizabeths boate  
foze they came to  
Saker, and laied  
cause we should in  
arrows which  
yeere, and fearing  
would saue a Sa  
shot off the Saker  
away without leg  
could carie away  
shine manned by  
of them take the  
mills off, where  
came on shoer and  
ed that the Elizab  
and stowed.

How after this  
er worse then all  
had appointed as  
that the good ship  
he rode in the har  
our captaine by w  
then to returne to  
gether, & commit  
about 11. or 12. o  
degrees of latitud  
the land to the N  
because there we  
our ship. The 22.

The 24. being  
sea birdes which  
ed two of the count  
we sawe their oar  
could, and when  
many signes: and  
with a bone in it,  
he saw a knife, he  
rowing after our

The 25. in the  
iudgement 10. lea  
and we gaue chem  
trifles, and for a k  
coars, or any thing  
of them, about 20.  
more store of Chic  
paper, and the p

The 26. was c

The 27. faire v

to vs after the old maner, with crying *Il ya oure*, and shewing vs *Deale* skinned. The 17. we began to set by the pinnace that Peerson framed at Dartmouth, with the boords which hee brought from London.

The 18. Peerson and the Carpenters of the ships, began to set on the planks. The 19. as we went about an Island, were found blacke Hummish flowers, and salt kermel on the rocks very white and glistering. This day also the master of the Sunne shineooke one of the people, a very strong lustie yong fellow.

The 20. about two of the clocke in the morning, the Sauages came to the Island where our pinnace was built ready to be launched, and toze the two upper strakes, and caried them away onely for the loue of the iron in the boords. While they were about this practise, wee manned the Elizabeths boate to goe a shoze to them: our men being either afrayd, or amazed, were so long before they came to shoze, that our captaine willed them to stay, and made the Sunner giue fire to a Saker, and laid the piece leuell with the boate which the Sauages had on the one side, because we should not hurt them with our arrowes, and made the boate their bulwarke against the arrowes which wee shot at them. Our Sunner hauing made all things ready, gaue fire to the peere, and fearing to hurt any of the people, and regarding the owners yfcar, thought belike hee would saue a Sakers shot, doubting we should haue occasion to fight with men of warre, and so shot off the Saker without a bullet, we looking still when the Sauages that were hurt should run away without legs, at length wee could perceiue neuer a man hurt, but all hauing their legges could carie away their bodies: we had no sooner shot off the peere, but the master of the Sunne shineooke manned his boate, and came rowing towards the Island, the very sight of whom made each of them take that he had gotten, and fled away as fast as they could to another Island about two miles off, where theyooke the naples out of the timber, and left the wood on the Isle. When we came on shoze and saw how they had spoiled the boate, after much debating of the matter, we agreed that the Elizabeth should haue her to fish withall: whereupon she was presently caried aboard, and stowed.

Now after this trouble, being resolved to depart with the first wind, there fell out another matter worse then all the rest, and that was in this maner. John Churchpard one whom our captaine had appointed as Pilot in the pinnace, came to our Captaine, and master Buxton, and told them that the good ship which we must all hazard our liues in, had thre hundred strokes at one time as she rode in the harbour: This disquieted vs all greatly, and many doubted to goe in her. At length our captaine by whom we were all to be gouerned, determined rather to end his life with credit, then to returne with infamie and disgrace, and so being all agreed, we purposed to lue and die together, & committed our selues to the ship. Now the 21. hauing brought all our things aboard, about 11. or 12. of the clocke at night, we set saile and departed from those Isles, which lie in 64. degrees of latitude, our ships being now all at Sea, and wee shaping our course to goe roasting the land to the Northward upon the Easterne shoze, which we called the shoze of our Merchants, because there we met with people which trafficked with vs, but here we were not without doubt of our ship. The 22. and 23. we had close fogge and raine.

The 24. being in 67. degrees, and 40. minutes, we had great shoze of Whales, and a kinde of sea birdes which the Mariners call Cortinous. This day about sixe of the clocke at night, we espied two of the countrey people at Sea, thinking at the first they had bene two great Deales, until we sawe their oares glistering with the Sunne: they came rowing towards vs, as fast as they could, and when they came within hearing, they held by their oares and cried *Il ya oure*, making many signes: and at last they came to vs, giuing vs birdes for bracelets, and of them I had a barte with a bone in it, or a peece of Unicorns bone, as I did iudge. This dart he made shoze of, but when he saw a knife, he let it go, being moze desirous of the knife then of his dart: these people continued rowing after our ship the space of 3. houers.

The 25. in the morning at 7. of the clocke we descried 30. Sauages rowing after vs, being by iudgement 10. leagues off from the shoze: they brought vs Salmon Deales, Birdes, and Caplin, and we gaue them pinnes, needles, bracelets, nailes, knives, bels, looking glasses, and other small trifles, and for a knife, a naile or a bracelet, which they call Pongimah, they would sell their boar, coats, or any thing they had, although they were farr from the shoze. Wee had but few skinned of them, about 20. but they made signes to vs that if wee would goe to the shoze, wee should haue moze shoze of Chichsaneg: they staid with vs til 11. of the clocke, at which time we went to prayer, and they departed from vs.

The 26. was cloudie, the wind being at South.

The 27. saile with the same wind.

The

72. deg. 12. mi.  
London coast.

The 28. and 29. were foggie with clouds, the 30. day we took the height, and found our selues in 72. degrees and 12. min. of latitude both at noone and at night, the Sunne being 5. degr. aboue the horizon. At midnichte the compass set to the variation of 28. degr. to the Westward. Now hauing coasted the land which we called London coast, from the 21. of this yeere, till the 30. the sea open all to the Westwards and Northwards, the land on Starboard side East from vs, the winde shifted to the North, whereupon we left that shoare, naminge the same Hope Sanderfon, and shaped our course West, and ran 40. leagues and better, without the sight of any land.

### July.

The second we fel with a mighty banke of Ice West from vs, lying North and South, which banke we would gladly haue doubled out to the Northwards, but the winde would not suffer vs, so that we were forced to coast it to the Southwards, hoping to double it out that we might haue run so farre West till wee had found land, or els to haue bene choosely resolved of our pretended purpose.

The 3. we fel with the Ice againe, and putting off from it, we sought to the Northwards, but the wind crossed vs.

The 4. was foggie: so was the 5. also with much wind at North.

The 6. being very cleere, we put our barke with oare through a gappe in the Ice, seeing the Sea free on the West side as we thought, which falling out otherwise, caused vs to returne after we had staid there betwene the Ice. The 7. and the 8. about midnichte, by Gods helpe we recovered the open sea, the weather being faire and calme, and so was the 9. The 10. we coasted the Ice. The 11. was foggie, but calme.

The 12. we coasted againe the Ice, hauing the wind at West north-west. The 13. bearing off from the Ice, we determined to goe with the shoare and come to an anker, and to stay five or 6. daies for the dissolving of the Ice, hoping that the sea continually beating it, and the sunne, with the extreme force of heate which it had alwayes shining vpon it, would make a quicke dispatch, that we might haue a further search vpon the Westerne shoare. Now when we were come to the Easterne coast, the water something deepe, and some of our company fearefull withall, we durst not come to an anker, but bare off into sea againe. The poore people seeing vs goe away againe, came rowling after vs into the Sea, the waues being some what wastie. We trucke with them for a few kinnes and darters, and gaue them beads, needles, plumes, needles and cardes, they pointing to the shoare, as though they would shew vs grea friendship: but we little regarding their curtesie, gaue them the gentle farewell, and so departed.

The 14. we had the wind at South. The 15. there was some fault either in the barke, or the set of some current, for we were vynd 6. pointes out of our course. The 16. we fell with a banke of Ice West from vs. The 17. and 18. were foggie. The 19. at one a clocke after noone, we had sight of the land which we called mount Raleigh, and at 12. of the clocke at night, wee were thwart the Streights which we discouered the first yeere. The 20. wee trauesed in the mouth of the Streights, the winde being at West, with faire and cleare weather. The 21. and 22. we coasted the Northerne coast of the Streights. The 23. hauing sayled 60. leagues North-west into the Streights, at two a clocke after noone, we ankered among many Isles in the bottome of the gulfe, naminge the same the erle of Cumberlands Isles, where riding at anker, a Whale passed by our ship and went West in among the Isles. Here the compass set at 30. degrees Westward variation. The 24. we departed, shaping our course South-east to recover the Sea. The 25. we were becalmed in the bottome of the gulfe, the aire being extreme hote. Master Bynton and some of the Mariners went on shoare to counte dogs, where they found many Graues and Crane spile on the ground, the dogs being so fat that they were scarce able to runne.

The 26. wee had a pretie storme, the wind being at Southeast. The 27. and 28. were faire. The 29. we were cleare out of the Streights, hauing coasted the South shoare, and this day at noone we were in 64. degrees of latitude. The 30. in the after noone we coasted a banke of Ice, which lay on the shoare, and passed by a great banke on inler, which lay betwene 63. and 62. degrees of latitude, which we called Kumleis Inlet. We had often times as we sailed along the coast, great rookes, the water as it were whirling and ouerfalling, as if it were the fall of some great water through a bridge. The 31. as we sayled by a head land, which we named Artrixkes Foxeland, we fell into one of those ouerfalls with a fresh gale of wind, and bearing all our sailes, we looking vpon an Island of Ice betwene vs and the shoare, had thought that our barke did make no way, which caused vs to take markes on the shoare at length we perreined our selues to go very fast, and

The Erie of  
Cumberlands  
Isles.

My lord Cum-  
berlands  
Isles.

Artrixkes  
Foxeland.

the Island of  
then our ship  
coying, as it we

The first barke  
fell with  
6. degrees and  
6. The 7. was  
and we had a li-  
faire. The 12.  
holled our our  
came on thore a  
wards Islands  
we gaue them  
they swamme  
as big as Dye  
The 13. in  
larke of a good  
and this day we

The 14. we  
The 15. bet  
their promise)  
so doe vs vpon  
sitting place, b  
we shaped our o  
head of fresh w  
son, for he fear  
of two men wa  
ling to depart,  
thing of our me  
for the roomes  
consented to re  
well.

The 17. w  
thought the we  
The 18. we  
The 19. fat  
And thus aft  
in Dartmouth

A letter

Do  
with  
my  
two  
comming you  
I may you par

the Island of Ice which we saw before was carried very forcibly with the set of the current under then our ship went. This day and night we passed by a very great gulfe, the water whirling and roaring, as it were the meetings of tides.

August.

The first having coasted a banke of Ice which was given out at the mouth of this gulfe, we fell with the Southermost Cape of the gulfe, which we named *Chiblics Cape*, which lay in 6. degrees and 10. minutes of latitude. The 2. and 3. were calme and foggy, so were the 4. 5. and 6. The 7. was faire and calme: so was the 8. with a litle gale in the morning. The 9. was faire, and we had a litle gale at night. The 10. we had a frisking gale at West North-west. The 11. The Iord Bar- cian Island. we saw five Deere on the top of an Island, called by vs *Darvies Island*. And wee hoised out our boate, and went a Hoze to them, thinking to have killed some of them. But when we came on Hoze and had coursed them twice about the Island, they took the Sea and swamme to wards Islands distant from the 3. leagues. When wee perceived that they had taken the Sea, we gave them over because our boate was so small that it could not rarie vs, and came after them, they swamme so fast: but one of them was as big as a good pretie Cowe and very fat, their feete as big as Oxe feete. Here upon this Island I killed with my peece a grey hare.

The 12. in the morning we saw 3. or 4. white Beares, but durst not goe on Hoze to them for lacke of a good boate. This day we stroke a rocke, seeking for an harborow, and received a leake, and this day we were in 54. deg. of latitude.

The 14. we stopp our leake in a shoyme not very outrageous at noone.

The 15. being almost in 51. degrees of latitude, and not finding our ships, nor (according to their promise) any kind of marke, token or beacon, which we willed to see by, and they proceeded so wee so upon every head land, Island or Cape, within 20. leagues every way off from their stopping place, which our captaine appointed to be betweene 54. and 55. degrees: This 15. I say we shaped our course homewards for England, having in our ship but litle wood, and halfe a hog's head of fresh water. Our men were very willing to depart, and no man more soye toward then *Peerson*, for he feared to be put out of his office of *Stewardship*: he was so uncharitable, that the allowance of two men was scant sufficient to fill his greedy appetite: but because every man was so willing to depart, and considering our want, I doubted the matter very much, fearing that the seeking of our mens victuall to salt water, would breed diseases, and being but fewe (yet too many for the roomes if any should be sicke) and likely that all the rest might bee infected therewith, wee consented to returne for our owne countrey, and so we had the 16. faire with the winde at South-west.

The 17. wee met a Shippe at Sea, and as farre as wee could judge it was a *Dil kaine*: wee thought she went a fishing for *Whales*, for in 52. degrees of thereabout, we saw very many.

The 18. was faire with a good gale at West.

The 19. faire also, but with much wind at West and by South.

And thus after much variable weather and change of winde, we arrived the 15. of September in *Dartmouth*, Anno 1587. giving thanks to God for our safe arrivall.

A letter of the said M. John Daus, written to M. Sanderfon of London, concerning his forerwritten voyage.

**G**ODD *H.* Sanderfon, with GODS great mercy I have made my safe returne in health, with all my companie, and have sailed 60. leagues further then my determination at my departure. I have bene in 73. degrees finding the Sea all open, and 40. leagues betweene land and land: The passage is most certaine, the execution most easie, as at my comming you shall fullie know. Yesterday the 15. of September, I landed all wearle, therefore I pray you pardon my sloynesse. Sandridge, this 16. of September, Anno 1587.

Yours equall as mine owne, which by triall you shall best know,

John Daus.

An



An extract of M. Lanes letter, to M. Richard Hakluyt Esquire, and another gentleman of the middle Temple, from Virginia: the right place where-  
of is next before the Account of master Lane. Pagina 737.

**I**n the meane while you shall vnderstand that since the Rich. Greenwils departure from vs, as also before, we haue discovered the maine to bee the goodliest soile vnder the cope of heauen, so abounding with sweete trees, that bring such sundry rich and most pleasant gummes, grapes of such greatnes, yet wild, as France, Spaine nor Italy haue no greater, so many sortes of Apothecarie vugs, such severall kindes of floure, and one kind like silke, the same gathered of a grasse, as common there as grasse is here. And now within these few dayes we haue found here a Guinie tobacco, whose rare peeledness come for byead, 400. vpon one eare, and the same maketh very good and perfect suger, also Terra Sania, otherwise Terra sigillata. Besides that it is the goodliest and most pleasing certtiorie of the world (for) the hille is of an huge vnknowen greatnesse, and very well propoled and tanned, though sauagelie) and the climate so wholesome, that we haue not had one sick, since we touched land here. To conclude, if Virginia had but Portugall and Kinge in some reasonable proportion, I dare assure my selfe being inhabited with English, no realme in Chylienome were comparable to it. For this already we find, that what commodities formerly Spaine, France, Italy, or the East partes do yeeld vnto vs in wines, in oiles, in flaxe, in wolens, pitch, frankincense, currans, sugers, & such like, these partes do abound with & groweth of them all, but being Sauages that possesse the land, they know no vse of the same. And sundry other rich commodities, that no parts of the world, be they West or East Indies, haue, here we finde great abundance of. The people naturally most courteous, & very desirous to haue riches, but especially of course cloth rather then silke, course canvas they also like well of, but copper carrieth the price of all, silke be made yet. Thus good Sp. Hakluyt and master D. I haue toynd you both in one letter of remembrance, as it is that I loue dearly well, and commending me most heartily to you both, I commit you to the tuition of the almighty. Feo the newe Foxe in Virginia, this 3. Sept. 1585.

*The voyage set out by the right honorable the Earle of Cumberland, in the yeere 1586, intended for the South Sea, but performed no farther then the latitude of 44. deg. to the South of the Equinoctiall, written by John Sarrauall Merchant in the same voyage.*

**T**he 26. day of June, in the yeere 1586, and in the 28. yeere of the Queens maiesties reigne, we departed from Grauesend in two ships, the Admirall called the *Red dragon*, and the other the *barke Chyrtles*, the one of the burden of 260. tunnes, with 130. men, and the other of the burden of 120. tunnes, with 70. men: the captaine of the Admirall was M. Robert Wilkington, of the Viceadmirall, M. Christopher Loller, both being furnished out at the costes and charges of the right honourable the Erle of Cumberland, hauing for their masters two brethren, the one John Anthonie, and the other William Anthonie.

The 24. of July we came into the sound of Plymouth, and being there constrained by the sterlie winds, to stay till the 17. of August, we then departed with another ship also for our Admirall called the *Roe*, whereof M. Hawes was captaine, and a fine pinnace also called the *Dorochie*, which was Sir Walter Raleighs, the 4. being out in the sea, the 20. of August, with 16. sailes of hulkes in the leeue, who named themselves to be men of Hambojough, laden and come from Lisbon. Our Admirall halted their Admirall with diuersus wordes, willing him to strike his sailes, and to come aboard to him onely to knowe some newes of the counerey, but he refused to do so, only strooke his flag and took it in. The Viceadmirall of the hulkes being a head, would neither strike the flag nor saile, but passed on without budging, whereupon our Admirall sent him a piece of ordinance, which they repaied double, so that we grew to some little quarrell, whereupon one of the sternmost hulkes, being as I suppose more afraid then hurt, strooke against us, our Admirall being neere him, laid him aboard, and eured with certaine of his men, how many I knowe not, for that we were giuing chase to the hindermost men, thinking our Admirall would haue come by againe to us, so haue made them all to haue stroke: but the weather growing to be very thicke and foggie, with small raine, he came not by but kept with another of the hulkes which captaine Hawes had boarded and kept all night, and tooke out of her some provision that they liked best. They learned of the men that were in the hulke, that there were 7. hulkes laden in Lisbon with Spaniards goods, and because their lading was very rich, they were determined to go about Ireland, and so they let her goe againe like a goose with a broken wing.

The

The next day after but by reason of the last we hailed one another said the w. Our Admirall be led vs from pursuit scue what the p. The 22. day b. 7. dayes.

The 23. we de haue runne along sent home to my off in the sea too of Barbaric, and of the Islands of upon a hill by the bontes, and sent ragged knaves a gull by the Turke courtie, and fell ag.

The 25. day we our 1 ropike our. And the next 14. of 15. league came downe 2 p. Frenchmen ble tie there was not we went aboard. From thence it lightning, and gossed by the north west, and scene: it was on off againe, it yett East South east.

The 21. of very high land, the land, and for high land we an into the harbour chome, halfe a m on the South side.

The 27. day soare with our Negroes inhabi would suffer vs giue any thing whereupon the againe into our a walke, and sudderally and vngiving with all about 30. calceru and whet hurt v.

Then we re ble bore of the backe were so in diuers places.

The next day after bring the 21 day, we espied 5. sailes more, which laye along to the Eastwards, but by reason of the night which then was nere at hand, we coulde hardly come to them. Yet at last we hailed one of the biggest of them, and they told us that they were all of Hambrough; but another said he was of Denmarke, so that in deede they knew neither what to say, nor what to doe. Our Admirall being more desirous to follow his course, then to linger by chasing the hulkes, called us from pursuing them with his trumpet, and a piece of Ordnance, or els wee would haue scene what they had bene, and wherewith they had bene laden.

The 22. day because of contrary winde we put into Dartmouth all 4. of vs, and carried there 7. dayes.

The 23. we departed thence and put out to sea, and beganne our voyage, thinking at the first to haue runne along the coast of Spaine, to see if we could haue merce with some good prize to haue sent home to my Lord; but our Captaine thought it not the best course at the last, but rather kept off in the sea from the coast. And vpon Saturday the 17. of September we fell with the coast of Barbaric, and the 18. halled in with the roade of Sancta Cruz. The 21. day wee fell with one of the Islands of the Canaries, called Forteuentura. In running along this Island, we espied vpon a hill by the water side, one wauiug with a white flagge, wherupon wee manned both our boates, and sent them to wards the shoare, to vnderstand what newes. They found them to be two ragged knaues and one hostleman, and they tolde vs that Lancerote was taken, and spoild in a gust by the Turkes; when we saw they had nothing else to say, we left them, and proceeded in our course, and fell againe with the coast of Barbaric.

September.

Lancerote spoiled by the men of Algiers.

The 25. day of September about 10. of the clocke we fell with Rio de Oro, standing full vnder our Tropicke: we ancred in the mouth of it in 8. fathome, the entrance of it is about 2. leagues ouer. And the next day our Captaine with the boate searched the Riuer, and found it to be as broad 14. or 15. leagues by, as at the entrie of it, but founde no towne nor habitation, sauing that there came downe 2. pooze men, & one of them spake good Spanish, and tolde our Captaine, that certaine Frenchmen used to come thither, and lade some ore lades, and goates hides, but other commodities there was none. We departed thence the 27. day, and the last day of the month being calme we went aboord our General, and there consented to goe for Sierra Leona, to wood and water.

Rio de Oro, in 23. deg. and a halfe.

From thence till the 10. of October we were much becalmed with extreme hotte weather, much lightning, and great stoye of raue. The 10. day we founde, finding a great currant as wee supposed by the rippling water, which after wee founde to be an ordinarie tide, the flood setting to the North-west, and the ebb South-east, and here wee had but 18. fathome water, and no lande to be seene: it was on the southermost part of the shoales that lye in about 11. degt, but halling South off againe, it presently berped vnto 50. fathome, and after halling South-east, and by East, and East South-east, we founde, but had no ground in 120. fathome.

October.

The 11. of October we fell with lande vpon the coast of Guinea, in the height of 8. degrees, a very high land, but of no great length: it was the high land ouer Sierra Leona. We byrwe into the land, and found nere the shoare more water then in the offing: at the Northen ende of the high land we ancred about a mile, and somewhat more from the shoare in 11. fathome. To goe into the harbour of Sierra Leona we did byrote vpon the Southside, hauing no ground in 10. fathome, halfe a mile from the shoare. Vpon the Northside of this harbour is very shoale water, but on the Southside no feare, more then is to be seene.

Sierra Leona.

The 12. day being Sunday wee came to an ancre in the Bay of fresh water, and going a shoare with our boate, wee spake with a Portingall, who tolde vs that not farre off there were Negroes inhabiting, and that in giuing to the king a Buttise of wine, and some linnen cloth, hee would suffer vs to water and wood at our pleasure. But our Captaines thinking it not good to giue any thing for that which they might take freely, landed, and certaine of our men with them, wherupon the Portingall and the Negroes ranne all away into the woods. Then we remmed againe into our boates, and presently went and landed in another place, thinking to haue fetched a walke, and so to come to our boates againe. But wandering through a litle wood, wee were suddenly and vnawares vpon a towne of the Negroes, wherupon they strooke vs their dyanime, giuing with all a great shoue, and off went their arrowes as thicke as baile. We were in number about 30. calcucers, and 20. with our weapons, which we also let flie into the woods among them, and what hurt wee did, we knew not.

The towne of the Negroes.

Then wee returned to our boates, andooke wood and water at our pleasure, and reasonable stoye of fishe, and amongst the rest wee halled vp a great soule monster, whose head and backe were so harde, that no swoyde coulde enter it: But bring thys in vnder the belly in diuers places, and much wounded, he bowed a swoyde in his mouth, as a man would doe a girde

erland  
e, and  
ure from  
the cope  
pleasant  
no grea  
like, the  
apes we  
and the  
Besides  
unknow  
olestone,  
in South  
glid, no  
mories  
oiles in  
growth  
windy o  
we finde  
but espe  
h price  
th in one  
p to you  
1583.  
e yeere  
deg.  
ens ma  
U called  
of 260,  
with 70.  
Ulead  
nd char  
ren, the  
by Ma  
at Reat  
the Do  
A, with  
den and  
him to  
ee refus  
D, would  
the him a  
ereupon  
r Ann  
to not,  
ue come  
p thicke  
Captaine  
k liked,  
me with  
out Tre  
The

girdle of lether about his hande, and likewise the yron of a boare sparr: Hee was in length about nine foote, and had nothing in his bellie, but a certaine quantitie of small stones, to the value of a pottell.

November.

Another great and fine towne of the Negroes.

The fourth of November wee went on shoare to a towne of the Negroes, which stode on the Southeast side of the harbour, about a Sacar shotte from the roade, which wee founde to bee but lately built: it was of about two hundred houses, and walled about with mightie great trees, and makes so thicke, that a ratte could hardly get in or out. But as it chanced, wee came directly upon a port which was not shutte by, where we entered with such fiercenesse, that the people fledde all out of the towne, which wee founde to bee finely built after their fashion, and the streets of it so intricate, that it was difficult for vs to finde the way out, that we came in at. Wee founde their houses and streets so finely and cleanly kept, that it was an admiration to vs all, for that neither in the houses nor streets was so much dust to be founde, as would fill an egge shell. Wee founde little in their houses, except some mats, goards, and some earthen potts. Our men at their departure set the towne on fire, and it was burnt (for the most part of it) in a quarter of an hour, the houses being covered with reede and strawe.

After this we searched the Countrey about it, where we found in diuers plaines good store of rice in stalkes, which our men did beate out, and brought aboard in the hulke, to the quantitie of 14. or 15. tunnes in both our shippes.

The 17. day of November wee departed from Sierra Leona, directing our course for the Streight of Magellane. In this harbour diuers of our men fell sicke of a disease in the belly, which for the time was extreme, but (God bee thanked) it was but of small continuance. Wee founde also in diuers places of the woods, images set upon pinnes, with diuers thinges before them, as egges, scale, rice, rounde shot of stones, and diuers other thinges, such as the barbarous people had to offer vp.

When we came neere to the Line, wee found it nothing so hot as it is at Sierra Leona, by reason of the great winde and raine.

About the 24. day of November one of two of our men died, and others also were sicke of a Calentura.

January.

The 2. day of January wee had a little sight of lande, being about the height of 28. degr. to the Southward of the Line.

The 4. day we fell with the shoare high and bolde, being in 30. degrees, and a certe, little more or lesse. All of it to the Northward was a high land, but to the Southward it did presently faile, and was a very lowe land, and all sandie. About five leagues from the shoare wee founde, and had about 15. or 16. fathom water, and blacke sandie oze. Wee thought to haue gone to the shoare, and to haue watered, but we could not discerne any good harbour, and therefore wee cast off to leeward againe.

The 12. day we found our selues in 32. degrees and 27. minutes. From the day of the Nativitie of Christ, till the 13. day of this moneth, although the Sunne was very neere unto vs, yet wee found no want of windes but variable as in England, and not so hott but that a mans shoulders might well digest a frize gowne, and his bellie the best Christmas chere in England, yet we for our parts had no want, but such as might content honest men.

The tenth day being about 8. leagues from the shoare, and a little shot of the Riuer of Plate, it was my good happe to espye a saile, which was a small Portingall bounde for the Riuer to a towne called Sancta Fee: and from thence by horse and cartes, the Marchants, and part of their goods were to be transported into Peru. This ship being about the burthen of 45. or 50. tunnes, weooke that day about thre of the clocke, wherein there was for Master or Pilote an Englishman called Abraham Cocke borne in Lee. We examined him and the rest concerning the state of the Riuer, and they tolde vs that there were in the Riuer 5. townes, some of 70. housholdes, and some of more. The first towne was about 50. leagues up the Riuer called Bonos Ayres, the rest some 40. some 50. leagues one from another, so that the uppermost towne is 230. leagues from the entrance of the Riuer, called Tuckaman. In the townes is great store of tozine, cattell, wine, and sundry frutes, but no moneey of golde or silver: they make a certaine kinde of light cloth, which they giue in trucke of suger, rice, Sparmalabe, and Duckett, which were the commodities that this shippe had.

They had aboard also 45. Negroes, whereof euery one in Peru receiue 400. duckets a piece, and besides these, there were as passengers in her, two Portingall women and a child.

Another Portingall taken.

The 11. day we espied another saile, which was the consort of this Portingall, and to him also wee gaue chase, andooke him the same day: Hee was of the burthen of the other, and had

had in her good store of wine in our stiers, of which our Portingall women bought in Brasile were sent for by the King. The booke 1000. duckets.

Of these shippes his backe call a towne of magges, all founde and bled them by more of their commodities. Fairweather by the Pilote of the voyage of the Port of Plate the 30.

The 12. of January going in wee founde there lies a ledge face to ward the bay.

One of the Portingalls, and I think the towne of the South side of the sea also. It was about 10 leagues, where the Tuccaman, which

The towne of with abundance of pier of 20. stals, is out, is worth 30.

The 16. day we went to the Westward to Seal Island to by the breaking of it, considering the the whole company made perfect.

The 29. day we Hawkins.

The 1. of February it to be 41. degrees

The 7. day of booye his Gunde aboard vs, for our Captaines cabin men whose names

had in her good store of sugar, Parmalade, and Succres, with divers other things, which we noted downe in our booke. In this Shippe also we found about 37 Negro women, and four of fine friers, of which one was an Irish man, of the age of thre or foure and twentie yeeres, and two Portugall women also, which were boyne in the rivet of Genero. Both these shippes were bought in Brasile, by a yong man which was Factor for the bishop of Tucuman, and the friers were sent for by that bishoppe to possesse a newe Monasterie, which the bishoppe was then a building. The bookes, beades, and pictures in her, cost (as one of the Portugals confessed) about 1000. ducrats.

Mr. Trish fra taken.

Of these shippes wee learned, that Mr. John Drake, who went in consort with Mr. Fenson, had his barke call away a little above the Rivet of Plate, where they were taken captives by the Spanages, all saving them which were slaine in the taking: the Spanages kept them for a time, and bled them very hardly, yet at the last John Drake and Richard Faireweather, and 23 of the most of their company with them got a Canoa, and escaped, and came to the first towne of the Spaniards. Faireweather is married in one of the townes, but John Drake was carried to Tucuman by the Pilot of this Shippe, and was living, and in good health the last yeere. Concerning this voyage of the Portugals they told us that it was the third voyage that was made into the rivet of Plate these 30. yeeres.

The names of Mr. John Drake.

Richard Faireweather.

The 12. of Januarie we came to Scale Island, and the 14. day to the Greene Island, where going in wee founde barke above the maine 8. fathome, 7. and 6. and never lesse then 5. fathome. There lieth a ledge of rocks in the faire way, betwixt the Island and the maine, so that you must be sure to boysse we hard above the maine, and leave the ledge on the larboard side.

One of the Portugals which were carried along with us in our shippe, seemed to be a man of experient, and I entred into speech with him concerning the state of the Rivet: he tolde me that the towne of Bonos Ayres, is from the Greene Islande about 70. leagues, standing on the Southside of the Rivet, and from thence to Sancta Fee, is 100. leagues, standing on the same side also. At which towne their shippes doe discharge all their goods into small barkes, which rowe and towe by the Rivet to another towne called Ascension, which is from Sancta Fee 150. leagues, where the boates discharge on shore, and so passe all the goods by carres, and boyes to Tucuman, which is in Peru.

The towne of Ascension standes in a very fertile place, reaping coine twise in the yeere, with abundance of wine, cattell, and fruites. In the towne of Ascension, and Tucuman, a ruiper of 20. riels, is worth 30. ducrats, a boze of Parmalade 20. ducrats: a looking glasse a foote over, is worth 30. li. pictures in tables of 14. inches, 30. and 40. li. a piece.

The 16. day wee went from Greene Island to the watering place, which is about a league to the Westward, where wee tooke in about 18. tunnes of water, and the 22. day came againe to Scale Island to make provision of beales, where a storme arose, which put us in some danger, by the breaking of our maces and cables, and the winde blew so colde, that we much marvelled at it, considering the height of the place. I must needs in this place have fault with our felues and the whole company, that riding in this Rivet 16. dayes, the channell was not founde, nor the way made perfect.

The 29. day we tooke into our shippe one Miles, which was left in the West Indies by master Hawkins.

The 1. of Februarie I tooke the sume in 38. degr. And the 3. day I tooke it againe & I found it to be 41. degrees.

Februarie.

The 7. day of Februarie our Captaine Mr. Lister being in one of the yffles, hopied our booye his Gundelo, and went aboarde the Admirall, and being there they sent their Gundelo aboard us, for our Master, Mr. Collins, and my selfe, and at our coming wee were called into the Captaines cabin, where were set in counsell for matters touching the state of our voyage, these men whose names are under written.

- Master Robert Withrington Captaine of the Admirall.
- M. Christopher Lister Captaine of the Barke Clifford.
- John Anthonie, Master of the Admirall.
- Thomas Hoode Pilot for the Streights.
- William Anthony, Master of the Barke Clifford.
- Dauid Collins. } Tristran Gennings.
- Master William Withrington.
- Master Beumond Withrington.
- Master Walfnes. } Master Norton.

Matter Wilkes.  
 Matter Harris.  
 Thomas Anthonie.  
 Nicholas Porter.  
 The Matter Gunner.  
 Alexander Gurdie his mate.  
 John Sarracol.

This companie being all assembled together, the Matter of the Admirall declared that the cause of our assemblie was to determine after good advice, what course of way were best and most likely to all mens judgements to be taken. First for the good preferment of my Lords voyage, then the health of our men, and lastly the safeguard of our ships, and further shewed his reasons to us all in these wordes, as were as I could carry them away,

My matters, my Lords determination touching this our voyage is not unknowne unto you all, having appointed it to be made, and by the grace of God to be performed by us for the South sea. But for as much as we doe all see the time of the yeere to be late spent, as also the winds to hang contrary, the weather grows on colder and colder, the nights longer and longer, our bread so consumed that we have not left above two moneths biscuit, our drinke in a manner all spent, so that we have nothing but water, which in so colde a Countrey as the Streights, if we should get in, and be forced there to winter, would no doubt be a great weakening to our men, and a hazard of the overthrow of the voyage: these things considered, both our Captaine, Matter Hood, and I, doe rather thinke it good for the wealth of our voyage, the health of our men, and safetie to our shippes, to goe roome with the coast of Brasil, where by Gods grace wee shall well victuall our selves, both with wine which is our greatest want, and other necessaries.

Besides, it is given us here to understande, by the Portingals which we have taken, that there is no doubt, but that by Gods helpe and our endeavour, wee shall be able to take the towne of Bayea at our pleasure, which if wee doe put in practise, and doe not performe it, being somewhat advised by them, they offer to loose their lives. And hauing by this meanes victualled our selves, wee may there spende vpon the coast some three or foure moneths, except in the meane time wee may happen vpon some good thing to content my Lords, and to paye backe our owne credits: otherwise, wee may take the Spring of the yeere, and so proceede, according to my Lords directions. And assure your selves (by the assistance of God) wee will not returne without such benefit by this voyage, as may rebound to my Lords profit, and the honour of our Countrey. Now if there bee any of you, that can giue better course and advice, then this which I haue deliuered, let him speake, and wee will not onely heare him, but thanke him for his counsell, and followe it.

To this speech of M. Anthonie, M. Lister our Captaine answered in this sort: M. Wichrington, & M. Anthonie both, you know, that the last words that my Lord had with us in such a chamber was, that in any case we should followe our voyage onely for the South sea, except by the way, we might perchance meete with such a purchase, as that we might returne with 6000. pounds: and therefore I see no safetie, howe wee may dare offer to goe backe againe, being so neere the Streights as we are: for my part I neither dare nor will consent vnto it, except we be further forced, then yet we are. My accompt is this, that he that dieth for this yeere is excused for the next, and I rather chosse death, then to returne in disgrace with my Lord.

Perunto both the Captaine & M. of the Admirall replied that they were all of that minde: yet notwithstanding that in going roome the voyage was in better possibilitie to be performed, then in wintering either in the Streights, or at Port S. Iulian, all things considered. And so agreeing, and concluding all in one, they were determined presently to depart.

The next day being the 2. of February, there fell our many and others speeches on the part concerning the altering of our course, some would continue for the Streights, and other some would not. Whereupon a victue was taken in both shippes of victuall, and reasonable store was found for both companies: and the winde withall comming to the North, we determined to take out of the prizes the best necessaries that were in them, and so call them off, and to plie for the Streights.

All this time we helde on our course, and the 15. day wee found our selves in the height of 44. degrees, but then the winde came to the South, with much raine, winde, colde, and other intemperate weather, continuing in that sort 5. or 6. dayes, in which time we halled backe againe into the height of 42. degrees.

Sunday being the 20. of February, our Admirall being something to the leeward of us,

They returne  
 being in the  
 latitude of 44.  
 degrees.

and the Roome for  
 would speake with  
 Captaine Wichring-  
 ton, the coast of  
 Our Captaine  
 notwithstanding  
 Seeing then that

The 21. day  
 our Admirall departed  
 upon our whole  
 our selves, and led  
 out the company  
 bare with him, a  
 slender, and there-  
 fore to be relieved,  
 the Barke, to en-  
 our saleties not  
 considered also,  
 continued in this  
 most desirous to  
 shippes, but that  
 thinke we will of  
 to followe the Ad-

The 10. day  
 our boord, and

The 28. day  
 Streights, and  
 next day could be

The 5. day  
 and a terte, and  
 the pinnace and  
 with 18. good men  
 in the morning  
 the roade of Can-  
 that belonged to  
 sure, hauing al-  
 the Canoa.

The 11. day  
 ming in which  
 but they lost the  
 for the roade as  
 therefore we can-  
 thene, but per-

At our comm-  
 was a hulke of  
 Ordinance: the  
 but not one tou-  
 time to be able,  
 towne together.

The next day  
 some of them: but  
 gaine the next  
 of the Countrey  
 cording to perso-  
 and gaue very  
 about our cares  
 all to thinke  
 selves, some to

and the Royme somewhat ceas'd, put aboarde his flagge in the mixen shoyws, as a token that hee would speake with vs, and thereupon wee bare roome with him, and hauing hailed one another, Captaine Wickington shew'd the disposition of all his companie, which was rather to go roome with the coast of Brasilia, then to lie after that soj in the sea with foule weather, and contrary wind. Our Captaine on the other side, shew'd the contrary disposition of his men, and companie, willing notwithstanding to proceede: but in the ende, both the shippes fell asunder, and our Captaine said, Seeing then there is no remedie, I must be content, though against my wil.

The 21. day the weather grew faire, and the winde good at the South for the Streights, yet our Admirall bare roome still, we supposing he would haue taken the benefite of the time: whereupon our whole companie begane to thinke of the inconueniences that would arise by deubing our selues, and loosing our Admirall, being very willing to continue their course, and yet not without the company of the Admirall. And then wee beganne to call about after him, and at the last bare with him, and hee tolde vs, that upon a second vie we of the victuals, hee founde their store so slender, and their want so great, that there was no remedie for them but to seeke some means to be reliev'd, which was the onely cause that hee bare Southward. This speache made vs of the Barke, to enter into a newe consultation: and wee founde many of our men speake, and all our calculators not seruicable, and the Smiths that should mende them to be in the Admirall. Wee considered also, that by breaking of companie, the shippes should be the more weakened: we continued in this consultation till the 24. day, and in all that time founde Master Captaine Lister most desirous to accomplish, and to fulfill the voyage, and not willing in any case to turne his shipp, but that the desire which we all had to continue in consort with our Admirall, made vs to thinke w<sup>ch</sup> of his companie, and in fine, an agreement and conclusion was thus made on all sides, to follo to the Admirall, without any more talks of the Streights till the Spring.

The 10. day of March, it fell out so unfortunate, that Samuel Teller our Masters mate, fell over boord, and so perished, we being not able by any means to recouer him.

The 28. day being in the height of 21. degre, we espied a saile, which we iudged came out of the Streights, and had rich loading, but the night being at hand, wee lost her very unluckely, and the next day could haue no sight of her.

The 5. day of April we fell with the lande of Brasilia, in the height as I iudge of 16. degrees and a tenth, and our Captaine went then aboarde the Admirall, where they concluded to sende the pinnace and our boate a shoare for fresh water, because wee stood in neede of it, which did so with 18. good men, and thye of foure tunne of water caskes. They were from vs, till the 8. day in the morning, at which time wee espied them againe, and that day wee came all together into the roade of Camano, where there came a Canoa aboarde vs, and one of the chiefest Portingals that belonged to the place. Here wee tooke in beefes, hogges, water and wood at our pleasure, hauing almost no man able to resist vs, but some of our Portingals stole from vs in the Canoa.

The 11. day wee entred into the hauen of Bayca, where wee were receiued at the point coming in with two great pieces of Ordnance, which discharged bullets at vs 5. times a piece, but they lost shotte and powder, and did vs no harme. After we had passed the point, wee hailed in for the roade as close as the winde would permit vs, but could not come so neere as we desired, and therefore we came to an ancre a faire birch off the towne, yet without great store of shotte from thence, but yet our harme was none at all for ought they could doe.

At our coming in, wee founde in the roade eight shippes and one caruell, of the which one was a hulke or double flie boate of the burden of 250. tunnes, hauing in her 24. pieces of good Ordnance: these with the rest of the shippes, together with the towne, gaue vs shotte, and shotte, but not one touch'd so much as any of our sailes. And least wee shoulde seeme in the meane time to be idle, wee rayped for euery shot of theirs, two or three sometimes at the shippes and the towne together.

The next day at night wee thought to haue hailed in with the shippes, and to haue fetched out some of them: but the winde blew then off the shoare, so that we could not possibly doe it. And againe the next day at night we concluded to goe with our owne two boates, and two other boates of the Countrey which we had taken before, which went with caruell sailes into the roade, and accordingly performed the same, notwithstanding the shotte of the enemy. The spoone did shine, and gaue very good light, and in wee went with our caruels and boates, and the shotte came about our eares as thicke as haille: but the Portingals and the rest, perceiving vs no whitte at all to thinke or bee dismay'd, forsooke their shippes, and begame to prouide to saue themselves, some with their boates, some by swimming, and so wee entred the shippes with a great

They take 4. shippes out of the harbor of Mexico, notwithstanding the shot of the enemy.

Shoote, and found few to resist vs: but yet the shoare not being a cables length from vs, they did so plye both their great and small ordnance at vs, that it much annoyed vs: But yet for all that we made light of their shot, and our men of the Barke Clifforde entered the Admirall and Vice admirall, and our Admiralls men entered two other shippes of the like burden, and presently every one cut the cables in the hauffe, and so by the helpe of God in despite of them all, wee brought away foure of them. The least whereof was of the burthen of one hundred and thirtie Tunnes.

In this broyle the hulke shotte at vs many times, but did no hurt at all: but at the last wee comming by the hulke towing our irwe prizes, wee halled them and demanded whence they were. they answered vs of Flushing, and then wee commaunded him to waie ancre, and to come after vs: And not daring to refuse it, hee did so, and brought with him a caruell with fourtie or fiftie butts of wine in her, and another small barke, which had little or nothing in her: and ridde by vs as one of our companie, and was a shippe of the burthen of 250. tunnes. But hard happe was to finde no great matter, either of Merchandise or victuals in these shippes, saving in one of them we found 4. butts of wine, in another 2. in another one, and some sfl, and all the rest of their lading was on shoare.

All this was done upon Easter eue, and wee gaue thanks to God, that wee had speede so well: and that very night there came a boate from off the towne, with a Dutch marchand, and one Portugall, to offer some ransom for the shippes, as they said, but as I iudge rather to espie our strength: wee kept them that night aboard, and the next day wee sent them to our Admirall.

The next day being Easter day arose a very great storme, insomuch that our caruel which we first tooke brake from vs, and one of our irwe prizes also, by meanes of the breaking of her cable, slippe away: whercupon, although the winde was great, and the sea troublesome, yet wee sent certaine of our men in our boate, to recover them if they might, but wee feare, that the rage of the weather hath caused vs to leele our men, and prizes to.

In the middelt of this storme, our two Spaniards which wee tooke in the Riuer of Plate, seeing vs all bule about our prizes, beganne to thinke howe they might escape our hands, and suddenly slippe both out of one of the Cabbins windows, and by swimming gotte a shoare, a thing which seemed to vs impossible, considering the outrage of the weather.

This storme continued long, and prevented vs of making our intended attempt against the towne, having as much to doe as possibly we might, in keeping our shippes and prizes from running a shoare, and falling into the hands of those that stood gaping greedily for our ruine.

The 19. day the storme being a litle ceased, wee all wayed and came to an Islande that lyeth next North west from the Bay, and the 20. day wee went on shoare, and our Carpenters set vp our pinnelle.

The 21. day the people of the Countrey came downe a maine vpon vs, and beset vs rounde, and shot at vs with their bowes, and arrowes, but in short time we caused them to retire, and many of them were carried away by the helpe of their fellowes, although wee had some of our men hurt with some of their arrowes.

The 24. day wee received out of the caruell 2. butts of wine, and 4. barrells of ople, and halfe a quarter.

The 26. of Appill our pinnelle was lanchod: and the same day came downe vnto vs a great number of Portugalls and Indians, with whom we skirmished the space of 2. houres to their cost.

The 2. day of May the Admiralls boate went a shoare with 14. men to fill water, and presently being on shoare, they were intrappd with two or 300. Indians which assailed them, and slew one or two of our men, but the rest escaped notwithstanding the number of the enemy, and came safe againe towch water to the shippe. We suffered this losse by meere negligence, and want of circumspection.

The 5. day the Captaine of the Admirall himselfe, tooke a small barke, his owne litle caruel, our pinnelle & the Dutchmans boate, & at night went to shoare to get victuals, amongst the bullockes which were in the fields: and in the morning they were gone so farre, that they were out of sight. Which being perceived by the enemy, they presently made ready their gally for the Admirall, with 4. caruels, with as many men in them as possibly could thrust in and stand one by another: and they bare ouer with the North West to meete with our pinnelle & boats: whercupon our men fell into great danger, although the Lister our Captaine dissuaded the Whirington from that attempt, by saying before him the danger both of himselfe & vs also, being so far one from the other. But being once gone, there was no remedy but they were to abide whatsoever might happen: we in the barke Clifford, although we were weakly left, yet perceiving the gally to make after our men, we wayed and

and pursued the Duke also gotte sight of a winge of flyinge speies of a withstanding that theyooke well, and made so waited the welcome, which presently after mightie shooe ly, with small boord them, at And surely to the fetwone of a uer of all victor that the enemy and whereas at hundred men in their legges, b and the departe with the numb ming a boord in ether noise of du

We lost in c mate, Laurenc mans man, who and thus it ple men, against 6. thanks to his s

How touch was nothing le which was to o nere them by o shippes was an

Howe wher were slaine, as ble other wise of the sight, here their Masters: with 400. men all: and I am the Towne, he

The twelfth the complaint ment of the fi not. I gaue bi

The thirtee as one butte of and one barrell to haue out of chests, and six of one hundred the shoare.

The 14. da Bayca, but n yet to giue an and boates, for

and pursued the Gallie, as neere the shoare as we could conveniently come for want of water: the Hulke also waied, and came after vs, to followe the enemy, but the enemy with his oares gotte sight of our Pinuelle, and boates before we could, and bare directly towch them: which being espied of our men, and they seeing no way to auoide them, made themselves ready, (notwithstanding the great odds) to fight it our like men, and to liue, and die together. The course that they tooke for their best advantage vpon the sudden, was this: they went all into the Pinuelle, and made fast the Dutchmans boate to one side, and the small Caruell to the other side, and so waited the coming of the enemy, giuing them first of all a peece of Ordnance for their welcome, which they presently repaled againe with a peece out of the pproue of the Gallie, and presently after, with three or foure small halfe peeces, charged with haile shotte, and so giuing a mightie shoote, came all aboard together, crying, entra, entra, but our men receaued them so boldly, with small shotts and pikes, that they killed them like Dogges. And thus they continued aboard them, almost a quarter of an howre, thinking to haue deuoured our men, pinuelle, and all. And surely to mans iudgement, no other thing was likely, in regard of their great number, and the fetunes of our men, & they at the first thought that all was their owne: but God, who is the giuer of all victories, so blessed our small companie, & so strengthened their armes, and minds to fight, that the enemy hauing receaued a mightie foile, was glad to ridde himselfe from their hands: and whereas at their entrance, we esteemed them to be no lesse then betwix two hundred, and three hundred men in the Gallie, we could scarce perceauie twentie men at their departure stande on their legges, but the greater part of them was slaine, many deadely wounded, their oares broken, and the departed from our men, hanging vpon one side, (as a Schoole that hath lost her left eare) with the number of dead and wounded men, that lay one vpon another. And whereas their coming aboard was in a great tumult, with drumme, shooting, and crying, they departed without either noise of drumme, or speech.

A marvellous  
defeat of the  
Dutchingals by  
a few of our  
men.

We lost in this conflict of our men, three onely, which were Alexander the Master Gunners mate, Laurence Gambrell a proper young man of Hampton, and another that was Master Benmans man. Some also were hurt with the arrows of the enemy, but the wounds are curable: and thus it pleased Almighty God, of his great goodness, to giue victorie to 50. of 60. Englishmen, against 6. of 700. Dutchingals and Indians, for which we ceased not to giue such burifull thanks to his Mercie, as so miraculous a victorie deserued.

Now touching the purpose of our men, who made that attempt for fresh victuals, their labour was nothing lost, but in despite of the enemy, they brought to our ships 16. of 17. young bullocks, which was to our great comfort, and refreshing. As for vs that were in our ship, we could not come neere them by two mile, or more, to giue them any aide, yet we suppose that the countenance of our Shippes was an encouragement to our men, and some manner of feare to the enemy.

Now whereas our opinion concerning the number of the Dutchingals, and Indians, which were slaine, as before said, was grounded at that time vpon our probable coniecture, not being able other wise to come to the knowledge thereof: you shall vnderstande, that the next night after the fight, there came aboard vs, two Indians vpon a Gyngatho, who were runne away from their Masters: and they told vs for a very good truth, that the Gallie went out from the Towne with 400. men in her, but there came not backe to the Towne againe aliuie, about thirtie of them all: and I amongst the rest, being desirous to knowe of one of them, what the newes was at the Towne, he answered me with great laughter. Todo esta cecadoo en Terra.

The twelfth day, I was sent for to come aboard the Admirall, about the Hulke: where vpon the complaint of the Dutch men, Master Withington entered into bande to them for the payment of their freight, but howe my Loye will like that bande of debt at our returne, I knowe not. I gaue him my aduise, and counsell, to get his band againe into his hands.

The thirteenth day, our Captaine sent out of our shippe certaine victuals vnto the Admirall, as one butte of dighe rise, two chests of cleane rise, one barrell of oatmeale, one barrell of peason, and one barrell of oyle, because they were somewhat franted of victuals, and we at this time are to haue out of the Admirall our part of fine and twentie chests of fine suger, and more, of eidge chests, and six chests that were taken in the Baye of Todos Santos, at the Engueuos, more of one hundred and thirtie hats, and other diuers pillages, which were taken in the piles, and at the shoare.

The 14. day, being Munday, it was concluded amongst vs all, not to leaue the Towne of Bayca so, but notwithstanding the time that they had to strengthen themselves, and the Towne, yet to giue an attempt for the winning of it: and therefore we provided our Pinuelle, Caruell, and boates, for the enterprise: and as we were departing from our Shippes, the winde turned directly



rectly contrarie to our course, so that our determination for that time was broken, and we returned againe to our shippes: and to say the truth, if the weather and wind had serued, our attempt had bene very desperate, considering the number of Portugals and Indians which were then gathered together, to be 7. or 8000. and their artillerie vpon the shoare, playing vpon vs: but neuertheless, we had proceeded, if the winds had fauoured vs.

The 16. day we went to certaine Ingenios of the Portugals, where we found the people fled, and we entered their houses without resistance. We founde in their purging house 1000. poes of sugar, some halfe purged, some a quarter, and some newly put into the poes: so that euery man tooke his poe of sugar for their provision, and set all the rest on fire.

The 17. day we all waied to goe to another Ingenio, to see if we could finde there better sugar, and in the way, we met with a prise, which was a Caruell, which we found spuing with the weather, and entered her, and had in her onely three Fawcons of yron, which our pinnets brought away, and sette the shippe on fire. Dalamor in the small prise ranne so farre in, that he brought his shippe on ground, where she laye three or foure howres, till such time as there came from the towne three Caruels full of men, which being perceaued of vs, our Capitaine, with our men, went to him to albe him. The Caruels came within Fawcon shot of vs, but durst come no nearer, least they might haue called of the like banket, that they receaued the last time. About halfe flood, came the Gally againe, and three Caruels more, but before they came, the bark was a floate, and set saile: and then they all went to gard their Ingenios, which we had purposed to visite: but the night coming on, perswaded vs to the contrary.

The 19. day we set saile to goe into the roade of Bayea againe, with our pinnets, and a flag of truce, to see if we could recover our foure men, which remained alive of those ten, that perished in our boate, of whom we spake before, which foure were vnfotunately fallen into their hands: but they at our apporching nere the towne, shot at vs, and we as ready as they, gaue them in all 27. shot, and so ankered a litle from the towne, to see what they would doe.

The 20. day riding still before the towne, our Admirall sent a Negro a shoare, with letters from the Portugals, that we had prisoners a boord: the effect of which letters, was, that if we might haue our men released, and deliuered vs, they should haue theirs from our ships.

The next day in the morning, in deede of their bloodie flagges, they put vpon two white flagges, and sent a Singatho off to vs with two Indians, with letters of answeere from the Gouernour: but they would not consent in any case that we should haue our men, and killed their Portugals to take their captiuitie patiently, for they would not redeeme them: a motion they made in their letters, to buy againe one of their prises, which we had taken out of the roade: but our Admirall answered them, no, seeing they detained our men, we would keepe both their men, and shippes too. The same evening we wayed, and came out of the Pauern, halfe a league to Seaward.

The 22. we set saile to sea, and the 23. came to an Island 12. leagues to the Southward of Bayea, to wood, and water.

The 24. day being aboard with our pinnets, we met with a Canoa, wherein was one Portugall, and five Indians: we shot at the Canoa, and killed an Indian, and tooke the Portugall, and one of the Indians, and brought them aboard our shippes: we there examined them, and the Portugall confessed that there was a shippe laden with meale, and other victuals, bound for Fernambucke, but put into a creeke, because she durst not goe along the coast, hearing of our shippes. Whereupon we manned both our pinnets, and tooke the Portugall with vs, to goe and seeke the same shippe, but that night we could not finde her.

The 26. day we went againe, and found her, being halled vp into a creeke, where a man would haue thought a shippe boate could not haue entered: we found her in deede laden with meale principally: but she had also in her foureteen chests of sugar, of which two were in powder, and twelue in loaves. This shippe was of the burden of one hundred and twentie tunnes, and a new shippe, this being the first voyage that euer she made, and as the Portugall confessed, she was freighted for Fernambucke, but the men of Bayea hauing great want of bread, bought both the ship and her lading, and so thought to stay her in this creeke, till we were gone off the coast: but it was our good happe, so to disspoint their pretense, and to fetch her from thence, where they thought her as safe as if she had bene at Lisbon.

The 28. day we deusted the meale amongst vs, according to the want of euery shippe.

The 30. day, 16. or 17. Dutchmen went with their boate from the Pulke to shoare, to fill water: and vpon a sudden they were assailed with 50. or 60. Portugals, and so many more Indians armed with shot, and other weapons, and they slew their Master, & Purser, and the rest were hurt,

hurt, but yet escaped our landing.

The last day of March, and the 1. of Portugals which vpon we went the hills from the before them, and quickly, and at our

The third day of this voyage, we had him 6. but of 8. seamen, for for proceeds for the loss of his particu

The 7. of our otome shippes

The 8. day of the weather.

The 10. day, before all the comen for want of ab the Islands of the chafe, that might no man would a and vs great expected to returne

The 16. day her a shoare vpon could conuenient 9. chests of sugar From this time gaine, where we our losses in 10.

The 7. day (as he told vs) selected of the riu we realed not one of two, one of an come, hauing so

The 20. day Fernambucke, to come into hau the forward count rer we endeauour our otome courle

The 24. day, would goe for th part was bent to water, and yet it

The 26. day no more. This

The 27. day Capitaine allow

with euery man

The 1. of next we continu of a boy to walke

hurt, but yet escaped with their lives: a good warning for vs, to be circumspect, and careful in our landing.

The last day of May, we call off one of our pyses, which we called the George, and our Admirall, and the Quille took the men, and other necessaries out of her, into them. The same day the Hopingals which had hurt the Dutch men, came to the shoare, and bared vs to come a land: whereupon we went into our pinnets with 40. shotte: but the cowardly villanes raune all away to the hills, from the water side: but Master Lister, with nine men, followed them, and they fled still before them, and durst not stay their approach: so they came backe againe, and were killed more quietly, and at our pleasure.

The third day of June, our Captaine Master Lister, hauing a great desire for the performance of this voyage according to my Lords direction, went to our Admirall, and requested him to giue him 6. butts of wine, 1. barrrell of oyle, 3. or 4. barrrels of flesh, and to haue Thomas Hood, and 7. or 8. seamen, for some of our landmen, and by Gods helpe, he with the barke Clifford, would alone proceede for the south sea: but the Admirall mightly withstoode his motion, and would graunt no more of his particular requests.

The 7. of June, hauing no use at all of our pyses, we burnt one, and call off another, and filled our owne shippes with the necessaries of them.

The 8. day we put off to sea, but yet with much adoe came againe to our anking place, because of the weather.

The 10. day, the Admirall sent for vs to come aboard him, and bring come, he opened a Card before all the companie, and tolde vs, that my Lordes voyage for the South sea, was overthowen for want of able men, and victuals, and that therefore he thought it best to pipe for some of the Islands of the West India, or the Aiores, to see if they could meete with some good purchase, that might satisfie my Lorde. These wordes were taken heauily of all the companie, and no man would answer him, but kept silence, for very griefe to see my Lordes hope thus deceaied, and his great expences and coles cast away. The common souldiers seeing no other remedie, were contented to returne as well as he.

The 16. day, we espied a saile, whereupon our pinnets, and Dalamor gaue her chase, and put her a shoare vpon the Island, where the men forsooke her, and ran away with such thinges as they could conveniently carry: our pinnets booyed her, and found little in her: they tooke out of her 9. chefts of sugar, and one hogge, and 35. peeces of peeues, and so left her vpon the sands.

From this time forwarde, we began to ply northwards, and the first of Iulie fell with the land againe, where we staid, and found reasonable good stoys. I tooke the latitude that day, and founde our selues in 10. deg. 22. minutes.

The 7. day we determined to fall with Fernambucke, and we came so nere it, that Dalamor (as he tolde vs) espied some of the shippes that were in the harbour: yet notwithstanding we all fel to leeward of the riuer, and could not after that, by any meanes recover the height of it againe: but we ceased not on all partes, to endeuour the best we could, and oftentimes lost the companie for a day or two, one of another, but there was no remedie, but patience, for Fernambucke we could not come, hauing so much our throes to the northward, and the wind keeping at the south, or south-west.

The 20. day I tooke the Sunne in 5. deg. 50. minutes, which was 2. deg. to the northward of Fernambucke, and the further we went, the more vntowardly vido the rest of our shippes, either to come into haucn, or to keepe companie one with another. And truly I suppose, that by reason of the forward course of the Admirall, he meant of purpose to lose vs: for I knowe not how the neede we endeuoured to be to him, the further off would he beare from vs, and we seeing that, kept on our owne course, and lookt to our selues as well as we could.

The 24. day, our whole companie was called together to consultation, for our best courses some would goe for the West India, some directly north for England, and in conclusion, the greater part was bent to plee for our owne Countrey, considering our necessaries of victuals, and fresh water, and yet if any place were offered vs in the way, not to omit it, so fecke to fill water.

The 26. day in the morning, we espied a lowe Island, but we lost it againe, and could descrie it no more. This day we found our selues in 3. deg. 49. minutes.

The 27. day we searched what water we had left vs, and found but 9. butts onely, so that our Captaine allowed but a pinte of water for a man a day, to preferue it as much as might be, whereby every man was content, and we were then in number 50. men and boyes.

The 1. of August, we found our selues 5. degrees to the Northward of the line, all which morning we continued our course homeward, without touching any where: toward the ende whereof, a horrible accident fell out in our Quille, which being deuicid from vs in a calme, fel a fire by

Some great negligence, and perished by that means in the seas, we being not able any waies to helpe the Shippe, or to save the men.

The 4. day of September, we had brought our selves into the height of 47. degrees, 20. minutes, somewhat to the northwards of the Islands of the Alices: and thus building up and downe with contrarie windes, the 29. of the same moneth, we reached the coast of England, and so made an ende of the voyage.

**A very exact and perfect description of the distances from place to place, from the river of Plate, till you come to Pette Gnaras, northward, and beginning againe at the river of Plate, till you come to the ende of the Streights of Magellan, Southwards, with the degrees of latitude, wherein every place standeth.**

The river of Plate.

Robato.

Santa Maria.

The port of S. Pedro.

Marthin de Souza, Laguna.

Dunde Recca.

The river of Patua, Santa Catharina.

The river of S. Francisco.

Cannanea.

S. Vincent.

S. Sebastians Island.

The Island of Alcatrazes, Angra-deris.

The river of Genero.

Cape Frio.



The River of Plate standeth in 35. degrees, 10. minutes, upon the North side of the point there lieth an Island a league off the Shore.

From Lobato to the Cape Santa Maria, the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and betwene them are 55. leagues.

South-east from the Cape of Santa Maria, there lieth an Island two leagues off the Shore: and there is a good roade steepe betwene it and the maine, and the maine land is lowe land.

From the Cape of Santa Maria, to the port of Santo Pedro, you have 42. leagues, and all lowe land, and the land lieth North-east, and south-west: and on the South side of the port of Santo Pedro, there lieth a point of a land, which lieth a good league off the Shore.

From the port of Santo Pedro, to the port of Martin de Souza, you have 52. leagues, and the land lieth North-east, and South-west, and from the port of Martin de Souza, to the Laguna, you have 42. leagues, and the land higher. The course is north-east, and by north, and South-west, and by South: and there is an Island 2. leagues off the Shore, where there is a good roade steepe for ships.

From the Laguna to the port of Dunde Recca, you have 5. leagues, and it is a very good roade for all windes, saving a north-east wind: and from the port of Dunde Recca, to the river of Patua, you have 10. or 11. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and stands in 29. degrees. The mouth of that river doeth shut with an Island, called S. Katherins Island, which is a great Island of 8. or 9. leagues long, which Island lieth north, and South: and on the East side, it hath no roade, but one small Island, which lieth at the south end, and another at the north end, called the Island of Arbureto, which betweth as a great Baye, going in betwene S. Katherins Island, and the maine: in which Baye you may come to an anchor, and there are many small Islands: and the northern ende of S. Katherins Island stands in 28. degrees.

From S. Katherins Island, to the river of S. Francisco, you have 26. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and the river of S. Francisco hath a great mouth, and lieth by East, and West, and hath three Islands, where you may come to an anchor, and the maine land is high, and ragged.

From the river of S. Francisco to Cannanea, you have 15. leagues, the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and in the mouth, there is a small Island, that riseth like a saddle, and is a good roade, and stands in 26. degrees, and the maine land is high, and ragged.

From Cannanea to S. Vincent, you have 40. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and by east, and south-west, and by west. S. Vincent stands in 23. degrees, 30. minutes, and hath a small Island in the mouth, bearing west, north-west off you, and is called the Deimes gillaro.

From S. Vincent to S. Sebastians Island, you have 12. leagues, and the course lieth east north-east, and west south-west, and this Island is a great Island, and when you come out of the Sea, it sheweth like a Cape land, and south-west from that Island, there lieth a small Island, called the Island of Alcatrazes, and sheweth a high pinnacle.

From S. Sebastians Island, to Angra-deris, you have 26. leagues, and the land lieth east north-east, and west south-west, and from Angra-deris, to the river of Genero, you have 18. leagues. The river of Genero stands in 23. degrees, and riseth with high hills, and one of the hills sheweth like the toppe of a Shippe, and hath in the mouth many small Islands, and a high pinnacle on the West side, and is called the finger loafe.

From the river of Genero, to Cape Frio, you have 28. leagues, and the land lieth East, and west, and this Cape when you come out of the Sea, sheweth like an Island, and round: and when you come neere, it sheweth like a rocke, with many white strokes in it, and in the highest part of it

it riseth broken, Cape, but two leagues, and betwene some house by a

From Cape the same Baye, James Island, 2 leagues off the good roade betwenger, but that whith wood, water, and

From the Island north-east, and south-west, and the

From the Cape south-west, and the

From Paray and stands in 21

From Mann and stands in 11

From Taper south-west, and the off into the sea, and

From the point east, and south-west land Saluado, hills, and ragged toward of this Gu betwene the m

From Guar Call, and South point: and from

which stands also Gaster Hill, and hath many hills, and stands

From Spirite South, and this marke, and stands

From the river east, and south-west, and by in the land degrees, 20. minutes

From tract C and this Crearer them high lands, till you come neere

From Crear South, and by which is a good

From Maran west, and off this Swale to seaward you goe from Pa because of the volume in 6. or 7. f come as high as a league off: and the Swale to sea

it riseth broken, which is a good marke, and stands in 23. degrees, and to the Northward of the Cape, but two leagues from it is the Baye Formosa, and hath in the mouth of it 4. or 5. small Islands, and betwene the maine and them, is a good roade, and on the north side the Baye, there is a lone house by a small river.

From Cape Frio, to the Baye of Salvador, you have nine leagues, and on the South side of the same Baye, there are many Islands, and the land lieth north and south, untill you come to S. James Island, which is 12. leagues to the northward of the Cape, this Island of S. James, is two leagues off the shoare, and hath two Islands hard by it, that the we all one thing, and there is a good roade betwene the maine, and the Island, a Falcon shot off the Island, and there is no danger, but that which you see, this Islande stands in 23. degrees, and 20. minutes, and hath upon it wood, water, and towle.

From the Island of S. James, to the Cape of S. Thome, you have 8. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and stands in 22. degrees.

From the Cape of S. Thome, to Parayua, you have 8. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and stands in 21. degrees, 40. minutes.

From Parayua to Mannage, you have 5. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and stands in 21. degrees.

From Mannage to Tapemere, you have 5. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and stands in 21. degrees.

From Tapemere to Cleretebe, you have 4. or 5. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and the said point of Cleretebe hath a ledge of rocks, which lieth a league and a half off into the sea, and the point is lowe land, and stands in 20. degrees, 45. minutes.

From the point of Cleretebe to Guarrapare, you have 7. leagues, and the course lieth north-east, and south-west, this Guarrapare hath an Island lying off it, which is round, and is called the Island Saluado, or barren, lying a league and a halfe off the shoare, and the maine lande is high hills, and ragged, which is a good marke, and stands in 20. degrees, 30. minutes, and to the northward of this Guarrapare, you have 3. Islands, which lie about 3. leagues off the maine lande, and betwene the maine and them, halfe a league off the shoare is a good roade.

From Guarrapare to Spiritus Santus, you have 8. leagues, and the land lieth North and by East, and South, and by West, and Spiritus Santus hath a ledge of rocks, lying off the north-east point: and from this point about two leagues up into the lande, you shall see a round high hill, which stands alone by himselfe, which is very ragged, which is called the hill of Spader Alue, or Spader Hill, and you shall see hence a great way off at sea. This Spiritus Santus is a great Baye, and hath many small Islands in the middes, or mouth, and the river lieth by north-east, and south-west, and stands in 20. degrees large.

From Spiritus Santus to the river Mangus, you have 6. leagues, and the land lieth North, and South, and this river Mangus maketh up in the land 3. hills, like round Islands, which is a good marke, and stands in 19. degrees, 40. minutes.

From the river Mangus to the river Doulee, you have 7. or 8. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and it is very flat, a league and a halfe off the shoare, and the land is lowe land, and up in the land is a high hill, which lieth along, as the coast lieth, and this river stands in 19. degrees, 20. minutes.

From the river Doulee to Crearere, you have 17. leagues, and the land lieth North, and South, and this Crearere on the south side, sheweth as 4. openings, a league one from another, and two of them high land, and the other two lowe land, and they are all so alike, that it sheweth all one river, till you come neere it, and stands in 18. degrees, 45. minutes.

From Crearere to Maranepe, you have ten leagues, and the land lieth North, and by East, and South, and by West, and hath in the mouth of the river a white cleefe, which sheweth like a sheet, which is a good marke, and stands in 18. degrees, 15. minutes.

From Maranepe to Parrewepe, you have 5. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and of this Parrewepe, lieth a high point of land, with many trees on it, and because it is all lowe to sea ward, from the mouth of the harbour, you shall see the shoales of Aburalus, and when you goe from Parrewepe, you shall see a league off into the sea, and then you shall goe north-east, because of the Baye, which is very dangerous, and when you see the shoales to sea ward, you shall runne in 6. or 7. fathome, and finde lost land: then are you in the channell directly, and when you come as high as the point of Parrewepe, by the way that you have made, you shall finde your self a league off: and in finding your selfe more then a league off, shall neere in for feare of running on the shoales to sea ward.

From

- The river of Caruels.** From Parrewepe to the river of Caruels, you have 3. leagues, and the Channell will be the you how you shall steer away, and you may boldly boytrowe on the shoales to seaward, because the mouth of the river of Caruels is very shoale, and hath many sands.
- The red cliffs.** From the river of Caruels, to the end of the red cliffs, you have 5. or 6. leagues, and this way you have no danger: but take heede of the breakings that you see: but as for the shoales of Goshow, they doe not brake, therefore looke well out.
- The shoales of Goshow.** From the end of the red cliffs to Corebabo, you have two leagues, and take heede that you go not about a league and a halfe off the shoare: for in all this way from the red cliffs to Corebabo, there lieth a point of sand, and as soon as you be past the point of the rocks, you shall steer right with the sand north-east, all you come within a stones cast of it, and then steer hence East, till you thiuke the shoales are a sterne of you to seaward, and then turne to your way, about the coast, and this point of Corebabo, stands in 17. degrees.
- The cliffs of Corebabo.** From this point of Corebabo to pozte Seguro, you have 28. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and take heede when you come as high as pozte Seguro, of the shoales to seaward, which are very ill. This pozte Seguro, hath great red cliffs which stand at the foot of the towne: and if you doe meane to goe into the harborough, bring your selfe East, and West off the cliffs, and then steer right with them, till you come within the point of the rocks, and then steer hence South: for the North side of the River is all shoale, and the River stands in 16. degrees, 30. minutes.
- Pozte Seguro.** From this point of Corebabo to pozte Seguro, you have 28. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south, and take heede when you come as high as pozte Seguro, of the shoales to seaward, which are very ill. This pozte Seguro, hath great red cliffs which stand at the foot of the towne: and if you doe meane to goe into the harborough, bring your selfe East, and West off the cliffs, and then steer right with them, till you come within the point of the rocks, and then steer hence South: for the North side of the River is all shoale, and the River stands in 16. degrees, 30. minutes.
- Santa Cruz.** From the river of pozte Seguro, to Santa Cruz, you have 3. leagues, and it is a good harborough for small ships: but take heede of the dangers that you see.
- Rio Grande.** From Santa Cruz, to the arme of the grand river, you have 9. or 10. leagues, and take heede that in all this way you come not within 3. leagues of the shoare: for there lie many shoales in the way, and the land lieth North north-east, and South south-west, and over the arme of this Rio Grande, you shall see 3. hills of wood, which be like Islands, which is a very good marke, and stands in 15. degrees, 30. minutes.
- Ileas.** From Rio Grande to Ileas, of the Islands, you have 18. leagues, and the land lieth north, and South, and in this way you have no shoales, but 3. or 4. leagues off: and if you will goe into the Islands, keepe alwaies along the shoare, in sight of the lands, for otherwise you can not see the Islands, because they are litle, and as soon as you see them, steer right with the greatest of them, and betwene the shoare, and there is very good riding, and if you will goe into the river, the Channell lieth from the greatest Island to the mouth of the river, north, and south, and stands in 14. degrees 45. minutes.
- The river of Contas.** From the river Ileas, to the river of Contas, you have 8. leagues, and the land lieth north, and south: this river hath many rocks lying in the mouth of it, and to seaward there lieth a small Island, like a rocke: if you will goe into the river of Contas, boytrowe nere that rocke, for on the other side it is all flat.
- Camamo.** From the river of Contas to Camamo, you have 6. leagues, and this Camamo hath a wide mouth, and off the point of the North shoare, you shall see an Island, which is called the Island of Cayepe: take heede you come not too nere it, for it hath many shoales off it: but boytrowe on the south side, for there goeth in the Channell, where you shall finde 5. or 6. fathome water: and from thence to Guepena, you have 3. leagues.
- The Island of Cayepe.** From the river of Contas to Camamo, you have 6. leagues, and this Camamo hath a wide mouth, and off the point of the North shoare, you shall see an Island, which is called the Island of Cayepe: take heede you come not too nere it, for it hath many shoales off it: but boytrowe on the south side, for there goeth in the Channell, where you shall finde 5. or 6. fathome water: and from thence to Guepena, you have 3. leagues.
- Corpena.** From Guepena to Tenyere, you have 4. leagues, and Tenyere on the south side betweth a high hill, which bearing north-west of you, will rise like a Wallie, with his keele upward, and if you will goe in, be bold to boytrowe on the south side, and you shall goe in 5. or 6. fathome, and stands in 13. degrees: this high hill is called the Schoope of S. Pablo.
- The Schoope of S. Pablo.** From the Schoope of S. Pablo to Bayca, you have 12. leagues, and the course is north-east, and south-west, and if you see white sand, you are to the northward of Bayca, in the point of Lappeane, which point the weth white peeces in the land, like cloth a byping, and Bayca stands in 12. degrees 30. minutes.
- River Royall.** From Bayca to the river Royall, you have 26. leagues, and the land lieth North-east, and south-west, and the point of Tapeane stands in 13. degrees. If you goe out of Bayca, for the northward, you must halfe off east, and by north, till you be 30. or 40. leagues off from the current.
- The river of S. Francisco.** From river Royall to the river of S. Francisco, you have 17. leagues, and the land lieth north-east, and south-west, and stands in 11. degrees large.
- Gurra point.** From the river of S. Francisco, to the point of Gurra, you have 15. leagues, and the land lieth north north-east, and south south-west, and stands in 10. degrees, 20. minutes.
- Camare Guba.** From the point of Gurra, to the cliffs of Camare Guba, you have 6. leagues, & these are great high

high cliffs, w  
these cliffs to  
south south-west

From the  
lyeth north north  
hill like a fadde  
from the cape  
litle woods up  
of Saint Alex  
sin lands in 8

From the  
and by east, and  
upon a high hill

From Ferna  
point of the riv  
south-west by th

From the ri  
east, and south

From Parry  
south-west, and  
eth north-west

Here follo



a shoale, whic  
Marie to goe t  
east hal a degr  
Anthony, and  
and by south t  
be 20. leagues

From Cap  
we stand by sou  
the river of S  
no nere the l

From the  
way betwene  
south-west and

From Cap  
39. degrees, 5

degrees, 30. m  
water bay poi  
stands in 43. d

the sandy bay  
hard about t  
boytrowe for a

From the l  
sals harborou  
of rocks tha

From the

high cleefes, which is a good marke, and it is a good road strete for all westerly winds and from these cleefes to the riuer of Stones you haue 5. leagues, and the land lyeth north north east, and south south west.

From the riuer of Stones to the Cape Saint Augustine you haue 12. leagues, and the land lyeth north north east, and south south west, and this cape when you come out of the sea, seemeth a hill like a saddle, which standeth alone, lying west hand east and by north, and west and by south from the cape by into the land, and coming along the coast the cape lyeth out, and streweth as little woods upon it, and bushes in parts, and 5. leagues to the southward you shall see the Island of Saint Alexo, which is a small lowe Island, which is a good marke, and the Cape of S. Augustin stands in 8. degrees, 30. minutes.

The Island of S. Alexo.  
The Cape of S. Augustine.

From the Cape Saint Augustin to Fernambucke, you haue 8. leagues, the land lyeth north and by east, and south and by west, and the marke of Fernambucke is the Towne it selfe, standing upon a high hill by the water side, which seemeth like to the cape it selfe, and stands in 8. degrees large.

Fernambucke.

From Fernambucke to the Island of Tamereca you haue 4. leagues, and it both on the south point of the riuer reboe cleefes, and if you will goe into the riuer, bying your selfe north east, and south west by the red cleefes, and so beare into the bay, whereas you shall haue 9. or 10. fadome water.

The land of Tamereca.

From the riuer of Tamereca to Parryba you haue 15. leagues, and the land lyeth north and by east, and south and by west, and stands in 8. degrees, 45. minutes.

Parryba.

From Parryba to Tappoam you haue 10. leagues, the land lyeth north north east, and south south west, and from Tappoam to the harborough of Munks you haue 7. leagues, and the land lyeth north west and south east, and the port of Munks stands in 5. degrees, 30. minutes.

Tappoam.  
The harborough of Munks.

Here followeth the like description of the coast from the riuer of Plate to the Streights of Magelan.



Cape Saint Marie on the north side of the riuer of Plate stands in 35. degrees: from the same Cape Saint Marie, to Cape Saint Anthony which is the South Cape of the riuer of Plate, you haue 28. leagues, and the said Cape stands in 56. degrees, 20. minutes: the course betwene them is south south west, and north north east.

Cape S. Marie.

Note that East of the mouth of the riuer of Plate 15. leagues off, there lyeth a shoale, which they call Baxos de Castilliana: he that will shape his course from Cape Saint Marie to goe to the southward must hale off fourtheast, till he be in 36. degrees, then south south east hal a degree, so that you shall giue a birch to the said shoale, as also to the shoales of Saint Anthony, and sounding in 40. or 41. fadome, you shall find rusted sand, then hale away south west, and by south till you come to 40. degrees, where you shall find great stoe of weeds, and you shall be 20. leagues off the shoare.

Baxos de Castilliana.

From Cape Saint Anthony, to the cape of great sandy hills is 48. leagues, the lye south west and by south, and north east and by north: 8. leagues off Saint Anthony lyeth a riuer called the riuer of Saint Anne, which hath in the mouth many flats and shoales, therefore you must come no neerer the shoare, then 40. fadome, to goe cleere of them.

From the Cape of the sandy hills to Cape Saint Andrewe, you haue 31. leagues, and halfe way betwene them both you haue bays and riuers, which are full of shoales: the both Capes lie south west and by west, and north east and by north.

Cape Saint Andrewe.

From Cape S. Andrewe to the Sunken bay you haue 30. leagues, the said bay standeth in 39. degrees, 50. minutes, it lyeth west south west, and east north east.

The Sunken bay.

From the said Sunken bay to the plaine point you haue 25. leagues, the point stands in 41. degrees, 30. minutes: the lye south south west, and north north east, and from this point to the deepe water bay you haue 35. leagues: they lye west south west and east north east: the Deepe water bay stands in 42. degrees, 20. minutes.

The plaine point.  
The deepe water bay.

From the Deepe water bay to the harborough of Lyons you haue 37. leagues: the cape ouer the sandy bay lyeth south south east, and north north west: out of the said Deepe, you may sayle hard aboard the shoare being bolde, from the riuer of Plate to the said bay you haue no harborough for any great ship.

The harborough of Lyons.

From that bay to the harborough of Lyons a lowe coast, with lowe land and white cleefes: the said harborough stands in 44. degrees, when you come to 43. somewhat more, look out for a ledge of rocks that lyeth on the north side of the harborough hard aboard the shoare.

From the said harborough of Lyons to the Cape with woods you haue 30. leagues: they lie south

Cape of woods.

and by west, and North and by east, and halfe way betwene them both, there is a bay.

The round  
cape.

18. leagues to the Northward of the round Cape you haue a riuer which lyeth in west, and is called the riuer of Crauises: you shall knowe when you are thwart: of the riuer, by certaine redde streames that you shall find like eydegates, which are going streames. The coast lyeth from this harborough to the round Cape of woods, southeast and by south, and north west, and by North: the said Cape of woods stands in 45. degrees, 30. minutes.

Cape Blanke.

From the sayd cape of Woods, to cape Blanke, or the white Cape, you haue 3. leagues, the coast lyeth south and by west, and north and by east: the said white Cape stands in 45. degrees, and about 3. leagues to the northward of the Cape, the land lyeth north north west: all by right white cleefes, which be in number 6, and the last of them is the biggest, and broadest, and shewes like a sayle: and in the head of the said Cape is a round hill, which the wey like a cloud: about this cape lye certaine rockes, hard aboord the shoare, and 3. cables length off the shoare you shall haue 25. fadom, and ouer the white cleefes, the land is plaine, and among the cleefes which the Sea hath made, the sea spoures vp, like the spouting of Whales, and vpon the Cape there are some litle woods, and here you haue people inhabiting, of whom take heed: the vpper part of the cape lyeth south and north a league in byedth, and hath in the middle a ledge of rockes aboue water, and on the south side of this Cape, you haue a harborough where is good ankering, but in the nuddell there is a rocke of which take heed.

Port S. Iulian.

From thence to Port S. Iulian is 37. leagues: the course is south and by west, and north and by east: of this port S. Iulian on the south side of the entering of the harborough lye rockes like Cowes, he that goeth in there must boirowe on the north side of the harborough, and within the harborough you shall find two Islands where you may anker hard by them: this harborough stands in 49. degrees.

The Islands  
of Sampson.

Betweene the harborough of port S. Iulian and cape Blanke lye the Islands of Sampson which are 8. in number.

The hill of S.  
Anne.

From the port of S. Iulian to the hill of S. Anne, is 35. leagues: the coast lyeth south west and north east a very plaine land, but onely one hill, and to the Southwards, are small Hammockes, which hammockes stand in 50. degrees 30. minutes.

The riuer of  
S. Anne.  
The riuer de  
Cruz.

From the riuer of S. Anne, to the riuer de Cruz, you haue 8. leagues. The Cruz is north east, and south west. To the northward of the riuer de Cruz, is a high land of two leagues long, and plaine on the toppe which lyeth south and north, and faller on either side like a fable: This coast is shoald foure leagues off: but you may boirowe on the shoare in 20. fadom.

The riuer of  
Galgos.

From the riuer de Cruz, to the riuer of Galgos, you haue 25. leagues: the course lieth north east, and south west, and it stands in 52. degrees, and 10. minutes, and for a marke of it, there is a hill, and on the highest of this hill it is plaine, and the north east end is keepe by and downe, and hath white and browne cleefes, the vpper edge of them blacke: and vnder the hill on the east side it is the wey like a paire of staires, with a blacke point into the sea: halfe a league to the southward of this point is a bay, which is at the entering of the riuer Galgos, where it doth ebbe and flowe, 12. fadom water in the riuer, take heed you goe not so farre in because it is dangerous, therefore goe no further in, then 18. fadom.

The streights  
of Magellan.  
Cape Virgin  
Marie.

From the riuer Galgos to the entrie of the streights of Magellan, called the Cape of the Virgin Marie is 8. leagues, the course is, south southeast, and north north west, and 4. leagues before you come to this Cape, you shall see high keepe cleefes, and gray full of blacke scarres, the sea beating against them like the spouting of whales, but a very wholesome shoare, where you may anker for a South west wind: the highest of this cape is like to Cape S. Vincent in Spayne: at the east side of this cape is a ledge of rockes, which hath a sand about it, which is full of pites, where you shall haue drepe water and by and by ground: this sand the wey is selfe at low water, therefore you must be sure to stemie the shoare halfe a myle till you haue brought the sayd Cape west north west off you: then goe away south west till you come to the lowest, where you shall haue 10. or 12. fadom water. This place is called the Purification: and halfe a league within this land, is a Towne called the name of Iesus: From this said Cape you shall haue a cleefte come from the cape, at the end of this cleefte the Towne stands, and is in altitude, 52. degrees, 30. minutes, and from the said Cape entering the streights, on the north west side within 14. leagues, it begins to be narrower, and narrower, till you come to the highest place of the narrowest entrie, which lyeth west north west, and east southeast: and in the sayd streights, goe a third part of the channell to the north shoare, because there is a ledge of rockes on the south side, and also you shall see land there: therefore you must glue them a good birch: and hauing past this first straight, goe away west south west 8. leagues till you come to a cape called S. Gregorie, with a high cleefte, and

The purifi-  
cation.  
Nombre de Iesus  
which is  
Cathish found  
best open.

and a good r  
are trecherou  
At this C  
well, and call  
off you, and  
they are dan  
leagues, and  
nuts: where  
thence, you sh  
Philip, & in p  
your ship in 4

A letter  
Lord C

**R**

and made the  
small power sh  
cum passe the  
the cape Bona  
gence of all the  
navigated alon  
burnt and sun  
landed at, I bi  
quantitie of tre  
cooke at Calif  
disc, that euer  
did amount in  
ble to containe  
being the vicer  
upon the coast  
heard of in the  
I should not h  
counrey. I th  
experience, I  
was well incre  
will them selfe  
homeward the  
from the Isl  
I humbly pro  
monght be. F  
Thus humbly  
eution of the

and a good road, from the north-west to the south-west: trust not the people of this Cape, for they are trecherous.

At this Cape begins the 2. straight, and is called our Ladie of Grace: it stretcheth west south-west, and east north-east 3. leagues, and in coming off this straight, you shall see 3. Islands west off you, and may stay in among them, having respect that you come not into the Bayes, for they are dangerous. From the 3. Islandes seeke the Chanel of the straightes west south-west, 2. leagues, and from thence you shall hale to the southwards, till you come to the 53. degrees, 30. minutes: where you shall finde a point called the point of Saint Anne, and north north-west from thence, you shall see two or thre plaines, in one of which stands a towne called the Towne of King Philip, & in passing the Butwarke and a great tree, you may come to anchor, where you may moore your ship in 4. fadoms.

A letter of Master Thomas Candish to the right honorable the  
Lord Chamberlaine, one of her Maiesties most honorable priuie Counsell  
touching the successe of his voyage about the world,

**R**ight honorable, as your fauour heretofore hath ben most greatly extended towards me, so I humbly desire a continuance thereof: And though there be no meanes in me to deserue the same, yet the vetermost of my seruicers shall not be wanting, whensoever it shall please your honour to dispose thereof. I am humbly to desire your honour to make knowne vnto her Maiestie the desire I haue had to do her Maiesties seruice in the performance of this voyage. And as it hath pleased God to giue her the victorie ouer part of her enemies, so I trust ere long to see her overthrowe them all. For the places of their welch, wherthey they haue maintained and made their warres, are nowe perfectly discovered: And if it please her Maiestie, with a very smal power she may take the people of them all. It hath pleased the Almighty to suffer me to circumpasse the whole Globe of the world, entering in at the straight of Magellan, and returning by the cape Bona Sperança. In which voyage I haue either discovered or brought certaine intelligence of all the rich places of the world that euer were knowen or discovered by any Christian. I navigated alongst the coast of Chili, Peru, and Noua Spagna, where I made great spoiles: I burnt and sunke 19. sayles of shippes small and great. All the villages and townes that euer I landed at, I burne and spoiled: And had I not bene discovered upon the coast, I had taken great quantitie of treasure. The matter of most profit vnto me was a great ship of the Kings which Iooke at California, which ship came from the Philipinas, being one of the richest of Marchantise, that euer passed those Seas, as the kings Register and Marchants accomptes did shew, for it did amount in value to \* in Mexico to be sold: which goods, (for that my shippes were not able to contayne the least part of them,) I was enforced to set on fire. From the cape of California, being the vndermost part of all Noua Hispania, I navigated to the Islandes of Philipinas hard vpon the coast of China, of which Countrie I haue broughte such intelligence as hath not bene heard of in these parts. The statelines and riches of which collicie I feare to make report, at least I should not be credited. For if I had not knowen sufficiently the incomparable welch of that countrey, I should haue ben as incredulous thereof, as others will be that haue not had the like experience. I sailed along the Islandes of Maluccas, where among some of the heathen people I was well increased, where our countrey men may haue trade as freely as the Portugals, if they will themselves. From thence I passed by the cape of Bona Sperança, and found out by the way homeward the Island of Saint Helena, where the Portugals vse to releue themselves: And from that Island God hath suffered me to returne into England. All which seruicers with my selfe I humbly prostrate at her Maiesties feete, desiring the Almighty long to continue her raigue amongst vs. For at this day shee is the most famous and victorious prince that liueth in the world. Thus humbly desiring pardon of your honour for my tediousnes, I leave your Loyship to the cution of the Almighty. Plimmouth this 19. of September 1588.

Your honours most humble to command,  
Thomas Candish.



The worthy and famous voyage of Master Thomas Candish  
made round about the globe of the earth, in the space of two yeeres  
and lesse then two monethes, begun in the yeere, 1586.



The worshipful and worship gentleman Master Thomas Candish of Suffolke having in the yeere 1585. furnished out a ship wherein he went as Captaine with Sir Richard Greeneuill to Virginia, in which court he passed by the Canaries, and so to the Isles of Dominica, Hispaniola, Saint John de Porto ricco, the Lucaios, and Florida in the west Indies, thus fleshed and somewhat hardened into the Sea, immediately after his coming home began to take in hand a voyage into the South sea, and consequently round about the globe of the world, which he also performed with invincible courage, with great good government, and incredible celeritie, to the great admiration of all men of judgement. Having therefore at his owne proper cost new built from the keele and furnished with all things necessarie for two yeeres provision a haue shippe called the *Desire* of a hundred and fortye, and a lesser of threescore tunnes whose name was the *Content*, joyning therunto a Barke of 40. tunnes named the *Hugh* gallant, in which small fleet were five score and five men, The 7. day of June 1586. he departed from London and came to Waretwich, and sailed from thence the 29. of the same moneth. He arrived at Plimmouth the 8. day of July, from whence he set saile the 21. thereof. Thus he proceeded on his voyage untill the 25. day, at which time one Master Hope dyed which had bene grievously wounded a little before he went to Sea. The 26. day wee met with foure great Brittaine Shippes on which we bestowed eighteene great shot and threetye toyce that stay which we in the Admirall assailed: but we left her and the others, lest we should loose the rest of our consorts, being nine of the clocke at night.

June the 10.  
1586.

We departed  
from Plimmouth the 21.  
of July.

August.

The 5. day of August we fell with the Island of Forteventura, & sailed thence to cape Blank, and so to the coast of Guinea unto a harborough called Sierra Leona, where having conference with the Negroes we fell at variance, so that threescore of our men went on shoare, and dynt them from their towne, and sacked their houses, and burnt their dwellings. And the 29. of the same moneth we departed from them, where going five leagues from the place we came to an Island called Insula Verde, where we found plantans, and other fruites, and fresh water, being an Island of the Negroes but bandyle.

September.

The first of September we burned here some 150. houses because of their bad dealing with vs and al Christians: in this place we redeemed a Portugall whom by treason they had caught and held in very miserabil captivitie. The 13. day we went from thence: the 30. we passed the Equinoctiall lync.

October.  
November.

Thus we sailed fortye untill the 25. of October, at which time we came to the continent of Brasil, and coasting along untill the end of that moneth, the first of November we ankered vnder an Island called Saint Sebastians, where we road three and twenty daies betwene the mayne and it. There we stoyed our selves with fresh water and suell, and built a netve pinnesse of tenne tunnes. On the nyneh day dyed one Robert Smith of the disease called Scurbuto, which is an infection of the blood and the liver.

December.

The 27. of November we left this Island. On the first of December dyed one Robert Cates of the disease aforesayd: and so coasting along untill the 16. of this moneth wee discovered an harborough which we named the *Porte* of *Desire*, according to our Shipp name, being almost as bigge as the harborough of Plimmouth: In this place we had gullies, yutes, penguyns, and seals in abundance to all our consorts and great refreshing: this *Porte* is somewhat on this side of *Porte* *Saine* *Iulian*. And sailing from this harborough toward the Streights, before wee came to the entrance thereof, we espied certaine poore starved Spaniards traupling ouer land toward the riuer of *Place*: whereof weooke one into our ship of whom we vnderstood that of both the two Colonies planted in the Straight of Magelan by Pedro Sarmiento there were but 22. men onely left aliue, all the rest being vicerly perished for hunger, to the number of some thre hundred persons.

January 1587.

On the first day of January we put into the Streight of Magelan, and on the 8. we came vnto two Islands named by Sir Frauncis Drake the one *Bartholomewe* Island, because he came thither on that *Saints* day, and the other *Penguin* Island, on which we powdred thre tunnes of *Penguins* for the victualing of our shippe: and on the 9. day we came vnto a towne of the Spaniards erecting in March 1584. called by them the *Citie* of *King Philippe*, but by vs the

the Towne  
had bene mo  
they were b  
some Gench  
pined and b

Thus say  
ages of a r  
byuities a  
we esping  
meanes few  
Southwest

The famo  
cum, the pea  
of La mocha  
where we ri  
the morning  
rall very be  
dement Sp  
contentment

The 20. d  
we felt an ea  
on the 30. of  
captives by  
reachlesnes  
little though  
ward, and fo  
bought goo  
in despite of  
of April.

Thus ran  
and an India  
ted vs, and i  
their govern  
goods and  
one of our  
was buried i  
the ladies her  
where they g  
which we too  
dome prouid  
George, beca

The 25. d  
ning we esp  
Spaniards, b  
from the Ba  
goe for Lina  
though So  
Pilot for the  
day of May  
would haue  
most ste of  
and found si

And on th  
sayer, and g  
other with m  
of waste call  
by reard, as  
on we gate b

the Towne of famine, because we evidently sawe the inhabitants, all sauing the aforesayde 22. had bene most miserably starved: we tooke away with vs sixe pieces of their ordnance, whereof thye were byasse, and thye were pyon, and were glad to hasten from this place for the most part. some French and vile saavour wherewith it was infected through the contagion of the Spaniards pyned and dead carkeises.

Thus sayling through the Straights, the 20. day of Januarie in the midway we espied Sa- uages of a reasonable Nature, and went to them, and conferred with them: but such was their hutchynes and their trecherie, that they would haue betrayed vs vnder the shewe of amitie: but we espying their treason gaue the first onset, and euery shot of vs chose his man, and by that meanes slew some, and hurt moze, the rest escaped. So hauing many slawes of Southerly and Southwesterly winde, we were kept within the Straights vntill the 23. of February.

The same day we passed out of the Straights into the Sea called by Magelan, Mare pacifi- cum, the peaceable or the calme Sea: Thus we plyed by along the coast of Chili by the Island of La mocha, which standeth in the Southerly latitude of 38. degrees vntill the 14. of March, where we rid vnder an Island called San La Maria, on which Island we landed 80. men armed in the morning betimes, and there came vnto vs the Countrey people which intrated our Gene- rall very well, and presented him with many sortes of meates: for there we had at our comman- dement Spanish wheate, potatoes, hogs, hens, dyed dogfish, and diuers other good things, so our contentment.

The 20. day we departed thence, running along vntill the 28. which day being at the Sea, we felt an earthquake in the latitude of 33. we were put into a Bay called the Bay of Quintera on the 30. of this moneth, where the first of April we had ten of our men slaine, and two taken captiues by the Spaniards: which great misfortune light vpon our men though their great reachlesnesse and want of circumspection, being suddenly surprisid by the Enemie when they little thought of him. But on the third day of the same moneth the Hugh went forth to Sea- ward, and found an Island hauing great Roys of Pellicanes & Penguins vpon it, wherof they brought good Roys vnto vs: and so furnishing our selues here with fresh water, which we tooke in despite of them all, we left them and their cruell Parbojough, and put out of the Bay the first of April.

Thus ranging along, we haled in with a Voyte called Mormorano, where we found a canoa and an Indian in it which was fishing, and had caught a very large Tunny wherewith he presen- ted vs, and in our conference with him, he shewed vs their Towne which was wafe and rude, but their government and behauiour very strange: for when any of them dyeth they bury all his goods and stuffe with him, as hookes, nets, canoa, and other triffles. So sayling along that shoar, one of our shippes called the Content, entered into a Bay, where a great deale of wine of Castilla was buried in Bozillos in the sand, to the quantitie of some thye hundred tunnes, wherewith she laden her selfe hauing lost our companie, but they found vs againe at a Towne called Arica, where they gaue vs of their wine. In this Parbojough we found a great ship, and foure Barkes, which we tooke and kept vntill such time as wee had taken out of them the best things for our owne prouision: then we burned them all sauing one Barke which wee kept, and named it the George, because we tooke her on Saine George his day.

The 25. day of April we went from Arica, sayling to the Seaward all night, and in the mo- ning we espied a small Barke, and maiming our Pinnelle, wee tooke her, wherin were thye Spaniards, one Greeke, and one Dutch man: being examined, they confessed that they came from the Bay of Quintera, where we lost our sloopes twelue men, and that their intent was to goe for Lima to giue aduise to the Viceroy for to prouide force to cur vs off: but their pretence through Gods mercifull prouidence was prevented: one of these Spaniards was a reasonable Pilot for those Seas. Thus we continued our course along the coast of Peru vntill the fourth day of May, vpon which day our Spanish Pilote led vs into a Bay called Pisco, where wee would haue gone on shoare, but the Sea was so growen that we could not: yet on the Souther- most side of the Bay there was a Village called Paraca, where seuen of our men went on land and found figs, pomegranates, and pomegranate wine.

And on the first of May we went from Paraca, and in our course we deseried to Seaward two shippes, and gaue them chase, and tooke them: the one was laden with meale and martiall, the other with marchants goods, as Capes of diuers sortes and colours, cattle of white sope, a kinde of waste called garbanos, soybouan skins, monte go de porco, which is hogs greafe clarified or refined, and molasses of strop of sugar, beanes, and one of two thousand hens alive: Whereup- on we gaue vs into a Bay called Chiripa, where we laden our shippes with part of these commo- dities.

The towne of King D. Philip in the Straights of Magellan.

Trecherous Saues in the Straights of Magellan. February.

Isle. March.

The Bay of Quintera. April.

The Voyte of Mormorano.

Arica. A great ship and 4. Barkes taken & burnt.

The Barke of Adria taken.

May. Pisco Bay.

Paraca a village.

Two shippes taken.

The Bay of Chiripa.

- The Bay of  
 Paria.
- The towne of  
 Paria burnt.
- The Island of  
 Paria.
- June.
- The towne in  
 the Ile of  
 Paria burnt.
- Five great  
 ships burnt.
- They double  
 Equinoctiall  
 line.
- Another ship  
 taken & burnt.
- The second  
 Ile of Paria  
 taken & burnt.
- The towne  
 of Aguatulo  
 burnt.
- August.
- What the Native  
 inhab.
- The third part  
 of Paria by  
 land taken.
- Two ships  
 more burnt.
- They be Saint  
 Iago.
- September.
- The Bay of  
 Compostella.
- Two prisoners  
 taken on the  
 land.
- The Ile of  
 S. Andrew.
- The Bay of  
 Massellan.
- And burnt the rest ships and all, having put the men that were in them on land, and departed from thence the tenth of May. Thus sailing forward we were baled into a Bay called Paria, where we tooke a Barke with fifty men, and tooke the Towne, out of which we saw that those hundred persons which fled with bag and baggage, whom we pursued so fast, that they were forced to leave their lodgings behind them: In the ende we set their Towne on fire, because they sought not to redeeme the same. And because we found small hope of treasure here, we came away the same night. On the second of May we went to the Island of Paria, where we trimmed our ships and refreshed our men, though somewhat to our cost: for on the second day of June our men thinking themselves to be sure and safe enough, four score of an hundred Spaniards, with two hundred Indians (for there was a Towne of Indians in the Island bigger then Graueland) set upon fifteen of sixteen of our men being halfe a sleepe and halfe awake, & slew five of five, and tooke two of three of them before any supply could come unto them: at the coming whereof they all ran away like greghounds, our men for reuenge burnt their Towne, and spoiled their fields and gardens, but first wee tooke the fruites of the Island, as goats, hogs, hennes, figs, oranges, limons, besides other wholesome herbes in great quantitie. So after we had trimmed our Fleet wee came away: but for a farewell wee first set foure of their ships on fire, whereof one was two hundred tunnes, the rest an hundred a piece, being all vpon the stocks in building: we also fired another of foure hundred tunnes called the great Saint Luce riding before the Towne to be mended, because they haue neuer another so good a place to bring their ships on ground as that is, on all the coast of Peru.
- After we had taken in fresh water we went from thence the 11. day of June, and the 12. day we passed the Equinoctiall line, continuing our course Northward all that moneth: About the beginning of July as we ranged along the backside of Noua Hispania neere vnto Guatimala (where there is an hill that burneth continually) we espied a newe shippe of 200. tunnes, where in were two Spaniards, two Portugallians, two Venetians, and one Fleming: in which shippe was little of nothing but her ballast, we tooke her sailes, and ropes, and firewood to serue our turns, set her on fire and kept the men, of which number we brought one called Michael Sancius a Pilot into England. On the next day we tooke another shippe, the men being eslayerd with their boate on land, which after wee had taken certaine victuals out of her, wee also set on fire: This was the shippe of Adulfo to giue warning of vs, sent from Lima to the coast of Noua Hispania.
- The 28. of July we came to the Porte of Aguatulo, in which we found a shippe laden with cacao, a fruite like almonds much esteemed in those partes, and taking the spoyle thereof, we set the shippe and Towne on fire for company: the people ranne away at the sight of our little Pinnesse, our ships lying thre leagues off at that time: There were some foure score houses in this Towne being an Hauen that belongeth to Mexico. In this place we had great store of pitch, which stood vs in great need for our ships, and some quantitie of wine of Castilia as they call it.
- The fourth day of August we departed from this place, and coming forth wee tooke a shee tortoise, which had about foure hundred and odder eggs in her, which eggs we ate and found them to be good meate. The 13. of August we fell with an Hauen of Noua Hispania called Puerto de Natiuidad, about the latitude of 19. degrees, where we had conference with foure Indians, and there wee tooke the Poole of Adulfo that ranne by land on horse, whose horse wee slew and tooke him prisoner. Wee burnt two ships of two hundred tunnes the piece, which were in building in the harborough: And six leagues from thence there was a little Island of rocks replenished with abundance of birds, whereof wee gat good store to our great refreshing: there were also innumerable sorte of parrots as big as hens: and in another Hauen hard by, called Puerto de Saint Iago, wee dugged for pearles, and tooke some store. The third day of September we came away hauing newly trimmed our Pinnesse, which was wonderfull leake with wormes. The eight day of the same we came into a Bay called the Bay of Compostella, where our men went two leagues by into the Countrey early in the morning, and tooke a Spaniarde and his wife, a Ragusan and his wife, with an Indian and his wife, and brought them away vnto our General, who set the women at libertie, and they redeemed their husbands with fruites, as plantans, mameias, pineapples, oranges, and limons, of all which is great abundance, as the Spaniarde sayd, tanto como tierra as great plentie as there is of earth. On the 12. of September wee came to an Island two leagues from thence called S. Andrew, where we had foules, and seales, and guanous, of which we made very good victuall: howbeit they would scarcely eate salt but for one night and a day only. The 16. of the same moneth wee came vnto a Bay called Massellan,

where

where we  
 thence vnto  
 Hoze called  
 of this cape  
 shippe come  
 tunnes: we  
 of fourtens  
 peeled vnto  
 member we  
 on land: and  
 of the chief  
 hundred tun  
 of the rich  
 wealthie, if  
 At length  
 set saile the  
 toward the  
 and fourtie  
 Ladrones  
 met vs at  
 saying, wi  
 rrecting our  
 which day th  
 gon of Man  
 cocos, and  
 of the foure  
 Islands to  
 what the S  
 neo vntill t

And on t  
 and Iaua m  
 being Gene  
 lons, plant  
 and goodne  
 people do t  
 doe in our  
 and caried  
 men and ch  
 they sit cro  
 because he  
 they rejoy  
 and that w  
 waite again  
 Iamboam.

The 16  
 on the 17.  
 being chire  
 had sight of  
 double.

The ser  
 ankered v  
 ment: for  
 herbes for  
 bp into the  
 builded to  
 only banish  
 swerney of  
 for Englan

where we had fruite and fish, but were in great danger of our enemies: Wee traueled from thence vnto the Southermost cape of California, where bearing vp and downe we discovered a Baye called by the Spaniards Agua Segura, and found good store of fresh water: we lay off & on of this cape vntill the fourth of Nouember, on which day in the morning wee espyed the goodly shippe comming from the Phillipinas called *Sainte Anna* the great, being of seuen hundred tunnes: we chased her vntill noone, so fetching her by, we gaue them sight to the losse of twelue or fouretee of their men, and the spoyle and hurt of many more of them, wherupon at last they yeelded vnto vs: In this conflict we lost onely two of our men. So on the sixt of the sayde Nouember we went into the Baye of Agua Segura, where wee ankered and put nine scope prisoners on land: and ransacking the great shippe, we laded our owne two shippes with fourtie tunnes of the chiefeest marchandise, and burne all the rest aswell shippe as goods, to the quantitie of sixe hundred tunnes of rich marchandise, because we were not able to bring it away: This was one of the richest vessels that euer sailed on the Seas, and was able to haue made many hundredes wealthy, if we had had meanes to haue brought it home.

*Puerto de Agua Segura. Nouember.*  
The great *Sainte Anna* taken, rised & burnt.

*Nine scope Spanish prisoners put on land.*

At length hauing furnished our selues with water & wood, and made vs ready for the Sea, we set saile the twentie of Nouember & came away. From Cape California, we shaped our course toward the Islands of the Ladrones, and by the piousness of God wee came vnto them in two and fourtie dayes, the distance being thye and twentie hundred leaguers: The first Island of the Ladrones where we touched is called Guana, the inhabitants are cheuich and trecherous: they met vs at Sea thye leaguers off in small canoas, admirable to beholde for their swiftnesse in sailing, with which people wee had some traffike vntill the euening, and so wee left them directing our course vnto the Islands of the Phillipinas vntill the fourteenth of Ianuarie, on which day we fell with an Island called Tadaia: and from thence we passed by the Island of Luconoy of Manilla, vntill we came to an Island called Capul, where wee had hens, hogs, potatoes, cocos, and other frutes for traffike with the Indians, making our abode there vntill the 24. of the sayde Ianuarie. Then proceeding on our voyage throug the infinite numbers of Islands towards those rich Islands of Maluco, we passed by Mindanao, which is the last Island that the Spaniards inhabitate that way: So we came betwene Cebele of Barachina and Borneo vntill the twelfth day of Februarie.

The Islands of Ladrones 2100. leagues from Cape California.

January 1588  
Capul an Island.

Februarie.

And on the 28. and last of the same we put throug betwene the Straights of Iaua maior, and Iaua minor, and ankered vnder the South west part of Iaua maior, where the inhabitants being Gentiles brought vnto vs hennes, geese, hens egges, ducke egges, buffes, melons, planeans, and an hundred sortes of frutes most strange and wonderfull for greatnesse and goodnesse, euen whole wuncks full being a kinde of barks made like vnto our barges: These people did increase vs wonderfull well, and came as duely to traffike with vs in our ship as wee doe in our markets and shoppes, and brought from their King diuers presents to our Generall, and caried diuers rich gifts from our Generall to their King: The King sent many of his kind men and chiefe Courtiers a shipboye to entertaine him, being men of very good behauiour: they sit crasse legged, they would faine haue had our Generall come to their Kings chiefe towne, because he was not well able to come downe vnto our shippe being a man of great age, and as they reported, very neere an hundred and fiftie yeeres olde, but our Generall excused himselfe and that with reason: Wee would haue sent his sonne in his owne steede, but that hee was at warre against another King in the Island their enemy: This olde Kings name was Raia Bo-lamboam.

Iaua maior.

Our men were entertained at Iaua maior.

Raia Bolamboam King of Iaua.

The 16. of March we set saile from Iaua maior towards the Cape of Bona Speranca: and on the 11. day of May we fell with the land of Aethiopia, neere vnto a place called Capo falso, being thirtie and ouer leaguers from the Cape of Bona Speranca. And on the 19. of May wee had sight of the Cape of Bona Speranca, which is the promontorie that all traualers desire to double.

Mar.

The seuenth of June wee fell with the Lande of Saint Helena, and on the eight day wee ankered vnder it, where wee continued twelue dayes, finding it a place to our great contentment: for there we had goats, hogs, figs, oranges, limons, pomegranates, and many wholesome herbes for the gathering: But he that will haue of the castell must trauaile a mile and an halfe by into the steepie mountaine to kill them: we found a Church and thirtie of fourtie houses builded to lodge the Portingales, in their comming from the East Indies: There was one onely banished man there which liued as an Hermite, but hee was dead before our arriual. The twenty of June we departed from the Island of Saint Helena shaping our course from thence for England.

June. Our men stayed 12. dayes on the Island of S. Helena.

The

**July.** The fourth of July 1588, we passed the equinoctiall line, which was the fourth time that we had trauesed the same in this our journey. The 24. day of August we had sight of two Islands of *I Flores* the one called *Flores*, the other *Coruo*, and directed our way from them for the *Lizard* untill the end of September, at which time we espied a *Flemish* Yulke that came from *Portingale*, which tolde vs the ioyful newes of our *Fleets* good successe against the huge armie of the *Spaniards*. And on the first day we met with a ship of *Souchampton*, which had taken a *Dyallian* pisse, whose *Captaine* informed vs at large of the truth of that which had passed: We tooke some refreshing of them, which was recompensed with treble curtellie, and so entered into the narrow *Seas* where we had as terrible a night as ever men endured: for all our sayles were blown quite away: but making as good shift as we could with certaine olde sayles we had within boide, on the next morning being the ninth of September 1588, like wearied men through the fauour of the Almighty, we gate vnto *Plimmouth*: where the *Townes* men received vs with all humanitie. In this voyage we burnt twentie sayles of *Spanish* shippes, besides diuers of their *Townes* and *Villages*.

Their arrival  
at Plimmouth  
was the 9.  
of September

Written by N. H.

The names of the Kings or Princes of Iaua at the time of our  
*English mens being there.*

{ Raia Donav.	{ Raia Tymbanton.
{ Raia Rabacapala.	{ Raia Mawgbange.
{ Raia Bacabatra.	{ Raia Patimara.

Certaine wordes of the naturall language of Iaua, learned  
and obserued by our men there.

Sabuck, like.  
Sazu, bread of the Countrey.  
Larnike, dystike.  
Paree, ryce in the huske.  
Braas, sodden ryce.  
Calapa, coquos.  
Cricke, a dagger.  
Catcha, a looking glasse.  
Arbo, an ope.  
Vados, a goate.  
Cabo, golde.  
Gardange, a plantine.  
Hiam, a benne.  
Seuit, linnen cloth.  
Doduck, blew cloth.  
Totopps, one of their caps.

Gula, blacke sugar.  
Tadon, a woman.  
Bebeck, a bucke.  
Aniange, a deere.  
Popran, opyntment.  
Coar, the head.  
Endam, raine.  
Ionge, a shippe.  
Chay, the sea.  
Sapelo, ten in number.  
Dopolo, twentie.  
Treda, no.  
Lau, vnderstand you.  
Bayer, goe.  
Adadizano, I will fetch it.  
Suda, prougb.

Certaine notes or references taken out of the large Mappe of  
*China*, brought home by *Master Thomas*  
*Candish.* 1588.



The great kingdome of the *Mogores*, is vpon the Northwest and falls vpon *Tanassacin* beyond *Mallaca*, and topnes vpon *Bengola*: the pise men of warre, and vse no sight but on horsebacke, they goe in their apparel like *Portingales*.  
A City wherein is *Captaine* a *Chinian*, a man very deformed, hauing vnder him many men of warre: he maketh warre both against the *Tartarians*, and the *Mogores* lying betwene them, and lyeth without the circuite of the wall.  
3 Certaine hills beyond which the *Tartarians* do inhabit, who heretofore were great friends with the *Chinians*, and now mainteine continuall warres against them, so great that sometimes there

three are flying  
warres all kin

4 The p  
Castles: it con  
tribute, and i  
defence.

5 The gre  
and 18. small c  
pay tribute: it  
to the Northw

6 The gre  
the Tartars.

7 The p  
fles, and one c  
uentene leagu  
of warre.

8 The p  
It is 82. leagu  
31000. footer

9 The p  
being 470. lea  
of this citie co

10 The p  
make armour  
broade, and b  
bute, whereof

11 The p  
and Castles, 1  
208900. men

12 The p  
and Castles,  
warre,

13 The p  
is 200. leagu

14 The p  
and is 440. le  
of warre.

15 This  
and from the  
Chinians do

the warres w  
16 The p  
and is 260. le  
of warre.

17 The p  
is 260. leagu  
footemen, a

18 The  
castles, and  
of warre.

19 The  
and Castles  
leagues by o  
king's garde

20 The  
Castles, an  
China is 38

men of war

there are shippes in a battaile, 100000. of men adoyning upon Mookowai and they haue in their warres all kinde of armour.

4 The prouince of Canlas hath 4. great cities, and twentie small cities, and 77. townes and Castles: it containeth in length, 55. leagues: it hath 362000. houses of great men that pay tribute, and 13900. men of warre: and hath 47000. hoyses which are the kings, kept for his defence.

5 The great citie of Paquyn where the king doth lye, hath belonging to it 8. great cities, and 18. small cities with 118. townes and Castles, it hath 418789. houses of great men which pay tribute: it hath hoysen for the warre, 258100. This citie is in the latitude of 50. degrees to the Northwards, being there as colde as it is vsually in Flanders.

6 The great citie of Canton, wherein are many men of warre, to keepe the passage from the Tartars.

7 The prouince of Soychin, hath 7. great cities, and 16. small: with 12. townes, and Castles, and one great citie, to which many doe repaie to fight against the Tartars. It hath seuentene leagues in length: and hath 164118. great houses which pay tribute, and 96000. men of warre.

8 The prouince of Santo, hath 6. great cities, and 14. small, with 90. Townes, and Castles: It is 81. leagues long, and hath 77555. great houses which pay tribute 63808. hoysen, and 31000. footemen of warre.

9 The prouince of Oyman hath 7. great cities, and 13. small, and 90. Townes, and Castles being 470. leagues, and 132958. great houses that pay tribute: 82800. men of warre, one of this citie cometh Copper, quicksiluer, and blake leade.

10 The prouince Curchew hath 8. great Cities, and 12. small, and 83. Townes, which make armour to fight in the lawes, which do inhabite beyond Cauchin china: It is 100. leagues broad, and hath 32920. hoysen, and footemen, with 405670. great houses which pay tribute, whereof the men of warre are payde.

11 The prouince of Languyn, hath 14. great cities and seuentene small, and 95. Townes, and Castles, it is 120. leagues ouer, and hath 962818. great houses which pay tribute: it hath 208900. men of warre, whereof there are 52500. Tartar hoysen that take wages.

12 The prouince of Vquam hath fourteene great Cities, and 19. small, 150. Townes and Castles, and is 210. leagues broad, and 53161. houses that pay tribute, and 71600. men of warre.

13 The prouince of Som hath 7. great cities, and 11. small, and 105. townes and castles, and is 200. leagues broad, and houses that pay tribute 139567. and men of warre, 345632.

14 The prouince of Esiran hath 11. great cities and 75. small, and 80. townes, and castles, and is 440. leagues broad, and great houses that doe pay tribute 1242135. and 339000. men of warre.

15 This lake lieth behinde Siam, and before Champa, and doeth toyne with the Iappians, and from thence comes all the water that serues the kingdome of China, and the Indians of the Chinians doe report this lake to bee the whole worlde, and so they paynt the sea, the moone, and the starres within it.

16 The prouince of Canfay hath 13. cities, and a chiefe citie, and 73. Townes and Castles, and is 260. leagues broad, and hath great houses that pay tribute, 1393629. and 12700. men of warre.

17 The prouince of Cuaufa hath 12. great cities, 47. small, and 51. townes and Castles: it is 260. leagues broad, and hath great houses that pay tribute, 1306390. and men of warre both footemen, and hoysen, 100100.

18 The prouince of Vanam hath fourteene great cities, and 36. small and 34. townes and castles, and is 88. leagues broad, 589296. great houses that pay tribute, and 15100. men of warre.

19 The prouince of Suckin hath eight great cities, and one principall citie, and 54. townes, and Castles, and two great Cities of Garrison, to keepe watch vpon the Iapons, and is 200. leagues broad, and hath, 5009522. great houses that pay tribute, and 4003225. men of the kings garde.

20 The prouince of Canton hath fourtie great cities, and seuen small, and 77. townes and Castles, and a Citie that pucteth foorch hundreds of shippes for the keeping of Cachew: China is 380. leagues in breadth and hath, 483383. great houses which pay tribute, and 39400. men of warre.

- 21 The Citie Champa standeth in foure & thre degrees to the Northward of the Equinoctiall.
- 22 The port of Cochin China, standeth in the latitude of sixteene degrees and a halfe to the Northward.
- 23 The prouince of Enam, hath 7. great Cities, and 13. small, and 90 towncs and Castles, and is 88. leagues broad, and hath 582296. great houses that pay tribute, & 15100. souldiers.

}	Horsemen	}	Footemen	}
}	454728.	}	7459057.	}
} The totall summe. }				
} 7923785. }				

An assignement from Sir Walter Raleigh, to diuers Gentlemen,  
and Merchants of London, for the inhabiting, and planting  
of our people in Virginia.



His Indenture made the 7. of March, in the 31. yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Lady Elizabeth by the grace of God of England, France, and Ireland Queene, defender of of the sayth &c. betwene the right worshipfull Sir Walter Raleigh, of Colaton Raleigh, in the county of Devon knight, Lord warden of the Stuarie, and chiefe gouernour of Assamacomock alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia. on the one partie, and Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, Walter Bayly, William Samage, Edmund Neull, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Partin, Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry Fleetwood, John Gerrard, Robert Packlyn, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Walden, merchants of London, and adventurers to Virginia asforesayd, John White, Roger Baylye, Ananias Dapye, Chyffopher Cooper, John Sampson, Thomas Streeuens, Roger Plat, Dionise Paruie, John Nichols, Humfrey Dimmocke, late of London gentlemen, of the other partie, witnesseth, that where Sir Walter Raleigh knight by vertue of the Queenes Maiesties letters patents dated at Wellminder, the 25. day of Marche, in the 26. yeere of her highnes raigne, vnto him the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh, by the name of her Maiesties trustie, and welbeloued seruant, Walter Raleigh Esquire, granted for the discovering, finding out, and planting of vnknown and remote landes and countreies, as by the sayd letters pattentes at large doeth, and may moze plainely appeare: hath by this indenture of graunt bearing date after the computation of England the 7. day of Januarie in the yeere of our Loyde God 1587. and in the 29. yeere of the raigne of our Soueraigne Lady Queene Elizabeth, made betwixt him the said Sir Walter Raleigh knight of the one partie, and John White, Roger Baylye, Ananias Dapye, Chyffopher Cooper, John Sampson, Thomas Streeuens, William Fulwood, Roger Plat, Dionise Paruie, John Nichols, George Howe, James Plat, and Simon Ferdinando of London Gentlemen of the other partie, graunted vnto the said John White, Roger Baylye, and the rest, free libertie to carrie with them into the late discovered barbarous lande, and countrie called Assamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia, there to inhabite with them, such, and so many of her Maiesties subiects, as shall willingly accompany them, together with sufficient shipping and furniture for the same, and also diuers, and sundry other prerogatiues, iurisdictiones, royalties, and preheminences, as in, and by the said indenture of graunt, it doeth, and may moze at large also appeare: Nowe the sayde Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, Walter Baylye, William Samage, Edmund Neull, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Partin, Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry Fleetwood, John Gerrard, Robert Packlyn, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Walden, and others, adventurers as asforesayde purposing, and intending to be made free of the corporation, companie, and societie lately made by the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh, in the citie of Raleigh, intended to be erected & builded in Assamacomock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia asforesayd, as by his said indenture made to the said John White, Roger Bayly, & the rest moze at large it doeth appeare, do vpon þ sealing, effecting, & confirmation of these patents aduenture diuers & sundry sums of money, marchandises, shipping, munition, victual, and other commodities, into the said forraigne and remote countrey

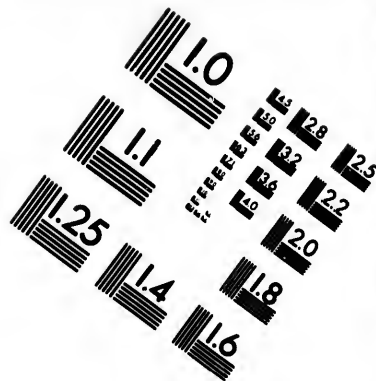
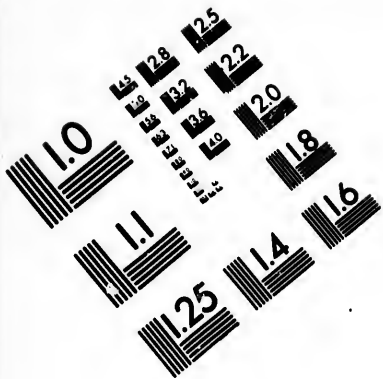
of

of Assamaco  
aduenture, a  
Sir Walter  
graunted, co  
and euerp of  
William S  
Walter Pa  
Fleetewood  
Wade, Rich  
with the sayd  
son, Thoma  
and euerp of  
their, and eue  
by the space  
all times for  
whatsoeuer,  
dacoia, alias  
asforesayde, v  
son of person  
shall of map  
Walter Rak  
any interest,  
made, of here  
Sir Walter  
ligion, in, an  
preference of  
for the incour  
William S  
Gabriel Har  
Packlyn, Ric  
den, John W  
adventurers  
pose, and giu  
sayde, the sum  
red and dispo  
mentioned, &  
summe of 10  
and increase  
and to the vs  
them, withou  
ter Raleigh,  
for himselte  
to, and with  
mage, Edm  
with the say  
Sampson, T  
Dymmock,  
charge, faue  
of them, the  
wants of the  
serue them o  
coles, taxes,  
red of dema  
ding, of tran  
mock, alias  
sayde, where  
of shall haue  
rie, of other

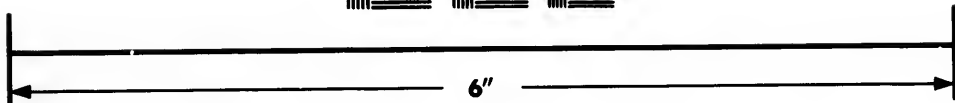
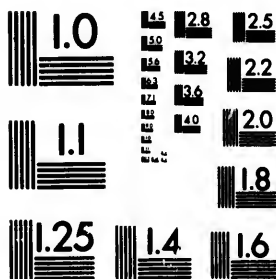
of Assamacomock alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia aforesaid: in consideration atwel of wherby  
 adventure, as also for divers, and sundry other good causes, and considerations bin the sayde  
 Sir Walter Raleigh thereunto especially moving, The sayd Sir Walter Raleigh hath given,  
 graunted, covenanted, and promised, and by these presents to himselfe, his heires, and assignes  
 and euery of them, doth give, graunt, covenant, and promise, to & with the said Thomas Smith,  
 William Sander son, Walter Bayly, William Samage, Edmund Neull, Thomas Harding,  
 Walter Parler, Thomas Martin, Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry  
 Fleete wood, John Gerrard, Robert Packlyn, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas  
 Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Walden, and others adventurers aforesayde, and vnto, and  
 with the sayd John White, Roger Baylye, Ananias Daye, Christopher Cooper, John Sam-  
 son, Thomas Steeuens, Roger Pyat, Dionise Haruie, John Nichols, Humfrey Dymmocke,  
 and euery of them, their heires, and assignes, and the heires, and assignes of euery of them, and  
 theirs, and euery of their Deputies, Factors, or Apprentises, who shall serue them, or any of them  
 by the space of seuen yeeres, that they, and euery, or any of them, shall from time to time and at  
 all times for euer haue free trade, and traffike for all manner of Merchandise, or commodities  
 whatsoever, vnto, in, and from all that part of America, called Assamacomock, alias Wingan-  
 dacoia, alias Virginia aforesayde, or vnto, or from any other part, or countrie, of, or in America  
 aforesayde, where hee the sayde Sir Walter Raleigh his heires or Assignes, or any other per-  
 son or persons clayning or pretending any manner of right, title, or interest, or which hereafter  
 shall or may claime, or pretend any right, title, or interest, by, from, or vnder him the sayde Sir  
 Walter Raleigh, hath chalenged, claymeth, or may or shall hereafter, haue, chaleng, or clayme  
 any interest, iurisdiction, title, rule, or priuiledge, by any conuocance, or discouerie heretofore  
 made, or hereafter to be made, or by any other way or meanes whatsoever. And further the sayde  
 Sir Walter Raleigh, as well for, and in speciall regard, and zeale of planting the christian re-  
 ligion, in, and amongst the sayde barbarous and heathen countries, and for the advancement and  
 preferment of the same, and the common welthe and profite of the inhabitants therein, as also  
 for the incouragement of the sayde Thomas Smith, William Sander son, Walter Baylye,  
 William Samage, Edmund Neull, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, Thomas Martin,  
 Gabriel Harris, William George, William Stone, Henry Fleete wood, John Gerrard, Robert  
 Packlyn, Richard Hakluyt, Thomas Hoode, Thomas Wade, Richard Wright, Edmund Wal-  
 den, John White, John Nichols, and the other Assaikes now lying in Virginia, and others  
 adventurers aforesayde, their heirs, and assignes, doth by these presents, freely, and liberally dis-  
 pose, and give vnto them, the sayd Thomas Smith, William Sander son, and the rest aforesay-  
 de, the summe of one hundred pounds of lawfull money of England, to bee by them aduentur-  
 ed and disposed, in, and amongst other their adventures vnto the places, and countries before  
 mentioned, To haue, holde, occupie, vse, employ, possesse, enioy, and dispose, as well the sayde  
 summe of 100. pound, given as aforesayd, as also all such gayne, profite, commoditie, aduantage  
 and increase, as they by Gods assistance, shall thereof make to their onely vses and behoofes,  
 and to the vses and behoofes of the seuerall heires, executoys, and Assignes of them and euery of  
 them, without rendering any account for the same, or any part thereof, to the sayde Sir Wa-  
 ter Raleigh, his heires, executoys or assignes, or any of them. And the said Sir Walter Raleigh,  
 for himselfe his heires, and assignes, and euery of them, doeth further covenant, and graunt,  
 to, and with the sayde Thomas Smith, William Sander son, Walter Bayly, William Sa-  
 mage, Edmund Neull, Thomas Harding, Walter Parler, and the rest aforesayde, and to, and  
 with the sayde John White, Roger Baylye, Ananias Daye, Christopher Cooper, John Sam-  
 son, Thomas Steeuens, Roger Pyat, Dionise Haruie, John Nichols, and Humfreie  
 Dymmock, and the heires, and assignes of them, and euery of them by these presents, to dis-  
 charge, saue and keepe harmelesse, from time to time, and at all times for euer, them, and euery  
 of them, their seuerall heires, and assignes, and euery of them, and the deputies, factors and ser-  
 uants of them, and euery of them, and apprentices of them, and euery of any of them, who shall  
 serue them or any of them the space of seuen yeeres, of, and from all rents, subsidies, customs,  
 toles, taxes, tallages, and all other charges, seruices, duties, and demaunds, whatsoever requi-  
 red or demanded, or to be required or demanded, at any time or times hereafter, or for the tra-  
 ding, or transporting any commoditie or profite, into or from the sayde countrie of Assamaco-  
 mock, alias Wingandacoia, alias Virginia aforesayde, or any other countrey in America aforesay-  
 de, whereunto, or wherem, the sayde Sir Walter Raleigh, his heires, or assignes, hath or may  
 or shall haue any interest, right or title, by vertue of the sayde letters patents, or by any discou-  
 rie, or other meanes whatsoever, or for any other matter, cause, or thing whatsoever: the first part  
 of







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

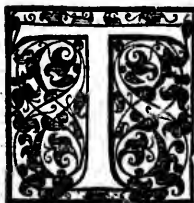
23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N. Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40

10  
11  
12  
15  
18  
20

of all the oare of golde, and siluer that from time to time, and at all times after such discouerie, subuoying and possessing as aforesaide, shalbe there gotten, and obtained (alwaies referred to the vse of the said Sir Walter Raleigh his heyres, and assignes) onely excepted, and forpysse, And the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh doeth further covenant, and graunt by these presents for him, his heyres, and assignes, to and with the sayd Thomas Smith, William Sanderson, and the rest aforesayd their heyres & assignes, that he the said Sir Walter Raleigh, his heyres, or assignes, vpon sufficient & reasonable request made to him by the persons aforesayd, or any of them, their heyres, or assignes, shal and wil at any time, or times hereafter, raise, affirme, and approue by his deede, or deedes, or by any other conuenance, or conuencances in lawe, the copoyation heretofore made by him the sayde Sir Walter Raleigh, consisting of one Governour, and twelue assistants, as by his sayd Indenture made to John White and others, moze plainely doth appeare, for the moze perfect, and better assurance, and sure making of the saide copoyation, if any imperfection, and want in law thereof bee. And further, that he the sayde Sir Walter Raleigh, his heyres, and assignes, shall, and will, as much as in him or them lieth, procure, and endeavour to obtaine, the Queenes maiesties letters patents, for ratification, approbation, and moze sure confirmation, of the sayde copoyation, and Societe with al prerogatiues, commodities, iurisdictiones, royalties, priuiledges, and preheminences, whatsoeuer graunted, and cōueied by her Maiestie, to the saide Sir Walter Raleigh, his heyres or assignes, or by him the sayd Sir Walter Raleigh, or the said John White, and others, as by his said indenture of graunt made to the sayde John White, and others moze plainely appeareth. In witnesse whereof, the parties to these presents, haue hereunto interchangeably put their hands, and seales, the day and yeere first aboue witten.

A brieue remembrance, for want of further aduertisements as  
yet, of a voyage made this present yeere, 1589. by William  
Michelson Captaine, and William Mace of Ratcliffe, Master of  
a shippe called the Dogge, to the bay of Mexico in  
the West India.



The aforesaide shippe called the Dogge, of the burden of threescore and ten tunnes was furnished, and armed forth with the number of 40. men: it departed from the coast of England in the moneth of May, directly for the west India: It fell with the Bay of Mexico, and there met with diuers Spanish ships at sundry times, whereof thre fell into her lappes, and were forced to pcede to the mercy of the English: the last that they met with in the Bay, was a Spanish man of warre, whome the English chased, and after thre seuerall fightes, vpon thre diuers dayes, pressed him so farre, that he intreated a parle, by putting out a flagge of truce: the parle was graunted, and certaine of the Spaniards came aboide the English. Where after conference about those matters that had passed in fight betwixt them, they receiued reasonable intertainment and a quiet farewel. The Spanish, as if they had ment to requite the English curtesie, invited our men to their ship, who perswading themselves of good meaning in the Spanish, went aboard: but honest and friendly dealing was not their purpose, suddenly they assaulted our men, and one with a dagger stabbe the English pilot to the hart and kewe him, and others were serued with the like sauce, only William Mace the Master, and two others, notwithstanding all the prepared trappes of the enemy, lept ouer boorde into the sea, and so came safe to their owne shippe: and directing his course for England, arrived at Plum-mouth the 10. day of September last, laden with wines, yron, Roams which is a kinde of linnen cloth, and other rich commodities, looking for the arriual of the rest of his consoyts, whereof one, and the principall, hath not long since obtayned his port. Thus much in generall termes onely, I haue as yet learned, and receiued touching this voyage, extracted out of letters sent from the aforesayd William Mace, to Master Edward Wilkinson of Courc Hill in London. The principall intention by this example, is to admonish our nation of circumspection in dealing with that subtil enemy, and neuer to trust the Spanish further, then that their owne strength shalbe able to master them: for otherwise whoesoever shall through simplicitie trust their curtesie, shall by triall taste of their assured crueltie.

The

The voya  
Bird Mar

with a  
B



lowing we ar  
uer the barre.  
we had put the  
arriued the 20.  
ee, to goe for  
riual, and of th  
man in their co  
etes: hereupon  
cwentich day  
and cwentich d  
solemne feast  
or chiefe man,  
our crading, in  
Elephants teet

The first of  
and were for ou  
spected vs one  
plucked from  
be done: and the  
it so vnppeare  
pepper. The n  
at which time  
our being at B  
all of vs into t  
which we alre  
the men of our  
and goods do  
my coming  
I put the goo  
boord, many o  
more, and m  
nin. Whereu  
were aboute to  
the Captaine  
also dyed with  
such pepper a  
son will app  
stay any long  
common sick  
mayne were  
ked all for th  
Uery hardy  
God hauing g

The voyage set forth by Master Iohn Newton, and Master Iohn  
Bird Marchants of London to the kingdome and Citie of Benin in Affrica,

with a ship called the Richard of Arundell, and a pinnesse in the yeere, 1588.

briefely set downe in this letter following, written by the chiefe

Factor in the voyage to the foresaid Marchants at the  
time of the ships first arrival at Plymmouth.



**V**osthipfull Sirs, the discourse of our whole proceeding in this voyage, will take more time and a person in better health then I am at this present, so that I trust you will pardon me all my comming by to you: in the meane time let this suffice. Whereas we departed in the month of December from the coast of England with your good ship the Richard of Arundell and the pinnelle, we held our direct course towards our appointed port, and the 14. day of February following we arrived in the haven of Benin, where we found not water ynough to carrie the ship over the barre, so that we left her without in the road, and with the pinnelle, and ship boate two which we had put the chiefest of our marchandise, we went by the river to a place called Goto, where we arrived the 20. of February, the foresaid Goto being y nearest place that we could come to by water, so goe for Benin. From thence we presently sent Negroes to the king, to certifie him of our arrivall, and of the cause of our comming thither: who returned to vs againe the 22. day with a noble man in their company to bring vs by to the Citie, and with 200. Negroes to carrie our commodities: hereupon the 23. day we delivered our Marchandise to the Kinges Factor, and the five and twentieth day we came to the great Citie of Benin, where we were well intertaind: The sixe and twentieth day wee went to the Court to haue spoken with the King, which (by reason of a solemne feast then kept amongst them) we could not doe: but yet wee spake with his Viadore, or chiefe man, that hath the dealing with the Christians: and we conferred with him concerning our trading, who answered vs, that we shoulde haue all chinges to our desire, both in pepper and Elephants teeth,

The first of March, we were admitted to the kings presence, and he made vs the like curious and were for our traffique: the next day we went againe to the Court, where the foresaid Viadore shewed vs one basket of Greene pepper, and another of bye in the Galkes: we desired to haue it plucked from the stalkes, and made cleane, who answered, that it would take time, but yet it should be done: and that against another yeere it should be in better readines, and the reason why we found it so vnprepared was, because in this kings time no Christians had euer resorted thither, to take pepper. The next day there were sent vs 12. baskets, and so a little every day until the 9. of March, at which time we had made vpon 94. serons of pepper, and 28. Elephants teeth. In this time of our being at Benin, our natures at this first time not so well acquainted with that climate, we fell all of vs into the disease of the feuer, whereupon the Captaine sent me downe with those goods which we already had recieued, to the rest of our men at Goto, where being arrived, I found all the men of our pinnelle sicke also, and by reason of their weakenes not able to carry the pinnelle and goods downe to the place where our ship roade: but by good happe within two houres after my comming to Goto, the boate came by from the ship, to see how all things stood with vs, so that I put the goods into the boate, and went downe towards the ship: but by that time I was come aboard, many of our men dyed: namely, Master Benson, the Cowper, the Carpenter, and 3. or 4. more, and my selfe was also in such a weak state that I was not able to returne againe to Benin. Whereupon I sent by Samuel Dunne, and the Chirurgical with him to our men that were aboue to let them blood, if it were thought needefull: who at their comming to Benin found the Captaine and your sonne William Bird dead, and Thomas Hempsteede very weak, who also dyed within two dayes after their comming thither. This sorrowfull accident caused them with such pepper and teeth, as they could then finde, speedely to returne to the shippe, as by the Cargason will appeare: at their comming away the Viadore told them, that if they could or would stay any longer time, he would use all possible expedition to bring in more commodities: but the common sickness so increased, and continued amongst vs all, that by the time our men which remained were come aboard, wee had so many sicke, and dead of our company, that we looked all for the same happe, and so thought to loose both our Shippe, life, Countrie and all. Very hardly and with much awoe could we get by our anchors, but yet at the last by the mercie of God hauing gotten them by, but leaving our pinnace behind vs, we got to sea, and set saile, which

C e e e.

was

was upon the 13. of April. After which by litle and litle our men began to gather by their cruises and to recover some better strength: and so sailing betwixt the Islands of Cape Verde, and the mayne, we came to the Islands of the Açores upon the 25. of July, where our men began a fresh to growe ill, and diuers dyed, among whom Samuell Dunne was one, and as many as remained lying, were in a hard case: but in the midst of our distresse, it fell so well out, by Gods good providence, that we met with your shippe the *Barke burte*, on this side the North cape, which did not onely keepe vs good company, but also sent vs 6. fresh men aboard, without whose helpe, we should surely haue casted of many inconueniences. But by this good meanes, we are now at the last arrived in Plymouth, this 9. day of September: and for want of better health at this time, I referre the further knowledge of more particularities, till my coming to London,

Yours to command  
Anthonie Ingram.

Or Theodore.

**The most solemne, and magnificent coronation of Ph Theodore Iuanowiche, Emperor of Russia &c. the 10. of June, in the yeere 1584. seene**

and obserued by Master Ierom Horsey gentleman, and seruant to her Maiestie, a man of great trauell, and long experience in those partes: where with is also ioynded the course of his journey ouer land from Mosco to Emden, the right place of which discourse, is immediately after the Embassage of Sir Ierom Bowes, in the second part of this historie: which being fully printed, before this matter came to my hands, I am forced here to annex it, least for rare a thing should be suppressed, and the diligent seruice of the foresaid gentleman not knowne as well as others of the same nature.



When the old Emperor Iuan Vasilewiche dyed, (being about the 18. of April, 1584. after our computation) in the Citie of Musco, hauing reigned 54. yeeres, there was some tumult, and vproze among some of the nobilitie, and gnominate, which notwithstanding was quickly pacified. Immediately the same night, the Prince Boris Fedorowich Godonoua, Knzz Iuan Fedorowich, Melchis Slafsky, Knzz Iuan Petrowiche Susky, Mekita Romanowich, and Bodan Iacoulewiche Belskoy, being all noble men, and chiefest in the Emperors Will, especially the Lord Boris, whom he adopted as his third sonne, and was brother to the Emperors wife, who was a man very well liked of all estates, as no lesse worthy for his valoure and wisdom, all these were appointed to dispose, and settle his sonne, Feodore Iuanowich, hauing one Iuoyne another, and all the nobilitie, and officers whosoeuer. In the morning the dead Emperor was layd into the Church of Michael the Archangell, into a betwen sepulchre, very richly decked with beures fit for such a purpose, and present proclamation was made, (Emperor Feodore Iuanowich of all Russia &c.) Throughout all the Citie of Mosco, was great watch and ward, with souldyers, and gunners, good orders established, and officers placed to subdue the tumulters, and mainteine quietnes: to see what speeche and pollicie was in this case vsed was a thing worth the beholding. This being done in Mosco, great men of birth and accompt, were also presently sent to the bordering Townes, as Smolensko Vobsko, Kalan, Nouogorode &c. with fresh garrison, and the old sent vp. As upon the 4. of May a parliament was held, wherein were assembled, the Metropolitan, Archbishops, Bishops, Priors, and chiefe clergie men, and all the nobilitie whosoeuer: where many matters were determined not pertinent to my purpose, yet all tended to a new reformation in the gouernement: but especially the terme, and time was agreed upon for the solemnizing of the new Emperors coronation. In the meane time the Emperors wife, to the old Emperor, was with her child the Emperors sonne, Charewiche Demetrie Iuanowich, of one yeeres age or there abouts, sent with her father Feodor Feodorowich Nagay, and that Prince her sonne, with all the landes belonging to it in the shire, with officers of all fortres appointed, hauing allowance of apparell, iewels, vnderhoise &c. in ample manner belonging to the estate of a prince. The time of mourning after their vble being expired, called Sorachyn, of fortie orderlie daies, the day of the solemnizing of this coronation, with great preparations, was come, being upon the 10. day of June, 1584. and that day then Sunday, he being of the age of 25. yeeres: at which time, Master Ierom Horsey was orderly sent for, and placed in a fit roome to see all the solemnities. The Emperor comming out of his Pallace, there went before him, the Metropolitan,

tan, Archbishops, Bishops, gnominate, banners, censures, with his nobilitie, and seruice were Church, called from thence to thereof was a crimes: his robe ing placed in the imperiall Crowne, his two kingdoms were the Metropolitan, minister true given him, and

Through the whom he glorifier of all the king, he both his only child quickning suffer vs to raie together with the layd his crosse an hyper robe waies augmented by 6. Dukes, right hand of a Patriarch of This Iewel before him by tried before him noua, the Emperors Vasilwiche the great Chur Russia, His bo- rious stones,

There was and two favon from the prest with the thron cloth of gold, from one chur starle was a seruit for a in great quantities decked were apparell bilitie, wheree in register fou ing in her pa- rious, & rich was placed people. God ment house- crotines we garde with

can, Archbishops, Bishops, and cheefest Honkes, and Clergie men, with very rich Copes, and Prieests garmentes vpon them, carrying pictures of our Ladie &c. with the Emperors Angell, banners, censures, and many other such ceremonious things, singing all the way. The Emperoz with his nobilitie in order entered the Church named Blaueshina, or Blessednes, where prayers, and seruice were vsed, according to the manner of their Church: that done, they went thence to the Church, called Michaell the Archangell, and there also vsed the like prayers, and seruice: and from thence to our Ladie Church, Prechista, being their Cathedrall Church. In the midst thereof was a chappe of maustie placed, wherein his Ancestors vsed to sit at such extraordinary times: his robes were then changed, and most riche and vnaualuable garmentes put on him: being placed in this Princely seate, his nobilitie standing round about him in their degrees, his imperiall Crowne was set vpon his head by the Metropolitane, his Scepter globe in his right hand, his sword of Justice in his left of great riches: his 6. Crownes also, by which he holdeth his kingdomes were set before him, & the Lord Boris Pheodorowich was placed at his right hand: then the Metropolitane read openly a booke of a small volume, with exhortations to the Emperoz to minister true Justice, to sit vpon with tranquillitie the Crowne of his ancestors, which God had giuen him, and vsed these words following.

Through the will of the almightie & without begining God which was before this world, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, one onely God, the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost, maker of all things, worker of all in all euery where, fulfiller of all things, by which wil, & working, he both liueth, & giueth life to man: that our onely God which enspireth euery one of vs his onely children with his word to discerne God through our Lord Iesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life, now in these perilous times establish vs to keepe the right Scepter, and suffer vs to raigne of our selues to the good profit of the land, to the subduing of the people, together with the enemies, and the maintenance of vertues: and so the Metropolitane blessed and layd his crosse vpon him. After this, he was taken out of his chaire of Maistie, hauing vpon him an upper robe adorned with precious stones of all sortes, orient pearles of great quantitie, but alwaies augmented in riches: it was in waight 200. pounds, the traine, and parts thereof borne by 6. Dukes, his chiefe imperiall Crowne vpon his head very precious: his staffe imperiall in his right hand of an vnicorne horn of 3. foot and a halfe in length beset with rich stones, bought of Merchants of Ausburge by the old Emperoz in An. 1581. and cost him 7000. Markes sterling. This Jewell of Hoyses kept sometimes, before the Emperoz had it. His Scepter globe was carried before him by 8. princes Boris Pheodorowich, his rich cap beset with rich stones & pearles was carried before him by a Duke: his 6. Crownes also were carried by Demetrius Iuanowich Godonoua, the Emperors uncle, Mekita Romanowich the Emperors vnckle, Steuan Vasiluwich, Gregory Vasiluwich, Iuan Vasiluwich brothers, of the blood royal. Thus at last the Emperoz came to the great Church tooz, & the people cried, God saue our Emperoz Pheodore Iuanowich of all Russia. His horse was there readie most richly adorned, with a couering of imbrodered pearle & precious stones, saddle, & all furniture agreeable to it, reported to be worth 300000. markes sterling.

There was a bridge made of 150. fadome in length, 3. manner of wales, 3. foote about ground and two fadome broad, for him to goe from one Church to the other with his Princes and nobles from the people, which were in number infinite, and some at that time pressed to death with the throng. As the Emperoz returned out of the Churches they were spred vnder foote with cloth of gold, the porches of the Churches with red veluet, the bridges with scarlet, & sammet cloth from one church to another: and as soone as the Emperoz was passed by, the cloth of gold, veluet & scarlet was cut, and taken of those that could come by it, euery man desirous to haue a piece, to seruice for a monument: silver, and gold copie, then mynted of purpose was cast among the people in great quantitie. The Lord Boris Pheodorowich was sumptuously, & richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearle, beset with all sortes of precious stones. In like rich manner were apparelled all the family of the Godonouaes in their degrees, with the rest of the princes, & nobilitie, wherof one named Knez Iuan Michalowich Glynskie, whose robe, horse, & furniture, was in register found worth 100000. markes sterling, being of great antiquitie. The Emperesse being in her palace, was placed in her chaire of Maistie also before a great open window: most precious, & rich were her robes, and shining to behold, with rich stones, & orient pearle beset her crowne was placed vpon her head, accompanied with her Princesses, & Ladies of estate: they in their order the people. God preferre our noble Emperesse Irenia. After all this the Emperoz came into the Parliament house which was richly decked: here he was placed in his royal seate adorned as before his 6. crownes were set before him vpon a table: the basin, and ewer royal of gold held by his knight of garde with his men standing eue on each side in white apparel of cloth of siluer, called Kinky, with

scepters, and battle axes of gold in their hands: the Princes, and nobilitie were all placed according to their degrees all in their riche coats.

The Emperoz after a short oration, permitted every man in order to kille his hande: which being done, he removed to a princely seate prepared for him at the cable: where he was serued by his nobles in very princely order. The three out roomes being very great, and large were beset with plate of golde, and silver round, from the ground by to the vaults one upon the other: among which plate were many barrels of silver and golde: this solemnitie, and triumph lasted a whole weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and vsed: after which the chiefest men of the nobilitie were elected to their places of office, and dignitie, as the Prince Boris Fedorowich, was made chiefe Countayloz to the Emperoz, Master of the horse, had the charge of his person, Lieutenant of the Empire, and Artlike engines, Gouvernour of the Lieutenant of the Empire of Cazan, and Astracan and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperoz given him many reuenuces, and rich landes, as there was given him, and his for ever to inherite a prouince called Vaga, of 300. English myles in length, and 250 in bredth, with many towms and great billage's populous and welchp, his percelly reuenuce out of that prouince, is 35. thousand markes sterling, being not the 5. part of his percelly reuenuce. Further, he and his house be of such auctoritie, and power, that in 40. dayes wanting they are able to bring into the field 100. thousand Souldiers well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperoz's Coronation was a peale of ordinance, called a peale royall two myles without the Citie, being 170. great pieces of brasse of all forces, as faire as any can be made, these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarkes made of purpose: 20. thousand iargubulwers standing in 8. rankes two myles in length, appered all in velvet, coloured like and Hammels, discharged their shot also twice ouer in good order: and so the Emperoz accompanied with all his princes and nobles, at the least 50. thousand horse departed through the Citie to his palace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaues of paper to bee described particulierly as it was performed: it shall suffice, to vnderstand that the like magnificence was neuer seene in Russia.

The coronation, and other triumphes ended, all the nobilitie, officers, and marchants according to an accustomed order euery one in his place, and degree brought rich presences vnto the Emperoz, wishing him long life, and ioy in his kingdomie.

The same time also Master Ierom Horsey aforesaid, remaining as seruant in Russia for the Queenes most excellent Maiestie, was called for to the Emperoz, as he sat in his imperiall seate, and then also a famous Merchant of Netherland being newly come to Mosco, (who gaue him selfe out to bee the king of Spaines subiect) called Iohn de Wale, was in like sort called for. Some of the nobilitie would haue preferred this subiect of the Spaniard before Master Horsey seruant to the Queene of England, whereunto Master Horsey would in no case agree, saying, he would haue his legges cut off by the knees, before he would yeeld to such an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maiestie of England, to bring the Emperoz a present, in course after the King of Spaines subiect, or any other whatsoeuer. The Emperoz, and the Prince Boris Fedorowiche perceiuing the controuersie, sent the Lord Treasorer Peter Iuanowiche Galawyn, and Vasilie Shalcan, both of the Counsell, to them, who deliuered the Emperoz backe, Master Horseys speech: whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperoz in the behalfe of the English Merchants trading thither, a present wishing him ioy, and long to raigne in tranquillitie, and so killed the Emperours hand, he accepting the present with good liking, and auouching, that for his sisters sake Queene Elizabeth of England, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as euery his father had ben: and being dismissed, he had the same day sent him 70. dishes of sundry kinds of meates with 3. carts laden with all sorts of drinke very bountifullly. After him, was the foresaid subiect of the Spaniard king admitted with his present, whom the Emperoz willed to be no lesse faythfull and seruiceable vnto him, then the Queene of Englands subiects were and had ben, and then the king of Spaines subiects should receive fauor accordingly.

All these things thus in order performed praies were sung in all the churches, The Emperoz, & Empresse very devoutly reposed one foote, to many principall Churches in the Citie, and vpon Trinitie Sunday betooke them selues to a progresse, in order of procession, to a famous monastrie called Sergius, and the Trinitie, 60. myles distant from the Citie of Mosco, accompanied with a huge armie of noble men, gentlemen and others, mounted vpon goodly horse, with furniture accordingly.

The Emperesse of deuotion tooke this iourney on foote all the way, accompanied with her Prin-

Princes, and  
chefe Counte  
called Demetri

All this was  
the Emperoz  
Siberia, where  
and a halfe,  
prouce of the  
which were  
itie in very bo  
were vpon  
whole kingdo  
commanding  
had been in the  
and to the em  
ty: the great  
perours time,  
used, without  
Dukes and th  
the old Emper  
berrie, and be  
followe, and  
to the Subier  
pished by the  
These thing  
vpon Russia,  
called the Cri  
owne country  
holed, althoug  
and baltian: c  
nourable, the  
perour, interta

Not long a  
offering their  
les, and peopl  
erated Emper  
Ambassadors  
the Turke, fro  
prince: Ther  
the Dane, &c.

It fell out  
lent Queene  
possing that o  
summe of wh  
amitie and th  
her subiects,  
hauing recei  
departed from  
uogorode, to  
he was deler  
ende.) From  
Prussia, to M  
to Breame, s  
ning bellier  
with againe  
rou, and th  
the fatout ar  
was he earn



Whatevils, and lappes, no final number: her garde, and gunners were in number 20000, her chiefe Counsellor of attorney was a noble man of the blood Royal her uncle of great authority, called Demetrie Ivanowich Godonow.

All this year ended, both the Emperour, and Empresse returned to Mosco (both of the Emperour by the direction of the prince Boris Fedorowich, sent a poster into the lande of Siberia, where all the rich Siberie, and Farvets, are govern, this poster conquered in one yere and a halfe, 1700. myles. In the pretour maine of this winter, there was taken prisoner the Emperour of the countie called Chare Siberiskie, and with him many other Dukes, and noble men, which were brought to Mosco, with a garde of footsouldiers, and gunners, who were received into the cite in very honourable manner, and do there remaine to this day.

Chare Siberie the prince of Siberia taken prisoner and brought to Mosco.

Here upon the Countour officers, Judges, Adverses, Capitaines, and Lieutenants through the whole kingdom were remooved, and more than 10000 men transported to their places, which effected continuall discipline, under severall punishments to satisfie their old badging, and execution which they had used in the two Emperours time, and now to execute true Justice without respect of persons, and to the end that this might be the better done, their lands, and veyell measures were augmented: the great taxes, customs, and duties, which were before layd upon the people in the two Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments committed to be used, without sufficient and due proofe, although the crime were capital, deserving death: many Dukes and noble men of great houses, that were under displeasure, and imprisonment 200. yeres by the two Emperours, were now set at libertie and restored to their lands: all prisoners were set at libertie, and their trespasses forgiven. In summe, a great alteration & alteration in the government followed, and yett all was done quietly, civillly, yearcably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subjects: and this byed great assurance, and honour to the kingdom: and all was accomplished by the wisdom especially of Irenia the Emperesse.

These things being reported & carryed to the eares of the kings, & princes that were borderers upon Russia, they grew so fearefull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the Scythians called the Crimme Tartar, or great Chan himselfe, named Sopher Ker'Ali, came out of his owne country to the Emperour of Russia, accompanied with a great number of his nobilitie well horsed, although to them that were Christians they seemed rude, yett they were perswivable men, and baltian: their coming was gracefull to the Emperour, and their intreatment was honourable, the Tartar prince having brought with him his wives also, received of the Russ Emperour, intertainment, and princely welcome according to their estates.

Sopher Ker'Ali King of the Crimmes, arrived at Mosco.

Not long after, 1200. Spanish gentlemen, valiant Souldiers, and proper men came to Mosco offering their service to the Emperour, who were all intetayned: and in like sort many Chirkasles, and people of other nations came and offered service. And, althoone as the reputation of this new created Emperour was spread over other Kingdomes of Europe, there were sent to him sundry Ambassadors to wish him joy, and prosperitie in his kingdom: thither came Ambassadors from the Turke, from the Persian, the Bogharian, the Crimme, the Georgian, and many other Tartar princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of Almanie, the Pole, the Swethen, the Dane, &c. And since his coronation no enemy of his hath prevailed in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was desirous to send a message to the most excellent Queene of England, for which service he thought no person more fit then Sr. Jerom Wolfe, supposing that one of the Queenes owne men and subjects would be the more acceptable to her. The summe of which message was, that the Emperour desired a continuance of that league, friendship, amitie and intercourse of traffique which was betweene his father, and the Queene of England, and her subjects, with other private affaires besides, which are not to be made common. Sr. Wolfe having received the letters, and requests of the Emperour, provided for his journey over land, and departed from Mosco the 5. day of September, thence to Orzer, thence to Torshook, to great No-uogorode, to Vobskye, and thence to Nyhoule in Liouonia, to Wenden, and so to Riga: (where he was beset, & brought forth with before a Cardinal, called Rageuill, but yett suffered to passe in the end) from thence to Mydo, to Golden, and Libou in Curland, to Memel, to Konigsburgh in Prussia, to Meluin, to Dantzike, to Stetin in Pomerland, to Rostok, to Lubek, to Hamborough, to Breame, to Emden, and by sea to London. Being arrived at her Majesties royall court, and having delivered the Emperours letters, with good favour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commaunded to repasse into Russia, with other letters from her Majesty to the Emperour, and Prince Boris Fedorowich, allwerting the Emperours letters, and to call requirring the favour and friendship, which his father had yielded to the English Merchants: and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchants of London themselves of that company, to dele

The new Emperour Sopher Ker'Ali with his letters and requests to the Queene.

Sr. Wolfe's voyage from Mosco to England overland.

in their behalfe: being thus dispatched from London by sea, he arrived in Mosco the 20. of April 1586, and was very honorably welcomed. And by the merchants behoofe, obtained all his requests, being therein specially favoured by the noble prince Boris Fedorowich, who always affected M. Voysey with special liking. And having obtained priviledges for the merchants, hee was recommended from the Emperour againe, to the Queene of England by his mistress, by whome the prince Boris, in token of his honorable, and good opinion of the Queenes Partie, sent her bigonette a royall present of Sables, Lynax, cloth of golde, and other rich things. So that the company of English merchants, next to their thankfulness to her Partie, are to account M. Voyseys favour their special benefite, who obtained for them those priviledges, which in twentie yeeres before would not be granted.

The manner of M. Voyseys last dispatch from the Emperour because it was very honourable, I thought good to record. He was freely allowed post horses for him, and his servants, victuals, and all other necessaries for his long journey: at every towne that he came unto from Mosco to Vologda, which is by lande 500. miles, hee received the like free, and bountifull allowance, at the Emperours charge. Now victuals & provision were given him upon the river Dwina at every towne by the kings officers being 1000. of their mases in length. When he came to the new castle called Archangel he was received of the Duke, Knez Vasil Andrewich Iscogorodski by the Emperours commission into the Castle, gunners being set in ranks, after their due, where he was sumptuously feasted: from thence he was dispatched with bountifull provision, and allowance in the Dukes boate with 100. men to rowe him, 100. gunners in other boats to conduct him, with a gentleman captaine of the Gunners, Comming to the roade, where the English, Dutch, and French shippes ride, the gunners discharged, and the shippes shot in like manner 46. pieces of their ordnance, and so he was brought to his lodging at the English house upon Rose Island.

And that which was the full, and compleat conclusion of the favour of the Emperour and Boris Fedorowich toward M. Voysey, there were the next day sent him for his further provision upon the sea by a Gentleman and a Captaine the things following.

16. line oxen.

70. beepe.

600. hennes.

25. sheeces of Becon.

80. bushels of meale.

600. loaves of bread.

2000. eggs.

1000. geese.

2. cranes.

2. Spannes.

65. gallons of meade.

40. gallons of Aquavita

60. gallons of beere.

3. yong beares.

4. hawks.

Stoep of opytions, and garlike.

10. fresh salmons.

1. wilde boare.

All these things were brought him to home by a gentleman of the Emperours, and another of prince Boris Fedorowich and were received in order by John Feste servaunt to M. Voysey, together with an honorable present, and reward from the Prince Boris, sent him by Francis Chirry an Englishman: which present was a whole very rich peece of cloth of golde, and a fayre payre of Sables. This Gentleman hath observed many other rare things concerning those parts, which hereafter (God willing) at more convenient time, and leisure shall come to light.

### Phedor Ivanowich the newve Emperours gracious Letter of pri-

uiledge to the English Marchants word for word: obayned by M. Ierom Horsey. 1586.

**I**nough the will of the almighty and without beginning God, which was before this world, whome we glorifie in the trinitie, one only God, the father, the sonne, and the holy ghost, maker of all things, worker of all in all every where, fulfiller of all things, by which will and working, he both loveth, and giueth life to man, That our only God, which supplyeth every one of vs his only Children with his word, to discern God through our Lord Iesus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life now in these perilous times, Establish vs to keepe the right way, and suffer vs of our selues to raigne to the good profite of the land, and to the subduing of the people, together with the enemies, and to the maintinance of vertue.

We Phedor, the ofspring of Iohn, the great Lord, Emperour, King and great Prince of all Russia, of Volademeria, Moscouia, and Nouogorode, king of Kafan, king of Astracan, Lord of Plesko, & great prince of Smolenskay, of Twer, Youngoria, Perme, Valkay, of Bolghaire and others, Lord and great Prince of the land of the lower Nouogorod, Chernegay, Rezan, Polotskay, Rostow, Ycrosslaue, the white lake, Leifland, Owdor, Condence, and Rulet of all Seberia, and all the North side, and Lord of many other Countreies.

I have gratified the marchants of England, to wit, S. Rowland Hartward, & Richard Partin Aldermen,

Aldermen, & with their fell

I have the kind of comm

ities of our C

And the ru

the them for

Plesko, and

Therefore we

great loss & b

chance, & R

all our homin

all kinde of

goods, not oth

way for launc

not for their b

knowledg

what name fo

Only they

farther any oth

Allo our n

or keepe any

Allo the

committes,

their owne co

And when

all our homin

officers shall

for any of the

bridges, nor

Allo into

or sell, and

cher will, tell

duetie of them

And I haue

ons of our kin

out a up duet

And the

our merchand

That is to say

that sell and

make and be

by weight, no

they that sell

And they sh

chances shall

shall they then

owne, and

Vologda, &

ous, our noble

as it is written

here carries a

So like

ing any other

them from o

modious for

ties, our

not

ties also with

Aldermen, George Barres, Thomas Smith Esquire, Icom Hoyle, Richard Walton, with their fellows.

I haue licensed them to saile with their ships into our dominion, the lande of Downa with all kind of commodities to trade freely and vnto our kingdome and the cite of Mosco and to all the cities of our Empire of Moscouia.

Whiche English merchants, Rowland Watward, & his societie desired us, that we would graunte them to trade into our kingdome of Moscouia, & into our heritage of great Nouogorod, and Plesko, and into all parts of our kingdome, to buye, and sell, with their wares, without custome.

Therefore we for our sisters sake Queene Elizabeth, & also because that they aledge, that they had great losse & hinderance by the venture of the sea, & other wise, haue graunted the said English merchants, Rowland Watward & his societie, freely to come into our kingdome of Moscouia, & into all our dominions with all kind of commodities, to trade, trafficke freely, & at their pleasure with all kinde of their commodities: also I haue commaunded not to take any manner of custome for their goods, nor other customs what soeuer, That is to say, neither for passing by any place by water, nor for landing, neither for passing through any place by land, neither for the bestles or boats, nor for their beads, nor for passing ouer bridges, nor for ferrying ouer at any place, neither for acknowledgement in any place where they shall come, nor any manner of custome or duty, by what name soeuer.

Only they shall not bring thither into our dominions, neither recarry out of our dominions, or fetch any other mens goods, but their owne, neither sell them, nor barter them a way for them.

Also our naturall people shall not buy and sell for them, or from them, neither shall they receiue, or keepe any of our naturall subterres goods, or pawns by them to coulour them.

Also they shall not send any of their Russe seruantes about into any cite to ingross, or buy by commodities, but into what cite they themselves shall come, they shall buye and sell, and shall sell their owne commodities and not ours.

And when they shall come into our inheritance of great Nouogorod, and Plesko, and through all our dominions with their commodities, then our noblemen and capitaines, & euery one of our officers shall suffer them to depart according to this our letter, & shall take no custome at all of them, for any of their commodities, neither for passing through or passing by, nor for passage ouer any bridges, nor shall take of them any other dutie what soeuer name they haue.

Also into what places of our dominion, when they shall happen to come, and to proceed to buye or sell, and wheresoeuer they shall passe through with goods not buying of any commodities, neither shall sell their owne, then in those cities and towne they shall take no manner of custome or dutie of them, accordingly as before.

And I haue graunted them and giuen them free leaue to trafficke through out all the dominions of our kingdome, in all cities with their goods to buy and sell at manner of commodities, with out a ny duty or custome, whatsoeuer.

And the English merchants, where they are desirous to buy, or sell, or barter their wares with our merchants, whole wares for wares, they shall sell their commodities whole, and not by retaille, That is to say, neither by small weight, nor by the yard, to sell or barter in their own houses, & they shall sell and barter their wares whole, Cloth by the packe, and by the whole cloth, and Commaunke any velvet by the peece, and not by the yard, and all manner of commodities that are to be sold by weight, not to sell by the small weightes, as by the pound, and ounce, but by whole sale, also they shall sell wines by the pipe, and by the gallon, quart, or scoope they shall not sell.

And they shall buye, sell, and exchange their owne commodities themselves, and the Russe merchants shall not make sales, or exchange for them, or from them any of their commodities, neither shall they themselves convey, or carie through any other mans goods at no place in stead of their owne: and whiche of the English merchants will at any time sell his commodities at Colmogro or Vologda, or Yeroslaue, they may, and of their commodities throughout all our cities and dominions, our noblemen, capitaines, and euery of our officers shall take no manner of custome, according as it is written in this our gracious letter, and throughout all our dominions and cities they shall hire carriers, and bestles with men to labour, at their owne charge, to transport their goods.

So like wise, when soeuer the English merchants, are disposed to depart out of our kingdome into any other countre, or into their owne land, if our pleasure be, they shall take our goods with them from our Treasurie, and shall sell them, and exchange them for such commodities as is commodious for our kingdome, and shall deliuer it into our Treasurie, & with those our commodities, our Noblemen and capitaines, and euery of our officers shall let them passe through all our cities also without custome according to these our letters.

Al

Also when so euer the English merchants that haue sold their own goods, & bought other like commodities, and will depart out of Mosco, then they shall manifest themselves to our chief Secretary, Andrew Shonkalous, in the office where the Ambassadors are alwaies dispatched.

And if the English merchants coming, haue had any merchandise by the sea, in such sort that they be broken, or if that they do come to any part of our countrey then we will cause the goods to be brought in our true Justice, and to be given to the English people, which at that time shall be here present in our countrey, if so be that it so fall out that at that time there be no English men within our realme; then will we cause these goods to be laid by in a place together, and when the people of England shall come in our realme, then we will command all those goods to be delivered to the said English people.

Also we haue granted all the English merchants, with the house of one Vrie, here in the Mosco right ouer against the S. James church behind the market, and they shall dwell in the same house according as before time, and they shall keepe one alwaies in the house to keepe it, either a Russe, or one of their owne people.

Also the English merchants that possess their houses, to wit, at Yerossau, Vollogday, Colmogro, and the house at the haven of the sea; and they shall dwell in those houses, according as our goodly hath bene to them heretofore; and we haue commanded, that there shall not be taken of them no yearly rent, nor no manner of custome, sale, rent, or any other due which should be for those houses; neither shall pay any dutie, or tax with any of the towns men of those places, and in euery one of their houses, to wit, at Yerossau, Vollogday, and Colmogro, they shall haue men to keepe their houses, two or three of their owne countrey people, strangers, or else Russes; men of the meane sort, which shall haue no merchandise, that they may lay their goods in those houses, and they may sell the commodities out of those their houses to whom they please, according to this our goodly letter; and that whoso keepe their houses shall not sell or buye no part of their commodities, except they be there on giue order, whereby they be not deceived by them.

Also we haue granted them with their house at the sea haven, at the mouth of Pavdazenskiy, and we haue commanded, that they shall not carrie their goods from thence to the new called Michael church, but shall arrive, and so as they haue done heretofore with their wares at their house, and shall unlade their commodities out of their ships and shall lade them againe with Russe commodities, euen there, at that their house without interruption; and they shall permit our officers of Colmogro & two or three men to write by those commodities, both the commodities of England, & those of Russeland, what the merchants haue betwixt themselves, and in otherwise, but they shall not ouerlook their commodities, neither shall they unbinde any of their packs.

And when the English merchants are disposed to sende into their owne countrey, to wit, any of their owne people out of lande through any other kingdome whatsoever, they shall not sende their people without our kingly knowledge and commandement, and which of their people so euer they do meane to sende out of our kingdome, into their owne country, then they shall sende those people, without our kingly & our officers knowledge, to wit, those that go by pleasure without carrying any commodities with them, and they shall haue a letter of passe giuen vnto them, out of the office where the Ambassadors haue alwaies their dispatch.

And who so euer hath any thing to doe with them in matters of controuersie, either concerning merchandise or injuries, then they are to be iudged by our treasurers, and Secretary of the Ambassadors office to doe iustice betwixt both parties, and to seeke out the truth of matters in all things, and what forer cannot be founde out by the Lawe, shall be tryed by othe and loe; whose loe so euer is taken forth, him to haue right.

Also in what place of all our kingdome, in what title so euer, they or their people shall be, and that there happen any matter of controuersie, either concerning merchandise, injuries, or otherwise; that they haue occasion to set vpon any man by lawe, or that any speke vpon them, concerning what matter so euer in all our kingdome and cities, then our lieutenants, capitaines, and our officers shall giue them Justice, and shall minister all true iustice betwixt them, seeking out the truth; and what cannot be truly founde by lawe, shall be sought out by othe and loe; whose loe so euer is taken out, him to haue right accordingly as before, and the Judges or Justices shall take of them no kinde of dutie, for matters of lawe no where throughout all our Realme. This letter is giuen in our princely Pallace within the citie of Mosco, in the yeere from the foundation of the towne, threen thousand fourte score and thirtie, in the month of February.

FINIS.



Richard I. the  
to celebrate  
Abilida Inaui  
Achon a citie of  
Saracens to the  
of France. 1. 1. 1.  
the king. 1. 1.  
Constantinople  
Asian Gilbert  
present to diuine  
Aegypt hath taine  
Acthiops delecte  
Actna the burning  
Alicia delecte  
Africa, and the  
largely.  
Albuocet, a fish  
like.  
Alcharon of the  
Alcharon was  
Aleppo in Syria.  
& merchandises  
communities. 3.  
from Aleppo in  
dia. 2. 1. the last  
the communitie  
Iepso.  
Alexandria in Aep  
221. the monu  
226. the roade  
cerning the tra  
Algier in the Leau  
189. the king  
con, Singhima  
trade of Algier.  
Amazonia Island  
mazonian w  
the men. 64.  
America from  
discovered by  
Andrew Shalau  
of Luslia. 495.  
Ierom Bowes.  
fire is vpon  
Andrew Wlitem  
Ramzey. 5. his  
Anthony Ienkin  
Great Turke p  
fia 81. his luf  
Great Turke. 8  
the fleete for  
uer the first R  
tertainment at  
fia. 316. the pa  
Hoghar in Ba  
an sca. 350. p  
prince of Mont  
with Azim C  
pallish in Ca  
The diuers ac  
353. 252. A fi  
theoult troop  
at Hoghar 355.  
of the king of  
balladours com  
into Ruslia. 35  
fea. 354. He p  
to the Empero  
meth leaue of  
fia through his  
and many leue  
committed to  
Cassian sea the  
at the Court of

# A Table Alphabetically, containing a compendious extract, of the principall names and matters comprised in the whole precedent worke: the numbers shewing the pages, where each par- ticularitie is to be found.

<p><b>A</b></p> <p>Abbe of S. Nicholas in Russia, page 400. the number of 80. monks in the said Abbe. 400.</p> <p>Abbot and friars of England their Chaires to receive King Richard. 1. they obtaine licence of the Pope to celebrate with chalices of tinne and lacton. 11</p> <p>Abilfida Ismael his Cosmographie. 308</p> <p>Achon a side of Iury. 11. it is frequented by the Saracens to the two kingd of England, and of France. 11. the spoile it is divided betwixt the kings. 11. the way by land and sea from Constantinople to it. 18</p> <p>Abjan Gilbert of Sandrige in Devon. 774. his parent to discover the northwell passage. 774</p> <p>Aegypt hath same very tedious. 33</p> <p>Aethiopia described. 47</p> <p>Acton the burning mountaine in Sicilia. 26</p> <p>Africa described briefly. 84, 85</p> <p>Africa, and the people thereof described more largely. 94, 95, 96</p> <p>Allucore, a fish that is enemy to the flying fish. 161</p> <p>Alcheton of the Turkes. 47. the time when that Alcheton was published. 41</p> <p>Allepo in Syria. 208. the proper commodities &amp; merchandises of it. 208. the prices of those commodities. 208. the charges of a journey from Allepo in Syria, to Goa in the East India. 211. the description of Allepo. 211, 212. the commodities of the Countrey about Allepo. 212</p> <p>Alexandria in Aegypt. 213. the description of it. 213. the monuments to be seene there. 213, 216. the route of it described. 213. notes concerning the trade of it. 191</p> <p>Algier in the Levant, upon the coast of Africa. 189. the kings palmer port given to Th. Shingleton, Englishman. 189. notes concerning the trade of Algier. 191</p> <p>Amazonia Island. 64. the manner how the Amazonian women got the government from the men. 64. their manners and education. 64</p> <p>America from Florida northward, full of all discovered by the English. 680</p> <p>Andrew Shaheen Chancelor to the Emperour of Russia. 495. his abuses offered there to S. Jerom Bowes. 495. the Emperours displeasur is upon him for those abuses. 495. they are the cause that he loseth his office. 497</p> <p>Andrew Whittemer Abbot of the Abbey of Ramzey. 5. his trauell to Ierusalem. 5</p> <p>Anthony Jenkinson present at Allepo when the Great Turke passed with his arme into Persia 81. his safe conduct granted him by the Great Turke. 81. he is appointed Captaine of the fleet for Russia. 312. he transporteth once the first Russian Ambassador. 333. his entertainment at the Emperours Court in Persia. 336. he passeth from Mosco in Russia to Iloghar in Bactria. 247. he passeth the Caspian sea. 150, 351. His conference with the prince of Mingolouga. 352. his conference with Asim Cam prince of Sellente. 353. hee passeth in a Caravan towards Boghar. 353. The divers accidents in that journey of his. 353, 354. A fight betwixt his Caravan, and the Turkish troops of Tartary. 354. his arriveth at Iloghar. 354. He is honourably interceded of the king of Boghar. 356. Sixe severall Embassadors committed to his charge to passe into Russia. 357. His dangers in the Caspian sea. 354. He presenteth his 6. Ambassadors to the Emperour of Russia. 358. He obtaineth leave of the Emperour to passe into Persia through his dominions. 366. Great riches, and many Jewels of the English Marchants, committed to his charge. 367. He passeth the Caspian sea the third time. 366. He arriveth at the Court of the Sophie. 369. His coming</p>	<p>to the Sophie presence. 370. The manner of his entertainment. 370. He delivereth to the Sophie the Queenes Maestries letters. 370. His conference &amp; talke with the Sophie. 370, 371. He passeth the Caspian sea the fourth time. 371. His memorie and good name remaineth to this day in Persia. 381. He obtaineth newe priviledges for the English marchants of the Emperour of Russia. 377. His speache and conference with the Emperour. 428. His requests preferred for the English marchants. 470. His requests answered by the Emperour. 433. A briefe recha tall of all his traualles. 416</p> <p>Antonio Anus Pincedo a Portugall. 81. one of the Captaines of the hull English voyage to Guinea. 81. his troubles in that voyage. 86. his death. 87</p> <p>Antiochian patriarche. 17. his authority against the antiochie of the Bishop of Rome. 17. the description of the Citie of Antioche. 17</p> <p>Apalcoyaca, a part of the countrey of Virginia called by the Sautes. 767</p> <p>Arabian being like vagabonds. 34. Their life and manners. 34</p> <p>Aradwilla a Citie of Persia. 169. The frequents of the Emperours of Persia are there. 419</p> <p>Aristotle the Philosopher honored with an yearly of the Thracians. 37</p> <p>Armenia nation. 46. The description thereof. 63, 64</p> <p>Arta a citie in Guinea pertaining to the king of Iurnigal. 90</p> <p>Arrows poisoned vied by the Negroes. 145</p> <p>Arthur King of Brittain, and his conquests of the North Regions. 143. The kings of Greenland, Orkney, Norway, and Denmark yeelde themselves to his obedience. 143, 144. The right, and appendances of the crown of Brittain in his time. 144, 145. The large extension of his dominions. 144</p> <p>Arthur Edwards, servant to the companie of Muscovie marchants in London. 316. His severall letters written to the companie out of Russia, and Persia. 376, 377, 380, 384. He obtaineth priviledges of the Shaugh of Persia for the English marchants. 381. A coppie of his obtained priviledges. 384. His conference and speech with the Sophie. 416. He dieth at Afracan. 447</p> <p>Arthur Peter his commission to discover the Northeast passage. 443. His instructions for that discourse. 446, 448, 449</p> <p>Azina Reca a river in Lapland where Sir Hugh Willoughby and his companie perished. 325</p> <p>Alcopo a kinde of tree in Virginia like vito Lawel. 758</p> <p>Afracan a towne in Russia neere to the Caspian sea. 349. The description of Afracan. 349. The towne standeth in an Island of twelve leagues long. 350. the commodities and merchandizes there to be bought. 350. 70000. Turkes and Tartars besiege it. 419</p> <p>Athelard a monk of the Abbe of Bath. 5. His traualles into Egypt, and Arabia. 5</p> <p>Augulla a Citie in Germanie. 179. The description thereof. 179. The commodities and pleasures of Augulla. 179</p>	<p>to buye a strong cattle in Sicilie wome by King Richard the first. 7</p> <p>Balkynne archbishop of Cantuarbury. 143 his trauell with King Richard the first into Iherusalem. 14. his death and buriall at Tyre. 14</p> <p>Balme of India. 73. the description and vertues of balme. 73. the counterfeiting of true balme. 73. the manner how to doe true balme from that which is counterfeited. 73</p> <p>Balka a cite. 111. The description of Balka. 213. the weights, measures, coines and currencies of Balka. 213, 214</p> <p>Bartholomew Columbus mappe made in London. 508. He is sent by his brother Christopher Columbus to discover the West Indies to the King of England. 508. He presenteth King Henry the sixth with his mappe. 508. His offer for the discovery is accepted of King Henry. 509</p> <p>Batem a certaine weight so called. 168</p> <p>Peria 378. The value of that weight. 178</p> <p>Bayca a towne in Brazil. 798. It is situated by the English. 728. The English purchase of all the force of the cattle and say take foure thousand of the labor. 799</p> <p>Pebeck a ducky in the language of Java. 813</p> <p>Benyn a cite upon the coast of Africke. 86. English men arrive at Benyn. 86. The king of Benyn humanity towards the English. 87. The great reverence that the people yeeld to the King of Benyn. 86. The king of Benyn skillful in the Portugall tongue. 87. The kings care and diligence to furnish the English with pepper. 87. The disorder and death of the English at Benyn. 87</p> <p>Berenpina the king of Nauars daughter espoused King Richard 9. She is driven to Cyprus in a tempest. 9. Her shippe not suffered by the churlish king of Cyprus to enter the port, to King Richard marryeth her in the Island of Cyprus. 10</p> <p>Berhem the towne of Iury. 35. The monuments of Berhem. 35</p> <p>Biscayana in Nout Hispania. 319</p> <p>Blasphemie punished by Gods judgement vpon a Venetian in Tripolis. 106</p> <p>Boghar a city of Bactria. 315. The description thereof. 315. The government, state, and wealth of the Bogharians. 315. The king of Boghar a tyrant. 316. The commodities and merchandises of Boghar. 316. Boghar besieged by the king of Samarcand. 317. The latitude of the city of Boghar. 319</p> <p>Bons Spanna the Cape of Africa. 161. Ordinarie signes about that cape. 161. Strange fowles in great number about that cape. 161</p> <p>The fowles of the cape diversly termed by the Portugalls. 161</p> <p>Bones deuoured by fishes. 419</p> <p>Bolstan the name of a Renegado in Persia. 357. The manner how Christians become Bolstanes in Persia, and deny they faith. 418. No law to be had against a Bolstan in Persia. 418</p> <p>Bracwania an Island. 73. The manners of the inhabitants of that Island. 73</p> <p>Brazil eastwardly described. 803. A King of Brazil brought to London, and presented to King Henry the eighth. 510</p> <p>Burdorouza a towne in the West India. 531</p>
<p><b>B</b></p> <p>Babylon the name of two diuers citis. 30</p> <p>Babylon in Aegypt described. 30</p> <p>Babylon in Caldea. 209. the prices of commodities &amp; merchandizes there. 209. the weights, measures, customes, and coines of that Babylon. 213, 214. The ruines of Old Babylon. 213. The description of New Babylon. 213, 213. The way from Cyprus or Ierusalem to Babylon in Aegypt. 39</p> <p>Bachow a port of the Caspian sea. 444. The captaine of Bachowes fierlyly intemperance of the English. 444</p>	<p><b>C</b></p> <p>Caeco a fruite in Nout Hispania currant in head of coyne. 547</p> <p>Calippe the name of a prince in the East partes. 30. The signification of the word. 30. Diuers Calippes sometime in the East partes. 30</p> <p>Cambalu, a cite of China described. 55</p> <p>Camelions how they live. 73</p> <p>Camel of great force for trauels and burdens in the East. 33. Camels indure long afflictions from water. 33. The hard fare and yet content</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>

# THE TABLE.

nual fruce of Camels. 333  
 Can the great Emperor of the East. 53. The description of his palace. 55. The 4. solems feasts kept in his court every yeere. 57. The number of his horsemen, seruants, Physicians and officers. 57. The great armies attending vpon him in the time of his professe. 59. The originall and reason of the name Grand Can. 60. The file and royall title of the great Can. 61. The solemnities and ceremonies vsed at the buriall of the great Can. 62. The manner of creating a new great Can. 63. The largesse of the great Can. 64  
 Canibals of West India very cruel people. 329  
 Canoses of Africa. 326  
 Canton a great Citie of China. 814. The province of Canton. 814. The number of great and small Cities, Townes and Castles belonging to it. 814. The number of ships belonging to it. 814  
 Canby a citie of China. 813. The situation thereof. 813. The number of Cities, Townes and Castles belonging to it. 814. The breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814  
 Cape de Monte in Guinie. 113  
 Cape Blanke, Mesurako, de las Barbas, de las Palmas, and Trepointes vpon the coast of Africa. 89.90  
 Captaines of all voyages ought to be of forme. 266. The forme and manner of a Captaines othe. 266  
 Caravans in the East parts, their orders, manners, and government in trauell. 333  
 Carbuncle stone. 31. A carbuncle stone of a foote in length. 53  
 Carthage in Africke, and the ruines thereof. 33  
 Casbin a Citie of Persia with the description thereof. 423  
 Caspian sea with the length, breadth, and other circumstances thereof. 318. It is a shallow sea in many places. 327. It is frozen in some parts in the Winter. 438. brackish water fast within the Caspian sea. 443  
 Castles outlawes of Russia. 421. They assault English merchants in the Caspian sea. 421. 44. of their Gunners slayne by the English. 421. they take great and rich commodities from the English, but are purloined, and diuers of them taken and slayne, and some goods recouer'd. 421  
 Callian a citie of Persia. 422. The good orders and gouernment in that citie. 420  
 Cathay with the description thereof. 54. the tribute of the Cathayans. 54. Silke, silke workes and spices, the commodities of Cathay. 54. The twelve provinces of Cathay. 54. The number of cities in Cathay. 61. The apparel of the Cathayans. 61. the manner of their houses. 61. Their discipline in warres. 61. Their little eyes generally. 61. Several ways and passages out of land from Russia to Cathay. 387. 388, 389  
 Catell fed with fish at Wardhouse in Norway. 334. great abundance of Catell in the Isle of S. Domingo. 533  
 Cayro a citie in Egypte described. 30. 323. The Pyramids and other monuments to be seene in Cayro. 226  
 Cazax a citie, whose king is subiect to the Emperour of Russia. 367, 368  
 Cent, a citie in Barbarie, wonne to the Portugals by the ayde of English merchants. 79. The winning thereof was the occasion of all the Portugall discoveries that followed. 79  
 Chagel comes a Persian merchants relation of the way from Tawris in Persia to Camper in Cathay. 389  
 Champs, a citie of China. 825. the latitude of Champs. 115  
 Champions try and end matters of controuersie in Russia. 390  
 Charles Lackmans commission to discouer towards the North-east. 455. his instructions for that discouerie. 456, 457  
 Chesepioke a towne & great bay in Virginia so called by the Saugas. 738. the commodious and good situation thereof. 738  
 Chichuaid a warlike Saugoe people in America. 567

China province. 814. The length and breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814. The ships of China vse but one style. 331  
 Choanook a towne and province in Virginia. 738  
 Christians called Georgians. 39  
 Christians among the Saracens. 39. the difficulties of opinions amongst those Christians. 39  
 Christopher Burrough seruant to the company of Mofcoult in London. 440  
 Christopher Carile captaine of the Tyger going for Russia. 485. hee bringeth into England an ambassadour from Russia. 491. his discourse to encourage our nation to plant in America. 718  
 Christopher Columbus, his offer to king Henry the 7. for the discouerie of the West Indies. 507. His offer accepted of king Henry the 7. 507. The same offer and the acceptation thereof confirmed by Ferdinando Columbus. 509  
 Church of Greece agreeth not in opinion with the church of Rome. 27. The reason why the churches of Greece refuse obedience to the Bishop of Rome. 27  
 Circumcision vsed among the Persians. 424  
 Clement Adams, the writer of Richard Chancellors first voyage to Russia in Latin. 289  
 Cloth made of the bark of trees. 103  
 Cochin, a citie in the East India. 217. The waights, measures, and money current in Cochin. 217  
 Cochin-China. 815. the latitude of the port thereof. 815  
 Cola a river in Russia. 314. the latitude of it. 314  
 Cold may better be insured then heat. 97  
 Colmogro a citie of Russia. 289. The commodities thereof. 289. The description thereof. 290. the inhabitants thereof very seruicable to the English. 400  
 Colmak, a countrey so called. 251  
 Comnia a kingdom so called. 63  
 Constantine the sonne of Constantius king of Britaine. 3. His victories agaynst the French, Atinnes & Spaniards. 3. His continuall good successe in warre. 3. He planted Christian religion in Greece, Egypt, Asia, and the whole Romane Empire. 3. His great affection to learning and fauour to learned men. 3. He died at Constantinople. 3  
 Constantinople Citie described. 27. The way from England to Constantinople, over land and by Sea. 26. The monuments and spectacles of famous men and women in Constantinople. 27  
 Confusion houses in all the Negroes towne of Guinie. 537  
 Come growing and increasing twise a yeere in Noua Hispania. 546  
 Coralls growing in the Sea at the Cape of Bona Speranza in manner of stalkes. 161  
 Coudrus a Christian Emperour. 39  
 Cosmographers of Spayne and Portingall, partiall in their maps. 255  
 Cotton described, with the manner how it groweth. 73  
 Cozomomet, a noble man of Persia, a friend to English merchants. 378, 383  
 Crimes, a people so called, bordering vpon Persia, and enemies to the Russes. 349  
 Crocodile described. 53. A Crocodile killed by the English in Guinie. 650  
 Cuius a province of China 814. The number of great and small cities, townes and castles in it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814  
 Curasio an Island in the West India. 533. The store of cattell in the same Island. 533  
 Currans running to the North and North-east at Sierra Leona in Guinie. 210. a current setting to the East at the riuer of Sestos in Guinie. 100. The current in the North-east Sea runneth according to the wind. 470  
 Cutchew a province of China. 814. The number of great and small cities, townes, and villages in it. 814. The breadth of it. 814. The tributarie houses and men of warre in it. 814  
 Cyprus Island taken by King Richard the first.

10. The princes of Cyprus acknowledge obedience to the kings of England. 11

## D

Damasco city described. 46  
 Damis a city and port of Aegypt. 29  
 Darius enemies to the English merchants for they trade in Mofcoue. 485  
 Danische hulks laden with French goods, taken by the English. 120  
 Danische fowers and pirats taken by the English. 426. Five of their ships taken. 426. The English fend 83 of them to the Emperour of Russia. 426  
 David Ingram one of M. John Hawkins company fet on land in the bay of Mexico. 557. His trauell from thence our land towards cape Breton. 557. The whitenesse of his skin wonder'd at by the Saugas. 557. His discourse of the manners of the Saugas, & commodities of the countrey. 557. The means of his coming home into England. 561  
 Debernt a city of Hyrcania. 267. The description thereof. 267. The English mens good entertainment at Debernt. 446. The city of Debernt built by Alexander the great. 448. The latitude of Debernt. 448  
 Diego the general name of a capraine among the Negroes. 103  
 Diamond stones, and their vertues. 47. The places where diamonds grow. 47. The counterfeiting of diamonds. 47. The way for triall of true diamonds. 47  
 Discontent the ouerthrow of all good and worthy attempts. 259  
 Doctour Standish doctor of phisicke in fauour with the Emperour of Russia. 319  
 Doggeys that catch fish. 33  
 Dolpoine Island in the Northeast sea. 317  
 Dofniks a kinde of boate vsed in Russia. 335  
 Drinks vsed in Russia. 347  
 Dunflans Island. 313  
 Dwina a famous riuer in Mofcouie. 335, 339

## E

Earle of Camberlands voyage, fet out for the South sea. 793. The discourse and proceedings of the same voyage. 793  
 Earth swimming above water like wood. 216  
 Ebaone king of the Negroes in Guinie. 128. His offer made to the English, of land & ground to build a Citie in it. 128. His humilitie and good entertainments vsed to the English. 129. The ceremonies vsed by him, and his people, in drinking. 129  
 Ebbing and flowing vncertaine in the northeast sea. 319  
 Except a hill 9 leagues high in the West India. 193  
 Edgar king of Britaine. 245. His synneme Padochus. 245. His nauie consisting of 4000 ships, the vses and imployments of his nauie. 246. His conquests. 247. his royall file and title. 248  
 Edmund Hoggan Marchant of London. 156. his ambassage from the Queenes Maiestie to the Emperour of Marocco. 156. his arrival at the port of Afia. 157. his braue manner of landing. 157. his recreauing on land with Captaines and souldiers, for his conduct to the Emperour. 157. The merchants both Spanish and Portugall, commanded to meete him. 157. his honourable receiving him, the Citie of Marocco. 157. hee hath a rich dagger bestowed vpon him by the Emperour. 158. He obtaineth priuiledges for the English merchants. 158. His dispatch and returne from Marocco. 159  
 Edward the Prince, sonne to king Edward the third. 20. His preparation for the releefe of the holie land. 20. His arrival at Tunes with great ioye to the Christian Princes there assembled. 20. His expostulation with the christian princes about the voyage. 20. he maketh a royall banquet to all the Christian Princes. 20. He referreth to accept any part of the moine releued of the Saracens. 20. His charitable releefe & succour yeelded to 200. Christians forsaaken of the other Princes. 20. his ships

ships preferred, and in 220. (ships of 200. He continueth the rest of the Christian home. 21. Acra, and there took the towne & 1000. of the Saipolis frō them, the Noble men of Jerusalem. 21. He rible to the Sarra the arme by a tra the Prince of Loye line to the ground his owne knitt kill tence in suffering 21. He is recouer of 15. daies. 21. 21. and arrieth at R his father, he com crowned king, 3 wards enring into Mandeuill with the then reaignd.  
 Edward Barton Gen fluering of English Edward Coston of ship so called, fet for Beaufill. 187. and the Capitaine, the same ships, 21. the merchant for to call away vpon a mea. 188. The com M. of the shippes 188, 189.  
 Edward Barton, Ge age for China, 64 place by the Lord receiueh intrudic the said Lords of ul in the Riuer of His fight in the R 667. He fincketh and ekersh fore o Edward Ofborne Knod. 189. His letter 189.  
 Edward Wilkinso Royal in the sight Elephants teeth of The description a phant. 93. Debate the Dragon. 93. The two Elephants har lishmen in Guines Elmo the Spanish G English Artificers f English artillerie lo Braile. 62. The ble at Tripoli by men. 93. 19. The 226. the English 231. The English 234. The English English house at A house of S. Nicolas house at Shamakie kith house with lan 40. The English 358. The English Russia. 302. The R Russes on worke in fia. 387. English m the Caspian sea. 45 mit extreme negli English, defeat a gah in it. 800. An on land in 7 bay of assault them. 667. 668. They are capt uenior of the tow and iwerd 65 the Mexico 565 the imprisonment at N on calleth them in judgement of the war. 574. the cru of that judgement.

# THE TABLE.

ships preferr'd, & faued in the flome, wher-  
in 110. Ships of the other Princes perihel.  
20. He continueth his voyage, although all  
the rest of the Christian Princes refuse it, and  
returne home. 21. He arriueth at the Citie of  
Acra, and there refresheth himfelfe. 22. He ta-  
keth the towne of Nazareth. 23. He flieth  
2000. of the Saracens, and taketh rich  
spoiles of them. 24. He preualleth more with  
the Noble men of Cyprus, then the king of  
Ierusalem. 25. The growth fearful and ter-  
rible to the Saracens. 26. He is wounded in  
the arme by a traitorous messenger sent from  
the Prince of Loppa. 27. He striketh the vil-  
laine to the ground with his foote. 28. and with  
his owne knite killeth him. 29. His great pa-  
tience in fuftering the dreffing of his wound.  
30. He is recouered of his wound in the space  
of 15. daies. 31. He returneth from Palestine,  
and arriueth at Rome. 32. vpon the death of  
his father, he cometh into England, and is  
crowned king. 33. The time of Prince Ed-  
wards entering into Syria, notall by Sir Iohn  
Mandeuill, with the name of the Soldan that  
then reigned. 30

Edward Barton Gentleman, employ'd in the de-  
liuering of English captiues at Tripolis. 97.

Edward Coxton of Southampton. 187. His  
ship fo called, fet out vpon a voyage intended  
for Brazil. 187. The counten bewis him  
and the Captaine, Lieutenants, and others of  
the same fhippe. 187. His speciall directions to  
the merchant for that voyage. 188. The ship  
cast away vpon a sand vpon the coast of Gui-  
nea. 188. The confelion of William Bends  
M. of the fhippe concerning the fhipwrecke.  
188. 189.

Edward Fenton, General of the intended voy-  
age for China. 644. He is authoris'd for that  
place by the Lords of the Council. 644. Hee  
receiueh instructions for his voyage from the  
said Lords of the Council. 644. His arriual  
in the Riuer of S. Vincent in Brasile. 666.  
His fight in the Riuer with 3. Spanis fhips.  
667. He sinketh the Spanis Vice Admiral,  
and taketh some of the men. 667

Edward O'Byrne knight, & Alderman of Lon-  
don. 89. His letter written to the king of Al-  
ger. 189. 190

Edward Wilkinson Captaine of the Marchant  
Royal in the fhippe at Pantalaras. 239

Elephants teeth of all quantities in Gu'nea. 92.  
The description and properties of the Ele-  
phant. 93. Debate betweene the Elephant and  
the Dragon. 93. Three kinds of Elephants. 93.  
two Elephants hunted, and assaulted by Eng-  
lishmen in Gu'nea. 114

Elmo the Spanis faires Saint & Aduocat. 383

English Artificers sent into Moscoue. 329

English artillerie lent to the towne of Santos in  
Brasile. 622. The English brought into trou-  
ble at Tripolis by lewd dealing of French-  
men. 93. 97. The English Consul at Argier.  
236. The English Consul at Tripolis in Syria.  
234. The English Consul at Aleppo in Syria.  
234. The English house at Zante. 224. The  
English house at Alexandria. 225. The English  
house at S. Nicolas in Russia. 400. The English  
house at Shamakie in Media. 177. The Eng-  
lish house with lands at Colmogro in Russia.  
400. The English flagge in the Caspian Sea.  
358. The English marchants priuiledges in  
Russia. 303. The English marchants fet 100.  
Ruffes on worke in making of cables in Rus-  
sia. 387. English marchants aduentures vpon  
the Caspian Sea. 450. 451. English men com-  
mit extreme negligence. 527. 528. 517. Fiftie  
Portingals, defeat a Gallie, with 400. Portin-  
gals in it. 800. An hundred Englishmen fet  
on land in 7 bay of Mexico. 567. The Indians  
assault them. 567. The Spaniards take them.  
568. They are caried to Panuco. 566. the go-  
uerner of the towne taketh all their money  
and iowels fro them. 569. They are caried to  
Mexico. 570. their hard intertainment, and  
imprisonment at Mexico. 571. the Inquisition  
calleth them in question. 572. the cruel  
iudgement of the Spanis Inquisition vpon  
them. 574. the cruell and bloodie execution  
of that iudgement. 575. One English fhippe

discouereth 7. Portingal fhips neere Terce-  
ira. 299. English fhips are alwayes the strong-  
est, and Admirals of other nations in New-  
found lands. 286. The discoueries and plan-  
tings of Englishmen in Virginia. 718

Enferora a sausage in Virginia, a mende to the  
English. 793

Erafbeck a Soltan of Persia. 413

Euphrates a thalwoe riuer. 231. a iourney of  
Englishmen downe 7. riuer of euphrates. 232.

## F

FAtama a king of Guiny. 654. Presents sent  
to him by the English. 654. Presents re-  
ceiued by the English from him. 654

Fight betweene the English and the Portingals  
vpon the coast of Guiny. 116. Another fight  
betweene them. 124

Fight betweene the English and the Negroes. 113

Fire forced of two sticks. 553

Fishes that fish, and the description of them. 161

Flemmings malicious and vnbonest dealing in-  
wards the English in Russia. 183

Florida described. 329. The state of the curant  
at the heipt of Florida. 328. The manner of  
killing of fire in Florida. 329. Pieces of  
golde, silver, and vnicornes hornes among  
the Floridians. 541

Foxes in great numbers & troops in the coun-  
treys of Shiran. 419. 425

Francis Drake captaine of a fhippe called the  
Judith. 562. The great firme and feare that  
was in Meaico vpon his being in the South  
sea. 576. Men mustered, and fhips fet out to  
go after him. 576. His arriual at Aquatalco  
in the South Sea. 389. He entereh vpon the  
towne of Nombre de Dios in Noua Hispania.  
394. He taketh two companies of mules la-  
den with golde and filuer. 595. He burneth  
the houses of croffes, and much merchandize  
in it. 595. His arriual at Virginia. 726. His  
cortie and friend fhippe offered M. Ralph  
Lane, and the English colonie in Virginia.  
716

Freebooters pirates so called in the Easterne sea.  
425. Foure of their fhippes taken by the  
English. 426

French men very proudly scorne the English.  
18. The French enuy the English for their  
valour and good seruice. 18. They offer villa-  
nous abuses to the English. 18. The French  
army foolishly and vnshappily diuided, to the  
aduantage of the Salladine. 29. The French  
army difcomfited by the Salladine, and al-  
most all of them flaine. 29. A French brauo-  
do, 123. Another French brauo do and proud  
bragge. 130. The French admitted by the  
English into their company, to most vnwail-  
ly forfake them in the time of danger. 116

The French killed by the English. 118

French goods seized by the English in the  
narrow feaz. 128. The French mens trade at  
cape Verde. 121. A French fhippe taken at  
Guiny by the English. 425. French men ran-  
som'd by the English. 427. The names of the  
French taken and ransom'd. 127. Another  
French fhippe taken by the English. 137

The goods thereof folde by the English at  
the Groine in Spaine. 137. A French fhippe  
ftripped by the English in Newfoundland.  
318. A French man of warte deceiueh the  
Spaniards at the Canaries. 181. The French  
vlture the right of the English in America.  
680. The French vnfortunate in their proce-  
ding in America. 681

Fuero island. 128. A continual burning hill in  
the Gayd Island. 128. The commodities of the  
same Island. 128

Furricanes, certaine stormes so called, raying  
vpon the coast of Florida. 554

## G

GAbriel a Ruffe of that name. 315. His cour-  
teffe to M. Stephen Burrough in his North-  
easterne Navigation. 315

Ganges a Riuer of the East. 74

Gambil a kinde of spice in Syria. 44

Garamantes a people of Libya. 39

Geoffrey Duckett an Agent for the company of  
Moscoue in Persia. 410

George Fenner his voyage to Guinea. 122. His  
valiant fight with 7. Portingal fhips. 129

George a countrey of Armetia. 64. the descrip-  
tion thereof. 64. The altitudes and clarities  
in some partes thereof. 64. The king thereof.  
172.

George Killingworth the first English Agent in  
Moscoue. 299. His letter written from Russia  
to the company in London. 299. His beard of  
a maruelous length. 301

George Tuberville Secretary to M. Randolph  
Ambassador into Russia. 408. His  
letters in flete written out of Russia concern-  
ing the state of that countrey. 408. 490. 411

Gerardus Mercator aduise for a Northeastline  
discouerie. 424. His honourable estimation of  
the English navigation to Moscoue. 303

Giants of mightie stature that are Cambals, or  
men eaters. 71

Gifts sent to Queene Mary from the Emperour  
of Russia. 235. The same gifts spoiled by the  
barbarous Scots. 235

Gifts sent to the Emperour of Russia from  
Queene Marie. 233

Giles Fletcher doctor of the ciuil law. 503. His  
Ambasage from her Maiestie into Russia.  
503. 507. His hard intertainment at the first.  
502. His honourable difmission at the last  
from the Emperour. 502. His requests on the  
behalf of the English marchants granted by  
the Emperour. 503. His booke written  
by himselfe of the Russe common wealth. 507

Gilan a towne in Persia. 725. The king of Gil-  
lan. 375

Ginger with the places where it groweth. 428

Goa a cite in 7. East India. 165. 112. the descrip-  
tion of the inhabitants of Goa, their habitie,  
fruits, and maners. 68. The waights, mea-  
sures, and money current in Goa. 216

Godfrey de Bullion. 26. His tombe in Ieru-  
salem. 36

Gold sold by the Negroes of Guineas to English  
marchants by ounces, and pounds. 109. 110.

Gold, grainer, and Elephants teeth the commo-  
dities of Guineas. 92

Gold enoyes not vied in Russia. 259

Gorod in the Russe tongue, signifeth a cattie,  
348

Grozine a Countrey and towne in Armenia.  
414. 422. The inhabitants thereof are Chris-  
tians. 422

Galileimus Neobrigensis an Englishman, wrote  
in latine the voyage of king Richard to Ieru-  
salem. 13

Guillielmus Peregrinus an English poet, that ac-  
companied king Richard into Syria, & wrote  
the Kings voyage in Heroical verse. 15

Guiny coat very snow-holesome, by reason  
of the raine, lightning, and thunders, wherunto  
it is subiect. 160. The first voyage of the En-  
glish maqen into Guiny. 85. The second English  
voyage to Guiny. 89. by whom it was fet  
out. 89. The towne & houses of Guiny descri-  
bed. 201. The great inconueniences by late  
flaying vpon the coast of Guiny. 129. The  
commodities and wares most desired of the  
Negroes in Guiny. 130. The calmes & other  
accidents vpon the coast of Guiny. 160.

The raine of Guiny turneth meate to wormes.  
160. The fruit of Guiny vnwholesome for  
our people. 650. The wilde beasts of Guiny.  
651. A certaine thing swimming in the water  
called a thoope. 160. The time is dangerous and  
poysonous to be touch'd. 160

## H

HAmmah a cite neere to the mountaines of  
Libanus. 311. The Turkes curie the ree-  
difying of Hammah. 231

Hanza a towne of Guinie. 111

Hatorak an Island in part of all the West India.  
748

Hauana the chieft port vpon the all the West India.  
390. The description of Hauana at large. 390. the

edge of  
11  
41  
39  
45  
18, taken  
130  
English,  
The En-  
croas of  
416  
as con-  
10, 577  
towards  
his skin  
His dif-  
& com-  
meanes  
561  
defen-  
of in-  
of Der-  
48. The  
103  
among  
418  
The cru-  
fortrall  
47  
and wor-  
259  
in fauour  
339  
51  
317  
ia, 335  
247  
312  
335. 318

ur for the  
and proce-  
793  
od. 116  
ie. 12. his  
& ground  
amic and  
glish. 159.  
his people,  
119  
northest  
319  
West In-  
591  
me Pac-  
200. fhips.  
ie. 248  
the, 248  
lon. 216.  
laestie, to  
arriual at  
with Cap-  
to the  
sh Spanis  
receiue him.  
to the cite  
legge be-  
118. The  
guine mer-  
139  
ward the  
the releeve  
of unce, with  
there 3  
sh the chri-  
maketh  
an Prince.  
of the mo-  
His chari-  
200. Chri-  
20. his  
fhips

# THE TABLE.

the small force that it is of. 390  
 Hebron that ancient cite. 34  
 Heilike Islands standing in 66. degrees of latitude. 34  
 Helena the Emperesse a Britaine by birth. 34  
 The mother of Constantine the great. 34  
 Her virtuous and godly disposition. 34  
 The persecutions of the Church caused by her good meenes. 34  
 The place in Ierusalem, where she found the three crosses. 34  
 Her body diligently preserved at Venice to this day. 34  
 Helena Island discovered, and frequented by the Portugals. 22  
 The description, state, & commodious situation thereof. 22  
 Henrie the 7. King of England, accepteth the offer of Columbus, for the discoverie of the West India. 507, 508  
 His letters patents for discoverie granted to John Cabot, and his 3. sonnes. 509  
 He sent our Sebastian Cabot with two shippes to discover. 510  
 Henrie Roberts his ambassage fro the Queene Maestie, to the king of Marocco in Barbary. 337  
 Henrie Sidney his oration to the merchants of the Mofcoue companie, in commendation of Richard Chancellor. 381  
 Hiericaria descibed. 368  
 His voyage to New found land, in the time of King Henrie the 8. 517  
 His white in colour, much esteemed of the Tartars. 37  
 Hospital of S. Iohn in Ierusalem. 60  
 Hubert Walter Bishop of Sarum. 16  
 He was one of the chiefest that followed King Richard into Syria. 15  
 His great care and diligence to reforme the king out of the hands of the Emperour. 16  
 He was created Arch-bishop of Cantuarie. 16  
 He made an earnest oration to the people in the behalfe of King Iohn, and prevailed. 16  
 Hugh Willoughby Knight, Captaine General in the discoverie intended for Cathia. 265  
 Sir Hugh Willoughby his land in 72. degrees. 269  
 He and his companie perished in the river of Arzima recce in Lapland. 270  
 His notes of the voyage found in the shippes, wherein he perished, written by him selfe. 269  
 Humfrey Gilbert Knight. 597  
 His proofes of the north-west passage. 597  
 His letters patents renewed of her Maestie, 20 plans in America. 677  
 His first preparation for that purpose. 681  
 His second preparation and voyage. 683  
 His fleet consisting of 5. Gallies. 683  
 The orders observed in his fleet. 683  
 He taketh possession of New found land in the Queene Maesties behalfe. 687  
 He publisheth three lawes in New found land in the presence of the strangers. 687  
 His Admirall ship lost. 692  
 He periseth at sea willfully. 695, 696  
 Humfrey Greenfel Englishman burnt in the Inquisition at Ormus, by the Portugals. 430

Emperours Councellers and officers abuse him. 495  
 He recieveth justice of the Emperour upon those that abused him. 495  
 The froill of his diet altered by the Emperour. 495  
 He recieveth much favour, & the grant of his demands of the Emperour. 499  
 His departure from Mofcoue. 499  
 Jerome Horfy Gentleman, her Maesties Lieutenant. 819  
 His discourse of the solemn coronation of the Emperour of Russia. 819  
 His commendable content with Iohn de Wale a Dutch proud merchant. 821  
 He is preferred before Iohn de Wale by the Emperour. 821  
 His journey over land from Russia to England. 823  
 His large and honourable allowance of victuals from the Emperour. 823  
 The Emperour his rich gifts bestowed upon him. 823  
 Ierusalem 181  
 The monuments that are at this day to be seene, in, and about Ierusalem, 181  
 Iesus of London, a ship so called that Tripolis in Barbary. 191  
 The effect and issue of that voyage. 193, 194, 195  
 The ship taken in the harbour, and the goods confiscated. 195  
 The ship and goods commannded to be againe restored by the great Turke. 197  
 Iesus of Lubeck one of her Maesties ships. 556  
 It is betrayed by the Spaniards, and left in the porte of S. Iohn de Villua. 556  
 Lewes and their number in the cite of Venice. 179  
 Their habit, Synagogue, and maner of prayer. 179  
 India divided into three parts. 47  
 In India why lo called. 47  
 Indians of America descibed. 584  
 Commodities of the East India, & from what parts or places each particular commodity doth come. 584, 589  
 John Baptista Ramufius Secretary to the state of Venice. 504  
 His honourable mention of the English navigations to Mofcoue. 504  
 His opinion of the benefite of that navigation, if it were continued to Cathia. 504  
 His testimonie of Sebastian Cabots voyage out of England. 513  
 John Cabot and his 3. sonnes entertained for discoverie by King Henry the 7. 509, 510  
 John Cabot and his sonne Sebastian voyage. 511  
 John Chilton his discourse of the West India. 587  
 His travels throughout all Noua Hispania. 588, 589  
 John Davis his first voyage for the discoverie of the North-west passage. 776  
 His second voyage for that purpose. 781  
 His third voyage. 789  
 His two letters to M. Sanderson touching that discoverie. 786, 792  
 John Drake captaine of the barke Francis in M. Fentons voyage. 647  
 He proceedeth in his voyage to the River of Plate. 667  
 His barke call away in that river. 673  
 He & his companie encounter with the Sauvages. 673  
 He breaketh from the Sauvages, & cometh to the Spaniards. 674  
 He is sent over land to the Vicerey of Peru. 674  
 John Eldred his voyage to Tripolis in Syria, Babylon and Babilon. 331, 332  
 John Engene. 4  
 His travel to Athens. 4  
 His favour with two of the French Kings. 4  
 He was Schoolemaster to Alfred the Kings and his sonnes. 4  
 Aristotle politike translated by him into three tongues. 4  
 He is slain in the Abbey of Malmesburie by some of his owne scholars. 4  
 John Eufham his voyage into Egypt. 222, 223  
 John Fox gunner in the ship called the Three halfe moones. 150  
 His imprisonment in Alexandria. 151  
 He inventeth, and propoeth meanes to deliever himselfe & the rest of the Christianes there prisoners. 152  
 He is killith the keeper of the prison. 153  
 He openeth the prison, and letteth out all the Christian prisoners. 153  
 He and the rest of the prisoners suddenly furnish up a galley, and escape to sea. 153  
 He arriveth with the galley at Callipolis in Candie. 154  
 His sword returned in the abbey there for a monument. 154  
 He travelleth by land to Rome. 154  
 The prior & friers of Gallipoly give him a certificate for testimony of his great enterprize. 155  
 The popes letter of commendation in his behalfe to all princes. 155  
 The King of Spaines letters, bestowing upon him the rumer of a gunner. 155  
 Certaine verities for further witness of the action written by Al. M. 156  
 John Hawkins now knight, and treasure of her Maesties navy. 523  
 He taketh 300 Negroes upon the coast of Guiny. 523  
 He travelleth by then to Noua Hispania. 523  
 He travelleth by force and sword in all the parts of Noua Hispania that he cometh to. 523  
 He entereth the River De la Hacha, and discovereth the Spaniards that stilled him. 524  
 He rangech all the coast of Florida. 526  
 He relieueth the French men in Florida. 526  
 He taketh a towne in Guiny of 2000 Negroes. 526  
 He taketh the towne and bulwarks in Rio de la Hacha. 524  
 He taketh three Spanish shippes laden with passengers. 524  
 He is driven by a storme to S. Iohn de Villua. 524  
 The Spaniards first arriveth there at that time. 525  
 The condition of peace betweene him and the Spanish Vicerey. 525, 526  
 He is betrayed by the retired Spanish Vicerey. 527  
 He purchaseth 800 of his men on land in the bay of Mexico. 526, 526  
 His misery and distress. 526  
 John Manteuill knight, borne in the towne of S. Albans. 23  
 His life and commendation written by M. Bale. 23  
 His tombe, epitaph, & other monuments of his in the city of Leage. 24  
 The table and contents of every chapter of his booke. 24  
 The dedication of his booke to King Edward the third. 25  
 His two notable verses of the verdupe of his time. 25  
 The cause why he undertooke his travel. 26  
 The continuance of his travel for 33 yeeres. 26  
 A briefe commemoration of the particular countries and places of his travel. 26  
 His service of Melek Mandron the Soldan of Egypt in his warres. 30, 30  
 A great marriage offered him by the said Soldan. 31  
 His sequenture in the court of the Soldan with a learned physician, whose helpe he confesteth to have used in the making of his booke in the city of Leage. 36, 37  
 The reason why God suffered Palestine to be invaded, and possessed by divers nations. 35  
 His disposition and reasons whether Ierusalem staideth in the mids of the earth, yea or no. 36, 37  
 His speech and conference with the Soldan. 44, 45  
 His desire for the amendment of the ill ihus of the Christians. 44  
 His prayer for the conversion of the Saracens to the faith of Christ. 45  
 His notable persuasion to credit the verities and miracles of the world. 45  
 His experience in sundred flonets. 47  
 His travels as far as 33 degrees of Southerly latitude. 52  
 He remanved three whole yeeres in Cambalia a city of China. 57  
 The countries through which he returned into England. 75  
 His booke written in the city of Leage. 76  
 An admonition to the reader by M. Richard Hakluyt, concerning the purging of the absurd and corrupt impressions of Mandeuill. 77  
 Certaine testimonies alleged out of Plinac agreeing with Mandeuill, touching the strange formes and shapes of men. 77, 78, 79  
 Magister Iohnes ad Baram, the name of him that directed and helped Mandeuill in committing his travels to writing. 77  
 John Metellus Strucanus a frizer his testimony concerning the Northeast navigations of the English. 505  
 John Newbery his voyage over land into the East Indies. 228  
 His letter from Aleppo to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 208  
 His letter from Aleppo to M. Leonard Poore merchant of London. 208  
 Another letter of his to the fore said M. Poore, written from Babylon. 209  
 The imprisonment of him and of his companie at Ormus. 210  
 The causes of his imprisonment. 210, 211  
 His delivery out of the prison of Ormus. 210  
 He is first prisoner to Goa by the capture of Ormus. 212  
 Two Jesuits of the college of S. Paul in Goa, whereof one an English man labour in his behalfe. 212  
 The discourse and maner of his trouble.

trouble.  
 John Oxman of Plym adventure in the Sea of adria parais after his  
 John Tymant & Will intended a voyage  
 John de Wale a Dutch fia. 439  
 He vanquish of Spaine subiect in Russia to be pref of England subiect notwithstanding is the Emperour.  
 John Whitehall an E Santos in Brazil. 63  
 per of London brought by strange 640  
 a libellous revayl of merchants.  
 Ioppa forsaken of the king Richard. 11  
 Ioppa intended a his messenger vnder letters woundeth the message to escape his of Ioppa.  
 Iokius king of Cyprus all the Englishmen in his sea. 10  
 his preachers honest request by king Richard. 10  
 taken by the English himselfe to king Richard to continue his from his keepers. 11  
 a. he is taken againe kept in fetters of go  
 Italians great enuiey trade in the East.  
 Iustinian the Emperour people,  
 Kine an Island of M King Edwards letter loughly to the Nor  
 Kings of Cambria and the Queene Maestie Kings of England acknowledge  
 Cyprus  
 King of Marocco in favour of the English  
 written to the English  
 Kings of Spaine and the world bewee the Kings and great Lords Sauvages of Virginia  
 Killing vnder in Mofcoue Churches.  
 L Abassi the name of the East.  
 Language of the Lapp Language of the Lapp north-west passage.  
 Lapland descibed.  
 Landcaster a French C used by Sir Iohn Hor his owne discoverie and friendship  
 Lawrence Aldersey. 17  
 cite of Ierusalem in his second voyage  
 Adria and Cayro in Lawrence Chapman of companie. 42  
 His paric from Cabin with priviledges  
 Shalwegh of Padua  
 Lawes and ordinances charted for his nauie  
 Lawes not suffered

the small force that it is of. 390  
 Hebron that ancient cite. 34  
 Heilike Islands standing in 66. degrees of latitude. 34  
 Helena the Emperesse a Britaine by birth. 34  
 The mother of Constantine the great. 34  
 Her virtuous and godly disposition. 34  
 The persecutions of the Church caused by her good meenes. 34  
 The place in Ierusalem, where she found the three crosses. 34  
 Her body diligently preserved at Venice to this day. 34  
 Helena Island discovered, and frequented by the Portugals. 22  
 The description, state, & commodious situation thereof. 22  
 Henrie the 7. King of England, accepteth the offer of Columbus, for the discoverie of the West India. 507, 508  
 His letters patents for discoverie granted to John Cabot, and his 3. sonnes. 509  
 He sent our Sebastian Cabot with two shippes to discover. 510  
 Henrie Roberts his ambassage fro the Queene Maestie, to the king of Marocco in Barbary. 337  
 Henrie Sidney his oration to the merchants of the Mofcoue companie, in commendation of Richard Chancellor. 381  
 Hiericaria descibed. 368  
 His voyage to New found land, in the time of King Henrie the 8. 517  
 His white in colour, much esteemed of the Tartars. 37  
 Hospital of S. Iohn in Ierusalem. 60  
 Hubert Walter Bishop of Sarum. 16  
 He was one of the chiefest that followed King Richard into Syria. 15  
 His great care and diligence to reforme the king out of the hands of the Emperour. 16  
 He was created Arch-bishop of Cantuarie. 16  
 He made an earnest oration to the people in the behalfe of King Iohn, and prevailed. 16  
 Hugh Willoughby Knight, Captaine General in the discoverie intended for Cathia. 265  
 Sir Hugh Willoughby his land in 72. degrees. 269  
 He and his companie perished in the river of Arzima recce in Lapland. 270  
 His notes of the voyage found in the shippes, wherein he perished, written by him selfe. 269  
 Humfrey Gilbert Knight. 597  
 His proofes of the north-west passage. 597  
 His letters patents renewed of her Maestie, 20 plans in America. 677  
 His first preparation for that purpose. 681  
 His second preparation and voyage. 683  
 His fleet consisting of 5. Gallies. 683  
 The orders observed in his fleet. 683  
 He taketh possession of New found land in the Queene Maesties behalfe. 687  
 He publisheth three lawes in New found land in the presence of the strangers. 687  
 His Admirall ship lost. 692  
 He periseth at sea willfully. 695, 696  
 Humfrey Greenfel Englishman burnt in the Inquisition at Ormus, by the Portugals. 430



THE TABLE.

trouble. 211, 212  
 John Oxnam of Plymouth, 595. his notable  
 adventure in the South Sea. 595. The Spaniards  
 pursue after him and his company. 595, 596  
 John Tymant & William Fabian English men  
 intended a voyage to Guiny in yeare 1481. 81  
 John de Walea Dutch man traffick in Rus-  
 sia. 439. he vaueth himselfe to be the king  
 of Spaine subiect. 821. his ambitious desire  
 in Russia to be preferred before the Queene  
 of England subiect. 821. M. Jerome Horsey  
 notwithstanding is preferred before him by  
 the Emperour. 821  
 John Whitehall an English man dwelling at  
 Santos in Brasil. 638. his letter set to M. Sea-  
 per of London from Santos. 638. his letter  
 answered by certain merchants of London.  
 640. a libell read against him by the  
 sayd merchants. 641  
 Ioyous forsaken of the Sarracons for feare of  
 King Richard. 12. The treason of the prince  
 of Ioppa intended against prince Edward. 21  
 his messenger vnder pretence of deliuering  
 letters woundeth the prince. 21. his forged  
 message to excuse his villany. 22. The Barba  
 of Ioppa. 181  
 Infamous king of Cyprus. 10. he cruelly increaseth  
 all the Englishmen driuen by tempest vpon  
 his coast. 10. his proud answer to king Ri-  
 chard. 10. he is put to flight  
 by king Richard. 10. his imperiall hande  
 taken by the English. 10. he yeeldeth  
 himselfe to king Richard. 10. he is com-  
 mitted to certain keepers. 10. he escapeth  
 from his keepers, and deseth king Richard.  
 11. he is taken againe by king Richard, and  
 kept in fetters of golde, and sent to Tripolis.  
 11  
 Luke Ward Captaine of the Edward Bonauen-  
 ture in Malter Fentons voiage. 647. He com-  
 mirteth the proceedings in that voyage to  
 writing. 783

X

**K**ine an Island of Norway. 466  
 King Edwards letters sent by Sir Hugh Wil-  
 loughby to the North, and East Princes. 263  
 Kings of Cambria and China writes vnto by  
 the Queene Matheis. 267  
 Kings of England acknowledged for Lordes of  
 Cyprus. 21  
 King of Marocco in Barbarie. 238. His edict in  
 fauour of the English merchants. 238. His let-  
 ter written to the Earle of Leicester. 238  
 Kings of Spaine and Portingall, deuised the  
 world bewtweene them two. 255  
 Kings and great Lordes called Veronices of the  
 Saues of Virginia. 738  
 Killing vsed in Mofoouie, as in all the Greeke  
 Churches. 343

L

**L**abassi the name of an Idolatrous Priest in  
 the East. 75  
 Language of the Lappians, a northerne people. 319  
 Language of the people inhabiting about the  
 northwestern passage. 315  
 Landall described. 783  
 Landouer a French Captaine in Florida, reli-  
 qued by Sir John Hawkins. 539. 540. Laudoni-  
 er his owne diuorce, confessing the same re-  
 liefs and friendship. 544  
 Laurence Adersley. 177. His voyage to the Ci-  
 ties of Ierusalem at Tripolis. 177. 178. 179.  
 His second voyage to the Cities of Alexan-  
 dria, and Cayro in Egypt. 214  
 Laurence Chapman seruant to the Mofoouie  
 company. 213. His letter written to the com-  
 pany from Casbin in Peria. 413. He recei-  
 ueth priuiledges for the company of the  
 Swarth of Peria. 423  
 Lawes and ordonances appointed by King Ri-  
 chard for his nauie. 7  
 Lawyers not suffered nor maintained in Russia.

289. The manner of proceeding in Lawe in  
 Russia. 289  
 League Geometrical defined in veris. 28  
 Leues of trees of an exceeding length and big-  
 nes. 103  
 Leophares a people of Guisic. 235  
 Letters of conspiencie against King Richard,  
 sent by the French King of the Duke of Burgundie. 9. The same  
 letters produced and shewed to the French  
 Kings face. 9  
 Lewes the French kings preparation for an ex-  
 pedition into Asia. 17  
 Libanus the mountaines. 231. The commodi-  
 ties and fruites of those mountaines. 231  
 Licouris in great plentie. 349. It groweth vnder  
 the ground like a tooce. 349  
 Limpold the Duke of Aultria beriaeth King  
 Richard. 12. he selleth him to the Emperour.  
 12. The iust iudgement of God vpon him for  
 that wicked fact. 12. at his death he repenteth  
 it, and forgoue 10000. markes to King Ri-  
 chard, and sent home his holpnes. 13  
 Limpaxen porttowre in the Isle of Cyprus,  
 forsaken by the Inhabitants, for feare of the  
 English. 10  
 Lionel Plantree his prouision for a voyage to  
 Carhay, out of Peria. 420  
 Lions of a huge bignes. 53  
 London famous in Peria, for the cloth that is  
 brought thither. 388. London better knowne  
 by name among the Princes of Peria, then  
 the general terme of England. 416  
 Longitudes of places hard to be found out. 153  
 The way how to finde out the longitudes. 153  
 Latitudes of places in the Mappe. 153  
 Lothacke a Russe called 318. His relation &  
 familiar report to Stephen Burrough, touch-  
 ing the riuer of Ob. 318  
 Luke Ward Captaine of the Edward Bonauen-  
 ture in Malter Fentons voiage. 647. He com-  
 mirteth the proceedings in that voyage to  
 writing. 783

M

**M**acham an Englishman, the first discoverer  
 of the Island of Madera. 80. The port of  
 Madera in Madera so called to this day ac-  
 cording to his name. 80. A chappell built in  
 the said Island by him 80. In a boate made of  
 a Recke. 80. The Moris take him, and pre-  
 sent him for a miracle to the king of Castile.  
 80.  
 Madera the Island described. 89  
 Magellans Streights. 809. Two Ilandes in the  
 Streight named by sir Francis Drake Barhol-  
 lomey, and Penguin. 809. The towne of king  
 Philip in the Streight. 809. The Englishmen  
 call it the towne of famine, because they fold  
 almost all the Spaniards starued. 810. Sixe  
 pieces of Ordinance taken by M. Candish  
 from the towne. 810. The noysoine flesh of  
 the towne force the English to leaue it. 810.  
 Treacherous Saues in the Streights, slaine  
 by the English. 810. A description of the  
 Streight. 807. Another towne in the Streight  
 called Nombre de letus. 807  
 Magicians in the Court of the Grand Jan. 58  
 Mahomet the false prophet of the Turkes. 43.  
 The meanes that hee vsed to aspire to the  
 kingdome of Arabia. 43  
 Malacha a cite of the East India. 217. The  
 waights, measures, and money current there.  
 217.  
 Malgo king of England, and his conquests. 244  
 Malctrand a strange whirlepoole vpon the  
 coast of Norway. 314  
 Malta Island. 28. The gouernour thereof called  
 the great Matter of Malta. 28. His passport  
 made to the Englishmen of the bark Bay-  
 nolds. 28. 51. 66  
 Mantos the name of a Saues brought into  
 England, and transported against Ixo Virgi-  
 nia. 767. His faithfull seruice to the English  
 in Virginia. 763  
 Marchants of London assist the king of Por-  
 tugal in the winning of Coast in Barbarie.

110  
 Macham among the Negroes in Guiny. 110  
 Mercha the place of Mahouers repulchre. 22  
 44. The description of his repulchre. 22  
 Melinde longioure. 95  
 Memnon a miraculouse pond nere Achaia. 16  
 Memphis ruines. 216  
 Messara a city of Sicile. 8. The citizens (but the  
 English men out of their gates, being assaid  
 of them. 8. The fury of the English against the  
 citizens. 8. The citizens of Messara put to  
 flight by the English. 8. The city is quite  
 woonne by the English. 8  
 Michaele Stropyen an Italian the cause of M.  
 John Newberie his trouble at Ormuz. 210  
 Miles Philips his adventures in Noua Hispania.  
 568. 569. he weareth the Benito in Mexico.  
 575. he learneth the facultie of filkeweaving  
 in Mexico 575. he adventureth to escape out  
 of the West Indies. 577. The manner of his ef-  
 caping. 577. 578  
 Ming a castle vpon the coast of Guiny, belong-  
 ing to the king of Portingall. 90. The Port-  
 ingalles in the castle inhabite the English,  
 and will not permit theyr access to it. 90  
 they shooe all theyr ordonance against one  
 small English boate, and yett hurt it not. 90  
 Monalterion Griffonum a strong hold in Si-  
 cile woonne by king Richard. 7  
 Monastery of Sinay. 33. The counter streikes  
 of Sinay in the forme of a monastery. 33  
 Monions or seale-able times (or shipping in  
 the East Indies. 219. 220. 221  
 Morpouers an harbour in Mare gallica. 317  
 Mousa certain fill of good estimation among  
 the Russe. 289  
 Mofoouie discovered by sea by English going  
 for Cahay. 180. The occasion of aduancing  
 the discovery of Mofoouie. 180. The mer-  
 chants of London the feters forward of the  
 discovery. 180. it is discovered by sea by Ri-  
 chard Chanceler. 183. The description of  
 Mofoouie. 183. The chiefest riuers in Mofoouie.  
 183. The sharpnes of the winter in Mofoouie.  
 183. The description of Mofoouie the  
 chief cite. 186. 337. The manner of theyr  
 building in Mofoouie. 186. The castle in the  
 city of Mofoouie described. 186. 336. The dif-  
 ficultie of ware among the Mofoouies. 187  
 They vie to ride with short syroons. 187  
 The hard and miserable liuing of the Mofoouie  
 in the time of ware. 187. Mofoouie  
 hath no lawyers, but euery man is his owne  
 lawyer. 189. The religion, iurisdiction, ministrie,  
 & other ecclesiasticall rites among the Mofoouies.  
 190. The church of Mofoouie obserueth  
 with the orders, ceremonies, customes & tra-  
 ditions of the Greeke church. 190. The fads  
 of the Mofoouies at four in number euery  
 yeere. 190. Monasteries in Mofoouie. 193  
 The manner of substituting a new abbat in  
 the towne of an abbat deceased. 193. The ce-  
 remonies and customes of the Mofoouies at  
 the time of death vntill obsequy. 193. their  
 apparel, and forme thereof. 193. The exiers  
 that are there current, and the valuation of  
 them. 193. The waights here vsed in buying  
 and selling. 193. The commodities of Mofoouie  
 in generall. 194. The flaxe of Mofoouie,  
 195. The riuer of Mofoouie halloved euery  
 yeere. 141. The Russes lent. 141. The metro-  
 politane of Mofoouie. 180. The honor done  
 to the metropolitane by the Emperour. 324  
 The metropolitane horred by the Emperour.  
 324. The religious men of Mofoouie,  
 and theyr maners. 344. The hospitalitie vsed  
 in theyr monasteries. 344. No prachers in  
 all Russia. 344. theyr monies are churches.  
 344. The ornaments of theyr churches. 344  
 Second marriages forbidden theyr priests.  
 345. theyr manner of baptizing. 345. theyr ri-  
 chelous manner of marriage. 345. The manner  
 of theyr buriall. 346. The women paine their  
 faces. 346  
 Mofoouie Emperour. 186. 141. his letter sent to  
 Richard Chanceler. 186. he entertaineth Ri-  
 chard Chanceler, and his company honora-  
 bly. 186. The name of Emperour hath but  
 lately bene vsed of the dukes of Mofoouie.  
 343. The magnificence of the Emperour at  
 the time of war. 187. The manner how the  
 Emperour

# THE TABLE.

Emperour recompenseth the valiant services of his subjects. 288. The goods of the rich men in Moscow are at the pleasure of the Emperour, to take them when he pleaseth. 288. The pompe of the ambassadeours sent from the Emperour to foreign princes. 288. The Emperour beareth and detrimeth of all controversies himselfe. 289. The Emperour's letters to king Edward. 292, 293. The Emperour himselfe a merchant. 293. his first privileges granted to the English merchants. 302. his privileges granted the 21<sup>st</sup> of June of M. Randolphs ambassage. 401. his more special privileges granted our merchants at M. Randolphs first. 406. The Maistrie and Maistrie of the Emperour. 326, 329. A yearly triumph vsed by the Emperour, and the manner thereof. 340. The Emperour's wardrobe. 343. his behaviour in time of peace and of warre. 343. Three special things wherein the Emperour chiefly delighteth. 343. Moscow island described. 400. The habitation vsid in Moscow. 410. The feasts of the common people. 408. The attire of the common people. 410, 411, 412. their rudenesse and barbarousnesse. 413. their drunkennesse & adulteries. 408, 409. An universall plague amongst them. 427. The latitude of certaine places in Moscow. 389. Distance of certaine places in Moscow. 385, 386. A speciall house at Mosco in Russia built for ambassadeours. 401. The furniture, attire, and manners of horsemen in Moscow. 413. Mount of Oliues. 320. Murf Smilla a Tartar prince. 350. Murtemalle the great prophet whom the Persians honor. 373. their tables concerning him. 433. Muske requisite for long voyages, to comfort and recreate the nauigants. 684. Muske also necessary in voyages of discovery, to allure the rude Sauges. 684, 676.

N

Nagians a people so called, bordering vpon Russia. 348. The manner of their housing. 349. They live in hordes like pastures. 349. Some of these people assault the English vpon the river of Volga. 419. The fight betwixt them and the English. 419. The English kill 120 of them. 419. Nauidad a port of the South Sea, where the Shippes of the Philipianes arrive. 589. Naturica no algarid when the giueit any thing. 523. Naue of king Richard in Cyprus consisted of 254. ships and threecore gallies. 10. Nauigations of the Portingales being to long, breed many diseases among the Nauigants. 163. Nails of the hands suffered to grow very long. 26. Nazareth taken by prince Edward from the Moors. 20. Negroes vsit to race their skines. 101. a pretie deuote of the Negroes in Guinie to defie the crinik. 128. Negroes layne, and their soueraine burnt in Guinie by the English. 126. another towne of the Negroes burnt by the English in Guinie. 795. A Negro steales a flipp-bax in the night with merchandises from an English flipp-ship. 132. No trust in Negroes. 133. The speciall dealing of a Negro king. 563. Newfoundland first discovered by the English. 251, 256. The description of Newfoundland. 457. the abundance & variety of fish there to be had. 457. The beaks upon the coast of Newfoundland. 683. The same, many grounds and commodities of Newfoundland. 683. Siluer ore in Newfoundland. 688. The number of French, Spanish and Portingall ships that frequent the fishing at Newfoundland. 674. New Islands discovered by the English. 253. Nicholas Chancellor the writer of Ardur Per, and Charles Iackmans discouerie. 476. Nicholas Lambert one of the company in the first voyage to Guinie. 86. Nicholas de Lianna a Frenchman Priest, and a Ma-

thematician of Oxford. 248. His voyage made to the regions vnder the North pole. 248. 249. A testimony of M. Iohn Des concerning his voyage. 249. Nijus the famous river of Egypt. 29. The manner how it is conuoyed to the cite of Alexandria. 29. where hence it springeth, and how it runneth. 32. The time of the swelling and sinking of it. 32. Nine in number very acceptable to the Tartars. 60. The reason thereof. 60. North parts of the world ferme to be left to be discovered by the English nation. 250. Northeast passages discovered, Pro, and Con. 604. 606, 607. Northernne discouerie profectured, would proue very commodious to our kingdome. 257. Northwest passage proued by authoritie. 397. The same proued by reason. 399. The same proued in part by experience. 601. The same proued by circumstances. 602. The profit of the same passage 607, 608. The same passage proued by M. Richard Wills. 610. The same passage called by the Spaniards the Englishmens strength. 346. Probabilities of the passage by John Davis his discouerie. 780. Norway kingdome annexed to the crowne of Brittain. 245. Noua Zembla in the Northeast sea yields wood and water, things necessarie for the discouerie of that passage. 477. Nouogrode a cite in Russia. 288. The description thereof. 288.

O

O a famous river in the Northeast sea. 318. Knowne familiarly to the Russe fishermen. 318. Certaine demonstration thereof giuen by a Russe to M. Steph<sup>e</sup> Burrough. 318. Obdoloncan king of Hircania. 167. His maistrie and attire. 167. His passion, tenes, ornaments and manner of feasting. 167. His honorable intertainings of M. Anthonie Jenkinson. 367. His Conuincines 420. in number. 368. He befloweth a first horse with his furniture vpon M. Jenkinson. 368. Hee writeth to the great Sophie of Persia twice in M. Jenkinson's behalfe. 371. He granteth privileges to the merchants of London. 374. A copie of these privileges. 374. Observations, notes or journals to be vsid in all nauigations. 259. Observations made by the English of the Caspian sea. 41, 49, 50, 64. Ogens a captaine of Denmarke. 41, 49, 50, 64. Oliver Dambensy his report concerning his voyage. 508. Olympus and the heigh thereof. 27. Onega a great lake in Russia. 993. Orders for a Fleet fit out in discouerie. 259. Ordinance of traffick in Russia. 340. Ormers a cite of the East India. 210, 211. The situation thereof in an Island. 47. The weights, measures, monies and customes of the kingdome of Ormuz. 214. Ofte Napes Ambassador from the Emperour of Moscow to Queene Mary. 325. His honorable receiving and intertainment in the cite of London. 323. his dangerous shipwrack vpon the coast of Scotland. 323. Gifts giuen him by Queene Mary. 323. Gifts giuen him by the merchants. 326. His arriual backe againe in Russia. 328. His intertainment at Cosmogro in Russia. 328. Oisain Baha, the name of the captaine of Derben. 448. Ochs of Indidie be vsit king Richard and the French king 7. The same och broken on the French kings part. 8. The same och rescued against betwixt the two kings. 8. Och by the water of the Sea vsid by the Negroes. 104. Ocher, swearing, and vngodly talke not to be vsid at Sea. 160. Oze, worshipped in certaine Islands of the East India. 48, 51. The barbarous ceremonies vsid in that adoration. 48, 49. Ouzs a great and famous river. 352. Oze issuing out of the ground. 425.

P.

Pattent granted by her Maiesty for a trade to the coast of Senega, & Gambia in Guinie. 241. Peace concluded betwixt king Richard and Tancrod king of Sicilie. 8. Peace concluded betwixt them the second time. 9. Perles in great abundance in Rio de la Hacha in Noua Hispania. 553. The Island of perles in the South sea. 595. Pechinoco manseuric in Russia. 314. Pechora a river and towne in Russia. 314. Pelagius head of a college of Bangor in Wales. 34. his trauell into Aegypt, Syria, and other regions of the East. 34. his heretic & banishment for the same. 34. Peninsular a Saunge king in Virginia. 740. his conspiracy against the English. 744. he is slain by the English. 746. Penguin an Island. 508. the latitude thereof. 508. Penguins birds of that name in great abundance. 508. Pepper. 48. the manner how it groweth and increaseth. 48. the several kinds of pepper. 48. pepper growing at Beni in Africa 27. green pepper brought home in the late Beain voyage. 48. 818. Persia with the diuision and description thereof. 43, 372. The chief city of Persia called Cambis. 372. The difference in opinion of religion betwixt the Turkes and Persians. 373. Persia otherwise called Kefisbah. 373. The Persian merchants very vncomfort in their dealing. 414. The Persians write vpon red paper. 418. The letters vsid by the Persians, and the signification of them. 418. The manner of intertaining strangers at the Sophies court in Persia. 422. The religion of the Persians. 422. The original of their religion. 422. The Persians opinion of Christ. 423. The coine of the Persians. 423. The Persians rudenesse in literature. 423. A Persian intertaining his prince, both he, his children, & kindred are punished for the same. 423. The religious men, faith and preachings of the Persians priests vpon the tops of their churches. 423. The Persians pilgrimage to the Sepulchre of Mahomet. 424. The Persians obstruct circuncision. 424. their houses and names of eating. 424. Persipolis, and the names thereof in Persia. 420. Peter Baker of Radcliffe a pirate in the Leuant Sea. 171. he taketh & spoyleth certaine Grecians. 171. A redresse of his disorders is promised by the Queene Maiesty in her letters to the great Turke. 171. Peter de Ponte gouernour of the Island of Teneriffe. 524. Peter Vasciaro a Spanyard. 152. his couetous desire of a few duckets the cause of his ruine and death. 153. Persepolis by in Scotland. 328. Phraos his needle a monument in Alexandria. 223. Phedore Anderwich Spiesmieke ambassador from the Emperour of Russia to the Queene Maiesty. 457. Philip the French king, and Richard the first king of England ioyne their forces together to passe into Syria against the Saracens. 6, 7. Philip the French king differeth not the English according to his other. 8. his intended treason against the person of king Richard. 9. his treason reucaled, and he charged with it by Philip earle of Flandres. 9. his forged and counterfeit answer to the same. 9. his malicious persecution to the inhabitants of Tyros not to let king Richard enter they city. 11. his final fall returne from the city of Achos. 12. he stirreth vp rebellion against king Richard being returned. 12, 13. Phoenix the bird described by sir Iohn Mandeuill, who confesseth to haue seene the same twice. 33. Pilgrims in Mandrells time went first to Babylon to obtaine fire conduct of the Soldan. 59. Plinzing and a discoure thereof written by sir George Peckham knight. 705. Plinzing of Christians in the countreyes of hea-

then sauges proued. Plinzing diuided into two modities that will be on by plinzing in one of plinzing to all ad.

Planting in America p. 713. This planting charge or difficulty. Plesco a towne in Russia there is. Pole of Plymouth aff. Pompe of owners of West Indies. Pompey his pillar in All. Pope reprehended for all the East country Portingall. Portingalles villany towardson. 109. they tread his company the first Portingalles with a coast of Guinie, want deale with the English slain by the English in Portingalles. 146. their English. 148. A lish shippe and fuen The same fuen Portingalled by thare one English shippe denominated. 150. The Portingalled cape of Bona Sp. 161, 162. The Portingalled to Lisbon common. The king of Portingalled of the East. 151. galle ambassage sent the voyage of two English. Poyson of the Sauges or Prayd dyed most require a sea attempt. Prebiter John Empereur scription of his pallace and ornaments of the reason of his name. 66. stude of his Empire. into provinces. 66. tending vpon him in pline in warre, and crosses. Prince of Northwalles ca of Owen Gwinmed. West Indies with certain owne charge. 508. the parts. 506. The Powell and Humfrey voyage. Purers of shippes, and dimensions & direction Pyramids certaine now Cayro in Aegypt.

Q

Queene Elizabeth that now is. 164. letters written to the 183. 199. Her Maie<sup>ty</sup> Marebrou Amba<sup>ssador</sup> Her maie<sup>ty</sup>s letters vpon to sir Edward O<sup>ster</sup> Staper. 173. Her great Turke to procure English ship called the first letters to the British letters to the British for M. Jenkinson into Peria. 159, 350. the great Sophie of A. G. for the corporation. venturers. 194. Her Emperour of Russia. 68. dolph. 401. Her Maie<sup>ty</sup> sent to the fard Empereur Jenkinson. 427. Her Emperour sent by 5. Her Maie<sup>ty</sup>s letters Cambis. 207. Her

**T H E T A B L E .**

then saunges proved to be lawful. 703  
 Planting divided into two parts. 705. The commodities that will arise to our English nation by planting in America, 710. The profits of planting to all adventurers in particular. 711  
 Planting in America profitable to the Saunges. 713. This planting is no matter of great charge or difficulty. 714  
 Plesco a towne in Russia. 289. The commodities thereof. 289  
 Pole of Plymouth a Shippe so called. 510  
 Pompe of owners of mines in Mexico in the West Indies. 549  
 Pompey his pillar in Alexandria. 223  
 Pope reprehended for vndertaking to bellow all the Balt countries vpon the kings of Portingall. 255  
 Portingalles villany towards M. William Towerson. 109. they treachery towards him and his company the fourth time. 110. The Portingalles with a bigandine range the coast of Guiny, warning the Negroes not to deal with the English. 110. Two Portingalls slain by the English in a fight. 118. Banished Portingall. 146. their knavery alway towards the English. 148. A fight betwene one Englishship and feuen Portingalles. 148. 149  
 The same feuen Portingall shipps discometh by that one Englishship. 149. A Portingall shippe defended by the English from pirates. 150. The Portingalles nauigation by the cape of Buna Speranza described. 160. 161. 162. The Portingalles faile from Goa to Lisbon commonly in six months. 162  
 The King of Portingall a merchant in the trade of the East. 252. The King of Portingalles ambassage sent into England to hinder the voyage of two Englishmen intended for Guiny. 81  
 Foynon of the Saunges of America. 530  
 Prayer daily most requisite in all voyages, and sea attempts. 260  
 Presbyter John Emperor in Affrike. 65. The description of his pallace. 65. The magnificence and ornaments of the same pallace. 66. The reason of his name. 66. The largenesse and latitude of his Empire. 66. The diuision thereof into provinces. 66. Seven kings alway attending vpon him in his court. 66. his discipline in warre, and his enignes which are crosses. 67  
 Prince of Northwales called Maddoc, the sonne of Owen Gwynedd. 506. his voyage to the West Indies with certain shipps provided at his owne charge. 506. his second voyage to those parts. 506. The opinion of M. Doctour Powell and Humfrey Lloyd concerning that voyage. 506  
 Purfers of shipps, and their duties. 309. Instructions & directions for purfers. 309. 310  
 Pyramides certaine monuments in the city of Cayro in Aegypt. 223

**Q**ueene Elizabeth her gracious Maieftie that now is. 164. Her Maiefties feuerall letters written to the great Turke. 164. 171. 183. 199. Her Maiefties commiffion to M. Harebrowne Ambaffadour in Turkie. 176. Her maiefties letters patentes or priuileges giuen to Sir Edward Osborne and M. Richard Staper. 178. Her Maiefties letters to the great Turke to procure the restitution of an English ship called the felus. 199. Her Maiefties letters to the Emperour of Marocro. 239  
 Her Maiefties letter to the Emperour of Russia for M. Jenkinfons passage through Russia into Perlia. 359. 360. Her Maiefties letters to the great Sophie of Perlia. 361. Her maiefties Aſſe for the corporation of merchant Adventurers. 394. Her Maiefties present to the Emperour of Russia. sent by M. Thomas Randolph. 401. Her Maiefties letters and present sent to the layd Emperour by M. Anthoine Jenkinson. 427. Her Maiefties letters to the Emperour sent by Sir Ierome Bowes. 489. Her Maiefties letters writen to the King of Cambaia. 507. Her Maiefties letters writen

to the king of China. 507. Her Maiefties letters patentes giuen to Sir Humfrey Gilbert for inhabiting in America. 677. Her Maiefties letters patentes giuen to Sir Walter Raleigh, to diſcouer and plant in America. 725. Her Maieftie admired and honourably spoken of among the Turkes. 214. Her Maiefties title to all the countreys of America lying North from Florida. 709  
 Queene Mary her letters patentes granted to the Merchants of the Molcouie company in London. 304

**R**

**R**afe Fitch one of M. Iohn Newberies company at Goa. 212. His letter written to M. Leonard Poore of London fro Goa. 212  
 Rafe Lane Gentleman, gouernour of Virginia. 736. The names of those Englishmen that remained in Virginia vnder his gouernment described. 739. 740. 741. His requests to Sir Francis Drake at his arrival in Virginia. 747. He obtaineth all his requests. 746. Hee leaues Virginia, and with his company cometh for England. 747. His opinion of M. Thomas Harriots diſcoure touching Virginia. 748. His letter to M. Richard Hakluyt of the middle Temple, touching the flate of Virginia. 793  
 Rafe Kurter a rebell to the Queenes Maieftie in Russia. 432. He is required to be sent into England by the Emperour of Russia. 432. The Emperour granteth it. 434  
 Rainulph Glanuil Earle of Cleffer. 17. He is with an armie to the siege of Damiatin in Egypt. 17. His valure in that seruice commended by Polydore Virgil. 17  
 Reason, and cause of the name of the Sea called the red fea. 32  
 Reedes of a huge bleneſſe. 51  
 Religion muſt be the beginning and foundation of all diſcoueries and plantings. 680. The difference of religion in a country, is the cause of much miſchiefe and bloodſhed. 173. 419. 423

**R**ichard the first king of England. 6. His preparation and expedition towards Ierusalem. 6. The occasion of his Iourney. 6. Many gathered in the Realme towards that Iourney. 6. His most pompous and honourable entrance into the cite of Meſſans in Sicillie. 7. His exceeding beneuolence and liberallitie towards the French king and others. 8. His liberallitie purchaſed him great loue and fauour. 8. Hee departeth from Meſſans in Sicillie toward Acon with 150. great ſhips, and 33. great galleys. 9. His nauie diſperſed by a tempest. 9. He himſelfe with a few ſhips diuen to the iſle of Creta. 9. He arriueth in Cyprus. 10. He increaſeth the king to reſtore the goods of the English that he had taken away. 10. He, and his ſouldiours inuaide the iſle of Cyprus. 10. He fettereth vpon Ifakius the King earty in the morning, and taketh great ſpoils. 10. Hee marrieth Berengaria the king of Nauarres daughter at Limpreſin in Cyprus. 10. He arriueth at Acon. 11. He with his wife entereth the cite of Acon, and lodgeth in the kings palace. 12. Hee behedeth 2500. Saracen priſoners. 12. Hee putteth the ſalladine to flight, and ſlayeth many of his nobles & captains. 12. Hee paſſeth throughout all the land of Syria without reſiſtance. 12. Hee concludeth peace with the Turkes for three yeeres. 12. Hee returneth from Paleſtina, and is by a tempest diuen to the partes of Hiſtria. 12. Hee is betrayed by Limpolda a duke of Auſtria. 12. Hee is ſold to the Emperour for 60000. markes. 13. The cause of malice for which Limpolda tooke him. 13. Hee is ransomed for 104. thousand pounds. 13  
 Richardus Canonicus a Poet that went with king Richard into Syria, and deſcribed the things that happened in that voyage, calling his booke, *Inſeruarium Regis Richardi*. 15  
 Richard Carter an Englishman dwelling in Braſil. 660. Hee is taken by M. Fenons ſhips vpon the coast of Braſil. 660

**R**ichard Chanceler grand Pilot in the voyage intended for the diſcouerie of Cathay. 281. Hee is commended to the merchants of the Molcouie companie, by Sir Henry Sidney. 281. Hee diſcouereth Molcouie by Sea. 282. His entertainments with the Rufles. 283. 284. His Iourney by land from S. Nicholas to Molcou. 284. The Emperour of Molcoue his courteous letters written to him. 284. Hee arriueth at Moſco 286. Hee deliuereth king Edwards letters to the Emperour. 286. His honourable entertainment and feſtialing at the Court. 286. His perishing vpon the coast of Scotland. 322  
 Richard Clarke maſter of Sir Humfrey Gilberts admirall ſhip. 700. Hee executeth himſelfe touching the loſſe of the ſhip. 700  
 Richard Greenuill knight his voyage to Virginia. 733. Hee buildeth a forte in the Iſland of S. Iohn neere Hiſpaniola. 734. Hee banqueteth the gouernour of Port de Plata in S. Iohns. 735. His valiant booting & taking of a rich Spaniſh ſhip, with a little cocke boate. 736  
 Richard Hakluyt Eſquire of Byton in the Countie of Hereford. 434. His directions giuen to Morgan Habblethorne Dier ſent into Perlia. 434. His instructions giuen to Arthur Pet and Charles tackman for their intended diſcouerie. 460. M. Oliuer Dawbeney his report to him of M. Hores voyage in the time of king Henry 8. 18. The diſcouerie of Henry Hawkes touching the Weſt Indies, written vpon his motion and request. 545. His aduice and notes giuen to diuers gentlemen of M. Frobiſhers company. 636. A letter written to him out of Virginia by M. Rafe Lane concerning the flate of that countrey. 723  
 Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 77. His admonition to the Reader concerning his new impreſſion of Mandeuil. 77. The hiſtorie of Laudonier tranſlated out of French into English by him. 543. A letter written to him from Newfoundland concerning the flate thereof by Stephanus Parmenius a learned Hungarian. 697. His good light giuen to the merchants of Briſlow concerning the flate of America. 718. A letter written to him by Gerardus Mercator from Duisburg in Cleue touching a Northeaſterne diſcouerie. 483. Hee is one of the ſocietie or company to whom Sir Walter Raleigh his affignment is made for prosecuting the diſcoueries and plantings in America. 815  
 Richard Staper merchant of London. 372. One of the company of merchants trading into Turkie. 173. A letter written to him fro Santos in Braſil by one Iohn Whitehall. 618  
 Roane in France vnder the obedience of Richard the first king of England. 7  
 Robert Baker his first voyage to Guinie. 130. His second voyage to Guinie. 135. His imprisonment in France. 130. 131. 143. His adventures in Guinie & about the coaſts thereof. 137. 138  
 Robert, brother to Leues the French King. 18. His foolish and preſumptuous pride. 18. His proud and insolent answer to the whoſome counſell of the Templaries. 19. His proud ſeorne and contemptuous reſuſal of William Longwors ſober aduice. 19. His vnderrepentance of his hardie rathell. 19. His cowardly flight from the battell. 19. Hee perſiſteth in the ruet Thafins oppreſſed with hardſhips. 19  
 Robert Curſin a noble man of England a great traueler, & created Cardinal at Rome. 1617  
 Robert Gainth M. of the Iohn Euangelift, in the 2. English voyage to Guinea. 89  
 Robert ſirnamed Kettenhis an Englishman. 6. His trauell into Dalmatia, Greece & Asia. 6  
 Robert Tomſon. 18. His trouble in Mexico in the Weſt India for religion. 18. Hee is forced to weare the Benito in Mexico. 184. His deſcription of Noua Hiſpania. 586  
 Robert Turnham a Dine. 23. His trauel with prince Edward into Syria. 23  
 Robert Thorne merchant of Briſlow. 250. His letter to king Henry the 8. encouraging him to diſcouer towards the North. 250. His diſcouer written to D. Leigh the kings Ambaſador in Spaine touching the ſame diſcouerie. 251  
 R f f s . 251

# THE TABLE.

152. H. deſcripſion of the ſituation of the parts of the world in general. 154. his epi- taph in Latine verſe in the Temple church in London. 258  
 Roger Bodenham his voyage into the Weſt Indies. 522  
 Romane Sonings a French man turned Turke to ſave his life in Tripolis in Barbarie. 195 he is hanged northward landing, and dieth in the faith of a Turke. 295

**S**  
 Sababkingdome. 47  
 Saladin the Emperour of the Saracens ſendeth gifts to king Richard. 134. The Sal- adine is put to flight by king Richard. 223  
 Salomon temple in Jeruſalem. 37  
 Salt Island at cape Verde. 128  
 Sambofes a people of Africa. 526  
 Samoities a people dwelling at the riuer Ob. 318. A deſcription of theyr maner. 318 They are a people of a Sauage and cruell nature. 319  
 Santa Cruz a towne in the iſland of Teneriffe. 143. Another towne of that name in the I- ſland of Cuba in the Weſt Indies. 526  
 Sapies a people of Africa. 516  
 Saracens baptiſed. 11. they reuolt againe, and forſake Chriſtianity. 11. The Saracens breake theyr covenants. 12. The Saracens forbid- den to drinke wine. 35. The reaſon of that in- hibition. 44. The conuerſion of the Saracens how it is brought. 43. The maner & religion of the Saracens at large. 42. The common drinke of the Saracens. 44. The re- uolt of the Saracens concerning the meane of ſalutation. 44. A great ſhippe of the Sara- cens taken by king Richard. 11  
 Sauges of America. 559. theyr Kings & maner of reuerence done to them. 557. Theyr hou- ſes and townes. 558. theyr veſels, fiſh, fruits, woods, and minerals. 559. theyr beaſts and birds. 560. theyr idols, burials and language. 561. The Sauges not to be viſit diſdaintly, or in any hard ſort. 261  
 Scots theft, and ſpoile of English goods. 322  
 Sea called the dead ſea. 40. The reaſon why it is ſo called. 40  
 Sebaſtian Cabot firſt gouernour of the Moſco- uie company in London. 302, 303. his disco- uery of the Weſt Indies. 311. his ſecond voyage to Brazil. 312. The riuer of Plate in Brazil firſt diſcovered by him. 312. King Henry the ſeuench ſet him forth to diſcouer. 314. Three Sauges brought by him into England. 315. His large penſion granted him by king Edward the ſixt. 319  
 Secoran a province in Virginia. 718  
 Seizure a cait belonging to Azim Cam, a prince of Tartarie 352. The deſcription, and ſituation of that caſtle. 352  
 Senega a riuer in Guiny. 94  
 Shally Murzey ſonne to the king of Hiricania great friend to M. Jenkinſon in the Sophies court. 371  
 Shamakie a cite of Media. 358. The deſcription thereof. 422  
 Shamma a towne in Guiny burnt by the Eng- liſh. 128  
 Shaway or Sophie of Perſia. 420. his request to the English merchants to haue money of them by exchange, to offer to Mahomet. 420. The reaſon of that request of his. 420. The reaſon of the word Shaway. 422. his maner of liuing. 422. his cruelty to the nobleſt of the king- dome of Shivan. 428. he ſendeth to the great Turke the head of his ſonne. 399. he beſow- eth a rich garment of cloath of golde vpon M. Jenkinſon. 371. he reputeth all ſtrangers whooly people. 422  
 Shels of ſnailes very great. 51  
 Shippe called the Dominus vobis cum. 517  
 Shippes without yron in the Perſian gulfe. 233  
 So alſo at Ormuz, and in all the Eaſt Indian ſeas. 47. One hundred and twenty ſhippes of the Chriſtian princes broken, and drowned by a tempeſt, riding in the haue of Trapez in Sicily. 20. The narrow of the princes for the liſe of thoſe ſhippes. 20  
 Sicilia and the temperate thereof. 26

Sierra Leona vpon the coaſt of Guiny a very contagious place. 528  
 Sigifmundus ab Herberſten a large writer of the kingdome of Moſcouie. 413  
 Signes ordinary of the land of India to the nauigants in thoſe ſeas. 162  
 Silke graſſe growing in Virginia. 750. White ſilke in great abundance at Tripolis in Syria. 231  
 Siloe poole called Probatica Piſcina in Ieruſa- lem. 38  
 Sio an iſland. 325  
 Sion the mount and the deſcription thereof. 38  
 Sir George Peſham knight, 701. his learned diſcourſe of Weſterne planting, 701. his great zeale to the action of diſcouering and plant- ing in America. 681. his aid and aſſiſtance in that behalfe yeilded to ſir Humfrey Gil- bert. 628  
 Sleds vſed in Ruſſia. 284, 293. Two thouſand sleds belonging to one towne in Ruſſia. 293  
 Sloboda the Emperour of Ruſſia his houſe of recreation. 492  
 Shula a certaine thing in Ruſſia which they vie in windowes in ſled of glaſſe. 410  
 Soldan what it ſignifieth. 30. The deſcription of the pallace of the Soldan in Cayr in Aegypt. 30. The largeneſſe of his dominion. 30. The number, and names of the Soldans of Aegypt till ſir John Mandeuilſ time. 30. The power, and number of men of armes that belong to the Soldan. 30. No meſſenger permitted to come to his preſence, without a garment of cloath of golde. 31. The maner of ſtudy, and reuerence yeilded to him. 31. The ſeld con- duct granted by him to the Chriſtian pil- grims. 32. The forme of that conduct. 32. The reuerence of all officers yeilded there- unto when it is theued. 32. The Soldans letters written in Mandeuilſ behalfe to all his officers. 32, 37. The meane wherby the Soldan cometh to the knowledge of the ſtates of all Chriſtian kings and kingdomes. 45  
 Soliman the great Turke. 81. The maner of his entrance with his army into Aleppo in Syria. 81. his number of Nortans, Janzaries pages of honour, Baſſaes and other men, and other men of armes with theyr habies, and armour at the ſame time. 81, 82. The total number of his army. 82. The rich preſents preſented to him at that time by his Baſſaes, & the Con- ſul of the Venetians in Tripolis. 82  
 Spaniſh fleet of the Weſt Indies conſiſting of nineteene ſailes. 122. The proud com- mandement of the Spaniſh Admirall to the Engliſh at the Iſlands. 122. The Spaniſh Admi- rall ſtoutly answered, and not obeyed by the Engliſh. 123. The Spaniſh merchants in Ma- rocco commanded vpon paine of death to meete the English ambaffador. 157. The king of Spaines indeour to diſgrace the Queenes Maieſty, and her ambaffador, with the Em- peror of Marocco. 158. A Spaniſh price ta- ken by the English, and ſolde at Argier. 216  
 Eleuen Spaniſh gallies, and two frigats diſ- conſtituted by five English ſhippes in the Le- uant. 230. A proud Spaniſh General called Don Pedro de Leua. 228, 229. his fooliſh bragge and threat to the English. 229. A Spaniſh ſaile beaten to death by the king of Argiers commandement for abuſing an Eng- liſh man. 231. The Spaniards & Portugals at contention about the ſituation of places in the myrre. 254, 256. Two Spaniards in Peſia deliuered from the hands of 3 Turks by the English, and brought by them into England. 449. The Spaniards in the Weſt Indies prohibited by the king from traf- ficking with English men. 529. Poore Spaniſh ſouldiers in S. Domingo. 529. The Spaniards keepe alwayes horſes ready ſlaid in the Weſt Indies. 533. The Spaniards periurie, villany, treachery and crueltye to the English. 556, 565. A Spaniſh hulke of five hundred tunnes caſt away. 582. A Spaniſh preſident, his wife, daughters, and ſeruants drowned. 582. A rebellion in Noua Hiſpania by the Spaniards for the great enactions impoſed vpon them. 594. A Spaniſh price taken by

the English vpon the coaſt of Brazil. 660  
 The number of one and twenty perſons ta- ken in the ſaine price. 660. A Spaniſh fleet ſent from Spaine to hinder the paſſage of the English through the ſtraight of Magellan. 660. Spaniſh friers taken by the English. 660. A Spaniſh ſhippe in Brazil ſeized by the Eng- liſh. 667. A Spaniſh vicery called Don Martin Henriquez. 555, 564. he fallith in his promiſe, and periuriously breaketh his faith and word giuen to M. Iohn Hawkins. 555. A late example of Spaniſh periurie, treachery, and cruelty to our nation. 817  
 Springs of tarre. 254  
 Stars once appearing are a ſigne of winter at hand in the North parts. 472  
 Stephanus Parmenius an Hungarian. 692. his letter touching the ſtate of Newfound land written from thence to M. Richard Hakluyt of Oxford. 697. he periſtheth at ſea. 692  
 Steuen Burrough. 311. his nauigation towards the riuer of Ob. 312. The North cape fo called fiſt by him. 313  
 Stones generally vſed in Ruſſia. 411  
 Sunne and moone honored by the Sauges of America. 549  
 Sword fiſt killed by the English in Guiny. 653

T

T Abacco and the great vertue thereof. 543  
 Tancred king of Sicilie. 81. his honorable intertainment of king Richard. 9. Four great ſhippes & ſixteen gallies giuen by him towards the furtherance of king Richards enterprise. 9. he betrayeth the intended trea- ſon & conſpiracy of the French king againſt king Richard. 9  
 Tangomanages a people of Aſiſie. 529  
 Taprobana Iſland, with the deſcription thereof. 75  
 Tartaria, and Tartars deſcribed, with theyr maner, habies, houſes, and other things. 61. Tar- tars call the Chriſtians Cophars. 352. Tar- tars haukes vſed to kill horſes. 352. Tartars di- uining of things to come. 354. The maner of theyr diuinations. 354. A Tartarian prince called Sobet Ket. All artueth at Moſco in Ruſſia to ſee the new Emperour Phedore. 822. The deſcription of that part of Tartarie called Tartaria prima. 39  
 Taurus the chief city of Perſia. 46, 469  
 Templanies gine vnto ſome counſell to king Robert the French kings brother. 19. theyr counſell ſcorned of him. 19. theyr prudent & valiant anſwers to hiſ ſorne. 19  
 Tereukie king of the eunury of Chrieffs. 372  
 Theodore the new Emperour of Ruſſia. 499. his royall coronation at Moſco obſerued by M. Jerom Horſy. 819  
 Thomas Alencke ſeruant to the company of Moſcouie merchants. 375. he is murdered in the countrey of Hyrcania. 375. The maner of his murder and cauſe thereof. 378  
 Thomas Aldworth merchant and maior of Bri- ſtoll. 728. his commendable forwardneſſe in diſcoueries and plantings. 718  
 Thomas Ramſey Agent for the Moſcouy com- pany in Perſia. 419. he dyeth at Arnaſh in Perſia. 420  
 Thomas Buſ ſonne to ſir William Buſ of Norfolk. 517  
 Thomas Canſhill gentleman. 734. he accom- panyeth ſir Richard Greencull in his voyage to Virginia. 734. his preparation for a voyage into the South ſea. 809. his letter touching his voyage performed, written to my Lord Chamberlaine. 808. The diſcourſe and narra- tion of his voyage. 809. The ſhippes taken by him in the South ſea. 811. The great ſhippe of the Philipinnes called S. Anna ta- ken by him. 812. his annuall at the liſe of Ja- nuary. 812. The intertainment he had there. 812. his annuall at the Iſland of S. Helena. 812  
 Thomas Pert knight, his voyage with Sebaſtian Cabot. 515. his faint heart ouerthrew the voyage. 515  
 Thomas Randolph ambaffador from 3 Queenes Maieſty to the Emperour of Ruſſia. 399. he obſtainct

obtained new an Emperor for the E- cope of thoſe priu- million giuen for eaſt ſea to the riu- Thomas Sanders pri- diſcouer of the T and his company, his deliuerie and t- tues.  
 Thomas Steuens an Goa in the Eaſt In Goa written to his age by the cape of Fortingals. 160. his in the localite of k- ned Goa by the Timor Soltan the pri- tate.  
 Townes of Sauges in Virginia.  
 Torraga an Iſland in Tree beating bomba dropping water in Tribute of the king dies.  
 Tripolis in Barbarie. and his people play- cruelly done to the Tripolis in Syria. 231  
 Tubero a fiſh to call the cape of Zona ſtion of that fiſh.  
 Tumen a certaine c- The value of a Tur- Turke.  
 Turks firſt letters to the Conſtantinople 10 by the Queenes Ma- leges granted to the Turkie company, 10 commandement fo- ſike of English me- 200. his letter to the bary, commanding ſhip, men and goo- yeerly charge in his chiefe officers. 20 diers attending vpon of provinces. 200  
 Turks court about Turks yeerly reue- giuen at Conſtant- of Chriſtian kings for theyr promiſes  
 Twenty Turks deli- from captiuity in Turks Lent. 226. to the English mer- A peace conclud- and the Sophie of Turkeſtan kingdome Tyberias, and the ſea Tyre the city deſcrib-  
 V Aliges Iſlands in the Venetian women parrell. 180. The city of Venice. Verſe in Ruſſia is the gliſh.  
 Vicuals not to be accounted for to the Vincent a riuer in Bra an English voyage.

THE TABLE.

obtaineth new and large privileges of the Emperor for the English merchants. 402. A copie of those privileges. 402. 403. his commission given for the discovery of the North-east sea to the river of Ob. 406  
 Thomas Sanders prisoner in Tripolis. 193. his discourse of the Turkish viage towards him and his company. 193. The means used for his delivrie and the rest of the English captives. 197, 198  
 Thomas Stevens an English man resident at Goa in the East Indies. 160. his letter from Goa written to his father touching his voyage by the cape of Bona Speranza with the Portuguese. 160. his friendly paines and travell in the behalfe of M. Iohn Newbery imprisoned at Goa by the Portuguese. 211  
 Timor Soltan the prince of Mangolauze in Tartarie. 351  
 Townes of Sauges discovered by the English in Virginia. 738  
 Tortuga an Island in the West Indies. 530  
 Tree bearing bombazine cotton. 418. Trees dropping water in Guiny. 534  
 Tribute of the king of Spaine in the West Indies. 529  
 Tripolis in Barbarie. 198. The king of Tripolis and his people plagued diversely upon theyr cruelty done to the English. 198  
 Tripolis in Syria. 231. The description thereof. 231  
 Tubero a fish so called by the Portuguese about the cape of Bona Spranza. 161. The description of the fish. 161  
 Tumen a certain coine used in Persia. 378  
 The value of a Tumen. 378  
 Tuncz. 222  
 Turks first letters to the Queenes Maiefty from Constantinople. 163. Those letters answered by the Queenes Maiefty. 164. his large privileges granted to the English merchants of the Turkicke company. 167, 168. The great turks commandement for the quick passage & establishment of English merchants in his dominions. 200. his letter to the king of Tripolis in Barbary, commanding him to restore an English ship, men and goods. 201. The great turks yearly charge in his Italicke court. 203. his chiefe officers. 205. The number of soldiers attending upon his severall governours of provinces. 206. The chiefe men in the turks court about his person. 206. The great turks yearly revenue. 206. his allowances given at Constantinople to the ambassadors of Christian kings. 207. The turks care not for their promises made to Christians. 195  
 Twenty turks delivred by sir Francis Drake from captivity in the West Indies. 224. The turks Lent. 226. Turkie merchants enemies to the English merchants trade in Persia. 423  
 A peace concluded betweene the great Turke and the Sophie of Persia. 369  
 Turkestan kingdome. 363  
 Tyberias and the sea thereof. 41  
 Tyre the city detaibol. 8

V

Vaigats Islands in the Northeast sea. 318  
 Venetian women exceede in pompous apparell. 180. The duke, and seigniorie of the city of Venice. 180  
 Verffe in Russia is three quarters of a mile English. 390  
 Victuals not to be wasted in voyages, but to be accounted for to the captaine. 260  
 Vincent a river in Brasill. 638. A proportion for an English voyage to that river with a shipp

of seentie or eighty tunne. 639. The profit that would arise by such a voyage. 638  
 Vincent a river also upon the coast of Guinie. 101. The latitude thereof. 102. The language of the people inhabiting about it. 102  
 Virginia a part of America so named by the Queenes Maiefty. 718, 719. The first English voyage set forth to Virginia. 718. Possession of the countrey taken to the vie of her Maiefty. 718. The adventures of the English in their first voyage thither. 720. The people, sowes, provinces, & kings of Virginia. 738, 739, 740. How the countrey was brought into vnderferred slander. 749. I hole slanders answered. 749, 750. The merchantable commodities that may be raised in Virginia. 750. Commodius means to rayle vidual in Virginia. 753. the rous, fruits, beasts, fowles and fishes of Virginia. 755. The commodities there for building. 758. The manners and natures of the Sauges there. 759. The names of the first English colonie planted there. 736. The names of the second colonie both men and women. 770, 771  
 Vizeilace the place where Richard the king of England, and Philip the French king mette with their armies prepared for Syria. 667  
 Vnity and concord a thing in all voyages and Sea attempts principally to be regarded. 359  
 Volga a famous river in Russia. 350. It hath 70. mouthes or falls into the Sea. 350. The lame river suddenly frozen in the beginning of October, did out in tender the English boats upon it, laden with goods. 411  
 Vologda town in Russia. 289. The commodities that towne yeeldeth. 289, 335  
 Vigence a towne of Persia delcribed. 332

W

Walter Raleigh Knight. 735. His letters patents granted him by her Maiefty to discover and plant in America. 735. The voyages to Virginia set out by him. 718, 733, 764, 771. His assignement to divers gentlemen and merchants of London, to continue the action of planting in Virginia. 815  
 Way and distance from S. Nicholas in Russia to the Caspian Sea. 386. The severall wayes from Russia to Cathay. 387, 388, 389. The way from Tauris in Persia, to Campion in Cathay. 389. Two severall wayes to India beyond the Cape of good Hope. 163  
 Wardhouse, a caille upon the extremities of Norway, belonging to the king of Denmark. 395, 334. The weights and measures there used in merchandise. 334  
 Water congealed to salt in the West India. 347  
 Weopomoke a broad found in Virginia, so called by the Sauges. 379  
 West India offered to king Henry the 7. to be discovered. 507  
 William Bats fish and rath advise to his company to land amongst the Negroes unarmed. 144. He is taken wilfully by Negroes. 145  
 William Brough now Clarke of her Maiefties Naue. 416. Captaine of 13. English ships sent to the Narue. 425. Hee meeteth with Freeboores, and taketh 5. of their ships. 426  
 He writeth his letters to the Emperor of Russia touching the king of them. 425. His notes of advise touching the killing of the Whale. 438. His deposition to certayne Interrogatories ministred to him concerning the Narue and Kepor. 438. His reasons to dissuade a trade to the Narue by Sweden. 439  
 William Harebrowne her Maiefties Ambassadour in Turkie. 176. Hee is commended to

the great Turke by her Maiefties letters. 183  
 His letter in Italian to the king of Tripolis for the restitution of the Isea. 204  
 William Hawkins of Plimouth, father to Sir Iohn Hawkins. 520. His voyage to Brasill in King Henry the 8. his time. 520. He bringeth a Brasillian king to London, and presenteth him to the king. 520  
 William Longelye or Longsword a noble man of England. 18. His preparation for Syria with Lewis the French king. 18. He cometh to Damietta with a band of valiant English fouldrours. 18. Hee putteth and taketh a strong hold of the sixeaces neere to Alexandria. 18. He letteth upon a rich Caravan of Saracen merchants, and taketh the spoile of them. 18. His sober answer to the French, offering him iniurie. 18. Hee complaineth to the French king of the iniurie. 18. Seeing no redresse, hee flyeth forsaketh the French kings campe. 18. The French king wanting his help leaveth agayne for him with large promises of contentation. 18. He passeth the river of Nilus agayn the Saracens. 18. His prudent advise to Erie Robert the French kings brother. 19. His counsell teored of that proud Earle. 19. His notable reply to that scoone. 19. His singular valure in the battell against the Saladin. 19. His continuance in the fight, though his legs were wounded & his horse killed. 19. His most valiant & worthy end. 19  
 William Towerson merchant of London. 98. His first voyage made to Guin e. 98. His second & third to the foreland Guiny. 112, 110  
 William of Tyre an Englishman, Priour of a church in Jerusalem. 5. 6. Archbishop after that of Iyrein Phoenice. 5, 6  
 Windam captaine in the first English voyage to Guinie 86. His furious government in that voyage. 86. Hee dieth on ship boord in the river of Benin. 87  
 Women of Arabia their apparell & ornaments. 232. Women paint theyr faces in Mofcoue. 246. Breasts of women very long. 402. Women deadly and hurtfull in their looks. 91. The vndermost manner of riding used by the women of Mofcoue. 409. Women bought and sold, and let out to hire in Persia. 425. The manners of the yong women amongst the Sauges of America. 530  
 Wood, called Dill wood in Mare Glaciale. 327  
 Woods that a Christian is to speake, when he denyeth Christianitie, and recieves the religion of the turks. 44  
 Workes eating through the planks of shippes. 97.

Y

Yake, a river falling into the Caspian Sea. 350.  
 Yaur a towne in Hircania. 350.  
 Yeladin el Kubar the king of Cambia. 207.  
 232. a letter written from the Queenes Maiefty to him by M. John Newbery. 207  
 Yern a river falling into the Caspian sea. 35  
 Yerelaae a towne in Russia. 289. the commodities that the countrey about it doth yeelde. 289.

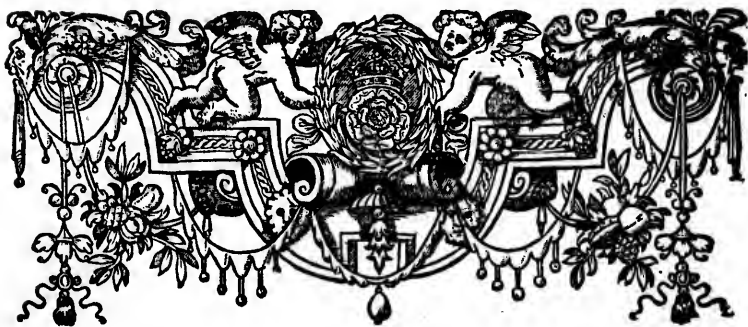
Z

Zante Islande. 224. the English house at Zante. 224.  
 Zephah the chiefe towne in the countrey of Georgia. 423  
 Zeines certayne religious men about the great Sophie of Persia. 372

FINIS.

Imprinted at London by the  
Deputies of Christopher Barker, Printer to  
the Queenes most excellent Maieftie.

*Anno Dom. 1589.*



ne



